





SIR THOMAS MARYON WILSON BART



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2018 with funding from
Wellcome Library

https://archive.org/details/b30524465_0004

ATLAS GEOGRAPHUS:

OR, A COMPLEAT

System of Geography,

(ANCIENT and MODERN)

FOR

AFRICA.

CONTAINING

What is of most Use in *Bleau, Varenus, Cellarius, Cluverius, Baudrand, Brietius, Sanson, &c.*

WITH THE

DISCOVERIES and IMPROVEMENTS of the best Modern Authors to this Time. Illustrated with about 17 new MAPS, CUTS, *Sansons* TABLES, &c. as may be seen in the Catalogue thereof annex'd to the INDEX: The Maps done by *Herman Moll*, Geographer; in which are all the latest Observations of the *ATLAS* for the whole World. EUROPE is Two Volumes, ASIA a Third, and this the Fourth.

VOL. IV.

In the *S A V O R*:

Printed by *John Nutt*; and Sold by *Benjamin Barker* and *Charles King* in *Westminster-Hall*; *Benjamin Tooke* at the *Middle-Temple Gate*; *William Taylor* at the *Ship in Pater-Noster-Row*; *Henry Clements* at the *Half-Moon* in *St. Paul's Church-yard*; *Richard Parker* and *Ralph Smith* under the *Piazza of the Royal-Exchange*; and *John Morphew* near *Stationers-Hall*. MDCCXIV.

ADVERTISEMENT.

Nov. 30. 1713.

EUROPE being finish'd in Two Volumes, with above 70 new Maps; **A**SIA in One Volume, with about 30 new Maps, &c. and now **A**FRICA with 17 new Maps, Cuts, &c. we shall now proceed to **G**REAT **B**ITAIN and **I**RELAND, and the *Introduction* will begin to be published the first *Monday* in *January* next. And as Informations and Accounts of Places come in, they are inserted in their County, &c. It is entitled, *Britannia & Hibernia Antiqua & Nova*; in which will be a new and accurate Map of each County, with the Wapentacks, Laths, Hundreds, &c. all the Roads exactly marked, and an Alphabetical Account of every City, Town, Village, Seat, &c. at the End of each County; wherein may be seen the Value of each Living, the Patron thereof, all that are in the Queen's Gift, the present Incumbent, the Lord of the Manor, and Gentleman that has a Seat there, &c. In the Whole will be about 100 Maps, and as many Cuts. We shall do the Counties in Alphabetical Order, as *Bedfordshire, Berkshire, Buckinghamshire, Cambridgeshire, Cheshire, Cornwall, &c.* Gentlemen are desired to send in what Accounts they think proper for this Design to the Reverend Mr. *Anthony Hall*, Fellow of *Queen's College, Oxon*, who lately published *Leland* in *Latin*; or to *John Nutt*, Printer, in the *Savoy*, paying Postage, and they will be faithfully inserted. And as we have received Descriptions of near 300 Places from learned and ingenious Gentlemen that live on the Place they describe, so we don't doubt but to have the whole Kingdom done so as we go on.





THE PREFACE.

THE Volumes of EUROPE and ASIA having met with such good Acceptance from the Publick, it very much encouraged the Undertakers, and other Gentlemen interested in this Work, to spare no Cost or Labour to make this Volume of AFRICA equally profitable and entertaining.

To this End we have been at more than ordinary Pains to consult the best Authors upon the Ancient and Modern Geography and History of Africa; and as we had the Direction of several ingenious Gentlemen, but particularly of those two learned and communicative Doctors mentioned in our former Prefaces, as well as their Assistance in the Loan of Books, so we may be bold to say, there have been the best Materials made use of that are to be found necessary for such an Undertaking. How we have performed the Translations or Extracts, we leave the World to judge, for we don't pretend that they are infallible, or absolutely perfect; yet we'll venture to affirm, that 'tis by much the best History that ever was published of this Part of the World, as well as the largest; and the Maps are all new done by Mr. Moll from the latest Discoveries.

We have consulted the most authentick Authors of Antiquity upon the ancient Geography of the several Divisions of this Quarter of the World, especially Egypt, and other Parts of it mentioned in the Scriptures, and Numidia and Mauretania, &c. which were the Seats of those famous Wars recorded by the Roman Authors.

On the other Hand we have consulted the latest and most curious Travellers for the large Descriptions we have given of the famous River Nile, and have taken a Map of the several Towns on its Banks, as it was drawn by Mr. Lucas, who travelled up and down the Nile as far as the Cataracts. We have also been very particular on the Pyramids, Caves, Mummies, Lamps, Funerals, Hieroglyphicks, and Obelisks, of the ancient Egyptians, as they are described to us by several ingenious Foreign Travellers who have been on the Spot, and by our own Countryman Mr. Greaves, Professor of Astronomy at Oxford, who went twice from Alexandria to view the Pyramids.

We have also been obliged to several rare Pieces communicated to the Royal Society, particularly the Account of Barbary and the Moors there by Mr. Jones, Interpreter to the Morocco Ambassador, who for some Time resided there, and the Account of Teneriff and its famous Pike, as 'tis mentioned in Dr. Sprat's History. And we have given such an Account from the newest Travellers of the most noted Factories both on the Continent and in the Islands, that we dare say a better never yet appeared in any Language.

We shall proceed next to A M E R I C A, beginning with the South Sea and Spanish West-Indies, for which we have the best Materials both as to Printed Books and Manuscripts, and the Maps are already engrav'd by Mr. Moll for that Country; so that the Publick may be assured that Part of the World will be finished in a little Time with very great Care and Exactness.

In the mean time such Persons as please to favour us with any Information of Places where they have lived, or now reside, their Accounts shall be faithfully inserted, and their Names honourably mentioned.

While this Volume is preparing for the Press, a learned and ingenious Gentleman at Oxford, that does the South Part of Great Britain, viz. England and Wales, will proceed to publish the first Number on the first Monday in January next, and so every first Monday of the following Months, till that Part of Great Britain is entirely finished, in which every County, City, and most Towns, are described by some Person or Persons that live on the Spot.

Another Gentleman is preparing that for Scotland, and a third, Ireland, which will take up about 200 new Maps, Cuts, &c. and make the whole Number of Maps, Cuts, Sansons Tables, &c. in Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, to be near 400. All which considered, with the modern Discoveries, is three times more than was ever purchas'd for 50 l. in Bleau's Atlas, or any other Book of Geography extant.

N. B. That when the whole Work is finished, all the Books made use of for it, except those borrowed from Gentlemen, will be sold by Auction.

ATLAS GEOGRAPHUS:

OR, A COMPLEAT System of Geography, ANCIENT and MODERN.

CHAP. I.

AFRICA in General.

MOLL places it betwixt N. Lat. 31. and S. Lat. 31. and betwixt Long. 350 W. of the first Meridian from Ferro Island, and 90 E. of the Meridian, including the Islands which lie on the S. E. Side of it; so that according to him, from the Streights of Gibraltar on the N. to the Cape of Good Hope on the S. 'tis near 3420 Miles; and from Cape de Vert on the W. to Cape Gardafuy on the E. about 3300 M. but it is much contracted as it runs S. from the Line to the Cape of Good Hope. It has the Mediterranean on the N. the Atlantick and Ethiopian Ocean on the W. the Isthmus of Sues, the Red Sea, and the East-Indian Ocean, on the E. and the Southern Sea on the S. It is cut by the Equinoctial and both the Tropicks; but the greatest Part of the Continent lies N. of the Line. Ogilby makes it 3600 Miles from Gibraltar to the Cape of Good Hope, and 3150

from Cape Vert to Gardafuy. The Sansons place it betwixt N. Lat. 35. and S. Lat. 35. but agree with Moll in the Long. They make the Form of it a sort of a Triangle, the greatest Length from E. to W. about 2000 French Leagues, and the greatest Breadth from S. to N. about 1800. But the Length and Breadth are both unequal; for the West Part is only 7 or 800 Leagues from S. to N. and the most S. Part is little above 800 Leagues from E. to W. under the Equator, from whence to the Southward it contracts more and more, till it terminates in a Point at the Cape of Good Hope.

Its Situation is under and about the Torrid Zone, and betwixt the Tropicks; yet it lies 12 Deg. beyond that of Capricorn, and extends 15 beyond that of Cancer. Notwithstanding this Position, *Africa* is every where inhabited, tho not so well as *Asia* and *Europe*; 1. Because of the insupportable Heats: 2. Because there are several Provinces

vinces which have no Water: 3. Because several Countries are cover'd with Sand, which being blown by the Wind, overwhelms Men and Beasts: 4. Because several of the Provinces are inhabited by Cannibals, or such as take and sell one another for Slaves: 5. Because others of the Provinces are much annoy'd with Wild-Beasts and dangerous Serpents. Ancient Authors observ'd, That *Africa* produces a greater Variety of Animals than any other Part of the World; and that 'twas a Proverb in *Aristotle's* Time, That *Africa* was still producing something new.

The *Sansons* observe, That the Air is more temperate and fresh under and about the Equator, than under and about the Tropicks. The Reason they give is, that under and near the Equator, the Sun occasions two Summers and two Winters; and the Nights being always equal to the Days, does very much cool the Air, and the Sun passes lightly thro' the Degrees of the Zodiac near and on both Sides the Line, viz. to the Equinoxes; but when it comes to the Tropicks, it makes the Days longer than the Nights, and stays longer on the Degrees of the Zodiac about the one and the other Solstice. But for Particulars, we refer to our Description of the several Parts of this Continent.

Authors don't agree as to the Origine of the Name. The *Latins* call'd it *Africa*, and the *Greeks*, *Libya*. The *Sansons* say, these Names were at first given to the Coasts which lay over against *Europe*; those opposite to *Italy* being call'd *Africk*, and those opposite to *Greece*, *Libya*; so that it is called indifferently by both those Names by Greek and Latin Authors, who extended them afterwards to the whole Region. Some derive the Name of *Africa* from *Afer*, one of the Descendants of *Abraham* and *Keturah*; some from *Afer*, Son to the *Libyan Hercules*; some from the Greek Words *Aνω φεικνε*, i. e. without Cold; and others from the *Arabian* Word *Isfriquia*, which signifies divided, because it is join'd to *Asia* only by a small Isthmus. *Bochart* derives it from the *Phenician* Word signifying the Land of Grain or Corn, because in some Places it produces 100 Fold. Some again derive it from *Apher*, a *Hebrew* Word that signifies Dust; and *Leo Africanus* says, That others

derive it from *Ifricas*, an *Arabian* Prince, who being drove out of his own Country, settled here about *Carthage*.

The Name of *Lybia* is derived by some from *Lybia*, Daughter to *Epaphus* the Son of *Jupiter*, from a Lake of that Name which falls into the River *Triton*; from *Libus*, an ancient Greek Word that signifies Black; because its Inhabitants are so, or from the *Arabian* Word *Lub*, which signifies dry. *Bochart* takes it to be that called *Phul*, *Pul*, *Phut*, and *Put*, *Isa.* 66. 19. *Neh.* 3. 9. shews that all *Africa* was divided between *Mizraim* and *Phut*, *Ham's* two Sons, and gives his Reasons, for which we refer to him. He says, the Inhabitants were called *Phutai*, i. e. Wanderers, being a scatter'd People dwelling in Tents, like the *Greek Nomades*. For the different Religions, Languages, Government, Customs, and Product, of Modern *Africa*, we shall take them in their proper Places.

Of Ancient A F R I C A.

LEO and *Marmol* say, it was bounded, according to some, by certain Rivers springing from a Lake in the Desert of *Gaogo* to the S. by the *Nile* on the E. the Coast extended from *Non*, the utmost Town of *Lydia*, to the Mouth of the *Nile* on the N. and by the Ocean on the W. and that 'twas commonly divided into *Barbary*, *Numidia*, *Lybia*, and *Negroland*. *Ptolomy* call'd the Whole *Lybia*, and divided it into 12 Parts, viz. *Mauritania*, *Casariensis* and *Tingitana*, *New Numidia*, the Province of *Africa*, *Cyrenaica*, *Lybia*, *Marmarica*, *Lower Egypt*, *Thebais*, *Inner Lydia*, and the two *Ethiopia's*. But *Marmol* says, That *Ptolomy* knew nothing of that now call'd *New Africa*, between the Capes of *Mosambique* and *Good Hope*. The *African* and *Arabian* Geographers on the other hand join'd *Egypt* to *Asia*, left out of *Africa* all the Country between the *Red Sea* and the Ocean, and gave different Names to the Provinces, Towns, and Capes, from *Ptolomy*, which *Marmol* thinks the *Arabians* did when they first settled here, to extinguish the Memory of the then Inhabitants; and that the *Africans* did the like afterwards when they revolted. *Leo* says, the *Arabians* first invaded *Africa* in the 400th Year of the



MARE Fretum Herculeum
Esprecho d'ibraltar

Canaria Inf. olim
Fortunatis

ATLAN

TI

CUM GENEHOA
Regio

C Roxo

C Sierra
Leona

Linea Aequinoctialis

OCEANUS

ÆTHIOPICUS

John Senex Sculp.

MARE

MEDITERRANEUM

MAURITANIA

BILEDUL

GETULLIA

Libya

Interior

Agades

Sarra

Desertum

ZANFARA

Reg.

Benin

Regnum

Inf. Principe

I. S. Thome

C. Negro

Terra Baxo

Terra prata

Monte nigro

Bach

Lacus

Bale

Defertum

C. de Bona Esperance

Prom bonæ Spei

Ida Fera

Rio de Iguaçu

Moni motape

Butua

res

Melita

Abrotum

Ptolema

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Arunde

Natolia Pars

Cyprus

Mare Aegyptium

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

MA

AFRICA

Antiqua
et
NOVA

Arabia Petra

Superior

Metacompos

Bello

Caufila

Dafila

Barnagasso

Dangali

Dobas

Balli

Adel

Magadoxa

Olabi

Fatiga

Baru

Bara

Adea

S. Bracas

S. Bracas

S. Bracas

S. Bracas

S. Bracas

S. Bracas

S. Bracas

S. Bracas

S. Bracas

S. Bracas

S. Bracas

ASIA
PARS

Cancr

OCEA

NI

ORIEN

SINUS

BARBARICO

PARS

ASPERUM MARE

Madagascar
que et S. Laurentii
Infula dicitur

S. Apollonia

I de Mascarenas

S. Thiego

C de S. Maria

S. Spiritus

Terra de Natal

C de S. Maria

S. Spiritus

I. de Mascarenbas

de Corpore

I de S. Francisco

Cosmoledo

C de S. Sebastian

B d'Antogil

I de S. Maria

S. Brandon

I de Diego Roix

S. Spiritus

Terra de Natal

C de S. Maria

S. Spiritus

Terra de Natal

C de S. Maria

S. Spiritus

the *Hegyræ* with 80000 Men, and were follow'd soon after by as many more. They sent a 3d Army of 50000 Men, with their Families and Cattle, who took *Tripolis*, *Capes*, and *Cairoan*, put most of the Inhabitants to the Sword, and made themselves Masters of all that Part of the Country. We refer to *Leo* for the Particulars of their Progress. He says, That at length they were checked by the *Barbarians*, who allow'd them settled Revenues; but growing so numerous in Process of Time, that they were not able to live upon them, they committed Robberies, &c. so that Merchants could not pass that Way without Danger; and some of them are still in Pay by the King of *Tunis* for protecting Merchants. The same Author divides the *Arabians* who inhabit *Africa* into three Classes, which he subdivides into other particular Tribes; but we cannot insist on them, and shall only add, that two of their chief Tribes derive their Pedigree from *Ismael*, *Abraham's* Son, and the 3d from *Saba* in *Arabia Felix*. We shall speak of their present State and Customs in *Modern Africa*.

Leo says, the ancient *Africans* had stately Temples, where they worshipped the Sun and Fire, and always kept the latter burning. Those of *Lybia* and *Numidia* sacrific'd to a certain Planet, but those of *Negroland* worshipped the Lord of Heaven. The *Arabian* Historians say, the *Africans* us'd only *Roman* Letters; but *Marmol* and *Leo* favour the Opinion of others, who say, they had Letters of their own, which were suppressed when the *Italians* first invaded *Africa*, that they might introduce the *Roman* Character. *Herodotus* says, great Part of the *African* Coast was discover'd by *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*; that in the Reign of *Necho* K. of *Egypt*, some *Phœnicians* from the *Red Sea* sail'd along the Coast as far as *Gibraltar*; and that in the Reign of *Xerxes* K. of *Persia*, *Sataspes* perform'd a Voyage from *Gibraltar* to the Cape of Good Hope.

The *Romans* divided *Africa* into 6 Provinces, viz. the Sub Consulship, containing *Carthage* and *Tunis*, which they call'd *Proper Africa*; the Consulship of *Numidia*, containing *Cyrte*, now *Constantine*; the Consulship of *Tripolis*, containing *Tripoli*; *Mauritania Cæsariensis*, containing *Algier* and *Telefin*; *Mauritania Tingitana*, containing *Morocco* and

Fez; and the Diocese of *Egypt*, containing *Lybia Superior* and *Inferior*, *Thebais*, *Augustanica*, *Arcadia*, and *Egypt* properly so called.

Strabo, *Dionysius*, and *Pliny*, made the *Nile* the utmost Boundary of *Africa* towards *Asia*, including *Egypt* entirely in the latter; and *Herodotus* and others place it partly in the one, and partly in the other; but *Ptolomy* and later Geographers fix'd the Gulph of *Arabia* for its utmost S. Boundary, and *Strabo* himself inclines to think that a more natural Boundary than the *Nile*. *Stephanus* enumerates the ancient Names of *Africa* thus; *Terra Olympica*, *Oceania*, *Eschatis* or *Extreme*, *Coryphe*, *Hesperia*, *Ortygia*, *Ammonis*, *Ethiopia*, *Cyrene*, *Ophiusa*, *Libya*, *Cephonia*, and *Aeria*, which *Cellarius* thinks were rather the Names of particular Countries.

Ancient E G Y P T.

Cellarius says, 'twas first inhabited by *Mizraim* the Son of *Ham*, who call'd it after his own Name. It had *Palestina* on the S. and *Arabia* on the W. *Herodotus* says, the *Iones* call'd the Country between the Channels of the *Nile* only by the Name of *Egypt*. *Strabo* extended it 900 Stadia from *Catabathmus* to *Paratonium* in a direct Line; but then he took in all *Marmarica* and *Ammonis*, which others exclude. He says elsewhere, That on the E. Side it includes all the Country between the Gulph of *Arabia* and the *Nile*. *Pliny* takes the Name *Mareotis* from the Lake near *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, and gives it to *Lybia*. *Ptolomy* says, it contain'd *Casiotis*, with Mount *Casius*, the Lake *Sirbo*, and the Towns of *Ostracine*, *Rhinocorura*, and *Anthedon*, on the Borders of *Judea*; but *Cellarius* thinks, according to *Strabo*, *St. Jerome*, and the Holy Scriptures, that *Rhinocorura* was the last Town of *Palestine*, and *Ostracine* the first of *Egypt*. He says, the last Town of the ancient *Egyptians* towards *Arabia* was *Heroopolis* on the *Arabian* Gulph, and *Syene* under the Tropick of *Cancer*, the last Town towards *Ethiopia* on the S. in which he agrees with *Pliny*, who says, 'twas a Peninsula of a Mile in Compass, and places the Pyramids between *Memphis* and *Armenoites* on the *African* Side.

Ptolomy divides *Egypt* into *Delta*, *Heptanomis*, and *Thebais*, and others into Upper and Lower,

Lower. *Strabo* says, That *Thebais* and *Delta* were each divided into 10 Jurisdictions or *Nomi*, which comprehended every City, with its neighbouring Towns and Villages; and that which lay betwixt both he divides into 16, where *Ptolomy* computes but 7; so that *Cellarius* thinks he extended the proper Bounds of *Egypt* too far. He shews, that *Delta* and the adjacent Coasts were called *Lower Egypt*, and *Heptanomis* and *Thebais* *Upper Egypt*; but in short, ancient Authors were not agreed as to the Number of Jurisdictions in any one Division.

Ancient LOWER EGYPT.

C*ellarius* says, the principal Part of it lay between the Channels and the Mouths of the *Nile*, and was called *Delta*, because of its triangular Form like the *Greek* Letter so named. The chief Town of *Alexandria* and the Country of *Mareotis* lay to the W. and *Casotis* to the E. but Authors differ in settling its Western Boundaries. *Cellarius*, who corrects *Strabo* for extending it as far as *Cyrenaica*, bounds it on that Side with *Mareotis*.

MAREOTIS or MAREOTES.

A*thanasis*, in his Apology against the *Arians*, says, it had no Bishops of its own, and that all its Churches were subject to him of *Alexandria*.

The chief Places along the Coast, according to *Ptolomy*, were, 1. *Chimo*; 2. *Plinthis*, with a neighbouring Bay, to which it gave Name. From hence *Herodotus* carries *Egypt* as far as the Lake *Sirbo*. 3. *Chersinesus*, with its Haven, and a Castle, which *Strabo* places 70 Stadia from *Alexandria* and *Necropolis*. 4. *Alexandria*, of which by and by. 5. The great Lake of *Mareotis*, which *Strabo* calls a Sea, and says, 'twas so well supplied with Water by Trenches cut from the *Nile*, that it was navigable from any Part of *Egypt*, and that the Harbour of *Alexandria* in this Lake was more wealthy than that next the Sea. *Pliny* says, 'twas 30 Miles over, and 150 in Compass; others 150 M. in Length, and as much in Breadth. *Strabo* makes the latter above 150 Stadia,

and the former scarce 300. He praises the Country about it for its excellent Wine called *Mareoticum*. *Pliny* adds, that it contain'd several Islands.

Its chief Towns, according to *Ptolomy*, were all on the W. Side of the Lake; but since he says nothing remarkable of them, we shall not name them.

The Country of Alexandrina, with its City and Towns.

IT lay, according to *Cellarius*, betwixt the Lake *Mareotis* and the Mouth of the *Nile* call'd *Ostium Canopicum*. The chief Towns were, 1. *Alexandria*, the Capital of all *Egypt*, the Seat of the Kings of the *Lagidae*, the Mistress of all the *Grecian* Arts and Sciences, and the richest Emporium for Trade in the whole Country. *Pliny* says, it was built by *Alexander the Great*, 12 Miles from the *Ostium Canopicum* of the *Nile*, near the Lake *Mareotis*, and was anciently call'd *Rhacotes*. *Josephus* makes it 30 Stadia in Length, and 10 in Breadth. *Hirtius* says, the Palace lay in the pleasantest Part of the City, looking towards the Sea, with a *Museum* and a *Mausoleum*. It had two Harbours, one to the Sea at the Island *Pharos*, which was very large, and divided afterwards into several others, and another Harbour upon the Lake *Mareotis*. *Strabo* says, That the Coast, which was anciently without a Port, being much infested by the *Grecians* and other Foreigners, its Kings sent a Garrison to this Place, from whence it first rose to be a Village. It appears by several Medals struck in the Time of the *Romans*, that they accounted it the greatest City next to *Rome*. It had a Suburb remote from the Sea, call'd *Necropolis*, as *Cellarius* thinks, because 'twas the Place of Burial, according to *Strabo*, who says, it contain'd several Gardens, Tombs, and other Repositories for the Dead.

2. The Island of *Pharos*, according to *Pliny*, was join'd to this City by a Bridge, and made a Colony by *Cesar* the Dictator. *Homer* and *Pliny* make it a Day's Sail from the Continent. *Strabo* says, *Sostratus Cnidius* built a Tower here of the same Name. *Lucan* calls it the Key of the *Egyptian* Sea, because of its Harbour.

3. *Juliopolis* lay next, which *Pliny*, who is the only Author that mentions it, places at two Miles Distance from *Alexandria*.

4. *Nicopolis*, 20 Stadia from *Alexandria*, according to *Josephus*, and 30 according to *Strabo*; so that *Cellarius* thinks this to be *Pliny's Juliopolis*, and the rather, because it agrees with his Position. *Strabo* says, That in his Time 'twas well inhabited, and that *Augustus Caesar* adorn'd it, because of a Victory which he gain'd here over *Anthony's* Forces.

5. *Eleusis*, noted by *Strabo* and *Juvenal* for its Inns and Houses of Entertainment at the Canal of *Canopus*.

6. *Canopus*, 120 Stadia from *Alexandria*, gave Name to that Branch of the Nile call'd *Ostium Canopicum*, according to *Strabo* and *Pliny*, who derive its Origine from the Trojan War, and its Name from *Canopus*, *Menelaus's* Governor, who dy'd and was bury'd here, in Memory whereof *Tacitus* says the *Spartans* built the Town. *Seneca* and *Ammianus* speak of it as a Place unfit for Retirement, because of Inns and Temples, tho' it otherwise enjoy'd a good Air, and the latter places it 12 Miles from *Alexandria*.

7. *Taposiris Parva*, with a Promontory and a Chappel dedicated to *Venus*, according to *Strabo*, who places it on the Canal of *Canopus*.

8. *Thonis*, a City about the same Place, so called from a King of that Name, who entertain'd *Menelaus* and *Helena*.

9. *Schedia*. *Strabo* says, 'tis 160 Stadia from *Alexandria*, upon a Canal, which discharges it self into the *Canopicum Ostium*, and was the Dock for the Pleasure-Boats in which their Princes were carried into the Upper Country.

10. *Hermopolis*, *Ptolomy's* Metropolis; tho' he call'd it the Lesser, to distinguish it from the Greater in *Heptanomis*. *Cellarius* says, it lay on the Right Side of the River that runs between *Schedia* and *Memphis*.

11. In this same Tract *Strabo* adds a Town called *Gynacopolis*, a City of Women; instead of which, *Ptolomy* places *Andropolis*, the City of Men; but *Cellarius* thinks that they are one and the same, or rather that *Anthylla*, not far from *Alexandria*, was the *Gynacopolis*, because when the Persian Kings possessed *Egypt*, they gave the Revenues of it to their Wives for Pin-Money.

In that same Tract lay *Ptolomy's Letopolites Nomos*, an Inland Town, the Metropolis of *Latona*.

12. *Nitria*, the Capital of its Jurisdiction, noted for Mines of Nitre in the neighbouring Mountains, from whence it had its Name, and upon which there were 50 Monasteries, according to *Socrates*.

Ancient DELTA.

WE have said already, that it was formed by the Mouths of the Nile, as to the Number of which Authors differ. *Strabo* mentions two; that on the Right ran by *Pelusium*, and the Left by *Canopus*. *Herodotus* mentions 3, *Virgil* 7, which agrees with *Isa.* 11. 15. and therefore there can be no doubt as to that Number: But whether they were all formed by the River it self, or by Art, and when, is not so easily determin'd; nor what their ancient Names were. The Curious may find a large Dissertation on this Subject in *Cellarius*, of which we shall give this brief Account from his Map of *Delta*. At the Town call'd *Cercastrum*, below *Memphis*, the River divided it self into two great Channels. That which run to the W. was called *Fluvius Magnus*, or *Agathodemon*, and divided afterwards into three other Branches, the Eastermost of which was called *Thermuthicus Fluvius*, from the Town *Thermuthis*, which lay on the E. Side of it, and the Mouth of it was called *Sebenyticum Ostium*. The middle Stream was called *Taly Fluvius*, and the Mouth of it *Bolbiticum Ostium*. The most Western Stream divided near the Town *Gynacopolis*, and the Mouth of it is called *Canopicum* or *Heraeleoticum Ostium*.

The Eastern great Channel was called *Bubasticus Fluvius*, from the Town *Bubastus*, which lay upon it on the E. Side, and the Mouth of it was called *Pelusium Ostium*, from the Town *Pelusium*. From this Channel divided first the River called *Athribiticus*, from the Town *Athribis* on the E. Side, and this River fell by two Mouths into the Sea, the most W. called *Pineptimi Pseudostoma*, and the other *Diolcos Pseudostoma*, which were reckon'd the two false Mouths of the Nile. The next Stream that ran from this Canal was called *Busiriticus Fluvius*, from the Town

Busiris

Busiris on the W. Side of it. This River fell into the Sea by two Mouths, the Westermost call'd *Phatnicum Ostium*, and the other *Mendesium*, from the Town *Mendes* on its Western Bank. The next Stream ran by the City *Tanis* or *Zoan*, and the Mouth of it was call'd *Taniticum Ostium*.

The chief Towns here were, 1. *Metelis*, near *Alexandria*, of which a Medal was stamp'd in the Time of the Emperor *Adrian* with the Figure of a Hawk, and this Inscription in Greek Letters, ΜΕΤΗΛΙ. Λ. ΙΑ. This Town lay betwixt the Mouth of the Nile call'd *Heracleoticum* and *Little Hermopolis*.

Upon the same River, more to the S. lay, 2. *Naucratis*, an ancient Town built by the *Milesians* after they defeated *Inarus* at Sea. 'Twas the Birth-place of *Athenais*, and noted for Cups so finely tinctor'd, that they look'd like Silver.

Eighty Stadia from hence lay, 3. *Sais*, formerly the Metropolis of *Lower Egypt*, noted for the Worship of *Minerva*, and in the Time of Christianity was reckon'd next in Dignity to *Alexandria*. Some are of Opinion it was also call'd *Tanis*, because *Josephus* mentions a Town of this Name which lay E. of the River *Bubasticus*.

The other Places of most Note betwixt the *Fluvius Magnus* and *Thermuthiacus* were, 4. *Butus*, noted for the Oracle of *Latona*. 'Twas a great Town, and had Temples dedicated to this Idol, *Apollo*, and *Diana*. 5. That call'd *Persei Specula*. 6. The *Milestorum Munimentum* on the same Coast.

7. *Thmuis* was a noted Town betwixt the Rivers *Arthribiticus* and *Busiriticus*, and in the *Egyptian* Language signify'd a Goat, because that Creature was worshipp'd there. 'Twas a noble City, is mentioned by *Josephus*, was a Bishop's See in the Time of Christianity, when *Serapion*, one of its Bishops, was so learned, that he was deservedly call'd the Scholastick.

8. *Mandes*, noted for the Worship of *Pan* and a Goat; so that upon a Medal of it stamp'd in *Adrian's* Time, there's a Figure of a Goat.

9. *Leontopolis*, which lay on the W. Side of the *Busiriticus Fluvius*, and was so call'd because of Lions kept and worshipp'd there. It is also call'd *Leonto* for Brevity sake, it being usual among the *Egyptians* to leave out the Word *Polis*.

10. *Busiris*, which lay higher up on the same River, noted for the Worship of the Goddess *Isis*. Some derive its Name from *Busiris*, a Tyrant, who devour'd Strangers, and was therefore kill'd by *Hercules*; but *Strabo* denies this.

11. *Cynopolis*, which lay near *Arthribiticus Fluvius*, and deriv'd its Name from a Dog worshipp'd there, and the lewd Ceremonies of the Idolaters who frequented the Temple here.

12. The Places call'd *Taricheæ*, which lay about the Mouths of the Nile, and are by *Stephanus* of *Byzantium* reckon'd Towns which drove a great Trade in Salt-Fish. These were the most remarkable Places in ancient *Delta*, which some divide into two other *Delta's*. The first they call'd *Little Delta*, form'd by the Rivers *Bubasticus* and *Busiriticus*, and the 3d *Delta* form'd by *Arthribiticus* and *Bubasticus*; but these are little noted by Authors.

The Arabian Side of Lower Egypt,

Consisted of all that lay E. from *Delta* as far as *Palestina* and *Arabia Petraea*. The chief Towns of this Country were, 1. *Bubastus*, which lay on the E. Side of the River *Bubasticus*, to which it gave Name. 'Twas noted for the Worship of *Diana*, who from hence was call'd *Bubastis*.

2. Higher on the same River lay the Temple and Town of *Onias*. The former was built by the Jewish High-Priest of that Name, in Emulation of the Temple at *Jerusalem*, by Permission of the King of *Egypt*, as *Josephus* informs us, upon the Ruins of a Temple formerly built to *Diana Agrestis* at *Leontopolis* in the Jurisdiction of *Heliopolis*. *Onias* fortified it with a Brick Wall, and built a great Tower like that of *Jerusalem*. It was a famous City, and inhabited by many Jews. *Ptolomy* calls it the Metropolis of *Onias*.

3. *Babylon*, near the same River, but higher up towards the Head of *Delta*, where the River divides. 'Twas built by some *Babylonians*, who obtain'd Leave from the King of *Egypt* when *Cambyses* invaded that Country. The Romans plac'd one of their three Legions here, which kept *Egypt* in Awe.

Awe. A Canal was dug from hence to the Red Sea, called *Fossa Trajani*, i. e. Trajan's Ditch. *Strabo* says it was navigable, and 100 Cubits broad. 'Twas call'd by Trajan's Name, as some think, because he dug or repair'd it. There was another great Ditch from the Red Sea to the River *Bubasticus*, under *Phacusa*, call'd *Fossa Regum*, or the King's Ditch. *Diodorus Siculus* says, 'twas first begun by *Necho*, Son to *Psammeticus*; but he did not finish it. 'Twas carried on further by *Darius* the Persian; but he also desisted, because told by some, that the Red Sea being higher than Egypt, 'twould drown the Country. At last *Ptolomy* the 2d finish'd it, and carried it to the Red Sea near *Arfinoe* without any Damage to the Country, but was a great Defence to it.

4. Further down the River lay *Heracleopolis Parva*, so called to distinguish it from the Greater *Heracleopolis* in the great Island above-mentioned. 'Tis noted for the Encampment of *Titus* when he march'd out of Egypt into *Palestina*.

5. *Pelusium*, a noble and well fortified City, within 20 Stadia of the Sea, says *Herodotus*. It had its Name from the Marshes, among which it is seated, was reckon'd one of the Keys of Egypt, and therefore frequently taken and retaken.

The Places of most Note which lay betwixt this Town and *Rhinocolura*, the first of *Palestine*, were, 1. *Cassium*, or rather *Casium*, a Mountain on the Coast, noted for a Temple of *Jupiter*, from hence nam'd *Casius*, and likewise for the Sepulchre of *Pompey the Great*. Some alledge there was a Town of the same Name, but *Josephus* calls it only a Temple. *Cellarius* taxes *Mela* with a Mistake; for saying this Mountain was so high that on the Top of it one might see the Sun rise at the 4th Watch of the Night, and proves that he mistook it for Mount *Casius* in Syria.

2. *Ecregma*, or the Eruption of the Lake *Sirbonis*, *Serbonis*, *Serbon*, or *Sirbo*, into the Sea. *Strabo* reckons it 200 Stadia long and 50 broad where narrowest. *Diodorus Siculus* says, it was of a vast Depth. The Poets fabled that *Typhon* was bury'd here, and call'd it his Exhalations. *Pliny* says, some accounted this Lake 150 Miles round; but in his Time 'twas only a small Marsh, and he makes it the Boundary betwixt Egypt and *Palestine*. *Buno* on *Cluverius* says, 'tis now

called *Stagnone*, *Golfo di Tenese*, *di Damia* or *Camet Esturnel*, and that 'tis less now than formerly.

3. *Ostracene*, which is reckon'd the last Town of Egypt on this Side. *Pliny* makes it 65 Miles from *Pelusium*. *Josephus* in his Account of *Titus's* March says, they were much straiten'd here for want of Water.

We come next to the Boundaries of Egypt from the Arabian Gulph or Red Sea. The Places of Note mention'd here are, 1. *Heroopolis*, which *Ptolomy* places at the Bottom of the Red Sea. The Bay here was from this Town called *Heroopoliticus Sinus*.

2. *Arfinoe*, by some called *Cleopatriis*. It lay further S. on the Coast of the Red Sea. *Cellarius* is of Opinion, that 'twas another *Arfinoe* which was called *Cleopatriis*, and lay on the W. Side of the great Island of the Nile called *Heracleoticus*; or that *Cleopatra* added another Town to *Arfinoe*, from whence the whole was called *Cleopatriis*.

3. Further S. lay *Heliopolis*, or the City of the Sun, so called because of a Temple where that Planet was worshipped. It was very ancient, and frequently mention'd in the Poets Fables, who say, it was built by *Actis* Son of *Rhoda* by the Sun. *Strabo* says, 'twas wonderfully fortified, and that the Inhabitants, besides the Sun, worshipped an Ox called *Mnevis*, which they fed in an Inclosure. *Strabo* says, it was desolate in his Time, from whence *Ptolomy* calls another *Heliopolis* the chief Town of that Jurisdiction, which lay S. of Trajan's Ditch. *Strabo* makes the Isthmus betwixt the Mouth of the Nile and the Red Sea 900 Stadia in Length.

Ancient Authors give an Account of the several Jurisdictions called *Nomi* in Lower Egypt, for which we refer to *Cellarius*, and shall only take Notice, that those Jurisdictions had their Denominations from their Capital Towns, the chief of which we have already named, and in the Time of Christianity they were generally Bishops Sees.

EGYPT, mentioned in the Holy Scripture.

Cellarius says it was *Delta*, and the neighbouring Country on both Sides. The Hebrews call'd it *Mizraim* in the Dual Number.

ber, by which *Bochart* says they understood the Upper and the Lower Province: The Word *Mazor* in the Singular Number signifies a Fortification, because this Country was naturally strong by the Canals of the Nile and the adjoining Desarts. This Country is understood 2 *Kings* 19. 24. where 'tis said, *With the Soal of my Feet have I dry'd up all the Rivers of Mazor*, which our Translation has, *All the Rivers of besieg'd Places*; and *Isa.* 19. 6. *The Rivers of Mazor shall be dry'd up*, which our Translation makes *Brooks of Defence*; and *Micah* 7. 12. *And he shall come to thee from Mazor to the River*, which we translate, *From the Fortress to the River*, i. e. from *Egypt* to the *Euphrates*, which were the Boundaries of *Palæstina*. The curious Reader may find more of this in *Bochart's Phaleg. Lib. 4. Cap. 24.* From hence it is suppos'd that *Cham's* 2d Son took the Name of *Mizraim* from this Country.

The first Part of *Egypt* mention'd in the Scripture is *Goshen*, which the vulgar *Latin* makes *Gessen*, and the *Greek*, *Gesem*, of which *On* was the Metropolis. Interpreters are divided about the Situation of both. The chief Point of the Controversy lies about the Situation of *Pharaoh's* Court and *Joseph's* Seat, because in *Genesis* 45. 10. it is said, That *Jacob* should dwell in the Land of *Goshen*, that he might be near to *Joseph*, who we know liv'd in *Pharaoh's* Court. There are two Royal Cities mention'd in the Scripture; 1. *Zoan*, which the *Greek* Interpreters render *Tanis*, *Isa.* 19. 11, 13. 2. *Noph* or *Moph*, which the same Interpreters call *Memphis* in the above-mentioned Chapter and others; so that if *Joseph* dwelt in *Tanis*, their Translation seems to be very reasonable, because that Country was in *Lower Egypt*, lay next to those that came from *Canaan*, and agrees with the *Seventy*, who have translated it in the Land of *Gesem* in *Arabia*, for *Ptolomy* reckon'd it to that Country. But if we consider the Patriarch's Journey, and the Meeting of him by *Joseph* according to the same Interpreter, it points out another Country; for *Joseph* met his Father in *Goshen*, *Gen.* 46. 28, 29. which the *Greek* Version has render'd, *Near Heroopolis in the Land of Rames*, and *Josephus* the same, tho' that Town lies at the Bottom of the *Arabian Gulph*; which being granted, the Land of *Goshen* must needs be

far more S. than the Country opposite to the City of *Tanis*; and tho' *Memphis* may consequently be nearer the Land of *Goshen* than *Tanis*, yet there's all the Reason in the World to believe that *Pharaoh's* Court was at *Tanis*, because *Pf.* 78. 12, 43. *Moses* is said to have wrought Wonders in the Field of *Zoan*. Now *Zoan*, according to the *Greek* and *Chaldee* Interpreters, was *Tanis* it self. Neither can it be said that *Tanis* was not near *Goshen*, in comparison of other Places which were more remote, especially since that Journey might be soon dispatched with a Chariot and Horses only by crossing the River *Bubasticus*. We are perswaded of this, because it does not appear that there was any Necessity for the Patriarch's going to the *Arabian Gulph*, if he had not design'd to go beyond it, according to the Promise of his Son, *Gen.* 45. 10. Therefore upon a View of this Journey, it does not seem improbable that the Land of *Goshen* and *Ramesse* or *Raemse* lay about *On* or *Heliopolis*, according to *Flavius Josephus*, who (says the Patriarch) was commanded by *Pharaoh* to dwell with his Children in *Heliopolis*. Besides, the Emperor *Constantine* call'd the Place which the *Israelites* accepted for their Habitation the Fountain of the Sun, according to the Description of *Heliopolis*, and *Benjamin of Tudela* only err'd in placing it between *Memphis* and *Alexandria*. *Ptolomy* also places *Heliopolis* not far from *Memphis*, and extends its Territory to *Heroopolis*, which renders the Passage from *Egypt* thro' the *Red Sea* more easy to be demonstrated, than if it had been made from the Country opposite to *Tanis*. Neither does the *Arabian Goshen* of the *Seventy* at all weaken this Opinion, since it may refer to the *Arabian Territory*, which *Pliny* and *Ptolomy* call by that Name. For not only this Jurisdiction, but even all the Tract between the Nile and the *Arabian Gulph*, was called *Arabia*, tho' a Part of *Egypt*, as the other Part of *Egypt* beyond the Nile was called *Lybia*, because it lay towards that Country. Nor can we doubt of the Position of *Heliopolis*, when *Strabo* says the Country of *Heliopolis* lay in the *Arabian Part*, (i. e. *Egypt*.) Now the *Greek* Interpreters leave no Room to doubt that the Town of *On*, where *Joseph's* Father-in-Law was Priest, can be any other than *Heliopolis*, since in *Gen.* 41. 45, 50. they call his

said

said Father-in-Law the Priest of *Heliopolis*, which in the *Hebrew* and our Translation is *On*, as well as in *Gen.* 46. 20. But in *Exod.* 1. 11. they add to the two Towns built by the *Hebrews* a third, with a clear Interpretation, viz. the City *On*, which is *Heliopolis*; and in *Ezek.* 30. 17. *The young Men of Heliopolis and Bubastus*, which our Translation renders, *The young Men of Aven and Phibeseth*. *Josephus* also says, That the Father-in-Law of *Joseph* the Patriarch was one of the Priests of *Heliopolis*. Neither was this Name super-added or put in the Place of the *Hebrew On* by the *Greeks* and *Macedonians*. *Jeremiah*, in the last Verse of *Cap.* 43. mentions the *House of the Sun* in the Land of *Egypt*, which, according to the *Greek* Version, is the City of the Sun; and according to our Translation, the Houses of the Gods of the *Egyptians*.

The Land of *Gosen* was also call'd *Raemeses*, or, as 'tis render'd in the *Greek* and *Latin*, *Rameses*. In *Gen.* 47. 2. the Land or Country of *Rameses* was given to *Jacob* and his Sons for their Habitation. This Town of *Rameses* was also built by the *Israelites* when in Bondage, and 'tis represented as the Place from whence they first set out at their Departure from *Egypt*, *Exod.* 12. 37. *Numbers* 33. 3, and 5. which seems easy to be reconciled, for tho' the Country was call'd *Gosen*, yet that Part of it in which lay the Town of *Raemeses* or *Rameesses* had the same Name, especially afterwards, when the Town was repair'd and enlarg'd by the Labour of the *Israelites*. Nevertheless, *Rameses* does not seem to be *Heliopolis*, according to the Authority of the Emperor *Constantine*, already cited; for the *Greek* Interpreters distinguish them, and constantly translated *On*, *Heliopolis*, but never *Rameesses*. To conclude, says *Cellarius*, If the *Israelites* had set out from *Heliopolis*, such a vast Multitude of Men, Women and Children, with their Cattle, could not have reach'd to the *Red Sea* in 3 Days Journey, since *Ptolomy* makes it above 50 Miles from *Heliopolis*. Therefore, says our Author, the Town of *Raemeses* or *Rameesses* seems to have lain nearer the Sea; so that after having baited the two first Days Journies at *Succoth* and *Etham*, they might come the 3d to *Phi-Hiroth* near the Sea. He sets down their Stages thus: From *Rameses* to *Succoth*, to *Etham*, to *Hiroth*, and from thence to the Sea.

Succoth, which comes next to be treated of, signifies Tents or Booths, a Name common to many Places. *Cellarius* doubts whether the Name could be kept so long, that the *Scene Veteranorum* of the *Itinerary*, which lay 14 Miles from *Heliopolis*, can be applied to it, tho' they don't much differ in Situation from *Succoth*, or those Tents where the *Israelites* pitched at the End of their first Day's Journey. But he believes those *Scenes* were more modern, and takes them for the Camps or Military Colonies of the *Romans* in their Wars.

Etham lay in the Edge of the Wilderness, *Exod.* 13. 20. on the *Arabian* Gulph, where, says *Cellarius*, the Country was barren, and consequently not much inhabited; and 'twould be all one whether he plac'd it at the Beginning or at the End of the Desert in respect to the better Part of *Egypt*. The 3d Day they journey'd from hence thro' desert Places to the Sea. They might indeed have travelled on to *Heroopolis*; but 'twas the Divine Counsel that they should turn to the Right Hand from the direct Way that led into the Land of the *Philistines*, in order to manifest God's Glory by the drowning of the *Egyptians*, and safely conducting the *Israelites* thro' the *Red Sea*. See *Exod.* 13. 17, 18. and 14. 2. where they are said by Divine Command to have turn'd out of the Right Way, and proceeded towards the Sea.

The 3d Stage was before *Pihahiroth*, *Exodus* 14. 2. which the *Seventy* render over against the Town; but in *Numb.* 33. 7. to the Mouth or Entrance of *Irot*. The *Latin* Interpreters retain'd the *Hebrew* Name *Phihahiroth*. It lay near the Sea, because in *Exodus* 14. 2. 'tis added by the Sea, and here they began that wonderful Passage.

About *Phihahiroth* was *Migdol* or *Magdol*, and over against it *Baal Zephon*; but it is not plain in what Country or Side the latter stood. The vulgar Translation of *Exod.* 14. 2. runs thus: *Speak unto the Children of Israel that they turn and encamp before Phihahiroth, between Migdol and the Sea, over against Baal Zephon; before it shall ye encamp by the Sea*: So that the *Hebrew* *Migdol* or the *Greek* *Μαγδαλὴ* lay on this Side *Phihahiroth*; but it could not be the *Magdalen* of the old *Itinerary*, because that was only 12 Miles from *Pelusium*, whereas this lay at a far greater Distance.

Distance. The Word signifies a Tower or Fort. As for *Baal-Zephon* or *Beel-Sephon*, it does not appear whether it lay above or below *Phihahiroth*, unless one may judge that it lay to the N. according to the Signification of the Name.

Next, *Cellarius* treats of the following Places of *Egypt* mention'd in the Scripture that lay on the *Arabian Side*: 1. *Pelusium*, already described. In *Ezek.* 30. 15. 'tis call'd *Sin*, which he thinks to be *Strabo's Pelusium*, because the Word likewise signifies Mud and Dirt, and the vulgar Version has render'd it, *I will pour out my Fury upon Pelusium, the Strength of Egypt*; whereas in the *Hebrew*, 'tis upon *Sin the Strength of Mizraim*. The *Greek Interpreters* have render'd the *Hebrew Sin*, *Sain*, mistaking it for another Town of *Egypt*, which tho' a great Town, yet *Cellarius* doubts whether it deserv'd to be call'd the Strength and Fort or Bulwark of *Egypt*, as *Pelusium* was, because it is not prov'd by its Situation, nor by the Testimonies of *Historians*.

It is disputed by the Learned, whether the Land of *Sinim*, *Isa.* 49. 12. has any Reference to this, whereby the Inhabitants of *Pelusium* may be understood primarily, and then all the *Egyptians* collectively; but we refer the Curious for this to *Cellarius* and *Bochart*.

2. *Magdolum*, 12 Miles S. from *Pelusium*, according to *Cellarius's Map*, and *Antoninus's Itinerary*. *Cellarius* takes it for the *Migdol* or *Magdol* mentioned *Jer.* 44. 1. and 46. 14. *Jerome* and the vulgar Translation render it *Magdolum*. *Herodotus* says, King *Nero* gain'd a Victory here over the *Syrians*. *Cellarius* corrects *Bochart* for placing it near the *Red Sea*, and proves it to be different from that which the *Israelites* pass'd by before they cross'd the *Red Sea*.

3. *Daphne* lay 16 Miles S. of *Pelusium*, according to the former *Itinerary*. *Cellarius* thinks it to be *Herodotus's Daphne Pelusia*, and the *Daphne* near *Pelusium* mention'd by *Stephanus*, where there were Garrisons in the Time of *Psammetichus* against the *Syrians* and *Arabians*. Some take this to be the *Taphanbes* mention'd in *Jeremiah* and *Ezekiel*, which *Cellarius* doubts.

4. *Pibeset*, that our Translation calls *Phibeseth*, *Ezek.* 30. 17. *Cellarius* proves to be *Bubastus*, which we have already describ'd.

5. *Pithon*, one of the two Treasure Cities which the *Israelites* were compelled to build when they were in Bondage, *Exodus* 1. 11. 'Tis mention'd no where else in the Scriptures. The *Seventy* write it Πιθω'; *St. Jerome*, *Tithom*; and the old *Latin*, *Phithom*. Many of the Learned think 'tis the *Patumon* mention'd by *Herodotus*, where he says, That the Royal Canal dug by Order of *Nero* and *Darius* from the *Nile* fell into the *Red Sea*, which agrees with *Cellarius's* Situation of *Pithom*. The *Egyptian Version* makes this the same with *Heroopolis*, formerly describ'd.

The other chief Cities of *Egypt* mention'd in Scripture are, 1. *Noph*, *Isa.* 19. 13. *Jer.* 11. 16. 46. 14. 30. 13. The *Moph*, mention'd *Hosea* 9. 6. is render'd *Memphis* by the *Chaldee*, *Greek*, and *Latin Versions*; but of that by and by.

2. *No*, mention'd *Jer.* 46. 25. and *Nahum* 3. 8. *Cellarius* says, *Jupiter Ammon* was worshipp'd in the Neighbourhood, the rather, because the *Greek Interpreters* of *Ezek.* 30. 14, 16. have render'd it *Diospolis* or the City of *Jupiter*. *Bochart* takes it for the *Egyptian Thebes*, which was call'd *Magna Diospolis* by *Strabo* and *Ptolomy*, and *Jerome* thinks the *Greeks* meant another *Diospolis*, call'd the *Lesser*, which lay in *Thebais*, (because in the 15th Verse of the same Chapter they have translated it *Memphis*) and agrees with the Translation of *Jonathan the Chaldee Paraphrast*, who render'd *No*, *Alexandria* wherever it occur'd; but *Cellarius* does not approve this Version, because History shews that this City was not populous before the Time of *Alexander*.

3. The County of *Pathros*, *Jer.* 44. 1. *Ezek.* 29. 14. The *Greek Interpreters* render it *Pathures*; *St. Jerome*, *Phatures*, and *Fature*; and *Pliny*, the *Nomos*, or Jurisdiction of *Phaturis*. It lay in *Thebais* according to him, and was parallel to *Coptis* and *Tentyra*, tho' on which Bank is not certain. *Cellarius* says, That *Pathrusim*, *Gen.* 10. 14. was deriv'd from hence.

4. *Caphtor* Town and Country, which gave Name to the *Caphtorim*. 'Tis mention'd *Gen.* 10. 14. 1 *Chron.* 1. 12. *Jerem.* 47. 4. and *Amos* 9. 7. Some affirm, that it did not belong to *Egypt*, for the *Chaldee Paraphrasts* render it *Cappadocia*; but *Benjamin of Tudela* calls *Damiata* the *Caphtor* of the Ancients. *Bochart* is not positive as to its Situation, but

but thinks it lay not far from *Egypt* and *Palæstina*; and *Cellarius* thinks it lay in *Upper Egypt* or the adjacent Country, which he says was often distinguish'd from *Proper Egypt* or *Delta*, and its Neighbourhood.

Ancient UPPER EGYPT,

BEgan, says *Cellarius*, from the Top of the Angle of *Delta*, and extended along both Banks of the *Nile* as far as *Ethiopia*. 'Twas divided by *Ptolemy* into *Heptanomis* and *Thebais*.

HEPTANOMIS

Lay, according to *Cellarius*, in the Middle of *Egypt*, and was so called from its 7 Jurisdictions, tho' some make 'em more. *Ptolemy* says, the first Jurisdiction above *Delta*, W. of the River, was that of *Memphis*, and its Metropolis of the same Name, an ancient and Royal City. *Strabo* places it three Schæni or 120 Stadia from *Delta*, *Pliny* 15 Miles. *Cellarius* says, those Schæni vary'd, for in the lower Part of *Egypt* they contain'd each 30 Stadia, 60 in *Thebais*, and about 45 in the Middle. *Pliny* makes them each 40 Stadia or 5 Miles, with whom *Strabo* agrees. He says, That amongst other Temples, it had one dedicated to *Apis*, whom they worshipped in a certain Inclosure: In his Time the City was large, populous, and next to *Alexandria*. Some Medals were struck in Honour of the *Memphites* by the Emperors *Adrian* and *Antoninus*, and amongst the rest one representing *Osiris* and the Ox *Apis*.

Forty Stadia from *Memphis* to the W. there was a certain Eminency where stood many Pyramids, which were Royal Sepulchres. *Strabo* says, three of them were famous, and that two of them were reckon'd among the 7 Wonders of the World. They were each a Stadium in Height, of a square Figure, a little higher on one Side than another, and almost of an equal Bigness. *Cellarius* refers the Curious for the ancient State and Origine of the Pyramids to his own *Historia Antiqua*, to *Herodotus*, and to *Diodorus Siculus*, who says in general, that neither the Inhabitants nor Writers were agreed about them. In this Jurisdiction lay also *Acanthos*, noted for a Temple of *Osiris*,

and the Grove of *Acantha* of *Thebais*. *Cellarius* places it S. of *Memphis*.

The second of *Ptolemy's* 7 *Nomi* is *Heracleotes*, which was an Island form'd by the *Nile* S. E. of *Memphis*; and its Capital, which lay to the W. was called *Heracleopolis Magna*, or the Great City of *Hercules*. The Inhabitants of this Island are said to have worshipped *Ichneumons*. In the lower Part of it lay *Nilopolis*, whose Bishop subscrib'd to the Council of *Ephesus*. *Cellarius* corrects *Stephanus* for calling it *Nilus* a City of *Egypt*. He says, this Island was bounded on the W. with the Jurisdiction of *Arsinoe*, and on the E. by that of *Aphroditopolis*. The Metropolis of the former was of the same Name, and *Strabo* says 'twas first called the City of *Crocodiles*. The *Benedictine* Fathers, according to *Athanasius*, say, that afterwards it had the Name of *Cleopatra*, and quote *Strabo* to prove it; but *Cellarius* shews, that he meant another *Arsinoe*, which lay near *Heroopolis* on the *Arabian* Gulph, as we have already mentioned. *Vaillantius*, the learned Antiquary, says, That in the Emp. *Adrian's* Time, there was a Medal struck in Memory of this Place, and inscrib'd, APCINCI. L. IA. *Arsinoitarum* Anno XI. *Ptolemy* calls this an Inland Metropolis; but *Cellarius* says it had a Harbour on the *Nile*.

Another *Nomos* or Jurisdiction lay E. from the Island of *Heracleotes*, and was called *Aphroditopolis*. *Strabo* says, it had a Capital of its own Name on the Side of *Arabia*, where they fed a white Cow that they worshipped. *Chrysaorius*, a Bp. of this Place, subscribed to the Council of *Ephesus*. In the same Jurisdiction lay the *Anchorarum Urbs*, so called because of a Mine in the Neighbourhood from whence 'tis said they dug Stone Anchors. West of this Jurisdiction lay the Lake *Meri* or *Meris*, or *Meridis*. *Pliny* says, it was 250 Miles round, *Mucianus* 450, and 50 Paces deep; that it was dug by Art, and filled with *Crocodiles*, which the Inhabitants worshipped.

Not far from this Lake there was a Labyrinth of admirable Structure near the Town of *Crocodiles*, call'd afterwards *Arsinoe*. *Mela* says, it was built by King *Psaamiticus*, and contain'd within its Walls 3000 Houses and 12 Palaces; that it was built and cover'd with Marble, had but one Descent into it, but innumerable Ways within it full

of Windings and Turnings in a Circular Form. *Herodotus* says, it had 3000 Houses under Ground, and as many above; and *Strabo* says, That the Sepulchre of the King who built it stood by it; but he does not tell us his Name.

E. of this Labyrinth, and S. of the Island of *Heracleopolis*, *Cellarius* places *Ptolomy's* *Oxyrynchites Nomos*; but *Strabo* places it beyond the River, and brings the *Nomos Cynopolites*, and Co or *Cynopolis*, the City of Dogs, before it, beyond an Island on the Side of *Arabia*. It was called the City of Dogs because *Anubis* was worshipped, and Meat consecrated to Dogs was kept here. The *Nomos Oxyrynchites* was denominated from the City of *Oxyrynchus*, and that from a sharp snouted Fish found no where but in the Nile, and worshipped by the ancient Egyptians. *Strabo* places this City and Territory beyond the River, (with respect to *Cynopolis*) and says, there was a Temple here for that Worship, which is confirm'd by *Ælian* and *Stephanus*. *Ptolomy* places it on the W. Side of the Nile. *Cellarius* says, That in the Time of Christianity it was an Episcopal See, and that one of its Bishops subscribed to the Council of *Seleucia*, and another to that of *Ephesus*.

Ptolomy's 7th *Nomos* was *Hermopolitanus*, so call'd from its Capital *Hermopolis Magna*, to distinguish it from *Hermopolis Parva* in *Delta*. *Pliny* call'd it *Mercury's Town*, and in *Adrian's* Time there was a Medal of it struck with the Effigies of *Mercury* or *Osiris*, and inscrib'd, *EPMO*. *Ptolomy* makes it an Inland Town, a little W. from the Nile, on the Bank of which he places *Phylacæ*, with a Castle or Garrison, that was *Strabo's* *Hermopolitana Castodia*. He says, 'twas the Place where Toll was paid for Goods brought out of *Thebais*; and that the Egyptian *Schæni* began here to be settled at 60 Stadia, whereas about *Delta* they were only 30 or 40.

To this Jurisdiction *Ptolomy* adjoins *Antinoites*, from the Town *Antinous* or *Antino*, one of the most noted in Egypt, and the Metropolis of the first *Thebais*. 'Twas built or repair'd by *Adrian*, in Honour of his Favourite *Antinous*, who was cast into the Nile, and drown'd here over against *Hermopolis*. 'Twas also called *Besa*, from an Egyptian Idol, and sometimes *Besantinoensis*. *Ptolomy* likewise places two Towns, call'd *Oasisæ* or *Oases*, W. of *Heptanomis*, and some

make three of them; the first, which they call the Great, separated from *Abydos* and *Thebes* by a Desert of seven Days Journey, abounded with Wine and other Provisions; the Lesser at the Lake *Meris*, and the 3d near the Temple of *Jupiter Ammon*. *Olympiodorus* says, two of 'em were great Towns, and those who mention but one mean that over against *Abydos*. 'Twas us'd for a Place of Exile for State Criminals, it being difficult to escape from it, because of the sandy Wilderness round it, where *Cambyse's* Army was overwhelmed with Sand, says *Herodotus*. The neighbouring Deserts is supposed to be the Reason why *Zosimus* calls it a very barren and melancholy Place, contrary to others, who call it the Island of the Blessed, and say it abounded with Necessaries; and the Oracle of *Jupiter Ammon*, *Cellarius* thinks was called *Oasis*, because of the like Situation and dangerous Access, as appears from *Alexander's* Journey thither.

T H E B A I S.

Ptolomy places it S. of *Heptanomis*, and *Pliny* calls it the Upper Part of Egypt bounding on *Ethiopia*. By this Name *Cellarius* says it extended on both Sides the Nile from *Heptanomis* to *Ethiopia*.

T H E B A I S on the West of the Nile,

Began with the *Nomos Lycopolites*, whose Capital was called *Lycopolis*, or the Town of Wolves, says *Strabo*, because those Creatures were worshipped by the Inhabitants. But *Diodorus Siculus* thinks it had the Name from Troops of Wolves, which he says made the *Ethiopians* fly to *Elephantine* when they invaded Egypt. *Cellarius* says, there was a Medal in *Adrian's* Time with the Image of *Serapis*, inscrib'd, *ΑΥΚΟ Λ. ΙΑ. Lycopolitarum Anno XI*. The Town lay within Land, according to *Cellarius*.

The 2d *Nomos* of *Ptolomy* was *Hypseliotes*, with its Metropolis *Hypsele*, which *Cellarius* places upon the Nile, S. E. of *Lycopolis*, and says 'twas a Bishop's See, adding, that *Armenius*, who wrote an Epistle to *Athanasius*, was one of its Bishops. *Socrates* derives the Name from its high Situation. A Medal was coin'd in *Adrian's* Time with the Image

Image of a Sheep, and inscrib'd, ΤΥΧΑΙ Λ. ΙΑ. *Hypselitarum Anno XI.*

3. *Nomos Aphroditopolites*, whose Capital lay within Land, and was call'd *Aphroditopolis*, or the City of *Venus*, because she was worshipped here. There were several others of the same Name in *Delta*, near the Island *Heraclotis*, *Heliopolis*, and in *Thebais*. Next to this lay the *Thinites Nomos* of *Stephanus*, so call'd from *This* its Capital, which *Ptolomy* calls *Hermii Ptolemais*, from *Mercury's* being worshipped here. *Cellarius* thinks that in *Ptolomy's* Time this was ruinous, from whence the new Metropolis might be call'd *Ptolemais*. *Strabo* says, 'twas the largest City in *Thebais*, as big as *Memphis*, and govern'd by a Republick like that of the *Grecians*. *Theodoret* tells us, it had a Bishop in the Times of Christianity. To this *Nomos* also belong'd *Abydos*, an Inland Town W. of the *Nile*, and noted, as *Strabo* says, for the sumptuous Palace of *Memnon*. 'Twas anciently the 2d City of *Thebais*, but in his Time very thinly inhabited. *Pliny* says, 'twas likewise noted for a Temple of *Osiris*. The next *Nomos* was *Diospolites*, from *Diospolis* or *Jupiter's* Town, its Capital, and call'd *Parva*, to distinguish it from *Diospolis Magna* or *Thebes* on the other Side the *Nile*. Next to the S. lay the *Nomos Tentyrites*, and its Metropolis *Tentyra* or *Tentyris*. *Strabo* says, the Inhabitants could not endure Crocodiles, us'd all manner of Ways to destroy them, and were very dextrous at it; so that some thought they had a natural Ascendant over these Monsters, as the Inhabitants of *Psyllis* had over Serpents, because they would take them out of the Ponds with Nets, make a publick Shew of them, and carry them back without receiving any Hurt, as they did frequently at the *Roman* Shews; but *Seneca* in his *Natural Questions* ascribes it to their Fool hardiness, and says, the Crocodiles kill'd many of them. Their Aversion to Crocodiles occasion'd a War betwixt them and other *Egyptians* who worshipped them. *Pliny* says, they had their Name from the Island *Tentyra*, which they inhabited; but *Strabo* and *Ptolomy* say nothing of this Island.

The last *Nomos*, according to *Ptolomy*, was *Hermionthites*, from its Capital *Hermionthis* or *Hermuthis*, noted for the Worship of *Apollo* and *Jupiter*, and for the Pasture of the Sacred Ox.

To the S. lay *Latopolis*, so nam'd from the Fish *Latos*, which *Athenaeus* says so far exceeded those of other Parts in Bigness, that they were above two Hundred Weight. *Cellarius* says, it was call'd *Lato* afterwards by Way of Contraction. Next to this was *Apollonopolis*, *Apollinis Urbs Magna*, or the Great City of *Apollo*, whose Inhabitants, *Strabo* says, had the like Aversion to Crocodiles as the *Tentyritæ*, which *Ælian* imputes to their Neighbourhood. The *Itinerary* places it 32 Miles from *Lato*. *Ptolomy* and *Stephanus* mention another City dedicated to *Apollo*, which was called *Parva*, and lay in the lower Part of *Egypt* near *Coptos*, on the other Side the *Nile*.

The *Egyptians* could sail no further on the *Nile* than the lesser Cataract, which *Pliny* places 4 Miles S. of the Island *Elephantine*. He says, there was a sort of Rock in the Middle of the River which was smooth at Top, from whence the Water fell down into a low Channel with such a terrible Violence and Noise, that it made the neighbouring Inhabitants deaf. 'Twas called the Lesser, to distinguish it from the Greater Cataract, which lay higher up in *Ethiopia*, where we shall describe it. He adds, That there was a Garrison here, which was the last the *Romans* had on the W. Side of the *Nile*.

T H E B A I S on the East Side of the *Nile*.

Its first *Nomos*, according to *Ptolomy*, was *Antaeopolites*, and its Metropolis *Antæus*, so called, says *Cellarius*, from the Fable of the Giant *Antæus*, who *Diodorus* says was invited into *Egypt* by *Osiris*, and conquer'd by *Hercules*. *Cellarius* says, 'twas an Episcopal See, and that *Macarius*, one of its Bishops, subscribed to the Council of *Ephesus*.

2. *Nomos Panopolites* to the S. with its Capital *Panopolis*, whose Inhabitants *Strabo* says were noted for being Makers of Woollen Cloth, and Hewers of Stone. *Agathius* says, 'twas the Country of the Poet *Nonnus*, and had its Name from *Pan* the God of the Shepherds, who is said to have accompanied *Osiris* in his Expedition against the *Ethiopians*, and was therefore had in such Veneration by the *Egyptians*, that they had his Image in every Temple, built a City to his Honour, and call'd it *Chemmis*, i. e. the City of *Pan*;

yet

yet many doubt whether 'twas the same with *Panopolis*, for which we refer to *Cellarius*. *Strabo* and *Plutarch* call it in the *Plural* Number the City of *Pans*. *Cellarius* says, That *Sabinus*, one of its Bishops, subscribed to the Council of *Ephesus*.

3. *Nomos Coptites*, with its Metropolis *Coptos*, which *Cellarius* says was a famous Emporium for *Indian* and *Arabian* Merchandize, inhabited both by *Egyptians* and *Arabians*, and stood not far from the *Nile*, where it had a Harbour. *Plutarch* says, That the Name in the *Egyptian* Language signify'd *Privation*, because *Isis* being here when she receiv'd the News of *Osiris's* Death, cut off a Lock of her Hair for Grief. It lay 303 Miles from *Jaliopolis*, from whence they sail'd thither on the *Nile* in 12 Days with E. Winds, and from *Coptos* Goods were carried by Land to *Berenice* on Camels by Night, because of the Heat. *Cellarius* corrects the Mistake of *Strabo*, who places *Berenice* near the Isthmus on the *Red Sea*, and says, he confounds it with *Ptolomy's* *Albus Portus*, and contradicts himself when he places the Town of *Myos Hormus* near *Berenice*, since it lay 1800 Stadia from it, according to *Arrianus's* *Periplus*. *Trajan* struck a Medal here with the Image of *Osiris Ceptitarum*. In this *Nomos* lay also the little City of *Apollo*, who had three Cities in *Egypt*, tho' some Authors mention but one or two. Next to this lay *Thebe*, a very ancient and rich Town, which *Strabo* says had 100 Gates, and in his and *Pliny's* Time was called *Diospolis Magna*. *Mela* says, it had 100 Palaces, each of which upon Occasion could send out 10000 armed Men. The greatest Part of the Town lay on the *Arabian* Shore, and the rest beyond the River in *Libya*, where there was a wonderful Statue of *Memnon*, Part of which was destroy'd by an Earthquake or the Barbarity of *Gambyses*. *Strabo* says, That it us'd to send forth a Sound when the Beams of the Rising-Sun first touch'd it; but supposes it was by a Trick of the Priests or others. *Pliny* tells the like Story of the Statue of *Serapis*. *Buno* on *Cluverius* says, the Country was called *Hecatompyla*, because of the 100 Gates of *Thebes*. This Province is encompassed by Mountains, was noted for Hermites in *St. Jerome's* Time, and the Town lay in Ruins in that of *Cicero*.

In this *Nomos* lay also *Elethya*, or the

Town of *Lucina*, who *Strabo* says had a Temple here. *Pliny* seems to call it *Leucothea*; it being the Custom of the *Egyptians* to call their Towns after their Gods, and to impose upon the People as if those Idols had built them, as *Eusebius* informs us in his *Evangelical Preparations*. This appears likewise from *Ovid* and *Pliny*. The latter says, *Lib. 5. Cap. 9*. That *Egypt* boasted of 20000 Towns in the Reign of *Amasis*; and that in his own Time it had many, tho' of no great Note; but those of *Apollo Leucothea*, *Diospolis Magna*, *Thebes*, &c. were famous.

To the S. betwixt this and *Syene*, stood *Ombis*, which *Pliny* makes a distinct *Nomos*. The Inhabitants were as famous for the Worship and Protection of Crocodiles, as the *Tentyritæ* and those of *Apollinopolis* (with whom *Juvenal* says they fought) were for the contrary; and *Ælian* says, they fed 'em with their Hands, and made them at last so familiar, that they would come at their Call.

On the S. lay *Syene*, which *Ptolomy* places on the *Nile*, overagainst the Isle of *Elephantine*, under the Tropick of *Cancer*, and *Pliny* in a Peninsula of a Mile in Compass, with a Castle on the Side of *Arabia* and on the Confines of *Ethiopia*, 5000 Stadia from *Alexandria*. *Strabo* says, That during the Summer Solstice, the People here had no Shadow about Noon, and that the *Romans* had a Garrison of 3 Cohorts in this Place. *Buno* on *Cluverius* says, 'twas the Boundary of their Empire on this Side, as 'tis now of the *Turks*.

Next lay the Tract called *Dodecaschanus*, mention'd by *Herodotus*, where the *Nile* had many Windings like a Meander; and about *Syene* was the lesser Cataract, then the Island *Philæ*, with a Town about 100 Stadia from *Syene*. *Seneca* in his *Natural Questions* says, the *Nile* having run thro' vast Deserts, and breaking out into Lakes inhabited by divers Nations, first comes together again about *Philas*, a rugged and steep Island, and a Town encompassed by two Streams, which being united, are called the *Nile*. Hence the River, with a large rather than a violent Stream, having left *Ethiopia* and the sandy Deserts, thro' which Men travelled to the *Indian Ocean*, runs to the Cataracts, which form a noble Prospect. *Strabo* says, he travelled 100 Stadia by Land to avoid those Cata-

Cataracts betwixt Syena and Philas. Here Cellarius corrects Pliny for confounding Philas and Elephantine, the latter being under, and the former above the Cataract.

The Coasts of the Arabian Gulph.

THIS Gulph or Bay did not lie wholly upon the Coast of Egypt, but a great Part of it on the Trogloditæ, and likewise on Ethiopia; but the Ethiopians having neglected Navigation, and the Trogloditæ who dwelt on the Coast being early subdued by the Egyptians, and many Monuments of the Egyptian Kings and Queens being found on this Coast, we shall describe it with ancient Egypt, because 'tis difficult to know which were the Egyptian Trogloditæ or the Ethiopian Towns and Castles on this Coast. Cluverius says, the Trogloditæ lay S. towards the Deserts of Libya, now called Bardoa; that on the S. they had Mount Ater, and beyond that Mountain lay the Garamantes, a famous People, now the Kingdom of Borno. Aristotle says, the Trogloditæ were so call'd from their living in Caves; that they subsisted chiefly by Hunting, exceeded the Wild Beasts in Swiftneſs, fed on Serpents, and made much Use of Myrrh. Some reckon the Fountain of the Sun in this Country.

Cellarius begins the Description of this Coast from Heroopolis and Arsinoe, formerly mentioned. The first Place he takes Notice of is Ptolomy's Glyſma, which gave Name to that Bay of the Red Sea which lay towards Egypt. 2. The Promontory Drepanum. 3. Myoshormus, which Ptolomy makes a noble Harbour and Emporium on the Red Sea, and the first that belong'd to Egypt. It was afterwards call'd the Harbour of Venus. 4. The Harbour of Philotera, so call'd from Ptolomy the 2d's Sister. 'Twas likewise call'd Aenum, and near this there was a Spring of hot Waters, which ran into the Sea. 5. Berenice, a famous Harbour and Trading Town, from whence they sail'd to Arabia Felix and India. It was so called from Philadelphus's Mother. Here Cellarius corrects Strabo, and approves Ptolomy's Position of this Place near the Tropick of Cancer, whereas Strabo says it was near Myoshormus, tho' by the Itineraries they appear to have been 800 Stadia distant. We refer to Cel-

larius for the Inland Towns betwixt those two.

Cellarius comes next to give a more particular Description of that which was called Trogloditæ. He agrees with Cluverius in the Reason of the Name, and likewise that there were People so called in many other Places of the World, because they agreed in their Way of Living; but those on the Arabian Coast were the most noted. Authors differ in their Boundaries: Strabo begins them at the Bottom of the Bay. Ptolomy and Pliny say, the whole Country on the Arabian Gulph, and that of Avellites, was called by this Name. Others place them beyond the Tropick of Cancer. Cellarius reconciles 'em thus: That in a large Sense, all the W. Shore of the Arabian Gulph was so called; but in a limited Sense, only the Upper Part of it from Berenice, or from the Tropick to the Bay Avellites. Near Berenice, Olympiodorus says, there were Mines of Emeralds, which brought a great Revenue to the Kings of Egypt, and also an Island which abounded with Topazes, and therefore was called by that Name, but formerly the Isle of Serpents, because those Creatures were very numerous there, till destroy'd by Ptolomy's Order, that the Topazes might be the more easily gather'd. Betwixt Berenice and Ptolemais, called Trogloditica, there was little memorable, except Mountains, Capes, and Harbours; the chief of which was that call'd Deorum Salutaris Portus, otherwise Scater. Most of this Coast was inhabited by those called Ichthyophagi, because they liv'd chiefly by Fishing. On this Coast lay also the Evangelorum Portus.

Ptolemais Trogloditica had its Name from Philadelphus, who us'd to hunt Elephants here, and built a Town call'd Ptolemais. Others say, 'twas built by Eumedes at Philadelphus's Order on the Bank of the Red Sea. Buno on Cluverius says, it was anciently call'd Barce, and now Talometta. Pliny mentions another Berenice here, call'd Panchrysus, because of its Gold Mines; but Cellarius thinks this to be Strabo's Berenice near Sabas or Sabat, and not Saba in Arabia Felix, as Hardwin thinks. Next to this lay the Town of Deule, Aduli, or Adulis, noted for a noble Statue of Ptolomy Evergetes, and from hence Part of the Red Sea was called Sinus Adulicus. Pliny mentions another Berenice; sinnam'd.

firmam'd *Epidires*, which lay on a Cape where the Red Sea was only seven Miles broad. 'Twas the same with *Ptolomy's Dere* or *Dire*. All this Coast was possessed by the *Egyptians*, according to *Cellarius*. 'Tis not worth insisting on the Islands in this Bay which lay on the Coast of *Egypt*. Other People who inhabited these Shores were, the *Colebi*, *Ta-bieni*, *Sirtibes*, *Attiri*, the *Babylonians*, the *Rhizophagi*, who fed on Roots; the *Spermato-phagi*, who liv'd on Seeds; and the *Ophio-phagi*, who liv'd on Serpents.

OF MARMARICA, and CYRENAICA PENTAPOLIS.

Cellarius places this whole Tract between Ancient *Egypt* and the *Syrtes*; but Authors are not agreed about its Names and Division. *Ptolomy* says, *Marmarica* lay E. of *Cyrenaica*, and was parted from *Egypt* by the Country of *Libya*; but *Agathemerus* places them both together. Others mention only the People *Marmaridæ*. *Scylax* begins *Libya* at *Apis* on the *Mediterranean*, and extends *Marmaridæ* as far as the *Hesperides*, which *Pliny* interprets the *Berenice* of *Pentapolis*, that lay in a Sort of Peninsula on the Coast of the *Syrtes Major*, from whence the latter extends the *Marmaridæ* to the Country of *Paratonium*: But *Strabo* places them more to the E. and nearer *Cyrene*, and extends them to *Ammon*, or (as in *Casaubon's* Edition) to *Egyptus Cyrenaica*. *Solinus* says, the *Marmaridæ* were noted for charming of Serpents. Thus some confound *Cyrenaica* with *Marmarica*; but *Cellarius* follows those who separate the latter from *Cyrenaica* on the W. and *Egypt* on the E. and the rather, because *Cyrene* was the Capital of *Pentapolis*, which lay on the Gulph of the *Syrtes Major*. He extends it from *Egypt* to *Darnis*, beyond *Chersonesus Magna*, which *Ptolomy* makes the Frontier of *Cyrenaica*, as he does *Mareotis* and the Town of *Plinthine* that of *Egypt*.

M A R M A R I C A.

Cluverius says, 'twas also called *Mareotis*, makes it a Part of *Lower Egypt*, and the last Frontier of *Cyrenaica* to the W. *Buno* in his Notes says, 'tis now called *Barcha*,

and was anciently inhabited by the *Libyarchæ* and *Barcæi*. The first Place of Note on the Coast was *Paratonium*, a Town and Harbour, which *Strabo* and *Stephanus* say some called *Ammonia*. *Pliny* places it 86 Miles from *Catabathmus*. 'Tis mentioned by all Geographers, and in most ancient Histories. According to *Florus*, it was defended by a Garrison and Fortifications, which *Procopius* says were built by *Justinian*. 2. *Apis*, above-mentioned, lay on the same Coast, and was by *Scylax*, *Ptolomy*, and others, reckon'd a Town, but by some only a Village. 'Twas noted for the Worship of *Egyptian Idols*. 3. *Zagylis* and *Zygris*, were both noted for Bishops Sees in the Time of Christianity. 4. *Catabathmus*, which *Ptolomy* calls *Magnus*, to distinguish it from the Lesser, which he places to the E. beyond the Harbour of *Phœnicus* on the *Mediterranean*. *Pliny* and *Salust* say, it lay on a steep Descent, from whence it had its Name, and the latter thought it the Boundary betwixt *Egypt* and *Africa*. *Strabo* places it 2200 Stadia from *Apollonia*. 5. *Panormus*, to the W. of *Catabathmus*, where *Ptolomy* ends his *Nomos* of *Libya*, and from whence he extends that of *Proper Marmarica* beyond the *Chersonesus Magna*.

After this, *Cellarius* sets down Inland *Marmarica*. He says, That the *Adyrmachidæ*, a *Libyan* Nation, liv'd next to *Egypt* on the Sea-Coasts, and imitated the *Egyptians* in their Manners and Customs, being the same that *Herodotus* extends from *Egypt* to the Harbour called *Plinos*. They were drove to the S. and high Countries after the *Greeks* took Possession of the Maritime Coast. *Scylax* places them near the *Canopium Ostium* of the *Nile*, and *Ptolomy* in his *Nomos* of *Libya*. Next to them lay the *Ammonii*, whose Country was noted by *Herodotus* for the Oracle of *Jupiter Ammon*, which, according to *Arrianus*, was a Place surrounded with vast sandy Deserts. *Herodotus* says, the *Ammonii* were numerous, had a King of their own, and *Cellarius* thinks the Deserts lay on the Side of *Prætonium*, from whence *Alexander* march'd to the S. He places it between *Prætonium* and *Catabathmus Magnus*, in 28 Deg. of Lat. *Pliny* says, this Oracle lay 12 Days Journey from *Memphis*, and numbers the *Nomos Hammoniacus* amongst those of *Egypt*; but *Cellarius* says, it was not properly

a Part of Egypt, no more than the two Oases already mentioned. He adds, there were Deserts in *Proper Ammoniaca*, with Groves in the Middle; water'd by pleasant Fountains. *Diodorus Siculus* says, That the Country where the Temple of *Ammon* stood was encompassed on all Sides with Deserts; but that Part about the Temple was diversified with Fruit-Trees and sweet Fountains, and well inhabited; That in the Middle there was a Tower, fortified with a treble Wall, the innermost of which contain'd the Palace, the second a Convent for Women, with Houses for their Children and Kindred, and *Jove's* Temple and Fountain, where they sacrificed; and on the outer Wall lodg'd the Officers and Servants. *Cellarius* takes this to be the same with *Ptolomy's Ammon*. *Diodorus* adds, That in the Neighbourhood there was another Temple of *Ammon*, shaded with many tall Trees, and near it that call'd the *Fountain of the Sun*, whose Water chang'd wonderfully at certain Hours of the Day, so that *Curtius* and *Arrianus* say, 'twas hot at Midnight, cold at Noon, and warm every Morning and Evening. The former agrees with *Diodorus* in his Description of the above-mentioned Tower and Grove. *Cluverius* places this Oracle in *Cyrenaica*. *Hekelius* says, 'twas built, according to the Mythologists, by *Bacchus Liber Pater*. *Buno* says, the modern Name is *Concorron*. *Hercules* and *Alexander* are reported to have been at the *Fountain of the Sun* in the Neighbourhood; and the Poets say, *Bacchus* being almost choak'd with Thirst as he was travelling over these Deserts, *Jupiter* appear'd to him in the Likeness of a Ram, and striking the Earth with his Feet, open'd a clear Fountain. *Cellarius* corrects *Pliny* for placing this Fountain among the *Trogloditæ*, as he does *Lucan* for placing *Ammon* sometimes near the *Syrtes*, and at other Times near the farthest *Garamantes*. *Cellarius* says, That *Ptolomy's Lybia Nomos* was the E. Part of *Marmarica*.

CYRENAICA and PENTAPOLIS.

Ptolomy says, it extends from *Chersonesus Magna*, or *Axyle*, a neighbouring Village, to the Gulph of *Syrtes Magna*, or to *Phileatorum Anas*; but *Pliny* extends it to *Cata-*

batmus on the E. and to *Syrtes Minor* on the W. 1060 Miles in Length, and 800 in Breadth. *Cellarius* says, That *Strabo* is follow'd by no Body in the Western Boundary. *Buno* says, it has on the W. *Syrtes Major* and *Africa Propria*, the *Libyan Sea* on the N. the Deserts of *Inner Libya* on the S. and *Marmarica* on the E. and that it was called *Pentapolis* from its 5 principal Towns; 1. *Berenice*, so nam'd from the Queen, who built it, and now *Bernich*, and the Greater *Syrtes*. 2. *Arfinoe*, or *Teucheira*, now *Trochara*, on the same Coast, betwixt *Berenice* and *Ptolemais*. 3. *Ptolemais*, formerly *Barce*, now *Talometta*. 4. *Cyrene*, now *Corene*, which gave Name to the Country. It was built by the Greeks, who came hither from *Thera*, an Island of the *Ægean Sea*, that lay about 12 Miles from the Shore, and was the Capital of the Country. The Inhabitants liv'd independant for a long Time, but at last had a tedious War with *Carthage*, their Rival, about their Boundaries, and was subdued by the Romans, together with *Carthage*. The Poets say, it had its Name from *Cyrene*, Daughter to the R. *Peneus*, and Mistress to *Apollo*, who brought her hither. It was noted for the Birth of *Aristippus*, a Philosopher of *Socrates's* Sect; his Daughter *Areta*, who govern'd the School after him; and his Son *Hegesias*, admir'd for his Eloquence. *Sinesius*, a Philosopher of this Country, was afterwards their Bishop. It was also remarkable for the Herb *Laserpitium* that grew in its Neighbourhood. It was the best of its Kind, and yielded a Juice much esteem'd. *Ptolomy* makes *Apollonias* the Port-Town of *Cyrene*, and a noble Emporium, about 24 Miles from *Phycus*, a Cape and Town which ran out into the *Cretan Sea*. *Cellarius* observes, that *Ptolemais* was not built where *Barce* stood, but in the Place of its Harbour. He also takes Notice, that *Berenice* was called *Hesperis* and *Hesperides*, noted for the famous Gardens in the Neighbourhood, which *Scylax* describes to be a Valley 18 Fathom deep, with steep Rocks on each Side, two Stadia long, two broad, and shaded with Trees of all Sorts; but Authors differ about the Situation of those Gardens, for *Virgil* and others place them in *Mauretania*, near Mount *Atlas*. *Cellarius* observes likewise, that *Cyrenaica* was larger than *Pentapolis*. *Ptolomy* ends Maritime *Cyrenaica* at *Automalax*, a Garrison near the

the Bottom of the Bay, and joins *Philanorum Aras* to *Proper Africa*. The most noted People of *Cyrenaica* were the *Sylli*, who *Pliny* says had a natural Faculty of destroying Serpents, so that those Insects could not so much as endure the Smell of them; but *Celsus* denies this, tho' *Augustus* be said to have employ'd some of them to suck the Poison out of the Wounds which *Cleopatra* gave her self by a Serpent. These People were succeeded by the *Nasamones*, a naked and barbarous Nation, who destroy'd them, according to *Lucan*. This Country was afterwards reduced to a *Roman Province* in the Time of the *Cretan War*, when it was join'd with *Crete*; but it had before that Time been left by *Ptolomy* to the *Romans*, who allow'd the Natives their Liberty for a considerable Time. *Herodotus* says, they made a Mock-Expedition against the South Wind for drying up their Cisterns of Water; but they were met in their March by strong Gusts, which buried them in the Sands, and made Way for the *Nasamones*.

REGIO SYRTICA,

WAS the Country which lay between and about the two *Syrtes*. *Pomponius Mela* and *Ptolomy* comprehend it in *Africa Propria*, which they extend from *Cyrenaica* almost as far as *Mauretania*. *Cellarius* says, That in the later Ages 'twas separated from the rest, and made a *Præsidial Province* by it self, under the Name of *Tripolitana*, from its three chief Cities.

The *Syrtes*, which gave Name to this Country, were two Quick-Sands, the one call'd *Major*, on the Coast of *Cyrenaica*, and the other *Minor*, at *Byzacena*. *Cellarius* derives the Name from *Σύρτις*, to draw. *Mela* says, That the Bay of *Syrtis Minor*, which lay to the W. had an Opening of almost 100 Miles in Length, and 300 in Compass. *Strabo* places *Syrtis Minor* at the Islands of *Meninge* and *Cercina*, and that call'd *Major* at the *Hesperides* and *Automala*. The first Town mentioned here by ancient Authors was *Philanorum Ara*, which still retains its Name, tho' the *Ara* were destroy'd by Time. *Salust*, *Mela*, and *Valerius Maximus*, say, That the *Philexi* were two Brothers of *Carthage*, who by Vertue of a Compact between the

Carthaginians and the *Cyrenians*, that two Men from either City should set out at once, and that their Boundaries should be fixed wherever they met, the *Carthaginians* ran a great Way into the *Cyrenian's Land*; and refusing to turn back; chose to be buried alive rather than wrong their Countrymen, who afterwards built two Altars over their Tombs, from whence 'twas called *Ara Philanorum*, now *Licudia*, or *Porto de Sabin* in the Kingdom of *Tunis*. It lay, according to *Pliny* and *Mela*, above *Syrtis Major*; but *Peutinger* places it as far back as *Syrtis Minor*, which *Cellarius* thinks would subject the two Brothers to the Censure of setting out before the Time stipulated, because (says he) otherwise they would not have been able to have rid so much Ground before they met the *Cyrenians*. Greek and Latin Authors made this the Boundary of *Carthage*. 2. *Pharax*, which *Cellarius* thinks was *Strabo's Charax*, an Emporium, whither the *Carthaginians* brought Wine to exchange for the Herb which produces *Benzoin*, and for other Merchandize of the *Cyrenians*. Near this lay *Turris Euphranta*, which *Ptolomy* reckons the Boundary of the Province of *Cyrene*. He makes *Macuma* the last Town of this *Syrtis*; but *Strabo* ends it at the Promontory call'd *Cephalas* or *Capita*, and says, there were several Islands in a Lake near *Aspis* which had Communication with the *Syrtis*. *Strabo* says, That at the Mouth of the River *Cinyphus* or *Cinyps*, which gave Name to the adjoining Country, the *Carthaginians* built a Fort and Bridges over the Whirlpools.

Pliny makes the Shore between both *Syrtes* 250 Miles in Length. The first Town here, according to *Ptolomy*, was *Neapolis*, which some call'd *Tripolis*, and others *Leptis Magna*, to which *Cluverius* and *Cellarius* agree, for it was so called in the Coins of the *Romans*, according to *Harduinus*, who says, that in *Tiberius's* Reign there was one inscrib'd *ΛΕΠΤΙΣ*, and another *COL VIC. JUL LEP.* i. e. *Colonia Victrix Julia Leptis*. *Sallust* says, it was built by the *Phanicians* of *Sidon*; and *Pliny*, by those of *Tyre*. The former says, the Inhabitants assisted the *Romans* in the *Jugurthan War*. *Solinus* says, *Leptis Magna* was one of the three Cities of the *African Tripolis*. *Cluverius* places it in *Africa Propria*; and *Buno* says, 'tis now called

led *Lepida* and *Lepede*. 2. *Oea*, or *Eoa*, another City of the *African Tripolis*, according to *Solinus*. There's a great deal said of it in *Apuleius's* Apology; and *Harduinus* takes Notice of a Medal of *Antoninus Pius*, stamp'd with the Letters, C. A. O. A. F. i. e. *Colonia Aelia Oea Augusta Felix*. *Solinus* says, the other Town of *Tripolis* was *Sabrata*. *Strabo* says, That a little to the E. of *Syrtis Minor* lay the Lake of *Zuchis*, with a City of the same Name, famous for dying of Purple, and for all Sorts of Salt Fish. *Mela* says, the River *Triton*, which was the Boundary of *Tripolitana*, fell into a great Lake near *Syrtis Minor*, call'd *Tritonis*, from whence the Inhabitants deriv'd *Minerva's* Name of *Tritonia*, and believ'd she was born there, because the Poets say she made her first Appearance here, and always celebrated that which they took to be the Day of her Nativity with Sham-Fights of Virgins. Some place this Lake between the two *Syrtes*; but *Callimachus*, who calls it *Pallantias*, says, it lay on this Side *Syrtis Minor*. *Herodotus* tells us, there was an Island in it call'd *Phla*. *Cellarius* ends his Account of the Coast with a Discussion whether *Tripolis* was known to the Ancients, for which we refer the Curious to him.

Amongst other ancient People in this Country, *Cellarius* takes particular Notice of the *Lotophagi*, who, according to *Scylax* and *Ptolomy*, dwelt between the *Syrtes*, near *Cinyphus*, and as far as the *Triton*. The former says, they were so call'd because they liv'd upon the Fruit call'd *Lote*, which *Pliny* thinks was the same with that nam'd *Celtis*, and that there were different Kinds of it. He describes it thus: 'Twas as big as a Bean, of a Saffron Colour when ripe, but before of other Colours. It grows up thick with Boughs like a Myrtle, and was so luscious, that Strangers that eat of it immediately forgot their own Country. The best Sort had no inner Shell, which in others was very hard. The People drew a Wine from it not unlike *Metheglin*; but *Nepos* affirms, it would not keep above 10 Days, and that those Berries bruis'd with Wheat were us'd in Sawces.

Cellarius says, the chief Islands of *Syrtis Minor*, according to *Ptolomy*, were, 1. *Cercinna*, with a Town of the same Name, which *Diodorus Siculus* says had commodious

Harbours. *Pliny* calls it a Free City, and says, that the Island was 25 Miles in Length, half as much in Breadth where broadest, but not above 5 Miles over in the narrowest Place. 2. *Meninx*, to the S. of *Cercinna*, was inhabited, as *Strabo* says, by the *Lotophagi*; and *Homer* tells us, it produc'd abundance of the Fruit call'd *Lote*. He adds, that the People pretended to shew an Altar here erected by *Ulysses*, on which Account *Ptolomy* calls it *Lotophagitis*, and says it had two Towns, one of its own Name, and the other call'd *Gerra*, which lay to the W. but *Pliny* differs from him in the Position of the former, which he places on the Side of *Africa*, and in the Name of the latter. 'Tis said to be the Birth-place of the Emperors *Vibius*, *Gallus*, and *Volusianus*.

Ancient AFRICA PROPRIA, or CARTHAGINIENSIS.

Ptolomy extends it from the River *Ampsaga* to *Cyrenaica*, taking in *Numidia*, the Country of *Carthage*, and *Tripolitana*. Thus *Mela* extends it from *Philæorum Ara* to the Promontory *Metagonium*, which *Cellarius* says lay about *Ampsaga*. *Pliny* in his 4th Book and *Cap.* seems to agree with *Mela's* Extent, and says, it contain'd 26 People or Nations, which were all subject to the Roman Empire. But elsewhere, speaking of *Africa Propria*, he extends it from the River *Tusca*, which was the Boundary of *Numidia*, to the Gulph of *Syrtis Minor* or the River *Triton*, containing *Zeugitana* and *Byzacium*; and this *Cellarius* thinks was properly the Country of the *Carthaginians*, and the rather, because they were not constantly possessed of the Country that lay between the two *Syrtes*. *Cluverius* calls it *Africa Minor* as well as *Propria*, and bounds it on the N. with the *African Sea*, on the E. with *Syrtis Major*, on the S. with a Chain of Mountains which parted it from *Libya* and the *Gatuli*, and on the W. by the River *Tusca*. He says, 'twas the same with that now called the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and contain'd the Rivers *Cinyphus*, *Triton*, (with its Lake *Tritonis*) *Catada*, *Bagradas*, and *Tusca*.

Here *Cellarius* first describes *Byzacium*, which lay next to the *Syrtis Minor*. *Pliny* says, 'twas 250 Miles in Compass, and so fruit-

fruitful, that it produced 100 Fold. The Inhabitants were called *Byzaceni*. Some say, that 'twas also nam'd *Emporia*, concerning which *Cellarius* has a particular Dissertation, to which we refer the Curious. *Pliny* divides that which we call *Africa* into two Provinces, the Old and the New, that was divided between *Scipio Africanus* and the Kings of *Numidia*, and parted by a Ditch as far as the Town of *Thenæ*, which lay 216 Miles from *Carthage*. Tho' *Cellarius* admits, that what *Pliny* calls *Africa* in this Place was only *Zeugitana*, yet he thinks his Account too obscure, because it does not appear how it came to be divided into two Provinces; wherefore he is of Opinion, that *Massinissa's* Kingdom extending a long Way from the S. to the E. he added *Emporium* to it, which was afterwards enlarg'd and fortify'd by his Posterity, and also possessed by *Juba*, upon whose Death 'twas added to the Roman Province, and call'd the New Province, not because it had a new and particular Lieutenant, for all *Africa* was no more than one Province, and the New as well as the Old Province was govern'd by the same Person. At length, in the middle Century, *Cellarius* says that *Byzacium* became a Province of it self, separate from the Proconsular one, which was *Zeugitana*, the one having a Lieutenant, and the other a Proconsul.

The Metropolis was *Adrumetum* or *Hadrumentum*. *Bano* says, it lay on the Coast, and is at this Day call'd *Mahometa*. It was a Roman Colony in the Time of *Trajan*. According to an ancient Inscription in *Gruterus*, 'tis called *Coloni*, *Colonia*, *Concordia*, *Ulpia*, *Trajana Augusta*, *Frugifera Hadrumentina*; and *Harduin* mentions a Coin inscrib'd, C.C.I.H.P. which he interprets, *Colonia Concordia Julia Hadrumentina Pia*. *Hirtius* says, *Considius* kept a Garrison here. *Procopius* calls it *Adramyttum*, and says, that in his Time 'twas called *Justiniana*. The other chief Towns were, 1. *Leptis Parva*, so called to distinguish it from the Greater, which lay in *Pentapolis*. It was a splendid City, and *Pliny* calls it a Free Town. *Hirtius* says, *Cæsar* kept 6 Cohorts in Garrison here; that the Inhabitants were called *Leptitani*, and being plunder'd, recover'd their Goods again by Complaint to the Senate, on Condition of paying Annually 2000000 Pound Weight of Oil.

Some call'd it *Neapolis*. *Bano* says, 'tis that which we now call *Aracca*. 2. *Ruspina*, noted by *Hirtius* for the Encampment of *Cæsar*, lay between *Leptis* and *Adrumetus*, but E. of the latter, and had a Haven 11 Miles from the Town. *Pliny* makes it a free City. 3. *Thapsus*. *Ptolomy* places it on the Coast, S. of *Leptis*, from which some make it 8 Miles. *Strabo* says, 'twas strongly fortified in the Time of *Cæsar*, and noted for one of his Victories. *Hirtius* says, *Vergilius* govern'd here with a good Garrison, and that *Scipio* pitch'd two Camps within 8 Miles of this Place. 4. *Thenæ*. *Strabo* places it on the same Coast, at the Beginning of the *Syrtes Minor*, and says, it was taken by *Cæsar*. It was also a Colony in the Time of the *Constantines*, according to a Latin Inscription mentioned by *Gruterus*. 5. *Celle*, which *Cellarius* thinks lay on this Side the River *Triton*, and was the See of a Bishop, who subscrib'd to the Synodal Epistle which this Province sent to *Constantine*. 6. *Horrea*, or *Horrea Calia*, lay above *Hadrumentum*, was the N. Boundary of *Byzacium*, and the See of a Bishop, who subscrib'd to the 7th Council of *Carthage*.

Afterwards *Cellarius* proceeds to treat of the Inland Towns of *Byzacium*, according to *Ptolomy*; the chief of which were, 1. *Tifdrus* or *Thysdrus*. *Hirtius* says, it had a strong Garrison, govern'd by *Considius*, and that *Gordianus* was made Emperor here. He adds, That the Citizens were to furnish a certain Quantity of Corn instead of Money, because of their Poverty. 2. *Uzecia*, which *Cellarius* thinks to be the *Usceta*, where *Hirtius* says *Scipio* had a great Magazine of Corn and Warlike Stores. 3. *Byzacina*, or *Byzacica*, which gave Name to this Province, and was the See of a Bishop, lay to the S. 4. *Capsa*, the See of another Bishop. *Cellarius* doubts whether this was the *Capsa* which *Sallust* says was taken and demolish'd by *Marius*; for *Bochart* denies it, and chuses rather to place it in Inland *Numidia*, because he says that the *Capsa* of *Byzacium* was water'd by a River; whereas *Sallust* says, that when *Marius* besieg'd the Town of this Name, Water was brought to the Camp the Length of three Days Journey in Bottles. Some say, 'twas built by *Hercules*. 5. *Putea*, and, 6. *Telepte*, noted only for Bishops Sees. *Procopius* says, the latter was a Frontier Town,

Town, and some reckon'd it the Metropolis of *Byzacium*; but *Cellarius* inclines rather to think that *Hadrumetus* was the Capital, as we have already mentioned. *Hirtius* mentions *Sarsura* in this Tract, where he says *Scipio* had a Garrison of *Numidians*, and a Magazine of Corn; but *Cellarius* thinks it different from *Ptolomy's Sasura*, which lay farther S. out of the Way of *Caesar*, who is said to have directed his March to *Sasura*. The same Historian mentions also *Tegæa*, which he says was a Town below *Scipio's* Camp, and where he kept a Garrison of about 400 Horse; but *Cellarius* makes it different from the *Tegæ* of *Ptolomy*, which lay at a great Distance to the E. To these *Cellarius* adds, 1. *Sufetula*, near the River *Amp-saga*, and (according to *Antoninus's* Itinerary) 104 Miles W. from *Hadrumetus*, and 120 from *Susdrus*. 'Twas noted for the See of a Bishop, as was also *Aquæ Regiæ* for another between it and *Hadrumetus*. *Cellarius* notes *Septimunicia* and *Marazania* for two other Bishops Sees in this Tract.

Z E U G I T A N A.

Pliny seems to take this alone for *Proper Africa*; but *Cellarius* says, *Byzacium* ought not to be excluded, because both lay in the Jurisdiction of the *Carthaginians*, and at first constituted but one Roman Province, tho' afterwards it underwent a Division with the rest. It extended from the River *Tusca*, the Boundary of *Numidia*, to *Hadrumetus*.

The Places of most Note were, 1. *Neapolis*, which *Cellarius* calls a Colony. *Pliny* thinks it the last Town of *Zeagitana*, and calls it a free City, but makes no Mention of the Colony. 'Twas reckon'd a Bishop's See. *Scylax* says, 'twas three Days Journey from hence to *Hadrumetus*; and a Day and a half's to the Promontory call'd *Hermæum*. 2. *Clypea*, betwixt the said Promontory and *Neapolis*. It was call'd by the *Grecians*, *Aspis*. *Cellarius* corrects *Ptolomy* for making *Clypea* and *Aspis* two different Towns, one below, and the other above the Promontory, and says, it had the Latin Name of *Clypea* from the Form of the Hill on which it was situate. *Solinus* thinks, 'twas built by the *Silicians*, who first call'd it *Aspis*; and *Strabo*

says, 'twas founded by *Agathocles* the *Silician* Tyrant when he made War on the *Carthaginians*. He thinks it stood on the Promontory of *Taphis*. *Pliny* places it at *Mercury's* Promontory, otherwise call'd *Hermæum*, in the Neighbourhood of the former; but *Polybius* sets it at a greater Distance. *Cellarius* inclines to *Strabo's* Opinion, and thinks that *Pliny* mistook the two Capes for one. *Buno* on *Cluverius* says, 'tis now called *Quipia*, and that no Serpents can live here. 3. *Aquilaria*, which *Cellarius* supposes was in this Tract, because *Caesar* in his Commentaries says, it lay 22 Miles from *Clypea*, and had a convenient Harbour in the Summer betwixt two Promontories, but without mentioning their Names, or whether it lay to the N. or S. of *Clypea*; so that *Cluverius* is not certain as to its exact Position.

The Places of most Note on the Left Side of the Promontory *Hermæum* were, 1. *Nisua*, the same with *Pliny's Misua*, noted for the See of a Bishop. 2. *Maxula*, another See. *Pliny* calls it a Colony. 3. *Tunes*, lay near the Town and Country of *Carthage*; for which Reason *Polybius* says, 'twas of great Advantage to the Romans when they took it. *Livy* tells us, 'twas a Place well fortified by Art and Nature, and had a pleasant Prospect of the adjacent Country and the Sea as far as *Carthage*, from whence it lay almost 15 Miles, tho' *Buno* says but 12. He adds, that the Romans were defeated near this Place by the *Carthaginians*, under the Conduct of *Xantippus* the *Lacedæmonian*, when *M. Attilius Regulus* was taken Prisoner. This Town gave Name to the Kingdom of *Tunisia*, and was the Royal Seat. 4. *Carthage*, the Capital of *Africa Proper*, was built by the *Tyrians*, rivall'd *Rome*, and was made a new Colony after the Decay of the Romans. *Solinus* says, 'twas built by a *Phœnician*, and call'd *Carthada*, which in the *Phœnician* Language is a New City. *Polybius* thinks it lay on a Bay in the Form of a Peninsula, with the Sea on one Side, and a great Lake on the other, and was join'd to *Africa* by an Isthmus of 25 Stadia in Breadth. *Strabo* says, it was 360 Stadia in Circuit, and encompassed with a Wall; and that the Neck of the Isthmus was 60 Stadia in Length, and the Place where they had Stables for Elephants. In the Middle of the City there was a high Tower, which they call'd *Byrsa*, and

and had the Temple of *Æsculapius* on the Top, which *Asdrubal's* Wife, when the Town was taken, burnt, and threw her self into the Flames. This Tower commanded the Harbours under it, as well as the little round Island *Cothon*, which was encompassed with an Arm of the Sea, and had Docks, &c. for Ships. *Dido* founded the City, and planted it with a Colony of *Tyrians*. The Greatness and Power of *Carthage* is plain from the Resistance it made to the *Romans* in the *Punick* Wars, but was at last taken and levelled to the Ground. *C. Gracchus*, the Brother of *Tiberius*, advis'd the repairing of it, but 'twas hinder'd by an Omen; and *Julius Cæsar* had the like Design, but he was murder'd before it came to be put in Execution. 'Twas splendidly rebuilt by *Augustus Cæsar*, tho' not in the same Place, but very near it, and at the same Time 'twas made a *Roman* Colony, from whence it came again to be the Capital of that Country, and the Chief of the Cities of *Africa*; and *Harduinus* takes Notice of some Medals struck in the Reigns of *Severus*, *Caracalla*, and *Decius Trajanus*, inscrib'd, COL. AUR. KAR. KOMM P. F. which he interprets, *Colonia Aurelia Carthago Commodiana Pia Felix*. *Strabo* says, That in his Time 'twas one of the most populous Cities of *Africa*, and *Cluverius* says, 'twas the richest in all *Africa* before 'twas destroy'd by the *Romans*. *Buno*, his Annotator, says, it looked like a double Town, or one within another, of which the innermost was called *Byrsa*, and the outer one *Magalia*. He adds, that its 125th Bishop had others subordinate to him, and that *Tertullian* and *Cyprian* were Natives of this Place.

Next to *Carthage*, *Ptolemy* places the Mouths of the River *Bagrada*, where *Cæsar* says *Curio* left his Legions, and went before with his Horse to view the *Castra Cornelia*. *Gellius* says, That *Attilius Regulus* encamp'd on the Banks of this River, and had a fierce Engagement here with a monstrous Serpent, which at last he kill'd by his Slings and Bows, and sent its Skin, which was 120 Foot long, to *Rome*. *Cellarius* says, this River, after a long Course thro' *Africa*, fell into the Sea between *Utica* and *Carthage*, but nearer the former. *Cluverius* makes it the greatest River in *Africa Minor* or *Proper*. *Buno* says, 'tis now called *Megrada*, *Megrída*, or

Magiordech, and rises out of the Mountain *Audus*. Next to this *Ptolemy* places *Cornelia Castra*, where *Cornelius Scipio* the Elder first encamp'd after his Arrival in *Africa* during the 2d *Punick* War. *Cæsar* in his *Commentaries* says, 'twas a steep Hill running out into the Sea, very rocky on both Sides, but not so bad on the Side of *Utica*, from whence it lay not much above a Mile. He adds, that in the Mid-way there lay a Fountain of a large Extent, which had a Communication with the Sea. *Cellarius* thinks the *Pulchrum Promontorium*, mention'd in the League of the *Romans* with the *Carthaginians*, lay hereabouts; but *Livy* says it lay below the Promontory of *Mercury*; and that when *Scipio Major* sailed into *Africa*, he landed his Men and encamped at *Utica*, which is confirm'd by *Appianus*, but deny'd by *Polybius*, who places *Pulchrum Promontorium* North of *Carthage*, from whence one would infer that it lay but a very little Way, because the *Romans* were obliged by their Treaty to sail no further with their Ships. *Cellarius* leaves this to the Judgment of the Learned, and does not determine whether that called *Apollo's* Promontory by *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and *Ptolemy*, and which lay above *Utica*, was also called *Pulchrum*, or whether the latter, consider'd as distinct from the former, was that noted by *Cæsar* for the Camp of *Cornelius*. Then *Cellarius* proceeds to give an Account of *Utica*, call'd by the *Grecians* *Ἰνύκη* or *Ityca*. *Mela*, *Justin*, *Stephanus*, and others, say, it was planted by a Colony of *Tyrians*, and the Capital of this Country after the Ruin of *Carthage*; and *Strabo* says, that 'twas next to *Carthage* for Largeness and Dignity when the latter was in its Glory. He adds, that it lay on the same Gulph with *Carthage*, upon one of the two Promontories that formed the Bay, which were *Apollonium* and *Hermæum*. 'Tis frequently mentioned in the Civil Wars of *Cæsar*, and was fam'd for the Death of *Cato*, who (according to *Pliny*) was from hence call'd *Uticensis*. *Dio Cassius* says, *Augustus* made the Inhabitants free of the City of *Rome*, as is proved further by a Medal in the Reign of *Tiberius*, inscrib'd, MIN. JULII UTICEN. D.D.P. which *Harduinus* interprets, *Municipii Julii Uticensis Decuriones posuere*; and by another in the same Reign, inscribed, IMMUNIS UTICEN. D.D. i. e. *Immunis* Utic.

Uticensis Decurionum decreto. *Buno* says, 'tis now called by some *Porto Farina*, and by others *Biserta*. *Pliny* thinks, That *Apollonium*, or the Promontory of *Apollo* near this Place, lay over against *Sardinia* and *Hermæum*, or that of *Mercury* over against *Sicily*. Next to this follows the *Hippo Dirutus* or *Diarrhytus* of *Ptolomy*, to distinguish it from that called *Hippo Regius* in *Numidia*. *Pliny* says, it was called *Diarrhytus* by the *Grecians*, because it abounded with Rivulets. *Appianus* calls it *Hippo Zarytus*, and says, 'twas a large City, had Walls, a Tower, Havens, Docks, &c. and was built by *Agathocles* the Tyrant of *Sicily*. But *Cellarius* corrects *Appianus* for placing it betwixt *Utica* and *Carthage*, and says, it lay on the Frontier of *Zeugitana*. *Pliny* tells us, 'twas a famous Colony on the Sea-Coast, and had a navigable Lake near it, which ebb'd and flow'd by a Communication with the Ocean. *Cellarius* adds, that this City was the See of a Bishop.

The chief Towns mentioned by *Ptolomy* in the Inland Parts of *Zeugitana* are, 1. *Uthma*, noted for the See of a Bishop, who was present at the Council held by *Cyprian*. *Buno* says, it lay on the River *Bagrada*. 2. *Parada*. *Hirtius* says, it lay in the Road betwixt *Thapsus* and *Utica*. Some think it to be the *Phara* which *Strabo* says *Scipio's* Horse burnt to the Ground, because *Hirtius* mentions the same Thing concerning *Parada*. But *Cellarius* doubts it, because *Strabo* joins *Phara* with *Thena*, *Acholla*, and *Zella*, on the Bay of *Syrtis*, which was quite out of the Road to *Utica*. 3. *Membresa*, was noted also for a Bishop's See; and *Procopius* says, it lay 350 Stadia from *Carthage*.

To these *Cellarius* adds *Nepheris*, a strong Town not far from *Carthage*, from which *Strabo* places it 180 Stadia, but does not tell us on what Side. *Appianus* says, That *Scipio* came from the Siege of *Carthage* to invest *Nepheris* thro' a Lake, which *Cellarius* thinks lay to the E. of *Carthage*. This Town was taken, says the same Author, in 22 Days Time, and contributed very much to the taking of *Carthage*. *Livy* says, the Place was almost inaccessible; and that *Asdrubal*, who lay encamped in the Neighbourhood with his Army, was defeated by *Scipio*.

After this, *Cellarius* comes to give an Account of the Islands belonging to *Proper Africa*, the chief of which were, 1. *Lopa-*

dusa, over against *Thapsus*. *Strabo* says, 'twas 6 Miles in Length. 2. *Ægimurus*, in the Bay of *Carthage*. *Livy* says, it lay almost 30 Miles from the City, and formed the Bay of *Carthage*, in which *Cellarius* observes, that he differs from *Strabo* and others, who say, 'twas formed by the two Promontories of *Apollo* and *Mercury*, which ran out into the Sea further than the Distance at which *Livy* places this Island. *Stephanus* and *Pliny* call it *Ægimori Ara*, and say, it lay over against *Carthage*. Some say, 'twas call'd *Ara* from two Rocks still to be seen there, on which the *Africans* and *Romans* made a League, and agreed that they should be the Limits of their Empires.

N U M I D I A.

Cluverius extends it from the River *Tusca* to the River *Ampsaga* on the *African* Shore, and includes the present Kingdom of *Tremisene* within its Boundaries. He says, the People were call'd *Numida*, and anciently *Nomades* by the *Grecians*, because they often shifted Pasture, and removed their Cottages from one Place to another like the *Tartars*. *Cellarius* has a particular Discussion about this Name, for which we refer to him. He says, two of their greatest Nations were the *Massæyli* on the W. and the *Massyli* on the E. *Livy* tells us, the former border'd upon the *Moors*, and lay over against *Spain*. *Strabo* says, the Country lay next to the *Mauretania*, began at the River *Molochath*, and ended at a Promontory which was called the Confines of the *Massæyli* and the *Massyli*. *Silius* the *Italian* says, That *Syphax* was the K. of the *Massæyli*, and *Massinissa* of the *Massyli*. *Livy* tells us, That *Syphax* subdued the *Massyli*, and expelled *Massinissa* their King; but that the latter was restored again to his Father's Kingdom after the Death of *Syphax*. *Pliny* says, That the *Grecians* call'd *Numidia* the Country of *Metagonitis*, for which *Vossius* on *Mela* corrects him. As to the Division of this Country, it vary'd in the Time of the *Carthaginian* Wars, and under the first *Cæsars*. *Pliny* places all but what belong'd to the *Massyli* in *Mauretania Cæsariensis*, as *Mela* does all but *Massæylia* in *Africa Proper*. The *Numidia* of *Mela* began at the River *Mulucha*, which parted it from

Mauretania, and ended about that of *Ampsaga*; tho' he also places *Cirta* in his *Numidia*, which lay beyond the *Ampsaga*. *Pliny's* *Numidia* extended from *Ampsaga* to *Tusca*, and was the Kingdom of the *Massyli*; or of *Massinissa* and his Posterity: And *Pliny* and *Ptolomy* call the other *Numidia*, which was the Kingdom of *Syphax*, *Mauretania Caesariensis*, and extend it from *Mulucha* to *Ampsaga*. *Cellarius* begins with *Numidia Propria*, seu *Massyliorum*, which *Pliny* calls the only *Numidia*; and *Ptolomy*, *New Numidia*, exclusive of the Country of the *Cirtesii*, which lay nearer the River *Ampsaga*. *Appianus* says, 'twas called the New Province, because 'twas the Kingdom of *Juba*, and taken in *Julius Caesar's* Time, to distinguish it from the old one, which the Romans took from the *Carthaginians*.

The first Town of Note on the Coasts of *Numidia Proper*, according to *Pliny*, was *Tabraca*, which he places near the River *Tusca*, on the Borders of *Numidia*, and says, 'twas a Roman Colony. 2. *Hippo Regius*, parted from *Tabraca* by the River *Rubricatus*, which *Pliny* calls *Armua*. *Buno* says, it lay between *Aphrodisius* and *Tabraca*, and is now called *Bona*. 'Twas nam'd *Regius*, because it lay in the Jurisdiction of the Kings of *Numidia*. *Procopius* says, 'twas a fortified Town, and lay on the Coast, 10 Days Journey from *Carthage*. *Antoninus's* Itinerary makes it 228 Miles, and others but 218. *Augustin* was one of its Bishops 40 Years, and died here in the 76th Year of his Age. Some say, 'twas a Roman Colony, in which Historians are not agreed. But *Cellarius* mentions a Coin struck in the Time of *Marcus Antoninus*, inscrib'd C. G. I. H. P. A. which *Vaillant* interprets, *Colonia Gemella Julia Hipponensis Pia Augusta*. On the Reverse it had the Image of *Ceres*, with burning Torches, because *Tertullian* says, she was worshipped by the *Africans*, and therefore call'd the *African Ceres*. 3. *Cullu Chyllu*, or *Collops Magnus*, noted only for a Bishop's See. *Buno*, who places it near the Mouth of the *Ampsaga*, says, 'twas famous for Purple, and is now called *Collo* or *Alcol*.

From hence *Cellarius* comes to give an Account of the Towns of *Numidia Proper* within Land. Those of most Note were, 1. *Cirta*, the Metropolis and Royal Seat of King *Massinissa* and his Successors. 'Twas

also the Seat of *Syphax* after the Expulsion of *Massinissa*. *Strabo* says, 'twas a strong Town, and well furnished with all Necessaries by the Care of *Micipsa*, who brought the *Grecians* to dwell in it. *Pliny* and *Pomponius* give it the Sirname of *Sittiani*, and the latter calls it the Colony of the *Sittiani*, and the greatest City in *Numidia*. The *Sittiani* were those who fought under *P. Sittius*, and planted as a Colony in *Cirta* in the Time of *Julius Caesar*, from whence 'twas called *Cirta Julia*. *Dio Cassius* says, That *Sittius* being forced to fly from *Rome*, assembled a Band of Exiles, which being increas'd with other Forces, prov'd a great Help to *Caesar* in the *African War*; so that without them he could not have made such Conquests. *Buno* denies this to be *Constantina*, as some have imagined. 'Tis frequently mentioned in *Sallust's* History of the War of *Jugurtha*, who he says besieg'd *Atherbalis* here after he fled from the Battle. *Ptolomy* separates the adjacent Country from his *New Numidia*, and calls it the Land of the *Cirtesis*. 2. *Vaga*, which lay to the E. was a Bishop's See, and noted by *Macrobius* for a Council. *Cellarius* says, 'twas the same with *Plutarch's* *Baga*, and thinks 'twas the *Vacca*, which *Sallust* makes a great and wealthy City, and the chief Emporium of all the Kingdom. 'Tis also noted for a Roman Garrison. 3. *Azama*. *Buno* says, 'tis now called *Zamora*. Some think it to be the *Zama*, which was another Royal Seat and strong Town of *Numidia*, famous in the Wars of *Hannibal*, *Jugurtha*, and *Juba*. But *Cellarius* thinks this too far S. for *Ptolomy's* *Azama*. Some make it about 300 Miles from *Hadrumetum*, which *Hannibal* travelled in two Days and Nights when he fled from *Scipio*. *Polybius* and *Livy* say, 'twas but 5 Days Journey from *Carthage*, whereas *Ptolomy* places his *Azama* 8 Deg. or 15 Days Journey from it. *Cellarius* refers it to the Learned to reconcile those Differences, and determines nothing himself. *Sallust* says, *Zama* lay in a Field, was stronger by Art than Nature, was provided with all Commodities, and abounded in Men and Arms. *Sallust* says, That *Hannibal*, after he came out of *Italy*, was defeated here by *Scipio*, and that *Metellus* besieg'd it in vain. *Hirtius* tells us, *Juba* fortified it at the Beginning of the *Carthaginian War*, and being defeated, fled hither with *Petreius*, but

but was shut out by the Townsmen. 'Twas afterwards made a Colony, and adorned with splendid Titles. 4. *Bullaria*, near the River *Rubricatus*. *Pliny* calls it *Bulla Regia*, and a Free Town. *Cellarius* says, That one of its Bishops was present at the Synod of *Carthage*, but doubts whether 'twas the *Bullaria* of *Ptolomy*, because that lay in *Numidia*, and this in the Proconsular Province of *Africa*, on the Confines of *Numidia* and *Zaegitana*, whereas *Bullaria* lay further within Land. *Buno* says, it stood near *Sicca Veneria*, on the River *Rubicatus*, and is now called *Antra*. 5. *Sicca Veneria*, which *Ptolomy* places to the S. of *Bulla*. *Selden* and *Vossius* derive its Name from *Succot Benot*, an Idol of the *Assyrians*, mentioned 2 Kings 17. 30. *Buno* says, this was the Country of *Arnobius* the Rhetorician, Tutor to *Lactantius*. He adds, that there was another *Sicca* on the Confines of both *Mauritania's*, where formerly *Syphax* kept his Court. 6. *Thagaste*, or *Tagaste*, noted for the Birth of St. *Augustin*, and being the See of a Bishop. *Pliny* calls it a Free Town. 7. *Altaba*; 8. *Macomades*, were two other Sees in the Inland *Numidia*. 9. *Mileum*, *Milveis*, or *Milevum*, was also a Bishoprick. *Cellarius* says, 'twas a Colony, and that it lay in the Confines of *Numidia*, E. from *Cirta*. *Buno* says, it was 30 Miles from thence towards *Sitiphis*, and that a Council was held here in 402, of which St. *Augustin* was President, wherein the Errors of *Pelagius* and *Cælestius* were condemned. *Cellarius* adds, that it lay in the Borders of Proper *Numidia*, and W. of *Cirta*, as did also *Idicra* and *Cuiculi*, two other Bishops Sees. He says, the Bishop of the latter was present at the Council held by *Cyprian*.

Ptolomy's *Madurus* or *Madaura* lay also in this Country, according to *Cellarius*. 'Twas noted for the See of a Bishop, and he has a Dissertation to prove that it was the Country of *Apulejus*. The latter says, it anciently belong'd to *Syphax*, afterwards to K. *Massinissa*, and was then made a Colony of Veteran Troops by the Romans. 2. *Calama*, a Bishop's See, and noted by St. *Augustin* for a Colony. *Cellarius* does not determine its Situation. 3. *Capsa*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, who says, 'twas a large and strong Town among great Deserts, built by *Hercules* the *Libyan*, and that it was made a free City by

Jugurtha, who *Strabo* says kept his Treasure here. *Cellarius* thinks it different from the *Capsa* mentioned by *Sallust*, as above. 4. *Thala*. *Sallust* notes it for a great and rich Town, and says, *Jugurtha* kept his Treasures and Children here. It fell in with *Capsa* and the other Towns in the War of *Juba*. There were Deserts on one Side of it for 50 Miles in Length; but we have no Account of its Position, nor of the River *Tanas*, to which, *Sallust* says, *Marius* came when he march'd to take Possession of *Capsa*. It seems to have run between that and *Lares*; but 'tis uncertain whether it discharg'd it self into the *Ampsaga* or the Sea. There is the like Uncertainty as to *Thirimida*, where *Hiempsal* was killed, *Suthul* where the King's Treasures were; and the River *Muthul* in that Part of *Numidia* which fell to *Atherbal's* Share, in the Division which *Cellarius* thinks lay Eastward, because *Jugurtha's* Part touch'd upon *Mauretania*. To these *Cellarius* adds, 1. *Tigisis*, tho' there's another of the same Name in *Mauretania Cæsariensis*, and both Bishops Sees. According to *Procopius*, this lay in the S. Part of *Numidia*, near Mount *Aurafius*, which, according to him, lay in *Numidia*, and was inhabited in the latter Ages by *Moors* that had Wars with *Justinian*, says *Procopius*, who places it 13 Days Journey from *Carthage*. He adds, there's no Mountain like it in the whole World, because 'tis every Way very steep and craggy on the Sides, but plain on the Top, with Meadows, Gardens, Fountains, smooth Rivers, Corn, and all Sorts of Spices. *Cellarius* says, it lay in the South Part of the Country, and supposes it to be *Ptolomy's* *Audus*. 2. *Casa Nigra*, whose Bishop was *Donatus*, that gave Name to the *Donatists*. Its Situation is uncertain. 3. *Is muc*, 20 Miles from *Zama*, but to what Quarter uncertain. 'Twas noted for having no Serpents; and that if any were brought thither, they died immediately.

Cellarius proceeds next to give an Account of *Numidia Massesyli*. *Strabo* begins it at the River *Molochath*, on the Confines of *Mauretania*, and extends it to the Promontory *Tretum*. *Cellarius* says, That *Strabo's* *Molochath* was different from *Ptolomy's* *Molochath* and the *Mulucha* of others. *Sallust* makes it the Boundary betwixt the Kingdoms of *Jugurtha* and *Bocchus*; *Pliny* the Limits of *Bocchus* and

and the *Massesyli*. *Strabo* informs us, that *Massinissa* obtain'd the Kingdom after *Syphax*, and was succeeded by *Micipsa*, &c. till *Juba* was defeated by *Cæsar*, who made *Numidia* a Roman Province; nor did *Augustus* give any more to *Juba's* Son, tho' bred at Rome, than some Parts of *Getulia* instead of his Father's Kingdom, which because *Strabo* says it contain'd the Kingdom of *Syphax*, *Cellarius* thinks that tho' at first it did not extend beyond *Mulucha*, yet afterwards, by *Augustus's* Liberality, he obtained all or the greatest Part of his Father's Dominions as far as the River *Ampsaga*, where lay the City *Jol*, which he adorn'd, enlarg'd, and call'd *Cæsarea*, in Honour of *Augustus Cæsar*. *Cellarius* has a long Dissertation whether this was that Part of *Numidia* called *Mauretania* after the *Cæsars*, and when and how it came by that Name; but we cannot insist upon it.

MAURETANIA CÆSARIENSIS.

Cellarius says, it had this Name in the Time of *Claudius Cæsar*, who reduced the *Moors* that rebelled, because *Caius Caligula* had killed their King *Ptolomy*, Son to *Juba Minor*, and divided their Country into two Provinces, viz. *Tingitana*, which lay in Ancient and Proper *Mauretania* next the Sea; and *Cæsariensis*, in the E. Part of the Kingdom, formerly call'd *Numidia*. *Pliny* and *Ptolomy* bound the latter on the E. with the River *Ampsaga*.

Cluverius says, That *Mauretania* in general was the most W. Part of *Africa*, and that the *Moors* were called by the *Greeks*, *Maurusii*; and by the *Latins*, *Mauri*. He bounds it on the S. with the Lesser *Atlas*, which separates it from the Country of the *Getuli*, (who upon the Decay of the *Maurusii* possessed great Part of this Country;) on the W. by the *Atlantick Ocean*; on the N. by the Streights of *Hercules*, now *Gibraltar* and the *Mediterranean*; and on the E. by the River *Mulucha*, which divided it from *Numidia*, and partly by the River *Ampsaga*, including that Part of *Numidia* between *Ampsaga* and *Mulucha*. It now contains the 3 Kingdoms of *Dara*, *Fex*, and *Morocco*, and was anciently divided into the two Provinces above-

mentioned by the River *Malva*. He says, That *Mauretania Cæsariensis*, which now takes in the whole Kingdom of *Dara*, was called the Kingdom of *Bocchus*, and that the *Massesyli* inhabited the Tract which lay between *Malva* and *Mulucha*. *Buno* says, it has *Tingitana* on the W. the *Mediterranean* as far as the River *Ampsaga* on the N. *Africa Propria* on the E. and on the S. *Getulia* and the *Libyan Mountains*. *Hekelius* derives the Name *Mauretania* from the Greek *Μαυρ*, which signifies Black, that being the Complexion of the Inhabitants. *Reiskius* on *Cluverius* says, there were two *Numidia's* when it was reduced into a Roman Province, the one within Land, now *Biledulgerid*, and the other on the Coast, which the Conquerors call'd by another Name.

The chief Towns on the Coast were, 1. *Cæsarea*, anciently call'd *Jol*. 'Twas the Capital of the Country, and the Seat of *Juba Minor*. *Strabo* says, it had an Harbour and an Island over against it. 'Twas made a Colony by *Claudius*. *Cellarius* takes Notice of some ancient Inscriptions in Memory of this City, for which we refer to him. 'Tis believed by most to have been that now call'd *Algier*. *Pliny* seats it at *Apollo's* Promontory, for which *Cellarius* corrects him. *Salust*, *Mela*, and *Pliny*, say, the River *Malucha* was the Boundary betwixt *Bocchus* and *Jugurtha*, i. e. of Old *Mauretania* and *Numidia*, whose Limits were afterwards alter'd. *Ptolomy* call'd it *Chylemath* instead of *Mylychath*: But *Vossius* thinks it not the same with *Strabo's* *Molochath*. *Ptolomy* and the Author of the *Itinerary* extend this Country as far as the River *Malva*, which *Cellarius* approves.

Next to that River they mention the *Perthus Magnus*, so call'd because of its Largeness, and here the Romans had a Town. Next to this *Ptolomy* places the Town and Colony of *Siga*, near the Mouth of a River of the same Name, where there was a Harbour. 'Twas anciently the Palace of King *Syphax*. *Pliny* says, it lay over against *Malaga* in Spain.

The Inland Parts of *Mauretania Cæsariensis* began at the River *Ampsaga*. The most remarkable Town here was *Sityphis*, where *Ruricius* was kill'd, and afterwards it was noted for a Roman Colony, the Metropolis of the Province, and became a Bishop's See. Beyond the River *Andus* lay *Tubusuptus*, a Roman

man Colony, call'd *Augusta*. It lay near that call'd the *Mons Ferratus*. Some take it to be *Tacitus's Thubuscum*. For the other obscure Towns, and the Names of the People who inhabited these Parts, we refer to *Cellarius*.

MAURETANIA TINGITANA.

Cellarius says, this is the Proper *Mauretania*. *Pliny* makes it 170 Miles in Length. It had its Name from the Town *Tingi*, now *Tangier*. The Country was divided into the Kingdom of *Bogud*, call'd *Bogudiana*, which lay Westward upon the Ocean, and into the Kingdom of *Bocchus Junior*, which lay to the E. as far as the River *Mulucha*. *Cluverius* says, it took up that which now makes the two Kingdoms of *Fez* and *Morocco*. *Buno* says, it has the *Atlantick Ocean* on the W. the *Streights of Hercules* and *Iberia* as far as the Mouths of the River *Malva* on the N. *Mauretania Caesariensis* on the E. and on the S. *Gatulia* and *Lybia Interior*. *Pliny* says, the Country abounded in Elephants.

The chief Places of Note on the Coast were, 1. The Promontory of *Metagonis* or *Metagonium*, which lay over against *New Carthage*. *Cellarius* distinguishes it from *Mela's Metagonium*, near the Mouths of the River *Ampsaga*, and from *Pliny's Metagonis* already mentioned in *Numidia*. 2. *Abyla Columna*, one of *Hercules's Pillars*, over against the other call'd *Calpe* in *Spain*. *Strabo* says, 'twas full of Wild Beasts and high Trees. 3. The Seven Mountains, call'd the 7 Brothers, because of their equal Height and Likeness, according to *Mela* and *Pliny*. 4. *Tingis*, now call'd *Tangier*, gave Name to the Province, and lay at the *Streight's Mouth*. *Pliny* says, 'twas built by *Antaeus*, and enlarg'd by *Claudius Caesar*, who made it a Colony, from whence it was called *Traducta Julia*. Some think 'twas built by the *Canaanites* who were expelled by *Joshua*. 5. The Promontory *Ampelusia* or *Cote*. *Pliny* says, there was a Town upon it of the same Name; and *Mela*, that it had a Cave sacred to *Hercules*. 6. *Zilis* or *Zelis*, a Town and Colony near a River of its own Name. 7. *Lixa*, *Lixus*, or *Lynn*, another Colony, near a River of the same Name. *Pliny* says, it lay 32 Miles from *Zilis*, and 'twas famous for the Palace of *Antaeus*, who fought here with *Hercules*,

and for the Gardens of the *Hesperides*: But others place them in *Cyrenaica*, not far from *Barce*. The Poets feign'd, that those Gardens daily produc'd Golden Apples, which were guarded by a Dragon. *Ptolomy* places both these Towns within Land, which *Cellarius* does not approve, because *Pliny* says positively that they lay on the Coast; so that he thinks *Zilis* to be the modern *Arzila*; and *Lixus*, *L'Arache*. *Buno* places the latter 112 Miles from the *Streights of Hercules*. 8. *Sala*, on a River of the same Name, according to *Pliny*, who says 'twas encompassed with Deserts, and infested by Troops of Elephants. 9. The Mountains of *Atlas*. *Ptolomy* distinguishes them into the Greater and Lesser, whereas others make but one *Atlas*. *Pliny* and *Solinus* place them 205 Miles from *Lixus*; but *Ptolomy's Major Atlas* lay at a much greater Distance. They were of such a Height, that the Poets feign'd they reach'd to Heaven. *Cluverius* places them S. of the *Gatuli*, and the Poets say they were rugged and black towards the Ocean, which from hence was called *Atlantick*; that those Mountains were shady, full of Woods and Springs; and that on the Side of the Continent they abounded with all Manner of Fruits. They add, that they were uninhabited, sent forth Fires in the Night, and were haunted by Satyrs, who made a Noise like that of Drums, Trumpets, &c. *Reiskius* on *Cluverius* says, these Mountains extended from the W. Shore of *Africa* towards the Frontiers of *Egypt* on the E. and had their Name from *Atlas King* of *Mauretania*. *Cellarius* thinks 'tis uncertain whether the Borders of *Mauretania*, when under the Power of the Romans, reach'd always to *Atlas Major*, whither *Ptolomy* extends them.

Cellarius proceeds to give an Account of *Mediterranea Tingitana*, and begins with the Town call'd *Ascurum*. *Hirtius* says, it had a Royal Garrison, which, with the Townsmen, sallied on *Pompey* and his Forces, made a terrible Slaughter among 'em, and forc'd them back to their Ships. Our Author is not certain as to its Situation, because no other Historians mention it. 2. *Opinam*, which *Ptolomy* places between *Babba* and the Sea. Some say 'twas an Episcopal See, and that *Leo*, one of its Bishops, subscribed to the 7th Council of *Carthage*. *Cellarius* men-

tions several Nations which anciently inhabited these Parts, for which we refer to him.

As for the Islands over against this Part of *Africa*, *Ptolomy* speaks only of *Pana* and *Eurythia*, which he places between *Abas Major* and *Minor*, but of no Fame. *Cellarius* thinks he carries the *Fortunate Islands* too far S. over against the *Inner Lybia*, which is confuted both by the Ancients and Moderns. *Strabo* places them W. of *Mauretania*, and *Cellarius* supposes they were the same with those now called the *Canaries*, because both *Pliny* and *Ptolomy* call'd one of the *Fortunate Islands* *Canaria*. Some think they lay beyond the *Purple Islands*, of which *Cellarius* approves, if, as the learned *Harduin* thought, those Islands were the same that are now called *Madera* and *Porto Sancto*. *Pliny* relates, that the *Purple Islands* lay over against *Autololus*, and were discover'd by *Juba*, who appointed the Dying of the *Gætalian* Purple there; and the same Author in another Place commends them for their Trade in Purple. *Statius Sebosus* says, *Juno-nia*, *Capraria*, and *Pluvialis*, lay also beyond the *Purple Islands*, 750 Miles W. from *Cadix*; and that *Pluvialis* had none but Rain-Water. He adds, that the *Fortunate Islands* lay 250 Miles from them, against the Left of *Mauretania*, in Lat. 9. and calls two of them *Convallis* and *Planaria*, from their Shape. He makes the former 300 Miles in Compass, which is supposed to be *Teneriff*. It appears by *Juba's* Report set down in *Pliny*, that the *Fortunate Islands* lay 625 Miles S. W. from the *Purple* ones; the first, call'd *Ombrios*, *Cellarius* thinks to be the *Pluvialis* above-mentioned, which was not inhabited. It had Trees in the Mountains like the Herb *Ferula*, which dropped Water. The Bitter came from the Black Trees, and the best from the White. That call'd *Capraria* was full of great Lizards. The Island *Nivaria* lay within Sight of them, and had its Name from the perpetual Snow that cover'd it. *Cellarius* thinks it answers to *Sebosus's* *Convallis*, now *Teneriff*. *Canaria*, which lay next, was so called from a Multitude of great Dogs. It had the Vestiges of some ancient Buildings. Every one of them abounded with Apples, and all Manner of Birds, but this with Date Trees, Pine Apples, and Honey. The Rivers were full of

Rushes, of which they made Paper, and a Sort of Fish call'd Sheath-Fish, but were much infested with nasty Vermin. *Pliny* and *Ptolomy* reckon'd 6 of the *Fortunate Islands*, and *Plutarch* only two; but *Cellarius* prefers the former. *Cluverius* makes 'em 7. *Buno* says, *Ptolomy* computed his Longitudes from *Palma*, one of the *Canaries*. Some of the ancient Poets and others gave extravagant Accounts of their Fertility and delightful Situation, and placed the *Elysian* Fields there.

AFRICA INTERIOR, or INNER AFRICA, known to the Ancients.

THE first Place which *Cellarius* takes Notice of is *Ptolomy's* Island of *Cerne* beyond *Atlas Major*. *Scylax*, *Hanno*, *Diotimus*, and *Polybius*, agree in the same Situation; but some place it in the Eastern Ocean, others near *Lixus* in *Mauretania*, and some as far as the Equator. *Strabo* denies that there was an Island of this Name in his Time, tho' others say 'twas of great Fame. *Cellarius* thinks the Reason of their Difference was, in that they plac'd this Island over against the *Ethiopians*, who dwelt on both Sides of *Africa*; and that those who inhabited near the *Red Sea* were anciently call'd *Ethiopians*, as well as those that liv'd on the *Atlantick*. Hence it came that some placed this Island in the E. Sea, whence modern Historians have advanc'd that *St. Lawrence* or *Madagascar* was the *Cerne* of the Ancients. *Pliny* says, it lay opposite to the Gulph of *Persia*, over against *Ethiopia*, and that it was inhabited by *Ethiopians*; but he knew not its Extent nor its Distance from the Continent. *Ephorus* says, That those who sail'd from the *Red Sea* could not reach this Island, because of the great Heats beyond the Pillars, as the little Islands were called. Many suppose that this Island lay beyond *Hercules's* Pillars. *Cluverius* places it beyond the *Fortunate Islands* to the N. and says, 'tis now called *Madera*. *Hanno*, after having made all the Windings of the Shore, arrived in four Days at *Cerne* from *Lixus*; whence *Cellarius* infers, that it lay over against *Mauretania*, and not *Ethiopia*. *Polybius*

bios on the contrary places it very far S. at the farthest End of *Mauretania*, over against Mount *Atlas*, 8 Stadia from the Continent; but then he placed his *Atlas* farther S. for which *Cellarius* blames him, tho' he agrees in his Position of this Island near Mount *Atlas*, and at the End of *Mauretania*. Some think 'twas the Island of *Arguin*, about 20 Deg. from the Equator, which was delightful, well water'd, and very commodious for Trading with the *Ethiopians*. *Sebosus* places the Islands of the *Hesperides* in this Country near the Promontory of *Hesperic Cornu*, but with little Certainty. He makes 40 Days Sail between these and the Islands of *Gorgones*, and but one betwixt the latter and the Promontory of *Hesperic Cornu*; from whence *Cellarius* infers, that the Islands of the *Gorgones* lay over against *Mauretania*. *Pliny* makes them two Days Sail from the Continent over against the Promontory of *Hesperic Cornu*, and says, that when *Hanno* the *Carthaginian* came hither, he found Women whose Bodies were all over hairy, and swifter than Men. He hung up the Skins of two *Gorgons* in *Juno's* Temple, where they remained as a Spectacle till the taking of *Carthage*. The same Author places the *Gorgones* 3 Days Sail from *Deorum Currus*, and *Pliny* says 'twas 10 Days and Nights Sail from the latter to *Hesperic Cornu*. *Cluverius* says, the Promontory of *Hesperic Cornu* is the same with that call'd *Cape Verd*, and that the *Gorgades* are generally taken for the Islands of that Name. He places them beyond the *Hesperides*, which he says lay in the *Atlantick* over against *Hesperic Cornu*. From hence *Cellarius* says 'twas some Days Sail to the great Mountain of *Deorum Currus*, which he thinks is the same with that call'd by the *Portuguese* *Sierra Leona*, because *Ptolomy* plac'd it on this Side the Equinoctial.

Ptolomy divides this Part of *Africa* into *Inner Libya* and *Ethiopia* above *Egypt*. The former is most Westerly, and he makes the City of *Darnis* its Eastern Boundary on the Confines of *Cyrenaica* and *Marmarica*. The chief Nations in this Tract were the *Gatuli*, *Garamantes*, *Nigritæ*, and *Hesperic Ethiopes*, with a Mixture of others less known.

I N N E R L I B Y A.

Cluverius says, it lay along the River *Niger* beyond *Atlas*, and comprehended the Deserts now called *Sarra*. *Buno* thinks 'twas called *Inner Libya* because it lay within Land, to distinguish it from the *Outer Libya*, which lay upon the Coast, and join'd to *Egypt*.

Cellarius gives first an Account of the *Gatuli*, who he says dwelt properly S. of *Mauretania*, according to *Ptolomy*; but afterwards they spread thro' *Mauretania* and *Numidia*, and grew so numerous, that they were not to be circumscribed within Bounds. *Cellarius* thinks that Ancient and Southern *Gatulia* extended to the *Atlantick* Ocean, and that the S. Part of *Proper Gatulia*, which lay towards the *Niger*, was inhabited by the *Melano Gatuli* or *Blacks*, which *Ptolomy* plac'd between the Mountains *Sagapola* and *Usargala* to the N. of the *Niger*. 'Twas his Opinion also, that the *Getuli Dara* join'd them beyond the *Niger*. *Cluverius* says, it took up all the Tract from the Town of *Lempta* to the Ocean for 350 *German Miles*, including the greatest Part of the Province of *Biledulgerid*, with the Kingdom of *Targa*, and the 4 Deserts of *Lempta*, *Zeuenziga*, *Zanbaga*, and *Hair*. They were encompassed on the S. by the Mountains of *Atlas*. *Buno* places *Gatulia* between both *Mauritania's*, *Africa Minor*, and the Western Ocean, and says, the *Gatuli* were accounted the chief People in *Africa*. Anciently they lived upon raw Flesh, and lodg'd wherever Night overtook them like Beasts: But *Jugurtha* train'd them up to War, and led them forth against *Marius*. 2. The *Garamantes* were Neighbours to the *Gatuli*. *Strabo* says, they liv'd 9 or 10 Days Journey from the *Ethiopes Hesperii* and the Coasts, and 15 from *Ammon*; but *Cellarius* says he had the Distance only by Report, and inclines to think they lay much farther within Land. *Ptolomy* extends the Seat of the *Garamantes* from the Fountains of the River *Bagrada* as far as the Lake *Nuba*. In the Singular Number 'tis *Garamas*, and in the Feminine

minine Gender *Garamantis*. *Buno* says, they were so called from *Garamas* the Son of *Apollo*, or rather from the River *Garamus*, on which they dwelt. They did not marry, but kept Women in common. They were much infested with a large Kind of Snakes. *Cluverius* says, they were parted from the *Trogloditæ* by Mount *Ater* on the N. and the Tract which they inhabited is now called the Kingdom of *Borno*. They were subdu'd by the *Romans*, as well as the *Gatuli* and *Trogloditæ*. 3. *Nigritæ*. *Cellarius* says, they were so call'd because they dwelt about the River *Niger*, by which *Pliny* divided *Africa* from *Ethiopia*. He ascribes the same Product, Animals, and Quality, to this River as to the *Nile*, and says, it rises between the *Æthiopes Tarelei* and *Ocealiciæ*. *Ptolomy* joins it to the Mountains *Mandrus* and *Thala*, where it forms the Lake *Nigris*, and runs N. with two Streams to the Mountains of *Sagapola* and *Usargala*, with another towards the *Libya Palus* on the E. and a third to the River *Darus* on the S. *Cellarius* says, this River is misrepresented in *Ptolomy's* Map, where it has no Mouth to discharge it self; but this is corrected by our modern Maps. *Pliny* joins the *Nigritæ* to the *Ethiopsians*, and *Mela* distinguishes them. Some think they were also call'd *Nigroe*. *Pliny* says, their King had but one Eye, and that in his Forehead. *Cluverius* extends their Country from the *Nile* and the Island of *Mroe* to the Mouths of the *Niger* and the Ocean. 4. *Æthiopes Hesperii*, or the Western *Ethiopsians*, so called because they were opposite to those who possessed the S.E. Part of *Africa* above *Egypt*. There were innumerable other lesser Nations, which *Ptolomy* and *Pliny* comprehended in the greater ones, but most of 'em obscure; so that *Cellarius* has omitted 'em, and proceeds to the particular Description of the Country, according to *Ptolomy*.

The chief Places he takes Notice of are, 1. Mount *Ater*. *Pliny* says, it ran a great Way from E to W. and had its Name from its black Colour, being scorch'd by the Sun. *Buno* extends it almost to *Syrtis Minor*. 2. *Debris*. *Pliny*, *Solinus*, and *Priscianus*, note it for a Fountain whose Waters were hot from Noon to Midnight, and cold the other 12 Hours. *Buno* says, 'twas a Town of the *Garamantes*. *Ptolomy* does not mention it, so that *Cellarius* says its Situation is uncer-

tain. The River *Gir* was one of the greatest Rivers of *Inner Libya*. *Cellarius* says, it fell into the *Niger*. He mentions several other obscure People that anciently inhabited this Tract, of whom the chief were the *Pharusii* and *Perorfi*. The Poets say, they accompanied *Hercules* in his Expedition from *Persia* to the *Hesperides*.

UPPER ETHIOPIA, or Ethiopia above Egypt.

Cellarius says, 'twas more known to the Ancients than the Lower, which lay in *Libya* or on the *Atlantick* Sea, because the *Ethiopsians* of this Country drove a Trade with *Egypt*, which spread wider towards the N. than towards the Western *Ethiopsians*, where this Name is properly given to those of the S. Country. The Poets derived the Name from *Æthiops*, *Vulcan's* Son. *Pliny* says, 'twas first called *Ætheria*, and then *Atlantia*, and that there were 45 Kings of *Ethiopia* in his Time: But 'tis certain that 'twas called *Ethiopia* in the Books of the Old Testament; and *Cellarius* says, the Hebrews render *Chus*, *Ethiopia*, wherein they are follow'd almost every where by the Greek Interpreters, particularly *Gen.* 2. 13. *Isa.* 11. 11. 18. 1. 23. 4. *Ezek.* 29. 10. 30. 4. *Zeph.* 2. 12. 3. 10. &c. Besides, *Cellarius* thinks no Country can answer better to *Jer.* 13. 23. than *Ethiopia*. *Josephus* says, they were govern'd by *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, and were called *Chusites* not only among themselves, but by all in *Asia*; and *Jerome* says, 'twas called *Ethiopia* by the Hebrews even in his Time. *Bochart* produces several Arguments to the contrary, and instances in *Ezek.* 29. 10. where the Limits of *Egypt* are set down from the Tower of *Syene* even unto the Border of *Ethiopia*, which he believes intended the two opposite Boundaries of *Egypt*, adding, that *Syene* was the Border of *Egypt* towards *Ethiopia*; from whence he infers, that *Chus*, the Border of *Egypt* that was opposite to *Syene*, could not be *Ethiopia*, but rather *Arabia*: And to illustrate his Opinion, he says the *Chusites* dwelt above *Egypt* at the last Bay of the *Red Sea*, in Part of *Arabia Petraea* and *Felix*. To which he adds, that the *Chusites* were the same with the *Scenitæ* of the Ancients, and the modern

Saracens. *Harduin* also places *Chus* in *Arabia Deserta*, and others place it partly in *Petraea* and partly in *Deserta*.

There's the like Controversy among the Learned about the Queen of *Sheba* who went to *Solomon*, 1 *Kings* 10. *Josephus*, *Hugo Grotius*, and many others, say she came from *Ethiopia*; and *Cellarius* thinks their Opinion favour'd by our Saviour's own Saying in *Matth.* 12. 42. where he calls her the Queen of the South, who came from the uttermost Parts of the Earth, both of which he says answers better to *Ethiopia* than any other Country. But because *Saba* signifies *Frankincense*, as appears from *Jer.* 6. 20. and no Country abounds more with it than Part of *Arabia Felix*, therefore some placed her Residence in that Country. We refer to *Cellarius* himself for the rest of this Dissertation.

He gives an Account in the first Place of that Part of this Country which lay on this Side the *Nile*, or towards the W. He says, *Egypt* ended at the Island of *Elephantine* and the lesser Cataract, and that all the Country above that belong'd to *Ethiopia*. He also places the Eastern Boundary of *Inner Lybia* in the *Lynxamata*, the Deserts of *Phasaca* and *Bacalitis*, and beyond these the Lake of *Lycomedes*, which *Ptolomy* places in S. *Marmarica*; but in the Borders of *Ethiopia*, *Pliny* sets it further W. towards the *Pssylli*. Some place the *Blemmyes* here, who, according to *Strabo* and *Ptolomy*, liv'd about the River *Astabora*, far beyond the *Nile*, towards the Gulph of *Avalites*. But *Cellarius* thinks the former not much out of the Way, since *Strabo* owns that they were Borderers upon the *Egyptians*, whereas the latter Position is far remote from the Frontiers of *Egypt*. Besides, *Zosimus* says that they were Confederates with the City *Ptolemais* in *Thebais* against the *Romans*; therefore *Cellarius* concludes that they were near Neighbours to that City. *Olympiodorus* also places them near *Talmis*, a City in the Confines of *Egypt*, as *Procopius* does near *Elephantine* and *Phila*, where they had a Temple in common with other Barbarians and the *Romans*, by *Dioclesian's* Appointment. But let them inhabit where they will, strange Fictions have been publish'd about them, and the Form of their Bodies. *Pliny* says, they had no Heads, but a Mouth and Eyes in their Breasts, which

Cellarius thinks might arise from their Necks being so much shorter than other People's, that their Heads seem'd to lie in their Breasts. And as a Testimony that there was something uncommon in their Aspect, *Vopiseus* says, that when some of them were carried Prisoners to *Rome*, the Citizens stood amaz'd at their strange Visages.

Nearer the *Nile* on the W. Side lay the Town of *Pselcis* or *Pselca*, which *Ptolomy* places over against *Metacompsa*, and above the greater Cataract. Farther S. lay *Meroe*, a noble Island of the *Nile*, with a Town of the same Name, its Capital. *Josephus* says, this Place was almost impregnable. *Herodotus* says, 'twas a large City, and the Metropolis of the *Ethiopians*. *Pliny* makes it 5000 Stadia from *Syene*, and 360 Miles from the Town of *Napata*, and says, the Town itself stood 70 Miles from the Entrance of the Island. He adds, that twice a Year they have no Shadows in this Island. It had its Name from *Cambyses*, whose Sister or Wife *Meroe* died here. *Josephus* says, it was anciently call'd *Saba*, because he supposes that the Queen of *Saba* who came to *Solomon* was the Queen of *Ethiopia*. *Cellarius* places the *Catadupi* about the greater Cataract, tho' some refer them to the lesser, and he enclines to think that *Petronius's* Expedition was on the W. Side of the *Nile*. *Strabo* says, the Town of *Mapata* in this Tract was the Royal Seat of *Candace*, and demolish'd by *Petronius*. *Pliny* makes it 3 Days Journey from the *Red-Sea*. *Primis Parva* was also taken and garrison'd by *Petronius*. There was another call'd *Magna*, which lay nearer the Island of *Meroe*. We refer to *Cellarius* for an Account of *Astaboras*, *Astapus*, and other Rivers, which mix'd hereabouts with the *Nile*. The chief Towns mentioned by *Ptolomy* about those Rivers were, 1. *Auxuma*, near the River *Astabora*, which join'd with the *Astapus*, and fell with it into the *Nile* above the Island *Meroe*. *Ptolomy* says, there was a Royal Palace in it, and that it lay 5 Days Journey from *Coloe*, another Inland Emporium. *Auxuma* was formerly the See of a Bishop. 2. *Coloe*, an Emporium for Ivory, which *Ptolomy* places near the River *Astadopes*, at a great Distance S. of *Auxuma*, and not far from *Adulis*. *Arrianus* makes it 3 Days Journey from the latter. *Ptolomy* mentions several ancient People in this County, as, 1. The *Rhi-*

Rhizophagi, whom *Strabo* calls *Elei*, and says, they liv'd upon Roots, of which he gives a particular Description. 2. The *Struthophagi* or Sparrow-eaters, near the *Memnonnes*, whom *Ptolomy* places between the *Nile* and the *Astapus*. *Strabo* says, they were not very numerous, and that they had Birds as big as Stags, which could not fly. 3. The *Simi*, of whom *Diodorus Siculus* relates the same thing, and says, they lay S. of the *Struthophagi*. *Agatharcides*, who gives an Account of their Wars with the *Struthophagi*, says, they us'd Goats Horns for their Arms. 4. The *Acridophagi*, who liv'd upon Locusts, which were driven by the Winds into the Country, according to *Diodorus* and *Strabo*. 5. The *Chelonophagi*. *Strabo* says, they liv'd upon Flesh, and cover'd their Cottages on the Top with Tortoise-Shells. We refer to *Cellarius* for the rest.

The Remainder of the Coast on this Side and beyond the Circle of the Equator is called *Barbaria* by *Ptolomy*, because its Inhabitants were very rude and barbarous. He commends some other Countries about the Equinoctial, as, 1. *Azania* on the E. where there were many Elephants and Emporiums of Ivory, according to *Arrianus*, who extends it far S. as *Ptolomy* does to the Sea. The Myrrh Country lay on this Side the Equator, and the Country of Cinnamon on the other. Beyond these he places two Lakes, which he calls those of the *Nile*, one E. and t'other W. He supposes they were formed by the Rivers which run down

from the Mountains of the Moon, where, according to him, were the Fountains of the *Nile*; but *Cellarius* prefers *Juba's* Opinion, (tho' his was erroneous too) namely, that the *Nile* rose in *Tingitana*, and after it had run under Ground, rose up again in *Mauretania Cæsariensis*, and from thence was carried Eastward thro' *Libya* into *Upper Ethiopia*, where winding thro' *Egypt*, it fell at last into the *Mediterranean*. But *Cellarius* refers those who would know the true Origine of the *Nile* to *Vossius* and *Ludolphus*, two modern Authors, who have contributed very much to the Discovery of the Fountains of this River. Then he comes to give an Account of the *Pygmai* or *Pygmies*, whom *Pliny* places about the Lakes of the *Nile*. *Mela* says, they were very small in Stature, and routed by the Cranes when they fought with them for the standing Corn: But *Strabo* rejects the Story of the *Pygmies* as fabulous. *Ptolomy* places several Emporia of Spices and Cinnamon in the Gulph of *Avalites* and in his *Barbaria*, for which we refer to him.

Among the Islands mentioned by *Ptolomy* on this Coast, the chief were, 1. *Menuthias*, in the Gulph of *Avalites*. *Ptolomy* places it a little Way N. E. from the Promontory *Prasum*. *Salmasius*, *Bochart*, and *Harduinus*, think it to be the Isle of *Madagascar* or *St. Lawrence*; but *Vossius* takes it to be *Zanzibar*, and that *Madagascar* was not known to the Greeks and Romans. *Cellarius* leaves both to the Judgment of the Learned.



C H A P. II.

Of Modern AFRICA in General.

THE *Africans* are divided into *Aborigines* or Ancient Natives, and *Arabians* who settled themselves here by Conquest. They are again subdivided into *Whites* or *Tawny-Moors*, and *Blacks*. *Leo* divides the former into 5 Tribes, viz. *Zanhagians*, *Musmudans*, *Zenetans*, *Haoranians*, and *Gumeranians*, and *Marmol* divides those 5 Tribes into 600 Families. The *Zanhagi* or *Zanhagians* dwell in the Wilderness of *Libya*, and about the W. and S. Part of Mount *Atlas*. Their Governors apply themselves to keep numerous Herds and Flocks. Those who live in Towns follow Trade, and the rest betake themselves to Husbandry and Mechanical Employments. The *Musmudi*, *Musmudans*, or *Mukamudans*, dwell E. and S. from Mount *Atlas* in the Plains, and command the four Provinces of *Hea*, *Sus*, *Guzule*, and *Morocco*. The *Zeneti* or *Zenetans*, and *Haori* or *Haoranians*, inhabit the Plains of *Temefne* in the Kingdom of *Fez*. This is suppos'd to be their proper Country, because other Authors say they are dispers'd all over *Africa*. The *Gumeri* or *Gumeranians* inhabit the mountainous Parts of *Mauretania* towards the *Mediterranean*, from the Streights of *Gibraltar* to the Kingdom of *Tremisen*. These and the *Haori* understand *Arabick*, because of their Conversation with the *Arabians*. The original Language of all those Tribes, which is still retain'd by their Posterity, is what they call the Noble Tongue, and the true *African* Language, which the *Arabians* reckon barbarous. *Marmol* says, the *Musmudi* and *Gumeri* live apart, but all the other Tribes mix'd; yet they may be easily distinguish'd by their Air and Mien. They are at continual Hostilities amongst themselves, and have their Badges, by which they are known from one another. They all formerly liv'd

in Tents. The *Musmudi* and *Zeneti* live in common in the 4 Provinces of *Morocco*, are now reckon'd a mean People, and call'd *Xavies*; but such as inhabit Part of the great *Atlas* are brave, and at continual War with the *Turks*. Another Sort of them dwell in the Countries of *Constantine* and *Tunis*, some in the Fields, and others dispers'd in Houses and Towns. The *Musmudi*, *Zeneti*, and *Zanhagi*, upon the Declension of the *Arabian* Empire, obtain'd the Sovereignty of *Barbary*, *Numidia*, and *Libya*, and set up Kings, being formerly govern'd only by the Heads of their Communities. The Kings of *Tunis* and *Tremisen* were descended of those Tribes, and continued in Possession till outed by the *Turks*. The *Gumeri* and *Haori*, tho' Masters of several Provinces, did never set up any Kings. *Marmol* says, there's another Sort of People call'd *Azagues* scatter'd over *Barbary* and *Numidia*. Some of them are Herdsmen, others live in Holes and Caves among the Mountains by Spinning and Weaving, and are Tributary to the *Arabians*. Others again are warlike, maintain their Liberty, and acknowledge no Superior. They claim as their chief Seat the Provinces of *Temefne* and *Fez*; but the stoutest of 'em are those who inhabit that Part of the Kingdom of *Tunis* which lies next to the *Dala* Country or *Biledulgerid*, and have had frequent War with the Kings of *Tunis*. *African* Authors say, these *Azagues* were *Phœnicians* expelled by *Joshua* the Son of *Nun*; and being deny'd a Settlement in *Egypt*, they pass'd on to *Libya*, where they built *Carthage* 1268 Years before Christ; and if we may believe those Historians, a long Time after that a great Stone was found with a *Punick* Inscription to this Purpose; *We fly hither from the Presence of that notorious Robber Joshua the Son of Nun*. But after the first Destruction

struction of Carthage, before it was rebuilt by Dido, these People retir'd to the W. of Barbary under the Conduct of Hanno, and built Cities there, where they still continu'd when the Romans invaded Africa; and some say, the Country had the Name of Mauritania, because they call'd themselves Mauri or Maurophori. They speak Arabick and the Language of the Berbers, reside chiefly in the Provinces of Tremixen and Fez, and drive a constant Trade to Lorbut on the Frontiers of Tunis. One of their Leaders having lately defeated the Governor of Constantina, who came to subdue them, he became one of the most powerful Sovereigns of Africa, is known at present by the Name of Cuco, and wages perpetual War with the Turks. These People pretend they were originally Christians, don't shave their Beards or cut their Hair, to distinguish themselves from the Mahometans, and make a blue Cross in their Hand or Cheek with an Iron, which they take for a Mark of their Original; but our Author says, this Custom took Rise from the Romans and Goths, who, when they reign'd in Barbary and Numidia, exempted the Christians from all Tribute, and order'd them to imprint a Cross in their Hand or Cheek, that the Collectors might know them. He adds, that the Axagues did so upon this Occasion, and continued the Profession of Christianity till the Arrival of the Arabians. Other Africans wore the like Mark, but in Process of Time chang'd it for other Figures, which serv'd only to denote the Antiquity and Nobility of their Extraction. The Arabian Girls also wear various blue Figures made with a Lancet in their Breasts, Hands, Arms, and Legs.

The Sabathæans that inhabit the Deserts of Inner Libya derive their Name from Zabatha the Son of Chus, who Peopled them, and are divided into the Zenegans or Zangans, the Guanesers or People of Zuenzigar, the Tergers or those of Tergoa, the Lempters, the Berdoans, all a poor Sort of People who live in Tents without Order, and inhabit the rough and barren Places on the Confines of Negroland, where they run about with their Camels like the Arabs, from whence the Grecians call them Nomades. The Zenegans or those of Senega live upon the West Coast, extending to Tegaza on the E. to Suu, Hachay, and Dara, on the N. and to Gua-

lata and Tombut on the S. The Guanesers extend from Tegaza on the W. to the Desert of Hair on the E. and from Segelmesse, Tebelbeled, and Benigoray, on the N. to the Kingdom of Guber on the S. The Tergers extend from Hair on the W. to Igul on the E. and from the Deserts of Agadez on the S. to that of Tuat and the Province of Tegerarin and Meszab on the N. The Lempters extend from Iguidi on the W. to Berdoa on the E. and from Cano in Negroland on the S. to Tecourt, Guergelau, and Gademis, on the N. Those of Berdoa live from thence to the Frontiers of Angela on the E. are bounded by the Deserts of Fez and Barca on the N. and by Bomo on the S. Some think that the Kings of Tombuto, Melli, and Agades, derive their Origine from the Senegars, and others from the Zanhagians above-mention'd. Our Author adds, that each of these Tribes has a Prince, and that they never quarrel about the Division of their Lands. Leo says, they have no good Manners, Learning, or Laws, nor do they care for the Company of learned Men; and a Man who would go to Law, must ride 5 or 6 Days before he meet with a Judge. They cover about Half their Body with a Piece of narrow coarse Cloth, and some of them wrap a Piece of black Cloth about their Heads like a Turbant, Part of which covers all their Face but the Eyes. The better Sort wear a blue Cotton Jacket with wide Sleeves. Their only Riding-Beasts are Camels, upon whose Necks they lay their Legs across, and sometimes they throw a Rope over it for Stirrups. They quicken their Pace with a Goad fasten'd to the End of a Truncheon of a Cubit's Length, and curb them with a Ring of Leather fasten'd to a Hole bor'd thro' the Gristles of their Noses. Their Beds are Mats of Sedge and Bulrushes, and their Tents are cover'd with coarse Camlet or rough Wool, which grows upon the Boughs of Date-Trees. Their only Food is Camel's Milk, and dry'd Flesh steep'd in Butter and Milk. They drink up a great Cup of the former for Breakfast, and take a Piece of the latter in their Fist for Supper. After which, they drink out of the Palms of their Hand the Broth wherein 'twas steep'd, in order, as they say, to promote Digestion, and then they drink a Cup of Milk. The better Sort remove the black Cloth

Cloth from their Faces when they put Meat into their Mouths, and immediately cover them again; for they pretend, that eating with an uncover'd Mouth is as undecent as Vomiting. During the Spring, while their Milk lasts, they never mind Water, so that some don't wash their Hands and Face; nor do their Camels drink Water so long as they feed on Grass. The People are always Hunting or Thieving, and change Pasture every three Days. Their Women are gross, swarthy, small Wasted, and fat about their Breasts, and so modest, that an Offer of more than a bare Kiss to them endangers a Man's Life. He adds, that they are very liberal. When any Travellers pass the Deserts, they neither repair to their Tents nor travel upon the Highway, because they would not incommode them. Every Caravan that passes these Deserts must pay to the Prince a Piece of Cloth worth a Ducat for each Camel's Load.

We shall give an Account of the Chief of the *Arabians* here.

Leo and *Marmol* say, That *Etheg*, the noblest Tribe of all their Subdivisions, was planted in *Duccala* and *Tedles* by *Almansor*. They were able to raise 100000 Men, and a great Part of them Horse, before they were invaded by the Kings of *Portugal* and *Fez*, and at last they became Slaves to the former, and were almost extirpated out of *Duccala*; but *Marmol* says, a Handful of them retired further into the Country under the Conduct of a *Cheriff*, who at last made himself Master of a Province, and at present all the Inhabitants of that and the neighbouring Provinces are his Vassals. The Tribe *Sumait* possesses Part of the *Libyan* Desert opposite to that of *Tripoli*, can raise 80000 Men, most Foot, and frequently invades *Barbary*. The Tribe *Sahid* possesses the *Libyan* Desert, is strictly allied with the King of *Guargula*, serves his Cities with Flesh, raises 150000 Men, most Foot, and live all Winter in the Deserts. The Tribe *Elmunlefig*, now *Elcaluth*, inhabits *Azgar*, raises 8000 Horse, and pays Tribute to the King of *Fez*. The Tribe of *Sobair* takes up great Part of *Numidia*, receives Pay of the King of *Tremesen*, and is able to raise 3000 Horse, besides many Camels. They live all Winter in the Deserts, and Part of them possess the Plain between *Sala* and *Mecnes*. They can

bring 4000 Horse into the Field, live on Husbandry, and pay an Annual Tribute to the King of *Fez*. The Tribe of *Benihemir* possesses the Frontiers of *Tremesen* and *Oran*, has 6000 Horse always in a readiness, takes Pay of the King of *Tremesen*, and scours the Deserts of *Tergorazius*. The Tribe of *Harva* are only savage Robbers. They have 2000 Horse on the Borders of *Mustuganim*, and never stir out of the Deserts. That of *Hucban* lives in the Neighbourhood of *Melin*, and takes Pay of the King of *Tunis*. They are inhumane Savages, and their Strength lies in 1500 Horse. That of *Habrum* is planted between *Oran* and *Mustuganim*, is Tributary to the King of *Tremesen*, and can scarce make 100 Horse. That of *Riech* lives in the Deserts of *Libya*, near *Constantina*, is a warlike Tribe, possesses ample Dominions in *Numidia*, has 5000 Horse at Command, and receives Pay of the King of *Tunis*. That of *Suaed* possesses the Desert adjoining to *Tenez*, is a warlike Tribe, and receives Pay of the King of *Tremesen*. *Elcheret*, a barbarous Tribe, possesses *Heliu* in the Plain of *Sahedim*, and commands Tribute from *Hea*. That of *Garfa* has no Governor, but lies dispersed among the other Tribes, and is employed in carrying Dates, &c. to and from *Segelmesse* and *Fez*. The Tribe of *Ruchen* possesses a small Desert between *Dedes* and *Forcala*, is poor, but can raise 8000 Foot, that are very swift. That of *Selim* has a great Jurisdiction on the River *Darha*, and Plenty of Camels. They are very rich, trade with *Tombuto*, and have always 3000 Horse in readiness. *Elhasi* upon the Sea-Coast near *Messa* does not raise above 500 Horse, and lives independant, except Part of them near *Azgara*, who are subject to the King of *Fez*, as is also *Chinai*, a warlike People, able to raise 2000 Horse. There's a poor Sort of Robbers call'd *Dulain*, that have neither Dominions nor Pay, but range among the People call'd *Zanhagi* in the Deserts of *Libya*, and send Cattle to *Dara* in Exchange for Dates. They have 4000 Horse and 6000 Foot, and are equally Strangers to Gallantry and Neatness in Apparel. *Burbun*, a numerous People, whose Riches consist in Camels, inhabit the *Libyan* Desert next to *Sus*, and command the City *Tesset*. The Tribe *Voden* possesses the Desert between *Guaden* and *Gualata*, is able to raise 60000

good Soldiers, (but very few Horse) commands the *Juadenites*, and puts the Duke of *Gaalata* under Tribute. *Racmen* inhabits the Desert near *Hacha*, has rich Possessions, and above 12000 Men fit for Arms, but few Horses. They commonly travel every Spring to *Jesset*, where they have Business. *Ham-rum* in the Deserts of *Tagarvost* raises above 8000 Men, invade the People of *Non*, and put their other Neighbours under Contribution. The Tribe of *Deheucrum* in the Desert, opposite to *Segelmesse*, put *Segelmesse*, *Tod-gatan*, *Terbelbelt*, and *Dara*, under Contribution, and bring into the Field 3000 gallant Horsemen. They have Plenty enough of Dates to maintain them. That of *Menebbe* in the same Desert is a valiant Nation, able to raise 2000 Horse, commands the Provinces of *Metgara* and *Retebbe*, and receives Tribute of *Segelmesse*. That of *Husein* possesses divers Castles and rich Cities on the Mountains of *Atlas*, which 'tis thought were given them by the Viceroy of the *Marini*, in Consideration of their Services. Our Author says, they are a rich, honest, Sort of People, able to raise 6000 Horse, and use many other *Arabians* for Servants. The Tribe of *Gharrag* lives upon Robbery in the Deserts of *Benigomi* and *Tighig*. They are Stipendaries to the King of *Tremesen*, and able to raise 4000 Horse. That of *Herdeg*, in the Desert of *Haugad* near *Tremesen*, live also on Robbery, is able to raise 500 Horse, but has no Jurisdiction or Pay from any Prince. That of *Teleb*, which consists of 3000 good Horse, inhabits the Plain of *Algezzer*, were Masters of *Algiers* and *Tedellés*, till *Barbarossa* the Turk dispossessed them, and cut off the Heads of their Leaders. We have already observed, that two of the chief Tribes being originally of *Arabia Deserta*, derive themselves from the *Ishmaelites*. But our Author says, that tho' they have the Preference on that Account from the *Mahometans*, yet several Things have been writ to prove that they are not originally of that Stock. He adds, that the ancient *Arabians*, before the Time of the *Ishmaelites*, were called by their Historians *Arabi Arabia*, i. e. *Arabians* of *Arabia*; but the *Ishmaelites* were called *Arabi Mus Araba*, i. e. *Arabians* engrafted in *Arabia*, to denote that they were born and bred elsewhere. Those which came after them to *Africa* were called *Bar-*

barous Arabians, because they join'd with Strangers, and corrupted both their Language and Morals. Those who are seated betwixt *Libya* and *Numidia* are valiant, but poor. They commonly exchange Camels in *Negroland*, and have Plenty of those we call *Barbary Horses*. They love to hunt Deer, Wild Asses, Ostriches, &c. and those who inhabit *Numidia* are good Rhimers, and set their Poems to their Tabors, Lutes, and Violins; so that they sing, play, and compose, all at once. They are naturally generous, but dare not shew it for fear of Exactions, to which they are expos'd. Some of 'em study Natural Philosophy and Eloquence. Their Country borders upon *Biledulgerid*, and was formerly possessed by the *Gatuli* and *Numidians*, whom they forced to fly to the Frontiers of *Negroland*. The *Arabians* between Mount *Atlas* and the *Mediterranean* are wealthier, their Horse-Meat, Clothes, and Tents, better, and their Horses handsomer and fatter, but not so swift. They have Plenty of Corn, and such innumerable Flocks of Cattle, that they have scarce Pasture-room. They are more barbarous and less generous than the former, yet entertain Strangers gratis. The *Arabians* who inhabit the Deserts on the Borders of *Tremesen* and *Tunis* are more noble and genteel than the rest. The King of *Tunis* pays great Sums every Year to their Governors, who distribute the same among the People, to entertain them in his Service. They are dextrous in making Tents and breeding Horses. They lie in the Deserts all Winter, hunt and hawk in the Spring, and in the Summer approach *Tunis* for their Pay, and to buy Necessaries. Our Author says, he has seen in their Tents greater Quantities of Cloth, Brass, Iron, and Copper, than can be matched in the richest Warehouses of some Cities. They seem to be civil, but are cunning Pilferers. Their Language is pure and elegant, as is also their Poetry, in which they take great Delight, and are encourag'd to it by their Governors. Their Women are gorgeously attir'd. They wear black Linen Gowns with wide Sleeves, over which they sometimes cast a Mantle of the same Colour or of Blue, the Corners being fasten'd about their Shoulders with a Silver Clasp. They have Ear-Rings for most Part of Silver, besides

sides many upon their Fingers, and Scarves or Rings about their Arms and Ankles. They always wear Masks, except before their Relations. They go to the Wars with their Husbands, in order to encourage 'em, and ride upon Camels with Wicker or Tin Saddles. The Maids paint their Faces, Breasts, Arms, Fingers, and Legs, with blue Spots made by Vitriol, and the Point of a Lancet. The married Women sometimes compound Hen's Dung or Gall-Nuts and Saffron to paint a black round Spot in their Cheeks, a Triangle upon their Eyebrows, and the Form of an Olive-Leaf upon their Chins. These Ornaments are highly esteem'd by the *Arabian* Poets, and reckon'd Incentives to Venery; so that the Women when thus painted are seen only by their Husbands and Children. The *Arabians* inhabiting the barren Deserts between *Barbary* and *Egypt* are very poor, tho' populous. They have little or no Fodder, and exchange their Camels and other Cattle for Dates and Corn, tho' in some Villages they have Plenty of Dates of their Town. They go to *Sicily* to buy Corn; and if their Money falls short, leave their Sons in Pawn, many of which turn Christians; and if the Money be not paid on the Day prefix'd, the *Sicilians* claim them for Slaves, and put a Ransom upon them, which amounts to three or four times the Debt. For this Reason these People strip all the Strangers they meet, and sell them to the *Sicilians* for Corn. When they suspect that they have swallow'd their Gold to hide it from them, they pour warm Milk down their Throats, and hang them up by the Heels to make 'em vomit it up; so that the Merchants who traffick to *Africa* are obliged to keep above 500 of them in Pay as a Guard against the rest, especially towards the Coast.

Peter Dan, in his Journey to *Barbary* in 1633, says, they abhor Labour, and think themselves as happy in their Poverty as others in their Wealth. They constantly wander up and down, and where they design to stay, they pitch their Huts close together in several Divisions. They have also Barracks that look like Pavillions, supported by two great Poles, with a Door of Branches of Trees, and an empty Space in the Middle. The Men go bare-footed and bare-legged, wear a kind of Sash about their

Heads, hanging down before and behind, and about their Bodies a Remnant of 4 or 5 Yards of Cloth, which they cast over their Shoulder and under the Arms. The Women go naked, except a Piece of Cloth which hangs down from their Breast to the Knees. They tie up their Hair, adorn it with Fishes Teeth, Coral or Glass, and wear a fine Hair-Cloth or Lawn over it, that it may be seen. They pounce their Foreheads, Cheeks, Thumbs, and Calves of their Legs, with the Point of a Needle, and strow black Powder on the Marks to make them lasting. They wear Wooden Rings on their Fingers. Their Kitchen Furniture consists in one or two Earthen Pots, and their Food is Rice, Cakes, and Cuscous, with a little Milk. They drink Water, wash their Right Hands, but never any Part else, and sit cross-legged on the Ground on Mats of Date-Leaves, without either Cups or Napkins. Every Family carries a Quern made of two Stones, which they turn about with a Stick to grind their Corn. They bake Bread once a Day in flat Loaves under the Embers, and eat it hot. They abhor Riot and Luxury, and have but one Dish at a time. They are very healthful, and live usually to 80 and upward. When they come into Cities, they love to be presented with a Dish of Oil and Vinegar, in which they soak Pieces of warm Bread, and eat them. Every wandering Company chuses a Captain, whose Barrack or Tent stands in the Middle. Their Arms are a Half-Pike or Javelin, with which they hit their Adversaries at a great Distance. They have a broad Dagger, which they wear in a Sheath on the Right Arm, and are so good Horsemen, that they can take up any thing from the Ground at full Speed. When they visit an Equal, they salute one another upon the Cheek; but if a Commander, they kiss their Hands, enquire of the Health and Welfare of their Family, and all that belongs to 'em, not excepting their Horses, Cattle, Dogs, Hens, and Cats. They esteem their Dogs because they defend their Poultry from Foxes, &c. and give Notice of the Approach of Lions by their Barking. They are fond of Cats because they keep the Rats and Mice from their Viſtuals, and guard their Persons against Vipers, which abound here. When a young Man courts a Woman, his

Father

Father gives him some Oxen and Cows, which he drives to the House of his intended Father-in-Law, who immediately acquaints his Daughter that such a Man must be her Husband. Upon this, she puts on a white Garment, and receives him in her Tent, where he tells her how much he loves her, and how dear she has cost him. To which she replies, That a discreet and virtuous Wife is a valuable Purchase. She remains for a while veil'd in her Father's Tent, where she is visited by all the neighbouring Maids, with whom she rides to her Bridegroom's Tent, where she is received by other Women, with his Mother and Friends. They offer the Bridegroom Drink, wherein a Piece of the Tent Wood is soak'd, with Joy to the new-married Couple, and that God may so bless their Marriage, that their Cattle may increase, and their Milk flow to the Top of the Pavillion. When they alight, they give the Bride a sharp Rod, which she sticks into the Ground, to intimate, that as that cannot come out of the Earth, unless pulled, so a Woman must not leave her Husband unless she be divorced or driven away. Then they set her to keep the Cattle, to signify that from thenceforth she must work and mind her Household Affairs. She wears a Mask, and does not go abroad for a Month after Marriage. He adds, that when a Person dies, the next Neighbour goes out of the Tent, and makes a dreadful Howling, which is a Summons for the rest to join in the doleful Consort; and after some Eulogies in his Praise, they carry him to the Grave like the *Mahomeseans*.

The Western *Arabians* about *Fez* and *Morocco* commonly carry Beech Spears about 25 Hands long, for they have none of Ash but what come from *Europe*, and are sold for 20 Crowns apiece. Their Bucklers are of Buff, with which they are well stor'd. Their Kings delight in Magazines of Arms, where they lay up Coats of Armour and Head-Pieces. They have no good Steel, nor Water fit to temper it, so that their Swords are brought from *Europe*, and sold dear. Some of their Horsemen wear Cross-Bows, and manage them dextrously. They don't affect Cannon or other Fire-Arms. When they go upon a Skirmish, they take off their Saddles; but otherwise, ride with

Stirrups tuck'd up to the Skirts of them. They affect rich Harness and Trappings. Some of their Horsemen carry 6 or 7 Javelins, with which they can hit small Marks at 40 Paces Distance, and turn their Horses with wonderful Speed. Those who live towards the E. from the Kingdom of *Tremixen* to the Deserts of *Barca*, carry Pikes about 40 or 50 Hands long, which are steel'd at both Ends for pushing backwards or forwards, and they are most dangerous when they retreat, for then one of them will keep off 12 Horsemen upon a Plain, lay their Pike upon the Left Arm, and dart it back unexpectedly upon their Pursuers. The heaviest, which they reckon the best Pikes, are made of a black, firm, weighty Wood, brought from the Deserts of *Lybia*. These Pikemen carry no Bucklers. Head-Pieces and Coats of Armour are only us'd by Spear-men, and some of them carry Cross-Bows, and seldom use Fire-Arms, but to terrify the wild *Arabs*, who fly from the Report like Wild-Fowl. They commonly fight on Horseback, dispers'd into several Bodies, charge their Enemy from different Quarters, and retire or advance with incredible Celerity. When they engage with Christians, they aim chiefly at their Horses. *African* Authors of the best Note, says *Marmol*, affirm, That *Barbary* and *Numidia* were first Peopled by 5 Colonies of *Sabeans*, who came hither with *Melec-Ifriqui*, a Prince of *Arabia Felix*, from whom 600 Families of *Berebers*, and the greatest Families of *Africa*, derive their Origine. They first inhabited the E. Parts of *Barbary*, and were therefore called *Berebers*, which Name they retain'd, tho' dispers'd over all *Africa*, while the others were called *Chilobes*. These 5 Tribes liv'd first in Tents, till they went to War with one another, when those who were robbed of their Flocks fled from the Plains to the Mountains, where they mixed with the ancient *Africans*, *Getulians*, and *Chilobeans*, and built themselves Houses. Our Author says, those who remain in the Fields are most rich and powerful, but both equally zealous in keeping up their ancient Customs, celebrating the Honour of their Original, and speak the same Tongue, which is that of *Abimalick*, the suppos'd Inventer of the *Arabian* Letters. They also use the *African* Speech different from the other, and mix'd with

with many *Arabian* Words. So much for the *Whites*. We shall treat of the *Blacks* when we come to *Guinea*, *Negroland*, and the *Cape of Good Hope*, where they inhabit.

Leo says, there are other Kingdoms on the S. Frontiers of this Country which are inhabited by a rich, industrious, and just Sort of People. *Judaism* was the Religion of the ancient *Africans* for a long Time, and succeeded by Christianity; but *Mahometanism* prevail'd in the 208th Year of the *Hegyra*, when all the *Jews*, Christians, and Professors of the *African* Religion that could be found, were put to Death; yet in Process of Time their intestine Quarrels made them neglect *Mahomet's* Law, and revolt from the Caliph of *Bagdat*, for which they were severely punish'd by the *Mahometan* Caliphs, who caus'd all their Books to be burnt, on Suspicion that the Knowledge of the Arts and Sciences prompted them to condemn *Mahomet's* Law. The *Africans* on the Coast are still very gross Idolaters. *Marmol* says, That those of *Barbary* continu'd to worship the Sun and Fire, till the Year 349, when they were converted to Christianity. Some of the Negroes of *Lower Ethiopia* worshipped the Sun, Moon or Stars; others Water, Fire, or the first living Thing they met when they went abroad. Those of *Upper Ethiopia* worshipped the Lord of Heaven before the Queen of *Sheba* went to *Solomon* to be instructed in the Law of *Moses* and the Prophets, when they embrac'd *Judaism*, as did also some of the Inhabitants of *Lower Ethiopia*, who continu'd in it till they were taught Christianity by the Queen of *Camdace's* Eunuch, who was baptiz'd by *Philip*. In 1067, *Mahometanism* came into the Inland Parts of *Lower Ethiopia* with *Abubequer's* Son, who invaded them; but those on the Coast continu'd in their Idolatry, except a few who have been converted by the *Portuguese* since they sail'd to those Parts. The *Egyptians* were first Idolaters, then Christians and *Monothelites*, and afterwards most of 'em turn'd *Mahometans*. There are in *Africa* some *Armenians*, *Maronists*, *Georgians*, *Thomysts*, and *Grecians*. The first acknowledge the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, the last him of *Constantinople*, and the rest have their particular Prelates.

Leo says, the *Arabians* of *Barbary*, who live upon the *Mediterranean* Coast, formerly

study'd the *Mathematicks*, *Philosophy*, and *Astrology*, till about 400 Years before his Time, when those Arts were quite suppress'd by the Chief Professors of their Law and Religion. They go frequently to Church to repeat some formal Prayers, and think it unlawful to wash some of their Members that Day, tho' at other Times they wash their whole Bodies. They are very ingenious in *Mathematical* Inventions and Building. He vindicates them from the Charge of Fraud, says they are very honest and sincere, and will die rather than break their Promise; yet they are covetous, ambitious, and so extremely jealous, that they'll lose their Lives rather than suffer an Affront upon the Score of their Women. They travel all over the World, trade in *Egypt*, *Arabia*, *Ethiopia*, *Persia*, *India*, and *Turkey*, and are universally esteem'd, because they never follow any Art which they are not Masters of. They abhor Bawdy and indecent Expressions, and will not suffer a Youth to speak or hear of Love Matters, especially in the Presence of Superiors.

The present Christians in *Africa* are partly Strangers, and partly Natives, some of them Slaves to the *Turks* and *Barbarians*, and others free. Some of the *Jews* who inhabit both Sides the *Niger* derive themselves from *Abraham*. Others fled hither from *Asia* when *Vespasian* destroy'd *Jerusalem*, or from *Judea* when 'twas wasted by the *Romans*, *Persians*, *Saracens*, and Christians. Some were banish'd from *Italy* in 1342, from *Spain* in 1462, from the *Low Countries* in 1350, from *France* in 1403, and from *England* in 1422. These all differ in Habit, and are divided into several wealthy and numerous Tribes, but have no Dominion, are despis'd of all Nations, and so abominated by the *Turks*, that they are not admitted to be *Mahometans* unless first baptiz'd, and then made use of only to receive their Customs, and gather in their Taxes. The *Cassers* are a Sort of Libertines who inhabit from *Mosambique* to the *Cape of Good Hope*, live promiscuously without Ceremonies like our *Adamites*, and wallow in Lust and Sensuality.

Marmol divides *Africa* into 5 Provinces, viz. *Barbary*, *Biledulgerid*, *Sahara*, *Lower Ethiopia*, *Egypt*, and *Upper Ethiopia*. *Leo Africanus*, who was their most eminent Author, the greatest Traveller in his native Country, and

and wrote about 1526, says, that he had been thro' all *Africa*, and divides it into no more than 4 Provinces, as *Barbary*, *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid*, *Libya*, and *Negroland*. The *Sansons* divides it into 12 Parts, viz. *Egypt*, *Nubia*, *Abyssinia*, *Zanguebar*, *Monomotapa*, *Cassaria*, *Congo*, *Guinea*, *Nigritia* or *Negroland*, *Sarra*, *Biledulgerid*, and *Barbary*, to which they add the Islands over against *Africa* in the *Ethiopian* and *Atlantick* Ocean. *Luyts* divides it into no more than 7, viz. *Egypt*, *Ethiopia*, *Guinea*, *Nigritia* or *Negroland*, *Sarra*, *Biledulgerid*, and *Barbary*: But the most common Division of this Country, according to the latest Geographers, is into these 7 Parts, viz. *Egypt*, *Barbary*, *Biledulgerid*, *Sarra*, *Negroland*, *Inner* or *Upper Ethiopia* or *Prester John's* Country, and the *Outward* or *Nether Ethiopia*.

Leo and *Marmol* bound Modern *Africa* thus: From the Great *Atlas* you pass to the City *Messa* in the Province of *Sus*, then to Capes *Aguer* and *Non*; next to the River *Senega*, which separates the *Whites* from the *Blacks*; then thro' *Genea* and the Province of *Jalofes* along the Ocean to *Mosala*, inhabited by the *Berbers*, thro' which there runs a great River that falls into the Sea by two Mouths, and is navigable far up the Country. Next comes *Gambu*, which has a River navigable for 300 Leagues; then *Casamansa* and *Papais*, water'd by a great River call'd the *Islettes* from two little Islands in its Mouth; then the Province of *Biafar*, where *Rio Grande*, the greatest River in

Africk, falls into the Sea, after receiving several other navigable Rivers. Next lies *Cocolis* to the *Vagues*, another navigable River; then comes *Sape*, with the two great Rivers *Caluz* and *Caceres*, where those of the *Canaries* trade with the *Negroes*. Next the Rivers *Marive* and *Sieragliona*, and beyond that the *Gold Coast*, where the *Portuguese* have a Fort to secure their Trade. Next lies the Coast of *Malagette* to the Kingdom of *Maniconge*, where the *Zayre*, enlarg'd by 6 other great Rivers, falls into the Sea. From hence to the Cape of *Good Hope* there are great Deserts, and the two Capes *Negro* and *Peron*. Beyond this lies the Coast of *Zanguebar*, with several Capes and Rivers: Next the Province of *Alogoa*; then *Sofala*, a long Province, inclos'd by the Branches of the River *Zambere*: Next the Kingdom of *Angos* and Cape *Verd*: Next *Mosambique*, the Provinces of *Quiloa*, *Mombaze*, and *Melind*, where the great River *Obii* falls into the Sea. Next are *Magadochxo*, *Aden*, *Adel*, and Cape *Guardafu*, the Eastermost Point of *Africa*. Beyond these the Province of *Debas* and the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, from whence the *Abyssinian* Coast reaches to *Suez*, the Boundary of *Egypt* on that Side. Then we cross the Isthmus of 16 Leagues, enter the *Mediterranean* by the *Nile*, and come up the Coasts to the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and entering the Ocean, advance to *Morocco* and the City of *Messa*, where we began.



The East Part of
BARBARY
Containing Tunis. Tripoli. Barca.
Egypt. Nubia. Part of Biledul-
gerid and Zaara or Desart. By
Herman Moll Geographer.
60 120 180 240 300
Miles of Great Britain

It is said that in this Country
are to be seen y Ruins of many
Christian Churches.

[Faint, illegible handwritten text, likely bleed-through from the reverse side of the page.]



C H A P. III.

E G Y P T.

Sanfon and Luyts's TABLE of EGYPT.

E G Y P T divided into 4 Parts.	Lower Egypt, in which are,	{ On the East,	Mitgamir, Mansoura, Damietta or Damiette, Tanis or Tanes, Semennut, Elmala, Bourles.
		{ On the West,	Rosetto or Rosette, Boehir, Alex- andria or Alexandrie, Tfeni, Motubis, Teirut, Sindiun, Fu- va.
	Middle Egypt, containing,	{ On the West of the River Nile,	Memphis, Giza or Gize, Fium, Arsinoe or Medinet-Fares.
		{ On the East of the Nile,	Bulak, Old Cairo or Caire, New or Grand Cairo or Caire, the Capital of Egypt, Emelcose- na or Emelcocena.
	Upper Egypt, in which are,	{ On the West of the Nile,	Benisuef, Munia, Manselout or Manflota, Said, Girgio, Bar- banda, Asua.
		{ On the East of the Nile,	Asuan or Asuana, Chana, Mi- nio, Ichmin, Almona.
	The Coasts of the Red Sea, wherein are,	{ On the N.	Suez, Elmena, Grondel or Gron- dol, Axirut.
		{ On the S.	Fabelezait, Hihelzeir, Libeli- zaita, Suguan, Dacati, Cos- sir, San, Zibith, Buga.

E G Y P T.

LEO and Marmol say, the *Arabians* call it *Bardamasser* and *Mezra*; the *Jews*, *Mezraim*; and the *Natives*, *Elxuybet*, *Chibili*, *Chibet*, or *Chibith*, who they say was the first Man that built Houses, and establish'd a Government here. *Gemeili* says, the *Christians*

of the Country call it *Massir*; the *Turks*, *Misfir*; and the *Jews*, *Eretsmisraim*. The most common Opinion is, that 'twas called *Egyptus* or *Egypt* from their first King, the Brother of *Danau*, and Son of *Zeth* or *Zepheus*, or (as others say) of *Belus* King of *Assyria*. 'Twas also called *Chamie* from *Cham*, *Noah's* Son. Others say, That before it had the Name of *Egypt*, 'twas called *Nilea*, from the River *Nilus*, whose ancient Name they

say was *Egyptus*; *Aeria*, from the Serenity of its Air; and *Ossirina* and *Siria*, from their God *Osiris*. *Berosus* calls it *Oceania*, from *Oceanus*; *Xenophon*, *Ogygia*, from *Ogyges*, an Egyptian King; *Herodotus*, *Putamitis* or River-Land, from the Nile; *Lucian*, *Μελαμ. 30α* Ⓞ, from the Darkness of the Soil; *Homer*, *Hefestia*, from *Hefestes* or *Vulcan*; and other Writers, *Ethiopia*. *Reiskius* says, the *Ethiopians* call it *Gobso*. *Ogilby* says, the *Turks* call it *El-Kebit* or Cover'd Land; the *Chaldeans*, *Mesrai*; the *Affyrians*, *Misri*; the *Moors*, *Gabara* and *Mesra*; and the *Romans*, *Augustanica*, from *Augustus Cæsar*. The latter *Affyrians* call the *Egyptians*, *Egyptes*; and the *Mahometans* call the *Christians* there *Elhibit* and *El Cupti* or *Cupti*; but the *Moors* call them *Giptu* or *Gibitu*, and the *Egyptians* call one another *Chioth*. The *Italians* and *Spaniards* call it *l'Egitto*, and the *Germans* *Egypten*. *Luyts* makes it an oblong Square, between the 22d and 32d Deg. of N. Lat. and extends it 7 Deg. from E. to W. in the S. Part where broadest. He bounds it on the E. with the *Red Sea*, *Arabia Petraea*, and the *Holy Land*; on the N. with the Mouths of the Nile and the *Egyptian Sea*; on the W. with the Kingdom and Desert of *Barra*, which is the Easternmost Part of *Barbary*; and on the S. with *Nubia* and *Upper Ethiopia*. *Marmol* and the *Sansons* agree with *Luyts* in its Position and Boundaries, but make the N. Part much broader than the S. The latter extend it above 200 Leagues in Length from the Cataracts to the Mouths of the Nile, but scarce half as much in Breadth. The *Nubian Geographer* bounds it on the N. with the Sea of *Damascus*, and on the W. by *Aluabat* or *Elfocat*, and extends it from *Asuan* to the *Mediterranean*, 25 Days Journey or 655 Miles, and 8 Days Journey or 200 Miles in Breadth. *Cluverius* makes it 150 German Miles from the *Pelusian Mouth* of the Nile to *Catabathmus*, and 100 broad from the former to *Conza*. *Coppin* bounds it on the S. with the Deserts of *Bulgia*, extends it almost 500 Miles from N. to S. and 160 along the *Mediterranean*. He says, the Deserts of *Arabia* on the E. reach along the *Red Sea* for 8 Days Journey. *Leo* makes it 450 Miles in Length, but 50 from E. to W. and narrower towards the S. *Marmol* extends it to the Frontiers of *Gaza* and *Syria* on the E. where he bounds it with the Mountains of *Arabia*,

and to the Deserts of *Barca*, *Marmarica*, and *Inner Libya*, on the W. where he bounds it with the *Punick* or *African Mountains*. He makes it 150 French Leagues in Length, and 26 Spanish Miles in Breadth. *Mr. Sandys* makes it 560 Miles from N. to S. and 140 at the N. End in Breadth, but so enclos'd with Mountains on both Sides for a long Tract towards the S. that in many Places 'tis scarce 4, and in few above 8 Miles broad. *Maginus* and *Marmol* place the *Libyan Mountains* and Deserts of *Barca* and *Nubia* on the W. The former makes it 560 Miles in Length. *Ogilby* extends this Country from Lat. 21. to 31. from whence some have computed it 15 Days Journey in Length, and but 3 in Breadth. Others make the Length 400 Italian Miles. *Moll* places it betwixt Lat. 20. and 31 $\frac{1}{2}$. and betwixt Long. 47 and 52 on the N. and Long. 52 and 57 on the S. the Position being from S. E. to N. W. By his Scale, he makes the Length about 725 Miles, the greatest Breadth on the N. 240, and on the S. 220, but its Breadth varies.

The *Sansons* say, Modern *Egypt* is divided into 12 chief *Cassiliffs* or Governments, 5 of which answer to *Upper Egypt*, viz. *Girgio*, *Manfelout*, and *Ebensuef*, on the Left Side of the Nile, and *Minio* and *Cherkeffi* on the Right; two with the Territory of *Cairo* to *Middle Egypt*, viz. the *Cassiliffs* of *Fium* and *Giza* on the Left, and *Cairo* with its Territory on the Right Side of the Nile: Four others to *Lower Egypt*, viz. *Mansoura*, *Garbia*, *Menoufia*, *Callioubek*, with *Alexandria* and its Territory. Lastly, the *Cassiliff* of *Bouhera* is without the Limits of ancient and true *Egypt*, and in *Libya* or the Kingdom of *Barca*. *Jaques Albert* reckons 13 of these *Cassiliffs*, viz. *Girgio* or *Sahid*, *Manfelout*, *Benekief*, *Fiam*, *Gize*, *Bouhera* or *Baera*, on the W. of the Nile, and *Garbia*, *Menoufia*, *Mansoura*, *Kallioubek*, *Minio*, *Cherkeffi*, and *Kattia*, on the E. Side. *Leo* divides this Country into 3 Parts, viz. *Erriff*, extending from *Cairo* to *Rosetto*; *Sahid*, extending from *Cairo* to the Land of the *Bugias*; and *Maremma* or *Bechria*, which lies upon the Branch of the Nile that washes *Damiata* and *Tenesse*. *Gemelli* divides it into 3 Parts, viz. *Babri* or the *Lower Egypt*, from the Sea to *Cairo*; *Middle Egypt*, from that City to *Giza*; and *Upper Egypt*, whose chief City is *Asua* on the Banks of the

the Nile. *Luyts* divides it into 4 Parts, according to our Table, viz. the *Lower, Middle, and Upper Egypt*, and the Coast of the *Red Sea*, which Division we propose to follow when we come to the particular Geography.

The AIR and CLIMATE.

Gemelli says, their Seasons are 3 Months before ours, and that they have ripe Figs and Grapes by the Beginning of *June*, reap their Corn in *April*, and thresh it immediately; that the Air is unhealthy because of the great Heats, and the Vapours which arise from the overflowing of the Nile. *Leo* says, it rains here but seldom. The Sun is so unsufferably hot in Summer, that no Man could live there, if they did not build high Towers opposite to their Houses, which being open at Top and Bottom, draw down a Wind, which refreshes the Air. *Coppin* says, That when he was there in *December*, which is the Height of their Winter, it rain'd but twice, and very little at a time. *Ogilby* says, when the Sun casts its Beams perpendicularly from the Tropick of *Cancer*, which crosses Part of this Country, the Heat is so violent, that the People thereabouts live in Caves under Ground. The Heat is something moderated when the Nile overflows, and by continual cool N. Winds. In Winter 'tis hot and dry, sometimes a little cool, but generally very hot, which extremely affects the Head. It is cool at Night, so that the Inequality of the Air breeds many Diseases. He adds, that the Weather is temperate. They have two Summers every Year, but he is not distinct either as to the Beginning of their Spring or their first Summer, which he says is unhealthful, and continues to the Middle of *June*, when the 2d begins, and lasts till *September*. This is call'd the Healthy Summer. He makes their Harvest in *September* and *October*, contrary to *Gemelli*, as above-mentioned. He begins their Winter in *December*, and continues it to *March* or *April*: Then succeeds the Spring. He says, that during the first Summer, they have hot and tedious Winds, which they name *Campsien*, from *Camps* a General, who in that Season was overwhelmed with his Ar-

my by Sand in the Deserts of *Africa*. He says, the S. Winds are then so tempestuous, that for 3 to 9 Days together the Air is sometimes so darken'd with Clouds of Sand, that there's no seeing the Sun. This occasions many mortal Distempers, and terribly affects the Eyes, for the Winds drive up Flakes of scorching Sand, which look in the Air like Flames. He adds, that while these Winds rage, the People abhor Food, and burn with Thirst, which is not to be quenched but by the Water of the Nile. Strangers retire to Places under Ground, where they continue till the cool Winds rise from the *Mediterranean*. During the 2d Summer, the Air is cool'd by those N. Winds and the Inundations of the Nile; and the Alterations of the Air not being sudden, but gradual, occasions this Season to be healthy. *Luyts* says, That Mists and Dews are frequent in *December, January, and February*, without which the Plants and Animals could not subsist; but that they have seldom Lightning or Thunder.

The SOIL and PRODUCT.

LEO says, That *Egypt* in general is plain and fertile, adorn'd with pleasant Greens and Meadows; and other ancient Authors are of Opinion, that the whole Country was once cover'd by the Sea, which retiring by Degrees, the Mud brought down by the Inundations of the Nile formed the Soil of *Egypt*. They think their Conjecture supported by the Difference of the Soil from that of all other Parts of *Africa*, and the neighbouring Countries of *Arabia* and *Syria*; the Soil of *Egypt* being fat, black, and heavy, whereas that of the other Parts of *Africa* is red and light, that of *Arabia* stony and white, and that of *Syria* brittle and dusty. They are the more confirmed in this Opinion, because on the Top of the highest Mountains over against *Cairo* there's Sand and Oyster-Shells among the Rocks; and they suppose that the Country below *Memphis* was overflow'd by the *Mediterranean*, and that near the *Arabian Gulph* by the *Red Sea*. Mr. *Sandys* says, the Soil is so incredibly fruitful, that it was formerly reputed the Granary of the World, and the Roman Empire

Empire could not have subsisted without it. He adds, That their chief Product is Sugar, Flax, Rice, all Sorts of Corn, Linen, Cloth, Hides, Salt, Buttargo, and Cassia. They have no Wine, and but few Trees except in Orchards, and the Palm-Trees which grow in the Deserts, and are very serviceable to them. Their Dates are not ripe till about the End of *December*, and are only produc'd, says our Author, by the Female Palms, which incline with their Top to the Males, and mix their Seeds, which both grow in little Cods. The *Egyptians* sow them carefully in the Spring, and our Author says, the Females don't bear except they grow by a Male. They open the Tops of such as are barren, and from thence take a white Pith, which resembles an Artichoke in Taste, but is much better. Of the Branches they make Bedsteads and other Utensils. Of the Leaves they make Mats, Fans, Baskets, &c. Of the outward Husk of the Cod they make Cordage, and of the inner, Brushes; all of which they take off Yearly without Damage to the Tree. They have no great Quantity of Wood, but enough for their own Use. *Gemelli* says, all *European* Fruits are here in greater Perfection than with us, especially Pears, Pomegranates, and Apples. *Ogilby* says, they drown their Gardens and Orchards so much by the Inundations of the *Nile*, that their Pot-Herbs and Sallads are more waterish than ours. The Soil, he says, is in some Places so fat, that they are forced to mix Sand with it. Among their Plants unknown to us, *Alpinus de Plantis Egypt.* mentions, 1. The *Datura* or *Tatura*, a Sort of Night-Shadow. *Dodoneus* calls it *Strammone*. It has a long, thick, and bushy Root, of a very unpleasant Smell, the Stalk round, about 4 or 5 Cubits high, with several Branches, on which are brown Leaves deeply indented, the Blossom sweet-scented and pleasant to the Eye. The Fruit is roundish, and inclos'd in a prickly Shell full of yellow Seeds, which stupify those that eat them, and are therefore mix'd with Bread and Wine by the *Egyptian* Highway-men, who insinuate themselves among Merchants on purpose to rob them, and the Strumpets do the like when they would rattle those that debauch them. The Blossom is said to have the same Effect. 2. *Colocasia* or *Culeas*. This

Plant abounds in *Egypt*, where they have large Fields of it. It provokes Venery eaten boil'd or raw, and never bears Blossoms, Fruit or Stalks, in *Egypt*, tho' it does in *Italy*, which is ascrib'd to the Soil of *Egypt*'s being too fat. 3. *Sebesten* Trees of two Sorts, one they have in Gardens, and the other wild. The Fruit of both resemble *Damascens*; but that of the Garden Tree is largest and best. The Decoction is good against Coughs, Ruptures, Pleuritic Stitches, all Distempers of the Breast and Lungs, and Agues. The Juice of the Fruit which hangs upon the Tree is us'd for Bird-lime, and in Plaisters against hard Swellings. 4. *Cassia Fistula*. It grows in marshy Places near the Sea, somewhat resembles a Nut-Tree, but fuller of Leaves. The Blossoms are like the Primrose, and smell very fine, especially in the Morning, so that the *Egyptians* love to walk under their Shade. The Strings which hang from the Middle of the Blossoms grow into hollow Pipes, whence it has the Name of *Fistula*. Some of them are ripe, and others green all the Year. The Reddish is the best; and to preserve them from falling, they tie them with Strings. The Juice of those Pipes given in Potions is us'd to purge Phlegm and Choler, and to cleanse the Blood. Mix'd with fine Sugar, and taken inwardly, 'tis given against Diseases in the Reins and Bladder, and is applied in Plaisters against the Gout and Pains of the Limbs. The Blossoms candy'd with Sugar, or the green Pipes first boil'd in Water, dry'd in the Shade, and laid in Sugar or Honey, are a powerful Remedy against the Heat of the Kidneys and Slime in the Ureters. 5. *El-hanne* or *Alcanna*, grows with many Branches. The Leaves are green like an Olive, but short, and somewhat broad, the Blossoms like those of Elder, and us'd by the Women in Baths. A Decoction of the Leaves prevents the falling off of Hair, and drives away Vermin. The Women paint their Nails in Form of a Semi-circle with the Juice of the Leaves and Branches, which continues long, and make a Gold Colour of the Powder of the Leaves mix'd with Water to paint their Hands and Feet. 6. *Lablab*, spreads with many Branches like a Vine, but is like the *Roman* Bean in Leaves, Blossom, and Form. In Lent and Harvest it bears long

and broad Husks, which contain reddish Beans streak'd with Black and Brown. It many times lasts 100 Years without any sensible Decay, and has green Leaves all the Year. The Beans are eaten by the *Egyptians*, and as good as those of *Europe*. The Women drink the Decoction of them for their Months, and 'tis good against the Cough and Retention of Urine. 7. *Melochia*, a Cubit high, with small Twigs, the Leaves like those of a Beet, but smaller, long, and sharp pointed, the Blossoms small, and of a Saffron Colour, the Seeds black, and grow in a Husk like a Horn. They are us'd to prevent Swooning Fits, to ripen all hard Swellings, and are very palatable. They boil the Herb alone or in Pottage, and garnish and season their Dishes with it. 'Tis very astringent to those who eat much of it. The Taste is flat, but the Decoction of the Leaves very good against the Cough, and half an Ounce of the Seed is a sufficient Purge. 8. *Sempfen*, call'd by the *Greeks* and *Latins*, *Sesamus*. It grows upright a Foot and a half high. The lower Leaves are more indented than the higher, and like those of Night-Shade. It has small white Blossoms, which turn to little Cods, and yield a Seed like Linseed, out of which they press a wholesome Oil, that is dearer than the Oil Olive. The Leaves, Seed and Oil, are hot in the 2d Degree, of an extenuating Quality, and us'd against many Diseases. They anciently fed on the Oil, and grew fat with it, but now 'tis chiefly us'd to clear the Skin, and anoint Sores. 9. *Berd* or *Papyrus* grows upon the *Nile*, has a stringy Root, and many strait Stalks 6 or more Cubits high above Water, with a multitude of long small Threds at the End like a Blossom. The Leaves are triangular, soft below, broad at the Stalk, and sharp at the End like a Cross-barr'd Dagger. Surgeons use the Juice of the Leaves to cleanse and enlarge the Orifices of Sores, and heal them with the Ashes of the Tops of the Stalks. The Roots formerly serv'd for Writing Tablets before the Importation of *European* Paper, and the Ancients wrote upon thin Leaves made of the Juice of the Stalks, as we do on Paper, which 'tis probable had the Name of *Papyrus* from thence. *Heylin* says, the thin Flakes into which it naturally parts were laid on a Table, moisten'd with

the Water of the River press'd together, and then dry'd in the Sun. He adds, that *Ptolemy Philadelphus* erected his excellent Library at *Alexandria* by Means of this Invention; and understanding that *Attalus* King of *Per-gamus* striv'd to outdo him by this Sort of Paper, he prohibited the Exportation of it out of his Country, which put *Attalus* upon the Invention of Parchment, that was quickly preferred before the *Egyptian* Paper. This Plant also serv'd them formerly instead of all Utensils; and before they knew how to plant Corn, they liv'd on it, and made Clothes, Boats, and all Manner of Household-Stuff of it, with Garlands for the Gods, and Shoes for the Priests: But now 'tis not much regarded. 10. Cucumbers, which have Leaves smaller, whiter, softer, and rounder, than ours. They have a pleasant Taste, and are light of Digestion. The Inhabitants count them wholesome either boil'd or raw, and Physicians use them against burning Fevers and other Distempers. 11. Melons of several Sorts, especially one called *Batechia el Marvi*, bigger than ours, and of a yellow Skin. It has nothing within but Seeds and sweet Water, of which they drink abundance against Thirst, the Tertian Ague, and the Heat of the Stomach, Liver, and Kidneys. The *Turks*, *Arabians*, and *Egyptians*, of the best Sort, sweeten this Liquor with Sugar, Rose-Water, Musk, and Amber, for their daily Drink in the Summer; but 'tis so cooling, that too much of it hurts the Stomach and Liver. The *Egyptians* preserve this Fruit all the Year in Cellars, and bring it to Table as a Rarity for Strangers. 12. *Cross-Grass*, which creeps on the Ground, with white, tartish, and sweet Roots, like our Couch-Grass. On the Ends of the Stalks there's 4 Ears with small Seeds cross-ways, whence it had the Name. The Seed is a special Remedy to dissolve the Stone in the Kidneys and Badder. The Decoction of the Root is given inwardly against the Measles and Small-Pox, and brings down the Terms. 13. *Ale*, which grows no where else but in *Italy* and *Germany*. It shoots up to the Bigness of a great Olive Tree, and in some Places to that of a great Oak. The Leaves are like those of *Tamaris*, but longer, smaller, and full of green Hairs. The Fruit is hard, sticky, and without Kernels. 'Tis thought to be

the same with Nut-Galls. They use the Wood for Fuel, and make Charcoal of it, which they burn all over *Egypt* and *Arabia*. The Leaves open Obstructions of the Milt and Spleen, as do the Cups, Cans, and Pots, made of the Wood. 14. *Dadel* Trees, of which they have great Woods in several Places. *Alpinus* divides them into Male and Female, and says, they produce abundance of Fruit every other Year; but the Female is barren, unless her Branches be join'd to those of the Male; and that to make her fruitful, they strow the Matter that lies in the Bag, out of which the Blossom and Fruit comes, upon her Branches, without which he thinks they would yield no Fruit, or at least bring none to Perfection. But *Veslingius* in his Notes on *Alpinus* ascribes the Fruitfulness of this Tree to the sandy and nitrous Soil; and says, that he has seen the Ground in the *Dadel*-Tree Woods often cover'd with a white Down, which is brought hither by the S. Winds from *Negroland* and Barren *Arabia*, and falling on the Tops of the Trees, makes them flourish and bear Fruit. The Roots are very small, thin, and short, and (contrary to all other Trees) it lessens Taper-wise to the Earth; so that some think it receives no Nourishment from thence, but by the Air. *Ogilby* says, that no Tree turns to greater Account; for they make Beams and Rafters of the Stock, Wooden Ware of the Boughs and Branches, Sails and Mantles of the Leaves, and Tow and Cordage for Ships, of the Bark. The Fruit is delicious Food, and good Physick. In the Stock where the Branches shoot forth there's a white Bag full of Juice, which they eat raw. 'Tis a Provocative to Vener-ry, and resembles Artichoaks in Taste. 15. *St. John's Bread*. It bears a Fruit Semi-circled like a Hunter's Horn, from which they draw an exceeding sweet Honey, where-with they preserve the *Cassia Fistula*, *Tamarine*, *Ginger*, and other Fruits green. It is also much us'd in Glysters. 16. *Sant*, the true *Acatia* of the Ancients. The Body of the Tree has a black, rough, and prickly Bark, and it has small slender Leaves, which close at the Setting, and open again at the Rising of the Sun. The Fruit is an Inch broad, and sometimes a Span long. It lies in a flattish Husk like that of a Lilly. They extract a Juice from the green Husks bruis'd

in a Stone Mortar, which by decocting turns thick and hard, and is us'd by the Tanners in *Cairo* to make a Gloss upon their wrought Hides. 'Tis of an astringent Quality, stops sharp Defluxions upon the Eyes, and dissipates hot Goutish Distillations that fall on the Joints. This Plant sends forth a Gum, which some take to be the Gum Arabick of Apothecaries.

They have abundance of Myrtles, and a Sort of Rue call'd *Hermale*, with which the *Arabians*, *Turks*, and *Egyptians*, perfume themselves every Morning, fancying that the Scent drives away Evil Spirits. In some Places, especially about *Rosetto*, there grows Russet Flax, which the Inhabitants plant in great Abundance, and export to Foreign Countries. They sow a great deal of Wheat and other Grain upon the Mud left by the Inundation of the *Nile*, without any other Labour than the running it over with a Wooden Harrow. *Gabriel Sioneta de Urb. Orient.* says, they have two plentiful Crops a Year in many Places, Hay 4 times a Year, Pease, Beans, and other Garden Fruits, all the Year round. *Thevenet* says, all the Land along the *Nile* from *Rosetto* to *Cairo* is so excellent, that he calls this Country an Earthly Paradise. *Luyt* says, That the Sheep here bring forth Young twice a Year. He adds, that there are few Springs and no Rivers here besides the *Nile*. *Heylin* says, they have Plenty of Metals, some Precious Stones, Quarries of Marble, and good Wines.

Their BIRDS, BEASTS, &c.

GEmelli says, they have all Sorts of *European* Birds, delicious *Beccasichos* like Wheat-Ears, and abundance of tame Turtles; but their Partridges are coarse Meat. *Heylin* says, they have great Store of Camels, Horses, Asses, Oxen, Sheep and Goats, of a larger Breed than ordinary, and abundance of Fowls, especially common Poultry, which they hatch in Furnaces or Ovens, where their Eggs are commonly laid in Dung. He says, the Crocodile, the *Iohneumon*, the *Hippopotamus* or Sea-Horse, the *Ibis*, the Asp, and divers Sorts of Serpents, are frequent in this Country; and that the Inundation of the *Nile* leaves several strange Crea-

Creatures behind in the Mud, especially Frogs in Multitudes, which are devour'd by the Storks. He gives us the following Account of the Crocodile: 'Tis hatch'd of an Egg no bigger than that of a Turkey, but grows to 30 Foot long. The Tail is as long as all the rest of his Body, with which he draws his Prey into the River. His Feet are armed with Claws, and his Back with impenetrable Scales, the Mouth wide enough to swallow a Heifer, (*Herbert* says a Horse and Man) and only moves the upper Jaw. 'Tis an amphibious Creature, but sees better by Water than Land, is cowardly, and generally flies from those that attack it, but daring enough otherwise, for which Reason the *Egyptians* made it the Hieroglyphick of Impudence. 'Tis often assaulted by the Dolphin under Water, which strikes him in the Belly, where 'tis only vulnerable. Ancient Writers say, That the *Ichneumon*, a kind of Water-Rat, skips into its Mouth, and gnaws its Way out again. *Sir Thomas Herbert* says, the Crocodile grows bigger and bigger till its Death; that their Teeth are ingrain'd, that they have no Tongue, and that they eat nothing all the Autumnal Quarter. He observes, that the Female goes 60 Days before she lays Eggs, lays commonly 60 at a time, conceals them 60 Days, and sits on them 60 Days before hatching. To which he adds, that she has 60 Teeth and 60 Joints in her Back-Bone, and that they commonly live 60 Years. *Leo* says, they go upon 4 Legs like a Lizard, and are not above a Cubit and a half high. Their Tail is full of Knots. Some prey only upon Fish, and others upon Men and Beasts. They lie upon the Banks of the River, and bask in the Sun with their Jaws open, into which, our Author says, he saw a little Sort of Bird fly, and come out again presently. 'Tis said they go in to pick the Worms that breed in the Flesh of devour'd Beasts and Fishes, which stick between the Crocodile's Teeth, and that the Crocodile dare not shut his Jaws upon them, because of a Prick upon that Bird's Head. *Ogilby* says, the Bird's Name is *Trochilus*, and that it goes into the Crocodile's Mouth while 'tis asleep with its Jaws open for its own Food. The She Crocodile lays her Eggs upon the Shore, and covers them with Sand; and as soon as the young ones are hatched,

they crawl into the River. Those which continue in the *Nile* are not so venomous, as those which take to the Deserts. Our Author adds, that he saw above 300 Crocodiles Heads set on the Walls of *Cana*, with their Jaws wide open. *Ogilby* says, it has great Eyes with little Balls; that its Tail lessens gradually towards the End; that it runs swiftly straight forward, but cannot turn to the Right or Left without much Difficulty, because of the inflexible Joints of its Back-Bone. They say, when 'tis hungry it will weep. He adds, that it eats dead Fish and Humane Flesh, and corrects those who affirm it lives on Mud and Slime, as he does others who say it lays its Eggs in the Sands, and hatches her young ones by the Heat of the Sun. When they couple, the Male turns the Female upon her Back. They are Enemies to the *Ichneumon*, Buffalo, Tyger, Hawk, Hog-Fish, Dolphin, Scorpions, and Men, but are at Peace with Hogs and the *Trochilus*. *Du Mont* rejects all that *Pliny* says of them in his 8th Book *de Ludis*, Cap. 25. as fabulous. He adds, that they are not venomous, that Dolphins and *Ichneumons* are not Enemies to them, that they do not counterfeit a humane Cry to betray Passengers, and that no little Bird cleans their Teeth. They are commonly caught he says in the Ditches, which the *Moors* cut along the *Nile* when 'tis near its greatest Height, being left there when the Water retires. The People catch them with an Iron Hook made almost like a small Anchor, with two Branches, but more sharp and crooked. 'Tis about half a Foot in Breadth from the End of one Branch to that of another, and is fasten'd to a small Iron Chain no bigger than one's Finger, and about a Fathom long, and the Chain is ty'd to a great new Cord about 100 Fathoms in Length. They cover the Hook with a great Piece of Buffler's Flesh, and take Care to trim their Boat well, that it mayn't be over-fer by the violent Struggles of the Crocodile when he finds himself caught. They commonly row two or three Miles above *Cairo* before they lay in their Bait, because the Crocodiles rarely come over against the Town. There they throw the Hook in about 5 or 6 Foot Water, and lay the Cord in such a manner, that the Crocodile may run off easily with the Hook without endangering

dangering the Boat, because tho' the Crocodile does not swim very fast, yet he makes such great Struggles as are enough to overset a pretty large Bark; and when he finds himself hang'd, he frequently leaps above Water, and runs with all his Might; so that he would certainly get off or overset the Boat, but the Fishers give him Rope, and let him tire himself: After which they draw him gently, and fasten the Cord twice round the Mast of the Vessel, so that they may pull him in or let him go as they see Occasion. Thus they drag him to Cairo, where there are always Crowds of People to see him landed. Tho' one would think he was by that Time spent, yet 'tis scarce possible for 10 Men to bring him ashore without a world of Precaution; for he still continues very strong, and sometimes they break Men's Legs with a Blow of their Tail. In short, 'tis more difficult to be killed than any other Beast; for *Montconys* says, he saw one bite off the Finger of a Man that was near him after he was flea'd, and his Neck so mangled, that his Head was almost sever'd from his Body; and *Thervenot* says, that what they catch hold of then with their Mouths, they never part with. To prevent this, the Fishers wind the Cord to which the Crocodile is fasten'd round the next Tree upon the Shore, and hale him with all their Force to the Foot of it. Then they turn him upon his Back, and the *Moors* lay him on with Mallets or great Iron Hammers upon the Belly, which is white, and the tenderest Part of the Crocodile. They have his Flesh for their Pains, which they reckon a great Dainty. The Skin belongs to the Fishermen, if they will have it; but commonly they leave it along with the Flesh to the poor *Moors*, who sell it to the *Franks* for some Medins, which *Thervenot* says are about Three-Halfpence apiece. *Du Mont* adds, that this Creature makes such a great Destruction of Fishes in the Nile, that there's scarce any to be seen there, tho' otherwise 'tis one of the best Rivers in the World for breeding them. *Tavernier* says, it has been try'd that the Skins of Crocodiles are not Musket-Proof; but *Thervenot* affirms, that the Scales on its Back, which are like the Heads of broad Nails, and of a greenish Colour, cannot be pierced by a Halbert. He says, they have a Head flat above and be-

low, darkish big Eyes, and a sharp long Snout. The Body is large, and all of a Bigness. The Tail is cover'd with the same Scales as the Back. They have 4 short thick Legs, with 5 Claws on their fore Feet, and 4 on their hindmost. Their Flesh, he adds, is unfavoury, but not poisonous. They hide themselves in the Sand on purpose to surprise Boys as they come to the Side of the Nile, and pull Men out of their Boats in the Night with their Snouts. He adds, that the *Egyptians* catch them in Pits falls by the River Side, cover'd with Sticks, from whence they can't get out again, and are pulled up by Nooses after they have fasted several Days. He adds, that they never go into the Canals of the Nile. *Schouten* says, they yield a pleasant Smell.

2. The *Hippopotamus* or Sea-Horse, another amphibious Creature. *Pliny* says, it frequents the Nile, Niger, and other Places. *Barboza* affirms, that he saw many of them in *Gophale* leap out of the Sea to Land, and return again; and others say, they have seen the like in the great Sea near *Petzore*. *Fabius Columna*, in his Observations of Amphibious Creatures, gives the following Description of it from a Skeleton brought into Italy from *Dalmatia* by the Master Surgeon of *Nairn*. It had a Body like an Ox, and Legs like a Bear. 'Twas 13 Foot from Head to Tail, and 4 and a half broad. The Belly was rather flat than round. Its Legs were a Yard in Compass, and each Foot 12 Inches broad. Every Claw had 3 Divisions: The Head two Foot and a half broad; three Foot long, and 7 Foot about; the Mouth fleshy, shrivell'd, and very wide; the Eyes an Inch broad, and twice as long; the Ears little, and but three Fingers long. It was fat, and had a Tail like a Hog. Its Nostrils were large, and the Lips like those of a Lion, beset with a Bristly Beard, but the rest of the Body without Hair. It had 6 Teeth in the lower Jaw, of which the two outermost were half a Foot long, and two Fingers broad, besides 7 thick short ones on either Side. In the upper Jaw, (which it moves alone like the Crocodile) were the like, all of them as hard as Flints; and upon an Experiment, they struck Fire by Collision, which 'tis probable, says our Author, led the Ancients to affirm, that this Beast breath'd Fire when it gnash'd its Teeth. He

He adds, That 'twill leap ashore, run into the Plow'd Land for Corn, and then return immediately to the River. When 'tis troubled with too much Fat, it rubs it self upon the Stump of a Reed till it has open'd a Vein, which it closes again after it has bled enough, and plaisters it over with Mud. 'Tis as dangerous and malicious to Man as the Crocodile. The Moors eat their Eleph. The 4 Sea-Horses which *Peter van de Brock*, in his Journey to *Angola*, saw ashore in *Loango*, neigh'd like Horses, were like great Buffaloes, Sleek-skinned, and had Heads like Wild Horses, short Ears, wide Nostrils, short Legs, and Feet like the Leaves of Clover-Grass. As the People drew near, they went gradually to the Bank, and threw themselves into the Sea, where they sometimes rose above Water, but div'd again as they saw the People. *Leo* says, 'tis like a Horse in Shape, and an Ass in Stature; that it lies in the Rivers all Day, and goes ashore at Night; and that it frequently sinks Boats upon the *Niger*. *Schouten* says, 'tis also call'd the *River Horse*, and that it resembles a Bear as much or more than a Horse, except in its Neighing, from whence he thinks this Creature had the Name of a Horse. Some say, that it only resembles a Horse in the Ears, but a Calf in every thing else, only it has no Horns. It has 6 Teeth, to which *Schouten* says some ascribe a great deal of Vertue, and particularly the Cure of the Cramp and Piles. Some of these Teeth are 16 Inches long, and 13 Pound Weight. *Schouten* adds, that there's one kept in the Hospital at *Goa*, of which they tell strange Stories, particularly that when a Man bleeds, if he but just touch this Tooth at the Opening of the Vein, the Blood stops all of a sudden, and the like. *Thevenot* says, the Sea-Horse is of a tawny Colour, and like a Buffler in its hinder Parts. At full Growth, 'tis as large as a Camel, and has a Muzzle like an Ox, a great Head like a Horse, but small Eyes, a thick Neck, round Feet, with 4 Toes on each like a Crocodile, a little Tail like an Elephant, two crooked Tusks on the Sides of the lower Jaw as big as Ox-Horns, and two other Teeth in the same Row as big, but straight.

3. The *Ichneumon*. 'Tis said, the ancient *Grecians* call'd it *ΤΑΧΩ*, a Hog, from its

rooting in the Earth. *Bellonius* calls it the *Egyptian*, and *Ælian* the *Indian Rat*, and others call it the *Egyptian Otter*. *Ogilby* says, 'tis like a Cat, but longer, and of a rougher Hair. 'Tis of a Bay or Dun Colour, has round Ears, black Legs, a long Tail, and a wide hairy Passage near the Fundament, from whence some think it is of an Hermaphrodite Species. 'Tis bred only in *Egypt*, and chiefly about *Alexandria*, and becomes tame, according to *Ogilby*; but *Vitruvius* says, 'tis found also on one Side of Mount *Atlas*, and at the Fountains of the *Nile*. It feeds on Mice, Snakes, Snails, Camelions, Frogs, Hens, and other small Fowl. Some think it has a peculiar Appetite to the Liver of a Crocodile, because it creeps into its Belly sleeping, as we have already hinted; but our Author ascribes it to a natural Antipathy against that Creature, because it breaks the Crocodile's Eggs wherever it finds 'em. It cannot endure the Wind, and runs for Shelter when it rises. Sometimes it thrusts its Head betwixt its hinder Legs in a round Form like a Hedgehog, and at the Approach of any Beast, bunches up its Back and bristles up its Hair in Defiance; for 'twill set upon Mastiff-Dogs, Horses or Camels, and kills a Cat at three Strokes. It couches upon the Ground, and leaps like a Bull-Dog at its Prey; and when it designs to encounter Asps, it rolls in the Mud, and dries it self in the Sun, or else plunges in the Water, and then tumbles in the Dust, which it uses by Way of Defence against the Biting of those Insects.

4. *Camelions*. To what we said of them in our Volume of *Asia*, P. 58. we shall add what follows: *Bellonius* says, it frequents *Cairo* and other Places among Hedges and Bushes. 'Tis somewhat like the Crocodile, but differs in Colour, Head, Tongue, Eyes, and Feet. It walks upon all four, has a long and sharp Head like a Hog, a very short Neck, and instead of Teeth, one entire Jaw-Bone indented like a Saw; yet it swallows every thing whole. It mutes like a Hawk. He adds, contrary to *Thevenot*, that the Back is hard, rough, and prickly. *Bellonius* says, the fore Feet have 3 Claws inwards and 2 outwards, and the hinder Feet 3 outwards and 2 inwards, with Nails or Talons. It moves the Feet of each Side alternately, but runs

up Trees very fast, and lays hold on the Boughs with its Tail. *Leo* and *Mr. Sandys* say, That 'tis as large as an ordinary Lizard, but the Head bigger in Proportion, and the Eyes large. The Neck is inflexible, and it cannot turn without moving its whole Body. The Back is crooked, the Skin spotted with little Tumours, but least upon its Belly. The Tail is long and slender like that of a Mouse. When it sucks in the Air, its Belly swells, whence some think that the Air is Part of its Food. Our Author says, those that have kept them for above a Year, could not perceive they had any thing but the Air to subsist on; but *Mr. Finch* confutes it from his own Experience as a vulgar Error. Our Author denies that it changes Colours, and says, that it assumes a stronger Dye or Lustre from the Colour on which it is laid. He adds, That if a Serpent lurks near the Tree where it sits, it throws a Thread out of its Mouth, with a little shining Drop at the End, which falls upon the Serpent's Head, and kills it.

5. *Scincos*. *Dioscorides* takes it for the Land Crocodile, and *Belonius* for the small Crocodile. The latter says, it has 4 Feet, and a round knotty Tail, and is as big as the Salamander. *Renodius* tells us, it has many small yellow Knobs, a long Head, and a round Tail, crooked at the End, with a blue Streak from the Tip of the Tail to the Crown of the Head. It feeds upon sweet Flowers, and buries its Eggs. The Flesh is us'd by the *Egyptians* to promote Venery.

6. *Cynocephalus*, so call'd by the *Grecians* because it has a Head like a Dog. *Aristotle* says, its Teeth are sharp, and set close together; and *Horus* reports, that it makes Urine every Hour. *Ogilby* says, 'twas much us'd in the *Egyptian* Hieroglyphicks. 'Tis thought to be a Sort of Baboon.

7. *Gazelles*, a Species of Wild Goats, called by the *Greeks*, *Orygis*. *Marmol* says, they are like a Fallow Deer in Size and Colour, and have black Horns turn'd like those of a Goat, but more round and sharp. They have white Bellies, and never lie down but where the Ground is clean. They are swift, and run from Men. They go together in great Herds, and many of 'em are kill'd by the *Arabians*. Their Hair, Tails, Eyes, and Eyebrows, are like those of Camels, and

their fore Feet are shorter than their hinder Feet. They bleat like other Goats, but are Beardless, nimble in climbing, but unweildy to descend. The Horns of the Male are straighter than those of the Female. *Pliny* says, they have but one Horn, and that when the Dog-Star rises, they look stedfastly upon it. *Ogilby* says, they have abundance of tame Goats about *Alexandria*, with Ears hanging down to the Ground, 4 or 5 Fingers broad at the End, and curling upwards. He adds, that besides other Cattle, they have fat Sheep with a Dewlap like Oxen, and long spreading Tails that hang to the Ground. Their Mutton, Veal, Beef, and Lamb, is extraordinary sweet and delicious, but somewhat too moist and watry. *Thevenot* says, about the Nile they have Eagles, fine large White Birds which live both on Land and in Water, Lapwings which are White about the Neck, Grey on the Back, and Black every where else, and there are others that always keep in the Water.

Snipes are catch'd here from *January* till *March*, and in *May* Yellow Birds or *Nitrials*, which are nothing but a Lump of Fat, and good Wild Turtles; but he says, their House-Pigeons are worth nothing. In their Deserts are a great many Ostriches, whose Feathers they send to *Constantinople*, &c. to make Fans and other Toys for the Women; and the *Franks* use to carry the Eggs of 'em home as Rarities.

But their chief Bird is that call'd *Ibis*. *Ogilby* says, it has long Legs, and a crooked Beak. 'Tis of two Sorts, viz. the White found all over *Egypt*, and the Black only at *Damiata*. The former has a Head like a Sea Pye, and a crooked, sharp, red Beak, of about an Inch in Length. When it hides its Head and Neck in the Feathers under its Breast, it resembles a Man's Heart. *Plutarch* says, it weighs but half an Ounce when first hatched; but *Gaudentius Merula* gives it a Heart too big for that Proportion. *Ælianus* says, its Guts are 96 Cubits long, but shrink together when the Moon is near her Change. All the Ways to *Alexandria* are filled with these Birds. They eat Serpents, Grasshoppers, and the like. They are driven hither by W. Winds from the *Libyan* Deserts, where they keep together in great Numbers, because of the Multitude of Serpents there which they feed on. They have

have a Tradition, That when *Moses* march'd against the *Moors* thro' Places full of Serpents, he took these Birds along with him, shut up in Paper-Cages. They make their Nests upon high Palm-Trees for fear of Cats. Some say, that a Basilisk breeds out of its Eye; and *Ælian*, that the Feathers and Eggs deprive the Crocodile of Motion. The same Author, *Plutarch* and *Pliny*, say, the *Egyptians* learn'd the Use of Glysters and Syringes from this Bird, because when 'tis troubled with an Obstruction of the Bowels, it spouts Salt Water out of its Bill like a Syringe into its Body to remove the Cause. *Ogilby* adds, that it will not drink any foul or unwholesome Water, for which Reason the *Egyptian* Priests made Holy Water of that which the *Ibis* drank of. They also took several of their Hieroglyphicks from the Legs, Head, and Beak, of this Bird.

Belonius says, there's a Hawk here called *Bareth*, formerly worshipped by the *Egyptians*. 'Tis as large as a great Raven, has a Head like a Kite, and is a Bird of Prey. It had so much Repute as to give its Name to one of the Provinces of this Country. The Priests comprehended great Mysteries under this Bird, and its Figure was carv'd upon most of their Spires and Obelisks. *Horus* says, that the Hawk represented God in their Hieroglyphicks, because it seems to be the Image of the Sun, since it looks with fix'd Eyes on its Beams. Those who kill'd a Hawk or the Bird *Ibis* were condemn'd without Mercy, and the former, when dead, was interred with Ceremony in the City of *Bulis*. The *Ibis*, the Hawk, the Ox, and the Dog, were of chief Use in their Hieroglyphicks, and carried in Procession on solemn Occasions.

Herodotus says, That formerly about *Thebes* there were a harmless small Sort of Serpents, with two Horns on the Crown of their Heads, which the Ancients suppos'd were dedicated to *Jupiter*, and therefore when dead buried them in his Temple. He adds, that near the City *Brutus*, on the Frontier of *Arabia*, there were Wing'd Serpents which flew in the Beginning of *Lent* towards *Egypt*; but the *Ibis* stopped and killed them by the Way, for which Cause that Bird was worshipped.

The P E O P L E, &c.

They are divided, according to *Thevenot*, into *Moors*, *Christians*, *Cophtis*, *Franks*, *Greeks*, *Turks*, and *Jews*. He says, the People in general are cowardly, lazy, Hypocrites, Buggerers, Robbers, treacherous, and so greedy of Money, that they will kill a Man for a Maidin or Three Halfpence. They are of a swarthy Complexion; and *Gemelli* says, they have such an Aversion to Christians, that their very Dogs are taught to run after them in the Streets. For the *Moors*, *Thevenot* says no Vice comes amiss to them. They are Cowards to a Degree; and when they quarrel, huff, scold, and brawl, as if they would cut one another's Throats, but refer their Controversies to the next Man they meet, who presently reconciles them, and the Spectators lift up their Hands and say that Prayer call'd the *Patha*, and all is over. The *Turks* use them like Dogs, and they dare not resist. They till all the Land, but are not allow'd Bread enough to fill their Bellies. They are so ill natur'd, that they won't work except they are cudgell'd, and then they shew themselves loving and diligent. They are very ignorant, yet some of them are Magicians, will take up Vipers, and put their Fingers into their Mouths without Hurt, and carry them by Sackfuls to the Apothecaries, who buy 'em. He saw a *Moorish* Woman at *Cairo* that stopp'd Children's Crying by pulling Worms out of their Ears; so that when a Child was froward, they carried it to this Woman, and gave her Money for the Performance. She laid the Child in her Lap, and scratch'd its Ears; after which, Worms came out of them like those which breed in musty Flower. They were about 10 or 12 in all, which she wrapped in a Linen Rag, and gave to those that brought the Child, who laid 'em up as a Rarity: After which, if we may believe our Author, the Child cry'd no more. She told him, that she performed this by means of some Words, and pretended 'tis a Secret which has been long in the Family. Mr. *Sandys* says, the *Moors* make up the greatest Part of the Inhabitants of *Egypt*, and are descended of the *Arabians*.

They are mean of Stature, have shrill Voices, are very lean, swift, and (contrary to *Thevenot*) says they are very industrious, and not riotous. They have no Learning nor Nobility, and few are admitted to Civil or Military Offices, or so much as allow'd to wear a Weapon in Towns. Their Merchants were formerly rich when they dealt in *Indian Goods*. Most of their Women are pretty far, which they seek to promote by frequenting the Bagnio's, and using a particular Diet. They prick their Skin and stain it with Ink and the Juice of an Herb, which never wears out. They have a quick easy Labour, and us'd formerly to have two or three at a Birth, and their Children live, tho' born in the 8th Month. They have a Plant near *Macario*, which, if put in Water in the Corner of a Room, they fancy procures easy Delivery. Both Sexes are very nasty. They are *Mahometans* in Religion, and devouter in their Way than the *Turks*.

2. The *Cophiti*. *Thevenot* says, they are very ignorant, and have many Apocryphal Stories of Christ, viz. That during his Minority, an Angel brought him Viſualſe every Day from Heaven, and that he spent his Time in making little Birds of Clay, which he animated and let fly into the Air; That they had a roasted Cock at our Lord's Supper; and that when *Judas* rose up to betray his Master, Christ order'd the Cock to follow him, which he did, and brought back Word, that *Judas* had sold him, for which Reason that Cock was admitted into Paradise. He adds, that these *Cophiti* serve for Clerks to the Divan of Beys and Villages. *Gemelli* says, their Women are of low Stature and brown, and the Natives think their chief Beauty lies in a sparkling Eye. Formerly there were 600000 *Cophiti* who paid Tribute, but at present there are not 15000. He derives their Name from *Copt* the Son of *Mazraim*, King of Egypt; *Kircher* from the City *Coptos*, the Capital of ancient *Thebaus*, or from the *Coptists* its Inhabitants. *Ogilby*, who inclines to the latter, corrects those who confound the Words *Coptos* and *Cophitos*, which differ much in their Signification, the former being an old Word, but the latter invented by the *Mahometans* to decide the *Egyptian* Christians, as if they would say, Circumcised. Others suppose

they are called *Cophites*, because they follow'd the Heresies of *Dioscorus* and *Eutyches*, condemn'd in the Council of *Ephesus* for admitting of Circumcision before Baptism; for the *Greek* Word Κότῳ signifies Cut or Circumcised, from whence they were call'd Christians above the Girdle, because below it they were rather *Jews*. Mr. *Sandys* thinks these People are the true *Egyptians*, and agrees with *Kircher* in his Derivation of their Name. He says, they live in more Subjection than the *Moors*, and pay a Yearly Poll-Tax to the *Basha*. He adds, that they retain their Ancestors Vices, but not their Virtues, and that they are but Jugglers to them in Magick.

3. The *Franks* are Christian Foreigners, who *Thevenot* says live chiefly about *Cairo*, where they have Consuls, *Rosetta*, *Alexandria*, and sometimes at *Damietta*, where they have Vice Consuls. The *French*, *English*, *Dutch*, and *Venetians*, have each their Consuls; but all other Nations that trade here, or in any Part of *Turkey*, are under the Protection and Banner of the Consul of *France*. These Consuls have 200 Piaſters or *French* Crowns per Annum of the Grand Seignior, except the *Venetian*, who has not much above 60, and is obliged to present every new *Basha* with 2000; whereas the rest are excused for half the Sum, for which they have the Favour of an Audience, when they receive some Presents of Tissue Vests for themselves and their chief Interpreters, with a small Pension for the latter, and an Augmentation of the Pay of their Janizaries. The Consuls had formerly the same Honour as a *Bey*, but now are little regarded, and the *Bashas* demand Money of them at Pleasure, and put them in Prison, as happened in *Thevenot's* Time to all the Christian Consuls, by Advice of the rascally *Jews*, who chiefly govern the *Bashas*, farm the Customs, are the only Bankers there, and having Offices about the *Bashas*, are continually putting them upon Devices to vex the Christians. They live in very great Danger here, says *Thevenot*, are frequently insulted, and killed as they walk the Streets, and the villanous *Moors* are sure to make the first Complaint to the Cady or Judge, who, tho' he knew the Thing to be false, always condemns the Christians to force Money

Money from them; and if they be not able to pay, he demands it of those of their Nation. If a *Moor* kill a Christian, 'tis Excuse enough to say that the Christian beat him, or blasphem'd *Mahomet's* Law. The first Crime is the Loss of the Hand, except redeemed by Money, and the latter is to be burnt or turn *Turk*. They have likewise Villains who swear falsely against Christians; and if they say they have been with a *Turkish* Woman, they must die or turn *Mahometans*; and if with another, they are severely fin'd: Nay, they will not so much as suffer the Christians who live near them to keep their Windows open, on Pretence that they will look on their Women, without making them Presents; and all Christians must alight from their Asses as they pass by the Halls of Justice, meet the Scheriffs, or the Black Eunuchs of the Grand Seignior's Seraglio, &c. otherwise they are sure to be drubbed by their Servants. *Gemelli* says, they think all *Fran's* are Physicians, and will oblige them to feel their Pulse, tho' they are never so well in Health.

There's little to be said of the *Jews*, besides what's mentioned in the former Article, only that they are numerous in *Egypt*, and particularly at *Cairo*, where they have a large Quarter by themselves, with a great many narrow, short, and stinking Streets. Nor need we say any thing more of the *Turks*, than that they have the chief Offices in the Government, and the *Basha* of *Cairo* is always a *Turk*.

Ogilby says, there's another Sort of People here call'd *Beduins*, who wander about 2 or 300 in a Company with their Luggage upon Carts, and drive their Cattle like the *Tartars* from Place to Place for fresh Pasture. The Men are most of them Smiths and Weavers, and live in Tents Day and Night. When their Daughters are marriageable, they shew it by painting their Chins and Lips with a Mixture of Ink and Ox-Gall.

Because plump Women are much esteem'd in *Egypt*, *Ogilby* says they take Broths and Jellies when they bath to make them fat; but he says many, especially of the *Jews*, grow quite out of Shape by pampering their Bodies to Excess. They also chafe themselves three times; 1. With the bare

Hand, anointed with the Oil of *Sesamus*; 2. With a rough Linen Cloth; and the 3d Time with a coarse Cloth of Goat's Hair. Then they are rubbed all over with Soap, which they wash off in a particular Bath of warm sweet Water, and lay upon their Feet a sort of Powder mix'd with ordinary Water, to prevent sweating. When the *Nile* overflows its Banks, the *Egyptians* swim over it from Place to Place to dispatch their Business, and cloath themselves lightly for that purpose with nothing but a Coat and Shirt, which they tie upon their Heads in Form of a Turbant, to keep it from wetting. When they are to swim a great Way, they use Flags or Bulrushes. When they ride in State thro' City or Country, their Horses are cover'd with Foot-Cloths or Carpisons of Tapestry after the *Moorish* Fashion; but the Women ride masked upon Mules. Mean People and Strangers use Asses, which always stand at Cross Ways to be hir'd.

The Houses of the open Country, subject to the Inundations of the *Nile*, are built upon rising Places, with thick Clay Walls and flat Roofs, and are generally small and low, because of the Scarcity of Wood and Stone. They chuse to eat, drink, and sleep, under the Date Tree for Coolness. They burn the Dung of Cattle for want of other Fuel.

The Nobility have Seraglio's of Women, but in separate Apartments. The *Moors* and the meaner Sort, when they go a Court-ing, burn their Flesh with hot Irons, and slash their Arms to shew their Affection; and if they can but obtain Leave to kiss their Mistress's Hand, they think the Day is their own. They marry their Daughters at 10 or 12 Years of Age. They conduct the Bride to the Bridegroom's House, and carry before her whatever her Friends give her, to which the Bridegroom adds Money, Garments, and other Necessaries, Jewels, Household-Stuff, and Slaves of both Sexes. *Leo* says, That all the Inhabitants in general are of an honest, chearful, and liberal Disposition. *Heylin* says, That (contrary to the Custom every where else) the Women make Water standing, and the Men stooping.

Their

Their APPAREL.

THevenot says, the *Moors* of the better Sort are habited like the *Turks*, but most of them are half naked, and many wear only a blue Shirt. Mr. *Sandys* says, some of 'em retain their old Garb, which is a long Coat of Linen girt to their Waist, and a Towel of the same thrown over their Necks. Some of the *Negroes* wear Vests like Surplices, and the poorer have Garments of Hair with black and white Streaks, and in the Winter Garments of Cotton. *Gemelli* says, the better Sort of *Arabs* are apparell'd like the *Turks*; but the poorer wear a Sack or Caban over their Shirt, with a Bit of Cloth or Silk on their Heads instead of a Turban. The Women cover their Faces with a Mask of Cloth or Silk, and their Bodies with a long Cloth over their other Apparel, and the better Sort wear high Wooden Clogs, so that they look like Monsters, tho' they be low of themselves. *Leo* says, That the Citizens are generally Whites, wear long Garments with straight Sleeves and Waists, and round high Turbans on their Heads. The common People wear Cotton Garments of divers Colours in Summer, and in Winter another Garment lin'd with Cotton, which they call *Chebre*; but the Merchants and chief Citizens wear *European* Cloth. The Noblemen wear Shirts of the finest Linen call'd *Mosale*, and the Scarves on their Turbans are of the same. *Sandys* says, when the *Moorish* Women go abroad, they wrap themselves from Head to Foot in Linen, and spread their Arms underneath, to seem the more bulky. They cover their Faces with black Cypress mix'd with red Spots. The better Sort wear Hoops of Gold and Silver about their Arms and Ankles: Others have them of Copper, with Pieces of Coin that cover half their Foreheads, and Plates about their Necks. The Country Women wear Ruffet Mantles, hide their Faces with nasty Clouts, and have Peep-Holes for their Eyes. *Ogilby* says, the Women in general take little Care of their Hair, and put it up (according to the Custom of the Country) in a Silken Cawl; but the richer Sort anoint themselves with good Perfumes to make them grateful to their Husbands. Their

Religions are distinguished by the Colour of their Turbans, those of the *Mahometan*, being White, the Christians Red or Blue, the *Jews* Yellow, and those who derive themselves from *Mahomet* wear them Green. Their Hose are short like the Buskins of the Ancients; and instead of Shoes, they wear Slippers or Sandals. Their Ladies are for most Part cloath'd in White, and have Masks of the same. Their Head-Dress varies according to the Race they are of. The *Egyptians* wear a rich Silk Cap like our Women's High-crown'd Hats, without a Brim, and on the fore Part they have a Sprig of Jewels or Pearl, and wear fine Silk Smocks border'd with curious Needle-work, and over that a Coat or Gown of different Lengths, made of Party-colour'd Silk, trimm'd with Gold, Silver, and Silk Knots, and the Skirt richly embroider'd. The *Beduins* wear only blue or grey Shirts, with broad Sleeves down to the Ground, and a Mantle over their Shoulders, with which they also cover their Tents. Their Women wear Silver and Copper Plates in their Hair, with black Ear-Rings and Jewels of an unusual Size.

Their DIET and LIQUORS.

LEO says, the common Food of the Natives is new salt Cheese and sour Milk. Their Bread is as broad as our Plates, and made like thin Buns of two round Pieces of Past put together, laid before the Fire, and may be eaten at three Mouthfuls; but *Thevenot* says, 'tis so black and ill made, and so full of Ashes, that he could not eat it. They sell 8 of them for Three-Halfpence. They chew Sugar-Canes for After-Courses, and are great Lovers of Melons. *Ogilby* says, they keep a slender Table, eat little, but often, love only one Dish at a Meal, eat sparingly of all manner of Flesh, and chuse Mutton without Sawce. They love moist Food best, and commonly eat Rice boil'd in preserv'd Juices of Cucumbers, Melons, Figs, Apricocks, Peaches, Oranges, Lemons, &c. The Poor eat Camel's Flesh, and some Fish, as Pikes, Crocodiles, &c. for most Part salted, and sometimes half rotten. The Fishes of the *Nile* are fat and pleasant enough, but counted unwholesome. All their Pot-Herbs and Fruits are moister, and consequently

quently more unfavoury, than the *Euro-pean*.

Their common Drink is the Water of the *Nile*, which is very sweet; but the *Christians*, *Jews*, and some of the *Turks*, drink Wine brought from *Candy*, *Rhodes*, and *Cyprus*. The *Turkish* Soldiers are much given to Drunkenness. They refine the Water of the *Nile* thus: As soon as 'tis brought home in Leather Bottles, they put it in great long-neck'd Jars, and rub the Edge with the Juice of sweet Almonds, stamp a Handful of them, and put into the Water, and stir them about with their Arm. They let it stand 3 Hours to clear, and then draw it off. Some let it stand so long till it clears of it self. He commends this Water for several Virtues. In some, he says, it promotes Urine, in others a Stool, cools Heat by Transpiration, and hurts no body, tho' drank to Excess. They also drink Coffee, and the *Turks* and *Moors* Sorbet, with other kinds of Drink made of Plumbs, Currants, and Water infus'd in the Sun.

Their D I S E A S E S.

TO their above-mentioned Temperance in Eating and Drinking, Physicians ascribe their long Life; so that they say, 'tis common to find People here above 100 Years old; yet they are subject to many Diseases, the chief of which are, 1. A Pain in the Stomach. *Thevenot* says, 'tis very common, especially to new Comers; who love to go open Breasted, because of the Heat; so that he advises such to keep their Stomachs warm, especially about Autumn, when the Wind is apt to chill the Bowels, and cause dangerous Fevers and Bloody Fluxes. 2. The Swelling of the *Scrotum*, which he attributes to the Water of the *Nile*, and says, that sometimes their Cods swell bigger than their Heads. To cure it, they open the swell'd *Scrotum* with a Lancet to let out the Water. *Leo* says, their Physicians ascribe it to their frequent eating of Salt Cheese and Beef. 3. Sore Eyes, which are very common and dangerous in the Summer. *Thevenot* imputes it to the burning Heat of the Sun, which reflects with Violence from the Ground, and to the Dust which the Wind blows into their Eyes; so

that there are more blind Folks here than any where else. He says, that he knew some that were troubled with this Malady who could not sleep for a Fortnight together, but roar'd out because of the Smart, Day and Night. In the Summer they wear Pieces of blue Stuff before their Eyes to save them. 4. The Dropsy, with Pains in the Legs, which swell sometimes to a prodigious Bigness. 5. When the *Nile* begins to rise, they are troubled with pricking Inflammations over the whole Body, which last almost three Months. 6. Apoplexies, which suddenly kill them. They come once a Year, and destroy Multitudes. 7. The Small-Pox, a malignant Distemper here, especially to Children. 'Tis ascrib'd to the standing Water which the *Nile* leaves in Trenches when it retires to its Channel, where it corrupts and stinks, so that they remove the Children to other Places. 8. Weakness in the Joints and Limbs, occasioned by immoderate Venery, or the too frequent Use of Baths, and the Poor get it by wearing the same Clothes in all Seasons, and going bare-foot and bare-legged. 9. The Stone, which proceeds from the Sediment of the *Nile* Water. 10. The Plague. *Thevenot* says, it returns every 7 Years, after it has made a Visit round the *Turkish* Empire; and that a little before his Time, it came two Years one after another, and swept away in each 100000 Souls. *Leo* says, that it carries off sometimes about 12000 People a Day in *Cairo*; and if we may believe *Ogilby*, 500000 in 6 or 7 Months; which he imputes to the Folly of the People, who, because they think their Death preordained, don't seek to avoid the Infection, nor scruple to buy the Clothes, Goods, &c. of those that die of it when sold by Outcry in the Market. This Pestilence begins in their first Summer, and holds till the N. Winds arise. That which begins in the first Months is most pernicious, and of longest Continuance, and almost depopulates whole Cities, especially if it come out of *Barbary*, as did one in 1580, which cut off 500000 Men in a very short Time. But if it comes later, 'tis so much the milder, and of shorter Continuance: And if it rage never so fiercely, it suddenly ceases at the Sun's Entrance into *Cancer*. That which is brought out of *Greece* and

Syria is very mild, and soon over. While the Plague lasts, no other Diseases appear among the People. *Thevenot* says, That this and all other Diseases cease to be mortal about the 14th of *June*, when the Dew falls. In *March* 1658, after some Days of high Wind, an infectious Distemper broke out, which began with a Head-ach and Fever, and continu'd with a great Rheum. The Fever lasted not above two or three Days; but it render'd Men so feeble, that all their Limbs seem'd to be broken; and if Preservatives were not us'd, the Patients relaps'd into another of 3 Weeks or a Month. Every Man, Woman and Child, in *Cairo*, was seiz'd with it. They call'd it *Abou Cha*, because of a Song made some Months before which began with those Words, and ended with *Ha, ha, ha*. This Distemper occasion'd such a Coughing, resembling the three last Notes, that they fancy'd the Song was the Cause of the Disease: Therefore the *Basha* prohibited it to be sung with so much Rigour, that if a Child sang it, he was order'd to be bastinado'd in the Street. *Thevenot* was told, that the like Distemper had rag'd at *Cairo* 10 Years before his Time, when the Patients were cur'd by eating of Oranges, which rais'd the Price to 2 s. a piece. He adds, that these and other accidental Diseases are more dangerous during the *Hhamchin* than any other Time. This is a Wind which commonly begins about the 7th of *April*, and blows for 50 Days together, during which it drives a great deal of Sand into the Towns, so that it gets into their Chambers, Beds, and Trunks, tho' the Windows be shut. These Winds are so hot, that they stop People's Breath, and kill many in the Caravans. *Ogilby* says, there's a particular Sort of Persons here troubled with Melancholy, whom the *Vulgar* account holy Men, because they retire into desert Places, live single, are hospitable to Strangers, reprove Vice, affirm the World to be nothing but a Vale of Misery and Trouble, denounce great Punishments for Sin, and so macerate their Bodies, that our Author compares them to dry'd Mummies. In short, he says that Scabs, sore Eyes, Leprosy, Phrensies, Small Pox, Pains in the Limbs and Joints, Ruptures, Consumptions, the Stone, Stoppings or Weaknesses of the Liver, Spleen, and Stomach,

Tertian and Quartan Agues, and all Maladies occasioned by Heat, are more common and fatal to the *Egyptians* than to other People, and therefore thinks they may be call'd the Plagues of *Egypt*. *Thevenot* says, the *Moors* think it a Sin to use any Physician but God, and use no Medicines but only plain Receipts. For a Bruise, they apply Gunpowder cover'd with Cotton; and when stung by a Scorpion, eat a Radish. They let Blood in the Forehead to cure Drowsiness, sore Eyes, or a Pain in the Head. They bind the Patient's Neck about with a Turban, open the Vein with a Razor, easily stop the Bleeding with Cotton or Wool, and sometimes with Camel's Dung. *Ogilby* says, there are many other Distempers besides these, which he ascribes to the eating of Ox and Camel's Flesh, mouldy stinking Cheese, and rotten Salt Fish taken in Pools and Lakes, and the too frequent Use of Colocasia, Beets, and the like Herbs, which he says breed thick and tough Phlegm. In a Word, he ascribes all their Diseases partly to the Intemperance of the Air, partly to the immoderate Use of Women, and partly to the unwholesome Food and muddy Water, which the Poor are obliged to take up with. He observes, that most of the Citizens in *Egypt* are sanguine, and the Plowmen, *Arabians*, and many of the Townsmen, hot and dry; but that 'tis qualified in some by the continual drinking of the *Nile* the Use of cooling Food, and by Excess in the Sports of *Venus*; so that many, especially of their Women and Eunuchs, turn sanguine, quite contrary to their natural Complexion. They have cold Stomachs, and full of Phlegm, which he imputes to their constant Use of cool Diet, and the excessive Heat of the Air, which exhausts the natural Heat of the Body. He adds, that the *Egyptians* in general are very gross and corpulent, and that the Men of *Cairo* have commonly larger Breasts than the Women; but that the *Arabians* and Husbandmen are thin, hairy, swarty, and Sunburnt. Tho' they are naturally wakeful, yet they are all addicted to Sleep and Idleness, except the latter, who are forc'd to work or starve. *Thevenot* says, they are so afflicted with excessive Swarms of little Flies, that they can't do any thing by Day, or sleep quiet by Night; but that some of those

those Musketto's are sure to follow a Man into his Bed, tho' he hangs a Cloth about it to keep them off. Their Drink being commonly Blood-warm, they cool it by putting it into a Pot of white Earth, or setting it in a Window towards the Wind.

Their RELIGION.

GEmelli says, the *Cophtis*, who formerly worshipped *Isis*, *Serapis*, and other monstrous Idols, as well as the rest of the *Egyptians*, were the first in *Africa* converted to Christianity by the Preaching of *St. Mark*. They continued Orthodox till the Time of *Dioscorus* their Patriarch, who fell into the Errors they continue in to this Day. *Thevenot* says, they are *Jacobite* Christians, and that they follow the Heresy of *Eutyches* and *Dioscorus*; but that some of them are Orthodox, and call'd *Melchites*. They have a Patriarch in *Alexandria*, who has not only a large Diocese himself, but chuses the Patriarch of the *Abyssins* in *Ethiopia*. There's scarce a Man among them learned enough to be their Patriarch; and if there is, they find it very difficult to raise Money enough to give the *Basha* to settle him. They say Mass in the *Coptick* and *Arabick* Tongues; and when they sing the Passion, and come to the Place where *Judas* is said to betray Christ, all the People cry, *Arsat*, i. e. Horned Beast or Cuckold, by Way of Reproach upon *Judas*; and where 'tis said, *St. Peter* cut off the Ear of the High Priest's Servant, they all cry, *Asia Boutrous*, or, Well fare you for that *Peter*, by Way of Applause. *Mr. Sandys* says, they now begin to be ashamed of Circumcision, have left it off in the Towns, and say, they are forced to it in the Country by the *Moors*. They own the Divinity of our Saviour, and don't baptize their Children till 40 Days old. They go to Church after Midnight on *Saturdays*, and stay there till *Sunday* Noon, supporting their Bodies all the Time with Crutches; but *Ogilby* says, they lean on Pillars, expecting, like Pilgrims, the glorious Coming of God. The Priest is veil'd with Linen, and has two or three Boys about him in the same Habit. They sing most of *David's* Psalms at every Meeting, with some Portions of the Old and New Testament, the

latter as written by *Nicomedes*, Part in the *Coptick* Language, which few of them understand, but most of it in the *Moresco*. Both Priest and People make a very inarticulate Noise, and now and then the Priest lifts up the Red Cloth over the Altar. They administer the Sacrament in both Kinds, and give it to Infants as soon as they are baptized. They have the Pictures of Christ and the Virgin in their Churches, but not over their Altars. They preserve in Chests the Ashes of such as turn'd *Mahometans*, and have suffer'd Martyrdom for recanting. At their Entrance into the Church, they kiss their Hands, and lay them over one another. The Women sit in Galleries with Grates apart from the Men. They disallow Extreme Unction, Prayers for the Dead, and Purgatory, hold the Church of *Rome* to be Heretical, and reject all General Councils since that at *Ephesus*. But the Friars have sent them their Service and Bible in the *Arabick* Tongue, and converted many of them to Popery. Our Author says, their Patriarch, tho' call'd the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, resides in *Cairo*. When they grow old, they have generally a Fancy to go to *Saïet* above *Cairo*, on the River, where they say Christ and his Mother stay'd till *Herod's* Death. They never eat by Day in *Lent* except *Saturdays* and *Sundays*. *Ogilby* distinguishes the Sects of Christians here, besides *Europeans*, into *Copticks*, *Nestorians*, *Maronites*, *Georgians*, *Jacobites*, *Armenians*, *Syrians*, &c. and computes all together at 100000 in *Cairo*. He says, they agree with the *Roman* Church in many Ceremonies, and differ as much from it in others as they differ from one another; that yet they believe the *Romish* Doctrine to be right, and the Pope to be Christ's Vicar: And in 1593, *Gabriel*, one of their Patriarchs, sent a Message to Pope *Clement VIII.* with a Declaration of his Confession, importing, that he believed the See and Pope of *Rome* to be the Supreme Head of the Church, *St. Peter's* Successor, Christ's Vicar, and the Teacher and Father of all Christians; and that the Pope has such a Power from our Lord, thro' *St. Peter*, to govern the Universal Church, so as that none can be sav'd out of it. *Ogilby* adds, that they still stand to that Confession; and that when their Patriarch writes to the Pope, he styles him the Greatly Esteem'd Pope, Father

Father of the Priesthood, Successor in the Universal, Apostolick, truly believing Church, Father and Prince of Princes, and Christ's Vicegerent on Earth, sitting on the Seat of St. Peter, Prince of the Apostles. *Baronius* in his Annals says also, that there was an Embassy from *Marcus* the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, with a Submission of himself and the Churches of *Egypt* to the Authority of the same Pope; but *Heylin* says, 'twas discover'd to be a Cheat, invented only to keep up the Reputation of a sinking Cause; and that the Patriarch still adheres to his own Authority, tho' the Friars have introduc'd the *Romish* Religion and Liturgies in some Places.

Besides other Tenets which we have already mentioned, he says they confer all sacred Orders under the Priesthood upon Infants, and that their Parents are bound by Promise to perform Charity, to fast *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*, and to observe 4 *Lents* a Year in their Behalf, till they are 16 Years of Age; that they reckon Baptism of no Effect, unless ministred by the Priest in the open Church; that they marry within the 2d Degree of Consanguinity without a Dispensation, and keep no Sabbath or Festivals but in the Cities.

They inhabit several Towns, Villages, and Cloysters, besides *Cairo*; and if we may believe *Ogilby*, all these Christians, and the *Abyssins* too, are under one and the same Patriarch, who resides at *Alexandria*, and in *Arabick* is call'd *Papa*, or the Father Patriarch. *Kircher* says, the *Jacobites* hold, That in Christ, by the Hypostatical Union, there's one only Personal Nature, consisting of two Natures, not Personal, and without Mixture, growing together. They make Saints of *Dioscorus*, *Severus*, *Petrus*, and *Macharius*, who were all Hereticks, and condemn Pope *Leo*. They think that themselves, the *Armenians* and *Abyssins*, are the Catholick Church, exclusive of all others, and that no Man goes either to Paradise or Hell before the Day of Judgment. The same Author says, That those who follow the Heresy of *Dioscorus* deny Christ's Humanity, and affirm his Body coequal with the Deity. Others deny that he received a Soul; and from these Words of St. John, *And the Word became Flesh*, think that he took Flesh of the Virgin *Mary*, and that meerly

the Word became Flesh. He adds, That those who follow *Nestorius*, the Bishop of *Constantinople*, distinguish two Substances in Christ, give him two Persons, and by consequence make two Sons of God, and two Christs, one of which is God, and the other born of the Virgin *Mary*, who they say ought not to be call'd God's Mother, but Christ's Mother. The *Copticks* in their Divine Service use the Liturgies of St. Peter, Mark, Basil, Gregory, and Cyril, and read the Epistles and Gospels twice, once in the *Coptick*, and once in the *Arabick*. He says, contrary to *Thevenot*, that their Singing is very harmonious, without any Discord. They chuse their Patriarchs out of the Monks. There were formerly 10 Archbishopricks in *Egypt*. He adds, that there are many *Calogers* here, i. e. Shav'd Monks of the Greek Religion, who possess many Churches and Cloysters, live poorly, sleep on the Ground, and drink no Wine but at the Mass. *Ogilby* has a Chronological Table of the Bishops or Patriarchs of the *Coptis* from the 45th Year after Christ's Birth to A. D. 1635, to which we refer the Curious.

The *Moors*, as we have said, are *Mahometans*; but *Thevenot* says the Women circumcise their Daughters, which the *Turks* do not. They are great Hypocrites, and have many Santo's and Dancing Dervishes or Priests, whom they much honour, and there's one Sort as ugly as the Dancers are pleasant. They wear Felt Caps as they do, and are habited like them, but say their Prayers oftner, and go to Mosque every *Tuesday* and *Thursday* Night at 11 a Clock. Whilst they sing the Alcoran, they often clap their Hands one against another, and play on Drums and other Instruments. They say their Prayers so loud, and strain their Voices to that Degree for half an Hour, that sometimes they spit Blood, and foam at the Mouth like mad Dogs; and when their Strength fails, they make a Noise like so many Hogs a grunting: Yet after a little Rest they start up, and begin their Musick again, which they repeat three times successively. In their Processions they walk with shut Eyes, and a Man on each Side to support them, and some of them cry out, *Hou*, i. e. He the God, till they foam at the Mouth; and they that can hold longest in this Extasy, are counted the greatest Saints. There

There are other Santo's, says *Thevenot*, that go stark naked both Winter and Summer, and let their Hair grow to its full Length. They are so much honour'd, that when they go to the Houses of the chief Men, they sit down and dine without Scruple, because the Family thinks their Company a Blessing. They are very lascivious, and our Author affirms, that many barren Women kiss their Priapus with great Reverence, and sometimes get a great Belly into the Bargain. He says, that one of them formerly hung a large Stone upon his Glans, which the Women heartily kiss'd in order to have Children. Others eat Serpents. He saw one at *Cairo* who had a Party-colour'd Turban as broad as a Mill-stone, and above half a Hundred Weight, and every one that pass'd him kiss'd his Hand. He says, there are enough of these Santo's to man out several Gallies, whither a great many of 'em were formerly sent by a Basha of the *Turks*, who do not much esteem them. They pay a singular Reverence to some of their deceas'd Santo's, who are generally interr'd upon the Highways and Bridges; and when they come to their Sepulchres, they ask Leave of the inclos'd Santo to pass them. Their most ador'd Santo is *Sadi Ahmet el Bedoui*, who is interr'd at *Meintaganir* or *Menitegamir*, near the Channel of *Rossetto* in *Delta*. There's a Yearly Fair held there, when they come from all Parts of *Egypt* to pray at his Grave. They pretend that he always delivers 3 Slaves from *Malta* at that Time, and 3 *Moors* are brought in to colour the Cheat, who affirm they were brought accordingly the Night before from *Malta*. They say he never knew a Woman, but lay with his own She Afs; and that being deny'd a Privilege by the Basha which he had formerly enjoy'd, by moving his Cap on one Side, he made his Castle ready to fall, which so frightened the Basha, that he granted him his Request, on Condition that he would set the Castle right again, which he did by putting his Cap even. When the Pilgrims of *Mecca* pass by this Place, they leave the Caravan to give this Saint a Visit. The Devotion lasts a Fortnight, and from hence the *Moors* go to visit other Saints for a Month together.

As for the *Greeks*, *Thevenot* says they are numerous in *Egypt*, but don't differ much

from those in *Turkey*. They have a Patriarch, who, as well as that of the *Coptis*, bears the Title of Patriarch of *Alexandria*, but commonly resides at *Cairo*.

Having given an Account of their Religion in *Europe*, we say nothing further of it here.

Their Language, ancient Hieroglyphicks, and Obelisks.

THeir Language is *Arabick*, a Dialect of the *Hebrew*, and very copious. *Thevenot* says, 'tis difficult to be pronounced, because of the many Gutturals, and the *Turks* make themselves merry with an *Arabian* to hear him talk, tho' their Alcoran and all their Prayers are in that Language; and they have a Proverb, That the *Turkish* Language serves in this World, the *Arabick* shall be spoken in Paradise, and the *Persian* in Hell, because they hate the *Persians*. *Ogilby* says, the *Jews* at *Cairo* speak generally a mix'd Language or *Lingua Franca*, and that formerly they had two Languages and two Sorts of Writing, viz. 1. The *Coptick*, which is the vulgar Tongue, and call'd also *Pharaoh's* Speech, because us'd in the Time of the ancient *Egyptian* Kings, who were called by the general Name of *Pharaoh*. He says, 'tis an Original, and not a *Greek* Dialect, as some argue, tho' 'twas blended in the Time of *Alexander the Great* and the *Ptolomies* with Words of a *Greek* Sound by the Commerce betwixt the *Greeks* and *Egyptians* for 300 Years, and consequently had a Mixture of some *Latin*, *Arabick*, *Hebrew*, and *Samaritan* Words. He corrects *Diodorus Siculus* for asserting that there was an Affinity betwixt the *Hebrew* and *Egyptian* Languages, as he does *Gesner*, *Volaterranus*, *Eusebius*, *Ambrose*, and *Theseus*, for saying that the *Egyptian* Tongue has a Relation in Sound to the *Abyssine*, *Chaldee*, *Arabick*, *Syriack*, and other Eastern Languages. He ascribes it as a peculiar Property to the *Coptick*, that all its Words, when pronounced by a Foreigner, change in the first Syllable, and not in the last, as in other Languages. He adds, that there are no Books of it now remaining, and only a few Words were preserv'd by the *Greek* and other ancient Writers, by which Means the Christians have a few Books written in it,

it, particularly the Old and New Testament, which *Nicephorus* says were translated out of the Hebrew almost 1500 Years ago. There is also a *Coptick* Dictionary of about 6000 Words, with an *Arabick* Explanation preserv'd in *Egypt*, and another brought thence by *De la Val* in 1624, which was publish'd 20 Years after at *Rome* by *Kircher*, who added a *Latin* Interpretation. Before that, *Kircher* publish'd an Introduction to the *Coptick* Tongue, with an Account of its Antiquity, Origine and Difference from other Tongues, of the Knowledge of their Letters, and of the Means of Reforming that Language.

2. The Sacred *Egyptian* Tongue, which he says was only us'd by the Clergy, and consisted purely of those comprehensive Representations call'd by the *Greeks* Hieroglyphicks; a Science so highly esteem'd by the *Egyptians*, that the Priests were to teach it to none but those of their Order. *Philo* the Jew says, that *Moses's* Learning consisted chiefly in this Divine Philosophy, but 'twas utterly lost when *Cambyzes* conquer'd *Egypt*, and banish'd their Priests. *Ogilby* gives the following Account of their Hieroglyphicks: They ascribe the Invention of them to *Hermes Trismegistus*, a Priest, and the greatest Philosopher in *Egypt*, who flourish'd in the Time of *Mizraim* their first King, and was Cotemporary with *Abraham*. They were certain Characters form'd from Animals, Trees, Planets, &c. to express their Mind: For Instance; A Basilisk with the Tail twin'd about its Body signify'd the Course of Time; a Falcon signify'd God, because that Bird soar'd high, and rul'd the lesser Birds; a Serpent with the Tail in its Mouth, the World; the Sun and Moon, Eternity; a Palm Branch, the Moon, because the Palm shoots forth a new Branch every Month; and Fire and Water, Integrity of Life, because of the Purity of those two Elements. They represented every thing that was abominable to their Gods by a Fish, because the Priests never us'd them in Sacrifice. Where the Subject was holy, and related to the Divine Nature, or Angels and Spirits, they were carv'd in Stone, but nothing of Prophane History; and if they were designed as Monuments to preserve the Memory of the Deceased, they were inscrib'd

on Winding Sheets and Funeral Clothes of Mummies, made of Paper, Wood, burnt Brick, or the like, of which we shall have Occasion to treat when we come to describe the Pyramids of *Egypt*; but generally they were cut in Stone upon Temple Doors, Obelisks, or their Idols. Their Obelisks were Stone Columns Four-square, erected in Honour of the Sun, from 10 to 140 Foot high, and carv'd on every Side. The *Arabians*, who ascribe the Invention of them to *Pharaoh*, the first of that Name, call them *Pharaoh's* Needles. But our Author says, the first that introduc'd them was *Manuphtar* Lord of *Memphis*, A.M. 2604. Others were built afterwards by the ancient Kings of *Egypt*, and by many of their Priests and Ministers of State; but most of them were at several Times transported to *Rome* by the Roman Emperors; and *Cambyzes* K. of *Persia*, when he conquer'd *Egypt*, destroy'd the rest. He adds, that they were of an excellent Marble Stone, which the *Greeks* call'd *Pyrobolon* or Fire-Stone; the *Latins*, *Theban* Stone; and the *Italians*, *Granito Rosso*. 'Tis as hard as *Porphyry*, and dug out of a Quarry near ancient *Thebes* among the Mountains, extending to *Negroland* and the Cataracts of the *Nile*. It was a shining Red Stone with clear Spots, of a Violet, a Blue, or Ash Colour, streak'd with Veins of Black.

Marmol says, they learn'd Hieroglyphicks from the *Ethiopians* that reign'd in *Egypt*, and that they were likewise practis'd by the *Cabbalists*, the *Magi* in *Persia*, the *Chaldeans* in *Assyria*, the *Brachmins* in *India*, the *Gymnosophists* in *Ethiopia*, the first Philosophers in *Greece*, and the *Druids* in *Gaul*. He says, That *Homer*, *Orpheus*, *Henopides*, *Pythagoras*, *Democritus*, and *Plato*, study'd in this Country; to whom we may add, says *Hylin*, *Lycurgus*, *Solon*, *Aristarchus*, and *Didymus*, the two famous Grammarians; *Herodian*, *Ammonius* the Master of *Ptolomy*, *Didymus* surnam'd *Calcenteres*, for his indefatigable Industry in several Sciences; *Manetho* and *Appianus*, two famous Historians, *Ptolomy* the Geographer, *Achilles Tatius* the Poet, together with *Pantenus* the first Divinity Reader at *Alexandria*, *Origen*, *Clemens Alexandrinus*, *Dionysius*, *Athanasius* and *Cyris*, the three last being Bishops of *Alexandria*.

Their

Their Computation of TIME.

THE ancient Egyptians observ'd only a Lunar Year; but *Censorinus* says, that afterwards they brought it for Conveniency from one to three Months, and from thence to four. Others had a Solar Year, which contain'd 360 Days, which they divided into 12 equal Months. Then they added 5 Days more, which they call'd *Nisi*, and according to *Horapolla*, God's Year, because the Egyptians call'd the Sun, God, and this was received for the true Civil Year. At length they brought it to the Solar Year, by adding 6 Hours to every Year, and every 4th was a Leap Year. *Eudoxus*, *Plato's* Scholar, says, this was long before *Alexander the Great's* coming hither, and that the Egyptians taught it to the Romans; and *Strabo* says, the Grecians learn'd it from *Eudoxus* their Countryman. Their first Year was called *Sothis* or Dog, from the Dog-Star, at the Rising of which they began their Year; the 2d was called *Isis* or *Serapis*; the 3d, *Osiris*; the 4th, *Horus*; and they represented the 4 Years by the Figure of *Mercury*, with a Dog's Face standing upon a Crocodile, with a Bowl in his Hand. At his Right Side stood *Jupiter Ammon*, and at the Left *Serapis*, with the Figure of *Nilus* upon his Head, and likewise a Star, which *Mamilius* says represented *Isis*. The *Coptists* and *Abyssines* call the 4 Years by the Names of the 4 Evangelists. Their Priests and Astronomers had another call'd the Mystical Year, which consisted of no more than 365 Days. The modern *Copticks* observe 4 Accounts; 1. That call'd in *Arabick*, *Abraham's Epoch*, computed from the Creation of the World: The 2d from the Beginning of the Grecian Monarchy: The 3d from *Nabonassar K.* of the *Chaldees*, us'd only by Astronomers; and the 4th us'd by the *Abyssines*, and introduced by *Dioclesian* in the 19th Year of his Reign, *A. C.* 302. *Ogilby* says, the first Month is *Thoth*, and begins *August 28*. 'Tis call'd in *Arabick* the *Coptick Kalendar*, and by the *Copticks* the Holy Martyr's Kalendar, or Year of Grace, because of the violent Persecution which the Christians at that Time suffer'd under *Dioclesian*, when about *Coptos* only 144000 were martyr'd. He sets down the Names

of their 12 Months, for which we refer to him.

Their HISTORY.

Armol says, the ancient Egyptians thought themselves the first of Humane Race, till they found that the *Phrygians* were older than they in the Reign of *Psammeticus*, who (*Herodotus* says) decided the Matter by causing two new-born Infants to be brought up in a Desert among the Cattle, where none should have Access to 'em but a Shepherd, who was charg'd narrowly to observe the first Word they spoke, which was *Betcho*, the *Phrygian* Word for Bread; whereupon the Egyptians yielded the Plea of Antiquity to the *Phrygians*. *Herodotus* says, the Egyptian Priests pretended to him, that this Nation was in Being several Ages before the Creation, according to Scripture, and that in his Time they had computed 25000 Years, viz. 10000 to their first King, and 15000 afterward. *Diodorus* says, their Priests also affirm'd, that this Part of the World was govern'd first by the Gods directly and indirectly for 8000 Years, and then 15000 by Kings, but could give no Account of those Gods or Kings. Some learned Men endeavour to solve this mysterious Calculation, by supposing, that by the Years of *Herodotus* and *Diodorus* were not meant the Periodical Revolution of the Sun upon the Ecliptick, but rather that of the Moon or of the Seasons, according to *Pliny*, who in his Criticks upon *Xenophon* says, he knew not what to make of the *Æra* of the Ancients, for (says he) some made the Summer one Year, and the Winter another; Others made a Year of each of the Seasons, like the *Arcadian* Year of three Months. Others again reckon'd every Moon for a Year, like the *Egyptians*; so that some of them, says he, may be said to have liv'd 1000 Years according to that Computation. After this Manner several learned Men have sought to explain what is said in *Genesis* about the long Lives of the Patriarchs, tho' *St. Austin* and other Clergymen thought it true in the literal Sense, as certainly it was. *Du Mont* says, there were also entire Sects of Christians that adher'd to the Opinion of those learned Men, who reckon'd 10 Years of

of the Patriarchs for one of ours; and it seems the *Septuagint* have follow'd it in their Version, because they have added 100 Years to the Life of every one of the Patriarchs more than is specified in the Text, which they did probably, says he, to obviate the Absurdity that would arise from supposing that *Enoch* was but 9 Years of Age when he begot *Kenan*, and the latter but 7 when he begot *Malaleel*. Upon the Whole, *Du Mont* is of Opinion, that 'tis better to admit those Years for Solar ones than for small Lunar Years, or a little larger, especially with Regard to the *Egyptians*. Otherwise, says he, how is that Passage of *Herodotus* intelligible, which computes, besides the Reign of the Gods, 333 Kings, who altogether could not have reign'd above 10343 Years? Besides, it appears from the 7th and 8th Chapters of *Genesis*, that from the Beginning of the World the Years were at least compos'd of 12 Lunar Months; and that 'twould be to no Purpose to urge that the *Hebrews* might compute after this Manner, and the *Egyptians* after another. However, the *Jews* were obliged to have Recourse to the *Egyptians* to find out *Easter*; and *Plutarch*, whose Authority is incontestable, proves by an *Egyptian* Story, for which we refer to him, that their Year was fix'd at 365 Days, long before the Time of *Osiris*. *Heylin* says, That the *Egyptians* pretended to a History of 13000 Years, and 330 Kings or 24 Dynasties, in the Time of *Amasis* II. who was Cotemporary with *Cyrus*; but he thinks them to be Lunar Years, which reduces the Number to 1000 or 1100, and makes them answer to those after the Flood. He questions the Number of their Kings and Dynasties, and supposes, 1. That either those Kings could not be all Kings or Lords of *Egypt*, as the *Pharaohs* were, but rather certain Viceroy's, nor those Dynasties the Succession of so many Royal Families, but of their Substitutes and Lieutenants, many of whom might live successively under one Supreme: Or, 2. That *Egypt* was then divided into several Kingdoms amongst the Princes of the said Dynasties: Or lastly, That some of those Princes were *Antediluvians*, whose Names he thinks were preserved on Pillars of Brass or Stone, or else transmitted by Tradition to *Cham* the Father of *Mizraim*. He says, *Mizraim's* Children succeeded after the

Flood, and shar'd the Government with the Posterity of *Chus* and *Lehabin*, two others of *Cham's* Sons, from the first of whom descended the Inhabitants of *Egypt* on the Coast of the *Red Sea*, and from the latter the *Lybii Egyptii* formerly mentioned: Yet they were all subject to *Mizraim* and his Successors. We have already observed, that they had generally the Name of *Pharaoh*. They were afterwards call'd *Ptolomies*, and lastly *Cæsars*. Few of them are noted in History for any considerable Atchievements abroad, because they were contented with their own Revenues, and spent the Overplus in building Cities, dreining the Marshes of the *Nile*, or the like publick Acts. Yet 'tis reported, that *Sesostrius*, a powerful Prince, subdued all his neighbouring Princes, and compelled them to draw his Chariot: But one of his Captive Princes, who often cast his Eye on the Coach-Wheel, being demanded the Cause by *Sesostrius*, reply'd, *That the Falling of that Spoke lowest which just before was highest, put him in Mind of the Instability of Fortune*. After which, the King would never be so drawn again. He marched against the *Scythians*, by whom he was routed, and his Forces pursued Home; but the Conquerors being unacquainted with the Fens, returned back without entring their Country. Historians and Chronologers differ much about the Succession of their Kings; but we shall set them down according to *Helvicus* and *Heylin*.

The Pharaohs or Kings of Egypt of the Egyptian Race.

A. M. 1900. I. **M**izraim the Son of *Cham*, by the *Grecians* call'd *Osiris*, and suppos'd by Antiquaries to be *Apis* or *Serapis*, the great Idol of the *Egyptians*. *Manetho* and *Josephus* suppose he is the *Pharaoh* mentioned *Gen. 12.* in whose Time *Abraham* went to *Egypt*. *Diodorus Siculus* says, That *Osiris* was the Son of *Saturn* and *Rhea*, and married his Sister *Isis*. They say, he gain'd the Affections of all his Subjects by his wife and moderate Government and good Laws. He instructed them in Tillage, planting of Vines and Olives, and Handicraft Trades.

A. M. 1900. Trades. He also taught them Letters by the Help of *Mercury* or *Hermes*, an ingenious Statesman, whom he made a Counsellor to his Wife, as he did *Hercules*, a Man of extraordinary Strength, to superintend the Executive Part, while he with his Brother *Apollo*, and his two Sons *Anubis* and *Macedo*, the Muses, and *Pan*, *Maro* and *Triptolemus*, the first Planters of Vineyards and Sowers of Corn, march'd (according to the fabulous Historians) thro' *Arabia* and the *Indies*, *Greece*, *Germany*, *Gaul*, *Britain*, &c. where he won many great Victories, civiliz'd the barbarous Inhabitants, taught them the aforesaid Arts, and kill'd Tyrants, for which he was deify'd at his Return into *Egypt*, where the People worshipp'd him as the Sun, and *Isis* as the Moon, because they fancy'd they were ascend'd to govern those Planets. *Typhon* his Brother envy'd and privately murder'd him by the Help of the *Tytanois*, and then distributed his Quarters among his Relations. *Isis* had his Effigies made of Herbs, Wax, and Spices, gave the Priests a Revenue to shew it to the People, and order'd them to honour him in Secret as a God, and to consecrate the best of every thing to him. The Priests accordingly instituted an Annual Festival for the finding of his Body when they went into the Archives of the Temple before the Image of *Osiris*, with doleful Postures and Lamentations, shav'd their Heads, beat their Breasts, and ripped up the Scars of certain Wounds they had given themselves beforehand in Private, as a Preparative to this Service. After a few Days, they pretended by Divine Instinct to have found his Body; upon which they chang'd their Lamentations into Songs, Dances, and Revellings. They kept another Festival call'd in *Greek*, *Phallophoria*, for the finding his Genitals, which *Diodorus* says were publicly expos'd in Ivory or Gold half a Yard in Length, and carried about with Musick, Dancing, and all Manner of lewd Postures. There was

A. M. 1900. another Day appointed by *Isis* when they did nothing but bemoan his Death. At all these Festivals the Priests wore a long white Linen Surplice with the Image of *Anubis*, that had a Head like a Dog upon their Crowns, a Branch of Sea-Wormwood or Pine in their Right Hands, and in their Left a Tree, which they said had Power to drive away Evil Spirits. *Plutarch* derives the Etymology of *Osiris* from the *Greek* Word *Hosieros*, Very Holy, or of two *Egyptian* Words *Os* and *Iris*, the first signifying Great, and the last an Eye. *Kircher* says, that in the ancient *Egyptian* Tongue it signifies Holy Lord, and an Ubiquitary Fire. *Homer* calls *Osiris* and *Isis* the Father and Mother of all the Gods, from whence some have confounded *Isis* with *Ceres*, and *Osiris* with *Bacchus*, *Mercury*, *Pan*, *Nephtune*, *Jupiter*, *Janus*, *Saturn*, and *Ca-lum*; some with *Hercules*, *Apollo*, *Pluto*, and *Horus*; and others with *Nilus*, *Apis*, *Hammon*, and *Oceanus*. The *Greeks* make *Isis* the Daughter of *Inachus*, which gave Occasion to the Fable, that she was transformed by *Juno* into a Cow; but *Diodorus Siculus* says, this Fable refers rather to the *Assyrian* *Isis* than to *Osiris's* Wife. Some derive her from *Ethiopia*. The *Egyptians* held *Isis* in such Honour, that 'twas Capital to say she was a Mortal; and in all Temples where the Images of *Osiris* and *Isis* were set, there was also one of *Horus* or *Harperates*, *Osiris's* Son, with his Finger upon his Lips to denote Silence. *Plutarch* calls *Isis*, *Pandeches* or Receiver-General, and *Keratophorus* or Cornuted; because she was suppos'd to be the Moon. *Servius* says, her Name signifies the Spirit of *Nilus*; and that the moving of the Trees in one Hand signify'd the flowing up of that River, and the *Merlin* in t'other its flowing to the Banks; from whence *Ogilby* concludes, that in the *Egyptian* Tongue *Isis* signifies the Earth. *Apuleius* in his *Metamorphosis* styles her, The Generating Nature of all Things, the Lady of all princi-

A. M. 1900. principal Matters, the Bringer forth of Ages, the Supream of Deities, the Queen of Spirits, and the first Exemplar of Gods and Goddesses. The *Athenians* call'd her the Cecropian *Minerva*; the *Cyprians*, the Paphian *Venus*; the *Cretans*, the Dytinnian *Diana*; the *Sicilians*, the Stygian *Proserpina*; the *Eleusinians*, *Ceres*; others *Juno*, some *Bellona*, *Hecate* and *Rhamnusia*; the *Greeks*, *Tithenes* or *Nurse*; and some, the Law giver; by which various Names they endeavour'd to represent the several Operations which she perform'd in the World. *Diodorus* affirms, that *Isis* invented abundance of Medicines. The *Egyptians* perpetuated the Memory of *Osiris* and *Isis* by several Inscriptions engraven upon Pillars. *Diodorus* gives us one of *Isis* thus; I *Isis* Queen of Egypt, taught by Mercury, am the Wife of *Osiris*, and the Mother of *Horus*. That which I have establish'd by Law, none shall be able to dissolve. I am the first Inventer of Fruits; I am in the Constellation of the Devouring Dog. The City *Bubastis* was erected to my Honour. O! Egypt, Egypt, rejoice that thou hast foster'd me. He gives us another of *Osiris* representing his Origine and Travels. They add, That

II. *Typhon* the Usurper, an Italian Tyrant, was put to Death by *Isis*, with the Assistance of her Sons *Horus* and *Anubis*, or (as others say) of her Son *Hercules Lybicus*, about the Year of the World 2240.

III. *Orus I.* *Osiris's* Son, restor'd to the Kingdom by his Uncle *Lehabim*, the Advancer of *Joseph*.

2107. IV. *Amasis*, *Themosis*, or *Amos*, in whose Time *Jacob* went down into Egypt. *Josephus* says, he expelled the Dynasty of the Shepherds, who he supposes were a Hebrew Nation; but *Manetho* thinks that History cannot refer to the Time of *Exodus*, because there were many other Dynasties of Shepherds among the *Egyptians*. *Helvicius* makes this Pharaoh the first of the 18th Dynasty, which he begins about A. M. 2252. *Heylin* says, he reign'd 25 Years.

A. M. 2233. V. *Chehorn* or *Chebron*, the Son of *Themosis*, reign'd 12 Years.

2245. VI. *Amenophis* or *Amenophis I.* reign'd 21 Years. *Manetho* in *Africanus* sets down *Amos* or *Amosis* about 2250.

2266. VII. *Amarsis* or *Ameffes*, the Sister of *Amenophthis*, reign'd 22 Years. *Manetho* in *Africanus* sets down *Chebro*s about 2270.

2288. VIII. *Mephres*, reign'd 12 Years. *Manetho* sets down *Omenophthis* about 2290.

2300. IX. *Mesphormuthesis* or *Mephramuthosis*, reign'd 25 Years. *Manetho* sets down *Amersis* about 2310.

2325. X. *Thamosis*, *Themosis*, or *Thuthmosis*, reign'd 10 Years. *Manetho* sets down *Misphris* about 2330.

2335. XI. *Amenophthis II.* or *Memnon*, noted for his Sounding-Statue at *Thebes*, which (according to *Eusebius*, *Dionysius*, *Tacitus*, and *Pliny*) made a Noise like a Harp every Day at Sun-rising. *Strabo* says, that *Gambyes* struck off its Head and Shoulders. He reign'd 31 Years. *Manetho* sets down *Misphragmuthosis* about 2340.

2366. XII. *Orus II.* *Heylin* says, he was the *Busiris* of the *Grecians*, and commanded the Male Children of *Israel* to be slain. *Talents* says, he built the Pyramids. He reign'd 37 Years. *Manetho* sets down *Thuthmosis* about 2370, and *Amenophthis* about 2380.

2403. XIII. *Acencheres* or *Thermusis*. *Eusebius* thinks she was a Man. *Heylin* says, she was the Daughter of *Amenophthis*, and the Wife of *Orus II.* whom she surviv'd, and that she preserv'd *Moses*; but *Talents* makes her the Daughter of *Orus*. She reign'd 13 Years. *Manetho* sets down *Oros* about 2410.

2416. XIV. *Rathotis*, *Rathoris*, or *Rathosis*, the Brother of *Acencheres* above-mentioned, according to *Helvicius*. He reign'd 6 Years.

2422. XV. *Achencheres I.* He reign'd 12 Years.

2436. XVI. *Achencheres II.* reign'd 12 Years.

2449. XVII. *Conchros*, *Arenasis*, *Armis*, or *Bocchoris*, reign'd 16 Years, according

A. M. to Heylin. *Talents* says, 'twas he who
2449. was drown'd in the Red Sea, *Exod.* 14.
Manetho sets down *Acherres* about this
Time.

2453. XVIII. *Armesis*, whom Heylin calls
Acherres, and says, he reigned 8
Years, but *Helvicus* only one Year
and 4 Months.

2454. XIX. *Armeses Miamun*, whom Hey-
lin calls *Cherres*, and makes his Reign
10 Years.

2475. XX. *Armais*. *Josephus* says, he was
called *Danaus* by the *Grecians*; and
that his 50 Daughters having murder'd
his Brother *Egyptus*'s 50 Sons
to whom they were married, *Egyptus*
forced him to fly to Greece, where
he had the Kingdom of *Argos*, and
gave the People the Name of *Danai*.
Manetho sets down *Rathos* about 2480,
Chebres about 2490, *Acherres* about
2500, and *Armeses* and *Rammeses* about
2515. Heylin places the latter about
2575, and says he was *Egyptus* the
Brother of *Danaus*.

Helvicus sets down *Amenophis* or
Amenophthis III. about 2520, in which
Manetho agrees; but Heylin places him
at 2580, and says, he reign'd 10 Years.

XXI. *Sethos* or *Sethosis*. *Josephus*
places him about 2540, and makes
him the last of the 18th Dynasty, or
rather the first of the 19th Dynasty
of the *Diospolites*. He was the Bro-
ther of *Armais*, and call'd *Egyptus*.
Heylin places him about 2590, and
says he reigned 55 Years.

XXII. *Rhaphaces* or *Ranses*. *Jose-
phus* places him about 2590, and Hey-
lin about 2645, and says he reign'd
66 Years.

XXIII. *Amenephthes* or *Amenoph-
this* IV. about 2651, according to
Manetho in *Africanus*, or 2711 accor-
ding to Heylin. *Manetho* places *Am-
menemes* and *Thuoris* about 2730. Hey-
lin places the latter about 2777.

XXIV. *Rameses* II. about 2671, ac-
cording to *Manetho*, or 2751 accor-
ding to Heylin, who makes his Reign
26 Years. *Talents* thinks him to be
Neptune, and Cotemporary with *Bu-
sis*. After his Death succeeded the
20th Dynasty of the *Diospolitani*, be-

A. M. ing a Race of 12 Kings, who Heylin
says held the Government for 177
Years; but their Names are unknown,
except *Vaphra*, one of the last,
whose Daughter *Solomon* married;
and he thinks that *Ogdoos*, who re-
mov'd the Royal Seat from *Thebes*
to *Memphis*, was another of them.

XXV. *Smendes* or *Semendes*, the first
of the 21st Dynasty of the *Tanites*.
Heylin thinks he was the same with *Si-
sac* who made War upon *Rehoboam*,
and that he is thought to be the *Se-
sostris* of the Ancients. He places
him A. M. 2961, almost 100 Years la-
ter than *Helvicus*.

XXVI. *Pseacenes*, *Pfusennes*, or *Pseu-
sennes*, supposed to be the *Chops* of
Herodotus, and the *Chemnis* of *Diodorus*;
but *Helvicus* thinks him rather the
Cheprenes of the former, and the *Cha-
breas* of the latter. Heylin says, he
was the Founder of the Pyramids;
that he began his Reign in 2987, and
reigned 41 Years; but *Helvicus*'s
Computation is almost 100 Years
further backward. The latter also
places *Nephelcherres*, *Nepherchenes*, or
Nephercheres, about 2935, whereas
Heylin begins his Reign at 3028, and
ends it at 3032, where he begins that
of *Amenophthis* or *Amenophis* V. who
he says reign'd 9 Years. *Helvicus*
places the latter about 2940, and
makes *Opsochon* or *Osochor* his Succes-
sor 100 Years further backward than
Heylin. Some think he is the *Asychis*
of *Herodotus*, and others *Sesacus*. *Hel-
vicus* places *Psinaches* or *Spinaches* a-
bout 2950, and *Suseunes* or *Pfusennes* II.
about 2962, at the Beginning of the
22d Dynasty of the *Bubastæ*. Heylin
places *Psucenes* at 3056, and says he
reign'd 14 Years. Here *Helvicus* sets
down *Sesochosis*, *Sefonchis*, or *Sesacus*,
the *Sisac* mentioned 1 Kings 2. 40.
and the *Sesostris* of *Herodotus*, and
therefore probably the *Smendes* of
Heylin, as above-mentioned, thô 100
Years further back, because that Au-
thor observes much the same Dif-
ference all along. So he places the
next Successor *Usertthon* or *Osorthon*,
who he says reign'd 15 Years from

A. M. 3091, which was that of his Accession to the Government. Sir John Marsham alters the Egyptian Kings much, and shews there were 4 several Dynasties, and a Succession of Kings descended from Mizraim; and that Shishak not only took Jerusalem, but also conquer'd Asia, over which his Successors reign'd for some Time. Helvicus places Takelotis about 3050; but Heylin says, he reign'd from 3106 to 3119. About 3093, the former begins the 23d Dynasty of the Tanites with Petubastes or Petubastis, who according to Heylin reign'd 40 Years from 3119.

XXVII. Oforchos, Oforthon, or Oserchon, call'd the 2d Egyptian Hercules. Helvicus sets him down about 3133; but Heylin computes his Reign from 3159 to 3167. Helvicus says, he was succeeded by Psamnis or Psammis about 3141; but Heylin places him in 3167, and says he reign'd 15 Years.

XXVIII. Bocchoris, the first of the 24th Dynasty of the Saites, about 3183. Helvicus supposes him to be so mentioned 2 Kings 17. 24. Plutarch says, he was very cruel and unjust; but Aelian says, he had the contrary Character. Heylin thinks he reign'd 44 Years, when he was burnt alive by Sabacon or Sibachon King of Ethiopia, whom he makes the first of the 25th Dynasty of the Ethiopians about 3226. Heylin says he reign'd 8 Years, and Helvicus thinks he answers to Isaiah's Prediction, Cap. 19. v. 4.

XXIX. Seweckus, Sewachus, or Sebi-chus, his Son. Helvicus and Heylin place him about 3235, and the former thinks him the Sethos of Herodotus. The latter makes his Reign 14 Years. Talents says, That about this Time Sennacherib wasted Egypt.

XXX. Tarachus or Tarachon, about 3250. Helvicus says, he is the Tirhaka mentioned Isa. 37. 9. who reign'd first in Ethiopia. Heylin thinks he ought not to be confounded with the Zerah of the Scriptures, and that he reign'd 10 Years.

XXXI. Stephinates about 3268. Heylin says, he reign'd 7 Years, and

A. M. was succeeded by Nictupses or Nesbep-sos; after whose Death follow'd an Aristocracy of 12 Princes, who having govern'd 15 Years under the 26th Dynasty of the Saites, were divested of their Authority by one of their own Number, call'd

XXXII. Psamnitichus or Psammetichus, who (says Heylin) made himself King by the Help of the Grecian Soldiers, whom he had called into Egypt for Aid against the Assyrians about the Year 3288, or 3280 according to Helvicus. The former says, he founded the famous Egyptian Labyrinth, and prevented the Scythians from breaking into his Country.

N. B. The following Kings are out of Herodotus.

XXXIII. Necho, Nechao, Necus, or Neco, began his Reign about 3335, and Heylin says reign'd 25 Years. See 2 Kings 23. 29. Jer. 46. 2. where he is mentioned. Reiner says, he attempted to bring the Nile into the Red Sea, but in vain. Heylin sets down Psammis II. in 3360, and says he reign'd 44 Years; but Helvicus places him in 3350.

XXXIV. Apries or Vaphres, call'd Haphrea or Hophra, Jer. 44. 30. where the Prophet foretels his Destruction. Heylin places him at 3366, and says he was subdued by Nebuchadnezzar, and kill'd by Amasis after 25 Years Reign. Helvicus thinks that the Character which Herodotus gives of the Pride of Apries agrees very well with Ezek 31. Amasis succeeded in 3381 according to Helvicus, or 3391 according to Heylin, who says he reign'd 44 Years. Talents says, that after this Reign Egypt was laid desolate 40 Years, according to Ezekiel's Prophecy, Cap. 29.

XXXV. Psammitas, Psamminitus, or Psammiticus II. In the 6th Month of his Reign he was vanquish'd by Cambyses K. of Persia, who derided the Egyptian Gods. Helvicus sets him down about 3427, where he begins the 27th Dynasty of the Persians. Heylin

A. M. Heylin begins his Reign at 3435, and says, *Cambyfes* united *Egypt* to the *Persian* Empire, under which it continued till the 2d Year of *Darius*, the 6th King of the *Medes* and *Persians*, when it became a Kingdom again. But *Herodotus* says, they were subdu'd the first time by *Xerxes*. *Diodorus* says, they rebelled a 2d time, but were reduced about 3486, when *Talents* says they chose *Inarus* for their King, with the Assistance of the *Athenians*, and often routed the *Persians*, who at length made their King Prisoner, and crucified him. *Talents* says, that about 3500 *Pausiris* was made King by Consent of the *Persians*. *Helvicus* says, that about 10 Years after, in the 12th Year of *Darius* *Nothus*, *Egypt* revolted from the *Persians* to *Artaxerxes* *Ochus*. At 3538, *Talents* begins the 28th Dynasty of the *Saites*, when the *Persians* being expell'd, *Amyrtas* or *Amyrteus* was chose King: But *Heylin* begins his Reign at 3555, and ends it at 3561. At 3544, *Helvicus* begins the 29th Dynasty of the *Saites* with *Nepherites*, whom *Heylin* sets down at 3561, and says he reign'd 6 Years. *Achoris* he places at 3567, *Psammites* III. at 3579; *Nepherites* II. reign'd two Months, and *Nectanebos* begun his Reign at 3580; in each of which *Heylin* is before *Helvicus* about 20 Years. The latter begins the 30th Dynasty of the *Sebenites* at 3563 with XXXVI. *Nectanebis*, who he says was succeeded in 3581 by *Teos* or *Tachos*, who *Heylin* says was depos'd in 3600 by *Nectanebos* II. the last King of the natural *Egyptian* Race. *Talents* says, that in his Reign *Teos* was restored by *Agésilas*. *Helvicus* says, that *Nectanebos* was expelled by *Ochus* the 8th Emperor of *Persia*, who began the 31st Dynasty of the *Persians* with the Reign of *Artes*, and his Successor *Darius* *Codemannus*, who being conquer'd by *Alexander the Great*, the 32d Dynasty of the *Macedonians* follow'd about 3619. *Heylin* says, *Alexander* won this Kingdom without Blows, and had 6000 Talents from

A. M. it Yearly during his Life. *Talents* says, he built *Alexandria*, and was buried at the Temple of *Jupiter* *Hammamon* two Years after his Death. *Heylin* says, that upon his Decease the Kingdom fell to *Ptolomy* the Son of *Lagus*, from whom all its following Kings were called *Ptolomies*.

The Ptolomean Kings of Egypt, or Heylin's Second Dynasty.

Note: The Reader will find *Helvicus* and *Heylin's* Computation in the Margin under the Year of the World.

A. M. I. **P**tolomy, who had the Sirname of his reputed Father *Lagus*, tho' some suppos'd him to be the Son of *Philip* of *Macedon*, under whom he was rais'd to be a Commander from a private Soldier. Afterwards he was employed under *Alexander the Great*, when he acquir'd much Renown, and was surnam'd *Soter* for saving that Prince's Life, by covering his Body in a Battle against the *Oxydracans*, a People of *India*. He apprehended *Bessus*, who had assassinated *Darius*, and deliver'd him up to *Alexander*; after whose Death he seiz'd the Kingdom, and added new Conquests to it. *Arideus* and *Perdiccas* try'd in vain to dispossess him, and the latter fell by his Hands. He took *Jerusalem*, where he persecuted and brought away the *Jews* Captives, and defeated *Antigonus* K. of *Syria*, who afterwards retook it; and *Diodorus* says, that *Demetrius* his Son won a Battle of *Ptolomy* at *Cyprus*. *Justin* says, he routed *Antigonus*, with the Assistance of *Cassander*, and *Seleucus* his Ally. However, he reconquer'd *Syria*, *Phœnicia*, and the Isle of *Cyprus*. After *Antigonus's* Death, he subdued the *Cyrenians*, took the City of *Gaza*, and, with the Assistance of *Seleucus* and *Lyfimachus*, overthrew *Demetrius*. He caus'd his Son *Ptolomy* *Philadelphus* to be crown'd before his Death, which happen'd in the 40th Year of his Reign, in the

Began 124th Olympiad, and the 470th of
to Rome, according to *Polybius*, *Justin*,
reign and *Eusebius*. *Appianus* says, he mar-
A. M. ried *Berenice*, one of the Maids of
Honour to *Euridice*, who was *Antipa-
ter's* first Wife's Daughter. Some
say he had a Son nam'd *Ceraunus* by
Euridice, who was afterwards King
of *Macedonia*.

Helvi- II. *Ptolomy* called *Philadelphus*, by
cus Way of Irony, for making away
3664. his Brothers. *Justin*, *Josephus*, and
Heylin others, begin his Reign in the first
3681. Year of the 124th Olympiad, be-
cause his Father had associated him
in the Government a Year before his
Death; but *Polybius* and *Eusebius* be-
gin it exactly at the latter. *Epipha-
nius*, *Eusebius*, and *Josephus*, say he was
a great Friend to learned Men, and
that by the Care of *Demetrius Phale-
rus* his Library-keeper, he erected a
Library at *Alexandria* of 200000
Books of the greatest Value, brought
from all Parts of the World. Others
say more, and that he told that Prince
he hop'd soon to make them up
500000. *Heylin* says, they amounted
to 700000. *Ptolomy* sent to *Jerusalem*
for a Hebrew Copy of the Old Te-
stament, and is said to have got it
translated into Greek by 72 Jews,
whom the High Priest sent him for
that Purpose; upon which he set
120000 Captive Jews at Liberty, and
sent rich Presents to their Temple;
but the Story of the 70 Interpreters
is very dubious. He made an Al-
liance with the Romans, and died in
the Year of Rome 507, and the 40th
of his Reign, from the Time that
his Father associated him in the
Government. *Talents* says, that he
killed *Demetrius Phalereus*, built the
famous *Pharos*, and cut a Ditch from
the Nile to the Red Sea. He was suc-
ceeded by his Son

Helvi- III. *Ptolomy*, surnamed *Evergetes*.
cus To revenge the Death of his Sister
3703. *Berenice*, who was murder'd by *Antio-
chus* II. called *Theos* or *Soter*, her Hus-
Heylin band, he made War upon him, seiz'd
3717. *Cilicia*, some Provinces beyond the
Euphrates, and almost all *Asia*; but

Began was obliged to return to *Egypt*, be-
to cause of a Revolt there. *Talents* says,
reign that *Berenice* was poison'd by *Laodice*,
A. M. *Antiochus's* first Wife, when she was
restor'd after *Ptolomy's* Death; and
that *Antiochus* married *Berenice* only
to put an End to a War. Others
say, that *Laodice* fearing *Antiochus's*
Fickleness, poisoned him, and caused
Berenice to be murder'd. *Josephus*,
Athenaeus, and *Justin*, say he defeated
Seleucus Callinicus in Battle, and took
great Spoils, according to *Dan.* 11.
6, 7, 8, 9. *Tacitus* says, he took *An-
thony Hierax* Prisoner, and that a Phoe-
nix was seen in his Time. *Josephus*
says, he sacrificed to God at *Jerusa-
lem*, and died in the 26th Year of
his Reign. Some say, he was poi-
son'd by his Son and Successor

Helvi- IV. *Ptolomy*, surnamed *Philopator* in
cus Derision, because after he had mur-
3729. der'd his Father, he made away with
Heylin his Mother, Brother, and Sister, and
3743. some say with his Wife, to please
his Concubine. He reign'd so li-
centiously, that *Antiochus* III. made
War upon him, but was defeated at
Rapha; after which *Justin* says, *Pto-
lomy* return'd to his Pleasures as be-
fore, according to *Dan.* 11. 11. He
went afterwards to *Jerusalem*, and
would have enter'd the Sanctuary;
but the High-Priest *Simeon* II. oppo-
sed him, and God cast a great Dead
upon the Army, which made him re-
turn in a Rage to *Alexandria*, where
he would have massacred all the Jews,
but he relented. *Ælianus* says, he
built a Temple to *Homer*. *Heylin* tells
us he murder'd *Cleomenes*, the last
King of *Sparta*, who fled to his Fa-
ther for Relief. *Josephus* confounds
this *Ptolomy* with *Ptolomy Physcon*. He
died in the 27th (*Heylin* says the 17th)
Year of his Reign. He was succeed-
ed by his Son

Helvi- V. *Ptolomy*, surnamed *Epiphanes* or
cus the Illustrious, who *Justin* says was
3746. but 4 or 5 Years old at his Father's
Heylin Death, when *Agathocles*, Sister to the
3760. late King's Concubine, and her Mo-
ther *Ananthe*, had usurp'd the Co-
vernment. They concealed the late

Began to reign A. M. late King's Death, wasted the Treasure, and formed a Conspiracy against the Life of this young Prince; but the *Egyptians* committed him to the Protection of the *Romans*. *Antiochus* the VIIIth of *Syria* aim'd at the Kingdom, by marrying his Daughter *Cleopatra* to him; but she preferred her Husband's Interest, and so broke her Father's Measures. *Talents* says, that after this *Agathocles* and her Brother were torn in Pieces by the People. He left two Sons, and died about the 27th Year of his Reign, and 573d of *Rome*. One of his Sons succeeded, viz

Helvicus 3770. *Heylin* 3784. VI. *Ptolomy Philometor*, so called by Way of Raillery, because he hated his Mother *Cleopatra* for seeking to prefer his younger Brother *Ptolomy Physcon* before him. *Talents* says, he was overcome by *Antiochus Epiphanes*, and expelled by the *Alexandrians*, who made *Ptolomy Physcon* King. The said *Epiphanes* invaded *Egypt*, and was forced out by *Lenas* the Roman Ambassador. At last he says great Quarrels arose betwixt *Philometor* and *Physcon*; and tho' they were at Peace for a while, they expelled each other, and went successively to *Rome*, where they were protected by the *Romans*, who took this Opportunity to rent their Kingdom, and foment their Differences. *Philometor* set up *Balas*, one of mean Birth, for the Son of *Ant. Epiphanes* to be K. of *Syria*, and married *Cleopatra* his Daughter to him, but gave her afterwards to *Demetrius Nicanor*, with whose Assistance he killed *Balas* K. of *Syria*, but died of a Wound he received in Battle against him after he had caused himself to be crowned King of *Syria*, 1 *Maccab.* 10. and 11. He died in the 35th Year of his Reign, and the 608th of *Rome*. He was succeeded by his Brother

Helvicus 3805. *Heylin* 3819. VII. *Ptolomy*, surnamed *Euergetes II.* for his Cruelty, and *Physcon* for his Debauchery. The *Alexandrians* called him *Cacergetes*. He led an idle Life, married his Sister *Cleopatra*, and had a Son by her called *Memphisus*.

Began to reign A. M. *Florus*, *Justin*, and *Livy*, say he was banish'd for his Tyranny into *Cyprus*, where he murder'd and serv'd up his Son to his Mother's Table, after he had divorced her, and married young *Cleopatra*, the Daughter of *Philometor*. *Heylin* says, he spent most of his Reign in a Causeless War against *Cleopatra*. The *Syrians* being weary of *Demetrius Nicanor*, he gave them for their King one *Protarchus*, a Merchant's Son: But *Justin* says, that *Demetrius* prevailed with him afterwards to send *Alexander* to dethrone him. *Talents* says, he also killed his Sister-in-Law's Son in her Arms on the Day that he was married to her, and then ravish'd and married her Daughter. He adds, that *Cleopatra* was made Queen during his Exile; but that he afterwards regained his Kingdom, was reconciled to her, and dying in the 29th Year of his Reign, left it his Wife to dispose of to her Sons.

Helvicus 3834. *Heylin* 3858. VIII. *Ptolomy Lathurus*, *Lathures*, *Lathargus*, or *Lamyrus*, was his Son. *Tertullian* says, when he had reigned 26 Years with his Mother, she expelled him, by the Assistance of *Alexander Jannes K.* of the *Jews*. *Ptolomy* enter'd *Judea* in Revenge, took *Azoth*, defeated the *Jews* near *Jordan*, committed unheard of Cruelties upon the Inhabitants, and then retired to *Cyprus*. His Mother took *Alexander* for her Associate in the Government during her Son's Deprivation, and he was reckon'd among the Kings of *Egypt*, but slain, and *Ptolomy* recalled. *Justin* says, that *Ptolomy* abdicated the Government of his own Accord, because of his Mother's Cruelty, and put her to Death, after she had given both his Wives to others, and strove to poison himself. *Lathurus* reigned 8 or (as some say) 10 Years after his Restoration. *Justin* and *Josephus* say, he died about *A. R.* 673. *Appianus* says, he was succeeded by

IX. *Ptolomy Alexander II.* Son of the former, bred up in the Isle of *Coos*, and deliver'd up to *Mithridates*, from whom he escaped to *Sylla*, who made

Began to reign A. M. made him King; but he was put to Death by his Subjects 19 Days after his Coronation.

X. *Ptolomy Alexander III.* his Brother succeeded, and reigned happily, says *Appianus*, for 17 Years, but was at last expelled by his Subjects, and died at *Tyre*.

Helvi-
cus 3868. Heylin 3892. XI. *Ptolomy Dionysius I.* the Son of *Lathurus*, or (according to some) natural Son of *Ptolomy Alexander*. He was called *Auletes*, because he loved Musick. He gave vast Sums to the Romans to be made King; but his Subjects dethron'd him, and made *Berenice*, one of his Daughters, Queen. Upon which he went to *Rome* for Succour, but retired to *Ephesus* without Success: Yet by *Pompey's* Favour and vast Sums of Money he was at length restored by *Gabinus*, Proconsul of *Syria*. After this he put his Daughter to Death, and died in the 13th Year of his Reign, and the 703d of *Rome*, according to *Calius's* Epistle to *Tully*.

Helvi-
cus 3899. Heylin 3922. XII. *Ptolomy Dionysius II.* or *Junior*. He reigned 5 Years (or as some say 3) with his Wife and Sister *Cleopatra*, whom at last he expelled, and she escaped to *Cesar*. He order'd *Pompey*, who fled for Refuge to *Egypt* after the Battle of *Pharsalia*, to be killed, and endeavour'd to murder *Cesar*, but was slain in Battle against him, or (as *Appianus* says) drown'd in the *Nile*, A. R. 707. *Heylin* and *Talents* say, he fell in the *Alexandrian* Tumult, when the great Library formerly mentioned was burnt.

Helvi-
cus 3904. Heylin 3925. XIII. *Cleopatra*, the last of the *Ptolomean* Race, noted for her Beauty and loose Life, was Daughter to *Ptolomy Auletes*. She poison'd her younger Brother, and kill'd her Sister. After her Brother's Death, she rul'd alone 19 Years with great Splendour, and had a Son by *Cesar* nam'd *Cesarion*. After *Julius Cesar's* Death, she submitted to *Mark Anthony*, and gave him a magnificent Treat, when he fell in Love with her, married her, and at her Desire divorced his for-

A. M. mer Wife *Octavia*, (who was *Augustus's* Sister) and left her behind him at *Athens*. *Anthony* having kill'd himself in Despair after *Augustus*, gave him the fatal Overthrow at *Actium*. *Cleopatra* poison'd her self, or (as some say) stung her self to Death with a Serpent, that she might not be led in Triumph thro' *Rome*. She reigned about 24 Years, reckoning from the Death of her Father, and died about A. R. 723. Historians say, she had a charming Wit as well as Beauty, could speak 7 or 8 Languages, and was the most accomplished Woman in the World, but withal so voluptuous and profuse, that some say she put *Mark Anthony* upon carrying the War into the richest Countries for the Sake of the Spoils.

Thus ended the Race of the *Ptolomean* Kings of *Egypt*.

Helvicius says, That about 3922, *Augustus Cesar* enter'd *Egypt*, spar'd the People, and made it a *Roman* Province. 'Twas highly priz'd by succeeding Emperors, who always sent a Gentleman of *Rome* to govern it; but they excluded Senators, lest Men of great Families should endanger the Empire by their Revolt. In their Time *Egypt* embraced Christianity, and furnished *Rome* with Corn 4 Months every Year. At first, this Province was counted as the Emperor's peculiar Right, but afterwards 'twas made an entire Diocese, subject to the *Præfæctus Prætorio Orientis*. When the *Roman* Empire was divided into E. and W. *Egypt* fell to the Eastern Share; but the Remissness of the Government, and the Extortion of their Officers, made them call in the *Saracens*, by whom the *Greek* Garrisons were cast out, and the Country subjected A. C. 704 to *Hau-mar* the *Arabian* Caliph, who allowed the People Liberty of Conscience, and demanded nothing from them but Tribute. Then they would have a Caliph of their own, and revolted from the Caliph of *Bagdat*; so that from henceforward they had two Caliphs at a time, viz. one at *Cairo* over the *Saracens* and *Moors* of *Africa* and *Spain*, and the other who had the Supremacy at *Bagdat*, tho'

tho the main Power was cantoned among the Sultans. Ogilby says, the People were faithful to the *Arabian* Caliphs, till conquer'd by the *Mahometans*. Till then we find nothing memorable in their History; so that we pass over *Heylin's* 3d Dynzty or Principality of the Caliphs, and proceed to his 4th Dynzty or the Race of the *Turkish* Souldans, the first of whom was

A. C. 1163. *I. Asar Eddin, or Asereddin, an Armenian*, surnamed *Schirarochoch* or *Shirachoch*, and called by the Christian Writers *Sarracon, Syracon, or Xarracon*. *Heylin* *Helvicus* says, he was descended of the Noble Family of *Aiub*. *Heylin*, that being sent in Quality of General by *Norradine*, the *Turkish* Sultan of *Damascus*, to the Relief of *Elphaiz*, then Caliph of *Egypt*, who was overpower'd by *Almericus* King of *Jerusalem*, he not only drove *Almericus* out of the Country, but got the Kingdom of *Egypt* to himself, beat out the Brains of *Elphaiz* with his Horseman's Mace, ruin'd *Etzhar* his Son, who assum'd the Title of Caliph, and expelled the whole *Phatmean* Race. Some say he married *Elphaiz's* Widow; and that being called to the Government of *Damascus* during the Minority of the Son and Relict of *Norradine* abovementioned, he marched in 1177 against *Jerusalem* with a great Army, but was defeated with a terrible Slaughter. In 1180 he passed the *Euphrates*, and took several Cities as far as *Nisibed*. He took *Aleppo* in 1184. He defeated the Christians in 1187, and with above 800000 Men obtained a second Victory over them, took *Guy* King of *Jerusalem* Prisoner, with the Wood of the Holy Cross, beheaded all the Knights Templers and of *St. John*; took *Acre, Barn'h, Gibley, Saide*, and at last *Jerusalem*, which made Pope *Urban II.* break his Heart. He often stormed *Tyre*, but was repulsed, and after some other Losses sustained from the Christians, died in 1193. His Children had great Quarrels among themselves after his Death.

A. C. *Helvicus* 1170. *Heylin* 1186. *II. Saladine, Zelacheddin, or Zeli-beddin, i. e. the Restorer of Religion*. He was the Son, or (as some say) the Nephew of the former. *Heylin* says, he was confirmed in his Estate by the Caliph of *Bagdat*, under whose Jurisdiction he reduced the *Egyptian* Malecontents, conquer'd *Melexala*, and (as some say) killed the Caliph of *Egypt*. He raised the *Mamelucks* in 1175, conquer'd *Damascus, Mesopotamia, and Palestine*, and recover'd *Jerusalem* in 1190, according to *Helvicus*, or 1187 according to *Talents*. He is extolled by all Writers, and *Heylin* says he wanted nothing to complete and perpetuate his Happiness but the Knowledge of our Saviour. *Talents* says, in 1191 he lost *Ptolemais* to our *K. Richard* and the *French*, by whom he was routed, and that he had many Sons, who were all killed but one by *Saphradine*, which occasioned great intestine Wars; but the Christians had a Truce with him.

1199. *III. Elaziz or Elazak, Saladine's 2d Son*. *Helvicus* says, he chang'd the Government of *Egypt* with his Brother *Eladel* for that of *Damascus*. *Heylin* begins his Reign where *Helvicus* does.

IV. Eladel or El. Aphzel, by Christian Writers called Meledine. He overthrew the Christians without the Loss of a Man at the Siege of *Cairo*, by opening the Sluices of the *Nile*, which drown'd their Army, and reduced them to his own Terms. *Helvicus* says, *Elchamul* succeeded, and died in 1237, making Way for his Son

1237. *V. Melech Affalack or Effalack, by the Christians Melechsalā*. He overcame *Lewis IX. of France*, and going with him towards *Damiata*, was slain by his own Guard of *Mamelucks*.

1242. *VI. Elmutan* his Son succeeded; but the *Mamelucks* being resolved to obtain the Kingdom for themselves, forced him to a Tower of Wood, which they set on Fire, and the Prince leaping into a River that ran close by, was drown'd; upon which

A. C. the *Mamaluks* settled themselves in
ibid. the Government, *Anno* 1245, according to some; but others say he maintained a War against them till 1255.

The Race of the Mamaluck Kings of Egypt.

Jovius says, the *Mamaluks* were *Circassian* Slaves, sold by the *Tartars* and *Podolians* to the Merchants; and being train'd up at *Cairo* in Military Exercises, were pick'd out for the Souldan's Guard, and preferred to the highest Posts, and the bravest of them made Sultans, provided they were Christians, or descended of Christian Parents at first. The Name in *Syriack* signifies a hir'd Soldier. Their Government was Elective, and the Son could claim no other Succession than to his Father's Personal Estate. Every *Mamaluck* had a Vote in the Election, and required a Gold Ducat of the Souldan as soon as chosen. *Heylin* says, they bought every Year certain Numbers of *Circassian* Slaves, and apostatizing from Christianity, committed them to the *Egyptians* to be instructed in the Language of *Egypt*, and Law of *Mahomet*, before they were taught Military Discipline. Some say, they did not marry. Their first King was

A. C. I. *Turquimenius*, or *Azeddin Ibek*, a
1255. *Turcoman*, a Man of great Spirit and Valour. He released *K. Lewis*, whom *Melechsalah* had made Prisoner, but did not perform half the Conditions agreed upon.

II. *Clothes* or *Elmutahaz* seized on the greatest Part of *Syria* and *Palestine*.

1260. III. *Bandocader* compleated his Predecessor's Conquests, took *Antioch* from the Christians, and marched with his Armies as far as *Armenia*, where he made great Spoil.

IV. *Melechsaït*, or *Melechsaïes*, restored the Power of the *Mamaluks* in *Syria* and *Palestine*, where it had been much lessen'd by our *Henry* the Third's Son *Edward*, and *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*.

A. C. V. *Elpis* or *Alphix*, took *Tripolis*,
1286. *Berytus*, *Tyre* and *Sidon*, from the Christians.

1291. VI. *Araphus* or *Eustrephus*, a German by Birth, releas'd *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, after he had been Prisoner 26 Years, drove the Christians out of *Syria*, and raz'd *Ptolemais* to the Ground.

VII. *Melechnesar*, was at first Lieutenant to *Araphus* when he was routed by *Cassanes*, a *Tartar* Prince, with the Loss of 4000 *Egyptians*; but having recover'd *Syria*, and destroy'd *Jerusalem*, after his Departure he was made Sultan of *Egypt*.

VIII. *Melechadel*. *Heylin* supposes, but with no great Certainty, that he was Sultan when *Tamerlane* conquer'd *Egypt*. There was a Series of Successors after this Prince, but that he cannot rely on their History till the Reign of

IX. *Melechaella*, or *Melechnasar*, who conquer'd the Isle of *Cyprus* in 1423, and obliged their Kings to be Tributaries.

1465. X. *Cathbijus*, much reformed the State of *Egypt*, and was a professed Enemy to the *Turkish Bajazet* II.

1498. XI. *Mahomet* his Son, depos'd by the *Mamaluks* for fear the Kingdom should become Hereditary.

1499. XII. *Campson* I. called *Chiarsefus*. He was dethroned by

XIII. *Zanballat*, who was deposed by

1500. XIV. *Tonombeius* I. He was also deposed by the Consent of the *Mamaluks*, to make Way for

1501. XV. *Campson* II. surnamed *Gaurus* or *Cauri*. He gave 10 Millions of Gold Ducats among his Soldiers after his Election. The Misfortunes of his Predecessors discouraged him at first from accepting the Dignity; but by his Prudence he soon quieted those Troubles, and put the chief Fomenters of them to Death. He sent an Army to drive the Portuguese out of the *Indies*; but his Fleet was worsted by them in 1509. He was a great Man in the East, and

A. C. a Counterpoise to *Ismael K. of Persia*, and *Selim I. Emperor of the Turks*. He reigned happily for 16 Years; but at last siding with *Ismael*, he was, by the Treachery of one of his Commanders, who revolted with a great Body of his Army to *Selim*, at a Battle in *Comagene* totally routed; and falling from his Horse, was trod to Death in the 70th Year of his Age.

1517. XVI. *Tonembeius II. or Tomumbey*. *Heylin* says, he was conquer'd in the first Year of his Reign by *Selimus I.* who after this us'd to say, he had got a Farm to feed his *Gemoglans* or young Soldiers. *Dapper* says, the *Turkish* Emperor took him at *Cairo*, where he was betray'd by a *Moorish* Prince, murder'd, and his Corps dragged thro' the City at a Camel's Tail. Some say he was found hid in a Fen, and and then hang'd. *Gazelle*, one of the Chief of the *Mamaluks*, held a long War against *Selim*, but submitted at last, and was made Governor of *Syria*. Our Author adds, That after *Selimus's* Death, *Gazelle* renew'd his Enterprize, but without any Success. Thus *Egypt* became a Province of the *Turkish* Empire, as it still continues. *Leo* says, That after this the native *Egyptians* retired to the Inland Provinces, to avoid the Descents of the Christians.

Their Government and Laws.

THevenot says, the supreme Government is in the Hands of a *Basha* sent hither by the Grand Seignior. 'Tis the 2d *Bashah* in Place, but the first in Profit, in all the *Turkish* Empire, for the *Basha* has 100000 Piasters as soon as he arrives at *Cairo*, and 7 Purfes a Month afterwards, besides Casual Profits. He commonly pays 2 or 300000 Piasters for the Place, and must also give vast Sums out of the Revenue before he puts any into his own Pocket. He must also now and then pay 2 or 300000 Piasters for Continuance in his Place, or whatever Sum any Competitor offers: Yet by squeezing the People, he makes himself a vast

Gainer. Every *Basha* brings with him from *Constantinople* his *Charavalla* to collect the Customs, and his *Seraf* to manage his Money; and there's a *Jew* at *Cairo* to take Care of the Grand Seignior's Revenue. The *Cadelesquer* or Chief Judge here has as great Power as the *Mufti* at *Constantinople*, and is put in or recalled only by the Gr. Seignior. There are also 24 *Sangiack* Beys to defend the Country from the *Arabs*, and above 40 *Charkish* Beys to guard the City. The latter are inferior to the former, but were instituted before them. They purchase their Places for 100000 Piasters, and have a Purse a Month allow'd them. Most of them are Renegadoes that have been Slaves, and endeavour to make some of their Slaves Beys, that they may have them at their Beck. They are Lords of the Country, and so powerful, that some of them can raise 10000 *Arabs* at an Hour's Warning. One of the *Sangiack* Beys always keeps Guard at *Old Cairo*, and another upon the Road from *Elmatharea* to *Boulac*, and at other Places, for fear of the *Arabs*. They mount the Guard every Month by Turns. There are two Custom-Houses belonging to *Cairo*, viz. one at *Boulac* for what comes from *Rossetto* and *Damiette*, and another at *Old Cairo* for what comes from *Sayde* or the *Thebais*. There is in *Cairo* also a *Sous-Basha*, who is Mayor or Provost, and hath under him several others. There is a *Sous-Basha* also at *Boulac*, and another at *Old Cairo*. *Ogilby* says, the Grand Seignior used to send a *Basha* hither from *Constantinople* every three Years; but that none lately have continued in the Office for a whole Year, and some not three Months. If a *Basha* offend the Chief of the Commons, they manzoul him as they call it, i. e. deprive him of his Authority, and imprison him, and put the *Kai-Macam*, who is the eldest of the *Sangiacks*, in his Place. The *Basha's* Power is limited, so that he can conclude nothing of Moment without the *Kadilescher* and great Men of the Country. He has the same Officers under him as the other *Turkish* *Bashaws*, and they constitute his Council. The *Tihaiia* is the 2d Person under him. The *Sangiacks*, who are only 18 in Number, are paid every Monday, and have 25000 Medins per Month, besides 25 Ardebes of Corn, and the like of Barley. The *Soubachi* is like High-Sheriff of the

County. The Divan assemble thrice a Week at *Cairo* about Matters of State and Justice, and the Revenues. The Basha goes to the Divan at Noon, attended by his Officers, where, after calling over the Names and Roll of Business, the Basha and Defterdar are left alone with the Secretaries of the Divan and other Officers, and a Guard of Janizaries. The inferior Divan assembles on *Thursdays*, where the Kadilesker is present to hear Complaints against Governors; but this last Court is rarely kept. The Janizaries have a particular Aga or President, with Spahies and a Chiaus, who determine all Differences that arise among them; but there is an Appeal to the Divan of the Basha, except in Matters of small Moment. All the Differences among the Christians in *Cairo*, or between Christians, *Turks*, *Moors*, and *Jews*, are determined by the Consuls of their own Nation there residing. One of the Sangiacks at *Cairo* conducts the Caravan from thence to *Mecha*, another guards the Grand Seignior's Revenue to *Constantinople*, a 3d attends the Muster-Master-General to perfect his Rolls against *Persia*, *Syria*, and *Mecha*; and when they have finished their Expeditions, are discharged for 3 Years following. There is a particular Governor over every Dominion, who rents the Province of the Basha, and has his Divan. Mr. Sandys gives an Account of the rigorous Justice of a Basha in his Time. He says, that he caused 4000 Spahi's to be beheaded at his first coming for certain Outrages, sent the Chief of them to *Constantinople*, and strangled such as would not go, by the Hands of the *Arabians*, their mortal Enemies. In short, he says his Severity had got him so much ill Will, that he confined himself at last to the Castle of *Cairo*. Yet he says to his Commendation, that he would not suffer a Christian to turn *Mahometan*.

Thevenot says, the usual Punishments here are Beheading and Impaling: The former is done by a Sabre at one Blow, and commonly inflicted on Robbers, or those whom the Sous-Basha suspects for such. They impale Criminals in this Manner: The Executioner lays the Malefactor on his Belly, with his Hands ty'd behind, rips up his Fundament with a Razor, then drives into his Body with a Mallet a long Stake as big as a Man's Arm, sharp at the Point, and greasy,

till it comes out at his Breast, Neck or Head, which kills them immediately; then they plant the Stake in the Ground, and let the Criminal hang for a Day. Sometimes they drive it only so far as the Malefactor may live the longer in Misery, and put a Stay on the Pale to hinder him from sinking down; so that some of 'em talk and smook two or three Days upon the Pale. This cruel Death is inflicted upon great Cheats and Robbers. When the *Arabs* are sentenced to this Punishment, they are mounted on Camels with their Arms ty'd behind, in which they cut great Gashes, and fill them with Wicks of Pitch and Rosin, which they light. They go cheerfully to this Sort of Death, glory in it, and say, that if they had not been brave Men, they would not have been sentenced to it. Mr. Sandys says, when a Thief escapes out of any Quarter, the Guard must suffer in his room. He adds, that some are flea'd alive; that Drunkenness is a Capital Crime; and that all other Disorders are strictly punish'd here.

Their M I L I T I A.

Thevenot says, there are 7000 Janizaries in *Cairo*, besides 35000 others in the Country. They march in a Body about 10 in Front: One of 'em carries a Borachio full of Water, with several Cups to fill it out for the Soldiers when they are athirst; and this is so honourable a Charge, that when they are removed from it, they are made Chorbaxis or Captains. Their other Officers are, the Aga or General, the Kiaya or Lieutenant, the Basch Chaousch or Ensign, the Beitulmal Chaousch and Alai Chaousch or Serjeant-Major, the Koutchu Chaousch who calls the Captain, and the Oda Bashes, who are the Chiefs of Divisions, and preferred according to Seniority. No *Moors* are made Janizaries, that they may be always kept under. The Strength of *Egypt* consists chiefly in the *Arabs* of the Country, who can assemble several Thousand Horse in the twinkling of an Eye. The Forces kept here by the Grand Seignior were formerly no more than 12000; but now, if we may believe *James Albert*, they amount to 10700 Horse, and 4400 Foot, besides the Sangiacks and Cherkes that watch

watch the Banks of the Nile, to prevent the *Arabians* from turning off the Water at the Inundation. There are also 2236 to Garrison Castles, &c. besides the Soldiers which the several Governors are obliged to maintain at their own Charge. *Purchas* says, *Egypt* is guarded by 100000 Soldiers called *Timariots*, who hold certain Lands of the Turk, and are bound to serve him wherever he pleases. *Villamont* computes 20000 Spahi's and 25000 Breves, partly Janizaries, and partly Natives, all well appointed, and arm'd Cap-a-pé. The Baron of *Beauvais* reckons 5000 Spahi's who keep Guard at the Gates of *Cairo*, 2000 Mottaferaga's, 2000 Chiaous, and 15000 Janizaries, who are all Foot. Prince *Radzovill* says, there are usually in *Cairo* 6000 Horse and as many Foot to prevent the Robberies of the *Arabians*; and that the Cavalry consists of *Turks*, *Mamelucks*, and *Circassians*, but the Infantry wholly of Janizaries. *James Albert* says, the Mottaferaga's are 3300. The Bascha is their General, and they have a Lieutenant of their own chusing, whom they call *Bascha Mottaferaga*: That the Chiaous are 3500, who have the Bascha likewise for their General; but their proper Leader is the *Chiaoussi Tihiaissi*, chosen out of their own Body. There are 3 other Regiments of 1200 Men each, under Colonels, whom they call *Boulouks*. The first carry Yellow Colours, the 2d Red, and the last Green and White. The Aga has Power of Life and Death over the *Boulouks*. The Janizaries here are about 3000, under a peculiar Aga, who has Power to punish them in Secret. They guard the uppermost Side of the Castle of *Cairo*. The Arabgi's and Topigi's compose each a Regiment of 5 or 600 Musketeers, under the Aga of the Janizaries. The Azapi's form a Battalion of 800 Soldiers, have a distinct Commander, and are posted at the Gate of the Castle of *Cairo*, which looks towards the Road to *Romeilla*. The Rendezvous of these Troops is at *Cairo*, where they are review'd by the Divan or Council of State, and Detachments made out of them and sent to the Governments where they are wanted. All these Detachments together make 2223 Men, besides those which such Governors as are most expos'd to the *Arabs* are obliged to maintain at their own Charge. We need not insist on the Number of each

Detachment, nor on the Places whither sent, but refer the Curious to Mr. *Dapper's Account of Africa*, printed at *Amsterdam* in *French Anno* 1686.

There are several Castles, &c. on the Sea-Coast and within Land, of which we shall give an Account when we come to the particular Topography. The Pay of the Beys, Cherkesbeys, and Mottaferaga's, amount only to 90 Purfes per Month, which they constantly receive every 3 Months, and the Horse are allow'd Maintenance and Forage besides their Pay. The Garrisons are paid out of the Revenues of the Customs, of which the Farmer brings an Account to the Divan at *Cairo*. The Pay of the Soldiers in the Castles of *Alexandria*, *Rosetta*, and *Bouchier*, amounts every Year to 12600 Piasters. Those of *Broules* have 2200, the two Castles in *Damiata* 5500, and the two Arsenals at *Cairo* and *Alexandria* 450. *Della Valla* makes the whole Charge for the Militia of *Egypt* 600000 Gold Sheriffs, which at 6 s. each is one Quarter of the Revenue. The least Pay of a Soldier is 6 Medins a Day, but some have 50 or 60. Besides, every Village is obliged to give some Allowance of Provision, &c. to those who lie in the Field, and the Governor must furnish the Horse with Forage, for which he accounts with the Divan.

Their R E V E N U E.

MR. *Sandys* says, it amounts to Three Millions of Sheriffs, of which the Gr. Seignior has one Third, Part of which is laid out in Sugar and Rice, and sent to *Constantinople*, and the rest in Money. The 2d Million is spent in paying the Civil and Military Lists of *Egypt*, &c. and in fitting out the Yearly Caravan to *Mecha*; and the 3d is for the Maintenance of the Bascha and his Attendants. *Tavernier* computes the Grand Seignior's Third of the Revenues at 12 Millions of Livres per Annum. *Albert* says, That the Yearly Revenue of the Governments of *Alexandria*, *Rosetta*, *Bouchar*, *Damietta*, *Brules*, and *Boula*, with the Customs on the Spices, amount to 963 Purfes, each of 750 Piasters, or 700 French Crowns, besides 329000 Ardebes of Corn, every Ardebe weighing from 260 to 300 French Pounds.

Pounds; and when the Revenue is paid in Pulse, they give an Ardebe and a half of Pulse for an Ardebe of Corn; so that excluding the Grand Seignior's third Share, the Basha has 392 Purfes, the Tihaiia and Aga 87, the Divan 1440, and two Chests of 20000 Gold Sheriffs, besides 274000 Ardebés or 100000 Quarters of Corn. *Della Valla* raises the Revenue to 2400000 Gold Sheriffs, and says, that the Basha is also obliged to send to the Grand Seignior 350 Sheriffs, which is the Revenue of *Jemen* in *Arabia Felix*. *Albert* thinks, that all Charges paid, the Grand Seignior has no more than 60000 Sheriffs out of *Egypt*; but then he computes that the Sugar, Spices, Drugs, *Indian* Perfumes, Rice, Pulse, and other Provisions, which this Country furnishes for the Seraglio, are worth so much more.

This Revenue is conducted to *Constantinople* by one of the Sangiacks of *Cairo*, and 500 Soldiers, Horse, and Janizaries, with each 3 Men to attend him. At their Return, the Horse are advanc'd a Medin in their Pay, and the Janizaries half a Medin. Every Governor must agree with the Basha for the Imposts which he requires of his Government. When his Time is expir'd, he must sow all the Lands of his Dominion that are subject to the Inundation of the *Nile*; but the Divan is accountable for the Charge. If he continues in his Office no longer than one Year, it ruins him; but if he stay in it 4 or 5, he is a vast Gainer. We refer to *Dapper* for the Revenues and Payments of the several Provinces both in Money and Corn. They are rais'd from certain Imposts laid on the Villages, which are farm'd by Soldiers in Fee, Chiaous, Mottaferaga's, or Spahi's, who make the Assessments according to the Rates which are set down in the List of the Villages kept by the Divan: But the Governors generally let out no more than Half their Lands, and keep the rest to be tilled for the Use of their Families.

They have divers Kinds of Imposts collected at several Custom-houses: The first is that at *Delbara* upon Spices, Drugs, and all Merchandize that comes from *Mecha*, *Mocal*, and the *Indies*, of which the Farmer takes the 10th in Silver, according to the common Valuation, which is 15 per Cent. and gives for it 45 Purfes to the Basha,

15 to the *Tihaiia*, and 120 to the Grand Seignior, at 4 several Payments. He must also furnish Spice, Drugs, Stuffs, and *Ambegreece*, for the Seraglio. The 2d is that collected at *Alexandria*, including *Rosetta* and *Bochir*, for which the Farmer of the Customs gives 30 Purfes to the Basha, 10 to the Aga's, and 120 to the Divan, besides 12000 Piasters to pay the Garrisons of *Alexandria*, *Bochir*, and *Rosetta*, 328 Quintals of Olive-Oil for *Mecha*, and 12 or 15000 Piasters in Silk Stuffs for the Habits of the Basha and his Officers at the Time of their Ramadan. Towards the raising of this, all Merchandize which comes out of *Christendom* pays 21 per Cent. that which comes from the Gr. Seignior's Country 10, and the Wood imported from the *Black Sea* 20 per Cent. This Officer oversees the Weights and Measures, and has a Salary of 12 or 13 Purfes per Annum. The 3d is that collected at *Damietta*, for which the Farmer pays Yearly to the Divan two Chests of Gold worth 20000 Sheriffs, 13 Purfes to the Basha, and 4 to the *Tihaiia*, and after the Rate of 6 Medins a Day to the 124 Soldiers which are in the two Forts at the Mouth of the *Nile*. The Revenues here arise from the 10 per Cent. paid by Merchandize imported from *Turkey*, as Corn, Oil, Soap, and Almonds, which come from *Gaza* and *Damascus*. Many Saiques come also from *Turkey* and *Cyprus* with Rice, Pulse, Flax, and Sugar; but the Imposts on them amount to little. The 4th is that collected at *Brule*, which arises from Dates and other Fruits, but chiefly from the Multitude of Fish caught there and salted, and sent to *Candy* and *Greece*. The Farmer gives two Purfes to the Basha, half of one to the *Tihaiia*, and 4 Purfes to the Divan. The *Metasseup*, who sets the Price upon Victuals, has Inspection of every Thing which relates to Oeconomy, and fleeces the Poor, gives 10 Purfes to the Basha, and 3 to his Domesticks. The 5th is that of *Boulak*, for which the Farmer gives the Basha 15 Purfes, the *Tihaiia* and Aga's 5, and 64 to the Divan. The Revenue proceeds from the Impost on Flax, of which they weigh 100000 Quintals at *Boulac* in a good Year, besides a considerable Quantity that they carry to *Rosetta*; as also from that on Corn, which is brought to *Old Cairo*, of which the Farmer takes 6 Bags, and 6 others of



The Cataracts of Nile p 56

by M^r Lucas.

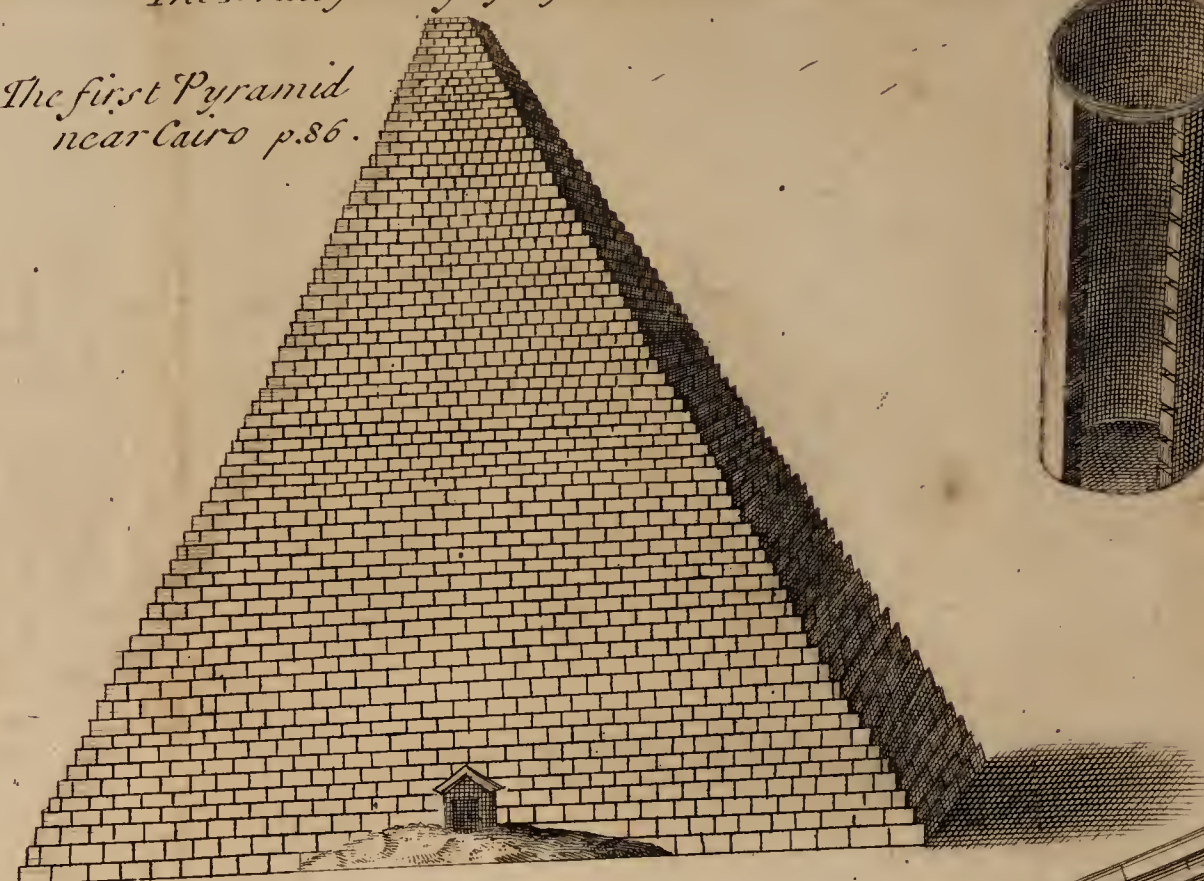
French Leagues

The Course of y^e Nile continu'd



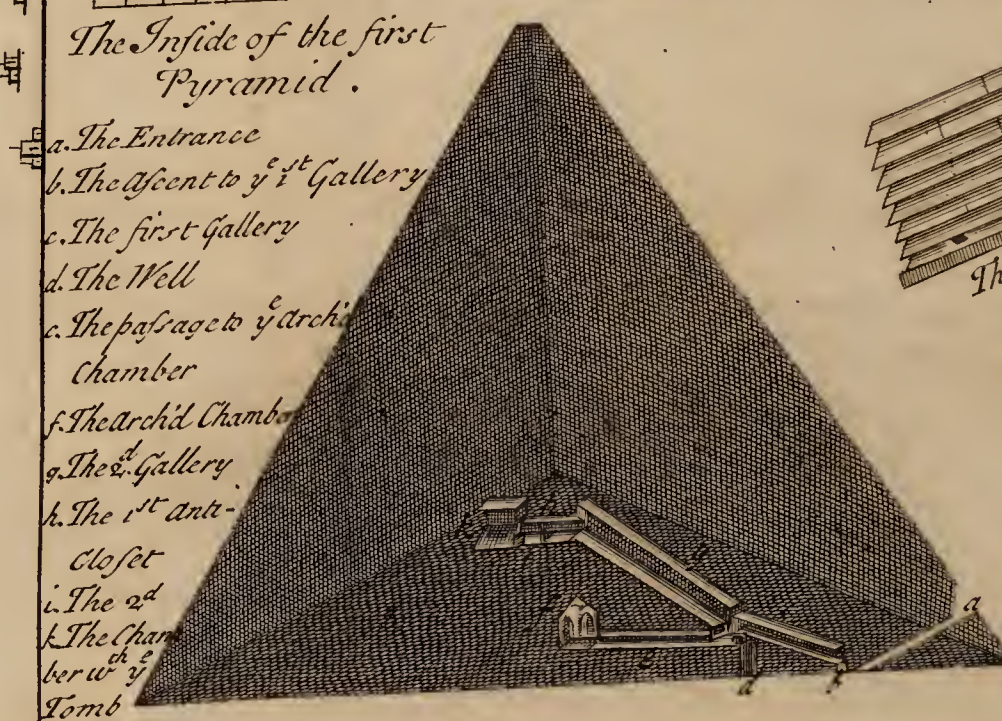
The Draught of 3 Pyramids taken exactly from Mr Greaves.

*The first Pyramid
near Cairo p.86.*



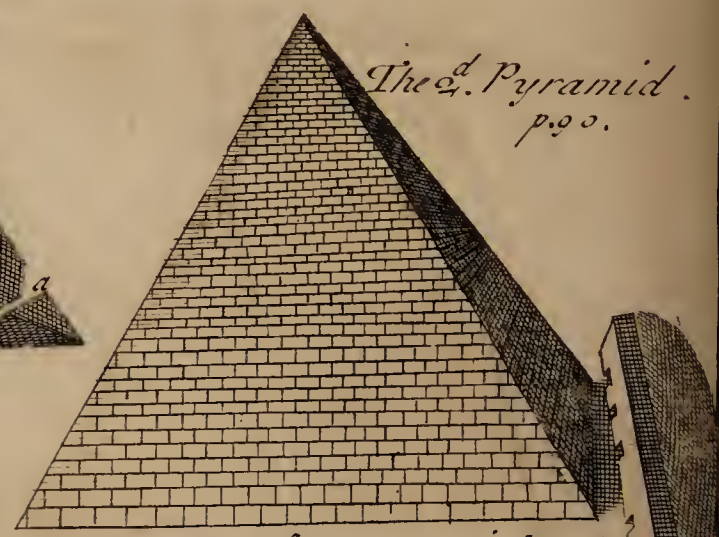
at the Garrison passage below the
Garrison of Pyramidich & Mell.
at one end

The Inside of the first Pyramid.



The form of Architecture of side Walls.

The 4^d. Pyramid
p. 90.

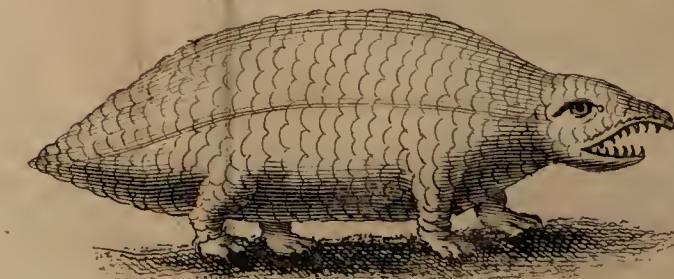
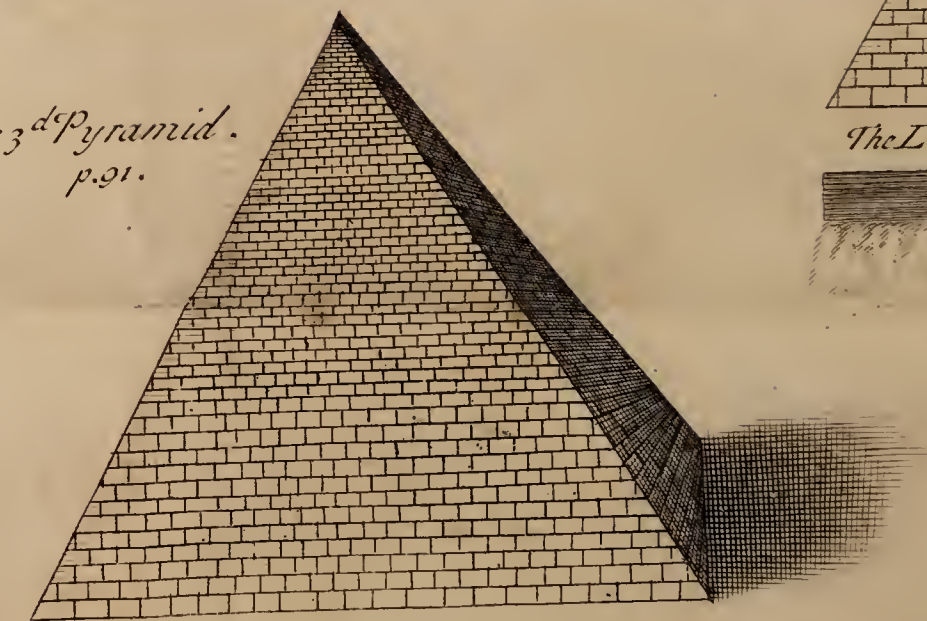


The Lodgings of y^e Friests cut in y^e Rocks

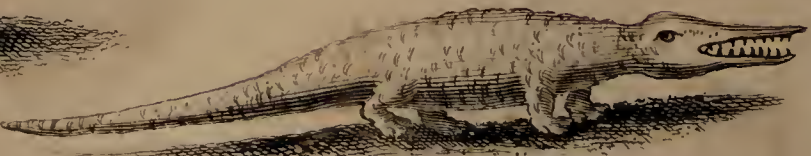
a strange fly. p. 135



The 3^d Pyramid.
p. 91.



Toaste a Monstrous fish
Enemy to y^e. Crocodile p. 136.



A Crocodile 25 foot long p. 47.

of the Green Water-Melons, &c. in all 24 Bags. The Remainder is upon Tobacco and other Merchandize which comes from *Turkey*, for which some pay 10 per Cent. and others less. He receives also 4 Piasters of all Camels laden with Merchandize for the *Indies* and *Mecha*, and levies a certain Duty from the Caravans of *Damascus* and *Gaza*. All the Christians and Jews here, except Women and Children under 16 Years of Age, pay a Poll-Tax; which amounts every Year to 48 Purfes. There are in *Cairo* above 800 Camels appointed to carry Water from one Gate to another, for which the *Basha* likewise receives Tribute; and above 3000 poor Water-Bearers are obliged to make him a Present for his Licence.

As for the ancient State of the Revenues, it appears to have been much greater, for *Heylin* says they amounted to 12500 Talents per Annum in the Time of the *Ptolomies*, which he computes at 2347750 *l.* Sterling. *Augustus* is said to have doubled it when he had this Province: Whether he had it all in Money, or Part in Corn, does not appear; but 'tis certain that in his Time the *Romans* Annually exported from hence to *Rome* 200000 Measures of Wheat, each weighing 20 Hundred Weight, amounting to 7140000 *English* Bushels, which the Emperor sold or distributed gratis to the Poor. Nor do they seem to have been much diminished in the Time of the *Mamelucks*, if that be true which we quoted above from *Heylin* concerning the Gift of *Campson Gaurus*. The same Author makes Remarks upon the incredible Decrease of the Riches and Strength of this Country since 'twas conquer'd by the *Turks*, and imputes it to these 3 Causes: 1. That most of the Trade of the *East-Indies*, which till then came thro' *Egypt*, has been since entirely cut off by the *English*, *Dutch*, and *Portuguese*. 2. The *Mamelucks*, while they resided in *Egypt*, spent what they took amongst the People; whereas the *Turks* carry out one Third every Year to *Constantinople*, from whence it never returns. 3. The Exactions of the *Baschas*, which reduce the Country to such extreme Poverty, that they are not able to find Work nor Food for their Families. To conclude, he adds, that such is the Decrease of the People, that of above 100 great Cities and Towns which were in *Egypt* before 'twas conquer'd by the *Turks*,

there are not now above 4 or 5 that are considerable, and he thinks there are not so many People now in all *Egypt* as there was then in *Grand Cairo*: From all which he infers, That if there was a potent Prince in any of the neighbouring Countries to *Egypt*, the *Turks* might be expelled from thence much more easily than they enter'd it.

Their T R A D E.

DApper says, the Merchandize consists at present of Rice, Sugar, Flax, Skins, Tamarinds, Linen and Stuffs, which are made in the Country, to which Mr. *Sandys* adds Hides, Salt, Botargo, and Cassia. From the Borders of *Hyemen* they bring a great deal of Incense; and from the Frontiers of *Ethiopia*, *Turkish* and *Arabian* Gums, Ostrich Feathers, with their Wings, and some Drugs. The Powder of *Alcanna* is one of the chief Commodities of *Egypt*. Several Ship Loads of it are sent Yearly to *Constantinople*, and it turns to so good Account in all the Eastern Countries subject to the Turk, that it brings in 18000 Ducats for Customs per Annum. We shall refer for the rest of their Trade to *Cairo*, which is the chief Center of all their Commerce. We have already given an Account of their chief Coins; and as for their Weights, *Thevenot* says they are the same with those at *Constantinople*.

An Account of the River N I L E.

THE *Latins*, who call it *Nilus*, derive the Name from *Nileus*, the first Man who made it useful for Tillage, by draining it into the adjacent Fields. Others derive it from a King's Son that was drown'd in it. The Ancients call'd it *Æthus*, *Ægiptus*, *Noim* and *Num*; *Mela*, *Siris*, *Triton*, *Diris*, *Astapus*, *Astraboras*, *Astusapes*, *Astraton*, *Aquila*, *Chrysorrhoe*, and *Syene*. *Pliny* says, it takes the three last Names in three different Places of its Course. *Junius* upon the 10th Chapter of *Genesis* gives it three other Names in *Ethiopia*; viz. *Casapuch* beyond *Meroe*, *Cascabora* or *Cascavira* on the Left of that Island, and *Chaschat Zaphes* on the Right. All three signify a Fountain that springs out of Darkness. This was also approved by

by *Theophilactus Simocates*, because he agrees with *Pliny*, that it rises out of the Ground in *Ethiopia*. *St. Augustin*, *Theodoret*, and *Isidore*, suppos'd the *Nile* to be *Gihon* or *Pison*, one of the 4 Rivers of Paradise; and to favour their Opinion, said that it passed under the *Red Sea*, and rose in *Ethiopia*. This was also the Opinion of an *Armenian* General in a Letter which he wrote to the King of *Cyprus*, inserted in *Dapper's* Description of *Egypt*; but this is justly exploded as fabulous. The *Hebrews* call'd it sometimes *Schichor* and *Sihor*, i. e. Thick or Muddy, because of its Sliminess, and at other times *Nahal Misraim*, or the River of *Egypt*, which agrees very well with the Word *Nuchal*, by which 'tis called by those that live on its Banks. The *Greeks* call'd it *Melas*, i. e. Black, for the Reason aforesaid, and therefore *Eustathius* says, the Statue which the Ancients rais'd to the Honour of the *Nile* was of black Stones, contrary to those of other Rivers. In certain Parts of *Ethiopia* 'tis called *Tacui*, in others *Abanbi* or *Abbiawi*, which signifies the Father of Waters, because 'tis the greatest of all the *African* Rivers, and others think, and not without Reason, that the *Tagaze* and the *Nile* are but one River. The *Abyssins* call it *Abeuchi*; the *Egyptians*, *Nil*; the *Arabians*, *Albadextou* or *Baharenmil*; and *Sanutius* says, the Inhabitants of the Kingdom of *Goyam* call it *Gihon*.

As to its Fountains, the Ancients own'd that they were ignorant of them; and *Ammianus Marcellinus* said, 'twould be as much a Secret to Ages to come as it was then. *Cambyses*, *Sesostris* Qu. of *Egypt*, *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, *Alexander the Great*, *Nero*, *Julius Caesar*, and *Herodotus* of *Halicarnassus*, sent Men on purpose to make a Discovery; but they returned without finding the Sources. *Pomponius Mela* brings the *Nile* from the S. Temperate Zone, and says, that after it ran under the Sea, it arose again in the Continent of *Africa*. *Diodorus Siculus* brings it from the most N. Part of *Ethiopia*. *Ptolomy* says, that the Snow melted down from the Mountains of the Moon, which he places S. Lat. 12. made divers Canals, which form'd a Lake call'd *Nilis* in Lat. 8. that was the Head of the *Nile*; so that according to his Opinion, the Course of this River was 780 Leagues, reckoning 20 Leagues to a Degree. Another places its Fountain between *Mono-*

motapa and *Congo*, wherein he agrees with *Anthony Pinet*, who in his Annotations on *Pliny* says it came from the Kingdom of *Manicongro*. *Munster* said, the *Nile* is formed by the Conjunction of all the Rivers of *Africa*. *Thevet* the Cosmographer derives it with *Ptolomy* from the Mountains of the Moon, which he calls *Beth* or *Beth al Sarach* beyond the Equator. What is hitherto advanced being only Conjectures, *Du Mont* assents to the Testimony of the *Portuguese* Jesuits *Almeida*, *Tellez*, *Lobo*, and the Patriarch *Mendes*, who by Means of the League which their King made with the King of *Ethiopia*, had an Opportunity to travel the Country, and saw that the *Nile* rose from two Springs 20 Paces asunder at the Foot of a Mountain in *Tunkoua*, a little Province of the Kingdom of *Goyam*, in N. Lat. 12. and Long. 55. Yet *Thevenot* says, the King of *Ethiopia's* Ambassador, who affirmed he had seen the Spring of the *Nile* above 12 times, told him, that it has but one Fountain called *Ouembromma*, in a Plain where many Trees grow in the Province of *Ago*, 12 Days Journey from *Gonthar*, the Capital of *Ethiopia*; that it casts up Water very high in several Places of the Plain, and that there are no Mountains within 3 Weeks Journey of the Place. But that which lessens the Authority of the Jesuits, as *Du Mont* observes, is their contradicting one another, while each pretends to establish his Relation by his own Ocular Testimony. *Du Mont* refers for this to *Peter Pais* of the same Society, who was in the Retinue of the *Abyssine* Emperor in 1618, when he marched this Way with his Army, and places the Sources of the *Nile* not only beyond the Line, but also beyond the Lake *Zaire*, according to his Report inserted in *Kircher* as follows:

" It rises in the Kingdom of *Goyam* in the
 " Province of *Sahala* from two Springs,
 " about a Stone's-throw from one another,
 " on the Top of a smooth Hill, surrounded
 " with Mountains, inaccessible but on the
 " N. Side. The Fountains are 4 Hands
 " Breadth in Diameter each, one unfathom-
 " able, and the other 11 Hands Breadth in
 " Depth. They have no Issue at the Sur-
 " face, but only at the Foot of the Hill.
 " The Inhabitants say, That the Cavity of
 " the Hill is full of Water, because the
 " Ground is thin and shakes under one's
 " Feet,

“ Feet, so that 'tis not safe to go upon it
“ in most Weather.

Kircher depends upon the Truth of this Relation, and adds, that the Plain was formerly an open Pool, which the Length of Time, and the Dust and Soil of the Water, has crufted over with Earth. But the learned *Vossius* in his Book of the Origine of the Nile and other Rivers confutes this Opinion, and says, that all Springs are replenish'd by Rain, and that the Nile, as well as all other Rivers, has no determin'd Source, but what owes its Being purely to the Fall of Rain or the Melting of Snow. He also rejects their Opinion who say, that the Nile rises from the Mountains of the Moon or the Lake Zaire on the S. Side of the Line, under the Tropick of Capricorn, and says from the Portuguese Travellers, that its Sources lie betwixt N. Lat. 9 and 10. He distinguishes them into three Streams; the first, he says, which is the farthest and most S. Source, is formed by the Rivers *Maleg* and *Anquet*, which rise out of the Province of *Damut*; and after uniting, form the W. Branch of the Nile, which retains the Name of *Maleg* for 80 Leagues, till it falls into the second or principal Stream of the Nile, which comes from the Lake *Dambea* in the Province of *Sacala* by the Way of *Bagameder*. The third Stream is the great River *Takaze*, which rises from 3 Springs in the Borders of *Angola*, runs W. between *Daganam* and *Haogam*, and N. by the Kingdom of *Tigre*, and then turns E. thro' the Middle of the Country of *Syre*. Afterwards it falls into the River *Mareb* or *Marabo*, which begins near *Barao*, and both together run thro' the Country of *Dengiri* or *Ballai*, and unite with the Nile near the City *Jalac*. *Marmol* thinks that the Waters which fall from the Mountains of the Moon are the true Source of the Nile. Mr. *Gregory* places it in a certain Land call'd *Secat*, upon the Top of *Dengla*, near *Gojam*, wherein he seems to agree with the Portuguese Authors, and says, it has 5 Springs, including the Heads of other Rivers which have no particular Name, but were taken for the Nile. *Gemehi* thinks it proceeds from the Lakes *Zambre* and *Zaire* in the Kingdom of *Goyama*.

The Portuguese Jesuits describe the Course of the Nile thus: At the Foot of a Mountain about half a League from the two

Springs (before-mentioned) there's another which runs into the Stream made up by the other two; after which they run 2 or 300 Paces under Ground, but rise again with a larger Current; and being join'd by several Rivulets in a Course of 40 or 50 Leagues, becomes a considerable River, and runs thro' the great Lake of *Dambea*, and other lesser ones, till it comes to certain Rocks, which break its Current into 7 different Places, and form the 7 Cataracts so famous in ancient History. The Jesuits add, that it runs first E. then N. then W. then E. and after having passed the Lake of *Dambea*, it forms a Semi-circle towards the S. where it waters the Kingdoms of *Bagamedri*, *Amara*, *Olaca*, *Xoa*, and *Cafates*. Then it runs W. by *Bisama* and *Gogo* or *Guamacanca*, where it comes again within 40 or 50 Leagues of its Fountain, having almost compassed the Kingdom of *Goyam*. Hence it runs more regularly from S. to N. till it reaches to the Plains of *Egypt*, where it continues its Course almost in a direct Line, till it falls into the *Mediterranean*. They add, that the *Niger* is a Branch of this River, and flows from it at *Dengula* before it falls down into *Egypt*. *Thevenot* says, 'tis not very rapid, except at the Cataracts, and charges those with a Mistake who report that the Gr. Seignior pays Tribute to the King of *Ethiopia* to let the Nile run in its usual Channel, for 'tis not in his Power to divert it. The Jesuit *Pais* agrees with the Jesuits in the Course of this River.

Marmol reports, That the *Ethiopian* Merchants who trade to *Nubia* and *Egypt* say, the exact Source of this River can't be found out, because Mount *Behr* or the Mountains of the Moon, and the adjacent Plains, are surrounded with thick Forrests and large Deserts, which are unpassable by reason of Wild Beasts. They add, That the Waters run S. from those Mountains with a continued Increase, and form a great Lake call'd *Safa*, that seems to have no Current, from whence several Rivers issue on the S. Side, some to the E. and others to the W. From hence the Nile glides gently, and afterwards runs thro' *Ethiopia* with a rapid Current, and touches upon *Negroland* with more than one Channel, till it comes to the Cataracts. Then it spreads out in Breadth, and runs with a gentle Stream; but it is not fordable

nor navigable till beyond the Isle of *Meroe*, from whence Boats go in 15 Days to the City of *Guaguera* or the *Syena* of the Ancients. Mr. *Sandys* says, That 4 Miles below *Cairo* it divides into two navigable Branches, and into two others that are shallow which run betwixt 'em. *Dapper* makes the *Nile* 450 Leagues with its Windings and Turnings; *Moll* extends it 16 Degrees; but the *Sansons* give it a much greater Extent, and say, it runs 45 and odd Degrees of Lat. or 11 or 1200 Leagues in a direct Line, exclusive of its Windings and Turnings, which they say would make it amount to above 2000. They add, that the 3 chief Rivers it receives in its Passage are, 1. *Zafsan*, a little on this Side the Equator, which comes from a Lake of the same Name; 2. *Cabella* or *Tagazzi*, near the Isle of *Meroe*, which flows from the Lake of *Barcena*; and, 3. The River *Nubia*, at the Entrance of *Egypt*, which crosses *Nubia Saara* and *Biledulgerid*.

The *Portuguese* Jesuits say, That at the first Cataract, the Water falls off the Rock to the Bottom in an entire Sheet 30 Foot broad without breaking, so that one may pass under the Waterfall to the other Side without being wet, and there are Stone Seats cut out of the Rock for the Convenience of curious Travellers. *Peter Pais* says, the Rocks which form the Cataracts are 14 Fathoms high, and the Tops of 'em so near one another, that the Emperor of the Country often passes them with his whole Army, by laying Bridges over them. They add, that the Water falls between 'em with a terrible Noise, and the breaking of it raises such thick Mists, that afar off they look like Clouds. *Dapper* says, the present Inhabitants call these Cataracts *Catadhi*, which signifies a Noise like Thunder; that they are 6 Miles in Compass; that they fall 200 Foot downwards, not in a straight Line, but sloping; and that the Noise when the River rises above its ordinary Channel is like the Roaring of the Sea in a Storm, but not great enough to make People deaf, as the Ancients wrote, and at other times very inconsiderable. *Paul Lucas*, who saw these Cataracts, says, the Barbarians of the Country commonly shoot them on Rafts. He confirms the above-mentioned Account given by the Jesuits concerning the first

Cataract, and says, that there are several Gaps under the Cascade which lead to subterranean Passages; but they are all now inaccessible by the breaking in of the Water. *Gemelli* observes, that the common Maps represent the *Nile* with 6 Mouths, whereas he saw none but those of *Rosetta* and *Damiata*; so that he supposes they include the Canals which are cut out of it.

We come next to give an Account of the Inundations of this famous River. *Herodotus*, *Diodorus*, *Ammianus Marcellinus*, and others of the Ancients, say it flow'd at least 90 Days, and *Aristides* 4 Months; whereas the Moderns assign it only 40 or 50 Days, and as much to its Decrease: But *Dapper* and *Du Mont* observe, that probably the Ancients reckon'd the Increase all the Time that the *Nile* exceeds its ordinary Channel; but the Moderns reckon no longer than till it is at the highest.

Du Mont says, that it rises gradually from the End of *April* or the Beginning of *May* to the 15th or 20th of *September*; so that by *October* the Parts overflowed are fit for Tillage; but the Increase is not much perceived in *Egypt* before the 26th of *June*; 1. Because it rises slowly at first, and does not come to be violent till after a certain Number of Days; 2. It runs a long Way before it enters the *Mediterranean*; and lastly, Because it runs much slower toward the Spring than in the Plains of *Egypt*; yet it is perceived at *Cairo* by the End of *May*. It gradually decreases from the 15th or 20th of *October* to *April*, when 'tis fordable in many Places. *Dapper* says, it decreases till the End of *May*. Some observ'd, that the Dew which falls along the Sides of the River for some Nights before its visible Increase is of such a fermenting Quality, that it not only leavens Dough, but even Earth and Sand; but *Monconys* rejects this as fabulous. *Dapper* corrects *Prosper Alpinus* for being so positive in the very Hour when the *Nile* begins to increase, and says, that it varies sometimes a Day or two sooner or later. He adds, that the higher it rises, the more rapid it grows; and that when 'tis at the highest, which he says is about 18 or 20 Cubits, it runs from the Spring to *Egypt* in 4 or 5 Days, or after the Rate of 10 Leag. an Hour; but its Rapidity is not so visible in *Egypt*, because 'tis received into Canals,

and

and covers a Country 10 Leag. or more in Breadth. As a Proof of its Violence where 'tis confined within a Channel, *Francis Alvares* says, that he and his Companions being in *Ethiopia*, and resting under their Tents, the Flood came so swift down an Arm of the *Nile* that flows out of *Dobas* into the River of *Takaze*, that they had scarce Time to pack up their Tents, and that a great rolling Mountain of Water swept away some Part of their Carriage; and such was the Force of the Stream, that it carried down huge Stones with it, and made the Earth to shake. *Prosper Alpinus* says, the Inhabitants pretend to know the Greatness of the approaching Inundation by preserving a dry Clod of Earth in a Wall'd Inclosure, which swells as the River begins to increase; but *Dapper* takes this to be a very uncertain Rule. He says, that at first it does not rise above 3 or 4 Inches in 24 Hours, and then gradually from half a Foot to a Foot a Day, till 'tis at the highest, when in several Parts of *Egypt*, where the Channel is not above a Furlong over, the Water extends to 300, and would reach further, were it not kept in by a Range of Mountains on each Side. He says, it continues sometimes at this Height 20 Days; and before it begins to fall, they open the Ditches to receive and detain the Water. It retires first from the Grounds of Upper *Egypt*, then from those of the Lower, and resumes its natural Channel before the 8th of *October*, when they open the Sluices to drain off the Water, which is kept up in the Ditches to fatten the Soil. *Leo* says, That during the Inundation, they sail from one Town to another in large Vessels, containing 6 or 7000 Bushels of Corn, and some Hundreds of Cattle. *Mr. Sandys* says, it begins to rise on the 17th of *June*; that its greatest Height is 24 Cubits; and that some of the Earth near the River grows heavier as it swells, and lighter as it decreases. Historians say, that in the 10th and 11th Years of *Cleopatra*, this River did not rise at all, which they alledged portended her Ruin. *Bernier* denies that the Fall of the Dew upon the Increase of the *Nile* makes the Plague cease; but he owns 'tis less dangerous, and ascribes it to the then Quality of the Air, which gives a Vent to the malignant Spirits in the Body. He observ'd, that it rises sometimes above

a Foot, and is very boisterous near a Month sooner than expected; and that during the Inundation, it often rises and falls again without any certain Measure. *Coppin* says, it rises from the Beginning of *June* till the End of *August*, and falls in 15 Days Time. *Monconys* says, the Dew falls a great while before the River swells.

As to the Cause of this Inundation, *Democritus* said, that the Snows in the N. being melted in the Summer, were afterwards turned into Vapours, and then into Clouds, which being carried by the *Etesian* Winds into *Ethiopia*, they broke against the Mountains, and turned into Rain, which occasion'd the Inundation. *Anarcides* of *Cnidus* said, it rains there continually from the Summer Solstice to the Autumnal Equinox. *Thales* said, that the *Etesian* Winds which blow in *Egypt* about that Time stopped the Course of the Waters, and occasion'd them to overflow. Some Philosophers of *Memphis* conjectur'd, that the Origine both of the *Nile* and its Inundation lay in the S. Temperate Zone. We refer to *Du Mont* for their Arguments. *Ephorus* was of Opinion, that *Egypt* being hollow, contain'd a great deal of Water in its Cavities, which broke out in the Summer; but he assigns no Reason for it. *Herodotus* did not believe that the *Nile* increased, but on the contrary pretended, that the Sun drew up great Part of it as soon as it approach'd the S. Pole, and let it fall down in Rain in remote Climates. *Oenopides* supposing that the Water was hotter in the Winter than in the Summer, said 'twas consumed in the Winter by its internal Heat, and that Consumption ceasing in the Summer, caus'd the Inundation. *Anaxagoras* the Natural Philosopher, *Euripides* and *Ptolemy*, ascrib'd it to the Snows which melted in the Mountains of *Ethiopia* about *April*, *May*, and *June*. *Gassendi* and most of the Moderns say, That the Sun passing thro' the N. Part of the Torrid Zone, raises Vapours, which condensing, fall down in Rain, and cause the *Nile* to swell. *M. Chambré* says, it proceeds from a Fermenting Quality, which the nitrous Soil of *Egypt* assumes at the Approach of the Sun; so that the Earth being swelled with it, makes the Water also to rise and overflow; but he is confuted by *Monconys* and *Bernier*. The latter agrees with *Gassendi*, that it proceeds

from Clouds dissolved by great Heats in the Summer; only he supposes the Vapours are brought 2 or 300 Leagues, which *Dapper* denies. *Du Mont* thinks that of *Anaxagoras*, &c. the most probable, especially if it could be accommodated with the prodigious Rains which fall betwixt the Tropicks in the Summer; and if it might be granted that there was Snow betwixt the Tropicks, as he endeavours to prove, *M. Regis* says, that the Increase of the *Nile* is owing only to those excessive Rains, or to the melting of the Snow on the Mountains of *Ethiopia*. *Diodorus* says, the *Egyptian* Priests assigned 3 Sources to the *Nile*, and derive its Inundations from 3 principal Causes; 1. From the natural Moisture of *Egypt*; 2. From the Waters of the Ocean; and, 3. From the great Quantity of Rain which falls in the S. Parts of *Egypt* in the Summer. *Kircher* thinks that the Situation and Form of the Mountains of *Ethiopia*, and the Disposition of the Canals, are the two principal Causes of the Rains and Inundation. He also takes it for granted, that *Inner Ethiopia* abounds with Caverns which are full of subterranean Waters, and that the Places expos'd to the Inundation are lower than those from whence it proceeds. *Dapper* says, it begins to rain in *Ethiopia* about *Easter*, and continues for 4 or 5 Months, till all the Caverns of the Earth are swelled, and discharge the rest into the Rivers and Lakes, which cause the Inundation. *Edvardus Lopes* says, it rains by Torrents in *Ethiopia*; but the Soil being stony, it immediately runs off with as great Violence into the Rivers.

Sandys and *Thevenot* say, the Fruitfulness of *Egypt* bears a Proportion to the Inundation, and that the People make great Rejoycings when the Time is near. The former says, That when the River is retired within its Bounds, they throw Corn on the Mud, and Rice on the Water, which *Du Mont* says is very thick and muddy, and fattens the Soil better than any Dung whatsoever. *Thevenot* tells us, they have the following Invention to clarify it for drinking: They use great Vessels of white Earth, holding about 4 Bushels, full of Water; and when they are full, rub the Inside with 3 or 4 Almonds till they be dissolved, and in a Quarter of an Hour the Water turns clear. Then 'tis fit to drink, and so very

wholesome, says our Author, that it does not hurt a Man, tho' he drink never so much. He ascribes this to its long Course in so hot a Climate, by which the Sun purges it from all Crudities; that 'tis almost all the Drink they have in *Egypt*, therefore most of their Towns and Villages are built on the Sides of this River; that *Egypt* is so much obliged to the Inundation for its Plenty, that if it fail'd one Year, there would be a Famine; that there would be a great Scarcity if it did not rise 16 Foot; and the like if it rose to 24 Foot, because then the Water would lie too long upon the Land, and the Seed-time would be lost. They strow Sand upon the fat Slime which the Inundation leaves behind when it ebbs, because otherwise 'twould be too fat, and produce nothing; so that they are at the same Pains to unfatten their Land, as we are to dung ours. *Dapper* says, the *Nile* has 3 singular Properties above other Rivers: 1. It yields no Vapours. 2. 'Tis never disturbed by Tempests, but is always calm and navigable with or against the Tide, without any Danger. 3. It communicates a prolifick Quality not only to Cattle and the Fruits of the Earth, but to Men and Women; so that 'twas formerly the best Peopled Province in the World, and at this Day is exceeded by none for Multitude of People. As a Proof of this, *Diodorus* says it had above 18000 good Towns before his Time. *Suidas* says, he was Cotemporary with *Ptolomy Lagus*, in whose Reign there were only 3000; so that it seems many of them had been laid desolate by Time and War. *Diodorus* says, it contain'd once 17 Millions of Souls, and that they amounted to 13 Millions in his Time. *Dapper* ascribes this prodigious Increase to their constant drinking of the Water of the *Nile*; and some *Hebrew* Commentators on *Genesis* say, it made the *Egyptian* Women bring forth from 2 to 8 Children at a Birth. From hence our Author observes, that it needs not seem so strange how the Children of *Israel* should multiply from 70 Souls to above 600000 Men, besides Women and Children, in 200 Years, which *Broughton* says was all the Time that they sojourned in *Egypt*: Nor (says our Author) need we wonder so much how those stupendious Monuments the Pyramids came to be erected by the ancient

cient Kings, if we consider the Millions of People that were under their Command.

From these extraordinary Properties, *Du Mont* says, the *Ethiopians* call'd the *Nile* by Way of Eminency the Father of Eyes, and its two Springs two Eyes; and *Dapper* informs us, that the ancient *Gymnosophists* of *Egypt* made it one of their *Numens*, and consecrated to it the Feasts of the Goddess *Isis*, ascribing to it their continual Freedom from the Plague, Earthquakes, Floods of Rain, and thick unwholesome Air. For this Reason they represented the *Nile* by a vast Number of hieroglyphical Emblems and honourable Epithets, such as *Osiris's* Arm, or the Arm of Plenty, &c. *Homer* says, it fell out of *Jupiter's* Bosom, from whence the ancient *Egyptians* and the *Greeks* fancy'd that Heaven was its Fountain. This made them term it the Gift of *Jupiter*, the Tears of the Gods, the Vein of Paradise, the Seed of the Gods, the Pond of *Proteus*, &c. The *Moors* and *Negroes* frequently call it the Fountain of Heavenly Water; the *Arabian* Poets, the Life of the Earth; and *Rabbi Eliezer*, in his Paraphrase on *Isa.* 23. 3. says, that *Sihor*, as he calls the *Nile*, brings more to pass in one Month, than all the other Rivers can do in a Year. *Dapper* thinks this was intended by the *Nelæ* of the *Greeks*, which, if resolv'd Arithmetically, makes 365 the Number of Days in a Year. *Thevenot* says, they make Annual Publication of the Rise of the *Nile* at *Cairo*, where we propose to give an Account of it. *Gabriel Sionata*, a *Syrian*, who wrote in 1619, observes, that the Waters kept 3 Days in Pans, and expos'd to the Sun, turn to a pure white Salt.

Of the Pyramids, Caves, Mummies, and Funerals of the Egyptians.

Herodotus preferred the Pyramids before the noble Structures of the *Greeks*, not excluding the Temple of *Diana* at *Ephesus*; and *Diodorus Siculus* says, the Edifices of the *Egyptians* excelled those of all other Nations for Magnificence, and that the Pyramids went beyond all the other Structures in *Egypt* for Stateliness, Cost, and Architecture. *Strabo* says, two of them were more famous than

the rest, and reckon'd among the 7 Wonders; and *Pliny* says, 3 of them filled the World with their Fame. *Diodorus* placed them on the Side of *Libya*, 120 Furlongs from *Memphis*, and 45 from *Nilus*. *Strabo* plac'd them near each other in a Plain 40 Furlongs from *Memphis*. *Pliny* says, they could be seen from the *Nile*, and that they lay on the Side of *Africa*, on a rocky and barren Hill, between *Memphis* and *Delta*, almost 4 Miles from the *Nile*, and 6 from *Memphis*. *Pausanias* says, the *Greeks* were curious in describing them, and *Pliny* gives a large Catalogue of those Authors who did so, whose Works are all lost, except those of *Herodotus*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Pliny*, *Solinus*, and *Marcellinus*.

Spondanus, *Josephus*, and others, think the Pyramids were erected by the *Israelites*; but *Mr. Greaves*, Professor of Astronomy at *Oxford*, who went twice from *Alexandria* to view them, denies this in his *Pyramidographia* printed in 1646, because all the Pyramids are of Stone; whereas the Slavery of the *Israelites* consisted in making and burning of Bricks. *Stephanus*, *Nicetas*, *Nonnus*, and others, derive the Name of the Pyramids from Πύρρ, Corn, because they say *Joseph* built them for Granaries against the 7 plentiful Years; but *Mr. Greaves* inclines rather to derive it from Πύρ, Fire, because in Form they resemble a Flame. *Herodotus* says, the first Pyramid was built by the Order of *Cheops*, (whom *Pliny* calls *Chemnis*) King *Rhampsinitus's* Successor, who shut up the Temples, and forbid the People to sacrifice; that the Stones were carry'd from the Quarries of the *Arabian* Mountain to the *Nile*, where they were wafted over, and drawn to the Mountain *Libycus*; that there were 100000 Workmen employ'd, by 1000 every 3 Months; that they spent 10 Years in making the Way by which they drew the Stones; and that they were 20 Years in building this Pyramid; but *Diodorus Siculus* trebles the Number of Men. They say, the 2d Pyramid, which is far less than the other, was founded by *Cephren* or *Chabrys*, the Brother or Son of *Cheops* his Successor; and that the 3d Pyramid was erected by *Mycerinus* or *Mycherinus*, the Son of *Cheops*. *Herodotus* confutes those who ascrib'd it to *Rhodope*, a *Curtezan*, because she was neither able to undertake such an expensive Work,

nor in being till the Reign of *Amasis*, long after the Pyramids were built. *Strabo* says, she was called *Doricha* by *Sappho* the Poetess, and that this Pyramid was built for her by her Lovers. *Diodorus* says, 'twas much less than the other two, but equal to 'em in Architecture and rich Materials. Others say, *Armeus* founded the greatest of 'em, *Amasis* the second, and *Inaron* the third; and *Pliny* says, they were built in 78 Years and 4 Months. An *Arabian* Author writes, that some of his Countrymen think they were built before the Flood by *Joseph*, others by *Nimrod* and Queen *Dalukah*, and others by the *Egyptians*, who they say put their Treasures there, to preserve them from the expected Deluge. The ancient *Egyptians* said, That in the E. Pyramid was deposited the Body of *K. Saurid*; in the W. one that of his Brother *Hougib*; and in the lesser, which is colour'd, that of *Hougib's* Son. The *Sa-Beans* say, that one of them is the Sepulchre of *Seth*, the 2d that of *Hermes*, and the colour'd one that of *Sab* his Son, from whom they have their Name. They go in Pilgrimage thither, offer up Incense to them, and sacrifice a Cock and a black Calf. Another *Arabian* finding no certain Account of 'em among the learned Men in *Egypt*, concludes that they were built 300 Years before the Flood, because otherwise the Memory of 'em would not have been lost; and the *Coprites* say in their Books, that there's an Inscription upon them in *Arabick* to this Effect; *I Saurid the King built the Pyramids in such a Time, and finish'd 'em in six Years: Let him that comes after me, and says he is equal to me, destroy them in 600 Years, tho' 'tis easier to pluck down than build; and whereas I cover'd them with Sattin, let him cover them with Mats.*

Herodotus and *Diodorus* say, there were other Pyramids as large, but they have been long in Ruins. Mr. *Greaves* tells us, there are some still in the *Libyan* Desert not mentioned by any of the Ancients. *Herodotus* informs us, that *Asychis*, who succeeded King *Mycerinus*, rais'd a Pyramid of Bricks, with an Inscription, importing, that it as far excelled the Pyramids of Stone, as *Jupiter* did the other Gods. The same Author says, That many Ages after, the *Egyptians*, having shaken off the Yoke of *Sennacherib* King of the *Arabians* and *Assyrians*, supposed

to be the same with him mention'd in Scripture, erected a Pyramid of 240 Foot at the Angle of the Labyrinth above the Lake of *Meris*, in which they engraved the Figures of huge Beasts. *Strabo* writes, that 'twas Quadrangular, 4000 Feet every Way, and the Sepulchre of *Imandes*, *Maindes*, or *Osymanduas*, whom Mr. *Greaves* supposes to be the Founder. *Pliny* adheres to the Dimensions of *Herodotus*, but gives an Account of more than one at that Place, and says, they were Sexangular. *Diodorus* writes, That over *Ismandes's* Sepulchre there was a Gold Circle of 365 Cubits in Compass, and a Cubit in Thickness, in which the Days of the Year were inscrib'd, and divided into a Cubit apiece, with a Description of the Rising and Setting of the Stars, and their Influences. They say, this Circle was carried away by *Cambyfes* when he conquer'd *Egypt*. *Pliny* writes, That in his Time there was scarce a Column or Obelisk of Note remaining in *Rome* which was not anciently brought out of *Egypt*. *Meris*, who (according to *Herodotus*, *Diodorus*, *Strabo*, and *Pliny*) made the Lake of that Name, erected two Pyramids in it for himself and his Wife, each 600 Foot high. *Diodorus* says, they were each a Furlong in Height, and had two Marble Statues on them sitting upon Thrones. *Herodotus*, that those Pyramids were 100 Fathom high, viz. 50 above, and 50 under Water. Mr. *Greaves* thinks that *Diodorus* referred to some of those still extant in the *Libyan* Desert, where it bounds *Egypt*, when he says in *Lib. 1*. That there were 3 other Pyramids 200 Foot high on each Side, and (tho' not so large) like those of *Chemnis*, *Cephren*, and *Mycerinus*, who are said to have erected them for their Wives; but Mr. *Greaves* wonders why they were built so far from one another. He corrects those who suppose that the Monument or Sepulchre into which *Plutarch* says *Cleopatra* fled for fear of *Augustus* was a Pyramid, because it had a Window above the Entrance by which she drew up *Anthony*, and *Proculius* surpris'd her, whereas this Window is not in any of the Pyramids at *Memphis*; so that he concludes, that the Monuments of the *Ptolomies* were of a different Structure from the *Egyptian* Pyramids. Mr. *Greaves* has a learned Chronological Dissertation, wherein he illustrates the ancient History of

of their Kings, and endeavours to discover the Time when the 3 chief Pyramids were built. He begins his Calculation at the Time of the *Israelites* Departure out of *Egypt*, and shews from *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*, that they were built betwixt the Reigns of *Sesostris*, *Sethosis*, or *Rameffes*, the first King of the 19th Dynasty, and *Apries*, *Vaphres*, or *Hophra*, the 8th of the 26th Dynasty. *Diodorus* says, the first Pyramid was built by *Cheops* in the 180th Olympiad; the 2d in the Time of his Successor, and the 3d by the Son of *Cheops*.

Du Mont proves, that the Pyramids were not built by *Pharaohs*, mentioned in the Scripture, for Granaries: 1. Because the greatest was not finish'd in 20, and all three not in 78 Years, tho' 100000 Men were constantly employ'd about them; whereas it appears from the Scriptures, that the King of *Egypt's* Dreams immediately preceded the Years of Plenty in which they were to store up Provisions; and, 2. From the Form of the Pyramids, which is no way fitted for Granaries. *Du Mont* says, that tho' the Workmen were allow'd nothing but Bread, Garlick, and Onions, yet the Charge of that Diet amounted to 1800 Talents, or 1080000 *French* Crowns.

Most ancient and modern Historians agree, that the Pyramids were intended for Sepulchres or Monuments of the Dead. And one of the *Arabian* Writers says, that almost 900 Years ago there was found in the Chamber, at the Top of the greatest Pyramid, a hollow Stone with a Statue in it like a Man, and within that a humane Corps, which had a Breast-Plate of Gold set with Jewels, a rich Sword upon it, a Carbuncle of the Size of an Egg upon his Head, and an Inscription in Characters which no Man understood. *Aristotle* thinks those Pyramids were the Works of Tyrants, to keep their People employ'd; and *Pliny*, that they were built partly out of Ostentation, and partly to keep the People at Work; that they might have no Leisure to mutiny. But Mr. *Greaves* assigns the chief Cause of this, as well as of their Embalmings, to the Theology of the *Egyptians*, who (according to *Servius*) believ'd that the Soul continu'd as an Attendant on the Body, and did not transmigrate into any other as long as the former continu'd without Corruption.

Hence they took Care not only to embalm their dead Bodies, but to provide lasting Sepulchres to preserve them from the Injury of Time, Men and Beasts, or other voracious Animals. For the same Reason, *Diodorus* says, the ancient Kings of *Thebes* built those Tombs, of which 47 are mentioned in the sacred Commentaries, tho' but 17 remained in the Time of *Ptolomy Lagus*; and from the same Cause *Strabo* derives those he calls Mercurial Tombs in the Way betwixt *Siene* and *Phile*, which consisted of great Spherical Marble Stones, from 7 to 12 Foot Diameter, some of 'em plac'd upon a greater Stone, with another on the Top, and some lying by themselves. To the same Cause Mr. *Greaves* assigns those Caves in the Deserts now call'd *Mummy Pits*, of which more hereafter when we come to treat of their Embalmings and other Funeral Customs.

Pierius, in his Hieroglyphicks, or rather the Anonymous Author bound up with him, gives the following Account why the *Egyptians* built their chief Sepulchres in a Pyramidical Form: They argued, that as a Pyramid gradually dilated on all Parts from a Point at the Top, so the Nature of all Things proceeding from one indivisible Fountain and Beginning, which is God, afterwards receives several Forms, and is diffus'd into various Kinds, all which it conjoins to that Beginning from whence every Thing flows. To this Purpose also, says he, the *Egyptians*, to whom he ascribes the Invention of Astronomy, suppos'd each of the 12 Signs to be a kind of Pyramid, with its Basis in the Heaven, and its Point in the Center of the Earth. They also believed the Soul existed after the Dissolution of the Body, and should produce another Body for it self when the first Agent pleas'd, i. e. after a Revolution of 36000, or (as some say) 40000 Years, when they thought all Things would be restored to their former State. He also quotes *Plato* in *Timæus* to prove, that the Soul has the Form of a Pyramid, and adheres to the Body as that does to the Base, or as Fire to the Fuel. Mr. *Greaves* rejects most of these Notions as meer Fancies, and thinks with much more Ground, that they imitated this Form, because 'twas more permanent than any other, (as being not too much press'd with its own Weight, nor subject to the sinking in of Rain, by reason

reason of its Contraction towards the Top) or because they would hereby intend some of their Gods, as he proves they did, anciently by Columns and Obelisks, which are but a lesser Sort of Pyramids. To illustrate this, *Dapper* says, that they also believ'd that the 7 Tutelar Guardians of *Egypt* govern'd 70000 Years apiece successively; that the Change of those Rulers occasion'd an Alteration of the State of the Body; that at the End of 49000 Years, there should be a Rest of all Things; and that after the Soul had transmigrated out of one Body into another for 7000 Years, it should return to its first Body, which was kept whole in the Grave by the Presence of the Gods, and should then be advanced thro' the Cœlestial Spheres to its own Idea, to live there in eternal Happiness.

We come in the next Place to give an Account of the Situation and Structure of the 3 chief Pyramids: *Thevenot* says, they lie 3 Leagues from *Cairo*, and *Dapper* but 4 Miles W. from it. They are square, and grow narrow gradually from the Bottom to the Top, where they terminate almost in a Point. They were built of the finest Marble dug out of the Mountains of *Egypt*. The Architecture of them is not very curious, because the *Egyptians* aim'd only to make them solid and firm, that they might be Proof against Wind and Weather, in which they have been very successful, says our Author, considering the many Ages they have stood, and how long they are still like to stand; such is the Durableness of the Materials, and of the Rocks on which they were built. *Herodotus* thinks the vast Stones of which they are compos'd were drawn up by Engines plac'd on the first Steps to raise them to the second. But *Diodorus* says, such Engines being not then invented, they rais'd a high Mountain of Earth, to which the Stones were drawn up, and then let down towards the Structure, which *Mr. Greaves* thinks fabulous. *Monconys* says, they lie almost over against the N. E. Quarter of the Town, at the End of a Plain that runs two good Leagues from the *Nile* to the Beginning of the Rock, on the Side of which they are founded. The Rock is about 100 Foot high, and runs a great Way into the Deserts like a Platform, being cover'd with the Sands blown thither by the

Winds. The Pyramids lie on the Side of the Rock for 5 or 6 Leagues in Length, great and small ones together. *Du Mont* says, the Outside of the Marble is a little scald'd by the Heat of the Sun, so that 'tis become rough to the Touch, and Sight. *Lucas* says, the three greatest Pyramids are about 200 Paces from one another. We now come to give an Account of each.

Mr. Greaves says, the first and largest of the three great Pyramids lies a quarter of a Mile W. from the Plains of *Egypt*. *Herodotus* says, 'tis 800 Grecian Feet long, or rather broad, on each Side at Bottom, *Diodorus Siculus* 700, *Strabo* but 600, and *Pliny* 883. Our Author measur'd it, and found it to be 693 Feet according to the *English* Standard, which he says comes pretty near the Measure of *Diodorus*. *Strabo* thinks the Height to be greater; but *Mr. Greaves* says, 'tis only 499 Feet perpendicular, tho' equal if one measure it as the Pyramid ascends inclining. Our Author supposing 4 Equilateral Triangles mutually propending and inclining to the Top, and the Perimeter of each Triangle containing 2079 Feet, (besides the Latitude of a little Plain on the Top) and the Perimeter of the Basis 2772 Feet, makes the whole Area of the Basis according to our Measure 480249 square Feet, or above 11 *English* Acres. *Herodotus* says, each Side contain'd 800 Feet, according to which the Area must be 640000. *Diodorus Siculus* makes it 490000, and *Pliny*, tho' he allots 883 Feet to each Side, but 8 *Roman* Acres; whereas *Mr. Greaves* observes, that by squaring his first Number, the Product amounts to 779689, so that he meant 28 Acres, or else he erred in his Proportion of the Side to the Area of the Basis. The Ascent without is by Steps, the lowermost near 4 Foot in Height, and 3 in Breadth. This runs about the Pyramid in a Level, and at first, when the Stones were entire, made on every Side a long narrow Walk. Each Stone of the 2d Step is almost 4 Foot high, and 3 broad, and this Degree retires inward from the first near 3 Feet. The rest rise in the same Order one above another like Stairs to the Top, which ends in a little Flat or Square, that *Henricus Stephanus*, in his Comment upon *Herodotus*, computes at 8 *Orgya* or Fathom in Breadth; but *Mr. Greaves* charges the Commentator with mistaking the

the Top for *Herodotus's* Bridge, of which there's nothing now to be seen, and says, *Diodorus Siculus*, who describes it to be but 9 Foot, comes nearest the Truth. *Pliny* makes it 25 Feet, and *Mr. Greaves* a little above 13 of *English Measure*. *Proclus* says, that upon this Top the *Egyptian* Priests made their Astronomical Observations, and that the Pyramids were erected for that Purpose, which *Mr. Greaves* rejects as fabulous, because they might make them with as much Certainty at the Bottom, without the Toil of ascending so high. *Villamont* and *Sandys* say, the Top was cover'd with one or three massy Stones, but *Mr. Greaves* says 9, besides two wanting at the Angles. The latter observes, that some of the Degrees are scarce 3 Feet high, and that they diminish gradually to the Top; that they differ also proportionably in Breadth, so that a right Line extended from any Part of the Basis without to the Top, would equally touch the outward Angle of every Degree; but he could not measure them exactly, because they are so wasted by the Air and Rain, that they cannot now be conveniently ascended, but at the S. Side, at the E. Angle, or at the N. *Herodotus* calls them little Altars. Our Author says, they are made of polish'd Stones, so vast, that the Breadth and Depth of every Step is but one single Stone. *Pomponius Mela* and *Herodotus* say, that the least Stone in the Pyramid is 30 Foot, which our Author grants only as to some, unless they meant 30 Cubical Feet. *Bellonius* says, the Degrees are 250 in Number; and *Clusius*, who computes the Basis at 324 large Paces, makes each of the Degrees 45 Digits in Height, and 2 Paces broad at Top. *Albertus Lewenstainius* reckons the Steps to be 260, and each a Foot and a half in Height. *Johannes Helfricus* makes the Number 230, *Sebastianus Serlius* says 210, and makes every Step 3 Palms and a half in Height. But *Mr. Greaves* says, there are no more than 207 or 208. He confutes *Bellonius* and others, who say, that a *Turkish* Archer at the Top cannot shoot beyond the Bottom, but that 'twill necessarily fall upon these Steps, since their Bows must needs carry above 240 Inches, which is farther than the Basis of this Pyramid. He also confutes *Solinus*, *Ausonius*, *Ammianus Marcellinus*, and *Cassiodorus*, for reporting that the Pyramids cast no

Shadows, because he has seen their Shadows in the Winter at Noon; but he supposes they meant in the Summer, when for almost three quarters of the Year they have no Shadows, especially at Noon. *Bellonius* says, that on every Side at the Ground, from one Corner to another, is 350 Paces; that 'tis 1200 Paces in Circuit, and 600 Foot high. *Dapper* says, the Stones of this Pyramid are all of a Size, 3 Foot in Length, and 2 in Breadth and Thickness; that 'tis most Weather-beaten on the N. Side, because of the Moistness of that Wind, and that 'tis more expos'd to the Inundation than the E. and S. Sides. 'Tis 22 Foot square at Top, and large enough to hold 30 Men, and there's a Prospect a great Way into the Sea and over the Plains of *Egypt*. *Prince Radzevil* says, 'tis built of square Free-stones, so artificially laid one upon another, that it resembles a Mountain. 'Tis not dangerous to ascend, but so difficult because of the Thickness of the Stones, that it took him up an Hour and a half before he arrived at the Top, which he says is 10 Cubits square. *Mr. Sandys* makes every Side of the Square 300 Paces, and the Number of Steps 255, each 3 Foot high, and proportionably in Breadth, and says, that none of 'em are little enough to be drawn by our Carriages. He adds, that the Top consists only of 3 Stones, but those large enough for 60 Men to stand upon. 'Twas said to have stood 3200 Years before his Time. *Gemelli* says, the Steps are suppos'd to have been cover'd with Marble, since taken away for other Uses; that its perpendicular Height is 520 Foot, and the Length of each Side 682; that the Flat on the Top is made of 12 Stones, 16 Foot 8 Inches square, and that there are 16 Steps up to the Entrance of the Pyramid. *Thevenot* says, that without a *Frank* for a Guide, a Stranger may ramble into such Places where he can go neither up nor down without Danger of tumbling down; and that the easiest Place to ascend it is at the Angle that looks betwixt E. and N. He observ'd, that the Steps were two Foot and a half high one with another, but that some were thicker than others, and above 3 Foot high. Several of the Steps betwixt the Corners towards the middle of the Front are cover'd with Sand, and the rest are very difficult to count, because climbing up on their Knees, they

they sometimes reckon half Steps for whole ones. About half Way up, in one of the Angles of this Pyramid, betwixt E. and N. there's a little square empty Room where one may rest. He adds, that a Man must be extraordinary strong to throw a Stone from the Top beyond the Bottom of the Pyramid; but an Arrow may easily be shot from the Top beyond it. He, *Monconys*, and *Du Mont*, agree with *Gemelli's* Dimensions. *Du Mont* says, the Top is 84 Foot square; but *Lucas*, who was the latest upon it, says not much above 20, and that 'tis cover'd only by 5 Stones. He denies that the Sea may be seen from hence; but he saw the Deserts on the Side of *Barca*, the little Pyramids at 4 Leagues Distance, and the *Nile*, and says, that *Cairo* look'd as if it had been at the Foot of the Pyramid. He adds, that a *Turk*, for the Diversion of him and his Companions, shot an Arrow from the Top with all his Strength, and that it scarce reach'd further than the Middle of the Pyramid. He tells us he descended backward, that he might not be giddy, and that he counted 243 Steps, which being each above 3 Foot high, may amount to 729 Foot in a straight Line.

The Ancients say very little of the Inside of this Pyramid. *Herodotus* mentions only some secret Vaults hewn in the Rock under the Pyramid, and *Strabo* says no more to this Purpose, than that this Pyramid is a Furlong in Height, which somewhat exceeds the Breadth of each Side; and that in the Midst between the Sides, there's a Stone that may be removed, which being taken out, there's an oblique or shelving Entrance leading to the Tomb. *Pliny* takes Notice only of a Wall within 86 Cubits in Depth, to which he supposes the Water of the *Nile* was brought by some secret Aqueduct. *Aristides*, upon a Misinformation of the *Egyptian* Priests, says *Greaves*, makes the Foundation as deep under Ground, as the Structure is above it. One of the *Arabian* Writers of best Credit says, the Gates of the Pyramids were built 40 Cubits under Ground; that the Foundations were cramp'd with Lead and Iron; and that the Height of the Pyramids and of the Sides was 100 Royal Cubits, or 500 of ours. After this was finish'd and cover'd with Sattin by *K. Saurid*, he appointed a solemn Festival,

at which were present all the Inhabitants of this Kingdom. Then he built in the W. Pyramid 30 Treasure-Houses, which he filled with Signatures made of Precious Stones, Instruments of Iron, Vessels of Earth, Arms that did not rust, Glass which would bend, and not break, and with Store of other Utensils, besides strange Spells, Magical Stones, and deadly Poisons. For the Treasurer, they plac'd a Marble Statue standing upright, with a Lance and a wreath'd Serpent upon his Head. Those that came near it, says the same Author, the Serpent killed. The Entrance into this Pyramid was open'd at the Command of *Almamun* the Caliph with Fire and Vinegar, and Iron Instruments. The Wall was 20 Cubits thick, and they found, says our Author, a Pot of green Emeralds of 1000 Ounces. Within they found a square Well, with Doors in the Sides of it, which open'd into Houses or Vaults where there were dead Bodies wrapped in Linen. Thus far the *Arabian*. What follows is from *Mr. Greaves*, who enter'd it with some others upon an artificial Bank 38 Foot high. On the N. Side there's a square and narrow Passage leading into this Pyramid. The Mouth of it is in the Middle, betwixt the two Sides and the Entrance, pretty steep, declining with an Angle of 26 Degrees. The Breadth of the Entrance is almost 3 Foot and a half, and the Length 92 Foot and a half; but towards the further End 'tis scarce half so high as at the Entrance, tho' it keeps the same Breadth. He and his Company pass'd thro' with Tapers in their Hands. The Passage is very smooth and even, but so shallow at the further End, that they are forced to creep on their Bellies. After that they came into a Place somewhat larger and higher, with much Rubbish, that he supposes was dug up formerly in hopes of finding Treasure. 'Twas then full of great ugly Bats. This obscure broken Place is steeper, according to *Coppin*, than a Glacis, and has no Step, but some Holdfasts in the Wall to keep People from falling. 'Tis 89 Foot in Length, but varies in the Breadth and Height. At the Left, near the aforesaid Passage, there was a massy steep Stone 8 or 9 Foot high, by which they climbed up to the lower End of the first Gallery, the Pavement of which rises with a gentle Ascent,

and

and is of white polish'd Marble. The Sides and Roof are of unpolish'd Stone, not so hard as that on the Pavement. The Height is almost 5 Foot, but the Breadth unequal. It is 110 Foot long. At the End of it there's a Wall with a square Hole, thro' which they passed stooping into another stately Gallery, not inferior for Curiosity or Richness to the noblest Buildings. This Passage is level, and at the End of it on the Right Hand is the Well mentioned by *Pliny*, which is round, and above 3 Foot in Diameter, lin'd with white Marble, and little Holes cut in the Sides for such as descend to fasten their Hands and Feet in. Our Author measur'd and found it but 20 Foot deep, so that it must have been some Way filled up since *Pliny's* Time. Fifteen Foot upon a Level from this Wall they enter'd another square Passage of the same Bigness as the former, and opposite to it. The Stones of it are very massy, and finely jointed. After going 110 Foot upon a Level, it leads into an arch'd little Vault half full of Rubbish, almost 20 Foot long, 17 broad, and 15 high. The Walls are entire, and plaister'd over with Lime, and the Roof cover'd with large smooth Stones, which meet at Top in a kind of Arch or Angle. Returning back the same Way, they climbed over that narrow Passage, and went forward over the 2d Gallery upon a shelving Pavement, rising with an Angle of 26 Degrees, till they come to another Partition. The Length of the Gallery from hence to the Well below is 154 Foot. In this Place is the Eccho of 4 or 5 Voices mentioned by *Plutarch*; but *Coppin* says it has 10, which is occasion'd by the Turnings and Windings the Sound passes thro'. This Gallery is square, and built of white polish'd Marble Stones cut in spacious Tables. The Roof, Walls, and Pavement, are of the same. The Joints are scarce discernible, and the Rising of the Ascent is extraordinary graceful. This Gallery is 26 Foot high, and above 6 broad, with two Benches of polish'd Stone on each Side about a Foot in Breadth, and as much in Height. Upon the Top of these Benches, near the Angles, there are little Spaces cut in Eight-angled parallel Figures opposite to one another. *Dapper* says, they climb up this Way by Stones which jet out, and by Holes on pur-

pose to set their Feet in, about 6 Hands Breadth from one another. From this Gallery they passed thro' another square Hole to two Closets lin'd with a speckled Sort of *Thebaick* Marble. The Area is level, and of an oblong Figure, containing 7 Foot on one Side, 3 and a half on t'other, and is 10 Foot high. On the E. and W. Sides, within two Foot and a half of the Top, are 3 little Seats. The inner Closet is separated from the former by a Door of red speckled Marble, which hangs in two Mortices between the Walls more than 3 Foot above the Pavement, and two below the Roof. They went out of this Closet thro' another square Passage, over which there are 5 Lines cut parallel and perpendicular. This Passage is 9 Foot long, of the same Breadth and Height with the rest, and is all of *Thebaick* Marble finely cut, with a handsome Room at the N. End of curious Workmanship. The Distance from this Entry to the End of the 2d Gallery is 24 Foot upon a Level. This curious Chamber is in the Middle of the Pyramid, both as to Height and Breadth. The Floor, Sides and Roof, are all of vast Tables of *Thebaick* shining Marble. From the Top to the Bottom there are 6 Ranges of Stone of an equal Height. 'Tis cover'd with 7 (some say 9) Stones of a prodigious Length, which lie flat across the Room like huge Beams, and support that infinite Mass of the Pyramid above. *Greaves* says, this Room is above 34 Foot long, and 17 broad. Within it there's the Monument or Pillar, as *Dapper* calls it, of *Cheops* or *Chemnis*, of the same Marble, but of one entire Piece, uncover'd at the Top, and hollow within. *Dapper* says, 'tis 4 Inches thick, 12 Hands Breadth long, 5 in Breadth, and 5 and a half in Depth. Some write, that the Body has been remov'd hence; whereas *Diodorus* almost 1700 Years ago, speaking of *Chemnis* and *Cephren*, the Founder of the Pyramid next adjoining, says, that tho' they intended these for their Sepulchres, yet neither of them were buried there, but chose to be laid privately in some obscure Place, to prevent the Rage of the People, who being weary of their Oppression, and the Toilsomeness of those Works, threaten'd before-hand to pull their Bodies out of their Sepulchres, and tear them in Pieces. Mr. *Greaves* says, the outward Form of this

Tomb is like an Altar, or rather like two hollow Cubes finely set together, and 'tis cut smooth and plain. The Superficies is 7 Foot, 3 Inches and a half, in Length. *Belonius* makes it 12 Foot, and *M. de Breves* 9, wherein our Author says both have exceeded. The former says, 'tis of black Marble like a Chest, 5 Foot in Depth, and as many in Breadth: and that the Chamber is 6 Paces in Length, 4 in Breadth, and about 5 or 6 Fathom in Height. *Mr. Greaves* says, 'tis but 3 Foot, 1 Inches, and three quarters, in Depth, and the same in Breadth; and that the Inside is above 6 Foot in Length on the W. Side, 2 Foot in Breadth at the N. End, and above 2 Foot deep. He concludes from hence, that this Monument was rais'd up hither by some Machine on the Outside, before this Chamber was finish'd and the Roof clos'd, because 'tis impossible it should have enter'd by such narrow Passages. *Dapper* says, there's another Tomb here without any Stone, as if it had been broken up or never colour'd. *Mr. Greaves* took Notice also of two Inlets or Spaces in the S. and N. Sides of this Chamber opposite to one another. The former was almost a Foot in Breadth, and half as much in Depth, evenly cut, and running in a straight Line above 6 Foot into the Wall. That on the S. is larger, rounder, shorter, and by the Blackness within seems to have been the Place where they burnt Lamps, of which we shall treat hereafter. *Dapper* says, That before the Hole of the Entrance there's an arch'd Gate of 8 Free-stones, which are very thick, high, well cemented, and plac'd in a handsome Order; and that the Kings of *Egypt* made the Entrance so steep, that none might interrupt the Repose of the Dead who were there interred, for which Purpose also the Mouth of the Sepulchre was clos'd with a great Stone so nicely, that it cannot be discover'd nor open'd without splitting the Tomb. He says, the Entrance from the Mouth to the Middle of the Pyramid is 200 Paces long; that 'tis impassable without Torch-light, (there being no Windows;) that 'tis cut out between 4 even Ranges of Stone, each 25 or 30 Handfuls broad, whereof one Row makes the Roof, the other the Floor, and the two others the Walls. *Coppin* says, that before they enter they discharge some Fire-Arms, to frighten away

such hurtful Animals as may harbour there. *Mr. Sandys* says, some of their Janizaries guarded the Mouth of the Pyramid while he and his Company enter'd, for fear of the wild *Arabs*. They put off their Shoes to have the better Footing, and left most of their Clothes behind 'em, because of the Heat within, which is like that of a Stove. They say, none durst ever attempt any further than the End of the narrow Passage; but that a *Basha* of *Cairo*, out of Curiosity, made several condemn'd Persons undertake it, and stock'd them with Lights and Provisions, and that some of them came up again near 30 Miles off from the Deserts; but *Mr. Sandys* takes this to be fabulous. Others say, there's a large Pit at the Bottom 86 Cubits deep, filled at the Time of the *Nile's* overflowing by several Conduits; and that there's a little Island in the Middle with the Tomb of King *Cheops*; but our Author thinks this no more probable than the former. They say, that formerly, after the Corps was put in, the Mouth was stopped by a great Stone cut on purpose, so exactly, that neither the Place nor the Stone could be easily distinguish'd, till a *Basha* caus'd it to be remov'd. *Thevenot* says, the Lintel over the Mouth of the Pyramid is one entire Stone, 11 Foot long and 8 Foot thick. The Curious, who would know more Particulars concerning the Inside Structure of this Pyramid, may consult *Coppin*, *Sandys*, *Gemelli*, *Thevenot*, *Du Mont*, *Monconys*, and *Lucas*, who were all within it.

The 2d Pyramid, according to *Mr. Greaves*, stands S. of the former. Some say, 'twas built with the Stones which the Daughter of *K. Cheops* got together by the Contributions of her Gallants. *Herodotus* says, *Cephron* built it in Imitation of that erected by his Brother *Cheops*, but fell short of it in respect of Magnitude, in which *Diodorus Siculus* agrees with him. The former says, it has no subterranean Structures, nor is the *Nile* derived into it by a Channel as in the first. The latter says, it resembles the former in Architecture, and that each Side of the Basis is a Stadium in Length, which *Mr. Greaves* computes at 600 *Grecian* or 625 *Roman* Feet; so that, says he, each Side should want 100 *Grecian* Feet of the former Pyramids. But *Pliny*, who allows 883 Feet to the former, assigns only 737 to the Side of

of the Basis of this. Our Author says, the Stones are white, and not so large as those of the first Pyramid, nor do the Sides rise with Degrees like that, but are smooth and equal, and the whole Fabrick, except on the S. Side, very entire, and free from Breaches. He says, 'tis equal to the former in Height, and that the Sides of both Basis are alike, but has no Entry, tho' some say it had one, but is now clos'd up. Mr. Sandys says, it lies about a Bow-shot from the former. *Thevenot* tells us 'tis 631 Foot square. *Du Mont* makes it 630 Foot square, and 510 Foot high. *Dapper* says, it looks higher than the former, because 'tis built on a higher Ground, and that 'tis so peaked at Top, that a Man cannot stand upon it. He adds, that it has suffer'd much on the North Side by the Weather. Prince *Radzovil* says, it cannot be ascended above half Way, because the Stones are there so even and smooth, that a Man cannot stand upon 'em, which he thinks was done on purpose, because a little further up they lie as careless and uneven as towards the Basis.

Mr. *Greaves* says, the 3d Pyramid lies about a Furlong from the 2d, upon such a Height, that at a Distance it looks equal to the latter, tho' 'tis much less and lower. *Herodotus* says, 'twas built by *Mycerinus*, is four-square, 300 Foot on every Side, and built half Way up with *Ethiopick* Marble. *Diodorus Siculus* says, he rais'd the Walls 15 Stories with black Stone like *Theban* Marble, and finish'd the rest with the same of the other Pyramids; that it excels the rest in Architecture and the Richness of the Marble; and that the Founder's Name is engraven on the N. Side. *Strabo* says, the Structure was more expensive than that of the other two, because the *Ethiopick* Marble was more difficult to be wrought. *Pliny* makes it 663 Foot between the Angles. *P. Gillius*, after whom our Author says *Bellonius* copy'd, informs us, that in his Time it was as perfect and beautiful as if it had been but just built. Mr. *Greaves* corrects *Herodotus* for false Arithmetick, in making this Pyramid but 20 Foot less every Way than the first, instead of 500 Foot, because he had before assigned 800 Foot to the first. He corrects him also with *Pliny*, *Diodorus*, *Strabo*, *Gillius*, *Bellonius*, and others, who have follow'd him, for saying 'twas built of black *Ethiopick* Mar-

ble, and says, that the whole Pyramid is of a white Stone, clearer than that of the other two. And what the Stone within may be, no Body can tell, since it has no Entrance; so that he supposes, that the Ruins of a sad-colour'd Pile near it on the E. Side gave Occasion to this Error. *Herodotus* says, certain Characters were inscribed on this Pyramid, shewing that 1600 Talents of Silver were expended upon the Workmen in Radishes, Onions, and Garlick; but Mr. *Greaves* says, that both this and the Name of the Founder are worn out. Some think 'twas built by a Curtezan of *Naucratis*, whom *Sappho* the Poetess calls *Dorica*, and others by *Rhodope*, one of the same Calling, and Fellow Slave with *Æsop*. Some say, she liv'd in the Time of K. *Amasis*, and say, that an Eagle carried her Shoe to *Memphis*, and let it drop in his Lap, who being in Love with the neat Shape of it, order'd Search to be made thro' all his Territories for the Owner, and having found her in *Naucratis*, made her his Queen, and interred her here after her Decease; but Mr. *Greaves* thinks it most probable that 'twas built by *Mycerinus*, as we before observ'd. *Thevenot* says, 'twas anciently faced with the same Stones as *Pharaoh's* Tomb; but that they are tumbled down, and lie at the Foot of it. *Du Mont* thinks 'twas faced with *Porphyry* for 150 Foot high, and 200 in Front; that 'tis not cramp'd with Lead and Iron, nor entire, as *Bellonius* reports, but on the contrary more ruinous than the others. *Gemelli* says, 'tis a 4th Part less than the two former Pyramids, and that the Breadth is equal to the Height.

The next remarkable Pyramid is that near the Mummy Pits of *Sakara*, and therefore called the Mummy Pyramid. Mr. *Greaves* says, 'tis as memorable as any of the other three, and lies in the *Libyan* Desert, 20 Miles from them to the S. W. that 'tis as big as the first, hath the like Steps, and the same Colour without, but more decay'd, especially at the Top, and had an Entrance on the N. Side, now barred up. He concludes, that whatever is said of the Outside of the first, is applicable to this. *Thevenot* thinks 'twould not come short of the Beauty of the first, if it had been finish'd. He went up to the Top of it before he enter'd it, and says, it has 148 Steps of large Stones like the other. The Platform is uneven,

and the Stones irregular and much worn out; from whence he concludes, that 'tis older than the others. He says, 'tis 643 Foot square, viz. 316 Foot on the E. Side, and 327 on the W. The Entry is at the 4th Part of its Height, and the Passage 3 Foot broad, 4 high, and 267 downwards, where it ends in a Hall, with a steep-ridged Roof 25 Foot in Length, and 11 in Breadth. In one Corner of it there's another Passage or Gallery parallel to the Horizon, 3 Foot square within, and 9 Foot long. It leads to another Chamber 21 Foot in Length, and 11 in Breadth, with the like Roof, and a square Window at the W. End rais'd above 24 Foot from the Floor, by which one enters into a pretty broad Passage, of a Man's Height, parallel to the Horizon, and 13 Foot long, at the End of which there's a great Room 26 Foot long, and 24 broad. The Floor of it is the natural Rock. Mr. *Coppin* says, their Torches burnt so dim and blue, that they could not see the Structure of the Cieling of the Hall; but they supposed it reaches as high as the Top of the Pyramid. For the rest, there's little remarkable in the Inside, so that few go to see it, and the rather, because it lies by it self in the Desert, where there are many Wild Beasts. *De Mont* thinks 'twas designed to be as high again as it is. *Dapper* says, the farther End of the Entrance is so choak'd up with Stones, that 'tis not passable without creeping, and that 'tis dangerous because of the falling of loose Stones. *Gemelli* says, there are two others here, each 631 Foot long, and that in all they make 11.

Belonius number'd above 100 lesser Pyramids in the same Plain; but Mr. *Greaves* says he could not see 20. An *Arabian* Author reckons them 18, including the three large ones. *Monconys* says, they take up 5 or 6 Leagues in Length. *Thevenot* says, that before each of the three great Pyramids there are the Marks of certain square Buildings, which seem to have been so many Temples.

S. E. from the first and greatest Pyramid stands the *Sphinx* of *Strabo* and *Pliny*, or the *Androsphinx* of *Herodotus*. *Pliny* makes it 62 Foot from the Belly to the Head, 143 in Length, and 102 in Compass about the Head. *Dapper* corrects *Pliny*, by assigning 162 to the Height, 43 to the Length,

and but 12 to the Circumference of the Head. 'Twas supposed to be the Sepulchre of K. *Amasis*, and the ancient Rural Deity of the Inhabitants. Mr. *Greaves* observ'd, that 'twas of one entire Stone. *Thevenot* says, the *Arabs* call it the Father of the Pillar, and (contrary to *Pliny*) that the People are so far from believing it to be the Sepulchre of King *Amasis*, that they scarce know the Name. Some say, that a King of *Egypt* caus'd this Figure to be made in Memory of one *Rhodope*, a *Corinthian* Woman, with whom he was in love. 'Tis said, that every Day after Sun rising, this *Sphinx* gave Responses till the coming of Christ; and some are of Opinion, that a Priest convey'd himself into that Idol under Ground by a Hole at the End of the Temple of the 2d Pyramid; But *Thevenot* says, it has no subterranean Passage, if we may believe the Testimony of some who went down in it. It has the Face and Breast of a Woman 26 Foot high, and 15 from the Ear to the Chin, and the rest in Proportion. 'Twas cut out of a Rock. Mr. *Sandys* says, 'twas made to represent an *Ethiopian* Woman, ador'd formerly by the Country People; that the whole is 60 Foot high, and that the Face is a little disfigured. The upper Part resembled a Maiden, and the lower a Lion, by which the *Egyptians* meant the Increase of their Rivers and Riches. He adds, that nothing remains now but from the Shoulders upwards. The *Egyptians* us'd a *Sphinx* in their Hieroglyphicks, to denote a Harlot. *Coppin* says, the Face of it looks towards *Cairo*. 'Tis an Half-Length, without Arms, upon a Basis suitable to the vast Colossus which it supports. 'Tis of one entire Piece of Stone almost as beautiful as Marble. He adds, that this, with the Column of *Alexandria*, and other vast Obelisks of *Egypt*, made many of the Learned think that the *Egyptians* had the Art of casting Stone. Formerly they thought it a Happiness to be buried near this Figure, so that there's a prodigious Number of Sepulchres round it. *Dapper* says, the Features of the Face have an excellent Proportion, as if it had been done by an able Hand; and that the *Sphinx* was sometimes represented in the Shape of a Couchant Lion upon a Throne, to signify *Memphra*, one of their Deities that govern'd the *Nile* and its Inundation. *Pliny* says, there

there were many other of these Sphinxes in *Egypt*, especially in Places water'd by the *Nile*. An *Arabian* writes, that they were set as Marks of the Increase of the *Nile*. *Dapper* thinks, that from hence came the Custom in *Europe* to adorn Pipes, Spouts, Conduits, Pumps, &c. with Lions Heads, and the like Figures. *Anthony du Piget*, in his Notes upon *Pliny*, adds, that this Sphinx has a Maiden's Countenance, the Wings of a Bird, and the rest of the Body like that of a Dog; but *Bellonius* and *Thevet* sufficiently explode this Description, tho' (as *Du Mont* observes) they have fallen into as great a Mistake themselves, in affirming that 'tis 102 Foot wide, and 100 in Length. *Thevet* says, the *Arabians* verily believe, that if any should cause this Idol to be demolish'd, or venture to go to the Top of it, they would not live 24 Hours after, and they pretend to vouch for the Truth of the latter by several Instances. *Thevenot* says, That near the large Pyramid there are certain Caves which serv'd formerly as Repositories for the Dead. They are cut in the Inside of the Rock, without any Order, but square within. The Walls of some of them are full of Hieroglyphick Figures, some as big as the Life, and one has 16 Men and Women Hand in Hand.

Dapper says, That the Guardian Images which the *Egyptians* placed in the Pyramids to take Care of the Bodies of the Deceased, and to carry their Souls to the Cœlestial Spheres, were engrav'd from the Bottom to the Top with several Hieroglyphicks call'd *Serapes*, and reputed for Saints.

We come now to give an Account of their Mummy Pits and Mummies. They lie in a Plain near the Village of *Sakara*, which *Thevenot* places 3 Leagues, and *Monconys* 4, from the Pyramids. The *Moors*, who are Masters of the Mummies, reserve all the fresh Pits to themselves, that they may sell the Mummies, Medals, and Idols, to the *Franks* at *Cairo*; so that *Thevenot* says, they never open a new Pit but when they are alone; and tho' he paid them 8 Piasters to break up a new Pit for him, yet they open'd one that had been broke up 20 times before, as appear'd by the broken Mummy, and swore it was the first time. They are square, and built of a pretty good Stone, but full of Sand. Some are cut out of the

Rock. That which our Author saw was two or three Pikes Length deep. He and his Companions were let down into it by Ropes fasten'd about their Middles, and Candles and Flambeaux in their Hands. When they were at the Bottom, they crept thro' a little Hole upon their Bellies into a little Room walled and arched over with Stone. There were several other Rooms near it full of Bodies, but their Entries were stopped up with Sand. *Du Mont* says, these Caves are built of Free-stone; that the Rooms have no Communication one with another; and that they were formerly full of the Bodies of the ancient *Egyptians*, so skilfully embalmed, that they were preserved entire for several Thousand Years, with their Epitaphs, Coffins, and curious Dresses. They have many Windings like Labyrinths. *Le Bruyn* says, That amongst these Sepulchres are certain great Chambers full of Earthen Pots with Covers, in each of which they preserv'd an embalm'd Bird, and that in some there are Shells of Hen Eggs. Several of the Caves stink intolerably, and have such thick Vapours as put out all Lights. Travellers commonly bring away a Limb or a Coffin-Lid for Curiosity. He adds, that they often find large Stone Tables engrav'd with Cyphers and Hieroglyphicks. *Coppin* says, the Sand in the Sides of such Caves as are not walled often falls, and incommodates those that go down. *Gemelli* tells us, there are Holes on the opposite Sides of some of the Pits, into which those that go down put their Feet. They are cut in a soft white Stone, after digging about a Fathom deep in the Sand. They are not all of a Depth, but the shallowest is 42 Foot. There are square Openings at the Bottom, and a Passage of 10 or 15 Foot long that leads into square arch'd Rooms, 15 or 20 Foot each in Length. *Dapper* says, these Pits are larger and more curious than the ancient Catacombs of *Rome*; and that the *Egyptians* say, they have Communication under Ground one with another for several Miles as far as the Oracle of *Ammon* and *Serapis*, so that the Priests could converse together by these Avenues without Annoyance of the Sun or Sand; from whence our Author concludes with others of the Moderns, that the whole Desert is vaulted underneath. He says, most of the

Inhabitants of the Village of *Sakara* maintain themselves by discovering and breaking up the Mummy Pits, and that they have Men on purpose to search in the Sand for Pits, every one within their own Jurisdiction. In some there are Tables cut out of the Rock 5 Foot long, two and a half broad, and one Foot high, on which they set their Dead in Chests or Coffins of Stone, or Sycamore or black Mulberry Tree. In some Pits there are Hieroglyphicks of the Guardian Idols, &c. engrav'd upon the Wall in a stooping Posture, to denote their Affection to the Deceased. There are other neat Coffins upon the Floor like those of Children. Sometimes 25 or 30 of these Pits lie together, but they all came out at one and the same Passage. The Curious may see a Draught of 9 of them together in *Dapper*.

We come now to give an Account of their various Embalmings. *Dapper* thinks it has not been practis'd since 3430, when *Cambyses* banish'd and murder'd their Priests, who alone knew the Art, says *Herodotus*, and were forbid to teach it to the People. *Mr. Greaves* says, they anciently embalmed the Bodies of their Dead, to preserve them from mouldering into Dust, or being burnt to Ashes by Fire. *Herodotus*, *Baruch*, *Plato*, *Antoninus*, and *Lucian*, give it the Term *Taxexeviv*, i. e. to Salt or Powder. *St. Augustin* says, That in his Time the Egyptians call'd the preserv'd Bodies, *Gabbares*. *Herodotus* adds, That when they carried a Body to be embalmed, the Persons appointed to do it shew'd 'em painted Patterns in Wood like the Body, at three or more different Prices, according to the Goodness of the Piece. Then they asked after what Pattern the dead Body must be prepared, which being agreed on, and the Friends of the Deceased gone, they embalmed it thus: First, they drew out the Brains thro' the Nostrils with a crooked Iron, and infus'd Medicaments in their stead. Then with a sharp *Ethiopick* Stone they cut open the Belly, took the Guts out, purg'd them with Palm Wine and another Liquor perfum'd, stuffed the the Belly with Myrrh, Cassia, and other Perfumes, except Frankincense, and then sew'd it up, and powder'd it with Nitre till seventy Days expired, when they wash'd and bound it with Fillets or Ribands, wrapped it in a

Shroud of Silk or Linen, and smear'd it with Gum. Afterwards the Kindred put it in the Coffin, and set it upright in a Nich against the Wall. They gave the poorer Sort a Glyster with the Juice of Cedar thro' the Fundament without cutting up their Bellies, and salted their Bodies the same Number of Days as the others. The last Day they took out the Glyster, which brought away with it the whole Paunch and Intrails. The Nitre consum'd every thing but Skin and Bones. *Plutarch* says, they open'd the Belly, and dry'd it in the Sun; after which they threw the Bowels into the Nile, and filled up the Belly and Hollow of the Breast with Ointments and Perfumes. *Herodotus* adds, that there was a third Method for those of the lowest Rank, whose Bellies were only wash'd and dry'd with Salt 70 Days. *Diodorus Siculus* says, that in the first was spent a Talent of Silver, in the 2d 20 Mine, and in the 3d but very little. He tells us, that before the Body was disbowell'd, there was one called the Scribe who laid it upon the Ground, and marked on the Left Side how much of the Belly was to be cut out; that the Cutter, after he had perform'd his Office, fled away with all the Speed he could, and that the People follow'd him with Stones and Curses; but they esteemed the Embalmers as much as they hated the Butchers, and permitted them to go into their Temples and converse with their Priests. He adds, that they were so curious in their Operations, that every Member of the Body was kept entire, the Shape exactly the same, and the Features so plain, that there was not a Hair lost from the Eye-Brows and Eye-Lids. *Lucian* says, the ancient Egyptians brought the dry'd Bodies of their Friends as Guests to their Entertainments, and that they often pawned their dead Brothers or Fathers for Money. *Diodorus* adds, that if they did not redeem them, they themselves were deny'd Burial, and were kept at Home as well as the Bodies of Criminals, without a Coffin, till their Posterity could pay the Debt, or buy off the Crime. *Mr. Greaves* observes, that this Manner of Embalming was practis'd by *Joseph* upon his Father *Jacob*; that the Bodies of the Deceased were washed and anointed, as particularly those of our Saviour and the Widow *Darcas*; and that the same Custom was in Use

Use amongst the *Gentiles* also, as appears from the Funeral of *Patroclus* mentioned by *Homer*, of *Missenus* the *Trojan* by *Virgil*, and of *Tarquinius* the *Roman* by *Ennius*: But he adds, that the *Gentiles* about our Saviour's Time had a different Way of Embalming from that practis'd by the ancient *Egyptians*, because otherwise *Martha*, the Sister of *Lazarus*, needed not to have feared that his Corps would stink after 4 Days Interriment. By the Way, our Author likewise confutes such as infer from the Funeral of *Asha* King of *Judah*, 2 *Chron.* 6, &c. that the *Jews* us'd also to embalm. He likewise shews the Affinity of *Herodotus's* Tradition with the Scripture Passage relating to this Subject in *Gen.* 50. where he supposes that *Joseph's* Coffin was of Sycomore Wood, because 'twas lightest for the *Israelites* to carry into *Canaan*, whither they travelled on Foot, and without any Sort of Carriages that we read of to attend them: But the *Arabians* and *Persians* say, his Coffin was of Glass.

Dapper says, Mummy is a *Persian* Word, which signifies a dry and incorruptible Body embalmed. Some pretend to derive it from *Cinnamomus*, and others from *Momia*, a vulgar *Arabick* Word for a dead Body. Others say, the Mummies are only the Bodies of such Travellers as have been overwhelmed with Tempests of Sand in the Desert, and dry'd by the Sun and parching Sand till they were reduced to an incorruptible State. *Dapper* says, that such Bodies are sometimes found in the Desert, and sold for Mummies, and *Du Mont* endeavours to prove the Probability of it by a curious Dissertation; but then, says *Dapper*, none but the Bodies which are embalmed with Bitumen and odoriferous Spices, such as those in the Pits under the Desert, deserve that Name. *Johannes Nardius*, who caus'd several Mummies to be broke in Pieces for an Experiment, affirms, that they were embalmed with nothing but Asphalt or Bitumen, a Sort of Pitch found in some Lakes, and especially in the *Dead Sea*, where at certain Times 'tis cast on the Shore. Some ascribe the Vertue rather to the great Quantity of Salt mix'd with it; but *Dapper* says, that tho' this preserves for a while, yet it consumes at last to Dust. *Thevenot* tells us, the Balm, which is now quite lost among them, is black, and shines like Pitch, but has a

better Smell. Among the Figures which are in the Pits, he saw one which he is almost positive was a Representation of the Manner how the ancient *Egyptians* embalmed the Bodies of their Dead. Over one of the Coffins there was a long Table shap'd like a Lion, on the Back of which the Body that is to be embalmed is laid at Length, and hard by was the Figure of a Man in a Vizard-Mask, opening a Corps with a Knife. The Mask was shap'd like the Beak of a Sparrow-Hawk, which he thinks was the Custom for Embalmers; that they might not breathe in the Corruption that should evaporate from the Corpses. On the Table also stood 4 Vessels without Handles, which he supposes contain'd the Drugs us'd in Embalming. *M. Thevenot* had the Fortune to find one Body that was entire. The Face (he says) was cover'd, as all the rest commonly are, with a kind of Head-Piece of Cloth fitted with Plaister, on which the Countenance of the Person is represented in Gold. But if you take it off, you'll find the Face is reduced to Ashes; and he thinks that it won't admit of gumming so well as the other Parts of the Body. Some of the Heads of Mummies may be kept entire, and are cover'd with Fillets of Cloth so neatly fitted, that one may see the Shape of the Face. The rest of the Body was swath'd with little neat Bands of Cloth, so often wrapped about, that there could not be less than 1000 Ells in it. Along the Breast and Belly there was a Band of Cloth 3 large Inches broad, and a large Foot and a half long, fasten'd to the other Bands, and upon it were drawn several Hieroglyphicks done in Gold. He says, they us'd to inclose Idols of Copper, Stone, or Earth. *Dapper* says, that at the Head they us'd to set Images representing Children in Swaddling Clothes, with the Figures of the Tutelar Gods, and at the Foot a Hawk. The Coffins were richly gilt and painted, either with the Figure of the Guardian Deity or that of the Deceased, besides several Hieroglyphicks, viz. the Figures of an Altar, an Owl, a Semi-circle, a Paper Pedigree of the Family, with an Inscription, a Pitcher with one Ear, a Water-Pot, two Pillars divided into 4 Quarters, a Hook, a Balsam Vessel or Urn, a Goose, an *Egyptian* Ship, a Branch of the Reed *Papyrus*, &c. The Women's Coffins were in the Shape

Shape of a Woman dressed in a Cap with Ear-Lappets, and adorned with Fringes and Embroidery. On the Breast were other Fringes in Form of a Net-work Circle, encompassing the Image of a Woman with extended Arms, a Wreath on her Head, and a long Feather or three fold Wing of a Fowl in each Hand. The Body of the Image was so shap'd, that it grew smaller and smaller from the upper Part to the lower, and was cover'd with several fine Veils like Net-work. In the 3 upper Rows stood the Images of the Tutelar Gods, and on each Side 3 with Cords in their Hands. Kircher endeavours to explain the Mysteries hidden under those Hieroglyphicks, for which we refer the Curious to his Book. In the Wrappers within the Coffins are Earthen Images, some as big as a Finger, others as a Foot, put there to defend the Bodies against Evil Spirits, in several Shapes of Men and Women, and other Creatures. They are commonly dressed in Caps with Ear-Lappets, have many fine Winding Clothes on the Breast, hold their Hands across, with a Hawk in the Left, and are commonly cloath'd like the Mummies. They have the same Characters engrav'd round them as the Mummy-Cloths, to this Purpose: *The Spirit of this Body, happy by the Life and Providence of the merciful Deity, shall fly into Heaven by adoring the Staves of Horus.* The Wrappers are anointed with a Mixture of Wax, Pitch, and a Chalky Salve. They painted on them, 1. The Image of the Corps in the most lasting Colours, holding in their Hands Things consecrated to the Worship of their Gods, and the Fruits offer'd up in Sacrifice. Upon the uppermost Coverings are Ribands and Fillets, set with small round Glass Beads of several Colours. The Girdles were powder'd over with Stuff resembling Precious Stones. Their fore Parts were adorn'd with Fringes of Linen. Between the Ribands were engraved Hieroglyphical Emblems of Cœlestial and Terrestrial Creatures, viz. the Sun and Moon, the Bird *Ibis* with a Serpent in his Bill, Lions, &c. The Bodies of Kings and great Men were often put in Urns of an oval Figure, as was that of the Image of *Canopus*, on which they pictur'd a Hawk. Besides, these Urns were painted with several Characters in Columns, viz. a Goose in one Column,

a Serpent in another, and so Scepters, Forks, Hawks Heads with two long Feathers under two square Pictures, a Semi-circle, the Bird *Ibis*, a crooked Staff, another *Ibis* with a Branch, each of which has its Signification; but *Dapper* says, they amount in the main to this; *May Chenosisir, the Protector make the Dead happy by a Cœlestial Influence, and a Divine Liquor of the Spirit: May the Wisdom of the Sun quicken it by his Cœlestial Rays, and may Hermanubis bring it by his Heavenly Influence into the Garden of Osiris.*

In another Column, sometimes we find aloft a Serpent with a Semi circle, an outstretch'd Arm, the Image and Altar of the Guardian Idol, a Cord wreath'd with three Blossoms of the Plant *Lotus*, a Hooded Fowl upon two Scepters, one Scepter a Semi-circle, an Eye, a Bird with extended Wings, a Staff bow'd with a Man's Foot, and the like Emblems, by which *Kircher* says they thought to prevail with the Guardian Idols to restore Life to the Dead, and carry their Bodies to the Cœlestial Spheres. Some Coffins or Urns are painted with Dogs Heads, &c.

Kircher has the Representation of two of their chief Funeral Solemnities in his Book of Mummies, where he describes the Images according to the following Order: *Isis* of *Memphis* with Strings and a Veil on her Head, with extended Arms and open Hands. The Goddess *Nesta* and the God *Anubis* with Arrows and Darts in their Hands. Two other Images of *Anubis* and *Nesta* on their Knees, adorned with Darts and Sicles. The two first seem to be Priests of those two Deities, and to follow them to intercede for the People. A Serpent with his Breast open, and the Top of his Head full of Scales. A Figure with a Man's Face, but the Body of a Serpent, representing the Soul of the World. A Tripod. Two Dogs Couchant as Warders of the sacred Places. Two Bundles of Defensive Arms, with a Caduceus, a Serpent twining round it, and a Ball at the Top. A Bier, supported by two Bars, on which are perch'd two Falcons, cover'd with consecrated Ornaments. The two Biers and Funeral Beds of *Memphtha*, the Guardian of the Nile and of *Anubis*. Under it is the Veil of *Horus*, and the Scepter of *Memphtha*. An Egyptian Vessel, and other Figures representing the Deities, and then the

the Corps. After that an Image with extended Arms, and a Swan which had the Precedency in all Processions at solemn Festivals. The Middle was pourtray'd with several Images, whose Heads resembled that of a Falcon; and the Body that of a Serpent. In the last Place came 7 Beeves, with consecrated Coverings on their Backs, which represented the 7 Days consecrated to the Goddess *Isis*. They fancy'd that during this Festival they were in no Danger of Crocodiles, and that all hurtful Powers were under a Restraint. The Rear is clos'd with several other Images. These Rollers or Girdles contain'd an exact Description of the Funeral Solemnities of the *Egyptians*, the Corps being in the Middle, and their Idols in the Front and Rear.

Some of those Mummies have a Plate of Gold under their Tongue, worth about two *Hungarian* Ducats, for the Sake of which the covetous *Arabs* and others break all the Mummies they find entire, but frequently miss their Booties. Those who have given the most exact Descriptions of the Mummies are, *Kircher* in his Book of the Sacred Characters of the *Egyptians*, *Nardius* in his Commentary on *Lucretius*, and *Peter de la Val*. The latter saw many of them himself, and gives us the following Description of some of 'em, which may serve for understanding the rest. In a great Linen Cloth laid over the Body of a Mummy, there was the Figure of a young Man in a long Robe of fine Linen, according to the *Egyptian* Fashion, all gilt, and full of Hieroglyphical Emblems from Head to Foot. The Head was cover'd with Gold and Precious Stones, and had black frizled Hair. The Beard was the like, but the Hair short. He had a Gold Chain about his Neck, and a Medal on his Breast, engraven with the Picture of the Bird *Ibis*, and other Characters, by which it was supposed this young Man had been in a considerable Post, because that Sort of Chains and Medals was worn by Governors. He had a Gold Basin in his Right Hand full of Red Liquor, and in his Left one of those Apples call'd *Mala Insana*, or *Malacatoons*, and a Gold Ring on his Thumb and little Finger. He had Sandals on his Feet, and at his Girdle a Piller, with the Word *ΕΥΝΧΕΣ* upon it in *Egyptian* Characters. By his

Side there lay a Woman, suppos'd to be his Wife or Sister, more richly adorn'd than himself; and besides abundance of Emblems and Hieroglyphicks, there were two Birds and two Lions engraven Back to Back on Plates of Gold, and a little lower a Beeve, suppos'd to be the Image of *Apis* or *Isis*. She had another Plate on her Breast engraven with the Sun, and at her Ears Pendants of Precious Stones, with Bracelets on her Legs and Arms, and her Fingers full of Rings. In her Right Hand she had a Golden Cup, and in the Left a Ring, with a Packet of other Ornaments. Her Hair was black and curl'd, but not of such a deep Black as the young Man's. Her Eye-Brows were brown, and her Eyes black. *Coppin* says, the *Venetians* esteem those Mummies so much, that they allow their Consul at *Cairo* a considerable Sum to go to the Place where they are, and get what he can.

Herodotus says of the ancient *Egyptians*, That when any Man of Quality died, all the Women of his Family besmear'd their Heads and Faces with Dirt, went about the City with their Kindred lamenting, with their Clothes girt about them, and their Breasts naked. Their Male Relations did the like, and beat themselves. Then they carried the Body to be embalmed. *Diodorus* says, they abstained during the Time of the Mourning from Baths, Wine, delicious Food, and costly Apparel. The usual Time of their Mourning was for 70 Days. *Baumgarten* says, they bury for most part in Vaults built on purpose at the Top of their Houses.

We shall conclude this Subject with an Account of their Lamps. *Dapper* says, there are still found in these Sepulchres burning Lamps made of flak'd Chalk, in the Form of all Animals, which have from one to 12 Wicks apiece, and burn continually, if we may believe the *Arabians* and other Naturalists. Many Authors think that the Ancients had the Secret of making perpetual Fire, which they endeavour to prove from several burning Lamps found in these latter Ages in *Europe* and elsewhere. The Learned are not agreed about it, for some do absolutely deny it, and say, that whatever changes into Vapour and Smoak, cannot

not last always. But those who maintain the contrary say, there are Things which feed a Flame and are not consum'd, as the Stone called *Asbestos* and *Auion*, i. e. Inextinguishable and Incorruptible, and a Sort of *Aurum potabile*, with which they think those Lamps were fed; but *Dapper* says, none of them have yet been able to produce an Instance of any of those Lamps with such Wicks. 'Tis true, adds he, that nothing is more proper to form such a Lamp than those Stones, which all Naturalists agree are incorruptible, and that the Oil extracted from them cannot be consum'd. *Kircher* says, that he had a Wick of *Asbestos* in his Lamp which burnt two Years without any sensible Diminution; but the Difficulty is how to extract the Oil of *Asbestos*, which many Chymists have attempted, but lost both their Labour and Money; for what they extracted from it was either too thick or too thin, and could never be brought to take Fire. As to the Instances alledged from several famous Authors of these perpetual Lamps found out by the Ancients, 'tis answer'd, that 'twas the meer Effect of Nature; for Air shut up, contracts by Length of Time and the Mixture of gross Bodies which evaporate, a certain Degree of Thickness and Consistency; so that when fresh Air enters, it easily takes Fire by an Antiperistasis or Opposition of contrary Qualities, as Water in Cisterns becomes warm in Winter by the Cold which then presses it on all Sides; and from hence also proceed those Meteors which are seen in Church-Yards and Marshes, occasioned by gross Exhalations. There are, continues he, in *Egypt* many Veins of Bitumen and Oil of Stone, which the *Egyptians* observing, they drew subterranean Canals from those Veins to their Sepulchres, and placing a Lamp at the End of the Canal with an unextinguishable Wick, which had a Communication with that Canal, it necessarily follow'd that the Lamp could not die of it self so long as the Matter by which it was fed lasted: And this is the Opinion of a certain *Arabian* Author call'd *Chianga*, in his History of the memorable Things of *Egypt*.

Their GEOGRAPHY.

LOWER EGYPT,

CALL'd by the Latins *Oden*, by the Greeks *Delta*, and by the present Inhabitants *Er-rif*, takes in the N. Part of the Country about the Mouths of the *Nile*. *Sanfon* divides it into 4 *Cassiliffs* or Provinces, viz. *Garbia*, *Menoufia*, *Callioubek*, and *Mansoura*. He places the three first between the Branches of the *Nile*, which saves them from the Excursions of the *Arabs*. They are reckon'd the best in *Egypt*, especially *Garbia*, which abounds in Sugar, Rice, Milk, Corn, Oil, Flax, Herbs, Honey, Hay, &c. *Mansoura* is larger, yields the same Commodities, but not in such Plenty, yet 'tis noted for Cassia. He places it on the E. Side of the *Nile*, towards the *Holy Land* and *Arabia*. *Dapper* says, *Garbia* is a flat Country, and abounds in Tillage and good Pasturage on the Island of *Damiata*; that *Manoufia* in the same Island is larger, but contains only 103 Villages; that *Callioubek*, where he places *Cairo*, contains 196 Villages, and *Mansoura* the same Number.

Lower Egypt is bounded on the N. with the *Mediterranean*, on the E. with the *Holy Land* and *Arabia Petraea*, on the S. E. with the *Red Sea*, on the S. with *Middle Egypt*, and on the W. with the Kingdom of *Barca*. They extend it from Lat. $29\frac{1}{2}$. to Lat. $31\frac{1}{2}$. *Coppin* says, 'tis 120 Miles in Length between the two outermost Canals of the *Nile*, viz. on the N. Side of the ancient *Delta*, and 300 M. in Compass. He adds, that the Country on the E. Side of the *Nile* is more delightful, and has better Villages than that on the W.

The Places of most Note are, 1. *Mansoura*, *Masura*, or *Mansur*, a Town which probably gives Name to the most E. Province of *Lower Egypt*. The *Sanfons* place it Long. 63. 14. Lat. 30. 52. about 17 Miles S. of *Damiata*, and on the *Arabian* Side of the E. Branch of the *Nile*. *Moll* agrees in the Lat. but makes the Long. above 10 Degrees less. *Dapper* makes the Long. 55. 8. Lat. 29. 54. and places it not quite two German Miles

Miles S. W. of *Damiata*. — *Monconys* says, the Houses are all of Earth, but look very handsome. The Rooms are square, and the Roofs adorned by several Domes, with Holes like Pigeon-Houses. *Thevenot* says, 'tis a neat long Town. *Dapper* says, the Inhabitants call the Branch of the *Nile* upon which it lies *Batsequer*, and that *Lewis IX.* or (as others call him) *St. Lewis of France*, was taken Prisoner here in a Battle against the Soldan of *Egypt*. *Ogilby* says, 'twas formerly call'd *Miscormus*.

2. *Simenut*, or *Sammenud*. *Thevenot* says, the Town is ancient and ruinous. *Le Bruyn*, that 'tis pretty large, lies in the Form of a Triangle on the W. Side of the River, and that all Vessels bound to *Cairo* are obliged to stop here, and pay a Duty.

3. *Damiata*, or *Damiette*. *Sanfon* places it in an Island form'd by the *Nile* at the Mouth of the most E. Branch, in Lat. 31. 8. Long. 63. 27. about 100 Miles N. E. of *Cairo*. *Dapper* places it in Long. 55 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 29 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Thevenot* says, it lies two Miles up the River. 'Tis a handsome, well built, long Town, and anciently call'd *Pelusium*. The Streets are dirty, yet 'tis very populous, and one of the chief Cities of *Egypt*. All Persons that arrive at the Port are strictly searched at the Custom-House, and pay 2 s. 6 d. per Head. There's nothing remarkable besides some Mosques with fine Towers. Without the City are the Ruins of a Light-House, and near it a round Tower. They have Provisions in great Plenty, and round the Town abundance of good Pasture, which feeds great Numbers of Cattle; but Foreign Commodities are very dear. They have a great deal of Rice, which they export to *Turkey*. They traffick also in Coffee, Linen Cloth, and fine Stuffs of their own Manufacture. The City is govern'd by an Aga sent thither by the Basha of *Cairo*. Our Author says, he saw a Druggist there who was 60 Years old, that was born in a Vault after his Mother was interred, and that the same Vault is still the Burying-place of the Family. *Monconys* says, the *Nile* comes up to it. Rains are very frequent here. *Coppin* says, it lies 5 Miles from the Coast, and resembles *Vienne* in *Dauphiné*. There's a Greek Bishop and Church here. Their Houses are built and cover'd with Brick, genteeler within than without, well white-

wash'd, and the Cielings very handsome. Their Window shuts open at the lower End, and they have a Way to push 'em outward as high as they will; so that tho' they are open, the Sun cannot enter the Room. There's one principal Street the whole Length of the Town along the River, and at each End there's a Landing-place for Boats without the Gates. The Aga's and others have many fine Houses, but not regular, and the Streets are for most Part of an unequal Breadth, and lie very confus'd. They have several Inns. The Town is encompassed with Walls, except on the River Side; but they are broke down in many Places, and the Breaches filled up with Pieces of Wood. On the Outside there's a narrow Ditch. 'Tis the richest Town in *Egypt* next to *Cairo*, and has a better Air than either it or *Alexandria*. At the End next the Sea there's a great square Tower, and at the other an old Cavalier of Earth, but neither of them mounted with Guns. It might easily be well fortified, since the River lies on one Side, and there's no Place in the Neighbourhood to command it. Tho' the Town has been frequently sack'd, 'tis populous enough for its Size, and contains about 25000 People, besides those in a Village on the other Side the River, who are all Mariners. About two Thirds of the Inhabitants are *Mahometans*, and there are many Strangers of all Religions. The Natives are branded with Covetousness, Perfidiousness, and Obstinacy, and have a worse Character than those of any Town in *Syria* or *Egypt*. Part of them are Mechanicks, some of them make Cloths strip'd with various Colours, others are Merchants, and several of them very rich. One of them call'd *Arnakou*, when *Coppin* was Consul here for the *English* and *French*, and Syndic for the Fathers Observants of the *Holy Land* in 1644, had at least 80 Domesticks, the chief of whom were clad with Velvet or Scarlet Cloth in Winter, and Sattin in Summer. The Governor, tho' the 2d in *Egypt*, is only an Aga, and has generally 600 Men in Arms belonging to him. Our Author complains of very barbarous Treatments he met with, notwithstanding his publick Characters, by Means of a villanous Jew who farm'd the Customs. The neighbouring Country is full of Gardens and Rice Fields.

so that they abound with Provisions. They have noble Plantations and Walks of those they call *Adam's Fig Trees*. They grow straight, 6 or 7 Foot high, without Branches. They carry all their Leaves on the Top, which are shap'd like the Point of a Halbard, 4 or 5 Foot long, and a Foot broad. The Stalk is green, as thick as one's Leg, and consists of several Barks one upon another, like the Coats of Onions. The Figs grow all in one Cluster: They are 6 or 8 Inches long, very large, and all of a Size, but not so good as ours. They have also Inclosures planted with Tamarind, Citron, and Cassia Trees. About 3 Miles from the Town, there's a large Pond much frequented by Birds call'd *Flamans*, as large as Pullets, their Bodies grey, and their Wings of a fine Carnation Colour. There are other Birds here all white, bigger than Swans, and their Bills so monstrous big, that they make use of the upper Side instead of a Scoop to throw the Water out of their Boats. Their Skins are dressed and used instead of Furs. They have Fish very cheap here; among others, one called *Meuge*, taken on the Coast: It abounds with Eggs, which they dry and eat with Oil and Pepper. This is a mighty Dish among the *Greeks*, who call it *Potargue*. They use tame Pigeons here to bring them Advice of the Arrival of Ships at *Bogas*, which lies at the Mouth of the River, they take them from their young ones, carry them to the Place whence they would have Intelligence, and put them in a Cage. Then they write the Advice in a Paper, which they fasten under their Wings; and when they return to their Young, take it off. They never keep them from their Young above a certain Time, and when that's expir'd, let them fly whether they have any Advice or no. They come so quick from *Bogas*, that the Farmer of the Customs has Advice of the Arrival of a Ship before she can cast Anchor in the Harbour; and *Coppin* says, they fly betwixt *Alexandria* and *Aleppo* in 6 Hours, tho' it be 3 great Days Journey. When *Thevenot* was here, there were some Guns mounted on the square Tower. He says, the Water of the *Nile* keeps its Colour a Mile out at Sea, but 'tis so shoally, that loaden Vessels can't enter but during the Inundation, so that they unload them with a Sort of Lighters till they pass

the Shoal. It lies in Form of a Crescent along the River, and next to *Cairo* is the pleasantest Town in *Egypt*. *Dapper* says, that the neighbouring Fields are the fruit-fullest of all *Egypt*, being water'd in the dry Season by Canals from the *Nile*. In those Canals there grows a Weed that moves to and fro upon the Water as what we call Ducks Meat. It has no Root or Stalk, but only small Strings and Threads. 'Tis supposed to be the true *Stratiotes Milfoyl* or Soldiers Herb of the Ancients. The Leaves resemble those of House-Leek, are us'd for the same Distempers we use Mallows. The Juice or Powder of 'em cures immoderate Fluxes of Blood in Women, and the Men stamp 'em to cure Wounds. *Thevenot* mentions several other Sorts of Figs, besides *Adam's*, that are very delicious. The Plantation and Walks mentioned by *Coppin*, he says, is one of the finest Woods in the World, lies betwixt the Town and the Sea, is divided into several Parterres like Gardens by the Proprietors, and mix'd with all Sorts of Trees, amongst which are Pomegranates, Oranges, the common Fruit-Trees of *Europe*, and Sugar-Canes; but the Palm-Trees are most numerous, and the Proprietors Shares are divided by Canals. The Pond above-mentioned he calls the *Dead Sea*, says it abounds with Cods and Eels, and that in the Canals and River there are many Pelicans, Eagles, and other Sorts of Birds, that can't be number'd, most of them very good Meat. *Thevenot* says, there are vast Numbers of Dove-Houses built of Earth, with a peaked Roof, and furnished in the Inside with a Sort of Pots where Pigeons build their Nests. *Monconys* says, that the *Nile* flows here sometimes twice a Day, at other Times the Flood lasts a whole Day, and at other Times is 6 Weeks before it rises. *Nicetas* takes it for the *Tamiathim* of the Ancients, and others for the *Tamiatis* of *Stephanus*. *Guilandinus* says, that 'tis the *Tanis* mentioned in the Scripture. But *Bochart* and other learned Men say, *Tanis*, the then famous Town, which gave Name to the *Ostium Taniticum*, was the modern *Tenez*. Some will have it that 'tis the *Pelusium* and *Heliopolis* of the Ancients both together; but all Geographers agree, that *Pelusium* was situate near the *Mediterranean*, and *Heliopolis* 100 Leagues within Land. *Dapper* says, it

lies in a low Plain; that 'tis water'd on both Sides by the Nile; and that the Tide is brought into the Town by several Canals. He adds, that near *Tenes* or *Tenex* on the E. which is taken for the *Tanis* of the Scripture in the Land of *Goshen*, there's a Lake which Mariners call *Stagnone* or *Barathra*, and the Inhabitants *Bayrene*, others the Gulph of *Damietta* and *Memte*, and some *Macra*. One of the Canals of the Nile enters it on the E. Side, but 'tis very dangerous, because of the Shelves, some of which appear above Water.

3. *Faramide*, *Faranuda*, or *Faramica*. The *Sansons* place it almost 50 Miles E. of *Damietta*. *Dapper* says, 'tis the ancient *Rhinocorura*, which *Strabo* placed on the Frontiers of *Egypt* and *Syria*. *Burchard* calls it *Farme*, and says, 'twas once a very large, well built Town, but the Inhabitants deserted it, because 'twas infested by a Multitude of Serpents.

4. *Bourles*, which the *Sansons* place in Lat. 31. 15. upon a Gulph of the same Name. *Ogilby* says, 'twas anciently known by the Name of *Pineptimi*, and *Ptolemy* takes it for one of the Mouths of the Nile. *Dapper* says, 'tis enclos'd like a Haven, and receives the Water which comes out of the E. Branch of the Nile.

5. *Fuoa*, or *Phua*, on the Banks of the Nile. *Moll* places it Lat 30. 8. and 30 Miles S. E. of *Rossetto*, at the Mouth of the River. The *Sansons* make the Distance 48, and *Leo* but 40 Miles. *Coppin* says, 'tis no more than 12 French Leagues. *Baumgarten* tells us, when he was here 'twas very populous. The Neighbourhood abounds with Pomegranate, Date, and other Fruit-Trees; among which there's a vast Number of Houses and arch'd Egyptian Monuments. *Leo* says, there's an Island in the Nile over against the Town call'd the *Golden Island*, which produces all Sorts of Fruit except Olives; and that there's a Plain in the Neighbourhood full of Sugar-Canes, which, instead of Sugar, yield a Sort of Honey of the Consistency of Soap, which is us'd all over *Egypt*. The Women here have the Liberty to range abroad all Day, provided they return at Night. *Dapper* says, the Town was formerly call'd *Nici*. The Streets are straight, and it has large Suburbs, whither the Ladies of Pleasure chuse to retire in the Day-time. He places the

Golden Island a League above *Fuoa*, and says, 'twas formerly called the Isle of *Nathos*, and now *Gezirat-Eddeheb*. He adds, that it contains many Villages and stately Palaces, which cannot be seen at a Distance because of the thick Forrests.

6. *Derote*, *Derota*, or *Deretto*. *Dapper* places it near the *Golden Island* to the S. W. *Leo* says, 'tis noted for Sugar, and the Inhabitants are so rich, that they pay 200 Gold *Saraffis* a Day to the Men that boil and prepare it, and 100000 a Year to the Soldan for Liberty to refine it. There's one very pretty Church here, and a great House like a Castle, where the Sugar is boil'd and refin'd; but *Dapper* says, the Town is now decay'd, and the Inhabitants become poor. He adds, that *Mechelle* or *Mequella* is situate on the Banks of the Nile, very populous, but ill fortified, and encompassed with sorry Walls.

7. *Rossetto*, *Rossettum*, *Rossetta*, *Raschit*, or *Rasid*. *Moll* places it Lat. 30. 10. above 20 Miles N. E. of *Alexandria*; the *Sansons* in Lat. 31. 7. and 40 Miles from *Alexandria*; but *Thevenot* makes it 60 short Miles. *Leo* places it on the E. Bank of the Nile, and says, 'twas built by a Slave of one of the Mahometan Patriarchs that govern'd *Egypt*, and is famous for hot and cold Baths and Springs. According to *Sandys*, it stands upon the chief W. Branch of the Nile, formerly nam'd *Canopicum*, which runs into the Sea about 3 Miles lower. There's a Bar of Sand across the Entrance, which shifts according to the Winds and Surges, so that they pass over it in round flat-bottom'd Boats without Keels. A Pilot of the Town keeps sounding there all Day, by whose Direction they enter. From hence the Boats may go up as far as *Cairo* with Directions. Our Author supposes the Egyptian Name of *Rasid* is deriv'd from *Roos*, a Turkish Word for Rice, because the adjacent Country abounds with it. The Houses of the Town are all of Board, and have flat Roofs, where the Moors frequently sleep, and which jet over like the Poop of a Ship to shade the Streets. The Town is pretty big, and is extream well furnish'd with Corn, Flesh, Fish, Sugar, Roots, Fruits, &c. but has no manner of Fortification. They vend a great many raw Hides to Italy. The Arm of the Nile is about as broad here as the *Thames* at *Tilbury*

bury Fort. The Town lies S. and N. and has several Churches with lofty Spires and Turrets. *Thevenot* says, That when the Sea is rough at this Mouth of the *Nile*, which is 5 Miles below the Town, it occasions an Eddy with the Waters of the River, which turns Vessels round, and casts them ashore, by which many People are drown'd. 'Tis reckon'd the neatest Town of *Egypt* for its lovely Piazza's and Hans, and they are daily building more. 'Tis a Place of great Traffick, very pleasant, and encompassed with curious Gardens. The Houses are high and well built, and Victuals are plentiful, especially Water-Fowl; but in *July* and *August* the Sea so mixes with the *Nile*, that they have no fresh Water but what they catch in Cisterns. 'Tis govern'd by a Sous-Basha, and 60 Men patrol in the Night, because of the *Arabs* that come out of the Deserts to rob, &c. He says they strip stark naked, and anoint their Bodies with Oil, that they may slip thro' the Hands of those that catch them; and if close pursued, swim to the other Side of the River. Boats go from hence to *Cairo* every *Tuesday* and *Friday*, and there's a Palm-Tree and 11 Pillars fix'd in the Ground betwixt this Town and the Sea, at some Hundred Paces distant from one another, to mark the Way, because 'tis a Desert. *Coppin* says, the Houses on the River Side are for most Part of Brick. The Town is not large, has a single Wall, but no Ditches. 'Tis encompassed with Gardens on three Sides, and on the other with an Arm of the *Nile*. At the Time of the Inundation, Gallies come up easily to the Town. The *French* have a Vice-Consul here, who lives in a vast Structure like a Cloyster, with a great Gate and Court, encompassed with Warehouses and Galleries that lead into the Merchants Chambers. They have abundance of Citron Trees in their Gardens, and sell vast Quantities of the Liquor of that and other Fruits to Foreign Merchants; but if they are not watch'd, they commonly dash it with Water. *Monconys* says, the *Nile* here is a Mile broad, and almost even with the Bank, and that there are a great many Bananas, Sugar-Canes, Dates, and Orange Trees, in the Neighbourhood. The Inhabitants drive a great Trade in Flax. The Streets are small, but populous, and the Magistrates are not

so strict as at *Alexandria*. The Mouth of the *Nile* is but three quarters of a League from the Town, and is guarded by a little Castle within Cannon-shot, built of square Free-stone, with a round Tower at each Corner, and a Donjon or square Tower of the like within, but without any Defence or Ditch, and on the other Side of the *Nile* there's another. *Gemelli* says, this Town was formerly the Residence of *Cleopatra*, and that now it has no Wall. He supposes it contains about 80000 Souls. 'Tis almost of a round Figure, and is 6 Miles in Circumference. They have Cassia Trees in the Neighbourhood, but planted without any Order, as are all their Gardens. They have a pleasanter Bazar than that of *Alexandria*, and this and the best Houses are all cover'd with Vines. He adds, that there's 100 Villages along the Banks of the *Nile* from hence to *Grand Cairo*, which *Dapper* says is 300 Miles, wherein he seems to have erred much, because *Mol* and the *Sansons* make it but 90. Some take this Town for *Strabo's Schedia*, and others for *Ptolomy's Metelis*. The chief Structures are gilded and finely painted within. There are several stately Palaces on the Banks of the *Nile*, and a Terrass-Walk, where live all Sorts of Artizans and Merchants. There's a fine Church, with a Gate towards the Terrass, and another towards the *Nile*, from which there's a Descent by a fine Stair-Case to the Harbour, where the Vessels come up loaden almost to the Houses. There's a Suburb without the Town where they keep Asses and Mules to be hir'd for *Alexandria*. *Thevenot* gives the following Account how they make Sorbet here: They put 150 Rottees of Sugar, broken into small Pieces, in a Kettle over a Fire, with a little Water to dissolve it. When 'tis ready to boil, they skim it, and put in 5 or 6 Quarts more of Water to make the Scum rise better. They put it in by Spoonfuls, and wet the Sides of the Kettle to cool it. Half an Hour after they beat a Dozen Whites of Eggs in 4 or 5 Quarts of Water, and put the whole into the Kettle at 4 or 5 times, and then they skim it again; after which they strain it thro' a Cloth. Then they divide the Liquor into 3 Parts, and put one after another into the Kettle; and when the Sugar is like to boil over, they throw in two or three Egg-shells full of Milk to make

make it settle. After it has boil'd enough, they take it off. It looks then very yellow, and two Men stir it with Wooden Peels till it become thicker and whiter as it grows cold. Then they put in two Glasses of Lemon-Juice boil'd; after which they stir it again, and then put in about two Spoonfuls of Rose-Water, into which some Musk or Ambergreece has been dissolved. They stir it again till it become a Past, and then put it up in Pots. They fill 29 of them, and pour in a Bottle of Rose-Water and Musk, which cost a Crown. Sometimes they put in Syrrup of Violets after the Lemon-Juice, to make it of that Colour. They pound Violets with Sugar, and clarify it. They make Lemon-Juice by pressing a great many Lemons, and boiling a Kettle full of Juice, till it be reduced to 6 or 7 Quarts. In the mean time they burn above a Hundred Weight of Wood, and cannot boil above two Kettle-fulls a Day, or about 10 or 12 Quarts. 'Tis of a blackish red Colour, sharp and bitter.

8. *Alexandria*. Moll places it Lat. 30. 11. Long. 50. 12. 90 Miles N. W. of *Cairo*; the *Sansons* in Lat. 31. Long. 61 $\frac{1}{2}$ and about 100 Miles from *Cairo*. It lies on the Bank of the *Mediterranean*, was founded upon a Promontory, and formerly a large, strong, and beautiful City, says *Leo*. The Foundations of it were delineated, says *Buno*, by *Democritus*, a Mathematician, with so much Art, that it excelled all the Towns of *Africa* in the Structure of Streets and Places. It was in the most early Times called *No* by the *Hebrews*; and afterwards *Leontopolis*, says *Curcius*, because of *Philip's* Dream, that he saw the Womb of *Alexander's* Mother seal'd up by a Seal impress'd with a Lion. *Cleopatra* is said to have join'd the Town to the Island *Pharus* by a Bridge. It had such a sumptuous Temple of *Serapis*, that (according to *Marcellinus*) it was the noblest Structure in the World next to the *Roman Capitol*. It was very famous for *Ptolomy's* Library already mentioned, for a School, and many learned Men, particularly *Clemens Alexandrinus* the Author of the *Stromata*, *Achanasius*, *Origen*, *Ambrose* the Deacon, who maintain'd *Origen*; *Cyrillus*, *Didymus Cacus*, Master to *St. Jerome*; *Philo-Judæus*, *Appion* the Grammarian, the great Enemy to the *Jews*; *Appianus*, who wrote the *Roman Wars*

in *Greek*; *Didymus* the Grammarian, who liv'd in *Cicero's* Time, and is said by *Suidas* to have 3500 Volumes; *Achilles Statius*, *Theon*, who commented on *Ptolomy's Alma-gest*; *Claudius Ptolomy*, the Author of it, and also of 8 Books of Geography; *Macharius* the Monk, whose Homilies are extant; *Nennus Panopolitanus*, and *Paphnutius* the Bishop, who wrote in Defence of Priests Marriage. *Leo* says, most of the ancient City is in Ruins, as the whole lay a great while after it became subject to the *Mahometans*, till one of their crafty Patriarchs possessed the Mob with an Opinion, that *Mahomet* had promised Indulgences to such as would promote the Interest of that City, which occasion'd it to be crowded by Strangers from all Parts, who adorn'd it with Houses, Colleges, and Monasteries, for the Relief of Pilgrims. *Leo* says, it has four Gates, one of which next the Sea is always guarded by Searchers, who demand Custom for Goods, Money, and every Thing. He adds, that it has two Havens, one call'd, *The Port of the Castle*, because of an impregnable Fortress upon the Key of it, where the *European* Ships ride; and another call'd, *The Port of the Chain*, where the *Barbary* Ships lie. The *Mahometans* pay 20, and the *Jews* 10 per Cent. for all Goods imported or exported, except such as go over Land to *Cairo*, which pay nothing. The only Part inhabited now is that next the Haven, and that which faces *Cairo*, for it was laid desolate by the King of *Cyprus*, till dislodg'd by the Sultan. There are several Earthen Vessels of great Antiquity here upon a high Mount, form'd like the *Testaceo* at *Rome*. On the Top of this there's a Turret, where one gives Notice of the Arrival of Ships. Without the City there's a large Sluice, which lets in the Water of the *Nile* when it overflows, and conveys it to large Cisterns under the Houses, where it corrupts and breeds many Diseases in the Summer. In the Neighbourhood there were several small Gardens, but their Fruit unwholesome. The Ground is sandy and unfit for Gardens, Vines or Corn, so that this City is supplied with the latter from Places 40 Miles distant. Several Christian Merchants and Mechanics inhabit Part of the Town, and have a Church of their own, where they pretend to have had the Body of *St. Mark*, till the

Venetians got it from 'em. These Christians are called *Jacobites*, and pay Tribute to the Governor of *Cairo*. *Marmol* says, That on the Peer betwixt the Harbours, *Cesar* had a sharp Engagement with the Inhabitants, and being overpower'd, leap'd into a Boat, which beginning to sink, he swam 200 Paces, holding up his Writing-Tables in one Hand to prevent their being wet. On the Point of this Peer *Ptolomy Philadelphus* erected a Light-House. They have a Stone in the City about 4 Spans in Diameter, painted like a Jasper, with a Hole in the Middle, on which they pretend *St. Mark* was beheaded. It was on his Account that a Patriarchate came to be erected here, which occasioned such a Confluence of Confessors, Hermits, &c. as outnumber'd the rest of the Inhabitants. It was in this City that their Patriarch *Jacob* gave Rise to the Heresy of the *Jacobites*, who circumcised themselves. *Alexandria* formerly supplied *Europe* with the Spices and other rich Commodities of *India* and *Arabia Felix*; but after the *Portuguese* discover'd the Way to the *Indies* by the Cape of Good Hope, its Trade decayed. The Grand Seignior keeps a Garrison and some Gallies here for the Security of the Coast. *Sandys* says, the City is all built upon Vaults, supported by carv'd Pillars, and lin'd with Stone. In his Time it was very ruinous, but the Walls standing, which were said to have been built by *Ptolomy*, and adorned with 68 Turrets. It suffered much by the *Cypriots*, *French*, and *Venetians*, during the Holy War. Several high Hills are made of the Ruins of its ancient Structures, but no Christian is suffer'd to ascend them, lest they should take an exact Survey of the Town. Among these Ruins are frequently found, especially after a Shower of Rain, rich Stones and Medals, engraved with the Figure of their Gods and Men to the Life, so as they exceed all modern Performances of that Kind. There's an hieroglyphical Obelisk here of *Theban* Marble speckled, and almost as hard as *Porphyry*, but of a deeper Red. They call it *Pharaoh's Needle*: It stands where the Palace of *Alexandria* formerly stood. There's another near it half buried in Rubbish. The *Greeks* have a Patriarch here as well as the *Jacobites*. In *Sandys's* Time the *Greek* Patriarch was a great Friend to the Protestants. He was a Man

of Piety and Learning, and us'd to say, the Differences betwixt the *Greeks* and *Protestants* were but Shells, whereas those betwixt the *Greeks* and *Papists* were Kernels. The Port being free, is inhabited by *Moors*, *Turks*, *Jews*, *Cophti's*, and *Grecians*, rather for the Sake of Trade than Conveniency, being seated on a Desert, where there's no Tillage or Pasturage, except a little on the Lake. They have Store of Goats with very long Ears, that feed among the Ruins. *Thevenot* says, the *Turks* call it *Skenderia*. The *English*, *Dutch*, *Venetians*, and other *Europeans*, have great Houses call'd *Fondicks* without Rent, and they are kept in Repair at the Grand Seignior's Charge. They are shut up every Evening, and the Keys carried to the Aga of the Castle, who returns them in the Morning. They are also locked up every Friday at the Time of Noon Prayer, because they have a Prophecy, that the *Franks* will become Masters of them on a Friday about that Time. The Buildings towards the Shore are not ancient, and being low and ill contriv'd, appear plain to have been built by the *Turks*. *Thevenot* says, this Town has 3 Ports; 1. The Old Harbour, which is pretty large, but not much frequented, because the Entrance is difficult. The other two Ports are higher up, separated by a little Island, anciently call'd the *Pharos*, of which hereafter. One of the finest Things to be seen here is the Walls, which, tho' ruin'd, are still so magnificent, that they seem to have been matchless. A great Part of them is still entire, so that they must needs have been strong built to last so long. They have false Brays, and are flank'd with great square Towers about 200 Paces from one another, and a little one betwixt them. They have stately Casemates underneath, which may serve for Galleries and Walks. In each Tower below there's a large square Hall, the Vault of which is supported by great Pillars of *Theban* Stone. There are a great many Chambers above, and over all a large Platform above 20 Paces square. He adds, that these Towers were all Palaces, capable of accommodating 200 Men apiece, and in every one of them several Cisterns, so that each of them required an Army to take them. The Walls are several Foot thick, and abound with Port-holes. *Thevenot* says, the Cisterns under the Town are very

very magnificent and spacious, so that he was assur'd that there were fair Streets under the Town betwixt the Rows of Cisterns, where Shops are still to be seen; but the *Turks* suffer no body to go down to them, except some of themselves. The Inhabitants have Wheels with Ropes, and Earthen Pots fasten'd to 'em, by which they draw up the Water, and pour it into their private Cisterns in *August* and *September*. The new Water, he says, is unwholesome, therefore several keep the last Year's Water till *November*. The Air here is so bad during *July*, *August*, *September*, and *October*, that many who lie then upon the Ground catch *Quartan Agues*, which sometimes hold them several Years. He says, that about the Gate of *Rossetto* there are many lovely Pillars of *Porphyry*; and that at the *Greek Church* of *St. Catherine*, they shew a Stone on which they pretend that *Virgin* had her Head cut off. 'Tis like a Piece of round Pillar, almost two Foot high, and has a Hole as big as one's Fist quite through from one End to the other, which the *Greeks*, says our Author, have stain'd with Blood, to give a Sanction to their Legend. This Stone rests upon a Marble Pillar about 4 Foot high, which the *Greeks* have erected on purpose. In *St. Mark's Church* belonging to the *Coph-ti's*, they pretend to shew the Pulpit where he us'd to preach, and *St. Michael's Picture* drawn by *St. Luke*. *Thevenot* says, that 'tis 150 Miles from hence to *Cairo*, and 400 to *Candy*. He gives the following Account of the People call'd *Hhouames* that sculk up and down the City: They are a Sort of Vagabonds among the *Arabs*, lodge as they do in Tents, but have a particular Law, perform their Worship every Night in the Dark, and then lie with the first Woman they meet; but if taken in the Fact, are burn'd alive. Our Author says, it cost him two Hours to walk round the City, which lies from E. to W. but is very narrow. *Monconys* says, the Walls of the Town are double like those of *Rome*, were built by *Belisarius*, and that it stands in Form of a Crescent in a low Soil. *Du Mont* says, the Walls are 20 Foot thick, but not above 10 Miles in Compass, tho' they were anciently 25. Many Authors say, the ancient *Alexandrians* were ingenious, but Tricksters, Railers, and full of Mischief. *Du Mont*

says, the Moderns have the same ill Qualities, but not their Ingenuity. The Streets are not pav'd, and because of the Dust, often water'd. *Lucas* says, it contains about 800 or 1000 Houses.

There's a Column without the Town call'd *Pompey's Pillar*, under which they say his Head lies, and that *Cæsar* erected it as a Monument of his Victory. *Baumgarten* says, 'tis 60 Cubits high. *Gemelli* tells us it stands on a high Ground, is one entire Piece of red Marble or Granate, except the Capital, Pedestal, and Base, which are carv'd with Hieroglyphicks. *Gemelli* makes the Height 100 Foot, the Circumference 25, and that of the Base and Pedestal 85. Yet in his Cut he makes it but 100 Spans high. Some say 'tis four times as big as that of the *Rotonda* at *Rome*. *Thevenot* informs us, that it stands about 200 Paces from the Town, upon a square Pedestal near 12 Foot high, that rests upon a square Basis about 20 Foot broad, and two Foot high, made up of several big Stones. He says, the Pillar it self is of the *Corinthian Order*, 75 Foot high, 8 Foot in Diameter, and that 6 Men can scarce fathom it. It has a lovely Capital. The Stones are greyish, speckled, and extraordinary hard, and the Surface of 'em seems to be cover'd with little Grains. *Du Mont* says, 'tis 80 Foot high, besides the Basis, Pedestal, or Capital, and 24 or 25 Foot in Circumference. He makes the Pedestal 8 Foot high, and says, the Capital is of the same Granate as the Pillar. *Coppin* says, 'tis above 100 Foot high, and 21 thick. *Lucas* makes it 120 Foot high, besides the Capital, and says the Pedestal is very much decayed. *Leo* says, the *Arabians* call it the Pillar of Trees, and that it stands upon a Point of Land which shoots out beyond the Haven 6 Miles W. from the City. *Marmol* tells us, it resembles *St. Peter's Steeple* at *Rome*, and has a round Ball upon the Top, which seems to have been the Sepulchre of some Roman. The *Arabians* say, 'twas built by the *Ptolomies* for the Security of the City, and pretend that it had an enchanted Steel Glass upon it, which, when laid open, burnt all the Ships that pass'd, and that they broke this Glass when they became Masters of the Place, and removed the Pillar. *Sandys* says, 'tis 1164 Inches high, and 486 round. *Du Mont* has a large Dissertation to prove that
P the

the Pillar is not of Marble, but of Stone cast in a Mould, which we cannot insist upon. *Dapper* says, 'tis 125 Foot high, and the Pedestal 15 Foot round. *Thevenot* adds, that *Cæsar's* Palace lay near this Column, but is all ruin'd, except some Pillars of Porphyry and the Frontispiece, which is still found and beautiful; and a little farther lies the *Khalis* or Canal of the *Nile*, which was dug by the ancient *Egyptians* to bring the Water into *Alexandria*. 'Tis as broad as that of *Cairo*, begins about 6 Leagues above *Rossetto*, and when the *Nile* swells, they give it a Passage thro' this *Khalis*, by breaking down a Bank like that of *Cairo*, to which we refer for the Manner of doing it. Betwixt this and the *Palus Mareotis* on the Frontiers of *Middle Egypt*, *Thevenot* says he saw Grotto's cut out of the Rock for Burial-places, with several Ranges of 4 Stories each one over another, and but half a Foot distance. He found several dead Men's Bones here, which were very fresh and sound. They say, that some of these Grotto's are two *French* Leagues in Length.

We come now to give an Account of the *Pharus* or Watch-Tower of *Alexandria*. *Sandys* says, 'twas once an Island, but is since joined to the Continent by a Stone Bridge. The Castle has no Water in it but what is brought by Camels out of the City. All Ships salute this Tower with their Guns. Foreigners, as well *Mahometans* as Christians, pay 10 *per Cent.* for all Commodities in Specie, and one half for Money. The *Jews* farm the Customs, for which they pay 20000 *Madins* a Day to the *Basha*. The Cane was lock'd up at Noon and Night when our Author was here, that the *Franks* might make no Disturbance. *Thevenot* says, 'tis still a little Island, tho' nearer the Continent than formerly. It runs out a great Way in *Meo*, and has a large square Tower in the Middle, where the Grand Seignior's Powder is kept. The Castle called *Farillon* stands where the ancient *Pharos* (which was reckoned one of the Wonders of the World) did, at the End of the Island. 'Tis neat, well furnished with Artillery, and has a Garrison of 300 Soldiers, commanded by a *Muteferaca*, but has no other Water except the *Nile*, which is brought hither upon Camels. There's a Harbour on each Side: 1. The Harbour of the Gallies, which is

not deep enough for large Vessels. 2. The Great Port or New Harbour, the Mouth of which is defended by the *Farillon* on one Side, and a little Castle on the other, that is kept by several Soldiers, and both are so situate, that they can easily succour one another. Our Author says, both these Ports are very dangerous, because of the Stones and Rocks that are in them, and that the latter is much expos'd to the N. and N. E. Winds. The Custom House of *Alexandria*, on which that of *Rossetto* depends, is on this Side. 'Tis farmed to a *Turk*, who pays the Grand Seignior 300 Purfes a Year, but discharges the Office by a *Jew*, and gives him a Purse *per Annum*. The *Jew* has other *Jews* under him, and is a Man of great Power and Interest. The old Custom-House is near the Water-Gate, and above 400 Paces from the Sea, tho' the Water formerly beat against the Walls. There are Janizaries always at the Door, and exact something of all Goods that pass. *Coppin* says, *Sostratus* of *Cnidus* was the Architect, and *Ptolomy Philadelphus* laid out 800 Talents in building it. The first Story was of white Marble, and there was a very high square Tower of the same at the Top, which ran up with a great many Balluster'd Galleries one over another, supported by rich Columns, and rose pyramidically till it lessen'd two Thirds at the Top. They say, that there were Looking-Glasses so ingeniously fixed against the highest of the Galleries, that they represented all Ships that approached the Harbour; but our Author rejects this as fabulous. He adds, that 'tis founded upon a Rock in a plain Ground. 'Tis encompassed first with a false Bray 7 Foot high, and within that with a Wall, which is somewhat higher, and furnished with Battlements, which surround the Body of the Fort; but neither of them are terrass'd or flank'd with Towers or Bastions. It has 80 Pieces of Cannon towards the Sea Side, and is reckoned the only Bulwark of *Egypt* on this Coast. Our Author says, it may easily be batter'd down from the two Hills in the City, or stormed on the Side of the Bridge, where the Sea is very low, but is impregnable any other Way, because of the many Rocks which are about it; yet it may be reduced on the Land Side, by stopping the Avenues by which the Camels bring in the *Nile* Water.

9. *Bechi-*

9. *Bochirum*, *Bochira*, *Borchir*, *Bicchiri*, *Bouquier*, or *Boquir*, betwixt *Alexandria* and *Rossetto*, 16 Miles E. of the former, according to the *Sanfons*; *Thevenot* says 20. There's a square Castle on a Point of Land that runs out into the Sea, with a little Tower at each Corner, mounted with some small Guns, a great Tower in the Middle, a Light-House on the Top, and a Mosque. The Castle is divided from the Continent by a Channel of Sea-Water two Steps over, and joined by a Bridge, Part Wood, and Part Stone. 'Tis encompassed with Rocks; but they have no other Water than what they fetch from a Well at a good Distance. There are still the Vestiges of an Aqueduct that brought Water hither from a Fountain at the old Port of *Alexandria*. There's a good Garrison here, commanded by a Muteferaca. There are about 20 Houses near the Castle, and as many more a little farther off. He adds, that the *French* are not permitted to water here. *Coppin* makes it not above 4 Miles from *Alexandria*, and says 'tis naked, without any Works for its Defence, and there are two *French* Pieces of Cannon, which the *Turks* say *St. Lewis* left behind him at *Mansoura*, one of which is engrav'd with the Arms of *Marseilles*, and the other with those of *France*. *Marmol* places it about 3 Leagues E. of *Alexandria*, and thinks it to be *Ptolomy's Canopus*. He says, the Coast is very dangerous. *Dapper* thinks 'tis the ancient *Busiris*, and that the Christians formerly took it, and compelled the Inhabitants to retire to the Lake of *Elbruhaira*. *Sanfons* says, there are abundance of Palms here, which are the Subsistence of the poor Inhabitants of this and the neighbouring Villages; that there's a Light-House upon a Rock, and a Guard of Soldiers to secure the Passage, who made him and his Company pay a Maidin per Head. Betwixt this and *Rossetto*, *Thevenot* says there's a Place called the *Maadie*, i. e. the Passage of *Alexandria*, tho' at 30 Miles distance. 'Tis a Lake which must be crossed over in a Ferry-Boat, with a Rope fastened to both Sides of the Water. 'Tis very full of Fish, which brings in a great Revenue to the Grand Seignior. There's a Caravanfera on one Side of it for Strangers to lodge in; but they must bring their own Provisions and Bedding. *Thevenot* adds, that all the Way from hence to

Alexandria is over a sandy Desert. To conclude *Lower Egypt*, the *Sanfons* make it 270 Miles from E. to W. and 128 where broadest.

M I D D L E E G Y P T,

Lies between *Lower Egypt* on the N. and *Upper Egypt* on the S. the *Red Sea* on the E. and the Deserts of *Barca* on the W. The *Sanfons* say, 'tis 220 Miles from E. to W. and 114 from N. to S. that it contains the Cassiliffs of *Giza* and *Fium* on the W. Side of the *Nile*, and *Cairo* on the E. and that 'tis the ancient *Heptanomos*, now called *Bechria* and *Demesor*. *Luyts* says, 'tis also called *Vossani*. *Gemelli* begins it at *Giza*, and ends it at *Momflout*. *Plessis* says, 'tis more fruitful than *Upper Egypt*. *Dapper* says, the Soil, especially about *Cairo*, produces all Sorts of Plants and Fruit-Trees. Those unknown to us are, 1. *Bammia*: 'Tis 4 or 5 Cubits high; the Flowers and Leaves are almost like Mallows, or (as *Ogilby* says) *Cassia*, only the Leaves are bigger, rougher to the Touch, a little hairy, have longer Stems, and are near as big as Gourd Leaves. The Flower consists of 5 Leaves of a pale Yellow. The Fruit is five, sometimes ten-corner'd, and like wild Cucumbers. When 'tis green, the common People boil it, Seed and all, with some Flesh into a Soup, and eat it. The Leaves are very cooling, and us'd in Physick against several Diseases. 2. *Mosch*, so called because its Seed smells like Musk, and the *Arabians* often put it off for the true Musk, but the Smell soon vanishes. This Plant has only one Stalk, round, straight, and hairy. From one and the same Joint grow two Leaves, one larger, the other less. They hang down with long Tails, are white and rough, and much of the Size and Form of those of Lowfy Weed. The Flowers grow between the Trunk and the Stalks of the Leaves, and next to the Flowers come little round Cods that contain a black bitter Seed. The Roots and Leaves boil'd, and applied in a Plaister, abates Swellings, and the Seed made into Pills is good against Fits of the Mother, and the Smoke of them brings down the Terms. 3. The *Tamarind* Tree is about the Size of a Plum Tree, has many Branches and Leaves like

like those of Myrtle. The Blossoms and Flowers are white like those of the Orange Tree, and bear Husks, which contain some thick Grains, whose Pulp is black and sharp. The Leaves of this Tree follow the Course of the Sun, open when it rises, and shut when it sets. The Leaves don't fall off in Winter, and are given to Children against Worms. The Juice of those Leaves or Water in which they are steep'd is purgative. The *Arabians* make Confections of the Husks, which are excellent against Thirst, and us'd by those that travel the Deserts. The Water of steep'd Tamarinds sweeten'd with Sugar is good against malignant Fevers, and quenches Thirst. Tamarinds are also good against all Sorts of Purple Fevers, Inflammations of the Liver and Reins, and against Loss of Seed. 4. *Calaf* or *Caleb*, a Sort of a Willow which grows in marshy Grounds about *Cairo*. The Leaves are an Inch long, and two broad; the Flowers white, and smell sweet. The *Egyptians* make a Water of those Flowers, which they reckon a Sovereign against all Putrefaction and Poison, and for Strengthening the Heart. 'Tis also good against malignant Fevers, and mix'd with Bezoar, is given for the Small Pox. 5. The Sycamore or *Pharaoh's Fig-Tree*. The Trunk is not high, but very thick, and has two or three large Branches, which send forth abundance of others. It much resembles our Fig-Trees, and the Leaves are like those of Mulberries, and never fall off in Winter. This Tree is never without Fruit, which always grows on the Trunk, or on the End of the Branches next it. The Figs are not good for the Stomach, but are wholesome and refreshing to those who are overheated, or have been too long in the Sun. They keep the Belly open, and applied in Plaisters, cure hot Tumours and hard Swellings. In order to make them bear, they slit the Bark, which always sends forth a Sort of Milk, and at last produces a Branch that bears Figs. This Tree is propagated by planting its Branches, which grow in a little Time, become great Trees, and live long. Some are so large, that 3 Men can scarce fathom them. Those in *Europe* bear no Fruit. 6. *Beid el Ofsar*, or *Ofsar* and *El-Ussar*, grows in marshy Places near *Cairo*. It has a Bundle of Roots, from whence come several Branches, as high as a Man. The

Leaves, which are a pale Green, grow two by two over against one another, and both Leaves and Stalk yield a bitter sharp Milk. It thickens in hot Countries; and because of its Whiteness, is called *Manna* or Sugar of *Usar*. The Blossoms are of a Saffron and Purple Colour, grow in Clusters at the Top of the Branches, and hang down in Form of a Crown. The Bees feed on them. The Seed is cover'd with a Wool as soft as Silk, of which they make Matches that take Fire with the least Spark. The Fruit resembles the Cods of a Camel, and the Skin of it is cover'd with a fine Wool, of which they make Beds and Quilts. The Leaves bruised, boil'd, or eat raw, and applied Plaister wise, cure Diseases coming from Cold. The Milk is good for currying Hides, and for cleansing Impurities of the Skin. Being thickened and dried, 'tis a violent Purge. It grows in *Europe*, but does not bear Fruit. 7. The Balsam Tree grows in a Garden near *Cairo*, the only Place in *Egypt* which produces them, being brought hither by Pilgrims from *Arabia Felix*, where they have them in vast Numbers, and make great Profit of the Balm. 'Tis in the Form of that called *Agnus Castus*, and as high as a Privet. The Leaves are like Rice, of a whitish Green, and continue all Winter. The Wood is gummy, light and red, on the Outside, as are the Branches, which are long, straight, small, and bear but few Leaves, that grow without Order. The Branches are very odoriferous, and so gummy, that they stick to one's Fingers. The Flowers are small, hang in Form of a Crown, and have a good Smell, but not lasting. They bear a yellow Seed, which contains a yellow Liquor like Honey, but very bitter and strong. It smells like Balm, and the Leaf is of the Size and Shape of the Fruit of the Turpentine Tree, broad in the Middle, and pointed at the Ends. The Balm, which is the Gum of this Tree, drops from Slits made in the Bark. The Air turns it presently Whitish, then Green, then of a Gold Colour, and lastly of a yellow Brown like Honey. When 'tis fresh gather'd, 'tis clear, but soon turns thick; and when old, can scarce be distinguished from Turpentine. It smells so strong when it first drops out, that it causes the Head-ach and Bleeding at the Nose; but the Scent abates by degrees, and when 'tis old,

it has none at all. Our Author observes, that all the Balsam brought to *Cairo* from *Arabia*, tho' it be very odoriferous, does not drop from the Bark of the Tree, but is distilled from the Wood and green Branches, and is many times adulterated with *Cyprian Turpentine*. This is the most precious Medicine among the *Egyptians*. They use it in all Diseases proceeding from cold Humours or Poison, and apply it to Wounds that are not deep, and which do not lie upon the Bone or Nerves. Our Author says also, that a Dram Weight taken every Day inwardly is a Preservative against the Plague, and drives away Fevers proceeding from Putrefaction, and lingering Fevers caus'd by cold Humours, and the Obstructions of the Intrails. 'Tis very opening, helps Concoction, and augments natural Heat. It restores lost Sight and Hearing by being dropped warm into the Eyes and Ears. They say 'tis an excellent Remedy against Convulsions or Cramps, derived from Cold and Moisture, against Vertigo's, the Falling Sickness, Benum'd Members, the Trembling of the Nerves, Coughs, Oppression of the Breast, the Asthma, a weak Stomach, Wind, Fits of the Mother, the Whites, Retention of Urine proceeding from cold Winds, and dissolves the Stone in the Reins or Bladder. The *Egyptian Women* chew it, apply it either inwardly or outwardly, and sometimes burn it, and receive the Smoak into their Matrix to prevent Barrenness. They also paint with it several times a Day; first, they heat themselves in a Bath, where they dawb it several times over their Breast and Face, and continue there an Hour or longer, till 'tis enter'd into the Skin. They repeat this every three Days. Some do it 10 or 12 times a Day, staying an Hour between whiles, which makes it last a Month, and they never wash all the while. When the Time is expired, they anoint themselves with Oil of bitter Almonds, and wash several Days after with Water extracted from Bean Flowers. *Dapper* adds, that the Seed and green Branches are us'd against the same Distempers as the Balm it self. *Sandys* says, that besides these, they have Orchards of Oranges, Lemons, Pomegranates, Apples of Paradise, Dates, Almonds, Cassia Fistula, flat Locusts in the Shape of a Cycle, Apples no bigger than Berries, Plantanes with a broad

flaggy Leaf, growing in Clusters, and shap'd like Cucumbers, the Rind like a Pescod, solid within, and of a most delicious Taste, without Stones or Kernels. This the *Mahometans* say was the forbidden Fruit, and that our first Parents made their Aprons of the Leaves of it. There are many other Fruit-Trees here, some of which bear Fruit all the Year, and most of them keep their Leaves. They have abundance of Camellions in their Orchards.

The first and chief City of this Division, and the Capital of all *Egypt*, is *Cairo*, on the E. Banks of the *Nile*. *Moll* places it Lat. $29\frac{1}{4}$. Long $52\frac{1}{2}$. 191 Miles S. W. of *Jerusalem*, 70 Miles W. of *Suez* upon the *Red Sea*, and about 95 S. E. of *Alexandria*. The *Sansons* make the Long 62, the Distance from *Suez* 95, and that from *Alexandria* above 100. *Du Plessis* says, 'tis two Miles from the *Nile*. *Luyts* makes it 80 Miles S. from the *Mediterranean*, and about 3 Furlongs from the Place where the *Nile* divides into the two great Streams which form *Delta* or *Lower Egypt*.

They say it anciently consisted of 5 several Cities, continued without Interruption from one to another. The chief, which was supposed to be the Residence of *Pharaoh*, is called the City of the Sun, Isa. 19. *Gemelli* says, 'tis now ruinous, called *Masaria*, and is only known by an Obelisk, which was standing when he was there. The 2d, he says, was called *Aamis*, and the same that *Pharaoh* gave to *Joseph* and his Family. The 3d was *Misrin*, built by *Ham's* Son of the same Name; the 4th *Bubrillon*, built in Honour of the Idol *Abrillon*, who had a Temple near Old *Cairo*; and the 5th *Memphis*, destroyed by the *Mahometans* under the Emperor *Heraclius*, and rebuilt by the Name of *Tesdar*, i. e. *Victory*, now Old *Cairo*.

We shall give an Account first of *Memphis*. *Du Plessis* says, it lay on the Left Side of the *Nile*, a little below *Cairo*, or (as *Luyts* says) the W. Bank. 'Tis named *Moph* or *Noph* in Scripture, was then the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Egypt*, and its Ruins are called *Menchis* by *Baudrand*. *Marmol* says, *Memphis* stood 17 Leagues S. of *Cairo*, and that according to the Report of the *Grecians*, 'twas built in the Time of *Joseph*. *Sandys* says, it stood 5 Miles S. E. of the Pyramids, two W. of the *Nile*, and 8 Scheni from

from the S. Angle of *Delta*, which is but 4 Miles from *Cairo*. 'Twas built by *Ogdous*, and called so after his Daughter, whom they pretend *Nilus* lay with in the Shape of a Bull. *Thevenot* and *Monconys* both say, it lay opposite to the Place where *Old Cairo* now stands, in an Island of about two Miles long, with a Castle at one End, where the *Basha* then resided, and a Mosque with a Pillar in it, by which they measur'd the Increase of the *Nile*, of which hereafter. *Du Mont* says, the Ruins of *Memphis* lie on the other Side of the *Nile*, over against the Pyramids, and deny that *Cairo* is the ancient *Memphis*, because *Pliny* places it between *Delta* and the Pyramids. *Herodotus* places it on the W. Side of the *Nile*. *Dapper* says, the Name is derived from the Egyptian Word *Monphta*, i. e. The Water of the Lord, because when *Cham's* Children began to people *Egypt*, they settled upon the Hills of *Memphis*, the rest of *Egypt* being at that Time overflowed; but as soon as the Waters fell, *Misraim* built a Town of his own Name upon the Banks of the *Nile*; which because of the Fruitfulness occasioned by the Inundation, was call'd *Monphta*. *Dapper* attempts to prove that *Misraim* is the same with *Menes*, by whom *Herodotus* says 'twas founded. He adds, that the *Hebrews* called it also *Noph*, *Migdal*, and *Maphez*; the *Armenians*, *Messor*; the *Chaldeans*, *Cabra*; and the *Turks*, *Mitzir* or *Missir*. He says, that *Memphis*, taken for modern *Cairo*, is divided into 4 Cities, viz. *Bulach*, *Caraffa*, *Old* and *New* or *Great Cairo*, tho' some reckon the two first only for Suburbs, tho' they were formerly very populous, and included in *Cairo*. We shall describe each in their Order. *Sanson* reckons no more than 3 Divisions, viz. *Bulach*, *Old Cairo*, and *New Cairo*. *Strabo* divides it only into *Cairo* and *Babylon*, that was built by some *Babylonians* who came out of *Mesopotamia*. *St. Jerome* in his *Prolegomena* says, many of the Ancients came hither to see the Place, and converse with the Sages that liv'd here. *St. Augustin* mentions *Plato*, *Pythagoras*, and *Apollo-nius* in particular, and that here was the Table of the Sun in a Temple dedicated to that Planet.

Leo says, the Word *Cairo* is a Corruption of the Arabick *El-Chahira*, i. e. a Commanding Mistress. Several Authors say, That in the primitive Ages it was called *Babylon*;

but *Coppin* says, that lasted but a few Years before it took the Name of *Memphis*, which it kept till the Time of the *Saracens*, who called it *Great Cairo*. Some say, it is a Corruption of the Name of *Kahara*, the Wife of a *Saracen* King, who is reported to have built it. *Marmol* and others say, 'tis deriv'd from the Arabian Word *Elcaihra*, i. e. an Assembly or Cloyster; and some derive it from *Caiet*, Wife to one of the Governors, who built a Castle, and called it by her Name.

Leo adds, 'twas built by *Gehoar Chetib*, a *Dalmatian* Slave, who likewise built the Temple called *Gemi-Hashare*, i. e. the Glorious Temple. The *Arabians* say, 'twas built in *Mahomet's* Time, and afterwards encompassed with Walls by the Order of *Homar* his Successor; but *Du Mont* thinks it much ancients. He says, the Caliphs resided here 700 Years, till the Time of the *Mamelucks*; but that 'twas taken from the *Souldans* of *Egypt* in 1517 by Sultan *Selymus I.*

Leo says, *Great Cairo* is situate in a fine Plain at the Foot of Mount *Meccatum*, or (as *Sandys* calls it) the rocky Mountain *Mustac*. *Thevenot* dislikes its Situation, because the Hill intercepts the Air, which causes a stifling Heat, and breeds many Diseases. *Beauvais* and others say, the 4 Parts and their Suburbs together are 10 or 12 Leagues in Length, 7 or 8 in Breadth, and 25 or 30 in Circumference: But *Lambert* of *Marseilles*, in his Annual Relations between 1626 and 1632, says, that *Proper Cairo*, exclusive of its Suburbs, is not so big as *Paris*, according to the Report of some French Gentlemen then on the Spot. *Baumgarten* says, it takes up 9 or 10 Hours to walk round it. *Thevenot*, who try'd it, says, 'tis betwixt 3 and 4 French Leagues in Circuit, but not more than a Walk of two Hours and a quarter, and but half an Hour's Walk in Length, or 500 Paces, at two Foot and a half each. *Villamont* says, 'tis 20 Miles in Compass, and that a Horseman at full Gallop cannot get round it in 10 Hours; but 'tis probable he includes *Old Cairo* and the Suburbs, which *Dapper* says makes it 3 German Miles in Length; for he adds, that *Old* and *New Cairo*, *Boulac* and *Caraffa* together, are 30 Miles long, and 20 broad. *Dapper* says, the Suburb called *Bebzuaila* is a League and a half in Length, and a League in Breadth.

They

They say, that all the 4 Divisions above-mentioned put together contain 16 or 18000, and some 26000 Streets, 6000 publick Mosques, 14000 private Oratories, and almost 200000 Houses, besides a great Number of Squares and Markets, Factories, Warehouses, Hospitals, and other publick Buildings. *Thevenot* says, it contains 23000 Precincts, and as many Mosques, there being one to each, and in some more, tho the greatest Part are but small Chappels. *Dapper* says, the Suburb *Bebzuaila* contains 2000 Houses, that of *Beb-Elloch* 3000, and *Great Cairo* it self 30000. *Villamont* reckons but 11000 Mosques. *Dapper* says, there are 1200 in the E. Suburbs, and 700 in that on the S. *Lambert* of *Marseilles* says, the Trade is so diminished since a Passage was found out to the *East-Indies* by the Cape of *Good Hope*, that the Town is but a Shadow of what it was a Hundred and odd Years ago. *Mr. Sandys* says, it winds along the Hill from N. to S. in Form of a Half-Moon; but *Thevenot* says 'tis narrow, *Villamont* oval, and *Bellonius* triangular. *Du Pleffis* says, it has no Walls. *Baumgarten* tells us, 'tis fortified on one Side with strong Ramparts, and on the other with a great, deep, and artificial Lake; but *Thevenot* says, 'tis encompassed with thick Stone Walls, so white as if they were newly built, only there are great Cracks in many Places, which shew they are very ancient. They have very handsome Battlements and curious Towers within less than 100 Paces one of another, able to contain many People; and tho they were built high, yet in several Places the Ruins cover them; and *Coppin* says, that great Part of the Wall is joined to the Houses, and they are so cover'd with Buildings, especially towards *Boulac* and *Old Cairo*, that they can scarce be distinguished; from whence, as *Thevenot* observes, many have confounded this *Cairo* with those two Towns, and asserted that it has no Walls. The Gates, which *Thevenot* says are 7 in Number, are ancient, and have nothing to defend them. About 500 Paces without, there are Trenches to give a Current to the Waters of the *Nile* at the Time of the Inundation, which are passed by several Gates; but at other Times they are dry, says *Coppin*, and would be of as much Service to the Besiegers as to the Besieged. *Dapper* says, it has no Walls towards the

Nile. The Gates are covered with Plates of Iron. The chief are that on the E. called the *Gate of Victory*, that of *Bebzuaila* towards the *Nile* and the Old Town, and that called the *Gate of Triumph* towards the Lake *Esbiki*. *Mr. Sandys* says, there's a Gate at the End of almost every Street, which is shut at Night. *Coppin* says, they are not very strong, but only placed there to prevent Night-Robbers. *Thevenot* says, there's two Men to watch at every Precinct, who are chained together, that they may not separate. They voluntarily undertake the Office for the Profit they make of it, and the Officers of the *Sous-Basha* keep the Keys of the Padlocks that fasten their Chains. *Coppin* says, they bawl out from Time to Time, that they are generally the Mob of the People, and addicted to Robbery; and that they are thus chained to hinder their Stealing while on the Watch. The Gates at the End of every Street are high and square. Their Locks and Keys are only of Wood, but they have Padlocks on their Chests. When they go abroad, they put a Seal upon the Lock of their Gate, which if a rich Man should break, tho he never enter'd the House, he must forfeit all his Estate; and if a poor Man, he is condemned to the Gallies without Mercy.

The chief Strength of *Cairo* is its Castle, which *Sandys* says stands on the Top of a Hill against the S. Side of the City. It was the Residence of the *Mameluck* Sultans, and is accessible only by a Way hewn out of the Rocks, which is so easy of Ascent, that a Man may ride up it. There's a fine Prospect of the City from hence, and 'tis so large, that it looks like a City it self. The Walls are very high. 'Tis divided into several Parts. The Gates are of Iron, and the Courts spacious. There are the Remains of some ancient stately Buildings, and Marble Pillars of a prodigious Size. 'Tis the Residence of the *Basha*, and the *Divan* is kept here on *Sundays*, *Mondays*, and *Tuesdays*. *Thevenot* says, the Castle is one of the finest Things in *Egypt*, and that it stands upon a Rock without the Town, almost at one End of the Crescent, which it forms, and over against *Old Cairo*. The Walls are very thick. 'Tis flanked with strong Towers, and is two Miles round, according to our Author. There's a neat and very high Free-stone Mosque

Mosque near the Square before the Castle, built by Sultan *Hasan* in the Time of the *Mamelucks*. The Holes of the Bullets which Sultan *Selim* shot at it when *Thomambey* retired hither are still to be seen. There are several fair Vaults under Ground; but the greatest Part of the Castle is ruin'd. The greatest Curiosity here is *Joseph's Well*, which cannot be seen without Leave from the *Basha Chiaoux*. Our Author, who saw it, says, 'tis divided into two Stories: The first is 11 Foot long, and 10 broad, with a Pair of Stairs about 7 or 8 Foot broad cut all round in the Rock. The Stair-Case consists of 220 Steps, so easy for the Conveniency of the Oxen that go down to labour, that the Descent is scarce discernible. There's a Window about 3 Foot square at the Outside of the Pit. There are 3 Windows in some Places; but the Pit being very deep, those that go down to the Bottom carry Torches. At the Stair-foot there's a great Hole stopp'd up, which they say goes as far as the Pyramids. There's another over-against it stopp'd up in the same Manner, which they say goes as far as *Suez* upon the *Red Sea*; but our Author believes neither. The Bottom of the first Pit is perpendicular, and of an equal Length and Breadth, to so much of the Mouth of it as is uncovered. From hence there's a Turning under the Rock to the 2d Pit, which is narrow, but deeper than the former. In the Way to this Pit there are Oxen to draw up Water, which they convey by Wheels hung round with little Buckets to the Top, where there are other Oxen and Wheels to turn it into Pipes that run thro' the Castle. *Coppin* gives a particular Account of this Engine, to which we refer. There are several Steps to descend to the Bottom of this narrow Well, where there's a great deal of Mud. This Pit is dug out of the Rock of a prodigious Depth and Breadth, and there's but one more Spring in *Egypt*. *Thervenot* says, the Water of this Well is sweetish, and that it stands in the Quarters of the Janizaries. *Coppin* says, 'tis 45 Fathom deep and 4 Fathom square from the Mouth down to the Water. There are 8 Windows to light the Stair-Case, viz. two at every Turning. No Christians must see it without Leave from the *Turks* on Pain of the Bastinado, unless they pay a Sequin per Head. *Du Mont* says,

'tis 106 Foot deep, and 11 broad, and that the Stair-Case consists of 12 Divisions, viz. 6 of 18, and 6 of 19 Steps each. *Gemelli* says, it stands in the highest Ground of the Castle Eastward, and that the Water-Engine is worked with 4 Oxen at Top, and 4 at Bottom. He observed, that two of the Sides of the Well are 15 Foot each, and the others 22 apiece; that 'tis 282 Foot deep, viz. 141 from the Mouth to the Place where the lower Oxen work, and as many more to the Spring. He adds, that the Steps are worn out in many Places, and in others clogged with Dirt by the continual Trampling of the Oxen. He measured the Place where the 2d Oxen stood, and found two Sides of 12 Foot, and the other two of 4, which he says is but just Room enough for the Wheel. The Wall between the Stairs and the Well to keep Persons from falling in is about 6 Inches thick. Some say, this Well was made by *Joseph* the Sultan, because there was no such City in the Time of the other *Joseph*. But the most receiv'd Opinion, says *Gemelli*, is, that 'twas dug about *A. M.* 2298.

Here are also the Ruins of *Joseph's Hall*. *Thervenot* says 'tis much decayed; but there are the Remains of 30 fine Pillars of *Theban* Stone, and a great deal of Gold and Azure on the Cieling. They say, *Joseph* gave Judgment here to the *Egyptians*, but now it serves to lodge the Officers of the Castle. Near this there's another Hall more curious than the former, and has the Remains of 10 or 12 Pillars. Here is also *Joseph's Dungeon*, where they say he interpreted the Dreams of the King's Butler and Baker. 'Tis composed of several dark nasty Passages, and our Author says, Prisoners are used here with extreme Rigour, put into Stocks, and chain'd to the Wall, and have Pails of Water thrown upon their Backs if they refuse to pay the Fees as often as demanded. He adds, that Persons are put in here for Trifles. There's another large old Hall well built, with a Cieling gilt and painted in *Mosaick*. Here they embroider the rich Vest which is sent Annually to *Mecha*. The Castle is commanded by an Aga of the Janizaries, who lives here. The *Basha* has a neat Apartment and Seraglio, which joins by a Wall to the Castle, and here is the Hall of the great Divan. *Gemelli* says, 'tis high and

and round like a Cupola, but open at Top. *Thevenot* says 'tis long, but the Cieling low. Our Author saw 10 Wooden Bucklers, each an Inch thick, hung up against the Wall, all joined together, and pierced thro' by a Javelin thrown by Sultan *Amurath*, who sent them hither in the same Form, to remain as a Monument of his Strength. Here is a large Court, with the Basha's Stables at one End, to which the Water of the Nile is conveyed by an Aqueduct from *Bulac*. *Coppin* says, it looks irregular without, but is delightful within. *Thevenot* tells us, the Castle looks great on the Outside, especially towards the Gates, where the Walls are very high and strong, and built upon the Rock. *Coppin* says, that on the Side next the Town the Wall is broad, lofty, and flank'd with 5 great high round Towers, of which the Middlemost is cover'd like a Turban, and is the Magazine for Powder. The Towers are about 60 Paces from one another. The Side of the Rock next the Town is rugged, and of a considerable Height. Towards the N. there's an old Palace near it, and the Walls on that Side are lower by one Third, and defended only by little Centry-Boxes. The Castle has 5 or 6 Gates: One of them is mounted with 4 Culverins, and there's a great Piece within planted right against the Entrance. The Castle is full of Buildings, and inhabited by a great Number of Artificers, and is so large, that it requires a Garrison of 4 or 5000 Men and a Squadron of Horse to defend it. *Monconys* says, there's the Ruins of a Porch here built in the Time of the *Pharaohs*, which consists of two Ranges of large tall Pillars, very much decay'd with Age. *Gemelli* says, there's a Tower here where they keep the Treasure for the Pay of the Janizaries, and that the Castle is 3 or 4 Miles in Compass, but has no modern Fortification capable of making a long Defence. The Towers are old, the Walls ruin'd in many Places, unprovided with Cannon, and the Castle is commanded by a Hill not far off, from whence it might easily be batter'd down. *Baumgarten* says, it had 12 Iron Gates in his Time, well secur'd with Guns and Guards.

Thevenot adds, that the Houses of the Beys have fine Apartments, and large Halls pav'd with Marble, spread with *Persian* Carpets, and adorn'd with Water-Works, and

Cielings of Gold and Azure. *Coppin* says, the chief Palace is that of the Caliph. It has a Turret on the Top in Form of a Mosque, and is one of the prettiest Structures in *Cairo*. The Houses of the Sangiacks are the chief and the most spacious in the City, with great Base-Courts and fine Stables, where they keep 40 or 50 Horses, and Domesticks answerable, who are allowed to carry Arms. At 3 a Clock they sound the Drums and Trumpets in their Courts to Prayers. You must pass two Rooms before you come to the Presence-Chamber of the Sangiack, and leave your Shoes in one of them.

Baumgarten tells us, the Houses are built for most Part of Sun-dry'd Bricks, and the rest with a Sort of Cane. *Sandys* adds, they are high-built, more beautiful on the Outside than commodious within. The Entry is low and straight, but the Roofs high, flat, and plaister'd. The Walls rise higher than the Roof, and are often but of single Brick at Top, are ruinous, and look irregular. *Thevenot* says, they take the fresh Air when the Sun is down upon their Terrass Roofs, and lie there in the Summer. Most of their Halls have a round Hole in the Roof to let in Air, and commonly there's a Cupola or Lantern over it with many Windows. *Coppin* says, they draw a Curtain over the Hole by Day, and open it at Night. The *French* Consul has a large House, for the Description of which we refer to *Lucas* and *Coppin*. The latter says, the Houses in general are very irregular and plain. Those of the common People are for most Part of two Stories, and built of Earth, but those of Quality of polish'd Free-stone. They cover the Roof with Earth a Foot thick, to keep out the violent Heat of the Sun. The Hole at the Top of great Men's Houses is 5 or 6 Foot square, and has a little Cieling, supported by Pillars, with a Ballustrade all round. In others there's only a Ballustrade without a Cieling, and the Poor have nothing but a Hole at Top. There's a great many Buildings but half finish'd in the City, because when the Basha, who has Spies in every Corner, desires a Loan, and assesses every one in Proportion, the Owners, to prevent his demanding Money from them, put a Stop to the Workmen, and cause Sticks to be planted in the Walls with little

Streamers of Silk, to signify that they want Money to finish; so that if the Basha demand Money, they desire to be excused, and say they are poor, otherwise they would have gone on with their Houses; and after they have stood two or three Years, they finish them, but are obliged to pretend that they borrow the Money. *Dapper* thinks that *Cairo* contains about 300000 Houses, and says, some of those along the Canal of the Nile are built with Free-stone for about a Man's Height.

Sandys tells us, their Mosques are the most magnificent of all their publick Buildings. The Stones of many of 'em are curiously carv'd, and they are supported with Marble Pillars. They differ in Form from those at *Constantinople*. Some are square, with Roofs open in the Middle, and terrass'd on the Top, and some of 'em are very long. *Thevenot* says, divers of them have lovely Frontispieces and Gates, and very high Steeples, which, with their Whiteness, contribute much to the Ornament of the City. *Baumgarten* informs us, that they hang up Torches and Lamps about them every Night. *Coppin* says, they are of all Forms, viz. Square, Oval or Round, Hexagon and Octogon. The chief have commonly 4 square Towers, some but two, and others none. Each of these Towers has several Pinacles one above another. Those of the finest Mosques are 4 or 5 Stories high, and the others but two or three. *Dapper* says, here are several Hospitals, and one of them has a Revenue of 100000 Sultanins or Turkey Crowns, and receives all Sorts of People. *Coppin* says, that all the Windows of the Houses are lettic'd, so that none can put out their Heads to look into the Streets.

Baumgarten tells us, the Streets are for most Part narrow, and cover'd above with Branches of Trees and Reeds, laid upon Beams that cross the Streets from the Tops of the Houses, to keep off the Heat of the Sun. *Leo* adds, that the principal Street is adorned with fine Palaces, Colleges, Baths, and Temples. The next Street is filled with Cooks and Victuallers, that sell choice Waters made of all Sorts of Fruits in fine Vessels of Glass and Tin; Confectioners, Fruiterers, and others who sell Eggs, Cheese, and Pancakes, fry'd in Oil. The chief Mechanicks live in the next Street, and there's

a College beyond it built by a Soldan, near which are the Drapers Shops for the finest Linen Cloth, and particularly that called *Mosul*, which is very broad and fine, and us'd for Noblemen's Shirts. Next to these live the Mercers and Woollendrapers. In the Street that leads to the Gate *Zuaila*, which fronts the Nile, there's a famous Exchange 3 Stories high, where the *Persian* Merchants vend Spices, Precious Stones, &c. Near it there's a Street for Perfumers and Stationers. The next is inhabited by Goldsmiths, most of whom are *Jews*, and very rich, and the next by Upholsterers and Brokers; and here there's a stately Hospital built by a Soldan for the Sick. Its Revenues are 200000 Saraffis per Annum, and 'tis Heir to all that die in it. *Thevenot* says, there's another for mad People, with a Mosque belonging to it, which is one of the largest in the City. *Sandys* gives an Account of several other Hospitals, noted for Building, Revenue, and Attendance. Next to the Mosques are the Lodgings of the Santons. The great Men have beautiful Seraglio's. The Streets are unpav'd, and exceeding dirty after a Shower. There's a Covering between two Mosques in the chief Street, into which, when the Basha and others of Quality pass under, they shoot Arrows; but he does not tell us the Reason of that Custom. *Thevenot* says, all the Streets are short, except the Street of the Bazar and the Khalis, which is dry but 3 Months in a Year, and not much frequented. There are few fair Streets in the City, but that of the Bazar or Market is very long and broad. *Coppin* says, the *French* Merchants live in the Street of the *Franks*, where the Consul resides, and that the *Capuchins* have a House there. The Shops are low and dark. *Dapper* says, that some reckon 18000, and others 26000 Streets; that the shortest are 100 Paces long, and that there are low, dark, straight Passages on each Side of 'em under the Houses, which are shut up in the Night with as much Care as the City Gates. Without the Town there's the Street of the *Circassians*, with a Terrass-Walk at one End, where they us'd to manage their Horses, &c. They are encompassed with Walls on each Side, and a fine Walk, adorned with Flower-Pots and Battlements at the Top, from whence may be seen

seen all that passed; and at the Bottom, instead of Iron Lettices, there are Stones with several Peep-holes in them for the Women, who would not be seen. On the other Side there's a Street full of Mosques, more remarkable for the Regularity of their Situation than for their Grandeur. Each has its Garden and Burial-place. They say, the *Circassians* built them, and that in their Time every Person of Quality had a Mosque. Our Author adds, that this is one of the most curious Streets in the City; that 'tis very wide, and above a Mile long; but that 'tis now quite abandon'd, because 'tis too far out of the Town. *Thevenot* says, there's a Market in the Street call'd the *Bazar* every *Monday* and *Thursday*, which is well stock'd and frequented; and that there's a large Square where they sell white Slaves of both Sexes, plac'd in Ranks against a Wall, where the Buyer feels them like Cattle to find out their Faults. *Coppin* mentions several other Bazars, some cover'd over, and others not. There's one particularly for Drugs, Gold Dust, and Parrots brought from *Ethiopia*. There are many Gardens here, and little Canals dug from the *Nile* to water 'em, and those Canals are planted for most Part with Palm-Trees.

There are Schools here where Youth are taught to read and write, and the Law of *Mahomet*. When they have attain'd to some Knowledge in the Alcoran, 7 or 8 of the best Sort are singled out of the rest, clad in Silk, with curious Turbans, mounted on fine Horses richly harness'd, and led by Grooms. Thus they are carried in Triumph thro' the City with Drums, Trumpets, and the Acclamations of the People.

Baumgarten says, there are Vessels at the Sides of the Churches and Corners of the Streets fill'd with the Water of the *Nile* for Drinking. Some of the *Moors* give it gratis in bright Copper Bowls. There are also *Moors* that sell Water thro' the Streets, and have Silver Cups for the People to drink in. They also fill the Cisterns with Water, and sprinkle the Streets twice a Day. He adds, that there are 8000 Men who carry Water with one or five Camels apiece, that bring it from *Boulac* in *Borachio's*.

In the N. Part of the City is the Lake *Esbykie* or *Zebequia*. Mr. *Sandys* tells us, that three Sides of it are inclos'd with handsome

Buildings or Balconies, and Galleries supported by Pillars. On the other Side there was a stately Palace of a Sultaneß, which had Doors and Jambs of Ivory, Walls and Pavements of chequer'd Marble, Columns of Porphyry, Alabaster, and Serpentine, Cielings painted with Gold and Azure, and inlaid with *Indian Ebony*. This Palace was destroy'd by *Selymus*, and the Stones, &c. remov'd to *Constantinople*. The Lake is square and dry, except when the *Nile* rises, with which it communicates by a Channel, where the *Moors* divert themselves in Pleasure-Boats. The Banks of it yield 5 Harvests per Annum. From hence there's a great many straggling Houses that reach to *Bolac* or *Bulac*, of which by and by. *Dapper* says, this Lake contains 20 Acres of Land, and that it lies almost in the Heart of the City.

Du Mont says, there's a *Khalis* that runs thro' the Middle of the Town like that of *Alexandria*, to receive the Water of the *Nile*. 'Tis dry for half the Year, and does not fill till the *Nile* is at its greatest Height. Then they cut a Dyke that keeps up the Water, which runs into the Canal with great Force, till the *Nile* falls, and supplies most of their Cisterns, Basins, and Gardens. One of their greatest Festivals is at the Opening of the *Khalis*. There are Persons who cry about the Streets and Country every Day how much the *Nile* is increased. They have a Head, to whom they pay for this Privilege. There is a *Chiaoux* who rents it of the *Basha*, and lets it to the Chief of the *Cryers*, who parcels it out to the rest. The Opening of the *Khalis* is performed with great Ceremony. *Thevenot*, who saw it twice, gives us the following Account: In 1657, when the *Basha* was absent, the *Sous-Basha*, attended by his Guards, and two Men mounted on Camels beating upon *Timbrels*, marched along the *Khalis* on Horseback till he came to the End of it, where alighting, and striking the Bank with a Hammer, he took Horse again and rode back, while the *Moors*, who were left to break it down, did it so leisurely, that he was gone near an Hour before the Water came. In his Return he received a Tribute of the *French* and other Consuls at their Houses, and was follow'd by a Rabble, who sung and made a Mock-Fight with Cudgels. Some Time after came the Water, and rose about 15 Foot high.

high. The Mob kept Pace with it, threw one another in, and play'd a Thousand apish Tricks. At the same Time there were Boats upon it full of Musicians. Before it has quite done running, and the Current begins to be slow, they forbid the Water-carriers by Proclamation to take any more out of the Khalis, because it does not purge so well from the Filth of the City in a gentle Stream. When it has done running, it sends forth a noisome Stench, enough to cause a Plague, and sometimes tarnishes Silver and Pictures in such Houses as are near it, which recover their former Beauty when the Khalis is dry. The Sous-Basha might remedy this Inconvenience by dreining the Water, but will not, because he sells it to the Gardiners to water their Ground. When they have a Mind to empty it, they cast up several Dams, throw the Water from one into another, and then sell it. When 'tis thus empty'd, they level the Dams, and carry the Earth into the Fields, otherwise (says our Author) the Khalis would be choak'd up in 3 or 4 Years, and the Houses in Danger of the Flood. The Cryers begin to publish the Growth of the Nile on the 28th or 29th of June, by which Time 'tis generally about 14 or 15 Foot high. Tho' it rises 8 or 10 Inches a Day, yet they rarely cry more than 3 or 4, and keep the Overplus till towards the last, and then add every Day Part of what they had reserv'd to the real Increase of the Day they cry it on. This they do to give the People Hopes of a good Year, to advance their own Gain, and to prevent any one's looking upon it with an Evil Eye, as they call it, if they look upon any Thing and praise it, without wishing a Blessing to it. This Omission they fancy would occasion its Decrease, and bring a Famine. When 'tis 32 Foot high, they open the Khalis, and not before, because if the Year should prove bad, the Farmers in Egypt are not obliged to pay any Thing to the Grand Seignior, and the Basha must answer for all. He is likewise responsible if he exceed the Time, and stay till 'tis decreased. They never cry the Increase after the 24th of September, tho' sometimes it rises till October, and he that daily measures the Increase is presented with a Vest by the Basha. When the Basha is present, they have a great Number of

Barges rank'd in Order at *Boulac*, with large Halls in the Sterns finely painted and gilt. These Halls are fram'd with Timber about 14 Paces square, with gilt Rails and Balusters round them, adorn'd with *Arabian* Characters in Gold, and embroider'd Cushions and Carpets. Every Hall has a Lantern, and the Basha's three. They make large Blazes aloft upon the Yard, and have several Cannon aboard with gilt Figures of all Sorts of Animals on the Sterns. *Thevenot* says, the Basha rode hither on a stately Horse with rich Trappings, and a lovely Flower of Diamonds on his Head. They killed Sheep in 3 or 4 Places as he pass'd, and several on the Bank as he took Barge. Then he sail'd towards *Cairo* under a Salvo of the Guns from all the rest of the Barges. His was towed by three, had a Sail of many Colours, embroider'd with 5 large red Roses, and was follow'd by a Galliot cover'd with Flags and Streamers, and filled with Drums, Trumpets, and other Sorts of Musick. The Cavalcade is very glorious, and the Barges keep gently firing till they come to the Bank, on each Side of which there's a Paper Tower fill'd with Fire-Works, which they play off when the Basha passes. He strikes the Dyke with a Silver Hammer, while the People break it down. They have Boat-Loads of Fruit and Sweetmeats thrown into the Water among them, and it adds to the Diversion to see them swim and scrabble for them. The Basha goes to his Seraglio in the Middle of the Nile over against *Old Cairo*, where he stays 3 Days, till the Bonfires are over. All the Shores of the Nile and the River it self are filled in the Evenings with Fire-Works of all Sorts of Figures, as Crosses, Mosques, Stars, Trees, &c. the whole Length of *Old Cairo*. He mentions two resembling the Statues of a Man and a Woman, which were extraordinary fine, and stood before the Basha's Palace on each Side the River. These Fire Works last till Midnight, when the People retire, but the Lamps burn all Night. He adds, that the Noise of the Musick, of the Fire-Works and Guns, and of the Acclamations of the People, during this Solemnity, makes a very agreeable sort of Confusion, enough to cheer up the most dejected Spirit. Our Author says, that the ancient *Egyptians* did likewise observe the Opening of the Khalis with

with great Solemnity, and did Annually sacrifice a Boy and a Girl, upon whom the Lot fell. They cut their Throats, and then threw them into the *Nile*, and 'tis in Memory of this (says he) that the *Turks* now make the above-mentioned Figures of a Man and a Woman. When the Water is high, there are Men who swim in the *Khalis* with Iron Chains, their Hands ty'd behind their Back, and a Chain of 10 Pound Weight fasten'd to their Feet. *Thevenot* says, he saw one of them stand upright in the Water, and discourse with those about him. He was follow'd by several Boats with Drums and Firelocks to keep off the Crowd; and he swam thus above a good League. He saw another who swam in Chains, with a Dish of Coffee in each Hand, without spilling it, and a Pipe of Tobacco in his Mouth. They were both rewarded by the *Basha* with Vests, and 1000 Maidins apiece, and have the Privilege of begging about the Town to get what more they can. *Coppin* says, that they usually carry the Children that have been born since the last Inundation and dip them several times in the *Khalis*, which, after running thro' *Cairo*, terminates at little Arches, thro' which 'tis conveyed into the Country. At those Arches there are Grates to stop any thing that is thrown into the River; and they clean it carefully before they let in the new Water. He adds, that on the Morning of the Day when the *Khalis* is to be open'd, 'tis frequented by a Multitude of People, and all Sorts of Merchandize are expos'd as in a Fair. Builders and Traders wait for the Opening of the *Khalis*, that they may have their Materials and Goods transported cheaper than by Land Carriage. When the Water comes first in, every Body throws something in, as Flowers, &c. to testify their Joy. *Lucas* says, they make great Fire-Works upon an Arm of the *Nile* near Old *Cairo*. The Front of all the Houses is adorned with so many Lamps plac'd in good Order, that the Houses look as if they were all on Fire. They must not be put out, and last all Night. They had two great Barks, in which they carry'd two high Pyramids made of Carpenter's Work, and full of Lamps, which were in a perpetual Motion, some descending, and others ascending. Sometimes they chang'd Sides, but no Bo-

dy was seen to move them. There was another with curious Fire-Works upon it resembling a Fortrefs.

Thevenot gives this Account of the *Esfine* or publick Rejoycing which is kept here by the *Turks* when they have gain'd any Victory over their Enemies: 'Tis proclaimed in every Quarter of the Town, and the chief Crier goes in a *Caftan* to give Notice of it to the Beys and Consuls. It begins at Evening Prayer, and every Morning while it lasts the Guns are fired from the Castle. They adorn the Streets with Lamps, and fine Hangings of Cloth of Gold and other rich Stuffs. The principal Traders line their Shops with them. The Beys have Lamps also within their Houses, and their Entries are hung with all Sorts of Arms. The Foreign Consuls must also act a Part in the Solemnity, tho' it be for a Victory over their own Country, or else they are fined. There they expose, besides Lamps and Tapestry, several excellent Pictures of the best Faces, which the *Turks* look upon with Admiration, thinking it impossible there should be any such Beauties in the World. The Women crowd to see this Festival, and the Consuls are obliged by Custom to treat all that come to their Houses with Coffee and Tobacco, Sorbet and Sweetmeats, and for this End the Avenues are hung with Tapestry, and filled with Chairs and rich Cushions. He adds, that no Man is suffer'd to work during this Festival, and that which he saw held 7 Days, tho' it lasts commonly but three. The *Turks* also celebrate the *Beiram* here as well as in *Asia*, where we gave an Account of it. *Lucas* says, they keep another great Festival here on the 5th of September, which they say is the Anniversary of *Mahomet's* Birth. *Lucas* adds, that on this Occasion they illuminate the City with little Lamps, and particularly the Towers of the Mosques, which he reckons to be 22000. The Galleries of those Mosques being all set off with Lamps, make a very agreeable Shew. The chief Rejoycings are made at the House of one of the first *Cheriffs*, who is said to be descended of *Mahomet*. This House is illuminated from Top to Bottom, and there they have Musicians and Fire-works, and the People of chief Quality grace the Solemnity with their Presence, and abundance of the People appear

in Arms. Our Author observes, that the Streets were so much crowded at this Solemnity, that there was scarce Room for one to pass, tho' in the Night-time; from whence he concludes, that *Cairo* is much more populous than *Paris*, since at those Times no Jew or Christian dare be seen abroad, and but very few Women. He says, that this is one of the greatest Festivals observ'd in *Egypt*.

Thevenot gives an Account of the magnificent Reception and Entrance of the Bashas when they are sent to *Cairo* from *Constantinople*. They are met some Miles out of Town by those of Quality, where magnificent Pavilions are erected, with long Avenues, all of painted Wax-Cloth of several Colours, adorned with gilt-Balls, and hung with rich Tapestry. Before the Gates of the Basha and chief Officers there are Hundreds of Lamps, which make a very fine Shew by Night. Here the Basha and his Retinue were entertained for several Days with sumptuous Feasts after the *Turkish* Manner, and then he makes his Entrance into the City, attended by several Thousands of Troops clad in various Colours, and every Trooper carries a Streamer, according to the Livery of his Troop. The Basha's Horses have rich Housings embroider'd with Gold and Silver, and his Lackies march by two and two with Caps of Silver gilt, adorned with Feathers, and his Guards in Armour, and he himself is mounted on a stately Horse, with rich Trappings, and two black Herons Tops standing upright upon his Cap. The Retinue consisted of 1700 Men when *Thevenot* was there, and 2300 Horses, Camels, Mules, &c. *Coppin* says, the Sangiacks present him upon his Arrival with 3 Purfes, each of which contain 300 Crowns; and according to the Pagan Superstition, they sacrifice Sheep and Black Cattle as he enters his Pavillions, where there are Halls and other Apartments of all Sorts as in a Palace.

When the Basha is turn'd out, it is either done by the Beys of the Country, who displace him, and demand another of the Grand Seignior, and in the mean time set up the Caimacan in his Place, or it is done by a Courier from *Constantinople*, who comes by the Grand Seignior's Order, stays without the City, summons a Divan of the Beys,

presents his Letter to the Basha, and takes up a Corner of the Carpet on which he sits, which is a Sign that he is turn'd out of his Place. Then he is heard by the Divan, one of whom is made Caimacan by the Grand Seignior's Letters, till another arrive from *Constantinople*. In the mean while the Basha is call'd to an Account for the Money he has received. All that he has left is taken from him, and his Servants seize upon every thing they find in his Apartments. When the Formality is over, he is attended out of the City much in the same Manner as he enter'd. Then his Enemies declare themselves openly against him, expose all the Faults of his Administration, and if his Crimes be great, he is frequently murder'd on the Road by Order from the Gr. Seignior, the Fear of which occasions several of 'em to rebel; but if he vindicate himself, he is commonly made Grand Vizier. *Gemelli* says, that when the Basha is to depart, the Aga *Hamet* brings him a Present of Boots, Saddle, and Breeches, from the Grand Seignior. The Ceremony is performed thus: The Aga is received in a Garden without the City by the Basha's Lieutenant or Deputy. When he enters the City, 200 Soldiers finely accoutred go before him with Drums and Trumpets: Then follows a Man carrying the Scymiter, and another the Breeches of red Stuff in a Basin cover'd with Silk, and the Boots. After them come 100 Janizaries on Foot clad in green and red Cloth, with great Caps hanging down on their Backs, and held up on the Forehead by a fine wrought Silver Plate of a Span in Length. Then the Aga with the Grand Seignior's Letter on his Breast, and the Chiaga, who is the Basha's Deputy; and the Rear is brought up by two Troops, clad like the first, some having Clubs at their Backs, cas'd at the End with Silver, as a Badge of their Office. In this Order they proceed to the Castle. To this we may add the Account that *Coppin* gives of the State with which the *French* Consul makes Visits to the Basha after his Arrival. The Consul, accompanied by all the *French* Merchants, and those of *Messina* who trade under the Banner of *France*, attend each with a Moor and an hired Ass, because no *Frenchman* but the Consul may use a Horse at *Cairo*. The Merchants cover their Saddles with fine Pieces

of Stuff. All that are in the Consul's Retinue must on this Occasion change their black Velvet Caps and Party-colour'd Turbans for Hats. When he sets out, his 6 Janizaries ride first two and two, with each a great Club 6 Foot long in their Hands to clear the Streets, clad in their own red or blue Habit, and Felt Hats embroider'd with Gold, and adorned with Plumes of Feathers. They march at a good Distance one from another, and are follow'd by two *Jews*, the Consul's Interpreters. Then comes the Consul in a Velvet Vest of the Colour of Flame, lin'd with costly Martins, and another underneath of the same Velvet. He rides on a fine Horse with a long Tail, caparison'd after the *Turkish* Manner. His Saddle of Crimson Velvet has two Pommels, one before, and the other behind, adorned with Plates of Silver gilt. His Stirrups are of the same, and his Velvet Housing of the like Colour is embroider'd with Gold and Silver. The Bridle is cover'd with Plates of Silver; the Reins are of Crimson Silk, and the Curb is a Gold Chain. The Breast-Leather is adorned with Plates of Silver, and two Footmen well apparell'd go behind with their Hands on the Horse's Crupper. Then the Merchants follow two and two. In this Order they ride to a great Square in the Castle, where they alight, and are conducted to the Hall of Audience. The Consul salutes the Basha without taking off his Hat, by putting his Hand to his Breast, and making a Bow with his Head. Then he is placed in a Chair of State, cover'd with Velvet. The Basha sits upon a Piece of Velvet, and leans against a Cushion of very rich Stuff. After they confer together by Interpreters, two of the Basha's Domesticks clad in fine white Linen bring Coffee in China Dishes, with Silk Napkins, and serve the Consul as well as their Master upon the Knee. Others clad in green Velvet bring Sherbet with the same Ceremony; after which they retire. *Lucas* says, that when the Consul goes abroad at other times, he is attended only by two Janizaries that go before him with Clubs. *Coppin* adds, that the Consul defrays the Charge of his Officers, his Table, and the Presents he must make every Year to the Basha and chief Men under him, out of the One and half *per Cent.* from all Vessels that

come to the Port of *Alexandria* under the Banner of *France*.

Thevenot says, while he was there, the Bey of *Girge*, which lies about 14 Days Journey up the *Nile*, and depends on *Cairo*, came to pay the Basha a Visit, as the latter had desir'd by Message. This Bey had been a Slave to one *Haley* Bey, who died in 1655, so rich that he left behind him 80000 Camels, and as many Asses; besides a vast Treasure in Money and Jewels, with a Cup made of a Turquoise worth above 100000 Crowns. He liv'd high, and above 1000 Crowns were spent every Day in his House at *Cairo*, tho' he was not there. The Bey his Successor was attended into *Cairo* with above 3000 *Arabs* well mounted, and armed with Pikes and Sabres 4 Inches broad. Every one carried in his Sleeve an Iron Hook an Inch broad, and as big as one's Fist, with a Wooden Handle to take up their Pikes or *Zagayes* after they have darted them at their Enemy, without alighting from their Horses; and they who shoot out of Bows, have the like Instrument to take up their Arrows. With them marched his 16 *Caschefs* or Bailiffs, and his Sous-Basha. After these came the Bey's Standard, which is a Horse-Tail at the End of a Pike, and a large Pair of Colours. Then came above 2000 Harquebussiers well mounted and accoutred, with their Harquebusses before them, and their Sabres by their Sides. The last 40 of 'em had Coats of Mail, and were follow'd by 400 Foot, with each a large Musket on his Shoulder well gilt, and some of them carried great Blunderbusses, with Sabres by their Sides. Then came 6 Led-Horses, the *Chiaoux* of *Cairo*, the Aga's and Janizaries with their Caps of Ceremony, his two Pages, and the Basha's eight, with their Silver gilt Caps and Feathers; and at last came the Bey of *Girge*, with 300 Men of his Household, all in good Order. The 10 foremost were cloath'd in green Velvet, with a large Collar of the same, cover'd over with Plates of Gold, with Bows, Quivers, and Sabres. The 10 next were clad in yellow Sattin, with each a Pike, a Shield, and a Sabre. The rest were well cloath'd, with every one a Carbine and Sabre, and in the Rear 10 Trumpets, and 70 Timbrels and Flutes, mounted on Camels. The Basha treated him with Coffee, Sorbet, and

Per-

Perfume, and gave 108 of his Officers a Caftan apiece, and he presented the Basha in Money and Horses to the Value of 80 Purfes. He brought about 2000 Purfes with him, and the Journey coft near 300. While he was here, 150 Sheep were killed every Day for his Retinue. Our Author fays, the Basha fent for him with a Design to turn him out; but the Bey fufpecting it, came with a good Force and enter'd into an Agreement with the Beys of *Cairo*, to degrade the Basha if he did not give him an honourable Reception, which prevented the Basha for this time; but next Year he made War upon the Bey, who being forsaken by his *Arabs*, was taken and ftrangled. *Thevenot* adds, that this Bey kept 2000 Men to guard him at Home, and always took 3000 Horse with him when he went abroad.

Whilst *Thevenot* was here, an Ambaffador came from *Æthiopia* with Slaves, Civet, and other rich Presents, for the Grand Seignior; amongst the reft an Afs, which had fo delicate a Skin, that he almost questions whether it was natural. It had a black Lift down the Back, and on the reft of its Body were white and tawny Streaks an Inch broad apiece. Its Head was extraordinary long, ftriped and party-colour'd; its Ears like a Buffalo's, wide at the End, and black, yellow, and white, and its Legs were encompassed with Streaks like Garters; fo that our Author fays, no Lynx could be more exactly spotted, nor no Tyger more beautiful.

Thevenot adds, that when the Gr. Seignior's Revenue, which amounts to 600000 *Venetian* Chequins or 1500000 Piafters, comes down from the Castle to be fent to *Constantinople*, 'tis carried by the Guard of the *Sangiack* Bey with a mighty Train, viz. all his Servants well mounted, the *Saraf* Basha and his Son, 8 Clerks, and other Officers of the Custom-House, who have each a Caftan given them by the Basha; all the Chiaouxes with their great Turbans, the reft of the *Sangiacks* Servants, and 30 Mules loaden with the Treasure, guarded by feveral Janizaries walking by it, and above 2000 more marching two and two a little behind with Muskets and Sabres. Then comes the *Sangiack* Bey, attended with Men on Horfeback carrying Colours, the Musicians playing upon Flutes, Drums, Timbrels, and Trumpets, and in the Rear the *Sangiack's*

Family. Thus they march in admirable Order to *Constantinople*.

Thevenot fays, they begin their *Ramadan* or Lent there with a great Cavalcade, becaufe they fuppofe on that Night the Alcoran defcended from Heaven. The Streets are illuminated with Multitudes of Lamps hung on Iron Hoops, faften'd to Ropes acrofs the Streets. Every Hoop is 10 Paces from one another, and has 30 Lamps each. They have likewise many other Figures full of Lamps, and all the Towers of their Mosques are hung with them. The Streets are then crowded with People. The Cavalcade begins by a great many Santo's with Clubs and Torches in their Hands, attended with Multitudes of People carrying Links, dancing, finging and roaring, and in the Middle of them a Scheik on a Mule, whom they call the Chief or Horned Scheik. He is follow'd by the Acclamations of the People, Drums, Timbrels, &c. and a Rabble who carry Fire-works on long Poles. The Bey's Officers come afterwards on Horfeback with Harquebuffes, the Chiaoux and Janizaries with their Muskets and Scymiters, and after them the Sous-Basha and other Magiftrates, attended with Janizaries and Linkmen, and a Crowd of Santo's brings up the Rear with joyful Songs. The whole Cavalcade, fays our Author, is made up of a Company of Rogues, who when all is over break the Lamps in Pieces. During this Solemnity, the Shops are kept open all Night, efpecially Coffee-houses, in fome of which he fays he has feen 2000 Lamps.

Thevenot gives the following Account of the fetting out of the Caravan from hence to *Mecca*, with what they call *Mahomet's* Veff, being the Presents which are Annually fent by the Grand Seignior to *Mecca*. When the Time is come, the Presents are brought in great Pomp from the Castle to the Houfe of the Emir *Adge*, or Captain of the Pilgrims. They confift of feveral long Pieces of Crimfon Velvet embroider'd, with *Arabick* Letters in Gold, a great Pavilion of the fame carry'd on a Camel, a leffer one carry'd by a Man, 8 Pieces of Serge, and a Burden of Ropes. All thefe Things are carry'd by the chief Families, attended by the great Officers, Janizaries, &c. with Banners, Drums, Timbrels, and Multitudes of Santo's or frantick Bigots clad in Habits of feveral

several Colours, and making abundance of wry Faces, and other foolish Postures. Every one crowds to kiss or touch the sacred Pavillion and the other Presents. The Camels which carry 'em have very rich Trappings, and so many People come from *Constantinople*, &c. to go on this Pilgrimage, that our Author tells us the Caravan which he saw was said to consist of above 100000 Persons, and as many Camels, Horses, Mules, and Asses; tho' upon better Information, he found only 8000 Camels, and that 15000 is reckon'd a great Caravan. The Emir *Adge* has commonly 1500 to carry his own Baggage, and to sell or let to those who want. The Pilgrims from *Barbary*, *Fex* and *Morocco*, meet also here, make a distinct Caravan, and set out a Day after the other. They spend above a whole Year on the Journey, and commonly above one half die by the Way. There were many great Lords who attended this Caravan, and they had 6 Pieces of Cannon for their Defence. They travel only by Night. The Camels are ty'd Tail to Tail, and if they have not Moon-light, they carry Links. *Sandys* says, the Alcoran is carried upon one in a Precious Case, cover'd with Needle-work, and laid on a rich Pillow, surrounded with Priests, and that the Caravan is guarded by Soldiers, besides Field Pieces. *Tavernier* says, the Captain of the Caravan gains 200000 Crowns by the Journey. His Place is at the Disposal of the Basha of *Cairo*, and commonly purchased by the highest Bidder. He is also Master of the Waters which are carried into the Cisterns, and makes the Rich pay as he pleases for what they want. They set out from *Egypt* every Year in *October*. The Emir *Adge* has 300 Soldiers to guard them from the *Arabs*, who lie in wait in the Deserts to kill and rob all Travellers, and sometimes make the Pilgrims pay to save the Caravan from Plunder. Some of the Pilgrims go without Money or Provision, and live by begging. Every Pilgrim must furnish himself with Necessaries and Water, because there's none in the Road but at certain Stations. Before the Caravan sets out, the Pilgrims, Camels, and Waggon, pass in Review from the Basha's Castle without the Gates of the City, and go into a great Field, where they make themselves ready, and stay 7 or 8 Days, till all be come up. The Horse

march first; the Farriers, Bakers, Cooks, Sutlers, and other necessary Artificers, follow with their Camels: Then the Horses of the Emir *Adge*, some with Bottles full of Water, others with the Baggage, and two Camels harness'd in his Calash. They are followed by a great Number of others, some loaden, and others not. Then come the Camels of Persons of Quality, and a Multitude of Musketers and Pilgrims a-foot, follow'd by a fine Troop of Janizaries with Feathers in their Caps. The Captain and other Officers of the Caravan follow them with the Pavillion, carry'd by a Camel, which must never after bear any other Burden. The Rear is clos'd by a great Number of other Camels in extraordinary Equipage. They perform the Journey in 40 Days, and stay 20 at *Mecca* and *Medina*; and if longer, the Cheriff of *Mecca*, who retires to the Mountains at their coming with 10000 Horse and 20000 Foot, lest the *Turks* should betray and turn him out of his Territories, threatens to cut off their Water which comes down from those Mountains. The Grand Seignior presents him every Year with a Cuirass of Gold, and 150000 Ducats to his Brothers and Children; and in Return, this Prince sends him 100 Pieces of very fine Silk, and 3 or 4 Pounds of Balm. He also gives half a Pound to the Governor of *Cairo* and the Captain of the Pilgrims, and some to the Captains of the Caravans of *Damascus* and *Arabia Felix*.

We come now to give a more particular Account of the People of *Cairo*: Some reckon 15000 *Jews* here, and Multitudes who have no Houses, (but are forced to lie all Night in the Air.) *Leo* says, That in 1526 it contain'd but 8000 Families of Noblemen, Gentlemen, and Merchants. The Citizens are jolly, but apt to promise more than they perform. They never travel, and neglect all Arts and Sciences except the Law, the Students of which fill all their Colleges, but few of them attain to any Perfection. Their Women are so haughty, that they disdain to spin or dress Meat; so that except it be in great Families, they have their Victuals from Cooks-Shops, of which they say there are no less than 10000 in *Cairo*. Most of them carry Vessels about with them, and dress their Victuals as they go along. Their Wives have Liberty to

go abroad in their fine Apparel and rich Perfumes. They ride commonly upon Asses richly capparison'd, and led by a Boy, with several Footmen running by 'em. Their vulgar Discourse is very obscene, and they easily obtain a Divorce from their Husbands upon Complaint of their Impotency. He adds, that if any of the Artizans invent a new and ingenious Piece of Work, he is clad with Cloth of Gold, and carried in Triumph, attended with Musicians, from one Shop to another, and receives Money at every Place. *Sandys* says, that *Cairo* is inhabited by *Moors*, *Turks*, *Negroes*, *Jews*, *Copti's*, *Greeks*, *Maronites*, and poor *Armenians*. The latter work hard, live sparingly, and are not subject to the Turk. If taken in War, they are freed from Slavery, and pay no Tribute of Children as other Christians do, because an *Armenian* foretold the Greatness of *Mahomet*. The *Greeks* have a Monastery here belonging to Mount St. Catherine of *Sinay*. There are a great many Physicians here, because of the vast Quantity of Simples that grow in the Neighbourhood. *Coppin* says, that most of the Inhabitants are poor and exhausted by the Oppression of the *Turks*. *Leo* adds, that there's a Sect of *Moors* in this City call'd *Chenefia*, who live upon Horse-Flesh.

Thevenot tells us, that one of the chief Manufactures here is *Turkey* Carpets; and *Gemelli* says, they have excellent Silk-Weavers. *Leo* reports, that they have Plenty of all Provisions, and sell Chicken and other Fowls by a Measure like a Bushel. They hatch Chicken in Ovens of a moderate Heat in 7 Days time. *Sandys* says, that sometimes they put 6000 Eggs in an Oven, and turn them often, but that two Thirds are defective and monstrous. *Thevenot* tells us, that they put in 8000, and that they require 12 Days Time to hatch. The Ovens are, in a low Place, made of Earth, and the Bottoms cover'd with Tow or Flocks. They have 12 of these Ovens, in two Stories of three Ovens apiece on each Side, and there's a Passage betwixt them where the *Copti's* work, and Spectators stand to see them. *Coppin* says, 'tis about 6 Foot wide. They begin to heat them about the Middle of *February*, and continue while the Air is temperate almost 4 Months, in which Time they use above 300000 Eggs. They

lay the hot Ashes of Oxen and Camel's Dung, or the like, at the Mouth of each Oven, and change it for 10 Days together before they put in the Eggs. *Thevenot* says, they come little short of Pullets hatch'd by Nature, and that the like Experiment has been try'd in *Florence* and *Poland*. *Coppin* tells us, they place 4000 in 4 Ranks in the uppermost Story, and 3000 in 3 Ranks in the lowermost; and that there's a round Hole of about a Foot Diameter in the Middle of each Arch to let in Air to qualify the Heat, and another in the lowermost Arch stopped with Tow to prevent the Chickens from falling thro'. The Ovens, he says, are heated three times every 24 Hours, and the Dung is mix'd with Straw and Earth, and then dry'd in the Sun, which is the Firing commonly us'd by the Peasants, because Wood is very scarce in *Egypt*, and they have no Coal but what comes from *Cyprus* or *Phœnicia*. They use but 11 of the Ovens for the Eggs, and put the Chickens in the 12th, whence the Buyers carry them away in Cages. *Moncoys* says, the Ovens are of Brick, and consist of a long Gallery 3 Foot wide, and 8 or 9 in Height, with a sharp rais'd Arch, which has no Light but by little Holes at the Top. There are 10 or 12 little square arch'd Chambers 3 Foot high, and over them others of the same Fashion, with a Hole in the Middle of each, which is stopped up while the Fire burns. In the Bottom there's a great round Hole quite thro', which turns the Heat down into the Chamber underneath where the Eggs are. For the first Days, they put in Fire 4 times into the upper Chambers, where there are no Eggs, and they lay it on both Sides in Gutters made on purpose. After 10 Days, some of the Eggs are removed into the upper Chambers, and then they put in no more Fire. They make 4 Oven-fulls, which consist each of 80000 Eggs.

Coppin tells us, there are a great many Baths here and in the neighbouring Villages; some of them in Halls 15 Foot long, paved with white Marble, and furnished with Mats for the People to sit upon. The Windows are of Glass, dawb'd over with a thick Sort of Plaster to keep out the Air, and painted with various Colours. Those that go in are either shav'd, or use a Powder

der called *Rusma*, composed of a certain Mineral, and a Mixture of Lime, which makes the Hair fall off. They pay the Master two Medins, and as much to the Servants. Our Author says, that Brides have a Bath for themselves, to which they repair on their Wedding-Days in the Forenoon, in Company with 15 or 20 married Women, all mask'd, and feigning a Laughter, for which they are paid. They march very slowly to the Bath, and stay there all Day without seeing their Husbands, who go to another Bath in Company with Men. In the Evening the Streets thro' which they pass are illuminated with Lamps, and the Bride's Company renew their Laughter as they pass along. Every Man is at Liberty to take as many Wives as he can maintain, paying a Sum to the Parents. *Coppin* says, there are Barbers here who keep Shops, and others that walk the Streets, all of them excellent Shavers, and cut off a Man's Beard at two Strokes, tho' their Razors are none of the best. The Travelling Barbers carry a Looking-Glass, which they present to Passengers, that they may see whether they want shaving.

Leo says, one of their chief Diversions is the Dancing of Asses, Dogs, Goats, and Camels. They have Jugglers who carry Birds about in Cages, that after receiving a Fee, bring out a Scroll in their Beaks with the Person's Fortune, as they pretend. They have also Comedians, Fencing-Masters, &c. *Coppin* says, they play at Chess, Draughts, and the like Games, but never for much Money, so that they don't quarrel. They spend whole Days with a Pipe in their Mouth; and if Sleep overtakes them when at a Friend's House, they indulge themselves as freely as if at Home. In the great Street of *Cairo* there are Ropes ty'd to the Planks that lie across it, in which the Men swing like our Children. They delight much in Flutes, Violins, and a Sort of Guitar they call a Drum; but what they most admire is the Psaltery with 66 Cords.

He adds, that the Quality of the Inhabitants is known by the different Forms of their Turbans, and may be easily distinguished, tho' all of them are White except the Cheriffs, which are Green. There's a great many of these Cheriffs, because in the Families that go to *Mecca*, if a Woman

proves with Child during the Voyage, the Infant is reckoned a Cheriff, and a kin to *Mahomet*; but if any one marries a Female Cheriff, he may not wear a green Turban, but only a Piece of that Colour joined to his white one. The Women are distinguished by their Veils or Masks, as the Men are by their Turbans. Wives and Widows have them of black Crape, the Daughters of Persons of the best Rank of red Taffata, and the Poor have only a Piece of white or blue Linen. The Women of Quality always ride upon Asses, tho' they go never so little a Way, and they all paint the Nails of their Hands and Feet.

As for the Government of *Cairo*, *Leo* says there are 4 chief Judges that decide Causes of Importance, and 4 inferior Judges in every Street, who determine petty Quarrels. There are 4 Sects of *Mahometans* here, who, tho' they differ both in the Canon and Civil Law, are very kind to one another, and have each a subordinate Judge of their own, who inflicts severe Punishment upon such as transgress the Rules and Canons of their Religion. From those 4 Judges there lies an Appeal to the Governor of the Sect of *Essafchia*, who is the highest Judge of all. *Coppin* says, the ordinary Course of Justice is administred by the Cady. The *Turks* use no Writings in their Law-Suits, but summon and examine the Witnesses; and if it be for Civil Cases, as of Money lent, &c. the *Chiaoux* are sent to oblige the Debtor to pay it, and give 3 per Cent. over and above for the Trouble; and if the Money demanded be for the Sultan, he is bastinado'd upon the Soles of his Feet, or upon his Belly and Back. *Leo* says, Thieves are hanged here; that Murderers are cut thro' in the Middle, and the upper Part of the Body thrown into a Fire of unslak'd Lime: Others are flea'd alive, their Skin stuffed with Bran, and carried upon Camels thro' the Streets. He adds, that the Governor of the Prison pays the Creditors of insolvent Debtors, whom he sends bound in Chains, accompanied with Keepers, to beg from Door to Door, and allows them a sorry Maintenance out of the Alms. *Lucas* says, the Assizer of the Bread rides a Horseback in a black Robe, followed by 20 Janizaries with great Clubs, together with the Executioner, and a Man that carries the Weights

and Scales. When they find any Baker whose Bread is too light, they give him 2 or 300 Strokes upon the Soles of his Feet with a Cudgel, pierce his Nostrils with a Needle and Packthread, to which a Loaf is ty'd, bind his Hands behind him, and dawb his Face with Dirt. A great many Poor follow these Officers, because when a Baker is found using false Weights, they not only punish him, but throw all his Goods into the Street. The Regulation about Butchers Meat is much the same, only sometimes they nail the Offender's Ear to his Shop Door or Window, and so high, that the Tip of their Toes do but touch the Ground.

Coppin says, that when the Sangiack, or Bays of Egypt make a Voyage upon the Nile, they go in a Boat where there are several Chambers, adorned with a great many little Streamers of different Colours. There are two Boats on each Side, one with their chief Domesticks, and the other with Drums and Trumpets. After them come Boats full of Horses, their Kitchen-Ware, and their Tents; for tho' they go into Cities or Towns, they encamp, receive Visits, and manage all their Affairs without. Every one of these Sangiacks has 7 or 8 Tents near his own, which is much higher and larger than the rest, and has several Apartments, which are divided with Cloth wove of Cotton, and a Party colour'd Thread, which looks very agreeable. Coppin says, they grind Corn with an Engine made like a Harrow, with a great Number of Iron Wheels a Foot high, and drawn by two Oxen over the Place where the Corn is spread. He was told, that this Engine was formerly made use of to put the Christians to Martyrdom. He adds, that they have no Water or Wind-Mills, but that all are turned by Horses or Mules.

Coppin gives the following Account of some remarkable Curiosities which he saw here in the House of M. Bertier, a Native of Lyons, who made it his Business to collect the most valuable Rarities of Nature. In the Entry of the House there were several dead Crocodiles stuffed with Straw, and in a Court other live Crocodiles and Lizards. There were several Boxes with Air-holes full of Vipers and Serpents. At the Bottom of the Boxes there was a Lay of Earth to keep them fresh. There's a great

Chamber full of the Curiosities of the Deserts and the Red Sea, viz. several dry'd Animals, Stones of curious Colours mark'd with ancient Figures and Hieroglyphicks, and old Egyptian Images made of green Earth, fine Shells, Turquoises, and a great many other Precious Stones. In another Chamber there was a large Chest with 2 or 3000 live Scorpions. Over them there was another Sort of Animals with 4 Legs, which the Naturalists called his Hens. They were almost like Lizards, and as big as a Man's Shoe. They had a great Tail, cover'd with little Scales pointed like the Teeth of a Saw. He shew'd him also a Camelion, and a little dead Creature with the Head of a Cock, two Legs, and the Tail of a Serpent, which he said was the true Basilisk. He adds, that this Naturalist was sent for afterwards to Tuscany, where the Great Duke settled a Pension upon him of 200 Ducats. Moncenys says, he saw some Vipers here which had two little straight sharp Horns behind their Eyes, and a pretty Skin full of little sharp Scales of a red and greyish Colour.

Thervenot tells us, no People are more superstitious than those of Cairo, of which he gives us the following Instance: There's a great Burying-place on the River Side near Old Cairo, where the Cophiti's, Greeks, Turks, and Moors, fancy that every Holy Wednesday, Thursday and Friday, the Bones of the Dead come out of the Ground, and afterwards return to their Graves. At this Time the People of Cairo flock hither in great Numbers, and the Turks go in Procession with their Banners, because they say they have a Scheik interred there. Thervenot came hither at the same Time, and saw some Sculls and Bones lying about, which he was told were just come out of the Earth, but could see none of them move, and he believes they were only scatter'd there by the Santo's to colour the Notion, and thinks it may be rank'd with the Story of the Virgin Mary's Appearance on a certain Day of the Year in a Well at a Nunnery of the Cophiti's belonging to the Quarter of the Greeks.

Tho' we have already spoke of the Cophiti's in P. 52 and 57 of this Volume, yet it may not be amiss to give the following additional Account of their Worship from Moncenys, who saw it. The Priest who perform'd the

the Mass had on a dirty Surplice, and a white Woollen Scarf upon his Head, which hung down to his Feet. His Clerk had a Hood of the same, and was not above 12 Years old. Before he began, he plac'd a little round Loaf in a Silver Plate upon the Altar, and cover'd it with Sattin; then he pour'd a little Bottle of Wine into a great Silver Chalice set in a Cube of Wood, fill'd the same Bottle with Water, pour'd it out again into the Chalice, and afterwards cover'd it with a Piece of Sattin. He also cover'd both the Bread and Chalice with a Piece of Sattin spread over all the Altar. Then he went three times round with the Incense-Pan, and perfum'd the Elements before and behind; but the third time he shed no Incense, and only emptied the Wine, and said some Prayers. His Clerk sat over against him, leaning upon the Altar with a great deal of Irreverence, and playing with a Wooden Cross which he held in his Hand. Then he began Mass at the Choir-Gate, and going up to the Altar, went three times round again, repeating the Incense; after which he said some Prayers, and then went down to the People, touched them all by the Hand, and put his upon their Heads. Afterwards the young Clerk read an Epistle at the Choir-Gate, and the Priest said other Prayers, and then went down to the Choir-Gate, where he read the Gospel in the *Coptic*; as the Clerk did after him in *Arabic*. After some Prayers, the Creed was sung in the Tone almost of the *Roman* Church, striking at the same time with little Wooden Hammers upon a Table; then the Priest went again to touch the People as before; after which he perfum'd the Altar with Incense, washed his Hands, and then said a Prayer, wav'd his Hands over the Censer, and perfum'd them. Then he proceeded to Consecration, put his Finger upon the Bread and upon the Chalice, without the Elevation of either; and after having said some Prayers, and uncover'd the Elements, broke the Bread in 9 unequal Pieces, rejoin'd them again afterwards, and put a little of the middle Piece into the Chalice. He afterwards said some Prayers, and took out the Bit soak'd in the Wine, and with it sprinkled the other 8; during which the People said some Prayers, and kept Time with their little Hammers:

Then the Priest put one of the Bits upon his Left Hand, and eat it, gave another to an old blind Priest, and another to his Clerk. Afterwards he drank three times, and gave it to the Priest and the Clerk, for them to drink three times out of a Silver Spoon. Then there were 3 Infants brought to the Door of the Altar. He pretended to consecrate them, by taking a little Wine out of the Chalice with his Finger, and throwing it into their Mouths. This done, he communicated twice more, and gave the Priest and the Clerk to do the like afterwards. He rubbed the Chalice and Cover with his Fingers, put Water into the former two or three times, and emptied it into the Cover, wash'd his Hands and Face in it as often, and then drank it up, after giving the Priest and Clerk their Share. After the 3d time, while his Hands were wet, he went to the Door of the Choir, where there was a Crowd of People, and stroak'd their Faces. Then as he went out there was a Man at the Gate with a Basket full of little Loaves like the consecrated ones, who gave to every one a Part, after several had been carried to the Priest, who chose one to be consecrated. *Monconys* adds, that their Priests have no Revenues, but live by their Trades; that the *Copti's* never kneel, only sometimes stoop towards the Ground; that they eat and drink in their Churches; that they are seldom confessed, because of the severe Penances which are thereupon inflicted, viz. 7 Years Absence from the Church, and the like. *Lucas* says, they have a very fine Church here, built above the Chamber, where they say *Joseph*, *Christ*, and the Virgin, lodg'd two Years. The Passage to it is thro' an Alley on the Side of the Quire, and by some Steps down to it about two Foot wide. The Room it self is 20 Foot long, 10 broad, and very dark. At the Entrance of it there's a Stone, where they pretend the Virgin wash'd *Christ's* Linnen, and before it there's a kind of a little Oven, and a Place jutting out which serves for an Altar. In one Corner, between the Vault and the Stone-Wall, there's a great Piece of Wood, which the *Copti's* think to be *Noah's* Ark. Several *Franks* are interred in the Body of the Church. When any die at *Cairo*, they are brought hither at Day-break on a Litter without any great Ceremony.

mony. All the rest of their Nation repair some Hours after to the Church, and then the Funeral is performed by the Chaplains of the several Nations. *Lucas* adds, that the *Cophti's* take two Piasters for opening the Ground. *Coppin* says, the Greek Church is very high, built in the Manner of a Dome, and dedicated to St. George the Martyr. He adds, that there's a Convent joining to it of 100 Greek Nuns, who are not admitted till they are of a great Age. *Thevenot* says, 'tis very high, and full of Fleas.

We come now to the Suburbs: 1. *Bulac* lies two Miles W. on the Bank of the Nile, according to *Leo*, and contains 4000 Families, who trade chiefly in Oil, Corn, and Sugar. He adds, that here are many stately Temples, Palaces and Colleges. The best Houses lie along the River, where they have a noble Prospect of it, and of the Vessels upon it, which are about 1000 in the Autumn. 'Tis the Port for *Cairo*, and the Place where the Custom-House Officers for Goods imported from *Damiata* and *Alexandria* reside. *Sandys* says, every *Frank* at landing here pays a Dollar. *Monconys* mentions a Well here, call'd, *The Amorous Fountain*. The Basin of it he supposes to have been an ancient Sepulchre: It is cut every where with Figures, and very fine Hieroglyphicks. Within it there are 20 large Figures of Women, some of them with a Hog's Snout, Asses Ears, and Horns upon their Heads. Their Bodies are cover'd with Bandages, wrought with several Characters and Figures of Animals. The Basin is under a Vault of curious Workmanship, and the Natives fancy that the Water of it drank 3 Saturdays before the Sun rises cures the Passion of Love. Our Author is of Opinion, that these Figures were Idols, cut by Order of some Person of Quality, whose Tomb this was; for had it been originally designed for a Fountain, he does not see why it should have been oval on one Side, and square on the other, nor why the Bottom of it should have been carv'd with Figures. He also saw here two great Vessels of white Marble in one of those common Cisterns, which are Places pay'd with Marble of several Colours, and shut up with Grates towards the Streets, so as Passengers may take Water up with a Ladle. *Gemelli* says, this Suburb is two Miles long, one

broad, and contain'd above 50000 People in 1691.

2. *Old Cairo*. *Thevenot* says, 'tis a quarter of a League from the New, and separated by Fields. It stands upon the River over against ancient *Memphis*. 'Tis ruinous, tho' it has several good Houses well inhabited. Our Author says, that at the Greek Church here before-mention'd, dedicated to St. George, they pretend to have one of his Arms in a dark Place, with two great Iron Gates before it one over another, where there's a Lamp always burning; and that there's a great Pillar in it with an Iron Chain fasten'd to it, which they say was that Saint's, and they now tie Madmen to it to be cured. In this Part of *Cairo*, according to *Thevenot*, lie certain spacious Halls, which are supposed to be the ancient Granaries built by *Joseph*. He adds, that Corn is still kept in them, and that there are the Ruins of an ancient Palace over against them, which they pretend was the ancient Residence of the Kings of *Egypt*. There's an Aqueduct near it, supported by 350 Arches, that carries the Nile Water to the Castle. He adds, that they ascend to it by 30 or 40 broad Steps, and that there are 8 Engines at the Top turned by Oxen, that discharge the Water into the Basin, from whence it runs thro' a little Conduit-Pipe into the Aqueduct. The *Moors* say, there's a Talisman here against the Crocodiles, so that they never pass beyond it; but *Thevenot* denies this, and says there are some at *Rossetto*, *Damietta*, and in the Way to *Cairo*. *Coppin* says, the best Houses are upon the Bank of the Nile. *Dapper* says, it has no Walls; and *Bellonius*, that 'tis only a miserable Village, inhabited by a few Greek and Armenian Christians. *De la Val* thinks it to be the *Babylon* of *Egypt*. It contains several Temples; amongst the rest that of St. Barbe, where they pretend to shew hers and other Relicks; and that of St. George, which stands upon a Hill, from whence there's a delightful Prospect of both *Cairo's*. *Gemelli* makes this two Miles and a half from New *Cairo* on the Right Side of the Nile, and says, the *Cophti* have 5 Churches here, but that there are not above 3000 Souls in it. He adds, that *Joseph's* Granaries are a Mile round, encompassed with a Wall, and divided into 14 large Squares open to the Air.

He says, the Ruins of Old Cairo extend for several Miles.

3. *Caraffa, Carusa, or Massar.* Leo and Dapper say, 'tis two Leagues from Great Cairo; that it contain'd 2000 Houses, and was 7 Miles in Compass; that there are several stately Tombs, which the People worship, and cover with Carpets, &c. together with fine Arches, Pictures, and Statues; and that 'twas formerly the Residence of the Sultans, but 'tis now in Ruins.

4. *Mitrulhetich*, an ancient unwall'd City, says Leo, built upon the Side of the Nile by *Hamre*, General to *Homare* the Mahometan Patriarch, and the first that the Mahometans built in Egypt. It contains 5000 Families, and is adorned with the great Temple of *Hamare*, besides several Palaces and Noblemen's Houses. There's a Custom-House here for all Goods imported from *Sahid*, and the famous Sepulchre of *Nafissa*, a Mahometan Woman, who came to live here from *Cusu* in *Arabia Felix*, where her Family was deprived of the Mahometan Patriarchship; for which Reason, and the rather because they pretend she was a-kin to *Aly Mahomet*, she was canonized for a Saint; and when the schismatick Patriarchs of her Family master'd Egypt, they built her a noble Tomb, and adorned it with Silver Lamps, &c. All the Mahometans here offer once a Year to her Shrine, and no Stranger comes to Cairo without making her a Present. These Oblations, says Leo, amount to 100000 *Sarafis* a Year, and are given partly for the Relief of Mahomet's poor Relations, and partly for the Maintenance of the Priests who attend there. When *Selim* master'd Cairo, he took out of this Sepulchre the Total of a Year's Offerings in ready Money, besides Silver Lamps, Chains, Carpets, &c. Near this Place are several stately Tombs of the Soldans, with lofty Arches, from which one of the late Soldans has made a Walk, inclos'd by two high Walls leading to the City-Gate, with high Turrets at each End, rais'd on purpose to direct the Merchants that come from the Port of Mount *Sinay*. Dapper says, 'tis also called *Bebzuaila* from the Gate of that Name, where it begins; that it contains 2000 Houses, and extends from that Gate on the W. to the S. a League and a half, and from the N. to the Suburbs of *Bebelloch* a League. Leo distinguishes *Mi-*

fulhetich from *Bedzuaila*, and says, the latter contains 12000 Families, and that many of its Inhabitants kept Shops in the City as well as there. 'Tis adorned, says our Author, with a noble Castle, so strong, that the Garrison has often pretended to hold out against the City, and the Soldan's Castle which is but a Bow-shot off. It stands upon the Side of the same Hill, is surrounded with lofty impregnable Walls, and contains very fine Palaces, pav'd with choice Marble; the Roofs and Windows gilded and painted, and their Gates neatly carv'd and beautified with Gold and Azure; but they have been in Ruins since the Conquest by *Selim*.

5. *Gemethailon.* Leo says, 'twas built before Cairo by *Taylon* Governor of Egypt, and subject to the Caliph of *Bagdat*, who left the old City, and adorned this Quarter with an incomparable Palace and Temple. He adds, that 'tis inhabited by a great many Merchants and Tradesmen, especially the *Barbary Moors*. Dapper says, it extends from the W. to the Ruins of Old Cairo.

6. *Bebelloch* or *Bedelloch.* Leo says, it lies a Mile from the Walls of Cairo, contains almost 3000 Families, and is adorned with a great Palace and a stately College. When the Mahometan Worship is over, the common People of Cairo, with the Whores and Bawds, resort to this Place, as do the Stage-Players, those who teach Camels, Dogs and Asses to dance, Jugglers, Fencing-Masters, and Ballad-Singers. Dapper says, here are all Sorts of Artificers.

7. *Matharea* or *Amalthria.* Sandys says, 'tis 5 Miles N. E. of Cairo, and that in the Road to it there's Sand cast upon the Earth to moderate its Fruitfulness. Here they say the Virgin *Mary* and *Joseph* rested in their Flight from *Herod*, and being thirsty, a Fountain broke out to relieve them. There's a Well surrounded with a Mud-Wall, whose Water is drawn up by Buffaloes into a little Cistern, from whence it runs into a Laver of Marble in a small Chappel, which is now spoil'd by the Moors. In the Wall there's a hollow Place where the Monks say Mass: 'Tis wainscotted with sweet Wood, and perfumed with Incense, of which some carry away Bits as Relicks, and at the Bottom there's a Porphyry Stone, on which they say the Virgin set our Saviour;

viour; but *Coppin* thinks it not so ancient. This is the only Well whose Water is fit for drinking (says our Author) in all *Egypt*, and 'tis so excellent, that the *Basha* will not taste any other. Some say it cures Agues. If they forbear drawing it for some Time, it sends forth a Stream enough to drive a Mill. It runs into an Orchard, where there's a large Fig-Tree, which bears Fruit every Year, and is called *Pharaoh's*. They say, it open'd to receive our Saviour and the Virgin, and clos'd upon them till their Pursuers were past, and then divided again to let them out, in which Form it continued till 1656, that *Thevenot* says the Piece which was separated from the Trunk was broken off. There's a large Hole in the stooping Part of it, which they say no Bastard can tread in without being stuck fast. This *Coppin* rejects as fabulous. They cut the Wood of it, because 'tis supposed to be of sovereign Vertue. This Orchard was destroyed by the *Turks*; but they lay it on the *Jews*. The only Balm-Plant in *Egypt* grows within an Inclosure here. 'Twas transported from *Judea* in *Herod's* Time by *Antoninus's* Command, at *Cleopatra's* Desire. Others say, 'twas brought hither out of *Arabia Felix* at the Charge of one of the *Turkish* Sultans. *Leo* says, this Garden is inclos'd by a strong Wall, and that no body must enter it without Leave from the Governor; and that the Balm-Tree grows in the Middle of a large Fountain, having a short Trunk, and Leaves like Vine Leaves, but not so long. They say, that if the Water of the Fountain should be diminished, the Tree would die. He adds, that this Garden stands about a Mile and a half from the Soldans Tombs before-mentioned. *Thevenot* says, this is a very pleasant Place. There's a Hall in the Garden almost square, which was formerly a Grotto. They say, that the Virgin *Mary* us'd to wash her Linen in the Well. Some think the Water of it comes from the *Nile*; but *Thevenot* takes it to be a Spring, not only because they that live there say so, but because when the *Nile* Water is thickest, this is always clear. He adds, that *Matarich*, from whence the Name is derived, signifies fresh Water or a Spring. He says, there's a Walk in the Garden shaded with a great many Orange and Lemon Trees, and water'd by Channels. There's

a fine Obelisk near it, where many think there was formerly a Town, because there are several Ruins. Here *Selim* encamped when he took *Cairo*, and the Works which he cast up are still to be seen. *Thevenot* adds, that betwixt this Place and the City there's a Building which they call the Arsenal of the *Red Sea*; but he gives no other Account of it. *Coppin* says, that *Matharea* stands 7 or 8 Miles from Old *Cairo*, and a little more than 4 from the New. The Passage to it by Water is dangerous, because of many Robbers who scour the River in little Boats. There's the Ruins of an ancient Chappel here with 4 Walls, and its Roof still standing. The *Franks* often dine in the Walks of the Garden, and the *Basha* comes hither frequently for his Diversion, and both the Christians and *Mahometans* perform some Religious Worship here; but the former take an Opportunity to come hither in the *Basha's* Absence. Some think this the ancient *Hermopolis*. *Dapper* says, the *Turks* have a Mosque here.

8. *Deziza* or *Geziza*. *Coppin* says, 'tis a little Town a League from the Quarter of the *Franks* at *Cairo*, lies on the W. Bank of the River, is about half a Mile long, and has a fine Street that goes from one End to the other. The *Sangiack's* House on the Bank of the River is remarkable for its Largeness. There's abundance of Shops with Commodities for ordinary People, and Foreigners send hither to buy up Linen, Hides, and Saffron, which is brought hither from a Village called *Abounombrous*, i. e. The Father of Saffron. They pretend the Prophet *Jeremy* is bury'd in this Town. As soon as one comes without the Walls of this Town, they see the Pyramids. *Lucas* says, 'tis about a Mile round, and 6 Miles from the Pyramids.

9. *Michias*, on the Isle of *Measures* over against Old *Cairo*. *Leo* says, it lies in the Middle of the River, is well inhabited, contains about 500 Families, and at one End of it there's a stately Palace and a fine Temple. On the other Side there's a lone House belonging to the *Basha*, with a square Cistern 18 Cubits deep, into which the Water of the *Nile* is convey'd by a Sluice under Ground. There's a Pillar in the Middle of it, divided by Marks into 18 Cubits, where some Officers are set to observe the daily

daily Increase of the *Nile*, and the Measure is proclaim'd by Boys with yellow Scarfs on their Heads, who are rewarded every Day by all Sorts of Persons while that Service lasts. 'Tis observ'd, that if the Water rise to the 15th Cubit of the Pillar, a plentiful Year ensues; if it stop betwixt the 12th and 15th, they expect but a sorry Crop; if betwixt the 10th and 12th, they reckon Corn will be sold at 10 Ducats *per* Bushel; but if it rise to the 18th, the too great Inundation causes an extreme Scarcity; and if it rise above the 18th, they expect an universal Inundation, and betake themselves to Prayers and Alms, and the Boys directed to proclaim the daily Increase are order'd to bid the People fear God. The Price of Victuals and Corn is adjusted by the Clerk of the Market according to these Signs when the Inundation is over; after which they solemnize this Adjustment all over *Cairo* with great Feasts. *Lucas* says, there's a Chamber in the House where the Sultan lodged: 'Tis still furnished with Moveables belonging to the Sultan, and the *Turks* are shy of suffering any body to enter it, because they have a great Veneration for it. There's a Sort of Marble Talisman here resembling a Crocodile in *Relievo*, with several Signs of the Zodiack and other Hieroglyphicks, which they say hinders the Crocodiles from passing any further that Way. However that be, *Lucas* says, that there are none seen below this Wall.

10. *Alcanica*. *Baumgarten* says, in his Time 'twas a large populous City, but without any Fortification, and lay in the Desert, two Miles from *Cairo*, near the *Nile*. He adds, that there's a Monastery of the *Greeks* here, who us'd to send Provisions to that of Mount *Sinay*.

11. *Chanca* or *Chanfa*. *Leo* says, 'tis 6 M. from *Cairo*, upon the Road to Mount *Sinay*, at the Entry of a Desert. 'Tis adorned with stately Houses, Temples, and Colleges. The Fields betwixt this and *Cairo* abound with Dates; but from hence to Mount *Sinay*, which is 140 M. there's no inhabited Place. There are two great Roads, one to *Syria*, and the other to *Arabia*, thro' this City. It has no Water but what is left in some Channels after the Inundation of the *Nile*; and when they are broke down, the Water runs out into the Plains, where it forms many

small Lakes, and from thence is convey'd by Sluices into the Cisterns of the City. *Dapper* says, 'tis now ruin'd by the Wars.

12. *Sacara* or *Sakara*, the Village of the Mummies formerly mention'd, lies three Leagues from the Pyramids, according to *Thevenot*, who says he lodg'd here on a rising Ground in the Middle of a Court belonging to the House, where the People detain'd him and his Companions till they paid Money for watching them, tho' they did not require them to do so. He says, there's no avoiding this but by lying in the open Fields, which is very dangerous, because the People are great Robbers.

13. *Giza* or *Ciza*, on the other Side of the *Nile*, over against *Cairo*. *Gemelli* says, 'tis the Head of a Government, and famous for several Pleasure-Houses built here by the *Mameluck* Princes. *Dapper* says, it borders upon that of *Fium*. The Soil is good; but the Situation so low, that when the *Nile* rises 20 Foot, it overflows it. It produces abundance of Flax and Corn, and maintains great Herds of Cattle. The *Sanfons* say, it contains 164 Villages.

Thevenot gives this further Account of the remarkable Places betwixt *Cairo* and *Suez*, and on the Road to *Jerusalem*; 1. *Hianque*, a little Town, and the first Stage of the Caravans of *Jerusalem* in their Way from *Cairo*. 2. *Bulbeyd* or *Belbes*, the 2d Stage. The Way of Travelling here is in Panniers upon the Backs of Camels. 3. *Salahia*, noted for pleasant Woods of Tamarisk in the Neighbourhood. He says, there are several good Towns and Villages in this Road. Betwixt this and *Catie*, *Thevenot* passed a large Bridge, under which runs the Water of the *Mediterranean*, that is left upon the Country after Inundations, as he was told by the Inhabitants; but he rather supposes it to be the Lake *Sirbonitis*. 4. *Catie*, on the Frontiers of *Idumea*, the Residence of a *Cachef*, who has several Towns and Villages under his Jurisdiction. This is also a Stage for the *Jerusalem* Caravans. *Dapper* says, the Divan of *Grand Cairo* excludes it out of the Number of *Cassiffs*, because it only serves for the Defence of 3 Castles. The Territory is unfruitful and sandy, and *Thevenot* says full of Quickfands. There are several other *Cassiffs* subject to the *Cassiff* of this Place. *Thevenot* says, he saw long Pits full

of white Salt in this Country, which is made by Rain, that settles in Pools among the Sand. He takes Notice also of a Well dug in this Road by an Aga on his Journey to *Constantinople*, out of Charity to supply Travellers. 'Tis cover'd with a Dome, supported by 4 Walls of Free-stone, and built square. It is enter'd by two Doors one against another, with 4 or 5 Steps. The Cistern is cover'd with Free-stone, except in two Places, big enough to let down Buckets to draw up the Water. He left a Fund to maintain it, and 'tis continually supplied by *Arabs*, who bring fresh Water to it on Camels. *Riche* is a Village in this Jurisdiction not far from the Sea, with a Castle and Houses well built with Stones; and they have so many lovely ancient Marble Pillars, that their Coffee-houses and Wells are made with them, and their Burying-place is full of them. *Cauniones* is such another Village, abounding with Marble Pillars, with a fair Castle, a Garrison of *Turks*, and a noble Well. They have Store of Pasture and Cattle in the Neighbourhood. This our Author says is the farthest Place of *Egypt* towards *Idumæa*.

The 2d chief City of *Middle Egypt* is *Suez*. *Moll* places it about Lat. 30. Long. 54. on the Corner of the *Red Sea*, and on the Frontiers of *Arabia Petraea*, 80 Miles E. from *Cairo*. *Marmol*, who makes it 22 Leagues from thence, says, it stands on a sandy Ground, and has no Water but what is brought upon Camels from Salt Wells about two Leagues distant. They had formerly a Canal which supply'd them with Water from the *Nile*, but the *Arabians* have fill'd it up. There are the Ruins of ancient Walls and an old Castle, and the Natives say 'twas a great City till ruin'd by the Successors of *Mahomet*. He adds, that 'tis inhabited only by some Ship-Carpenters, who work for the Grand Seignior, and have the Materials from *Turkey*. The Port is capable of 25 Gallies. *Coppin* says, all Provisions are scarce. The Castle is the Residence of a Sangiack, who has a small Garrison here. There are Arches, under which the Gallies retire in a stormy Season. By these Gallies, the Turk makes himself Master of all the Ports on the *Red Sea* that belong'd to *Prete-Jan*. This was a Place of great Trade before the Passage to the *East-*

Indies was discover'd by the Cape of *Good Hope*, and that Merchants were discourag'd by the great Imposts which the *Turks* laid on their Goods. *Theravenot* says, 'tis a little Town of about 200 Houses. The Road is safe, but the Harbour so shallow, that Gallies must be half unloaded before they can enter it. Those Gallies are very little, and carry no Guns, but only a Patereroe. Close by the Harbour there's a Barrack rail'd in with Palisadoes, where there are 9 Culverins, one longer than another, the biggest of a prodigious Length, and much longer and wider than the two famous ones at *Malta*. They have also 13 Pieces of very large Cannon, but none of them mounted. They were sent hither by Sultan *Amurath* when he designed an Expedition from hence to the *East-Indies*. *Theravenot* adds, there are some good Houses in *Suez*, a large Market-place, and a Greek Church. The Town is pretty populous when Ships arrive, but at other times almost desolate. When he was here, there was 30000 Load of Coffee, each Load being 3 or 4 Hundred Weight. 'Tis transported to *Cairo* by Camels. *Monconys* says, that most of the Inhabitants are Greek Christians, and that the Sea runs about a League further up into the Plain by a narrow Canal, which is almost dry at Ebb. The Town lies in the Nature of an Isthmus, and has two Harbours, but both sorry. The Vessels they build here are very indifferent. The Planks are sew'd together with coarse Thread of Palm Tree, and pitch'd without and within. Instead of Anchors, they use great Stones. They pretend the Reason is because the Sea abounds with Rocks of Adamant, but he believes they want Iron. The Sea is about a quarter of a League broad here, and he thinks, with most other Authors, that this Town is the ancient *Ar-sinoë*. *Marmol* says, that a League further lies *Pharaoh's Point*, from whence the *Isralites* passed the *Red Sea*, or as others say at *Corondoko*, which *Marmol* says is 20 Leagues further. He makes *Tor*, which we describ'd P. 193 in *Asia*, the utmost Limit of *Egypt* on the Side of *Arabia*; to which we shall add from *Marmol*, that it is the chief Town on all this Coast for Trade, Buildings, and Politeness, and is inhabited chiefly by *Jacobites*. The People of this Country say, that *Moses* passed the *Red Sea* here. Some think

think it the ancient *Elam*, because the Gulph before it is called *Sinus Elamiticus*. *Ovington* seems to incline to their Opinion who fix the Passage of the *Israelites* about *Tor*, which some place in *Arabia*, and others in *Egypt*. The Passage he says lies 40 or 50 Miles from the Head of the *Red Sea*, is not above 15 Miles broad, and the Mid-Channel about 35 Fathom deep. The *Sanfons* extend this Coast 460 Miles from *Suez* to *Buga* on the Side of *Ethiopia*, and *Moll* almost 550. *Ovington* says, the Shore is very steep, except that Part thro' which the Children of *Israel* travelled, which is a very fine Descent of about 8 or 9 Miles to the Sea, with impassable Mountains on each Side, which are called *Pharaoh's Hills*.

3. *Fium*. *Moll* places it on the W. Side of the *Nile*, on a Stream which runs from that River, and forms the Lake *Ker* in Lat. 29. Long. 52. 60 Miles S. of *Cairo*. The *Sanfons* make the Long. 34. and the Distance from *Cairo* 45 Miles. Some think 'twas built by the Children of *Israel* in the Time of the *Pharaohs*. *Dapper* says, 'tis the Capital of a Cassiliff of its own Name betwixt those of *Benesuef* and *Giza*, which is said to contain 300 or 360 Villages, and abounds in Flax and Fruit, especially Grapes.

U P P E R E G Y P T, including the Coast of the Red Sea,

IS bounded on the N. with *Middle Egypt*, on the E. with the *Red Sea*, on the S. with *Ethiopia*, and on the W. with the Deserts of *Lybia* and *Barca*. The *Sanfons* extend it from Lat. $22\frac{1}{2}$. to Lat. $28\frac{1}{2}$. 346 Miles in Length, and 265 Miles towards *Ethiopia* where broadest, from whence the Breadth declines gradually to 153 towards *Middle Egypt*. It was anciently called *Thebais*, and now *Sahid*. *Du Plissis* says, 'tis very mountainous and barren, except in some Parts about the *Nile*, where there's a great deal of Corn in the Time of the Inundation. The ancient *Anachorets* retired formerly into the Deserts of this Country. The *Sanfons* say, 'tis shut in with two Ridges of Mountains on the E. and W. which run the whole Length of the Country. It contains 5 Cassiliffs, viz. *Ebensuef*, *Manfelout*, and *Girgio*, W. of the *Nile*, and

Minio and *Cherkeffi* to the E. *Coppin* differs from the *Sanfons*, and extends this Part of *Egypt* from *Grand Cairo* to *Syena* or *Asna*, 420 Miles in Length. He praises it for its Fruitfulness in Corn and Pulse, and other Fruits. No Vines are suffer'd to grow there, (tho' our Author says the Ground would bear them if they were planted) which he ascribes to *Mahomet's Law*, and was told there were some formerly here, which the Grand Seignior order'd to be plucked up, and forbid to be replanted, because a *Basha* was murder'd by some *Espahins* and *Chiaoux*, who were drunk with it.

Lucas, who travelled up the *Nile* as far as the Cataracts, and back again to *Cairo*, gives us an Account of the chief Places upon it as follows:

1. *Benisuef*, *Benisuaït*, or *Benesuees*, on the E. Side of the *Nile*, 80 Miles S. of *Cairo* according to *Moll*, or above 90 according to the *Sanfons*. *Gemelli* says, 'tis the ancient *Hermopolis*, and that there are still many Ruins of old Buildings. *Abulfede* thinks *Mercury* had a Temple here, and a Statue embracing that of *Venus*, and that it was governed by the *Greeks*, till destroyed by the *Mahometans*. *Lucas* places it almost 30 French Leag. from *Cairo*, and says, 'tis a very pretty Town, but that 'tis dangerous sailing on the *Nile* here, because of the strong Currents. 'Tis the Capital of a Cassiliff, which the *Sanfons* make 84 Miles from N. to S. and 109 from E. to W.

2. The Convent of *Pullys*, on a Mountain upon the E. Side of the *Nile*, 42 French Leag. and a half from *Cairo*. *Lucas* says, 'tis so called because they drew up the *Nile* Water there with Pullies, and was told that 'tis the same Place whose Inhabitants, *Strabo* says, had Engines to draw up the River Water, and employ'd Slaves in the Work.

3. *Bemasem* or *Benesalem*. *Lucas* places it on the same Side of the River, 47 Leagues and a half from *Cairo*. He says, 'twas inhabited a Year before he came hither by a great many *Arabs*, and was full of Walks of Palm-Trees; but because they committed great Robberies, and would not be govern'd by the *Basha* of *Cairo*, he sent Troops, who cut down the Palm-Trees, put most of the Inhabitants to Death, forc'd the rest to fly, and beat down their Houses, so that now there are not above 10 or 12 Families

in the Place; yet (says our Author) they rob still. From hence he took a Walk to the Mountain, where he saw several Mummy Grotto's cut out of the Rock, and finely painted within, especially a great square one, where were five Pits, and at the Bottom of each Side two great Closets, with Pits in both. Between the Doors are three large Figures of Mummies cut out of the Mountain. That in the Middle is the largest and highest, has a Sort of Coronet upon its Head, and leans with its two Hands on the Shoulders of the other two. The Figures painted upon this look fresher than the others. They stand each upon a Pedestal of white Marble 15 Foot long, and 4 broad. The Paintings represent the *Egyptian* Idols, some with the Heads of Birds, others with those of Dogs, Oxen, and the like. The Cieling is adorned with all Sorts of Hieroglyphicks in *Basso Relievo*. Underneath there's a Representation of the *Nile*, with Boats carrying Mausoleums, and in the Center one which exceeds the rest in Size and Grandeur, as if it carried the embalmed Corps of some Person of greater Rank than ordinary; and under the Picture of the River there's an Inscription round the whole Grotto, within two Foot of the Pavement. He enter'd several other Grotto's with different Paintings like Landskips. He observ'd, that most of these Paintings are done upon Plaister, and that in several of those Grotto's there are abundance of twisted Columns, which seem designed rather for an Ornament than a Support. He saw above 30 of these Grotto's, and in some of them Serpents which fled at the Sight of him and his Companions. The Declivity of the Mountain is full of the like Pits, and abundance of large Figures representing Mummies and Sphinxes; but they are all overturn'd.

4. *Ansola*, about 104 Miles S. of *Cairo*, on the same Side of the *Nile*, at the Foot of the Mountain. *Lucas* says, 'twas anciently a great Town, but now a Village, with the Ruins of Temples, Columns, &c. one of the latter resembling that of *Pompey* at *Alexandria*, and as fine. On the Top there's a Coffin supported by 4 Balls on a Chapter of white Marble.

5. *Beedi*, lies over against it on the other Side the River. *Lucas* says, 'tis inhabited

only by *Cophti's*, as is the Neighbourhood for two Leagues round. They say, the *Turks* attempted to build a Mosque here, but could not finish it, nor live here a Year to an end. The *Cophti's* ascribe it to the Relicks of the Martyrs who were cut off in such Numbers about this Place, that wherever one digs they find Bones. Five French Leagues to the S. *Lucas* places *Meloue*, which he says is a very pretty Town.

6. *Minio*, about 45 French Leagues from *Cairo* according to *Lucas*. *Dapper* says, 'tis the Capital of a Cassiliff of its own Name, E. of the *Nile*, over against those of *Girgie* and *Manfaluth*. 'Tis of a great Extent, and commands 104 Villages, but is thinly inhabited. The Country is higher than the *Nile*, so that the River must rise 22 Foot and a half to overflow it, for which Reason half of the Province lies uncultivated, and the Product here is Corn, Fennel, and Cummin. The *Sanfons* place a Town of this Name on the E. Side of the *Nile*, Lat. 25 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 61 $\frac{3}{4}$. 250 Miles S. of *Cairo*.

7. *Manflota*, *Manfloth*, *Manfalu*, *Manfolout*, or *Manfaluth*, 170 Miles S. of *Cairo* according to the *Sanfons*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a very large and ancient Town, and lies over against *Fium* in an Island of the *Nile*. 'Twas founded by the *Egyptians*, destroy'd by the *Romans*, and rebuilt by the *Mahometans*, but not in its ancient Lustre. There are abundance of large high Columns, and magnificent Porches of a Temple here, with Inscriptions in *Egyptian* Verse; and near the *Nile* there's the Ruins of a very great Structure, where Medals of Gold, Silver, and Lead, are found, with Hieroglyphicks on one Side, and Figures of the ancient Kings of *Egypt* on the other. *Leo* says, the adjacent Country is fruitful, but the Heat very scorching. It is much infested with Crocodiles, which he supposes obliged the *Romans* to desert it. *Marmol* says, that in the Time of the Caliphs they dug up a Crocodile of Lead, with Hieroglyphicks, which was a Talisman against the Crocodiles. *Dapper* says, 'tis the Head of a Jurisdiction, containing 217 Villages. *Lucas* makes it a little above 140 Miles S. from *Cairo*, and says, 'tis the first Town of Consequence in *Upper Egypt*. 'Tis a pretty wall'd Town, and all its Streets are cover'd above. The Inhabitants drive a great Trade in making Cloth. There's

There's abundance of *Cophti's* here, who have several Churches on both Sides the *Nile*, but are allow'd none in the City. He adds, that there's a Custom-House here. *Lucas* says, he was taken for a Conjuror at this Place, because he enquir'd after ancient Medals; so that to avoid the Danger, he was obliged to call himself a Doctor, and then he was almost crowded to Death by the People, who came to see him for Medicines, and to feel their Pulse. The *Sansons* make it the Capital of a Cassiliff, 60 Miles from N. to S. and 107 from E. to W. *Lucas* says, the Mountain on the other Side the River, which runs along the Country, is 600 Miles in Length, as straight as a Wall, and full of Grotto's, some of which are shut up with Doors of Stone.

8. *Abouhihe*, or *Bouhihe*, above 90 French Leagues from *Cairo*, and on the same Side of the *Nile* as *Manfala*. He says, 'twas formerly a great Town, but now only a Village. The People of this Country are dextrous Swimmers, but such Thieves, that they watch their Opportunity to board that Part of a Vessel which is least guarded, snatch up what comes next, and then dive under Water with it. *Lucas* adds, that about 5 Leagues to the S. W. lies *Cardouffe*, where they make Powder.

9. *Taata*, on the same Side of the *Nile*, an unwall'd Town, almost 100 French Leagues from *Cairo*. He says, it stands about half a Mile from the River, is full of Palm and other Trees, and at the Top of almost every House there's a Dove-House full of Pigeons, which he observ'd in most of the chief Towns betwixt this City and *Cairo*. At all the Towns and Villages betwixt this Place and the Cataracts, Strumpets are plac'd at the Avenues to accommodate Travellers gratis, and he says he was told that there are Places endow'd for their Maintenance, that they may have no Occasion to be mercenary. They sell a Sort of Drink for 2 d. a Pot which they call *Booz*. 'Tis made of Corn, and is like Beer, but thicker. The Rich think it an Act of Devotion to settle some Land, &c. before they die upon these Girls. When they are brought to Bed of a Boy, the Mother is obliged to bring him up till 3 or 4 Years old, and then he is carried to the Father's House, where he is treated as a Slave; but they keep the Girls

to supply the Necessity of other Villages. The Houses here are but one Story. The Governor's looks handsome, but is of Earth as well as all the rest, and the ordinary Treat of the Country is a Pipe and a Dish of Coffee. When they receive a Letter from a Friend, they put it up to their Head before they open it, in Token of Respect. In the Neighbourhood of this Town there are several broken Pillars of Granate, &c. adorn'd with Hieroglyphicks, and the Ruins of several Palaces and Temples. There are blind Serpents in these Parts, for whose Sting there's no Antidote. About an Hour's Walk from hence there's the Ruins of a Christian Church, with a very fine Porch, supported with beautiful Columns of grey Marble, and in the Inside there are 14 other great ones. There are so many other Ruins here, that it seems to have been formerly a large Town. There are several Stones marked with Inscriptions in the ancient Egyptian Character. The People here are grossly ignorant of every thing but their Business and Religion. They say, there's a Serpent in a Grotto on the other Side the *Nile* of which they report many strange Stories, particularly that if it is cut into Pieces, they all join again, and that it transforms it self into another Shape when Women are there; but our Author, who saw the Serpent, thinks the Story ridiculous. He says, the Grotto is about a quarter of an Hour's Walk in the Country. The Entrance is thro' a great Gate. On the Right and Left are two Tombs of a Sort of Wood that never rots. He saw other Grotto's here painted and adorned with Mummy Figures like those before described, together with Temples and Columns half ruined, and 5 considerable Pyramids in the Way to

10. *Aquemin* or *Ackemin*, almost 20 French Leagues S. E. of *Taata*, on the other Side of the *Nile*, and about 110 from *Cairo*. *Gemelli* says, the Greeks call'd it *Oxyringus*; that 'twas a Bishoprick, and the 2d City in *Egypt*, built by *Hermes* the Philosopher. *Lucas* says, it stands on a rising Ground about a Mile from the River, is a very fine Town, and has two Markets a Week in the great Street; but the Houses are all of Earth, and ill contriv'd. Their Pigeon-Houses at Top are built in Form of a square Tower, with red and white Battlements. Their Dwelling

Dwelling-Houses are but one Story high. On the W. Side of the Town, within Musket-shot, there are above 60 square Pieces of Marble one upon another, from 3 to 10 Cubits in Length, and a Cubit broad on every Side, full of the ancient *Egyptian* Characters, and suppos'd to be the Ruins of a famous Temple. There's a Mosque here, with the Gate always shut, because they say after 'twas built, all the *Turks* who enter'd to worship there were struck blind. One of them was still living, and about the 127th Year of his Age when our Author was here. Several Years after a great Vault was found underneath, into which the Prince designed to drain off the Water and Filth of a Bath newly built near it; but all the Inhabitants say, that the first time the Water came down into it, it made a Noise as terrible as the Report of 100 Cannon, and shook the City; and that the second time the Noise was greater, and threw down several Houses, which made the Prince cause it to be stopped up in all haste. The *Cophtis* ascribe this to the Relicks of several Martyrs bury'd there, which God would not suffer to be defiled with the Filth of a Bath. In the Neighbourhood of this Place he says lies the Field of Martyrs, where he was told above 80000 Christians were killed and buried. The Soil is of a reddish brown Colour, which they impute to their Blood. *Lucas* says, the Prince of this Country causes such good Order to be observed, that there are no Robbers in all the Road. *Leo* calls it *Ichmin*, and says, 'twas built by *Ichmia* the Son of *Misraim*, the Son of *Chus*, and destroyed by the *Mahometans*, who built *Munfia* on the other Side of the *Nile*, with its Ruins. *Moll* calls it by the same Name, and sets it down Lat. 26. Long. $53\frac{1}{2}$. 230 Miles from *Cairo*. The *Sansons* agree in *Moll's* Lat. and Distance from *Cairo*, but make the Long. $61\frac{3}{4}$.

II. *Girge*, *Grege*, *Georgia*, or *Girgio*, the Capital of *Upper Egypt*. The *Sansons* place it on the W. Side of the *Nile*, Lat. $25\frac{1}{2}$ Long. $61\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* agrees in the Lat. but makes the Long. 53. He places it 30 Miles S. W. of *Ichmin*, and above 245 S. of *Cairo*; but the *Sansons* make it above 45 Miles from *Ichmin*, and above 276 from *Cairo*. *Lucas* makes it 16 French Leagues from *Ichmin* or *Achemin*, and 120 S. of *Cairo*. *Leo* says, there was a

famous Monastery here, called by the Name of *St. George*, inhabited by above 200 Monks, who enjoyed large Territories and Revenues, were very kind to Strangers, and sent the Overplus to the Patriarch of *Cairo*, to be distributed among the poor Christians there. But about 100 Years before *Leo's* Time, these Monks dy'd of the Plague; upon which the Prince of *Munfia* surrounded the Monastery with a Wall, and being charmed with its pleasant Gardens, which lay amongst beautiful Hills, came and lived here himself. At last, upon the Solicitation of the *Jacobite* Patriarchs, the Soldan caus'd another to be built in its room for 30 Monks. *Dapper* says, that *Girgio* or *Sahid*, of which this City is the Capital, is a great Province, and was a Kingdom of itself in the last Century, govern'd by a *Basha* sent hither from *Constantinople* with the Title of Viceroy, but now by a *Sangiack* sent hither from the *Basha* of *Cairo*. He adds, that 'tis divided into 13 or 14 lesser Governments, and borders upon that of *Manfelout* to the N. The *Sansons* say it takes in 236 Villages. *Lucas* places this City a Mile from the River, and says 'tis one of the finest Towns in *Upper Egypt*. It has 7 great Mosques with Steeples, 8 great Bazzars, 25000 Inhabitants, 14 or 15000 of whom are *Cophticks*, and there are some *Jews*. The principal Traffick of the City is in Corn, Lentils, Beans, Cloth, Wool, and a Sort of Grain called *Casza*, from which they extract an Oil. They have a great many Palm-Trees, a Plant that produces a Seed wherewith they tan Hides, and an Apple-Tree which bears a Fruit as big as one's Fist, with a Kernel that is very hard, but sweet. The Inhabitants are all poor and meanly cloath'd, except the Magistrates. They have Vines, whose Grapes are ripe in *August*, and stay upon the Vine till *January*; and they have some *Turks* and Christians there who make tolerable Wine and good *Aquavitæ* from Dates. Our Author gives this short Account of their Funerals here: They hire 30 or 40 Women-Mourners to weep and howl along the Streets, dance and play upon Tabors, and one in the Middle carries the Scythe of Death over her Head. They keep the Corps 2 Days above Ground, and spend a Day in washing it. Then they wrap it up in Linen, and set it out in the Street

Street upon an oblong Table with 4 Feet and Arms. When all the Kindred are come, a certain Number of Cheks carry it to the Church-yard without the Town with the Head foremost, and a Turban upon it cover'd with a Silk Stuff, so that the Corps looks as if it lay in a Cradle. The Men go before, and sing some Verses of the Alcoran in *Arabick*, and the Women-Mourners follow after. As soon as 'tis laid in the Grave, they lay little Planks across it the whole Length of the Body, to prevent the Earth from falling upon it. Then they build the Tomb; and if it be for a Man, they make the Representation of a Turban; and if for a Woman, they adorn it by the Figure of a Woman's Breasts. The Mourners make a Procession thro' the City 4 or 8 Days together, according to the Wealth of the Person.

Lucas says, they have a very fine Market here every *Friday* for Cloth and Provision, which is so extraordinary cheap, that a Man may live 3 Days upon a Pennyworth of their Bread. They have 40 Eggs, a fat Pullet, or two Pigeons, for a Penny. Our Author bought a curious Grenat here, which had two pretty Heads upon it, supposed to be those of *Ptolomy* and *Arsinoe*; but the *Coptick* of whom he bought it took them for those of *St. John* and the *Virgin*. He gives this Account of a remarkable Sort of Fly here. 'Tis all over black, an Inch thick, and an Inch and a half in Length. It has a Face like a Negro's, with a red Beard, a Crown upon its Head, two little Horns, and 6 Feet, and is of a very docible Nature, so that the Children tame them. Our Author says, House-Rent is so cheap here, that he gave but 7 *d.* Halfpenny a Day for a Week together for a whole House and Conveniences. The Ruins of this Town shew that it was formerly built of Brick. They have Foundaries, where they melt Copper for Pots and Kettles. Some think this Town was built upon the Ruins of ancient *Thebes*, and that one of its modern Names is *Said*.

12. The *Sansons* place a Town called *Said* on the W. Side of the *Nile*, about 31 Miles N. of *Girge*, and 243 S. of *Cairo*, Lat. 25 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 61 $\frac{3}{4}$; but we suppose it to be the same with *Girge*, except it be the *Saiet* mentioned by *Sandys*, a great City, 6 Days Journey from *Cairo* up the *Nile*, where our Sa-

viour and the *Virgin* are said to have stay'd till *Herod's* Death, and the *Copticks* generally come hither to end their Days. There's a handsome Church here, says our Author, built by *Helen* the Mother of *Constantine*.

13. *Aziath*. *Leo* says, it lies 250 Miles from *Cairo*, and that 'tis remarkable for Variety of great old Buildings and Epitaphs engrav'd in *Egyptian* Letters. In his Time most of it lay desolate; yet there were several Noblemen and wealthy Citizens, almost 100 Christian Families, and a rich Monastery without the Town, which entertains Strangers with Pigeons, Chickens, &c. There are 100 Monks; but they eat no Fish or Flesh, and only Herbs, Bread, Olives, and some liquorish Morsels made up without Fat. The *Sansons* have a Town of this Name on the W. Side of the *Nile*, Lat. 26 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 61 $\frac{3}{4}$. and but 185 Miles from *Cairo*.

14. *Chian* or *Chiam*. *Leo* says, 'tis a little City, built by the *Mahometans*, and inhabited by some *Jacobite* Christians, who employ themselves in Husbandry, or in bringing up Chickens, Geese, and Doves. We suppose it to be the *Chiana* mentioned by the *Sansons*, who place it on the W. Side of the *Nile*, Long. 61. 36. Lat. 24. 40. 23 Miles S. of *Girge*, and 293 from *Cairo*. *Dapper* says, 'tis much ruin'd by the Wars. *Livius Sannutus* inclines to think that 'twas the *Diospolis* of *Ptolomy*.

15. *Belliano*, above 6 Leagues S. E. of *Girge*, on the same Side of the *Nile*. *Lucas* says, 'tis inhabited by a great many *Copticks*, who have a very fine Church under Ground, supported with beautiful Pillars.

16. *Barbanda*, on the W. Side of the *Nile* according to the *Sansons*, Lat. 24 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 61 $\frac{1}{2}$. 45 Miles S. of *Girge*, and 315 from *Cairo*. *Leo* says, 'twas destroyed by the *Romans*, and most of its Ruins carried to *Asna* or *Siene*, of which by and by. *Dapper* says, 'tis almost 400 Miles from *Cairo*, and that its Ruins shew 'twas formerly a great Town.

17. *Caana* or *Chana*, on the E. Side of the *Nile*. *Lucas* places it almost 18 Leagues S. from *Akemin*, and almost 130 from *Cairo*. The *Sansons* in Lat. 24 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 61 $\frac{3}{4}$. 323 Miles from *Cairo*. *Leo* places it over against *Barbanda*, and says, 'tis encompassed with Brick Walls, and inhabited by Husbandmen. It abounds with Corn, which they send in great Quantities to *Mecca* and *Medina*.

The

The Goods sent from *Cairo* to *Mecca* are brought hither, and from hence carried over the Wilderness, to *Chossir*, a Port on the *Red Sea*, which is at least 120 M. *Lucas* says, 'tis a very fine Town, and the Houses handsome, tho' they are only of Earth, whited over at Bottom, and red at Top, where the Pigeon-Houses and Battlements are; so that he says every House looks like a little Castle. The Crocodiles make great Ravages here for 3 Weeks or a Month, and then disappear. Our Author says, he saw a monstrous Fish here, which the Natives call *Toasse* or *Tiaffe*. 'Tis almost round, a little oval, and has 4 short Feet like those of a Goose. They say, 'tis a natural Enemy to the Crocodile, and that when it finds her Eggs it breaks them, and eats the young ones. It has very sharp Teeth, and often makes Eunuchs of Swimmers, without doing them any other Harm. 'Tis of a grey leaden Colour, and has a Head almost like that of a Tortoise, but somewhat bigger. Our Author says, the Ruins of this Town shew that 'twas formerly above 2 Leagues in Circuit. There are a great many Columns and Spires carv'd with Hieroglyphicks.

18. *Dandara*. *Gemelli* says, 'twas the 3d City built by *Hermes* the Philosopher, and had a magnificent Temple, with many Statues and goodly Structures, all ruin'd. *Moll* calls it *Dendera*, and places it on the W. Side of the *Nile*, Lat. 25. Long. 50. 6. above 50 Miles S. of *Girge*, and 300 from *Cairo*. *Lucas* calls it *Dandre*, places it almost 130 Leagues from *Cairo*, and says, 'tis noted for a great stately Palace, which may be reckoned one of the Wonders of *Egypt*. 'Tis higher than any other in the Country, and is quite ruinous on one Side; yet there still remain two fine Fronts, where our Author number'd 130 Windows, and there are also a great many Pillars. The Natives say, 'twas built by Dæmons, and that in the Night several Spirits walk among the Ruins. *Lucas* adds, that there's a large Tract near this Place which they call the Country of *Barbambou*. More to the S. are several Villages full of ancient Monuments, and two Figures of black Stone 30 or 40 Foot high, which stand by themselves. On the E. Side of the *Nile*, over against these Figures, is the Country of *Bella de Mause*, so called, says

Lucas, because they pretend 'tis the Birth-place of *Moses*. 'Tis a large Desert full of Palm-Trees. In this Part of the Mountain he saw other Grotto's, with Windows cut out of the Rock, and Doors of the same, which turned upon Hinges. There were several fresh Pieces of Painting within, from whence he supposes that the Grotto's serv'd formerly as Burial-places, and the several Pictures as Histories or Representations of the different States of Life; for he observ'd the Pictures of young Children playing together upon the Ground, then others of the same Children in a riper Age playing at other Games; after that they were represented feasting at a Table, and some in Masquerade. Under this Range of Painting, the Course of the *Nile* was represented round the Grotto full of Boats, with high Poops and Sterns, and the Middle very low, in which there were Tombs cover'd over with a very rich Stuff. Two Men row each Boat, one before, and t'other behind. Some are represented embarking dead Bodies, and others on the opposite Side landing them on Biers for the Priests to conduct them to the Grotto's. Under the Course of the *Nile*, there's an Inscription of 12 Lines in Characters quite different from the *Hebrew*, or from the ancient Hieroglyphicks. In every one of these Grotto's there are from 3 to 6 square Pits, with Jettings out on each Side, which serve for Steps. There are also the Representations of Mummies in Stone, Marble, or Touch-stone, together with several twisted Columns cut out of the same Rock, and Apartments leading from one to another. Our Author adds, that he saw a blind Sort of Serpent here, whose Sting is mortal, and always kills in an Hour's Time, without putting the Person to Pain. He adds, that as he sailed from hence to *Necado*, he saw above 20 little Villages, and a great many Columns, and amongst the rest 5 or 6 larger than that near the Pyramids at *Cairo*.

19. *Negado*, on the W. Side of the *Nile*, is 20 Leagues S. of *Girge*, and about 125 from *Cairo*, according to *Lucas*, who says 'tis a great Town, inhabited by 5 or 600 *Copticks*, who have several Churches here.

20. *Quadim*, and *Lauxor* or *Luxor*, both on the W. Side of the *Nile*, and not two Leagues asunder, about 27 Leagues from *Girge*,

Girge, and 145 from *Cairo*, according to *Lucas*, who says, the finest Monuments in *Upper Egypt* are here, and gives this Account of them. Near *Lauxor* there are a great many ancient Monuments fallen down. At *Quadin* there are above 200 Columns bigger and higher than *Pompey's* at *Alexandria*. There's an ancient Temple, which seems to have been faced with white and black Marble. There are several Chambers in the Wall with Pits, which appear to have been made use of as Sepulchres. The Chambers are full of Figures in *Basso Relievo*, and carv'd with Hieroglyphicks. Amongst several broken Statues, there are two of Touch-stone which resemble Women. One of them is above 16 Foot high. The *Arabs* have spoil'd their Faces, and plac'd Balls upon their Heads. In the Neighbourhood of this Place there's a great Palace almost quite under Ground, but so stately, that our Author thinks it to have been the Residence of the ancient Kings of *Egypt*. There's another in the Neighbourhood which exceeds it, and has 4 Avenues that lead to its Gates, which are above 60 Foot high. There are a great many Sphinxes, from 20 to 25 Foot in Length, ranged two Paces from one another on both Sides of the Avenues. Our Author says, he counted 160 in one of 'em, and concludes, that there were at least as many in each of the other three. This Palace is supported by very fine Columns, and in one of the Halls he reckon'd 135 of *Granate* and *Porphyry*, so big that 4 Men could not fathom them. In the Court there's a great Pond full of Water, fac'd round with Marble, where the Natives have Permission to wash their Linen. There are two Statues of Giants here of one entire Stone, which is very white, and they have a kind of Sword by their Sides. There are several others about 24 Foot high, and fine Apartments built of *Porphyry*.

21. The Convent of *Tombs*, on the same Side of the *Nile*, 25 Leagues S. of *Girge*, and 146 from *Cairo*, according to *Lucas*. He says, it seems to have been a great Monastery, and was told by some *Coptick* Priests that 'twas built by *St. Helena*, in Honour of the Martyrs put to Death by *Dioclesian*, whose Number they say was so great, that their Corps cover'd the Earth above a quarter of a League round. Near this Mona-

stery there's a great Number of fine Tombs, founded by *St. Helena* in Memory of those Martyrs.

22. *Tuat* on the E. Side of the *Nile* faces the Country betwixt the Convent and *Luxor*. *Lucas* says, 'tis a very large Place, and has a fine Temple of the ancient *Egyptians*, the Stones of which are carved with a great Number of Hieroglyphicks in *Basso Relievo*. Moll places a Town of this Name almost at the Conflux of the *Nile* and the River *Nubia*, Lat. 24. Long. 50 $\frac{2}{3}$. about 108 Miles S. of *Girge*, and 360 from *Cairo*.

23. *Essenay*, on the W. Side of the *Nile*. *Lucas* makes it 4 Miles S. of the Convent, and about 100 Paces from the *Nile*, within the Noise of the Cataracts in a still Night. Barks can go no higher than this Place, because of the Rapidity of the Stream which falls from the Cataracts. There's a very fine *Egyptian* Temple here entire, painted all over, except in some Places worn out by Time, and adorned with Hieroglyphicks. 'Tis now only a Stall for Cattle. The *Copticks* have two Churches here, one of them dedicated to the Virgin. There's another Temple here, which *Lucas* thinks was a Monastery formerly, because there are 5 Chapels belonging to it, with an Altar in each. There are several Stones with Inscriptions of a strange Character, but different from Hieroglyphicks. Our Author says, that in the Way from hence to *Naassa* on the other Side the *Nile*, he came to several Huts made of Earth and Branches of Trees, and inhabited by poor *Arabs*, who brought him and his Company Milk, Cheese, Eggs, and Honey. The Noise of the Cataracts is heard very plain in this Place, and one may see the Mountains from whence the Water falls.

24. *Maassa*. *Lucas* places it on the same Side of the *Nile*, 52 Leagues S. E. from *Girge*, and 165 S. of *Cairo*. The *Turks* have a little Fortrefs here, garrison'd by 150 Janizaries. 'Tis built upon a rising Ground, and has but one Gate. The Walls are of Brick dry'd in the Sun, and 'tis mounted with 5 small Faulcons and a great Iron Cannon. About a quarter of a League from the Fort there's a Place full of Tombs, of a very white Stone like Marble, with Inscriptions upon them in an unknown Character. The Ruins of the Town shew that

'twas formerly one of the largest in the World, says our Author. It begins where the long Range of Mountains we have so often touch'd upon breaks off. Here's a stately Temple, with 4 great Gates, each supported by 8 big Columns of a reddish Granate like Jasper, but the Top of the Columns is decay'd. In the Middle of this great Edifice there's a Structure of white Marble, with Figures in *Basso Relievo* of Children, Cows, Birds, &c. and especially Owls, and the Middle of the Temple was full of living Serpents. Our Author reckoned 160 Columns round this Structure, but above two Thirds of them fallen down. In the Neighbourhood there are several fine Palaces built with Stones of a prodigious Bigness. He says, the Inhabitants are poor, and there are about 40 *Copti's* here, who have a Church under Ground without the Town. He saw another great Palace here as big as a little Town, with 4 Avenues of Columns to its Porches. At each Gate, between two Porphyry Pillars, there are two fine black Marble Figures of Giants, with Clubs in their Hands. The Avenue leading to each Gate consists of 3 Columns in a Triangle, and each Side consists of above 1500. Upon the Chapter of each Triangle there's a Sphinx, and upon the Order of the 3 Columns which follow there's a Tomb, and so successively on each Side in all the 4 Walks. There are also a great many Tombs. Each Pillar is 10 Foot high, all of one Stone, and in the 4 Avenues our Author says there are at least 5 or 6000 Columns. The first Hall of this Palace is painted all over with Historical Passages, the Hunting of Antelopes, the Representations of Banquets, and of little Children playing with all Sorts of Animals. Some of the Apartments are lin'd with Marble, and their Arches supported by Pillars of Porphyry and black Marble. Our Author ascended to the Top of it, and saw the Ruins of the greatest Town which he thinks was ever in the World, and supposes it to be the ancient *Thebes*. On the W. Side of the Desert he saw about 12 great Pyramids, not inferior to those at *Cairo*, a great many Busts of Men 30 Foot high, and a good Number of Palaces, but so bury'd in Ruins, that he could see little except the Gates. Our Author gives the Cuts of one of those

Pyramids 1400 Foot high, of one of the Busts 72 Foot, besides the Pedestal, and of a Column 100 Foot in Height, besides the Pedestal, which was 15 Foot.

25. *Affuan, Asouan, or Assuana*. Most places it on the E. Side of the Nile, a little beyond the Tropick of Cancer, Lat. 23. Long. 51 $\frac{1}{2}$. 180 Miles S. E. of *Girge*, and 420 S. from *Cairo*. *Lucas* places it two Leagues and a half S. of *Naassa*, 54 from *Girge*, and above 168 from *Cairo*. *Leo* says, 'twas a great and populous City, and lies 80 Miles E. from *Asna*, contrary to *Lucas*, who places it but two Leagues E. of the Nile. The former says, it stands in a fruitful Country on the Borders of *Nubia*, and was the utmost Limit of the Soldan's Jurisdiction that Way. It joins also to the Frontiers of *Ethiopia*, and lies near the Desert that leads to *Suachin*, a Port upon the Red Sea. The Citizens are of a swarthy Complexion, and mix'd with the People of *Nubia* and *Ethiopia*. There are many Buildings of the ancient *Egyptians* here, and very high Towers, which the Natives call *Barba*. He adds, that beyond this City the Nile disperses it self into several Lakes, and becomes unnavigable; and that there's no remarkable Place on the Banks of it, except a few Villages inhabited by Blacks, whose Speech is a Medley of the *Egyptian*, *Ethiopian*, and *Arabian*. They live in the Field after the *Arabian* Way, and are subject to the People call'd *Bughia*, alias *Troglodyte*. *Dapper* places it but 18 Miles E. of *Asna*, and says, some take it for the ancient *Conza* or *Metacompsus*, and some for *Thebes*. *Marmol* places it in *Egypt*, and not in *Troglodyte*. An *Arabian* Author says, there's a famous Obelisk here, adorned with a great many Figures. *Lucas* says, 'tis the ancient *Syene*, and a little Town, inhabited by very poor People.

26. *Asna*. We find no Account of it in our Maps or Histories, unless it be that which *Dapper* places on the W. Shore of the Nile, Lat. 26. 2. Long. 55. 43. He says, 'twas ruin'd by the *Romans*, but more finely rebuilt by the *Mahometans*; and that the Inhabitants are very rich in Cattle, Corn, and Money, and have a great Trade with *Nubia* by Land, and by the Nile. *Marmol* says, the *Ethiopians* call it *Gavera*, that it takes up a large Circumference, and that there are the Ruins of several fine Structures and noble Tombs,

Tombs, with *Egyptian* and *Latin* Inscriptions. He adds, that there's a Well here of a vast Depth, in whose Bottom the Sun shines perpendicularly at Noon. Thus we have follow'd *Lucas* as far as the Cataracts of the Nile, of which we need say no more, having already taken his Description of them where we give an Account of the Nile. He places them almost 175 Leagues from *Cairo*. He says, that the *Turks* have a Fort and Garrison of Janizaries on the W. Side of the Cataracts; and that he was told there's a Sort of People in this Country who have only one Leg; but run very fast, according to the Report of ancient Authors; but he saw none of them.

To *Lucas's* Account of the Towns, &c. upon the Nile, we thought fit to add what follows from *Gemelli's* Relation of a Voyage made up the same River from *Cairo* in 1691, by some *Romish* Missionaries of the Order of *St. Francis*, on whose Authority he says we may safely rely. The chief Places mention'd in their Voyage are,

1. *Behnese*, which they came to the second Day at Night, built by an ancient Philosopher of the same Name. There's a Well without it call'd *Rogods's* Well, from the Name of a Magician who made it, and was therefore deify'd. The Natives believe a Dew falls there the 15th of June at Night, by the Intercession of *St. Michael* the Archangel, to bless the River, because it then begins to rise; for which Reason the *Copti's* celebrate his Festival with great Solemnity throughout the Kingdom. On the 14th at Night their Bishops and the Cadi of the Country go and seal up the Well. The next Morning the Bishop, after Mass, goes to open it to measure the Water, and by the greater or less Increase of it they judge of the Plenty or Scarcity of the following Year. The Statue of the Founder is plac'd over it.

2. *Siribis*, a ruin'd City, which they came to the same Night, at the Foot of one of the long Ridges of Mountains before mentioned, called *Giebal-Elheir*, i. e. The Mountain of the Bird. The People say, 'twas built by the Magician *Scribio*, and that there's an Idol of that Name over one of its Gates. They add, that this Magician plac'd a Bird upon the Top of the Mountain, which in a fruitful Season turn'd his Head

towards the Nile, and in a Time of Scarcity towards the Desert; and that when any Invaders were at hand, it turn'd its Head that Way, clapp'd its Wings, and cry'd aloud to give the Citizens Notice. The Fathers say, there's a Monastery of *Copticks* here.

3. *Antinopolis*, which the Fathers came to the 3d Day. They say, it lies on the E. Side of *Thebais*; that there are the Ruins of vast Pillars, &c. of which one is almost as big as *Pompey's*; that *Dioclesian* martyr'd 160000 Christians here; and that *Nestorius* was confin'd to it by Order of the first Council of *Ephesus*. At Night they say they arrived at the Foot of the Mountain called by the *Romans*, *Apudfinem*, otherwise *Ava-fede*, which was formerly inhabited by Magicians, who began to fail under the *Grecian* Monarchy, and had several Idols there. Some say, that 'twas from hence *Pharaoh's* Magicians came to vye with *Moses*. In the Times of Christianity it was inhabited by the Holy Fathers and Hermits. They found it to be in Lat. 27. 2. Five Miles to the W. lies that called the Green Mountain, noted for the Monastery of *Elmaharrack*, where they say our Lord, the Virgin, and *Joseph*, stay'd after their Flight from *Herod*.

4. *Abritsch*, or the City of *Venus*, which they came to on the 6th Day. Here are the Ruins of many ancient Structures. It had formerly a Bishop, who subscribed to the Council of *Chalcedon*. They call the Mountain where the Serpent formerly mention'd lodges, *Giabel-Essahare*, or the Mountain of *Necromancers*, and say, the Statue half bury'd under Ground at the Entrance of one of the Caves is that of *Isis*, which was formerly the Name of the Mountain; and that the *Egyptians* of *Middle Thebais* us'd to offer green Leaves, &c. to that Goddess. They say, that *Achmim* and *Asiolh*, two other ruinous Cities on the Banks of the Nile, were formerly Bishops Sees. They place the latter in Lat. 26. 4.

5. The Lake *Birchel-Elban*, about 40 Miles from *Asiolh*. They tell us 'tis surrounded with Trees, and that there are a great many Caves in the Neighbourhood, some of which run a quarter of a Mile into the Rock, and are adorned with Crosses, &c. They saw Swarms of Locusts in these Parts, which come out of *Nubia*, and do a great deal of Harm.

6. *Kno* or *Cosborbir*, where they arrived the 20th Day of their Voyage. They say, 'twas *Apollo's* City, and one of the greatest on the Banks of the *Nile*.

7. *Naceade*, a fine ancient City, where there's a great many Monasteries of *Copticks*.

8. *Luchferem*, where the Fathers arrived on the 26th Day after they set out from *Cairo*. 'Twas anciently called *Luchfo*, i. e. Light, and built on the E. Side of the River in Honour of an Idol; and that another being set up afterwards, and a new City added to it, 'twas called *Luchferem*, i. e. Lights. Besides the Ruins of several noble Structures, there are two Pyramids, each 40 Spans in Circumference, and all the 4 Sides full of Hieroglyphicks. There are also before the Gate of the old City two Statues of Giants, each of one entire polish'd Piece of Marble of a greenish Gold Colour. There's a great square Building here composed of 100 Pillars, and there are the Ruins of several other great Columns. Hence they went to an Idol Temple covered with Stones, each of 30 Span long, 9 in Breadth, and 6 in Depth. Hence they went to

9. *Chak*, a City inhabited by *Arabs*. It has 4 principal Streets, in which there are abundance of Idols in the Shape of Bucks, Goats, Camels, Lions, and Bulls. The Gate of the old City is of an extraordinary Height, and 6 Rods in Breadth, all of large Free-stone, with Hieroglyphicks on both Sides, but the Walls were fallen. There's a wonderful Theatre here, encompassed with a Wall of vast Stones curiously carv'd, 14 Span thick, and of a proportionable Height. The Place for the Shew is almost a Mile about, encompassed with 6 Rounds of large Pillars, making in all 200, each 150 Foot high, adorned with Hieroglyphicks, and a Capital, on which 5 Persons may sit at Ease. Here live some Christians and *Arabs*, and the Robbers retire to it when pursued by the *Basha*, because of its Strength. There's a Lake of green salt Water here a quarter of a Mile in Compass, and colour'd, as they say, by magick Art. 'Tis not known whence it springs, or whither it flows, but it rises and falls with the *Nile*. They add, that if dirty Linen be put into it, it immediately turns white, and that it had formerly a Stone Bottom. Near this

Lake there's another Row of Pillars, formerly a Church, where there are still the Pictures of Angels, Christ, and the Virgin, painted after the Greek Manner. They call it *Starry Heaven*, because the Roof thro' certain Holes represents the Stars and Signs of the Zodiack; but now 'tis only a Stable. In another Place they saw two Obelisks of a prodigious Height, tho' much sunk in the Ground. The Pedestal of one of them was 76 Spans about, and the other 40. There were two others of the same Make and Bigness, which were fallen down. Near these there are two Idols of the finest Marble, 14 Spans high, on great Pillars of Porphyry, which led into a Street cover'd with flag Stones, 36 Spans long, and 12 in Breadth, full of Hieroglyphicks, and supported by a Wall of vast Stone. There was another large Idol of curious Marble, and beyond that a noble Structure with two Gigantick Idols of polish'd Marble at the Entrance, and 50 Pillars standing together, made of several Pieces 60 Spans in Compass, and 100 in Height, besides the Capitals, on which 100 Persons might stand. A few Paces further there's a Castle, and an under-ground Passage near it that leads to the *Nile*, and City of *Hapalimus* on the W. Side, now called *Medinalhaba*, where are also the Ruins of several Temples and Theatres, a Lake that rises and falls with the *Nile*, and two Idols near it so big, that they may be seen 10 Miles off.

10. *Licophi*, now called *Armant*, where they arrived next Morning, noted for the Ruins of several Temples, great Structures, Statues, and Columns, and for the See of a Bishop in the Times of Christianity. The Fathers say, there's an Island over against it form'd by the *Nile*, where there are Hundreds of Crocodiles.

The Towns upon the *Red Sea*, which we have not describ'd, are, 1. *Suachen*, *Suagnim*, or *Suaguin*. *Marmol* says, it lies upon the Borders of *Ethiopia*, has the best Harbour upon the *Red Sea*, and was formerly govern'd by a King of its own, but now subject to the *Basha* of *Cairo*. The Harbour has a narrow Mouth, and opens into a great Lake, where there's a small Island. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 26. 15. Long. 64. 22. 165 Miles N. E. from *Girge*, 250 S. E. from *Cairo*, and about 113 N. from *Cossir*. *Dapper* says,

says, the Country between this and *Cossir* is called *Batraxan*, and places the Port in Lat. 18. 40. in the Province of *Danfila*, in a Gulph over against the Country of the *Nubians*. He says, the Coast is inhabited chiefly by *Turks* and *Arabs*, and that 'tis so shut in by a Chain of steep Mountains, that there's no Entrance into *Abyssinia* but by this and the Port of *Arquico* or *Ercoeco*, nor that Way neither above 3 or 4 Miles a Day. *Marmol* says, the Island of *Suaken* is about 15 Leag. in Compass; but *Rosaccio* says 'tis small, and that the Coasts are not far from the Town, which is beautified with several fine Structures.

2. *Cossir*. *Moll* places it Lat. 25. Long. 53. about 140 Miles E. from *Girge*, and above 330 S. from *Cairo*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 24. 17. Long. 64. 50. above 180 Miles from *Girge*, and but 318 from *Cairo*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a little Town inhabited by poor *Arabians*, and the Port from whence the *Egyptian* Corn is transported to *Arabia*, and where most of the *Moorish* Pilgrims embark for *Mecca* or *Medina*. *Sanutius* says, this is the *Berenice*, and others the *Misformus* of the Ancients. He adds, that there are a great many Huts of Mats here brought from *Cairo*, in the Way to *Mecca*, which they sell dearer than others. *Gemelli* says, that in the Time of the *Pharaoh's* they traded hence to *India* and Part of *Arabia*.

3. *Zibith* or *Zibid*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 23. Long. 65 $\frac{1}{2}$. 90 Miles S. of *Cossir*. *Leo* says, 'twas formerly a rich Town, and had a good Harbour over against *Zidem*, which is 40 Miles from *Mecca*, but that 'twas destroyed by one of the Soldans, because some Goods were stopped there which should have been carried to *Mecca*.

We shall conclude the Geography of *Egypt* with an Account of the Desert of *St. Macharius*, which lies West of the Nile on the Frontiers of *Barca*, and on the Coast of the *Mediterranean*. *Thevenot* says, 'tis noted for 4 Monasteries, viz. those of *St. Macharius*, the *Syrians*, *Balsarion*, and the *Virgin*. *Dapper* places the Monastery of *St. Macharius* near the Coast, in Lat. 30. 47. Long. 52. 50. about a German Mile S. of *Alexandria*. *Thevenot* says, the Way to it is by Water from *Boulac* to *Terrana*, from whence 'tis a Day's Journey by Land to this Monastery, which lies right W. The Build-

ing is ancient, and the Walls, which are high, much decayed. There's a great square Tower within its Precinct, enter'd by a Draw-Bridge, and within that a Church, where lie the Bodies of *Macharius* and several other Saints, with 5 or 6 Altar Tables of lovely Marble, a Well, and all other Necessaries. Here they keep whatever they have of Value, especially their Books, which no Monk dares sell or put out of the Way under the Pain of an Anathema; and they retire hither when pursued by the *Arabs*. The other 3 Monasteries have the like Towers for the same Purpose. This is the biggest, but the most ruinous, and especially the Church, which seems to have been very fair. It has no Garden, and the Water is brackish. Three or four Hours Journey N. beyond this lies another called *Ambabichoye*. In the Way to it are several little Hillocks, which cut the Road, and reach far into the W. Desert. The Monks say, they were made by the Angels for a Path to lead the Hermits to it, and therefore they call it the *Angels Way*. In this Road there are the Ruins of several Monasteries and Hermitages, to the Number of 300, as the Monks say; but our Author thinks they were not so many. In these Monasteries there was an Abbot and some Monks, who when they had a Mind to turn Hermits, left their Convents and retired nearer the Mountain. *Thevenot* observes, that 'tis not proper for Strangers to follow that they call the *Angels Way*, because the *Arabs* would suspect they were come to search for some hidden Treasure in the Mountain. He says, that among these old Buildings, there's the Ruins of an ancient Monastery dedicated to *St. John the Less*, with its Dome entire, and a fair Tree near it, called by the Monks, *The Tree of Obedience*, into which they say a dry Rod was changed after 'twas water'd by that Hermit at the Command of his Superior. He adds, that this Monastery of *Ambabichoye* is the pleasantest of all the four, has a fair Church, Garden, and good Water, and that it also contained a great many Bodies of their pretended Saints before *Palm Sunday* 1656, when they were consumed by a Taper left burning; whereupon the Monks gave out that they were carried away by a French Merchant who came into these Parts to buy *Natron*: But this Stratagem proving abortive,

abortive, they were forced to open some Tombs, and convey the Corps into their Church, and then to publish that the Bodies of the Saints had escaped out of the French Ships, and were come back again.

The Monastery of the *Syrians* is a quarter of a League further: 'Tis small, but very pleasant, has good Water, and is best kept in Order. There are two fair Churches in it, one for the *Syrians*, the other for the *Cophi's*, in which there are many Relicks, and particularly the Staff of St. *Ephrem*, which they say being set at the Door while he went to visit a Monk, took Root and grew up to a great Tree, the only one in *Egypt* of its Kind. From this Monastery, in the Way to the 4th, you pass by the *Dry Sea*, which the Monks say was dry'd up at the Prayers of St. *Macharius* and the Hermits, because they were much infested by Pyrates. Therefore they called it *Bake el Malame*, i.e. *The Sea of Railing*. Here are several curious Petrifications of Wood and Bones. On the W. Side of that Sea is the Mountain of *Eagles Stones*, where are dug up in the Time of Heat and Drought a Sort of Stones of different Sizes, which the Monks say have many Vertues, and particularly against Poison. They are called by that Name, because the Eagles which breed thereabouts

carry them to their Nests, to preserve their young ones from Serpents. *Thevenot* says, that from hence you go to the 4th, called *Dit el Sayde*, i.e. The Monastery of our Lady, which is but one Day's Journey from *Ambabichoye*. 'Tis very spacious, but somewhat decayed, has a fair Church and Garden; and tho' the Water be brackish, yet it contains more Monks than the other three, because the Revenue is greater, and there are some Relicks. Two Leagues hence is the Lake of *Natron*, called *Birquet el Natroun*. It looks like a large Pond frozen over, and covered with a little Snow. 'Tis divided into two Parts, supplied by Springs, the Southermost of which is a Knee deep, and the Water congeals as soon as it rises out of the Earth into great Pieces of Ice 6 or 7 Fingers thick. The Water is reddish, and grows to *Natron* in a Year's Time. First, there's a red Salt upon the Top, then a black *Natron*, which is made use of in *Egypt* for Lye; and lastly, the true *Natron*, which is like the first Salt, but more solid. A great many Camels come every Year to be loaded with this *Natron*. Higher up there's a little Well of fresh Water, and there's another Lake in this Country where they make Salt at *Whitsuntide* in Form of a Pyramid, and therefore call it *Pyramidal Salt*.

CHAP. IV.

BARBARY.

Sanfons and Luyts's General TABLE of BARBARY.

Two on the Atlantick Sea.	Morocco King- dom.	Sus, Hea, Duccala, Guzula, Ma- roc or Proper Morocco, Haf- cora, Tedles.
	Fez Kingdom.	Temesna, Fez, Azgar or Asgar, Habat, Errif, Chaw, Ga- ret.
Four upon the Mediter- ranean Sea.	Alger or Al- gier King- dom.	Telensin, Teneza, Gezaira, Bu- gia or Bugie, Constantina or Constantine.
	Tunis King- dom.	Tunis Kingdom. The Islands over against it.
	Tripoli King- dom.	On the hither Side of the Ri- ver Tripoli. Beyond the same River.
	Barca King- dom.	On the hither Side of Nachel Fluv. Beyond the same River.

Here

Here follow Six Particular TABLES of BARBARY, according to the same Geographers.

I. The Kingdom of Maroc
or Morocco, containing
7 Provinces.

Three Maritime.

Sas Province.

Tagarost, Tedsa, Tarodant, Te-
jent, Messa, Guargesen, Alber-
fus.

Has Province.

Tafalla, Tefethna, Culesat, Tei-
juth or Teijeuth, Montana,
Amama, Tednest, Sawensi,
Hadechis, Teculeth, S. Clara,
Goza.

Duccala Pro-
vince.

Conta or Conte, Meramer, Azafi
or Azafia, Emander, Tetu-
ria, Tita or Tite, Magazan,
El-Medina, Azamor or Azaa-
mor, Subeit, Temeracost or
Temeracosta, Tergum, Bukla-
huan or Buhlahuana.

Guzula Prov.

No Town of Note.

Maroc or Mo-
rocco Prov.

Delgumuha, Temella or Temmel-
la, Imegiagen, Elgiumba,
Tumeglata, Tefrasta, Maroc
or Morocco, the Capital of
the Kingdom, Agmet.

Bour Inland.

Hascora Prov.

Bezo or Bzo, Elgiumba, Tago-
dast or Tagodost, Elmadin or
Elmadine.

Tedles Prov.

Eithiad, Cithiteb or Cithiteba,
Efza, Tefza, Tedza.

Temefna Prov.

Tegagit, Thagit, Adendum,
Hainelchalla, Benir, Elcoffar,
Anfa, Fedolla, Soncia, Al-
manser, Robin, Rabat.

Four on the
West.

Fez Province.

Mahmora and Masimora, Tefel-
felta, Sala, Salet or Salle,
Fanzar or Fanzara, Gualil
or Gualila, Mechnes or Mech-
nese, Zavia, Magbill, Fez,
the Metrop. of the King-
dom.

Asgar or Az-
gar Prov.

Elgiumba, Cebir or Casar,
Eleabir, Lixa or Larache.

Habat Prov.

Arzilla, Tingis or Tanger, Ca-
zar, Ezzagir, Teguan, Te-
tuan and Teteguin, Septe or
Ceuta.

II. The Kingdom of Fez,
in which are 7 Provin-
ces, viz.

The Kingdom of *Fez* con-
tinued.

Three on the
East.

Erriff Pro-
vince.

Gomer or Gomeria, Tartonella,
Netogalla, Terga, Salquix or
Salquiza, Jettis, Bedis, Ve-
lez, Pennon de Velez, Tegassa,
Mezemma or Mezemme, Gua-
sevala.

Chaus Pro-
vince.

Tezza the Capital, Sofroa, Be-
nibachlul or Benibachlulia,
Hamlishnan, Mabdaia, Dubdu,
Haddagia, Teurent, Zhas, Gar-
sis.

Garet Prov.

Tarforagel, Fetis, Alcudia, Me-
tilla or Melilla the Capital,
Chasasa, Jaffarin or Jaffarina.

Telensin Prov.

Hanain, Telensin or Tremisen,
Marfalquibir, Oran, Maza-
gant or Mazagran, or Mes-
gran.

Three on the
hither Side
of the River
Major.

Teneza or Te-
nes Prov.

Mustugan, Tadra, Tenez or Te-
nes, Rochar, Brischa, Marsa-
lach, Sersel or Sercelly, Meliana.

Gezaira Prov.

Mazura, Miroma, Caxima, Al-
gier or Alger the Metropo-
lis of the Kingdom, Temend-
fust, Merolla, Teddeles, Be-
rengeret, Garbello, Zaffona,
Carbona, Couco.

III. The Kingdom of *Al-
gier* or *Alger*, compre-
hending 5 Provinces.

Bugia Prov.

Labez, Necaus or Necausa, Me-
sila, Sitifies or Steffa, Saldia or
Bugia the Cap. Gema, Balla-
fia, Gergel or Gigeri, Gibera-
mel, Sucaiocad, Colle or Collo.

Two beyond
the same Ri-
ver.

Constantina or
Constantino
Province.

Rusicada or Stora, Mabra, Hip-
pon or Bona Marzacaris, Ta-
braca or Tabarca Ile and
Village, Milevum or Mela,
Constantina the Capital, Ti-
fafa, Tebessa.

In the Inland
Country.

Beija or Bejia, Hamsammita,
Musti Urbs, Camuda, Mar-
magen, Baghani, Hama, Te-
chios, Nicfa, Nafta, Capsa or
Casfa, or Caffa, Meschianha,
Cayroan or Cairoan, Gueselet,
Zaghoan.

Tunis King-
dom, con-
taining,

Near the Sea-
Coast.

Asfacusa or Asfachusa, Africa
or El-Media, Leptis Parva or
Monastero, Ruspina or Susa,
Adrumetum, Eraclia, Ham-
mamet, Hamametha, or Ma-
hometta, Tunis the Capital,
Goletta or Goulette, Carthago
or Bersack, Utica, or Bensert
or Bensart, Rasamilar or Ra-
samilara.

IV. Tunis Kingdom, in
which are,

Tunis Kingdom continued.

Islands over
against Tu-
nis.

On the Nor-
thern Coast.

On the Ea-
stern Coast.

Calatbe or Galata, Zimba-
la.

Cossyra or Panthalarea Isle and
Town, Limosa, Lopedusa or
Lampedusa, or Lampedosa,
Chercara, Gamelara.

Tacape or Capes, Machres, Gir-
ba or Girbi, or Gerbi Isle
and Town, Chattab, Porta-
ta, Gara, Palmera, Zoara,
Casarul, Tripoli, Vicchio or
Old Tripoli, Tripoli the Me-
tropolis.

Near the Sea-
Coasts.

In the Inland
Country.

On the Medi-
terranean Sea.

On the Gulph
of Sidra.

In the Inland
Tracts.

Near the Sea-
Coasts.

Western Sea-
Ports.

Eastern Ports.

In the Inland
Country.

El-Hamma, Garalgara or Garel-
gara, Sarmana, Zanzora,
Hamroz or Hamrosun.

Rasaxara or Rasaxarra, Tessut
or Tessuta, Lebeda, Brata,
Merato.

Cafracmed, Colbena or Col-
bene, Salinas or Salina, Ze-
dico, Sebeico, Naima or Nai-
mi, Larcudia, Sidra Island.

Barca the Capital of the King-
dom, Cyrene or Cairoan.

Berenice, Bernick or Bérniche,
Arsinoe or Taochara, Ptole-
mais or Tolometa, Apollonia
or Bon-Andrea.

Salinas, Patriarch Port or Pa-
triarcha, Trabocko or Tra-
bercho, Mesulomara or Mesu-
lamare, Salamon or Sallom,
Casale, Saloneffa.

Parætonium or Alberton, Roxa
and Raxa, Raibba, Ripa,
Alba, or Ripalba or Ripal-
ta.

Pute-Almidan, Assaghir, Ab-
dallach, Charebat, Sechet-
Alhanaim, Altahun.

On the other
Side of the
River of Tri-
poli.

Beyond the
same River.

On the hither
Side of the
River Nachel
or Nackel.

Beyond the
same River.

IV. Tripoli Kingdom, in
which are,

V. The Kingdom of Bar-
ca, containing,

L *Uyts* and the *Sansons* extend *Barbary* in General along the *Mediterranean* on the N. from the *Atlantick* Ocean on the W. to *Egypt* on the E. and bound it on the S. with Mount *Atlas*. 'Tis the most N. Part of *Africa* next to *Europe*. *Luyts* places it between the 9th and 48th Deg. of Long. and between the 30th and 38th of N. Lat. so that 'tis a great deal longer than broad. 'Tis broadest in the W. but so narrow in the E. that in many Places it scarce takes up one Degree. *Du Plessis* says, it lies altogether in the N. Temperate Zone, and makes it about 900 Leagues from E. to W. and not above 160 from the Extremity of *Morocco* to *Tangier*, where 'tis broadest. He extends it from the 7th to the 60th Deg. of Long. and from the 27th to the 36th of Lat. *Heylin* says, 'tis situate under the 3d and 4th Climates, so that the longest Summer's Day in the most S. Parts is 13 Hours and three quarters, and 14 Hours and a quarter in the N. He extends it from the *Atlantick* Ocean to the *Greater Syrtis* 1500 Miles, and from Mount *Atlas* to the *Mediterranean* 100 Miles where narrowest; but towards the Streights where broadest almost 300. *Dapper* makes it 600 German Leagues in Length. *Marmol* makes it above 1200 Spanish Leagues from the Town of *Messa* in the W. Part of *Barbary* to *Tripoli*, to which *Dapper* adds a Tract of 200 Miles more between *Tripoli* and the Desert of *Barca*. The former extends it above 180 Spanish Leagues in Breadth from the *Mediterranean* to the Deserts of *Inner Libya*.

Leo says, *Barbary* and its Mountains are very subject to Cold, and that Snow accompanies almost every Gale of Wind. The stormy cold Weather begins about the Middle of *October*. 'Tis colder in *December* and *January*, and very sharp in the Mornings. In *February* the Weather is not so cold, but so uncertain, that it changes 5 or 6 times a Day. In *March* the N. and W. Winds blow, and the Trees begin to blossom. In *April* the Fruit appears, and Cherries are ripe by the latter End of the Month in *Fez*, *Algier*, *Tunis*, and some Parts of *Morocco*. They gather the Figs in *May*, and they have ripe Grapes by *Midsummer*; but the greatest Plenty of Figs and Peaches is in *September*. About the Middle of *August* they begin to dry their Grapes in the Sun, in or-

der to make them Raisins; but if bad Weather comes before they are all dry'd, they make Wine and Must of the rest. Their Harvest for Honey, Pomegranates, and Quinces, falls in *October*, and their Olive Harvest in *November*. Their Olive-Trees are so tall, that they strike down the Fruit with long Poles, and there's a large Sort whose Olives are unfit for Oil, and are therefore eaten as soon as ripe. They have very pleasant Weather in the Spring, which begins *February* 15, and ends *May* 18. If it does not rain betwixt *April* 25, and *May* 5, their Harvest proves bad, for which Reason they call the Rain of that Season, *Blessed of God*, and some religiously preserve it. Their Summer extends from *May* 18, to *August* 16, and is attended for most Part with hot and clear Weather, only sometimes it rains in *July* and *August*, which (says our Author) is the Forerunner of a mortal Pestilence. Their Autumn, during which the Heat is moderate, begins *August* 16, and ends *November* 16, from whence 'tis Winter till *February* 15. They fix their Equinoxes upon *March* 16, and *September* 16, and their Solstices upon *June* 16, and *December* 16. They call the Space of Time between *August* 15, and *September* 15, *The Furnace of the Year*, because it brings their Fruits to Maturity. They plough upon the Mountains in *October*, but not in the Plains till the Beginning of Winter. About the End of the Autumn, all the Winter, and a great Part of the Spring, they have high Winds, Hail, and Thunder, and in some Places abundance of Snow, which does much Damage to their Corn and Fruit, especially if it falls in the Day-time, when the Corn begins to flower, and so do the E. S. and S. E. Winds, which happen in *May* and *June*. *Dapper* says, that the Weather is not so sharp at coldest as to need a Fire. He begins their Spring and Summer 10 Days, and their Autumn one Day, later than *Leo*. The latter says, the People in general are good Astrologers, and regulate all their Computations relating to Law or Religion by the Course of the Moon; but he thinks they learn'd that Science from the *Latins*, because they call their Months by *Latin* Names. He adds, that their Year differs 11 Days from that of the *Romans*; that they allow 30 Days apiece to 6 Months, and but 29 to the other 6.

The same Author says, that they rarely live to above 65 or 70 Years of Age, except in the Mountains, where some are very lusty at 100; but in general he says, they are of a weaker Constitution than the other *Africans*, and that the Children, and sometimes their old Women, are subject to a Shedding of the Hair, for which there's no Cure. Their common Diseases are the Head-ach, without a Fever; the Tooth-ach, which some ascribe to their drinking of cold Water after hot Pottage: Pains of the Stomach, which they call Pains of the Heart; Gripings, proceeding (as our Author thinks) from the continual Use of cold Water; Pains in the Bones and the Gout, occasioned by their going bare-foot, and sitting upon the cold Ground, which last is very common in the Spring-time, when those of a sanguine Complexion are often seized with a Cough. The *French* or (as they call it in some Parts of *Barbary*) the *Spanish* Pox was spread over *Africa* by the *Jewish* Women, after that People were drove out of *Spain*, and is very mortal. It begins with a Swelling and Languishing, and at last breaks out into Ulcers. Few are known to be cur'd of it, except some that have gone to *Numidia* or *Negroland*, where the Air is temperate and wholesome, and the Disease scarce known. The Women of *Barbary* are subject to the Falling Sickness, which by Way of Excuse they give out for a Possession of the Spirit. Our Author adds, that every 10th, 15th, or 20th Year, great Numbers of the *Barbarians* are swept off by the Plague, and *Oliver Noort* mentions one in his Time that carried off 250000 in a short Space. *Dapper* says, that the Inhabitants of the Coasts are more healthy than those of the low Country, because of the Winds that blow from the Sea.

African Authors say, *Barbary* has been long inhabited, but they do not agree by whom 'twas first Peopled. Some say by a People expelled out of *Asia*; but those of the best Note (according to *Marmol*) say, the ancient *Barbarians* were 5 Colonies of *Sabeans*, as we formerly mentioned in the General Account of Modern *Africa*.

Leo derives the Name of *Barbary* from *Ber*, the Name of the Country before it was Peopled, whence the Inhabitants were afterwards called *Berebers*, or from some of the

Inhabitants who called themselves *Barbares*, and are still possessed of a City called *Barbara*, and a large Tract of Lands in *Genehoa* and *Zingue*. Some say, the *Romans* gave it this Name, because of the Barbarity of their Language, or as others from their savage Looks and Manners. *Heylin* says, that when the *Romans* conquer'd that Part of this Country which belong'd to the *Carthaginians*, they called it *Africa*, which Name it held till 'twas subdued by the *Saracens*, who called it *Barbary* either from *Barbar*, which in their Language signifies an uncertain Mutter, such as the Speech of the *Africans* seemed to them, or from the Word *Bar*, signifying a Desert. He tells us, that the Country was first Peopled by *Phut*, *Cham's* 3d Son, who possessed himself of all the Country betwixt the *Greater Syrtis* and the Ocean, and he seems positive in this, not only from *Ptolomy's* River *Phut* or *Phthuth* in *Mauritania*, but from the *Regio Phutensis* or the Nation of the *Phutæans*, placed here by *Josephus* and *St. Jerome*. *Heylin* says, they were governed at first by the Chiefs of their several Families, but at last by the Kings of *Mauretania* and *Numidia*, and the State of *Carthage*. The two first descended from *Phut*, and the latter from the *Canaanites* by *Cham's* other Sons, who being drove out of *Canaan* by the Children of *Israel*, transported themselves hither, and settled themselves in the Maritime Parts of *Mauretania* and *Africa Proper*. He proves the Descent of the *Carthaginians* from the *Canaanites*, 1. By the Affinity of the *Punick* or *Phœnician* Language with the old *Hebrew*, which he says only differs in the Dialect and Pronunciation. 2. By the Resemblance of the Name *Pœni* to that of the *Phœnices*. 3. By the Testimony of *St. Augustin*, who in his Comment on *St. Paul's* Epistle to the *Romans* says, That when any of the Inhabitants of this Country were ask'd, What they were? they answered, *Canaanites*. 4. By the Testimony of *Herodotus*, who reports, that when *Cambyfes* intended a War with the *Carthaginians*, the *Phœnicians*, who were the only Mariners he then had, refus'd to be employ'd against them, because they own'd that they were sprung from the same Tree as themselves. And, 5. By the *Phœnician* Inscription on two Marble Pillars near *Tangier*, mentioned by *Procopius*, importing, that the People fled thither from *Joshua*

Leo says, the present Inhabitants are of a brown and tawny Complexion. *Dapper* says, they consist of *Africans*, who are Natives of the Country; *Turks*, that come thither to seek their Fortunes; and *Arabians*, who live in the Deserts. The *Africans* are either Whites and live upon the Coasts, or else Blacks that dwell in the Inland Country. There are also a great many *Jews*, in so much that our Author reckons there are above 160000 Families in *Darac*, *Algier*, *Tunis*, and Part of *Fez*. There are also some Christians in such Places as belong to the *Spaniards*; and *Gramaye* says, that in *Morocco*, *Fez*, and *Libya*, there are some Remains of ancient Christians, who say the Mass of *Mosarabees*, translated from the *Latin* into *Arabic*, and about 170 *Grecian* Families, who have a particular Veneration for *St. Stephen*. Besides these, there are several Christians of *France*, *Spain*, *Holland*, and other Nations, whom the Corsairs or Pyrates sell for Slaves, and will not ransom under extravagant Prices. They are beat and us'd like Dogs, unless they happen to meet with a merciful Master. They have the worst Treatment in the Kingdoms of *Algier* and *Tunis*. They sell some to the Country Peasants, who oblige them to carry Hay upon their Shoulders, or lead laden Asses to the Market, and to pay a certain Sum of Money every Day to excuse them from being beaten. They sell others to the *Arabians* in *Biledulgerid*, who set them to keep Cattle, to drive Waggon, and sometimes yoke them with Asses, without any Allowance but Water and Meal, and merciless Blows. Others they put to row in Gallies, where they are cruelly lash'd with a Bull's-Pizzle, and allow'd nothing but Water and Biscuit. When they put them ashore, they load them with Chains, and thrust them into Dungeons, where they lie all Night on the bare Ground. Those Slaves that are in the Towns are obliged to carry Water from Place to Place, Merchandizes to Warehouses, Provisions to Market, and Dung to their Fields and Gardens. They must also carry away the Nastiness of the House in a Cart to the Sea Side, knead their Dough, work in the Mill like Horses, and bake their Bread, yet are always beaten and fetter'd. This hard Usage, and the Despair of being better treated while they continue Christians,

makes many of them every Year turn *Mahometans*, and yield to Circumcision; and there are many rich Women, who when they die leave them Half their Substance; and Widows of Quality, who often marry them, to encourage others to the like Apostasy, because they account it the noblest Act of Charity to gain a Profelyte: But if they revolt after Circumcision, they strip them naked, grease their Skins with Tallow, put a Chain about them, lead them to a Stake, and then burn them alive, and sometimes they cut off some Member first. Those that they find guilty of a Conspiracy or Treason, they impale, or else throw down headlong, bound Hand and Foot, from a high Tower upon sharp Iron Hooks, on which they stick either by the Head, Belly, or any other Part of the Body, and live many Days after in bitter Torture. Sometimes their Arms and Legs are nail'd to the City-Wall in Form of a Cross, where they are flea'd alive, and sometimes they are bray'd to Pieces in a Mortar. They have another cruel Method of Torture, which *Dapper* describes thus: They hang two Hooks to a Gibbet, with two Chains, one longer than the other. The Executioner, who mounts the Ladder with the condemn'd Person, thrusts the Hook thro' his Right Hand, and fastens it to the shortest Chain. After that he does the like to his Right Foot, and then leaves him hanging, where sometimes they live 3 or 4 Days, without being allow'd to eat or drink all the while. Those that have committed any Crime by Sea, after a Course of several Tortures, are ty'd to the Main-mast, and shot to Death with Arrows, or else their Arms and Legs are cut off, and their Stumps put in the Mouth of a Cannon to be shot to Pieces. To drag Men in Pieces by tying them to 4 Ships, which separate towards the 4 Winds, to throw them from the Top of a Rock, and to cut off Limb from Limb and throw their Flesh to the Fish, are but common Punishments; and to be hang'd or ty'd in a Sack and thrown into the Sea, is reckon'd a light Punishment. 'Tis Capital to lift up the Hand against a Janizary, or to wear a Ruff, which is their particular Badge of Distinction, or to entice a *Mahometan* Woman to Uncleanness; but *Dapper* says, they connive at the latter, because they be-

lieve

lieve that all Sins are wash'd away by plunging into the Sea.

Coppin says, the Corsairs or Pyrates possess a Tract of 1000 Miles along the Coast from *Tripoli* to *Oran*. They are their own Masters; and tho' the Grand Seignior often sends a Basba to *Tunis*, yet he has no Control, nor durst he exact more than what they please to give him. They were at first a Gang of *Arabian* and *Moorish* Renegadoes, who being us'd to Robberies, and having some bold Leaders, seiz'd some of the Maritime Towns, turn'd Cruizers, and took some rich Prizes, which encourag'd a great many others of their Bent, as well *Turks* as *Jews*, to join with them. In this Manner the famous *Barberossa* and his Brother became so powerful, that being solicited to come with his Brigandines to the Assistance of *Selim K.* of *Algier*, he caus'd him to be poison'd in a Bagnio, and seized his Country: And our Author says, the People were not strong enough to drive him out, because the Kingdom had been newly divided from the Empire of *Morocco*. He dy'd a miserable Death, and was succeeded by his Brother, who made a great Progress towards settling his new Dominion, by Means of the great Divisions and Quarrels that arose among the petty States on the Coast as far as *Tripoly*. *Solyman II.* made him one of his Basbas, and Commander of Part of his Fleet, with which he took *Tunis* from the *Moors*; and tho' the King of *Spain* retook it afterwards, yet it fell again into the Hands of the Corsairs, but is independent on those of *Algier*, because *Barberossa's* Successors lost Part of their former Power. In Imitation of these, other Pyrates settled themselves at *Tripoly*, *Bizerta*, and *Sersel*; and in short, all the Towns on the Coast, from the Greater *Syrtis* to *Oran*, are in the Hands of different Pyrates, who subsist under the Protection of the *Turks*, and are ready to serve him with their Ships when there is Occasion. Coppin says, 'tis difficult to define what sort of Government they have, because there's such a Diversity in every Town, but he observes, that they have no true Monarchy, and that they are govern'd by those who have the most Power. In their chief Places they have establish'd a sort of Dignity which none can hold above a few Years; and he who is rais'd to it, manages State-

Affairs, and is the chief Person in the Republick. Sometimes they elect a King, and especially at *Algier* and *Tunis* they do it often, but he never possesses the Power, and such is the Inconstancy natural to the Inhabitants of this Climate, says our Author, that they are soon weary of him, and give him a Sepulchre in Exchange for his Throne.

Leo says, the *Arabians* who live upon the Coast of *Barbary* were formerly great Mathematicians, Philosophers, and Astrologers; but about 400 Years ago those Arts were quite extinguish'd by the chief Professors of their Law and Religion, whom they honour as petty Gods. They go frequently to Church to repeat some Form of Prayer, and think it unlawful to wash some of their Members on that Day, tho' at other Times they wash their whole Bodies. Our Author observes, that on *Fridays*, when they assemble to hear the *Mahometan* Sermons, if any one sneezes in the Church, every one does the like to bear him Company, so that they never leave off till Sermon is done. He adds, that the *Arabians* here are very ingenious in Building and Mathematical Inventions. He vindicates them from the Fraud with which some *Latin* Authors charge them, and says, that they are very honest and sincere, love those that are so, and will sooner die than break their Word; but they are ambitious, covetous, and so jealous, that they'll lose their Lives rather than suffer an Affront on the Score of their Women. They travel all the World over, and trade into *Egypt*, *Arabia*, *Ethiopia*, *Persia*, *India*, and *Turkey*, meeting every where with Esteem; for our Author says, they are perfect Masters of whatever Art they profess. They abhor obscene Discourse, and will not suffer a Youth to speak or hear of Love Matters, especially before his Superiors. Leo commends those also who live in Tents for their Devotion, Valour, Civility, Hospitality, Veracity, and Integrity. He says, the Citizens of *Barbary* are very proud, cholerick, needy, covetous, revengeful, forgetful of Benefits, peevish, and quarrelsome. They always speak with a loud Voice, and are so clownish, that they'll scarce entertain or converse with a Stranger. They are very credulous to believe Impossibilities, and impute all natural Phænomena's to a Divine Power,

Power, without being able to assign any Philosophical Cause. They are shallow witted, have no Judges or Laws, and their Governors treat them like Dogs. They don't understand Exchange of Money, &c. Their Shepherds are a poor Crew, addicted to nothing but Theft, Deceit, and Brutality. Their Batchelors keep Company with several Ladies, till they light upon one that they like for a Wife. They have no Churches or Religion. And in short, our Author says they are meer Savages. *Dapper* says, they allow Polygamy, but most have only one lawful Wife, and keep the rest for Slaves and Concubines; yet all their Children have an equal Share of the Patrimony. When a Man marries, he only makes a Declaration in Writing before the Cadi, that he takes such a one to Wife. They may separate when they list, and both have the Privilege to demand a Divorce. When the Woman claims it, the Father must give her Husband the Portion he promis'd him; and if the Man divorces the Woman, he can demand nothing from her, unless he convict her of Adultery. The Females are always veil'd, insomuch that the Man is not permitted to see his Bride but on the Wedding-Night; and if he would know any thing of her Person and Qualities beforehand, he must enquire of her Parents. They have a great Esteem for Enchanters and Sorcerers, and the latter pretend to cure the Sick by Characters and Words taken out of the Alcoran. They have no Physicians, but Surgeons, and a few Apothecaries and Druggists. The People are so superstitious, that when they are sick they lay great Store of Provisions upon the Tombs of their *Morabouts* or *Santo's*; and if any Beast eats of them, they fancy their Distemper transmigrates into the Animal. When their Women are in Travel, they give some School-Boys a great Sheet to hold by the 4 Corners, in which they lay a Hen's Egg. Then the Children sing Prayers alternately thro' the Streets; upon which the *Turks* and *Moors* throw Buckets of Water into the Sheet upon the Egg, and fancy that it causes the Woman's Delivery. When their Heads ache, they beat a Lamb or a Kid as long as it can stand, and fancy that by so doing the Pain will pass into the Head of the Beast. They never take God's Name in vain, and have no Oaths or blasphemous

Expressions in their Conversation, which is in the *Arabick*, *Turkish*, and *African* Languages; and if they catch a Renegado swearing in his own Dialect, they punish him severely. He adds, that tho' they are quarrelsome, they never proceed to Blows or Murder. They are of a lively Genius, very devout, and constant at their Mosques and Prayers. The Inferiors give submissive Language to their Superiors, and the Girls have so much Respect for their Fathers, that they dare not talk of amorous Intrigues, or sing Love-Songs in their Presence. The *Arabians* and Shepherds, tho' laborious, are very poor; but the Citizens of *Barbary* are mistrustful and lazy. They apply themselves to the Study of History, of the Liberal Arts, and of their Law. They know how to manage a Horse. The principal Weapons of those who live in the Inland Country are only long Pikes, which they handle with great Dexterity; but those on the Coast have Fire-Arms too. When the Men make Water, they stoop to the Ground, and think it so ridiculous to do it standing, that when they see a Christian do so, they throw Stones at him, and affront him all they can. Besides, they are extremely careful that they don't defile themselves by the least Drop, because 'twould oblige them to go and wash immediately.

Dapper says, that one Part of *Barbary* is govern'd by Monarchs, as those of *Morocco*, *Fez*, and some other *Arabian* and *African* Kings, and another by *Bashas* depending absolutely on the Grand Seignior, as the Kingdoms of *Algier*, *Tunis*, and *Tripoly*. There are also Vassal Kings, as those of *Constat* and *Labez*, who are Tributaries to *Algier*, and the petty Kings or *Cheks* of the *Arabs*, who are obliged to furnish a certain Sum of Money and Number of Soldiers in case of Necessity; and there are others who are a sort of Republicks, as those in the Country and on the Mountains of *Barbary*. In all the Towns where there's a *Basha*, there's also a Cady or Judge, who gives final Sentence in all Causes whether Civil or Criminal. Every Man is his own Pleader throughout *Barbary*, except in the Town of *Sally*, where the *Moors* plead by Counsellors and Attornies.

Dapper says, the Export of this Country consists in Ox-Hides, Linen and Cotton Cloth, Raisins, Dates, Figs, and several

other Sorts of Merchandize. He guesſes at the ancient Riches of this Kingdom from the Expences laid out by the Kings of *Fez*, one of whom ſpent 480000 Crowns in building a College, another 700000 in erecting a Caſtle, and another four times as much in repairing a Town. He thinks 'tis now as rich and potent as ever, becauſe of the prodigious Revenues of the Kings of *Morocco* and *Fez*, of the Baſhas and other great Lords of *Tripoly*, *Algier*, and *Tunis*, ariſing from their Commerce with the *French*, *English*, *Dutch*, *Venetians*, *Genoeſe*, *Hamburgers*, &c. beſides the prohibited Merchandize with which the Pyrates traffick in the Ports of *Spain* and *Italy*, at which the Governor connives. The Wealth of *Barbary* is alſo evident from its Mosques and their great Revenues. There are 100 at *Algier*, 300 at *Tunis*, as many at *Fez*, and 700 at *Morocco*, the chief of which have 200 Ducats Revenue per Day. Our Author adds, that when the *Algerines* made themſelves Maſters of *Fez*, they found 36 Millions of Plunder; and that when *Charles V.* took *Tunis*, and left the Plunder to his Soldiers, his three chief Generals had each for their Share 300000 Ducats in Money. Beſides, the *Jews* pay a great deal for the Liberty of Uſury, not to reckon the vaſt Booty brought home by the Pyrates of *Algier* and *Tunis*; from whence *Dapper* concludes, that *Barbary* would be invincible if it was well united, and if all the Inhabitants uſ'd Fire-Arms, as do the *Turks* and thoſe of *Fez* and *Morocco*. *Coppin* lays down his Eſſay of a Model how this Country might be ſhar'd among the Chriſtian Princes, were they to unite againſt the *Ottoman* Porte, for which we refer the Curious to his Book.

Sir William Monſon ſays, the *English* firſt traded hither in 1577, in the Reign of *Mulley Aſaleck*, who gave our Nation very good Conditions, with which we have continu'd our Trade there to this Time, tho' the *Portugueſe* often endeavour'd to ſupplant us. In our Wars with *Spain*, our Letter of Mart Ships uſ'd to be ſupplied with Water, Proviſions, and other Neceſſaries, from the Ports of *Barbary*, in Exchange for our Goods; but the *Barbarians* traffick'd with ſo much Craft, that 'twas dangerous to truſt them: Yet they had ſo much Honour and ſo great a Regard to Crown'd Heads, that

they would not ſuffer the Ships of one Nation to aſſault thoſe of another while in their Ports, under Pain of the Imprisonment of the Merchants of the Aſſailants Nation, or Conſiſcation of their Goods. But if one was taken by the other never ſo little Way out at Sea, and brought into the Port again, they would condemn it as lawful Prize. He vindicates the *English* from ever ſelling any Chriſtians, tho' they uſ'd to bring many of the King of *Spain*'s Subjects Priſoners to the Ports of *Barbary*. *Hylin* adds to the Character of the *Barbarians*, that they are unfaithful, and have a ſtately Gate. Their Women have comely Bodies, good Features, a black Complexion, tender Skins, and go extraordinary fine to pleaſe their Huſbands; but they are not permitted to give Viſits, and ſeldom to receive any.

Dapper ſays, the Men wear over their Shirts wide Linen Drawers, and over that a ſtrip'd Veſt down to their Knees, made either of Cloth or Silk, and faſten'd before with Gold or Silver Buttons. Their Cuffs come no lower than their Elbows, but they often turn up their Sleeves, and go with their Arms naked. They wear no Shoes nor Stockings; but inſtead of the latter, the Grandees have *Turkey-Leather* Buſkins. They leave a Tuft of Hair on their Heads like the other *Mahometans*. Some cut off all their Beards, but leave two Muſtachios to grow; and ſome, eſpecially the old Men, wear long and round Beards. Their Turban is of red Wool, wrapped up with a Roll of white Cotton 5 or 6 Ells in Length. They who pretend to be deſcended from *Mahomet*, or who have been twice in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, wear a Turban of red Wool, with the Name of the Emirs and Cheriffs. Their Shoes are of red or yellow Leather, and pick'd, but without any Latchet or Heel-piece, like Slippers, and are plated at Bottom with Iron like the *Turks*. They wear at their Side three fine Knives, two great ones, and a little one in a Sheath of Silver, which is a Foot long, adorned with Turquoifes and Emeralds, and worth above 100 Crowns. The Women's Habit is almoſt like the Men's. They have a Kerchief of fine Linen, but they wear no Handkerchief, and cover themſelves with a Garment which reaches down to the Middle of their

their Thigh. The better Sort wear 5 or 6 Pendants at each Ear, Silk Habits, and Bracelets of Precious Stones. They rub the End of their Fingers with the blue Tincture of an Herb called *Gueva*, which *Dapper* thinks the same as our common Woad. When they go into the Towns, they wear Cotton Drawers, which hang down to their Feet, a Fillet upon their Foreheads, a white Piece of Linen over their Face, and wrap their Bodies round with a Gown of Cotton or Goat's Hair, under which they fold their Hands like a Cross, so that 'tis impossible to know them in the Streets; but when they enter into their Friends Apartments, they put off this Garment, and leave their Shoes at the Door, lest the Master of the House should enter, which the Husband of her who gives the Visit would take amiss. The chief Paint for their Hair and Eye-lids is burnt Antimony, with which they anoint. *Dapper* says, they seldom eat dry Food, and that their common Fare is Rice, Mutton, Beef and Veal. When they kill the Beast, they say they do it *in the Name of God*, turn round towards *Mecca*, and cut off the Creature's Head cleverly, that it may bleed better, for otherwise they think the Flesh would be corrupted. Their Drink is clear Water and Sherbet. They spread *Turkey Leather* upon the Ground, to serve them instead of Cloth and Napkins, except at solemn Festivals, when they set blue Linen Napkins at the Side. Their Utensils are of Pewter or Earth, and their Spoons of Wood. Those of the chief Quality are not permitted to have any of Silver, and none but the Sultan is serv'd in Gold Plate. The People commonly meet every Morning in the chief trading Streets to talk, drink Coffee, and smook Tobacco, to which they are so much us'd, that they never pay a Visit without them. When they design a jolly Carousal, they shut themselves in some Room of the House out of the Noise of their Wives and Children, and there eat, drink, and smook, all Day and Night; but none play at any Game, except the Ladies, and these never for Money.

But none of our modern Travellers give so good an Account of the *Moorish* Diet, and Way of Dressing it, &c. as that which *Mr. Jexreel Jones*, who was for some Time a Resident in that Country, and now Inter-

preter to the *Morocco* Ambassadors, communicated to the Royal Society, as we find it publish'd in the 3d Volume of *Miscellanea Curiosa*, which (since every one has not seen) we chose to insert the Substance of it here.

The *Moors* in *West Barbary*, from *Cape Spartel* to *Cape de Geer*, drink either Barley or Wheat Gruel for their Breakfast. They season it with Origan and other savoury Herbs, which they dry all the Year for that purpose, and some put Pepper and Spice. An Hour or two after they commonly eat warm Bread with Butter and Honey, as also Hasty-Pudding sweeten'd with one or both of those two Ingredients. Some again give Cuskfoo with Milk, Flesh, or Roots, but more often at Dinner and Supper. They count this the principal Dish, and make it of Flower of Wheat, or else of Barley, Millet, *Indian Corn*, &c. which they sprinkle with Water, and knead, till it resembles the *Indian Sago* formerly described in *Asia*. They stew their Flesh in Earthen Pots close cover'd, put the Cuskfoo into an Earthen Cullender, and this into the Mouth of the Pot, that it may receive all the Steam of the Meat, which makes it swell very light. When 'tis enough, (as they love every thing thorowly done) they put the Cuskfoo out into a Dish, with a Foot somewhat resembling a Glass, lay the Meat in the Middle, season it with Ginger, Pepper, Saffron, &c. and then set it upon a Mat on the Ground, where 4 or 6 People sit about it with their Buttocks upon the Calves of their Legs, and the Bottom of their Feet on the Ground; but if there are many Guests, there are more Dishes. They cover it with a Thing made on Purpose, so that 'twill keep hot two Hours. *Mr. Jones* observes, 'tis a Practice with the *Moors* all over this Country, that when any one has a Guest or more in his House, the Neighbours bring their Dish to welcome them in Respect to their Neighbour, and to shew their Readiness to entertain the Strangers. The *Jews* are likewise very civil to Christians, and treat them with what they have, as stew'd or bak'd Hens, Capons, hard Eggs boil'd or roasted, which they press flat, and season with Pepper, Salt, Wine, Brandy, &c. They have generally the best Bread, and of every thing else that is to be got. They put Annis and two or three other Sorts of Seeds in their

Bread. One of the latter is black, and tastes like Carrot-Seeds. They esteem Honey a wholesome Breakfast, and prefer that in the Comb with the young Bees in it, which are Milk-white, and when taken out look like Gentles. They make Presents of it to those of Quality, and prescribe as much as a Walnut to be eaten every Morning. It is as thick as *Venice Treacle*, and full of small Seeds about the Bigness of Mustard, which he thinks must be a large Sort of Poppy-Seed. At a stately Entertainment, they roast a Whole, Half, or Quarter of a Sheep, on a Wooden Spit, and let one Side be almost done before they turn the other. The Fire is commonly of Wood, burnt to clear Coal, and put as it were under the Meat. They baste it with Oil, Water, and Salt, incorporated. When 'tis thorowly roasted, they say, *Bismillah*, i. e. *In the Name of God*. Then they wash their Right Hands, pull the Meat in Pieces, and fall to; but they never use their Left Hand in Eating, and one Man holds while another pulls it asunder, and distributes the Pieces to the rest. They seldom use a Knife, and scarce ever a Fork. They are very dextrous at this Way of Carving, and scorn to flinch at the Heat. When they have done, they lick their Fingers, and wash their Hands at every hot Dish. One of their Dishes is *Alfdoush* or *Virmizelli*, being stew'd Meat, well spic'd with savoury Broth. They eat the Meat, and dip the Bread in the Sawce. If a Hair be found in their Cookery, 'tis a capital Crime, and they love every thing well season'd. Another Dish is *Cubbob*, which is small Pieces of Mutton, with the Cawl of a Sheep wrapped over them, and some make it of the Liver, Lights, and Heart, pepper'd and salted, mix'd with sweet Herbs and Saffron roasted, and then dish'd up with the Juice of an Orange, so that they use Lemon in their stew'd Meats, and Orange for Roast or Fish. Another of their Dishes is *Elmorofia*, that is, Pieces of Beef or Camel's Flesh stew'd with Butter, Honey, and Water, and sometimes Rob of Wine, to which they add Saffron, Garlick or Onions, and a little Salt. They reckon this a delicious Dish, and use it most in the Winter, because they think it good against Colds, tho' they say Beef is cooler than Mutton. Sometimes they have Hares stew'd, Hens

and Partridges stew'd and roasted. They disjoint and stew them in Water and Oil, or Butter, if they are not very fat. When they are almost enough, they put a Couple of beaten Eggs into the Liquor, with Lemon-Juice or Vinegar. They mince the Flesh of a Leg of Mutton very fine with a Knife in each Hand, held across, to which they add Suet, Parsly, Thyme, Mint, &c. Then they add beaten Pepper, Salt, Saffron, and Nutmeg, with a Handful of Rice, fill several Lays of Onions with forc'd Meat, and some they put up in Vine-Leaves. During this, they stew the Bones and Residue of the Leg of Mutton with as much Water as will just cover them. Then they put their forc'd Meat-Balls upon the Meat, and cover them with a green Bunch of Grapes. This they reckon one of their best Dishes; and they have another call'd *Piloe*, which consists of boil'd Rice, with a Hen and Mutton in the Middle, serv'd up with Spice. They roast and stew a Bustard, and make an excellent Dish of its Guts. They have also Ragous made with Sparrows, Pigeons, &c.

Their Drink is plain Water or Milk, and sometimes Rob of Wine mix'd with Water, the Quantity of about half a Pint of the former to two Quarts and a half of the latter. They take it medicinally against a Cold. Many of the Merchants press all the Grapes in their Vineyards, and stow the Liquor in great Jars under Ground, where it proves at last excellent Rob or Wine. When they design to make merry, they go to some Vineyard or Garden, where they have Musick, and all or most of these Dishes, with an Earthen Bowl full of Wine, which will hold 4 or 5 Gallons, where they sit and drink round every one out of a large Cup like a Tea-Dish, that will hold almost a Pint, till the Bottom is empty. They often stay till they have emptied the Jar, which is seldom less than a Week's time. They don't drink Wine, nor piss standing, because their Testimony could not be valid in Law. Every Morning during this Time of Merriment they are for pickled or fry'd Fish, or the like savoury Bits. They are great Lovers of Fish, which they have good and in great Variety. They fry them in Organ Oil, or stew, roast, and bake them, with Store of Spice, Onions, Garlick, Cummin, Parsly,

Parsly, and Coriander. That which they fry is cut in thin Slices, and put into Vinegar, with Saffron, Pepper, and the other Spices. It will keep above a Month; and besides, they have pickled Limes, Olives, Capers, &c. They eat Garavanca's, Almonds, and Beans, parched in a Pan with Water and Salt. They pretend, the best Way to cure the ill Effects of a Drunken Bout is to take a swinging Cup of the same Liquor, which invites them to more, and so on. They reckon the Hedge-hog a Princely Dish. Before they kill him, they rub his Back against the Ground, by holding its Feet betwixt two, (as Men do a Saw) till it has done squeaking. Then they cut its Throat, pull off its Spines, and singe it. They gut it, stuff the Body with Rice, sweet Herbs, Garavanca's, Spice, and Onions, put some Butter and Garavanca's into the Water, and then stew it in a little Pot close stopped. The *Moors* don't care to kill Lamb, Kid, or Veal, because they say 'tis Pity to part the Suckling from the Dam. They eat with their boil'd Meat, Carrots, Turnips of two or three Sorts, Cabbage, Beans and Pease, &c. of which they have Plenty, and very good. They have also stew'd Porcupine, that tastes like Camel's Flesh, which our Author thinks comes the nearest to Beef of any thing else. They have another Dish call'd *Alcholea*: 'Tis made of Beef, Mutton, or Camel's Flesh, sliced, salted, and soak'd 24 Hours in the Pickle. Then 'tis removed into other Vessels of Water, and when it has lain a Night, they dry it on Ropes in the Sun. When 'tis hard, they cut it into little Bits, and boil them in a Pan or Chauldron of Oil and Suet, till it looks clear and red as 'tis cut, and then 'tis taken out, drein'd, and when cool, potted up in Jars with the Liquor 'twas fry'd in.

Their Travelling Provision consists in Bread, Almonds, Raisins, Figs, hard Eggs, cold Fowl, &c. But what is most us'd by Travellers is *Zumeet*, *Tumeet*, or *Limereece*, three *Shilha* Names, by which Mr. Jones thinks they are of longer standing than the *Mahometans* in this Part of *Africk*. They are all three made of parch'd Barley-Flower, which they carry in a Leather Satchel. *Zumeet* is the Flower mix'd with Honey, Butter, and Spice; *Tumeet* with Organ Oil, and *Limereece*

with Water, and only drunk. Our Author observes, that it quenches Thirst much better than Water alone, satisfies a hungry Appetite, refreshes fainting Spirits, and prevents the ill Effects of a hot Sun and a fatiguing Journey. The Mountaineers of *Suse* use it for their Diet both at Home and Abroad. They eat all Things taken by Hawking, Hunting, and Fowling, provided they have Time before it be dead to cut its Throat, and say, *Bismyllah*, i. e. *In the Name of God*; and there's the same Liberty if he that pursues the Game pronounces that Word before the Gun is fired, or the Hawk or Greyhound let loose; so that they may eat and sell any thing but Swines Flesh, and what dies of its self. They say, there's but one Part of the Swine unlawful to be eaten, which if they knew, they would let us have little enough of the rest. They eat Snails boil'd with Salt, and think them very wholesome. In *Tasilet* or *Dra*, most of their Food is Dates, of which they have 10 or 12 Sorts. They have good Capons all over the Country, two Sorts of wild Turkeys, Ducks and Geese, Duck, Teal, and Mallard, Corlews, Plovers, Snipes, Ox-birds, Pipers, a sort of a black Crow with a bald Pate, and long crooked Bill, which is good Meat, and 100 other Sorts of Fowl. They hunt Antelopes, which are also good Food. They are as large as a Goat, of a Chesnut Colour, and white under the Belly. Their Horns are almost straight up and tapering, with Rings at a Distance from one another, till within an Inch and a half of the Top. They have large black Eyes, long and slender Necks, with Feet, Legs, and Body, like a Deer. Our Author thinks that both Kinds have two Cavities between their Legs. They go many in a Herd, and keep Scouts before to give Notice of any approaching Danger. When two lie down together, they lay their Backs toward each other, and the Head of one towards the Tail of t'other, that they may see every Way. Their Dung is not offensive. They are too swift for the Greyhound, and are taken by the Hawk or Shot. Partridges in *Sus* commonly roost on Trees, because there are so many Foxes as would otherwise destroy them. The *Moors* love a fat Fox stew'd or roasted. They have many Kinds of Fruits and Sweetmeats, viz. three or four

Sorts of Pumpkins, Macaroons, Almonds prepared divers Ways, Raisins, Dates, dry and green Figs, two or three Sorts of choice Melons, and Water-Melons, several Kinds of Pomegranates, Apples, Pears, Apricocks, Peaches, white and black Mulberries, Plums and Damascens, Cherries, and good Grapes of many Kinds, of which there are some in *Messa* as big as a Pigeon's Egg, but they don't make Wine. Their Salading is Lettuce, Endive, Carduus, Parsly, Opium, and other sweet Herbs, Onions, several Kinds of Cucumbers, some about a Yard in Length, and two or three Inches thick, and hairy, (which are esteemed the wholesomest) Radishes, Fumata's or Apples of Love, which they cut, season with Oil, Vinegar, Salt, and red Pepper, and then eat it with Bread. They have another Fruit called *Baraneen*, which they stew, and sometimes slice and fry. Mr. Jones adds, that when the *Moors* have feasted, they wash their Hands and Mouths, thank God, and then bless the Master of the House. *Dapper* says, they frequent hot Baths at least once a Week, the Men in the Morning, and the Women in the Afternoon. There are some in almost every Town and Street, and the Price of going in is very moderate. In every Town also there are several Schools, where Children are taught only to read, write, and cypher; and instead of a Rod, they are struck upon the Soles of their Feet with a Wand. They learn the Alcoran from the Beginning to the End; and when a Scholar has learnt thro' his Book, he is habited in fine Apparel, and carried in Triumph thro' the Town, with the Acclamations of his School-fellows.

Heylin says, they speak the *Arabick* Language in most of the Maritime Towns; except those of *Fez* and *Morocco*, where they speak the *Punick* and old *African*, the former in such Places as anciently belong'd to the *Carthaginians*, and the latter in the Parts of *Mauritania* not subject to them; but the *Latin* could never prevail here, tho' 'twas the Language of the *Roman* Colonies. The same Author says, that Christianity was first planted in that Part of this Country called *Africa Propria* by *Epanetus*, one of the 70 Disciples, who (according to *Dorotheus*) was the first Bishop of *Carthage*, and in *Mauritania* by *St. Simon Zeloter*. *Metaphrastes* says, that *Si-*

mon Peter also preached here; and when *Claudius Caesar* by a Decree forced him from *Rome*, by *Crescens* his Disciple about *Anno* 250, there were above 90 Bishops here, who all met in the Synod of *Labesitum*; and in 398, when the *Donatists* prevail'd, and had 270 Bishops in these Parts, 214 of the Catholics met in the Council of *Carthage*. They were ranked into 6 Classes, according to the Number of *African* Provinces, which had each a Metropolitan call'd *Primas*, but all subordinate to him of *Carthage*. *Heylin* corrects *Leo* for asserting that the *Barbarians* remained in Idolatry till 250 Years before *Mahomet*, and says, he mistook the reviving of Christianity in the Time of *Justinian*, after it had been long suppressed by the *Vandals* of the *Arian* Faction, (who banish'd hence at one time 300 Christian Bishops) for the first planting of the Gospel: But he says 'twas soon after this so suppressed by the *Saracens*, that *Mahometism* universally prevail'd here, except in a few Towns possessed by the Crowns of *Spain* and *Portugal*. *Heylin* says, there was a flourishing Church here till the 5th Century, when the *Arian Vandals* brought in their Heresy; but that Christianity ow'd its Ruin chiefly to the Conquest of the *Moors* in 669, and to *Osmen* the 3d Caliph of the *Saracens*, who finally expelled the *Romans* in 699. The chief Military Men born here were, *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, and his 3 Sons *Annibal*, *Asdrubal*, and *Mago*; *Massinissa* King of the *Numidians*, and *Septimius Severus* the *Roman* Emperor. Its chief Poets were *Terence* and *Apuleius*; and its best Divines, *Tertullian*, *Cyprian*, *Julius Africanus*, *Arnobius*, *Lactantius*, *Victorinus Afer*, *Optatus Milevitanus*, *Victor Uticensis*, *Fulgentius Primatius*, and *St. Augustine*, who for his admirable Abilities, and indefatigable Opposition of Heresy, was called, *Malleus Hereticorum*.

We need not insist on their Festivals and Funerals, since for most Part they have the same Ceremonies that are us'd by the *Turks* in *Europe* and *Asia*.

We shall only touch upon the Natural History of *Barbary*, and then proceed to its particular Geography. *Dapper* says, that all the Coast and the Plains betwixt that and *Mount Atlas*, from *Sues* to the Streights of *Gibraltar*, abound with Corn, Barley, and Pasturage; but all the Coasts from the East
Con-

Confines of *Tripoly* to the said Streights are uneven and full of Mountains, which run 20 or 30 Miles within Land; yet between these and the Great *Atlas* there are some Plains and little Hills, which abound with Corn and Pasture, tufted Trees, Springs and Rivers that run into the *Mediterranean*; but beyond *Carvan* there are some sandy Deserts. Beyond those Plains the Country is interspersed with Hills and Vallies as far as the Great *Atlas*. Upon the Coasts of *Barbary*, near the Lesser *Atlas*, where 'tis rather cold than hot, there's little Corn, but abundance of Barley, which is very much in Use among the People. In the Summer those Mountains yield fresh Shades and green Pastures; but there fall deep Snows in the Winter. *Barbary* abounds with Salt and choice Fruits, such as Grapes, Figs, Cherries, Prunes, Peaches, Quinces, Apricocks, Pomegranates, Oranges, and large Citrons. They have very thick tall Olive-Trees, especially in *Morocco*, *Fez* and *Algier*; but those of *Tunis* are less than those of *Europe*. There are a great many Thorny Shrubs called *Arguan*, that bear a Fruit as big as an Olive; but we shall say more of this in *Morocco*. They have also a great many Cotton and Sugar Trees. Along the Coasts of the *Mediterranean* there grows a marshy Plant, which some call *White Mugwort*, or *St. John's Herb*. It has several Branches two or three Cubits high, and large Leaves deeply streak'd with Black in the Inside, and White on the Outside. The Flowers are of a pale Yellow, grow next to one another in Form of a Coronet; are very like those of *Groundsil*, and turn at last to Dust. They nourish this Plant for a Rarity, and the Arborists call it *Cineraria*, from its ashy Colour, or *Jacoea Marina*, because it grows upon the Banks of the Sea, and very much resembles the common *Jacoea* or *St John's Herb*. They say, the Juice of this Herb dissolves the Stone in the Kidneys and Bladder, and that it dispels the Obstructions of the Intrails, and particularly those of the Matrix. In the Mountains and Forrests there are a great many Wild Beasts, such as Lyons, Tygers, Wild-Goats, Apes, and all Sorts of Birds and Serpents. *Leo* says, they have a great many Camels, in which consists the chief Strength of the *Arabians* who live in the Deserts. They are

gentle, and can fast longer than the Camels of *Asia*; and our Author says, he has seen one of their Camels travel 50 Days without Grain, only at Night 'twas turned loose to feed upon Grass, Brambles, and the Boughs of Trees; so that some of them travel thus till they lose all their Flesh, and are scarce able to carry a Hundred Weight. *Marmol* says, the *Arabians* feed for most Part of the Year upon Camel's Milk and Dates; that their Flesh is insipid; that that of the Bunch tastes like a fat Cow's Udder; and that both the *Africans* and *Arabians* fry it with Fat, and keep it in Vessels all the Year for their common Food. He adds, that these Camels will not live long in *Spain*, because the Climate is too cold, and that they are always kept in hot Plains and sandy Places, except it be as they come loaded from *Nu-midia* to *Barbary*, when they spend two or three Days in crossing the Mountains of the Great *Atlas*.

Their Horses are incredibly swift; but *Leo* says, they are the same with those bred up by the *Arabians* in *Asia*, and from thence call'd *Arabian Horses*. They say, that the *Arabian* Deserts being full of wild Horses, the *Arabs* broke them ever since the Time of *Ismael*, in which they have multiply'd so prodigiously, that most of *Africa* is stocked with them. There are only a few bred here; but the *Arabians* and *Libyans* in the Deserts breed great Numbers of them for Hunting; and to make them lithsome, feed them only with Camel's Milk twice a Day, and give them Pasture when the Grass is up, during which they do not ride 'em. If they can outrun a Dant or Ostrich, they are reckoned worth 1000 Ducats or 100 Camels. *Marmol* says, the *Barbary* Horses are not so good as those brought up by the *Arabians* in the Deserts, but handsomer, because fed with Oats. The Princes of this Country have always a Breed of them to escape upon in case of Necessity; and one of the Kings of *Morocco* had one who carried him so often out of eminent Danger, that he said he would erect a Tomb for him, as *Alexander the Great* did for his Horse. *Leo* says, they have few wild Horses here, and those so swift, that they can hardly be caught by Horses or Dogs. The *Arabians* of the Deserts eat their Flesh, and think the youngest sweetest. They catch them by laying a

Gin cover'd with Sand near the Water where they use to drink. *Marmol* says, they are less than the other Horses, and most of an Ash Colour, with short Manes and Tails, which stand up like Bristles. He adds, that some of these Horses are white. There's a Sort of Rams which *Leo* says are only to be found in *Tunis* and *Egypt*, with Tails so large, that theirs which are fed in the Mountains weigh 10 Pound; but in *Egypt*, where they are fed with Bran and Barley, their Tails are so over-grown, that they cannot stir without little Carts under them. Our Author says, he saw one of these Rams Tails that weigh'd 80 Pound, and heard of others that weigh'd 150 Pound. *Marmol* says, they have 5 or 6 Horns, some bending upwards, and some downwards. *Leo* says, they have Lyons, of which one will encounter 200 Horsemen. Those that range in hot Places, such as the Frontiers of *Temesne* and *Fez*, the Desert of *Angad*, &c. are fiercer than those that frequent the cold Mountains. In the Spring, when the Lionesses are hot, 8 or 10 Lions court the same Female, and have bloody Conflicts with one another. He doubts the Truth of the Report, that if a Woman shew a Lion her Privities, he will roar and run away, but says, that whatever it gets in its Paw, it will carry off, tho' it be a Camel. *Marmol* says, the *Arabians* and *Grandeas* of the Country hunt them on Horseback with Drums and Trumpets. They never range but in the Night. The *Arabians* surround his Den in the Day, and shoot in upon him with Darts and Arrows. The Lion, when wounded, comes out roaring, and falls on his Pursuers, and often kills many Men and Horses. Then they make a Noise with their Instruments to fright him. In *Fez*, the Kings divert themselves with Lion-Hunting, as the *Spaniards* do with Bull-Baiting. This fierce Animal steals in among Flocks of Sheep, and carries off some to the Mountains, and others to the Dens of his Whelps. If he finds the Shepherds asleep, he carries 'em off too; but if they make Head against him, he runs away. The Captives that escape out of *Barbary* over the Mountains to the Coasts where the Christians reside, affirm, that if a Man meets a Lion in the Night, and continue his Path without altering his Countenance, the Lion hangs down his Head, not

daring to attack him, and follows him at a Distance, expecting to surprise him asleep; but if he shew the least Sign of Fear, he flies at him, and pulls him in Pieces. In the Winter, when the Lions rage with Lust, they go 10 or 12 in a Company, and then 'tis very dangerous to meet them; but they are afraid of Fire, for which Reason the *Arabians* always kindle one in an open Place when they are obliged to travel by Night, and throw Fire-brands to stop them as they approach, which is easily perceived, because he is follow'd by certain Animals little bigger than Foxes, and of the same Colour, which eat up his Scraps, and howl like Dogs. The Lion is a mortal Enemy to them, and if he can come at them, tears them in Pieces; but they keep out of his Reach, and never come near him till he has filled his Paunch and left his Prey. *Leo* says, that in *Fez* they hunt them thus: Several little Cells, in which a Man may stand upright, are made in a large Field, and secured with strong Doors, in each of which there's an armed Man, who shews himself to the Lion, and upon his Approach shuts himself up to enflame his Fury. Then they let loose a Bull upon him, and if the Bull kills the Lion, the Sport is at an end; but if the Lion kills the Bull, all the Men in the Cells, who are commonly 12 in Number, jump out upon him, armed with a Javelin and Pike of a Cubit and a half long. If they are too hard for the Lion, the K. orders their Number to be diminished, and if too weak, he and his Company shoot at the Lion with their Cross-Bows from a high Hill, where they stand to see the Chace; but some of the Men are often killed, and all severely wounded, before the Cross-Bows kill the Lion. Those who encounter him have 10 Ducats apiece, and a new Garment; but only Men of known Valour, and such as come from Mount *Zelagi*, are honour'd with this Employment.

They have Leopards which don't hurt Men or Cattle, unless provok'd, or if they meet a Man in a straight Passage, when they fly at his Face, and sometimes crush his Skull in Pieces. They kill all Dogs they can come at. In the Region of *Constantina*, the Mountaineers hunt the Leopard on Horseback, and plant Horsemen at all the Avenues, upon which he turns within the

the Circle till they shoot him with their Arrows, and the Man that lets him escape is obliged to treat all the Company.

Leo says, there are several Monkeys and Baboons in the Woods of *Mauritania* and the Mountains of *Bugia* and *Constantina*. They feed upon Grass and Corn in great Companies, and leave one to stand Centinel, who cries out when the Husbandman comes, and the whole Flock flies to the next Woods, where they get upon the Trees, and leap from one to another, and the She Apes carry their Young upon their Shoulders. In the Caverns of *Atlas* there are many monstrous Dragons, thick in the Middle, and slender at both Ends. Their Motion is slow; but they are so venomous, that wherever they touch 'tis mortal. *Marmol* says, they have a Sort of wild Cow of a Chestnut Colour, with black sharp Horns. 'Tis somewhat less than an Ox. They run up and down like Harts, 100 or 200 together. Their Flesh eats very well, and their Hide when curried makes good Shoes. Leo says, the Sea Ox in the *Niger* has a very hard Hide, is no bigger than a Calf of six Months old, and will live a great while after taken out of Water. *Marmol* says, its Flesh is counted very good. They have Tortoises, with whose Shells the *Barbary* Merchants drive a great Trade, for they are as big as a Target, and impenetrable by a Cross-Bow Shot. *Heylin* says, there are some Mines here of the purest Gold, and that the *Arabians* here are more wealthy, but more morose than those of *Biledulgerid*.

Leo and *Marmol* say, most of the Rivers in this Country come from Mount *Atlas*, and run into the Ocean and the *Mediterranean*. They have a Taste of the Soil, and are almost all muddy, especially on the Confines of *Mauritania*. We propose to defer our Account of Mount *Atlas* after we have done with *Barbary*, and come now to its Division.

Heylin divides it into *Tunis*, *Tremisen* or *Algiers*, *Fez* and *Morocco*, and so does Leo. *Cluverius* and *Gelnitz* divide it into *Barca*, *Tunis*, *Tremisen*, *Fez*, *Morocco*, and *Dara*, the first a Province, and the other five Kingdoms; according to which Division, *Dapper* says, *Dara*, *Fez*, and *Morocco*, take in the two *Mauritania's* of the Ancients, *Tunis*, *Numidia* and *Proper Africa*, and *Barca*, *Libya*, and *Mar-*

marica: But *Peter Davity* assigns *Daria* to *Biledulgerid*, and divides *Barbary* into *Morocco*, *Fez*, *Algier*, *Tunis*, and *Tripoly*, which *Dapper* favours, because *Telefin* and *Tremizen* are now incorporated into the Kingdom of *Algier*, and that *Barca* depends on *Tripoly*. *Du Plessis* agrees with *Luyts* and the *Sansons*, whose Division we intend to follow, and for which we refer to our Tables.

The Kingdom of B A R C A.

MO L L extends it from Lat. $29\frac{1}{2}$. to $33\frac{1}{2}$. and from Long. $40\frac{1}{2}$. to $49\frac{1}{2}$. He makes the Kingdom about 445 Miles along the *Mediterranean*, which bounds it on the N. 240 where broadest towards *Tripoly* and the Gulph of *Sidra* on the W. and not above 90 Miles in Breadth towards *Egypt* on the E. On the S. 'tis bounded with its Desert. The *Sansons* extend it from Lat. 27. to $31\frac{1}{2}$. and from Long. 47. to 60. and make it 690 Miles in Length from E. to W. and above 140 from N. to S. *Du Plessis* makes it 200 and odd Leagues from E. to W. and but 40 from N. to S. *Moll* parts the Kingdom and the Desert by Mount *Méies*. *Dapper* thinks the Name very ancient, because the *Barcaeans* and *Barcites* are placed here by *Virgil* and *Ptolomy*. 'Tis the *Cyrenaica Pentapolis* of the Ancients. Some include within its Limits the Desert of *Barca*, which *Luyts* and the *Sansons* place in *Biledulgerid*, where we shall describe it. *Luyts* says, the Soil of this Kingdom is rocky, sandy, and extremely barren. The Inhabitants are all *Mahometans*. *Du Plessis* says, the Air is temperate, but the Country has few Inhabitants, and those lazy, meagre, brutish, and very poor, especially the *Arabs*, who chiefly live upon Plunder. The Inhabitants of the Coast are a little more polite and less dangerous. He says, the W. Part of it is govern'd by a *Cadis* sent from the *Basha* of *Tripoly*, and is more fruitful and populous than the E. Part, which is dependent on the *Bashaship* of *Cairo*, and almost desert. They are divided by the River *Nachel* or *Nakel*.

The chief Towns, which are very few, are, 1. *Barca*, the Capital, in the W. Part. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 30. Long. $48\frac{1}{2}$. about 50 Miles from the Coast, and 33 from *Cayroan* or *Corene*. *Du Plessis* says, 'tis the

Resi-

Residence of the Cadi. 'Tis called *Tolometa*, and anciently *Ptolemais*, from one of the *Ptolomies*, who repair'd it. The *Sanfons* make *Tolometa* the Port of *Barca*.

2. *Cayroan* or *Corene*, which *Moll* places on a River that falls into the *Mediterranean*. The *Sanfons* say, it lies upon a Hill which has a Prospect to the Sea, and that the Soil about it is water'd with several Rivers, and very fruitful. They say 'twas founded A. M. 1563, and of Rome 143, by K. *Battus*, whose Successors reign'd here near 200 Years, after whose Death 'twas for some time a Free Town, and then under several Tyrants, amongst whom *Nicocrates* was one, who put to Death *Phedimus* the Husband of *Aretaphile*, and forced her to be his Wife, till she took an Opportunity to bring over to her Party *Leander*, the Brother of *Nicocrates*, by marrying her Daughter to him, and by this Means put *Nicocrates* to Death, as she did afterwards *Leander* by Means of her Daughter, and restored the Town to its Freedom, which lasted till the Time of *Alexander the Great*, when the Country was subdued by the *Ptolomies* of *Egypt*; after which it follow'd the Fate of that Country, and was subject to the *Romans*, then to the *Egyptian* Soldans, and lastly to the *Turks*. *Luyts* says, it stands on the Left Side of the River *Doer*, 32 Miles from the *Mediterranean*, and 25 French Leagues N. from *Barca*.

3. *Bernick*. *Luyts* and the *Sanfons* place it on the Gulph of *Sidra*, Part of the *Mediterranean*, in Lat. $29\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 47. about 75 Miles S. W. from *Barca*.

4. *Taochara*, on the same Coast, according to the *Sanfons*, and 45 Miles N. W. from *Barca*.

5. *Bon Andrea*. *Moll* places it on the Coast over against the Isle of *Candie*, about 120 Miles N. E. of *Tolometta*. It lies almost in the Middle betwixt the Rivers *Doer* and *Nachel*, has a large Harbour, and gives Name to a neighbouring Promontory. *Sanfon* and others say, these 5 Cities do also constitute a Province by the Name of *Mefrata*, and annex it to that of *Tripoly*. *Sanfon* says, the Inhabitants of this Country are counted wealthy. They trade with the Negroes and *Abyssins* for Gold, Ivory, Civet, Musk, and Slaves, which they transport to *Europe*, besides their own Commodities, and import from thence Corn, Linen, and Woollen

Cloth, &c. which they carry to *Negroland*, *Abyssinia*, &c. *Dapper* says, the Inhabitants are couragious; and that when the Inhabitants of the Plain Country unite with the *Bereberes* of the Mountains, they can bring into the Field 10000 Men; but they are commonly quarrelling with the *Arabians*, and in Ages past they us'd to rise against the Kings of *Tunis*, because they would not pay the Imposts. *Dapper* bounds it on the W. with *Mecellata*, on the E. with *Barca*, on the N. with the *Mediterranean*, and on the S. with *Libya*.

The Places of chief Note in the E. Part of *Barca* beyond the River *Nachel* or *Nabil*, which *Du Plessis* says is almost a Desert, are,
1. *Cape Rosatim*, *Rasaotim*, or *Raxaltim*, which *Ptolomy* calls the *Great Chersonesus*, because 'tis a Peninsula. The *Sanfons* place it Long. 52. 8. Lat. $31\frac{1}{2}$. on the E. Side of the River *Nachel*: *Moll* Long. $44\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $32\frac{3}{4}$. on the W. Side of that River.

2. *Trabocho* or *Trabechus*, a Port which *Dapper* says was formerly called *Batrachus*, and *Menelaus* according to *Heylin*. The *Sanfons* place it about 75 Miles S. E. of the Cape last mentioned.

3. *Saloneffa*. *Dapper* says, 'twas formerly the Port of *Panorn*. *Sanfon* places it on the same Coast, about 75 Miles to the E.

4. *Paratonium* or *Alberton*, further E. The *Sanfons* place it Long. $56\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 30. 10. about 52 Miles W. of Cape *Raya*, and say, it has a good large Harbour. *Luyts* says, 'tis a little Town, and that the Harbour has a very narrow Mouth. *Heylin* says, 'tis now called *Porto Rassa*. *Florus* makes this and *Pelusium* the two Horns of *Egypt*.

• T R I P O L Y Kingdom.

Luyts extends it from Long. 30. to 39. but does not allow it above 2 Deg. of Lat. where broadest. The *Sanfons* extend it from Long. 34. to $46\frac{1}{2}$. and *Moll* from Long. $29\frac{1}{2}$. to Long. 41. 645 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and but 200 at the W. End where broadest. *Du Plessis* says, 'tis very little bigger than the Kingdom of *Barca*. *Dapper* and others say, 'twas once a Part of *Tunis*, and extend it to the Frontiers of *Egypt*, including the Kingdom of *Barca*, which we have described. *Dapper* extends it also Southward as far as

Negro-

Negroland. *Moll* bounds it on the N. with the *Mediterranean*, on the W. with *Tunis*, from which 'tis parted by the River *Capes*; on the S. with *Biledulgerid*, and on the E. with the Kingdom of *Barca*. The *Sansons* make the Desert of *Barca* Part of its Eastern Boundary, and *Biledulgerid* Part of that on the W.

Marmol says, most of it is sandy Deserts and Mountains, inhabited by *Berebers*. *Du Plessis* says, it abounds with Dates, Corn, Oranges, Citrons, Figs, Olives, and Saffron, reckon'd the best in the World. *Luyts* says, the Maritime Tracts are better cultivated than the rest. *Heylin* says, it produces much Barley, and was the *Regio Tripolitana* of the *Romans*. After their Time, *Dapper* says the Kings of *Morocco*, *Fez*, and *Tunis*, took Possession of it by Turns; but *Mucamen*, one of the latter, turning Tyrant, the People revolted, put his Officers to Death, and invested the Sovereignty in one of their Fellow Citizens, who reign'd at first with a great deal of Moderation, but turning also Tyrant, was assassinated by his Brother-in-Law, and the People chose a Courtezan, who had turn'd Hermit; but before he had reign'd many Months, *Don Pedro* of *Navarre* made a sudden Attack upon the Town, and carried all the Inhabitants Prisoners to *Messina* and *Palermo*, where *Charles V.* set the Prince at Liberty, and permitted him to return and repair the Town, which the Christians had ruin'd. After this, he kept Possession of it till 1535, when 'twas taken by *Barbarossa* the Pyrate; but *Charles V.* retook it, and gave it to the Knights of *Maltha*, who kept it till 1551, when it surrender'd to *Basha Sinan*, General of the *Turkish* Army, on Condition that the Garrison should go out entire with their Arms and Baggage, and that Ships should be furnish'd to transport them with Safety to *Maltha*; but, contrary to the Capitulation, the *Basha* caus'd the Soldiers to be rifled, and above 200 *Moors* in the Service of the Order to be put to the Sword. He also sent most of the Knights to the Gallies, and all the rest he made Slaves. Since which, *Tripoly* has belong'd to the Grand Seignior, who sends a new *Basha* hither every three Years. *Dapper* adds, that in 1598, a *Morabout* nam'd *Cid-Haya* made the Town and Kingdom revolt, expecting the Assistance of the Chri-

tians, to whom he propos'd to deliver up the Town; but he was several times defeated, and at last abandon'd and kill'd by his own Party. He observes, that *Tripoly* was for some Time govern'd by a *Sangiack* under the *Basha* of *Tunis*, till the Grand Seignior sent a *Basha* hither from *Constantinople*, with the Honour of the Standard of *Tunis*, and the Title of *Begler-Bey*, and his Authority is now equal to that of the *Basha* of *Tunis*. In the Year 1600, *Mamet Bey*, a *Grecian* Renegado, got so far into the Favour of the Grand Seignior, that he obtain'd the Standard of *Tripoly*, seiz'd the Castle, and took the Government out of the *Basha's* Hands. For this he pretended he had the Gr. Seignior's Authority, and sent Presents and Slaves to him by Way of Homage. At last he made himself so powerful, that he rais'd Soldiers, and kept them in the Castle for the Guard of his Person, to avoid the Punishment common to other *Bashas*. *Dapper* says, the Revenue of the *Basha* of *Tripoly* amounts to 180000 Ducats. 'Tis rais'd from the Imposts laid on the Exportation and Importation of Merchandize, from the Tribute which the *Jews* pay per Head, and from what the flying Camps of *Janizaries* extort from the *Arabs*. The Trade was mightily improved formerly by several Gallies from *Venice*, and they make a great Traffick here in the Negro Slaves, which they send to *Turkey*. The *Sansons* say, Part of the *Basha's* Revenue arises from the Cloths and other Stuffs which the Merchants at the Isle of *Gerbe* export to *Alexandria*, *Egypt*, &c. and that another principal Part arises from the Saffron gather'd on the Mountain *Garian*, S. of *Tripoly*. *Du Plessis* says, the Dey of the City of *Tripoly* commands over all the Kingdom, and that the *Turks* are only their Protectors, and have a Castle in the Isle of *Gerbe*, and a *Basha* at *Tripoly*, who takes Care to raise the Grand Seignior's Tribute. This State subsists only by the Py-racy of its Inhabitants, and is divided by the River of *Salines* into E. and W.

We shall begin with the former, which *Luyts* says is largest; but *Du Plessis*, that 'tis almost desert, except towards the Coasts. *Moll* extends this Part above 330 Miles in Length, and above 140 in Breadth.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Sidra* Island, in the Gulph to which it gives Name.
Y
The

The *Sansons* place it in Lat. 27. 45. Long. 45. 35.

2 The Prov. of *Essab* or *Ezzab*, which some make one of the Dependencies of *Biledulgerid*, because it begins W. of the Mountains of *Garien* and *Biniguarid*, and terminates towards a River which runs betwixt it and *Mesrata* into the *Mediterranean*; but *Dapper* says it belongs to *Tripoly*. The Mountain *Garian* is very high and cold, is 3 Miles long, and as many broad. It lies to the N. of Mount *Atlas*, is 4 Miles from *Tripoly*, and is separated from the Mountains *Benitefren* and *Nefusa* by great sandy Deserts. There are about 130 Villages upon it. Mount *Beniguarid* is 4 Leagues from *Tripoly*, is Part of Mount *Atlas*, and has 150 Villages. *Dapper* says, this Province produces little Corn, but abundance of Dates, Olives, and Saffron, which is so much esteemed at *Cairo*, that they give more for it there by one Third than for any other. *Moll* places Mount *Garien* W. of the River *Salines*. The *Bereberes* who live upon it are lazy, and suffer the *Arabs* to insult them at Pleasure; but those of *Beniguarid* are very couragious, and formerly were able to raise 20000 Men, when they made Head against the Kings of *Tripoly*, and routed the *Turks*; but they are now subject to the *Basha* of *Tripoly*. *Heylin* says, the Country is not very fruitful, but the Inhabitants grow rich by the Merchandize which they buy of the *Venetians*, and sell to the *Numidians*.

Du Pleffis says, the W. Part of *Tripoly* is more fruitful and populous, and has better Cities, than the E. *Moll* makes it about 345 Miles in Length, and 160 in Breadth.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Tripoly Vecchio*, or *Old Tripoly*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 29. 20. Long. 37. 20. upon the Coast W. of the New City. *Leo* says, 'twas built by the *Romans*, and afterwards taken by the *Goths*. At last the *Mahometans* took it after a Siege of 6 Months, and the Citizens were either killed or carried Prisoners to *Egypt* and *Arabia*. *Dapper* says, 'twas the Country of the Emperor *Severus*. The *Sansons* say, 'twas also called *Sabrata*, and that there are the Ruins of several stately Buildings here. *Luyts* says, 'tis not much frequented, because of the Unwholesomeness of the Air.

2. *New Tripoly*, the Metropolitan of the

Province. *Moll* places it Long. 32 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 33. the *Sansons* Lat. 29 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 38 $\frac{3}{4}$. *Leo* says, 'tis built in a sandy Plain, where there's great Plenty of Dates, and surrounded with a Wall. The Houses exceed those of *Tunis*, and every Trade has a peculiar Place. The adjacent Fields are very barren, so that Corn is dear, and they have no Water but Rain. They have several stately Temples and Colleges, and an Hospital for Strangers and their own Poor. Their Fare, he says, is only Dumplings made of Barley-Meal. 'Tis inhabited chiefly by Merchants and Weavers, because it lies convenient for Trade by reason of its Nearness to *Numidia*, *Tunis*, *Sicily*, and *Maltha*, and was always subject to the K. of *Tunis*: But when the K. of *Fez* took *Constantina*, and carried him Prisoner to *Ceuta*, the *Genoese* sack'd this Town, and carried off the Inhabitants. The King of *Fez* bought it afterwards for 50000 Ducats, most of which were counterfeit. *Marmol* says, 'tis also called *Trebeliz* or *Tarabilis*, and the old one was built, as some say, by the *Romans*; and others, by the *Phœnicians*, in Memory of *Tripoly* in *Syria*. The *Arabians* raz'd it after a Siege of some Months, and a great many Years after the *Africans* built this new City, which is said to stand more to the S. than the old, because they say that the Sea has encroach'd upon all the Coast of *Tunis*, and overflow'd large Tracts of Ground, that were formerly cover'd with Houses, and very fruitful: And 'tis also affirmed, that tho' the Country round *Tripoly* is now barren and sandy, yet formerly the Banks of Sand to the S. were fertile Plains. Our Author adds, that when 'twas in its Splendor, 'twas reckon'd equal to *Tunis* in Riches. *Ptolomy* places it under the Name of *Great Leptis*, in Long. 41. 25. and Lat. 31. 40. *Nicolay* says, most of the Buildings are ruin'd, but there are still fair strong Walls, many Turrets, double Ditches, and false Breaches, environ'd on three Parts with the Sea, and within the Walls there are Plenty of Wells and Fountains. Among other Antiquities, there is in the Middle of the Town a Triumphal Arch of white Marble with 4 Faces, upon 4 Pillars of the *Corinthian* Order. In the Front on the E. is a Chariot drawn by two great Griffins, and within it *Victory* with two Wings. On the W. another Chariot with

with *Pallas* sitting in it, and a *Roman* Inscription round it, which shews 'twas made in the Time of *Lentulus*. The Inside of the Arch was full of Ornaments, and above, it had the Form of a square Turret. The two other Faces to the N. and S. were cut in the Form of the upper Part of the Body above the Waist, but without Heads. The rest was adorned with Trophy-Work. Near this there's a square Place surrounded with two Rows of Pillars like a Porch, and not far from thence are the Ruins of a high Tower, said to have been the great Mosque of the City. *Coppin* says, this is the first considerable Town on the Coast, and lies about 1300 Miles from *Alexandria*. 'Tis one of the last (and *Dapper* says, the least) Towns that the Corsairs made themselves Masters of on this Coast, and 'twas before a Town of very great Commerce. 'Tis not very large, but populous. The Coast here is dangerous for Ships, because of many Shallows. *Dapper* says, there are no Ditches, and but two Gates, one S. towards the Land, and the other N. towards the Harbour, which he says is fair and large. They have but one Prison here for the Slaves, because they are not so numerous here as at *Tunis* and *Algier*. He adds, that they have a great many Oranges and Lemons in the Neighbourhood, and a certain Fruit which the *Arabians* call *Halbhaxis*, which buds under Ground, is of the Size of a Bean, and tastes like Almonds. 'Tis not to be chew'd, but suck'd. The *Sansons* say, Flesh is dear here, the Soil being so dry, that there is not Pasture for Cattle. The *Arabs* bring them to their Markets, and the Inhabitants make Cloth and other Manufactures of Wool. Their chief Merchandize is in their Palm-Trees, Lote-Trees, and Silks, which they vend in *Africa*, *Sicily*, and *Malta*. *Du Plessis* says, there are two Forts here for Defence of the Harbour. The Pyrates of this Place do a great deal of Mischief, because it lies in the Way to *Aleppo* and *Alexandria*.

3. *Zoara*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 30. 10. Long. 36. 36. It lies between Capes and *Tripoly*, in such a dry Soil, that the Inhabitants are obliged to water it, to make it bear Fruit, which is chiefly Barley and Loteus. 'Tis thought to be the same Place

which was formerly called the Harbour of *Posidon*. *Dapper* says, 'tis an ancient Town, and built upon the Coast, 13 Miles E. from the Isle of *Zerbi* or *Girbi*. The Inhabitants make Chalk and Plaister, which they vend at *Tripoly*.

4. *Tachore* Plain, or *Taurca*. *Marmol* says, it lies 4 Leagues E. from *Tripoly*, and has several Villages and Fruit-Trees. When the Christians conquer'd *Tripoly*, the Citizens fled hither, and one *Morataga* a Turk declar'd himself King of it. 'Tis now one of the Dependencies of the Government of *Tripoly*. *Dapper* says, 'tis inhabited by *Berebers*, is 13 Miles in Compass, and produces a great Quantity of Corn and Dates. The People live in Huts made of the Branches of Palm-Trees, and are subject to the *Turks*, from whom they would have revolted in 1567, but in 4 Days were obliged to lay down their Arms, and to pay down 3000 Ducats Fine.

5. *Mecellat*, which *Marmol* says is the Great *Syrtis* of the Ancients. *Dapper* says, it lies 8 Miles E. from *Tripoly* on the same Coast. Its Capital *Mecellata* is the *Macomaca*, or *Calumacula* of *Ptolomy*. There are three other Towns, which the Ancients call'd *Aspi*, *Sacazama*, and *Borgos*; and the Moderns, *Lard*, *Cedic*, and *Eufrata*. Further on the Coast there is *Sibaca*, the *Aporispurgos* of *Ptolomy*; Cape *Sorta*, formerly the Cape of *Hippia*; and the Village of *Nain*, noted for the Sepulchre of the *Phileni*, formerly mention'd. He adds, that the Country produces Dates and Olives, and that the Inhabitants, who are *Berebers* and *Mahometans*, can arm 6000 Men. There is one who commands them in Peace and War, and defends them against their Enemies. Our Author thinks they are subject to the Turk, but *Gramaye* says to the *Arabs*.

6. *Elhamma*. *Moll* places it on the River Capes, almost 120 Miles S. from its Influx into the Gulph of its own Name. *Leo* says, 'tis noted for a River of hot Water, which runs thro' the Town into a Lake call'd the Lake of *Lepers*, because 'tis a sovereign Cure for Leprosies. It has a sulphurous Taste, and does not quench Thirst. The Inhabitants cool it a whole Day to make it fit for drinking. The River rises a Mile and a

half S. of the Town. *Dapper* says, 'twas built by the *Romans*, is 3 Miles from *Capes*, and is surrounded with a Free-stone Wall, and on the Gates there are *Latin* Inscriptions cut in Marble. He adds, the Inhabitants live by Robbery and Plunder.

7. *Capes*, *Caps*, or *Ptolomy's Tacape*, on the E. Side of the Gulph. The *Sansons* place it in Lat. 30. 10 Long 34. 20. *Marmol* says, this was the first City built by the *Romans* in *Africa*. *Ptolomy* places it in Long. 38. 40. Lat. 45. 'Twas ruin'd first by the *Mahometans*, then by the Caliph of *Carouan*, and since that it has been kept under by the Excursions of the *Arabs*. The present Inhabitants are only a few Fishermen and Labourers, and those impoverish'd by the Exactions of the *Arabs* and the *Basha* of *Tripoly*. This Gulph is the *Syrtis Minor* of the Ancients. The *Sansons* say, it has good Walls and a Castle, but the Harbour is dangerous, and not capable to hold many or large Ships. *Heylin* says, it lies at the Fall of the River *Triton* into the *Lesser Syrtis*, 20 Miles from *Tunis*. He mentions the hot Lake to the S. E. which he says *Ptolomy* calls *Tritonis*. He adds, that the Port is exposed to all Winds, which makes the River, tho' small, swell with the Tides, and navigable by little Vessels.

8. *Machres* or *Mahara*. *Dapper* says 'tis a Village at the Mouth of the Gulph, 13 Miles from the Isle of *Zirby*, with a Citadel to guard the Entrance.

9. The Island *Girba*, *Gerbai*, *Girbi*, or *Zirby*. The *Sansons* place it N. E. of *Machres*, in Lat. 30. 50. Long. 35. 10. *Moll* places it in Lat. 34 $\frac{1}{3}$, and Long. 29 $\frac{2}{3}$. 150 Miles N. W. from *Tripoly*. *Leo* says, 'tis a plain sandy Soil, abounding in Dates, Vines, Olives, Lotus, and other Fruit. The *Sansons* say, there's but a little Corn, and no Barley. It formerly contained two Cities, but now it has only one Castle of Note, garrison'd by the *Turks*, and a great many Hamlets, making in all about 18 Miles in Compass. *Luyts* says, 'tis so near the Shore, that one may pass into it a-foot, and at high Tide over a Wooden Bridge. The *Spaniards* took it in the 16th Century, but were expelled by the *Turks* with a great Slaughter. The Town of its own Name is well built. He adds, that this Island was the *Lotophagites*

of *Ptolomy*, the *Mirmex* of *Polybix*, and the *Meninx* of *Pliny* and *Strabo*. Geographers are divided whether this Island is the *Girba*, the *Egimurus*, the *Zeta*, or the *Glaucou*, of the Ancients. *Pliny* says, it had a Bridge to the Continent, which the Islanders broke down to keep out the Enemy. *Dapper* says, 'tis but 4 Miles round, and under the 32d Deg. of Lat. The People dry their Grapes, and send them to *Alexandria* and other Places. They speak the ancient *African* Tongue, and not the *Arabick*. They had formerly a Check of their own, who was under the Protection of *Spain*, but they now depend on the *Basha* of *Tripoly*. The Emperor *Charles V.* conquer'd it when he took *Tripoly*, and annex'd it to the Kingdom of *Sicily*; but the *Turks* drove out the Dukes of *Alba* and *Medina Celi*, who commanded there, and retook it.

10. *Gelves*. *Marmol* says, 'twas called *Menissa* by the Ancients, from a Town upon it of the same Name. *Ptolomy* places it under the Name of *Lotofagina*, in Long. 39. 30. Lat. 31. 20. The *Mahometans* ruin'd it when they destroy'd *Tripoly* and *Capez*, and the Walls and Ruins of its two Cities, *Guerra* and *Menissa*, were still to be seen in *Marmol's* Time. 'Twas repeopled, and some Villages built upon it, and in 1284 'twas conquer'd by the K. of *Arragon's* Admiral, and his Posterity continued Masters of it several Years, with the Assistance of the Kings of *Naples* and *Sicily*, but were often molested by the Natives and the Kings of *Tunis*. Afterwards it became Tributary to the Kings of *Sicily*; but the *Moors*, assisted by the *Genoese* and *Neapolitans*, shook off that Yoke, and were soon after made Tributary to the King of *Arragon*; but at last they revolted from him, and when the *Spaniards* took the City of *Africa*, *Drogut* the famous *Turkish* Pyrate retired hither, and the Island is still subject to the *Turks*.

11. *Querquenes*, another Island, which *Marmol* places over against this Coast. He says, the Soil is dry, and the Current about it so strong, that a Galley with Oars can scarce put into the Shore. *Don Pedro de Navarre* anchored here after a violent Storm, and having sent a Detachment of 450 choice Men to go ashore and fetch some Water out of the Wells, one of the Men being beat



ABISSINA
and ANIAN &c.
By Herman Moll Geographer.



beat by his Colonel, deserted in the Night, and brought down the *Moors*, who finding his Party asleep, cut them all in Pieces.

T U N I S.

THE *Sanfons* extend it from Long. $30\frac{1}{4}$. to $34\frac{1}{2}$. and Lat. $30.10.$ to $34\frac{1}{4}$. 180 Miles from E. to W. above 270 from Cape *Bona* to the Frontiers of *Biledulgerid*, and 250 from the Mouth of the River *Guadil-barbar* on the N. W. to that of the River *Capes* on the S. E. *Moll* extends it from Long. $24.$ to $29\frac{1}{2}$. and from Lat. $29\frac{1}{4}$. to $37\frac{1}{2}$. above 390 Miles from N. to S. and about 250 where broadest. *Du Plessis* says, 'tis 90 Leagues from N. to S. and 70 from E. to W. *Luyts* says, it takes up 3 Deg. of Long. and above 4 of Lat. The *Sanfons* say, that once it took in *Constantina*, *Bugia*, *Tripoly*, and *Ezzab*, which *Heylin* includes, where he says this Kingdom extends 800 Miles along the Coast; but *Bugia* and *Constantina* are since incorporated into *Algier*, and *Tripoly* and *Ez-* are separated from the Province of *Tunis*.

Moll and the *Sanfons* bound it with *Tripoly* on the E. the *Mediterranean* on the E. and N. *Algier* on the W. and *Biledulgerid* on the S. 'Tis parted from *Constantina*, one of the E. Divisions of *Algier*, by the River *Guadil-barbar*, from *Tripoly* by the River *Capes*, and from *Biledulgerid* by Mount *Atlas*. *Du Plessis* says, the Air is much the same with that of *Tripoly*, but the Soil more fruitful, especially towards the W. where 'tis not so dry as in the E. *Dapper* says, that on the S. among the Mountains there are many fruitful Vallies. *Heylin* says, that in the W. it bears Plenty of Corn and other Fruits, and is well set with Trees, and that the Country in general bore 360 and 400 fold in the Times of *Augustus* and *Nero*; but that 'tis now so barren, that the People are forc'd to have it from other Places, because if they should till their Land, the *Arabs* would come upon it and spoil it.

Dapper says, the Mountains of this Kingdom are full of Lions, Wild Oxes, Ostriches, Apes, Camelions, Roebucks, Hares, Pheasants, Horses, and Camels, and that the two latter are very cheap here. The chief of their Mountains are *Zagoan*, *Guesset*, *Benitefren*, and *Nufusa*. *Zagoan* is but 6 Miles S.

of *Tunis*, according to *Dapper*. He says, 'tis full of the Ruins of old Castles built by the *Romans*, with *Latin* Inscriptions cut in Marble. They convey'd fresh Water from hence to *Carthage* by *Aqueducts*. He adds, that it produces some Barley and Honey.

2. *Guesset* or *Gueslet*. *Dapper* places it three Leagues from *Cayroan*, and says, here are the like Ruins, and that it produces Store of Apples and Fenugreek. *Sanfon* thinks that this was the Mountain from whence *Scipio* view'd the Battle between *Massinissa* King of *Numidia* and *Asdrubal* the Leader of the *Carthaginians*, who had each 50 or 60000 Men. *Dapper* says, there are two other Mountains, called *Benitefren* and *Nufusa*, which also produce some Barley and Honey. The People who live upon these Mountains dwell in Tents like the *Arabs*.

Their chief Rivers are, 1. *Guadilibarbar* or *Huedilbarbar*, formerly *Tusca*. *Marmol* says, it rises out of the Great *Atlas* near *Lorbus*, and that the Banks abound with Coral. *Ptolomy* calls it *Rubricata*, in Long. $30.45.$ Lat. $35.20.$ *Dapper* says, it rises a quarter of a League above the Town of *Urbs*, and turns several Mills as it runs towards the Sea, near which it has so many Windings, that those who go from *Tunis* to *Bona* are obliged to ford it above 20 or 25 times, because there's neither Bridge nor Boat. He adds, that it falls into the Sea near the Harbour of *Tabarca*, 7 Miles from *Bugia*. The *Sanfons* say, it runs thro' *Urbs* by a Canal dug on purpose. *Moll* makes it 300 Miles in a direct Current from the Source, which he places in *Constantina*.

2. *Caps* or *Capez*, suppos'd to be the *Triton* of the Ancients. *Dapper* says, it rises in a sandy Desert in *Biledulgerid* near Mount *Vassalat*, and runs into the Sea near the Town of *Capes*, where there is a Gulph of the same Name. The Water of this River is intolerably hot, and forms the Lake of *Lepers* above mention'd near *Elhamma*. The *Sanfons* say, it leaves *Capez* and the Province of *Tripoly* to the Right. *Marmol* calls the Mountain whence it rises *Bacalisa*, and says, its Water is salt as well as hot. *Ptolomy* places its Mouth Long. $38.40.$ Lat. $30.45.$

3. *Magrida*, formerly *Catade*. *Dapper* thinks it a Branch of the *Guadilibarbar*, and says, that after it has water'd the Country of *Choros*, it runs into the Sea near *Marsa*.

4. *Mege-*

4. *Megerada*, *Magrada*, or *Magerda*. The *Sansons* say, it rises in *Biledulgerid*, upon the Confines of *Zeb*, passes thro' Part of that Country and *Constantina*, divides the Kingdom of *Tunis* into two Parts, almost equal, and then runs into the Sea near *Garelmesse*, between *Tunis* and *Hammamet*. They add, that it rises so high sometimes, and so suddenly, that Travellers must stay several Days before they can ford it. *Thevenot* says, 'tis neither broad nor rapid, but drives several Iron Mills, as well as others for grinding Corn, and fulling the Caps made at *Fez*.

Heylin says, the People of *Tunis* are more laborious and healthy than the rest of *Barbary*, so that they live to a great Age, unless a sudden Death prevents them. *Dapper* says, their chief Trade was formerly in Cloths, but now in Oil, Olives, Soap, Ostrich-Feathers, and Horses, with which they furnish *Egypt* and *Algiers*.

Dapper gives us the following Abstract of the History of *Tunis*. After the *Saracens* had ravaged a great Part of *Africa*, made themselves Masters of all *Barbary*, and planted the Seat of their Empire in *Grand Cairo*, a *Mahometan* of *Africa* nam'd *Abelchit* resolv'd to seize *Cayroan* and its Dependencies to himself; but *Caim*, then Caliph of *Egypt*, sent a powerful Army, which spoil'd his Project in the Birth; yet one of his Children nam'd *Ibrahim* laid the Foundation of a new Kingdom at *Tunis*, and fix'd his Court there. His Successors reign'd in Peace, till *Abdul-Mumen* K. of *Morocco* took *Mahadia* from the Christians, drove out the Kings of *Tunis*, made the Kingdom Tributary, and settled a Governor there. His Successors, *Joseph*, *Jacob*, *Mansor* and *Mahomet Ennasir*, remain'd Masters of the Place: But after the Death of the latter, the *Arabs* of *Tunis* revolted, and laid such close Siege to the City, that the Governor wrote to the K. of *Morocco* for Relief. The King immediately sent 20 Sail of Ships under an Admiral, who being well acquainted with the Temper of the *Arabs*, prevail'd with them by Presents, and other engaging Conduct, to submit voluntarily to the King of *Morocco*, for which the King made him Governor of *Tunis*. He was succeeded by *Abu Zachariah* his Son, who left the Government to his Son *Abraham* or *Abu-Ferez*, who enrich'd himself with the Spoils of *Tripoly*, and the Southern Coun-

tries, refus'd to acknowledge the Kings of *Morocco*, assum'd the Title of King of *Tunis*, vanquish'd the King of *Telenfin*, made his Kingdom Tributary, and at last caused himself to be stiled Emperor of *Africa* about the Year 1210. He was succeeded by his Son *Nutman*, who was worsted by the K. of *Fez*. But *Acmen* or *Hutmen* his Son and Successor recover'd the Kingdom out of its sinking State, and was succeeded by his Son *Abu-Barc*, who was assassinated by one of his near Kindred, that boasted of his Descent from *Omar* the 3d Caliph of the *Saracens* in *Asia*. He was succeeded by *Abdul-Mumen*, and he by *Zachariah*, who dying soon after, his Nephew *Abucamen* the Son of *Hascen* was elected in his room; but growing a Tyrant, many of the Towns of *Numidia* revolted from him. He was succeeded by his Son *Muley Mahomet*, who reign'd a long time, and had several Children by different Wives. He preferred the youngest, named *Muley Assez* or *Hascen*, before the eldest, as well because he was the Son of an *Arabian* Woman, as because he had a better Genius and Temper than the rest. He likewise imprison'd his eldest named *Manon*, because he had form'd a Rebellion, and at his Death declared his youngest Son, as aforesaid, his Successor, to the great Satisfaction of all the People. This Prince, as soon as he came to the Throne, caus'd his Brother *Manon* to be murder'd in Prison; upon the News of which, *Araxar*, one of his Brothers, fled to *Abdalar* Chief of *Bixhara*, a powerful Prince of *Numidia*; and married his Daughter. The Prince hearing this, resolv'd to revenge himself upon all the Royal Family, and for that End caused the Men's Eyes to be bored out, and the Women strictly guarded. During this, *Araxar* came with his Father-in-Law's Troops, defeated his Brother *Muley-Assez*, who came to meet him with a great Army, and laid Siege to *Tunis*: But not thinking himself strong enough to carry the Town, he sent for Assistance to the famous Corsair *Hairedin Barberossa*, who then commanded in *Algier* under the Grand Seignior; but the *Basha* acquainted him, that he thought it very necessary for both of them to make a Voyage to *Constantinople* to solicit the Favour of the Emperor *Solyman Araxar*, charm'd with *Barberossa's* kind Offer, went with him accordingly; but as soon as they arrived

arrived at Court, the Corsair having desired a private Audience of the Grand Seignior, told him, That *Araxar* being young and tractable, now was the Time to seize the Kingdom of *Tunis*. *Solyman* liked the Counsel, and caused a Fleet to be equipped forthwith, under Pretence of Succours design'd for *Araxar*; but as soon as it was ready to sail, his Person was secured, with a Promise, that he should not only be set at Liberty, but conducted to *Tunis* with a pompous Guard, as soon as *Barberossa* had put the Inhabitants in a Condition to own and receive him. Thus *Barberossa* set out alone; but *Muley Assez* supposing that *Araxar* was with him, and being hated by the People for his Cruelties, retired for Safety to his Uncle *Dorat*, who was a powerful Arabian Prince; so that the Basha enter'd *Tunis* without Resistance, and caused the Emperor *Solyman* to be owned for their Sovereign. Upon this, *Muley Assez* finding himself too weak to make Head against two such potent Enemies as *Solyman* and *Barberossa*, sued for Aid to the Emperor *Charles V.* who cheerfully granted it, to curb the Insolence of the *Turks* and *Moors*, that had resolved to fit out a Fleet next Year to invade the Kingdom of *Naples*. For this Purpose he fixed the Rendezvous of his Troops at *Barcelona*, and there equipped a brave Fleet, which sailed the 25th of *July* 1557. As soon as the Men were landed, they fired upon the Castle of *Gouletta*, and obliged it to capitulate; upon which *Barberossa* fled, and left *Tunis* in the Hands of *Mustapha*, who deliver'd it up to the Emperor *Charles*, and the whole Kingdom follow'd his Example. *Coppin* says, that the Corsair met the Spanish Army with 10000 Men, and gave them Battle half a League from *Tunis*; That during the Heat of the Engagement, the Slaves, who were then very numerous in the City, seeing it unfurnish'd with Soldiers, seiz'd what Arms they found, and putting all that oppos'd them to the Sword, made themselves Masters of the Place, where they hung out some Colours which had been taken from the Christians; That *Cairadin* at length finding himself over-pressed by the Numbers of the Spaniards who surrounded him, no sooner began to retire in good Order, but he found the City Walls, which he thought to make his Sanctuary, hung with

the Enemy's Standards; and being informed of the Revolt of the Slaves, he made the best of his Way to the Mountains. Thus *Dapper* says, the Emperor *Charles* restored *Muley Assez* to his Kingdom upon these Conditions:

I. That the Emperor should only have the Castle of *Gouletta*, and a Garrison of 1000 or 1200 Men there, to be paid by *Muley*.

II. That neither the Emperor nor his Successors should attack any Place belonging to *Muley* or his Descendants, except the Castle of *Gouletta*.

III. That *Muley Assez* should do Homage to the Emperor *Charles* and his Successors every Year with 12 Hawks and 6 Barbary Horses; That on Failure, he should pay for the first time 5000 Crowns, for the second 15000, and for the 3d be declared guilty of the Crime of *Lèse Majestatis*.

IV. That he should be a mortal Enemy to the *Turks*, always side with the Emperor and the Christians, and grant the latter Liberty of Conscience throughout all his Dominions.

Charles V. in Memory of such an entire Victory, and to reward the Bravery of his Generals, instituted an Order of Knights of the Cross of *Burgundy*. Our Author says, that *Muley Assez* going not long after his Restoration to crave Succours of the Emperor *Charles*, his Son *Amidas* caused himself to be declared K. in his Absence, and put to Death all his Father's Adherents. *Muley* at his Return from *Italy* oppos'd him with a few Troops which he brought with him, and the Garrison of *Gouletta*; but *Amidas* being much stronger, defeated, took him and his younger Sons Prisoners, and then caused their Eyes to be bored out. Some Years after *Abdimelech*, *Muley's* Uncle, expelled the Usurper, and set *Muley* at Liberty; but not being able to settle him again upon the Throne, *Muley* returned to the Emperor, who maintain'd him the rest of his Days till he died, while *Abdimelech* besieged *Mahometta* with the Emperor's Forces. *Coppin* says, *Abdimelech* did not live many Days after he had set *Muley* at Liberty; upon which *Amidas* was presently recalled, but dethron'd a second time by the *Turks*, who set up another King in his room. *Dapper* says, that after

after *Abdimelech's* Death, his Son *Mahomet* reign'd 4 Months, but was expelled by *Amidas*, who re-enter'd into the Possession of the Kingdom, till he was again dethron'd, and obliged to retire to the *Spanish* Garrison at *Gouletta*, by *Aluch Hali* or *Ochiali*, who seiz'd the Throne on the Part of the Gr. Seignior in the Year 1558. The *Turks* continued Masters of *Tunis* till 1573, when being much weaken'd by the terrible Defeat the Christians gave them at *Lepanto* in 1570, *Don John* of *Austria* drove them out of the Kingdom, and set up *Mehemet*, *Amidas's* Brother, for King; *Gabriel Villon*, a *Milanese*, for Governor of the Town on the Part of the Emperor; and *Petro Carrero*, a *Spaniard*, for Commander of the Garrison of *Gouletta*. At the same time *Villon* caused a Castle to be built at *Tunis* after the Model of that at *Antwerp*. *Coppin* says, that *Don John* discover'd a Plot which *Amidas* had form'd to betray him, and therefore gave the Crown to his Brother, taking an Oath of him at the same time that he should be a faithful Vassal to *Spain*. *Philip II.* who was then K. of *Spain*, approved of this, because he saw 'twould require too many Men to guard the Kingdom, and for that purpose order'd a new Fort to be built on the Side of the Lake between *Gouletta* and *Tunis*, the better to preserve a Communication between both those Places, and to keep the new King in Awe. But *Dapper* says, *Amurath* Emperor of the *Turks* taking Umbrage at the growing Power of the *Spaniards*, did in the Year 1574 send a Fleet of 160 Gallies, besides other Vessels, with 40000 *Turks* and *Moors* on board, under the Admiral *Ochiali*, and raised a powerful Army by Land under the *Basha Sinan* to drive the *Spaniards* from *Africa*. In the mean time *Don John* the *Spanish* Admiral, who was then below *Sicily*, fitted out 30 Gallies, and put on board them all that had abandon'd the Church of *Rome*, and several Sorts of Malefactors, promising to restore them all to their Honours and Estates, if but one of them could get ashore at *Gouletta*; but they came too late, the *Turks* had shut up the Passage, pressed the City very hard, and made so great a Fire upon *Gouletta* and the Citadel of *Tunis*, that at length they took them. They put all the Christians to the Sword except 14, which were sent to *Constantinople* as Trophies. They also demo-

lished the Walls and the Citadel of the Town, and caused another to be built near the Harbour. *Coppin* says, that the *Basha Sinan* came before the Place when the Castle above-mentioned was not above half built, and that *Gouletta* was able to hold out, had it not been for the Cowardize of *Carrera* the Governor, who 'tis said stopped his Ears, and retired to Vaults under Ground, that he might not hear the Noise of the Artillery. Besides, he is charged with keeping a secret Correspondence with the *Turks*, and drawing off great Reinforcements from the Troops of *Serbellon*, who commanded the new Citadel, on purpose to weaken him; yet our Author says, the latter defended himself with great Valour, but was obliged at last to surrender. He adds, that the *Turks* also took the King of *Tunis* Prisoner; and that the *Basha Sinan* having by Order embarked all the Artillery and Ammunition of the two Citadels which he had demolished, to prevent their falling again into the Hands of the *Spaniards*, sailed away for the Porte, leaving the Kingdom of *Tunis* to the Corsairs, under the Protection of the Gr. Seignior, because he thought them fittest to oppose any Attempts which the Christians might make for the Time to come. Thus ended the Kingdom of *Tunis*, which *Dapper* says had lasted 370 Years. He adds, That in *February* 1662, the *Dutch* Admiral *Ruyter* arrived in the Bay of *Tanis*, where he burnt a *Turkish* Vessel, and deliver'd 26 Slaves; and that on the 2d of *March* following he concluded a Truce with the Viceroy *Mahomet Balcha*, the Dey, and all the Divan; by the first Article of which, all that had passed was to be forgot on both Sides, and that they should keep a good Understanding with one another for the future. *Coppin* says, the Gr. Seignior sends a *Basha* hither, who visits the Places of *Barbary*, and at first had a great Authority; but the *Pyrates* have by degrees withdrawn the Submission they formerly paid him; so that when he is at *Tunis*, he cannot dispose of any thing whatsoever, is often denied what he demands on the Part of his Master, and never goes into the Town without the Dey's Guards, to whom *Thevenot* says he is obliged to pay above 100 Piasters, tho' they are as much to observe him as to do him Honour, so that he very seldom goes abroad.

The

The Dey is he who is elected Chief of the Pyrates, as we formerly mentioned. *Dapper* says, some affirm that the Power of the Basha of *Tunis* is far more extensive than that of any other Basha in *Africa*, and that he has an absolute Authority over the Divan and the Aga of the Janizaries: But others aver, that he has nothing to do with the Town and the Council of War, and that all the Power is lodg'd in the Dey, who governs during Life, unless the Burghers turn him out by Violence, appoints the Cadi's or Judges, and gives final Judgment in all Civil and Criminal Causes. This Change was occasioned by the Janizaries, that form a Body of 6 or 7000 Men, who revolted from the Basha, depos'd him, and modell'd their Government after that of *Algier*, till 1594, when a Janizary named *Cara Osman*, a Turk by Birth, tho' no more than a Shoemaker by Trade, won the Hearts of his Comrades so far, that they made him Dey, and gave him the Sovereign Power over the Divan, so that neither the Divan nor the Basha could do any thing without his Consent; and the Deys his Successors have kept up the same Authority by their Cunning, and advising with the Divan in Matters of Importance. The Divan is composed of an Aga, a Chaya, 12 Odobachi's, and 24 Boulouebachi's, 2 Secretaries, and 4 Chiaoux, who give Judgment in all Affairs according to the Dey's Determination. The Cadi's judge of Causes of less Importance, and are under the Dey's Inspection. The Militia of *Tunis* has the same Ranks as that of *Algier*, and the Soldiers rise by the same Degrees, except that they admit some that are originally *Moors* among their Janizaries. They also chuse once a Year two Generals to raise Contributions from the *Arabs* and *Moors* who live in the Country. *Thevenot* says, the Dey coins Money, which consists in little square Pieces of Silver to the Value of Maidins, and is so absolute, that he obeys the Gr. Seignior no farther than he thinks fit, and puts his Messengers to Death if he don't like their Business; so that when any Ambassadors complain to the Grand Seignior of the Corsairs of *Barbary*, he answers, They must make Reprisals upon them, and that they are Subjects whom he cannot command. They have a Bey here appointed by the Gr. Seignior to gather his

Dues in the Country, Part of which he reserves for himself and the Dey, and pays the rest to the Basha, who sends it to *Constantinople*. When a Dey dies, *Thevenot* says his Children conceal it, lest another should be chose against their Will; and the next Morning, when they come according to Custom to wish him a good Day, his eldest Son tells, That his Father before his Death declared such an one for his Successor, (who is commonly his Kiaya, or some other Friend whom they pitch upon beforehand) and immediately the Iman goes up to the Top of the Steeple of the Mosque in the Castle, and proclaims his Death. At other Times he never goes up but at the usual Hours; so that when he is seen there at an unusual Time, they take it for a Sign that the Dey is dead, and a Man rides thro' the City crying, *God save Dey such a one*, where all shut up Shop and stand to their Arms, till the Forts be put into the Hands of the new Dey's Officers, for fear some other should usurp the Deyship. When 'tis known who is Dey, all the Dependants on his Court bring Presents in great Dishes, cover'd with Fruit or Meat, with from 5 to 8 Purfes underneath. They bring them in the Night, that it mayn't be said he took Bribes, so that the first Night he receives about 200 Purfes; and if they were brought to him by Day, he would refuse them, and fall in a great Passion. The Servants carry the Dishes, and their Masters kiss his Vest, and whisper what they have brought him. *Thevenot* adds, that the Dey in his Time kept no great Court nor State, but was very affable and familiar. He saw him in his Return from the Mosque, when he walked a-foot: He was cloathed in a Scarlet close-bodied Coat lin'd with Samour, and had but a small Retinue. The Dey cannot procure his Son to succeed him after his Death, says our Author, because when the Youth find themselves suddenly advanced to such a Power, they turn De-boshees, force all the Women and Boys they meet with, and commit the like intolerable Practices: So that if a Dey would have his Son to succeed him, he must get him advanced to it in his Life-time. *Coppin* says, That when the Corsairs return from their Expeditions by Land, the Dey with his Household, and some of the chief Men of *Tunis*, go and meet them 5 or 600 Paces

without the Town with great Ceremony. First the Dey marches a-foot, with a Musket upon his Shoulder as well as the rest, tho' his is much finer. When the Corsairs perceive him a coming, they range themselves in Battalia, and receive him with a Salvo of their Arms. Then the Dey heads them, and they follow him by 4 in a File into the Town. *Leo* says, that upon the Accession of a new King to the Crown, all the Noblemen, Priests, Doctors and Judges, take an Oath of Allegiance to him. Then the chief Officer of the Court, called the *Munafide*, i. e. Viceroy, gives him an Account of all that he did in the Reign of his Predecessor; upon which the King orders him to bestow Offices upon the Noblemen according to their Ranks. Another chief Officer is the *Mesware* or General, who at his own Pleasure raises, pays, and heads the Army. The next is the *Castellan* or Governor of the Castle, who guards the King's Person, and inflicts Punishment on the Prisoners. The 4th Officer is the Governor of the City, who administers Justice, and punishes Criminals. The 5th is the Secretary, who writes Letters and gives Answers in the King's Name, and may open all Packets sent to Court, except those that are directed to the Governor of the Castle. The 6th is the Chief Chamberlain, who furnishes the Palace, gives Orders to the Household, summons the Counsellors by a Messenger, and has free Access to the King. The 7th is the High Treasurer, who receives the Revenues of the Crown, and pays them to the *Munafide*.

Dapper says, some affirm that the Viceroy of *Tunis* has 200000 Ducats Revenue, and that the single Impost upon Olives and Cloth exported from *Tunis* amounts to 40000. Some say, that the Basha farms the Grand Seignior's Lands and Customs here for 500000 Crowns, payable every 3 Years; so that *Dapper* thinks his Annual Revenue amounts to above 200000 Ducats. But many say that the Revenues of the Basha of *Tunis* are as casual as those of the Basha of *Algier*, and that he has no fix'd Revenue but the Fishery and the Poll-Tax paid by the *Jews*, the rest arising from the Booty which the Corsairs take from the Christians, for which they give the Basha 10 per Cent. and from the Contributions which they

raise from the *Arabs* and *Moors* in the Country.

Thevenot says, their Punishments are different according to the Rank of the Offenders. When a *Turk* in Pay has committed a Capital Crime, he is executed privately in a Chamber, where they place him in a Chair, put a Cord about his Neck, and two Christians pulling at each End, strangle him. The *Turks* of mean Condition or *Moors* are hanged upon the Outside of the Walls, where they put their Necks in a Halter fasten'd in a Hole of the Wall, and then push them down. Maids or Women that are sentenced to Death, are thrown into the *Oaze* by the Sea-Side, and a Man sets his Foot upon their Necks. They punish Renegadoes that turn Christians again thus: They wrap them in pitch'd Cloth, put a Cap of the same upon their Heads, and burn them alive. At other Times they wall them up all but their Heads, which they besmear with Honey, and then leave them exposed for 3 Days and Nights to the Flies, which soon sting them to Death. They punish the Slaves with the Bastinado, or else cut off the Ears and Nose, according to the Nature of the Crime. But if he kill his Master or any other *Turk*, they break his Legs and Arms, tie him to a Horse's Tail, drag him thro' the Town, strangle him, and then give his Body to the *Franks* to be buried; but many times the Boys snatch 'em from the Executioner, drag them about some time longer, and then throw them into a Ditch. *Coppin* says, there are more Horses in this Country than can be imagined, and that the *Barbarians* will not suffer them to be exported without Leave, which is difficult to procure, unless it be for Sovereign Princes; but they never let go the Mares, because they shan't breed in Foreign Countries.

Leo divides *Tunis* into *Bugia*, *Constantina*, *Tripolis*, and *Ezzab*; but the *Sansons* and *Dapper* reject his Division as too ancient, and divide it into 4 Maritime and 3 or 4 Inland Governments, assigning to the former *Biser-ta*, *Gouletta*, *Susa*, and *Africa*; and *Beggia*, *Urbs*, *Cayroan*, and a Quarter which lies in Part of *Biledulgerid* to the latter. *Du Plessis* divides it into 8 small Provinces, whose chief Towns are *Tunis*, *Africa* or *El-Mehdia*, *Susa*, *Cairoan*, *Mahometa* or *Hamametha*, *Bis-fer-ta*,

ferta, Gouleta, Birsa and Porto Farina. But according to our Tables, we shall first describe the Towns that lie within Land, and then those on the Coast.

The chief of the Inland Towns are,
1. *Cairoan, Cairaon, Caroen, or Carouan.* Moll places it Long. $27\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $35\frac{1}{2}$. on the River *Magrida*, which runs into the Road of *Gouletta* about 120 Miles to the N. The *Sansons* place it at the Foot of the Mountain *Guesset*, on a River that runs into the Gulph of *Capes* on the E. in Long. 33. 20. and Lat. 31. 40. 'Tis the Capital of a Government of its own Name, which, tho' reckon'd as an Inland Province because of its Capital, yet the *Sansons* say it ought to have been included among the Maritime ones, because its Jurisdiction extends over *Tobulha, Asfachusa*, and some other Places on the Coast. They have no Corn, Fruits, nor Water, in this Country, but what they preserve in Cisterns. 'Tis the Residence of one of their Pontiffs, and was formerly the Seat of a Caliph. It has a stately Mosque, supported by Marble Pillars, of which two are finer than ordinary, and one of a prodigious Bigness. The *Sansons* add, that the Town is inhabited by about 4 or 500 Families. *Leo* calls it a great City, 36 Miles from the *Mediterranean*, and 100 from *Tunis*. He says, 'twas built by *Hucha*, General of the Army which *Hutman*, the 3d *Mahometan* Prelate, sent out of *Arabia Deserta* in 632 according to *Dapper*, but 991 according to *Heylin*, and was design'd for a Place of Safety, where the *Arabians* might lodge their Spoil. He inclos'd it with a very strong Brick Wall and Towers, and built the Mosque above-mention'd. He govern'd this Place till *Qualid*, then Caliph of *Damascus*, sent *Muse* in his stead, who after many successful Adventures against the *Africans* and *Goths* in *Spain*, was turned out upon that Caliph's Death, and succeeded by one *Jezul*, whose Son, Brother, and Nephews, succeeding in Order, govern'd *Cairoan* till the Family of *Qualid* was degraded, and the *Mahometan* Caliphs removed from *Damascus* to *Bagdad*. During this Juncture, one *Elagleb* was made Governor of *Cairoan*, and his Posterity enjoyed it for 170 Years. In the said *Elagleb's* Time this Town became so populous, that they built a Town call'd *Rescheda* just by it, where he and his Court resided. He

also annexed the Island of *Sicily* to its Dominions. *Leo* adds, that this City was formerly very famous for the Study of the *Mahometan* Law, and produced the greatest Professors in *Africa*, but at last was destroyed; and tho' since rebuilt, yet is far short of its ancient Splendor, and is only inhabited by Leather-Dressers, who send Leather to *Numidia*, and truck it for *European* Cloth. *Marmol* says, 'tis the finest City in *Africa*, the first built in it by the *Mahometans*, and that the Kings of *Tunis* are interred in the great Temple. When *Barberossa* took *Tunis*, this City being miserably oppressed by the King, received a *Turkish* Garrison; and when *Barberossa* was worsted, chose the chief *Alfaqui* of the great Temple to be their King, who made an Alliance with the K. of *Tunis*, and assisted the Emperor in taking *Mehedia*; but refused to assist *Dragut*, who in Revenge conspir'd with some of the *Alfaqui's* and chief Citizens, kill'd him, and brought the City in Subjection to the *Turks*, whom it now obeys. *Dapper* places it but 7 Miles from the Sea, 20 from *Tunis*, and 11 from *Carthage*. *Heylin* places it 100 Miles from *Tunis*, 12 from Mount *Guesset*, and 36 from the Sea. He says, 'twas destroyed by the *Arabians* in the 424th Year of their *Hegyra*, but recover'd again by the King of *Morocco*, and still of such Esteem among the *Mahometans*, that their chief Men are brought hither to be buried from all Parts of the Country.

2. *Urbs.* The *Sansons* place it Lat. 31. 20. Long. 31. 10. on a River which runs into that called *Guadilbarbar*. Moll places it on the latter, in Lat. 35. Long. 26. 14. about 70 Miles W. of *Cayroan*, and 150 S. W. of *Tunis*. *Leo* says, 'tis full of Marble Images, *Latin* Inscriptions, and other *Roman* Antiquities; that it had excellent Walls, and was the Treasury of the *Romans*; but the *Goths* and *Moors* took and demolish'd it. 'Tis again inhabited; but our Author says, it deserves only the Name of a Village. *Dapper* makes it the Capital of a Government of its own Name, which produces Plenty of Corn; says 'twas anciently called *Turridus*, and lies in a fine Plain 19 or 20 Leagues S. of *Tunis*. He adds, that there's a Castle, with a Rivulet that passes near it, whose Waters are carried into the Town by a Canal built of white Stone from its Spring-

Spring head at about a quarter of a League distance, and that the Inhabitants are for most Part Peasants. *Luyts* says, 'tis also called *Arbes*; and the *Sansons*, *Ourbe* or *Orba*. The latter places it in the Road from *Tebessa* to *Tunis*.

3. *Beija*, *Bejia*, or *Beggia*. The *Sansons* place it in a mountainous Tract on the N. Side of the River *Guadilbarbar*, Long. $31\frac{1}{4}$. Lat. 32.55 . *Dapper* makes it the Capital of a Government of its own Name, no less fruitful than the former, and says 'tis a well built Town, founded by the *Romans* on the Side of a Hill 3 Leagues from the Sea, and 10 W. from *Tunis*, upon the great Road which goes from thence to *Constantinople*. He adds, that most of its Wall is still entire, and that the Inhabitants apply themselves to *Mechanicks*, and are more polite than those of *Urbs*. The *Sansons* say, 'twas anciently called *Bulla Regia*, and that the adjacent Soil is so fruitful in Grain, that the People of *Tunis* have a Proverb, If there were two *Beggia*'s, they would produce as much Corn as there is Sand in the Sea. In this Government *Dapper* mentions *Hain-Zammiu*, 7 Miles from *Beggia*, built by the Kings of *Tunis*; and *Casba*, another Roman Colony, 5 Miles from *Tunis*, in a fine Plain 3 Miles in Compass. The Walls are almost entire, but the Town he says is desert, because of the Incursions of the *Arabs*.

We come now to the Towns on the Coast; the chief of which are, 1. *Asfachusa*, *Asfachus*, *Esfacho*, or *Elfachus*, which *Marmol* says is a little wall'd Town of 400 Houses, built upon the Coast of the Gulph of *Capes* by the ancient *Moors*, in a Soil which produces nothing but Barley. The *Sansons* place it in Long. 33.50 . Lat. 31.7 . *Dapper* places it in the Government of *Cairoan*, and adds to it, 2. *Tobulba*, a Roman Colony, built upon the Coast, 3 Leagues E. from *Monester*.

3. *Africa* or *El-Mahdia*, Long 34.45 . and Lat. 32 . according to the *Sansons*, and Long. 29 . and Lat. $35\frac{1}{4}$. according to *Moll*, who places it 90 Miles S E. from *Tunis*. *Leo* says, 'twas founded in his Time by *Mahdi* the first Patriarch of *Cairoan*, with a noble Harbour, and strong Walls, Towers, and Gates. He adds, that this *Mahdi* pretending to be descended of *Mahomet*, so far ingratiated himself with the People, that they made him Prince of *Cayroan*; but turning Ty-

rant, and finding them uneasy, he built this Town for a Place of Refuge, and was accordingly forced to fly hither by *Beiezid* a *Mahometan* Prelate; but he made a brave Defence, and killed him. *Marmol* places it 8 Leagues from *Monester*, and says, 'tis the same with the *Adrumettum* of the *Romans*. It stands upon a Point of Land that shoots out into the Sea, and joins the Continent by a small Isthmus, which is but 350 Paces over, with a Castle upon it, and 6 Towers. The Walls of the City are 40 Foot thick. 'Twas very splendid while the *Romans* possessed it; after which *Mahomet*'s Successors raz'd it to the Ground, rebuilt it, and fortified it as above. Upon the Declension of the Caliphs of *Cairoan*, the *Sicilian* Pyrates took and call'd it *Africa*; after which the Christians kept it till 'twas conquer'd by a *Morocco* King of the *Almohada* Line, 'Twas afterwards subject to the King of *Tunis*, but frequently revolted, and had actually shaken off the Yoke, when *Dragut*, the famous Admiral of the Pyrates, surpris'd it by Treachery in the Year 1545 or 1550, and was received as their Prince; but the Emperor *Charles V.* besieg'd, took, and demolish'd, both the Town and Fortifications. *Dapper* says 'tis not above 200 Paces wide, but it grows broader nearer the Sea. The Harbour is capacious enough for 50 Vessels; but the Entrance of it is so narrow, that a Galley can scarce enter with Oars. There's a very strong Gate on the Land-Side, plated with Iron, and defended by Towers and Arches. The Avenue to it leads under an Arch 70 Foot long, of a horrible Darkness.

4. *Monastero*, *Monaster*, or *Monester*. The *Sansons* place it on the same Coast, Lat. 32.18 . Long. 34.24 . *Marmol* says, 'twas built by the *Romans* upon a pleasant Spot of Ground, and defended by noble high Walls. It frequently revolted from the Kings of *Tunis*, which occasioned its being besieged by the *Spaniards*, and is almost ruin'd by the repeated Depredations of the *Moors*, *Turks*, and Christians. 'Tis now subject to the *Turks*. *Dapper* places it in the Government of *Susa*, 4 Leagues from the Town of that Name, and a League from *Africa*, and says 'twas so called from a neighbouring Convent of *Augustin* Fathers. The Inhabitants are poor, ill cloath'd, and eat nothing

thing but Barley-Bread, and Oil; but are obliged to pay Tribute both to the Governor of *Susa* and their own Lord. *Luyts* and the *Sanfons* say, 'twas formerly call'd *Leptis Parva*.

5. *Susa* or *Ruspina*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 32. 22. Long. 34. *Marmol* says, it stands upon a rising Ground, and has a strong Castle on the Land-Side. Some say 'twas founded by the *Romans*, and was formerly a very populous and noted Place, by the Name of *Sagul*, and the same which *Ptolomy* places Long. 36. Lat. 32. 20. Here is the Palace of *Occuba* the *Mahometan* General, which, with a magnificent Temple, and several other noble Edifices, is still standing. When *Barberossa* took *Tunis*, it submitted to the *Turks*, but refus'd to declare for *Muley Hascen* when *Barberossa* was expelled, till the Emperor *Charles V.* sent a Fleet that besieg'd and took it; yet it soon after revolted, and being reduced, revolted again, till the Arrival of the *Spanish* Fleet upon the Coast, when they expelled the *Turks*, but received them again afterwards, and are now subject to them. *Thevenot* says, it lies a Day's Journey from *Tunis*, and has more Antiquities, especially relating to *St. Augustin*, than any other Place of the Kingdom. *Dapper* says, 'twas formerly a great Town, and the Capital of a Province of its own Name, but that 'tis now decayed. Some think it to be the ancient *Adrumetum*. He places it upon a Rock 25 Miles from *Tunis*, over against the Island of *Pantalaria*, and nearer *Sicily* than any Town of *Africa*. In 1619, when the *Christians* besieg'd this Place, *Philibert* Prince of *Savoy* was defeated near it, and a great Number of the *Knights* of *Malta* lost their Lives. There's a good Harbour here, where the Vessels of the *Corfairs* of *Tunis* ride at Anchor. The Inhabitants are civil and courteous, and for the most Part *Mariners* and *Pirates*, or else *Merchants* who trade to the *Levant* and *Turkey*; but the common People are either *Weavers*, *Shepherds*, or *Potters*. 'Tis the Residence of the Governor, to whom the Inhabitants pay 12000 Ducats. *Dapper* adds, that the Soil of *Susa* produces *Barley*, *Figs* and *Olives*, to which the *Sanfons* add *Pears* and *Quinces*, and abounds in *Pasture*. The latter say, that one Part of the Town lies upon a Rock, and the other in a Bottom, and that both are well built.

6. *Eraclea* or *Heraclea*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 32. 10. Long. 33. 9. *Dapper* includes it in the Government of *Susa*, and says, 'tis a little Town built by the *Romans* upon a Hill near the Sea, and destroy'd by the *Arabs*.

7. *Hammamet*, *Hammametha*, or *Mahometta*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 32. 27. Long. 33. 27. *Moll* in Lat. 36. 47. Long. 29. about 60 Miles N. of the Town of *Africa*, 44 S. E. of *Tunis*, and over against the Island of *Pantalaria*. The *Sanfons* say, 'tis the *Hadrumentum* of the Ancients, and place it at the Bottom of a Gulph, to which it gives Name, and in the Government of *Susa*. They add, that it has strong Walls, and a safe Harbour. *Dapper* places it but 13 Miles from *Tunis*, and says, 'twas built by the *Mahometans*. Some think 'twas raised out of the Ruins of the ancient *Macodama* mention'd by *Ptolomy*. *Dapper* adds, that the Inhabitants are all *Fishermen* or *Watermen*, *Colliers* and *Whitsters*.

8. *Tunis*. The *Sanfons* place it in Lat. 32. 53. Long. 32. 36. *Moll* Lat. 37. Long. 28. 12. 300 Miles E. of *Algier*, upon the same Coast, and over against the Isle of *Sicily*. *Leo* says, 'tis called in *Latin*, *Tunetum*, anciently *Tarhis*, and was built by the *Africans* upon a Lake 12 Miles from the *Mediterranean*. *Abu Zaccheria* built a Castle upon a high Ground in the West Part of the City, which he adorn'd with a fair Temple and other Buildings. Our Author says, that in his Time 'twas counted the richest Town in all *Africa*. *Abu Zaccheria*'s Grandson added lofty Buildings to the Suburbs, and built two Streets, one without the *Suvacca* Gate, containing 300 Families; and another without the *Be-del-Manera* Gate, where live the *Christians* of the King's Guard, containing above 1000 Families. There's a third Street without the Gate, called *Bebelbabar*, which lies next the Sea, frequented by all the *Christian* Merchants. *Leo* makes the Number of the Inhabitants amount in his Time to 10000 Families, (but *Marmol* 20000) each Trade having a peculiar Place by it self; but the former says few of them are rich. They have a great many *Weavers* of *Linen*, which is much valued all over *Africa*. When the Women spin, they let down the Spindle at a Window, or thro' a Hole in an upper Floor, and the Weight of the Spindle makes the

the Thread very clean and even. Their Merchants, Priests and Doctors, wear Turbans cover'd with Linen, but the Courtiers and Soldiers have them without it. All Sorts of Grain is very scarce here, because they don't till the Ground for fear of the Incurfions of the *Arabians*, and they are supplied with Corn from *Urbs*, *Beggia*, and *Bona*. They sow a little Barley and Corn in a few Fields which are wall'd round in the Suburbs; but the Soil is so dry, that they are forced to raise Water out of Pits with a Wheel, turn'd by a Mule or a Camel, from whence it runs over the Ground in Troughs, &c. They bake excellent Bread in Mortars, leaving the Bran and the Flower together. They have no Water in the City but Rain; but in the Suburbs there's a Fountain of salt Water, which is sold up and down the Streets, and reckon'd wholesomest for drinking; and there are other Wells of good fresh Water, which are reserv'd only for the Court. There's a stately Temple here richly endow'd, besides several others of a smaller Revenue, and Colleges and Monasteries maintain'd at the publick Charge. One of the latter was built and well endow'd by the King for the Benefit of certain Santo's called *Sidi el Dalri*, who go about bare-headed and bare-footed, and carry Stones with them. Their Houses are well painted and carved, and built of excellent Stone; but Wood for Carving being very scarce, most of their Painting is done upon Plaister, and their Chamber-Floors are paved with a shining sort of Stone. They are but one Story high, and have two Gates, one leading to the Street, and the other to the Outhouses, with a large Court between, where they receive their Friends, and talk about Business. Their Women are decent in Habit; and when they go abroad are mask'd, or cover their Foreheads with a Linen-Cloth, which is join'd to another that they call *seffari*. They wrap so much Linen about their Heads, that they seem Gigantick. They lay out all they have upon Perfumes, &c. and some are forc'd by Poverty to turn Whores. They make frequent Use of a certain Compound called *Lhasis*, which provokes Venery, and sets them a laughing and dallying as if they were half drunk.

Marmol says, *Tunis* was built by the *Arabians* that first invaded *Africa*, under the

Conduct of *Melec Ifiriqui*. The Inhabitants are very civil and tractable, and commonly feed upon Barley-Meal kneaded and boil'd with Water and Salt; and afterwards soak'd in Oil or Butter. Our Author says, the ancient Kings of *Tunis* had a very splendid Court, and many Officers of the Household, and that within the Palace they were serv'd by Women and Eunuchs. Their Life-Guard consisted of 1500 Horse, and 100 Musketers; most of them *Mus-Arabians* or Renegadoes; and they had 150 old Gentlemen whom he advis'd with, and who serv'd in the Army as Major-Generals. Their Way of Eating, giving Audience, &c. was the same with that of the Court of *Fez*: But all this Grandeur was extinguish'd by *Barberossa* when he took the City. It stands upon a Lake, which receives the Sea by so narrow a Neck, that a Galley cannot pass it with her Oars spread. The City is expos'd on several Quarters, especially to the W. and *Marmol* places its chief Strength in the Number of its Inhabitants. *Thevenot* makes it 18 Miles by Land from hence to *Goletta*, and a Mile from the Landing-place. He says, 'tis capable of being made a good Harbour, but then the Town would not be so secure. It lies in a Plain, is pretty large, and the Houses, tho' they make no Shew without, are within full of Marble, Gold and Azure. The Suburbs, which are as big as the City, are pav'd, but extreme dirty after Rain. There are some Guns before the Gate of the Castle, and it has a good Front; but our Author observes, that 'tis dangerous for Christians to be too curious in viewing it. Over against it there's a Burying-place, and not far from thence a long broad Street, where there are none but Drapers Shops on both Sides, which have all the fore Part supported by 4 Pillars, viz. two on each Side. There are 13 Baths here for the Slaves, of which *Thevenot* was told there are 10 or 12000 here, besides those kept in their Master's Houses. We shall add the following Account of them to what we gave P. 149 of this Volume. *Thevenot* says, they carry each a great Iron Ring at their Foot; and that the Knights of *Maltha* have besides an Iron Chain of 25 Pound Weight fasten'd to it, which is so troublesome, that they must either turn it quite round their Leg, and fasten it there, (which is very heavy

heavy when they walk) or hang it on a Hook by their Side, which commonly gives them a Pain in that Side, or else they must carry it on their Shoulders. In these Baths there's a great Hall, in which they are shut up every Night, where some stow 3 or 4 together in little Wooden Rooms, to which they go up by Ladders, and the rest lie upon the Ground, where they do their Needs in Pots, which raises an intolerable Stench, and are continually talking, quarrelling, and fighting. In the Morning, when the Prison is open'd, those that are to work are let out, and set about Building, &c. so that the Knights of *Malta*, tho' of never such Noble Families, are obliged to carry Sand, Stone, &c. to ransom themselves the sooner, and at the higher Rate. They who can get any thing by their own Industry, pay so much per Day to their Master, and are not forced to work; and many of them that keep Taverns, give their Master Part of their Profit. None but Slaves sell Wine here, which is all white, and grows in great Plenty in the adjacent Country; but they put Lime in it to make it heady. They sell it cheap; and if you call for a Quart of it, they treat you with Bread, 3 or 4 Dishes of Meat, or Fish, Sallads, &c. into the Bargain. He observes, that they have Power to beat such *Turks* as are insolent in their Taverns, and to take off their Turbans if they refuse to pay their Reckoning. But he says, the Slaves who neither work nor get any thing, cannot step out of the Bath without 3 *d.* Fee to a Man whom the Keeper appoints for their Guard. *Theravenot* adds, that the Knights of *Malta* complaining to their Great Master, that they were forced to work, the Turkish Slaves there were so severely bastinado'd, that they complained to *Tunis* they were like to be cudgelled to Death; and since that Time, says our Author, the Knights are no more put to work. *Coppin* says, the Buildings where they are lodg'd is very high, and has thick Walls, a Gallery all round in the Inside, and an Altar at one End for Mass, where Priests go in a disguis'd Habit to give them the Sacrament. Upon solemn Occasions, they have as many Lights as in the best Churches of *Christendom*; but the Crew often light their Pipes at the Tapers on the Altar. He observes, that the Industrious

have only one Third of what they get, and that there were 7 or 8000 Captive Christians here in his Time. He adds, that none are suffer'd to walk the Streets in the Night on Pain of being killed on the Spot. *Theravenot* says, the *French* and *English* have each a Burying-place, and that the *Franks* liv'd in separate Houses during his Time, but were building commodious Apartments to lodge with their Consuls, as in other Parts of the *Levant*. *Coppin* places this City above 10 Miles from the Sea. He says, 'tis almost two little Leagues in Compass. 'Tis very ancient; and some say 'twas built out of the Ruins of *Carthage*. The Lake, tho' it runs 10 Miles within Land from the Road, does not come within 100 Paces of the Town. The City lies off of its S. Bank, and runs along between E. and S. in a Valley, which reaches to the Sea. The Town is above twice as long as broad, and the Buildings lie in a Descent from W. to E. It has high Walls, especially on the Side of the Lake, but without any other Defence than some Towers at certain Distances, and a small Ditch. That which they call the Sea-Gate looks towards the Place where they embark for *Gouletta*, and stands between two ordinary Towers, without any Draw-Bridge. There is but one at the Gate which leads to *Biserta*, and on that Side there's a sorry Ditch, with a little Half-Moon, which lies betwixt the Gate and one of the Angles of the Town, almost 100 Paces from each. There's a little Height about the same Distance from the Walls on the Lake-Side, from whence our Author thinks 'tis easy to beat down the Walls; and near it there's a little Church, which is left to the *Franks*, and seems to have been formerly an Hermitage. It lies within a Piece of Ground inclos'd with a Wall, which was formerly a Garden, but now a Church-Yard. Several of their Mosques are of a handsome Figure, and come near the Architecture of the *Spaniards*; but they have no arch'd Gates, being all square at Top. *Coppin* says, their Houses are two Stories; that they have no Windows towards the Street; that their Courts are encompassed with high Walls; and that in some they have a low Hall, which serves for a Divan, and is open on all Sides to let in the fresh Air during the Sum-

Summer. *Tunis* can easily furnish 20000 Fighting Men. The People are very much inclin'd to War, and are train'd up to Military Exercises from their Infancy. They are of a strong Constitution, inure themselves betimes to Labour; and tho' the Plague be frequent here, they mind it no more than any common Distemper. *Dapper* places it two Miles from the *Mediterranean*, and 3 from *Carthage*, and corrects those who confound it with *Ptolomy's Themissa*, (which lies near the *Numidian Gulph* 30 Leagues further) as he does those who make this City and *Carthage* all one. The *Arabs*, *Turks* and *Moors*, call it *Tunus*. He says, tis built in Form of a Parallelogram like *Utrecht*, and is a League in Compass; but *Gramaye* makes it 3 *Spanish Leagues*. *Dapper* says, the Wall is 40 Cubits high, and that it had a great many Forts, Bulwarks and Ditches, before the *Turks* took it, which are since for most Part ruin'd. It has 5 Gates, 18 great Streets, which are crossed by lesser ones, 16 large Squares, 315 Mosques, 12 Oratories of the Christians in the Suburbs, 8 Synagogues, 24 Hermits Chappels, 150 Baths, 86 Schools, 9 Colleges maintain'd by the City, 64 Hospitals for Foreigners and Travellers, 3000 Shops belonging to Woollen and Linen Drapers, and 9 Prisons for Slaves. The chief Structure is the *Basha's Palace*, which is adorned with 4 Portals, several Towers, a great low Court, fine Gardens and Galleries, stately Halls, and other magnificent Apartments built round the Treasury Chamber, where they keep the Law-Book of *Dr. Elmohadian*, from whom the Kings of *Tunis* boast their Descent, and that by Vertue thereof they have a Right to judge all Controversies touching Religion. The Mosque built by *K. Zacharia* is a Sanctuary for Criminals, and has the highest Tower in *Africa* next to that of *Fez*. Here is also the Janizaries Court, an Exchange, a Custom-House, and several other Palaces, as that of the Aga, *Cid Mahomet*, &c. The Number of their Houses was augmented by the Arrival of the *Moors* from *Grenada*, who have so improv'd Arts and Commerce here, that 'tis not inferior in that Respect to the best Cities of *Europe*. Their Houses were anciently built according to all the Rules of Architecture, and adorned with Statues and Paintings. The Cieling of their Chambers

was transparent, and the Roofs flat and pav'd to take the fresh Air on; but now he says they are small, and but one Story high. There are two Suburbs, one on the W. towards *Biserta*, which is very fair and large, and the other on the E. towards *Susa*. The *Turks* Church-yards are round the Town, adorned with Stones of Marble, and Walks of Flowers. They keep the Rain in Cisterns as at *Amsterdam*. Some Years ago one of their Deys brought Water into the City by a Leaden Aqueduct from a Spring above a League from the Town, and assigned an Annual Revenue to keep it in Repair. The Inhabitants of *Tunis* are either *Moors*, *Turks*, or *Jews*. They love Flesh, especially Lamb. *Du Pleffis* says, their Houses are built of Stone and Brick; that their Cielings are also of Stone; and that their Roofs are made Terrass-wise, that the Rain-Water may drain off into the Cisterns. *Heylin* makes it above 5 Miles in Compass, and says, 'twas forced to capitulate by *K. Edward I.* in his Father's Time, and afterwards by *Henry IV.* then Earl of *Derby*, who commanded for the *French*. *Luyts* says, *Lewis IX.* of *France* dy'd at the Siege of it in 1270. He adds, that the Streets are narrow, and that the Number of publick Buildings and Squares is much less than formerly.

Marmol says, there are great Nurseries of Olive, Citron, and Orange Trees, in the Neighbourhood; that the Lake upon which it stands is 3 Leagues long, 2 broad, and full of Sand-Banks. *Thevenot* says, that many Canes are fix'd round it in the Bottom of the Water where 'tis narrow for catching of Fish. 'Tis not commonly above 5 Spans deep, and sometimes there are several dry Places in it; but they are soon cover'd when the Wind blows. There's a Hill to the Left of it near the Sea as you come up from *Gouletta*, where there are natural Baths of hot Water, and a Bagnio. In the Time of the Christians, Aqueducts were made from thence to *Carthage*; but they are since ruin'd, and only some Arches, with the Fountains and Cisterns, now to be seen. The Passage from *Tunis* to *Gouletta* is about two Hours. There are a great many Country-Houses near the Town, which *Thevenot* says are built like the Bastides about *Marseilles*. One of them is in Form of a square Tower, and is higher than the rest,

so that there are 111 Steps from the Hall to the Top, whence there's a Prospect of a Plain of Olives that runs out of Sight. The Hall is open above, with cover'd Galleries round it, and several Pillars to support the Roof. 'Tis adorned with Fountains and other Water-works, and some have lovely Basins of one entire Piece of Marble brought from *Genoa*. The adjacent Country is always dirty, because it lies upon a Level. *Dapper* says, they use the Wood of the Olive-Trees for Firing, and that they have a great many Rose-Trees and other odoriferous Shrubs, with Lemon and Palm-Trees.

9. *Goletta* or *Gouletta*. *Moll* places it Lat. 37. 33. Long. 28. 34. *Thevenot* says, there are several dangerous Rocks and Flats on this Coast, and that the Road lies open to the S. E. Here are two Castles, one built by the Emperor *Charles V.* and the other by one of their Deys, who perceiving that the Gallies of *Malta* took Ships out of the Road without Damage from the Guns of the Castle, built this last, which is very low, and has 7 or 8 great Port-holes two Foot above the Water, by which the Guns play level with its Surface; yet *Coppin* says, they take them still in spite of the Castle. *Thevenot* adds, 'tis round on the Sea-Side, but on the other is almost square. *Coppin* says, there was a square Tower or Custom-House here, fortified by *Barberossa* in 1535, when *Charles V.* took it, and that it had 4 Bastions and 500 Cannon when retaken by the *Turks* in 1574, after which it was raz'd by the Gr. Seignior's Order. He adds, that both the 2 Forts are square, and have each a Free-stone Wall, with a Parapet; but the Wall of the Fort which looks towards the Mouth of the Lake is cover'd, and in that on the other there are several Breaches. They have each a Ditch about the Height of a Man, but they are ill kept, have no Works to secure them, and are about 45 Paces from one another, in which Space there's nothing but a 3d Ditch join'd to those of the two Forts. The least of the Castles is defended with a good Wall, and the Port-holes are so placed, that they can do no Execution on the Land-Side. All Ships belonging to Christians, which come hither to trade, are obliged to carry their Sails ashore, where they are kept in the Castle, and not

restored till the Merchants have Leave to depart. The Way from hence to *Tunis* by Land is two Leagues longer than by the Lake. *Coppin* adds, that the *French* had a Consul 'here in his Time, and that the Customs are more moderate than at *Alexandria*. *Dapper* makes *Gouletta* a Lordship, containing the Towns of *Marfa*, *Napolis*, *Cammart*, *Arriana*, and *Carthage*. Some think that *Gouletta* is *Ptolomy's* Island *Galatha* or *Galitha*, or *Pliny's* *Goulon*: But *Sanutius*, and *Zwart* the Dutch Geographer, say, they are different Places, because *Gouletta* lies 5 Miles from the Sea, and the Name is derived from the Italian Word *Gola* and *Galetta*, i. e. a narrow Mouth. *Dapper* says, they have several Warehouses here, a Prison for the Slaves, and two Mosques; so that the Place is more like a City than a Citadel. He adds, that near the Lake there are certain Birds which the *Moors* call *Louze*, and the *Turks*, *Calcavensi*, with Legs two Foot and a half high, white Feathers, and the Body like a Stork. *Sanfon* calls the Citadel the Old and the New Forts, and says, the former is only guarded by 30 or 40 Janizaries. He adds, that there's a Spring of fresh Water here. *Heylin* and the *Sanfons* say, 'tis divided from the main Land by two narrow Passages, but so that it commands both.

10. *Bon Cape*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 34 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 34. *Moll* places it Lat. 37 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 29. almost 60 Miles S. E. of *Tunis*, and 30 E. from *Goletta*.

11. *Marfa* or *Marca*. *Dapper* says, 'tis an Arabian Word that signifies Harbour, and that the Town is built in the Place where stood the Harbour of ancient *Carthage*. *Marmol* says, 'twas founded by *Mehedi*, the Caliph of *Carouan*, demolish'd by the *Arabians* during the Wars of the Kings of *Tunis*, and rebuilt by some Fishers and Labourers. Here is now a fair Palace and Pleasure-Houses, where the *Bashas* of *Tunis* divert themselves in the Summer. 'Tis said to contain near 800 Houses, a Mosque and a College built by *Muley Mahomet*, Father of *Muley Hascen*. *Dapper* places it in the Lordship of *Goletta*, and says, the Sea-Winds which blow here make the Air wholesome; that the W. and S. Sides of the Town abound with large delicious Fruits, such as Peaches, Pomegranates, Olives, Figs, Oranges, and Citrons, of which they send a great Quantity

tity to *Tunis*. The adjacent Vallies are also very fruitful; but between *Tunis* and *Carthage* there is a Tract of 3 Miles in Length, which is dry and barren. In the Neighbourhood of this Town they have good Store of Deer, grey Partridges, and others which have black Feathers on their Stomach, Wings like that of the Bird *Bizet*, the rest of the Body grey, the Bill of an Ash-colour, and the Legs shorter than those of *Europe*.

12. *Nebet* or *Nabis*, as the *Moors* call it, is a little Town built by the *Romans*, the *Neapolis* of *Ptolomy*, and the same which the *Italians* call *Napoli de Barbarie*. *Dapper* includes it in the Lordship of *Goletta*, and places it near the *Mediterranean*, 3 Leagues E. of *Tunis*. 'Twas formerly very populous; but now there are only a few Peasants and Gardiners in it.

13. *Cammart*. *Dapper* says is another little Town in the same Lordship, situate near the Ruins of *Carthage*, and two Leagues E. of *Tunis*. *Aben Raxid*, an *African* Geographer, says, 'twas formerly called *Walachia*, and founded by the *Romans*. 'Tis surrounded with high Walls, and very populous; but most of the Inhabitants are Gardiners, who carry Herbs to *Tunis*. He adds, that there are a great many Sugar-Canes and other Sorts of Fruit in the Neighbourhood.

14. *Ariane* or *Ariana* is a little Town very near *Tunis*, built by the *Goths*, who gave it the Name of their Patriarch *Arius*. The adjacent Soil abounds with Wheat and Fruit-Trees. *Dapper* includes this also in the Territory of *Goletta*, as he does,

15. *Arradex*, another little Town upon the Road from *Gouletta* to *Tunis*, which he says was a *Roman* Colony, ruin'd by the *Arabs*, but rebuilt and peopled by the Kings of *Tunis*.

16. *Carthage* or *Bergack*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 33. 18. Long. 32. 48. *Mok* Lat. 37 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 28 $\frac{1}{4}$. about 20 Miles N. of *Tunis*, on the other Side of the River *Magrida*. *Leo* says, when the *Mahometans* took *Tripoly* and *Capes*, the principal *Romans* and *Goths*, together with the Inhabitants, retired higher; but the *Turks* took *Carthage* too after many Attacks; upon which it remain'd desolate, till one *Elmahdi*, a *Mahometan* Patriarch, brought in a new Colony, which did not take up the 20th Part of the City.

The Ruins of its Walls are still to be seen. The adjacent Plains are very fertile, but not large, for the N. Side is hemmed in with a Mountain, the Sea, and the Gulph of *Venice*, and the E. and S. with the Plains of *Bensart*. In *Leo's* Time, (*viz.* about 1526,) this City was mighty low, had but 500 sorry Houses, and 25 Shops. He adds, that the Inhabitants are miserable, oppressed with heavy Taxes, great Pretenders to Religion, intolerably proud, and most of them Gardiners or Husbandmen. *Marmol* says, it stood upon a Plain, but included a Mountain within its Walls; That in the Place where the chief Fortress stood there is now a Tower, called by the Christians, *The Rock of Mastinaca*; and by the *Africans*, *Almenara*; That 'twas destroy'd first by *Scipio Africanus*, and then by *Genferick K.* of the *Vandals* in 432 or 442; after which it revolted to the *Greek* Emperors and *Goths*, and was at last destroyed by the *Arabians* in their Wars with the Kings of *Tunis*. *Thevenot* says, the Ruins of this Place lie above 3 Leagues from *Tunis*, and that many of the Arches of the Aqueduct which convey'd Water hither from Mount *Zagoan* at 30 Miles distance are still standing. The Ruins consist only of Heaps of Stone and Places under Ground, where there are great Cisterns, which supply *Tunis* and Parts adjacent with Marble and other Stones for Building. *Coppin* says, it lay on the best Part of the Coast. The *Grecians*, says *Dapper*, call it *Carchedon*, *Cadmia*, *Byrsa*, &c. *Virgil* says, that *Dido* having agreed with the Inhabitants of this Country for as much Land as she could compass with an Ox's Hide, caus'd it to be cut into such small Thongs, that they made a Circle large enough to build a Town and Citadel, in which she built the Fort called *Byrsa*, a *Phœnician* Word for a Castle. But *Appianus* thinks the City was founded by a *Phœnician* named *Choros* or *Carchedon*; but *Ibnuruqiq*, an *African* Historian, ascribes its Foundation to a People who were chas'd hither from *Marmarica* by the Kings of *Egypt*. Some say, 'twas built 226 Years before *Rome*, others 72, and others but 65. *Joseph* against *Appian* says, he read in the Chronicles of the *Tyrians*, that 'twas built 140 Years after *Solomon's* Temple; so that if (according to *Retau*) the Temple was built A. M. 2992, and *Rome* in 3231, the Foun-

Foundation of *Carthage* must have preceded that of *Rome* 99 Years. The *Romans* burnt it about 700 Years after it was built. *Dapper* says, it was rebuilt by the *Romans* under the Consulship of *Mark Anthony* and *P. Dolabella* about 120 Years after its Destruction; and that under the Reign of *Constantine*, 'twas reckon'd the Eye of *Africa*. He adds, that the City was situate upon three Hills, divided from one another by large Vallies. The highest, which is beaten with the Waves, is called the Cape of *Carthage*, and has Cape *Bon* on the E. The second contains the Ruins of Fort *Byrsa*, with *Gouletta* on the W. and the 3d has a Plain upon the Top for 3 or 4 Miles, all planted with Olive-Trees, and contains several old Ruins, particularly that of the Aqueduct, and is now turn'd into the Village *Marsa* above-mention'd. Some say, the Citadel took up the Space of two Miles. *Heylin* and *Luyts* say, 'twas rebuilt by *Julius Cæsar*. The *Sansons* say, its Power was never so well discover'd as in the 3d and last *Punick* War, when after it had been forced to yield great Part of its Territories to *Massinissa*, and to put into the Hands of the *Romans*, under their two Consuls *L. Martius* and *M. Manlius*, their Ships of War, Elephants, Arms, and Hostages; yet when they were required to leave the City, and retire to the Inland Country, Despair made them resolve upon War, for which End they made Arms of Gold and Silver, for want of Brass and Iron, and pulled down Houses for Timber to build other Ships, whilst their Women cut off the Hair of their Heads for Cables and Cordage, and 25000 others list'd to defend the Walls, so that they held out 3 or 4 Years longer. *Heylin* says, *Dido* came hither with her Brother *Barca* and her Sister *Anna*, and that the City was first founded *A. M.* 3070, about 144 Years after *Solomon's* Temple, 143 before *Rome*, and about 190 after the Ruin of *Troy*: But in another Place he says 'twas built *A. M.* 3725, 72 Years after *Rome*, and 874 before Christ. *Livy* says, 'twas 22 Miles in Compass when destroy'd by the *Romans*, which was but little above the 4th Part of the Peninsula; so much, says *Heylin*, was it diminish'd by Length of Time, her Wars in *Sicily* with the *Romans* and other Nations, and by her own Domestic Troubles. He quotes *Vossius*, *Bochart*,

Hanon, and *Appianus Alexandrinus*, to prove that *Carthage* was in its most flourishing State before the *Trojan* Wars; that *Carthage* was older than *New Tyre*; and that *Queen Dido* only brought hither an additional Colony from *Old Tyre*, and added *Byrsa* to the old City: And he thinks that this was one of the most ancient Plantations the *Canaanites* made on this Coast after the Conquest of *Canaan* by *Joshua*, tho' it was not accounted a City till some Ages after. He says, that its commodious Situation for Trade made it so wealthy in a short time, that they hired Soldiers of the *Mauretanians* and *Numidians*, with which they conquer'd all the Coasts from *Pentapolis* to the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and in some Parts of the S. so that they were possessed of 300 Cities, and drew all the Kings and Princes of *Africa* to their Devotion. They design'd also to have made themselves Masters of *Sicily*; but the *Romans* expelled them not only from that, but all the other Islands betwixt them and *Italy*, and forc'd them to compound for 3200 Talents, which was the End of the first *Punick* War, that lasted 24 Years. *Hannibal* having conquer'd great Part of *Spain*, and made Head against the *Romans* for 18 Years together in *Italy*, was called home by the *Carthaginians* to defend them from the Forces of *Scipio*, who, while *Hannibal* was in *Italy*, had drove the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, and brought the War home to their own Country; so that this made the 2d *Punick* War, which ended *A. R.* 663, by the Battle of *Nadagara*, wherein they were defeated, and obliged to deliver up all their Elephants, Ships and Gallies, to the *Romans*, except 10; to make no War without their Leave, and to pay 10000 Talents towards past Charges, &c. Not long after the *Romans* sent another *Scipio* to besiege *Carthage*, which begun the 3d *Punick* War, that lasted three Years. After a long Siege, and a stout Resistance, they took and destroy'd it, *A. M.* 3803, when, *Heylin* says, the Treasure which they found in it, notwithstanding their former Losses, what was consumed by the Fire, which lasted 17 Days, and what was embezzled by the Soldiers, amounted to 470000 Pound Weight of Silver, or 410000 Sterling. The Doctor says, that besides the City-Wall, there were three more, the outermost of which was 45 Miles in Compass;

pass; that there were 3 or 4 Streets betwixt each, with Vaults 30 Foot deep under Ground, where they kept 300 Elephants and their Fodder; that they had Stables over them for 4000 Horse and their Provender, with Lodging in the Out-Streets for the Riders, and for 20000 Foot besides, which never came within the City to annoy it. On the W. Side they had a Harbour, the Entrance of which was but 70 Foot wide, and a stately Arsenal. 'Twas first govern'd, says *Heylin*, by absolute Kings, who were afterwards limited by a Senate. Their Territories before the 2d. *Panick* War, when they were at the greatest, extended 2000 Miles along the *Mediterranean*, from the *Greater Syrtis* to the Streights, and unto the River *Iberus*. In its last Estate 'twas reckoned the Metropolis of the Diocese of *Africa*, the Residence of the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant-General, and the See of the chief Primate of the *African* Churches, who had 164 Bishops under him within the same Province where *Carthage* stood. The *French* under *Lewis IX.* took it in 1270; upon which the old Inhabitants deserted it, so that 'twas reduced at last to nothing but a few scatter'd Houses. *Heylin* says, that in 533 it was recover'd to the *Roman* Empire under *Justinian*, was plunder'd in 617 by *Cosroes K. of Persia*, taken the first time by the *Saracens* in 632, and again in 684, when they treated the Inhabitants with Barbarity. *Justinian II.* recover'd it again in 690, and about 703 the *Saracens* returned a third time, and made a perfect Conquest of it.

17. *Bensert*; *Bensart*, *Benezert*, *Benefert*, *Bisfert*, *Beusert*, or *Biserta*, the *Utica* of the Ancients. The *Sansons* place it on the W. Side of a Bay, Long. 32. Lat. 33. 15. *Moll* places it at Cape *Negro*, Lat. 27 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 37 $\frac{1}{2}$. 30 Miles N. W. of *Carthage*. *Marmol* says, 'tis inhabited by poor Fishermen, who are very stubborn, proud, and rebellious. When *Barberossa* took *Tunis*, they revolted from their King, and received a *Turkish* Garrison: Upon which the Emperor *Charles V.* being solicited by their King, besieged them both by Sea and Land, and punish'd them severely for their Rebellion. *Muley Hascen* said, That neither Love nor Fear could make them faithful. *Coppin* says, the Harbour is round and small, but the safest in all *Barbary*, and is the usual Wintering-place for

the Gallies. The Town lies at the Bottom of the Harbour, is very populous, and has a Castle at one End built with great Stones, of an ancient Structure, as are also the Walls of the Town. There are certain Heights which command it on the W. Side; and he was told, the Inhabitants have laid some Mines under a Meadow in the Neighbourhood on the Side of *Porto Farina*, for fear of being attacked that Way. *Dapper* says, 'tis but a little Village 10 Leagues from *Tunis*, and that it lies upon the Coast, betwixt *Raza-Muzath*, or *Apollo's Cape*, and the Mouth of the River *Bagrada*. They call it *Bensart*, i. e. the Son of the Lake, because the Sea enters near it by a narrow Canal towards the S. and forms a great Lake, which divides it self into two Parts. 'Tis not of a very great Compass, but contains 6000 Houses, with two great Prisons, a Magazine, and two Towers which defend the Harbour, besides 8 Villages round it. On the W. there's a great Plain call'd *Mater*, which is the Boundary of *Biserta* next the Territory of *Gouletta*, and would be very fruitful, did not the Incursions of the *Arabs* hinder its Tillage. It has also some Wells of fresh Water. The Lake on which it stands abounds with Fish, especially Dolphins, which weigh 5 or 6 Pound each, and from the End of *October* to the Beginning of *May* they catch a prodigious Quantity of Shads. There's another Place called *Choros*, and formerly *Clypea* or *Curobis*, which is very fruitful, and bears Olives of a prodigious Height. The Men wear nothing but a Piece of Barracan or coarse Camlet round their Bodies, a kind of Turban upon their Heads, and a Piece of Linen-Cloth round their Necks, without any Shoes or Stockings. Their best Dainties are Cakes made of Eggs, which they dry and keep all the Year. They whiten their Houses once every Year, make no Fire in the Kitchen; and when they bake, have little portable Ovens for the Purpose. The common People lie upon Sheep-Skins, but others upon long narrow Beds, which are ty'd against the Wall the Height of a Man, and ascended to by a Ladder. When they go forth to Battle, they wear little Bills marked with certain Characters, and sew'd in Leather, Velvet, or other Silk Stuff, about their own Necks and those of their Horses, and believe

Beve 'tis a Preservative against all bad Casualties. *Dapper* adds, that *Byserta* gives Name to a Lordship. The *Sansons* say, that the adjacent Lake, to which it gives Name, grows wider as it advances further within Land, is 16 Miles long, and 8 broad. They add, that there's a fine Square in the Town, and an Exchange for the Merchants, with some Bastions to defend the Harbour. The *Nubian* Geographer says, 'tis a very strong City, but less than *Susa*, and that it lies a Day's Sail from *Tunis*, 70 Miles E. from *Tabarca* by Sea, and 58 by Land. *Leo* says, 'twas founded by *Africans*, 35 Miles from *Tunis*. *Heylin* adds, they have suffer'd greatly by the Exactions of the K. of *Tunis* and the *Arabians*, and refers to *Mercator's* Map of *Carthage* for a true Representation of this Place.

18. *Porto Farino*. *Moll* places it betwixt *Biserta* and *Carthage*, Lat. $37\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 28. *Dapper* includes it in the Territory of *Biserta*, and says, 'tis noted for the Death of *St. Lewis*, who was killed here in his Return from the *Holy Land*. *Coppin* says, 'tis a safe Road for Ships, but so shallow, that great Vessels cannot come near the Land. On the W. Side, about 20 Paces from the River, there's a Castle built upon Rocks, of which there are many on this Coast of a great Height; but they are parted by little Creeks of Sand for the landing of Shallops. The Castle depends on *Tunis*, and is govern'd by an Aga; but 'tis small, and scarce strong enough to deserve the Name of a Fort. There are some sorry Houses near it, which are taken up by the Corsairs when they put into this Harbour. The Bay is larger than that of *Gouletta*; but the best Anchorage is towards the W. where the Fort is. Our Author says, he shot some Goblins here, which are a sort of Fowls that fly about the Ships, are of the Bigness of a Raven, except that they have larger Wings, white Feathers, and a black Bill; but they taste so marshy, that they are not good to eat.

The chief Islands on the Coast of *Tunis* are as follow:

1. *Gamelera*, on the E. Coast, near the Entrance of the Gulph of Capes. Some place this, *Chercara*, and *Querquenes*, and two other Islands, on the same Coast, call'd *Cumilieres*,

in the Jurisdiction of *Susa*. *Sanutius* says, that *Ptolomy's* Island *Cercinna* included them all, and *Marmol* thinks they belong to *Tripoly*.

2. *Lampedusa*, *Lampeduse*, *Lampadousa*, or *Lampidosa*. The *Sansons* place it on the same Coast, Long. 36. Lat. 33. S. W. of that called *Limosia*: *Moll* Lat. $35\frac{2}{3}$. *Thevenot* says, 'tis a little barren Island, or rather Rock, about 100 Miles from *Maltha*, which is only inhabited by Coneys, but frequented by Sailors, because there is fresh Water and a good Harbour. There's a little Chappel in it, with an Image of the Virgin *Mary*, to whom both Christians and Infidels that go ashore leave some Present behind at the Altar, which consists either of Money, Bisket, Oil, Wine, Gunpowder, Bullets, Swords, Muskets, &c. and if any one wants any of these Necessaries, he serves his Occasion, and leaves Money or somewhat else in the Place: But they never meddle with the Money, that being fetched once a Year by the Gallies of *Maltha*, and carried to *Trapano* in *Sicily*. *Thevenot* pretends that several Miracles are wrought here. *Dapper* makes this the *Lipadusa* of *Ptolomy*, about 25 Leag. W. S. W. of *Maltha*, in Lat. 34. Some say, here are the Ruins of an old Castle, of several Houses, and of the Walls and Towers of Towns. *Dapper* says, one Part of the Church belongs to the Christians, and the other to the Turks. *Luyts* makes this Island 15 Miles in Compass.

3. *Limosia*, *Limoza*, or *Linsia*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. $33\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $36\frac{1}{4}$. *Moll* Lat. $36\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $31\frac{1}{2}$. *Dapper* places it in Lat. 34. almost over against *Mahometta* in *Tunis*, and says 'tis *Ptolomy's* *Ethusa*, and 7 or 8 Leagues, or (according to *Breves*) 5, N. E. of *Lampedusa*, and about 5 Leagues in Compass, but has no convenient Harbour. The Turks have often attempted to make themselves Masters of this, and the Islands of *Maltha*, *Comin*, and *Gozo*, but in vain.

4. *Panthalarea* or *Pantalaria*. The *Sansons* place it Long. 34. Lat. 35. *Moll* between *Mahometta* and *Sicily*, Long. 37. Lat. $30\frac{1}{3}$. *Thevenot* says, 'tis but 12 or 14 Miles in Compass, lies about 130 Miles from *Maltha*, and abounds in Wine, Fruits, and Cotton. There's a Spanish Governor here for the King of Spain, and a Castle, which our Author says he was told by the Turks could not be taken by 200 Gallies. *Mercator* calls it the

Cossyra

Cossyra of *Ptolomy*, and others his *Pacinia*. *Dapper* places it two or three Leagues from *Mahometta*, and exactly over against *Susa*. He makes it 7 or 8 Leagues in Compass, and 3 or 4 in Breadth. It has a Town of its own Name on the N. Side, fortified with an inaccessible Castle, built upon a steep and craggy Rock. 'Tis mountainous for most Part, rocky, and full of great Stones, besides others of a fine black Lustre, and a great many Pumice Stones. There are many Cisterns here, and in the Middle of the Island there's a bottomless Pit called *Fossa*, which *Sanfon* says exhales an obscure Vapour, that sticks to the Sides of the Rocks, and falls down in Rain. Their Soil is too dry for Corn, so that they are obliged to fetch it from *Sicily*; but it abounds in Pulse, Pot-Herbs, Cotton, Anniseed, Capers, Figs, Melons, and very good Grapes, which make a delicious Wine. There also grows a certain Shrub called *Ver* by the *Moors*, and by the *Italians*, *Sinco*, that bears a red Fruit, which is roundish, and grows black as it ripens. The Islanders press an Oil from it for several Uses, particularly to relish their Meats, to make their Lamps burn clear; and the Women rub their Head and Hair with it, to adorn the one, and make the other grow. They have no Horses, but a great many Oxen, which they use in tilling the Ground. *Dapper* adds, that the People are not very handsome, but they are good Swimmers; and tho' they speak the Language, and imitate the Habit of the *Arabians*, yet they are zealous Sectaries of the Church of Rome. *Luyts* says, this Island is 30 Miles in Compass, and that it formerly belong'd to the Kingdom of *Tunis*, but was united to *Spain* in 1620, under the Government of the Family of *Requesens*, and made a Principality. It has no sweet Water, and the Town contains about 600 Inhabitants. *Meylin* places this Island 60 Miles from *Africa*, and the same from *Sicily*, and makes it 30 Miles in Length, and 10 in Breadth. He says, the People are poor, and resemble the *Moors* in their Speech and Apparel.

There are two other Islands on the North Coast, viz. 1. *Zimbala*. The *Sanfons* place it a little W. of Cape *Bon*, Lat. $34\frac{1}{4}$. Long. $33\frac{1}{4}$. *Thevenot* calls it *Zimbre*, and says, it has convenient Anchorage, and good Wa-

ter upon it. He adds, that 'tis inhabited, and lies but 40 Miles from *Goletta*.

2. *Galata* or *Galita*. The *Sanfons* place it Long. 31. Lat. 34. *Moll* Lat. 38. Long. 27. *Luyts* says, 'tis 10 Miles in Compass, and was the *Calathe* of *Ptolomy*.

A L G I E R.

D*U Plessis* says, this is the largest of the 6 great Kingdoms of *Barbary*, and makes it 250 Leagues from E. to W. and 70 or 80 from N. to S. The *Sanfons* extend it from Long. 18. to 31. and from Lat. $30\frac{1}{2}$. to $34\frac{1}{4}$. 300 Leagues from E. to W. and from 50 to 75 in Breadth: *Moll* from Long. $17\frac{1}{2}$. to $25\frac{1}{2}$. and from Lat. $30\frac{1}{4}$. to $37\frac{1}{4}$. 445 Miles from E. to W. and as much where broadest. *Luyts* extends it from Long. 15. to 28. but does not make it above 4 Deg. in Breadth. *Dapper* extends it along the *Mediterranean* from the Mouth of the River *Muluya* to the River *Suf-Gemar*, 150 Spanish Leagues in Length, and 50 where broadest, but in other Places not above 20. *Peter Dan* makes the Coasts 162 French Leag. in Length. *Peter Davity* thinks this is the ancient *Mauritania Casariensis*, whereas *Cluverius* ascribes it to *Dara* in *Biledulgerid*.

'Tis bounded on the W. with the Kingdom of *Fez*, from which 'tis separated by the Rivers *Zis* and *Muluya*; on the S. by the Deserts of *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid*, on the E. by the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and on the N. by the *Mediterranean*. *Luyts* says, 'tis separated on the S. from the Provinces of *Zeb*, *Tegorarin*, and *Segelmessa*, by Mount *Atlas*, and that the River *Guadilbarbar* parts it from *Tunis* on the E. *Dapper* says, that *Algier*, *Bugia*, *Constantina*, and other Provinces, were formerly Appendances to *Tremisen*; but that now the latter belongs to the Kingdom of *Algiers*.

Dapper adds, the Air in these Parts is so temperate, that it does not scorch the Leaves in Summer, nor nip them off in Winter. Trees flourish by the Beginning of February, and most Fruits are form'd by April. Cherries are ripe by the Beginning of May, Apples and Pears by the latter End. They gather Grapes in June, and Figs, Peaches, Apples, Nuts and Olives, in August. Most of the Countries in this Kingdom are dry and barren;

barren; but the N. Part of *Tremisen*, near the *Mediterranean*, is fruitful, and abounds with Pasture; the Mountains that are W. of *Tenez*, *Algier*, and *Bugia*, with Corn and Meadows, and the Coasts of *Bona*, *Constantina*, and *Tremisen*, with fruitful Vallies and fine Fields. *Luyts* says, the Soil is water'd by many Rivers, and produces the best Sorts of Fruit, with Corn, Honey, and Wax; and that there are Mountains in the S. which produce Gold, Silver, and Iron, and furnish Caves for a vast Number of Wild Beasts.

Dapper says, they have Lyons, Ostriches, Porcupines, Wild-Boars, Hedgehogs, Stags, Camelions, Leopards, Apes, and all Sort of Fowl and Wild Game. There are few populous Cities in the Kingdom except *Algier*: But those which are best situated for Trade, are inhabited by a fierce Sort of People that trade to *Biledulgerid*, *Guinea*, and other Parts of *Negroland*. They consist chiefly of poor Turks and Janizaries, who come hither from the *Levant* to better their Fortunes; Moors called *Cabeylesen*, who pay Tribute to the Turk; *Azuagues*, who come from the Mountains of *Couco* and *Labez*; Jews and Moors driven out of *Grenada*, *Andalusia*, and other Parts of *Spain*; and *Tagarins*, which were banish'd hither from *Arragon* and *Catalonia*; besides a great Number of Slaves which the Corsairs take by Sea. There's also a Sort of *Arabians* call'd *Larbusses*, who live in the Field near Rivers for the Conveniency of Water. There are others that wander about the Deserts in such great Numbers, that they as little value the Viceroy's of *Algier*, as they did formerly the Kings of *Tremisen*. When the *Algerines* make War upon them, if they have not Strength to keep the Field, they retire into the Deserts of *Biledulgerid*, where 'tis in vain to pursue them. The Kings of *Algier*, says *Dapper*, us'd to pay them Tribute, to keep them quiet, and to make sure of their Assistance in case of Need; but they often did a great deal of Mischief, and always sided with the best Paymaster. Now most of them are Tributary to the Basha of *Algier*, and the Janizaries raise the Imposts.

Du Plessis says, the Moors are at this Day the richest Corsairs in the World, but very cruel, and so covetous, that they make no Scruple to violate Treaties whenever it suits their Interest.

The chief Rivers of this Country are,
1. *Aresgol* or *Haretgol*, *Tesne* or *Fesuee*. *Marmol* says, it rises out of the Great *Atlas* near ancient *Numidia*, and falls into the *Mediterranean* about 7 Leagues W. of *Oran*. It affords very few Fish. *Ptolomy* calls it *Siga*, and places its Mouth Long. 21. Lat. 34. 40. *Dapper* says, it crosses the Deserts of *Angad*, and falls into the Sea 5 Leag. from *Oran*.

2. *Assafran* or *Celef*. *Marmol* says, it rises from the Great *Atlas*, runs thro' the Fields of *Metigia*, and falls into the *Mediterranean* 5 Leagues W. of *Algiers*. *Ptolomy* calls its Mouth *Quinalak*, and places it Long. 16. 40. Lat. 33. 20. *Dapper* calls it the *Chinalaf* of *Ptolomy*, says its Banks are shaded with Trees near *Matigia*, and places its Influx into the Sea but 3 great Miles from *Algier*. *Moll* calls it *Safran*.

3. *Chilef*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a great River that rises in the Mountains of *Guaneceris*, runs thro' the desert Plains between *Tenez* and *Tremisen*, and turning E. falls into the *Mediterranean* near *Mostagan*. There's very good Fishing in its Mouth, which *Ptolomy* calls *Cortena*, and places Long. 14. 15. and Lat. 33. 40. *Dapper* calls it *Zilif*, and says, that both Sides of this River are inhabited by rich and valiant *Arabians*, who can bring into the Field 2 or 3000 Horse.

4. *Cefaya* or *Sofaya*. *Marmol* says, it rises from the Great *Atlas*, and runs thro' the Fields of *Metigai* into the *Mediterranean* on the E. Side of *Algiers*, near the Ruins of *Mitafus*, called by the *Africans*, *Temendusuf*. *Ptolomy* calls its Mouth *Sava*, and places it Long. 18. 10. Lat. 33. 20.

5. *Huedelharrax*, and, 6. *Huedelhamiz*. *Dapper* says, they swell exceedingly in the Summer, but are not considerable in Winter, and run into the Sea between *Algier* and *Cefaya*.

7. *Sef-Gemar*. *Marmol* says, it rises out of Mount *Aouraz* in *Bugia*, and runs by the Walls of *Constantina* into the *Mediterranean*. It separates *Mauritania Cesariana* from the Province of *Africa*. *Ptolomy* calls it *Ampsagus*, and places its Mouth Long. 26. 15. Lat. 31. 45. *Dapper* says, it takes in the River *Marzoch* by the Way.

8. *Hued-Iter*. It rises out of the Great *Atlas* upon the Frontiers of *Numidia*, falls into the *Mediterranean* on the E. Side of the Ruins of *Metafus*, and affords good Fishing.

Ptolomy

Ptolomy calls it *Serbet*, and places its Mouth Long. 19. 30. Lat. 32. 50. Others of the Ancients call'd it *Sarda* and *Cisti*. *Dapper* says, it runs into the Sea near a Village which they call *Beni Abdala*.

9. *Hued el Quivir*, or *Zinganor* or *Major*. *Ptolomy's* *Najaova*, or *Nazabats*. *Marmol* says, it rises from the Great *Atlas* in the Province of *Zeb*, and runs thro' very high Mountains into the *Mediterranean* near *Bugia*. Rain or Snow makes it swell to a great Height. 'Tis full of Fish; but the Country People love Sea-Fish better. *Ptolomy* places its Mouth Long 22. 10. and Lat 32 $\frac{1}{2}$. The *Sansons* bring it out of a great Lake in the Province of *Mezzab*.

10. *Mira*. *Marmol* says, it rises in the Great *Atlas*, runs thro' the barren Plains in the Neighbourhood of *Bathaba*, and turning N. falls into the *Mediterranean* near *Arzea*. The *Moors* have of late call'd it *Cena*, from the Name of a *Moabite* that repeopled *Bathaba* after 'twas destroyed by the *Benimerims*. *Ptolomy* calls it *Quilemat*, and places its Mouth Long 13. Lat. 34.

11. *Yadoch* or *Ladoch*. *Marmol* says, it rises out of Mount *Atlas* near *Constantina*, and runs into the Sea about a League E. of *Bona*.

Marmol divides this Country in general into 4 Provinces, viz. *Tremizen* or *Telensin*, *Tenez*, *Algier*, and *Bugia*; but *Gramaye* says, the *Turks* divide it into 10 Maritime Provinces, and as many within Land, viz. *Algier*, *Bugia*, *Gigeri*, *Constantina*, and *Bona*, to the E. *Sargel*, *Horan*, *Marsalquibir*, *Humanbar*, and *Haresgol*, on the W. and *Sebessa*, *Beniarax* or *Beniaraxid*, *Meliana*, *Angad*, *Tenez*, *Tremisen*, *Couco*, *Labez*, *Ticarta* and *Huerquela*, to the S. but *Dapper* says, the two latter are in *Numidia*, and the Inland Provinces are so near, and sometimes so confounded with those on the Coast, that we chuse to follow the Method of the *Sansons*, who divide it into the 5 principal Provinces of *Constantina*, *Bugia*, *Algier*, *Tenez*, and *Tremesen* or *Telensin*, and assign the following lesser Provinces to each of them thus: They divide the first into *Bona* on the Coast, and *Constantina* and *Tebeffa* within Land; the 2d into *Bugia* and *Gilgili* on the Coast, and *Stefa*, *Labez*, *Necaw*, and *Mesila*, within Land; the

3d into *Algier* on the Coast, and *Cuco* within Land; the 4th into *Tenez* and *Sarsel* on the Coast, and *Meliana* within Land; and the 5th into *Hunain*, *Haresgol*, and *Marsalquibir*, on the Coast, and *Hanghad* or *Angad*, and *Beni*, *Rasi*, *Beni-Razid* or *Beni-Araxid*, within Land.

C O N S T A N T I N A,

The most E. Province of *Algier*. The *Sansons* make it about 215 Miles from N. to S. and 156 from E. to W. but not above 76 in the most S. Parts, and bound it with *Guadilbarbar*, which parts it from *Tunis*, on the E. *Biledulgerid* on the S. from which 'tis parted by Mount *Atlas*; *Bugia* on the W. and the *Mediterranean* on the N. *Marmol* says, 'tis the *New Numidia* of *Ptolomy*, and bounds it on the N. with the Gulph of that Name. He adds, that there are Mountains here inhabited by a warlike People, that have always maintain'd their Liberty, but are never without Wars among themselves, because of a Custom allow'd of by their Religion of unmarried Women in one Mountain, and marrying them again in another. They are able to bring 40000 stout Fellows into the Field; and if they were unanimous, our Author thinks they might conquer great Part of *Africa*. *Dapper* makes *Bona*, which others include in *Constantina*, a distinct Province by it self. There are Mountains which cover the Coast for 30 Miles from *Bugia* to *Bona*, and on the E. of those of *Bona* lie the Hills of *Constantina*, 20 Miles long, and 7 or 8 in Breadth. Here are also a great many Ruins of Towns and Castles built by the *Romans*. In the Hills of *Constantina* there are several Springs which form great Rivers, and after having water'd the plain Country, fall into the *Mediterranean*. *Dapper* says, the Soil produces 30 fold, and that the Vallies and flat Country abound with Corn and Fruits. The Incursions of the *Arabs* have render'd the Hills uninhabitable, except a small Quarter, which the Inhabitants make a shift to defend against them. *Dapper* says, their Mountaineers are much more civiliz'd than those of *Bugia*, learn several Trades, and furnish the neighbouring Towns with Fruits.

Fruits. Their Women often run from one Mountain to another for new Husbands. He adds, that, after the *Mahometans* enter'd *Africa*, *Constantina* had its Kings till 1420, when they were made subject to the Kings of *Tunis*. But in 1520, *Barberossa* having taken the Town of *Collo*, those of *Constantina* seeing their Trade thereby ruin'd, yielded to the Corsair. It has since remained incorporate with the Kingdom of *Algier*, under the Direction of a Governor, who resides in the Capital. *Heylin* extends it from the Lake *Hipponites*, now called *Guadilbarbar*, to *Constantine*, a Mountain bordering on *Bugia*, which he thinks to be the same with *Mons Audus* in *Ptolomy*. He commends the Country for producing Corn and Cattle, Butter, and abundance of Fruits, and says, that *Rubricatus*, by *Orisius* called *Ordalio*, now *Ludog*, is its chief River. The *Sansons* say, 'tis the most W. Part of *Proper Africa*, and that it touches upon *Mauretania* towards the W. from which 'tis divided by the River *Sufegemar*. They divide it into *Proper Constantina*, which extends along the Coast and far within Land; *Bona*, which lies almost all upon the Coast; and *Tebeffa*, which advances a great Way into the Country on the Side of *Biledulgerid*.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Tebeffa* or *Tedefsa*, which the *Sansons* place on the River *Megerada*, Long. $30\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. $30.40.40$ Miles S. of *Urbs*: *Moll* in Long. $25\frac{1}{3}$. Lat. $34.$ above 60 Miles S. W. of *Urbs*, and almost 120 Miles S. of *Constantina*. *Leo* says, it has sorry Buildings, but a good high Wall, with Stones like those upon the Colossus at *Rome*. A great River runs thro' Part of the City, and there are Marble Pillars in several Places with Latin Inscriptions, besides other square Marble Pillars that are cover'd with Roofs. The neighbouring Plains are dry, but fruitful in Corn. There's a Hill near the Town full of great Caves, which the common People take for the ancient Habitations of the Giants; but our Author is positive they were made by the *Romans*, by digging out Stones for the City Walls. Within 5 Miles of the Place there are Walnut-Trees which grow as thick as a Wood. Our Author says, the Inhabitants are covetous, brutish, and inhumane, ever rebelled against the King of *Tunis*, and killed all the Governors he sent them. He adds, that

the King in his Time, in his Journey to *Numidia*, sent Ambassadors to sound their Affection; but instead of saying, *God save the King*, they answer'd, *God save our City Walls*, which made him plunder it, put several of the Inhabitants to Death, and commit such other Havock, that it has ever since been desolate. *Marmol* says in short, that this exceeds all the Towns of *Barbary* in good Walls, Plenty of Walnuts, and excellent Fountains, but is valuable for nothing else. *Gramaye* makes this the Capital of the Province of *Tebeffa*, says 'twas formerly called *Thabuna*, and places it 32 Miles from the *Mediterranean*. *Dapper* observes, that the Walls are of great Free-stone; that the Air is very unwholesome, and the Soil not very fruitful. The *Sansons* say, it was formerly called *Thevesta*.

2. *Constantina*. The *Sansons* place it Long. 28. 49. Lat. $32.$ near the River *Sufegemar*, and so does *Moll*, but in Lat. $35\frac{1}{4}$. Long. $24\frac{1}{4}$. about 175 Miles S. W. of *Tunis*, and about 90 S. E. of *Bugia*. The *Sansons* make the Distance from the latter 135 Miles. *Leo* says, it stands on the S. Side of a very high Mountain in the midst of steep Rocks, under which runs the above-mention'd River, that serves for the Town-Ditch. The Walls are strong, high, ancient, and beautiful, which he thinks a sufficient Proof that the City was founded by the *Romans*. He says, it contain'd in his Time above 8000 Families, and had large stately Gates, but was only accessible by two narrow Passages, one on the E. Side, and t'other on the W. It had a great Temple, two Colleges, and 3 or 4 fine Monasteries. He praises the Inhabitants for a frank sort of People. They assign a separate Place for every Trade, and have a Company of Merchants, of whom some sell Cloth and Wool, others Oil and Silk, to *Numidia*, and others truck Linen-Cloth, &c. for Slaves and Dates, which last (says our Author) are cheaper here than any where else in *Barbary*. He adds, that the Kings of *Tunis* commonly confer the Government of *Constantina* upon their eldest Son. About a Mile and a half from the City, there's a Triumphal Arch like those at *Rome*, which the vulgar People take for a Castle where Devils had their Residence, till expelled by the *Mahometans*. There's also a Spring of hot Water among the

Rocks about 3 Stones cast from the Town, where are a great many Snails, (*Marmol* calls them Tortoises) which the Women of the Country take for Devils or Evil Spirits left there by the *Romans*, think them the Cause of all Diseases, and pretend to avert their malignant Influence by killing a white Hen, laying it with the Feathers in a Dish, with a Wax Candle, and then carrying it to the Spring, where a Morabout or some sharp-set Fellow waits the Departure of the Women, and takes it. There's another cold Fountain a pretty Way E. from the Town, with a Marble Monument, that has such Hieroglyphick Emblems on it as are to be seen at *Rome*. This the Mob take to have been a Grammar-School, turn'd into Marble upon Account of the Wickedness of the Master and Boys. They descend from the City to the River by Stairs hewn out of the Rock, and at the Bottom there's a little House cut out of the Rock so artfully, that the Roof, Walls and Pillars, are all one Piece, and here the Women of the City wash their Linen. *Marmol* says, it has frequently revolted from the Governors appointed by the King of *Tunis*, and in 1568 cut in Pieces the *Turkish* Governor and Garrison; after which the Governor of *Algiers* took it by Storm, and has oppressed the Inhabitants more than ever. *Dapper* says, 'twas called formerly *Cirta* and *Cirta Julia*, and (as some say) built by *Micipsa K.* of the *Numidians*; but others say, the latter was nearer the Sea-Coasts than *Constantina*. *Marmol* says, the Ancients call'd it *Culcua*; that 'twas a *Numidian* Colony; and that the *Moors* now call it *Cucuntina*. *Dapper* adds, that on the N. Side 'tis fortified by high Walls made of black square Stone. It has about 1000 Houses, which are plac'd at convenient Distances, so that they don't touch, and several fine Streets. On the N. Side there's a Citadel, and without the Town many old Buildings and Ruins. The Inhabitants, he says, that both are rich and haughty to a Degree, but valorous.

3. *Milevum*, *Milevis*, or *Mela*. The *Sanfons* place it on the W. Side of the R. *Sufegema*, 14 Miles N. W. of *Constantina*, Long. 28. 30. Lat. 32 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll* 25 Miles from *Constantina*, Lat. 36. 8. Long. 24 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Luyts* says, 'tis the Place where a Council was held, in which *St. Augustin* presided. *Dapper* has a Town

called *Mela* or *Mila* in the Province of *Bona*, which we suppose to be the same; but he reckons it one of the Maritime Towns, and says, 'twas formerly called *Tenara*. He adds, that it belong'd once to the Government of *Constantina*, from which it lies but three Leagues; that 'tis encompassed with old Walls, and has a Fountain in the Middle of the Town; that it formerly contain'd 3000 Houses, but now 'tis not so populous; and that in the Neighbourhood there are Apples, Pears, and other Fruit-Trees.

4. *Tabraca* or *Tabarca* Island and Village. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 33. 20. Long. 30. 37. on the N. E. Frontier of this Province, and 110 Miles N. E. of the City of *Constantina*. *Moll* places it in *Tunis*, Lat. 37 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 26 $\frac{1}{2}$. about 30 Miles N. E. of *Bona*. *Thevenot* sets it also in *Tunis*, says it lies three Days Journey from the City of that Name, and about a Musket-shot from the main Land. It belongs to the *Genoese*, who have a good Fort and Trade here, especially in the Horses call'd *Barbes*. *Dapper* says, 'tis famous for Coral-Fishing, and that the Streight betwixt the Town, which lies upon the Continent and the Island of the same Name over against it, is about a Mile and a half over, and forms a commodious Harbour. *Dapper* adds, that near it there's a Fort called, *The Bastion of France*, about 6 Miles E. of *Bona*, between *Algier* and *Tunis*, Cape *Niger* or *Negro*, and Cape *Roses*. There was formerly within 3 Miles from hence an Edifice of the same Name, built in 1560 by two Merchants of *France*, with the Grand Seignior's Consent, to serve for a Warehouse, and for the Coral-Fishers. Here they drove a flourishing Trade in Corn, Skins, Wax, and Horses, which they bought cheaper there than they could in this Island, and were less incommoded by the *Turks*. But some Years after, the Soldiers of *Algier* being told, that the Transportation of so much Corn from hence would occasion a Famine, demolish'd it, and about 1628 *Lewis XIII.* laid the Foundations of a new Fort 3 Miles from the old one; but the *Moors* and *Arabs* attacked the Workmen so furiously, that they were forced to cast up a Half-Moon for Shelter, and then to reimbarc; but the King sent an Architect to carry on the Building, who was assassinated, and after that a third in 1633, whose Successors have hitherto main-

maintain'd it. There are two Courts here, one on the N. Side of the Fort, where are the Warehouses of Corn and Merchandize, and several Chambers for those who have the Superintendence of the Fort. The other, which is far more spacious, lies near a sandy River, into which come the Fisher-Boats. Near this Court the French have a Chappel and a Church-yard, with a Garden and an Hospital for sick Persons; and between the Courts towards the S. says Dapper, there's the great Building called the Bastion, with a flat Roof, mounted with 3 Brafs Pieces of Cannon, and defended within by a good Garrison. This Author and the Sansons place *Tabarca* in the Government of *Bona*. The latter say, that the *Genoese* Family of *Laumellins* have a Fort in this Island for the Security of their Fishers, who find red, white, and black Coral, on this Coast. *Luyt's* says, 'tis also called *Thabraca* or *Tabathra*, and that the Village lies at the Mouth of the River *Guadilbarbari* over against the Island.

5. *Bona* or *Hippon*. The Sansons place it at the Influx of the River *Ladog* or *Tadock* into the *Mediterranean*, with a Bay of the same Name, Long 29. 50. Lat. 35. 05. almost 40 Miles S. W. of *Tabarca*, and 80 N. E. of *Constantina*: *Moll* Long. 26. 3. Lat. 37. about 30 Miles from *Tabarca*, and 90 from *Constantina*. This is the *Hippo Regius* or *Hippona*, which *Ptolomy* places Long 30. 20. Lat. 31. 45. *Leo* says, 'twas subdued by the *Goths*, and afterwards laid in Ashes by *Hutmen*; the 3d Patriarch after *Mahomet*, as *Heylin* says between 644 and 654, and that Stones were taken out of the Ruins for the building a new Town about two Miles off, call'd *Beld-Elhumeb* or *Bedel el Agneb*, i. e. the City of Jujubes, because of the Plenty of that Fruit thereabouts, which the Inhabitants dry in the Sun, and keep till Winter. *Leo* says, this Town contain'd almost 300 Families in his Time; but the Buildings were very mean, except a Mosque which stands near the Sea. The Inhabitants are Merchants and Tradersmen, and have a Market every Friday without the Walls, which is well frequented. A great deal of Linen is made here and carried to *Numidia*. The *Genoese* had formerly a Castle in the Neighbourhood for the Security of their Coral-Fishery, by which they master'd this Town;

but the Inhabitants do not suffer them to fish here now. *Marmol* places it in *Tunis*. *Nicolay* says, it stands upon high craggy Rocks, and that the Governor's House joins to the Mosque. The S. Part of the Town lies much lower, and has Wells and Fountains. It was twice pillag'd by the *Spaniards*. When *Charles V.* took the Town, he built a Castle upon an Eminence on the W. Side, and supplied it with Water; but the *Turks* and *Moors* afterwards dispossess'd the *Spaniards*, and raz'd it. On the E. Side of the Town there's a fine Champaign Country, abounding in Corn, Pastures, Cattle, and furnishes *Tunis* and the Isle of *Gertes* with Butter and Milk. There are very pleasant Gardens in the Neighbourhood, with Fig and Melon Trees, and a Church between two Rocks, said to have been built by *St. Austin*. The adjacent Country is pester'd with Thieves called *Ale-bes*, who ride stark naked in Troops, and carry Darts in their Hands. *Dapper* makes *Bona* one of the Maritime Provinces, and says, the *Europeans* gave it that Name because of the Goodness of the Soil. The Town is small, and the Streets narrow. *St. Austin* dy'd here in 440, while the *Saracens* besieg'd it. Our Author takes Notice of the Ruins of a Cloyster which he built in the neighbouring Plain, by which it appears to have been 100 Paces long and 30 broad. Near those Ruins there's a fine Spring, called by the *Moors* *St. Austin's Well*. On the E. Side there's a Fort built by the Kings of *Tunis*, where the Governor resides, fortified by square Towers, and some Pieces of Cannon, to raise Contributions from the *Arabs*, and to keep the People in Awe. The *Algerines* keep an Aga here, with 200 Janizaries. It had particular Checks, till it fell under the Kings of *Tunis*, who built a Citadel on the E. Side of it; but *Barberossa* with 22 Gallies took and annex'd it to the Kingdom of *Algier*. It revolted afterwards to the Kings of *Tunis*, till the Emp. *Charles V.* took it in 1535. But the *Algerines* retook it, and have kept it ever since. They trade here in Leather, Wool, Dates, &c. *Heylin* says, 'twas built by the *Romans*; that the Plain in which it lies is 40 Miles long, and 25 broad; that it stands 216 Miles W. of *Tunis*, on the S. Side of Mount *Tadogh*, which is very high, and affords Mines of Iron. He thinks 'twas the last Place con-

quer'd by the *Moors* in *Barbary*. The Sea-Charts place it 45 Leagues W. of *Tunis*, and 35 S. of *Sardinia*. *Heylin* adds, they have no Water but what they preserve in Cisterns. *Baudrand* says, here is a large Haven.

6. *Estora* or *Stora*. The *Sanfons* place it at the End of a Bay, Long. 28. 47. Lat. 33. 7. *Marmol* calls the latter the Gulph of *Numidia*, and says, 'tis the *Ruscada* of *Ptolomy*. *Dapper* tells us, 'tis a little Village about 5 or 6 Miles from *Constantina*; and *Luyts* says, it has a spacious Harbour.

B U G I A or B O G I A.

The *Sanfons* make it 166 Miles where broadest from N. to S. and 145 from E. to W. *Moll* makes it 105 Miles from N. to S. and but 33 in Breadth, except towards the S. where 'tis 50. *Heylin*, who extends it from Mount *Constantina* to the River *Suf-Gemar*, including all *Constantina* W. of the River *Rubricatus*, makes it 150 Miles along the *Mediterranean*, but not above half so broad. The *Sanfons* bound it on the E. with *Constantina*, which parts it from the Province of that Name; on the N. with the *Mediterranean*; on the W. with the River *Major*, which divides it from *Proper Alger*; and on the S. with Mount *Atlas*, which separates it from *Biledulgerid*.

Ptolomy and others reckon this the 4th Province of the Kingdom of *Tremisen*. *Marmol* calls it the most E. Province of *Mauretania Casariensis*, and bounds it with *Alger* on the W. the Province of *Africa* on the E. *Numidia* on the S. and the *Mediterranean* on the N. He says, 'tis for most Part mountainous, and inhabited by a People who keep themselves independent, because their Situation is steep and in a manner inaccessible. They are stout, stately, rich in Cattle, and have a great many Firelocks and Horsemen. The *Arabians* who wander about with their Tents in the Vallies have also Fire-Arms. *Dapper* says, it has the Province of *Gigeri* on the E. and extended anciently 50 Miles Southward over the Mountains as far as the Deserts of *Numidia*. 'Tis almost encompassed with the Mountains *Za-rera*, whose principal Quarter, called *Beni-Jubar*, 5 Miles from the City of *Bugia*, is 6 Leagues long, and 3 broad. They run along the Coast for 30 Miles, and in some

Places are 6 or 7 Miles in Breadth. The Soil is poor; but there's choice Fruit in their Gardens. The Mountains yield little Wheat, but much Barley, Nuts, Figs, Flax, and Hemp, of which they make coarse Cloth. They have some Mines of Iron, and thick Forrests, which abound with Leopards, Monkies, Horses, Oxen, and Deer. The Mountaineers are of an agreeable Conversation, and very much given to Raillery and Musick. Every Mountain has a separate Family, which have different Manners and Customs. Their Money is Lumps of Iron, weighing half a Pound each, and they have some small Pieces of Silver of about 4 Grains Weight.

Dapper says, that the *Goths*, upon the Decay of the Roman Empire, having made themselves Masters of *Africa*, establish'd the Seat of their Empire at *Bugia*, the Capital of this Province; but were expelled by *Abni K.* of the *Saracens* in 762. A Hundred Years after, *Joseph* the first King of *Morocco* having made himself Master of the Kingdom and Castle of *Bugia*, gave them to *Hucha Urmeni*, who was descended from the *Saracens*, and became afterwards Tributary to the Kings of *Tunis*. But about 270 Years after, this Kingdom was reduced into a Province, and made Part of the Kingdom of *Telensin*, till *Abu Ferez K.* of *Tunis* having made the K. of *Telensin* Tributary, gave it, with the Title of a Kingdom, to *Abdulaxis*, one of his Children, and his Descendants enjoy'd it till 1510, when *Peter* Count of *Navarra* seiz'd it for *Ferdinand K.* of *Spain*, repair'd the old Castle, and caus'd two others to be built upon the Shore. At length, *Barberossa* perceiving what a Hindrance the City of *Bugia* was to his Conquests, and being likewise press'd to it by the dethron'd King of *Bugia*, he laid Siege to it in 1512, with 12 Gallies and 3000 *Moors*, which the King brought down from the Mountains. But *Barberossa* having cannonaded the Town 8 Days, received a Wound in his Left Arm, rais'd the Siege, and return'd to *Tunis*, and the King retir'd to the Mountains; yet in 1514 the Corsair renew'd the Siege, took the chief Castle, forced the Garrison to retire to the Town, and would have soon oblig'd them to capitulate, if *Martin de Reuterea* had not thrown in Succours by Sea, and oblig'd him.

him to retire on the Side of Gigeri. Charles V. built a Castle upon a neighbouring Hill for its better Security; but the *Algerines* under the Conduct of *Basha Sala* besieg'd it with 3000 *Turks* and 30000 *Moors* by Land, and some Ships by Sea, and having taken first the Castle on the Shore, and then the Emperor's Fort, obliged *Alonso de Peralta*, the Spanish Governor, to a Capitulation, by which he went out with 400 Men, and upon his Return into Spain the King caus'd him to be beheaded. Heylin says, many of the People liv'd in the Holds of Ships, with the Keel turn'd upwards, instead of Houses, and supposes them to be the *Nomades*. Livy, Sallust, and other Roman Writers, give the following Account of the ancient *Numidian* and *Mauretanian* Kings.

I. *Gala*, Father to *Massinissa*.

II. *Desalces*, Brother to *Gala*, succeeded according to the Law of the Country, which preferred the Brother to the Son, and therein resembled the Law of *Tanistry* in Ireland.

III. A Son of *Desalces*, whose Name we have not. He possessed himself of the Throne after his Father's Death, in the Absence of *Massinissa*, and was slain not long after by a Rebel.

IV. *Massinissa*, Son to *Gala*. He first sided with the *Carthaginians* against the *Romans*, and twice beat *Syphax* King of *Numidia*, A. R. 541. He was outed by *Syphax* and the *Carthaginians* afterwards, but restored by *Scipio* the Roman General, with whom he associated against *Carthage* out of Gratitude, because *Scipio* dismissed his Nephew Ransom-free, and was likewise gratified with the greatest Part of the Dominions of *Syphax*. *Massinissa* was a profess'd Enemy to *Carthage*, and liv'd to see its final Ruin. He married *Sophonisbe*, Wife to *Syphax*, after he took his Capital, and himself Prisoner; but *Scipio* not approving that Match, *Massinissa* poison'd her. He left 44 Children by several Wives, dy'd in the 90th Year of his Age, and desired *Manlius* the Roman General to send him young *Scipio*, that he might die in his Arms, and make him Executor of his Will.

V. *Micipsa*, one of his three lawful Sons, succeeded, being preferred to his Brothers *Manastabal* and *Gulussa*, who soon after dy'd.

Micipsa had two Sons, *Atherbal* and *Hiempsal*, and brought up *Jugurtha*, Son to his Brother *Manastabal*, in the same Manner as he did his own Sons, tho' *Massinissa* look'd upon him only as a private Man, because he was the Son of a Concubine. *Jugurtha* proving a very great Captain, *Micipsa* was fond of him at first, but grew jealous of him afterwards, and expos'd him to all Dangers to prevent his outing his own Sons. But *Jugurtha* always escap'd, and obtaining the Favour of the *Romans* by his Valour, *Micipsa* adopted him for his own Son, and on his Death-Bed put him in Mind how he had rais'd him from nothing, made him Guardian of his own two Sons, left the Kingdom between them, and order'd them to live in Friendship, which *Jugurtha* promis'd on his Part.

VI. *Jugurtha*, little mindful of his Uncle's Kindness or his own Promise, wickedly cut off *Hiempsal*, one of *Micipsa*'s Sons, usurp'd the Crown, and put *Atherbal* the other to flight, whose Cause the *Romans* espous'd as their Ally, and proclaim'd War against the Usurper; but *Hiempsal* was taken in *Cirta* his Capital by *Jugurtha*, and put to Death. *Jugurtha* defended himself a long while by his Arms and his Money, and became so terrible to the *Romans*, that *Florus* says he was, next to *Hannibal*, the most to be dreaded of all their Enemies. He brib'd the Roman Consul *L. Calpurnius Bestia* and most of the Senators; upon which he entertain'd such a Contempt of the *Romans*, that looking back upon the City in Scorn when he went for *Africa*, he cry'd out, *There was a Town to be sold to the highest Bidder*. He was defeated by *Q. Cæcilius Metellus*, A. R. 645. and in two Years after by *Marius*, when *Bocchus* K. of *Mauretania*, his Father-in-Law, deliver'd him bound to *Sylla*, A. R. 648. so that he became one of the Ornaments of *Marius* and *Sylla*'s Triumph; and being imprison'd at *Rome*, dy'd of Grief.

VII. *Hiempsal*, Son to *Bocchus* K. of *Mauretania*, was gratified with the Kingdom by the *Romans*, because his Father betrayed *Jugurtha*. He relieved *Marius* in his Exile.

VIII. *Hiarbas*, one of the *Marian* Faction, succeeded, but was dethron'd by *Pompey*, at that Time one of *Sylla*'s Captains.

IX. *Hiempsal* II. was set up by *Pompey* in his stead.

X. *Juba*, Son to *Hiempsal* II. succeeded. He join'd with *Pompey* against *Cæsar* in the Civil Wars, killed *Curio*, one of *Cæsar*'s Lieutenants, routed his Army, and murder'd the Prisoners in cold Blood. He was afterwards routed and taken by *Cæsar*, and after a sumptuous Feast with *Petreus*, the Companion of his Misfortune, they killed one another, A. R. 708. after which *Numidia* was made a Roman Province.

The People of most Note in this Country, besides those mentioned in our Account of ancient *Numidia*, were, the *Nigitmi* on the E. Shores of the *Mediterranean*, the *Machini* near the *Lesser Syrtis*, the *Libyæ*, *Phœnices*, and *Medini*, bordering on *Carthage*, and the *Ionii*, *Navatra*, and *Cirtesi*, on the Coasts of *Numidia*, who were all destroy'd by the *Arabs*.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Ghollum*, *Colle*, *Collo*, or *Col*, the ancient *Culla* or *Collops Magnus*. The *Sansons* place it on the W. Side of a River of the same Name, near its Fall into the *Mediterranean*, Long. 28. 20. Lat. 33. 9. about 107 Miles N. E. from the City of *Bugia*. *Marmol* says, 'tis the *Colossus* of *Ptolomy*, was built by the *Romans*, and that the Inhabitants are civil, and trade with *Europeans* in Wax, Leather, and other Commodities. *Dapper* places it in the Province of *Constantina*, and says 'tis now demolished; but that it has still a Castle upon a Rock, where there's a good Harbour, frequented by the *Genoese* and *French*. *Sanutius* places it near the Town of *Constantina*; but the *Sansons* make it 70 Miles N. of that City.

2. *Sucaicada*, *Sucaycada*, or *Sucaiocad*. The *Sansons* place it on the same Coast, Long. 27. 50. Lat. 33. 14. about 23 Miles W. of *Col*, and 85 N. E. of *Bugia*. *Marmol* says, 'twas built by the *Romans* on a Mountain, from whence there's a Causeway of 12 Leag. to *Constantina*, pav'd with black Stones. *Dapper* places it 30 Miles from that City, with a well frequented Harbour, in *Constantina*; but says, this and *Col* formerly belong'd to *Bugia*.

3. *Bugia*. The *Sansons* place it at the Mouth of the River *Major*, where it falls into the *Mediterranean* in Long. 26. 20. Lat. 32. 50. almost 140 Miles N. W. of *Constantina*, and 107 E. of the Town of *Algier*. They place it on the E. Side of the River,

but *Moll* on the W. in Long. 23. 20. Lat. 36 $\frac{2}{3}$. 90 Miles from *Constantina*, and 60 from *Algier*. Some think it was built by the *Romans*. *Leo* says, it lies upon the Side of a high Mountain near the *Mediterranean*, and is encompassed with high and stately Walls. He thinks 'tis large enough for 24000 Families, but had not above 8000 in 1520. Their Houses, Temples, and Colleges, are handsome. They have a great many Professors of the Law and Natural Philosophy, and a large fair Market-place, with Monasteries, Inns, and Hospitals. The Streets are all up and down the Hill, and in the upper Part of the City there's a strong Castle well wall'd, with such curious Carving upon the Plaister and Timber-work, as is said to cost more than the Fort it self. The wealthy Citizens us'd to fit out Gallies to cruise upon the *Spanish* Coast, which provok'd the King of *Spain* to send *Don Pedro de Navarre* against them with 14 Sail, upon whose Arrival both the King and People deserted the City, and left all their Riches to the *Spaniard*. *Marmol* says, that in the Time of its Splendor it contain'd above 20000 Families, and that 'twas first destroyed by *Caim*, the Schismatick Caliph. 'Twas repeopled again, but far from its ancient Grandeur. The King of *Spain* took it after this, and held it for 35 Years, till 1555, when the Governor of *Algier* took it by Capitulation, as above-mentioned; since which, the *Turks* have always kept a Governor and a good Garrison here. On the E. Side of the City there's a small River which runs into the Sea, is called *Nazaava* by *Ptolomy*, and *Navar* by *Pliny*. It passes between the Mountains of *Cuco* and *Abes*, and swells prodigiously upon the melting of Snow. 'Tis full of Fish; but there's such Plenty of others upon the Sea-Coast, that they don't mind these. While 'twas in the Hands of the *Spaniards*, no Ship could enter the River, because of a Bank of Sand at its Mouth; but the same Year that the *Algerines* took it, 'twas carried off by a strong Inundation, so that large Vessels may now sail up the River, and lie there safe from all Winds but the N. *Coppin* says, the City is neither considerable nor strong. Some think it the *Thabraca*, others the *Igilgis*, others the *Uzirah*, and some the *Salda*, of *Ptolomy*. *Dapper* places it but 17 Miles from *Algier*,

Algier, and 7 from *Gigeri*, and says, 'tis very long, and has a Bay before it, which was anciently called the *Numidian Gulph*. The River which runs into it on the E. Side he calls *Huet del Quibir*; and *Du Plessis*, *Guadalquivir*. *Dapper* adds, that the adjacent Soil is barren, but they have excellent Fruit-Gardens. He makes it the Capital of the Province of its own Name. In 1671, Sir *Ed. Sprague*, an English Admiral, took and burnt under the Guns of this Castle 9 of the best *Algerine* Men of War; upon which the People cut off the Head of their King, and made a Peace with *England* much to our Advantage. The *Nubian* Geographer, who calls it *Begia*, says, the Town lies upon a Rock at the Foot of Mount *Amasium* to the S. which has Store of Timber, and Mines of Iron.

4. *Gegel*, *Gergel*, *Gigeri*, or *Gigiari*. *Moll* places it on the Coast of the Province of *Algier*, 44 Miles N. W. of *Bugia*, and about 57 S. E. of *Algier*, in Long. 23. 15. and Lat. 37 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Leo* says, it stands upon an impregnable Mountain, so that the Inhabitants never paid Tribute to the Kings of *Bugia* or *Tunis* till 1514, when it was reduced by *Barberossa*, who caus'd himself to be call'd King of it, but demanded no more than the Tenths of their Corn and some particular Fruits, and annex'd it to the Government of *Algier*. *Dapper* says, the Village and Castle of *Gigeri* command all the neighbouring Country, and makes it a separate Province. He places the Village on the *Mediterranean*, between *Algier* and *Bugia*, 15 Miles from each, and says it contains 1500 little Houses (or 500 according to the *Sansons*); and over against the Village upon the Top of a Mountain he places the Castle, which he says is old, and almost inaccessible. He bounds this Province with the Deserts of *Numidia*, and says, it takes in Mount *Auraz*, which extends 15 Miles from the Territory of *Micila Texeza*, *Necaus*, and *Constantina*, on the N. to the Deserts of *Biledulgerid* on the S. *Procopius* calls this Mount *Aurazia*, and places it 10 Miles from *Carthage*. *Dapper* says, the Soil of this Province produces nothing but Barley, Flax, and Hemp, to which the *Sansons* add Figs and Nuts. Several Springs rise in Mount *Auraz* that form Marshes in the Plain, which the Sun dries up to the Consistency of Clay;

and the People who live upon the Mountains are warlike *Arabians*, and so jealous of their Liberty, that they won't permit a Foreigner to come into their Country. The Village of *Gigeri* was formerly much traded to by the *French* for Skins and Wax; but in 1664, as they began to build a Fort here, the *Moors* besieg'd and took the Place, forc'd the Garrison, which was but small, to embark with all they could carry away in 4 Vessels, and killed and took Prisoners the greatest Part of 400 Men which they had posted in the Rear to make Head against the Besiegers while they embarked. The *Moors* found a great Booty here, and particularly 36 Cannon engrav'd with the Arms of *France*. *Luyts* says, 'twas formerly called *Igilgili* or *Igilgium*. The *Sansons* and others place it between *Bugia* and *Bona*.

5. *Labez*, a noted Mountain, which *Marmol* says derives its Name from the Plenty of Rushes that grow upon it, lies, with its Town called *Calaa*, in Long. 26. Lat. 32. 25. according to the *Sansons*, and Long. 22 $\frac{1}{2}$. and Lat. 35. 33. according to *Moll*, who places it in the Province of *Algier*, 83 Miles S. of the Capital of that Name, and 105 S. W. of *Bugia*; whereas the *Sansons* place it 90 Miles from *Algier*, and not 40 from *Bugia*. *Marmol* says, that in 1550 this Mountain was commanded by one *Abdelasis* or *La Abes*, one of the bravest Warriors in *Africa*. There being a constant Hatred betwixt the Inhabitants of this and Mount *Cuco*, *Abdelasis* join'd with the *Turks*, when *Cuco* declared against them: But the *Turks* being informed at length that he designed to revolt, they resolv'd to imprison him, so that he was forc'd to fly; after which he oppos'd the *Turks*, and fortified the Avenues of his Mountain; but was at last killed in Battle by the united Forces of the *Turks* and the K. of *Cuco*. Our Author adds, that he always wore two Coats of Mail one over another, with a Spear, a Buckler, and Cutlax. He was succeeded by his Brother *Mocoran*, who put the *Arabians* under Contribution in spite of the *Turks* and the K. of *Cuco*, with whom he was always at War. *Dapper* makes this a particular Kingdom, and says, 'tis number'd among the Provinces of *Algier*, because 'tis tributary to it. He places it upon Part of Mount *Atlas*, 3 little Miles from *Cuco*, and but 10 or 11 S. W. from *Bugia*, and says, that on the

the Top there's a Fort call'd *Calaa*, and another Mountain on the same Side called *Coco de Teleta*, where are the Tombs of their Kings. At the Foot of it there's a Place called *Tefli*, where there's a Citadel to prevent the Incursions of the *Turks*. There's another call'd *Bori*. This Mountain produces Sword-Grass, with a little Corn, and Fruits. The Inhabitants are *Berebers* and *Azuagues*, almost of the same Temper with those of *Couco*. The King of *Labez* can raise 30000 Foot and Horse, and was formerly a Sovereign Prince, but now Vassal to the *Basha* of *Algier*, to whom he sends every Year 400 Horses and 1000 Goats, and he has a *Turkish* Sabre in Requital set with Precious Stones. The *Sansons* say, these Mountains are of difficult Access; that the King resides at *Calaa*; and that the People defend their Liberty better than those of *Couco*. They place a Town and Mountain called *Tezli* 34 Miles to the S. E. of this Mountain.

6. *Sitifis*, *Steffa*, or *Disteffe*. The *Sansons* place it Long. 27. 3. Lat. 32. 10. 60 Miles S. E. of *Bugia*. *Marmol* calls it *Texteza*, and some think it the *Apfar* of *Ptolomy*. *Dapper* places it in the Province of *Bugia*, 15 Miles from the Sea, S. of *Bugia* City, in a fine Plain, which extends to Mount *La Abex*, and says, it has Walls of Free-stone of an extraordinary Bigness; and that 'twas destroyed by the *Arabians*, but repeopled afterwards by 300 Families. *Luyts* says, this is the ancient *Sitifis*, the Metropolitan of *Mauretania Sitifensis* on the River *Majurus*.

7. *Necaus* or *Necausu*. The *Sansons* place it Long. 26. Lat. 31. 30. 78 Miles S. of *Bugia*: *Moll* Long. 23 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 35 $\frac{1}{4}$. 106 Miles from *Bugia*. *Leo* calls it *Nicaus*, and says, the Inhabitants are a rich, generous, and neat People. They have a stately Temple, an Hospital for the Entertainment of Strangers, and a College where the Students have their Diet and Apparel gratis. Their Women have shining black Hair, make frequent Use of Baths, keep within Doors, and have fair smooth Skins. Their Houses are no more than one Story, but very neat, and have each a Garden of Vines, Jessamins, Damask-Roses, Myrtles, Camomil, and other Herbs and Flowers, with pleasant Arbors and Fountains; so that *Marmol* says, 'twould be one of the pleasantest Cities of *Barbary*,

were it not for the Oppression of the *Turks*. He thinks 'tis the *Vaga* which *Ptolomy* places Long. 18. Lat. 31. 40. *Dapper* assigns it to the Province of *Bugia*, and says, it lies upon the Side of a River 17 Miles from the Sea, and 12 from *Texteza* upon the Confines of *Numidia*. 'Tis encompassed with good Walls, and had formerly more handsome Bagnio's, publick Hospitals, Colleges, Palaces, and Mosques, than now. He adds, that the Inhabitants have an honest Look. *Heylin* says, there are several Mountains in the adjacent Country, which yield good Store of Goats and Horses, and are cover'd with Woods and Springs.

8. *Mesila* or *Micila*. The *Sansons* place it in the S. W. Corner of the Province, near the River *Major*, and at the Foot of Mount *Aurusius*, in Long. 25. 45. Lat. 30. 51. 120 Miles S. of *Bugia*. *Moll* places it on the same River, but in the Province of *Algier*, 92 Miles from *Bugia*. *Dapper* posts it on the Frontiers of this Province and *Numidia*, 30 Miles from the Sea, and says, 'tis encompassed with Mount *La Abex*. The Inhabitants are all Mechanicks and Labourers, and know how to manage the *Arabians*, tho' they be meer Brutes and Dunces.

ALGIER or GEZEIRA Province.

The *Sansons* extend it from Long. 23. 10. to Long. 26. and from Lat. 31. to Lat. 33 $\frac{1}{2}$. about 140 Miles from N. to S. and 130 from E. to W. and divide it almost into two equal Parts by the River *Sefaya*. *Moll* extends it much farther, from Long. 20 $\frac{2}{3}$. to Long. 25 $\frac{2}{3}$. and from Lat. 30. 33. to Lat. 37 $\frac{1}{2}$. 406 Miles from N. to S. and 255 where broadest. He divides it into two equal Parts by the River *Zinganor* or *Major*, bounds it with *Bugia* on the E. the Woods of Palm-Trees on the Frontiers of *Biledulgerid* to the S. the Province of *Tenes* to the W. and the *Mediterranean* on the N. *Luyts* and the *Sansons* bound it on the E. with the River *Major*, and on the W. with that of *Mirem*. *Dapper* extends it on the Coast of the *Mediterranean* from the Mouth of the River *Chinalaf* to the Confines of *Bugia*, and says, 'twas one of the 4 ancient Provinces of the Kingdom of *Telensin*. The Plains are inhabited by rich and powerful *Arabs*, called *Aben-Tetixa*, and the Mountains by the *Bereber*

The West Part of
BARBARY.
Containing Fez. Marocco. Algier.
and Part of Biledulgerid the Canary
Islands &c. By H. Moll Geographer



0 60 120 180
Miles of Gr. Britain



The First Meridian

OCEAN.

PART of ZAARA or DESART.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

LIBRARY

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

1000

rebers and *Azagues*. The Soil is very fruitful. The Plain of *Mottigia* produces two or three times a Year Wheat, Barley, and Oats, besides other Grain an Hundred fold. In some Places on the Coast there are barren Mountains and thick Forrests full of Deer. They have Melons of an admirable Taste: Some of them ripen in Summer, and others in Winter; and they have Stocks of Vines so big, that a Man cannot fathom 'em: They bear Bunches of Grapes of a Cubit in Length. In the Deserts there are Lyons, Tygers, Leopards, Wild Boars, Hedge-hogs, and Oxen that have straight Horns half an Ell long, together with all Sorts of Wild Fowl, particularly abundance of Partridges, which they say breed 7 or 8 times a Year. They have a Sort of Wild-Beasts call'd *Gopard*, which are easily tam'd, and us'd in Hunting, because of their Swiftness; but they soon catch Cold, and are therefore carried from Time to Time on Horseback. It has a Head like a Cat, and a spotted Tail like a Panther, with the hinder Feet higher than the foremost. There's another Creature half Dog and half Fox, whose Breath they say, if smelt in a Morning fasting, cures the Stiffness of the Joints. They have great Plenty of Fish, Flesh, and Fruits, and abundance of Serpents and other venomous Creatures. The People are almost of a white Complexion, strong, and well shap'd. The Towns are inhabited by a Mixture of People, such as *Janizaries* and *Turks*, *Moors* of *Grenada* and *Andalusia*, *Jews*, *Azagues*, and *Moors* of a tawny Colour that come from the Mountains of *Couco* and *Labez*, and are subject to the *Turks*; but out of the Towns there are none but *Moors* and *Arabians*, who keep near the Rivers for the Conveniency of Water, and dwell in Tents. The Viceroy and *Grandeos* let their Beards grow, but the common People shave both Beards and Heads, except Mustachio's and a Tuft upon the Top, by which they think *Mahomet* will pluck them up to Paradise. They bath often, and wash every Morning before they do any thing, as also at Prayers and Meals. Their Houses are square, from two to five Stories high, with Gates, Galleries, and little Windows towards the Street. Their Roofs are flat, and cover'd with Earth like a Garden. They have no Chimnies, but make their Fires in great Earthen Pots

at the Door, and take Care to whiten their Walls on the Approach of any great Feast. In their Palaces they have spacious square Courts, adorn'd with Columns, and several Chambers whose Floor is of Timber, cover'd with Mats and Tapestry; so that every one who enters must leave their Shoes at the Door. All their Moveables consist in Pots and Dishes, great Wooden Spoons, Chests, Mats, and Tapestry. Their Bedding is a Quilt and two Coverings, spread upon two or three Boards. They lie at Night upon a Mat, which serves them for a Table-Coth by Day. Their Food is Rice, boil'd Flesh, and some Fruits.

The *Moors* live by their Rents, Labour, Trade, or Pyracies, and the *Janizaries* by War; but the *Arabians* are poor Wretches that subsist only by Sharping. Those of *Grenada* follow Trades, especially Silk-weaving. The Women do nothing but chat all Day upon their Mats or Tapestry, visit the Hermitages, bath themselves, pray in the Church-yards, or walk in the Gardens, which are daily frequented by the *Turks*. The free Christians here go cloathed after the Mode of their several Countries; but the Slaves wear a grey Habit, and a Cap like a Sailor's. The common People among the *Moors* wear over their Shirts Drawers of Linen or Woollen, and a Gown of white Wool, with a Cowl behind, or else they wear a black Vest that comes down to their Knees, and is wrapped round their Bodies. In Summer they wear two wide Shirts. Their Turban is of fine Linen. Persons of Quality among the *Turks* wear Gowns of Silk, or other Stuff wrought with large Flowers, with fine Turbans and Boots after the *Turkish* Fashion. The Women's Gowns and Sashes are like the Men's, but finer, and their Shifts hang down to their Feet. They tie up their Hair, have Necklaces, Bracelets, Rings, Pendants of Precious Stones, and a sort of Cap upon their Head. When they go abroad, they put on a Piece of Linen, tie it under their Chins, and wrap a Gown round their Bodies, so that 'tis impossible to know them in the Streets.

The ancient *Algerines* spoke the *Phœnician*, and in the Time of the *Romans* the *Latin* Tongue; but the *Arabians* afterwards introduc'd their Language, so that now all pub-

lick Writings are in this or the *Turkish* Language. The *Moors*, who are the original Natives, speak the ancient *Moorish*; but at *Algier*, and almost all over the *Levant*, the *Mahometans* and Christians use a certain Jargon compounded of *French*, *Italian*, and *Spanish*, called *Lingua Franca*. The *Algerines* content themselves with two or three Wives apiece, tho' *Mahomet's* Law allows them as many as they please. They marry without seeing their Mistresses, but take them upon the Report of others; and when the Bridegroom has agreed with the Bride's Parents, he sends her a Treat, and some Days before Marriage they feast and dance; the Bride sits on the Ground, surrounded with other Women in their best Habits and Ornaments, which are Jewels, &c. and their Hands and Faces painted. The Bridegroom carries her home veil'd in the Evening, with Musick, and the Women stay in an outer Room till the Marriage be consummated, and then they brutishly carry her Shift about the Town in Triumph with the Marks of her Virginity. When any of them grow sick, they are serv'd only by those of their own Sex; and when ready to die, their Faces are turn'd to the E. and those who attend them call upon *Mahomet* without Intermission till they expire. Then they wash the Corps with hot Water and Soap, put on a Shift, white Drawers, a Silk Gown, and a Turban, and carry it in a Bier to a Grave without the Town. If the Person be wealthy, they engrave his Titles on his Tomb-Stone, with some Sentences of the *Alcoran*. They wear no Mourning, but the Women have a black Veil over their Faces for some Days. The Men don't shave in a Month, and for 3 Days no Fire is made in the House of the Deceased. During that Time, the Kindred visit the Grave, give Bread and Figs to the Poor, and carry Flints to the Tomb, upon which they throw them and cry, *The Light of God*, and then weep and groan. The Grandees are bury'd with more Pomp. The Corps is put in a Coffin, wrapped up with Bandages, and adorned with Pictures, &c. The Bearers richly clad carry it on their Shoulders. A Morabout goes before; the Domesticks follow with the Deceased's Lance and Scymiter. Then comes a great Number of Horses and Camels, and their Tombs are of

Stone richly cut, and adorned with Statues and Battlements.

None but the Alcaids, Governors, and Persons of the first Rank, are allow'd to ride on Horseback in the Streets; others use Asses, especially Women of Quality, who sit in a Basket of Osier, cover'd with thin Cloth painted and gilt, thro' which they can see others, but are not seen themselves. One of those Pavilions will hold two People, but they must sit cross-legged.

Dapper says, the *Algerine* Merchants chiefly make use of Foreign Coin, as *Turkish* Sultanesses of Gold worth a Ducat, Moticals of *Fez* worth a Guilder, *Spanish* Pistoles and Reals, *French* Crowns, and *Hungarian* Ducats. Those who don't trade, use no other Money but Crowns or *Spanish* Pistoles, and Reals. Their own Coin is *Burbas*, with the Viceroy's Arms on both Sides. Six of them make half an Asper, which is a small square Piece of Silver stamp'd with *Arabian* Letters. Fifteen of them make a *Spanish* Real, and 24 a Doubla, which is somewhat more than a Crown. Their Gold is chiefly coin'd at *Tremisen*, first in Rubies worth 35 Aspers, two Medians worth 50, and three Dians or Zians worth 100. All these have the Viceroy's Name, with some *Moorish* Letters, and pass in the Kingdoms of *Couco* and *Labez*, tho' they have their own Coin. The Zians being the ancient Money of the Kings of *Telensin*, no other Province must coin them. The *Jews* manage the Coinage at *Algier*, for which they pay a Sum to the Basha.

The Revenues of the Kingdom are differently valued, from 400000 to 600000 Crowns *per Annum*. It belongs all to the Basha, who sends the Grand Seignior a few Boys, and some Presents of small Value, with some Thousands of Crowns to the Officers of *Constantinople*. The Revenue is uncertain, because Part of it is rais'd from a 7th of the Prizes taken by the Corsairs, and from 11 and a half *per Cent.* on Export and Import. The fix'd Revenue arises from the Tribute paid by the *Jews*, and a Tax on the *Arabians* according to their Wealth, which is rais'd in the following Manner: They send out three flying Camps of 2 or 300 Janizaries each, as Occasion requires. One of them marches Westward to *Tremisen*, another Eastward to the Frontiers of *Bona* and

and *Constantina*, and the 3d Southward to the Deserts as far as the Negro's Country. This is a very difficult Expedition, and takes them up 6 or 7 Months. Each Camp is commanded by an Aga. They are forc'd to make use of Military Execution, because their Government being Tyrannical, 'tis extremely hated by the *Moors* and *Arabians*, who for most Part retire to the Mountains on their Approach, and defend themselves as well as they can against the Janizaries. These little Armies usually march in the Harvest-time. They bring off what they can in Money, Corn, and Cattle, and sometimes their Children, and carry all to *Algier*, where they give an Account to the Divan. Our Author says, that these small Bodies of Troops are enough to force 7 or 8000 *Arabians* and *Moors* to pay Contributions; for tho' those People be arm'd with Sagayes and Scymiters, they know nothing of Discipline or Fire-Arms. The Secretary of the Divan forms those Armies from a Muster-Roll, and every Man is obliged to serve in his Turn; on Pain of losing his Arms and Apparel. They are all Foot, yet allowed to use Horses, tho' none but the Captains are permitted to take Slaves to look after them. The Soldiers are allow'd Ammunition-Bread, a little Oil, Vinegar, Rice, and Cuscous. If they want any thing else, they must buy it, or force the *Arabs* to supply them. The greatest Profit they make by this Expedition to the S. is in Ostrich Feathers, which they sell at great Rates.

The Strength of the Province of *Algier* consists partly in the Number of its Soldiers and Inhabitants, and partly in their Citadels. The Town of *Algier* consists of about 13000 Houses, some of which contain 30 Families, as the *Casseres*, where dwell 600 Janizaries. There are 2500 Families of native *Moors*, whom *Barberossa* exempted from all Offices, which Privilege they still enjoy. There are 600 Families of Foreign *Moors*, 100 of *Azuages*, 3000 of *Arabians*, 2000 of *Moors* from *Grenada*, 600 Turkish Families, 6000 of Renegadoes, 36 of Alcalds, 300 of Sea-Captains, 50 of Invalid Soldiers, 6000 of Janizaries, 86 of Cheriffs or *Mahomet's* Kindred, 800 Pilgrims who are reckoned Saints, because they have visited *Mecca*, 3000 Families of Merchants of several Nations, 2000 Shopkeepers in the two Mar-

kets, 150 Families of *Jews* in their Quarter, which contain about 8000 Souls, a vast Number of Tradesmen; among others, 1200 Gravers and Carvers, 3000 Weavers, 300 Butchers, and 400 Bakers. *Gramaye* says, there were in his Time 35000 Christian Slaves in *Algier*. *Haedo* says, there were 25000 in his Time. Admiral *Ruyter* gave an Account to the States in April 1662, that they had 1100 Dutch Slaves, and 1000 Foreigners taken in Dutch Vessels; but in October that Year the Dutch Slaves were diminished to 700. To those Inhabitants of the Town, *Dapper* adds the Garrisons of the Provinces of *Tremisen*, *Bona*, *Constantina*, *Bugia*, and *Miliana*, which consist of some Thousands of Janizaries, all paid by their Governors, besides the *Arabians* in the Country, who are so numerous, that in 1617, on the News of an Invasion by the *Spaniards*, 6 of their Morabouts offer'd to the Basha and Divan 126000 Horse and 60000 Foot, but armed only with Clubs and Poles. By this, says our Author, we may see how much *Algier* has increased in a little time; for when *Charles V.* marched against them, there were no more than 800 Men fit to carry Arms in the Town, and most of those were *Moors*, Day-Labourers, and Fishermen. It is not much above 160 Years, says he, since *Algier* was talked of in the World; but the great Increase of their Power is owing to the *Moors* who were banish'd from *Spain* in 1567 and 1607. *Dapper* says, they are the most powerful of all the Corsairs; that in 1659, they had 23 Ships from 30 to 50 Guns each at Sea, and mann'd with 3 or 400 Men apiece. Admiral *Ruyter* acquainted the States in 1662, that they had then 15 good Frigats at Sea, besides 7 which they were equipping, and 9 Gallies. In *Breves's* Time, the Militia of *Algier* was but 10000; in *Gramaye's* Time, 16000; and now, says *Dapper*, it consists of 22000 Janizaries, half *Turks*, and half Renegadoes; but the latter cannot receive Pay unless they are free; for tho' a Slave voluntarily renounces Christianity, yet he cannot be advanced unless he redeem himself, or his Master does it in Acknowledgment of his Services. When a good Number of the natural *Turks* are dead, the new Basha brings others with him from *Constantinople*, or lists the first that he meets with in the *Levant*. They have a Custom, which

which was instituted by *Amurath* Emperor of the *Turks*, to exact a certain Number of Children from the Christians in *Turkey* instead of Money. They also admitted *Jews* which turn'd *Mahometans* into the Rank of Janizaries; but the *Basha Jaffer* excluded them in 1580. Neither the *Moors* and *Arabs* who are original Natives of the Country, nor the *Moors* of *Andalasia*, can be admitted into the Body of this Militia, because the *Turks* fear they would grow too strong and revolt. When a Person desires to be listed, he must repair to the Aga and the Secretary of the Divan at *Algier*, when he receives 3 or 4 Doublas (which are about 10 s. each) per Month; and if a Batchelor, he has 4 Loaves besides; but if a marry'd Man, instead of Ammunition-Bread, they allow him the Privilege to follow his Trade in the City. They advance the Wages of those who go to raise Contributions from the *Arabs* in the Country a Doubla or half a Doubla per Month, as also upon the Arrival of a new *Basha*, and at the Birth of a Child of the Grand Seignior. When a Janizary has perform'd any brave Exploit against his Enemies, his Pay is also advanced, so that some Captains have 40 Doublas per Month, but none more. The Pay of the Garrisons on the Frontiers is almost the same, and they are chang'd every 6 Months. The Janizaries at *Algier* live in 9 great Houses called *Casserres*, where they follow their several Occupations. *Dapper* says, the least of the private Soldiers may in Time become an Aga, and that they rise from one Post to another according to their Rank and Merit, without the Danger of being excluded by Men of Ambition and Intrigue. The Militia is divided into Common Janizaries or Commanding Officers, who are of 6 Sorts, viz. Biquelars, Odabachi's, Bouloucbacki's, Ajabachi's, Aga's, and Mansulaga's. The common Soldiers, after they have serv'd out their Time, become Biquelars, which are a sort of Proveditors, who take Care of the Provisions of the Divan, the Caserns, Garrisons, and Armies. Out of these they chuse 4 call'd Solachi's, who serve for the *Basha's* Guards, eat at his Table, and attend him on Horseback arm'd with Carabines. None but these have the Privilege to wear gilt Sabres, a Piece of gilt Leather roll'd round their Turban, and great Feathers

hanging down to their Hams. Out of the Biquelars they chuse the Odabachi's, who command 6, 10, or 20 Men, as the Aga pleases. They are known by a Scrip of Leather half a Foot broad, which hangs down from their Heads half-way their Backs, and two Ostrich-Feathers which reach as low as their Hams. Out of these the Janizaries chuse 16 Utraques, who compose the Aga's Council of War; and besides, 4 of the eldest of them call'd *Baduxis* are chose for Heralds and publick Cryers. When any thing is to be propos'd to the Divan, they give Notice of it to the Odabachi's, and these to the other Janizaries, who being met, deliver their Opinion with a loud Voice, and in few Words. These Counsellors eat at the *Basha's* Table, who allows them a Quarter of Mutton a Day, and 4 Loaves for their Families. Out of the Odobachi's they chuse the Bouloucbacki's or Bulucobaxis, who are the Captains of Janizaries; but their Companies are not fix'd, because the Aga when he goes into the Field divides them as he pleases. They are distinguished by a Scrip of gilt Leather cut out in the Form of a Pyramid, and a great Plume of Feathers upon their Heads. One of them, who is called *Murbalucobaxi*, stands always near the *Basha* with 4 Soulachi's, serves as an Interpreter when he has not a mind to appear in Publick, and is obliged to signify all that passes every Day in the *Basha's* Palace to the Aga. The eldest Captain, call'd *Baxi-Balucobaxi*, is as it were the Aga's Lieutenant, and supplies his Place when his Term is expir'd till another is chose; and when the Aga is employ'd about Affairs of great Importance, he takes Care of lesser Matters, and has almost as much Pay as the Aga. Out of the Bouloucbacki's are chose the Ybachi's or Ajabachi's, who are the 24 chief Counsellors of the Divan, accompany the *Basha* every Friday to the Mosque, and wear Plumes of white Feathers upon their Heads: And out of these Ajabachi's they chuse the Aga or General of the Janizaries, who is elected at least every two Months, and sometimes there are 5 or 6 in a Day; for if the new elected does not please the Divan, they proceed immediately to the Choice of another; and if he has any Deformity, or does not understand the *Turkish* Language, if his Wives Kindred have

an ill Report, or if his own Words and Actions do not please, 'tis sufficient to exclude him. But when chosen, the Basha is obliged to give him a Scarlet Robe; and when his Time is expired, or if he be depos'd before, he is admitted among the Spays or Mansuluga's, i. e. Soldiers out of Service; after which he cannot go to the Divan unless called; but his Pay continues for Life. *Dapper* says, the Divan commonly appoints one of these Mansuluga's to command the flying Camps which they send against the *Arabians*, because they are Men of try'd Valour. But *Gramaye* says, that those who have made their Fortuns by their Agaship, buy the Command of one of these flying Camps of the Basha, on Condition to keep the Booty for themselves; and that there are about 135 Families who bargain for the sole Privilege of cruizing upon the Christians in the *Mediterranean*, by giving the Basha the Tenth of all their Prizes.

The Soldiery is very much esteem'd at *Algier*, but at the same Time so proud, that they take little Notice of a Man that does not wear a Sword. If a Burgher strike a Soldier, the Judge sentences him to receive a Box on the Ear in Publick: But the Cadi's have nothing to do with the Janizaries, who are accountable to none but their Aga, or the Chaya his Lieutenant. *Dapper* says, 'tis admirable to see these Troops, which are compos'd of so many different Nations, as *Turks, Greeks, French, Spaniards, Italians, and Germans*, so well disciplin'd, that they never quarrel; for so soon as any one lays his Hand upon the Hilt of his Sword in Anger, the Standers-by are obliged to seize him and carry him before the Divan.

Dapper says, their Arms are a Fuzee, an Harquebuze, a Musket, and Sabre; and that some use Arrows, which they dart with great Skill.

Having thus treated of the Soil, Inhabitants, Manners and Customs, Habits, Language, and Revenues, of *Algier*, with its Power by Sea, Militia and Arms, we come now to give an Account of its History, Government, Court, and Religion.

Dapper says, That in *Juba's* Time, the City of *Algier* was the Capital of *Mauretania*, but by Degrees it gave Way to *Constantina*, which was very powerful under *Caligula*; then to *Bugia* and *Bona*, and lastly to *Tremi-*

sen, which became the most flourishing City in the Kingdom in the Time of the *Mahometans*. *Peter Dan* says, That *Abdala Hasez* King of *Bugia* quarrelled with the King of *Telenfin*, and forc'd the City of *Algier*, which then belong'd to that King, to submit to his Protection, and to pay him Tribute, and permitted the Inhabitants to live in Form of a Republick. But in 1510, *Peter Count* of *Navarre* having taken Possession of the Towns of *Horan* and *Bugia* in the Name of *Ferdinand* King of *Spain*, the *Algerines* finding themselves too weak to resist him, put themselves under the Protection of *Selim Eutimi*, an *Arabian* Prince in the neighbouring Plains of *Mottygia*, who kept them for some Time in Peace, till *Ferdinand*, resolv'd to destroy these Pyrates, sent a strong Naval Army against them under the Command of the aforesaid Count, who so gall'd the Town from a Fort which he built upon a neighbouring Rock, that the *Algerines*, with the Consent of *Selim*, made a Truce for 10 Years with *Ferdinand*, on Condition to pay him Tribute, and no more to infest the Seas; and *Ferdinand*, the better to oblige them to their Articles, caus'd a Fort to be built in an Island over against them to keep them in Awe. But after his Death, the *Algerines*, with the Consent of their Prince *Selim*, sent to *Aruch Barberossa*, a Native of *Lesbos*, that famous Corsair (formerly mentioned) for Succours, to enable them to shake off the *Spanish* Yoke. The Corsair came accordingly, and having caus'd *Selim* to be privately stifled in a Bath, made himself be proclaimed their King, had Money coin'd in his Name; and compelled the neighbouring People to own his Sovereignty. *Selim's* Son being but young, fled to the Marquis of *Comarez*, the *Spanish* Governor of *Horan*, who receiv'd him kindly, and sent him into *Spain* with a Recommendation to Cardinal *Ximenes*. The next Year, viz. 1517, he came hither with a Fleet of 10000 *Spaniards*, under the Admiral *Francis de Vero*, to expel *Barberossa*; but they were no sooner come within Sight of the Town, when the Fleet was ruin'd by a violent Tempest, and some Soldiers that had escap'd to land were put to Death by the *Turks*. The same Year *Barberossa* subdu'd *Amidalabdez* King of *Tenez*, and seiz'd the Town, with all its Dependencies, and being called in by the Inhabitants of

of *Telenfin*, dethron'd their Prince, and made himself Master of his Kingdom; but the latter joining with the Marquis of *Horan*, who had just received new Succours from Spain, defeated *Barberossa* near the River *Huexda*, and was restored to his Dominions. After this, the *Algerines* with one Voice proclaimed his Brother *Cheredin* or *Hairedin Barberossa* for their King, believing him to be a Man of Courage and Conduct; but he sent to the Grand Seignior for Succours, begged his Protection, and promis'd he would become his Vassal; adding, that he design'd nothing more than to hold his Kingdom as a Fief of the *Turkish* Empire, and to be no other than the Grand Seignior's Basha or Viceroy. The Emperor immediately sent 2000 *Turks*, and gave a Permission to all that would to go and assist *Barberossa*, promising them the same Privileges as the Janizaries had at *Constantinople*, by which Means, says our Author, the Kingdom of *Algier* fell into the Power of the *Turks*, who govern it by a Basha like that of *Egypt*. The *Moors* indeed call him Sultan or Sovereign; but the *Turks*, who own no Sovereign but the Grand Seignior, call all the Governors of the largest Provinces only Bashes, and those of lesser, Sangiacks. The Christians give him the Stile of Highness, but the *Turks* only *Affendi*, which is the common Stile of the *Grandeess* of the Country, and that of *Cidi* to Persons of lower Rank; but both signify Lord.

Our Author adds, That in 1541, the Emperor *Charles V.* with a Naval Army, consisting of 100 Ships and 18 Gallies, with 22000 Men on board, landed on the Coasts of *Barbary* near Cape *Metafuz*, from whence there's a Plain of 4 Miles to *Algier*, and soon erected a Fort upon a Mountain, which is still call'd the Emperor's Fort, in order to attack *Algier*. The City had then only a single Wall, without any Outworks, and the Garrison consisted but of 800 *Turkish* Soldiers, and 6000 *Moors* not well disciplin'd, so that the Besieged were about to capitulate; but a certain Eunuch who pretended to Conjuratation assuring the Aga, who then commanded in the Town in the Absence of *Barberossa*, that in 9 Days the Enemy's Army should be dispersed, and the Siege raised, they took Courage, and resolv'd to hold out till that Time. Our Author says, it

happen'd accordingly on the 28th of October, when there arose such a fierce Storm of Wind and Rain, that in a little Time near 100 Vessels and 15 Gallies of the Christians were cast away, with all the Provision belonging to the Army, which obliged the Emperor to raise the Siege, and the Aga pursued him with great Slaughter as far as Cape *Metafuz*. Upon this, they publicly own'd the Conjurer for the Preserver of the Town, made him rich Presents, and gave so much Credit to his Art, that any one was free to make a Profession of it; and the *Grandeess*, *Morabouts*, and those who pass for Saints, apply themselves to it, pretending that *Mahomet* honours them with his Revelations. In the mean time our Author observes, that the *Algerines*, to ward off the Reproach of having had Recourse to Sorcery on this Occasion, ascribe their Deliverance to the Prayers of a certain *Morabout* called *Cid Utica*, who lies interr'd without the Gate of *Barbason*, where they erected a little Mosque to his Honour.

Dapper says, the Government of *Algier* is now entirely in the Hands of the Officers of the Militia, tho' in the Time of the *Barberossa's* the Burghers bore an equal Share; and that their Edicts, &c. begin thus: *We the Grandeess and Commoners, Members of the potent and invincible Militia of Algier, have, &c.* He ascribes the Origine of this Abuse to the Janizaries, who by frequently deposing such of the Bashes sent from *Constantinople* as they did not like, and electing others in their room, obliged the Grand Seignior, for fear they should totally renounce his Authority, to send a Basha only to represent his Person, and to see that nothing was done in Prejudice of his Interest; so that (says our Author) the Basha is no more than a painted Viceroy, because he can do nothing of Importance without the Consent of the Council of Janizaries. The Council of State is compos'd of the Officers of the Janizaries, who assemble every *Saturday*, which is the Day of the great Divan in the *Alcassave*, and *Sunday*, *Monday* and *Tuesday*, in the great Court of the Basha's Palace; but the Basha cannot come to the Council, unless they send for him by the *Chiaoux* or *Ushers*, who go to the Foot of his Chamber-Stairs, and bawl as loud for him as if he were deaf. The Council sits in this Order: The Aga, who

who is the Chief and President, sits at the upper End, and makes Proposals. If the Basha be admitted, he only gives his Opinion, and has but one Voice. The 2d Place is for the Secretary, who registers all Transactions and Resolves. The 3d is taken up by the 24 Agabachi's, the chief Officers next to the Aga, who sit in a Gallery of the Court, each according to his Rank. The 4th is for the Bouloucbachi's, who have a Vote as well as the rest. The 5th for the Odabachi's, who are join'd by the Mansulaga's when they debate about Affairs of great Importance: And the 6th and last Place is for the Chiaoux or Ushers, who execute all the Orders of the Divan. It usually consists of 7 or 800 Persons, because all the Officers who are at *Algier* are generally present; and when all the Mansulaga's and Odabachi's are called, there are no less than 1500. The Odabachi's and Bouloucbachi's, who make the greatest Body of the Council, stand up in the Middle of the Base-Court, each in his Place, with their Hands folded over their Breast, out of Respect, as they say, to the Basha, without changing their Posture, or unfolding their Hands, except in Case of extreme Necessity, and without a Sword or Knife about them, for fear of Tumults. Those who have Business with the Council stay at the Gate of the Court, and are treated by the Chiaoux with Coffee. All their Affairs are transacted in the *Turkish* Language, to signify their Dependence on the Porte, so that the Officers of the Divan are obliged to understand and speak it; for which Reason they have also a certain Number of Interpreters, to whom they give Salaries, to explain the Petitions and Complaints of the *Moors* and Christians in that Language. They collect the Voices thus: After the Aga has made his Proposition, he turns about to the Basha if he be present, and then to the 24 Ajabachi's; after which, 4 Officers call'd *Bachouldala* repeat his Proposition with a loud Voice. Then the Officers repeat it one to another, and the Aga forms his Conclusion according to the Number of Votes. Our Author observes, that 'tis easy to judge of the Proceedings of such a noisy Assembly, where the Counsellors, who are for most Part sorry Mechanicks, that can neither write nor read, are Sovereign Judges of all Matters

without Appeal, and consult nothing but their Passion in their Determinations. When the Women have any Complaints to present to the Divan, they come veil'd to the Gate, sometimes above 100 together, and cry out with all their Might, *Char-Alla*, i. e. *Justice for God's Sake*. The Basha's Officers are, the Beglerbey, who is as it were Major-General; and a Chancellor, whom they call *Calif*, that represents the Basha in his Absence. They only hear the Witnesses, and then proceed to give Judgment, without any Formality. They seldom write down their Sentences, and when they do, only stamp them with the Viceroy's or Cadi's Seal, without signing them. Appeals are brought from the Cadi's and the Basha himself and his Officers to this Court.

They drown Adulteresses, by tying them to a Rope fasten'd at the End of a Stick, and then pull them out again. The *Turks* are seldom punish'd with Death, unless for Rebellion or Sedition, and then they are strangled or thrown alive upon a Hook; but if they commit a small Fault, their Wages are stopp'd; and if Officers, reduce 'em to the Rank of common Janizaries; or else they lay them upon the Ground, and give them 2 or 300 Blows upon their Belly, Backbone, Hips, or Soles of their Feet.

They have an Officer call'd *Almotace*, who takes Care of their Weights and Measures, and another call'd the *Mesuyr*, who is the Chief of the Ushers, and is the Keeper of a certain Prison for all Sorts of Criminals, from whence he reaps great Profit, but must give Part of it to the Basha. Besides the *Mesuyrs* Prison, which is in the *Circaria*, there are other Prisons belonging to the Town, which are in the Citadel; that of the Basha, which is in his Palace, and another belonging to the Aga, in the Place where he gives Audience.

The *Jews* have their particular Magistrates, who judge by their own Law; but the Basha remits their Capital Crimes for great Sums of Money. The *Franks* are try'd by their own Consuls, provided the Quarrel be amongst themselves; but if they have any Controversy with the *Turks* and *Moors*, they are carried before the Officers of the Custom-House, who act jointly with the Consul, according to the 5th Article of the Truce concluded *March 26, 1662*. by Admiral

miral *Ruyter*, between the States of the United Provinces and the Sovereign Court of *Algier*. They observe the same Methods of Justice and the same Rank among the Officers in the particular Governments depending on *Algier*, where they have a Governor, who represents the *Basha*; an *Aga*, who depends on him of *Algier*, and a *Macadi* or Inferior Judge. Among the *Arabians*, the *Cheque* is the *Aga's* Lieutenant; and in the Ships of the Corsairs, which are as so many separate Republicks, they have a Captain called *Arraix*, who acts the Part of the *Basha*, and chuses his Counsellors out of the *Janizaries* or eldest Soldiers.

Dapper says, That *March* 22, 1662. the Dutch Admiral *Ruyter* arrived at *Algier* with 9 Men of War, carrying white Colours, and sent Deputies on the Part of the States to the Divan to agree upon a Truce, which was concluded the 26th of that Instant for 9 Months. One of the chief Articles was, That the Privateers of *Algier* should have Liberty to search the Dutch Ships, and to take out their Enemy's Goods, by paying the Pilot for Carriage; and that the Dutch Merchant Ships should only take on board *Flemish, French, English, and Germans*, including the *Danes, Swedes, Norwegians*, and all other People of *Germany*; but that all those of any other Nation found on board, whether Travellers or Merchants, who were not in the Service of the Ship, should be deemed as lawful Prize. But the States thinking these Conditions too hard, order'd their Admiral to enter into no Treaty with any Town of the Corsairs, except the Article relating to the Searchers was struck out, and the Ships and all on board them made free. *Ruyter* came before *Algier* about the Middle of *June*, and made those Demands; but the Truce lasted no longer than the 6th of *October*, the *Algerines* alledging, that if they yielded to those Conditions, they might burn their Ships, and live upon Charity; and that they would rather die in Arms than go a begging. Nevertheless, it appears by the 23d Article of the Treaty concluded with the Emperor *Mustapha*, that the United Provinces had obtain'd those Terms formerly of the Gr. Seignior, and of the *Algerines* themselves by the 2d Article of a Treaty made with them in 1652. Admiral *Ruyter* came before *Algier* again with

the Dutch Fleet, *June* 18, 1664. to redeem some Slaves, and to exchange others, and returned the 5th of next Month with no more than 61 Dutch Slaves, whom he redeemed, besides some that found Means to escape and swim aboard. He also exchanged 37 *Turks* and *Moors* for *Van der Brug* the Dutch Consul, his Secretary, and three Slaves of that Nation, by which Means, says our Author, they escap'd the Misfortune which befel an English Consul, whom these Barbarians obliged to draw a Cart like an Ox, and in the Night loaded him and his Family with Irons. Our Author adds, that after this the *Algerines* propos'd more unreasonable Conditions, rais'd the Ransom of the Dutch Slaves to 100 Crowns per Head, as by former Conventions, and still claim'd a Power to search their Ships; so that the Admiral wrote a Letter to the Divan, wherein he tax'd 'em with Injustice, and declar'd War against them. *Dapper* carries this History no farther, but comes next to give an Account of their Religion.

He says, the *Mahometans* here have the same Belief with the *Turks*, unless in certain Superstitions peculiar to the *Moors* in general, which we have formerly insisted on. They believe, that by fasting 7 or 8 Months, they shall be sure of Paradise; that the most famous Morabouts are inspir'd by the Devil; that Fools and Sots are the Saints and Elect of God; that unnatural Sins are Virtues; that 'tis an Honour for their Women to be debauch'd by Morabouts; and that their Sins shall be blotted out by taking Care of Beasts, and washing themselves in the Sea. They think it a Sin to let any of their own Water fall upon their Clothes, to throw Paper upon the Ground, to let the Poor touch the Alcoran, to break Wind, sneeze, belch, to put themselves in a Posture of Defence, or to stop the Bleeding of a Wound before they have ended the Prayer *Sala*. They think it a Sin to drink out of a straight-neck'd Bottle, because it makes a juggling Noise, to shut their Chambers by Night, to strike with the Foot at Tennis, to write with a Pen instead of a Reed; nor will they eat Snails, because they count them holy, or touch Money before their Morning-Prayer, or carry the Alcoran under their Girdle, nor keep Books which have the Pictures of Man or Beast:

Neither

Neither do they use Bells, nor permit Women and Christians to enter into their Mosques, nor to exchange a Christian Prisoner for a Turk. They think it a great Crime to whip Children, and only strike them with a Switch upon the Soles of their Feet. They believe, that on the first Night of their Easter, all Water rests for half an Hour, and that those who come ashore during that Interval may expect all the Blessings of Heaven. They have so great a Respect for their Morabouts, that one may travel safely thro' the most dangerous Woods in their Company. They esteem St. John and the other Apostles as Saints, but tell a Thousand idle Stories of 'em. They think it dishonourable to undertake a Journey, or to go to a new Habitation, without first killing a Sheep. Their Morabouts never shave their Head or Beard, and wear a long Gown with a Cloak over it, which reaches to their Middle. We refer for the rest to our Account of the City of *Algier*.

The chief Places in this Province are, 1. *Couco*, *Equiliandalus*, or *Equil-Vandalus*, a Town and Mountain, which the *Sanfons* place on the E. Frontier of the Kingdom, Long. 25. 25. Lat. 32. 34. 68 Miles S.E. of *Algier*. *Mell* places it Long. 22. 34. and Lat. 36. 60 Miles from *Algier*. *Marmol* says, 'tis accessible only by one Pass, which may be defended with Stones against a whole Army. The Town is wall'd, and encompass'd with craggy Rocks. There are several other Villages inhabited by Clans, which are so many Branches of one Line, and have each of them their Chief. One of them, *Ben el Cadi*, being descended of the Family of *Beni-Tumi* King of *Algier*, who was killed by *Horux Barberossa*, proclaimed himself King of this Mountain, and was always at War with the *Turks*, till *Barberossa* married one of his Daughters; after which he made Peace, and became so powerful, that he had 500 Firelocks and 1500 Horse, besides a great Number of Soldiers arm'd after the Fashion of the Country. The Inhabitants have a particular Aversion to the *Jews*. This Mountain affords good Salt-Petre, of which they make Powder, and have Brimstone from *Europe*. Here are also Mines of Iron, of which they make Arms, &c. but have no Steel. *Dapper* makes it a Kingdom, says 'tis called *Cinnaba* and *Couque* by the People of

Marseilles, who trade hither; and *Cuco* by the *Spaniards* and *Italians*. 'Tis tributary to *Algier*. He places the Mountain about 18 Leagues from that City, 9 from *Bugia*, and 3 from the Mountains of *Labez*, from whence 'tis separated by the River of *Bugia*, which *Moll* and the *Sanfons* call *Major*. *Dapper* says, the Town contains above 1600 Houses, and several fine Palaces belonging to the King. Upon the Declivity of the Mountain there's a Town of 500 Houses, called *Gemaaxharix*, noted for a great Concourse of People every *Friday*. The King had once a Harbour in the *Mediterranean* called *Tamagus*, which he sold in 1609 to the *Spaniards*; but 'twas seiz'd by the *Algerines*. This Kingdom abounds with Olive-Trees, Figs, Grapes, Flax, Honey, and Wax, has several fine Springs, and Gardens that produce all Sorts of Fruit. The Plains yield much Wheat, and the Mountains Barley. They have also great Herds of black Cattle and Horses. The Inhabitants are *Bereberes*, and *Azagues*, for most Part *Mahometans*, with some *Jews* and Merchants of *Mar-seilles*. The King has 700000 Crowns Revenue, which arises principally from Figs. *Ananias* calls this Prince a *Cheque* only. The *Algerines* often attempted to reduce him, which made him keep constantly on his Guard, and take Part with the *Spaniards*; so that in 1542, when *Charles V.* besieg'd *Algier*, he sent 2000 *Moors*, with Provisions, to his Assistance; but before they arrived, the *Spanish* Fleet was dispersed by a Storm, and the designed Succours return'd back. The Viceroy of *Algier* resent'd this Affront, and invaded his Dominions with 3000 *Turks*, forc'd him to beg Peace, and to give his Son *Cid-Amet Ben-Alcadi* as an Hostage for the Payment of a great Sum. In 1561, this Alliance was made stronger by the Marriage of *Asan* the Basha of *Algier* with this King's Daughter, and the Inhabitants of *Couco* obtain'd Leave to buy Arms and other Provisions at *Algier*: But the *Janizaries* there being alarm'd at it, the Aga forbade to sell them Arms on Pain of Death, order'd them to depart the Town within two Hours, (as they did to the Number of 600) and sent the Basha, and his Nephew *Ochali* General of the Army, bound Hand and Foot to *Constantinople*. In 1618, after this King's Death, his Brother who succeeded him re-

new'd the Alliance with Spain, and gave Hostages for the Performance of Articles: But the *Algerines* hating him for it, his Nephew caus'd him to be put to Death, made Peace with them, and sent Hostages to *Algier*, where they ended their Days in Misery. This Enmity, says *Dapper*, betwixt the King of *Couco* and the *Algerines*, gave an Opportunity to the *Spaniards* to prosecute their Design against *Algier*; for which End in 1663, a *Cordelier*, who understood the Language of the Country by his long Confinement there, found Means to confer privately with the King of *Couco*, and obtain'd his Promise to receive a *Spanish* Garrison, and to deliver them a Fort at the Entrance of his Kingdom. A Day was agreed upon accordingly; but the Council of *Algier* having Notice of it, sent a Detachment of *Janizaries* to besiege the Place, which was surrender'd to them by *Abdala* the King's Nephew, who commanded there, and discover'd the whole Plot; upon which *Soliman* of *Catagne*, a *Venetian* Renegado, the then *Basha* of *Algier*, promis'd 50 *Sultranins* per Head for every *Spaniard* that could be apprehended, and 200 for the Fryar. The *Spaniards* landed near the Fort on the Day appointed, under the Conduct of the Viceroy of *Majorca*, who brought a good Number of Soldiers with him in 4 Gallies. *Abdala* was at that Time on the Shore with a great many *Moors*, who pretended Joy at the Arrival of the *Spaniards*: But as soon as the Fryar got ashore, with 24 of the principal Men of the Fleet, they made them Prisoners; and the Viceroy, seeing he was betray'd, weigh'd Anchor and return'd to *Majorca*. The *Sansons* say, that the Mountains of *Couco* are two or three Days Journey in Length.

2. *Teddeles* or *Teddek*: The *Sansons* place it near the Coast, Lon. 25. 12. Lat. 33. 3. 50 Miles E. of *Algier*, and say, it answers to the ancient *Ruspis* a Municipium. *Dapper* says, 'tis *Ptolomy's* *Addima*, the most E. Town of the Province, and lies but 7 Miles from *Algier*. He adds, that 'tis encompassed with good Walls, and contains above 1000 Houses, *Nicolay* says 2000, besides the Governor's Castle. *Leo* places it 30 M. E. of *Algier*, in a Province of its own Name, which produces Plenty of Corn, and is water'd by several Rivers and Streams, which abound with

Fish. The Inhabitants are a rich and civil People, mostly Dyers and Fishers, and great Admirers of the Harp and Lute. *Nicolay* says, their Government is the same with that of *Algier*; that this Part of the Sea is full of Rocks and Mountains, and subject to dangerous Whirlwinds, but they are soon over; and that the Town lies at the Bottom of a Mountain and a great Rock. He adds, that there are Multitudes of strange Mice here, whose Piss is venomous.

3. *Temendust*, or *Metafuz*: The *Sansons* place it on the same Coast, Long. 24 $\frac{2}{3}$. Lat. 33. 9. about 22 Miles E. of *Algier*. *Leo* says, 'tis the safest Harbour on the Coast of *Algier*, and that the Town was destroyed by the *Goths*, and great Part of the Wall of *Algier* built of its Stones. Some think it the *Custonium* of *Ptolomy*. The *Sansons* say, 'tis the *Iomnium Municipium* of the Ancients. *Dapper* places it near a Cape of its own Name, W. of the River *Huet Icer*.

4. *Sasa*, anciently *Tipassus*. *Dapper* says, some call it Old *Algier*, because that City was built out of its Ruins. It was once a Bishoprick, and contain'd above 3000 Houses. He places it W. of *Metafuz*, near the River *Hued Harax*. They pretend that in 489, when *Cyrola* Patriarch of the *Arians* was Bishop of this Place under *Hunmerick* K. of the *Vandals*, he caus'd the Tongues of those that refus'd to turn *Arians* to be cut out.

5. *Col des Mudejares*, was built (says *Dapper*) in 1550, 3 Miles E. of the River *Safran*, which the *Sansons* call *Selef*. The Inhabitants are *Mudejares* or *Mudechares*, *Tagarrins* or *Moors*, expelled from *Castile*, *Grenada*, and *Andalusia*, or *Targatans* from the Kingdom of *Valencia*. Between this and *Algier* there's the Harbour of *Cassines*, whither the Ships retire in bad Weather. Here are the Ruins of an ancient Town call'd *Thor*. The *Sansons* place *Col des Mudejares*, which they say is the ancient *Tigisi*, about 8 or 10 Leag. from *Algier*. *Dapper* adds, that there's another Town called *Marca Duben* two Miles from this Harbour, and a Mile from *Algier*, where the Inhabitants of the latter feed their Cattle. Betwixt this and *Algier* lies the Plain of *Mottygia*. *Dapper* says, 'tis 4 Leagues long, and 10 broad, and a little River runs thro' it called *Hued Harax*, which drives several Mills in its Passage from Mount

Mount *Atlas*, and falls here into the *Mediterranean*. *Leo* says, the Plain is 45 Miles long, and almost 30 broad.

6. *Algier*. The *Sanfons* place it on the Coast, W. of the River *Sefaya*, Long. 24. 14. Lat. 33. 10. above 100 Miles W. of *Bugia*, and almost 120 S.E. of *Tenez*. *Moll* places it on the E. Side of the R. *Safran*, Lat. 37. Long. 22 $\frac{1}{2}$. but 60 Miles from *Bugia*, 88 from *Tenez*, and in a direct Line betwixt both. *Leo* says, 'tis also called *Al-Gesfir* or *Gezeira*, i. e. an Island, because it lies so near the Isles of *Majorca*, *Minorca*, and *Jeniza*. 'Twas formerly called *Mesgana*, because founded by an *African* Family of that Name. In his Time it had 4000 Families, and every Trade lived apart. It has noble strong Walls and sumptuous Buildings, such as Temples, Baths, and Inns; but the noblest of all is the Temple upon the Shore. The Waves of the Sea beat against Part of the Town-Wall, upon which there's a very pleasant Walk. The Gardens in the Suburbs, especially on the W. Side, yield all Sorts of Fruit, and the Town is serv'd with Water from the neighbouring River. There's a fine Prospect of fruitful Plains on the S. Side. Some say, the *Romans* call'd this Town *Julia Casaria*, in Honour of *Julius Caesar*, and much adorn'd it. *Paul* the Deacon affirms, that in the *Vandals* Time 'twas demolished by a Tyrant, but rebuilt soon after. *Marmol* places it on the Side of a very high Mountain. The Walls are encompassed with a deep Ditch and Bulwarks, rise gradually along the Side of the Hills, and run to a Point upon the S. End, where there's a Castle, which is seen a great Way at Sea. About a quarter of a League further upon the Ascent, and towards the E. there's another with 4 Bastions built by the *Turks*, who have a Governor and 300 Men there. The Houses of the City are well built, begin at the Sea-Side, and rise gradually upon the Hill in regular Streets one above another, which makes a noble Prospect. Upon the Land-Side 'tis encompassed with Rocks. Near the Harbour there was a small Island, upon which *Ferdinand* King of *Spain* built a Fort call'd *Pegnon*; but *Salharræes*, in order to render the Harbour safer and larger, join'd it afterwards to the Continent by a Peer, built with the Stone brought from the Ruins of *Mesafus*.

He adds, that 'twas the richest City of all *Africa* in his Time, and that the Customs of the Port amounted to more than all the Revenues of the Kingdom of *Tremisen*. *Nicelay* says, its Form is almost triangular, that 'tis broad towards the Sea, and runs up the Mountain to a very narrow Point. They have a great many Baths and Cooks Shops. Below the chief Mosque which stands on the Shore there's an Arsenal, into which they haul up the Gallies, &c. to refit. They have two Markets a Week, frequented by the People of the adjacent Country. Provisions are extreme cheap here, and they have hot Houses for hatching of Eggs like the Ovens at *Grand Cairo*. They shoe their Camels and Oxen, and ride them about the Streets; and some of the *Moors* ride with a String in the Beast's Mouth instead of a Bridle, and no Saddle. The *Moors* here are generally naked, except their Privities. The Women, Maids and Slaves, wash their Linen in the Sea. They wear Bracelets of false Stones set in Latten about their Necks and Arms. When they march to the Field of Battle, they fasten to their Left Hand a crooked Dagger, which they use in close Engagements. Most of the *Turks* here are Renegado Christians, given to Sodomy, and all manner of beastly Vices. The Ditches about the Fort on the farthest Mountain are two Spears deep, and 17 Fathom broad, except on the N. where they are only 7 Fathom. There were 9 great Brass Guns and 18 others in it, with a Well of good Water, and a Windmill near it, besides another without the Gates. The usual Garrison is but 30 Soldiers. Here are the Heads of some Springs which supply the City with Water. *John Rawlins*, in his Account of the Recovery of the Exchange of *Bristol* from the *Algerines*, says, That when the Pyrates bring any Prisoners ashore, the *Bashia* chuses every 8th Man for himself, and the rest are sent to Market. The Officers beat or prick them with Goads. If they won't turn *Turks*, or submit to their Filthiness, they lay them on the Ground, where they beat them till they bleed at Nose and Mouth; and if they still prove constant, dash out their Teeth, prick their Tongues, and try many other Tortures. Sometimes they lay them at full Length in a sort of Grave, and threaten to starve 'em

if they do not turn. He adds, that the *Turks* have always a Prophet on board their large Vessels when they put out to Sea, where he divines every 2d or 3d Night; and upon the Sight of any Christian Ships, they first command a deep Silence in the Ship, and then all the Company give a Shriek. Sometimes they take in the Sails, and hoise them out again presently, as the Conjuror pleases. Then they lay a Cutlas and two Arrows on a Cushion, one for the *Turks*, and the other for the Christians; after which he reads, and one of the Company takes the two Arrows in his Hand by their Heads. If the Arrow of the Christians comes over the *Turks* Arrow-head, it foretels the latter will be taken, and so *vice versa*. They cause a Child or some Stranger to take up the Cutlas, and observe whether it lie upon the same Side. The Conjuror also writes down the Sayings of Lunaticks in a Book, and grovels upon the Ground as if he whisper'd to the Devil.

To return to the Town; *Coppin* says, it contain'd no less in his Time than 80000 Inhabitants, was above a League in Compass, and lay in the Form of a Parallelogram. The Walls are flank'd with 8 great Bastions, of which 5 have Casemates, and 3 are square. Four are plac'd at the 4 Corners of the Walls, and the other 4 in the Middle between them, and they are defended by 30 strong Towers erected between the Bastions. Twenty nine of those Towers are square, and terminate in a Platform, with Battlements on their Parapets. There's one which is an Octogon, and cover'd like a Steeple. Without these Fortifications there's a deep large Ditch, with a good Glacis of Free-stone on the Town-Side. There's a Wall of the same Stone on the Side of the Counterscarp, with a good Cover'd-way. Besides the two Castles on the two Heights already mentioned, there's another on the W. Side which has 4 modern Bastions; and for the Security of the Harbour, they have run a great Mole out into the Sea, and planted it with Cannon. They have an incredible Store of Guns and Ammunition within the City and Forts, yet the Corsairs add new Works to it every Day, and spare no Charge to make it as strong by Art as 'tis already by Nature, that nothing but Famine may conquer it. *Coppin* adds, that the

Harbour is but small, and so open to all the N. Winds, that 'tis unsafe in bad Weather. In 1621, Sir *Robert Mansel* was here with several *English* Men of War, and attempted to set Fire to some *Turkish* Vessels in the Mole; but neither the Wind nor Sea favour'd him, so that he miss'd of his Design, but brought off his Ships with little or no Loss. Sir *William Monson* charges those employ'd in this Expedition with ill Management. He says, 'tis impossible to take *Algier* either by Surprise or Siege; that the Harbour cannot hold above 20 Ships; and that there's no Victuals, Powder, Masts, Sails, Ropes, or other Necessaries there for Ships. *Dapper* says, the Town is Four-square; that the Houses are flat roofed; and that the Walls are partly of Brick, and partly of Free-stone, 3400 Paces round at Bottom, and 1800 at Top. They are 12 Foot broad, 30 high in the upper Part of the Town, and 40 in Height towards the Haven. The Ditches were formerly but 6 Foot over, and in most Places full of Dirt and Weeds: But *Arabamet* caus'd them to be dug from the Castle to the Sea, and made them 20 Foot broad, and 7 deep. The Streets are built so narrow to keep off the Heat of the Sun, that there's scarce Room for two Men to go a-breast; but that which runs from the E. Gate to the W. is much wider, tho' 'tis narrow too in some Parts. In this Street, which is 1200 Paces long, and full of Shops on both Sides, is kept the Market for Corn, Bread, Meat, and Fish. There are 6 open Gates belonging to the Town, besides others that are wall'd up. They execute the Christians near the W. Gate, called *Babalouette*, and the *Turks* near that on the E. called *Babason*. The 3d, which lies also in the East Part of the Town, towards the Side which leads to the Emperor's Castle, is call'd the *New Gate*: The 4th, *Alcassava*, and lies over against a Castle of the same Name. The 5th, which looks towards the Sea, is call'd, *The Gate of the Mold*, or the *Divan Gate*; and the 6th is call'd *Babaxira*, or the *Gate of Piscaderia*. At each of these Gates stand 3 or 4 *Turks* with Staves in their Hands, with which they strike such Slaves as pass thro' on the Shoulders for Diversion. They preserve their Water in Cisterns; and in 1611, a Moor who was expelled hither out of Spain found a Way to bring two Aqueducts into the

the Town, which carry Water from above 100 Springs. *Dapper* says, the Houses are almost 15000, built of Brick and Stone, and whiten'd within and without; but they are all very small, and not above one Story. Their Rooms are neatly pav'd with Squares of Brick of several Colours. Every House commonly contains about 5 or 6 Families, and has 4 Galleries at Top, and as many below, which all face the Court in the Middle. Their Doors are as high as the Cieling. All their Gardens, which the *Sanfons* say are 12 or 15000, lie without the Walls. Our Author reckons 18000 within 12 Miles round the Place, and says, they are farm'd out by the Janizaries and *Moors*, who are the Proprietors; to Slaves. The finest Structure here is the Basha's Palace in the Middle of the Town, which is surrounded with two beautiful Galleries one above another, supported by two Rows of Marble Pillars, and it has two Courts, of which the largest is 30 Foot square. Here the Basha treats the Officers of the Divan at *Easter*. The other Court is over against the Palace. There are 6 Prisons here call'd *Bagnio's* for the Slaves, 62 Baths, two of which have fine Rooms pav'd with Marble, and furnish'd with Pipes to convey the Water either hot or cold. There are in the Town 107 Mosques, which lie for most Part along the Shore. Without the Walls on the same Side lies the Mole, in Form of a Semicircle, from the *Divan Gate* to the Point of a small Island, and from the other End of the Island to the Town; and between both there's the Entrance of the Harbour. *Hairedin Barberoffa* caus'd it to be built 6 or 7 Paces broad, and above 100 in Length, to be Proof against the Violence of the Waves, and to make the Harbour within secure. Below the Mole, which extends from the Gate of that Name to the Castle, there's a Stone Key on one Side, and Sands and Rocks on the other. The Mole is defended by a Castle of a Pentagon Figure, built on the Point of the Island, and furnished with Cannon; and on the other Side of the Mouth of the Harbour there are Pieces planted, which they fire in the Night to direct Ships into the Harbour, which *Dapper* says is large enough for a great Number of Ships and Gallies. He reckons 6 Forts within and without the Walls: The first, he says, lies Eastward, upon a

Hill which commands the whole Town, and is called the Emperor's Gate, because founded by *Charles V.* when he besieg'd *Algier* in 1540; but 'twas finished afterwards by the Citizens, and is defended by a Garrison of 100 Men. 2. The New Castle, called the Heptagon, because of its Form, lies between the above-mentioned Castle and the Town, 150 Paces from the latter. 3. The Old Fort, called *Alcassave*, built on a Height within the City. Its Walls make Part of those of the Town on the S. E. Side; but 'tis separated from them by a Wall on the other Side. 'Tis very large, and has two sorry Towers, where dwell some Janizaries, who give Notice of the Approach of Ships and of their Number by a Signal. 4. The Fort of *Babalouetta*, built upon the Point of a Rock near the Sea in 1596. 5. A little Bulwark over against the Mole Gate near the great Casern, where 5 Field-Pieces are planted to defend the Mouth of the Harbour. 6. The Mole Castle above mentioned, where are 5 Pieces of Cannon; and, 7. A little Tower or Battery at the Entrance of the Harbour, where some *Moors* keep Guard. He adds, that there are 66 Brass Cannon upon the Mole, but few of them charg'd, and planted there only as a Trophy of the Victory which the *Algerines* gain'd over the Inhabitants of *Tunis* in 1617. He says, there are 6 Bulwarks; 1. That of *Babason*, which lies near the Sea on the E. Side. 2. That of the Renegadoes, which is more to the S. 3. and 4. The two Bulwarks of the Castle of *Alcassavee*, one at the E. Point of the said Citadel, and the other on the W. 5. That of *Arrais* towards the N. and, 6. That of *Babalouetta* towards the W. Point of the Town facing the Sea. Yet *Dapper* observes, that the Town is encompassed with so many Hills which command it, that it might be easily batter'd to the Ground on all Sides but from the Sea. There are no Inns, &c. in *Algier*, so that all *Turks* and *Moors* who pass that Way are obliged to lodge among their Acquaintance, and the Christian Merchants lodge among the *Jews*, who have their Quarter apart from the Town, keep Rooms ready furnish'd, and Houses to let. Instead of Inns, there's a great many Taverns and Cooks Shops, where the Christian Slaves sell Bread, Wine, and all Manner of Provisions for their Masters.

sters. *Turks*, *Moors*, and *Renegadoes*, come hither to divert themselves without Distinction; and thô *Mahomet's* Law forbids the Use of Wine, yet they are drunk every Day.

The Suburbs, says *Dapper*, were formerly very great, and in 1573 contain'd almost 2000 Houses; but when the *Spaniards* were coming, they burnt them down, and have not rebuilt them: But there remain 30 or 40 Houses without the Gate of *Babason*, which serve as Stables for the Camels of the *Arabs* and *Moors* who come with Provisions. The *Basha's* Tombs lie without the Gate of *Babalouetta*, are built round, and arch'd over like Chappels. The Sepulchres of the other *Turks* are in the same Plain, every one by themselves, and most of them adorned with a Stone Cover. The *Sansons* say, here are 100 Oratories or Cells of the *Morabouts* or *Turkish* Hermits, which the Women devoutly frequent every *Friday*, and almost as many publick Schools. *Heylin* and the first *English* Edition of *Morery's* great Dictionary say, that *Charles V.* when he besieg'd this Town in 1541 with 370 Ships and Gallies, 3000 Foot, and 2000 Horse, lost by Shipwreck in the Harbour at one time 140 Ships, besides an infinite Number of small Boats and Gallies, with a great many excellent Pieces of Ordnance, above half his Men, and such a Number of gallant *Spanish* Horses for Service, that the Breed had like to have been lost. That in 1655, the *English* under Admiral *Blake* enter'd the Harbour, and burnt their Ships: That in 1668, Sir *Thomas Allen* forced them to a Peace, which they broke in 1669: That in 1670, Captain *Beach* forc'd 7 of their Men of War ashore, two of which they burnt themselves, and he the other five, and releas'd 250 Christian Captives; and that in July 1688, a *French* Fleet of 48 Gallies, under the Marshal d'*Estrees*, threw 10420 Bombs into the Town; by which he destroy'd two Thirds of it, and 5 of their Ships, which so enrag'd the *Algerines*, that they shot off the *French* Consul at the Mouth of a Cannon, and that the *French* in Revenge shot 3 *Algerine* Officers to Death, and drove their Bodies ashore upon a Hurdle of Planks, that the Inhabitants might see them: But the Year after the *French* made a dishonourable Peace with 'em, to have their Assistance against the *English*

and *Dutch*. *Bohan's* Edition of *Heylin* says, That of 13 Days which they had between 1642 and 1672, but one dy'd in his Bed, the rest being murder'd in Tumults; and that the *Divan*, which consisted formerly of 1000 Persons, is now reduced to 48, which has made the Government much more easy and peaceable. He observes, that the *English* and *Dutch* might easily ruin the City; but 'tis said to be their Interest to preserve it, because their *Pirates* take the small Vessels of other Nations, which would otherwise spoil their Trade in the *Mediterranean*. *Marmol* says, That the Customs of this Port amounted in his Time to above a Million of Gold per Annum, and that all the rich Commodities of *Barbary*, *Numidia*, *Libya*, and *Negroland*, are brought hither by Land upon Camels. The *Sansons* tell us 'tis so rich, that Cardinal *Ximenes* said it had Wealth enough to conquer *Africa*. They have three remarkable Pieces of Cannon, one with 7 Barrels, taken at *Fex*; another very large one taken on board a *Maltese* Galley, and another much larger taken on board a *Portuguese* Ship coming from the *Indies*. This City was formerly a Bishop's See, Suffragan to *Casarea*. The *Sansons* confute those who say, that it answers to the ancient *Julia Casarea*, and assign it rather to *Tenez* City.

T E N E Z Province.

The *Sansons* extend it along the *Mediterranean*, from Long. 21. to 23. 40. and from Lat. 31. 20. to 34. almost 160 Miles from N. to S. and about 140 from E. to W. on the Coast; but it grows narrower towards the Frontier of *Tegorarin*, where they make it but 54 Miles in Breadth. *Moll* reckons it 100 Miles along the Coast, and 138 towards the S. Frontier, and so narrow in the Middle, that 'tis not above 45 Miles broad. He extends it on the S. from Long. 19 $\frac{1}{4}$. to 22 $\frac{1}{2}$. and from Lat. 30 $\frac{1}{4}$. to 37. so that according to him, 'tis 375 Miles from N. to S. They bound it on the E. with *Algier*, on the N. with the *Mediterranean*, on the W. with *Telenfin*, and on the S. with the Mountains of *Atlas*, which part it from *Tegorarin* in *Biledulgerid*. The *Sansons* make the River *Mirom* its E. Boundary, and extend it to another call'd *Setefus* on the W. but *Moll* bounds it with the River *Safran* on the E.

as far as the Middle of the Province. The *Sanfons* say, the Country abounds in Corn and Cattle, Fruits, Honey and Wax. *Gramaye* informs us, that it formerly extended from the Mouth of the River *Chilef*, E. of the Town of *Mostagan*, to the River *Chinalaf*, which falls into the Sea near *Mirom*; but that 'tis now contracted within lesser Bounds, because *Sargel* and *Miliana*; which *Marmol* includes within this Province, are separate Governments.

The chief Mountains here are, 1. *Beni-Abusaid* or *Zatima*. The *Sanfons* place them about Long. 22. and between Lat. 33. and 34. *Dapper* says, it abounds with Barley, and that the Inhabitants make a great deal of Honey and Wax, which, together with their Hides and Skins, they sell to the European Merchants at *Tenez*. 2. Mount *Gueneserus*, which the *Sanfons* place on the W. Side of the Province next to *Telenfin*, between Long. 21. and 22. and Lat. 32. and 33. They say, they can furnish 15 or 16000 Foot, and 2 or 3000 Horse. *Dapper* adds; 'tis a very high craggy Mountain, and that the River *Chilef*, which the *Sanfons* call *Setefus*, rises out of it. There's a great Number of other Springs here, and abundance of Sword-Grass; but the Top is dry. He adds, that the Inhabitants of this and the former Mountains are brutish, but good Soldiers. The *Sanfons* say, this Province has been often subject to the Kings of *Telenfin* and *Algier*, and sometime a separate Kingdom.

The chief Towns here are, 1. *Sercelli*, *Serfel*, or *Sersela*. The *Sanfons* place it near a Bay on the Coast, in the N. E. Corner of the Province, Long. 23 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 33. 20. almost 80 Miles S. E. of *Tenez*. *Moll* makes it but 60 Miles to the E. in Long. 22. Lat. 37. *Leo* says, 'twas built by the Romans, taken by the Goths, and afterwards by the Mahometans. The Romans built a stately Temple here facing the Mediterranean, with the Inside all of Marble. The Wall of the Town is very high, strong, and 3 Miles round. *Coppin* says, that in his Time it thriv'd so much by its Pyracies, that it began to be fortified. *Dapper*, who (as above mentioned) makes this a particular Province, by the Name of *Sargel*, says, 'tis very fruitful; and that the Town, which is suppos'd to be the *Canuceis* of the Ancients, or *Ptolomy's Camichi*, lies 9 Miles E. of *Tenez*,

9 W. from *Algier* by Water, and 6 by Land. The Walls are of Free-stone, and there are the Ruins of the above-mention'd Temple, which the *Arabs* sav'd in the Time of *Cain*, Caliph of *Carouan*, when they destroy'd the City. 'Twas rebuilt in 1492 by the Moors who were expelled hither from *Grenada*. The Ramparts of the Town are planted with Olive Trees, Vines, and Mulberries, where they breed Silk-Worms. The Inhabitants are valiant and ingenious, and maintain themselves by the Manufacture of Silk. He adds, that two small Leagues E. of the Town there's a Mountain which the *Turks* call *Carapula*; the *Moors*, *Girastumar*; and the Christians, *Batallo*; so high, that one may spy a Ship from it 12 Leagues off at Sea. It produces Store of red and white Mulberries.

2. *Meliana*, formerly *Magnana* or *Manliana*, an Inland Town. *Moll* and the *Sanfons* place it on a Mountain near the River *Mirom*, the latter in Long. 23. 20. Lat. 32. 46. 32 Miles S. of *Serfel*, and 90 S. E. of *Tenez*; and the former in Long. 21. Lat. 36 $\frac{1}{4}$. 60 Miles S. W. from *Serfel*, and 57 from *Tenez*. *Marmol* says, it abounds with Springs, Walnuts, Citron and Orange Trees. *Dapper* makes this the Capital of another distinct Province of the same Name, which he bounds with *Algier* on the E. and the Province of *Beni-raxid* on the W. He says, this Town is very large, and was built by the Romans, 3 Miles from *Sargel*, and 9 from *Algier*. It has high Walls and a deep Valley on one Side, and on the other it rises insensibly to the Top of the Mountain. The Houses are very well built, and have most of them a particular Spring. The Inhabitants are chiefly Weavers or Turners, and all of 'em in general but poor.

3. *Brischa*, *Bresch*, or *Breschar*, on the Coast. The *Sanfons* place it Long. 23 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 33. 26. 53 Miles S. E. of *Tenez*. *Marmol* says, 'tis the *Campi Germani* of *Ptolomy*, and was founded by the Romans. The Inhabitants maintain'd their Liberty above 100 Years against the Lords of *Tenez*, till *Barberossa* brought them under the *Turks* in 1534, when he took *Tremisen*. He adds, that the neighbouring Country is well stock'd with Cattle, Corn, Barley, Flax, and Linseed, and produces the best Figs in *Africa*. *Dapper* places it in the Province of *Sargel*, 5 Leagues from *Tenez*. He says,

says, the Walls are a Mile and a half in Compass, and that the Inhabitants are strong and well made, and wear a black Cross painted upon their Hands and Thighs, by Vertue of an ancient Custom, which they have observ'd since the *Gothish* Invasion. The *Sansons* say, here are several *Roman* Antiquities, and that it is the *Icosium* of the Ancients. *Leo* places it in the Kingdom of *Tremisen*, 37 Leagues E. of *Oran*, and 20 W. of *Algier*, and says, most of the Inhabitants are Weavers.

4. *Tenez*, *Tenes*, or *Tenesa*, the Capital of the Province. The *Sansons* place it on the Coast, Long. 22. Lat. 33. 42. almost 120 Miles N. W. of *Algier*, and 92 S. E. of *Oran*: *Moll* Long. 20. 32. Lat. 37. 90 Miles from *Algier*, and about 102 N. E. from *Oran*. *Marmol* places it on the Side of a Mountain, half a League from the Sea, and half-way betwixt *Oran* and *Algier*. He says, the Inhabitants, who are a rustick sort of People, supply *Algier* and other Places with Corn, Barley, Wax, Honey, &c. and that in his Time 'twas dependent on *Algier*, and made a great Addition to its Revenue. He thinks this the *Laguntum*, and *Sanutius* the *Tipasa*, of *Ptolomy*. *Dapper* places it 17 Miles from *Oran* and *Algier*. He says, the *Arabians* who live in the adjacent Country are generous and courageous, and that there's a Castle here, which is the Governor's Palace. The *Sansons*, who as we observ'd before prove this to be the ancient *Julia Casarea*, say, Part of the Town lies in the Plain at the Bottom of a Hill. *Luyts* tells us, the Town is well fortified, and has a good Harbour, which gives Name to the neighbouring Promontory.

5. *Mustugan*, *Mustuganis*, or *Mostagan*. The *Sansons* place it on the same Coast, in the N. W. Corner of the Province, near the Promontory *Inhucum*, Long. 21. 10. Lat. 33. 50. 45 Miles W. of *Tenez*, which *Dapper* makes but 3. *Luyts* says, it lies near the Mouth of the *Setes*, which some suppose to be the same with the *Cartenna* of *Mela*. *Moll* places it in the Kingdom of *Telensin*, at the Mouth of a River which falls into the *Mediterranean*, Long. 19 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 36 $\frac{1}{4}$.

6. *Mezuna*, *Ptolomy's Colonia novi Castris*. *Marmol* says, there are several *Roman* Antiquities and Inscriptions here, and that the Town was ruin'd by the schismatick Caliph

of *Cairouan*. *Dapper* tells us, 'twas built by the *Romans* between *Mostagan* and *Tenes*, 12 Miles from the *Mediterranean*; that 'tis encompassed with strong high Walls, but the Houses are ordinary, and the chief publick Structures are a Citadel, a Palace, and a great Temple, built by the *Romans*. He adds, that the Inhabitants are Shepherds or Weavers of Woollen, and that the Soil abounds in Corn and Pasturage.

The Kingdom of Telensin, Tremizen, or Tremesen.

THE *Sansons* extend it from Long. 18. to 22. and from Lat. 30 $\frac{1}{2}$. to 34. 16. 200 Miles from N. to S. and almost as much where broadest towards the S. *Moll* extends it along the Coast from Long. 17 $\frac{1}{2}$. to 20. about 150 Miles, and from Lat. 31. to 37. 345 Miles from N. to S. *Heylin* makes it 380 Miles from E. to W. but not near so broad. They bound it on the E. with *Tenez*, on the N. with the *Mediterranean*, on the W. with *Fez*, and on the S. with the W. Deserts of *Biledulgerid*. *Marmol* divides this Country into *Tremisen Proper*, *Tenez*, *Algier*, and *Bugia*; *Leo* into the Provinces of *Tenez*, *Algier*, and the Country of the Mountains. He makes the Desert of *Angad* its Western Frontier, and extends it from the Rivers *Zha* and *Mulvia* on the W. to the great River on the E. 380 Miles in Length, and but 25 in Breadth. He says, 'twas possessed for some Time by the *Romans*, and called *Mauretania Casaria*, but return'd again to its ancient Sovereigns, call'd *Bien Habdulgad*, who held it for 300 Years, as the Posterity of *Zeyen* did afterwards for almost 380 Years; but they were often molested by the Kings of *Fez* and *Tunis*. 'Tis subject to the Inroads of the *Arabians*, because it lies so near the *Numidian* Deserts on the S. tho' their Kings have often try'd by great Presents to procure their Friendship, for which Reason 'tis dangerous travelling in this Country; yet our Author says, a great many Merchants reside in it, either because 'tis the Road to *Negroland*, or because it joins to *Numidia*. When *Ferdinand* King of *Spain* took *Oran* and *Mersalcabir*, two of its chief Ports, it provok'd the Inhabitants to dethrone *Abuchemmen*, who was at that Time their

their King, and to prefer another, whom *Heylin* calls *Abuziden*, his Brother, who was afterwards murder'd by *Barberossa*, who conquer'd the whole Kingdom in 1515. In the mean time *Abuchemmen*, with the Assistance of the Emperor *Charles V.* recover'd his Kingdom out of the Hands of *Barberossa*, for which he gave liberal Rewards to the Spanish Officers, and a large Revenue to the Emperor as long as he lived; but *Habdulla* or *Abdalla*, his Brother and Successor, refus'd the Tribute, and put himself under the Protection of *Solyman* the Turk. *Marmol* says, that after his Death, his youngest Son *Hamet* being declared King, the eldest implor'd the Emperor's Aid to restore him to the Throne of his Ancestors, and offer'd the former Terms of Vassalage if it could be accomplished; but the Citizens of *Tremisen* were so disoblig'd by the Ravages of the Spaniards, that they shut the Gates upon him after he was marched out to meet his younger Brother, who approach'd at the Head of an Army; upon which *Hamet* was again declared King, but refused to pay Tribute to the Emperor till 1546, when the Turks of *Algier* having taken Possession of *Tremisen*, he was forced to ask Succours of the Emperor, and to give up his Daughters as Hostages for Performance of Articles. The Spanish Succours arrived accordingly, and restored *Muley Hamet* to his Throne, which he enjoy'd in Peace till his Death; after which his Brother *Muley Hascen* was set up by the Assistance of *Salharræes*, Governor of *Algier*, upon Condition that all the Forts in the Country should be put into his Hands. But the Turks grew so insolent in 4 Years time, that *Muley Hascen* begged the Emperor's Assistance to dislodge them; upon which the Turks perceiving his Design, rais'd the Arabians and Inhabitants against him, and expelled him; since which, the Turks have continu'd Masters of this Country, and made it a Part of the Government of *Algier*. *Dapper* says, 'tis rul'd by an Alcaid sent hither by the Basha.

The Sea-Coast of this Country, says *Leo*, is somewhat woody, and fruitful; but the S. and greater Part of it is dry, barren, mountainous, and uncultivated. *Marmol* says, the Mountains in the W. abound with Corn and Cattle.

The King of this Country is not to be

seen or spoken with by any but his chief Noblemen, who have Offices proportion'd to their Dignity. His Lieutenant, who is the Chief, raises his Armies, and sometimes heads them. The second is chief Secretary; the next is the High Treasurer, then the Almoner, then the Captain of the King's Guard, who draws up the Guard at the Palace Gate as often as the Noblemen are admitted to his Presence. The meaner Officers are, the Master of the King's Stables, the Overseer of his Saddles and Stirrups, and his Chamberlain, who attends only when the King gives Audience to any of his Courtiers, for at other Times his Office is perform'd by the King's Wives, together with some Christian Captives and Eunuchs. Sometimes the King rides out upon a stately Horse with costly Trappings, but is not attended with above 1000 Men, unless it be in Time of War. His Dominions are but meanly peopled, and his chief Revenue arises from the Goods that pass thro' his Country from *Europe* to *Ethiopia*.

Marmol says, their Cities are few, but well situate, and the Citizens live honourably, and drive a great Trade with *Guinea*, *Numbidia*, and other Places. The Arabians in the Deserts live independently, and receive a Pension from the King for their quiet Behaviour; but they side when they please with any Party that bids highest. Their Mountaineers are Men of Valour, and their Arms, Habit, and Way of Living, are better than those of *Mauretania Tingitana*, or *Tangier*, for they are more acquainted with Muskets, and have more Dealings with the Christians; neither are they so bigotted and ill-natur'd as the Mountaineers of *Morocco*. The same Author says, that formerly the Kings of *Tremisen* liv'd very magnificently, and that they were the ancientest and most considerable Princes of *Africa*, but never expos'd themselves to publick View except on *Fridays*, when they went to their Temples. They never kept a standing Army but in Time of War, because their Revenues were so small, that three Years Income was not enough for one Year's War. The Customs were the chief Article of the Revenue, which (says our Author) they screw'd beyond the Precepts of their Religion; for whereas the first Caliphs demanded only Two and a half per Cent. upon all Goods,

Goods, and 10 per Cent. if they belong'd to Jews or Christians, these Princes pleading Poverty, and the Necessity they were under of maintaining a War with the Christians, laid several Imposts upon the Import and Export of Goods; so that when the *Venetian* Gallies us'd to unload at *Oran*, their Revenue amounted to above 600000 Crowns a Year, one Half whereof was paid to the Troops, and the other defray'd the Charge of the King's Household; and if there was any Surplusage, 'twas laid up to supply the occasional Necessities of War. *Dapper* divides this Country into several petty Governments, of which hereafter, and says, 'tis called *Telenfin* by Corruption from the *Arabick* *Telimicen*. *Heylin* says, 'twas the ancient *Massesyli* under King *Syphax*, and that the Soil and Air is much the same with the rest of *Barbary*. He observes, that the ancient Inhabitants of this Kingdom when a Roman Province were, besides the *Massesyli*, the *Herpiditani*, *Taladusi*, *Thalussii*, *Malchubii*, *Maccurebi*, *Chittua*, and others of as little Note; that the Kingdom was transferred from *Syphax* to *Massinissa* King of the *Numidians*, in whose Line it continu'd till the Death of *Jugurtha*; that 'twas bestow'd afterwards upon the Kings of *Mauretania*, and made a Roman Province by the Emperor *Claudius*; that the *Vandals* won it from the *Romans*, and lost it to the *Saracens*; and that at last growing into many Distractions, and every Sultan or Governor shifting for himself, it became a Kingdom, as we have already mention'd.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Mazagran*, *Mesgran*, or *Mazagant*. The *Sansons* place it on the Coast, in the S. E. Corner of the Province, Lat. 33. 47. Long. 21. 40 Miles S. E. of *Oran*, on the other Side of a large Bay, and almost 120 E. of the Capital of *Telenfin*. *Marmol* thinks it the *Portus Decorum* of *Ptolomy*, near the Mouth of the River *Chilef*, and two small Leagues from *Horan*. *Dapper* places it in the Province of *Mostagan*, and says, 'tis encompassed with high Walls, and fortified with a good Castle. The Inhabitants are Shepherds, but very wicked. In this Quarter he likewise places Mount *Magarava*, which runs 9 Leagues along the Shore, and takes its Name from a Branch of the *Bereberes*, descended from the *Zeneti* and *Magarava*, by whom 'tis inhabi-

ted, who he says wander about with their Tents like the *Arabs*, and speak false *Arabick*. He adds, that they pay the *Basha* of *Algier* 12000 Crowns per Annum.

2. *Beni-Arax* or *Araz*. The *Sansons* place it in the Inland Country among the Mountains of *Guanjera*, S. of *Mazagran*. *Marmol* says, 'tis the same with *Ptolomy's* *Villeburgum*. *Dapper* and the *Sansons* make it the Capital of a mountainous Province called *Beni Araxid* or *Beni Razid*, which is 11 Miles long, and 5 broad, hilly on the N. but plain towards the S. The City contains above 2000 Houses, but has no Walls. The Soil is good, and produces much Corn, Jujubes, Figs, and several other Sorts of Fruit, with abundance of Honey, and great and small Cattle. The Inhabitants are Labourers, Husbandmen, Gardiners, and Shepherds. The *Sansons* call it the *Bunobora* of *Ptolomy*, which *Dapper* assigns to *Batha*.

3. *Batha* or *Baltha*, another Town in the same Province, which the *Sansons* place on the W. Side of the R. *Mina*, Long. 20. 27. Lat. 32. 46. above 60 Miles S. of *Oran*, and 94 S. E. of *Tremisen*: *Mol* Lat. 35 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 19 103 Miles from *Oran*, and 63 E. of *Tremisen*. *Leo* says, it lies in a fair Plain, noted for the Residence of a famous Hermit, who paid no Taxes, and had 500 Horse, 10000 small Cattle, 2000 Oxen, reap'd 8000 Bushels of Corn per Annum, and had 4 or 5000 Ducats sent him every Year from divers Parts of the World. He maintain'd 500 Disciples at his own Charge, only to read a few Prayers every Day, for which Reason they came to him from all Parts of *Africa* and *Asia*, and return'd home again after they were instructed in some Ceremonies. He had about 100 Tents always ready pitch'd for Strangers, Shepherds, and his own Family, and had 4 Wives, with a great many Women Slaves finely dress'd, as had also his Sons; so that his whole Family amounted to 500 Persons. He was much respected by the King of *Tremisen* and the *Arabians*, and was a great Admirer of Magick, but did not practise it. *Dapper* says, his Name was *Cena*, and that therefore the *Arabians* call'd this the Plain of *Cena*; that the Town, which he places but two Miles from *Oran*, was once very populous, till 'twas destroyed by the Mountaineers of *Gueneferis* in a Civil War; and that in 1520, this

this Hermit chose the Ruins of the Town for his Habitation. He makes this the *Bunobora* of *Ptolomy*, but the *Sansons* his *Vaga*. *Heylin* says, 'twas formerly a great City.

4. *Elmohascar* or *Moascar*, in the same Province according to *Dapper*. The *Sansons* take it for the *Victoria* of the Ancients, and place it on a River that falls into the *Mediterranean*, almost 60 Miles S. W. from *Oran*, Long. 19 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 33. 10. *Dapper* says, the Viceroy has a Fort here, defended by a Garrison and some Cannon to keep the People in Awe, and to raise Contribution. It lies in Form of a Village. The Castle was founded by *Almansor*, the Lieutenant of *Mahomet Benzeyen*, and finished by the *Turks*, who made it the Seat of the Viceroy of *Algier*.

5. *Calaa*, or *Calat Haoara*, another Town in the same Province. The *Sansons* take it for the ancient *Urbara*, and place it on a Mountain, Long. 19 47. Lat 33 $\frac{1}{2}$. about 40 Miles S. W. from *Oran*. *Dapper* says, its ancient Name was *Atoa*, and that 'tis encompassed with a good Wall, and built in Form of a Citadel between two high Mountains.

6. *Oran*, *Orano*, or *Horan*. The *Sansons* place it at the Bottom of a Bay on the Coast, in Long. 20. 16. Lat. 34. 80 Miles S. E. of *Telenfin*: *Moll* Long. 18 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 36 $\frac{1}{2}$. 120 M. from *Telenfin* or *Tremisen*; and *Marmol* in Long. 12. 30. *Leo* says, 'tis a famous Sea-Port, built long ago by the *Africans*, 140 Miles from *Tremisen*. It has many sumptuous Temples, Colleges, Hospitals, Baths, Inns, and high impregnable Walls, with a fine Plain on one Side, and Mountains on the other. The Inhabitants were in his Time a frank sort of People, most of them Weavers or Drapers, and the rest liv'd upon their Estates. They make all their Bread of Barley, because the adjacent Country yields little Corn. It was formerly much frequented by the Merchants of *Catalonia* and *Genoa*. The Citizens always quarrell'd with the K. of *Tremisen*, and instead of accepting his Governor, chose one of their own Burgomasters to be the chief Judge of Civil and Criminal Causes. Their Merchants fitted out several Brigantines at their own Charge, which committed so many Piracies upon the Coast of *Catalonia*, *Genoa*, *Majorca*, and *Minorca*, that *Oran* was crowded with Christian Captives: Upon which *Fer-*

dinand King of Spain sent Cardinal *Ximenes* with an Army of *Biscayners* in 1509 to besiege it; and while the *Moors* sallied out of the Town, his Soldiers got in, and with the Loss of no more than 30 Men, put most of the Inhabitants to the Sword, kill'd 4000 *Moors*, and deliver'd above 20000 Slaves. Since this, *Marmol* says, they have always repuls'd the *Turks*, who attack'd it particularly in 1556, when 2000 repuls'd 12000 with great Loss. He adds, that 'tis one of the ancientest and richest Cities in all *Mau-retania Casarea*, was called *Guaharan* by the *Africans*, and *Unica Colonia* by the *Romans*; and that they have made it a very useful Frontier: But *Dapper* says, 'tis not so considerable as formerly. He makes this Town the Capital of a Marquisate of the same Name, bounded on the W. with the Province of *Haresgol*, and on the E. with that of *Tenez* and *Sargel*. Some think 'tis the *Quiza* or *Cuisa* of *Pliny*, and the *Buisa* or *Vuisa* of *Ptolomy*, and others his *Icosium*. 'Tis called *Madura*, and *Ara* or *Auran*, from whence *Dapper* thinks came the Name of *Oran*. He places it over against *Cartagena* in Spain, and 15 or 20 Leagues from *Telenfin*, because the Path which leads to it over the Mountains is crooked. He says, the Town lies partly in a Plain, and partly on the Ascent of a Hill, and that 'tis washed on one Side by the Sea, and on the other by small Brooks. The Streets are straight, the Houses ill built and scatter'd, and the Harbour expos'd to all Sorts of Winds; but the City Walls are very good. When it was in the Height of its Grandeur, it contain'd 6000 fair Houses, and (as *Heylin* says) 10000 Families. *Dapper* adds, that it has still a fine Palace belonging to the Governor, with a Town-House, Mosques, Convents, and Hospitals. The *Sansons* say, 'twas once the Residence of the *Gothick* Kings; that 'tis now a Bishoprick, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Toledo* in Spain; and that there are other Castles and Mountains within its Jurisdiction, where there are good Garrisons. *Heylin* says, 'twas first taken by the *Spaniards* under *Peter* of *Navarre* in 1506 or 1507. They reinforc'd the Garrison in 1687, and beat off the *Moors*, who besieg'd it in December 1688. *Natalis Comes* places it over against *Barcelona*, and not near the Streights of *Gibraltar*; but *Heylin*

sets it 3 Degrees more to the W. than the former, and 300 *Italian Miles* E. of the latter. The *Nubian Geographer* places it three Stations N. of *Tremisen*, over against *Almaria*, at the Distance of two Days Sail, or 35 Leagues, and 204 Miles or 30 *English Leag.* W. of *Tenes*. He adds, that in his Time Corn was transported hence to the Coasts of *Spain*; that the Harbour is larger and safer two Miles off than at the Gates; and that a River from the Continent supplied the Inhabitants with Drink.

7. *Marsalquibir, Marsalquivir, Mersalcabir, or Marselchabira*. The *Sanfons* place it among Mountains, at the Bottom of another Bay on the same Coast, Long. 19. 50. Lat. 33. 49. above 20 Miles S. W. of *Oran*, and almost 60 N. E. of *Telenfin*: *Moll* Long. 18 $\frac{1}{4}$. Lat. 36 $\frac{1}{4}$. about the same Distance from *Oran*, but 105 Miles from *Telenfin*. *Leo* says, the Name signifies a great Haven, and that a vast Number of Ships may ride safe here in the greatest Storm; so that he questions whether there's the like in the whole World. He adds, that the *Venetian Merchants*, upon the Approach of a Storm, always us'd to put in here, and send their Goods to *Oran* in other Vessels; and that 'twas taken by the *Marquis de Comarez* in 1505 for *K. Ferdinand*, as well as *Oran*. *Heylin* says, 'twas taken by *Peter* of *Navarre*. *Dapper* places it but a League W. from that City, on the other Side of a small Gulph, in the Province of *Mostagan*, and thinks it the *Portus Magnus* mentioned by *Ptolomy* in *Mauretania Caesariensis*.

8. *Ned Roma*. The *Sanfons* place it on the E. Side of a River near its Influx into the *Mediterranean*, 55 Miles S. W. of *Oran*, and 27 E. of *Telenfin*, in Lat. 19. 10. Long. 33. 40. Historians say, the Name signifies *New Rome* or *like Rome*, because it every Way resembles that City. *Leo* says, 'twas built by the *Romans* upon a large Plain 12 Miles from the *Mediterranean*; but the Ruins of their Buildings are scarce visible. The Wall is still standing, and some Places of the Town were rebuilt not long before our Author's Time, and pretty well inhabited, especially by Weavers of Cotton-Cloth, who are Tax-free. 'Tis encompassed with fruitful Trees; and a great many Gardens planted with Trees that bear the *Carobs*, a Fruit like *Cassia Lignea*, which the Inhabitants in the

Suburbs feed upon. Some say, 'tis the *Salemia* which *Ptolomy* places Long. 12. 10. Lat. 33. 20. *Dapper* puts it in the Province of *Humanbar* or *Hunaim*, in a Plain 3 M. from the Sea, and a League from the Great *Atlas*.

9. *Tebecrit* or *Tebocrit*. The *Sanfons* place it on the same River as *Ned Roma*, but on the other Side, and nearer its Mouth, Long. 19. 9. Lat. 33. 50. 55 Miles N. W. of *Oran*, and 23 S. E. of *Telenfin*. *Dapper* places it in the same Province with *Ned Roma*, two Miles from thence, and at the Foot of a craggy Mountain, over against the Town of one. *Heylin* says, 'tis chiefly inhabited by Weavers.

10. *Haresgol, Aresgol, or Fesue*, a River and Town of the same Name, which the *Sanfons* place on the Coast, in Lat. 33. 51. Long. 18. 48. 33 Miles W. of *Oran*, and 13 Miles N. of *Telenfin*. We took Notice of the River formerly in our General Account of the Rivers of this Country. *Marmol* says, the Town was built upon a high Rock, almost encompassed with the Sea, and was the Metropolis of *Tremisen* before destroy'd by the schismatick Caliph of *Cayroan*. *Almanfor* rebuilt it afterwards, because 'twas a convenient Post for the Passage of his Armies; but 'twas destroy'd again by the *Almoravides*, rebuilt a second time by the *Almohades*, and at last (says our Author) finally ruin'd by the *Benemerini's*, and its Fall gave Rise to the great City of *Tremisen*. He adds, that this was *Ptolomy's Siga Colonia*, and that most Authors agree that 'tis the ancient *Cirta* so often mentioned in the *Roman History*. *Dapper* makes it the Capital of a Province of its own Name between *Humanbar* and *Horan*, and the Seat of its Governor, and says, it belong'd formerly to that of *Tremisen*, was taken and sack'd by *Peter* Count of *Navarre* in 1570, but rebuilt afterwards by the *Arabians*, who now live there by the Permission of the *Turks*, that have a Garrison in its Citadel. He adds, that there's a narrow crooked Path which leads over the Rocks on the S. Side.

11. *Hunain* or *Humanbar*, a Sea-Port. *Dapper* places it over against *Almeria* in *Grenada*, and makes it the Capital of the Province of that Name, which he says is the most West Country of *Algier*, bounds with the Provinces of *Fez*, *Haresgol*, and *Horan*, and produces Cotton, Flax, Figs, Apples, Cherries, Fen-

Fennugreek, Citrons, Pomegranates, Peaches, Olives, Melons, Oranges, Lemons, Wheat and Barley, and has two Mountains, viz. *Tabara*, within two Leagues of *Ned Roma*, and *Tarara* or *Gualhusu*, a high craggy Mountain, where there are Mines of Iron. *Ruscel* thinks this City the *Urbara*, and *Gramaye* the *Siga*, of *Ptolomy*. *Marmol* calls it one, and says, the *Venetian* Merchants us'd to touch here in their Way to *Tremisen* for Cotton, Linen, &c. but in 1533, the Emperor *Charles V.* laid it in Ashes for harbouring the Corsairs that infested the Spanish Coast. Our Author did not live to see it rebuilt, but adds, that it stood near the Mountain where were the Iron Mines; and that there's a Cape here of the same Name, which *Ptolomy* calls the Great Cape, and places Long. 11. 30. and Lat. 35. *Gramaye* says, 'twas repeopled afterwards; that the Harbour is small, defended by two Towers on each Side; that it has strong Walls, especially towards the Sea; and that the Houses are fair and commodious, built with Stones of various Colours, and furnish'd each with a Well of fresh Water, and Bow-ers made by their Vines. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 33. 53. Long. 18. 32. above 80 Miles W. of *Oran*, and 20 N. W. of *Telen-sin*. They say, some call it *Uunhaim*; that it's the ancient *Artifiga*, and has a good Harbour.

12. *Telenfin*, *Tremesen*, or *Tremizen*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 33. 40. Long. 18. 49. on the River *Tefsifus*, about 12 Miles from its Influx into the *Mediterranean*. *Moll*, Lon. 17 $\frac{2}{3}$. Lat. 34 $\frac{2}{3}$. almost 60 Miles from the Coast. *Leo* gives the following Account of it: 'Tis a great City, the Seat of their Kings, and was once very well govern'd. It held out 7 Years Siege against *Joseph* King of *Fez*, during which the Citizens being almost famish'd, petition'd their King to surrender; but he shewing them that Horse-Flesh and Barley was his own Fare, they were satisfied; and the next Day resolv'd to fall out upon the Enemy, and King *Joseph* being kill'd in the mean time by one of his Men, it put the Camp of the Besiegers into a Confusion, so that they were easily defeated. About 40 Years after, *Abalhesen* King of *Fez* built a Town within two Miles W. of this City, by which Means he took it, and carried their King to *Fez*, where his Head

was cut off, and his Corps thrown upon a Dunghill. But after the Declension of the *Marin* Family, the Inhabitants of this Town were augmented to 12000 Families. Its Buildings are not so stately as those of *Fez*; but every Trade has a separate Division. It has many fine Mosques, besides 5 magnificent Colleges, a great many Inns, and several handsome Baths; but their Water is scarcer than at *Fez*: And though there are many Conduits in the City, yet their Springs, which are not far without the Wall, may easily be stopp'd by an Enemy. Great Part of it is inhabited by Jews, distinguish'd from the others by their Turbans. They were formerly very rich, but now extream poor since they were robb'd of all they had at the Death of *Abuhabdilla* in 1517. The Wall is very strong, with 5 great Gates upon it, and a Guard of Soldiers and Custom house Officers at each. The King's Palace on the S. Side has two Gates, one towards the Fields, and the other towards the Town, where stands the Captain of the Guard. 'Tis very large, encompass'd with high Walls, and adorn'd with Fountains and Gardens. That Part of the City is inhabited by Jews, Lawyers, and Notaries, besides a great many Students and Professors, who have Allowances from the Colleges. Our Author divides the Citizens into Four Classes, viz. the Tradesmen, who live a secure and merry Life; the Merchants, who are just, generous, and genteel, and deal for the most part with the Negroes; the Soldiers, who are brave handsome Fellows, and allow'd 3 *Italian* Ducats and a half per Month; and the Scholars, who live meanly while they are Students; but after obtaining the Doctor's Degree, are prefer'd to be Professors, Notaries, or Priests. He adds, That there are several charming Seats in this Part of the Country, whither the Gentry retire in the Summer, diversified with delicate Pastures, Fountains, and all Sorts of Fruits, especially Almonds, Peaches, Melons, Citrons, and Figs; which last they dry in the Summer, and keep till Winter.

Marmol says, *Ptolomy* calls this Town *Ten-rifi*, or *Temifi*, and the Natives *Telemissen*, or *Tlemisan*; and that before the Decay of *Aresgol* 'twas only a Sort of Fortrefs to curb the Inhabitants of the Deserts. 'Tis situate
upon

upon a fine Plain, and its Streets and Houses are very regular, which made the Kings of *Tremisen* chuse it for their Residence. The Government of it is much like that of *Fez*. Its Merchants import from *Guinea*, *Tibar*, *Gold*, *Ambergreece*, *Musk*, *Civet*, &c. and commonly get Estates in two or three Voyages. Their Manufactures are rich Tapestry, Calsocks, Jackets, and Mantles, so fine, that some are not above 10 Ounces Weight; besides the best Harness and Furniture for Horses that is made in *Africa*; by which Means they earn a handsome Livelihood. Their Habit, Diet, Festivals, and other Customs are the same with those of *Fez*.

Dapper makes it the Capital of a particular Province of the same Name, places it 5 Miles S. of the *Mediterranean*, and says, 'tis built in an oval Form. The Walls are of Freestone, 40 Cubits high, and fortified with good Towers. There are Drawbridges at the Gates, and there is a great Castle of modern Building, with several Apartments, Halls, and Gardens, for the Janizaries. Their Colleges are of a square Italian Structure. It had 150 Mosques; but there remain no more than 8 considerable ones, with each a Tower of the *Dorick* Order, and adorned with Marble Columns. There are also but 4 great Baths left out of 160, with two Hospitals, one for the *Venetians*, and another for the *Genoese*; 4 for the *Moors*, and 6 for Strangers; whereas there were formerly 36. The Streets are spacious; and there are 10 fair Markets, encompassed with Merchants Shops, to which the Country People bring their Commodities twice a Week. Their Houses are larger and handsomer than those of *Algier*, and most of them have Gardens planted with all Sorts of Fruit-Trees, and adorn'd with Arbours of Vines. In the Time of *Abu Texisien* it contain'd 6000 Houses, 16000 in the Year 1000, 20000 in 1200, and in 1562, 25000: But *Dapper* observes, that the Cruelty of the *Turks*, who have made divers of the Merchants retire to *Fez*, and the several Wars it has sustained, have greatly lessen'd the Number of the Inhabitants. The *Jews* had 10 Synagogues here, and those scarce enough for them, before the Death of *Abu Abdala*; but since they make shift with fewer. They have Professors of Physick and Mathematicks;

and some of them teach *Mahomet's* Law. *Heylin* says, That after it was besieged by *Jeseph the Great*, King of *Fez*, it held out another Siege of 30 Months against *Abulhasen*, or *Albohassen* his Son and Successor. The *Nubian* Geographer places this City 9 Days Journey from *Fez*; and says 'twas divided in two by a Wall. *Heylin* adds, That a little way to the S. stood Mount *Sachramtain*, from whence proceeded a Fountain that turn'd several Mills, and had Monasteries, Oratories, and other religious Houses, on its Banks.

13. *Tefezara*, or *Tefezre*. *Marmol* thinks 'tis the *Estazila* or *Astacilus* of *Ptolomy*. *Dapper*, who places it in the Province of *Tremisen*, says, 'tis a great Town, built in a Plain 4 Miles W. from *Tremisen*, encompass'd with high Walls; that the Inhabitants, who are for most part Smiths, are generally clownish; and that its Plains produce Corn and Mines of Iron.

14. *Hubed*, or *Hubbed*. *Leo* says, 'tis very populous, and that the Inhabitants are courteous, and for most part Diers of Cloth, and Drapers. 'Tis noted for the Interment of *Sidi Bu Mediam*, one of their Santo's, who has a Monument over him, to which they ascend by Steps to pay divine Reverence. One of the Kings of *Fez* built a stately College and Hospital here for the Entertainment of Strangers. *Dapper*, who places it in the same Province, half a League S. of *Tremisen*, says it has Walls. Some think it was built by the *Romans*, and call'd *Minara*. *Ptolomy* sets it in Lat. 32. 10. Long. 12. 52. *Dapper* adds, That Mount *Beniguernid*, a Part of *Great Atlas*, reaches within half a League of *Tremisen*, where 'tis full of populous Villages and Trees, and produces much Fruit, especially Cherries and Figs. The Inhabitants are Husbandmen, Shepherds, and Colliers.

15. *Tezela*. *Marmol* says, 'tis the *Ariana* of the Ancients. *Dapper* places it in the Province of *Tremisen*, and says 'twas totally ruin'd by *Abuhassen*, and that it has never recover'd since. The adjacent Plains produce Corn enough for the whole Province, and are inhabited by People that wander up and down with their Tents.

16. *Angad Desert*, the W. Frontier of the Kingdom of *Tremisen*. *Leo* says 'tis 80 Miles long, 5 broad, and well stock'd with

with Deer, Lions, Wild Boars, and Ostriches. *Marmol* makes it 28 Leagues in Length, and 18 broad, and says it lies in the Road from *Tremisen* to *Fez*, which is so full of thievish *Arabs*, that whoever passes it must bribe the Captain of the first Gang he meets, who will give him a Spear with a small Standard for a Passport. In Summer the King of *Tremisen* hires some of them to keep the Road clear; but in Winter they retire with their Flocks to *Numidia*, and go to gather Dates in *Zahara*, which gives the other Inhabitants of this Desert an Opportunity to range without Controul, at which Time the Passage is very dangerous. *Dapper* says 'tis also call'd *Angad Heben*, or *Angued*, and makes it 17 Miles from E. to W. and 12 in Breadth. The River *Muluya* runs through it; and is inhabited on both Sides by several powerful Tribes of *Arabs*, who live upon Dates, Milk, and the Flesh of Goats and Camels. The *Sansons* say, That the *Arabians* often hunt the Ostriches for their Feathers, of which they make great Profit, eat their Flesh, dress their Skins for Satchels, keep the Heart to use in their Sorceries, the Fat to mix in their Medicines, and the Talons or Horn for Ear-Pendants, to put on when they sell the other Parts.

The chief Places in this Desert, according to *Dapper*, are, 1. Mount *Benizete*, 13 Miles from *Telensin*. He bounds it on one Side with the Deserts of *Garet*, and on the other with this of *Angad*, and makes it 7 Miles long, and 5 broad. He says it has several Villages, and a strong Castle, where the Check, who is the Lord of the Mountain, resides. 'Tis craggy, and produces little Barley, but much Fenugreek, which the Inhabitants live upon. They are the most valorous of the *Bereberes Zeneti*; and though they have a particular Government, yet they appeal to the Court of *Telensin*. He adds, that the Air here is unwholesome.

2. *Tensegzet*. *Dapper* says 'tis a strong Town built upon a Rock in the Road from *Fez* to *Telensin*, and betwixt the Jurisdiction of that City and the Deserts of *Angad*. At the Bottom of the Rock runs the River *Tesma*, which comes from the Great *Atlas*, and falls into the River *Haresgol*. The *Turks* took this Town, fortified it, put a

Garrison in it, and built an Arsenal here. The adjacent Soil produces much Corn.

3. *Guagida*. The *Sansons* place it on a Mountain, Lon. 20. 20. Lat. 33. 3. 53 Miles S. of *Oran*, and 80 S. E. of *Telensin*. *Moll* makes it but 60 from the latter, and 165 from the former, in Lat. 34. 48. Lon. 17 $\frac{2}{3}$. *Dapper* says 'tis an ancient Town among the Mountains, but situate in a fine Plain, 9 Miles S. of the *Mediterranean*, and almost as much W. from *Telensin*. It contains 3000 Families. The Soil is water'd with several Rivulets, which qualify the excessive Heat of the Air, and make it fertile in Corn, Grapes, Figs, and other Fruit. The Inhabitants are courageous; but the Want of Commerce makes them rustick. They wear short Habits of thick Cloth, speak the *African* Tongue, and seldom use the *Arabick* Jargon of the other *Moors*. The Governor of the Province resides here. *Heylin* says they pay Tribute to the King of *Tremisen*, and Contributions to the *Arabians*, who are here so numerous and powerful, that their Kings were obliged to buy their Peace of them at excessive Rates. Some think it the *Lanigare* of *Ptolomy*.

4. *Zezil*, or *Izli*, *Giglua*, which is supposed to be the *Girva* of *Ptolomy*, lies in a Plain, and is defended with a Fort between the Desert of *Angad* and the Province of *Telensin*. It produces a little Barley and *Turkish* Wheat, and the Inhabitants are civil to Travellers.

Moll and the *Sansons* place two other Towns in the Province of *Tremisen*, which we have not yet described, viz. 1. *Tergdent*, *Tigedent*, or *Tegdentum*. The latter place is on the North Side of a Mountain of the same Name, in Lat. 32. 8. Long. 20 $\frac{1}{2}$. 110 Miles S. of *Oran*, and above 120 S. E. from *Telensin*. *Moll* places it about 152 M. from the former, and but 60 from the latter, Long. 19. Lat. 34. *Marmol* says, 'tis the *Cæsaria* which was much adorned by the *Roman* Emperors, and was once one of the most populous Cities of *Africa*, and 3 Leag. in Compass round the Walls. The Natives call it *Tignident*. When the *Arabs* were Masters of *Africa*, this City was much reputed for its Riches and Universities, great Poets and excellent Philosophers; but it fell afterwards into the Hands of *Idris's* Family, who possess'd it 150 Years, till 959, when

when *Abdala*, one of the Caliphs of *Cay-roam*, demolish'd it, and murder'd all the Citizens that were of *Idris's* Opinion; so that nothing of it was standing in our Author's Time but two ancient Temples, one of which has a high Stone Monument, call'd *Coborummia*, i. e. the Sepulchre of the *Roman*, where 'tis said *C. Julian's* Daughter was interr'd. Our Author says, one may discover a Ship from the Top of it twenty Leagues off at Sea. He adds, that in 1555, *Salharræes* attempted to pull it down, hoping to find some Treasure there, but when they lifted up the Stones, there were a Sort of black poisonous Wasps under them, whose Sting caus'd immediate Death; so that *Salharræes* dropp'd his Design. *Darper* calls it *Tessare*, and places it in the Province of *Meliana*, on the Confines of *Biledulgerid*. He says. it was rebuilt afterwards by a famous *Morabout*, so that it contains above 1300 Houses. *Heylin* says, 'tis almost abandon'd because of the ill Neighbourhood of the *Arabians*.

2. *Medua* or *Mara*. *Leo* says, 'tis inhabited by an unlearn'd People, who honour any Man of Learning, and refer all their Differences to such only, and he tells us that he got 200 Ducats here in two Months time. *Dapper* places a Town of this Name in the Province of *Tenez*, on the Confines of *Getulia* and *Biledulgerid*, 30 Miles from *Algier*, and 40 E. from *Telensin*. The *Sansons* place it in the S. E. Corner of *Tremisen*, Long. 21 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 31. 18. almost 200 Miles S. E. of *Telensin*, which *Moll* makes about 153. Lat. 32 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 18. *Leo* places it on the Borders of *Numidia*, 180 Miles from the *Mediterranean*, and 5 from *Serzelli*, in such a pleasant fruitful Plain, encompassed with sweet Rivers and beautiful Gardens, that he could have liv'd and dy'd in it. He adds, that the Inhabitants are rich and curious, and trade with the People of *Biledulgerid*.

F E Z.

° **T**IS the N. W. Part of all *Africa*, and the nearest to *Europe*. The *Sansons* extend it 5 Degrees or 300 Miles from Cape *spartel* on the W. to the River *Mulvia* on the E. which parts it from *Telensin*; and 4 Degrees and a half or 240 Miles from the

said Cape on the N. to the River *Ommirabi*, which is the S. W. Frontier of *Temefne*. *Moll* extends it from Long. 11. to 17. or 360 M. where longest, and from Lat. 31 $\frac{1}{2}$. to 36. about 330 where broadest. *Du Plessis* makes it 90 Leagues from N. to S. and 80 from E. to W.

They bound it with *Telensin* on the E. the *Mediterranean* and Streights of *Gibraltar* on the N. the *Atlantick* Ocean on the N. and W. on the S. W. with *Morocco*, and on the W. with the W. Part of *Biledulgerid*, being parted from the former by the River *Ommirabi*, and by the Mountains of *Atlas* from the latter: But *Leo* bounds it with that River on the W. and the *Mediterranean* and Ocean on the N. and so does *Marmol*. 'Twas known anciently by the Name of *Mauretania Tingitana*, of which *Marmol* makes it the E. Part; and in the Time of the *Romans* call'd *Hispania Transfretana*, because 'twas a Part of the Diocese of *Spain* on the other Side the Sea. *Pliny* and others call'd it *Bogudiana*, from *Bogud*, to whom *Cæsar* gave the Kingdom; and some *Ampelusia*, from its abundance of Vines. *Dapper* bounds it on the West with the River *Ommirabi*, and makes the *Mediterranean* its N. Boundary from the Mouth of that River to *Mulvia*. He says, the *Moors* call it *Elgarbe*; and *Heylin*, that the *Spaniards* call the Inhabitants *Algarbes*.

The chief Rivers of this Country are, 1. *Burregreg*, or *Buregrag*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a great River which springs out of the *Great Atlas*, and falls into the Ocean near *Gibraltar*. *Ptolomy* calls it *Sala*, and places it Long. 6. 10. Lat. 34. 10. *Dapper* and the *Sansons* say, it falls into the Ocean between *Old* and *New Salee*. The latter make it 75 M. in Length, exclusive of its Windings and Turnings. 2. *Subu*, *Suba*, or *Sulu*. *Marmol* makes it one of the greatest Rivers of all *Barbary*, and brings it from *Gililgo*, one of the Mountains of the *Great Atlas* in the Province of *Cus*, and says, it runs within a Mile and half of *Fez*; and having parted the Provinces of *Habat* and *Asgar*, falls into the Ocean near *Mahmor*. It is join'd by several Rivers; but our Author corrects those who say it receives the River *Fez* and others from the Country of *Texar*, on a wrong Supposition that it rises out of the Mountains of *Gaiasa* and *Zarahamuni*. This River is fordable in some Places; but

in the Winter and Spring they are obliged to cross it in Barks. It affords such Plenty of Fish, especially Shads, that it supplies Fez and several other Towns in the Province. Our Author adds, that its Mouth is capable of large Vessels, and that were the Inhabitants industrious, it might be made navigable to Fez, and so sink the Price of their Corn brought over Land from *Algier*. *Ptolomy* calls it *Subura*, and places its Mouth in Long. 6. 20. Lat. 34. 28. The *Sansons* place its Mouth on the N. Side of *Mahmora*, and make it 190 Miles to the Mountain from whence it rises. *Dapper* says, it falls from the Mountain with such a rapid Current, that it carries Stones with it of above a Hundred Weight. There's a Bridge over it 150 Fathom long, which the *Sansons* place among very high Rocks near the Wood of *Selelgus*, at the Foot of the Mountain, and say, there's a Basket hung upon two Ropes, which turn upon two Pullies, fasten'd to the Ends of two large Pillars of Wood on each Side the Valley, and those who are in this Basket, (which holds sometimes 10) move themselves from one Side to the other with great Ease by those Ropes which are made of Sea-Bulrushes as well as the Basket. *Moll* makes this River 176 Miles in Length, and joins it with 3 other Rivers 30 Miles before its Influx into the Ocean. 3. *Lucus* or *Lycus*, another great River, which *Marmol* says rises out of the Mountains of *Gomera*, turns W. thro' the Provinces of *Asgar* and *Habat*, passes near *Alcasar Quivir*, and after forming several Lakes that abound with Fish, falls into the Ocean near Cape *Arrays*, where these two Provinces join. He adds, That its Mouth is of very difficult Entrance without a good Pilot. *Ptolomy* places it Long. 6. 20. Lat. 35. 15. and calls it *Lyssa*. *Dapper* says, it parts into two Branches near *Narabigia* and *Basrat*, and forms the Island *Gezira*, within two Miles of the Sea. The *Sansons* call it *Cherferus*, and make it almost 70 Miles in Length, exclusive of its Turnings. 4. The two Rivers *Beht* and *Behet*. *Marmol* says, they rise out of the Great *Atlas*, and fall with a rapid Current over steep Mountains into the Plains of *Argaz*, where they form several Lakes full of Fish, upon the Banks of which great Numbers of *Arabians* feed their Cattle; and by their frequent

eating of Butter and Fish are cover'd with a Sort of Leprosy. Several of the Inhabitants of *Fez* and *Mequinez* resort to these Lakes to drink the Water, which is of great Efficacy against the Stone. 5. *Homar*. *Dapper* says, it rises out of the Mountains in the Country of *Habat*, and passes by the Town of that Name into the Ocean near *Taximuxi*. The *Sansons* make it about 46 Miles from thence to its Source. 6. *Guir*, a little River which *Ptolomy* calls *Dyos*. *Dapper* says it rises out of the Mountains of *Temesne*, and runs into the Ocean half a Mile from *Almansore*. The *Sansons* make it 90 Miles in Length. 7. *Gomer*. *Dapper* says it rises out of the Mountains of *Gomera*, in the Province of *Erriff*, and falls into the *Mediterranean* near the Town of *Gomera*. The *Sansons* make it about twenty Miles in Length. 8. *Cherzez*, rises from the same Mountains, according to *Dapper*, and falls after a short Course into the *Mediterranean*. The *Sansons* make it about thirty Miles long, and place its Influx into the Sea near the Town of *Cherfera*. 9. *Nocor*, which *Castalius* thinks to be the *Molocath* of *Ptolomy*, and *Peter Davity* the River of *Mulucan*. *Dapper* says, it rises from the Mountains of *Elchau*, and runs N. between the Provinces of *Erref* and *Garet* into the *Mediterranean*. The *Sansons* say, 'tis formed by two Rivers, which coming from the Mountains of *Matgarus* and *Selelgus*, unite near the Mountain of *Benimesgald*, from whence they make it 65 Miles to *Mesemma*, near which this River falls into the Sea. *Moll* makes it 165 Miles in Length, and places its Influx into the Sea over-against the Cape *des Forcas*. 10. *Mulucan*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a large River, which rises out of the Great *Atlas*, in the Province of *Cus*, and being joined by the *Melulo*, another great River, which comes from the same Mountain near the Town of *Dubon*, through the Desert of *Teorest* and *Tafrata*, falls into the *Mediterranean* a little W. of *Tasasa*. 'Tis very broad, but fordable in many Places in the Summer. Its Mouth abounds with Fish: And he adds, That the Christians us'd to row up this River in Barks cover'd with Leaves, to surprize the Moorish Fishermen. *Ptolomy* calls it *Molocath*, in Long. 10. 45. Lat. 34. 45. *Dapper* places its Source within 7 Miles of *Garcylun*, among the aforesaid Mountains; and says,

that after having pass'd thro' the Deserts of *Chaus*, *Angad*, and *Garet*, it runs by the Foot of the Mountain *Benizenetes*, and falls into the *Mediterranean* near *Cacaca*. We do not find this River in *Sanfon's* Map. *Zwart* in his Description of *Africa* says, the Moors call it *Munzenar*. We shall take Notice of the most remarkable Mountains here when we come to the several Provinces, and so of the Air, Soil, Product, and the Manners of the Inhabitants, and shall continue the general History of *Fez*.

The History of Fez and Morocco.

WE chuse to join *Morocco* with it in the Title, because they seem united for most part in the History, and of late make but one entire Estate under the Xeriffs of *Morocco*.

Heylin says, That in the Time of *Herodian*, the *Mauri*, who were the Inhabitants of this *Mauretania Tingitana*, were accounted hardy, careless of Life, revengeful, and bloody, and that the Character holds good still ev'n since their Mixture with the *Goths* and *Saracens*. The Emperor *Constantine* having divided this Country into *Mauretania Tingitana* on this Side the River *Ommiraby*, and *Sitifensis* beyond it, laid the former to the Diocese of *Africa*, and the latter unto that of *Spain*. The *Romans* lost it to the *Goths*, and these to the *Saracens*; after whose Declension 'twas divided into the Two Kingdoms of *Fez* and *Morocco*, as we shall shew hereafter. The same Author says, That after *Africa* was conquered by the *Saracens*, (who were first let into it by the Treason of *Julian*) and had been for a while subject to the Great Caliph, or Successor of *Mahomet Elcain*, the last of the Race of *Hucka* in the Kingdom of *Cairoan*, who having usurp'd the whole to himself, and conquer'd *Egypt*, was dispossessed during his Absence in that Country, by his Lieutenant, he left in *Africa*, who rebell'd against him, acknowledged the Caliph of *Bagdat* for his lawful Sovereign, and received the Kingdom of *Africk* for his good Service. *Elcain* despairing to recover the Kingdom, and not willing that it should be useful to his Enemies, licens'd the *Arabians* for a Ducat a Man to come over the *Nile* with their Tents and

Families; so that almost half the Tribes of *Arabia Deserta*, and many of *Arabia Felix*, came into *Africa*, where they sack'd *Tripolis*, *Cairoan*, and the rest of the chief Cities, and tyrannized over all *Barbary*, until the Rise of the Kingdom of *Fez*, as follows:

Marmol says, 'twas begun in the Person of *Idris*, an *Arabian* Lord of the Blood of *Mahomet*, by *Hali* and his Daughter *Fatima*, commonly call'd the Family of *Alaveci*, who being persecuted by *Abdala* Caliph of *Syria*, about 770, fled into *Mauretania*, where, because of his Descent, he was esteemed a Saint, and own'd for Caliph. He was the first that brought *Mahometism* hither, left a Son born of a Christian Slave, and of the Race of the *Goths*, and dy'd, says *Heylin*, in the 25th of the *Hegyra*. He left a Son of his own Name, who was the First Founder of the City of *Fez*, in 793, according to *Marmol*, and became one of the most powerful Monarchs of *Africa*. *Heylin* says, one of his Sons, whose Name is not mention'd, built a new City on the other Side of the River, which vied with the old one, and by that Means rais'd such a Faction in the House of *Idris*, as occasion'd the Ruin of the Kingdom, after it had continued in the Family of the *Alaveci* for 270 Years, and transferred it to the Princes or *Miramomolins* of the Families of the *Almoravides* and *Almohades*; of whom *Heylin* gives the following Catalogue:

1. *Teifin*, *Texian*, *Telephine*, or *Abu Techisien*. *Marmol* says, he was a *Morabout*, and that in 1051 he fled from the Tyranny of the *Arabians* into the S. Parts of *Africa*; and being followed by vast Numbers of People for the Sake of Liberty, he cross'd the Mountains of *Atlas* near the City of *Agmet*, made himself Master of the Province of *Morocco*, subdued the *Arabians* in *Mauretania Tingitana*, and settled himself at *Agmed* by the Name of *Emir el Mominin*, or Commander of the Faithful. He died in 1086, and was succeeded by his Son *Joseph*.

2. *Joseph* his Son. *Marmol* says, That in 1086, soon after his Accession to the Throne, this Prince not liking the Situation of *Agmet*, built *Morocco*, or at least finish'd it, for some say his Father began it. Then he made War with the People of *Fez*, who were govern'd by Two Princes, made himself

himself Master of the Kingdom, forc'd those of *Algier* and *Tunis* to pay Tribute, returned to *Morocco*, where he took his Father's Title upon him, turn'd his victorious Arms against the *Arabians* in *Biledulgerid*, and soon after being invited into *Spain* by the *Moors* of *Grenada*, who had engaged their Kings to own and confide in him as their Sovereign, he pass'd the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and having join'd their Forces, belieg'd *Toledo*; but upon the News of King *Alphonso's* Approach, he retir'd to *Grenada*, and thence made an Expedition to *Murcia*, which he took; and perceiving that the *Moors* repented of their having call'd him in, he subdu'd the Kingdoms of *Murcia*, *Grenada*, *Corduba*, and *Jaen*, with Part of *Valentia*, and return'd to *Africa*, where he had left his Nephew *Mahomet* to govern in his Absence. At his Return he publish'd a *Gazia*, which is a Kind of Croisade, among the *Moors*; and having rais'd a great Army, which he embarked at *Ceuta*, he landed at *Malaga*, where having join'd *Mahomet*, he besieged *Toledo* a second Time, but was forced to raise the Siege upon the Arrival of King *Alphonso*. However, *Mahomet* being sent soon after to besiege *Valencia*, took it, and kill'd the King of that Province. In 1109, he won that call'd by Historians the *Battle of Seven Counts*, because Seven Spanish Counts were kill'd in it, besides *Don Sancho*, which broke King *Alphonso's* Heart. *Heylin* says, this Prince totally suppress'd the Family of the *Alaveci*, by killing all the Princes of the Blood, and 30000 of their Subjects; after which he broke down the Walls that parted *Old* and *New Fez*, and united them by Bridges. The Quarrels which the *Saracens* had with one another in *Spain*, made him add all that they possess'd there to his own Dominions in 1091. And *Heylin* tells us, his Successors held it as long as they did *Morocco*. *Marmol* says, he died in 1110, and was succeeded by his Son *Hali*.

3. *Hali* his Son. *Marmol* says, That in 1114, he invaded *Spain*, besieged *Toledo*, and ravaged all the adjacent Country, but rais'd the Siege, and winter'd at *Corduba*. The next Year *Alphonso II.* having obtain'd a Croisade of *Paschal II.* gave him Battle, and slew him in the Field, with 30000 of his Men, and the rest fled into *Barbary*,

where they made his Son *Babeen* King; but we find nothing of him.

4. *Heylin* says, his Son and Successor was *Albo Hali*, the same, as he supposes, who publish'd the Works call'd *Avicenna*, which were compil'd at his Command by some of the most learned *Arabian* Doctors. He was defeated and slain by,

5. *Addelmon*, *Abdel-Mumen*, or *Abdelmone*, the first of the *Almohades*. *Fulgosius* says, he was the Son of a Potter; and others, that he was a Schoolmaster, who got great Part of *Africa* by the Juggling of *Almohade*, a pretended Astro-nomer of those Times. He associated first with one of the religious *Almohadins*; and he contriv'd a new Explanation of the *Alcoran*, contrary to that of the *Arabian Musti*, whom they believe to be descended of *Mahomet*, and thereby gain'd so much over the People, that by their Assistance he invaded the Kingdom of the *Almoravides*, and kill'd *Abbady*, the lawful Successor. Then he sail'd into *Spain*, where being join'd by the *Moors*, he exercis'd unheard of Cruelties on the Christians, obtain'd the Kingdom of *Almoravides* in *Spain*, and *Africk* too, and made *Morocco* the Seat of his Empire about 1147, if we may believe *Fulgosius* and *Roderick* of *Toledo*; or 1150, according to *Heylin*. The latter adds, That he also annex'd *Tunis* and *Cayroan* to his Empire; and was succeeded by his Son,

6. *Joseph II.* or *Aben Joseph*, or *Joseph Almanfor*. *Marmol* says, he came to the Empire after the Death of his Father in 1156. After having maintained the Kings of *Tunis* and *Bugia*, his Vassals, in their Dominions, he pass'd over to *Spain* in 1158, with 60000 Horse, and above 100000 Foot, at the Invitation of the *Morish* Kings there, who, as they had promis'd, swore Fealty to him, on his undertaking to deliver them from the Christians: But seeing himself stronger than they, he made himself Master of all their Dominions, and after several Losses by the Christians, did at last obtain some Advantages over them. He repass'd to *Africa*, and returned with a greater Force, attended by 13 *Morish* Kings, but was kill'd by an Arrow at the Siege of *Santaren*; upon which the *Moors* rais'd it, and they of *Africa* return'd to *Barbary*. *Marmol* adds, That he was succeeded in 1173 by his Son,

7. *Jacob Almanzor*. Heylin gives him the Character of a great and wise Prince. *Marmol* says, he cross'd over to Spain with 400000 Moors, whom he had assembled by the Publication of the Moorish Croisade, and won the famous Battle of *Alarcos* about 1199. Then returning into *Africa*, where his Subjects were revolted, he took *Morocco*, and punish'd the Rebels, contrary to his Word; for which being reprov'd by a *Morabout*, he wander'd about every where in Penance, and died a Baker at *Alexandria*. Heylin says, he was succeeded by his Brother,

8. *Mahomet*, or *Mahamed*, Sirnamed *Enasur*, or *Enacer*, i. e. the Green. *Marmol* says, he succeeded his Father in 1206. He was of a warlike Temper; and having broke the Truce which *Almanzor* had made with the King of *Castille*, he cross'd over to Spain with 120000 Horse and 300000 Foot, wherewith he besieg'd *Salvaterra*, the then Residence of the Knights of *Calatrava*; and after a long Siege, storm'd and raz'd it to the Ground. In 1212, he sent for new Levies out of *Africa*; so that he had such a vast Army, as the like had never been seen in Spain. The Christian Princes joining their Forces, attack'd and defeated him in the Plains of *Tholouse*, when the Moors lost above 150000 Foot and 35000 Horse. *Mahamed* leaving all his Baggage and Furniture behind him, cross'd back again to *Barbary*, having left the Government to his Brother *Aben Saad*, who was afterwards King of *Valencia*. Our Author adds, That he died for Grief soon after this Blow, and left his Crown to *Ceyed Barrax*, one of his Grandchildren. Heylin says, that Defeat happen'd in 1214, at *Sierra Morena*. Some Writers add, That for two Days together the Spaniards burnt no Fuel but the Pikes, Lances, and Arrows, of their scatter'd Enemies, yet could not consume one half of them. *Hormus* says, he left ten Sons, who divided the Empire into particular Kingdoms, but could not agree about their Shares, destroy'd one another, and gave an Occasion to the Governors of the Provinces to usurp an absolute Power. Heylin supposes him to be the *Admiralius Marmelius* mention'd by *Mat. Paris*, to whom he says our King *John* sent an Embassy in 1214, with an Offer to hold his Kingdom of him, and to receive *Mahomet's* Law, provided he would assist him against his Barons

and the French. But the Moor was so offended, that he told the Ambassador, he had read *St. Paul's* Epistles with such Approbation, that were he to chuse his Principles, he would prefer those of Christianity; but he blam'd the Apostle for changing the Faith in which he was born, and said, That every Man ought to die in his first Religion. Besides, when he was informed by one of the Ambassadors of the Model of the English Government, the Situation and Wealth of the Country, the Manners of the People, and the King's Life and Person, he entertained such a Dislike of the King, that for ever after, if we may believe *Mat. Paris*, he abhorred the Mention of him. But Heylin suspects the Truth of that Author's Account, because he was a Monk, which Order of Men King *John* held for his mortal Enemies; and says, That after the Loss of that great Battle, both the Spanish Moors and those of *Africa* revolted.

9. *Caid Arrax*, or *Ceyed Barrax*, succeeded him. Heylin says, he was *Mahomet's* Nephew by his Son *Buxaf*, and slain at the Siege of *Tremezezir*, a Castle of *Tremesen*, which Province was seiz'd by *Gomoranca Aben Zein*, of the House of *Abdaluad*, at the same Time that *Bucar Aben Merin*, of the noble Marine Family, (descended from a Christian Race) seiz'd *Fez*. Some say, they were of the Tribe of the *Zenetes*, and that at first they were only Princes, but in 1269 they took the Title of Kings of the Fifth Race.

10. *Almoccada*, of the Family of the *Almohades*. Heylin says, he was *Caid Arrax's* Kinsman, but dethron'd and slain by *Budebuz*, of the same Family.

11. *Budebuz*. Heylin says, he was the last of this Family. He was settled in his Dominions by the Assistance of *Jacob Ben Joseph* King of *Fez*, but was afterward defeated and slain by him in Battle for his Infidelity, whereby the Sovereignty was translated to the Marine Family about 1270, or, as others say, in 1210, and the Seat of the Empire transferr'd from *Morocco* to *Fez*. Our Author observes, That after *Bucar Aben Merin* above-mention'd was settled in *Fez*, he defeated *Almoccada*, but resigned the Government to his Son *Hiaja*, under the Protectorship of *Jacob Ben Joseph*, who obtained the Sovereignty soon after by the young Prince's

Prince's Death. In this *Jacob Ben Joseph Heylin* begins the Empire of the Marine Family, which he says held the Royal Dignity till 1500, or 1420 according to *Hornius*; during which Time *Morocco* was govern'd by a Viceroy, and the rest of its Provinces canton'd into several States, and the Sea-Coasts were seiz'd by the *Portuguese*. *Marmol* says, some of the *Almohades* were titular Sovereigns in *Morocco*, but tributary to the Kings of that and *Fez*. *Heylin* mentions only Three of Note in the Marine Family.

I. *Jacob Ben Joseph*, who he says had great Interest among the *Moors* in *Spain*, where he possessed the Towns of *Algazir* and *Tariffe*, but was treacherously slain by one of his Friends at the Siege of *Tremesen*. *Marmol* says, he extended his Dominions over all *Maurelania*, and took the Name of *Muleiches*, or ancient King: That in 1275 he came with 50000 Foot and 7000 Horse to *Spain*, where he took the Towns above-mentioned. He afterwards made several Expeditions against the Christians and revolted *Moors*, and died in 1285, leaving his Son *Abusayd* to succeed, who pass'd into *Spain* with a numerous Army, but was beat out, and died in *Barbary* about 1302.

II. *Aben Joseph II.* *Heylin* says, he was the younger Son of the former, succeeded after the Death of *Abortane* the 6th of this Family, and design'd to annex *Tremesen* to his Dominions, if he had not been diverted by the Revolt of *Alboali* his eldest Son.

III. *Alboacen*, or *Albuhascen*. *Heylin* says he was *Joseph's* Son, and the 8th of this Family. He conquer'd the City and Province of *Tremisen*, pass'd over to *Spain* with 400000 Foot and 70000 Horse, but was defeated by the Kings of *Castille* and *Portugal* with 25000 Foot and 14000 Horse at the River of *Salado* near *Tariffe* in 1340, or 1440 according to *Marmol*; who says, that when he had conquer'd *Tremesen*, he won the Kingdom of *Tunis*: That he was one of the most potent Monarchs of *Africa*, and made War against the Christians because they had kill'd his Son: That he lost 200000 Men near *Tariffe*; and that soon after his Return he was expell'd his Kingdom by another Son of his own Name, with the Assistance of *Don Pedro* King of *Castille*. *Hylin* calls that Son *Alboacen*; and says, that he lost all that his Father and the First of the *Aben*

Josephs had won in *Spain*; upon which, *Tremesen* and great Part of *Tunis* revolted from him, while the *Portuguese* prevail'd against him; and the Kingdom soon devolv'd from the Marine Family to the Xeriffs, in the following Manner.

The Rise and Progress of the Xeriffs.

Heylin says, That in 1508, *Mahomet Ben Amed*, a Native and Hermit of *Dara* in *Biledulgerid*, designing to make his Sons the chief Princes of *Maurelania*, pleaded his Descent from their Prophet *Mahomet*, assumed the Title of Xeriff, which was peculiar to that Impostor's Successors, and sent his Sons in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, who at their Return became *Morabouts*, and were so much cry'd up for their Sanctity, that *Mahomet* then King of *Fez* made *Amet* the Second of them Governor of the famous College of *Amadorach*, and the youngest, call'd *Mahomet*, Tutor to his Children; but the eldest, named *Abdel*, stay'd at home with his Father, and was afterwards slain in a War against the *Portuguese* Invaders, commanded by *Lopez Barriga*, under King *Emanuel*, whom they defeated, and compell'd to abandon all their Footing. After this they subdued *Duccala*, *Sus*, and *Hen*, Three Provinces in *Morocco*, enter'd the City, poison'd the tributary King, and set up *Amet* for King, by the Name of Xeriff, while they invested *Mahomet* the other Brother in the Kingdom of *Sus*. During this, says *Heylin*, the King of *Fez* died, and *Amet* his Successor, an improvident young Prince, confirmed his quondam Tutors in their new Dominions, on Condition they should pay him Homage, and the usual Tribute.

Marmol says, That in 1514, while the Two Sons were raising a Croisade against the Christians, they went as far as *Tarodant* in *Sus*, where having gain'd over the Chief of the Country, they and the Father took the Title of the Governors of *Tarodant*, *Dara*, and *Sus*. The Father dying about this Time, the Sons took the Governor of *Safi* and several *Portuguese* Gentlemen Prisoners, but lost *Abdel Quivir*. In 1519 they went to *Morocco*, where they privately murder'd the King, seiz'd the Castle, and the eldest

eldest declared himself King, and the youngest Viceroy of *Tarudant*. And a little after the 2d Son called himself King of all *Africa*, which provok'd the King of *Fez* to lay Siege to *Morocco*, but he was forced to raise it; and returning afterwards with a greater Army, lost his Son, with all his Artillery and Baggage. In 1536, they took *Taflet* in *Nu-midia*. *Mahamed* King of *Sus* took the Town of *St. Croix* at *Cap Aguer*, and forced the *Portuguese* to abandon the greatest Part of the Coast. After this, *Mahamed* the youngest, but the most valiant and best beloved, deny'd to obey the Orders of *Hamet* the eldest, from whom he held *Sus*, took him Prisoner when he came from *Morocco* to reduce him, but set him at Liberty soon after; and an Agreement was made in 1543, that they should share alike in their future Conquests. *Hamet* rais'd another Army, but was beat a second time, and his Town of *Morocco* taken: Yet *Mahamed* us'd him kindly, sent him to command in *Taflet*, and promis'd to restore his Children to his Estate. After this, *Mahamed* quarrell'd with the King of *Fez*, and brought him to a Battle in 1547, when both he and his Sons were taken Prisoners, but set at Liberty the next Year. Three Months after, *Mahamed* came with a great Army to *Fez*, seiz'd the Palace, marry'd one of the King's Daughters, and sent the Father to *Morocco*; so that he remain'd possess'd of the Town and greatest Part of the Country. Soon after he sent three of his Sons, who took *Tremesen* upon the first Summons, and suspecting that the King of *Fez* was stirring up a Rebellion in *Morocco*, put him and all his Children to Death. But the *Turks* of *Algier* having retaken *Tremesen*, and coming near *Fez*, oblig'd him to take the Field, because that Town has the Privilege of making its own Terms when the Prince is unable to keep the Enemy from coming within half a League; and having lost the Battle, fled to *Morocco*, leaving the *Turks* to plunder the Town, he retook it in 1555, but was killed soon after by some of the 1200 *Turks* of his Guard as he went to *Sus* with a great Body of Horse. They were pursued by his Son *Abel Munen*, who recover'd his Father's Treasure, which they were carrying to *Tremesen*. And in the mean time the Governor of *Morocco*, lest this unconstant People should rebel and proclaim

Hamet, Brother to the Deceased, for King, he cut his and his 7 Sons Throats, by which *Muley Abdala*, *Mahamed's* Son, was left in quiet Possession of the Empire. *Marmol* adds, that *Cheriff* or *Serif* in the *Arabick* signifies a Prince or great Lord; that the *Turks* give their Emperors this Name, as well as Sultan; that the Prince of *Mecca* assumes it; and that the Emperor of *Suz*, who in his Time was King of *Taflet*, *Fez* and *Morocco*, assumed the Title of *Cheriff* of *Cheriffs*. But we come now to the particular History of the Xeriffs.

I. *Abdalla I.* *Heylin* says, he was *Mahomet's* Son, and that he began his Reign in 1557. *Thuanus*, and *Diego de Torrez* in his History of the Xeriffs, applaud the former for his Courage and Conduct; but they say that this Prince was voluptuous, lost several Battles in his Father's Life-time, and put to Death his nearest Relations, with *Ali Badcar*, the most powerful Nobleman in his Kingdom. He reigned quietly, and divided his Dominions among his three Sons. In 1564, he fought the *Spanish* Army in their Return from *Pegnon de Velez*; and two Years before his Death, which happen'd in 1574, he undertook an unsuccessful War against *Mazagan*, which was possess'd by the *Portuguese*, being provok'd to it in the midst of one of his Debauches by the Perswasions of a Runagate of *Corfica*. *Heylin* says, he besieg'd that Place in 1562 with 200000 Men. An Anonymous Author, bound up with *Harris's* Collection of Voyages, Vol. I. says, he warr'd with the *Marems* all his Life-time, reign'd 15 Years, and left 13 Sons, of whom the eldest of his own Name succeeded. *Marmol* says, he left the Crown to *Mahamed* the Black. *Heylin* adds, that he kept 60000 Horse in constant Pay, of which 15000 were quarter'd in the Kingdom of *Suz*, 25000 in *Morocco*, and the other 20000 in *Fez*; and that he kept 5000 of the best, well accoutred and mounted, for his Body Guard.

II. *Abdalla II.* *Heylin* says, he succeeded in 1572, and slew 10 of his Brothers, *Hamet* being spared because of his supposed Simplicity, and *Abdelmelech* escaping to *Turkey*. The above-mentioned Anonymous Author says, his 10 Brothers were killed in one Day at *Tarudant* in *Suz*. He reigned 40 Years, and left 3 Sons.

III. *Ma*

III. *Mahomet II.* who was the eldest, succeeded. *Harris's* Anonymous Author says, his two Brothers went into *Spain*, where the eldest, call'd *Muley-Scheck*, turn'd Christian. *Muley Nuffar* the youngest return'd to *Barbary* in the 14th Year of this Prince's Reign, and at his Landing 2000 of the King's Soldiers revolted to him; but he was slain in a Battle with the King's Army. After this, *Abdelmelech*, second Brother to *Abdalla II.* with 2000 Turks, forc'd this Prince to fly to *Portugal*, where he solicited Succours from King *Sebastian*, who came over with him two Years after with 30000 Men, and gave Battle to *Abdelmelech*, in which the three Kings were all killed in one Day. *Heylin* says, this happen'd in 1578, at the Battle of *Alcazar Guer*. *Marmol* calls this Prince *Mahamed the Black*, and says, he was dethron'd by his Uncles *Melic* and *Hamet*; and that *Hamed* kept the Possession. *Heylin* says, the above-mentioned Battle happen'd in 1578 at *Alcasar Guer*, when *Abdelmelech* had 40000 Horse and 80000 Foot, besides Volunteers and wild *Arabians*; and that 'twas thought he could have raised 30000 Horse more.

IV. *Hamet, Hamed, or Amet II.* *Heylin* begins his Reign in 1578, and says, he was the Brother of *Abdalla II.* who added Part of *Libya* and *Numidia* to the Realm of *Morocco*. The Anonymous Author says, he reigned 27 Years in great Peace, made good Regulations for the Tranquility of his Kingdom, furnish'd himself with experienc'd Counsellors and Soldiers, and divided his Subjects into two Classes, viz. the *Larbies* and the *Brebers*. The first, says he, were a harmless Sort of Husbandmen, over whom he appointed Civil Officers, and posted Guards to secure them from the Robberies of the Mountaineers. They punctually paid him the 5th Penny per Annum. He had but a small Revenue from the *Brebers*, who being of a more savage Temper, he divided into Cantons, placing over each an Officer and Soldiers to prevent Tumults, and kept their chief Men's Sons at his Court as Hostages for their Loyalty, under Pretence of Education. He always kept Peace with *Europe*, and especially *Spain*, but had the greatest Regard to *England*, for which our Author refers to the many Letters he wrote to Queen *Elizabeth*, the Encouragement he

gave to her Merchants, and the splendid Embassy he sent her in 1601. He was a great Friend to the Mathematicians. Our Author says, his Government, tho' absolute, was mix'd with Clemency. He bought Salt of the Negroes at *Tegazza*, and sold it at *Gago*, from whence he had Returns in Gold. He had several Sugar Plantations, of which some that lay about *Morocco, Taradant, and Magadore*, were said to yield him 600000 Crowns per Annum. He bought the richest Italian Marbles, hired the most curious Italian Workmen to rebuild his House at *Morocco*, and kept a numerous Train of Women, more for State than Lust, according to the Custom of the Country. He lov'd managing of Horses, Hawking, and the like manly Pleasures. He had 5 Sons, the two first by a Negro Concubine, viz. *Muley Mehamet*, commonly called *Muley Scheck*, (that Title being always given to the King's eldest Son) and *Muley Boferes*; the 3d, *Muley Seidan*, by a lawful Wife; and the 4th and 5th, viz. *Muley Nassar* and *Muley Abdela*, by a Concubine, the first being 19, and the last 14 Years of Age at their Father's Death. The eldest he made Governor of *Fez*, the second of *Suz*, and the third of *Tedulas*. *Harris's* Anonymous Author says, That one of the *Hamets* (without distinguishing whether the first or second) kept in Pay 16000 Foot and 50000 Horse, with Lances, Spears, and Cross-Bows.

V. *Muley Scheck* govern'd *Fez* at first with great Applause, and so much to his Father's Satisfaction, that he made all the Officers of his Kingdom take an Oath of Allegiance to him, to commence after his own Death. But he acted so much by the Counsel of *Basha Mustapha*, a Spanish Renegado, his chief Favourite, that the Officers who were native *Moors* represented to the old King, that this Renegado debauched his Son, and taught him to drink Wine, contrary to *Mahomet's* Law; and that he intended to carry off the Treasure of the Country to *Europe*, by which Means they prevailed with him to order his Son to take off the *Basha's* Head, which was done accordingly, tho' with great Reluctance on the Son's Part, who after this gave himself up to Drunkenness and other Vices, and suffer'd his Soldiers and Retinue to plunder his Subjects, so that there was no safe travelling but by 3 or 400 in a Company.

pany. The *Larbies* not being able to bring home the Corn and Fruits, refus'd their Taxes, and turn'd Robbers too upon the Plains, as the others did in the Towns. Besides, he grew so prodigal, says our Author, that being drunk, he gave a Jewish Musician 40000 *l.* Sterling. The King his Father having in vain try'd to reclaim him by fair Means, left his second Son to govern in his Absence, and marched with 8000 Foot and 5000 Horse to *Fez*, where he took his Son Prisoner, and carried him to *Mickanz*, a strong Town, wherein he remained till his Father's Death, which happen'd August 14. 1603. as he was preparing to return home. *Muley Sidan*, his 3d Son, whom he brought with him, intending he should succeed *Muley Scheck*, having immediately seized all the Jewels and Treasure in his Father's Tents, was proclaimed King in *Fez*. *Muley Boferes* did the like at *Morocco*, and was proclaimed both there and at *Taradant* in *Suz*. *Nassar*, the 4th Son of the deceas'd King, fled to his Mother's Relations in the Mountains, from whence he marched with about 900 Men to the Plains of *Suz*, and order'd himself to be proclaim'd in *Taradant*; but his Order being disobey'd, and wanting Money to pay his Men, he was forsaken by all, and died of the Plague, or (as some say) was poison'd. *Muley Abdela*, *Muley Scheck*'s eldest Son, chose to depend upon his Uncle *Muley Seidan*. During this, the Army of the deceased King, which was left at *Fez*, began to mutiny for their Arrears, and was inclin'd to return to their Families at *Morocco*. Upon which *Muley Sidan* sent them large Promises by the General that commanded them in his Father's Time; but he rather encouraged them to march home, which they did, and by the Way were met by the *Basha* that had the Custody of *Muley Scheck*, whom he delivered up to them, and after that they joined *Muley Boferes* in *Morocco*. Upon this, *Muley Seidan* sent a strong Force to the Province of *Tedula* to raise the Arrears of Taxes due from the *Larbies* to the late King, to stop the Communication between *Fez* and *Morocco*, and to make Preparations for taking the Field. At the same time *Muley Boferes* dispatched a *Basha* to the *Larbies* for Provisions, and sent 5000 choice Men to *Tedula*, who forced *Muley Seidan*'s Forces to retire, and plunder'd all that

would not own *Boferes* for King. After this, *Muley Seidan* took the Field again with 9000 Foot and 12000 Horse, and 22 Pieces of Artillery. In the mean time *Boferes* amus'd him with the Offers of Peace, which being refused, to please such of the Soldiers as were Natives of *Fez*, and to give the greater Life to his Army, he made a seeming Agreement with his Brother *Scheck*, and gave him the Command of his Army, but with a necessary Limitation and Dependence upon another Commander to keep himself safe. *Muley Scheck* had Directions, if victorious, to proclaim *Boferes* in *Fez*, and was promis'd the Vice-Royalty of that Kingdom. *Muley Seidan* soon got together 2000 Mules and Horses, on each of which he mounted two Soldiers, with their Accoutrements, whom he sent before, and himself follow'd with 7 or 8000 Men. A Battle was fought on January 6. 1604. wherein he was forced to fly, with little Loss on either Side. After this Battle, says our Author, Robberies increas'd, all Trade was ruin'd, and old Quarrels between Families came to be decided by the Sword. In the mean time *Muley Seidan* desired a Treaty, and would have made a stand; but his Brother *Scheck* pursued him so close, that he had not Time to take with him 900000 Ducats which he left at *Alarache*, but fled directly to *Tremesen*. During this, *Muley Seidan* was abandon'd by all Men of Note but two; and tho' he had but 20 Horse, often turn'd about and skirmish'd with his Pursuers.

Muley Seidan being thus expelled, *Scheck* proclaimed himself King of *Fez*, disdaining to be his Brother's Viceroy. The *Larbies* in the mean time refus'd to pay either of the three Rival Princes, and quarrell'd among themselves. *Seidan* having Intelligence of the great Discontents in several Parts against the present Government, and that many wished his Return after he had stay'd a few Months near *Tremesen*, with about 50 Horse he advanced to *Taflet*, where he was joined by 1200 more. *Muley Boferes* sent 4000 Foot and some Horse to prevent his marching to *Suz*; but there happened only a few Skirmishes between both Parties, because *Seidan* was not strong enough to try a pitch'd Battle, and he enter'd *Suz* by the Way of *Sahara*. At *Aca* he met with *Sidie Abdela Imbark*, a famous Faquir, and courted his

his Friendship, because that Religious Order of Men have such an Influence over the People, that he knew all his Brother's Forces could not beat him out of *Suz*, if this Priest was hearty in his Cause: But the Faquir engag'd both Brothers to a Treaty of Peace, by which it was agreed that *Sidan* should have *Suz*, and *Boferes* the rest of the Empire.

VI. *Muley Sidan*. *Heylin* begins his Reign as King of *Fez* in 1607, immediately after his Father's Death. *Harris's* Anonymous Author says, he govern'd his Province in great Peace, even when the Troubles in his Brother *Scheck's* Kingdom were at the highest. He was severe upon all Offenders, especially Thieves, but was naturally ambitious; and being the eldest Son by a lawful Wife, disdained his Brothers, and looked upon the Right of Succession to belong solely to him, contrary to the *Moors* Law, which prefers the eldest, whether by Wife or Concubine. He was blam'd for his heavy Taxes, so that the Mountaineers refus'd to pay them; and their Habitations being inaccessible, and the Men us'd to Fighting, they slighted him. Besides, our Author observes, that they were encourag'd underhand by *Boferes*: But the *Larbies*, who had not this Advantage, were forced to pay.

Muley Scheck trying all this while to fix himself in his Government, and designing to call in the Christians to his Assistance, *Boferes* concerted Methods to keep him in Awe, and for that End secur'd his eldest Son *Abdela*; but he escaped to his Father's Camp, which obliged *Boferes* to intreat *Sidan* to bring his Forces to *Morocco*, to join with his against the Father and Son. He came accordingly within half a Day's Journey of the Place; but discovering by an ingenious Stratagem, that *Boferes* would be glad to have his Head, he marched back to *Dara*. Upon this, *Boferes* committed the Command of his Army to his Son *Abdelmelech*; but 3000 of the Soldiers revolted to *Scheck*, and the rest were so disaffected, that *Abdelmelech* returned home without doing any thing. *Scheck* afterwards took *Sally*; and about this Time Sir *Anthony Shirley*, an Englishman, and Ambassador from the Emperor of Germany to *Morocco*, gave them Grounds to expect a Reconciliation of the Differences in *Barbary* by his Interest, because

he was a Person wonderfully beloved by all the Foreign Merchants here, and much respected by *Boferes*; but our Author says it came to nothing. *Scheck* resolved to try the Fate of a Battle, sent his Son *Abdela* with an Army to *Morocco*, having provided him with 27 Pieces of Ordnance, which he took out of the Ships in *Sally* and *Larache*, and obliged all the Mariners and Sailors to join him, which made up his Army 10000 Men; and in the mean time *Scheck* got ready 3 Italian Ships to convey him to *Florence*, if his Son lost the Battle. The Fight happen'd 6 Miles S. E. of *Morocco*, on December 8. 1606. when the Christian Mariners being better acquainted with the Use of Fire-Arms than the *Moors*, and furnished with a Train of Artillery, so unusual in that Part of the World, won the Day. *Boferes* lost 600 Men on the Spot, and fled to *Morocco* to secure his Treasure and Women; but for fear of being surpris'd, he left the Care of both to his Alkeids, and posted to the Mountains. The Treasure however was seiz'd by the *Larbies*, who to the Number of 500 set upon the Guard, and dishonour'd the Women, not sparing the King's own Daughter. Upon this, the Alkeids return'd to *Morocco*, where they took Sanctuary, and were promis'd Pardon by *Abdela* upon their Submission; but when they came out, he privately put them all to Death, and sent their Heads in a Sack as a Present to his Father in *Morocco*; so that none knew they were dead till their Heads were upon *Fez* Gates. The Italian Ships finding themselves neglected upon this Success, failed home, and secur'd for their Pay what Treasure had been already put on Ship-board. In the mean time *Abdela's* Murder of the Alkeids, and his Soldiers horrid Outrages, made many desert to *Muley Sidan*, who had stay'd till now at *Dara*. Upon the News of these Disorders, he marched to *Morocco*, and by Means of a great Uproar in the City, the first Night of his Arrival, some of his Soldiers got in and surpris'd the Artillery, but were beat out by the Christians. Next Day there was a general Fight begun by *Sidan's* Horse, who were obliged by the Cannon to retire in Disorder, which *Abdela's* Men perceiving, rashly gallop'd before their own Ordnance, and gave *Sidan* an Opportunity to drive them back upon their

their Guns, which he took, and slew those who stood their Ground, so that 7 or 8000 were killed on the Spot, and the Remainder massacred for most Part by the Citizens, in Revenge for their past Disorders; and most of the Christians, who had liv'd upon Piracy and Plunder, had their Throats cut. *Abdela* fled to *Fez* with less than 100 Men. *Sidan* besieg'd the Castle of *Morocco*, forc'd the Garrison to take Sanctuary, and promis'd their Lives upon their Submission; but as soon as they came forth, he caus'd them all to be put to Death, to the Number of 3000. Then he sent an Army to reduce *Fez*, which upon *Abdela's* Approach, and Promise of Pardon, submitted, which our Author ascribes to their Want of one of the Blood Royal to animate them: But many distrusting the Performance of *Abdela's* Promise, fled away, and 3000 that remained were slain by Way of Reprizal for *Sidan's* Revenge on the Garrison of *Morocco*. *Sidan* having in Pay 600 excellent Soldiers called *Shraceis*, sent them with others to raise a fresh Supply of Men and Money from the *Larbies*; but they mutiny'd by the Way, cut off their Commander's Head, and sent it as a Present to *Abdela*; upon which *Sidan* order'd all the *Shraceis* in his Dominions to be put to Death. This so enrag'd the *Shraceis*, that they prevail'd with *Abdela* to try another Battle with *Sidan*. The latter was joined by 200 *English*, with 60 Field-Pieces, under Captain *Giffard* and other good *English* Commanders, and was so strong, says our Author, that he had no Reason to doubt of Success, had he exerted his usual Courage. But this so fail'd him, because he was told by the Fortune-tellers that he should lose the Fight, that his Cannoniers fired before the Enemy were in reach, and they came up with them before they could charge again. The *Shraceis*, who never discharg'd till they came close up, fell on so fiercely, that they disorder'd the *Moors*; and the King, who thereupon fled, sent a good Horse to Captain *Giffard*, and advis'd him to save his Troops; but the *English* answer'd, They came not thither to run, and accordingly they stood very firm, not above 30 being left alive. Before *Abdela* had been long Master of *Morocco*, his Army was in great Want of Necessaries, &c. and most of the *Shraceis* went home.

After this, to the great Surprise of the three Rival Princes, a Cousin of theirs, call'd *Muley Hamet Bosonne*, who had been all this while hoarding up of Treasure, went to his Mother's Kindred in the *Tesseron* Mountains, where he rais'd 20000 able Men, gave them good Pay, and marched with them to *Morocco*, from whence the Citizens came over to him in great Numbers; so that *Abdela* was forced to fly to *Fez*. *Muley Sidan's* Mother hoping that *Bosonne* came to support her Son's Title, sent him a considerable Assistance; but upon his Arrival at *Morocco*, he proclaimed himself King, and dismissed all *Sidan's* Favourites. He was very liberal to his Followers, compelled no Man into his Service, and at his own Charge sent home such Christians as desired Leave to go. *Bosonne's* Mother hearing of his Success, follow'd with more Forces, and in her Way besieged the Place where *Bosferes* was; but he escaped to *Sally*, and next Morning she cut off the Governor's Head in Revenge.

Muley Sidan's Mother sold all her Plate and Jewels to restore him. *Hamet Bosonne* march'd against him, and both Armies met near *Morocco*, when a great Man of *Suz*, at the Head of his whole Family, consisting of 500 Men, charged *Bosonne* alone with great Valour, and being reinforced by a Detachment of 500 more from *Sidan*, drove *Bosonne* out of the Field. *Sidan* liv'd three Months after this in Peace at *Morocco*, till *Bosonne*, vainly expecting Help from the Citizens, came before the Town, but was forced to fly to the Mountains, and poison'd by the Procurement of *Alkeid Azus*, who was retired to a Castle of his own during the late Wars. This Success of *Sidan* gave Umbrage to *Muley Scheck*, who sent an *Italian* Merchant to the K. of *Spain*, with an Offer of *Allaroche*, *Sally*, *Alcasar*, &c. if he would assist to restore him. His Proposal succeeded so well, that 100 Sail of *Neapolitan* Gallies and Gallions, with Pioneers, &c. for raising Forts, came to take Possession of *Allaroche*; but 30000 *Larbies* oppos'd their Landing, and obliged them to return home.

Heylin says, That in this King *Sidan's* Time, a Nest of Pyrates harbour'd at *Sally*, from whence they did great Mischief both to him and Foreign Merchants; so that for Want of Shipping, he desir'd Assistance of

our King *Charles I.* with which he took the Port in 1632, destroy'd the Pyrates, and sent 300 Christian Captives to our King for a Present. He also sollicitd his Majesty's Aid against the Pyrates of *Algier*, as appears by a Letter more pious than could be expected from a *Mahometan*, for which we refer the Curious to *Heylin*, who thinks the Motion might have succeeded, had it not been for the Troubles which broke out soon after in *Scotland*. Our Authors do not continue this History any further; but the present Emperor of *Morocco* is *Muley Hamet Ismael*, of whom we shall take Notice when we come to give an Account of that Part of *Barbary*.

Heylin adds, That the Xeriffs have an absolute Power over the Lives and Fortunes of their Subjects. They demand the Tenths and First Fruits of Corn, &c. and Cattle, but are many times contented with the 20 Part in the Name of the First Fruits. They have the 5th Part of a Ducat for every Acre of Land, the other 4 Parts for every Fire, and as much for every Head above 15 Years of Age. He receives 2 per Cent. of the Natives for Merchandize, 10 of Foreigners, and has a large Impost upon every Mill. He is sole Heir to the Goods of all his Judges and great Officers, and gains large Sums by the Sale of their Offices; and when he raises Taxes, he commonly demands more than he intends to take, that the People may think his Abatement fair Usage. Besides other standing Forces, he has Bodies of Horse in constant readiness like the *Turkish* Timariots, and Supplies in case of Need from the Chiefs of the *Arabians* in the Plains and Mountains, to whom he gives certain Pensions. Forty six Quintals of Gunpowder are laid up every Month in his Arsenal at *Morocco*.

Harris's Anonymous Author gives the following Account of the several Degrees of Men in the Kingdom of *Fez*.

The Muleys are the Sons of the Blood Royal; the Basha's, Captain-Generals of the Armies; the Alkeids, Governors of Garrisons and Provinces: The Ferres are also Military Officers, but of less Authority than the Alkeids; the Bahaia is the Alkeid's Lieutenant; the Brakbashi, a Serjeant; the Debusshi, a Captain of 30; the Romie, a

common Soldier: The *Larbies* are the best Horse, and the *Brebies* the Foot. The Schecks, who are commonly the eldest Sons of Clans or Families, are so powerful, that some of them can bring into the Field 10000 Horse of their own Clan.

Once a Month, on *Fridays* after Prayers, the King hears Appeals from Inferior Judges, at which Time a Stranger has easier Access to plead his Cause than a natural Subject. The Inferior Judges are all Churchmen, and those are preferred who are the strictest Livers, and least inclinable to Avarice. Next the King is the Mufti, to whom Appeals lie from the lower Courts. There are three Mufti's, one at *Morocco*, another at *Fez*, and a third at *Taradant* in *Suz*. He at *Morocco* sits with the King, and every *Friday* in the Afternoon by himself; yet (says our Author) he is but poor to what he might be if he strain'd Justice. The common Judge sits every Day two Hours before Noon, and two after. Every large Town has a Judge, who determines the Causes of the Town and adjacent Country. Every Man pleads for himself, and when both Parties have done, the Judge gives Sentence the same Day. Either Party has three Days allowed to call Witnesses, and his Adversary the same to disprove them. But if the Witness be of bad Repute, or it can be proved that he does not say his Prayers 6 times in 24 Hours, his Evidence cannot be held good. Thus (says our Author) 7 Days put an End to any Law-Suit whatsoever. If a Person is bound for Debt, he must pay it or go to Prison, or give a Pawn of equal Value, which if not redeemed within 9 Days, is sold. The Scrivano's are Assistants to those Judges, and generally succeed them. They draw Writings so plain and short, that a Contract for 10000 *l.* shall be compriz'd in 10 Lines, for which they have but 2 *d.* *English*. The Steries, like our Sheriffs Officers, execute the Sentence of the Judge, summon People to answer to Writs, and always attend in the Judge's House. The Muffiteb examines Weights and Measures, proclaims the Offenders as unjust Men, severely whip them, and gives all their Wares to the Poor. The Hackam is the Judge of Life and Death, which is executed by cutting the Criminal's Throat immediately af-

ter the Sentence. Murder, Theft, and Adultery, are punished by Death, and the King by Proclamation can make what he pleases Capital, which the Hackam must see executed on Pain of losing his Head. The Muckadans are his Deputies, and in his Absence invested with his Authority. The Fokers or Saints live in the best Places of the Country with great Hospitality. They do much Good by their Example, are liberal to the Poor, and are ready to compose all Differences and Tumults; by which Means they are so respected, that their Houses are reputed Sanctuaries, which the King himself will not violate but in Cases of great Necessity.

The Force of this Kingdom (says the same Author) consists chiefly in Horse; so that in all their Armies they have 3 Horsemen to one Footman. Their Armour is a Jerkin of Buff for the better Sort, or of tann'd Leather for the rest, and some have Coats of Mail. Their Weapons are a Horseman's Staff, Target, and Sword, or a Horseman's Piece and Sword. The Success of their Battles depends generally on the first Onset, for they seldom hold it long. The *Larbies* fight better in a Quarrel betwixt their Families than in the Service of their K. so that sometimes 10000 Men fall at once. When an Affront is given, they mount the fairest Virgin they have on Horseback, with a Flag in her Hand, to solicit her Kindred to Revenge. She goes foremost to the Battle, which animates her Party; and if the Enemy win her, 'tis counted a Disgrace to the Aggressors to the 7th Generation. If one of a Tribe is killed, they revenge the Loss by killing the first Man of the Tribe that slew him. The *Brebers* have the same Quarrels; but when they go to fight, their Women follow close in the Rear, with a staining Colour in their Hands, call'd *Hanna*, with which they dawb such of their Men as give Ground, which (says our Author) makes them fight to the last.

He adds, that when the old King (*Muley Hamet*) was quietly fix'd on the Throne, he warr'd against the Negroes, with a Design to establish a Trade betwixt that Country and his own, by sending Salt and other Home Commodities for their Gold, which he rather chose to import from thence than to dig Mines in his own Kingdom, and

took Care to cut the Throats of the Discoverers, lest it should tempt his Enemies to an Invasion. His Soldiers took *Gago* from the Negroes, where he built a Custom-House, and a Place for the *Barbary* Merchants, who make it 6 Months Journey thither from *Morocco*, two of which they travel through uninhabited sandy Deserts, where their Guides steer their Course by the Sun, Moon, and Stars. If they miss their Way, they seldom get thro' alive, but are bury'd in the Sands, where their Carcasses turn into Mummies, which (our Author says) were altogether as Physical as those of *Alexandria*. They go 2 or 300 in a Company, carry Water upon Camels for themselves and Cattle; and if it fails, they kill the Beasts, and drink their Blood. When the Wind is at N. E. they cannot unlade their Camels, lest the Sands should cover them. They carry great Quantities of Cloth, Amber, Beads and Coral, besides Salt, which they buy at *Tegazza*, &c. for 4 s. a Camel's Load, or 6 Hundred Weight, for which they pay 5 l. Customs at *Gago*. Then they sell it far up in the Country to a deform'd Sort of Negroes, who never suffer themselves to be seen in Trading with Strangers, so that the latter leave their Salt in the Field, which the Negroes fetch after they are gone, and lay as much Gold against each Parcel as he thinks it worth, and leaves the Gold with the Salt. If the Moor at his Return likes the Price, he takes away the Gold; if not, he takes away as much from the Heap as he will sell for the Gold, which, when the Negro sees, he either adds more Gold, or takes away what he left before to end the Bargain. But our Author adds, they seldom disagree, for in most Bargains the *Moors* make a rich Return, and the King a full Treasure.

Leo gives the following Account of the Officers of the King's Court, Revenues, Retinue, and Manner of his Encampments.

When a King is proclaimed, he makes one of his Peers his chief Counsellor, and gives him one Third of the Crown Revenues. Then he nominates the Secretary, Treasurer, and High Steward, of his Household; after which, he appoints a Captain of the Horse or Guards, who lives commonly with the Horses in the Fields, and nominates a new Governor of the City.

Some

Some Time after, he sends Commissioners and Deputies to govern the Highlanders and *Arabians* that are subject to him, and appoints Collectors of the Crown Revenues, with a certain Number of Keepers or Guardians, (as they call them) giving to every one of them a Castle or Village to maintain themselves in Time of Peace, and to serve him in the Wars. The King maintains, besides his Guard, a Troop of Light-Horsemen, who live upon his Provisions while they serve in the Field; and in Time of Peace, the King gives them Corn, Butter, and powder'd Flesh, for the whole Year. They have little Pay; but the King provides entirely for their Horses, and cloaths them once a Year. Those that look after their Horses are Christian Captives, who go sack'd in great Chains; and when the Army removes, are carried upon Camels Backs. The Camels are taken Care of by an Officer for the purpose, who disposes of the Pasture as he pleases, and looks after the King's Furniture that's carried upon their Backs. There's a Purveyor, who provides and distributes Corn to the King's Household and his Army. In Time of War he has 10 or 12 Tents to lay up Corn in, and sends fresh Camels every Day for new Corn. There's a Groom of the Stables and Master of the Horse, who provides for the King's Horses, Mules, &c. and is furnished with all Necessaries by the Steward. There's an Overseer of the Corn, who provides Provender for the Beasts, and is as Under-Clerk to the High-Steward, who keeps an Account of what he lays out. The King has also a Captain over 50 Horsemen, who like Pursuivants execute his Orders, and in his Name can force the Judges to do Justice, and put their Sentences in Execution, and can both imprison and punish the chief Noblemen. There's a Chancellor who keeps the Great Seal, and writes and signs the King's Letters, and a Governor of his numerous Footmen, who always attends him. There's a Commissary for the Baggage of the Army, who takes Care to carry the Tents of the Light Horsemen upon Mules; and the Tents of the other Soldiers on Camels; and there's a Master of the Ceremonies who sits at the King's Feet in the Senate-House, and commands each Member to speak according to his Dignity. Besides, there's a Company

of Standard-Bearers, who upon a March carry their Colours wrapped up, only he that goes before the Army has his Banner display'd. They are generally the Guides of the Army, because they are best acquainted with the Fords of Rivers, and the Passages thro' Woods. There are a great many Drummers in the Army, who beat with a Bull's Pizzle upon Brass Drums as big as a great Kettle, which make a terrible Noise, and are cover'd with a Skin, the lower Part being narrow, and the upper broad. They ride on Horseback with a great Weight on one Side, to counterpoise the Drum on the other, and their Horses are very swift, because they count it a great Disgrace to lose a Drum. The Musicians that attend the Army are not paid by the King, for the Cities are bound to send a certain Number of them to the Wars, who are admitted or not admitted to the King's Table, according to their Behaviour. All the Women-Servants in the King's Household are Negro Slaves; but the Queen is always a White. Some *Spanish* and *Portuguese* Women Captives are also kept about the Court, with Eunuchs, who are Negro Slaves, to watch them.

The Revenues amount but to 300000 Ducats a Year, of which the King has not one Fifth, for most of his Incomes are paid in Corn, Cattle, Oil, and Butter, which fetch but little Money. In some Places they pay $1\frac{1}{4}$ Ducat per Acre, and in others a whole Farm pays no more, and so every Head pays as much in some Parts as whole Families do in others, which makes the Citizens of *Fez* more dissatisfied at the Payment of Taxes than any thing else. By the Law, a *Mahometan* Prince, unless he be a Priest, can exact no more than what was settled by *Mahomet*, viz $2\frac{1}{2}$ per Cent. of the ready Money, and $\frac{1}{10}$ of all their Corn, Part of which is to be employ'd in relieving the Poor, and carrying on necessary Wars. But our Author observes, that the Secular Princes consume these Taxes, and exact greater; so that in his Time all the Inhabitants of *Africa* were so oppress'd with daily Exactions, that they had scarce Food. In Time of Peace the King maintains 6000 Horse, 500 Cross-Bows, and as many Musketers, who keep within a Mile of his Person when he makes a Progress; but at *Fez* he needs not such a Guard.

Guard. When he wars with the *Arabians*, he obliges those *Arabians* that are subject to him to find him a great Army at their own Cost, who are better Soldiers than his own.

When the King is to ride out, the Master of the Ceremonies sends Notice to his Relations, his Nobility, Senators, Captains, Guardians, and Gentlemen, who immediately draw up before the Palace-Gate. Upon the King's coming out of Doors, the Messengers put the Retinue in the following Order: The Standard-Bearers go first, then the Drummers, then the chief Groom of the Stable with his Attendants, then the King's Pensioners, his Guard, Master of the Ceremonies, Secretaries, Treasurer, Chief Judge, Captain General, and three Officers, one with a Sword, another with a Shield, and a third with a Cross-Bow, and at last the King himself, accompanied by his chief Counsellor, or some other Peer. His Footmen march on each Side, one with a Pair of Stirrups, another with a Partizan, the third a Covering for his Saddle, the 4th an Halter for his Horse, and another his fine Slippers. As soon as the King dismounts, the Cover and Halter are put upon his Horse. After the King, follows the Captain of the Footmen, the Eunuchs, the King's Family, the Light Horse, and in the Rear the Cross-Bows and Firelocks. Yet upon these Occasions the King's Apparel is but thin and ordinary, tho' his Retinue is very fine. Besides, our Author observes, that the Law of *Mahomet* prohibits any Prince to wear a Crown, Diadem, or the like Ornament upon his Head.

When the King encamps with his Army, his own great Tent, which is 50 Ells square, is first pitched. This Royal Pavilion has 4 Gates kept by Eunuchs, and on each Corner of the Square a Spire of Cloth, with a shining Ball at Top. There are several other Tents within the Pavilion, particularly one for the King, which is moveable. Next to this Pavilion are the Tents of the Noblemen and the Favourites, then those of the chief Guards, made of Goats-Skins like the *Arabians*, and in the midst of all the King's Kitchen and Pantry. The Light-Horsemen lie near the Pavilion, next to them are the Stables, and without the Circle are the Baggage-Men, Butchers, Victual-

lers, &c. The King's Pavilion and Stables are guarded at Night by Watchmen; but *Leo* lays, that they have no Arms, and are so careless, that Horses have been often stole, and Enemies have been taken in the King's Tent, that came with a Design to murder him. He adds, that the King lives most of his Time in the Fields, as well to guard his Kingdom, as to keep his *Arabian* Subjects in Obedience. His Diversions are playing at Chefs and Hunting, particularly the Lion, of which we took Notice in our General Account of *Barbary*.

We come next to the particular Description of *Fez*, which most Geographers divide into *Temesna*, *Fez Proper*, *Chaus*, *Garet*, *Asgara*, *Erriff*, and *Habat*.

1. CHAUS, CUTZ, CHEUZ, or EL-CHAUS.

We begin with this first, because it lies next to *Algier*. The *Sansons* make it the largest of all the 7 Provinces, and extend it from Long. 23 $\frac{1}{2}$. to 28 $\frac{1}{2}$. and from Lat. 29. 50. to 33. 15. above 140 Miles in Breadth, and 246 in Length, on the S. Side, so that it contains one Third of the Kingdom of *Fez*. They bound it with *Telensin* on the E. *Segelmesse* on the S. *Temesna* on the W. and *Fez*, *Erriff*, and *Garet*, on the N. and say, it takes in several Branches of Mount *Atlas*, where the Rivers *Cebu* or *Suba*, with its remarkable Bridge, formerly mentioned, and *Mulvia*, *Nocor*, and some others, have their Fountains. Some of their Mountaineers are rich, and pay little or nothing; whereas others are poor, and oppressed with heavy Taxes, according as they are more or less accessible, or abound with Vines, Fruits, Pasturage, &c. The Plain of *Sabhel-Murga* or *Sablel-Marga*, i.e. the Plain of Meadows, on the Frontiers of *Segelmesse*, abounds with Charcoal-makers, because of the neighbouring Woods, and with ravenous Lions; that of *Asguri Cameren* on the same Frontier, more to the W. with Shepherds, because they have Grass there all the Year, and many Forrests according to *Dapper*; and that of *Gueregra* on the Frontiers of *Temesna* and *Fez* abounds with Husbandmen, because the Soil there is fit for Corn. The Gentry of this Country are said to be very generous, and of good Use to the King of *Fez* against the *Algerines*. Mar-

mol makes it larger than any two Provinces in *Fez*, and thinks that from thence it derived the Name of *Cutz*, i. e. Much. He says, 'tis 80 Leagues in Length from the River *Gureygure* to that of *Esaga*, including all the Mountains of the Great *Atlas* that lie between those Rivers, together with great Part of the Plains of *Numidia*, and the Mountains that border upon *Inner Lybia*. Some say, that this Province was divided into 3 Parts, which were conferred by the first K. of *Fez* upon the Branches of the *Benemerini's*, that were their Allies, who since that defended themselves a long Time against the *Turks* and the Power of the *Xeriffs*, till at last, says *Marmol*, they made themselves Allies, or rather Vassals, to the Kings of *Fez*, who have a particular Respect for them upon Account of their brave Nobility, that has all along kept up the Independency of the Province in Opposition to the Lords of *Tremesen*. He adds, that it lies among Mountains, which are all inhabited by the *Zenetæ*. *Heylin* makes it 190 Miles long, and 70 broad. *Dapper* makes it 46 Miles from E. to W. and 40 in Breadth.

Leo says, the chief Mountains are, 1. Mount *Jessenten*, *Beni-Jessenten*, or *Iechtesen*, inhabited by an inhumane, ignorant, and beggarly Crew, subject to the Governor of *Dubdu*. Their Houses and Shoes are made of Sea-Rushes. *Panick* is the only Thing that grows upon it, of which they make Bread, &c. and at the Foot of it there are Gardens of Grapes, Dates, and Peaches. They dry the latter in the Sun, quarter them, and throw away the Stones; so that after a Year's keeping, they are accounted a choice Rarity. They have some Mines of Iron, of which they make blunt pointed Daggers and Horse-shoes, that sometimes serves 'em for Money, which is very scarce upon the Mountain. Their Women are proud of Iron Rings on their Fingers and Ears, and are scandalously rigg'd, for they live generally in the Woods, where they keep Goats, and gather Fuel. The *Sanfons* place this Mountain about Lat. 32. 15. Long. 17. 10.

2. *Beni Jafga* Mountain. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 31. 50. about Long. 16. and 30 Miles S. W. of the former. *Leo* says, 'tis separated by the River *Subu* from Mount *Selelgo*, and that they cross from one to the other by the famous Bridge formerly men-

tioned. This Mountain produces Plenty of Oil, Cattle, and Sheep with Wool, of which the Women make Cloth, Quilts, and Coverlets, as fine as Silk, that yields them a good Price at *Fez*. The Inhabitants are very modest and civil.

3. Mount *Selelgo*, *Selelgus*, or *Ciligo*. *Leo* says, the Inhabitants remove every Spring to the Valleys with their Houses of Sea-Rushes, and continue there till the End of *May*, when the *Arabians* coming from the Deserts in quest of Fountains and moist Places for their Cattle, they retire up again to their Mountain. But in the Winter, these *Arabians* resort to Woods and warm Places to favour their Camels. This Mountain abounds with Lions, Leopards, and Apes, and gives Rise to the River *Subu*, which has a rapid Stream; that drives Stones of a Hundred Weight. *Dapper* says, it bears Pine Trees.

4. *Centopozzi*, *Centumputei*, or *Miatbir* Mountain, about Lat. 31. 21. and Long. 17. 20. in the S. E. Frontier of the Province, according to the *Sanfons*. *Leo* says, there are a great many old Houses here, and a bottomless dry Pit, into which some that have been let down by Ropes with Torches in their Hands report, that below 'tis divided into a great many Rooms, and one especially very large hewn out of a Rock, and encompassed with a Wall, that has 4 Doors leading to some narrow Places, where are Springs of Water. Our Author observes, that some of these bold Adventurers have lost their Lives in the Discovery; for if their Lights happen to go out, they can't find the Rope, and so die by Famine. 'Tis said, that 3 Men being let down, parted at the 4 Doors above-mentioned, and went one one Way, and the other two another. After the latter had gone about a quarter of a Mile, one of their Lights was put out by Swarms of Bats, and at last they came to the Springs, where they found the Bones of dead Men, and 5 or 6 Candles, some fresh, and others wasted with Time. Then they returned by the same Course, but in their Way a sudden Blast put out the other Light; upon which, as they were scrambling among the Ropes, and after many fruitless Attempts, lost all Hopes of finding their Way; some of their Companions that tarry'd at the Mouth of the Cave were

were let down to see what was become of them. By their Lights, and making a great Noise, they found them at last, and brought them up. But the third that went by himself could not be found, till at last, hearing a Noise like the Barking of Dogs, he made up to them, and met 4 strange new born Beasts, with a Dam like a She-Wolf, which fawned upon him with her Tail. After this, he perceived a little Glimmering of Light, by which he found his Way out. But *Leo* adds, that now the Pit is full of Water.

5. *Gunaigel, Gherben*; i. e. the Mountain of Ravens. *Leo* places it near the former, and so does *Sanfon* to the N. E. The former says, 'tis full of Woods, Leopards and Lions, and uninhabited, because of its extreme Coldness. There's a very high Rock here, the Top of which is frequented by vast Numbers of Crows and Ravens. Sometimes the N. Wind brings such abundance of Snow upon this Mountain, that those who travel from *Numidia* are lost in it. Every Summer the neighbouring *Arabians*, call'd *Beni Effen*, resort to this Mountain for the Benefit of its cool Water and pleasant Shades. *Dapper* says, 'tis called *Cunai-g. lgherben* or *Condigetherben*.

6. *Ziz* Mountain. *Leo* says, 'tis inhabited by Robbers, who are continually molesting the *Arabians*, and are so spiteful as to throw their Camels over the Rocks. There are Serpents here and on Mount *Gercelayen* that come into the People's Houses at Dinner-time, pick up the Crumbs under the Table, and do no Harm unless they are injur'd. *Dapper* says, 'tis 34 Miles long, and 14 broad, and bounds on the E. with Mount *Maletrāsa*, on the W. with *Tedela* and Mount *Edis*, on the S. with *Segelmessé*, and on the N. with the Plains of *Edeffen* and *Guregra*. He adds, that the Houses upon these Mountains are cover'd with the Bark of Trees and Mud, and that they keep their Cattle in Huts cover'd with Rushes. The *Sanfons* make it a Ridge of Mountains in the N. W. Corner of the Province. The People wear a Woollen Shirt, with a Gown over it, and a Piece of Linen round their Waste, and always go bare-headed, tho' it be amidst Ice and Snow. *Marmol* says, that in two of the Mountains, called *Aden* and *Arucanes*,

there are Silver Mines, but the Inhabitants don't work them.

7. *Maletrāsa* or *Mafetrāsa* Mountain. *Dapper* says, 'tis 10 Miles long, and 4 broad; that the Inhabitants are of a good Understanding, and wear handsome Apparel.

8. *Matgara* or *Matagara*, or *Matgarus*. *Dapper* places it two Miles from *Teza*, and says, 'tis woody, very fruitful, has a wholesome Air all the Year round, and is of very difficult Ascent, because the Passages are streight. He adds, that here are some Wild Beasts and Stags. The *Sanfons* place it about Lat. 32. 20. Long. 25. 46.

9. *Carvata* or *Garvata*. *Dapper* says, 'tis of the like difficult Ascent, 5 Miles from *Teza* to the W. 2 Miles from N. to S. and 3 in Length. He adds, that it contains 50 Villages and two good Fountains, which form two large Rivers; and that here are some Leopards and Apes. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 32. ½. Long. 25. ½.

10. *Megeza* Mountain. *Dapper* says, it contains 40 Villages, and yields Store of Flax.

11. *Baronis* or *Baronifus*. *Dapper* says, this Mountain contains 35 Villages, lies 3 Miles N. of *Teza*, and produces red Grapes, of which they make good Wine. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 32. 40. Long. 25. 50. Their Women are fair, and wear Ornaments of Silver.

12. *Gueblen* or *Guibeleyn*. *Dapper* places it 16 Miles from *Teza*, 15 Miles in Length, and two in Breadth, and bounds it on the E. with Mount *Dubdu*, and on the W. with *Benijafga*.

13. *Afgan* Mountain. *Dapper* bounds it on the E. with Mount *Selego*, on the W. with the Town of *Soffroy*, on the S. with the Mountains above the River *Muluya*, and on the N. with the Plains of *Fez*. He makes it two Miles long, and five broad, and adds, that several Brooks rise out of this and Mount *Selego*, which water the Territory of *Tesergue* and *Gerceluin*.

14. *Beniguerhenaz*. *Dapper* says, this Mountain produces Flax, Corn, Olives, Citrons, and Quinces.

15. *Beni-Gebara*. *Marmol* says, 'tis very populous, and its Avenues are difficult, so that the Inhabitants still keep their Liberty. It abounds with Corn, Cattle, Vines, Olives,

Olives, &c. Fountains, and all Necessaries for Life, so that they may suffer a Ten Years Siege without Fear of Famine. They amount to 7000 Fighting Men, arm'd with Muskets and Cross-Bows. They pay a Tribute to the K. of Fez to have a free Trade in the Plain, where there's a great Market held.

He adds, that the Inhabitants of the Mountains *Benimerasen*, *Mesetrazza*, and *Zis*, breed up a great many Horses, Asses, Mules and Sheep; that the Women of Mount *Baronis* are fair, and wear Ornaments of Silver; and that the Inhabitants of Mount *Benibuhulul* are as bad as those of *Benijehtesen*.

We come next to give an Account of the chief Towns in this Province, which are, 1. *Garzis*, *Garzis*, or *Gafala*, upon the River *Mulvia* according to the *Sansons*, in Long. 27. 43. Lat. 33. 5. 80 Miles S. W. of *Telenfin*, 88 N. E. of *Tezza*, and 11 N. W. of *Teurent*. *Marmol* says, it stands upon a Rock, where the *Benemerini's* lodg'd their Magazines before their Accession to the Imperial Crown. It was afterwards ruin'd upon a Revolt of the Citizens. *Ptolomy* places it Long. 11. and Lat. 32. 40. *Dapper* says, the Walls and Houses are of black Stone, and that the neighbouring Gardens produce Store of Figs, Grapes, and Peaches.

2. *Teurent*, *Teurentum*, or *Teurent*. The *Sansons* place it on the River *Zhas*, Lat. 32. 53. Long. 17. 37. 95 Miles N. E. of *Tezza*, at the Foot of Mountains which part it from *Telenfin*, so that the Kings of *Fez* and *Tremesen* have often taken it from one another. It stands on a rising Ground, has strong Walls, is well built, and contains 3000 Houses. *Heylin* places it in the middle of a Plain, encompassed with Deserts. *Marmol* says, 'twas built by the ancient *Africans*, encompassed with fruitful Fields, was formerly one of the principal Cities of *Mauretania*, and receiv'd Tribute from all the *Arabians* in the adjacent Deserts, but is since dispeopled by the Wars of *Tremesen*. *Dapper* bounds its Territory on the N. with the Deserts of *Garet*, on the S. with those of *Abdichra*, on the E. with those of *Angad* on the Frontiers of *Telenfin*, and on the W. with the Desert of *Tafata*, which reaches to the Town of *Tezza*.

3. *Haddagia* or *Addagia*. The *Sansons* place it near the River *Mulvia*, 76 Miles N. E. of *Tezza*, Lat. 32. 45. Long. 17. 17. *Marmol* says, 'tis a large City, in an Island form'd by the Rivers *Mululo* and *Mulucan*, which was deserted by the Inhabitants when oppressed by the *Mahometan Arabians* on one Side, and the Armies of *Fez* and *Tremesen* on the other. But *Dapper* says, 'twas restor'd to its former Splendour by the *Turks* sending hither a Colony of the *Arabs* of *Mottigia*. *Heylin* makes this the most E. Town of the Province, but the *Sansons* say the former.

4. *Umeniinnaiba*, *Umequinaibe*, *Umen-Genuabo*, *Umen-Giveaibe*, or *Numen-Giunnaibe*, among the Mountains, which *Moll* calls *Zalach*, on the E. Side of the Province. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 32 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 17. 30. almost 90 Miles S. E. of *Tezza*. *Leo* says, there's a Road near this Town, which whoever passes without dancing and leaping falls into an Ague or Fever. *Marmol* places it between the Rivers *Mulvia* and *Esacha*, and says, 'twas built for the Security of the Road from *Fez* to *Numidia*. *Dapper* says, 'tis an ancient Town, 3 Miles from the Road which leads to *Atlas Major*.

5. *Tezerghe* or *Tezerga*. The *Sansons* place it Long. 27. 37. Lat. 32. upon a River which runs from Mount *Gunaigelgherbena* into *Mulvia*, almost 100 Miles S. E. of *Tezza*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a little Town with sorry Houses, built in Form of a Citadel, and that the Inhabitants are lazy.

6. *Dubdu*, *Dubudu*, or *Dubdum*. The *Sansons* place it on a River that runs from the Mountain *Beni-Jessenten* into the River *Mululus*, Lat. 32. 8. Long. 16. 50. almost 60 Miles S. E. of *Tezza*. *Leo* says, it was possessed by one *Mahomet*, who adorn'd it with many fine Buildings, reform'd its Government, and was extremely civil to Strangers. He had a Design upon *Tezza*, which was in the Hands of the King of *Fez*, and went disguis'd in a Country Habit to the Marketplace, in hopes the Townsmen would rise; but the King of *Fez* having Notice of the Plot, marched against *Dubdu* with a great Army, and encamped at the Foot of the Mountain. In the mean time 6000 of the Mountaineers lay in Ambush among the Rocks, and after the *Fezzan* Soldiers had gone a pretty Way up the difficult Passes of the

the Mountain, so that they could not well get back again, sallied out and killed 3000 of them. But the King advanced with 500 Cross-Bows and 300 Firelocks to make a new Attack: Upon which *Makomet*, too weak to hold out any longer, went in the Habit of an Ambassador, and deliver'd a Letter to the King, who asking him, What he thought of the Governor of *Dubdu*? He answer'd, He thought him mad in presuming to oppose his Majesty. The King at the same time threaten'd to tear him in Pieces when he was Master of the Town: But the disguis'd Ambassador asking his Majesty if he would not pardon him upon Acknowledgment of his Offence, he promis'd not only to forgive him, but to marry his two Daughters to his Sons, and back'd it with a solemn Oath; upon which *Mahomet* fell at his Feet, and discover'd himself, and the King made good his Promise. *Leo* adds, that this happen'd about 1495. *Marmol* says, 'tis a great strong City, was built by the *Benemerini's* on the Side of a high Mountain, being only accessible by a steep and difficult Road, and was govern'd by the Descendants of their Family till 1563, when 'twas seized by the Xeriff. *Dapper* places it on a Mountain of its own Name, Lat. 25. two Miles from a Plain, and says, 'tis inhabited by the *Zeneti*, and full of Canals, and Vallies planted with Vines. *Heylin* says, the Ascent to it is 5 Miles by winding Passages; that it has Gardens, but little Corn, except what comes from *Tezza*.

7. *Gerceluin*, *Garciluin*, or *Gherselwinum*. The *Sanfons* place it at the Foot of Mount *Zis*, on a River that runs into *Segelmessé*, Lat. 31. 10. Long. 15. almost 86 Miles S. W. of *Tezza*, and say, 'tis ordinary within, but fair without. *Dapper* says, 'tis an ancient Town, near a River of the same Name, and was encompassed with strong Walls by the Kings of the *Merini*.

8. *Hamfisnan* or *Ain el Ginum*, i. e. the Fountain of Idols, because (says *Dapper*) there was anciently a Temple here, where the People assembled in the Night-time, and after Sacrifice and Lights put out, committed Uncleanness with one another. This Fountain is a small Lake, from which run several Streams. The *Sanfons* place it among the Mountains *Beni Jafga*, in Long. 25. Lat. 32.

47 Miles S. W. of *Tezza*. *Leo* says, the Children begot in their promiscuous Embraces were brought up by the Priest of the Temple, and set apart for sacred Services, and the Mothers might lie with any Man for a Year after. *Heylin* says, every Trade has a separate Street here.

9. *Benibachlul*, *Benibachlulia*, *Benihulad*, or *Benikulid*. The *Sanfons* place it on the Borders of the Province of *Fez*, Lat. 32. 9. Long. 14. 38. 60 Miles S. W. of *Tezza*. *Dapper* says, 'twas formerly call'd *Benta*, and lay upon the Declivity of Mount *Atlas* towards *Fez*, and but 3 Miles from it. He says, there's a Road near it which leads to *Numidia*, and that the Town is water'd by several Streams which run down the Mountain.

10. *Mezdaga* or *Mesdaga*. The *Sanfons* place it about 6 Miles E. of *Benibachlul*, and as many W. of *Sofroa*. *Dapper* places it 4 Miles S. of *Fez*, and says, 'tis a little Town at the Foot of Mount *Atlas*, with good Walls, but ordinary Houses, which have each a Fountain. He adds, that their Woods are full of Lions, which fly at the Sight of an arm'd Man.

11. *Sofroa* or *Sofroi*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 32. 10. Long. 15. 45 Miles S. W. of *Tezza*. *Leo* says, it has a Temple, and a River running thro' it, with an excellent Fountain at the Door. *Marmol* says, it abounds with Oil, which they carry to *Fez*. *Dapper* places it at the Foot of Mount *Atlas*, 4 Miles S. of *Fez*, and near the Road which leads to *Numidia*. He says, the Inhabitants are ill cloath'd, but very witty.

12. *Mabdia* or *Mehedia*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 31. 52. Long. 15. 11. 45 Miles S. W. of *Tezza*. *Dapper* places it in a Plain among the Mountains of *Arden*, which are Part of Great *Atlas*, and 3 Miles from *Hamfisnan*, encompassed with Woods and Rivers, and inhabited by the *Arabians*.

13. *Tezza*, *Fezza*, *Tedza*, *Meza*, or *Tezar*, the Capital of this Province. The *Sanfons* place it Long. 15. 47. Lat. 32. 27. 53 Miles E. of *Fez*. *Moll* places it Long. 15. 4. on the E. Side of the River *Nocor*, and Lat. 30. 50. about 90 Miles N. E. of *Fez*. *Leo* says, it lies in the Road from *Garet* to *Casasnan*, 5 Miles from Mount *Atlas*, 50 S. from *Fez*, 130 E. from the Ocean, and 170 S. of the *Mediterranean*. It formerly contain'd 5000 Families.

Families. Its Palaces, Temples, and Colleges, are pretty fair, but the other Buildings are very ordinary. A small River that springs out of the *Atlas* runs thro' its chief Temple; but their Neighbours sometimes cut it off from them, and leave them nothing but stinking Water, which forces them to a Composition. Our Author says, 'twas reckon'd in his Time the third City of the Kingdom of *Fez* for Riches, and the Number and Civility of the Inhabitants. The chief Temple is greater than that at *Fez*: Besides which, it has 3 Colleges, 23 Baths, and a great many Hospitals, and every Trade has a separate Division. The People are more valiant and generous than those of *Fez*, and many of 'em are learned and rich. The adjacent Fields are very fruitful. The Plains without the Walls are very large, and full of little Brooks, that run into their Gardens, which abound with all Sorts of Fruit. Their Vines yield Store of sweet Grapes, of which the *Jews* (of whom there were 500 Families here in his Time) make as good Wine as any in *Africa*. *Marmol* says, this is *Ptolemy's Teyser*, which he places Long. 9. Lat. 33. 10. The *Sansons* say, it has a stately Castle, and almost 100 Temples; and that 'twas sometimes the Residence of the *Marin* Kings, who gave it to their second Sons, and they resided in the Castle. *Dapper* places it but two Miles from Mount *Atlas*, and 12 from *Fez*, and says, that its Jurisdiction is very large, and reaches over several Mountains. He adds, that the Soil yields 30 fold, and that most of the Inhabitants are pretty polite. The *Arabs* bring Dates and great Sums of Money hither from *Segelmessé*, in Exchange for Corn, which makes the City very rich; and the King of *Fez* often comes hither for Air.

2. G A R E T.

The *Sansons* extend it from Long. 16. 20. to 17. 46. and from Lat. 33. 6. to 34. 15. 66 Miles from the River *Nacor* on the W. to *Mulvia* on the E. and as much from the Mountains of *Garet* on the S. to the Cape of *Three Forks* on the N. where broadest. They bound it with *Telenfin* on the E. *Chaus* on the S. *Erriff* on the W. and the *Mediterra-*

nean on the N. *Marmol* says, 'tis encompassed by the River *Melula* on the E. and W. and *Dapper* makes the River *Mullis* Part of its S. Boundary. *Du Plessis* says, 'tis one of the least Provinces of the Kingdom of *Fez*. *Heylin* makes it 25 Leagues long, and 20 broad. *Leo* says, the *African* Authors divide it into 3 Parts, the one comprehending the Cities with their Territories, the other the inhabited Mountains, and the 3d the Deserts. He bounds the Deserts with the Mountains of *Garet* on the W. and the River *Mulvia* on the E. and makes them 60 Miles long, and 30 broad. There's no Water in them except the River *Mulvia*, whither retire in Summer many *Arabians*, and a fierce People call'd *Batulisa*, who have Store of Horses, Camels, &c. and wage perpetual War with the *Arabians* that border upon them. *Dapper* says, these Deserts begin Northward towards the *Mediterranean*, and run S. as far as the Deserts of *Chaux*. He makes that Part which contains the Towns, &c. 16 Miles long, and 14 broad.

Leo includes the Mountains *Benigazzeval* and *Beni-Mesgalda* in this Province; but *Marmol*, *Dapper*, and the *Sansons*, place them in *Erriff*, where we shall describe them.

The other Mountains are, 1. *Alcudia*, on the Coast of the *Mediterranean*. *Marmol* takes it for the *Abyla* of the Ancients, which was one of *Hercules's* Pillars. The *Sansons* place it Long. 17. Lat. 34. 9. *Dapper* says, it abounds with Apes.

2. *Cabo de tres Forcas*, or the Cape of *Three Forks*. Some think the Town the *Metagonitis* of *Ptolemy*, and the Cape the *Metagonium* of *Strabo*, and others the ancient Town of *Sestiaria*. The *Sansons* place it about Long. 17 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 34. 15. *Moll* Lat. 36. Long. 16 $\frac{1}{4}$. *Dapper* says, it runs a great Way into the Sea, and that on the E. Side, near its Point, lie three small Islands in the Form of a Triangle, wherein the *Sansons* agree with him; and about 8 Miles to the N. he places the Island *Abusam*, in Lat. 35. 20. The *Sansons* call it *Albusama*, and place it about Lat. 34. 26. and *Moll* calls it *Alboran*, Lat. 36 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 16 $\frac{1}{2}$.

3. *Equebdenon*, or *Mequeb-Huan*. The *Sansons* place it between the Town of *Chasasa* and the River *Mulvia*. *Dapper* says, it extends from the *Mediterranean* to the Deserts of *Garet* on the S. and that before the *Span-*

niards took *Casasa*, it had 72 Villages; but now 'tis not near so populous.

4. *Benisabid*. The *Sansons* place it about Lat. 33. 25. Long. 17. *Dapper* says, 'tis 8 Miles long, and runs W. from *Casasa* to the River *Nocor*, and S. from the *Mediterranean* to the Mountains of *Garet*, containing 118 Villages. 'Tis pretty well water'd.

5. *Afgangan*. The *Sansons* place it about Lat. 33. 40. Long. 17. *Dapper* bounds it on the S. with *Casasa*, and extends it to the Deserts of *Garet*.

6. *Beniteusfin*. The *Sansons* place it about Lat. 33. 40. Long. 16. 30. *Dapper* bounds it on the S. with *Afgangan*, and extends it 10 Miles in Length from the Deserts of *Garet* to the River *Nocor*. There are pleasant Plains on one Side of it, and the Inhabitants of this Mountain raise a fine Breed of Horses.

7. *Guardan*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 33. 46. Long. 18. 21. in the N. W. Part of the Province. *Dapper* bounds it on the S. with Mount *Beniteusfin*, and extends it to the *Mediterranean* and the River *Nocor*, two Miles in Length.

Dapper says, the Soil in most Parts of this Province is barren and dry like the Deserts of *Numidia*, and has no other Water but Rain and that of the River *Mulvia*. He adds, that the Mountains *Echebdenon*, *Benisabid*, and *Afgangan*, abound with good Pasture, and yield Store of Barley and Honey, besides some Mines of Iron, which the Inhabitants barter for Oil, because they have none. He says, most of the Inhabitants are courageous and liberal, especially those of *Meggeo* and *Beni-Sabid*, who are conversant with Strangers that pass into their Country. Both they and the Mountaineers of *Beniteusfin* and *Guardan* are very good Soldiers, and drink nothing but Water, tho' their Province bounds on that of *Erriff*, where they have abundance of Wine.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Tezota* or *Tessota*. The *Sansons* place it on a Mountain near the River *Mulvia*, Lat. 33. 27. Long. 17. 37. 17 Miles S. E. of *Chasasa*, and 35 from *Melilla*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a little Town upon the Point of a steep Rock, but 3 Leagues from *Melilla*, and the Capital of the Province, defended by 300 Foot and 60 Horse, under the Command of the Governor, because if the *Turks* should take it, they would

be able to master the whole Province. *Dapper* says, they have none but Rain Water, which they keep in Cisterns.

2. *Meggeo*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a little Town upon a high Mountain two Miles from the *Mediterranean*, and four from *Tessota*. We suppose it to be the same with the *Meiea* which the *Sansons* place on a Mountain between *Chasasa* and *Tezota*, Lat. 33. 35. Long. 17 $\frac{1}{2}$. 6 Miles S. of *Chasasa*, and 26 from *Melila*.

3. *Chasasa* or *Casasa*. The *Sansons* place it at the End of a Bay, Lat. 33. 42. Long. 17 $\frac{1}{2}$. almost 20 Miles S. E. of *Melila*. *Marmol* says, 'tis built upon a Cape of its own Name, which *Ptolomy* calls *Metagonita*, and places Long. 13 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 34. 56. It has a good Harbour, where the *Venetian* Gallies us'd to touch, and it drove so great a Trade, that the K. of *Fez* was much enrich'd by its Customs. 'Twas taken by the *Spaniards* under *Ferdinand* K. of *Castille* and *Arragon*, and afterwards betray'd to the *Moors* by three of the Garrison, whom the Governor had disoblig'd. The Governor of *Melila* sent some Troops by Sea to recover it; but the *Moors* having put the *Spanish* Garrison to the Sword, put on their Coats and marched out to meet the Recruits, who judging by their Habit that they were *Spaniards*, came on Shore and were all cut to Pieces. 'Twas afterwards destroyed; so that in our Author's Time there remained nothing but a strong Castle upon a Rock, which could not be undermin'd. *Dapper* places it but 6 Miles from *Melilla*, and says, there are a great many Rocks at the Mouth of the Bay on which it stands.

4. *Melilla*, *Melela*, *Milila*, or *Metilla*. The *Sansons* place it on the same Coast, Long. 17. 22. Lat. 34. 75 Miles N. W. from the City of *Telensin*. *Moll* places it Lat. 35 $\frac{3}{4}$. Long. 15 $\frac{1}{3}$. above 90 Miles from *Telensin*. *Leo* says, the Inhabitants being threaten'd by the *Spanish* Armada, fled with their Effects to the Mountains of *Butthoia*; upon which the K. of *Fez*'s General, to revenge their Cowardice, and to leave nothing for the *Spaniards*, burnt it; but the latter, under the Duke of *Medina Sidonia*, enter'd upon the Ruins in 1487, built a strong Castle here, repair'd the Walls, and held it a great while in their Possession; but *Marmol* says, it return'd afterwards to the King of *Fez*.

Fez. He tells us, the City had its Name from its Plenty of Honey and Wax; that it stands on a Plain at the Bottom of a Gulph, and is commanded on the W. Side by a Mountain; that 'tis the *Russadira* which *Ptolomy* places Long. 10. 10. Lat. 34. 45. that it has large Territories and Iron Mines; that 'twas once a very rich and populous City; that 'twas first render'd famous by the *Romans*, while they were Masters of *Mauretania Tingitana*; that the *Goths* possess'd it after their Departure, and built its Walls, till the Arrival of the *Arabians*, who added to its Splendor, by settling here a great many Merchants and Tradesmen. Some Years after them the Schismatick Caliph of *Carouan* took it by Capitulation, and then 'twas taken by the *Spaniards*, as we have already mentioned. The *Sanfons* say, this has a much better Harbour than *Chasasa*, and contain'd about 2000 Families in the Time of the *Mahometans*. *Dapper* says, 'twas formerly call'd *Ryffadium* or *Ruissar*, and the Capital of this Province; and that 'tis now one of the best Places which the *Spaniards* have in *Africa*.

3. E R R I F F Province.

The *Sanfons* extend it from Long. 14. 15. to 16. 20. and from Lat. 32. 44. to 34 $\frac{1}{2}$. viz. 100 Miles along the Coast of the *Mediterranean*, and as much where broadest from N. to S. They bound it on the E. with *Garet*, by which 'tis parted from the River *Nocor*; on the S. with Part of *Chaus* and *Fez*; on the W. with *Habat*, from which 'tis parted by the Mountains, and on the N. with the *Mediterranean*. *Heylin* joins it with *Habat* at the Streights Mouth, and makes it 140 Miles long, and but 40 broad. *Dapper* makes it but 14 Miles from E. to W. and 8 from N. to S. *Marmol* begins it at *Tetuan*, and makes it 50 Leagues to the River *Nocor*, and says, the Country is inhabited by *Bereberes*, who are very proud of their Valour; that 'tis full of fine Gardens, with all Sorts of Fruit, and contains but 6 Towns, besides Villages and Hamlets, where the People live among Rocks and Mountains, which are so cold, that the Inhabitants have great swoln Chops; and that their Houses are built of Earth, of but one Story, and cover'd with the Leaves or Bark of Trees. The *Sanfons* say,

'tis full of Mountains, Deserts, and tall Forrests, produces little Wheat, yet abounds with Barley, Vines, Figs, Olives, Almonds, Horses, Goats, Asses, and Apes; but they have few Wild Beasts, Sheep or Oxen. Their Towns lie for most Part on the Coast, and are ill inhabited, because of the Neighbourhood of the *Castillians*. Some of the Mountains pay Tribute, and others none at all.

Marmol says, the Mountains are inhabited chiefly by *Bereberes* of the Tribe of *Gomera*. The chief are, 1. *Benimesgald*. The *Sanfons* place it in the S. E. Corner of the Province, bordering upon *Chaus*, Long. 16. 10. Lat. 32. 50. *Leo* says, the Inhabitants maintain many Doctors of the *Mahometan* Law, and several Students, for which their Taxes are much less than their Neighbours. *Dapper* bounds it with the Mountain *Beni-Jegenesen* and the River *Guarga*, and says, the Inhabitants come near those of Mount *Alca* in their Manners.

2. *Meraisa*, *Merinza*, *Beni-Uza*, or *Bervira*, on the Frontiers of *Garet*, about Lat. 33. 14. Long. 16 $\frac{1}{4}$. according to the *Sanfons*. *Marmol* says, it lies near the Mountain *Gualis*; and that when the Women of this Mountain don't like their Husbands, they leave them and their Children, and fly to another Mountain, where they marry again, which occasions continual Quarrels; and when they make Peace, the new Husband must quit the Wife, or reimburse all the Charges of the Nuptials (which are very considerable among the *Moors*) to her former Husband. Their Quarrels are generally made up by the Doctors of their Law, who take greater Care to become rich than to do Justice.

3. *Beni-Jegenesen* or *Bini-Zanten*. The *Sanfons* place it about Lat. 33 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 15. 50. W. of the Mountain *Meraisa*. *Dapper* says, 'tis 3 Miles long, and is parted by a small River from Mount *Beni-Achmed* to the N. W. and by another from *Beni-Mesgald* on the S. E. in which the *Sanfons* agree with him.

4. *Beni-Jedes* or *Beni-Jedinus*, on the same Frontier. The *Sanfons* place it N. of *Beni-Jegenesen* and *Meraisa*, in Lat. 33 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 16. 10. *Dapper* says, 'tis very high.

5. *Beni-Yerso* or *Jerso*. *Dapper* says, 'twas formerly very populous, and bounds it with *Tefiran*. *Heylin* says, there's a Town on it of

of the same Name, which had once a stately College, where the *Mahometan* Law was taught, and the Inhabitants Tax-free; but that in 1509 a wicked Tyrant destroy'd it, with the Library, valued at 4000 Ducats.

6. *Tesiran* or *Tisiran*. The *Sansons* call it *Tezarinus*, and place it N. of *Beni-Jedes*, on the same Frontier, about Lat. 33. 43. Long. 16. 10.

7. *Beni-Mansor*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 33. 50. Long. 15 $\frac{1}{2}$. N. W. of *Tezarinus*. *Dapper* says, 'tis 15 Miles long, and 5 broad; and that there's another of the same Name but 3 Miles long. The Inhabitants live upon Onions, Garlick, Grapes, Herrings, Bread of Oats, and *Turkish* Corn.

8. *Beni-Guelidus*, lies S. of *Beni-Mansorus*, in Lat. 33 $\frac{3}{4}$. and Long. 20. according to the *Sansons*, in the Road from *Bedus* to *Fez*. *Dapper* calls it *Beni-Gialid*, and says 'tis very high, almost inaccessible, and that it borders upon Mount *Merinza*. *Marmol* says, the Inhabitants are rich, free from Impositions, and that the King could not force them in their Highlands without a deal of Trouble and Charge; for they have 60 good Villages, inhabited by above 6000 Fighting Men, and a Soil that produces all Necessaries for Life. He adds, that they have a Privilege confirmed to them by the Kings of *Tunis*, upon every Change of a new Prince, to give Sanctuary to all Criminals that fly to them.

9. *Beni-Achmed* or *Beni-Hamed*. The *Sansons* place it Long. 15. 40. Lat. 33 $\frac{1}{2}$. S. E. of *Beni-Guelid*, W. of *Beni-Jedes*, and N. of *Beni-Jegenesen* and *Beni-Guaseval*. *Dapper* says, 'tis 4 Miles long, and as much in Breadth, and that their Water is bitter.

10. *Beni-Guazeval*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 33. 15. Long. 15. 44. S. W. of *Beni-Jegenesen*, and N. of Mount *Augustus*. *Leo* (who as we observ'd places this in *Garet*) says, there's a burning Vulcano on the Top of it, and a Town of the same Name, with Judges, Lawyers, and all Sorts of Tradesmen, particularly Linen-Weavers; and that it has a good Market, frequented by the Inhabitants of the neighbouring Mountains. He adds, that the adjacent Fields abound with Grapes, Citrons and Quinces, which are sold at *Fez*. The *Sansons* say, it contains several other Towns, and can arm 25000 Men. *Marmol* sets this Mountain

near *Alcai*, and says, it contains above 120 Villages. *Dapper* makes it 10 Miles long and 5 broad, and says, it consists of three other Mountains, which are water'd by little Rivulets, and produce Flax.

11. *Augustus*. The *Sansons* place this Mountain on the S. Frontier of the Province next to *Chau*, between *Beni-Guamud* and *Beni-Mes-Galda*, in Lat. 32. 55. Long. 15. 35. *Dapper* says, there are some little Places upon the Top of it, and at the Bottom grow large well-scented Quinces and fine Figs.

12. *Beni-Guamud*. The *Sansons* place it in the S. W. Corner of the Province next to *Fez*, Lat. 32. 43. Long. 15. *Dapper* says, 'tis but 3 Miles from the City of *Fez*, with a River between them. There's little Water here fit for drinking, so that the Inhabitants go a great Way to the Wells, and there they drink it with much Precaution, because of the Leaches that lie in it.

13. *Alcai* or *Lucainus*. The *Sansons* place it N. of *Beni-Guamud*, on the Frontier of *Habat*, about Long. 15. Lat. 33. *Dapper* says, 'tis high and steep, 12 Miles from *Fez*, and that it yields large well-scented Quinces and fine Figs. He adds, that the Inhabitants are generally more civiliz'd than those of the other Mountains, but so jealous and revengeful, that they'll pardon any other Criminals sooner than Adulterers.

14. *Beni-Gueriaguelus*, *Beni-Guriachil*, or *Beni-Urieguil*. *Dapper* says, it borders on Mount *Guazeval*, and contains near 60 Villages; and that at the Foot of it are pleasant Plains, which join to the Territory of *Fez*, and are water'd by the River *Guarga*. The *Sansons* place it Long. 15. Lat. 33 $\frac{1}{2}$.

15. *Cherserus*. The *Sansons* place it N. of the former, on the same Frontier and Long. and in Lat. 33. 40.

16. *Seusacen*, *Seusaoena*, *Checkouan*, *Sesavon*, *Susaon*, or *Xexuen*. The *Sansons* place it about Long. 14. 40. Lat. 34. *Marmol* says, 'tis the fruitfulest and pleafantest Mountain in all *Africa*, and has a Town of its own Name, encompassed with Springs, Gardens, and fruitful Fields. *Ali Barrax* made himself Master of this and the neighbouring Mountains, took the Title of King, and was confirmed in it by *Abyfayd* K. of *Fez*. He made several Incursions upon the *Portuguese* Frontiers, got many Victories, and lodg'd

all the Spoil in the Town of *Chechuan*. In his Time the People (whom our Author commends for their Valour) were Tax-free; but *Abdala* annex'd it afterwards to *Morocco*, (under which Government the People live miserably) and the Lordship was bestow'd upon *Mumen Belelche's* Grandson, who possess'd it with the Title of Xeriff, and obliged the People to pay Tribute; yet the *Sansons* tell us, they still preserve their Liberty and Government. *Dapper* says, this Mountain produces some Flax.

17. *Beni-Garir* or *Beni-Oriegan*. *Dapper* places it near *Targa*, and says, 'tis three Miles long, and two broad. *Marmol* says, 'tis planted with Vines and Olives, Cedars, and other odoriferous Wood; but that there's little Cattle and Corn, except Barley.

18. *Bucchuia* or *Botoya*. *Dapper* makes it 4 Miles long and 3 broad, and says, it breeds up Horses.

19. *Beni-Jus* or *Beni-Juseph*. *Dapper* makes it 4 Miles long and 3 broad, and says, that the Water here is bitter; and that the Inhabitants make a Sort of Bread of Grape-Kernels and Turkish Corn, which is black, coarse, and hard of Digestion; and that they love Onions and Goat's-Milk.

20. *Beni-Zaravol* or *Beni-Razin*. *Dapper* places it near the *Mediterranean*, towards *Targa*, and says, the Inhabitants are great Lovers of Goat's-Flesh.

21. *Beni-Gabara*. *Dapper* says, 'tis very high and bushy; that at the Bottom run several little Brooks; and that here are Oxen no bigger than a Calf of 8 Months old.

Dapper adds, that all the Wines which these Mountains yield are of a deep Red; and if boil'd a little, may be kept 15 Years. Their Water is generally very muddy, which he thinks occasions the Tumors which most of them have in their Throats. Their Rivers abound with Fish. The Inhabitants are for most Part lazy, ignorant, dull, brutish, and great Drunkards, yet good Soldiers, and their Food is generally gross. He adds, that the Mountaineers of *Beni-Bussebit* eat Moss bak'd with Bread; and that boil'd Beans is one of their chief Ragoos.

We come next to give an Account of the chief Towns, which are, 1. *Mezemma*, *Mejemma*, or *Megeyma*. The *Sansons* place it

on the Confines of *Garet*, near the Influx of the River *Nocor*, into the *Mediterranean*, Lat. 33. 47. Long. 16 $\frac{1}{4}$. 35 Miles S. E. from *Velez*. *Marmol* places it near the Coast of *Olives*, so call'd by *Ptolomy* from the wild Olives there, and says, 'tis *Ptolomy's Acrat*. The *Sansons* say, 'twas formerly a large and populous City, but now there's little left besides the Walls, and a few *Arabian* Inhabitants. *Dapper* says, it stands upon a little Hill, and that at the Foot of it there's a great Plain 9 Leagues long and 3 broad, thro' which runs the River *Nocor*.

2. *Gebha*. The *Sansons* place it near the *Mediterranean*, Long. 16. Lat. 34. 22 Miles almost S. E. from *Velez*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a little wall'd Town near the Cape of *Olives*, which *Ptolomy* places Long. 9. Lat. 34. 56. *Dapper* sets this Town 8 Leagues from *Velez*, and says 'tis in Ruins.

3. *Tagassa* or *Tegaza*. The *Sansons* place it 14 Miles S. E. of *Velez*, Long. 15. 50. Lat. 33. 44. upon the E. Side of a River two Miles from the *Mediterranean*, wherein they agree with *Marmol*, who says, the River is of the same Name, and thinks it to be the *Thalud*, whose Mouth *Ptolomy* places Long. 8 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 35. The Town is but small. *Dapper* says, the Inhabitants live upon Barley-Bread, Red-Herrings, and Onions.

4. *Velez de Gomera*, on the same Coast. *Moll* places it Long. 14 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 35 $\frac{1}{2}$. 35 Miles E. from *Gomera*: The *Sansons* Lat. 34. 2. Long. 15. 35. 58 Miles S. E. of *Gomera*. *Marmol* says, 'tis inhabited by a drunken barbarous Crew, who being accommodated with Wood and a good Harbour, us'd to fit out Gallies to infest the Coast of *Europe*: Upon which the *Spaniards* in the Time of *Ferdinand* built a Fort call'd *Pegnon de Velez* upon a Rock in the Sea, within 700 Paces of the Shore, and kept it, tho' the King of *Fez* sent an Army to reduce it, till 1520, when a *Spaniard*, whose Wife was taken from him by the Governor, betray'd it to the *Moors*, who put all the *Spaniards* to the Sword except the Traytor, and kept it till the *Turks* took it, at the Time that *Salharras*, Governor of *Algiers*, took *Fez*. After this, the *Spaniards* attempted to retake it; and after one or two fruitless Expeditions, took it in 1564, so that it remains in their Hands, and has a good Garrison, well provided with Artillery and Ammunition.

The

The *Sanfons* say, That this Fort commands also the Town of *Bedis* on the Continent, from which it lies but 1000 or 1200 Paces. *Heylin* says, the Town of *Velez* was built by the *Goths* or *Africans*, and that it lies between two high Mountains. The *Sanfons* place it about 5 Miles E. of *Bedis* or *Belis*; but *Leo* and *Dapper* will have both to be the same, and that *Velez de Gomera* is only the Spanish Name. The former say, that *Bedis* has an ill-fortified Castle and Palace, besides its Harbour. *Leo* says, it contains 600 Families, and has a Temple. It abounds so with Fish, that they give them away gratis, especially to any that help to draw up the Net. They salt their Pilchards, and send them to the Mountains for Sale. There's a long Street here inhabited by *Jews*, many of whom sell excellent Wines; and in a calm Evening, our Author says, the Citizens divert themselves with Singing, and drinking of Wine in their Pleasure Boats. Some take this for the *Acra* of *Ptolomy*. *Dapper* says, it has a great Square and a little Arsenal on the Sea-Side, where they make Gallies and other small Vessels; and that the Fort called *Pennon de Velez*, which he places Lat. 24. 20. is separated from the Continent by a little Canal, which serves instead of a Harbour. He adds, that the chief Fort here is inaccessible but by a Way cut out of the Rock, and that 'tis defended with one in the Middle, and others at the Bottom of the Rock, so that 'tis in a manner impregnable. *Morery's* Dictionary says, it lies between *Tetuan* and *Alcudia*, 62 Miles from either; but the *Sanfons* make it a little above 70 from the latter, and 100 from the former.

5. *Tellez*. *Marmol* says, 'tis inhabited by poor Fishermen, who fly to the Mountains upon the least Apprehension of an Invasion. *Dapper* says, 'tis a little Town two Miles from *Bedis*, with a small but safe Harbour; and that near it there are Olive, Fig, and Almond Trees, and Woods of Pines.

6. *Terga* or *Targat*. The *Sanfons* place it on the same Coast, Long. 15. Lat. 34. 10. between *Bedis* and *Gomera*, 25 Miles N. W. of the former, and as much S. E. of the latter. *Marmol* says, 'tis *Ptolomy's* *Tagat*, and that 'tis encompassed by cold Mountains and Forrests full of Apes. It stands on the Shore, with an open Road, and no Harbour.

The Inhabitants, who are Drunkards, and very brutish, live by Fishing; and some say, they have Fish enough to supply half the Kingdom of *Fez*. *Sanutius* says, the Town was built by the *Goths*, 20 Miles from the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and that it contains near 500 Houses. The *Sanfons* say, they sold their salted Fish to the Mountaineers; but that the Place is now almost abandoned.

7. *Gomer*, *Gomera*, or *Comera*. The *Sanfons* place it on the same Coast, in the N. W. Corner of the Province, Lat. 34. 25. Long. 14. 35. 45 Miles S. E. of *Tetuan* in the Province of *Habat*: *Moll* Lat. 35 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 13 $\frac{3}{4}$. about 30 Miles from *Tetuan*. *Dapper* says, there are three small Islands near it, wherein he agrees with the *Sanfons*; one call'd *Pennon*, and the two others the Rocks of *Tarfenella* and *Nettegalla*. The *Sanfons* say, the Town lies near a River of its own Name.

To these, *Heylin* adds *Mazagon*; but 'tis not set down here either by *Moll* or the *Sanfons*; and according to his Account of it, it appears to be the same with that in the Province of *Duccala* in *Morocco*, where we shall describe it.

4. H A B A T, H A B A D, H A S B A T, or E L H A B E T,

The most N. Kingdom of *Fez*, and the nearest in all *Barbary* to *Spain*. The *Sanfons* extend it from Cape *Spartel* on the N. W. to *Tanzora* on the S. E. 164 Miles, and make it but 65 where broadest. *Marmol* extends it 27 Leagues from the Fens of *Asgar* on the W. to the Mountains of *Gomera* in *Erriff* on the E. and 35 from the Sea on the N. to the River *Erguile* or *Guarga* on the S. *Dapper* makes it 20 Miles in Length, and 17 in Breadth; *Leo* 100 Miles long, and 80 broad. The *Sanfons* bound it with *Erriff* and the *Mediterranean* on the E. the Streights of *Gibraltar*, which part it from *Spain*, on the N. the *Atlantick* Ocean on the W. and the Province of *Asgar* on the S. They make it above 60 Miles on the W. Side along the *Atlantick* Ocean as far as Cape *Spartel*, 46 on the N. along the Streights of *Gibraltar*, 48 from the Streights Mouth along the *Mediterranean* on the E. Side as far as the Mountains of *Gomera*, 100 from thence to *Tanzora*, and 110 on the S. Side from *Tan-*

zora to the *Atlantick* Ocean; so that according to that View, 'tis 364 Miles in Compass.

This is reckon'd one of the most considerable Provinces in *Fez*, especially for its Nearness to *Spain*, and serves as a Barrier between that and the two Kingdoms of *Fez* and *Morocco*; and tho' the *Moors* formerly over-ran *Spain* soon after *Gibraltar* was put into their Hands, yet since the *Spaniards* possess several Places on the Coasts of this Province, the *Xeriffs* of *Fez* and *Morocco* have had enough to do to defend themselves.

Marmol says, the plain Country abounds with Corn and Cattle, and is water'd with several great Rivers that pass thro' it from the Mountains to the Ocean. The *African* Historians say, this was the most noted District of the whole Country, and that the *Romans* and *Goths* built more Cities here than any where else. But *Marmol* adds, that after the building of *Fez*, and that the *Portuguese* got Possession of the chief Towns along the Coast, the better Sort of Inhabitants retired thither to shun the Calamities of War. *Heylin* says, the Country is very plentiful of all Necessaries, and populous; the Mountains, which are very high, being well inhabited.

The *Sansons* say, there are 8 principal Mountains inhabited by the Tribes of *Gomera*, who drink Wine contrary to *Mahomet's* Law, and pay some 3, others 4, and others 6000 Ducats per Annum. They differ little from the Inhabitants of the plain Country, but are stronger, and less tractable.

Those Mountains are, 1. *Benifensecare* or *Benifenzecarus*, on the Borders of *Erriff*. The *Sansons* say, it yields Honey, Wax, Hides, and Linen-Cloth, and has a Market every Saturday, where the Christians have Liberty to trade.

2. *Rahon* or *Arahone*. The *Sansons* place it W. of the former, near the Town of *Eragen*, and say, it abounds with Vines; and that the Inhabitants make Soap and Wax. *Dapper* says, 'tis 10 Miles long and 4 broad, and that they make White and Red Wines.

3. *Beni-Cheffen*. The *Sansons* place it on the Frontiers of *Erriff*, N. of *Beni-Fensecare*, and say, that the Inhabitants are addicted to

Arms. *Dapper* calls it *Beni-Hassen*, and says, 'tis a very high Mountain.

4. *Chebib* or *Beni-Tetlit*. The *Sansons* place it N. W. of the former, and say, that the ancient Inhabitants of *Tangier* retir'd hither after it was taken by the *Portuguese*. *Dapper* places it 8 Miles from thence, and says, it contains 6 or 7 wall'd Towns.

5. *Beni-Guedarfechus* or *Beni-Guerdarfeth*. The *Sansons* place it N. of Mount *Chebib*, not far from the Coast of the *Mediterranean*, and near *Tetuan*, to whose Government they say this and Mount *Quadres*, near the Streights of *Gibraltar*, belong; and that they protect it against the Garrison of *Ceuta*. They add, that they formerly furnished the Kings of *Grenada* with a good Body of Militia, and particularly under one *Helul*, whom their Poems and Romances stil'd the Terror of all *Spain*. *Dapper* says, *Beni-Guerdarfeth* abounds with Box, of which they make excellent Combs.

6. *Quadres*, *Huat*, *Idris*, or *Vateres*. *Dapper* says, it bounds with *Beni-Aros*, and lies between *Ceuta* and *Tetuan*.

7. *Benihurus*, *Beni-Aros*, or *Beni-Maras*. The *Sansons* place it N. W. of Mount *Angera*. *Dapper* says, 'tis 7 Leagues long and 3 broad, and has a few Villages, but meanly inhabited, for fear of the *Portuguese*. 'Tis under the Government of *Casar-Ezzaghir*, near which it lies.

8. *Angera*. The *Sansons* place it N. of *Chebib* and *Arzilla*, and say, it abounds with Flax, with which they make Linen, and Timber fit for building of Ships. *Dapper* says, 'tis three Miles long and one broad, and about 8 from *Cazar-Ezzaghir*.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Tanzora*, *Tansor*, *Tansert*, *Tenzert*, or *Tehart*. The *Sansons* place it on a Mountain in the S. E. Corner of the Province, on the Frontiers of *Erriff* and *Fez*, almost 120 Miles S. E. of *Arzilla*, and 140 from *Tangier*. *Marmol* says, 'tis the *Trisidia* which *Ptolomy* places Long. 9. Lat. 33. 20. and was built by the *Romans* on a rising Ground. *Aben Gezar* says in his Geography, that 'twas built by the Giants, and that in his Time they found in some old Tombs several Skulls that were two Foot every Way. *Dapper* places it two Miles from *Amergo*, between *Fez* and Mount *Gomera*, and says, the Inhabitants are dull and very uncivil, and that the adjacent

Fields produce Corn and Fruit of all Sorts.

2. *Amergo* or *Amergue*. *Marmol* places it 3 Leagues from the Side of *Erguile*, and says, 'tis *Ptolomy's Tocolofia*. *Dapper* makes it 5 Miles from *Beni-Teude*, and says, 'tis abandoned; and that there are the Marks of some *Latin* Characters on the Walls. He adds, that the Inhabitants are self-conceited, but covetous, ignorant, and vicious. The *Sansons* place this Town on a Mountain 13 Miles S. W. from *Beni-Teude*, 115 S. E. of *Arzilla*, and 126 from *Tangier*. *Dapper* informs us, that at the Bottom of this Mountain there's another little populous Town, (but he does not tell us its Name) and that the adjacent Fields abound with Corn and all Sorts of Fruit.

3. *Beni-Teude* or *Baniteced*. The *Sansons* place it near the River *Guargua*, 100 Miles S. E. of *Arzilla*, and 118 from *Tangier*. *Marmol* calls the River *Erguile*, and says, the Town is ruin'd by the Wars, but shews the Remains of several noble Buildings and Tombs. There are also three fair Fountains, with great Basins of Marble and Alabaster. Some think it the *Baba* of *Ptolomy*, and the *Julia Campestris* of *Pliny*. *Dapper* places it in a fine Plain 15 Miles from *Fez*, and 5 from the Mountains of *Gomera*, and says, its Territory, which is full of Gardens, extends 14 Miles.

4. *Agla* or *Aguile*. The *Sansons* place it near the same River, 20 Miles W. of *Beni-Teude*, above 80 Miles S. E. of *Arzilla*, and 116 from *Tangier*. *Dapper* says, 'twas destroy'd by the *English*, but rebuilt afterwards, and encompassed with a Wall. The adjacent Country yields Honey and Wax, with Store of Cattle, with which they furnish their Neighbours, and some Lions, so timorous, that they run away at the Voice of a Woman or Child, which occasions their Proverb, That a Coward is like the Lions of *Agla*, which let the Calves eat their Tails. *Heylin* wrongly places this Town in the Province of *Proper Fez*.

5. *Ezagen* or *Azaggen*. The *Sansons* place it near the River *Luccus*, on the Frontiers of *Asgar*, 25 Miles N. W. of *Agla*, 60 S. E. of *Arzilla*, and almost 90 from *Tangier*. *Heylin* says, the K of *Fez* granted a Licence to the *Mahometan* Inhabitants to drink Wine. He places it on a Mountain near the River

Guarga, about 35 Leagues from *Fez*, and says, 'tis garrison'd with 400 Horse, for fear of the *Portuguese*, who sometimes make Excursions hither. *Dapper* places it but three Miles from the River *Guarga*, and 20 from *Fez*, and says, there are a great many Fountains here, and that its Territory is fruitful, and 10 Miles in Extent.

6. *Basra*, *Besra*, or *Besar*. The *Sansons* place it behind the Forrest of *Narangia*, on the same Frontier, 15 M. N. W. of *Ezagen*, 45 S. E. of *Arzilla*, and 75 S. from *Tangier*. *Dapper* says, 'twas formerly called *Lixa*; that its Ruins lie in a Plain between two Mountains, 35 Miles from *Fez*, 7 from *Casarrel-Cabir*, and that it contain'd 2000 Houses. He observes, that the Inhabitants are naturally civil, honest People, but that the Change of their Masters has caus'd a great Change in their Manners. *Leo* places it 80 Miles from *Fez*, and says, it had its Name from a City in *Arabia*, and that it was once strongly wall'd, but ruin'd by the Wars when the Family of *Idris* fail'd. *Heylin* says, it lies 30 Miles E. of *Sala*.

7. *Narangia*. The *Sansons* say, 'tis a Forrest N. of *Basra*. *Dapper* places it but three Miles from *Ezagen*, near the River *Licus*. Next to this the *Sansons* place *Gezira*, which *Dapper* says is an Island 3 Miles from the Sea, and 16 from *Fez*, where the *Moors* built a Town, that was ruin'd by the *Spaniards*. But he thinks this is that which the *Spaniards* call *Gratiosa*, and the *Cerne* of *Ptolomy*, by which he seems to have mistook it for one of the *Canary Islands*.

8. *Homara* or *Homam*. The *Sansons* place it on a Mountain near a River of the same Name, 15 Miles S. E. of *Arzilla*, and 45 S. of *Tangier*. *Dapper* places it 6 Miles S. of the former, and 5 N. of *Casar-Elcabir*. 'Twas once a flourishing Town, but now only inhabited by some *Arabians*, because of the ill Neighbourhood of the *Portuguese*. He adds, that the adjacent Soil yields Plenty of Flax.

9. *Arzilla*, *Arzeyla*, or *Argille*. The *Sansons* place it at the Bottom of a Bay in the *Atlantick Ocean*, Long. 13. 13. Lat. 34. 20. 45 Miles S. of *Cape Spartel*, 55 S. W. from *Ceuta*, 33 S. of *Tangier*, 20 N. of *Larache* and *Casar-Elcabir*, and 140 N. W. of *Fez*. *Moll* places it Lat. 35 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 12 $\frac{2}{3}$. 45 Miles S. of

S. of *Tangier*, 120 N. W. from *Fez*, almost 30 from *Larache*, and but 12 from *Casarelcabir*. *Marmol* says, 'tis the *Zila* which *Ptolomy* places in Long. 6. Lat. 35. 10. *Dapper* places it 14 Miles from the Mouth of the Streights, and 40 from *Fez*. *Leo* says, 'tis a great City, 70 Miles from the Streights Mouth, and was built by the *Romans*. It was anciently subject to the Prince of *Ceuta*, who was tributary to the *Romans*, and afterwards to the *Goths*, who restored the Prince to his former Government. But in the 94th Year of the *Hegyra*, the *Mahometans* took it, and kept it 200 Years, till the *English* (who *Dr. Harris* thinks were rather the *Danes* expelled out of *England*, &c.) besieged it at the Sollicitation of the *Goths* with a great Army, put all the Citizens to the Sword, and burnt and plunder'd the Town, so that it stood uninhabited for 30 Years. Some Time after the *Mahometan* Patriarchs of *Cordoua*, being then Sovereigns of *Mauretania*, enlarg'd, adorn'd, and fortified *Arzila*, and the Inhabitants became noted for their Riches, Learning, and Valour. In the 882d Year of the *Hegyra*, or about 1470, according to *Leo* and the *Sansons*, it was taken by the *Portuguese* under King *Alphonso*, surnamed the *African*, who storm'd it with 30000 Men, and carried away the Inhabitants Prisoners, and among the rest *Muley Mahomet el Oataz*, then but 7 Years of Age, and a Prince of *Fez*, together with his Sister. *Mahomet* stay'd 7 Years in *Portugal*, and learn'd the Language, till he was ransom'd by his Father for a great Sum; and being afterwards advanced to the Throne, and remembring his Confinement, he besieged *Arzila* in 1508 with 100000 *Moors*, according to the *Sansons*, and took the Town and Castle, where he set all the *Moors* he found at Liberty; but the *Portuguese* retired to a Tower, where being relieved by *Don Pedro de Navarre* with a great Fleet, they rais'd the Siege, and beat off the *Moors*. *Leo* says, the Besiegers had only taken the Town, and that the Garrison retired to the Castle, with a Promise to surrender in two Days, during which they had the Relief now mentioned. He adds, that the *Portuguese* fortified it after this so strongly, that the King of *Fez*, who often attack'd it, was always repuls'd: But the *Sansons* say, that at last they abandon'd it,

either for the Charge or Danger of keeping it; and that *Muley Mahomet*, call'd the *Black*, put it again into the Hands of *Sebastian King* of *Portugal* in 1578; but the *Xeriffs* retook it, and have kept it ever since. The *Sansons* say, the Town is large and strong, and has a good Harbour, where great Ships may enter. The adjacent Soil abounds with Pulse, and most Sorts of Fruit, but has little Corn and Wood; but *Leo* says, the Want of the latter is supplied by Coals from *Larache*. *Dapper* says, That Cape *Spartel*, betwixt this and *Tangier*, is the *Cottes* of *Pliny*, and has a Rock at one End which serves as a Bulwark.

10. *Tangier*, *Tangia*, *Tangiara*, *Tanjar*, or *Tingis*. The *Sansons* place it at the Bottom of a Bay near the Streights of *Gibraltar*, Lat. 34. 50. Long. 13. 20. 25 Miles S. W. from *Ceuta*, 22 W. from *Tetuan*, 32 N. from *Arzila*, and 165 N. W. from *Fez*: *Dapper* Lat. 20. 40. *Moll* Lat. 36. Long. 12. 50. 32 Miles from *Ceuta*, 39 from *Tetuan*, and 43 from *Arzila*. 'Tis very ancient. *Leo* says, the *Romans* built it when they subdued the Kingdom of *Grenada* or *Bætica*. *Marmol* says, they call'd it *Tingidia*, and that the *Goths* took it from them and annex'd it to the Government of *Ceuta*. They kept it till *Arzila* was taken by the *Mahometans*, during which 'twas a splendid Place, adorn'd with an University, and well resorted to by the Nobility and Gentry. Its Houses were very fine, and several Governors of *Mauretania Tingitana* chose it for their Residence, the adjacent Valleys being finely water'd, and adorn'd with Gardens, Vineyards, and Houses of Pleasure. The Inhabitants being addicted to War, infested the Coast of *Europe*, so that the King of *Portugal* sent his Son *Edward* in 1433 or 1437 to besiege it: But the King of *Fez* coming to relieve it, and great Numbers of the *Portuguese* Gentry having fell in several Engagements before the Town, the Prince was forced to come to a Treaty with the *Moorish* King, and promise to surrender *Ceuta*, on Condition that the King of *Fez* should release all the *Christians*; and the King of *Portugal* was oblig'd to give his other Son *Ferdinand* as an Hostage, till he should ratify the Treaty, which 'tis said he privately dissuaded him from, saying, he had rather die in Captivity, than to see *Europe* deprived of the Key of the Streights.

Streights. For this Reason, says our Author, the King of *Fez* us'd him so roughly for 7 Years together, that he sicken'd and dy'd. In 1463, *Alphonfus* King of *Portugal* went to besiege it in Person with 30000 Men, but was forced to return without Success. In 1471, the King of *Fez* being diverted by Wars in his own Country, and *Alphonfus* being Master of *Arzilla*, the Citizens of *Tangier* thinking themselves in great Danger, retired with their Effects to *Fez*, so that the King of *Portugal* took quiet Possession of it, and after that his Successors stiled themselves Kings of both Sides of the Sea. *Leo* adds, that the Conquest of *Tangier* was celebrated by Processions in *Portugal*, *Andalusia*, *Grenada*, and *Castille*. *Herbert* says, that *Tangier* faces *Gibraltar* in *Spain*, as *Dover* does *Calais* in *France*. The *Sansons* say, that its Archbishop and Governor were in a manner united with those of *Ceuta*, where they had their Residence, till the States of *Portugal* were disunited from those of *Castille*, when *Ceuta* remain'd to the latter, and *Tangier* and *Casar-Ezzaghir* to the former. *Dapper* rejects the Fable of the *African* Writers, who say, that *Tangier* was built by one *Sedded*, Son of *Had*, who being Emperor of the World, resolved to build a City not inferior to the Terrestrial Paradise, and therefore encompassed it with Walls of Copper, cover'd the Houses with Gold and Silver, and employ'd the whole Wealth of the World in this Work. The *Portuguese* granted it in 1662 to our King *Charles II.* as Part of the Dowry given him in Marriage with the Princess of *Bragantia*, Daughter to *Don John IV. K. of Portugal.* King *Charles* added new Fortifications to it, and put a good Garrison in it; but *Bohun* says, that after it had stood the Attacks of the *Moors* in 1663, 1664, 1682, and 1683, the *English* Garrison was call'd home, and the Lord *Dartmouth* was sent to dismantle it, the Benefit of it not being equal to the Charge of keeping it. *Dapper* adds, that the adjacent Soil is sandy, and produces little Corn; but the Valleys produce Citrons, Lemons, &c. and there are some Vineyards without the Town. *Heylin* says, that hereabouts the Poets feign *Hercules* killed the Giant *Anzous*; that the Town is 30 Miles from the Streights of *Gibraltar*; and that not far from hence stood the Mountain *Abyla*, one

of *Hercules's* Pillars, answering to the other call'd *Calpe* in *Spain.* *Vansleb*, *Villaut*, &c. in their Relations of *Africa*, say, the Situation of *Tangier* is pleasant, and the Air very wholesome and temperate; but they differ as to the Soil, which some say is barren, and others fruitful; and the Author of a Tract call'd, *The present Interest of Tangier*, who liv'd here, and writ in the Time of King *Charles II.* says, 'tis capable of yielding all Necessaries for Life and Pleasure, if the Country were open, without the Assistance of Foreign Nations. In the Summer they have the cool Breezes call'd *Etesian* Winds. The same Author says, the *Moors* hereabouts live commonly a great while, and are lusty at 80 or 90 Years of Age. Many of the *English* dy'd here by their Intemperance. This Author says, he knows no Place better situate for Command and Trade than *Tangier*, since it lies at the Mouth and Passage of all the *Levant* Trade; that no Ship can pass this Way but must be seen from the Town in the Day; and that in the Night 4 or 5 Cruizers on this Coast might take all that sail this Way, unless they had a strong Convoy, which would be too chargeable for the Northern Merchants. From hence he infers, that if *Tangier* were in the Hands of the *French*, or some other Prince strong at Sea, our Nation would be undone, and we must bid farewell to the Streights in Time of War; and that 'twould be easy for the Prince of *Tangier* to give Laws to *Europe* and *Africa.* To this he adds, that the Country abounds with Corn, Honey, Cattle, Beef, Sheep, Goats, Camels, Horses, Bufflers, and Wild Beasts, with excellent Furs; and that here are the sweetest Grapes in the World, with Pomegranates, Oranges, Melons, Lemons, Figs, and all manner of Eastern Fruits. He observes, that 'tis within two or three Weeks Sail from the *Downs*; so that after all he thinks it very strange that it flourish'd no better in the Hands of such a powerful Nation as ours; but he ascribes it, 1. To the Neglect of Religion and the Protestant Interest, which he says was never truly encourag'd there, but in the short Governments of the Earl of *Tiveot* and Colonel *Normood.* 2. To the Poverty and Avarice of most of the Persons sent thither, who only intended to fill their Purses and come home again, to the

the great Impoverishment of the settled Inhabitants. 3. To the Differences between the Traders and Soldiers, fomented by the Rulers Avarice, and the Citizens Poverty. 4. To the Unmercifulness of the Officers to the Soldiers, in abusing them, and denying them proper Necessaries when sick, and to the Neglect of Physicians and Apothecaries, who he says kill'd three Parts of those that dy'd there, tho' they were paid by the King. 5. To the strange Victories of the *Moors*, and the sad Massacre of the *English* when they went out against them, more thro' the ill Conduct of the Commanders, and the Want of Pikes and the like Weapons to keep off the *Moors* Horse, than for Want of Valour: For our Author observes, that the greatest Strength of the *Moors* Army lies in their Horse and Lance Foot arm'd partly with Guns, and partly with Lances; but they have no Cannon, nor know not how to manage them. They fight in Disorder without Ranks or Files, the Horse by themselves, and the Foot by themselves. In set Battles, which are very rare here, the Horse make up the Van and the Rear, and the Foot the main Body; so that many times the Foot has nothing to do but to destroy the Enemy when the Horse has routed them. They are however good at Ambushes and Surprizes, and the Country is very proper for that Purpose. They have few or no standing Forces, but scatter'd Companies of *Arabs*, under their several Monkadems or Colonels, to whom they repair in all Alarms. They can't subsist long in one Place, because they have no Purveyors, but every Man carries his Provisions with him, only in case of Necessity they have something from the Places where they lie. They fight like the ancient *Mauri*, and know how to marshal an Army no better than they. Their Horse have few or no Fire-Arms, but Pistols, and their Infantry know not how to manage a Gun, and dare not stand a Shot. The *Portuguese* generally worsted the *Moors*, and our Author warrants, that 5 or 6000 *English*, with proper Arms and Provisions, need not fear 20000 *Moors*.

11. *Cazar-Ezzhaghir* or *Cozar-Ezachir*. The *Sansons* place it at the Bottom of another Bay in the Middle of the Streights, Lat. 34. 52. Long. 13. 37. 15 Miles E. of Tan-

gier, as much almost S. W. of *Ceuta*, and about 8 N. W. of *Tetuan*. *Marmol* says, it stands upon the narrowest Part of the Streights, against *Tariffa* in *Spain*, and has a good Harbour. *Jacob Almanzor* built it for the Conveniency of crossing thence to *Spain*, which is but 3 Leagues. The adjacent Woods us'd to furnish the Inhabitants for Shipping, with which they infested the Coast of *Europe*, and annoyed all Ships that passed the Streights. In 1458, or (as others say) 1448, *Alphonso* King of *Portugal* took it after an obstinate Siege, and kept it, tho' the King of *Fez* besieg'd it twice with great Victory: But King *John III.* considering the Charge, and small Profit that attended such Conquests, in 1540 he quitted this and all the other Possessions on the Coast of *Barbary*, except *Ceuta*, *Tangier*, and *Mazagan*. *Marmol* adds, that a River runs near it into the Sea, which *Ptolomy* calls *Valona*, and places its Mouth Long. 7. Lat. 35. 50. and that the Town was also call'd *Alcasor Sagner*, i. e. the Little Palace, to distinguish it from *Alcasar Quirvir*, i. e. the Great Palace in *Asgar*. *Dapper* places this Town at the Streights Mouth. *Heylin* says, King *Alphonso* took it in 1470, together with *Arzilla* and *Tangier*; and that there were slain near it in one Day King *Sebastian*, *Mahomet*, and *Abdelmelech*, who were all Competitors for the Kingdom of *Fez*, as formerly mentioned, and one *Stuckley* an *Englishman*, who fled from *Ireland* to *Rome* in 1570, where he was well receiv'd by the Pope, who furnish'd him with 800 Soldiers, paid by the King of *Spain* for the Conquest of *Ireland*, and made him *Marquess of Leinster*, *Earl of Wexford* and *Caterlogh*, *Viscount Aarraugh*, and *Baron of Ross*. Being thus equipp'd, he set out for *Ireland* in 1578; but hearing of the Wars in this Country, he resolved to make a Party in them, and was slain, as above.

12. *Ceuta*, *Sabta*, *Seupta*, *Sebta*, or *Septa*. The *Sansons* place it at the E. Mouth of the Streights against *Gibraltar*, Long. 13. 46. Lat. 35. 8. 15 Miles almost N. E. of *Cazar-Ezzaghir*, 25 from *Tangier*, 18 N. of *Tetuan*, and 55 N. E. from *Arzilla*. *Moll* Lat. 36. 2. Long. 13. 20. 32 Miles from *Tangier*, as much from *Tetuan*, and 47 from *Arzilla*. The *Portuguese* King *John*, who came over with his three Sons and many of the Nobility, took this Town in 1415, with the Assistance

Assistance of the *English*, who *Walsingham* says interested themselves in the Quarrel, because of an Alliance at that Time betwixt the two Crowns, the *Portuguese* King *John's* Wife being the Daughter, and our *Henry V.* the Grandson, of *John* Duke of *Lancaster*; so that our King was Nephew to the Queen of *Portugal*. *Leo* says, 'twas called by the *Latins*, *Civitas*, and built by the *Romans*, in whose Time 'twas the Metropolitan of all *Mauretania*, and civiliz'd as well as populous. The *Goths* took it from them, but yielded it to the *Mahometans*, who invaded *Mauretania* in 709, at the same Time that the *Moors* conquer'd *Spain*. Yet after this it became the most famous City in these Parts for the Civility and Number of the Inhabitants, was adorned with Temples and Colleges, and resorted to by Men of Learning, Students and Tradesmen, and their Mechanicks, especially the Braziers, exceeded all others. The adjacent Fields are barren, so that he says Corn is dear; but there are many pretty Villages, and a Place call'd the *Vineyards*, because there's a Plantation of Vines. He says, 'tis but 12 Miles from hence to the *Spanish* Coast, where one may discern moving Animals. He adds, that *Habdulumen* the King and Patriarch demolished this City, and banished the chief Inhabitants; that *Mahomet* King of *Grenada* plunder'd it, and carried the Nobles and chief Citizens Prisoners to *Spain*; and that in the 818th Year of the Hegyra, 'twas taken by the *Portuguese* Armada, when all the Citizens abandon'd it. Our Author observes, that the cowardly King of *Fez*, who neglected to succour it, was by the Justice of God murther'd soon after, with his six Sons, by his own Secretary, whose Wife he had attempted to debauch; and that the Bastard Son who was spar'd, and succeeded him, was slain in the like Manner by his People.

But to return; Some think this City with *Ptolomy's* *Effilissa*, Long. 30. Lat. 35. 56. and say, there's the best Air here in all *Africa*, so that the richest Families repair to it from all Parts. *Heylin* says, it gave the Title of an Earl to *Julian*, who first carried the *Saracens* into *Spain*, and places it in a Peninsula, encompassed with the Sea on all Sides but the W. and 8 French Leagues S. of *Gibraltar*. The *Nubian* Geographer calls it *Insula*

Viridis, or the Green Island, and sets it 18 Miles from *Gibraltar*. *Heylin* adds, that the *Portuguese* took it in 1435; and that the *Spaniards*, who still keep it, have strongly fortify'd and garrison'd it. *Dapper* says, the *Portuguese* took it under K. *John I.* in 1415; and that notwithstanding it was three times ruin'd, as above, 'twas handsomely rebuilt by the *Portuguese*, with a Castle, Palace, Churches, Cloysters, &c. *Morery's* Great Dictionary says, That in 1580, *Philip II.* King of *Spain* having reduced all *Portugal*, put a *Spanish* Governor over the Garrison, which was the Reason that this was the only Place left to *Spain*, when in 1640 all the other Places on this Coast which had *Portuguese* Governors revolted together in one Day from the Crown of *Spain*. *Luyts* places it 36 Miles from *Tangier*, and 30 from *Velez* in the next Province of *Erriff*, on a Hill formerly called *Septem Fratres*, from the Number and Likeness of its little Hillocks. He says, 'tis a little Town, but very remarkable for its Fortifications, and the vigorous Defence it has made for many Years against the continual Attacks of the *Moors*, who have been before it near 20 Years. He adds, that Mount *Abyla*, which the Ancients suppos'd to be *Hercules's* Pillar, lies near it. The *Spaniards* call it *La Sierra de las Monas*, and the *Italians*, *Il Monte delle Simie*, i. e. the Apes Mountain.

13. *Tetuan*, *Teguan*, and *Teteguin*. The *Sansons* place it 18 Miles S. of *Centa*, 8 S. E. of *Cazar-Ezzhaghbir*, 20 from *Tangier*, and 40 N. E. from *Arzilla*, Long. 13. 45. Lat. 34. 48. *Moll* places it at the N. Side of a River near its Influx into the *Mediterranean*, Lat. 35 $\frac{2}{3}$. Long. 13 $\frac{1}{3}$. 30 Miles S. of *Centa*, 40 S. E. from *Tangier*, and 35 N. E. from *Arzilla*. The former say, it contains but 800 Houses, but as well built as any in *Barbary*. 'Tis the Residence of the Posterity of the *Moors* expelled from *Grenada*, who are in a thriving Condition, continually cruise at Sea, and have a great Number of Christian Captives in Irons. *Dapper* places it 7 Miles from *Centa*, and 11 from the Coast, and says, it had the Name of *Tetteguin*, i. e. Eye, from a Squint-ey'd Countess who govern'd there. 'Twas plunder'd by the General of the *Moors*, which *Ferdinand* expelled from *Grenada*, but was rebuilt, and encompassed with a good Wall and a large Ditch.

Mere-

Morery's Great Dictionary says, 'tis a small Commonwealth, has a good Harbour, and that all the Caravans meet here in their Way to *Mecca* thro' *Egypt*. *Luyts* places it in the Inland Country; but *Du Plessis* says, it lies no more than a League from the *Mediterranean*, and has a good Trade, especially with the *Dutch*, who have a Factory here. *M. de St. Olon*, the *French King's* Ambassador to *Morocco*, says, the Town is not fortified, and lies two Leagues from the Sea, but that 'tis very populous, so that he reckons the Inhabitants above 15000, who call themselves *Andalusians*, and generally speak *Spanish*. He says, they are white, very polite and affable both to Foreigners and Christians. The *French* Consul, and all the Merchants who live there, tho' of different Nations and Religions, contribute to the Maintenance of a little Hospital, where are two *Spanish* Fryars appointed to officiate at publick Worship, and to comfort the Slaves. Besides, there's a Duty of 3 Crowns rais'd for the same Purpose upon every Tartan, Bark, or other Vessel that arrives here.

Marmol mentions a little Island in the *Lissa* about 3 Leagues from the Ocean, called by the *Portuguese* the *Agreeable*, upon which their King built a Fort, but was afterwards obliged to abandon it, when the King of *Fez* diverted the Course of the River into another Channel that join'd the old one, about half a Mile below the Fort: But we don't find this Island either in *Moll* or the *Sanfons*.

5. *ASGAR, ASCARA, AZGAR,*
or *HASGOR,*

The *Sanfons* bound it on the E. with Part of *Fez* and *Habat*, on the N. with the latter, on the W. with the Ocean, and on the S. with *Fez*, from which 'tis parted by the River *Bunasar*. They extend it 100 Miles from N. W. to S. E. but not 30 where broadest, so that 'tis the smallest Province in *Fez*. *Marmol* extends it from the R. *Bur-regreg* on the W. to the Mountains of *Erriff*, *Zarkon*, and *Zalag*, on the E. and from the Ocean on the N. to the River of *Banacer* in the S. 27 Leagues long, and 20 broad. *Dapper* makes it no more than 18 Miles long, and 3 broad. *Heylin* differs from all others, and bounds it with *Garet* on the E.

Leo particularly notes this Province for its Lions, which he says run away at the Voice of a Child, from whence they us'd the Lion of *Asgar* as a Proverb to denote a cowardly Braggadochio. *Marmol* says, the Name signifies, *Flying the Sea*, because they say 'twas formerly cover'd with the Sea. He makes it the richest Province in *Africa* for Corn, Cattle, Wool, Butter, and Leather, with which it furnishes the City of *Fez* and the Deserts of *Garet*. He says, it had formerly several rich Towns and Villages, which are demolished; and that 'tis inhabited by two potent Races of the *Arabians* of *Mauretania Tingitana*, who are Vassals to the K. of *Fez*, and obliged to furnish him with a certain Number of Troops. He adds, that their Cavalry is very brave; but if the Campaign be tedious, and Plunder scarce, they take the first Opportunity to march home. The *Sanfons* say, 'tis encompassed with the Rivers *Suba*, and *Eucus* or *Lixa*, on the Coast, where there are several Marshes, in which they catch abundance of Eels. It has also Forrests, which yield them Charcoal and Cotton. The Fields are pleasant and fruitful, and the Air every where agreeable. The Kings of *Fez* use to hunt Rain-Deer and Hares in the Spring here. *Dapper* says, that the Inhabitants go generally well dress'd, and that the *Arabians* here follow Husbandry.

We find but three Towns of Note in this Province; *v. z.* 1. *Larache, Lharais, Alarache, El-Arays*, or *Lixa*. The *Sanfons* say, 'twas also called *Lixos*, and place it at the Bottom of a Bay in the Ocean, 7 Miles W. of *Casar-Elcabir*, and 87 N. W. of *Elginhma*, Long. 13. 8. Lat. 34. *Moll* about 18 Miles S. of *Casar-Elcabir*, about Long. 12. 57. and Lat. 35. *Marmol* says, it stands near the Influx of the River *Lucus* into the Ocean, on the Borders of *Habat*, and that the Harbour, which lies in its Mouth, is of difficult Entrance without a good Pilot, because 'tis very deep, but much resorted to by Christians, who import hither the Commodities of *Europe*. *Sir William Monson* says, the River is crooked, but that there's a good Road without at 15 or 16 Fathom. *Marmol* says, 'tis ancient, and was very populous, before the Christians took *Arzila*; but then the Inhabitants deserted it, till it was fortified by *Muley Nacer* for a Frontier against

the

the Christians of *Arzilla* and *Tangier*. He tells us, it has a good Harbour for small Ships, where the *Portuguese* Governor of *Arzilla* in 1504 burnt and took several *Moorish* Ships. He adds, that most of the Inhabitants are Colliers, and that its chief Trade consists in Coals, Cotton, and Shads, taken in the neighbouring River. *Dapper* places it 6 or 7 Miles from *Arzilla*, Lat. 24. 30. and says, 'tis washed with the Sea on one Side, and with the River on the other. *Gramaye* thinks this was the Garden of the *Hesperides* and *Sanutius*, the Palace of *Antheus*, and the Place where *Hercules* wrestled with that Giant. Some of the Ancients pretend 'twas bigger than *Great Carthage*. *Dapper* says, 'twas always reckon'd one of the best Fortresses in *Fez*, and the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese* made several vain Attempts to surprise it, till in 1610, when this small, but important Place, was deliver'd up to the Marquis of *St. Germain*, General of the *Spanish* Army, by *Muley Scheck*, when worsted by his Brother *Sidan*. The Harbour is full of *Spaniards* and *Italians*. The Town is adorn'd with fine Structures, encompassed with good Walls, and has three Castles, to which the *Spaniards* have given the Names of different Saints. While the *Moors* were in Possession of this Town, they kept a good Garrison in it, and several Magazines of Warlike Ammunition. The Castle, now called *St. Mary's*, was encompassed with a large Ditch, defended by a good Rampart, and had 3 Gates of Iron, and 60 Pieces of Cannon, and that of *St. Anthony* had 30; but the *Spaniards* when they took it made it much stronger. *Dapper* adds, that the adjacent Soil is but poor, yet it produces Store of Cotton, and the River abounds with Eels. *Heylin* says, the *Moors* took it from the *Spaniards* in 1689. *Monsieur de St. Olon*, the *French* King's Ambassador, says, it was taken by *Muley Ismael* in 1681. It appears by a Plan of this Town and its Fortifications, which that Ambassador took in 1688, that the Names of the three Castles are, *St. James*, *St. Anthony*, and *Notre-Dame*. There is also the *Jews* Tower, the Cover'd Ways of *St. John* and our Lord, the Bulwark of *Diego de Vera*, the Gates of the Camp, the Mole, and the Marine, together with the false Gates of *St. Anthony* and *St. Francis*, and the Tower Gate. There is

also an Hospital, those called the Old and New Caserns and Magazines, the Governor's House and Garden, the Commissary's Court, the Serjeant-Major's Lodgings, the new Fountain, *St. Michael's* Wells, and the great Fountain. *Morery's* Great Dictionary says, it lies 65 Leagues S. of the Straights of *Gibraltar*; that the *Spaniards* took it in 1630, and that the *Moors* retook it in 1688, and made the whole Garrison Slaves; which Misfortune is ascribed to the *French*, who, 'tis said, sent Enginiers hither to guide the *Moors* in their Attacks. *Du Plessis* says, the Inhabitants are Corsairs.

2. *Casar el Cabir*, or *Alcassar el Quibir*. The *Sansons* place it near the same River, 7 Miles E. of *Larache*, and 85 N. W. of *Elgiumba*: Moll 18 Miles N. of the former. *Marmol* says, the Name in *Arabick* signifies the Great Province or Palace, and that 'twas built by the 4th King of the *Almohada* Family upon this Occasion: The King having lost his Way in Hunting among many Lakes and Morasses, being forc'd to stand under a Tree with his Horse in his Hand for great Part of the Night, was spy'd by an Eel-Fisherman, who shelter'd him in his Shed, and safely conducted him thro' the Marshes. Upon this, the King asking him what Reward he would have, he only desir'd a House to be built there for himself and Family; upon which the King built a rich Palace, whither he us'd to come and divert himself with Hunting, and made the poor Man House-keeper, and granted such Privileges to all that would build about it, that in a short Time it had 600 Inhabitants, and was fortified. The Inhabitants are good humour'd and harmless; and after the Abdication of *Arzilla* by the *Portuguese*, enjoy'd both Peace and Plenty. He adds, that the River runs so near the Town, that in a Flood it sometimes carries off the Houses. The *Sansons* say, it contains now about 1500 Houses, and has a famous Market on *Mondays*; and add, that in 1578, in a Plain betwixt this Town and the River *Mukazem*, the famous Battle was fought, formerly mention'd, wherein fell three Princes, viz. *Don Sebastian* K. of *Portugal*, who was kill'd in the Field; *Muley Mahomet*, who was drown'd in crossing the River of *Macazin* to fly to *Arzilla*; and *Abdel Muley Malucco* the Conqueror, who being much indisposed before the

the Battle, dy'd with the Fatigue. *Dapper* places this Town but 10 Miles from *Arzila*, and says, that here are several Mosques; that the adjacent Soil yields 30 fold; and that for two Leagues round, there's nothing but Gardens planted with all Sorts of Fruit-Trees; but they want Water in the Town, where the Inhabitants are obliged to keep the Rain in Cisterns. He adds, that the People wear a Cotton Vest, which they wrap round their Bodies. *Purchase* says, the Town was taken by Don *Alphonso* King of Portugal in 1458, or 1448 according to *Marmol*. *Heylin* says, there's a College of Students here, and a stately Hospital. *M. de St. Olon*, the French King's Ambassador, says, the Town is small, not very populous, and but meanly built. He saw abundance of Storks here, which the *Moors* think a Crime to kill, and forbid under severe Penalties, because they believe that at *Mahomet's* Prayer God transformed a Troop of *Arabs* who robbed the Pilgrims of *Mecca* into those Birds. *Marmol* says, the *Moors* besieged it in vain 11 Years after the Portuguese took it.

3. *Elgiamha*. The *Sansons* place it in the S. E. Part of the Province, Lat. 32. 53. Long. 14. 15. 87 Miles S. E. of *Larache*, and 85 from *Casar-Elcabir*. They say, it lies in the Road from *Fez* to *Larache*, and thô formerly the prettiest Town in the Province, is now only a Granary, where the *Arabians* store their Corn. *Marmol* calls it *Gema el Carvan*, and places it in a Plain near the River *Ergile*, 30 Miles from *Fez*. *Dapper* says, the adjacent Soil is as fruitful in Corn, &c. as that of *Casar el Cabir*. *Heylin* says, 'twas built by the ancient *Africans*.

6. F E Z P R O P E R.

The *Sansons* bound it with the Ocean on the W. *Asgar* on the N. Part of *Habat* and *Erriff* on the N. E. *Chauz* on the E. and on the S. with Part of that and *Temefna*. They extend it 130 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and 46 where broadest; and including it between the Rivers *Buregrag* and *Suba*, make it narrow towards the Coast, but wider as it runs further within Land. *Leo* extends it 100 Miles from the River *Buragrag* Eastward to the River *Inauen*, and bounds it with *Suba* on the N. and Mount *Atlas* on the S. and says, it abounds in Corn, Fruit,

and Cattle. *Marmol* says, the Mountains and Vallies between the Cities of *Fez* and *Mequinez* are inhabited by *Bereberes* and *Holots*, or a Mixture of *Africans* and *Arabians* besides other powerful *Arabians*, who possess all the Fields between *Fez* and the Sea, which yield excellent Pasture for their Flocks. He adds, that the Country between *Fez* and the Great *Atlas* is not so populous, being inhabited only by poor *Arabs*, who pay some Acknowledgment to the King and Citizens of *Fez* for their Lands.

The chief Mountains of this Province are, 1. *Zalag*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a fruitful Mountain, about a League from *Fez*, and produces the best Grapes in all *Africa*. He adds, that most of the Citizens there have their Estates upon this Mountain, and that 'tis inhabited by rich Husbandmen and Gardiners. *Dapper* says, it begins E. of the River *Cebu*, and runs 4 Miles Westward, and that the highest Part of it lies within half a League N. of *Fez*. He adds, that its Vines lie on the N. Side.

2. *Zarhon*, or *Zarahanum*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a large and populous Mountain in the same Neighbourhood. *Dapper* says, this Mountain begins near the Plains of *Eceis* or *Aseis*, 3 Miles from *Fez*, runs 8 Miles Westward, and in some Parts is 3 Leagues broad; and that it lies in the Jurisdiction of *Mequinez*, and contains above 40 populous Hamlets, thick set with Olive Trees, and inhabited by *Affaragues* and *Bereberes*. He adds, that 'tis wash'd by a River on each Side.

3. *Tagat* or *Togat*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a strong and narrow Mountain W. of *Fez*, which is also cover'd with Vines on the City Side, which belong for most Part to the Citizens of *Fez*, and that the other Side and the Top of it is Arable Land. He adds, that some poor *Fezzians* come hither every Winter to dig for Treasure which they imagine the *Romans* left behind them. They have been in Search of it above 500 Years, alledge 'tis enchanted, so that it cannot be had without Magick, and admire such Books as treat on that Subject. *Dapper* places it but two Miles W. from *Fez*, and says, it runs two Miles Eastward to the River *Bunacer*.

4. *Guerygure*. *Dapper* places it near Mount *Atlas*, and 3 Miles from *Fez*, between the Plains of *Eceis* and *Adhasen*. He says 'tis very populous, and that here rises the

River *Aguber*, which runs into the *Beber*.

That Author says, the Province produces Figs, Almonds, Olives, and large Grapes, Flax, Cotton, Horses, Camels, Oxen, Sheep, Goats, Rain-Deer, and Hares. There's a Tract about 10 Miles long and 5 broad, W. of *Old Fez*, which is infected with so bad an Air, that the Inhabitants are all yellowish, and often seized with a mortal Fever, which our Author ascribes to the excessive Moisture of the Soil, that is full of Springs and Rivers, so that there's a great Number of Gardens throughout the Province, which abound with Flax, Melons, Citruls, red Beet, and such abundance of all Sorts of Herbs and Sallads, that the Gardiners carry above 500 Waggon-load to *Fez Market* both in Summer and Winter. Those Parts which lie to the N. E. and S. of *Old Fez* are wash'd by several Branches of the River of the same Name, and yield an incredible Store of Fruit. They don't till the Ground, but only water it in *May*, which makes their Peaches tast a little too waterish. *Heylin* says, their Hills are better inhabited than their Vallies, the latter being for Tillage, and uninhabited, because of the Heats there in the Summer, and the former serves for Defence against the *Arabs*, &c.

The chief Towns of this Country are, 1. *Mahmora*, *Mahomora*, and *Masimora*, which the *Sansons* place on the River *Suba*, near its Influx into the Ocean, Long. 12. 52. Lat. 33. 28. about 18 Miles N. W. from *Sala*, almost 80 from *Mechnes*, and 113 from *Fez*. *Moll* Lat. 34 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 12 $\frac{1}{2}$. about 15 Miles N. E. from *Sala* or *Salle*, 57 N. W. from *Mequinez*, and above 90 from *Fez*. Sir *William Monson* says, the Harbour within is good, but has only 2 Fathom Water at the Entrance. *Dapper* says, 'twas ruin'd by the Wars. *Emmanuel* King of *Portugal* sent an Army to build a Fort here, and ruin'd the Town; but the King of *Fez* his Brother came at the Head of 50000 Men, cut all the *Portuguese* in Pieces, and spoil'd the Works they had began. In 1614 the *Spaniards* fitted out a Fleet, with which they drove out the *English* then in the Road, and built a Fort there. The adjacent Soil is planted with Oaks, and abounds with good Pasture, Oranges, Citrons, Pease, Figs and Dakes; but there are no Apples, Pears, Nuts, or Cherries. There's

Plenty of large Oxen, Goats, Pullets, Partridges, and Pigeons, and some Horses; but they are very lean, because they run Day and Night, and are fed for most Part with Camel's Milk to strengthen them. In their Forrests there are the strongest and the fiercest Lions in all *Africa*. There's Store of white Honey, which the Bees make in Holes in the Ground, and some great Sugar-Canes. The *Sansons* say, the *Portuguese* took it in 1515; but the King of *Fez* retook it soon after, with 60 Pieces of Artillery, and the Defeat of 10000 Christians. *Leo* says, he was present in the Action; that 3000 of the *Portuguese* were slain by Surprise in the Night; and that in the whole they lost 400 Pieces of Brass Ordnance. *Heylin* ascribes the Defeat of the *Portuguese* to the Want of a good Understanding betwixt them and the *Castilians*, and places this Town in the Province of *Temesna*. *Du Plessis* says, the Town is small, and now in the Hands of the Corsairs; for *M. de St. Olon* tells us, that *Muley Ismael* retook it again from the *Spaniards* in 1689. *Leo* places it 12 Miles N. of *Salle*, and half a Mile from the Sea.

2. *Tefelfelt* or *Tefelfet*. The *Sansons* place it 15 Miles S. E. of *Mahmora*. *Marmol* says, 'tis the ancient *Tamifidis* or *Tamusiga*, which *Ptolomy* places Long. 7. Lat. 34. 15. There are so many furious Lions in the neighbouring Forrests, that there's a House cover'd with Earth upon the Road, whither Travellers repair in the Night for Safety. *Dapper* says, 'tis a little Town in a Valley 4 Leag. from *Mahmora*, and 3 from the Ocean, and consists only of a few *Arabian* Huts.

3. *Sala*, *Salet*, *Salle*, or *Sally*. The *Sansons* place it at the Bottom of a Bay on the N. Side of the River *Buragrag*, near its Influx into the Ocean, Lat. 33. 10. Long. 13. 18 Miles S. E. from *Mamora*, 63 N. W. from *Mequinez*, and 100 from *Fez*. *Moll* on the S. Side of the River *Gueron*, Lat. 34. Long. 10. 23. 15 Miles S. W. from *Mamora*, 60 N. W. from *Mequinez*, and 93 from *Fez*. *Dapper* says, this is the oldest Town in the Province, the *Sala* of *Ptolomy*, and the *Sella* of other Geographers. He divides it into the Old and New Towns. The former, which he says lies on the S. Side of the River, is called by the Natives *Rabald*, and the Inhabitants (who are for most Part *Andalusians* that were expelled from Spain)

Sloufi,

Sloufi, as those of the New are called *Rabatti*. *Old Sale* is built in a square Form, and has 4 Gates. On the N. Side is the Gate leading to *Mamora*, which is called *Sidimusa Duquelle*, from the Name of a Saint who lies interred there in a square Dome, cover'd with a round Roof, over against a Redoubt. On the E. Side there are two Gates, one which opens to the *Jews* Church-yard and the Road that leads to *Mequinez*, and another shut up, built in Form of a square Centry-Box. At the three other Sides of *Old Sale* there's a Stone Citadel, and a great Market, whither the *Arabs* bring all Sorts of Provisions, and often 3 or 400 Camel-Loads at a time. Under this Market are the common Prisons for the Slaves, called *Mashmore* or *Matamources*, to which the Light enters by Grates; but Persons of Quality have particular ones for their Slaves besides. This was once a great Town, but now so diminish'd, that 'tis not comparable to *New Sale* for Bigness, Magnificence, and Number of Inhabitants.

Dapper says, the New Town is also built in almost a square Form, and lies in a Valley between two Hills, of which that next the Land is much higher than the other towards the Sea. 'Tis fortified on the Land-Side with a double Wall, one old, and the other new, and there's a Space between both as large as half of the Town, where they sow Wheat, Barley, Beans, &c. The new Wall is very thick, and 30 Foot high. The Town is defended next the Sea by high Rocks and Towers, where they keep Centinels. *New Sale* has three Gates on the Land-Side, one on the E. call'd *Sella*, because it leads to the Town of that Name in the next Province, and two on the S. called the Gates of *Morocco* and *Temefna*. Over against the River there's a high square Tower call'd *Asan*, and a Mosque which was not quite finish'd in our Author's Time. 'Tis 1400 Foot long, and 300 broad. The Walls are an Ell in Thickness, and made of Clay and Lime. The Inside is adorned with Stone Pillars. The Tower is also of Stone, and 200 Foot in Compass. The S. Side was rent from Top to Bottom by a Thunderbolt, so that one may enter it from the Mosque. Behind the Tower there's a Stone Cistern 30 Foot deep and 100 broad, design'd, as our Author thinks, for the Ablu-

tions of the *Moors*. There is also in *New Sale* a Citadel call'd *Alcassave*, as large as a little Town, encompassed with thick Walls, and a deep but dry Ditch. There are above 200 Houses within it, where the Inhabitants of *Sale* formerly dwelt. 'Tis adorn'd with a Tower painted with Crescents. This Castle was once the Seraglio, where the Kings of *Morocco* kept above 800 Women under a Guard of Eunuchs; but now 'tis the Governor's Palace. The Outworks of *New Sale* are defended by little round Bulwarks made of Clay, which the Inhabitants of both Towns rais'd in 1660, when they besieg'd the Castle. The Houses, especially those of the Old Town, are old fashion'd, and tho' some of them are adorned with Statues and Columns of Marble, yet their Walls are only of Clay. Most of them are but one Story, and have no Windows towards the Street, nor any Opening besides the Gate; but in the Middle of the House there's an open Place, at which all the Rooms meet, and from thence receive Light. There are also Galleries and flat Roofs to take the Air on. The Harbour is very broad, but shallow; so that when the Tide is out, 'tis scarce a Foot and a half deep; but at high Water, 'tis 11 or 12, when Ships take the Opportunity to put into the Harbour, for otherwise they could come no nearer than the Mouth of the River, and are often compelled to unload without the Gate of *Sidimusa Duquelle*, and to bring their Merchandizes to the Town on Asses and Camels. This obliges the Corsairs of *Sale* to use light Ships, which is an Advantage to them in their Pursuit of Prizes, and facilitates their Escape when pursued by great Ships, such as those of *Algier*, *Tanis*, and *Tripoly*, where the Corsairs sail well enough in great Vessels, because of the Convenience of their Harbours. *Dapper* says, the Revenues of this City arise from a Duty of 10 per Cent. on all Merchandize imported and exported, which they learn'd of the *English*; whereas before they paid nothing. The Peasants of the neighbouring Country pay also the Tenths of all their Fruits, and they get much by their Piracies on the Christians. The King of *Fez* has a Governor here, who, together with some Alcalds chosen out of the Burghers, have a Right to make Peace and War. The Governor is

chose by the People, who sometimes prefer those of the lowest Rank, and commit great Disorders at the Election. Our Author instances in an Ass-driver, whom the People compelled to enter upon the Government; but he drove too fast, and was oblig'd to take up again with his former Employ. Besides, the Government is so often shifted from one Hand to another, that sometimes they make no less than three Governors in a Month. The Jurisdiction of *Sale* extends no further than some Villages and Aduars, which are Rows of Tents where the *Arabs* and *Larbusses* live.

Dapper gives us the following History of *Sale*, which we thought too remarkable to omit.

The City, he says, was a long time exposed to the Misfortunes of War, particularly after the *Andalusian Moors* were drove out of *Spain*. Those that arrived in this Town had the same Privileges as the Natives, either because they were *Mahometans*, or because the King of *Fez* had a Mind they should learn his Subjects such Arts and Trades as they were ignorant of. They lay quiet for a while, and were as submissive as the rest; but afterwards they bought Arms and Ships with the Money which they brought from *Spain*. They fitted out their Ships with a Pretence only to cruise upon the *Spaniards* in Revenge of their Exile, tho' in Reality they had a Design upon those of other Christian Nations; and the better to cover it, hung out *Spanish* Colours, and pretended to be *Spaniards*; but at last, being discover'd, they pulled off the Mask, declared they were Corsairs, and Enemies to Christianity, and gave the King of *Morocco* the 7th or the 10th of all Prizes they took both in Merchandize and Slaves. But in the mean time they sought an Occasion to shake off the Authority of the Kings of *Morocco*, and for that End seized the *Alcassave*, where they disarm'd and expell'd the native *Moors*, banish'd the King's Officers; and being join'd by other *Andalusians*, resolv'd to defend their Liberty with Sword in Hand. The King upon this sent an Army to besiege *Sale*; but they were forced to retire, and to come to an Agreement with the Rebels, That they should own the King for their Sovereign; That as his Vassals they should send him some Slaves every

Year by Way of Homage; and that the King should name their Officers; but that the Town and Castle should remain in their own Hands. After this, the King of *Fez* found Means to put a Garrison into the Castle; upon which the *Andalusians* besieg'd it in 1660, and rais'd the fore-mentioned Bulwarks round *Rabad*, from which they fir'd furiously with Musket-Balls, while those of the Old Town did the like from the Cannon mounted on their Fortresses. During the Siege, the Inhabitants of *New Sale* desired a Commander from *Abdulcada Gailan*, Lord of *Arzilla*, *Tetuan*, and *Alcassar*, who sent them one *Abdelcador Ceron*; but he was soon after murder'd, which (says our Author) proved the Ruin of his Party, and the Safety of the Castle. The Peasants following this pernicious Example, the Villages enter'd into Hostilities with one another, which spoil'd the Harvest, so that above 100000 Persons dy'd of Famine in 1662. In the mean time the Besieged began to want Provisions; but some of the Burghers found Means to supply them, by bringing it to sell near a Chappel by the Town, tho' they suffer'd severe Penalties if detected. On the other hand, the *English*, who favour'd the Royalists, assisted them with all Sorts of Provisions, by Means of their Vessels which rode in the Harbour; but the *French* and *Dutch* took the Part of the Burghers. The Garrison being at length afraid of the Issue of the Siege, thought of securing their Gold and Silver, and caus'd it to be transported by the *English* to their Master *Cid Abdala* at *Temefna*. In the mean time, many of those that *Abdala* sent to relieve the Castle were taken going up the River by the Burghers, and cruelly treated, so that some were hung up by the Feet, or bury'd alive, besides a Thousand other Torments, especially in the Time of *Ceron*. At last *Cid Tagar*, *Gaylan's* Brother, came from *Arzilla* at the Head of 300 Horse, and in April 1664 concluded a Peace with the Castle, on Condition that all the Revenues of Lands should be equally divided between the Citadel, Old and *New Sale*. The next Month the Garrison put themselves under the Protection of *Gailan*. Then the Inhabitants of *Sale*, who did not cruise upon the Christians during the Siege, because the River was commanded by the Castle, began to renew their Piracies. In

October the Citadel was deliver'd up to *Gailan*. He returning that same Month to *Arzila*, left the Government to *Cid Hamel Aginniwi*, and gave him *Cid Hamel El-Xhymie* for his Assistant: But in *December* next, *Aginniwi* caused the latter to be arrested for having conceal'd 100 Livres which belong'd to *Cid Abdala*, the late Governor, and fin'd him 1000 Crowns. In *March* 1665, *Gailan's* other Brother, *Cidsybi*, made his Entry into *Sale*, attended by the Governors of both Towns, who met him at *Arzila*, and by 2000 Foot-Soldiers. *Aginniwi* receiv'd him civilly, and lodg'd him in the Castle. The old Soldiers of *St. Croix* were disbanded, stripped of all they had, and some of them put in Prison. The 31st of the same Month the *Andalusians* chose *Abdalcader Merino* and *Hornazieros* for their Leaders, and their Predecessors were imprisoned in the Castle, as were also *Xache Brakim Marimo*, Governor of Old *Sale*, and his Brother, *Xache Ali*; so that *Xache Fenis* remained sole Governor. On the first of *April*, *Cid Sybi* led *Aginniwi* out of the Citadel, and committed him to a Guard. His Women were turn'd out immediately after, stripp'd almost of all they had, and sent to Old *Sale*. Nevertheless *Aginniwi* was releas'd, upon giving 200 Ducats Security, and hasten'd to *Arzila* to carry his Complaints to *Gailan*; but he died suddenly after his Arrival, not without Suspicion of being poison'd. In *August*, *Abdalcader Roxo*, and a Son of the late Governor *Cenis*, were made Governors of the Citadel. In *June*, 1666, *Gailan* being defeated in Battle by *Muley Resis*, King of *Tafilet*, Brother to the King of *Fez*, was obliged to fly to *Alcassir*; but mistrusting his own Attendants, he soon removed from thence; and the next Day the King took the *Alcassave* without firing a Shot; and at the same Time the Inhabitants of *Tetuan*, Old and New *Sale*, fell in with him; upon which, *Roxo* and *Ceron*, Governors for *Gailan*, fled, and the King restor'd *Merino* and *Fenis* in their Room. The *Portuguese* were once Masters of the Town, but they soon lost it. In 1659, the Kings of *Morocco* and *Fez*, and the Lord of *Sale*, sent Three Ambassadors to the States of *Holland*, for an able Oculist, to cure the Lord of *Sale* of a Defluxion in his Eyes. They renewed the Alliance concluded

between them and the United Provinces in 1650, and confirmed by Admiral *Ruyter* in 1657; by which 'twas agreed, That no Prejudice should be done to *Dutch* Vessels trading to *Sale*: That the Goods and Persons of such Ships on either Side that met at Sea should be safe; but that those of *Sale* should lower their Top-Sails to the *Dutch*: That no Captain of *Sale* should go on Board a *Dutch*-man, but that the latter should have that Privilege over the *Salle*-man, and examine his Letters and Instructions. These Ambassadors carried with them as Presents to the States, two *Turkey* Horses, a young Lion, a Lioness, and an Ostrich; but the young Lion died at Sea, and the Ostrich at *Amsterdam*, by swallowing Nails. *Dapper* describes the Ambassadors Habits as follows:

One of them had a white Woollen Gown about his Body, with Buttons on both Sides, 5 or 6 Ells long, and one and a half in Breadth, (the Habit which the Men and Women of this Country commonly wear when they travel.) At the End of it hung the Threads of the Stuff like Fringe. Underneath he wore a Cloth Gown, and another at Top with Half-Sleeves. Their Cap was only plain Woollen, and not folded after the common Fashion of the *Moors*, because they have other pleated ones of fine Linen. The second of them had the like large Gown, and one over it which cover'd half of his Body; was made of Goat's Hair, or black Wool, with a Cowl behind, and button'd before. They wear it tuck'd up in Winter, and thrust in their Heads into their Cowls. They have also a colour'd Cloth at *Sale*, which they button over the Shoulders. The third had the like Garment with the second; but the Cowl behind was tied at the End, which, together with the colour'd Cloth above-mention'd, distinguishes them from the meaner Sort of People. Their Attendants were in the like plain Dress. One of them had a high Woollen Cap, and a Furr'd Gown, open before, with a Cowl, which hung down behind his Back, and Hanging-Sleeves. On each Side before from Top to Bottom there were little round Pieces, with a Ribband in the Middle to tie it. *Dapper* says, this Habit is most wore by Mariners and Labourers, because 'tis easiest to put on and off.

off. One of their Woman-Attendants had also a very long Gown, which she wrapp'd round her Body, and it was of the finest Linen, the same that is worn by Persons of Quality. After 6 Weeks Stay, the Ambassadors returned with an Oculist, and each a Gold Chain valued at 400 *l.* and a Book containing the Description of the Towns of *Holland*. The like was also sent to their Master, but much finer bound; and the Interpreter had a Gold Chain of the like Value.

To return to our Account of the Town. *Dapper* says, there grows a great deal of Wood here, of which the Peasants make Combs, with Store of Cotton, of which the Inhabitants make Cloth and Fustians; but there is little Corn, because of the Sands with which 'tis encompassed. *Davity* says, That when the *Goths* were Masters of this Part of *Africa*, *Sala* was the Capital of *Fez*, till the Building of the City of that Name. The Castle is well provided with Artillery. The Houses are very fair, and have Portals adorned with Pillars, and Tables of Alabaster and Jasper Stone; and all the Streets are built exactly on a Line. The Harbour is good, but small. 'Twas formerly a Commonwealth, but now under the King of *Fez*, and not so well traded as formerly. The Governor here for the King of *Fez* and *Morocco* has 300 Horse and some Foot for the Safeguard of the City. The *Spaniards* took it in 1287, but lost it in 10 Days after. In 1632, our *K. Charles I.* being solicited by the Emperor of *Morocco*, sent a Fleet against it, while the Emperor besieged it by Land; by which the City being reduced, the Fortifications demolished, and the chief Rebels executed, the Emperor rewarded our King with 300 Christian Slaves. He adds, That their chief Mosque and great Tower were built by 30000 Christian Slaves, whom *Muley Jacob Almanzor* brought from *Spain*, while as many more were employed at *Morocco* in making Aqueducts. He places this City 20 Miles S. of *Mamora*, 70 from *Arzila*, 100 from *Tangier*, and 100 W. of *Fez*, Long. 6. 40. Lat. 33. 5. *M. de S. Olon* says, the Inhabitants are about 20000: That the old Town has 2 Castles on a little Hill near the Sea-shore, which communicate by a great Wall, and contain about 30 Pieces of Artillery, in a

very bad Condition; and that there's a little Fort above the old Castle at the Mouth of the River, mounted with 3 Iron Cannon, and two of Brass, from 12 to 15 Pounders, in order to facilitate the Retreat of the *Cor-sairs* when pursued. The *Sansons* say, That *Sala* pays but a small Tribute to the King of *Fez*: That it drives a great Trade with the *French*, *English*, *Genoese*, *Venetians*, and *Dutch*; and that in the Castle there are the stately Tombs of King *Manfor* and his Successors. *Du Pleffis* says, there is a Bar at the Entrance of the Harbour; and that because of its Shallowness the *Cor-sairs* commonly retire to the little Island of *Fedale* or *Fadhala*, which lies but 12 Miles off, according to the *Nubian* Geographer. *Heylin* places *Sala* in the Province of *Temefna*; and says, That King *Almanfor* adorn'd it with a stately Palace, Hospital, Temple, and a Hall of Marble, cut in Mosaick Works. The *Nubian* Geographer makes it 9 Days Journey N. of *Morocco*; and says, that the old Town stood two Miles further from the Sea than the present, which stands on a steep Rock inaccessible towards the Sea, 85 Miles N. from *Asoph*, now *Cape Cantyn*, the old S. Boundary of the then known World. The Road is so expos'd to all Winds, that Ships are not safe till they are enter'd the River, which he calls *Rebata*, and says, 'tis one of the greatest in the Kingdom. *Leo* thinks, the City was built by the *Romans*, or, as some say, by *Hanna* the *Carthaginian*; plunder'd by the *Goths*, and rebuilt by *Tarick* the famous *Arabian* Captain. He adds, that in his Time the Buildings were majestick, splendid, and costly. *Heylin* observes, that since it has been subject to the King of *Fez*, the People have renewed their Piracies, so that they have much infested our Trade on the Ocean, and especially to our Plantations, taken many of our Ships, and made our People Slaves; and that, though some have attempted to renew the Trade which we once had here, the Ships have been seiz'd after they were laden, and the Men made Slaves. *Lewis Roberts* in his Map of Commerce says, That Vessels not drawing above 10 Foot Water may enter over the Bar into the Harbour, which will hold 100 Sail; but that the Merchants will not carry their Goods ashore without a Protection from the Governor, nor hardly then too,

too, because of the Perfidiousness of the People; so that they commonly trade on Ship-board with the Merchants of the Town, who are for most part *Jews* of the worst Sort. They export Cow-Hides, Goat-Skins, Wax, Honey, Oil, and Dates; and import Linen, Woollen, Firelock-Muskets, Pistols, Knives, and all Sorts of Iron-work.

4. *Fanzar*, or *Fanzara*. The *Sansons* place it 30 Miles S. E. of *Sala*, and in the Road thence to *Fez*, from whence it lies 83 Miles to the N. W. *Sanutius* says, 'twas anciently call'd *Tefensara*, or *Fansara*: And *Marmol* thinks it the *Banasse* of *Ptolomy*. *Heylin* places it on the River *Subu*.

5. *Pietra Rossa*. *Leo* says, there are tame Lions here, which pick up Bones in the Streets, without hurting any Body: And that 'tis a little Town upon the Side of Mount *Zelagi*. We suppose it to be the same with that which the *Sansons* call *Petra Ruvea*, 44 Miles S. E. of *Sala*, and 53 N. W. of *Fez*.

6. *Gualil*, or *Gualila*. The *Sansons* place it 72 Miles S. E. of *Mahmora*, 58 from *Sala*, 10 N. from *Mechnes*, and 40 N. W. from *Fez*. *Heylin* notes it for the Sepulchre of *Idris*, the First Founder of *Fez*. *Leo* says, That the *Idris*, who lies buried here, repair'd and repeopled this Town; and that his Tomb is visited by almost all the People of *Barbary*, who count him a great Patriarch, but that he was the Father of *Idris*, that founded *Fez*, who after his Death suffer'd *Gualila* to run to Ruin.

7. *Mechnes*, or *Mequinez*. The *Sansons* place it 37 Miles N. W. of *Fez*, 80 S. E. of *Mamora*, and 63 from *Sala*. *Moll* makes it but 60 from *Mamora* and *Sala*, and places it near the River *Bonamair*. Some think it the *Silda*, which *Ptolomy* places Long. 7. 50. Lat. 34. 15. *Dapper* makes it 17 Leagues from *Sala*, 20 from *Mamora*, 12 from *Fez*, and 5 from the Great *Atlas*, in a Valley which belongs to the Heirs of the Crown. *Leo* says, it contained in his Time 6000 Houses, with fair Mosques, 3 Colleges, 12 Bagnio's, very large Streets, and had a convenient Canal, which brought Water from a Place half a League without the City, for the Use of the Citadel, the Mosques, and Bagnio's. *Dapper* adds, That the Soil bears choice Fruits, such as Quinces, Pomegranates, White Prunes, *Damascus* Prunes, Figs, Grapes, Olives, and Flax;

and *Leo*, that 'tis a great, strong, and beautiful City, 50 Miles S. E. of *Sala*, and 15 W. of *Atlas*, in a Plain where Fruits are so plenty, that they drive a considerable Trade with them and their Manufactures to *Fez*, and at home with the wandering *Arabs* for Flesh-Meat. He adds, That it has been frequently besieged by the Kings of *Fez*, and stood out one Siege of 7 Years, and another of two Months. *M. de S. Olon* says, 'tis the Seat of the King of *Fez* and *Morocco*; and situate in the Middle of his Territories. 'Tis small, and so populous in his Time, that the Inhabitants were reckon'd above 60000; and their Streets being narrow, there is no passing them without jostling. The King makes it his chief Place of Residence, because 'tis his Birth-place. Our Author makes it 40 Leagues from *Sala*, and 60 from *Tetuan*; and says, 'tis so ill built, and disagreeable, that 'twould be no better than a sorry Borough, were it not for the Number of its Inhabitants, the Residence of their Prince, and the Ornament of his Palace, which is as large as the Town, and exceeds all the Structures in this Country. 'Tis higher than the City, has several thick, high, and white Walls, and consists of a great Number of Pavillions, besides the very high Steeples of its two Mosques; but the whole is contriv'd with so little Art and Regularity, that our Author thinks 'twould be difficult for the most skilful Architects, and impossible for the King himself, who was the Contriver of it, to trace out the Plan. He pulls it down and rebuilds it by Turns, for no other End but to keep a great Number of his Subjects in perpetual Employment, and to punish the Christian Slaves, whom he employs here without Intermission as Labourers and Masons, and forces them to it by Blows and Misery. Their daily Food is only a little black Barley Bread and Water, and they lie in Places under Ground upon the damp Earth, where the Air is very rank and unwholesome. Our Author observes, that the Women and married Men are not set at this Work, the former being too weak; and the King pities the latter, because they are already oppress'd with a Family, and lets them alone to work in their own Way for their Livelihood; but then he allows them no Sustenance. He also exempts the Renegadoes from this Work,

Work, but sets them to guard his Gates, or sends them to his Alcalds in the Provinces, who find them Employ suitable to their Strength and Capacity; or else he carries them with him to the Wars, and makes them march at the Head of his Troops, where if they offer to fall back, he cuts them in Pieces. To return to the Palace: Our Author says, there is no regular Building in it, though it contains 45 Pavilions, with each a Fountain in the Middle of its Court. At the principal Entrance there's a very fine Gate with Columns, from whence 'tis call'd the Marble Gate, with two Mosques, and a great Court. The Mosques are adorn'd in the Inside with Columns and *Basso-Relievo's* of Marble, without any Figures of Men or other Animals, but of Cyphers and *Arabick* Letters, describing the King's chief Military Exploits. He has very fine Stables here, which form two long arch'd Galleries on the Right and Left; and there's a Pavement which separates them from little neat Pavillions, in each of which there's a Fountain and a Watering-place for the Horses. Our Author observes by the way, that the *Moors* here will not suffer their Horses or Corn to be exported to the Christians upon any Account whatsoever, nor their Books, which are pretty scarce in this Country, where there are few or no Printing-Presses. The King's Gardens are very fine, and planted in the Middle of a great Wood of Olives at a Distance from the Palace. They abound all the Year with Flowers, Pulse, Fruits, and Trees of all Sorts. Their Alleys are very narrow, and they have no Fountains or other Water-Works, but some little Brooks which run through them. There are other fine Palaces near the King's, which the Alcaldes build for his Delight, but cannot keep 'em longer than he pleases. There's an Hospital in the Town, built at the Charge of the late King of Spain, for the Slaves. 'Tis capable of 100 sick Persons; and his Majesty settled an annual Revenue of 2000 Crowns on 4 Friars and a Physician to look after it: But they pay a Tribute for this Privilege, as well as at Fez, Sala, and Tetuan. There are Schools here, as in all other Cities of *Africa*, where Children are taught to read, write, and cypher. The *Jews* have their Quarter here,

which is very large, and the principal Residence of him who is the chief of all the rest in the Kingdom, (that are in Number 16000) who imposes and exacts all their ordinary and extraordinary Tributes. The *Sansons* say, the Town is well built, the Streets large and regular, the Inhabitants generous and civil, but always jealous of those of Fez: That there are Gardens for 5 or 6 Miles round the Town; and that the Fruits which grow there are almost one Third of the King's Revenue. *Marmol* says, the City has good Walls, and contained in his Time above 8000 Inhabitants, who are proud and stout, derive their Extraction from Mecca, and apply themselves for most part to Traffick. *Du Plessis* says, the Air is more temperate and wholesome here than at Fez.

8. *Darel Hamara*. *Marmol* thinks it the *Epitiana* or *Septicenna* of *Ptolemy*, and says, it stands upon Mount *Zarhon*, was built by the Romans, is still entire and very populous, but much infested by Lions, who come thither for their Prey. Yet our Author says, they are so tame, that he saw a Lion which had snatch'd up a little Child, pursued and beat by a little Girl, till he drop'd the Child.

9. *Gema el Hamem*, or *Gemie Elchmen*, is an old Town, says *Dapper*, 4 Miles S. of *Mequinez*, 10 E. of Fez, and 3 from Mount *Atlas*. It lies in a large Plain, which is the high Road from *Tedla* to Fez; was ruin'd by the Wars, and serves now only for a Retiring-place of Robbers and *Arabs*. *Marmol* places it in the Road between *Mequinez* and Fez, thinks it the *Gonthana* of *Ptolemy*, and says, 'twas demolished by the last King but one of the Race of *Benemerinis*. The *Sansons* call it *Gomielchmena*, and place it 25 Miles S. W. of Fez.

10. *Beni Becil*, or *Beni Basil*, the same probably with *Sanson's* *Banibasila*, 17 Miles W. of Fez. *Dapper* says, it stands between Fez and *Mequinez*, upon the Banks of the little River *Nye*, which rises half a League from the Town, and comes from the Fountain *Ain-Zorc*.

11. *Hamis Metagare*, or *Camis Metagara*. The *Sansons* place it 15 Miles S. W. from Fez. *Dapper* says, it lies in the Plains of *Zuaga*, near the Road that leads from *Morocco* to Fez, in the Midway between the latter and

and *Gema-el-Hamem*. It was destroy'd, and afterwards rebuilt by the *Moors* of *Granada*.

12. *Shame Castle*, probably that which the *Sanfons* call *Verecundia*, 20 Miles N. W. of *Fez*. *Leo* says, it stands at the Foot of *Mount Zarkon*, near the high Road from *Mequinez* to *Fez*; and that 'twas so call'd from the shameful Tricks of the Inhabitants, who, 'tis said, having invited the King to Dinner, as he was passing by, prepar'd a Couple of Rams for his Breakfast next Morning, and some large Vessels full of Milk and Water, presuming the King would not know but that it was all Milk: But the King discovering it, smil'd, and said, *What Nature hath given, no Man can take away*.

13. *Zavia*, or *Zaguia*. The *Sansons* place it near the River *Unionum*, which, according to them, runs through *Fez*, 15 Miles N. W. of that City. *Dapper* says, 'tis the *Voluffa* of *Ptolomy*, and was built by *Joseph* the Second King of the Race of the *Merini's*, 4 Miles E. of *Fez*, but has nothing to shew besides an Hospital.

14. *Macarmede*. The *Sanfons* place it 15 Miles S. E. of *Fez*, on a small River that runs into a Branch of the *Subu*. *Heylin* calls the River *Inavis*, and says, the Town lies in a fine Plain, but was all ruin'd except the Wall in *Leo's* Time by the Wars. He adds, That 'twas once a strong, rich and populous Town, 20 Miles E. of *Fez*. *Dapper* places it but 6 from *Fez*, and says, 'twas the *Erpis* of *Ptolomy*.

15. *Titulit*. *Dapper* places it on the Top of *Mount Zarkon*, and says, 'twas formerly above two Miles in Compass, and the Capital of this Province, but was quite ruin'd by King *Joseph*, of the Race of the *Almoravides*, so that there remain but 15 or 20 Houses, with a Mosque.

16. *Casar Zarakonum*, or *Elcasar-Faron*, i. e. *Faron's Palace*. *Dapper* places in on the same Mountain, 3 Miles from *Titulit*, and says, there's a River on each Side of it, and a great many Olive-Trees, whether retire several *Affaragues* and *Bereberes*. He adds, That 'twas destroyed at the same Time with *Titulit*, and has only a Market left, which is frequented every *Wednesday* by several Inhabitants of *Fez* and *Mequinez*. *Heylin* confutes the vulgar Error, that this was built by one of the *Pharaohs*, and says,

there are Latin Inscriptions which shew 'twas the Work of the ancient *Romans*.

17. *Halwan*, or *Choulan*. The *Sanfons* place it near the River *Sebu*, 7 Miles S. E. of *Fez*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a Wall'd Town, but two great Miles from that City, and that without the Town there's a Bath and very fine Lodgings. He adds, That the Plains of *Eceis* in this Province contain a great many populous Towns, and *Benegarten*, though of a small Compass, above 200, which are all inhabited by the *Arabians* and *Bereberes*, but we pass them over, since they are considerable for little else, and shall conclude our Description of this Province with an Account of its Capital.

18. *Fez*. *Moll* places it between the Rivers *Cebu* and *Bouamair*, or *Bunasar*, Lat. 33 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 13 $\frac{1}{2}$. above 90 Miles S. E. of *Sala* and *Mamora*, 36 from *Mequinez*, and almost 170 N. E. from *Morocco*. The *Sanfons* place it Long. 14 $\frac{3}{4}$. Lat. 32. 22. 115 Miles from *Mamora*, and on the River *Unionum*, or *Perles*, between the two Rivers above-mention'd. *Dapper* says, the *Mahometans* call it the West Court, and that most Geographers take it for the *Volubilis* of *Ptolomy*. They say, 'twas built in the Reign of *Aron*, A. D. 801. by *Idris*, Son to the *Arabian* Patriarch of the same Name. Some derive the Name from the *Arabick* Word *Fez*, i. e. Gold, because a great Quantity of hidden Gold was dug up when the Foundations were laid; but others from a River of that Name which runs near the City. 'Tis about 100 Leagues from the Ocean and the *Mediterranean*, and lies in the Form of a Parallelogram, or Four-square, without the Suburbs, which are very large. It has high strong Walls of square Stones, and good Towers, but no Bulwarks. It has 86 Gates, and is interspers'd with several Hills in the Out-Skirts; so that only the Middle is upon a Level, and in other Parts 'tis water'd with fine Canals. 'Tis divided into 12 Quarters, containing 62 Markets, enrich'd with fine Shops, and 200 great and streight Streets, besides many other small ones, with fair Buildings on both Sides; and there are 700 Mosques, besides Colleges, Hospitals, Stores, Mills, and Baths. The River which *Paul Jovius* calls *Rhasalme* divides into two Branches, which water two Parts of the Town, viz. the West Side, and the South towards

New Fex; and these Branches are subdivided into lesser Streams and Canals, for the Convenience of the publick and private Houses. Near the Mosques are about 150 Common-Shores, into which they let the Water run, to carry off the Filth of the City into the River. There are 250 Stone Bridges over the Canals, some with Houses built on each Side, and 86 common Fountains or Conduits, and 600 private ones. The Houses are of Stone and Brick, very neatly plac'd. The Chambers and Galleries are varnish'd with Flowers and Foliage of various Colours, and adorn'd with a great many Pictures and Statues. The Ceiling of the Garrets is commonly gilt or painted, and the Roof flat, and finely inlaid, on which they take the Air. Most of the Houses are two or three Stories high, adorn'd on the Outside with *Mosaick* Work, and encompass'd with Galleries, which lead from one Room to another, and there's an open Place in the Middle, at which all the Rooms terminate with high large Doors, and a painted Wardrobe in each Chamber from one End to the other, where they lock up Things of most Value. The Galleries are supported by Pillars of Stone and Brick-work, painted and varnish'd, or by Marble Columns, and the Beams and Joists of the Chambers are also painted and gilt. In several Houses there are Stone Cisterns 10 or 12 Cubits long, 6 or 7 broad, and as much in Depth, which are likewise painted and varnish'd, and they have each a Marble Basin, into which the Water runs by a Cock. They keep them very clean, and never cover them unless in Summer, when they bath themselves. Every House has commonly a Turret, where the Women are kept in handsome Rooms, from whence they have a View of the City, but cannot stir abroad. Fifty or sixty of the Mosques are larger and finer than ordinary, and adorn'd with Fountains, and Columns of Marble, whose Capitals are painted. Their Mosques are built with Wooden Roofs, neither vaulted, wainscotted, nor pav'd, but only cover'd with Matting, so fine, that the Ground cannot be seen through it, and the Walls are cover'd with the same as high as a Man's Head. The most famous Mosque is that call'd *Caruven*, according to *Gramay*, which is near half a Mile in Compass,

and has 30 Gates, of a prodigious Bigness. Its Roof is 150 Cubits long, and 80 broad; and the Tower, which is of a vast Height, is supported by 20 Pillars the broad Way, and 30 the long Way. It has above 400 Cisterns to bath in before the People go to Prayers, and there are 42 Galleries round it, each 40 Cubits long, and 30 broad, where they keep all the Necessaries belonging to the Temple, and it has above 900 Arches, with Marble Columns, at each of which hangs a Lamp, that burns all Night, especially in the Middle of the Choir. Its Revenue is 200, some say 400 Ducats, per Day.

New Fex, says *Dapper*, is a Mile from the Old, and was built by King *Jacob*, Son to *Abdullah* I. of the Race of the *Merini's*, in a pleasant Plain near the River. The Founder first call'd it the *White Town*, till the People gave it the present Name. Our Author observes, That that Prince built this Town in order to be nearer to oppose the King of *Telenfin*, who did him a great deal of Mischief in the Beginning of his Reign. He divided it into three Parts: In the first he built his own Palace, those of his Brothers and Children, with Gardens and Mosques; and a Building with square Rooms, to serve as a Treasury, which he encompass'd with Houses for the Artificers, and Apartments for the Treasurer, Notaries, and Secretaries; and near the Treasury he left a great Space for Goldsmiths Shops, and a Mint. He design'd the second Part for the Houses of his Courtiers, Officers, and Captains, and left a Space of 1500 Paces from the East Gate to the West, in order for a Market, which was encompass'd with Merchants and Tradsmens Shops. And the third Part serv'd at first for the King's Guards, but now 'tis almost full of *Jews* and Goldsmiths. There are as many Mosques, Baths, and Colleges, in *New* as in *Old Fex*; and Water is brought hither by certain Engines invented by a *Spaniard*, which play every 24 Hours. It falls down from the Top of the Walls into the Cisterns, and from thence runs by the Canals into the Palaces, Gardens, Mosques, Baths, and Colleges. Our Author observes, that the Town has been adorning for these 140 Years, but that these Water-works were not above 40 Years Standing when he wrote,

wrote, and that before they had only an Aquaduct, which was invented by a *Genoese*, and not near so convenient. The *Sansons*, *Du Val*, *Marmol*, and *Thuanus*, say, the City is built upon the Descent of two Mountains, separated by a River, and that it has a great Number of Suburbs, of which 32 are the most considerable, some having 500, some 1000, and others 2000 Houses. They divide it into 4 principal Quarters. Among its Colleges, that built by King *Habu Henen* cost 500000 Ducats, being all enrich'd with *Mosaick*, Gold, Azure, Marble, and Brazen Gates. It has a Library of 2000 *Arabian* Manuscripts, besides a great Number of others. There are 200 Hospitals in and about the City, 25 of them for the Sick of the Country, and the greatest capable of maintaining 2000. The rest are for Strangers; who are maintain'd at the publick Charge; but their Revenues were so much squander'd by the War with *Sahid*, when the King sold their Properties without any Reparation, that they now give only Bedding, and some of them but three Days Nourishment, and no Strangers are admitted but such as are Scholars or Gentlemen, nor none of the Citizens but such as are poor and decay'd. Here are also 200 Storehouses, and 200 Inns, some of which have above 200 Chambers, and there are 400 Mills, which employ 1200 Mules. The great Square of the Merchants is enclos'd with Walls, and shut up with 12 Gates like a City, with an Iron Chain at each to keep out Horses and Carts. 'Tis divided into 15 Quarters, each of which have their respective Tradesmen, and contains in the whole 20000 Workmen of all Sorts.

These Authors place *New Fez* 1000 or 1200, and some but 200 Paces from the *Old*, and say, 'tis about 4 Leagues in Compass, including a great Number of Gardens within the Walls. It has now no Suburbs, but Seven principal Gates. The Streets are very narrow, and the Gates are shut up every Night. The Houses, which are reckon'd about 80000, are all terrass'd upon Top, and fairer within than without. The City is defended by Two Castles, that have no Artillery. The one is very ancient, and its Walls are partly ruin'd. The other was built some Years ago by the famous *Muley Archy*, having two Bastions on both

Sides the City, with two Iron Cannon in each. The River which falls from *Fez Gedide*, or *New Fez*, runs through the Middle of *Fez Bele*, where it divides into 6 Branches, that drive 366 Mills, supply as many Baths, and each House has 3 or 4 Fountains. Here are 366 Ovens, in which they bake every Day till 4 in the Afternoon. There are 4 principal Mosques, and about 500 of lesser Bulk and Wealth. The Grand Mosque is the Residence of their Cadi or Chief Priest, and near it are certain Colleges for the Students of their Law, which they teach in the purest *Arabick*, wherein the Alcoran was written, which is very different from the vulgar; but they study neither Latin nor Philosophy. The most magnificent of all the Colleges was built by *Muley Archy*. The City of *Fez Gedine* lies above *Fez Bele*, and commands it like a Citadel. *Muley Archy* built a Palace and a Seraglio in it, where there is a large and beautiful Mosque. The City of *Fez* was founded by *Muley Drice*, the first King of the *Arabians* who commanded here. He is honour'd as a Saint, because he obliged the *Jews*, whom he planted here, to turn *Turks*, and no *Jew* or Christian dare pass the Street of his Palace. His Tomb is in the Mountains of *Zarhon*, and both that and his Palace serve as Sanctuaries to all that fly from the King's Anger, or from Justice. *M. de St. Olon* says, That *Fez* is the fairest, richest, and most trading Town in the whole Empire, and contains above 300000 Souls: That the old City is inhabited by Whites, and the new by Blacks. He confirms *Dapper's* Account, and adds, That 'tis the general Magazine of all *Barbary*, where live the best Merchants, and the greatest Number of *Jews*, who amount to above 5000, buy all Goods from *Europe* and the *Levant*, and send them to the Provinces in Exchange for their Product, with which they trade among the Maritime Towns. He says, they make the finest red Marroquins here in all *Barbary*. The *Spaniards* import *Cocheneal* and *Vermillion*; *England*, Cloths; and *Guinea* Cowries, which go in this Country for Money: *Holland*, Cloths, Silks, Spices of all Sorts, Iron Wire, Brass, Steel, Benjamin, Storax, Cinoper, small Looking-glasses, Muslins for Turbans, Arms, and other warlike Ammunition: *Italy*, Allom, Gun-powder, and a great

Number of Earthen Ware, Toys which are made at *Venice* and the *Levant*, Silk, Cotton, Orpiment, Quicksilver, Reagal, and Opium. *France* imports from *Provence* and *Languedoc* Tartar and Paper, of which there's a great Consumption in *Barbary*; Caps of red Wool, the Cloths of *Nismes* and *Montpellier*, Fustians, Combs, Silks, the Cloths of *Lyons*, Gold Wire, Brocards, Damasks, Velvets, Cottons, coarse thick Callicoes, and other cheap Commodities of the *Levant*, but such as yield a good Price here. The Trade of *Roan*, *St. Malo*, and other Towns of the West, is chiefly in Linen Cloth, of which they transport and sell every Year in *Africa* to the Value of 200000 Livres. They receive in Exchange for all those Goods, Wax, Skins, Wool, Ostrich Feathers, Copper, Dates, Almonds, Arquifou, (a Stone us'd in Terras Work) and Gold Ducats, which serve the *Provence* Merchants for their Trade to the *Levant*. The Jews and Christians here manage all the Foreign, and most of the Home Trade. *Cadix* was before this War the grand Staple for all the Merchandize of *England* and *Holland*, to which they safely transported their Lading from hence on *Portuguese* Ships. *Roberts* in his *Map of Commerce* says, they also export Figs, Raisins, Olives, Honey, Gold, Corn, Horses, with Silk, Stuffs, Sattins, Taffata's, which are the Manufactures of this Country, besides some Sorts of Linen much used here made of Cotton and Flax. He says, the famous Temple above-mentioned is a Mile round, *Heylin* a Mile and a half; that it contains 17 Arches in Breadth, and 120 in Length, is supported by 2500 white Marble Pillars; and that under the chief Arch, where the Tribunal is kept, hangs a prodigious Lamp of Silver, encompassed with 110 lesser ones, in each of which are 150 Lights, They say, they were made of the Bells which the *Arabians* brought from *Spain*. The Roof is 150 Yards long, and 80 broad, and round it are several Porches 40 Yards long and 30 broad, under which are the publick Storehouses, and the Walls are thick set with divers Sorts of Pulpits. The Merchants Exchange above-mentioned is guarded every Night at the Charge of the City. The chief of their Colleges, says our Author, is that called *Madorac*, which is reckon'd the nicest Piece of Work in all

Barbary. There's a fine Marble Fountain in it, with a large Cistern, and a Stream that runs into it thro' a Channel of Marble and *Majorca* Stone. It has 3 very fine Cloysters, supported with 8 square Pillars of several Colours. There's a Pulpit with 9 Steps of Ivory and Ebony. The Roof of the College is curiously carv'd, and the Arches of Mosaick, Gold and Azure: The Gates are of polish'd Brass curiously grav'd, and the Doors of the Chambers are of Wood finely inlaid and carv'd. 'Tis said to have been founded by King *Abuchenen*, about the Time that *Henry VII.* built that noble Chappel in *Westminster* Abbey, and that it cost 480000 Gold Sultanies, which our Author computes at 192000 *l.* Sterling, and *Heylin* at 380000 Crowns. There are 3 cover'd Walks near it, with square Piazza's overlaid with Gold, Azure, and other Colours, and in some Places are Verses in great Black Letters, shewing the Antiquity of the College, and the Merit of its Founder. *Heylin* gives it as the Opinion of some learned Men, that the River which runs thro' this City was anciently called *Phuth*, from *Phut* the first Planter of the *African* Nations. *Leo* says, That in *A. D.* 786, *Idris* the Father built a Town upon the E. Side of the River that might contain 3000 Families, and that after his Death his Son built another on the W. Side over against it; but about 180 Years after that, a Civil War broke out between the two Towns, that lasted 100 Years, at the End of which *Joseph* King of *Morocco* slew the two Princes, and 30000 of the Inhabitants, demolished the Walls, and united both Towns into one by a Bridge.

Leo gives the following Account of the State of the Town in 1526, when he wrote. Each Temple, he says, has a Steeple, where a Man calls the People to Prayers, and that those who call in the Day-time have no Profit besides an Exemption from Taxes; but they who call in the Night receive Wages from the Priest, as well as the Door-keepers; for the Priest of the Temple, who is always but one, receives all the Revenues, and defrays the occasional Charges of Lamps and Servants. In the great Temple there are some Brass Candlesticks that have Sockets for 1500 Candles, and the People are instructed in Moral Philosophy as well as *Mohomet's*

homot's Law. The Winter Lectures begin soon after Sun-rise, and last an Hour. The Summer ones continue from Sun-set till within an Hour and an half of Night. The most eminent Doctors only read in Winter; but in Summer private Persons do it. They have all Yearly Salaries. The Priest only reads Prayers, and distributes Corn and Money to the Poor on Festival Days. The Treasurer of this Church has a Ducat *per* Day, and 8 Clerks under him, who are allow'd each 6 Ducats *per* Month. There are 6 other Clerks that receive the Rents of the Houses, Shops, &c. belonging to the Temple, and have the 20th Part of what they collect, besides 20 Bailiffs, who oversee the manuring of the Grounds, and managing the Kilns of Lime and Brick, &c. belonging to the Temples without the City Walls, who have 3 Ducats *per* Month. The Surplusage of the Revenues of this Temple is employ'd in the Maintenance of the others that want Livings, and promoting the Good of the Commonwealth. But our Author observes, that in his Time the King borrow'd a vast Sum from this Temple, and never repaid it. Formerly the Students at the Colleges had Diet and Cloth for 7 Years; but in our Author's Time they had nothing *Gratis* besides their Chambers, because the War of *Sahid* destroy'd many Professions by which Learning was encourag'd; so that now (says he) the only Students are Strangers, and such as live upon the Charity of the City. To this Suppression of Learning, our Author ascribes the irregular Government of this and all other Cities of *Africa*. When the Professors go to read, one of the Audience preaches upon a Text, and sometimes the Students dispute before the Professors. There's one Hospital, where sick Strangers have their Diet, and Women to attend them, but no Physician or Medicines; and one Apartment of it is allotted for Madmen. Their Baths are all of one Form, but differ in Size. There are two Baths, each of which has 4 Halls, with Galleries without, rais'd 4 or 5 Steps higher, where the People strip themselves. When a Person bathes, he goes first thro' a cool Hall, where the Water is luke-warm; then thro' a hotter Room, where he is cleansed and washed; and lastly, into a hot House, where he sweats as long as he pleases. The

Fire that heats it is made only of the Dung of Beasts dry'd in the Sun. The Women's Baths are separate from the Men's; and if they use the same Bath, 'tis at different Hours; for while Women are bathing, a Rope is hung without the outer Door, to signify that no Man must enter; nor can the Husband be admitted to his Wife. When Men enter, they cover their Privities with a Linen Cloth. Before any one bathes, he is laid on the Ground, (or a Carpet for the richer Sort) anointed with a certain Ointment, and his Body scraped with Instruments made for the Purpose. After Bathing, the Men and Women divert themselves together with Musick, Singing, and Feasting. The Baths belong to the Temples and Colleges, and raise some 100, some 150 Ducats a Year. The Servants and Officers who attend them march out of Town on a certain Festival-Day with Trumpets and Pipes to gather a wild Onion, which they put into a Brass Vessel cover'd with a Linen Cloth dipped in Lee, and so carry it to the Hot House, where they hang up the Vessel over the Door to bring good Luck to the Bath. Our Author thinks it the Remains of some ancient Sacrifice among the unciviliz'd *Moors*. Every Inn in the City has a Fountain, Water-Pipes, and Sinks to carry off the Filth; but Travellers can have no Beds in them except a coarse Blanket or a Mat, nor no Victuals unless they buy it themselves at Market. Poor Citizens Widows are maintain'd here by Charity, and perform the Office of Cook and Chamberlain. The Innkeepers are all of one Family, call'd *Elchera*. They shave their Beards, and imitate the Habit, Speech and Actions, of Women. Every one has a Concubine, whom he entertains as his lawful Wife; but they are ugly, and so notoriously lewd, that none but such either frequent the Inns, or keep Company with the Innkeepers; for they buy and sell Wine openly, and are therefore prohibited to enter any Temple, Exchange, and Bath. There are some Thousands of Mills here, which all belong to the Temples or Colleges, and every Mill stands in a large Room upon a strong Post. Most of their Taverns are in the Herb Market, because the People love to drink their Wine under the Boughs. Their Milk-Men and Maids sell 25 Tun of Milk

Milk a Day. The Porters are a Corporation, and maintain their own Widows and Orphans. They have a Governor, who parcels out some set Business to them every Week, and at the Week's End they share the Profit. The Gardiners here sell 500 Sacks of Pease and Turnips in a Day; but every one cannot buy those of the Country People, there being a particular Number qualified for that Office, who pay Toll and Tribute to the Custom-house Officers. On the N. Side of the great Temple they sell Fritters and Cakes made with Oil, to the Value of above 200 Ducats a Day, whence 'tis called, *The Place of Smoak*. There they also sell bak'd Flesh, fry'd Fish, and a sort of Bread bak'd with Honey. They bake their Flesh in an Oven, with another underneath it, where the Fire lies, so that the upper Oven is free from Smoak and excessive Heat. They kill no Beasts within the Shambles, but in a Place for the Purpose near the River; nor can they bring their Flesh from thence to the Market till the Governor sees it, and sets down the Price of each Joint in a Piece of Paper, which the Butcher is obliged to produce to his Customers, and to demand no more. There's a Market for coarse Cloth, where 60 Cryers carry it about, and tell the Price of it as 'tis settled by the Custom-house Officers, who receive Custom for it. There's another for Coops and Cages, for every Citizen brings up a great many Hens and Capons, which are always penned up in Coops, to prevent the fouling of their Houses. There are 150 Taylors Shops on the W. Side of the Temple, besides others. Two of the Parts or Wards of the Exchange are allotted to such Shoemakers as serve only Noblemen and Gentlemen, and two to the Mercers and Haberdashers of Small Wares. The other Parts are taken up by those who sell *European* Woollen or Linen Cloth, Silk, Stuffs, Caps, Mats, Cushions, &c. and especially by those who sell Smocks, &c. for the Women, and are reckon'd the richest Merchants in all *Fex*. On the N. Side of the Exchange is a Place for the Grocers and Apothecaries, fortified on both Sides with two strong Gates, and guarded in the Night by arm'd Watchmen with Lanterns and Mastives. None but the Physicians (whose Houses join to the Apothecaries) make Syrrups,

Ointments, or Electuaries; but few People mind either the Physician or his Medicines. They make Cork Slippers here for the great Men to walk abroad in when 'tis foul Weather, which have very fine upper Leathers, are trimmed with Silk, and cost from one to 25 Ducats a Pair. Their finest Slippers are made of the black and white Mulberry Tree, of the black Walnut, and of the Jujuba Tree; but the Cork ones last longest. There are 10 Shops here of *Spanish* Moors, who make Cross-Bows, and others that make Brooms of a certain wild Palm Tree, which they carry about the Streets, and exchange for Bran, Ashes, and old Shoes. The Bran they sell again to the Shepherds, the Ashes to the Blechers of Thread, and the old Shoes to the Coblers. There's an Officer to try all the Corn Measures, who receives a Farthing for each. There are others who make certain Withs, which they put upon their Horses Feet. The Dyers live by the River Side, where they have each a clear Cistern or Fountain to wash their Silks in. The East Part of *Fex*, tho' it contains noble Palaces, Temples, Colleges, and Houses, has not so many nor so good Shops and Tradesmen as the West. There were 520 handsome Weavers Houses here, which yielded great Rents; and 'tis said, there are 20000 Weavers, and as many Millers in it, besides a great many Houses for the sawing of Wood, in which the Christian Captives are employ'd, and their Earnings return'd to their Owners. Our Author observes, that these Slaves have no Days of Rest but *Fridays*, and 8 Days of the Year on which the *Moors* solemnize their Festivals. In the E. Part there are several publick Bawdy-houses countenanc'd by the great Men, and sometimes by the Governors, and great Taverns where Whores are kept for Pleasure. The Fountain Water is better than that of the River, for often in Summer the River Cisterns are dry; and when the Conduits are cleans'd, the River Water must of Necessity be turned off. Besides, 'tis cooler and pleasanter in the Summer, tho' in the Spring 'tis quite otherwise. These Fountains come for most Part from the W. and S. The N. Part is mountainous, and full of Marble Rocks, in which are Caves where Corn may be kept for many Years, some of them being so large as to

contain 200 Bushels, and the Proprietor lets them out by the Year at One *per Cent.* for the Corn. The S. Part of *Fez* is not half inhabited; but its Gardens, which have each a House and Fountain, abound with Fruits and Flowers of all Sorts, and the Noblemen chuse to live here from *April* to *September*. The Castle where the Governor resides, on the W. Side towards the King's Palace, was built by a King of the *Luntune's* Family. There's a Prison in it for Captives, supported by many Pillars, with a Room large enough to hold 3000 Men; for in *Fez* one Prison serves for all, without Division of Rooms.

Our Author comes next to give an Account of the Government, Constitution, and Customs, of this great City. The Governor is Judge in all Matters, and pronounces the Sentence by Word of Mouth, for he has no Clerk. Besides him, there's a Judge of the Canon Law, who adjusts what relates to the *Mahometan* Religion. There's a third who gives Sentence upon Marriage and Divorce, and from these there lies an Appeal to the High Advocate. They punish Criminals thus: After they have received 100 or 200 Stripes before the Governor, the Executioner puts an Iron Chain about their Necks, and leads them stark naked (except their Privities) thro' all Parts of the City, from Midnight till two a Clock in the Morning, and a Serjeant follows the Executioner proclaiming their Crimes. Then they put on their Clothes, and bring them back to Prison. The Governor receives a certain Duty upon the first Imprisonment of every Criminal, and a Ducat and a half upon his Condemnation. He has several Possessions besides, one of which yields him 7000 Ducats a Year; upon which Account he is obliged to maintain 300 Horse for the King. The Judges and Barristers of the Canon-Law are prohibited by the Law of *Mahomet* to take any Fee, or to earn any Money otherwise than by their Priesthood, and reading of Lectures. A great many of their Advocates and Proctors are dull and illiterate. There are but 4 Serjeants who lead the Criminals about the City, and have no other Salary but a Fee from the Malefactor in Proportion to the Crime, only they are allowed to sell Wine, and keep Whores. The Customs and Taxes of the

City are collected only by one Man, who pays the King 30 Ducats a Day, employs Persons to watch at every Gate, and sometimes to go out and meet the Carriers, so that nothing can pass without paying the Custom; and if any Goods be run, the Owner pays double. The general Proportion is 2 *per Cent.* of the intrinsic Value; but Onyx Stones, which are brought hither in great Quantities, pay a 4th Part, and Wood, Corn, Oxen, and Hens, pay nothing. The same Collector is also Governor of the Shambles, and if he finds any Bread short of Weight, he causes the Baker to be soundly drubbed, and led in Scorn up and down the City.

Leo says, the Citizens of *Fez* wear over their Shirts narrow half-sleeved Jackets, and over these a wide Garment close before, which in the Spring is commonly made of Outlandish Cloth. They have thin Turbans like Nightcaps, which do not come over their Ears, and are cover'd with a Scarf, which is twice wreath'd about, and hangs down in a Knot. They wear no Stockings or Breeches; but in Winter, when they ride abroad, they put on Boots. The Doctors and ancient Gentlemen wear a Garment with wide Sleeves like the *Venetians*; but the ordinary People wear only a Cassock and Cloak with a single Cap, and are generally clad in coarse white Cloth. The Women have nothing but their Smocks in Summer; but in Winter they wear a wide Garment like the Men's. When they go abroad, they put on long Drawers that cover their Legs, and a Veil that hides their whole Body. Their Faces are mask'd, their Ears adorn'd with Gold Rings and Precious Jewels, and their Arms and Legs with Bracelets and Rings of Gold or Silver, according to their Quality; and those who affect to seem handsome, wear embroider'd Slippers. The *Arabs* about *Fez* wear a Piece of coarse Camlet two or three times round their Bodies, with a red Cap. Some go quite naked, except something about their Middle, which reaches as low as their Knees. Their Leaders are habited after the *Turkish* Fashion, and wear a Turban like theirs, only 'tis small and peaked. The Kings of *Fez* wear no Scepter or Crown, no more than the other *Mahometan* Princes, and the only Marks of their Royalty are a Throne cover'd

cover'd with Cloth of Gold, and a Cushion adorn'd with Pearls and precious Stones. When he is on his Death-Bed, he summons his Grandees, and makes them swear to elect his Son, Brother, or whomsoever he appoints, for his Successor; but they often chuse another. *Fez* is inhabited by *Turks*, *Tartars*, *Persians*, *French*, *English*, *Dutch*, *Grecians*, and People of almost all Nations, who have each their Consul here, to look after their Trade and Privileges. 'Tis said, there are 3000 noble Families here, of whom they reckon Three Sorts, *viz.* some who are so by Extraction, others by Vertue of their Offices, and others by their Wealth; but they all enjoy the same Privileges and Marks of Dignity, which consist in a particular Kind of Mules. They are obliged to do the King some Service, and to follow him to the Wars. The *Jews* (of whom 'tis said there are no less than 800000 through the whole Province) have their Quarter in the new City, and most of them are Goldsmiths, with whom the *Moors* are forbid by the Law of *Mahomet* to have any Concern. Those Goldsmiths have also a Consul, who looks after the Mint, for no Body has a Permission to coin Money in *Old Fez*, and none but the *Jews* can do it in the *New*. *Leo* says, these *Jews* have one Third of the new City, and carry their Plate to *Old Fez*, where they sell it at a higher Rate than the Weight, which is a Privilege the *Mahometans* must not use, because 'tis Usury. He tells us, That these *Jews* dwelt once in *Old Fez*, but being all robb'd by the *Moors* on the Death of one of their Kings, King *Abusaid* order'd them to remove to *New Fez*, and doubled their yearly Taxes. In our Author's Time they had a long Street in the new City, with many Shops and Synagogues, their Number being wonderfully encreas'd since they were expell'd *Spain*. In that Street, says he, the Kings us'd formerly to lodge their Guards; but now they have none. He adds, That these *Jews* are despis'd by all the rest of the Inhabitants, and are not allow'd to wear Shoes, but only a Sort of Sea-Rushes. They have black Turbans; but if they use a Cap, they must tack a Piece of red Cloth to it. They pay the Kings of *Fez* 400 Ducats per Month.

As for the Diet of *Fez*, 'tis for the most part the same as in other Places of *Barbary*.

Leo says, the Gentlemen have fresh Meat every Day, and the common People twice a Week. They eat three Meals a Day. In Summer they breakfast upon Fruit and Bread, and boil'd Pap like *Furmety*; but in Winter upon the Broth of Salt Flesh, thicken'd with a little Meal, which they sip very hot. In Winter they dine commonly upon Meat, Salads, Cheefe, Olives, and thick Milk; but in Summer they have better Cheer. Then they sup upon Bread, Melons, Grapes, and other Fruits; but in the Winter upon boil'd Meat, with their *Cuscoo*, and sometimes roast. They sit upon the Ground, at a low, uncover'd, nasty Table, and use neither Knives nor Spoons, but tear their Food in Pieces with their Fingers, tho' the *Cuscoo* is serv'd up all in one Dish. They seldom drink till their Guts are full, and then they swill down a whole Bowl full of Water. But our Author notes, That the Doctors are not quite so brutish at their Meals. We refer for the rest of their Diet to the Account given of it by Mr. *Jones*, the same that we have publish'd in Page 153. of this Volume.

When they marry, the Bride and Bridegroom go with their Friends and Two Notaries to Church, where the Dowry and Contracts are made appear before all present. Then the Bridegroom entertains the Guests with a noble Feast of Fritters, *i. e.* Bread fry'd with Butter, and temper'd with Honey, or else of Roastmeat; after which the Bride's Father makes the like Treat. Then for the Dowry, the Father generally gives the Bride 30 Ducats, a Woman Slave of 50 Ducats Price, a party-colour'd Garment embroider'd with Silk, some Silk Scarfs or Jags to wear on her Head instead of a Hood, a Pair of fine Shoes, two Pair of fine Startups, with Combs, Perfuming-Pans, Bellows, and a great many other Trinkets made of Silver and other Metals. Though the Father rarely promises above 30 Ducats for the Dowry, yet they sometimes give to the Value of 2 or 300 in Cloth and other Ornaments; for Houses and Lands are seldom disposed of this Way. The Father also bestows on the Bride three Gowns of fine Cloth, three of Silk or Camlet, or other valuable Stuff, with fine wrought Smocks, Veils, and other embroider'd Garments, besides fine Pillows and

and Cushions, 4 Carpets to spread upon the Presses and Cupboards, two coarse ones for Beds, and two of Leather to lay on the Floor of the Bed-Chambers, some Rugs 20 Ells long, 3 Quilts stuff'd with Flocks, about 10 Ells long, 8 Silk Coverlets, embroider'd on the upper Side, and lin'd underneath with Linen and Cotton, and some Woollen Hangings, with Pieces of gilt Leather, and Jags of party-colour'd Silk sew'd upon them, and a Silk Button on every Jag to fasten the Hangings to the Wall. In short, says our Author, they ruine themselves by striving who shall make the best Presents to their Daughters. When the Bridegroom brings home his Bride, she is carried by Porters in a large wooden Cage cover'd with Silk, the Bridegroom's Relations going before with Torches, and those of the Bride following her with Trumpets, Pipes, Drums, and a great Number of Torches: And when they have made a Procession through the Market-place, and pass'd the Great Temple, the Bridegroom turns off, and goes home, where the Bride's Relations upon her Arrival conduct her to the Bridegroom's Chamber-Door, and deliver her to his Mother. As soon as she enters the Bed-Chamber, the Bridegroom toucheth her Foot with his, and then they Bed together. In the mean time a Woman stands at the Chamber-Door, to whom the Bridegroom reaches a Cloth stain'd with the Marks of the Bride's Virginity, which is shewn to all the Company; after which the Bride and her Companions are honourably entertain'd, first by the Bridegroom's Parents, and then by the Bride's. But if no Marks of Virginity appear, the Bride is turn'd home, and the Marriage declar'd null. About the 7th Day after Marriage the Bridegroom goes abroad, and buys a great many Fishes, which some Woman superstitiously casts upon his Wife's Feet. The Morning after the Bride goes home, the Women dress and comb her, and paint her Cheeks with Vermillion, and her Feet with a black Dye. Then they have another Feast, at which the Bride is seated on a high Place in View of the Company. The preceding Night is spent in Dancing, at which the Women assist one by one. At the End of every Dance they reward the Musicians; and if any one means to honour the Dan-

cer, he bids him kneel down, and lays Pieces of Money on his Head, which the Musicians take off. There are also Minstrels and Singers; but if the Bride was a Widow, the Ceremony is not near so great. They may marry 4 Wives, and keep as many other Women as they please.

Leo says, they also make solemn Feasts at the Circumcision of their Male Children, which is on the 7th Day after their Birth, when every one gives a Present to the Circumciser, by laying Money on a Lad's Head that comes along with him; after which the Youth thanks every one by Name, and the Day is spent with extraordinary Mirth: But 'tis less at the Birth of a Daughter. Our Author observes, that the People of this Country on their Festival-Days use a great many Ceremonies, instituted by the Christians, without knowing their Meaning. On *Christmas* Day they eat a Sallad, and at Night all Sorts of boil'd Pulse. On New-Year's-Day the Children sing at Gentlemens Doors in Masks, and are rewarded with Fruit. And on *St. John the Baptist's* Day they make Bonfires. When the Children's Teeth begin to grow, they have a Feast call'd by the *Latins Dentilla*. They have also their Rites of Divination and Southsaying, which seem to be borrow'd from the Christians.

When a Person dies, the Female Relations put on Sackcloth, cover their Faces with Dirt; and being join'd by some Men dress'd in Womens Apparel, they beat a four-square Sort of Drums, sing Funeral-Songs in Praise of the Deceas'd, and give a Scream at the End of every Verse, tear their Hair, and beat their Cheeks and Breasts till they are all over Gore. This is us'd most among the common People, and continues 7 Days, at the End of which they cease Mourning for 40 Days, and then renew it for 3 more. In the mean time, if the Deceased has left a Widow, her Friends come to comfort her, and send her Dishes of Meat, because they dress none in the House till the Corps is carried off. The Woman her self that loseth Husband, Father or Mother, does not attend the Funeral. They always bury in new Ground, lest at the Resurrection they should be at a Loss to distinguish their own Members.

Their usual Game is Chess, which they have had Time out of Mind. They have very good Poems in their own Language, most of which treat of Love. Their Poets write Verses upon *Mahomet* every Year, especially on his Birth-Day, when they recite their Verses early in the Morning before a numerous Audience, and he that does best is proclaimed Prince of the Poets for that Year. The *Marin* Kings us'd also to regale all the Learned Men of the City, and hear their Verses, for which they rewarded the Poets with 50 Ducats each; but to the best they gave 100 Ducats, a fine Horse, a Woman Slave, and the Robes that were then upon the King's Back: But that Custom fell together with the Splendor of the *Fezzan* Kingdom.

Leo says, That in their Schools, besides the *Alcoran*, they teach Orthography and Grammar; but he observes that this is better taught in their Colleges. When a Boy has perfectly learn'd the whole *Alcoran*, which they usually compass in 7 Years Time, his Father invites his Schoolfellows to a Treat, and his Son rides through the Streets to a Banqueting-House in rich Clothes upon a fine Horse, accompanied by the rest of the Lads on Horseback, who sing to the Praise of God and *Mahomet*. The Governor of the Royal Citadel is obliged to lend his Father the Horse and Apparel. The Father's Relations are all at the Feast, and every one makes a small Present to the Schoolmaster; but the Father gives him a new Suit of Clothes, (because they have mean Salaries;) and when the Children have learn'd only Part of the *Alcoran*, the Fathers reward the Masters according to their Quality. The Boys celebrate another Feast upon *Mahomet's* Birth-day, when every one brings a Wax Torch to School, provided by his Parents, some of which weigh 30 Pounds, are lighted betimes in the Morning, and burn till Sun-Rising, during which they sing to the Praise of *Mahomet*, and then the Solemnity ends. The Masters often sell the remaining Wax of the Torches for 100 Ducats or more. Both the Schools and Colleges have two Holidays every Week; and the Masters pay no Rent for their Schools, because they were erected for that Use long ago.

They have a great many Fortune-Tellers and Diviners, who are of three Sorts: The first Sort cast Figures upon the Ground; the second pour a Drop of Oil into a Glass of clear Water, in which they pretend to see Legions of Devils travelling, fighting, &c. and to receive Responses from them by a Nod of their Heads, or some Motion of their Hands and Eyes. Many of the Citizens, says *Leo*, are so bewitch'd with these Vanities, that they spend great Sums of Money upon them. The third Sort are Witches, who pretend they converse with red, white, and black Devils; and when they tell Fortunes, they perfume themselves, saying they are possessed with the Devil they call'd for; after which they counterfeit the Devil's Voice. These the wiser Sort of People call *Sahacat*, i. e. *Sodomites*; for they make it their Business to inveigle handsome Women, and perswade them to unnatural Venery with one another, on Pretence of obeying the Devil. And some Women, says our Author, are so taken with this abominable Vice, that they feign themselves sick, and send for their Husbands to hear their Fortunes read, when the Witches sometimes perswade the Man, that his Wife is possessed with a Devil, and cannot be cured without entering into their Society: Upon which the foolish Husband makes a solemn Feast for the Crew, and commits his Wife to their brutish Management. But some Husbands are so wise, that *Leo* tells us they beat the Devil out of their Wives with a good Cudgel. There's a Sort of Conjurers here call'd *Mahazzaim*, who are said to cast out Devils with great Success, by repeating these Words: 'Tis an airy Spirit. They draw certain Characters upon a Heap of Ashes or Dust, make Marks on the Hands and Forehead of the Party possess'd, perfume him, enquire of the Devil how he enter'd him, what he is, and his Name, and then command him forth. There are others that work by a Cabalistical Rule call'd *Zairagiya*, which is thought to be natural Magick. They make many Circles within a great one, and drawing the Diameters of the first, mark down the Two Poles, and the East and West Quarters. In the first Circle they paint the Four Elements: Then they divide this and the second

second into 4 Parts, each of which they subdivide into 7, marked with *Arabick* Characters. In the 3d, they mark down the 7 Planets; in the 4th, the 12 Signs of the Zodiac; in the 5th, the 12 *Latin* Names of the Month; in the 6th, the 28 Houses of the Moon; in the 7th, the 365 Days of the Year; and about its Convexity, the 4 Cardinal Winds. Then they multiply one Letter of the Question propos'd by all the above-mentioned Particulars, and divide the Product, placing it in some Room or other, according to the Quality of the Character, and as the Elements require, wherein the said Character is found, without a Figure. Then they mark that Figure which seems to agree with the said Number or Product, and proceed with it like the former, till they have found 28 Characters, of which they make one Word, whereof the Solution of the Question is formed. 'Tis always turn'd into a Verse of the first Kind, which the *Arabians* call *Ethaul*, consisting of 8 Stipites and 12 Chords, according to their Metre. Our Author says, this Art of the *Cabbala* is infallible, and has the greatest Affinity with supernatural Knowledge. The *Cabbalists* are in great Esteem, and their Art is difficult to be learn'd. He says, he saw two Thirds of a Marble Court in one of the King's Colleges here, that was 50 Ells square, taken up with one of their Figures; and that he met with the like at *Tunis*, but never knew above three Professors of this wonderful Art, viz. one at *Tunis*, and two at *Fez*. He adds however, that he saw two Expositions of the Precepts of this Art, with a Commentary by one *Margian*, and *Ibnu Caldim* an Historian, which he says the Curious may see at *Tunis*. In the mean time, *Mahomet's* Law prohibits this and all other Divinations, and persecutes the *Cabbalists* with their Inquisition.

There are learned Men here who call themselves Wizards and Moral Philosophers, and are reverenc'd by the People like Gods, tho' they depart from *Mahomet's* Law in many Particulars. *Leo* says, this Sect sprang up about 80 Years after *Mahomet*. The Author of it gave his Followers certain Oral Precepts, but left no Writings behind him. About 100 Years after, a famous Doctor of this Sect left his Disciples whole Volumes of Writings; upon which the

Mahometan Patriarchs condemn'd his Followers. About 60 Years after this, a famous Professor who headed this Sect being condemned with his Followers to Death, obtained a free Conference with the *Mahometan* Doctors, upon Promise to suffer willingly if they convinced him of an Error, and put them all to Silence; upon which the Patriarch reversed the Sentence, and caused Colleges and Monasteries to be erected for him and his Sect: But 100 Years after they were persecuted by the Emperor *Mabrisah* of the *Turkish* Line, and forced to fly to *Cairo*, *Arabia*, &c. till his Grandson's Reign, when they were restored and reconciled with the Doctors of the *Alcoran*, on Condition that the latter should be called, *The Preservers of Mahomet's Law*, and the Sectaries its Reformers. This Union lasted till the 756th Year of the *Hegyra*, when they swarm'd over *Asia* and *Africa*, and strengthen'd their Party by admitting none into their Society except learned Men; but afterwards the Case alter'd, so that now they despise Learning, derive all Knowledge from Revelation; and tho' their Ancestors were strict Observers of the Law, give themselves up to Feasting, lascivious Songs, and all sensual Pleasures. They tear their Garments, pretending to be possessed with a Fit of Divine Love; but our Author ascribes that to their Gluttony, because every one of them devours more Meat at a time than will suffice three Men; and to their Luxury at Feasts, where, if they fall down drunk, their Disciples take them up, and ply them with lascivious Kisses. Hence the Hermits Feast became a Proverb here, denoting, *Those Masters who make their Disciples their Minions*.

Leo says, there are some *Mahometan* Sects who depart not only from the Law, but from the Creed of the other *Mahometans*, who brand them for Hereticks. Some assert, that a Man by good Works, Fasting, &c. may attain to the Nature of Angels, and purify himself beyond all Possibility of sinning; but they say, they must first run the Rounds of 50 Disciplines or Sciences, alledging, that God will not impute to them the Sins they commit before they arrive at the 50th Degree. This Sect at first fasted much, and did frequent Penance; but soon after they gave Way to Licentiousness.

They always repeat certain Verses at their Feasts, which are reckon'd the most refin'd Pieces that have appear'd in their Language these 300 Years. They take the Heavens, Stars, Elements, and Planets, to be one God, and allow every Man to worship what he pleases, pleading, that no Religion is erroneous. They alledge, that God made a certain Man call'd *Elcorb* equal to himself in Knowledge; and that when he dies, another is chose out of a Company of 40 Men, whom they call *Elanted*, i. e. the Stock of a Tree. There are 70 Electors, and 765 Candidates who are capable of being Electors upon a Vacancy among the latter. The Candidates are obliged to live *incognito*, so that they wander about in a beggarly Habit, and ravish Women in publick Places, at the same Time that the Spectators cry up their Holiness. Our Author says, that *Tunis* and *Egypt* is full of them, and that in *Cairo* he saw one of them ravish a handsome Woman in the Market-place as she was coming out of a Bath, when the Mob, possessed with the Notion of his Sanctity, and thinking that he only made a Shew of committing the Sin, crowded about the Woman to touch her Garment as an holy Thing, and even the Cuckold her Husband thanked the false God for his Adventure, in Feasting and Acts of Charity. Our Author observes, that the Magistrates dare not punish this Adulterer for fear of the Mob.

Leo says, there are other Sectaries here, who may be properly call'd Cabalists. They have strict Fasts, and at other Times abstain from Flesh of all Sorts. They have set Prayers for every Hour in 24, calculated according to the Variety of Days and Months, and these they must rehearse. They carry square Tables about them, engraven with Characters and Numbers, and pretend to converse with the Angels, from whom they say they derive all Knowledge. They have a Catalogue of 99 Virtues, which they say are contain'd in the Name of God. There's another Sect here who observes the Rule called *Suvach*, i. e. *The Rule of the Hermits*, and live upon no other Food but what they find in the Woods and Deserts. A certain Writer has reckon'd up 72 different *Mahometan* Sects, who *Dapper* says have all their Defenders in this City; but the two chief, says *Leo*, are the *Lejhari*, dispersed over all

Africa, *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Arabia*, and *Turkey*; and that of *Iniania*, which the Sophy of *Persia* has establish'd in his Country by Force of Arms.

Leo says, there are a Parcel of noisy nasty Alchemists that stink of Sulphur and other Steams, and dispute every Night at the great Temple. They have many learned Treatises on this Art, which are in great Esteem; but our Author says, their true Trade is Coining of Money, so that there are but few Alchemists here who have not had their Hands cut off for that Reason. There's another Sort of Rascals here call'd *Curmatori*, who sing comical Songs in the Streets, with Drums, Harps, and Citterns, and sell Charms to the People under the Notion of Preservatives. There are others also who carry about dancing Monkies, and have Snakes round their Necks and Arms. They pretend to tell Fortunes, and lead Stone-Horses about with 'em to leap Mares.

To return to our Account of the City; Leo says, the Gentlemen, Doctors and Judges, keep at a great Distance above the common Citizens. The Streets here are very dirty in the Winter, tho' their Conduits throw in abundance of Water to wash it off; and that where they have no Conduits, they carry it to the River in Carts. The chief Suburb in our Author's Time was that at the W. End, which contain'd almost 500 Families of poor Tradesmen, Labourers, Mountebanks, and Whores. Here are above 150 fine Marble Caves or Cellars, where the Noblemen us'd to lay up their Corn, the least of which will contain above 1000 Measures. They lie at present empty and open, and Walls are built before them to prevent the People's falling in. This Suburb was reckon'd the Sink of the City, because every one might sell Wine here or keep a Bawdy-house. After the 20th Hour, the Traders shut up their Shops and go to the Taverns. There was another Suburb in our Author's Time separate from this, where lived 200 Families of Lepers, under a Governor, who collects some Yearly Revenues from the Noblemen for their Use, so that they want for nothing. The Governor is obliged to purge the City of all leprous Persons, and shut them up here, and Lepers Children enjoy his Estate after Death; but if there be no Issue, Part goes to

to the Lepers common Stock, and Part to the Governor. Without the Walls are several Burial-places, where the common Graves have a long triangular Stone upon them; but those of the Nobility one at the Head, and another at the Feet, with Epitaphs. *Leo* observes, that there are few Gentlemen in that call'd the New City, and says, that the Inhabitants, who are Tradesmen, despise them so much, that they will not marry their Daughters to them.

We shall conclude our Description of *Fez* with the following Account from *Marmol*: He says, that the E. Part of the City is the same that *Ptolomy* call'd *Bulibilis*, in Long. 15. Lat. 33. 40. The whole City can raise 30000 Soldiers, among whom the *Moorish Spaniards* that retired from *Andalusia* and *Grenada* are much the bravest, for the rest mind nothing but their Ease and Pleasure. He notes one peculiar Privilege which was vouchsafed to this City by the first King of *Fez*, viz. That when the King is not able to keep the Field, they are not obliged to stand a Siege, but may prevent the Ruin of their Town by an early Surrender. For which Reason their Kings are always very strong in Horse, that they may be able to keep the Field on all Occasions. The best Inns are near the great Temple, in which are lodg'd the Christian Merchants and the honestest Sort of People; but the rest entertain, besides Whores, Boys, Robbers, Assassins, and all the Ruffians and Rakes of the City, for here they are free from Justice. The Innkeepers are call'd *Badis*, pay a Yearly Sum to the Governor for their Licence; and when the Army marches with the King or Prince, they must send some of their Number to attend the Officers of his Retinue, and dress their Meat. The King has half a Rial for every two Bushels of Corn ground in their Mills. That call'd *New Fez* might easily be taken, as our Author thinks, because it lies exposed to easy Attacks in several Places, and because it wants Ramparts and Platforms for the Artillery, with which and Ammunition 'twas well provided in our Author's Time, and constantly guarded by 2000 Musketers and 1500 Horse. At the West End of *Old Fez* there's a Suburb containing about 300 Families, whither Ruffians, &c. escape from Justice; for the Houses are

built upon the very Brink of the River, and as soon as an Officer appears, they cross over to a thick Wood on the other Side, where 'tis impossible to find them. He adds, that the Place where they bleech their Cloth is green all the Year round.

7. TEMESNA or TEMECENA.

'Tis the farthest Province of *Fez* to the S. W. The *Sansons* extend it from the Mountains of *Atlas*, Lat. 30. 45. to Cape *Sala*, Lat. 33. 10. 145 Miles in Length; and from Cape *Cacorum* or *Cocor*, Long. 11 $\frac{1}{2}$. to the Fountain of the River *Buragrag*, Long. 13. 50. about 120 in Breadth. They bound it with the Ocean on the W. and N. with *Fez* on the N. E. from which 'tis parted by the River *Buragrag*; *Chaus* and the Mountains of *Ziz* on the E. and S. E. and with *Tidles* and *Duccala* in *Morocco* on the S. and S. W. from which 'tis divided by the River *Ommirabi* and Mount *Atlas*. *Dapper* makes it but 17 Miles from E. to W. and but 13 broad from the Ocean to Mount *Atlas*. *Gramaye* says, it formerly contain'd 120 great Cities, 300 wall'd Towns, and a considerable Number of populous Villages, which are now quite ruin'd by the Wars. *Dapper* says, the Country is every where plain, fat and fruitful, and is washed with divers Rivers. 'Twas a separate Principality in the 323d Year of the Hegyra, when it was so populous and powerful, that its Inhabitants rais'd 50000 Men to dethrone *Joseph Aben Texissen*, Founder of *Morocco*, and the Branch of *Luntuna*; but at the Approach of the King's Army, they fled to *Fez*; upon which he destroyed the whole Province with Fire and Sword about the Year 450. At the same Time the People were massacred for 10 Months together in *Fez*, so that few of them remained, and their Province became a Receptacle for Wild Beasts; and tho' about 150 Years after King *Manfor* peopled it with the *Arabs*, they were expelled in 30 Years, and *Manfor* drove out of his Kingdom by the Tribe of *Luntuna*. *Dapper* adds, that after this the *Zeneti* and *Haori* were permitted to settle here by the Branch of the *Merines*, and multiply'd to that Degree, that in the Year 1500, they could raise 60000 Horse and 20000 Foot, and had 200 Forts under their Command, so that they

they did not fear the K. of *Fez*, and sometimes paid little or no Tribute at all. *Leo* says, 'tis 80 Miles from E. to W. 60 in Breadth, and was always esteem'd the best Province in the Kingdom. The *Sansons* say, That the *Portuguese* have made frequent Descents upon their Coast, and ruin'd the best Towns. They add, that 'tis the largest Province in all *Fez* next to *Chaus*. *Luyts* says, there are several Deserts here frequented by fierce Lions and Leopards, so that Travellers cannot pass but in Companies, and some are obliged to watch in the Night, lest they should attack them while asleep. Here are also some Tortoises. *Marmol* says, its present Inhabitants, the Posterity of the *Zeneti* and *Haora*, who were commonly called *Chavians*, live in Tents like the *Arabians*, but speak broken *Arabick*, tho' they are an *African* Nation. He says, they were formerly so powerful, that they could bring into the Field 50000 Horse, and 150000 Foot; but that their constant Wars with the Kings of *Fez* and *Morocco*, and with the *Portuguese*, together with a three Years Plague and Famine, have so reduced them, that now they are Vassals to the Xeriff, and cannot raise above 8000 Horse, and 50000 Foot. Their Cavalry (he says) is good, but their Infantry of little Service. He observes, these People are very uneasy, and take all Opportunities to revolt. Their Women are fair, and affect fine Apparel, Jewels, and Gold or Silver Trinkets, about their Ears, Necks or Arms. The Country would produce Plenty of Corn and Pasture, but the Inhabitants manure no more than what lies near their Dwellings. In their Fields there's an Herb call'd *Behima*, that fattens Horses and Cattle in 12 or 15 Days, but kills them after it shoots forth a bearded Ear; for which Reason they keep their Cattle from it in that Season. *Marmol* adds, that in the Winter the Inhabitants retire within the Walls of the ruin'd Towns.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Rabat* or *Rubut*. The *Sansons* place it in the N. Corner of the Province, at the Bottom of a Bay in the Ocean over against *Sala* in *Fez*, and near Cape *Sala*, Lat. 33. 8. Long. 12. 56. about 4 Miles N. W. from *Sella*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a great City, which some take for the *Oppium* of *Ptolemy*, and the Key of *Barbary*. It stands upon a Rock, and near the

Influx of the River *Buregreg* into the Ocean, where there's a Fort. The City contains a great many Mosques, Palaces, Hospitals, Colleges, Baths, Stews, and Shops; and without the Town, on the S. Side, there's a high Tower, where Ships may be seen at Sea. He adds, that within half a League of the Place are the Ruins of *Mencale*; and that the Soil about *Rabat*, *Zarfa*, *Anfa*, and *Manfor*, is cover'd with Fruit-Trees, and among the rest that called *Rabih*, which resembles Cherries, and tastes like Jujubes. There are also little wild Palm-Trees, which bear a Fruit as big as the Olives of *Spain*, and when green, tast like Cornil Berries. *Leo* says, King *Manfor* chose to build a Fort here, because it lying much nearer to *Spain* than *Morocco*, he could the better transport Forces thither. He built the Tower after the Model of that at *Morocco*, tho' far less, and us'd to remain here with his Troops from April to September. He made it one of the most considerable Places in *Barbary*, by giving Merchants and Tradesmen a Yearly Allowance in Proportion to their Business. The Sea-Water runs 10 Miles up the River, so that he built an Aqueduct as fine as those in the Neighbourhood of *Rome*, which brings Water from a Fountain 12 Miles from the Town; but 'twas ruin'd in the Wars between the *Marin* Family and *Manfor*'s Successors. The *Sansons* say, that it has been subject to the Incursions and Ravages of the *Portuguese*, and that now 'tis ruinous, and only inhabited by 500 Families and some Militia, because of their Neighbourhood. *Luyts* says, that some still reckon it the Capital of the Province; but *Heylin*, that most of the Ground within the Walls is turn'd into Meadows, Vineyards, and Gardens.

2. *Sella* or *Sala*. The *Sansons* place it 4 Miles S. E. of *Rabat*, and near the same River. *Dapper* says, 'twas built by the *Romans*, two Miles from the Ocean, and one from *Rabat*, and that King *Manfor* built a stately Mosque and Palace there, with a Marble Chappel full of Statues and Paintings in *Relievo*, and by his Order his Body was interred there after his Death, with several Epitaphs engrav'd on his Tomb; and it continu'd to be the Burial-place of his Descendants the Kings of the Branch of the *Merini*.

3. *Almansor*. The *Sansons* place it 23 M. almost S. W. of *Rabat*, on the N. Side of the River *Guirus* or *Guir*, near its Influx into the Ocean. *Dapper* says, 'twas built by King *Almansor* in a fine Plain two little Miles from the Ocean, and 20 from *Rabat* and *Anfa*. He adds, that 'tis only inhabited by a few *Arabs*. The *Sansons* say, 'twas ruin'd by the *Portuguese* in 1468.

4. *Anfa* or *Anasfe*. The *Sansons* place it at the Bottom of a Bay in the Ocean, 45 Miles almost S. W. of *Rabat*. *Dapper* says, 'twas built by the *Romans*, 20 Miles N. of Mount *Atlas*, 18 E. of *Azamore*, and 19 W. from *Rabat*, near a Fort built and garrison'd by the *Arabs*. It was adorn'd with stately Mosques and Palaces, with rich Shops and Warehouses; but 'twas spoil'd by the *Portuguese*, and has been ever since in Ruins. There are excellent Melons in the Neighbourhood, which are ripe by *April*, and carried to *Fez*, because the Fruits don't ripen there so soon. He adds, that the Inhabitants went very neat, were civil and wealthy, and trafficked much with the *English* and *Portuguese*; but their Piracies prov'd their Ruin, as well as that of *Almansor*. *Leo* says, 'twas the pleasantest Town in all *Africa*, and places it 60 Miles from *Atlas* and *Azamore*. There's a fertile Plain near it almost 80 Miles over. He adds, that 'twas noted anciently for many learned Men.

5. *Haimelchalla* or *Hamelchallu*, about 28 Miles S. of *Rabat*, and 30 N. E. of *Anfa*, according to the *Sansons*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a little populous Town in a Plain. The *Sansons* say, the adjacent Soil is interspersed with Woods and Plow'd Land, Fruit-Trees, Meadows and Pasture, and abounds with Tortoises.

6. *Nuchaila*. The *Sansons* place it on the *Guir*, almost 40 Miles S. E. from *Anfa*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a little ruinous Town in the Center of the Province. It lies in the Road from *Morocco* to *Rabat*, and the *Sansons* say, 'twas formerly rich and well built, but now noted only for the Tomb of one of their Morabouts. It has a large Territory, which *Heylin* says was so fruitful, that the Inhabitants would give a Camel's Load of Corn for a Pair of Shoes. He adds, that nothing remains but a Steeple, and a Piece of its Wall.

7. *Adendum*. The *Sansons* place it among

Mountains, above 100 Miles S. of *Rabat*, and 15 from *Haimelchalla*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a little Town, formerly call'd *Ecatb*, and lies 4 Miles from Mount *Atlas*, where there are Mines of Iron. *Heylin* places it on a small River call'd *Guirla*, and says, 'tis well walled, and defended on one Side by a Lake.

8. *Thagit* or *Thagia*. The *Sansons* place it above 30 Miles S. E. from the former, among Forrests. *Dapper* says, 'tis a little Town formerly call'd *Dagia*, near Mount *Atlas*, and 40 Miles from *Fez*, which the *Sansons* make 100, and *Leo* 120. 'Twas famous for one of their Saints, who pretended to work Miracles here, to restrain the Rage of the Lions; so that the People still come hither in great Numbers from *Fez* and other Parts in Pilgrimage after *Easter* is over. He adds, that the Soil bears little Corn, because of the Coldness of the Climate, but abounds with Honey. They have great Flocks of Goats, Lions, and Leopards. The Inhabitants are dull and brutish. *Heylin* places it on the River *Ommirabi*.

9. *Tegagit*. The *Sansons* place it on the River *Ommirabi*, 35 Miles S. W. from the former. *Dapper* says, it lies in the Road between *Tedla* and *Fez*, and that its Territory abound with small Cattle and Turtles. The *Sansons* say, it produces Store of Corn, and that the *Arabs* take Toll here. *Heylin* calls it *Teyeger*, and says, 'twas formerly of great Note, but only inhabited now by poor People and a few Smiths, compelled to live there for making Tools to manure the Land.

There are other ruinous Towns in this Province inhabited by the *Arabs*, which we pass over as not worth mentioning, and proceed to give an Account of the last Division of *Barbary*.

But before we conclude, we thought fit to observe from *M. St. Olon*, that the Inhabitants of *Fez* never repair their Roads, perform all their Journies on the Backs of Horses or Camels, and have no settled Posts or Carriers; but when they have Occasion, they send a Messenger for the Purpose, which costs them but little, because both the Men and Horses are hardy, and live cheap. He adds, that on the most urgent Occasions they use Dromedaries, because the latter are swifter than the Camels; for the

the People say, that as many Days as they sleep or are blind after the Birth, so many Leagues, multiply'd by 10, will they travel in a Day when grown up. Our Author says, he saw one at *Maquinez* which he was told had carried the King's Uncle 100 Leagues in one Day; and that they travel so swift, that the Rider must be ty'd to the Saddle, or else he cannot sit on their Backs, and must cover his Mouth for fear of being suffocated. He adds, that in his Time there were reckon'd 300000 *Arabians* in all *Fez* that paid Tribute. He pretends the *Moors* respect the *French* (his Countrymen) more than any other Christian Nation, and observes, that the *Jews* are so contemptibly treated here, that they are obliged to live in separate Quarters in all Towns, are employed about the vilest Drudgery for nothing but their Viſuals and Baſtinadoes, were ſubject to heavy Taxes and Reproaches, but durſt not defend themſelves againſt the leaſt Child that throws a Stone at them, nor go abroad alone without a Guard of *Moors*, for fear the *Arabs* and *Barbarians* ſhould cut their Throats.

M O R O C C O in General.

THE *Sanſons* ſay, 'tis the moſt W. Part of all *Barbary*, and extend it on the Ocean from Lat 28. to 32. and from Long. 8½. to 14½. almoſt 250 Miles from N. to S. and 360 from E. to W. and *Dapper* from Long. 6. 50. to 13. and from Lat. 28. 8. to 33. 63 *German* Miles from E. to W. and 72 from N. to S. He ſays, that according to the *Mahometan* Computation by Days Journeys, to each of which the *Spaniards* allow 10 of their Leagues, *Morocco* is 70 *Spaniſh* Leagues in Length from the River *Ommirabi*, which ſeparates it from the Kingdom of *Fez*, to Cape *Aguer* on the Frontiers of *Tarodant*, which *Diego Torres* excludes from *Morocco*, tho' 'tis Part of *Sus*, one of its Provinces. *Dapper* extends it 60 Leagues from *Mazagan* to *Dara*, and 50 from *Azamor* to Cape *Aguer*. *Morery's* Great Dictionary ſays, 'tis about 125 Leagues from Cape *Nom* to the Mountains which divide it from *Segelmefſe*, and almoſt as broad from the ſaid Cape to the Mouth of the River *Ommirabi*: *Dupleſſis* near 100 Leagues from N. E. to S. W.

and 58 or 60 from S. E. to N. W. The *Sanſons* bound it on the W. with the *Atlantic* Ocean; on the N. with the River *Ommirabi*, which parts it from *Temefna* and the Mountains of *Ziz*; on the E. with Mount *Atlas*, which parts it from *Segelmefſe*, *Tafilet*, and *Dara*; and on the S. with *Tefſet*, from which 'tis parted by the River of *Sus*. *Dapper* extends it from *Mefſa* and the Mouth of the River *Sus*, to the City of *Azamor* and the Mouth of the River *Ommirabi*, which parts it from *Fez*. He bounds it alſo on the W. and N. with the Ocean and the Gulph of *Teguas* or *Jumens*, i. e. *Mares*. *Heylin* ſays, 'tis bounded on the E. by the River *Malva*, which parts it from *Tremefen*, wherein he differs widely from our Maps, unleſs he would include all *Fez*.

Moſt modern Geographers divide it into the 7 Provinces of *Morocco Proper*, *Hea*, *Sus*, *Guzula*, *Duquella*, *Haſcora*, and *Tedlet*. The *Sanſons* ſay, the firſt 4 lie between the Rivers *Sus* and *Tenſiſt*, in the S. and W. Part of the Province, and the laſt three towards the N. and E. but that *Hea*, *Sus*, and *Duquella*, are the only Maritime Provinces. Yet *Baudrand* includes *Sus* in his Division of *Biledulgerid*, contrary to all our Maps.

The chief Rivers of this Country are, 1. *Sus*, which gives Name to the Province ſo called in the S. Part of *Morocco*. 'Tis ſuppoſed to be *Ptolomy's* *Una*, Long. 8. Lat. 28. 30. *Dapper* ſays, it riſes from Mount *Ilda*, Part of the Great *Atlas*, between this Province and *Hea*, and runs betwixt the Mountains from N. to S. thro' *Sus*; after which it turns W. over againſt *Tagavof*, and falls into the Ocean thro' the three little Towns call'd *Mefſa*. The *Sanſons* ſay, it overflows the Country, and makes it fruitful. *Marmol* tells us, the Inhabitants cut Trenches from it to water the Sugar-Cane Fields, and that in Winter 'tis ſcarce fordable, but ſo low in Summer, that one may paſs it on Foot.

2. *Tenſiſt* or *Tenſiſt*. *Dapper* ſays, it riſes from another Part of *Atlas*, near the Town of *Animmey* in *Morocco*, from whence it runs croſs the Plains into the Province of *Ducala*, where it falls into the Ocean near *Azoph* or *Saſi*. Some think this the *Fath* of *Ptolomy*, who calls its Mouth *Azama*, Long. 7. Lat. 32. It receives ſeveral Rivers during its Courſe, viz. the *Esiffemel*, which *Marmol*

Marmol says rises from Mount *Sicfiva* or *Hantela* above *Morocco*; the *Niftis* or *Hued Nefusa*, which rises from the same Mountain, and having water'd all the Country round it, glides thro' the Plains; *Agmet*, a very fine clear River, which rises from a Mountain of its own Name, and runs to *Morocco*, where it falls under Ground, and breaks out again a little farther; and the *Asifnual* or River of Noise, which rises from Mount *Sicfiva* above *Delgumuka*, and falls with a rapid Torrent into the Plains, where it forms a Whirlpool like that of *Tivoli* in *Italy*, serves as a Boundary to the Province of *Hea*, receives the River *Secfana*, and falls into this River above *Asoph*. *Marmol* says, the *Tenfist* is deep, but in the Summer fordable near *Morocco*, where there's a Stone Bridge of 15 great Arches, one of the stateliest Structures in *Africa*, built (as 'tis said) by *Jacob Almanfor*, King and Pontiff of *Morocco*. Three of the Arches were pull'd down by *Budobus*, the last King of the *Almohade* Family, to prevent *Jacob*, the first of the *Benemerini's*, from besieging *Morocco*, and were not rebuilt in our Author's Time. *Dapper* says, there are good Trouts in this River.

3. *Tecent*. *Marmol* tells us, they are two Rivers which spring from Mount *Gugedrine*, a Part of *Atlas*, and run thro' the Plains of *Esfura* or *Hascora* into the River *Huedala-Abid*. After the two Rivers join, they are called *Tevecin*, i. e. Limits. They draw Trenches from them, which make the adjacent Fields very fruitful.

4. *Haed la Abid*, or the River of Negroes. *Dapper* says, it rises from the Mountain *Animmey*, between *Ascora* and *Tedles*, a Mile from the Town of *Bzo*, runs thro' deep Valleys and desert Mountains, and after having received several other Rivers, falls into the River *Ommirabih*, near a great Road or Ditch, which the *Africans* call *Magerat Esfa*. *Marmol* says, that after it has passed the Valleys, it runs N. where its Channels are so low, that they give no Moisture to the adjacent Fields, but that 'tis very deep, especially in *May*, when the Snow melts on the Mountains.

5. *Habid*. *Dapper* says, it rises from the Mountain which *Sanutius* calls *Tevasons*, and that it runs between the Provinces of *Hascora* and *Duccala* into the *Tenfist*.

6. *Ommirabih*, *Ommirabili*, or *Una-Rabea*.

Dapper informs us, 'tis a great River, which rises from Mount *Magran* on the Confines of *Tedles* and *Fex*, runs into the Plains of *Adacsum*, and passes afterwards thro' narrow Valleys, where there's a very fine Bridge, built by *Abul-Hascen* or *Abuckasten*, the 4th King of the *Benemerini's*. Then it turns S. into the Plains between *Duccala* and *Temesue*, and receiving the River of *Negroes* and the *Darna*, (which rises from the Mountain *Magran*, and waters the Province of *Tedles*) it runs into the Ocean near *Azamora*. It has no Bridge over it, but the Inhabitants cross it upon Bundles of Reeds bound up with blown Balls of Leather. *Marmol* says, 'tis fordable in the Summer in such Places where it spreads out upon the Plains; and that it has such abundance of Shad-Fish, that they serve the City of *Morocco* and the adjacent Provinces, besides what is exported to *Andalusia* and *Portugal*. The Season for fishing them is commonly about the Middle of *May*. It turn'd to a great Account to the King of *Portugal* while he was Master of *Azamora*; but at present the Xeriff appropriates the Right of that Fishery to the Christian Merchants. *Ptolomy* calls this River *Rusibides*, or (as some think) *Cosa*, and places its Mouth Long. 6. 40. Lat. 32. 30. *Marmol* adds, that the Entry of it is so difficult, that it obliged the King of *Portugal* to abandon *Azamora*.

7. *Sicfiva*, *Suffua*, or *Seffava*. *Dapper* says, it comes from a Mountain of the same Name, runs between those of *Semode* and *Nefisa*, and falls near the City of *Elgumuka* into the River *Asifnual*.

8. *Tefethne*. *Dapper* informs us, it rises from Mount *Gabelelhadi*, runs into the Plains of *Hea*, and divides into two Branches, which fall into the Sea over against the Ill. of *Magadore*.

9. *Rio dos Savens* or *Savolos*, i. e. The River of Shads, because it abounds with that Sort of Fish. *Dapper* says, it rises from Mount *Gabelelhadi*, and runs thro' the Province of *Hea* into the Ocean near *Amama*.

10. *Teculath*. Some think it the *Diur* of *Ptolomy*. *Dapper* says, there's a Town of the same Name on the Banks, and that its Mouth is but 3 Miles from that of *Tenfist*, over against that of *Rio dos Savens*, between *Gox* and *Amama*.

11. *Imiffen*. *Dapper* informs us, it rises from Mount *Sicfiva*, and runs S. into the Sea near *Anfuler* and *Cape Non*.

Dapper tells us, that besides these Rivers, there are a great many Brooks and Canals, which water the Plains, and make them fruitful in all Necessaries for Life. They have abundance of Corn, Pulse, Vines which bear large Grapes, Apples, Pears, Olives, Dates, Figs, Peaches, Nuts, Sugar, Hemp, Flax, Honey, &c. with Mines of Gold, Silver, Copper, and Mountains of Marble. *Diego Torres* says, there are several Gold Mines in the Mountains called *Montes Claros*; but the Xeriff will not suffer them to be open'd. The Mountains and Plains are full of wild and tame Creatures, which we shall treat of in the particular Provinces. The Rivers in general abound with Ambergreece, Shads, Pikes, Eels, and several other Fish, and the Mouths of those Rivers with all Sorts of Salt-Fish. Some say, there's more Corn and Cattle here than in *Fez*, because the Soil is not so sandy; but *St. Olov* says the contrary, and that it abounds most with Camels, and has some Mines of Copper, with Plenty of Wax, Almonds, Woad, and Skins call'd *Maroquins*, of which they sell great Quantities to the Europeans. The *Sansons* say, that the Air of the Plains is much hotter than in *Europe*, and that of the Mountains more or less cold, in Proportion to their Height. The Shag or Fleece of their *Maroquins* or Goats-Skins is used in making of Hair-Camlets.

Dapper says, the Inhabitants are generally strong and well set, acute and lively, and that their Temper is mix'd with Choler and Melancholy. They follow Trade and Husbandry; and *Diego Torres* tells us, they addict themselves to War and the Sciences, and are very fond of Magick. Their Women keep always at home, where they spin, sew, and weave Tapestry, with Slaves of both Sexes to attend them. Their Manner of Eating is like those of *Fez*, and many times they wipe their Fingers in the Hair of their Slaves Heads; but Persons of the best Rank have Tapestry. They love Feasts and Carousals, and sometimes they dress 20 or 30 Sheep at a time. Their Drink is a certain Liquor made of Grapes, preserved

in Sugar, and steeped in Water, or rather Mead. Most of those who live near Mount *Alas* drink new Wine burnt, and imagine that they don't break the Law, because, properly speaking, it is not Wine. Some make a Drink of Honey and Dates; but those who abstain from all strong Liquors, drink the Milk of Goats and Camels. *St. Olov* says, they make their Cusk-foo into little Pellets, which they put into their Mouths by Handfuls, and throw back what drops upon their Beards, or is left in their Hands, into the Dish again. They never speak a Word during Meals. The better Sort have commonly Sallads with their Meats, in some Copper Basin or Earthen Porringer full of Frigacies, with Honey and Almonds, either roasted over the Fire or fry'd in Oil, or some Sweetmeats, without any Desert of Fruit; and after the Entertainment is ended, they wipe their Fingers upon the Brim of the Dish, or else lick them with their Tongue. Our Author says, contrary to *Dapper*, that neither they nor the King use Plate, it being forbid by their Law. They are often drunk with *Aquavitæ*, and the Liquors of *Provence*, such as Water of *Cette*, Cinnamon, *Ratafie*, and *Rosa-Solis*. They commonly eat their Meals in their Stables, and after they have done, visit their Wives and their Horses. They imitate those of *Fez* in the rest of their Diet, and Way of Cooking it.

Dapper says, they wear Shirts, Drawers, with under Stockings, Cassocks of Scarlet or Silk, which come down to their Knees, Hoods or Cowls of Silk or Cloth, and Scarlet Caps on their Heads, with Sandals or Slippers on their Feet. The Women wear wide Shirts, which reach as low as their Knees, and Silk Drawers, wide at Top, and strait at Bottom. In Summer they wear Caps of Silk, and in Winter others of Cloth. They have long embroider'd fring'd Gowns of Silk or Woollen, which are fasten'd before by a Buckle of Gold, Silver, or Copper, according to their Quality. They also wear Ornaments of Gold or Silver, full of Pearls and Precious Stones, Necklaces hung with *Spanish* Reals, and Bracelets about their Arms and Legs, which are called *Gugales*, made in Form of Rings or Fetters, which com-

commonly make Kibes in their Heels. *St. Olon* says, the Men's Shirts are short, with wide Sleeves, which sometimes are hanging down, but oftner thrown back over their Shoulders, especially in Summer, when they go with their Arms naked. They wear Linen Drawers under their Shirts, which reach to their Knees.

The Morabouts have certain Pieces upon their Slippers cut out like Flower-de-Luces, by which they are known from others. They tie their second Vest with a Silk Scarf, and 'tis button'd down to the Waist. They wear a Straw Hat when they travel. They have no Turbans, but plain Caps in the King's Presence. None wear green ones but the Cheriffs, or Posterity of *Mahomet*. Young Persons wear none at all, and go bare-headed till 20 Years of Age, unless they are marry'd, or that they or their Fathers have been at *Mecca*, in which Case they are permitted to wear a Cap at 14 Years of Age. The Alcalds are distinguish'd by Leather Girdles embroider'd with Gold, and by a Belt and Sabre. Over that they wear a Scarlet or Black Woollen Garment without a Cowl, and the King has the like Habit, but underneath he wears a Coat of Mail. The Blacks of his Guard are also clad in the same Manner with the Alcalds, but seldom with the Woollen Garment; yet they have generally Silk Stockings, wear Sabres; and when they are on Horseback, carry Lances or Guns. The Sleeves of the Women's Shifts come down to their Fists, where they are gather'd in, and they tie coarse Pieces of Muslin to them, which serve to the same Purpose as our Women's Sleeves, but they hang much lower. The Necks of them are pleated, and commonly embroider'd. Their Vest is open before down to their Waists, and their Drawers reach down to the Calves of their Legs. In their Houses they wear a very short Under-Petticoat. Their Head-Dress is like that of the *Spaniards*. They have two Tresses of Hair behind them, with some Plaits of Ribbons. They wear no Shoes or Slippers, but only Pumps of red or yellow Marroquin. For the rest, the Habit of both Sexes is much the same with those of *Fez*. *St. Olon* adds, that (like the other *Moors*) when they are catched in the Rain in the Fields, they strip them-

selves, and sit upon their Clothes, by which Means they put them on again dry when the Rain is over.

Dapper says, they speak the *Moorish*, *Arabick*, and *Gemick* Languages, the first being that of the old *Africans*, or rather a Mixture of several Languages with *Arabick*, which is very corrupt here, because of their Converse with Foreigners, and the last is a Compound of the *Spanish* and *Portuguese*. They have another Jargon call'd *Temeceta*, which cannot be expressed in Writing. 'Tis spoke by a certain white People that live N. of Mount *Atlas*, in the Way from *Morocco* to *Tarodant*, and boast of Christian Extraction.

Dapper says, the Bridegroom gives the Bride her Dowry, and the Fathers give nothing with their Daughters. When the Husband divorces the Wife, he is obliged to give her the promis'd Dowry, and cannot marry again within 4 Months after; but if the Woman leaves her Husband, she can demand nothing; and it often happens, says our Author, that the same Man gives the same Portion to several Wives, because they oblige them to demand a Divorce by Means of ill Treatment. They can marry no more than four lawful Wives; but they may take as many other Women as they can keep, and the King has a Right to chuse some of the latter, and give them to his Favourites. They can only cohabit with their Concubines and Slaves in the Day, but are obliged by Custom to lie all Night with one of their Wives. The King has commonly 4 Wives, besides a numerous Seraglio; and when he has a Mind to divert himself, he causes them to bath all naked before him, and then he chuses her whom he likes best. *Dapper* and *Diego Torres* say, the new-married Bride is carried on a Mule or Camel richly harness'd, in a round Pavilion cover'd with Turkey-wrought Tapestry or Taffaty, so that she can see, and not be seen. They also place a Flag upon the Pavilion, and thus lead her in Triumph thro' the Streets, followed by a great many other Mules, laden with the Presents which the Bridegroom makes to the Bride on the Day of Marriage: And after the Feast is over, if the Bridegroom be a Swordsman, he exercises with his Friends in Presence of the Bride. Their other

Marriage Ceremonies are much the same with those of *Fez*, only *Dapper* adds, that the Linen on which appear the Marks of the Bride's Virginity is brutishly carried thro' the Town in Triumph; and that the *Jews* here also observe the same Custom. *St. Olon* says, that the Bride's Veil is kept on, and the Bridegroom must not see any Part of her Body till she is owned a Virgin; which being done, he immediately pulls off her Veil, and unties her stain'd Drawers, which he throws among the Women, who sing and dance for Joy of her Chastity: But if she does not prove a Virgin, she is stripped of all her Wedding-Clothes, and, without the Bridegroom seeing her, sent out of his Chamber home to her Father, who has a Power by Law to strangle her. *St. Olon* adds, that fat big Women are most admired here, so that they affect loose Habits to become so, which make their Breasts sag to Excess; yet they all wear Scarves about their Bellies, and keep their Bodies very upright. They go bare-legged, paint their Cheeks and Lips with Vermillion, and nourish their Eyebrows with the Smoak of Nut-Galls. They paint their Feet and Hands with Yellow, and their Nails with Red; and in short, affect the same Ornaments as the Women of *Fez*. When they go abroad, they never speak to any Men they meet, tho' they be their Husbands; nor can the latter distinguish their Wives from other Women, as we formerly observ'd, because they are all veil'd alike. He adds, the Women are not jealous one of another, tho' several have but one Husband between them, with whom they live in common. No Man ever sees them in their Houses; and when the Husband has a Mind to regale his Friends, which is very rare, the Women get up a-top of the House, or into the upper Rooms, till the Company is gone; so that our Author observes, their Entertainments are but short, and not follow'd with Discourse and Diversion, as ours are in *Europe*. *Dapper* says, their Funeral Ceremonies are the same with those of other *Moors* and *Turks*.

He adds, that the Women lament the Deceased in their Church-yards every *Friday* and Festival-Day in a blue Habit, which is their Mourning Colour. When any Person dies, they pretend a great deal

of Sorrow, especially if it be a King, or a Person of the first Rank, and they hire Mourners, as they do in *Asia* and other Parts of *Africa*. They first wash the Corps, wrap it in a new Winding-Sheet, and then they carry it in a Bier, follow'd by a great Number of Persons, who march very fast, and call out aloud upon God and *Mahomet*. They bury it without their Towns in consecrated Ground in a Stone Tomb, wide at Bottom, but narrow and arch'd over at Top. They lay the Corps in one Side of the Tomb, and never put more than one in each, because they think they shall be readier at the Day of Judgment, and lose no Time in seeking their Bones. They also carry Provisions to the Sepulchres, and bury Money and Jewels with the Dead, that they mayn't want the same Commodities in the other World as they have in this.

Their King's Revenues are very great. *Bate-mus* says, all Persons of both Sexes above 12 or 15 years of Age pay four Fifths of a Ducat per Head, and as much for every Chimney. The K. has the Half of every Bushel of Pulse, the Tenth of Corn, and of all Cattle transported; and besides the Tenth of every decimate Portion, he has half a Real for every Sack of Meal that's ground. Besides these, there are several other Imposts, Customs, and Tolls, which the Princes fix at an excessive Price. The Christian Merchants also pay great Imposts both for the Merchandizes they bring hither, and for Leave to traffick. The King is so absolute a Master of the Goods of his Subjects, that when the Alcalds, *i. e.* Governors, or other Officers die, he seizes all their Estates; and if they leave any Sons able to bear Arms, he gives them their Fathers Posts; but if they are young, he brings them up till they are fit to serve in his Armies, and the Daughters till they are married. In like Manner, if he has a Mind to any rich Man's Estate, he gives him some Government, or other profitable Post, that he may seize his Possessions after his Death; so that the Wealthy conceal their Riches as much as they can, and keep away from Court. The King likewise receives the First Fruits of Corn and Cattle, *viz.* the 20th when the Number of Beasts do not amount to above 100, and the 10th when they exceed that Number. The Mountaineers also give him the 10th of their

their Fruits, in Acknowledgment of the Permission he grants them to cultivate the Plains at the Bottom of the Mountains. *St. Olon* says, 'tis impossible to determine the Revenues of the Emperon of *Morocco*, who has scarce any Crown Lands, because his insatiable Covetousness continually prompts him to load his Subjects with fresh Taxes. But he says, that the 10th of all their Goods, &c. and the Annual Tax of six Crowns per Head laid on every Male Jew of 15 Years old and upwards, is the general Proportion. Our Author affirms however, that the Taxes are brought in commonly by Quintals of Gold or Silver at a time, which he causes to be melted down and bury'd; and that he always murders the Ministers and Keepers of those Treasures, that he may be Master of their Secrets as well as Possessions; for which Reason he often melts it himself, and hides it, without Witness, and our Author thinks he has at least 50 *French* Millions thus conceal'd. He adds, that he obliges the Alcalds, who have all the Revenue of the Governments, to make him Annual Presents every *Easter*, which often amount to more than the Revenue, and make them as absolute Tyrants as the King himself. We refer for their Trade to our Account of the particular Provinces, and to what we have already said in *Fex*, it being much the same with the Commerce of that Country. *Dapper* says, their Morabouts have banish'd all Sorts of Sciences from hence, except Grammar, Reading of the *Alcoran*, and Poetry.

As to their particular Opinions, *Dapper* says they differ in some Things from the other *Mahometans*, because they are Followers of *Xeriff Hamet*, the first King of the Race now on the Throne. He was a Monk, who quitted his Cell in 1514, and began to preach the new Doctrine of one *Esfurean*, decrying that of *Aly Omar*, and other Interpreters of *Mahomet's* Law for Human Traditions, and extolling the pure and plain Writings of *Esfurean*, who was a faithful Interpreter. Neither do they, like the *Turks*, hinder any, whether Jews or Christians, from frequenting their Sermons, and assisting in the Ceremonies of their Religion. These little Differences, says our Author, make the *Turks* and the People of this Country hate one another to that Degree, that the

Turkish Slaves are treated here with as much Severity as the Christians. In the mean time they celebrate the same Festivals as the *Turks*, especially that of *Easter*, when the King rides out, attended by the *Basha*, &c. in great Pomp, with Hautboys, Trumpets, and Drums; and when he is come to a certain Place without the City, two Rams are brought him, which, after several Ceremonies, he sticks in the Throat; and if they die as soon as stuck, they take it for a good Sign; but if they live longer, they think it presages Calamities for the Year to come.

St. Olon gives the following Account of some Particularities among these *Moors*, which we have not taken Notice of among the other *Mahometans*. They think that Christ is to live 40 Years more upon Earth, to reunite all Nations under one and the same Law; that he shall be laid in a Tomb which *Mahomet* caus'd to be erected on the Right Side of his own; that those who follow'd Christ's Doctrine before *Mahomet's* Appearance will be saved; and that in Paradise they shall enjoy 70 Virgins, who nevertheless shall not lose their Virginity. They have three *Easters*, that last each 7 Days, during which they don't refrain buying and selling, no more than they do on *Fridays*, which are their Sabbaths. Their first *Easter* begins the first Day of the New Moon, that follows their *Ramadan*; and if it happens on a *Saturday*, which is the *Jews Sunday*, the latter are obliged to give the King in Specie or Value a Hen and 10 Chickens of Gold. During this Festival, the King sends for all the Prisoners in the Town where he is, releases some, and puts the rest to Death, according to the Nature of their Crimes, and his own Caprice. At the second *Easter*, which they call the Great One, and begins 10 Days after the *Ramadan*, they sacrifice as many Sheep to *Mahomet* as there are Male Children in every Family, and the King kills a Sheep, as above-mentioned. And at the 3d *Easter*, which is always kept three Months and two Days after the second, in Honour of *Mahomet's* Birth, the *Moors* eat Pap the first Day, in Memory of that which he eat; and the Night before they light up a great many Lamps and Wax Candles in their Mosques, and all their Priests sing to his Praise without vocising till next Day.

They

They celebrate the Festival of *St. John* by burning Incense round their Fruit-Trees all Night. They allow of Circumcision, but don't restrict it to any Age or Time. They have such a Veneration for those who have been in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, that they not only reckon them for Saints, but their Horses so that have been there, and bury them when they die with as much Respect as if they were Friends or Relations. The King of *Morocco*, says *St. Olon*, had one when he was here, which he caus'd to be led before him, with a rich Saddle and Trappings, and his Tail was carried by a Christian Slave, who held a Pot and a Cloth in his Hands to receive the Excrements and wipe him; and our Author says, he was told that sometimes the King kiss'd the Tail and Feet of this Beast. These Horses are commonly exempted from Service; and if their Masters have not enough to keep them, they obtain Pensions for their Maintenance out of the Mosques of the Place where they are. They are known by Chaplets or Relicks about their Necks, which are Pieces of Writing wrapped up in Stuff of Gold or Silk, with the Names of their Prophet or some of their pretended Saints. They also serve as a Sanctuary to Criminals, like the Tombs and Chappels of the Saints, already mentioned. He adds, that these Sanctuaries, which are dispersed up and down, are (according to their Bigness) the Residence of one or more Marabouts or Priests, who live here idly upon the Devotion and Charity of the Founders, &c. who think themselves happy if they can give to them during Life, or leave to them after Death.

Dapper says, there's a warlike Sort of *Arabians* here call'd *Larbusses*, who are continually at War, and take away one another's Camels and Cattle. They keep Horses ready in their Pastures, which are saddled and bridled in a Moment when design'd for an Excursion. He observes, that at Harvest and Seed-time they make a Truce, but renew their Hostilities as soon as the Corn is threshed. They hide their Corn in Holes under Ground, and shut them up at Night, that none may know where it is, not excepting their Wives and Children; so that when they want Corn, they take it out unknown to their Families. They have also deep

Ditches to preserve their Water in, which they fetch at a great Distance on Camels Backs and in Bottles. When they have gather'd in their Harvest, they remove with their Tents under the Conduct of one of their Chiefs call'd *Cobeille*, and go elsewhere, to give Time to the Earth to settle; after which they return again with their Wives and Children. *Dapper* adds, that the King commonly chuses some of these *Arabs* to be the Commanders of Squadrons or small Caravans, because the *Moors* of *Morocco* travel commonly by great Companies for the more Safety.

We shall here, according to Promise, continue the History of *Morocco*, from the Time where it ends in our General Account of the Kings of *Fez*.

St. Olon gives us the following Account how the famous *Muley Archy* King of *Tafilet*, and *Muley Ismael* his Brother and immediate Successor, reunited the Kingdoms of *Morocco*, *Fez*, *Tafilet*, and *Suz*, and the vast Province of *Dara*, under one and the same Power, and form'd them into that great Dominion which it then constituted under *Muley Ismael*.

Muley Cheriff King of *Tafilet*, and Father of *Muley Archy*, had for his Successor *Muley Hamet*, the eldest of 84 Male Children, and 124 Daughters, who surviv'd him; but *Muley Archy*, one of his Brothers, being naturally ambitious, engag'd some of the chief Alcaids on his Side, and conspir'd against him; but the King put the Alcaids to Death, and secured him in Prison. The Prince finding Means to escape, and being rather exasperated than sweeten'd by his gentle Treatment, assembled Troops for another Enterprize; but it only expos'd him to a second Imprisonment, which was longer and more strict than the first; yet a Negro, to whose Guard the K. had committed him, being caress'd and flatter'd by *Muley Archy*, with great Hopes if he could obtain his Liberty, let him go; but he rewarded his Deliverer with Death for his Service, as thinking he could not safely depend on one whom he saw so apt to betray his Master. Then he escaped to *Bembucar*, a Morabout, who was Prince at *Zaouias*, (for he observes, that the People here have such a Veneration for the Morabouts, that they often chuse them for their Sovereigns.) *Muley Archy* being *incognito*, offer'd him his Service in
the

the Nature of a private Soldier : his Merit was rewarded with various Employs, which he discharged so well, that he soon won the old Man's Heart : But being own'd for King by some *Arabians*, who brought Dates to sell from *Taflet*, and who went also to salute him as their King's Brother, *Benbucar's* Son suspected that he came thus disguised on some treasonable Design, resolved to put him to Death, and laid an Ambush for him ; but he escaped and fled to *Quiviane*, where having offer'd his Service in like Manner to another Morabout Prince, he had the good Luck to be made prime Minister and Favourite. This serving only to whet his Ambition, he aim'd at the sole Dominion, and for that End used the Treasures of his Benefactor to corrupt those whom he could, and so made himself Master of the Country, put the Prince to Death, and then rais'd Troops, with which he marched against his Brother, who met him in the Field, where they fought several Battles ; but *Muley Archy* having always the Advantage, he compelled his Brother to fly into *Taflet*, where he broke his Heart. *Muley Archy* being thus deliver'd of his Rival, soon reduced *Sala*, which was a free Town, with the several Kingdoms of *Fez*, *Morocco*, and *Suz*, some of which submitted by Force of Arms, and others were frighten'd to a Submission by the Terror of his Name. Our Author says, he was killed in 1672, in the 40th Year of his Age, at a Tournament with some of his Nobles, when he broke his Skull by riding fiercely against a Bough of one of the Trees in his Garden. Those of his Family, whom he had left Governors of his Kingdoms, strove each to make themselves Masters of the respective Provinces under their Government ; but *Muley Ismael* causing himself to be immediately proclaimed King of *Taflet*, seiz'd his Brother's Treasure, took the Field, and having won some with Promises or Presents, he conquer'd the rest by Force of Arms, and made himself Master of the whole. None of his Rivals gave him so much Trouble as *Muley Hamet*, his Nephew, who having caused himself to be proclaimed King of *Morocco* and *Suz*, and opposing him with a considerable Force, obliged him for two or three Years to divers Sieges and Battles, in which *Hamet* suffer'd so many Losses, that

he was at last obliged to submit, as well as the rest, to *Muley Ismael*, whom our Author highly commends for his Conduct and Valour. He says, he was about 50 Years old in 1695, when he wrote. He gives a particular Description of his Person, to which we refer. He says, he is covetous to Excess, and delights so much to shed Blood, that 'tis the common Opinion, that within the first 20 Years of his Reign, he had put to Death with his own Hands above 20000 Persons. Our Author says, he killed 47 during the three Weeks he was at Court ; and that when he gave him his Audience of Leave, his Clothes and Right Arm were all stained with the Blood of two of his chief Blacks whom he had just executed. In short, says our Author, all Nations are amazed at the People's Patience under such excessive Cruelties ; but they have such a strong Conceit, that if they die by the Hands of the Cheriff, who pleads his Descent from their Prophet *Mahomet*, they shall go directly to Paradise, that most of them think that a Happiness, which the far less, but most sensible, Number abhors, and cannot hinder ; yet the latter keep from Court as much as they can, and think themselves as happy never to see the King, as the others do in being killed by his Hands. Nevertheless, they say this Prince is very tractable out of his Passions, and in his familiar Conversation ; but he is subject to extravagant Caprices, which are the more dangerous, because they are generally veil'd with the Cloak of Religion, of which he strives to be thought a most exact Observer ; and being perswaded that he is esteem'd so, he gives himself a general Loose. He aims only at making himself dreaded by his Subjects, and does not trouble himself to gain their Affection, so that they always approach him with Trembling, and out of Fear more than Inclination ; and the rather, because none must appear before him without Order or Permission, nor without Presents. He has a great deal of Spirit and Valour, is active, indefatigable, and very dextrous at all Games and Tournaments, in which the *Moors* in general are very well skill'd. He never drinks Wine, (because prohibited by his Religion, but Opium or a certain Hypocras, which he makes himself with *Aquavitæ*, Cloves, Anniseed, Cinnamon, and

and Mace. When he puts on a yellow Habit, they observe that Colour is generally fatal to some that then approach him. He is very much given to Women, of whom he keeps near 400 in his Alcassave for his own Use, besides about 500 others to serve them. He had 118 Male Children living in our Author's Time, besides 200 Daughters. When he changes his Concubines, which is very often, he takes the Boys, and leaves them the Girls, without any Allowance towards maintaining them. Among these, he has 4 call'd Lawful Wives, and is entirely govern'd by one of them, who is an ugly Black, and the Mother of *Muley Zidan*, who was pitched upon for the Successor in our Author's Time. He affects to appear modest and humble, and makes God the Author of all the Good and Evil he does; but he is very vain and ostentatious. He is absolute in his Dominions, and *St. Olon*, who was a *Frenchman*, says, he often compares himself to him whom he calls the Emperor of *France*, who he says is the only Prince that knows how to reign like himself, and to make his Will a Law, to which he ascribes all the Prosperities of the Kings of *France*, while he treats all other Christian Princes as Dependants, and never speaks of them but with Contempt. Thus (says our Author) he says, the Emperor of *Germany* is only the Companion of his Subjects, the King of *Spain* not so much Master of his Dominions as his Ministers, and the King of *England* no more than a Dependant or a Slave to his Parliament: Yet *St. Olon* says, he is the easiest Prince in the World, so that his Alcalds who are most with him can turn and wind him as they will. His Vanity is never better pleased than when some Christian Prince sends him Ambassadors, for then he is full of Joy; and as soon as he sees them, kisses the Ground, in their Presence, in Token of his Thanks to God. When our Author came hither, the Emperor caus'd a Review to be made before him of 10000 Horse and 2000 Foot, who, after some irregular Motions and great Shouts, gave him a Salvo with their Arms pointed towards him, to do him, as they said, the more Honour, that being the Custom which they observe towards their Princes and Governors. The King of *Morocco* only distin-

guishes Ambassadors according to their Quality, with which they are honour'd by their Masters, but especially when they bring him rich Presents, for the Lucre whereof, *St. Olon* says, this Prince does all he can to bring Ambassadors to his Court, either to receive Bribes from them, or to engage 'em to receive Presents on his Part, which he demands or promises them with a rais'd Voice. In the mean time he thinks that the Obeisance and humble Deportment of Ambassadors contributes more than any thing to his Grandeur, and, as an Instance of this, *St. Olon* observes, that the *English* Ambassador was obliged to pull off his Shoes and Stockings before he could be admitted to an Audience; but the K. of *England* made the same Reprizal upon the *Morocco* Ambassador, and would not give him Audience unless he came bare-footed and bare-headed too. 'Tis said, this Prince has made a solemn Oath to release no Christian Slaves, unless he has at least as many of his Subjects in Exchange. Our Author observes, that the Treaty which the *Spaniards* made with him for 10, and another for 4, *Moors* against one *Spaniard*, have made him almost intractable with all other Nations. Our Author adds, that he commonly resides at *Mequinez*, because that is his Birth-place. He observes, that none are admitted without Presents, so that after some Preamble of Excuse, the first Questions that are ask'd Ambassadors are these, *viz.* Who are you? Whence came you? What's your Business? and, What do you bring? And the Manner of their Reception and Treatment is regulated according to the Answer which the Ambassadors make to the last of these Questions. No Person is admitted to visit the Ambassadors till they have had their first Audience; and tho' they are attended to it by *Moors* of Quality, and some Negroes of the King's Guard, to keep off the Rabble, yet the latter insult them as Christians, notwithstanding their Character of Ambassadors. When *St. Olon* (who came hither in 1693 to treat of a Peace and Alliance betwixt the *French* King and the Emperor of *Morocco*) was admitted to his first Audience, he was conducted, with 12 *French* Slaves carrying his Presents behind him, into the King's Palace thro' a great fine Gate, supported by Marble Pillars, which open'd in-

to a long Walk, lin'd on both Sides with the Negroes of the King's Guard, and encompassed with high white Walls, which are built like the rest of the Palace, with a sort of Mortar that is beat together by Men's Hands, and composes a kind of hard white Mastick. After this, they came into an open Pavilion not quite finish'd, which form'd 4 great Porches, each Front of which fac'd the like Walk, which led to the several Lodgings of the Palace. He was oblig'd to stay at the Entrance of this Pavilion till the King had Notice he was come. Then the King came on Horseback thro' one of those Walks, which was lin'd on both Sides by about 200 little Blacks with great Muskets, which they stoop'd to the Ground as he passed along. He was followed by a small Retinue, had a long Pike in his Hand, was as meanly habited as his ordinary Subjects, and his Face was cover'd below his Eyes with a nasty Handkerchief. He alighted at the Entrance of the Porch, and after having given his Pike to one of his Negroes, he sat down upon the bare Threshold. His Arms and Legs were naked, and a Negro stood behind him with a Fan to cool him, and drive away the Flies, which are very numerous in this Country. Some of his Alcalds sat on the Right and Left upon the Ground without Shoes or Turbans, and nothing but a plain red Cap on their Heads. His Prime Minister stood at his Right Hand. As soon as the King was seated, he bid the Ambassador welcome two or three times, and told him in *Arabick*, *That he was a good Christian; that he was glad to see him; and that he would grant him what he desir'd.* Then St. Olon made a long Speech, wherein he signify'd, with that Vain-glory peculiar to the French Nation, *That he came in the sacred Name of the most High, most Excellent, most Potent, most Magnificent, most Invincible, and ever Victorious, Lewis le Grand, the Most Christian Emperor of France and Navarre, the Eldest Son of the Church, the Defender of the Faith, the Asylum and Protector of Kings, and the Arbiter and great Conqueror of Europe.* After St. Olon's Speech was read in the Moorish Language by his Interpreter, the K. first excus'd himself from seeing him again very soon, because of the near Approach of *Easter*, for which he call'd all the Christian Slaves to witness, and then (says St. Olon)

he enlarg'd upon the Praise of the French King's Power, Valour, and Conduct, and on the great Difference he made between his Master and all other Potentates of Europe, none of whom he said were true Sovereigns but the Emperor of France, who, like himself, knew how to rule alone, and to make himself the absolute Master of the Lives and Fortunes of his People. St. Olon tells us, that when he gave him his Master's Letter, the King kiss'd it, put it upon his Head in Token of Respect, and then gave it to his Alcald. When he receiv'd his Presents, he thank'd him, and said, *That notwithstanding he was a Christian, yet the Law of his Prophet allow'd him to accept of whatever was offer'd him by such in Way of Respect;* and then he told him, *That the greatest Mark of Esteem which he could put upon him was to exhort him, and pray to God to make him a Moor.* Then the King making a Sign for the French Slaves to come near him, they fell down at his Feet, and he singled out 4 of the youngest of them, and told St. Olon, *That he gave them to him for his Dinner.* After which, he return'd on Horseback as he came. Muley Zidan, the King's Son, gave him another Slave the same Day, which he said was for his Supper. When he had his Audience of Leave, the King came on a stately Horse, with a Saddle and Trappings of Gold, and the Breast-Leather set here and there with Precious Stones. His Face was then uncover'd, and he was richly apparelled, and some Slaves follow'd him trembling, because he had his Arms stain'd with the Blood of some Negroes which he had just executed with his own Hands. At this Audience, our Author says, the King deny'd the Letter which he wrote to his Master to engage him in the Negotiation, and made Proposals so vastly different from the Contents of it, that the Treaty came to nothing, tho' it had been usher'd in on the Part of the French Ambassador with such a pompous String of arrogant Epithets.

St. Olon says, the King's Negroes, tho' his Slaves, are all his Confidants, and the common Executioners of his Orders; and that they do it in a Manner so imperious and absolute, that the most potent Alcalds tremble at the Sight of them. When he goes to the Wars, he has always 7 or 8000 of them in his Army, both of Foot and Horse. They

are reckon'd his best Soldiers, and always fight nearest his Person with Fire-Arms, and he confers Governments and the chief Posts of the Army on those who distinguish themselves best. The King buys these Negroes, or takes them out of the Country by Force or Cunning, marries them, and sends them to keep Cattle for their Livelihood in several inhabited Places, where they serve as a Nursery for the King's Use. As to the Whites, tho' they are free, and much more numerous, being Natives of the Country, yet they are not so considerable nor so happy, but are so entirely subjected to the Authority of the Negroes, that they tax or insult them as they please with Impunity, on Pretext of their natural Inclination to revolt. He says, that his Son *Muley Zidan*, who is to succeed him, is not so covetous, but as cruel as his Father, and a great Drinker of Wine and Strong Waters. He had already 3 Wives, and was upon marrying a 4th when our Author was there. He affects to appear more courteous than his Father, and when he is with his Friends, sticks not to disapprove his Conduct. Most of the King's other Children are so meanly brought up, and so loosely educated, that they are capable of all manner of Baseness which may tend to Debauchery and satisfy their Avarice. They often go to visit the *Jews* for the Sake of a Drinking Bout, and are as compleat Sharpers as the *Lacedemonians*, so that when they meet a Slave, they rifle him of all that he has; and our Author says, one of them that paid him a Visit, tho' not above 12 or 13 Years old, laid his Hands on whatever he had a Mind to in his Room, without any Compliment. He observes, that as soon as they are of Age, the King makes them Governors of his several Provinces; and that after his Death, he who has the greatest Interest surprises and kills the others, that he may reign alone, and sets up his Favourites or his Children in their room. But our Author observes, that he who is near the King at his Death is commonly too hard for the rest, because he seizes the Arms, and sometimes the Treasures, when he can find them. They say, that this Emperor highly approves this Maxim, because it makes all his Children Warriors, that they may make themselves Masters of their Brothers Dominions:

But this (says our Author) produces such Wars among them, and makes such a Division in their Territories, that the Conquerors have found it a hard Matter to reunite them. 'Tis common to see the King's Children, tho' no more than 10 Years old, ride mettlesome Horses at full Speed, without Saddle, Boots or Spurs, it being the Custom of the *Moors* to ride and work Horses as soon as they are a Year old. *St. Olon* says, the King's Equerries are very fine, and consist of several great Arches, on the Right and Left of which every Horse has one to himself, where he is fasten'd to a Post, and fetter'd. There's no Trough nor Rack, for the Horses eat off of the Ground, the *Moors* being not willing, as our Author was told, that their Beasts should have more Privilege or Conveniency than themselves.

St. Olon says, the Number of the King's Ships of War is never fix'd. There were in his Time about 12 or 13, of which 6 were the King's, and the rest belong'd to private Men. They carried from 18 to 24 Cannon, and about 200 Men; but most of 'em were in a very bad State for want of Ammunition, Sails, Cords, and other Rigging; so that if the *Moors* were not supply'd from Time to Time by the *English* and *Dutch*, their Number would quickly be diminish'd. The King of *Morocco* is at no Charge for their Maintenance, for the Governor of the Place where they are pays the Officers and Crews: Yet if they take Prizes, the King has Half, and the rest is divided between the Governor and the Officers, who also give a Share of it to the Crew; but the King has all the Slaves, paying 50 Crowns *per Head* for as many as are above his Half. The Ships of particular Persons are at the Charge of Privateers, and reimburse themselves out of the Prizes, of which the King takes one Fifth, with all the Slaves, paying 50 Crowns apiece for them, as above.

The same Author says, the King's Land Forces might be considerable, if he disciplin'd, arm'd, and paid them. When he has formed some Enterprize, he orders his Governors to raise him a certain Number of Troops, and they regulate one another's Quota's according to the Extent of their Governments, or make a Repartition according to the Rolls of those who pay Tribute. They impress such married Men as refuse

to be Volunteers, or oblige them to send others in their Room; but they cannot force Batchelors, and those that are not settled. Both Officers and Soldiers are oblig'd to maintain themselves, and to mount and arm at their own Charge during the Campaign; and because few of them have Fire-Arms or Powder, they generally carry Swords, Lances, or Staffs. Besides this, every Town and Village is obliged to keep a Number of Men, in Proportion to the Bigness of the Place, always arm'd and ready to march upon the first Notice. They only give Horses to the Troopers, but they are obliged to keep them; and all that compose this Number, whether Foot or Horse, are Tax-free; so that they are properly maintain'd, not at the King's Expence, but at the Charge of the Place where they are.

When they are ready to fight, they range their Armies thus: The Horse compose the two Wings, and the Foot the Center, in the Form of a Crescent. They never make above two Ranks of Soldiers when they fight on a Plain, but more when between Mountains, where they have not Room to extend themselves. First, they give a great Huzza, which is follow'd by some short Prayers to God for the Victory. The Arms of the Horse, that stand nearest the King's Person, and are all compos'd of Negroes, are Guns, Scymiters, and Pistols; but those which stand at a greater Distance have Lances and Muskets. One Part of the Infantry carries Guns, and the other Cross-Bows, Slings, Clubs, Half-Pikes, Zagayes, and Sabres. *St. Olon* says, That when they make War with one another, they refuse to go voluntarily; but when with the Christians, every one is ambitious to go into the Service, which make their Armies then very numerous. All the *Arabs* and *Barbarians* of the Places thro' which they march are obliged to find the Army *Gratis* wherever it encamps, Wheat, Barley, Meal, Butter, Oil, Honey, and Cattle, on Pain of being plunder'd or cut in Pieces. They say, that on a pressing Occasion, especially if it be for the Cause of Religion, the King can raise 100000 Men, half of which should be Horse; but our Author says, that he cannot arm above 25000. He keeps 10000 Muskets in his Palace, which, with the Treachery,

he designs for his Son and Successor, and 150 Pieces of Brass Cannon, Part of which came out of a *Spanish* Man of War lost some Time ago before *Ceuta*, and the rest from the Castle of *Larache* when retaken from the *Spaniards*. He keeps 3 or 400 Negroes, arm'd with heavy Guns, for his ordinary Guard, and he chuses them very young, says *St. Olon*, because he thinks older Persons are more apt to Treason. They are generally Children of the *Seraglio*, to whom he gives their Diet and Clothes, in which they outstrip the greatest Noblemen. The King has also 7 or 8 *Alcaids* always near his Person, who compose his whole Court, and never approach him but bare-footed, and a red Woollen Cap on their Heads instead of a Turban.

St. Olon observes, that the King's only Neighbours are the Negroes on one Side, and the *Algerines* on the other. He says, there's no Danger from the former, because of the great River and the Mountains between them, which would render their Attacks very desperate, and because of the Advantages which both receive from their Union, the *Moors* driving a considerable Trade into *Guinea* with Salt, Iron Ware, small Looking-Glasses, and *Venetian* Toys, in Exchange for Gold Dust, Elephants Teeth, and great Numbers of Negroes, whom the King treats as his own Subjects. But the *Algerines*, says our Author, being more valorous, and having an easier Entrance into his Country, keep him on a constant Guard, tho' he has often the Skill and good Luck to keep them off on the Pretence of Religion, and by the Stories which he insinuates to them upon Occasion by his *Morabouts*, that they are accountable on both Sides to God and their Prophet for the Blood which was spilt on either Side in Wars, contrary to their Law: But our Author says, that he is most afraid of an Invasion by the *Gr. Seignior* on this Side; and that he hates the *Algerines* as bad as the Christians, to whom he always compares them, because of the Difference of their Opinions, for which Reason he also treats the *Turks* as Hereticks, and is glad of all Opportunities to seize their Dominions by Force or Treachery.

St. Olon says, the Reign of *Muley Ismael* has been most remarkable, for that he has

cleared the Fields and Roads of Robbers, so that a Man may now travel safely thro' all his Dominions. Tho' his Authority appears so despotick, yet he cannot depose the Mufti and his Officers, tho' he creates them, and is subject, as well as all others, to their Decrees of Justice, which he cannot decline or traverse, if the least of his Subjects has a Mind to cite him before them; but this is seldom practis'd, because of the mortal Vengeance which would certainly follow it. The Mufti is the natural Judge and Sovereign of Adulterers, whom he usually condemns to Death, and his Sentences, in Cases that fall under his Cognizance, never admit of any Appeal or Delay. The Cadi's, who are as it were his Sub-Delegates in all Towns, &c. always sell their Suffrages to the highest Bidder; and False Witnesses, who are never punish'd here, are so common and cheap, that no Man is safe, tho' his Right or Innocence be ever so apparent. The Governors place a Cadi in every Town and Village of their Governments, under the Authority of the Great Mufti, and joins two other Officers to him, whom he can depose, but not the Cadi. The chief of these two Officers is the *Calif* or Governor's Lieutenant, who takes Care of what relates to the Government, and decides all Offences and Quarrels between the *Moors* and *Jews*, which are always managed to the Advantage of the Governors, because the Offences or Quarrels are ever punished or adjusted at their own Expence, and the *Calif* gives an Account of the Fine to his Governor, but neither has a Right to condemn any Person to Death without the King's Order. This Officer also imposes the ordinary or extraordinary Tributes. The other Officer, says *St. Olon*, is the *Amokadam* or Judge of the Police, who lays a Tax and a Price on all Commodities that are eatable and combustible, and sold by Weight. This would be a very profitable Office to him, if he was the sole Gainer; but he is obliged to make great Presents every Year to his Alcaid, and sometimes to the King himself. There are three Sorts of Alcaids; the Chief are the Governors of the Provinces, who are as it were Viceroys; the others are the particular Governors of great Towns, or the Generals of the Armies. They are all obliged

to be at their Posts, and the King keeps none about him but such as are of particular Service to him, and permits their Children to follow their Employes. The other considerable Officers are, the Great Mufti for Religion and Justice, the Great Eunuch for the King's Wives and Seraglio, and the Great Treasurer for his Finances; but his Post is very troublesome: He never makes any Distribution of the Money, but puts it as soon as he receives it into the Hands of the King, who buries it under Ground; for as to the ordinary Charge of his Household and Women, or extraordinary Charges in Time of War, the Governor pays it out of his own Pocket, and the Revenues of his Government: For our Author observes, that this Prince gives no Salaries, Pensions, or Gratifications in Money, to any Person whatsoever. There's another Officer, who is as it were the King's Master-Builder, has the Care of all the Structures which he raises at *Mequinez*, and is oblig'd to find all the Materials within Side and without. He is Governor of all the Country from *Mequinez* to *Tremesen*; but *St. Olon* says, he gets no more at the Year's End than is enough to keep him. The Governor of *Erriff*, who is also Viceroy of *Algarbes*, and of all the Coast from *Saffarin* to *Sala*, and resided at *Tangier* in our Author's Time, was one of the richest of all the Empire, and brought the King the greatest Annual Presents, the least being worth above 400000 Livres. The same Author gives the particular Characters of the prime Ministers and Courtiers, to which we refer the Curious, and proceed next to the particular Geography of *Morocco*.

1. D U C C A L A, D U Q U E L L A, or D U G U E L A.

The *Sanfons* make it the most N. Province of *Morocco*, and bound it on the N. and E. with the River *Ommirabi*, which parts it from *Temesna*; on the E. with *Hascora*; on the S. with the River *Tensift*, which separates it from the Provinces of *Morocco* and *Hea*; and on the W. with the *Atlantic* Ocean. They extend it 162 Miles from E. to W. and 110 from N. to S. *Dapper* and *Marmol* bound it with the River *Tensift*, *Cape Cantin*, and the Province of *Hea*, on the W.

with

with the Ocean on the N. the River *Ommirabi* on the E. and *Morocco* and the River *Habit* on the S. The latter make it 30 Leagues from E. to W. and 24 broad. The *Sanfons* say, 'tis fruitful, and abounds with Corn and Cattle. *Heylin* makes it three Days Journey long, and two broad, and says, that this and the Province of *Tedles* were inhabited by the most noble *Arabian* Family call'd *Etkeg*, who maintain'd their Possession against the Kings of *Portugal* and *Fez* with 100000 Men, most Horse; but *Leo* says, that at last being invaded by the K. of *Portugal*, divided into Factions at Home, and visited with a Famine, they were forced to yield to the *Portuguese*, who exported or destroyed them. *Heylin* says, the Country is pretty populous; but they are ignorant both of Letters and good Manners, and very lazy. 'Twas more populous formerly, much of the Country having been abandon'd for fear of the *Portuguese*, who took all their best Sea-Ports, and destroy'd the rest. He adds, that there are many Altars in the Roads of this Province, at which *Mahomet* King of *Fez*, when he pass'd thro' it with an Army, kneel'd and pray'd to God for the Deliverance of the People from the *Arabians* and *Christians*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a plain Country, and inhabited chiefly by *Arabians* and *Bereberes*.

The chief Mountains of this Province are, 1. *Benimeguer* or *Benimager*, 4 Miles E. from *Azafi*, which *Marmol* supposes to be the Sun Mountain of *Ptolemy*. He says, 300 *Moors* on Horseback shelter'd themselves here for some Time, when the *Portuguese* were Masters of *Safia*, and made Excursions upon them; but were at last reduced, and the Inhabitants are now subject to the Governor of *Safia*.

2. *Julel-Hadua*, or the Green Mountain. *Leo* says, it begins E. of the River *Ommirabi*, and runs W. as far as the Hills of *Hascora*, and the Frontiers of *Tedles*. 'Tis the Residence of several Hermits, who live only upon Fruits, for they are 25 Miles from any Town. Here are several *Mahometan* Altars and Fountains, and the Ruins of ancient *African* Structures. This Mountain is very high, rough, and woody, but abounds with Acorns, Pine-Apples, and a red Fruit called *Africano*. *Marmel* says, 'twas very populous in the Time of the *Almohades*;

but since the Devastations of the *Bene-merini's*, only inhabited by Hermits, and visited by Pilgrims. There's a great Lake at the Foot of it, call'd the Green Lake, which is form'd by the many Springs that rise out of its Rocks, and is full of Eels, Trouts, Bar-bels, and large white sweet-tasted Fish call'd *Bognes*. He adds, that there's more Game on this Mountain for Variety of Fowls and Venison than any where else in *Africa*.

3. Cape *Cantin*, which *Ramusius* thinks to be the Sun Mountain of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*. Others, says *Heylin*, think it the *Ulagium* of the Ancients. The *Moors* call it *Gebelelhus-dic*.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Azamurum* or *Azamur*, which the *Sanfons* place Lat. 31. 33. Long. 11. 35. at the Mouth of the R. *Ommirabi*, which spreads here, and forms a Gulph, 87 Miles N. E. of *Azafi*, and 44 S. E. of *Mazagan*. *Moll*, who puts it Lat. 33. and Long. 10 $\frac{3}{4}$. makes it but 30 Miles from the latter, and 75 from the former. *Dapper* places it but 3 Miles from *Mazagan*, and says, 'twas taken by the *Portuguese* in 1513, (or 1613 according to the *Sanfons*) with a Fleet of 200 Sail of Ships, when, to revenge the Treachery of the Governors, they plunder'd this, and took many other Places in these Parts. He tells us, that before it was taken, the People were much given to Sodomy, that it contain'd above 5000 Houses, is still very large and populous, and belongs to the *Moors*, who have a very good Harbour here. The chief Trade of the Inhabitants consists in the Shads and other Fish they catch in the River *Ommirabi* from April to October, which brings in 6 or 7000 Ducats a Year. *Morery's* Great Dictionary says, the King of *Portugal* took this Place in 1508, quitted it in 1540, and removed to *Mazagan*, because 'twas commanded by a Hill, chargeable to keep, and the Mouth of the River dangerous for Shipping: But the *Moors* were no sooner repossess'd of it, when the *Portuguese* Governor of *Mazagan* storm'd it in the Night, kill'd or took all the *Moors* in it, and carried the Governor and two *Alfaqui's* to *Portugal*, who were afterwards chang'd for Christian Prisoners. *Leo* says, that before the *Portuguese* took it, 'twas inhabited by a neat, peaceable People; that the *Jews* surrender'd it to the *Portuguese* for their

their own Security; that 'tis now the Residence of the *Portuguese* Merchants; that their Gardens and Orchards abound with Figs; and that they have Plenty of Pulse and Corn. *Marmol* says, some think this one of the *Liby-Phœnician* Cities, and that 'tis the *Cusa* which *Ptolemy* places Long. 6. 40. Lat. 32. 45. He adds, that the *Moors* never durst replant it after the *Portuguese* took it the last Time by Surprise, so that it became a Receptacle for Wild Beasts; and the Xeriff in his Time farm'd the Fishery to some Christian Merchants at a dear Rate; but they were not safe if they came ashore.

2. *Magazan, Mazagan, Mazzacan, Mazagran, or Magazran*, lies upon the Coast, 44 Miles N. W. of *Azamore*, and 75 N. E. of *Azafia*, according to the *Sansons*; and 30 from the former, and 65 from the latter, according to *Moll*. *Dapper* says, the *Moors* call it *Boreysa*, places it but two Miles from *Azamore* near the River *Ommirabi*, and not far from the Sea. It was formerly a great flourishing Town, and contain'd 5000 Houses, divided into 4 Quarters, each of which had its own Governor, subject to one Chief, and all joining in the common Good; but now 'tis not above half a Mile round, and is only inhabited by a few poor People, besides the Garrison. The Houses are lower than the Walls of the Town, so that they cannot be seen without. There are a great many Cannon on the Ramparts. The Garrison consisted of 500 Foot, 200 Horse, and 500 Pioneers, in *Dapper's* Time; but *Moquet* mentions no more than 400 Foot, and no Workmen. The Neighbourhood is very fruitful, and the Soldiers possess some Part of it, where they sow Corn and Pulse, which the *Arabs* often steal in the Night. Their Bees make a very white sweet Honey in their Hives on the Tops of Houses. Here's also a large Sort of Snails, of an extraordinary Virtue. *Marmol* says, 'tis encompassed by the Sea on one Side, and a large deep Ditch on the other, which rises and falls with the Tide, and in the Middle of the Ditch there's a Fountain of fresh Water, wall'd in with Stone very high, where the Boats take in Water. The *Portuguese* built it in 1508, and fortified it better after they abandon'd *Safie* and *Azamore*. The Fortifications are modern, and the Cheriff besieg'd it in vain in 1572 (or as *Heylin* says

1562) with above 200000 Men. The latter places this Town in the Province of *Erriff*.

3. *Meramer*. The *Sansons* place it 15 Miles E. of *Safia*, *Dapper* but 5, and says, it contains about 400 Houses, and is encompassed with an old Wall.

4. *Azafia, Azoph, Azapi, Asfi, or Saffia*. The *Sansons* place it at the Bottom of a Gulph in the *Atlantick* Ocean, near the Mouth of the River *Tensift*, Lat. 31. Long. 10. 12. 15 Miles W. from *Meramer*, 85 S. W. of *Azamore*, and 70 from *Mazagan*; *Moll* 75 Miles from *Azamore*, and 65 from *Mazagan*. *Leo* says, it was built by the *Africans*, lay in a fruitful Soil, and contain'd in his Time 4000 Families; but the People knew not how to till or plant it. *Marmol* says, the *Portuguese* call it *Asaphi*. Some affirm, that 'twas built by *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*, and one of the *Liby-Phœnician* Cities. It has good Walls, but is not very strong, because 'tis commanded by Hills. 'Twas anciently subject to the Kings of *Morocco*, and then had a better Trade than afterwards, when the *Spanish* Merchants imported Cloth, Linen, &c. in Exchange for Wax, Indigo, Gums, &c. But upon the Declension of the Reign of the *Benemerini*, one of their own Citizens usurp'd the Government of it, which caus'd Civil Wars; and one of the Factions calling in the *Portuguese*, the latter subjected them in 1507 to their Crown. The Garrison also reduced great Part of the adjacent Country, and won several important Victories: But the *Portuguese*, after they lost *Cape d'Aguer*, being afraid of the growing Power of the Xeriffs, and considering that 'twas commanded by the neighbouring Mountains, that it could not well be relieved by Sea, because of its bad Harbour, and that the keeping of it cost more than 'twas worth, abandon'd it. *Marmol* adds, that while the *Portuguese* were Masters of this Place, they destroyed many Villages and Castles within its Jurisdiction. *Dapper* says, it has 24 Towers, and a good Garrison, and that the *French* King keeps a Consul here. *Heylin* says, it stands at the Bottom of a Hill of its own Name; and that when the *Portuguese* were called in, they made a Store-house for their Merchandize, and fortified their Factory, to secure themselves from the Disorders of the People, as they

they pretended; and then picking a Quarrel with a Townsman, they slew him, and 150 others who sought to revenge his Death. He adds, that afterwards the K. of *Portugal* sent over 5000 Men, who joining to the *Arabians*, conquer'd most of this Kingdom, and destroy'd its best Cities. *Morery* places this Town 5 Leagues S. of Cape *Cantin*. Sir *William Monson* says, there's an open Road here about 11 Fathom deep, and that Ships are forced to ride out to Sea when a W. Wind rises.

5. *Centum-Putei*, *Centpuis*, or the Town and Fort of *Miaibir* or *Centopozzi*. The *Sansons* place it on a Mountain 50 Miles N. E. of *Azafia*. *Leo* says, it stands upon a Rock of excellent Marble, and has its Name from a great many Pits in the Suburbs, which preserv'd Corn 100 Years from Corruption. He adds, that the Inhabitants are slothful, and have no Mechanicks among them, except a few *Jews*. There were many other noted Towns here formerly, before they were ruin'd by the *Portuguese*.

2. *HASCORA*, *HAZCORA*, *ESCURA*, or *ASCORA*.

The *Sansons* bound it on the W. with Hills, which part it from *Duccala*; on the N. and E. with *Tedles*, and the Kingdom of *Taflet* in *Biledulgerid*, from the first of which 'tis parted by the River *Quadelhabid*, and from the latter by Mount *Atlas*; and on the S. with the Province of *Morocco Proper*, from which 'tis divided by the River *Tensift*. They make it almost 90 Miles from N. to S. where broadest, and 150 where longest. *Marmol* says, it was formerly call'd *Dominet*, and bounds it on the N. with the Green Mountain, on the W. with the River *Animney*, on the E. with the River of *Negroland*, and on the S. with some of the *Atlas* Mountains, which it receives into its Bosom. It produces large Apricocks, Figs, Grapes, Oranges, Olives, and all Sorts of Fruits, with which it furnishes the City of *Morocco*, thô 20 Leagues further W. 'Tis inhabited by *Africans*, descended from one of the Branches of the Tribe of *Musamoda*, from whom it had the present Name. The Inhabitants are politer and richer than those of *Duquella*, because not so much infested by the *Arabians*, and till their Ground,

which abounds with Corn and Cattle. They drive a considerable Trade, make good Cloth, and dress Leather very well. They us'd the same Arms with the *Bereberes* on the Mountains of *Hea*, before they had learn'd the Use of Cross-Bows and Firelocks. Those that live in Towns resemble the Citizens of *Morocco* in their Habit and Way of Living; but the Mountaineers are more brutish. *Marmol* adds, that upon the Decay of the Empire of the *Benemerini's*, the Towns of *Almedine* and *Elmedine*, both in this Province, set up for two Sovereign Republicks, and had Wars with one another till 1516, when they submitted to the King of *Fez*.

Dapper bounds this Province on the N. with the Mountains which part it from *Duccala*, on the E. with the River *Tensift*, and on the W. with *Guadilhabid*. He says, it produces likewise good Oil, and Honey of two Sorts, viz. one as white as Milk, the other clear and yellow like Gold; and there are some Goats. *Leo* says, here are also some Mines of Iron. The *Sansons* say, some of its Grapes are as large as Hens Eggs, and that this and the next Province of *Tedles* extend together from that Part of *Atlas* which is here called *Dedes* and *Tensift*, as far as the Conflux of the *Quadilhabid* and *Ommirabi*.

Its chief Mountains are, 1. *Tevendez*. *Dapper* says, 'tis Part of the Great *Atlas*, and lies 35 Miles S. of the Province of *Dara*. It produces no Wheat, but abounds with Barley and Woad, and feeds great Flocks of Sheep and Goats, tho' the Top is always cover'd with Snow, and seldom receives any Rain.

2. *Tensiftes*, another Part of *Atlas*, which *Dapper* says begins at the W. of Mount *Tevendez*, runs E. as far as Mount *Dedes*, and S. to the Deserts of *Dara*. He adds, that there are Castles upon it along the River *Dara*, encompassed with good Stone Walls, and that it abounds with Palm-Trees. The *Sansons* call them 50 Wall'd Towns.

3. *Guigina* or *Gogudeme*, the next Mountain, is (says *Dapper*) inhabited on the N. Side, but desert on the S. and abounds with small Cattle, Horses, and the Wild Beasts called *Lants*.

The chief Towns here are, 1. *Elmadina* or *Almedine*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 30. 54. Long. 12½. almost 38 Miles S. E. of *Aza-*
more;

more, and 96 E. of *Azafia*. Moll places it not far from a River that runs into the *Ommirabi*, Lat. 32 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 11. 12. 60 Miles from *Azamore*, and 90 from *Saffia*. Dapper sets it on the E. Side of Mount *Atlas*, about 20 Miles from *Almedina* in *Duccala*, and 30 from *Morocco*. The Inhabitants are always at War with their Neighbours, and durst not go abroad without a Musket. They have an Inn where Strangers are very civilly entertained. They live like *Europeans*, and love Veal, Mutton, and Fowls, but prefer the Flesh of Rain-Deer and He-Goats before that of the Female Kind. Their Women are fair, and don't hate Strangers. The *Sansons* say, 'tis the principal Town of this Province, and contains 10000 civil Families, where the Men follow Commerce, and the Women Manufactures. *Heylin* says, 'tis encompassed with Hills, and well inhabited by Gentlemen, Merchants, and Artificers, and that 'twas conquered for the King of *Fez* by a Merchant, whose Mistress the Governor had taken from him. The Town of *Alendin* or *Elmedin* lies about a Mile from it, and Dapper says, it contains about 1000 Houses, in a Valley encompassed with four great Mountains.

2. *Tagodast* or *Togodast*. The *Sansons* place it 44 Miles S. E. of *Elmedina*. *Leo* says, it stands on the Top of a Mountain, surrounded with 4 others, between which and the Town there are large fruitful Gardens, where there are great Quinces, and Plenty of Vines with red Grapes, so big, that the People call them Hen's Eggs. They have Store of Oil, which they export to the neighbouring Towns, and excellent Honey, both white and yellow. They have numerous Fountains, which run thro' the Town, join in one Stream, and serve their Water-Mills. The Inhabitants are pretty civil. Their Women are handsome, and adorn'd with Necklaces and Bracelets of Silver and Jewels. They have Judges and Priests, with great Numbers of Gentlemen and Tradesmen. They have abundance of Leather, which they export to *Fez* and *Mequinez*, and there's a fruitful Plain under the Town almost 6 Miles long, for which they pay Tribute to the *Arabians*. *Marmol* calls it *Isadagas*.

3. *Elgiumuha*. The *Sansons* place it on a Hill 10 Miles S. E. of *Tagodast*, and *Leo*

within 5. The latter says, it contains 500 Families, besides as many more in the Villages upon the Mountains. There are innumerable Springs, pleasant Gardens, tall Walnut Trees, and excellent Mines of Iron, with which they make abundance of Horse-shoes. Here are Smiths, Leather-Dressers, and abundance of other Tradesmen, and the neighbouring Hills abound with Barley and Olives. Dapper says, 'tis encompassed with 4 other Mountains as well as *Tagodast*. The *Sansons* say, that the Nobility of *Tagodast* being divided into two Factions, the common People, refusing to take either Part, retired hither, and built this Town, into which they admit none but Artificers, as those of *Tagodast* admit none but Noblemen.

4. *Bzo* or *Bizu*. The *Sansons* place it 20 Miles S. W. of *Elgiumuha*, and Dapper but 7, on a very high Mountain. The former say, 'tis a Trading Town. *Heylin* calls it *Ezo*, and says 'tis very ancient.

3. T E D L E S or T E D L A.

'Tis the most E. Province of *Morocco*. The *Sansons* bound it with *Hascora* on the W. Part of *Temefne* and the Mountains of *Ziz* on the N. *Segelmesse* on the E. and Part of *Hascora* on the S. They make it 75 Miles from N to S. where broadest, and 120 where longest from E. to W. *Marmol* says, 'tis small, but abounds with Corn, Oil, and Cattle, and the Inhabitants are wealthy. The Mountaineers are *Bereberes* of the Tribe of *Musamoda*, but the Vallies are inhabited by two *Arabian* Tribes, each of which can raise 9000 Horse. The Province is of a triangular Figure, and lies between the River *Ommirabi* and that of the *Negroes*. 'Twas subject to the *Benemerini* while they were Masters of *Mauretania Tingitana*; and upon the Declension of their Reign, fell into the Hands of the King of *Fez*, tho' at the same time it belonged to the Kingdom of *Morocco*; and our Author adds, that in his Time it peaceably obeyed the *Xeriffian* Family. Dapper bounds it with the River *Ommirabi* on the E. the *Guadelhabid* on the W. with Mount *Atlas* on the S. and extends it Northward to the Conflux of those two Rivers. He says, there are no great Plains in this Province, because of the Neighbourhood

hood of Mount *Atlas*, but very many Mountains cover'd with Snow. The few Plains that there are abound with Corn, and their Gardens are planted with all Sorts of Fruit Trees. Some of their Vallies abound with Vines, Nut and Fig Trees, which bear Figs of a prodigious Bigness. The Country is full of *Mahometans*, but there are some Christians and *Jews*, who are permitted to exercise their several Callings. The Mountaineers have no Religion, Temples, or Priests. When a Christian has a Mind to apostatize, they oblige him to give Notice first to his Brethren, and assign a Place where an equal Number of Christians and *Mahometans* are present; after which they place the Person in the Middle, where the Christians have Leave to use all the Arguments they think proper to oblige him to Constancy, and then he is at Liberty either to renounce, or continue the Profession of Christianity.

Heylin bounds this Province on the E. with *Tremesen*, and on the N. with the River *Servi*, which he says meets with the *Ommirabi* on the N. E. Frontier, and parts it from the Province of *Fez*.

The chief Mountains here are, 1. Mount *Magran*, in the S. E. Part of the Province. *Leo* bounds it with the Region of *Farcali* on the S. Mount *Seggheme* on the W. and Mount *Dedes* on the E. wherein the *Sansons* agree with him. He says, 'tis always cover'd with Snow. The Inhabitants move their Drovers of small and great Cattle from Place to Place, and carry their Houses, which are made of the Bark of Trees, upon Mules: But in the Spring they stay in one Place, and lodge their Cattle all Night in Cottages cover'd with the Boughs of Trees, where they kindle great Fires, which are apt to endanger the Cattle when the Wind is high. They are continually infested with Lions and Wolves.

2. Mount *Dedes*, another high cold Mountain. The same Author extends it from Mount *Magran* on the W. as far as Mount *Adesan*, and says, that in the S. Borders, upon the Plains of *Todga*, which are almost 80 Miles long, 'tis full of Fountains and Woods. There's the Ruins of an old City on the Top of it call'd *Tedfi*, with some Inscriptions upon the Stones, which the Inhabitants do not understand. Our

Author thinks it to be the same City which *Seriffo Effacali*, an Historian, calls *Tedfi*, and places near *Segelmesse* and *Dara*. The Inhabitants of this Mountain are very barbarous. Most of them dwell under Ground, and lodge their Cattle in Caves full of Salt-Petre; but they know not the Use of it. Some of their Houses are built of Stones, pil'd one upon another, without any Mortar; but there's no Town or Castle in all the Country. They have nothing to feed upon but Barley Meal boil'd with Water and Salt, which they call *Elhasid*. They have such Numbers of Asses and Goats, that their Houses stink of them. Their Garments scarce cover half their Bodies, and they are infested by great Swarms of Fleas. They have no Judge, Priest, or Governor, and are very thievish and quarrelsome. Few Merchants visit them, because they have no Commodities; and if any one imports Goods among them, he must pay a 4th Part for Custom, and runs the Risque of having all taken from him, unless he be conducted by their Captain. He adds, that their Women are very sluttish, and greater Slaves than their Asses. *Dapper* makes this Mountain 27 Miles long.

The chief Towns in this Province are, 1. *Eithiad* or *Aitiat*. The *Sansons* place it on a Hill, Lat. 30. 15. Long. 12. 45. 27 Miles N. W. of *Tefza*. *Dapper* says, it lies 4 Miles from *Cithibeb*, contains 300 Houses, has Walls on the Side towards the Mountains, craggy Rocks toward the Plain, and a very fine Mosque, moated round. *Heylin* says, here is Plenty of all Sorts of Provisions.

2. *Chythite* or *Cithitch*. The *Sansons* place it on another Mountain 14 Miles S. E. of *Eithiad*, and 17 W. of *Tefza*, which *Dapper* makes but 3. *Heylin* says, 'tis noted for the stout Resistance it has made from Time to Time against those of *Fez*.

3. *Tefza*. The *Sansons* place it on the River *Derna*, which falls into the *Ommirabi*, Lat. 30. 5. Long. 13. 17. *Moll* on the River *Ommirabi*, Lat. 32. Long. 12 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Leo* makes this the Capital of the Province, and says, it was built by the *Africans* upon the Side of Mount *Atlas*, about 5 Miles from the Valley, and took its Name from the excellent Marble call'd *Tefza*, of which its Walls are built. Many rich Merchants resided here

in our Author's Time, besides 200 Families of *Jewish* Tradesmen and Merchants. Several Foreign Merchants trade hither for black Mantles, with Hoods called *Ilburnusis*. It has many Judges and Priests, and several Mosques. The Inhabitants are neat in their Apparel, and their Women handsome and graceful. Their Gold Coins have no Image or Supercription. They pay the King of *Morocco* 20000 Ducats a Year. *Dapper* says, it was built by the *Arabians*, but two Miles from the Vallies; that there's a fine Plain at the Foot of it, call'd the Region of *Fixtele*; and that there's a Village of that Name on a Hill a Mile from the Town, which contains 700 Houses. The *Sansons* say, that *Efsa*, for having expelled two of its Burghers, was obliged to pay the Kings of *Fex* above 150000 Ducats, of which the *Jews* Synagogue paid 50000.

4. H E A.

The *Sansons* make it triangular, bound it with the *Atlantick* Ocean on the W. *Morocco* on the E. *Guzula* on the S. E. *Sus* on the S. and *Duccala* on the N. and extend it 105 Miles from N. to S. and 100 where broadest. They divide it from *Duccala* by the River *Tensift*, and from *Morocco* by the River *Asifnu-ahis*. *Leo* bounds it with the Ocean on the W. and N. with the Mountains of *Atlas* on the S. and on the E. with the River *Ef-shale*, which rises out of the said Mountains, and falls into the River *Tensift*. The Country is uneven, and full of rocky Mountains, Woods, and Rivers; yet 'tis rich and populous, and abounds with Deer, Hares, Goats, and Asses; but has few Sheep, Oxen, and Horses, and very little Fruit. The Inhabitants feed on unleaven'd Barley Bread, bak'd like a Cake in an Oven or an Earthen Pan. They generally wear a Coverlet call'd *Elchise*, like the *Italian* Blankets, which is wrapped round them, and girt about their Hips with a Woollen Girdle. The Batchelors shave their Beards and Heads, but their Married Men let their Hair grow in a Tuft upon their Crowns. They have no Virtue or Learning, only a few pretend to know the Laws of their Country; nor no Physicians or Surgeons, except some who are employ'd in Circumcising their Male Children. When they are

ill, they cauterize the Part affected with red hot Irons. They have no Regard to Justice; and when they travel, they take a Wife or a Whore with them, or else a religious Person of the Country, to which they are bound. They have a few small Horses, but those so nimble and mettlesome, that they will climb over the craggy Mountains like Cats. They are always unshod, and (together with the Asses) serve to till the Ground. The greatest Part of the People dwell upon the Mountains. Some of them, call'd *Idenacal*, inhabit that Part of *Atlas* which runs from the Ocean Eastward to *Igilingigil*, and divides *Hea* from *Sus*. *Leo* says, the Breadth of this Ridge is three Days Journey. 'Tis full of small Villages and Inhabitants, who feed upon Barley, Goats Flesh, and Honey, and wear neither Shirts nor any sew'd Garments, they being wholly unacquainted with Needle-work. Their Apparel hangs by a Knot upon their Shoulders, being fasten'd by Silver Buttons of an Ounce Weight. Their Women wear 3 or more Silver Rings upon their Ears. The richer Sort wear Bracelets, and Gold or Silver Rings on their Fingers and Legs; but the poorer Sort have only Rings of Iron or Copper. The Inhabitants, tho' they have Plenty of Game, are not given to Hunting. It abounds with Fountains and Trees, especially of Walnuts. The People often change their Seats like the *Arabians*. Their Arms are broad crooked Daggers, and Swords as thick as Scythes. 'Tis said, they can raise 20000 Men upon Occasion. He adds, that they have no Judges, Priests, nor Temples, and mind nothing but Villany and Lewdness.

Marmol says, it abounds with Barley, but no Wheat. The Inhabitants gather abundance of Wax from their Bees, which they sell to the *Europeans*. The People are naturally warlike. They have no Vineyards nor Gardens, tho' their Vallies are well water'd with Springs and Rivers. They plant no Olives, but what Oil they use is very rank, and made of the Kernel of a certain Fruit that grows upon a Thorny Tree called *Er-quen*. This Fruit is as big as a large Apricock, contains nothing but a Stone cover'd with a Skin, and when 'tis ripe, shines like a Star in the Night-time. The Goats feed upon it, but are not able to break the Stone;

so that the Natives gather the Stones from the Folds, and then extract the aforesaid Oil. None of the People can read, says *Marmol*, except the *Alfaqui's*, whose Example and Precepts are a standing Law to the rest; and tho' they are all *Mahometans*, yet they know nothing of *Mahomet* or his Sect. They have no Linen but what is bought at *Morocco* and *Safi* for Persons of Quality. They wear no Hats nor Caps, but only Woollen Rowlers half a Foot broad, which they run 5 or 6 times about their Heads like Turbans. The finest are of Cotton-Cloth strip'd with Red, with Tassels hanging down on each Side like a Fringe; but the *Alfaqui's* wear red Caps imported from *Toledo* or *Cordova*. Those who live in the Cities have a decenter Garb than the rest, for they wear colour'd Doublets, with long Skirts and Half-Sleeves, with a great many Buttons upon the Breast, and over it a Cassock that's somewhat finer. Their Women have long wide Linen Shifts, and a Veil or Mantle called *Haygne*. The Ladies of Quality cover themselves within Doors with a Cloth that's half Linen and half Silk, and fasten it on their Breast by a Silver Buckle. The People of Fashion lie in Coverings of shagged Tapestry, laying several Plaits of it underneath them, and leaving a Piece to cover them; but the common Sort lie only on Mats made of Bulrushes, or some Goats Skins, and cover themselves with their Wearing-Clothes. The Men are robust, and very jealous of their Wives, who are commonly handsome and fair. They eat their Cakes hot with Butter and Honey, or the Oil of Erquen, and sometimes with stew'd Goats Flesh. Sometimes they boil Meal with Milk or fresh Butter, which they call *Hacua*, like our Hasty-Pudding. They have another Dish call'd *Haeida*, which is a Piece of Dough boil'd with Water and Salt, with a Hole in the Middle filled with Butter or Oil, in which they dip their Bread when they eat it, and then drink up the Broth. When they wash their Hands, they hold them in the Air to dry, for they have no Napkins or Towels. They have no Water-Mills, tho' they have such convenient Rivers, so that their Women grind their Meal in little Stone Hand-Mills. They have no Soap, but whiten their Linen with a sort of Herb called *Gazul*. There are

many Villages here full of a turbulent Sort of People, who liv'd in a perpetual War with one another, till the Government fell into the Hands of their Xeriffs, for they liv'd at large, and neglecting the Measures of Law or Justice, were impatient under Controul. Their Arms are 3 or 4 Darts with sharp Steel Points, and a sharp Poniard bow'd like a Sickle, with the Edge inward, and 3 or 4 Slungs ty'd about their Middle. They knew nothing of Guns or Cross-Bows till within these few Years, that the Xeriff call'd them to his Assistance. Their Horsemen carry Spears with Leather Targets, and Cuttle-Axes made like Sickles. In Battles they always repair to steep inaccessible Places, and from thence tumble down Stones upon the Enemy; and they make such a prodigious Noise upon an Attack, that one would think their Numbers greater than they are. *Marmol* observes, that what has been said of the Manners, &c. of the People of *Hea*, may be applied to all the Mountaineers of *Barbary*.

Dapper says, there are some Mines of Gold and Silver, especially in the Island of *Mongador*, from whence the King of *Morocco* draws a great deal of Gold. The People eat Barley-Meal boil'd in Water, and sprinkled with Oil in Winter, and in Summer they boil it in Water and Butter, which is their Supper. For their Dinner in Winter, they have Bread and Honey, and in Summer Milk and Butter. They eat also boil'd Flesh, Onions, Beans, and sometimes Cuskoos. Instead of an entire Napkin, they spread several Pieces of Stuff upon the Ground. Their Caps are 10 Spans in Length, and two in Breadth, and dy'd Black with the Bark of Walnut-Tree; but old Men and Students wear them round, and lined. Their Chairs are of Mats twist'd with Hair and Bulrushes. Their Beds are of the same Stuff, and 9 or 10 Ells long. He adds, that their Women go generally with their Faces uncover'd.

Their chief Mountains are, 1. *Gebel el Hadith*, or *Giubel el Hand*, i. e. The Iron Mountain. The *Sanfons* place it in the N. Corner of the Province. *Leo* says, 'tis not to be reckon'd any Part of *Atlas*, and extends it from the Ocean Southward to the River *Tensift*, dividing *Hea* from *Duccala* and *Morocco*. The Inhabitants are called *Re-*

graga. 'Tis full of Deserts, which abound with clear Springs, Honey, Oil, and Arganick; but it has little Corn or Pulse. The Inhabitants are very religious in their Way, but few of them rich. A great many Hermits live on the Top of it, who drink Water, and feed only on the Fruit of some Trees, and whatever they do is reckon'd a Miracle. Their Punishment for any Crime is immediate Banishment for a certain Space of Years. They are a quiet People, and pay Tribute to their Neighbours the *Arabians*. *Ortelius* thinks this Mountain the *Focre* of *Ptolomy*. *Dapper* and the *Sanfons* begin it on the Coast a little S. of *Azafia*. The latter say, it can raise 12000 Fighting Men.

2. *Demensera*, *Tensara*, or *Demenfera*. *Leo* says, 'tis Part of *Atlas*, and extends E. from the Ridge of *Idenacal* about 50 Miles, dividing Part of *Hea* from *Sus*. 'Tis full of barbarous Inhabitants, who have abundance of Horses, and often war with their neighbour *Arabians*. They have many Noblemen or Governors, to whom the rest are very obedient. They have no Towns or Castles, but only some Villages or Cottages, where the better Sort reside. They have many Springs, which run into a River call'd *Siffaia*. They wear decent Apparel, are very industrious, and have great Quantities of Iron, which they export to other Places. There are many Jews here, who serve as mercenary Soldiers, and are called by the other Jews in *Africa*, *Carraum*, i. e. Scripture-Men, for they reject Traditions. This Mountain abounds with Box, Mastick, high Walnut-Trees, and the Olives call'd *Argans*, the Oil of which they use in their Lamps as well as in their Sauce. 'Tis said, they can raise 25000 expert Soldiers. *Dapper* extends it E. as far as the Mountain *Nesifa*, or that which the *Sanfons* call *Nesifa* in *Morocco*. We have already described the People of the Mountain *Aiduacal* or *Idenacal*, a Ridge of three Days Journey in Length, from the Ocean to *Igilingigil* on the Borders of *Sus*, and shall proceed to give an Account of the chief Towns, which are,

1. *Goza*, *Goz*, or *Gozen*, a little Town on the Coast, with a good Harbour, well frequented by Ships in the N. Part of the Province, which is thought to be the *Sariga* of *Ptolomy*. The *Sanfons* place it about 10 Miles N. W. of *Teculeth*.

2. *Teculeth* lies on a River that runs into the Ocean near *Santa Clara*, Lat. 30 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 10. 10. according to the *Sanfons*, and 12 Miles N. E. from *Tednest*. *Leo* places it 18 Miles E. from it, and says, it contain'd in his Time about 1000 Houses, with a stately Temple, 4 Hospitals, and a Religious Monastery. It has a famous Harbour on the Ocean call'd *Gos*, (probably the Author means *Goz* above-mentioned) which he says makes it richer than *Tednest*. The adjacent Fields abound with Corn and Pulse. The *Portuguese* destroyed it in 1514. *Marmol* says, it has a small Harbour, with an old Castle called *Aguz*, upon the Mouth of the River *El Eba* or *Dura*, which *Ptolomy* places Long. 7. 20. Lat. 31. 40. and that both the Houses and Walls are built of Earth. He tells us, that 'twas first destroyed by *Abdulmen*; since which the Xeriffs have repeopled it. He adds, that the Inhabitants are civiler than those of *Tednest*, and that it lies on the Side of a Mountain, which affords great Hives of Bees, whose Wax they sell to the *European* Merchants. *Dapper* says, they have not many Sorts of Fruit, which he ascribes more to the Dulness of the Inhabitants than the Fault of the Soil, since there are in many Places abundance of Figs, Peaches, and Nuts.

3. *Hadechis* or *Hadequ's*. The *Sanfons* place it on the River *Sauencius*, 15 Miles E. of *Tednest*, on the same River. *Leo* places it 8 Miles S. of *Teculeth*, upon a Plain, and says, it contain'd in his Time 700 Families, had a Wall, Churches, and Houses, all of Free-stone, and Yearly Fairs for 15 Days, at which they sold great Store of Cattle, Butter, Oil, Iron, and Cloth, to the neighbour Nations. Their Women are white, fat, and very comely, and their Husbands so brutishly jealous, that they murder any Man that does but speak to them. They have no Judges, Learning, nor Regard to Merit, so that the richest rules as Kings. Their Religious Matters are managed by *Mahometan* Priests, who are exempted from all Taxes. He adds, that the *Portuguese* plunder'd this Town in 1513, or as *Dapper* says in 1511. The latter places it 3 Spanish Leagues from *Teculeth*, and says, it contain'd near 20000 Houses before the *Portuguese* took it, but now only a few Jewish Merchants.

4. *Tednest*.

4. *Tednest*. The *Sanfons* place it on the same River, about 10 Miles from its Influx into the Ocean. *Leo* says, 'twas built by the *Africans* on a fine large Plain, and encompassed with a lofty Brick Wall. They have no Inns or Publick Houses for lodging of Strangers, so that the People cast Lots who shall entertain them; and this they do very honourably, tho' the Stranger be never so mean; only when he goes away, he must bestow a Compliment upon his Landlord, and then he is sure to be welcome when he returns again. But if he be not a Merchant, he may chuse any great Man's House for his Lodging, without being obliged to make any Compliment at his Departure. And if a Beggar or Pilgrim pass this Way, he is entertained in an Hospital built at the publick Charge for the Poor. In the middle of the City there was an ancient, great, and noble Temple, said to have been founded when the King of *Morocco* was Sovereign of the Country. It had a great Cistern in the Middle, with many Priests and religious People belonging to it. There were several other neat small Temples here, and 'twas the Residence of about 100 *Jewish* Families; but 'twas ruin'd in the 920th Year of the *Hegyra*, and only resorted to by Ravens, &c. *Marmol* says, that the Banks of the River on which it lies are beautified with Fruit Trees and all Sorts of Kitchen Herbs. He calls it the Metropolitan of this Province, and tells us, that both its Houses and Walls are built of Wood, and square Lays of Earth cemented with Plaster. Most of the Inhabitants are Shepherds and Labouring-Men, who spend their Time in the Fields. The rest are Tradesmen, particularly Shoemakers, Taylors, Carpenters, Locksmiths, and some *Jewish* Goldsmiths and Merchants, who sell the coarse Cloth made in the Country, and trade in the Linnen imported from *Safi*, where the *European* Merchants exchange it for Wax and Leather. There are no Baths nor Colleges here. In our Author's Time, about 200 Families of *Jews* liv'd in a separate Quarter of this City, where they were allowed their own Law, but paid the Governor a Ducat per Head, besides extraordinary Taxes, which were ten times heavier upon each of them, than upon the richest Merchants in the City. Besides, they were

incapacitated from being Proprietors of Houses or Lands, or other Immoveables. He observes, that it has been destroy'd several times, particularly when the *Amuhades* conquer'd *Morocco*, and when *Abdulumen* reduc'd it to such an Extremity, after an obstinate Siege, that it became a Receptacle for Wild Beasts. But the neighbouring Country being pleasant and fruitful, it was soon repeopled, and render'd it self famous by declaring first for the Xeriffs. Upon this, Xeriff *Mahomet* resided here, built a noble Palace, with fine Gardens and Waterworks, and he made it his Place of Arms against the Christians of *Safi* and *Azamore* that infested his Provinces, under *Tahaya* *Aben Tafus*, an *African* Captain, and Vassal to the King of *Portugal*, who being a mortal Enemy to the Xeriffs, join'd against them with his Friend *Nugno Fernandez de Atayde*, General of the *Portuguese* Army, in 1514. While *Mahomet*, his two Sons, and the Flower of his Army, were at *Tednest*, *Marmol* says, the two Generals marched against them at the Head of 400 Christian Horse, 3000 *Moorish* Horse, and 800 *Arabian* Foot, upon whose Approach the Xeriff marched out, and was routed by the Vanguard under the *African* Captain, before the *Portuguese* General came up, with the Loss of 800 Men, besides 200 Prisoners; upon which he and his two Sons fled, and left behind them 3000 Head of small and great Cattle, besides a great many Horses, Camels, and Mules, to the Victors, who took the City without Opposition. He adds, that it continued afterwards in the Hands of the King of *Portugal*, till the Xeriff having assembled another Army, recover'd it, and secur'd it to his Successors to this Day. *Dapper* says, it lies in a marshy Soil; and that since it was destroyed in 1514, the *Jews* have built above 500 Houses in it. The *Sanfons* say, it contains in all about 1500. *Heylin* mistakes the River on which it stands for the *Tensist*, and says, it was abandoned in 1514, upon a Report that the *Arabians* designed to sell it to the *Portuguese*.

5. *Ilenfugaghen*. The *Sanfons* place it on a Mountain 17 Miles S. E. from *Tednest*, and 12 S. from *Haddechis*. *Leo* makes it but 8 Miles from the latter, and says, it had 200 Families in his Time, who were constantly

stantly at War with their Neighbours, had no Priests, Judges, or Lawyers, and were very treacherous and wicked. Their Mountains have no Fruit, but abound with Honey, which serves them both for Food and Traffick; but they throw away the Wax as useless. *Dapper* says, 'tis a strong Town, built in Form of a Citadel, and that there's a little River at the Bottom of the Mountain, on which it stands.

6. *Tefegdelt*. The *Sansons* place it on a Hill near the River *Tefethna*, 25 Miles S. W. of *Ilensugaghen*; *Moll* on a little River that runs into the Ocean, 15 Miles S. of *Hadequis*. *Leo* places it 12 Miles S. of *Teyent*. He says, 'tis naturally fortified with a high Rock instead of a Wall, and contain'd above 800 Families in his Time. 'Tis encompassed with fine Gardens and Orchards full of all Sorts of Trees, especially Walnuts. The Inhabitants are rich, and pay no Tribute to the *Arabians*, with whom they are at continual War. They have abundance of Horses. Our Author says, the People are inferior to none for Civility, and set Watchmen at every Gate to conduct all Strangers either to the House of their Acquaintance, or to an Inn, where they are entertained according to their Quality at the publick Charge. They are strict Observers of their Words, but mighty jealous. In the Middle of the Town there's a stately Mosque, with *Mahometan* Priests belonging to it. *Leo* adds, that the neighbour Villages lodge their Corn here, to secure it from their Enemies. *Marmol* says, this is reckon'd the Key of the Province, and that the Xeriff's Governor resides here for collecting his Revenues, and administering Justice. *Dapper* says, 'tis water'd by a River, and contains above 1000 Houses.

7. *Culesat* or *Culeibat*. The *Sansons* place it on a Hill 5 Miles S. from *Tefegdelt*. *Leo* says, 'tis called *Culeibat Elmurid* or *Elmubaydien*, i. e. The Rock of Disciples, and says, 'tis a Castle half a Mile from *Tefegdelt*, on the Top of a Mountain, encompassed with several others of an equal Height, and cover'd with craggy Rocks and huge Woods. This Castle is only accessible by a narrow Path on one Side, and was built in 1520 by a *Mahometan* Preacher, who making several Innovations in Religion, drew a great Number of Disciples after him, and at last

became a cruel Tyrant, till at the End of 12 Years he was killed by his own Wife, for lying with her Daughter by a former Husband. His Disciples had the same Fate; but his Grandson defended the Castle during a whole Year's Siege, and to this Day (says *Leo*) molests the People of *Hea* with continual War and Robbery, which he effects partly by some Horsemen, who pursue the Travellers that pass by the Castle, and partly by Gunners, who fire upon them at a Distance, the Highway being almost a Mile from the Castle. For this he is so hated by the People, that he has no Footing beyond this Mountain. He interred his Grandfather's Corps in the Castle, and caused the People to adore it as a God. But *Marmol* says, that at last he came to an Accommodation with the Xeriffs, and paid them Homage. *Dapper* says, this Castle lies between Rocks and great Trees, 7 Miles from *Eitdeuet*.

8. *Teijent*, *Teijuth*, or *Texenit*. The *Sansons* place it 15 Miles N. E. from the above-mentioned Castle, and on the other Side of the River *Tefethna*; *Dapper* in a Plain between two Mountains, and says, 'tis encompassed with a Wall of Free-stone.

9. *Mogadore* or *Mongadore*, an Island, which the *Sansons* place Lat. 30. 7. Long. 9. 12. two small Leagues from the Coast, and above 20 Miles N. of *Tefethna*: *Moll* Lat. 31. 10. Long. 9 $\frac{3}{4}$. about 10 Miles from *Tefethna*. *Dapper* says, 'tis an Island and Castle, and that the latter stands on the Continent, 5 Miles from the Ocean, near Cape *Ozem*. Some think the Island the *Erythraea* of the Ancients. He adds, that the Kings of *Morocco* keep a Garrison of 200 Men in the Castle, for the Security of the Gold and Silver Mines in the neighbouring Mountain. Sir *William Monson* says, it has a good Road for small Shipping, but no Fish nor Fishing Vessels.

10. *Tefethna*. The *Sansons* place it on the Coast, near the Influx of the River of that Name, into the Ocean, 35 Miles S. W. of *Tefegdelt*. *Dapper* says, 'twas formerly called *Bente*, *Tefeth*, or *Tamusiga*, and that 'tis a Place of War, with a Haven of 4 Spanish Leagues in Length, near the Beginning of the Great *Atlas*. *Leo* says, it lies on the N. Side of Mount *Atlas*, 3 Days Journey N. from *Messa* in *Sus*; that it contain'd 600 Families

milies in his Time, with a good Harbour for small Ships, frequented by the *Portuguese* Merchants for Goats Skins and Wax; and that 'tis encompassed with Walls and Towers of Free-stone and Brick, and was built by the *Africans*. He adds, that the Inhabitants are *Mahometans*, and have Judges for their Civil Causes, but revenge Murders by Way of Retaliation on the next of Kin. If the Murderer escapes, he is banished seven Years, and then returns and acquits himself by paying a Fine. The Inhabitants are white, courteous to Strangers, and have great Plenty of Barley and Goats, which last they keep at Night in their Dwelling-Houses. The *Sansons* say, it has a Fort. *Marmol* calls it *Testana*, and places it on the Point of a Promontory. He says, 'twas formerly call'd *Hercules's* Port, which *Ptolomy* places Long. $7\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 30. He tells us, 'twas once a Sovereign Republick, and maintain'd a Garrison upon the Custom of 10 per Cent. for the Wax, raw Hides, Indigo, and other Goods that were imported or exported. 'Tis now subject to the Xeriff, and kept under by a Governor and a Garrison. *Marmol* adds, that they have large Places set apart for Bee-hives.

11. *Agobel*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a small fortified Town near *Tednest*, whose Fortune it follow'd, and at last submitted to the Xeriff. *Dapper* says, it lies on a Mountain, and contains about 330 Houses.

12. *Alguel*, another strong Town on the Top of a steep Mountain, which *Marmol* says was attacked by the *Portuguese*; but they could not carry it. *Dapper* says, 'tis encompassed with Walls, and water'd with two little Rivulets.

13. *Eitdeuet*. The *Sansons* place it on a Mountain 27 Miles S. E. from *Tefegdelt*, and 14 S. of *Tagtes*. *Leo* says, 'tis inhabited by a sort of *Jews*, who boast of their Descent from King *David*, tho' they have exchange'd their own for the *Mahometan* Law. The Lawyers here are well vers'd in their Laws and Constitutions, which are collected into one Volume, called *Elmudvuna*, and commented upon by a famous Author call'd *Melic*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a very ancient Town, and contains about 700 Houses.

14. *Tagtes* or *Tegteze*, which the *Sansons* place on another Mountain, 22 Miles S. E. of *Tefegdelt*. *Leo* says, 'tis an ancient round

City, which is accessible by winding Steps hewn out of the Rocks. It has no Water, but what the Women fetch from a River at the Foot of the Hill about 6 Miles off. The Way to the said River is very narrow, and cut out of the Rock in the Form of Stairs. He adds, that this Country is much infested with Locusts, which devour the Corn, and sometimes cover the Ground. *Heylin* calls this Town *Tagles*, (which perhaps may be a literal Mistake of the Press for *Tagtes*) and says, 'tis a Den of Thieves and Cut-throats.

15. *Engueleguiguit*, *Iquilinguiguit*, or *Ichilinghighil*, is a little Town near a Mountain, which *Dapper* places two Leagues N. W. of *Eitdeuet*. *Heylin* places it on the Top of a Hill, and says, 'twas fortified by the Country People against the *Arabians*.

To these *Heylin* adds *Tenent*, a Sea-Port, which he says is in the Hands of the *Portuguese*; but we find it no where in this Province.

5. M O R O C C O.

The *Sansons* place this Province between the Rivers *Tensift* and *Asifnual*, and bound it with *Hea* on the W. *Duccala* and *Hascora* on the N. from which 'tis separated by the River *Tensift*, *Dara* in *Biledulgerid* on the E. and *Guzula* on the S. from which and *Hea* 'tis parted by the River *Asifnual*, and extend it 158 Miles from Mount *Nesifa* on the N. W. to the Mountains *Hadines* and *Hannimmey* on the E. and 74 where broadest. *Leo* makes it almost triangular, and says, the whole Country is a fruitful Plain, abounding with Cattle; but he places *Hea* to the S. and *Hascora* to the W. *Marmol* says, 'twas formerly called *Bocano Emero*; that its Capital was *Agmet* before the building of *Morocco*; and that the Inhabitants of the Towns and Villages are cunning, drive a small Trade, are decently cloath'd in their Way, and have numerous Troops of Horse, besides Musketers and Cross-Bow Men on Foot; but the Mountaineers are like the People of *Hea*. *Dapper* and the *Sansons* agree, that this Province extends to the Conflux of the *Tensift* and *Eciffelme* on the N. W. but the former says, it has also Part of *Sus* on the W. and S. with Part of *Dara* on the latter, and *Hascora* on the E. He says, it abounds with Corn, Flax,

Flax, and Hemp, Dates, Figs, Grapes, Apples, Pears, Olives, Nuts, and other Sorts of Fruit, and their small Cattle yield them Plenty of Milk, of which they make Butter and Cheese; but the Tops of the Mountains are for most Part cover'd with Snow, and produce nothing but Barley. He adds, that all their Towns and Mountains are very strong by Situation, and the Inhabitants rich and powerful, insomuch that if all their Forces were united under one Commander, they would be able to put great Designs in Execution. *Heylin* commends this for the fruitfulest and most populous Part of *Barbary*, and says, its Hills are as fruitful as the Vallies elsewhere.

The chief Mountains here are, 1. Mount *Nisifa*, *Nefusa*, or *Nesifa*, in the N. W. Part of the Province, dividing it from *Duccala* according to the *Sansons*; but *Leo* says, it parts it from *Hea*; that 'tis very populous, and abounds with Barley, tho' the Top is continually cover'd with Snow; that the Inhabitants are rude, and gaze at any Stranger that comes among them; so that in two Days, while our Author stay'd here, the Mob handled his white Vest so much, that it became black. He adds, that the River *Seffana*, which the *Sansons* call *Sefsava*, and *Dapper Xauxave*, parts this Mountain from the Mountain *Semedé* on the S. *Dapper* says, that *Nisifa* is also called *Derenderen*, *Aden*, or *Atren*.

2. *Semedé*. *Leo* extends it 20 Miles Eastward, and says, 'tis inhabited by a barbarous People, has Plenty of Springs, and is always covered with Snow. Here they eat Barley-Meal mix'd with Water, and stale Goat's Flesh, and lie on the bare Ground. They make Strangers Judges of all their Controversies. Our Author says, he was forced to stay here 9 Days to decide their Quarrels; after which they set him in a Church-Porch, and (after a short Prayer) presented him some with a Cock, or Nuts and Onions, others with a Handful of Garlic, and the richer Sort with a Goat, for there's no Money in this Country: And after this, he says, they sent 50 Horse to defend him in the Road from Robbers.

3. *Seusana*. *Leo* says, this begins in the S. where Mount *Semedé* ends, and that the Top is always cover'd with Snow. It sends forth a River of the same Name, for which Rea-

son we suppose it to be that which the *Sansons* call *Sefsava* to the E. of Mount *Semedé*, and *Dapper Xauxave*. The Inhabitants, says *Leo*, are brutish, and constantly at War with their Neighbours; but their only Arms are Slings, out of which they throw Stones with wonderful Dexterity. They feed upon Barley, Honey, and Goats Flesh. The Walls of their Houses are of rough Stone and Lime, and the Roofs are thatch'd. They have a great many Jews, who follow Masonry, making of Soap, Iron-Hooks, Horse-Shoes, and other Mechanick Trades. They have some learned Men and Lawyers, whom they consult on all Occasions. Our Author adds, that this Mountain is much infested with Robbers.

4. *Hanteta*. The *Sansons* place it in the E. Part of the Province. *Leo* says, 'tis the highest he ever saw, and that he took it at first Sight for Clouds. The Top is always covered with Snow, and the Sides are destitute of Herbs or Trees; but there's Plenty of excellent white Marble, which the slothful and ignorant Inhabitants know not how to hew or polish. There are also many fine Pillars and Arches, design'd by the Kings of *Morocco* for supporting Water-Conduits; but the Wars prevented it. Many of the *Carrain Jews* follow Mechanick Trades here, and pay great Sums to the Governor of this Mountain for their Licences. *Dapper* bounds it on the W. with Mount *Guidimiwe*, extends it E. for 6 Miles towards the Mountain *Animmey*, and says, the Inhabitants are rich and valorous.

5. *Sicfiwa* or *Secfiwa*, which the *Sansons* place in the S. E. Corner of the Province. *Dapper* says, 'tis a high Mountain; that the Inhabitants commonly wear white Hats; that there are old Men of 100 Years of Age, who feed their Cattle in the Fields; that Strangers are seldom seen there; that the People wear no Shoes, but a Sort of Soles against the Thorns and sharp Stones; and that they tie a Piece of Cloth with Strings about their Middle.

6. *Animmey*, another high Mountain, which the *Sansons* place in the N. E. Part of the Province. *Dapper* extends it Westward as far as the River *Tecubin*, and says, its Inhabitants are courageous and haughty.

7. *Temmelet*. The *Sansons* place it, with a Town of the same Name, in the S. Frontier

tier of the Province, between the Mountains *Semedé* and *Secfiva*. *Dapper* says, the People are wicked, but have a great Esteem for learned Men, and make Strangers Umpires of their Quarrels, as well as those of Mount *Semedé*. Their Apparel is very mean. They live almost like Beasts, and feed upon Barley and Oil of Olives. *Heylin* says, they differ from the rest of the *Mahometan* Sects, and challenge all their Opposites to Disputations.

The chief Towns here are, 1. *Elgiumba*. The *Sanfons* place it on the River *Sefsarva*, about 83 Miles N. W. of *Morocco*. *Dapper* places it two Miles from Mount *Atlas*, and says, 'twas once very populous, but now desert. The Inhabitants are Husbandmen. The *Arabs* among them are very liberal when the Whim takes them; but they are commonly guilty of Deceit and Perjury. *Heylin* says, 'tis a small but ancient Town.

2. *Imegiagen* or *Umegiagen*. The *Sanfons* place it on a Mountain 36 Miles S. E. of *Elgiumba*, and 55 W. of *Morocco*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a Town and Castle, encompassed with a Rock, which is its natural Defence.

3. *Imixmizi*. The *Sanfons* place it 35 Miles S. W. of *Morocco*, and *Leo* 14 W. from *Delgumuba*, on a Part of *Atlas*. He says, there's a Road near it over the Mountains to *Guzula* called *Burris*, i. e. A Way strewn'd with Feathers, because (as our Author thinks) of the Snow that falls there in Form of Feathers; and that there's a fine Plain near it 30 Miles long, which produces incomparable Corn, but is most uninhabited, because of the Plundering *Arabians* and the Soldiers of *Morocco*. *Dapper* says, it lies on the Side of Mount *Guidimyve*, and *Heylin* on a large Rock.

4. *Delgumuba* or *New Delgumueha*. The *Sanfons* place it almost 30 Miles S. W. of *Morocco*. *Leo* says, 'tis a large and impregnable Fort, lately built, and encompassed on every Side with Mountains, about 40 Miles from *Morocco*, upon the Top of a Mountain, from whence springs the River *Asifnu-al*, i. e. the River of Noise, because it breaks out of the Hill with a terrible Noise, and makes a very deep Gulph. Our Author adds, that here were in his Time almost 1000 civil, neat Families, who followed Mechanick Arts. *Dapper* calls it *Gemaagigid*, and says, 'tis a fine Town on the Mountain *Sic-*

siva, about 25 Miles from *Morocco*, and that the People are sluggish and jealous.

5. *Agmet*. The *Sanfons* place it near a little River about 26 Miles S. E. of *Morocco*. *Leo* says, that 'twas built on a Hill by the ancient *Africans*; and that while *Muachidin* was Sovereign of it, it contain'd 6000 Families, who were noted for Civility, and enjoyed great Plenty and Splendor, having in its Neighbourhood abundance of Vines and pleasant Gardens, besides the little River, whose Water always looks white, and a Field near it that yielded 50 fold every Year; but now 'tis only inhabited by Wild Beasts. *Marmol* says, this was once the Metropolis of the Province, and *Ptolomy's Emere*, which he places Long. 9. 20. Lat. 29. 30. He says, there's a Lake in the Neighbourhood which receives all the Water from the Mountain, and is very large and deep, which renders it obnoxious to Storms. The *Sanfons* say, that *Agmet* lay on a River of its own Name, and was called *Little Morocco*. *Heylin* places it on the River *Tensift*, and says, there's still a Fort and some scattering Houses.

6. *Tenessa*. The *Sanfons* place it near the Mountain *Gedineva*, 48 Miles S. W. from *Morocco*. *Leo* says, it stands 8 Miles E. of the River *Asifnu-al*, upon a Hill called *Ghedmin*, which the Inhabitants till, and pay one Third of the Crop by Way of Tribute to the *Arabians*; but they durst not till the fine Plain at the Foot of it for fear of that People. *Heylin* says, 'tis an old Town, but well fortified.

7. *Morocco* or *Maroc*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. 29. 20. Long. 12. 10. between the River *Niftis* or *Nestis*, and another little Rivulet called *Agmet* by *Dapper*, which run both into the *Tensift*: *Moll* Lat. 31 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 11 $\frac{1}{3}$. above 100 Miles S. E. from *Saffia* and *Azamora*. *Leo* places it 14 Miles from *Atlas*, and 6 from the River *Tensift*, upon a very large Field, and calls it one of the greatest Cities in the World, said to have been founded in the 424th Year of the *Hegyra* by *Joseph* the Son of *Tesfa*, K. of the Tribe of *Luntana*, when he marched into this Country. He gives this Account of it: He says, the Buildings are stately and artificial beyond Expression; and that in the Reign of K. *Hali*, the Son of *Joseph*, it contain'd above 100000 Families, had 24 Gates,

and a thick white Stone Wall, besides a great many Temples, Colleges, Baths, and Inns, built after their own Fashion. The most magnificent of all their Temples is that in the midst of the City, built by *Hali* the Son of *Joseph*, the first King of *Morocco*, whence 'tis commonly called the Temple of *Hali Ben Joseph*. *Abdul-Mumen*, his Successor, pull'd it down, and rebuilt it more sumptuously than before, in order to sink his Predecessor's Fame, and eternize his own; but it still bears the Name of *Hali*. The second Tyrant built another Temple near a Rock in the City, which his Grandson *Manfor* enlarged to the Extent of 50 Cubits every Way, and adorned it with the Pillars imported from *Spain*. The Roof was covered with Lead, and at every Corner were Pipes to convey the Rain-Water down to a Cistern or Vault below, of equal Bigness with the Temple it self. The Steeple is built of hard smooth Stone like an Amphitheatre, being above 100 Ells round, and higher than the Steeple of *Bononia*. The Stairs are 7 Hands Breadth, and lighted with Windows made wider within than without. It rises to a Spire like a Sugar-Loaf, about 2 Spears long, and 25 Ells round, which has 3 Pinnacles, ascended to by Wooden Ladders. On the Top of the Spire stands a Gold Half-Moon upon an Iron Bar, with 3 or 4 Golden Balls of different Sizes underneath, the greatest of which is set lowest, and the least highest. From the Top one may discover the Promontory of *Azaphi*, thô 30 Miles off, and see above 50 Miles into the plain Country. The Inside of this Temple is ordinary, but the Arches of the Roof are very curious. 'Tis never frequented by the People but on *Fridays*, and that Part of the City where it stands was uninhabited in our Author's Time; whereas 'tis said, there were once above 100 Booksellers Shops under its Porch: But the third Part of the City was then uninhabited, and not a Bookseller to be seen in the whole Town. Thô 'tis not of above 500 Years standing, yet continual Wars, and the frequent Alteration of its Magistrates, have brought it to Decay. In the Reign of *Abraham*, King *Hali*'s Son, one *Elmaheli*, a Highlander and a *Mahometan* Priest, rebelled against his natural Sovereign, and with an Army intercepted his

Return to the City, and obliged him to fly to Mount *Atlas*. After which the King went to *Oran*; but finding no Relief there, he mounted his Horse, with his Queen behind him, and fled to a Rock upon the Sea-Shore, where he threw himself, his Queen, and his Horse, off into the Sea. In the mean time *Elmaheli* died, and his Successor *Abdul Mumen* took the City after a Year's Siege; upon which he killed *Isaac* the Son of King *Abraham* with his own Hands, and ordered all the Soldiers, and great Part of the Citizens, to be put to the Sword. This Man's Posterity reign'd from the 516th to the 668th Year of the *Hegyrâ*; at which Time they were dispossessed by a King of the *Marine* Family, who kept their Court at *Fez*, and governed *Morocco* by Viceroy's, till the 785th Year of the *Hegyrâ*.

To return to the City; *Leo* says, it has Vines, Palm-Trees, large Gardens, and fruitful Corn-Fields, within the Walls; but the Ground without is unmanur'd, because of the Excursions of the *Arabs*. There's an impregnable large Castle within, whose Walls, Towers and Gates, are of pure Marble; and within the Castle there's a stately Temple, with a lofty Steeple, and a Golden Half-Moon, with three Golden Spheres, on the Top, weighing together 130000 Ducats. Our Author observes, that some Kings have attempted to take them down; but their Design was always cross'd by some Misfortune. In this Castle, he says, there's also a great College, with 30 Halls belonging to it, one of which in the Middle is very large, and finely painted and carv'd, being the Place allotted for the publick Lectures while Learning flourish'd among them. All their Porches and Roofs were of painted shining Stone called *Ezzulleia*. In the Middle of this College there's a fine clear Fountain, enclos'd with Walls of white polish'd Marble, and formerly it had a great many Students, who had their Diet and Cloathing *Gratis*, and several Professors, who had some 100, others 200 Ducats a Year, and admitted of no Hearers but such as were perfectly vers'd in the Arts they profess'd. He adds, that the Castle has also 12 Courts, with curious Structures. The first was the Apartment of above 500 Christians, who always attended the King, carrying Cross-Bows before him. The second

cond was called the House of Affairs, being the Lodgings appointed for the Lord Chancellor and the King's Privy Council. The third was called the Court of Victory, in which the Armour and Ammunition was lodged. The 4th belong'd to the King's Master of the Horse, with three Stables adjoining, each of which had 200 Horses, and large Conveniencies for Straw, Barley, and Corn. The Corn is lodged in several Rooms, each of which will contain above 300 Bushels, and there's a Hole in the Roof to which the Beasts laden with Corn ascend by Stone Steps, and so the Corn is put in at that Hole; and when they want to take out any, there are other Holes below, out of which it runs upon the first opening. The other Courts are for the Lodgings of the King's and Noblemen's Sons, the King's Concubines and Ladies of Honour, the King's Guard, and for the Reception of Ambassadors, &c. Among these there's a square Building, containing several Galleries, with stately Glass Windows curiously painted with Histories. On the Side of the Castle next the Fields there's a Prospect of a fine large Garden, diversified with all Sorts of Trees. Near the Garden there's a Park wall'd round, where all Sorts of Wild Beasts were kept, only the Lions had a distinct Apartment, call'd to this Day the Lion's Den. This fine Structure had a stately Porch of excellent Marble, in the midst of which a Marble Lion stood upon a Pillar, throwing clear Water out of his Mouth into a Cistern. Each Corner of the Porch was adorned with a Leopard of Party-colour'd Marble, that naturally represents its Spots, and is to be found no where but in a certain Part of Mount *Atlas* 150 Miles off. Such was the Magnificence of this noble Structure in the Time of *Mansor*, who built it; but *Leo* says, 'tis now in Ruins. He observes, that this *Mansor's* Dominions reach'd from *Messa* to *Tripolis*, and that he was Lord of *Grenada* in *Spain*, with great Part of *Castille* and *Portugal*; that in his Son's Time, the Success of the Christians contributed to the Decay of *Morocco*; and that after his Death, the Quarrels between his 10 Sons gave the *Marine* Family of *Fez* an Opportunity to usurp the Government, and leave the City expos'd to the *Arabs*, who have reduc'd it to extreme Misery.

Marmol says, 'tis the pleasantest and best situate City in all *Africa*. We shall add his Account of it as follows: In some of its ancient Buildings there are Tables of Alabaster, with *Arabick* Inscriptions, importing, that the Founder employ'd 30000 Slaves about it, and made it his Residence. 'Tis encompass'd with delicate Walls made of Chalk and Sand, mix'd with a fat Sort of Earth, which renders the Cement so hard, that if you strike upon it with a Pick-ax, it casts Fire like Flint; and our Author observes, that there is not one Breach in them, tho' the City has been so often plunder'd. 'Twas the greatest and richest City of all *Africa* in the Time of the *Lautunes* and *Almohades*; and as an Instance of this, he says, he has seen a Piece of Alabaster here as high as a Man, plac'd upon an ancient Tomb, with this Inscription in *Arabick*: *I was Ali the Son of Atia, who commanded 100000 Men, possessed 10000 Horse, and in one Day caused 101 Pits to be digged for watering them. I married 300 Girls, and was always faithful and victorious, being one of Jacob Almanzor's 24 Generals. The 40th Year of my Age put an End to my Life. May whoever reads this Epitaph pray to God to pardon me.* The Temple above-mentioned, which was built by *Abdulumen*, and enlarged by his Grandson *Mansor*, was by him also adorned with the Gates and other Ornaments which he brought in Triumph from the great Church at *Sevil*, and with two Bells that he also brought out of *Spain*. The greatest of the Balls upon the Spire will hold 8 Measures of Corn, and the uppermost less in Proportion. The Bodies of the Balls are of Copper, cover'd wth a thick Plate of *Tibar* Gold; and the *African* Historians say, that one of *Jacob Almanzor's* Wives sold her Jewels to make them. But the Mob fancy some Spirits brought them thither, and still guard them; and this, says *Leo*, has frighten'd several of their Kings from meddling with them in Cases of Extremity. When King *Nacer Bucherituf* was attacked on all Sides by the *Arabians*, the *Portuguese*, and the King of *Fez*, he would fain have taken them down to pay his Troops; but the Citizens remonstrated, that they and their Children would be expos'd to Sale, rather than that the Honour of the City should be so much lessened. Nevertheless, if we may believe

Diego Torres, Muley Hamet in 1500 took down the uppermost Ball, and sold the Gold of it for 25000 Pistoles; but to appease the People, he caused the Copper Body to be gilt again, and put up in the same Place, and hang'd up the *Jewish* Goldsmith who had taken the Gold off by his Orders upon the Spire; yet the *Alfagui's* gave it out, that the Jew was hanged up there by the Guardian Spirits of the Golden Balls. Soon after this, says our Author, the Prince lost both his Crown and Life, which the People imputed to his Sacrilege; and since that, no body has offer'd to touch them. In ancient Times there were two large Apartments here, which were set apart for the Christians call'd *Musarabians*, whom the King employ'd as Soldiers, and allow'd to live there with their Families in a free Exercise of their Religion. They had that Name from their Knowledge of the *Arabick* Tongue, and were brought from *Spain* by *Jacob Almanzor* for his Guard. They were commonly 500 Horse, well mounted and paid. They continued a long time in this Service, till *John I. King of Castille*, recalled them to *Spain*, and gave them large Possessions and Privileges. Our Author observes, that the Name of *Musarab* is still made use of in 7 Parish Churches at *Toledo*, where the *Musarabian* Service and the *Gothick* Ceremonies are continued. In 1219, says *Leo*, 6 Saints came hither to preach; but they were put to Death by the *Moors*, because they inveigh'd against *Mahometism*. Since that, the *Musarabians* had such an Interest with the King, that they got Leave to erect a Convent of Grey Friars here; upon which several *Franciscans* came hither from *Spain* and preach'd; but they were all put to Death at the Instigation of the *Alfagui's*. At the Xeriff's Magazines they make 4600 Weight of Powder, and several Sorts of Arms, every Month: But in 1569, a Clap of Thunder blew up the Magazine and several neighbouring Houses. The *Jews* liv'd formerly near the Heart of the City; but in our Author's Time they were removed by the King to a remoter Corner, in order to separate them from the *Moors*. They live in a wall'd Inclosure, with one Gate that leads to the City, and another to their Church-yard. Most of them are Goldsmiths, and some Merchants or Tradesmen.

The richest are those that manage the Revenues of the Governors and of the King's Children, for the *Moors* love to make the *Jews* their Stewards; and our Author says, they find their Account in it. All the *Jews* here pay a Ducat *per* Head, besides the ordinary Taxes. About the Middle of the City there's a large Place with a rais'd Plot of Ground in the Middle, where the Criminals that have no Plaintiff present are executed on several Gibbets, on which some are hung by the Feet, with their Throats cut. Some are left to die in that Posture without their Throats cut, and others are hung up by one Arm with their Bellies ripped open. But if there be a Plaintiff, he executes Justice himself, either by smothering the Criminal, cutting his Throat, running him thro' with a Spear, selling him for a Slave, or suffering him to buy his Life for a Sum of Money.

The Building where the large Cistern is, formerly mention'd, receives 400 Aqueducts, which lie very deep in the Ground, and were digged, as some say, by 20000 Christian Slaves. 'Tis said, the Water comes 6 Leagues off from a River that rises out of Mount *Atlas*, whose Channel is covered all the Way to the City, so that no body can see whence the Water comes. Several Kings have put Men into the Aqueducts to trace out the Spring; but all of them pretended they could not get along for some Obstacle or other. But in our Author's Time, the Xeriffs dug great Pits about two or three Leagues from the City, where the Ground begins to rise; and having gather'd all the Water into a Cistern, convey'd it by an Aqueduct into the City, the Pits and their Avenues being shut up; so that in case of a Siege, no body can trace the Aqueduct, or know whence the Water comes, in order to cut it off; and our Author thinks, that all the former Aqueducts were of the same Nature. The same Xeriff also drew a Canal upon the E. Side of the City as far as Mount *Agmet*, which drives above 50 Mills in a Plain, and waters several Gardens belonging to the *Andalusian Moors* on its Banks; for the Xeriff parcelled out Lands to them in that Quarter, allowing them Pay like Soldiers; and 'tis from thence that they come to Sale and infest the *Spanish* Coast with the light Gallies.

leys that are commonly in that River. Their Leader is an *Andalusian Moor* called *Degali*, i. e. the Cheat; and at *Morocco* they have a separate Quarter for themselves, which is called *New Orgive*, because the first that came thither were of that City.

Marmol adds, that the Inhabitants are proud, and mortal Enemies to the Christians. They speak the Language of the *Bereberes*, wear colour'd Cassocks embroider'd down to the Feet, with small Pieces cut out Lozenge-wise, and over these they have Vests of fine Camlet, or Silk and Worsted Stuffs. They have Shirts and Drawers of white Cloth, and Scarlet Caps with small Turbans. The Women are very civil and airy. Their Garments are either of Silk or fine Linen, and reach down to their Feet. They wear no Drawers, as the Women of *Fex* do, and never go abroad unless it be to Church, or to make a Visit; and when they go to bath, they always cover their Faces with a Veil; yet they are very Jilts, and their Husbands not a little jealous. They feed higher than those of *Sus*; for besides Plenty of Corn, Meat, Butter, and Dates, they have Store of Fowls and Venison, and all the Niceties of *Europe*. *Marmol* concludes, that the City was very populous in his Time, and improving every Day, because of the Prince's Favour.

Dapper places this City in Lat. 30 $\frac{1}{2}$. He says, 'tis fortified with Towers, Bulwarks, and large Ditches. *Gramaye* tells us, there are 45 great Streets, besides an infinite Number of small ones; and that the 4 Golden Apples above-mentioned are 7 Hundred Weight. Some say, they were the Portion of a Daughter of a King of *Gago* married to the King of *Morocco*, by Vertue of which the Kings of *Morocco* have been Heirs to the Kingdom of *Gago*, and send Men hither from Time to Time to fetch Gold. Half a League from the Town, over against the Palace, there's a Royal Orchard call'd *Monserat*, with above 15000 Lemon Trees, as many Orange and Palm Trees, and about 36000 Olives, besides several others, and a great Number of Flowers and Simples. 'Tis water'd by a River full of Fish, which comes down from the Mountains. *Moquet* says, that in the first Court of the Palace there are three stately Edifices of the *Moorish* Fashion, and adorned with Fountains, which

play the Water into Marble Basins. In the second Court there are several Balconies, supported by curious Pillars of Marble; and there are several Fountains of Marble, where the *Moors* wash before they go to Prayers. *Dapper* says, there are almost 4000 *Jews* here. The Houses are generally low, small, and built only of Clay, plaister'd with Lime; but those of Persons of Quality are fair and large, built of Stone, with a high Turret in the Middle to let in Air. The Roofs are flat. Most of the Mosques are of Marble, and cover'd with Lead. Half a League from the Town there's a Bridge over the *Tensift*, where the Water is turned off into Canals, for the Convenience of the Inhabitants to water the Gardens, and drive the Mills. The Inhabitants of *Morocco* are very well made, the Women generally white, but some of them pretty brown. There's a great many Troopers here, who keep fine Horses, and manage them with a great deal of Skill. They delight much in Hunting, and keep several Fowls for Diversion, which come from Mount *Atlas*. *Morery* says, that on the S Side of the City there's a Fortress, which contains 4000 Houses; that the 4 Gold Globes weigh 130000 *Barbary* Ducats, which *Roberts* computes at 58500 *l.* Sterling; that the College near the Mosque, built by *Abdulmumen*, has a Hall embellished all over with Mosaick Work, a Court paved with Alabaster, and a Basin in the Middle all of one Stone, the biggest in *Barbary*; that there's a fine large Place just against the King's Palace called the *Cereque*, for Plays and publick Rejoycings. The Tower of *Ali Ben Joseph's* Mosque is reckon'd by the *Sansons* the highest in *Africa* or *Europe*; that the Walls are 12 Foot thick; the Stair-Case so wide and easy, that 3 Men a-breast may ride up on Horseback. There are 3 Silver Globes on the Top, the biggest holds 12 Measures of Corn. They were placed there by the Founder, in Memory of a great Victory he gained over the Christians in *Spain*, this Silver being a 10th of the 5th Part of the Booty. *Morery* says, that near the Mosque of *Quiwir* there's a fine College, endowed with a Revenue for several Professors, and a great Number of Scholars, for whom there are 400 Chambers pay'd with Chequer-work, great Halls for the Schools,

Schools, and pleasant Galleries; that the Christian Merchants live near the Custom-House, and trade much in Silks, Linen, Cotton, &c. *Marmol* says, the Castle above-mentioned was built of Marble; but the greatest Part of it is now in Ruins, as well as the Park; and that its Gardens are used by the Citizens for a Dung-Field. *St. Olon* says, that in his Time this City contained but 25000 Inhabitants; that no Care was taken to repair the Ruins; that *Muley Ismael* took down the Golden Apples from its famous Mosque, and hid them in his private Treasury, tho' the *Moors* thought them plac'd under such a Constellation, that the Devil would break the Necks of those that attempted it. The *Sanfons* say, that this City, which was once 12 Miles in Compass, has now but 5 or 6 Gates. *Roberts* says, there was an Exchange here, which is now taken up by Mechanics; that formerly every Trade had a separate Street; and that the Customs are the same with those of *Fez*. We refer the Curious to his Map of Commerce for the Coins, Weights and Measures, used in this City. *Luyts* places it 160 Miles E. from the *Atlantick* Ocean, 100 Leagues S. of *Fez*, as much N. E. from *Tarodant* in *Sus*, and 107 Spanish Leagues from the Streight of *Gibraltar*. *Moll* makes it 105 Miles from the Ocean, 170 from *Fez*, almost as much from *Tarodant*, and 285 from the Streight of *Gibraltar*.

Captain *Smith*, who with other *English* Gentlemen were in *Barbary* about 100 Years ago, as we find in *Churchill's* Collection of Travels, Vol. II. places it 14 Miles from Mount *Atlas*, and but 60 from the *Atlantick* Sea. He says, the first of the Golden Balls above-mentioned was near 3 Ells round; that the uppermost resembled a Half-Moon, and over all there was a gilt Pyramid. They report, That the Prince of *Morocco*, who was espoused to the K. of *Ethiopia's* Daughter, dying before their Marriage, she caused those Balls to be set up for his Monument, and vowed Virginity. The Merchants Goods lie in a Place called the *Alfantica*, which is encompassed with a great Wall, and well guarded. The City Walls are wash'd away with frequent Floods; so he says, there only remained a few Tents for Strangers, *Larbes*, and *Moors*. He observes,

that *Muley Hamet II.* formerly mention'd in our Account of the Kings, was poison'd by his Empress, together with her own Daughter, his eldest Son, and his Daughter, to bring *Muley Zidan* to the Crown. He praises *Muley Hamet* for a noble, courteous Prince. His common Guard was 5000 Men; but when he made a Progress, he had 20000 Horsemen. He had few good Workmen of his own, so that he entertain'd Goldsmiths, Plummers, Carvers, Polishers of Stone, and Watchmakers, from *England*, to whom he gave 10 s. a Day, with Linen, Woollen, Silks, and what they would for Diet and Apparel, and Leave to export and import what they would Custom-free. Our Author adds, that one *Archer*, a Watchmaker, walking the Streets, met a *Moorish* Priest by the Way, who would have jostled him into the Dirt. *Archer* not knowing his Quality, box'd him, for which he was apprehended, and condemn'd to have his Tongue cut out, and his Hand cut off. But when it was known at Court, 300 of the King's Guard came and took him out of Prison, tho' they reckon that Fact next a-kin to Treason. There's another Story concerning this Mr. *Archer*, which we thought too curious to omit: Capt. *Smith*, says he, had a Lion's Whelp given him here, which he brought up and laid on his Bed like a Puppy-Dog, till he was as big as a Mastiff, and no Dog could be tamer to those he knew. But being bound home for *England*, he gave him to a *Marseilles* Merchant, that presented him to the *French* King, who sent him to King *James* in *England*, where he was kept 7 Years in the Tower. After this it happen'd that Mr. *Bull*, then Servant to Mr. *Archer*, went with some Friends to see the Lions, not knowing any thing of this: But the Captain says, the Beast smelled him before he came in Sight; and when he saw him, whin'd, groan'd, and tumbled about; so that Mr. *Bull* enquiring how he came there, prevail'd with the Keeper to let him in to him, and the Lion fawn'd upon him like a Dog, lick'd his Feet, Hands, and Face, and skipped about; but when Mr. *Bull* left him, he roar'd and scratch'd, and was so full of Rage and Sorrow, that in 4 Days after he would neither eat nor drink.

6. GUZULA or GEZULA.

The *Sansons* make this the least and Southermost Province of *Morocco*, 80 Miles from E. to W. and 75 where broadest. They bound it with *Hea* and *Morocco* on the N. Part of *Morocco* and *Dara* on the E. *Sus* on the W. from which 'tis separated by the Mountain *Ilda*, and *Tesset* in *Biledulgerid* on the S. *Leo* bounds it with *Atlas* on the N. and *Hea* on the S. and says, 'tis inhabited by a numerous savage People, that abound in Cattle, but want Money. They have no inclos'd Towns, but some of their Villages contain above 1000 Families. It has excellent Mines of Iron and Copper, but no King, Laws, nor Government, and they are continually at War with one another, only they observe three Days Truce every Week, which was enjoind them by a Hermit, and once a Year they have a Fair for two Months, when they treat all Merchants that come, to the Number of above 10000, and keep a Truce among themselves, appointing Captains out of each Faction, who patrol about at the Head of 100 Men, to preserve the Peace of the Fair, and to punish Thieves, who immediately upon Conviction are slain on the Spot like Beasts, and their Bodies thrown to the Dogs and Fowls of the Air. *Marmol* says, their Fair begins on *Mahomet's* Birth-day. Most of the Inhabitants are Copper-Smiths and Tinkers, and first discover'd to the *Africans* the Way of Melting and Casting Iron about 1540. He adds, that their Customs are like those of *Hea*, and that now they are subject to the *Xeriffs*, who favour them on Account of their faithful Services, and their raising them Foot-Guards, which carry Firelocks. Some think this Province to be Part of the ancient *Gatulia*, because of the Affinity of the Name, and that the ancient *Gatuli* liv'd at the Foot of Mount *Atlas*. *Dapper* bounds it with *Hea* on the E. and Mount *Atlas*, which parts it from *Morocco*, on the S. He says, the Inhabitants wear short Woollen Shirts without Sleeves, and Hats of Palm-Tree Leaves. They exchange their Iron and Copper Ware for Cloth, Spices, Horses, and other Necessaries. Their Fair is kept under Tents in a Plain between the Mountains, where there's a separate Row for

every Commodity: But the Cattle are kept by themselves in a Place without the Booths. In every Tent there's a little Nook or Arbour for Persons of Quality. This Fair is frequented by People from all Parts, as far as *Negroland*.

Their Arms, says *Dapper*, are Sabres, Lances, and great sharp Two-edged Swords. 'Tis said, they can raise 62000 Foot, so that they don't fear the *Arabs*, and have often plunder'd the City of *Morocco*. He adds, that they obey no Sovereign, and own the King of *Morocco* no otherwise than as their Ally; and that they were once tributary to the *Portuguese*, to whom they paid 12000 Ducats a Year; but this did not last long. Some Authors have charged them with being of no Religion; but *Dapper* says, they are *Mahometans*. The *Sansons* tell us, they have 3 Markets a Week. *Heylin* bounds this Province with Part of *Tremesen* on the E. and Part of *Sus* on the N.

There being no Towns of Note here, we proceed to the last Province of *Morocco*, viz.

7. S U S or S O U S.

Some extend it as far as Cape *Non* upon the Coast; but the *Sansons* say, that Part which properly belongs to *Morocco* reaches no farther S. W. than *Tejeut*, and this they bound with the *Atlantick* Ocean on the W. *Hea* on the N. from which 'tis parted by Mount *Atlas*, *Guzula* on the E. *Tesset's* Sandy Deserts on the S. and the other Part of *Sus* on the S. W. They extend it almost 130 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and 83 where broadest. *Leo* and *Dapper* bound it on the E. with the River *Sus*, from whence it has its Name, and which, according to the *Sansons*, runs thro' the S. Part of this Province into the Sea. He says, it abounds with Palm-Trees and Dates; but the latter will not keep above a Year. The People apply themselves all to Husbandry in *April* and *September*, when the River swells; but if it does not, their Harvest is spoil'd. Their Corn is ripe in *May*; but their Lands are very sandy, so that they have few Cattle. On the Coast there's a Temple, whose Rafters and Beams are made of Whale-Bones, for monstrous Whales are often cast dead upon the Shore; and the common People think there's a secret Power bestow'd by

by God upon the Temple, which is sudden Death to all Whales that pass by. But our Author observes, that there are Rocks on both Sides the Temple, that shoot two Miles into the Sea, and wound all Whales that strike upon them. They keep a Whale's Rib of an incredible Length, which lying on the Ground with the Convex Part uppermost, makes an Arch, whose Head cannot be reach'd by a Man on a Camel's Back. *Leo* says, it had lain there, by Report, 100 Years before he saw it. Their Historians affirm, that one who prophecy'd of *Mahomet* came from this Temple; and some say, that *Jonah* was cast forth by the Whale upon the Shore of *Messa*. Our Author adds, that the Coast abounds with Amber, which the *Portuguese* and *Fezzan* Merchants buy for less than a Ducat an Ounce. Some say, 'tis made of Whale's Dung, and others of *Sperma Ceti*, which being harden'd by the Sea, is cast upon the next Shore.

Marmol says, this Province contains the greatest Part of the whole Kingdom, and that the Inhabitants are richer and more civiliz'd than those of *Hea*; for besides their large Stocks of Corn and Cattle, they have had Sugar-Mills ever since the Reign of the Xeriffs, and with these they drive the most profitable Trade in *Morocco*. When the Xeriffs conquer'd *Mauretania Tingitana*, the eldest Brother gave this Kingdom to the younger, on Condition of paying Homage, which he did for a while; but at last outed his Brother of all *Mauretania Tingitana*, and several Provinces in *Numidia* and *Libya*.

Marmol adds, that the best Part of this Province is a Plain that lies to the W. along the River *Magarib*, which waters it, and is conveyed by Conduits to the several Villages. It produces Indigo, Allom, and the best Sort of Lattin, besides the *Genevra* Slaves, and the *Tibar* Gold, called by the Negroes *Narnaqui*, which are brought from thence every Year by Caravans. He calls that Part which extends from Cape *Aguer* to Cape *Non*, *Upper Sus*, and says, 'tis inhabited by *Bereberes*, divided into Tribes, who lodge in Forts and Places of Strength, and breed great Numbers of Horses, Camels, and other Cattle. He adds, that the Country abounds with Wheat and Barley, and in some Places with Citrons, Oranges, &c.

Dapper says, it was formerly a King-

dom, inhabited by the *Tangressi* and *Vacuaci*. The People differ little in their Habit from those of *Hea*, only some wear a Shirt with a Woollen Gown over it, and a Flaxen Turban on their Heads. Most of the Women are white, but some are black and tawny, which is ascrib'd to their marrying with Negroes. He adds, that tho' they are all *Mahometans*, yet they have an extreme Veneration for the Corps of *St. Augustin*, who they say lies buried near *Tagavost*.

Mouette, in his History of *Morocco*, annexes this Province to *Biledulgerid*, bounds it on the E. with *Dara*, and divides it into 7 Provinces. He says, 'tis a pleasant, rich, and fruitful Kingdom, abounding with Gold; and that the Inhabitants are better Warriors than all the other *Africans*, and have good Pasturage.

St. Olon says, the Province is but small, and not very populous, especially on that Side next to the Country of the *Negroes*; but he reckons there are about 15000 *Arabian* Villages. The King in his Time was at a great deal of Pains to reduce them, and there were still two Mountains which he had not master'd when our Author was there, the Inhabitants refusing to obey any but their own Captain. Their Mountains abound with Mines of Copper, and there are some of Gold. The *Sansons* say, the Mountains of *Atlas* spread thro' the whole Country with different Names. *Heylin* says, the Inhabitants know not how to boil or purify their Sugar-Canes.

Its chief Mountains are, 1. *Anchisa* or *Henquisa*, on the N. Side of the River *Sus*, according to the *Sansons*. *Leo* extends it almost 40 Miles E. from the *Atlas*, and says, 'tis inhabited by valiant Foot-Soldiers, one of whom will encounter two Horsemen. It produces Barley and Honey, but no Wheat. 'Tis always covered with Snow, yet the Inhabitants never wear above one single Garment at a time.

2. Mount *Halem*. *Leo* begins this W. from the former, and extends it E. to *Gazula*, and S. to the Plains of *Sus*. The *Sansons* begin it S. E. of *Anchisa*, on the same Side of the River *Sus*. The former says, it has Plenty of Horses, and is inhabited by a valiant People, who are always at War with one another about some Silver Mines, and he that gets the Day digs them, and distributes

butes the Silver among his Party. *Dapper* says, the Plains between this Mountain and *Tarudant* abound in Pasture.

The principal Towns of this Province are, 1. *Messa*: The *Sansons* place it on both Sides the River *Sus*. *Leo* says, they are three small Towns on the Shore, built by the ancient *Africans*, a Mile from one another, and called all by one Name, (which signifies the House of Prayer) and encompassed with a white Stone Wall. The Whalebone Temple above-mentioned lies between this and *Agoanabra*. *Dapper* says, that *Messa* is no more than 3 Divisions, encompassed each with Walls; that the Inhabitants follow Husbandry, and that 'twas formerly called *Temest*, and lies at the Foot of Mount *Aidvacal*, a Part of *Atlas*. *Heylin* places it on Cape *Gillon*, and says, 'tis not much better for the Sea, and that the Soil is barren and unpleasant.

2. *Guargesen* or *Garritgesen*, about 10 Miles N. W. from the Middle Part of *Messa*, and on the same Coast, according to the *Sansons*, who say, that it belongs to the *Portuguese*, and lies on Part of Mount *Aidvacal*. They place it Lat. 29. Long. 9. 50 Miles N. W. of *Tarodant*.

3. *Tarodant* or *Tarudant*. The *Sansons* place it 30 Miles E. from *Tejeut*, and above 40 N. W. from *Tagavost*. *Leo* says, that in his Time it had 3000 Houses; and when the *Marine* Family govern'd *Fez*, was the Seat of their Viceroy. 'Twas governed afterwards by 4 Noblemen, elected every six Months. *Marmol* says, the *Moors* call it *Taurant*, and that 'tis inferior to none of the other Cities of *Barbary* in Magnificence and Commerce. He tells us, that the *Xeriffs* took it at last, on Pretence of waging War with the Christians at Cape d' *Aguer*. 'Twas well fortified in our Author's Time, and one of the chief Cities in *Africa*, where the *Xeriffs* kept their Magazines, Arsenal, and the greatest Part of their Treasure. Some say, 'twas founded too by the *Xeriffs*; but *Marmol* puts it out of Doubt, that 'twas built by the ancient *Africans*. *Dapper* calls it the Capital of the Province, and says, it lies 2 Miles S. of the Great *Atlas*, in a pleasant Valley, which extends 18 or 20 Leagues in Length from Cape d' *Aguer* to the Mountains on the Confines of *Dara*, and about 8 in Breadth from Mount *Atlas* to the

Mountains which separate this Valley from the Deserts. He adds, that 'tis water'd by the River *Agus*, and was the Capital of *Morocco*; that the adjacent Soil on the Side of *Atlas* abounds with Corn, and all Sorts of Pulse and Fruits, with the Olives of *Ergen*, Vines, and Sugar-Canes, which the *Xeriffs* caus'd to be planted about 1519, when they erected *Tarudant* into a Kingdom; and that there are Plains on the S. Side which supply the *Arabs* with Pasture. At this Place there are also fine Ostrich Feathers, and excellent Amber, brought out of the Country of the *Azaguegians*. *St. Olon* says, here were about 50000 Inhabitants in his Time; and that the King sends no *Alcaids* hither, as he does to other Places, but only keeps a Captain here, who is called the *Basha*, and has Officers under him to execute his Orders throughout the Country. *St. Olon* observes, that the *Moors* of this Place are better treated than at *Morocco* or *Fez*. They not only pay their Annual Rents, without being subject to any extraordinary Tribute, and the King (he says) is obliged to use them thus, for fear they should rebel. *Roberts* in his Map of Commerce says, 'tis the only Mart of this Country, and lies on the River of *Sens*. *Heylin* tells us, that ours and the *French* Merchants have a Staple here for their Sugars, whose Commerce has made the Inhabitants, whom he computes at 3000 Families, more rich and Civil than those of other Parts. He adds, that between this and *Teyuying* there are Vineyards, Gardens, and Orchards, a Day's Journey in Length; that the *Xeriff*, to whom they submitted for Protection against the *Arabs*, had formerly been a *Portuguese* General; and that they set him up afterwards against the *Portuguese*.

4. *Tejeut*, *Techait*, or *Tejent*. The *Sansons* place it on the S. Side of the River *Sus*, 30 Miles W. of *Tarodant*. *Leo* says, it contain'd 4000 Families in his Time; that the adjacent Country abounds with Wheat, Barley, Pulse, and Dates, and there's Plenty of Sugar; but the Inhabitants know not how to prepare it; so that what they have is black and unfavoury, and the *Morocco*, *Fez*, and *Negroland* Merchants, buy up what they can spare. The only Money they use is the Gold digged out of their own Grounds, for they have no Silver, but what goes to-
wards

wards their Women's Ornaments. The least Iron Coin they have weighs almost an Ounce. They have no Fruits besides Figs, Grapes, Peaches, and Dates. The famous *Cordonan* Leather is dressed here, where 12 Hides cost 6 Ducats, and 8 at *Fez*. The S. Part of the Country is dispeopled, and subject to the neighbouring *Arabians*; but the N. Part towards the *Atlas* is full of Towns, Villages, and Hamlets. In the Middle of this City there's a stately Temple, called the *Greatest* or the *Chiefest*, thro' which runs a Branch of the River *Sus*. Each Quarter of the City has its peculiar Governor, chose every three Months, and these Governors act as States of a Commonwealth. They are perpetually engag'd in War, which renders them rough and unpolish'd. *Marmol* says, they have since learn'd to prepare their Sugar, and that they make great Quantities. The Inhabitants are very proud, and were always quarrelsome while they enjoy'd their Liberty. *Marmol* adds, that about 100 Years before his Time some of them usurp'd the Government; and upon the Commencement of the *Xeriffian* Adventures, the then Governor married his only Daughter to a *Genoese* Merchant, that turn'd *Mahometan*, who was so belov'd by the People, that after his Father-in-Law's Death he succeeded to the Crown, and allowed the *Xeriffs* to pass thro' his Country upon their March to *Hea*. This Merchant's eldest Son and Successor was the bravest Ally that the *Xeriffs* had, and they confided most in him. His Grandson was Lord of *Chechuan* when our Author wrote. He adds, that these Princes adorn'd the City very much, so that the Inhabitants grew rich, and liv'd at their Ease. There were above 200 *Jewish* Merchants and Tradesmen in his Time. *Dapper* says, they have no Olives, but have their Oil from the Mountains of *Morocco*. *Morery* places it 35 Miles E. of *Tarodant*, and says, the *Jews* here pay no Tribute; and that here are Judges who revenge Murders by Conspiracies against the Murderer, or Banishment for 7 Years. *Heylin* says, the City is divided into three Parts, each a Mile from the other, in the Form of a Triangle.

5. *Gared* or *Garet*. *Moll* places it at the Influx of the River *Sus* into the Ocean, in Lat. 30. 15 Miles N. of *Messa*, and as much

W. of *Tecent*. *Dapper* makes it but a Mile from the latter, and says, 'twas built in the Year 1500, by the Order of *Xeriff Abdala*, near a Spring call'd *Ain Chequie*, which, after it has water'd some Sugar-Fields, and drove some Mills, runs into the *Sus*. Here is also dressed the excellent *Cordonan* Leather, of which so much is exported to *Europe*, that the very Custom is worth 34000 Ducats a Year.

6. *Tagavost* or *Tagoast*. The *Sanfons* place it on a Hill in the most S. Part of *Proper Sus*, 40 Miles S. of *Tarodant*. *Moll* places the latter to the W. on the other Side of the River *Agus*. *Leo* says, 'twas the greatest City of the Province in his Time, contain'd above 8000 Families, was encompassed with a rough Stone Wall, and lies 60 Miles from the Ocean, 50 S. of *Alas*, and 10 from the River of *Sus*. 'Tis said, the *Africans* built it. 'Twas never without Civil Wars, the Inhabitants being divided into 3 Factions, one of which the *Arabians* always side with, according to their Pay. They have great Plenty of Corn and Cattle, but their Wool is very coarse. They make a Sort of Garments which are exported once a Year to *Tombuto*, *Gualata*, and other Places in *Negroland*. They have two Markets a Week. Their Habit is decent, and their Women are beautiful; but the Fathers being black, and the Mothers white, the Children are of a tawny Complexion. *Marmol* says, it was govern'd at first by 6 Magistrates, chose every 16 Months, but submitted at last to the *Xeriffs*. Some Geographers call it the Capital of the Province. *Volateranus* thinks 'tis the Birth-place of St. *Augustin*; but perhaps he means *Tagaste* in *Constantina*. *Dapper* says, their Soil abounds with good Pasture, and that the Inhabitants of this and *Tedsi* love their Ease.

7. *Tedsi* or *Tedsa*. The *Sanfons* place it on the Frontiers of *Guzula*, 42 Miles N. E. of *Tagavost*, and 19 from the River *Sus*: *Leo* 30 Miles E. of *Tarodant*, 60 from the Ocean, 20 from Mount *Atlas*, and 3 from the River *Sus*. He says, 'twas built by the *Africans* in a pleasant Place, abounding with Corn, Sugar, and Woad, and frequented by many *Negroland* Merchants. The Citizens were civil and peaceable, and a flourishing Commonwealth in his Time, under 6 Magistrates, chosen every 16 Months.

There

There were a great many *Jewish* Goldsmiths, Carpenters, and other Traders here, and a Market every *Monday*, frequented by a great many *Arabians* from the Valleys and Mountains. There was a stately Temple, which maintain'd at the publick Charge many Priests and Doctors of the Law. *Marmol* says, 'twas much improved by the Xeriffs, to whom it voluntarily submitted; upon which a Court of Judicature was set up here, that render'd it one of the richest and most considerable Towns on that Side the *Atlas*. *Dapper* says, it once contain'd above 4000 Families, but is now quite ruined by the Wars. *Heylin* says, 'twas bigger than *Tarodant*, but not so wealthy.

8. *St. Croix*, probably the *Vera Cruz*, which *Moll* places on the Ocean, 40 Miles N. W. of *Tarodant*, and 75 from *Tagavost*. *St. Olon* says, it drives a good Trade both in the Merchandize imported from *Morocco*, and in the Product of this Country, viz. Copper, Wax, Almonds, and the finest Ostrich Feathers. *Marmol* says, the Town was built a little before his Time, at the Foot of the Cape of Mount *Atlas*, called Cape d'*Aguer*, and formerly Cape d'*Usagre* or *Visugrum*, which *Ptolomy* places Long. 7. 30. Lat. 29. 15. There's a good Harbour here for large Ships. He observes, that *Diego Lepes de Sequeira*, a Portuguese Gentleman, built a Castle here first to secure his Fishery, which he called *Saint Croix*; and the Moors, *Dar-Kumica*, i. e. *The House of a Christian*. But King *Dom Manuel* thinking this Castle might be of great Importance for securing the Navigation of those Seas, and carrying on the Conquest of *Africa*, bought it of the Gentleman, enlarged it, and fortified it with Stone Walls and Bulwarks. Here (says he) the Portuguese kept a Garrison, which, assisted by their *Arabian* and *African* Vassals, made many successful Excursions into the Country. But *Muley Hamet* besieged it in 1536 for 7 Months together, and after the Loss of 13000 (or as some say 18000) Men, took it, upon the accidental blowing up of a Barrel of Powder under a Bulwark, which made a great Breach in the Wall, and put all the Garrison to the Sword, except the Governor *Monroi*, whom he made Prisoner, with others that retired to the Towers. At that Time the Governor's Son-in-Law, *Don John de Carval*, bravely signaliz'd himself,

by killing 30 Moors with his Sword in one Engagement, and fighting upon his Knees after he was wounded in both Legs; so that the Moors were forced to kill him with Darts, for they durst not come near him. The Xeriff was so charmed with his Lady, that he offer'd to lie with her; and upon her Refusal, threaten'd to make two Negroes hold her till he had satisfied his Beastly Passion, or (as some say) to expose her to the Lust of the Negroes, which made the Lady yield, on Condition he would marry her, and allow her to continue a Christian: But the Moors being uneasy at this, forced him to desire her to pretend to be converted to *Mahometism*. She being then big with Child, comply'd with his Request; but 'tis said, that after her Delivery, both she and her Children were poison'd by the Xeriff's other Wives. However, she protested a little before, that she died a Christian; and our Author adds, that afterwards the Xeriff sent her Father-in-Law and some Christian Slaves back to *Portugal*, with Horses, Equipage, and Money. *Dapper* places this Cape on the W. Side of the River *Sus*, as the *Sansons* do on the N. W. and call it *Gerum*. *Heylin* says, the Loss of this made the Portuguese quit all their other Forts in these Parts.

9. *Illec*. We don't find this in the *Sansons*; but *Moll* places it on a Mountain above 66 Miles S. E. of *Messa*, 60 from *Garet*, 47 from *Tarodant*, and 45 S. W. of *Tagavost*. *St. Olon* makes this one of the principal Towns of the Province, and says, it had in his Time 50000 Inhabitants.

We shall conclude *Barbary* with a farther Account of Mount *Atlas*, its principal Frontier towards *Biledulgerid*, and then proceed to the Description of that Country, reserving the chief Islands on the several Coasts to a separate Chapter at the Close of this Volume.

Mount A T L A S.

We refer for the ancient Account of this mighty Tract of Mountainst o P. 27. of this Vol. and for its Natural History, &c. to the several Provinces of *Barbary* where its Branches are described. *Ptolomy* places the *Great Atlas* Long. 8. Lat. 26 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Marmol* extends the *Lesser Atlas*, called *Lant*, by the

Name of *Erriff* along the Coast, from the Streight of *Gibraltar* to the Neighbourhood of *Bona*, and says, that the Natives call the Greater, *Ayduacal*. The *Nubian* Geographer begins it in the S. Borders of the Kingdom of *Sus*, where he says 'tis called *Dura*, and extends it as far E. as *Tripoly*, where 'tis called *Nafsua*, or (as *Marmol* says) *Servai*. He praises it for the highest, fruitfulest, and longest Ridge of Mountains in the World, and says, it has above 70 Castles, &c. the most inaccessible of which is *Tanimal*, besides other Buildings. *Marmol* begins the *Great Atlas* at Cape *Non*, in Lat. 28. 40. between the Deserts of *Zanhaga* to the S. and *Tesset* on the N. and brings it E. to almost 15 Deg. of Long. where he says it turns N. E. as far as the Borders of *Fez*, separating *Tesset*, *Sus*, and *Morocco*, on the W. from *Biledulgerid* on the E. and that at 29 Deg. of Long. it turns N. E. dividing *Barbary* on the N. from *Biledulgerid* on the S. and runs beyond *Tripoly* by various Turnings to the *Red Sea*, parting *Nubia* from *Egypt*, where 'tis crossed by the *Nile*, is called *Giandel*, and ends at *Bugia* on the *Red Sea*. *Augustin Curio* says, the *Africans* call the *Great Atlas*, *Anchisa* or *Majusta*, according to *Olivarius*. *Dapper* begins it in *Marmarica*, and extends it from *Jubel Meyes* to the Ex-

tremity of Mount *Cechel*, and the Coasts of *Mafra*, about 40 Leagues from *Alexandria*, and W. to the *Atlantick* Shore, over against the Town of *Messa*. *Curio* thinks that Part of this Mountain which lies near *Egypt*, 3 Leagues from *Alexandria*, and is called *Meyes*, is the same that *Strabo* called *Aspis*. *Diego Torres* says, that the two *Atlas's* are called by some *Spaniards*, *Montes Claros*, i. e. Shining Mountains, because their excessive Height makes them seen afar off, or because their Tops are very clear; but *Strabo* tells us, the *Moors* called them *Dyris*. The *Sansons* say, that the Ancients supposed this Mountain the S. Boundary of the World, and that it extends above 1000 Leagues. *Luyts* begins it at Cape *Guer* in *Sus*, and carries it to the Desert of *Barca*. *Heylin* begins it on the *Atlantick* Shore, at Lat. 26. 30. He vindicates the *Nubian* Geographer's Account of its ending at *Tripoly*, because there it grows very low; and those that begin there turn S. till they meet with Mount *Seluba*, which runs parallel with Mount *Atlas* at the S. of *Biledulgerid*, till it joins with those that encompass the Kingdom of *Gagaa* on the W. S. and E. and encompassing *Nubia* on the N. W. and N. they pass S. E. to *Bugia*, the *Nile* cutting them above *Asuan* in *Egypt*.

C H A P. VII.

B I L E D U L G E R I D.

Luyts and Sansons TABLE OF BILEDULGERID.

Biledulgerid.	Barca Desert, containing,	On the East.	Sabia, Alguchet or Algechut, Courza, Ascor, Eleocath, Sert or Sertā, Ammon, Ebaida.
		On the West.	Augela, Gorham, Sym, Ageladia.
		On the S. —	Teoregu or Teorregu, Fezzen, Gademēs, Guerguela.
		On the N. —	Tuſer, Chalbiz or Chalbisa, Clemenā, Teuſar, Capes, Capheſ, or Capheſa.
Zeb. —		On the S. —	Techort, Mezzab.
		On the N. —	Nefſo and Neſſa, Borgiu or Borgium, Peſcar or Peſcara, Deuſen or Deuſena, Deuſar or Deuſer, Teolacha, Macara.
Tegorarin. —		On the N. —	Tegorarin, Teſebit, Tuat.
		On the S. —	Tegzat, Tegrat or Tequat, Benigorai.
Segelmessa or Segelmesse. —		On or near Ghir River.	Feghig or Feghiga, Benigumi, Chafaira, Mazalig, Abuhinan.
		On or near Zir or Ziz River.	Gaſtir, Tamaracoſt or Tamaracoſtum, Melel, Mamunna, Segelmessa or Segelmesse, Tene-gent, Tebebubasant or Tebubasant, Humeledeg, Ummelhefen, Sugaihil.
Tafilet. —		On the S. —	Itata or Itat Province.
		On the N. —	Tafilet Town.
Darha. —		On the East Side of Darha River.	Mucubab or Benisabih, Swzerin, Tinzed, Darha or Teſuſ, Taragalel, Tameguerut.
		On the W. ib.	Tinzulin, Tagumadert, Afra.
Teſſet. —		In the Inland Country.	Archa, Teſſet, Ifren or Ifrena, Guaden or Guadenum.
		On or near the Sea-Coaſts.	Buzador or Buzadora, Nun, Albena or Albene, Anſulina, Muſter, Targuez, Bulez or Buleza, Suana.

B I L E D U L G E R I D.

THE Country which we are now about to describe, may be found in Moll's Map of E. and W. *Barbary*.

Leo says, 'tis the *Numidia* of the *Latins*, which the *Arabians* call *Biledulgerid*, or the Land of Dates, because it abounds more with this Fruit than any other Country in *Africa*. He extends it from the Town of *Non* upon the Coast of the *Atlantick Ocean* on the W. to *Eloacat* on the E. which is about 100 Miles from *Egypt*; and from Mount *Atlas* on the N. which separates it from *Barbary*, to the *Lybian* Deserts or *Zahara* on the S. *Marmol* says, the Ancients called it *Gatulia* or *Numidia*, from the *Nomades*, i. e. *Shepherds*, because the Inhabitants always wander with their Cattle from Place to Place for Pasture. He adds, that the *Greeks* called the ancient Inhabitants *Phœnicians*, before they had the Name of *Nomades*. *Dapper* distinguishes this from *Ptolomy's New Numidia*, which the *Greeks* called *Metagonitis*, and extended from the River *Ampsaga* or *Sufegemar* to the River *Tusca*, now *Guadilibarbar*, and makes *Biledulgerid* in general 600 Leagues long, and 50 broad. The *Sansons* correct some of the Moderns for calling this Inland Country *Numidia*, which they say lay on the *Mediterranean*. They make the Length 1000 or 1200 Leagues, between Long. 6. and 61. and the Breadth about 100 in some Parts. *Moll* extends it from Long. 8. to 48. and *Luyts* from 5. to 61. and from Lat. 22. to 32. but he makes the Breadth so various, that the narrowest Part takes up but 1 Deg. $\frac{1}{2}$. and the broadest almost 7.

Leo says, 'tis the sorriest Country in *Africa*, and that its Inhabitants are so remote from one another, that it scarce deserves the Name of a Kingdom. They are very long liv'd, but their Eyes grow dim, and they soon lose their Teeth, the first of which our Author ascribes to the Dust and Sand that is tossed about during the East Winds; and the latter to their continual feeding on Dates; yet the Air is very temperate and wholesome. They have no *French Pox* here; and our Author says, some of the *Barbarians* have been cured of it by

coming hither. He adds, that they are quite destitute of all sociable Principles, and love Treason, Treachery, Murder and Robbery, and in general are luxurious and brutish. They are of a slavish Temper, and serve the *Barbarians* as Dung-farmers, Scullions, Ostlers, and the like. *Marmol* says, those who live in the W. Parts are the most considerable *Numidians*; but there are several Nations of *Bereberes* and *Arabians* among them. The latter frequent the Desert of *Zahara*, and often make Incursions into *Barbary* for Plunder, which obliges the Kings of *Morocco*, *Fez*, *Tremesen*, and *Tunis*, to keep strong Garrisons upon the Frontiers of that Desert. *Dapper* says, the most noted People of *Biledulgerid* are the *Mucamudi*, the *Hileli*, *Zaragani*, and the *Quicima*, who live in separate Commonalties called *Gemis*, i. e. Assemblies or Adovars of 100 or 200 Tents, which they place in a round Form. The Pestilence is seldom heard of in this Country, and their Children never have the Small-Pox. Their ordinary Diet is Ostrich or Camel's Flesh; and their Drink, Camel's Milk or Broth, for they drink no Water; and many of them are so nasty, that they never wash themselves. The *Arabs* are lean, of a brown Complexion, and frightful Aspect. They delight in hunting of Fowl, especially Ostriches. Those of Note are serv'd by Negroes, and the rest by their Wives, who saddle and dress their Horses. They have some Schools, where they breed their Morabouts. Others apply themselves to Trade, and some to Poesy, wherein they are pretty successful. They are all *Mahometans*. The *Arabians* possess the Countries that abound most with Dates, and the *Africans* live in those which border on the Negroes. Some of them are free, wander about with their Herds, and own no Sovereign. Others have their particular Checks, and some are subject to the Kings of *Morocco* and *Fez*, as those of the Kingdom of *Taflet* and *Ytata*, and others depend on the Turk. *Heylin* says of the *Arabians* here in general, that they are ingenious and courteous. *Morey* says, there are some *Mahometan* Kings in this Country, whose Power is much limited, and they generally retain *Arabians* in their Pay, as the *Europeans* do *Switzers*. Leo says, those *Arabs* make great Profit of the Ostrich Feathers, tan their Skins for Portmantles, use their Hearts

Hearts for Charms, their Grease for Medicines, and make Ear-Rings of their Talons. He adds, that they are lawless, excessive jealous, and fond of their Women, who paint to make themselves more grateful, and they never marry any who are noted for Whores. They are poor and meanly clad, dwell in Tents cover'd with Hair-Cloth and the Boughs of Dates, and endure Hunger to Admiration. The *Moors* began the Conquest of this Country about the Beginning of the 7th Century. The *Sansons* say, that they erect their Tents in Form of Streets, and leave some Passages instead of Gates, which they shut up at Night. They look upon themselves to be the most Noble, call those who cultivate the Ground, Servants; and such as inhabit the Towns, Curtezans. *Heylin* says, they eat Barley and Carrion, and reckon Bread a Treat for Holidays. Their Garments are of coarse Cloth, so short, that they don't cover half their Bodies. The richer Sort are distinguish'd by a Jacket of Blue Cotton with wide Sleeves. They ride on their Camels, without Stirrups or Saddles, thrust a Piece of Leather thro' a Hole made in their Noses, instead of Bridles, and use Goats instead of Spurs. He adds, they were formerly Christians, till 710, when they were subdued by the *Saracens*, who so dispersed them, that they scorned any of their Number should be their Princes, but left them to their Original Government by Heads of Families. Those that live on the Borders of *Tremesen* and *Tunis* are the richest, but as thievish as the rest. *Leo* says, the Country in general is hot and dry; that some of its Rivers are choaked by the Sands, and others gather into Lakes. In those Parts which border upon *Lybia*, there's nothing but barren naked Hills, the lower Parts of which produce only some Thorns and Shrubs. These Hills have no Rivers or Springs, but only some few Wells among them with Water, which are scarce known to the Inhabitants, who have most of their Water brought them by Merchants on Camels, especially in those Parts which lie upon the Road from *Fez* to *Tombuto*, or from *Tremesen* to *Agad*; so that without carrying Water along with them, Travellers are in Danger of perishing by Thirst; for *Morery* says, in some Places they have none for 6 or 7 Days.

Journey together. They have indeed some Wells, encompassed with the Hides or Bones of Camels; but the S. Wind frequently fills them with Sand, so that in Cases of Extremity they kill their Camels, and suck the Water of their Intrails. In the Desert call'd *Azaoad* there are two Marble-Monuments with Inscriptions, to set forth, That a wealthy Merchant travelling that Way, gave 10000 Ducats to a Carrier for a Cup of Water, which not being sufficient, they both of them died immediately of Thirst. Their Winter is from *September* to *January*. They reap their Corn in *May*, and gather their Dates in *October*, unless the *September* Rain spoils them. If there falls but little Rain on the Mountains of *Atlas*, the Rivers of this Country grow dry, and the Fields are parched and barren, so that a dry *October* and *April* signifies a sorry Crop; but when 'tis at best, our Author says, that one Year's Crop scarce suffices the Inhabitants for half a Year. He adds, that their Dates thrive best in a Drought, and that they exchange them with the *Arabians* for Corn. *Marmol* says, these are the best in *Africa*, especially in the E. Quarter, and thinks that *Homer* meant this Fruit when he spoke of a Tree in this Country called *Loth*, the Fruit of which, when tasted, made Strangers unwilling to return home. *Dapper* says, they sow in *October*; and *Leo*, that they plow their Ground with a Horse and Camel. They have a great many Scorpions and Serpents, that do much Mischief. *Heylin* says, they fatten their Goats with the Stones of their Dates, which make them yield Store of Milk.

Their chief Rivers, according to *Dapper*, are, 1. *Albus*, *Rio Blanco*, or the White River. It rises out of the Mountains near *Lybia*, and runs thro' *Biledulgerid* into the Ocean with several Mouths.

2. *Aridus*, *Leche*, or the Dry River, because it dries up in the Winter, rises out of the Mountains of *Numidia*, and passing by the 4 Forts of *Ifran*, runs into the Ocean between Cape *Bojadore* and the Town of *Nun*.

3. *Lebich*. It rises a little higher out of the same Mountains, and falls into the Ocean near *Albene*, after having received the River of *Tecentin*.

4. *Himiffin*. It rises in the Mountains of *Sus*, and falls into the Ocean near *Aufulin*.

5. *Farcala*, springs out of certain Mountains in the N. and having water'd the Country of that Name, falls into a Lake in the Kingdom of *Taflet*.

6. *Togda*, a little River, runs from N. to S. waters the Region of that Name, and then enlarges by Degrees into a Lake.

7. *Chaude*, or the Hot River, because of the Quality of its Water, rises from Mount *Atlas*, waters the Plains of *Biledulgerid*, with the Towns of *Nefsa* and *Terlacha*, and is turned into a Lake in the Middle of a Desert.

8. *Techort*, rises from certain Mountains near *Libya*, waters the Town of that Name, and runs thro' a Forest into the Lake.

9. *Teufart*, a little River, which runs directly S. and falls also into a Lake in a Desert.

10. *Dara*. *Marmol* says, this is a very great River, rises from *Ziz*, Part of the Great *Atlas*, on the Borders of *Escura*, and runs S. thro' the Province of *Dara*, to which it owes its Name, being shaded on each Side with tall Date-Trees; after which it enters the Desert of *Sahara*, and spreads into great Lakes, which are frequented by the *Numidians* in the Spring, because then there's Store of good Grass here for their Camels. 'Tis so dry in Summer, that 'tis passable in several Places dry shod; but so high after Rain, that 'tis not fordable by Horses, and withal so rapid, that a Boat cannot cross it. Its Channel is very hollow and uneven, and in hot Weather the Water is bitter and brackish. *Leo* says, it sometimes overflows like a Sea, which if it happens in the Beginning of *April*, is a certain Sign of great Plenty; but if otherwise, Corn will surely be very scarce. *Heylin* thinks it the *Daradus* of *Ptolomy*.

11. *Ziz*. *Marmol* says is another great River that springs from the same Mountains, and running to the Neighbourhood of *Garciluy*n in *Fez*, passes thro' the Territories of *Quenena*, *Matagara*, *Reteb*, and *Segelmesse*, enters the Deserts of *Sahara*, and runs between the Palm-Trees till it comes near the City of *Sugaybila*, where it forms a great Lake in the Middle of a Desert, which is only resorted to by Wild Beasts. The *Nubian* Geographer says, it swells in the Summer like

the *Nile*, because of the melting of the Snow upon Mount *Atlas*, and makes the Fields as fruitful as *Egypt*.

12. *Guir* or *Ghir*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a great River, springs from Mount *Atlas*, and passing thro' the sandy Deserts of *Libya* and *Sahara*, is swallowed up by a Lake, on the Banks of which many Societies of *Arabs* and *Africans* wander with their Flocks. *Dapper* says, it rises about Lat. 22. and Long. 25. 30. and runs Southward thro' a Wood to a Place called *Benigumi*, where it passes thro' a great Forrest that encompasses the Lake.

Leo divides it into the 3 principal Regions of *Segelmesse* on the Borders of *Mauritania*, *Zeb* opposite to *Bugia*, and *Biledulgerid* Proper, which he extends to the Kingdom of *Tunis*. *Morery* divides it into *Sus*, *Dara*, *Segelmesse*, *Taflet*, *Tegorarin*, *Zeb*, *Biledulgerid* Proper, *Fessen*, the Desert of *Barca*, &c. but *Luyts* and the *Sanfons* divide it into the 8 Provinces of *Tesset*, *Dara*, *Taflet*, *Segelmesse*, *Tegorarin*, *Zeb*, *Biledulgerid*, and *Barca* Desert, which we shall follow in our Description, only adding that Part of *Sus* which we left out in *Morocco*, as being reckon'd more properly a Part of *Biledulgerid*.

I. S U S.

The *Sanfons* extend it above 100 Miles from E. to W. and about 60 from N. to S. They bound it on the W. with the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the N. and E. with *Sus* in *Morocco*, and on the S. with *Tesset*. *Dapper* bounds it on the S. with *Libya*, and on the E. with *Dara*. He says, the most considerable Inhabitants are the *Bereberes*, who are distinguished by Tribes or Societies called *Gemis*, the chief of which is, 1. That of *Tdauzquerit*, whose Country he places on the Side of *Zahara*, and calls *Hilela*. It contains several Towns, &c. abounds with Horses and other Cattle, Wheat and Barley, and in some Places with Citrons, Oranges, and other *European* Fruits. There's an infinite Number of Societies of *Bereberes* over all this Country, who have Towns, Castles, and Villages. The chief are those on the Frontiers of *Sus* in *Morocco*, viz. *Tdeunadag*, 20 Leagues from *Tarodant*, and those of *Tdeuquin*, *Sus*, and *Argan*, which all make but

but one Society, called *Quicima*. They are in a League Offensive and Defensive with those of *Hilela*, and can raise 5000 Horse and 30000 Foot, which the *Sanfons* praise for the best Soldiers in *Biledulgerid*. They bound *Tdauzquerit* on the S. with, 2. *Estuca* or *Estuque*. *Dapper* says, that in this Quarter there are above 40 Societies of *Bereberes*, the chief of which is *Targuez*, with a Castle upon a little Hill, which is the Residence of a Check. The Country is interspersed with Rocks, but abounds with Barley, and has Pasture for a great Number of Goats, which is their prime Traffick. The Inhabitants are of the Tribe of *Mucamuda*; but they have Houses, Towns and Castles, like their Neighbours, the chief of which are those of *Tdaguazinguel*, *Tdaubaquil*, *Deursemugt*, and *Hilela*, which are the powerfulest in the Country. On this Coast, over against the *Canaries*, *Moll* and the *Sanfons* place Cape *Non*, so called by the *Portuguese*, because they failed no further S. at their first Discovery of this Cape.

2. T E S S E T,

The most W. Part of *Biledulgerid*. *Moll*, who includes this and *Sus* together, makes the whole 585 Miles from E. to W. and 318 from N. to S. where broadest. The *Sanfons* make the Breadth of *Tesset* only 257 Miles, but the Length near 736. They bound it with *Sus*, *Dara*, and *Tasilet*, on the N. the Deserts of *Zuenziga* and *Zanhaga* on the E. and S. and the *Atlantick* Ocean on the W. But *Moll* bounds it with *Guzula* on the N. E. and *Dara* and *Tasilet* on the E. *Dapper* makes this a remote Quarter of *Sus*, so called from its Capital *Tesset*, which he places Lat. 29. 10. the *Sanfons* 24. 13. and *Moll* 25. 12. 211 Miles N. of Cape *Non*. It lies on the Confines of *Libya*. *Leo* says, that in his Time it did not contain above 400 Families, and was almost 300 Miles from any other Inhabitants. 'Tis encompassed with Brick Walls and Sandy Plains, only some of the adjacent Fields yield Dates, Millet-Seed, and Barley, which the poor People live upon. They pay a heavy Tribute to the *Arabians* in the neighbouring Deserts, and trade so much with *Negroland* and *Guzula*, that they are seldom at home. Their Men are Blacks and illiterate; and tho'

their Women, who are somewhat whiter, take Care to teach their Children the first Rudiments of Knowledge, yet they put them out to Plow or other Work before they are perfect. Some of the Women spin and card Wool, but the rest live idly. He adds, that the richest Men in this Country have a few Cattle. *Marmol* says, that *Tesset* was built by the ancient *Africans* on the W. of *Zakara*, and that the Xeriff in his Time kept a Garrison here to defend it from the Incursions of the *Arabians*. *Dapper* says, that in the neighbouring Country there are near 12000 Habitations.

The other chief Places here are, 1. *Israen* or *Isrena Castra*, 4 Villages, which the *Sanfons* place on each Side of the River *Aridus* or *Seche*, 133 Miles to the N. but *Moll* not above 67. *Marmol* says, they lie about a League from one another; that the People are more civiliz'd than the rest by their Commerce with the Christians; and that there are several Tradesmen here, who make excellent Copper and Tin Vessels; for the finest Sort of Lattin, called *Criny*, is made from some Copper Mines in a Mountain of the Great *Atlas* upon the S. Side of this Place, and the Xeriff in our Author's Time had a Castle here, the Governor of which receiv'd the Metal, and gave it out to the Workmen. *Dapper* says, they are encompassed with Walls, and that they were built by the ancient *Numidians*. There are several Villages and Countries of Palm-Trees in the Neighbourhood. The *Portuguese* Merchants come to the Harbour of *Carguesse* to traffick in Woollen, Linen, &c. which they carry to *Gualata* and *Tombut* to exchange for Hides, Wax, Rice, and Sugar. He adds, that they have a Judge of Civil and Criminal Causes; but they put no Person to Death, and reckon Banishment the most cruel Punishment, tho' they are all *Mahometans*.

2. *Guaden*, which the *Sanfons* place between the Rivers *Buzedora* and *Albus*, 228 Miles N. W. from *Tesset*. *Leo* says, the Inhabitants are so barbarous, that their Neighbours cannot go abroad with Safety. They eat no Flesh but that of Ostriches, and the Wild Beast call'd *Lant*, which they catch by Hunting, for they keep their Goats for their Milk. He adds, that the Soil produces nothing but Dates.

3. *Arca* or *Acta*. Moll places it on the Coast over against *Forte-Ventura*, one of the *Canary* Islands, above 60 Miles N. W. of *Ifren*. Marmol says, they are three Towns on the Frontier of the *Senegues*, inhabited by the *Hibetes*, a Race of *Arabians* that arrived in *Africa* in the Reign of *Carin* the Caliph of *Carouan*; and that this Quarter, which was formerly rich, was ruin'd by the Civil Wars, till a Morabout reconcil'd the contending Parties; after which, he and his Posterity govern'd it under the Xeriffs. Dapper places them near one another, and says, the Soil produces nothing but Dates. The *Sansons* set them in the S. E. Part of the Province, on the Borders of the *Libyan* Deserts, almost 230 Miles E. of *Tesset*.

4. *Nun*. The *Sansons* place it on the Coast over against the same Island, 110 Miles N. W. of *Guaden*. Moll makes it 75 Miles N. E. of *Acta*. Leo says, there are many Villages and Hamlets here, but the People are very beggarly, and the Soil produces nothing but a few unfavoury Dates. Dapper calls the People *Ydeuzel*, and says, they live between *Biledulgerid* and *Zahara*, and some of 'em in the latter, and suffer many Incursions from the *Arabs* in the Desert. They are called *Berebeckes*, *Senegues*, and *Ludayes*, who are very numerous, but poor to the last Degree, tho' they drive a small Trade to the Kingdom of *Gualata*. He adds, that the *Arabs* who wander in these Parts are called *Arrahala*, and that the *Bereberes* live in Villages on the Mountains.

5. *Cape Bojadore*, the most W. Part of this Province, and of all *Biledulgerid*. Marmol says, the *Portuguese* stopped here a long Time when they were about the Discovery of this Coast, for at the Head of the Cape they met with an Ebb that drove them 6 Leagues back, and the Water cast up by the Sand-Banks made a Noise like that of a Boiling-Pot. The first that doubled this Cape was *Giles Yagues*; who gave it this Name, because the Land here shoots back above 40 Leagues more to the N. than the Coast it leaves behind.

3. D A R A.

The *Sansons* bound it with *Tesset* on the S. and W. *Morocco* on the W. and N. and *Tafilet* on the E. and extend it 226 Miles from

N. W. to S. E. and above 120 where broadest. Moll, who includes *Tafilet* in *Dara*, makes both together above 360 Miles in Length, and near 240 where broadest. Leo says, 'tis very narrow, but extends almost 250 Miles S. from Mount *Atlas*. There are many Villages, Hamlets, and Castles, upon the Banks of the River *Dara*, which are encompassed with Brick Walls, and all their Planks and Joyces are made of nothing but the spongy flexible Wood of Date Trees. The Fields for 5 or 6 Miles on each Side of that River abound with Dates, of which some are worth a Ducat per Bushel; but there are others with which they feed their Horses and Camels. He adds, that the Castles of this Province are inhabited by Goldsmiths and other Tradesmen. Marmol says, that this Country was formerly over-aw'd by the *Arabians* of *Uled-Celim*, a rich and powerful People, who spent the Winter in the Deserts, and the Spring in this Country; but that 'twas secured from their Incursions in his Time by a Garrison that the Xeriff kept in *Benisabih*. Dapper says, this Province takes in the greatest Part of *Mauritania Casariensis*, bounds it on the W. with *Guzula* and *Sus*, and on the E. with *Segelmesse*, wherein Moll agrees with him, and extends it almost 100 Leagues in Length. Here are some Corn Fields, which yield a great Crop if the River *Dara* overflows its Banks in *April*. It also produces Store of Indigo, which they exchange for other Goods with the Merchants of *Fez* and *Tremesen*. He adds, that 'tis subject to the King of *Morocco*, who keeps Governors in several of their Quarters, tho' they have also their Checks or Vassal Lords in some Places. Heylin says, this Province is best cultivated, and makes it 150 Miles long.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Temesquit* or *Timesquit*; which the *Sansons* place on a River that falls into the *Lebichus*; Dapper on the Confines of *Guzula*, and says, it contains 2000 Houses within the Walls, besides 200 in the Suburbs.

2. *Tinzulin*. Dapper says, it has a good Castle, and is the largest Town in the Province, 12 Leagues from *Taragale*. The *Sansons* place it on the W. Side of the River *Dara*, 55 Miles E. from *Temesquit*.

3. *Taragalel*. The *Sansons* place it on the E. Side of the same River, about 24 Miles S. of

S. of *Tinzulin*. *Marmol* says, there's a strong Castle here, where the Xeriff of *Morocco* keeps a Governor, with 400 Horse and 500 Musketiers, to guard the *Tibar* Gold-Dust brought from *Tagaza*, which they here melt, mark, and send to *Morocco*. He adds, that the City is large, and contains above 400 Jewish Families; and that the adjacent Country abounds with Dates, Corn and Pasture. The *Sanfons* say, there are 4000 Houses in this City, and that *Dara* or *Tesuf*, which was formerly the Seat of their Kings, is now in Ruins.

4. *Tinzed*. The *Sanfons* place it on the same River, about 30 Miles S. of *Taragalel*. *Dapper* says, it contains about 4000 Houses, and 400 Jewish Families, with a Castle.

5. *Benisabih* or *Macubah*. *Leo* says, the Inhabitants are brave and generous, and that the Town is divided into two Parts, which have each their Governor, and often quarrel with one another, especially when they moisten their Plow'd Land, because of the Scarcity of Water. Then they hire the neighbouring *Arabians* at half a Ducat per Man: But in Time of Peace they learn the Use of Arms; and *Leo* praises them for expert Gunners. They entertain Merchants a whole Year *Gratis*, without demanding any thing, tho' they'll not refuse a Present. They feed their Horses with Dates, and a Sort of Herb call'd by the *Neapolitans*, *Farfafa*. He adds, that the Women are fair, fat, easily courted, and keep several Negro Slaves.

6. *Tagumudert* or *Tigumedes*, which the *Sanfons* place on a Hill almost 60 Miles W. of *Benisabih*. *Dapper* says, 'tis only famous for being the Birth-place of the Xeriffs, who conquer'd *Morocco*.

7. *Afra*. The *Sanfons* place it on a Hill in the Borders of *Tesset*, 50 Miles S. W. of *Benisabih*. *Dapper* says, it has a Castle, which, according to *Marmol*, was built by the King of *Sus*, and has always a strong Garrison of Horse and Foot to keep out the *Arabians* of the neighbouring Desert. *Marmol* adds, that the Soil abounds with Dates and Goats, but little Rice or Wheat.

4. T A F I L E T.

The *Sanfons* bound it with *Dara* on the W. *Morocco* on the N. from which 'tis separated

by Mount *Atlas*, *Segelmesse* on the E. and the *Libyan* Deserts and Part of *Tesset* on the S. They represent it in Form of a Man's Leg and Foot, and extend it 317 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and not much above 60 where broadest. *Dapper* says, this Kingdom lies in a sandy Plain, and has its Name from its Capital. The Soil is hilly, and produces little Corn, because of the excessive Heat most Part of the Year, but abounds in Pasture, excellent Dates and Indigo, with Camels, Dromedaries, and swift Horses, which the Inhabitants feed with Oats, Barley, and Dates. The People are ingenious, and drive a great Trade with Indigo, and a Sort of Hides call'd *Cherquis*, which they make of the Skin of Lants. They make also fine strip'd Silks after the *Moorish* Fashion, which they sell to those of *Barbary* for great Profit, and most of the Dates transported to *Europe* come from this Country, because the Kings of *Morocco* will not suffer them to be exported from any other Place. They govern this Province by Persons of the Race of Xeriffs, who stile themselves Kings of *Taflet*. He adds, that formerly this Country was very much incommoded by the Incursions of the *Arabs*, till *Muley Hamet*, King of *Morocco*, took its Capital by Storm, and made himself Master of the whole Province. *Moliette* in his History of *Morocco* says, the Barley which they sow along the Rivers grows not without a great deal of Pains, so that none but the Xeriffs or Alcads can reach the Price of it; but the People live on Dates and Camel's Flesh. The Provinces which he says depend on this Kingdom are, *Touet* towards the E. *Dras* towards the S. with the Deserts of *Sara*, which contain the People of *Ferquela*, *Toudegga*, *Liguerisy*, *Toguedout*, *Sedrat*, *Mougouna*, *Secoura*, and *Hadet*, each of whom dwell near Rivers of the same Name. The People are *Cheriffs*, *Arabians*, and *Barbarians*. The first they say are descended of *Mahomet*, and dwell in the Castles. The second came from *Arabia*, with their Prince *Muley Meheres*, and the last are the ancient Inhabitants, who live in the Villages. These are a big tawny People, breed Cattle in the Mountains, and exchange them with the *Arabians* for Dates. *St. Olon* says, there are Sheep here without Horns or Wool, which are always fat and well tasted. He observes,

that the King of *Morocco* regards this as the noblest Part of his Dominions, because the *Moors* count it the first in these Parts that embrac'd their Prophet and his Alcoran, for which Reason the Inhabitants would reckon it a Dishonour to be govern'd by any but his Descendants; so that the King always appoints one of his Children for their Governor, who sometimes makes them pay exorbitant Taxes. He adds, that the ancient Kings of *Taflet* did also stile themselves Lords of *Dara*, which Country it resembles in its Soil, Product, Inhabitants, and Food.

The chief and only City of this Country is *Taflet*. *Moll* places it on a River of the same Name, Lat. $26\frac{2}{3}$. Long. $13\frac{1}{2}$. 150 Miles N. E. of *Mucubah*, and 90 S. W. of *Segelmesse*. *Marmol* says, 'tis walled, and inhabited by a rich, genteel Sort of People, who make the finest Buff Targets, Silk Stuffs, and Tapestry, and trade with the Merchants of *Europe* and *Barbary* in Indigo, Dates, and Goats Leather. *Dapper* says, it has a strong Castle, and 2000 Families of *Bereberes* of the Tribe of *Filelis*. He adds, that between this City and the Desert there's a Road which crosses Mount *Atlas*. *Heylin* as well as *Moll* places this in the Province of *Dara*.

In this Country lies also the Province of *Yrata*. *Dapper* makes it almost as large as *Dara*, and places it on the Frontiers of *Libya* or the Desert of *Zuenzyga*, and says, 'tis called *Garib* by the Inhabitants, who are a mix'd People, that speak neither good *African* nor good *Arabick*, but are brave, and have many Horses, which they feed with Dates for want of Barley. They live among Palm Trees, from whence they draw their chief Revenue, and are encompassed by other *Bereberes* of the Branch of *Sicutana* and *Etuazguis*, who are all Vassals to the Cheriff.

5. SEGELMESSE, SUGULMESSE,
or SEGELOMESSA.

The *Sansons* bound it with *Fex* and *Algier* on the N. *Tegorarin* on the E. *Taflet* and the Desert of *Zuenzyga* on the S. and Part of the former and *Morocco* on the W. They extend it above 400 Miles from E. to W. and above 330 where broadest. *Moll* makes it but 392 Miles from S. W. to N. E. and

but 180 where broadest. *Leo* extends it scarce 20 Miles from N. to S. along the River *Zis*, and says, it contains, besides Hamlets and Villages, about 350 Castles and Wall'd Towns, and 12 or 15 small Territories. The *Jews* and *Arabians* here are heavily tax'd; yet some of their chief Men are extraordinary rich, and trade very much to *Negroland*, where they exchange the Commodities of *Barbary* for Gold and Slaves. Their chief Food is Dates, except where Corn grows. He adds, that the Country is over-run with Scorpions, but there are no Flies; and that their Summer is so hot as dries up their Rivers, and forces them to use Salt Water drawn out of Pits. *Marmol* extends it above 40 Leagues in Length, and says, 'tis inhabited by *Bereberes*, whose Eyes are always inflam'd in Summer, because of the excessive Heat. *Dapper* extends it E. and W. from *Dara* to the Borders of *Tesset*, and N. and S. from the Streight near *Gher-seluin* to the Deserts of *Libya*. He adds, that the Inhabitants are very much addicted to Sorceries, by which they pretend to command the Devils, raise Storms, and cure the Distempers of Men and Beasts. They were all formerly subject to one Chief, were afterwards subdued by *Joseph* King of *Morocco*, but revolted some Time after against his Successors, and now some are free, and others subject to the *Arabians*. The *Sansons* call this one of the greatest and best Provinces in all *Biledulgerid*. The Rivers overflow, and make the Country fruitful, as the *Nile* does *Egypt*, and the Inhabitants are able to raise 120000 Men fit to bear Arms. *Heylin* extends this Province 120 Miles from N. to S.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Togda* or *Todga*, which *Dapper* says contains but four Towns and 10 Villages, and lies along a little River of its own Name, about 15 Leagues W. of *Segelmesse*. He adds, that the Country abounds with Corn, Dates, Peaches, Figs, and Grapes, and that most of the Inhabitants are Husbandmen and Leather-Dressers.

2. *Quenega* or *Quenena*. *Leo* extends it along the River *Zis*, and bounds it with Mount *Atlas* near a strait Road 15 Leagues in Length. It has 3 good Castles between *Fex* and *Segelmesse*; but the rest consists only of Villages or sorry Hamlets. Their Soil

produces nothing but indifferent Dates, except on the Sides of the River, where they sow some Barley and Millet; but the Inhabitants have great Flocks of Goats, which in the Winter they shut up with themselves in vast Caves, that serve them instead of a Fortrefs, for they are on the Top of high Rocks: The Entrance is narrow, and the Way cut out of the Rock so small, that two Men may defend it against a whole Army; yet the People are not all free, for some of them are subject to the Lords of *Garciluin*, and others to the *Arabians*. The *Sansons* say, here are 15 Towns, and twice as many Villages, and that they have often assisted the Xeriffs of *Fez* and *Morocco* with 8000 Men.

3. *Matagara*. *Dapper* places it S. of *Quenena*, and says, it contains several Towns and Villages upon the River *Zis*, the chief of which is *Hilela*, the Residence of an *Arabian* Check, who gathers 30000 Ducats a Year from the Imposts on Merchandizes.

4. *Segelmesse*, the Capital of the Province. The *Sansons* place it on the River *Zis*, Lat. 29. 14. Long. 16. 41. *Moll* Long. 14. Lat. 28. 57. Some say, *Alexander the Great* built it for the Relief of his sick and wounded Soldiers; but *Leo* thinks he never came into this Country. He says, it stood upon a Plain near the River *Zis*, and was encompassed with stately high Walls. It had magnificent Temples and Colleges, and a great many Conduits for the River Water, which was rais'd by Wheels. The Air here is very moist in Winter, but at other Times temperate and wholesome. The City was subject to the Family of *Zontena*, till King *Joseph* of the Family of *Luntuna* dispossessed them. *Leo* adds, that after its Destruction, the Territory was encompassed with a Wall 30 Miles round, to prevent the Incursions of Horsemen; and that while they kept united, they retain'd their Liberty; but dividing into Factions, their Wall was demolish'd, and each Party calling in the *Arabians* for their Assistance, the latter made an entire Conquest of all by degrees. *Marmot* thinks the Town was first built by a Roman Captain, that conquer'd all *Numidia* as far as *Messa*, and that 'twas therefore called *Sigillum Messæ*, i. e. The Seal of his Conquest. *Dapper* says, that upon some Commotions, the Citizens retired into the neighbouring

Villages; but *Gramaye* says, 'twas repeopled in 1548.

5. *Mamun*. The *Sansons* place it about 20 Miles N. W. from *Segelmesse*, upon the same River. *Leo* says, 'tis a Castle frequented by several Jewish and Moorish Merchants. *Dapper*, that 'tis very populous, and the *Sansons* make it the Capital of *Reteb*.

6. *Tenegent*, another Castle placed on the same River, and at the same Distance S. E. of *Segelmesse*. *Leo* says, it contains above 1000 Families, most Tradesmen.

7. *Tebebusant*. The *Sansons* place it on the same River, 26 Miles S. E. of *Tenegent*. *Leo* says, 'tis also a Castle, but the most populous in all the Country, and much frequented by Merchants. He adds, that these three Castles have as many Governors, who are always at Variance; and by calling *Arabians* to each other's Assistance, they frequently ruin one another's Water Trenches, and fell down their Date Trees. They coin both Silver and Gold Money: The former weighs 4 Grains apiece, and bears a Proportion of Eighty to one of the Gold.

8. *Farcala* or *Fercala*. The *Sansons* place this Territory about a River of its own Name, in the S. W. Part of the Province. *Dapper* says, the Inhabitants are *Bereberes*, who depend on the *Arabs*; that they have 3 Towns and 5 Villages; and that there are Dates and all Sorts of Fruit here, but no Corn.

9. *Tebelbelt*, another Country which the *Sansons* place S. E. of the former. *Dapper* says, it lies in the Middle of the *Numidian* Desert, 70 Leagues S. from *Atlas*, and 34 from *Segelmesse*. It has 3 little populous Towns, and large Fields full of excellent Dates; but they have no Water nor Flesh, so that they hunt Ostriches and Stags. He places its Capital under Long. 23. 10. and Lat. 29 $\frac{1}{2}$. and says, that tho' the Inhabitants trade to *Negroland*, yet they are very miserable, because they depend on the *Arabians*. The *Sansons* say, it has 12 Villages.

10. *Beniguma* or *Benigomia*. The *Sansons* place this E. of *Tebelbelt*, between the Rivers *Zis* and *Ghir*. *Dapper* says, it abounds with Dates; but the Inhabitants are poor, and drudge in *Fez* and other Places for a little Money to buy Horses, which they sell to the Merchants who trade into *Negroland*. He adds, that they have 8 small Castles

and 15 Villages, and lie 15 Leagues S. E. of *Segelmesse*.

11. *Feghigatria Castra* or *Fighig*. *Leo* says, they are three Castles, 150 Miles from *Segelmesse*, standing in a Desert that abounds with Dates. The Women here weave a Sort of Cloth like a Carpet, as fine as Silk, and sell it for a great Price at *Tremesen* and *Fez*. The Men too are very ingenious, of whom some trade to *Negroland*, and others study at *Fez* till they attain to the Degree of a Doctor; upon which they return to *Namidia*, where they are made either Priests or Senators, and prove generally Men of great Wealth and Fame. *Moll* places this on the E. Side of the River *Ghir*, 75 Miles from *Segelmesse*.

12. *Guachda* or *Guahedu*, which the *Sanfons* place W. of the 3 Castles, lies (according to *Dapper*) 3 Days Journey S. of *Segelmesse*, and consists of 3 Towns and some Villages along the River *Ghir*. He says, the Inhabitants are subject to the *Arabians*, and have no Corn, but abundance of good Dates, which they send to *Negroland*.

13. *Benibessera*, lies in the N. Part of *Segelmesse*, according to the *Sanfons*, and at the Foot of Mount *Atlas*. *Dapper* says, there are 3 Castles here built by the ancient *Africans*, and full of Fountains, Fruits, and all Sorts of Pot-Herbs, but no Corn or Dates, and very few Cattle. There's a Mine of Iron, which the Inhabitants work and send over all the Country. He adds, that here are few Villages in this Territory, and that the People are subject to the Lords of *Dabdu* and the *Arabs* of these Parts.

14. *Chasair*. The *Sanfons* place it at the Foot of Mount *Atlas*, on the River *Ghir*, or 7 Leagues from that Mountain, according to *Dapper*. He says, 'tis a little Town, with Mines of Lead and Antimony here, which the Inhabitants sell to *Fez*. *Sanutius* calls it *Cassyr*.

15. *Mazalig*, and, 16. *Abuhinan*, are two Castles, with some Houses about them, which *Dapper* and the *Sanfons* place on the W. Side of the River *Ghir*, 53 Miles E. of *Segelmesse*. They are inhabited by poor *Arabs*, who have no Corn, but live on Dates, and what they can catch on the Frontiers.

17. *Retel* or *Arratama*. *Dapper* bounds this Tract with *Matagara*, and extends it

20 Leagues S. along the River *Zis* as far as *Segelmesse*. On the E. it has an inhabited Mountain, and on the W. a sandy barren Plain, where the *Arabs* stop in their Return from the Desert. It has several Towns and Villages; but the Inhabitants are lazy and covetous, and the *Arabians* treat them like Slaves.

6. TEGORARIN or TAGURIRI.

The *Sanfons* bound it with *Segelmesse* on the W. *Telsenin*, *Tenez*, and *Algier*, on the N. *Zeb* on the E. and the *Libyan* Deserts on the S. They extend it 360 Miles from S. W. to N. E. and 230 Miles from E. to W. where broadest. *Leo* says, it contains 50 Castles, and above 100 Villages, and has great Plenty of Dates. The Inhabitants are rich, and trade to *Negroland*. Their Fields are fit enough for Corn, but so parch'd, that there's scarce any Pasture. They keep a few Goats for the Benefit of their Milk. They have no Flesh but that of Camels, which the *Arabians* import. They let Strangers dwell in their Houses for no Rent, but their Dung, which they void within Doors, and keep very carefully, as well as that of the Camels, &c. for the Benefit of their Ground. *Marmol* says, that in 1492, the Natives murder'd the rich Jewish Merchants, tho' they were advised only to plunder them by a Morabout of *Tremesen*. In his Time it had particular Governors, who were always jarring with one another; for the Xeriff, who was Master of the whole Country from *Nun* upon the Ocean to *Tegorarin*, had not then possessed himself of it. Some say, there's a Mine of Gold here. *Dapper* says, their Soil is so poor, that they have no Wheat or Barley, and so dry, that it will bear nothing unless they dung and water it with Well-Water. They eat Dates and Camel's Flesh, after 'tis mingled with salt Tallow imported from *Fez* and *Tremesen*. The *Sanfons* say, they import several Commodities from *Barbary*, which they carry to *Negroland*. *Heylin* says, this Province is better inhabited than any Part of the Country, except *Dara*. Its Capital of the same Name lies on a little River, but is of no Note.

The chief Place in this Province is *Tesebit* or *Tecevin*. *Dapper* says, 'tis inhabited by poor

poor *Bereberes*, who have nothing but Dates and a little Barley; that it lies 9 Days Journey E. of *Segelmesse*, and 34 Leagues S. of *Atlas*; that it has 4 Castles and several Villages on the Frontiers of *Libya*, in the Road from *Tremesen* to *Agades* in *Negroland*; and that most of the Men are black; yet the Women are fair and handsome.

7. Z. E. B.

The *Sansons* extend it 140 Miles from N. to S. and 274 from E. to W. and bound it with *Tegorarin* on the W. *Algier*, *Bugia*, and *Constantina*, on the N. *Biledulgerid* Proper on the E. and *Mezzab* and Part of *Tegorarin* on the S. *Marmol* says, that the greatest Part of this Country is subject to the Kings of *Tunis*, yet 'tis no Part of *Barbary*. He bounds it on the W. with the Desert of *Mazila*, and on the S. with that between *Techort* and *Querquelen* or *Guargala*. *Procopius* calls it *Zebe* near Mount *Auraz*. *Leo* says, it has 5 chief Towns and a great Number of Villages. *Dapper* tells us, that Part of the Country is subject to the *Arabians*, Part to the Turk, and the rest to the Kings of *Couco* and *L'Abex*. 'Tis called in Latin *Zebum*. The *Sansons* say, Part of their Towns were ruin'd by the *Arabs* when they enter'd *Africa*, and Part by *Barberossa*; but they have almost recover'd their ancient State.

The chief Places are, 1. *Deusen* or *Deusar*. The *Sansons* place it in the N. Part of the Province, on a little River that runs into the *Ouguerada*. *Dapper* says, it was built by the *Romans*, but plunder'd by the *Arabians* as above-mentioned; and that near it are the Ruins of old Buildings, which seem to have been Sepulchres; and that sometimes, especially after Rain, they find in the Fields Medals of Gold, Silver, or Copper, and a Head stamp'd on them with Latin Inscriptions and Trophies. The *Sansons* say, the Water here is hot.

2. *Teolacha*, which the *Sansons* place on the E. Side of the River *Major*, above 120 Miles S. W. of *Deusen*. *Dapper* says, 'tis an ancient Town, was built by the *Africans* near a little River of hot Water, and is encompassed with sorry Walls. The *Sansons* say, the Inhabitants are very furly and peevish. *Moll* places this Town in *Algier* Proper.

3. *Nafia*, *Nesta*, or *Nesso*. The *Sansons* place

it on the same Side of the River *Major* as *Teolacha*, but 70 Miles to the S. E. which *Moll* makes above 100. *Dapper* says, 'tis divided into 3 Towns, separated from each other by Walls, and that in one of them there's a Fortrefs of Roman Workmanship. They were ruin'd by the Kings of *Tunis*, yet 'twas repeopled by degrees. The Inhabitants are covetous and insolent towards Strangers. The *Sansons* say, the Water here is of the same Quality as that of *Deusen* or *Teolacha*.

4. *Borgium* or *Borgi*. The *Sansons* place it on the River *Ouguerada*, 40 Miles S. E. of *Deusen*. *Dapper* says, here are many Husbandmen and Artificers.

5. *Pescar* or *Biscara*. The *Sansons* place it on the River *Megerada*, 34 Miles N. E. of *Borgi*. *Leo* says, 'tis remarkable for abundance of Scorpions, whose Sting is present Death; upon which Account the Inhabitants live all Summer in the Country till November. He adds, that the Kings of *Tunis* were Sovereigns of this Place till the Death of *Hutmen*, upon which it fell into the Hands of a *Mahometan* Priest. *Marmol* says, it pays Homage to the Turks, and that 'twas the ancient *Zama*, where *Juba* lodg'd his Treasure when he accompanied *Pompey* into the Field. *Dapper* says, 'twas built by the *Romans*, and ruin'd by the *Arabs*, who afterwards rebuilt it, and is pretty populous. He adds, that the Inhabitants are very civil. The *Nubian* Geographer says, the Inhabitants, as soon as bit by the Serpents, take two Drams of a certain Plant, which presently cures them, and is a good Preservative against them for a whole Year.

8. M E Z Z A B. or M E S E Z A B.

The *Sansons* make this a distinct Province, bound it with *Tegorarin* on the W. *Zeb* on the N. Proper *Biledulgerid* on the E. and *Techort* and Part of *Tegorarin* on the S. and extend it 217 Miles from E. to W. and about half as much in Breadth. *Dapper* places it 100 Leagues E. of *Tegorarin*, and as much S. of the *Mediterranean*. He says, it contains 6 Castles and several Villages, and the Inhabitants are rich, because they are dextrous and vigilant in their Traffick with the *Negroes*; but they are tributary to the *Arabians*. The *Sansons* place its Capital of the

same

same Name on the River Major. *Marmol* says, 'twas founded and destroyed by the *Arabian Schismatics*. *Moll* calls it *Zeb*. The *Sansons* say, this Country is a great Thorowfare from *Barbary* to *Negroland*, and the People trade with both.

9. TECHORT or TECURT.

The *Sansons* bound it with *Mezzab* and *Biledulgerid Proper* on the N. Part of the latter and *Guerguela* on the E. and the *Libyan Deserts* on the S. and W. extend it 228 Miles from E. to W. and 132 from N. to S. *Dapper* says, *Gramaye* calls it *Tuarte*, and that the *Turks* count it one of the Inland Provinces of *Algier*, on which it depends. The *Sansons* say, it has a King of its own, who was once free, but became Tributary to *Morocco*, *Telensin*, *Tunis*, and at last to the Kings of *Algier*, to whom it pays a certain Number of Negroes by Way of Tribute. It has several Wall'd Towns, above 100 Villages, 150000 Ducats Revenue, and can raise 40 or 50000 Men; but they are very ill disciplin'd.

The *Sansons* place its Capital on a Hill, Lat. $26\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 29. 6. almost 20 Miles S. of the River *Techort*: *Moll* Lat. 27. Long. $27\frac{1}{3}$. with the said River on the S. *Leo* places it 300 Miles from *Tegorarin*, and says, 'twas built by the ancient *Numidians*; and that at the Foot of a Hill on which it stands there's a River, with a Draw-Bridge. 'Tis defended by a Rock on one Side, and a Stone Wall on the other. All the Buildings, except a noble Temple, are of Brick dry'd in the Sun. There were 2500 Families here in our Author's Time, most of them either Gentlemen or Tradesmen. They have great Plenty of Dates, which they exchange for Corn imported from *Constantina*. They are very generous to Strangers, entertain them *Gratis*, and chuse to marry their Daughters to them, rather than their Fellow-Citizens with some Land, by Way of Dowry. *Marmol* says, 'twas first subject to the Kings of *Morocco*, afterwards to those of *Tremesen*, then to those of *Tunis*, and at last had a Prince of their own nam'd *Abdala*, whose Revenue amounted to 200000 Ducats a Year, for this Town receives Contribution from all the Castles and Villages for 30 or 40 Leag. round it. *Leo* commends this Prince for his

Bravery and Generosity; but *Marmol* says, he was cut off by an Insurrection of some *Turks* whom he had taken into his Service; upon which they were subject to the *Turks*, till they were reduced again by the Xeriff *Mahomet*. *Dapper* places it 100 Leag. from *Tegorarin*, and 150 from the *Mediterranean*, Long. 32. 50. Lat. 27. 10. He says, 'tis the *Turaphylum* of *Ptolomy*, and that it receives Contribution from 40 Castles and 150 Villages. The Inhabitants are half Noblemen and half Mechanics. The *Sansons* say, the *Turks* took it with a few Men and 3 Pieces of Cannon, and then plunder'd it. They add, that Flesh is very scarce here. In *Leo's* Time 'twas subject to the King of *Tunis*, and paid 50000 Ducats a Year Tribute; but the Governor levied 130000. *Heylin* places it 500 Miles S. of the *Mediterranean*, and 300 S. E. of *Tegorarin*.

10. BILEDULGERID PROPER.

The *Sansons* bound it with *Techort* on the S. W. *Zeb* on the W. *Algier* on the N. W. *Tunis* and *Tripoli* on the N. the *Libyan Deserts* or *Zaara* on the S. and Part of the Desert of *Barca* on the E. and extend it 1050 Miles from E. to W. and about 300 where broadest. *Marmol* extends it from *Biscara* to the Isle of *Gelves*, and says, the Soil, which is hot and dry, abounds with Dates, but no Corn. *Dapper* says, it furnishes *Tunis* and several Towns of *Barbary* with Dates, and depends on the Basha's of *Tunis*.

Its chief Territories and Towns are, 1. *Guerguela*, *Guargala*, or *Querquelen*. The *Sansons* bound it with *Techort* on the W. the *Libyan Desert* on the S. *Gademes* on the E. and *Proper Biledulgerid* on the N. and extends it 105 Miles from N. to S. and 166 from E. to W. *Moll* places *Gademis* on the N. *Dapper* says, it abounds with Dates, but has no Corn nor Cattle, and the Inhabitants eat the Flesh of Camels and Ostriches. Most of them are Blacks, not from the Climate or Air, but because they lie with the Negro Slaves, who bear black Children. There are several Artificers and Tradesmen among them. They are of a frank Temper, and very kind to Strangers, who bring them Corn, Salt, Flesh, Woollen, Linen, Arms, and

and Knives. They have a Lord, whom they honour as King, and he has 150000 Ducats Revenue; but they say he is obliged to pay Contribution to the *Arabs*, and to do Homage to the *Basha* of *Algier* with 30 Negroes a Year.

The chief and only Town it has is of the same Name. *Moll* places it on the East Side of a little River, Lat. $26\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $30\frac{1}{2}$. almost 60 Miles S. of *Caphes*. *Dapper* Long. $37\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 25. 50. *Marmol* says, 'tis very ancient, and was first adorn'd by the first King of the *Luntuna's*, who set out from hence in Pursuit of the Conquest of *Barbary* and *Spain*. He adds, that here they exchange the Commodities of *Barbary* for those imported from *Negroland*; and that the Country betwixt this City and the *Libyan* Desert was the Kingdom of *Juba*, who sided with *Pompey* against *Cæsar*. Some think it the *Tamarka* of *Ptolomy*.

2. *Teusar*, in the N. W. Part of the Province. The *Sansons* place it on a little River that runs into the *Magrada*. *Dapper* says, 'twas built by the *Romans*, and is divided into two Parts, one of which is inhabited by the original *Africans*, and the other has been possessed by the *Arabs* ever since they came into *Africa*. *Luyts* says, that the Dates abound more in this Part of the Province than in the S. and E.

3. *Caphes* or *Caphsa*. We suppose to be the same which the *Sansons* call *Capsa* or *Casfa*, on a little River in *Tunis* that runs into the Gulph of *Capes*. *Moll* places it almost 30 Miles N. of *Teusar*, which the *Sansons* make 90. *Leo* says, 'twas built by the *Romans*, and had a peculiar Governor, till it was plunder'd and demolish'd by the *Caliph Hutmen*: But the Castle remained in our Author's Time, and was very strong for its Walls, which were 25 Cubits high, 5 Cubits thick, and were built of fine Stone, like that in *Vespasian's* Amphitheatre at *Rome*. *Dapper* says, 'tis black Free-stone. The Town was also very populous at that Time; but the Houses were very indifferent for most Part, except the Temple and a few other Buildings. The Inhabitants are very barbarous, and despis'd by all the other *Africans*, heavily tax'd by the Kings of *Tunis*, and continually subject to Fevers, because of their unhealthy Air. They wear Shoes

made of Buck's Leather. The Streets are pav'd with black Stones, like those of *Naples* and *Florence*, and in the Middle of the Town are several large and square deep Fountains, whose Water is too hot to drink, till it has stood two or three Hours to cool. He adds, that the neighbouring Fields abound with Citrons, and the best Dates and Olives in the Province. *Marmol* says, the *Romans* defended this City against the *Arabians*, till it was demolished by *Ocuba*. *Dapper* places it Long. 40. Lat. 27. 10. The *Sansons* say, some think it was built by the *Libyan Hercules*.

4. *Gademes*. The *Sansons* bound this Territory with *Guerguela* on the W. Part of *Tripoly* on the N. the Territory of *Fezzen* on the E. and the *Libyan* Desert on the S. and extend it 255 Miles from N. to S. and 188 where broadest. *Dapper* places it 100 Leag. S. of the *Mediterranean*, and says, it contains 17 Castles and 92 Villages; that the Inhabitants, who trade with the Negroes, have Plenty of Dates and Silver; and that they were subject to the Kings of *Tunis*, till their Bravery freed them. The *Sansons* say, it contains 16 Wall'd Towns, and 60 and odd Villages, and places its Capital of the same Name on the River *Capes* or *Capsus*. *Zieglerus* thinks it the *Oasis* of *Ptolomy*.

5. *Fezzen* or *Fassen*. The *Sansons* bound this Territory with *Gademes* on the W. *Tripoly* on the N. *Teorregu* on the E. and the *Libyan* Desert on the S. and extend it 275 Miles from N. to S. and 310 from E. to W. *Dapper* places it 60 Days Journey from *Cairo*, between the Deserts of *Libya*, the Kingdom of *Agades*, *Negroland*, and *Egypt*, and says, it contains 100 Villages and 28 Towns, the Capital of which, from whence it has its Name, he places Long. 44. Lat. 26. and that its Inhabitants have Plenty of Dates and Silver, by trading with the Negroes, and have a Lord of their own, who lays out all the Revenue for the publick Good, and pays Contribution to the *Arabs*. The *Sansons* say, it contains above 50 Towns. *Moll* places its Capital Long. 33. Lat. $28\frac{1}{2}$. The Territory of *Jaslyten*, which abounds with Dates, in the N. W. Part of *Fezzen*, is subject to the *Basha* of *Tripoly*.

6. *Teorregu*. The *Sansons* extend it 390 Miles from E. to W. and 180 where broadest,
T and

and bound it with *Fezzen* on the W. the *Libyan* Deserts on the S. Part of the latter and the Desert of *Barca* on the E. and *Tripoly* on the N. *Dapper* says, it contains but three Towns and 26 Villages, and that the Inhabitants are poor, and want all Necessaries, because they lie in the Desert far from any Commerce.

II. BARCA DESERT.

The *Sanfons* bound it with *Tripoly* and Part of *Biledulgerid* on the W. the Kingdom of *Barca* on the N. Middle and Upper *Egypt* on the E. and *Nubia* and the Desert of *Saara* on the S. and extend it from Long. 47. to 61. and from Lat. 23. to 29½. *Dapper* makes it 15 Days Journey in Length, and says, 'twas formerly noted for the Temple and Oracle of *Jupiter Ammon*; that the Soil is sandy and barren, without much Water; and that it contains only a few Villages, and produces Corn and Dates. Their Neighbours bring them Sheep and Camels, in Exchange for what few Commodities they have; which Scarcity often obliges the Parents to send their Children to *Sicily* to gain their Livelihood. The *Arabs* here are lazy, lean, poor, and such great Robbers, that the Caravans are obliged to go 50 Leagues about to avoid them. Before they came

out of *Africa*, this Country was a meer Desert. At their first Entrance, the strongest took Possession of the best Parts, and left the worst to the rest. Our Author adds, that when they seize a Traveller, they give him warm Milk, and shake him with his Head downward to make him vomit, in case he has swallowed any Piece of Money, and then look narrowly in the Excrements to see if they can find it. He adds, that they have no Temple nor Religion. The *Sanfons* say, that some of the *Arabs* are very strong in Horse and Foot, and will not suffer any Towns there, but some of the *Africans* who pay them Tribute. *Moll* makes this Desert almost an Oval, about 480 Miles from E. to W. and 570 from N. to S. and bounds it on the W. with Part of *Gaoga*.

The most remarkable Region here is *Alguechet*, which *Leo* places in the *Libyan* Desert, and says, 'tis inhabited by barbarous, but very rich Blacks, in the Way between *Egypt* and *Gaoga*, 120 Miles from the former. He adds, that they have 3 Castles and many Villages, abounding with Dates; and that tho' they are tributary to the neighbouring *Arabians*, they have a Governor of their own, and can raise 30000 Horse, according to *Dapper*. We refer for the rest of *Barca* to what we said of its Kingdom, P. 159. of this Volume.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO
LIBRARY
1100 EAST 58TH STREET
CHICAGO, ILL. 60637

Handwritten notes in cursive script, mostly illegible due to fading and bleed-through. The text appears to be organized into several paragraphs or sections, with some lines underlined. The ink is dark, and the paper is aged and yellowed.

OF THE



A Map of ZAARA or the DESART, NEGROLAND & Cape VIRDE Islands &c. By Herman Moll Geographer.

To avoid too great a Contraction of the Scale, the most Eastern Part of ZAARA &c. is continued in the Map of the East Part of Barbary.

30 60 150 300 350
Miles of Great Britain



C H A P. VIII.

ZAARA Desert, or LIBYA.

Sansons and Luyts's TABLE of the Desert of Z A A R A
OR S A R R A.

Z A A R A OR S A R R A, divided into 7 Pro- vinces.	Zanhaga De- sert, con- taining,	On the West.	{ Tegunt, Almahara, or Alha- mara.
		On the East.	{ Zanhaga, Puis, Tegassa.
	Zuenziga De- sert.	Zuenziga Pro- per. ———	{ Zuenziga, Zis.
		Gogden Desert	
		Ghir Desert.	Ghir.
		Hair Desert.	Hair.
	Targa Desert.	Targa Proper.	{ Targa and Sagra, or Zag- hara.
		Ignid Desert.	
	Lempta De- sert.	On the N. —	{ Lempta or Suma, Catif, El- chebir.
		On the S. —	{ Agades, Degir or Digir.
	Berdoa Desert and Kingdom.		Berdoa.
	Borno Desert & Kingdom.	On the W. —	Borno, Kaugha, Amasex.
		On the E. —	Alhayad or Ctcu.
	Gaoga Desert and Kingdom.		Gaoga.

THE *Sansons* extend it from Long. $2\frac{1}{2}$. to 57. and from Lat. $12\frac{1}{2}$. to 25. in the East Part, though 'tis not half so broad elsewhere. *Moll* makes it 1830 Miles from E. to W. and 700 where broadest; but elsewhere 'tis very narrow. They bound it with the *Atlantick Ocean* on the W. *Biledulgerid* on the N. *Nubia* on the E. and *Negroland* on the S. The *Latins* call this *Libya*, and the *Arabians* *Sarra*, i. e. a Desert. *Leo* extends it as far E. as the *Nile*, and divides it into the 5 Parts of *Zanega*, *Gauxiga*, *Terga*, *Leuta*, and *Berdeoa*, so call'd from the 5 Tribes of *Numidians* that inhabit it. *Marmol* says, 'tis the most inconsiderable Part of *Inner Libya*; and that according to *Ptolemy*, it included *Numidia* and *Lower Ethiopia*.

Luyts extends it from Lon. 4. to 41. and from Lat. 20. to 28. under the Tropick of Cancer.

Leo says, this *Libya* was first Peopled by *Futh*, *Cham's* 3d Son, and by *Sabatha* the Son of *Chus*, from whence the People were called *Futeians* and *Sabathæans*. Here are several Tribes of *Arabians*, for whom we refer to our General Account of Modern *Africa*. He says, that if the Weather changes about the Middle of *August* or *October*, and rains till *February*, 'tis fills the Country with Lakes, &c. and good Pasture, which cause Plenty of Milk and Butter, and then the *Barbary Merchants* chuse to travel into *Negroland*; but if it be a dry Season, they suffer much by the Sands, which are so great, that some have call'd it the *Sandy Sea*. The

Libyans rarely live to 60 Years of Age, and those that do are but lean, yet they are very healthy. He adds, that the *Moors* and *Arabians* here are inferior to none for Devotion, Valour, Civility, and Sincerity; and that the white or tawny *Moors* give honourable Allowances to Professors of Religion and the Liberal Arts, and mind nothing but their Ease, in which they are as happy as any People of *Africa*; but he says, the rest are Shepherds, and others that neglect all Arts and Sciences, mind nothing but Theft and Villany, spend most of their Time in Hunting, and use neither Shoes nor Garments.

Marmol says, this Country has no Rivers, and that it is a sandy Desert, without either Trees or Fruit, and inhabited in some Places by a few Wretches who feed upon Manna, and Grasshoppers or Locusts dry'd in the Sun. The latter come in such great Numbers thro' *Egypt* from *Arabia*, that they darken the Sky, consume all the Corn or Herbs wherever they rest, and from thence they go to *Biledulgerid*, *Barbary*, and sometimes to *Spain*; but before they fly away, lay their Eggs in the Ground, that give Rise to a worse Sort without Wings, which gnaw the Barks of Trees, and cause a Famine wherever they stay. Our Author says, here are no Springs, but a few Salt Wells, so that the Merchants who travel this Way to *Negroland* carry Water with them on Camels, as we observed in *Biledulgerid*. Some of their Guides can find out the Water Pits, tho' cover'd with great Heaps of Sand; and sometimes when the E. Wind blows in the Summer, it raises Hillocks of Sand to the Height of a Pike, which overwhelms both Men and Beasts. He divides the People into 5 Tribes or Societies, of whom hereafter. The most populous Part of the Country is that towards the *Niger*, because of their Commerce with the Negroes. He adds, that the ancientest of the People are those called by *Strabo*, *Abasches*, who are lazy and brutish.

Dapper extends this Country as far E. as *Egypt*, and says, it has a Ridge of Sands on the N. Side from the Ocean to the *Nile*, which extends one Way with another 100 Leagues.

Their Mountains are very rugged, and produce nothing but Thorns; but there's

some Barley and Dates in the fruitfulest Parts of the Country. The People live upon Camel's Flesh and Milk, Ostriches, and the Flesh of *Adimnains*, a tame Creature like a Sheep, but as big as an Ass, with long Ears that hang downward. They feed them like Sheep, and get a great deal of Milk from them, which is their chief Sustenance. Their Wool is good, but short. The Females have Horns, but the Males have none. They are strong enough to carry a Man. The Air here is very good, says *Dapper*, and the Inhabitants enjoy perfect Health till 60 Years of Age. The Women are very jolly, and have large Breasts, in Proportion to the rest of their Bodies. Both Sexes are of a tawny Complexion, and much given to Venery. *Dapper* adds, that the *Arabian* Shepherds go quite naked, except a few, who wrap a Piece of coarse Woollen Cloth about them, which does not cover half their Bodies. Some wear a black Cloth Turban upon their Heads, folded almost like the Women's Caps at *Molcuere* in *Frizeland*, and the better Sort wear a long blue Cotton Gown with wide Sleeves, brought out of *Negroland*. They lie upon Mats made of Bulrushes, and their Tents are cover'd with a sorry sort of Stuff made of Camel's Hair, and a certain Down or Wool that grows among the Dates. Their Commander's Will and Pleasure is their only Law. Their Language is a rude Dialect of the old *African*, and their Religion is gross *Mahometism*; but they don't strictly observe it.

Morey says, the Air of this Country is hottest during our Solstice, when the Inhabitants keep within their Huts or in Caves most Part of the Day, and they chuse such Places where they may dig Wells for Water to quench their excessive Thirst. Here are great Numbers of Monsters, that some ascribe to the extraordinary Drought, which obliging Beasts of all Sorts to meet where there's Water, they couple together promiscuously, and breed Creatures of a monstrous Species. There are great Numbers of Lions, Tigers, Apes, Leopards, Panthers, and Ostriches, whose Eggs the People sell to make Vessels of to hang up in Mosques, and the Feathers to *European* Merchants. He adds, that the People are bold, and not afraid to meet the fiercest Lion or Tiger.

Tiger. Each Head of a Family is Sovereign in his own District; the eldest is always Head, and in Time of War chuses the stoutest Man for his Lieutenant.

The *Sanfons* say, That the People are generally sober, and inur'd to Hunger, Thirst, and all Sorts of Fatigue. They suppose that *Zanhaga*, *Zuenziga*, and *Targa*, answer to the ancient *Gatuli*; and *Lempta*, *Berdoa*, *Gaoga*, and *Borno*, to the *Garamantes*; but they don't agree with those who say the ancient Town of *Garama* is still to be found here, because *Leo* and the *Nubian* Geographer make no Mention of it.

Heylin places *Gualata*, a Province of *Negroland*, betwixt this Country and the *Atlantick* Ocean, and says, the People for most Part resemble the *Numidians* in their Shape and Qualities: That they once worshipped a Deity call'd *Pasaphon*, who (as the Story goes) caught divers Birds, which he taught to say *Pasaphon is a great God*, and then let him fly, which the simple People hearing, paid him Divine Honours. They were afterwards converted to Christianity, till about 710, when the *Saracens* added this Country, with *Biledulgerid*, to their Conquest, and planted *Mahometism* in its Head. He adds, that this was the Boundary of the old Geography this Way, because the Largeness of its Deserts, and the Barbarity of its few Inhabitants, hinder'd the Ancients from making any further Discoveries to the S. *Du Plessis* says, the Country is so infested with Scorpions, that the People are obliged to wear Boots, that they mayn't sting them. Their Houses and Wells are so far asunder, that a Man may travel several Hundred Leagues without finding either. He praises the Inhabitants for the best Hunters in the World. He adds, that their Revenues arise from the Tribute which the Caravans pay for their Passage thro' the Country, and from Camels, and the Skins of Wild Beasts. *Luyts* says, the E. Part of the Country is water'd by the River *Giras* and the Lake *Borno*, the Middle by the *Ghir*, and the West Part by the *Horse* River, which runs with two Arms into the *Atlantick* Ocean.

Heylin divides this Country into the 5 Deserts only of *Zanhaga*, *Zuenziga*, *Targa*, *Lempta*, and *Bordea*; but we shall follow the Table at the Beginning of this Chapter, with which *Plessis* agrees.

1. G A O G A.

Moll extends it 643 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and almost 240 where broadest, and bounds it with the Desert of *Barca* or *Fexzen* on the N. *Nubia* on the E. *Borno* on the S. and *Berdoa* on the W. The *Sanfons* make it 450 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and 269 where broadest. They say, some of the People of this Desert are Christians, but very ignorant, and for most Part Shepherds; and that above 200 Years ago they had a King, descended from a Negro Slave, who having seiz'd his Master's Effects, bought some Horses, with which he rovd about the neighbouring Countries, and traded some Time with Slaves for Horses, which he caused to be mounted, and then made himself Master of this Territory. Some call this Country *Kaughu*. *Leo* says, there's a Desert in these Parts call'd *Lenata*, extending from *Angela* to the *Nile*; but we don't find it in our Maps. He places *Gaoga* in *Negroland*, and bounds it with *Borno* on the W. *Egypt* on the N. and a Desert extending to the *Nile* on the S. He says, the People, especially the Mountaineers, are a barbarous Crew, cover nothing but their Privities, have Houses made of Boughs and Rafters, which are expos'd to Fire, and great Store of Cattle, which they attend very carefully. He adds, that the Prince of this Country in his Time had a great Respect for learned Men, especially those descended from *Mahomet*; and that while he was at this Court, a Nobleman of *Damiata* presented the King with a fine Horse, a *Turkish* Sword, a Royal Robe, &c. that cost about 150 Ducats at *Cairo*, for which his Majesty return'd him 5 Slaves, 5 Camels, 500 Ducats, and 100 large Elephants Teeth.

2. B O R N O.

Moll extends it above 600 Miles from E. to W. and 450 from N. to S. and bounds it with *Gaoga* and Part of *Berdoa* on the N. *Nubia* on the E. Part of *Negroland* on the S. and *Lempta* on the W. The *Sanfons* extend it 660 Miles from E. to W. and 600 from N. to S. *Leo* makes it a Province of *Negroland*, extends it 500 Miles E. from *Guangara*, places it 150 Miles from the Source of the *Niger*,

Niger, and joins it to the Desert of *Set* on the S. and that of *Barca* on the N. He says, the Inhabitants have Garments and Beds of Skins in Winter, but in Summer only cover their Privities with a Piece of Leather. They are known by Nick-Names taken from their Stature, Fatness, or other Quality, and have no Religion. Their Wives and Children are common, and in short they are meer Brutes. They were govern'd in our Author's Time by a potent Prince, descended from the *Libyan* People called *Bardoa*, whose Vessels, Spurs, Bridles, and the Collars of his Dogs, were of pure Gold. He was always at War with a certain People that liv'd beyond the Desert of *Sen*, who formerly wasted most of his Kingdom; upon which he purchas'd great Numbers of Horses from the *Barbary* Merchants, at the Rate of 15 or 20 Slaves for one Horse, then invaded the Enemy's Country, and brought off a great many Captives. *Morery* says, there's a Lake here of the same Name, thro' which the River *Niger* runs; that 'tis the Country of the ancient *Garamantes*; that 'tis bounded with the *Niger* on the S. and that the Men own those for their own Children that are most like themselves. The *Sansons* say, that the People are a Mixture of Whites and Blacks, and that they are civil, and follow Commerce. *Dapper* says, 'tis very well inhabited, and that they sow Cotton, Millet, and other Sorts of Grain. In this Country *Marmol* places *Angela* or *Augela*, which he says is the only *Libyan* Territory that retains its ancient Name, being placed by *Ptolomy* Long. 52 $\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 28. that it extends it self like a Slip to the *Mediterranean* over against the *Syrtes*; and that here *Cato* passed with his Troops in quest of *Juba* after *Pompey's* Death. *Herodotus* places his second Salt-Pits in this Territory. *Marmol* adds, that it abounds with Palm-Trees, and is much infested with Serpents, which some of the Natives can kill by their Spit-tle. *Dapper* thinks this Desert to be that of the ancient *Augiles*, mentioned by *Mela*, and places it 200 Leagues from the *Nile*, with that of *Berdoa* on the W. and those of *Barca* and *Marmarica* on the N. He adds, that it contains 3 Towns and several Villages, and that it produces little or no Corn.

3. BERDOA, BERDEOA, or BORDEA.

Moll bounds it with *Gagga* on the E. *Borno* on the S. *Lempta* on the W. and *Fezzan* and *Teorregu* in *Proper Biledulgerid* on the N. and extends it 180 Miles from N. to S. and above 330 where longest. The *Sansons* make it 600 Miles from E. to W. and 250 where broadest. *Leo* places it in the Heart of the *Libyan* Desert, and says, it contains 3 Castles and 5 or 6 Villages, which abound with choice Dates. He says, the 3 Castles were discovered by a Caravan of Merchants, who having lost their Way, were conducted thither by a blind Man, who 'tis said knew the Country at 40 Miles Distance by the Smell of the Sand; and that the Inhabitants were so frightened at the first Sight of them, that they refus'd them Water, and would not admit them within their Gates, till they had forc'd them open. *Dapper* bounds this Desert with *Iguidi* on the W. *Augela* on the E. the Deserts of *Fez* and *Barca* on the N. and on the S. the Desert which is opposite to *Borno*. He says, 'tis very dry and unsafe for Passengers, except those of *Gademis*, with whom the Inhabitants have contracted an Alliance.

4. L E M P T A or S U M A.

Moll bounds it with *Berdoa* and *Borno* on the E. Part of *Negroland* on the S. *Tagra* on the W. and *Techort*, *Guargala*, *Gademis*, and *Fezzan*, on the N. and extends it above 400 Miles from N. to S. and 300 where broadest. The *Sansons* make it 720 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and 420 where broadest. *Dapper* says, this Country is dry, and very dangerous for the Merchants of *Constantina*, *Tunis*, and *Tripoly*, who trade this Way with *Negroland*, because the Inhabitants are brutish and proud, rob all that pass thro' their Country, and murder those of *Guerghuela*, to which Country they lay Claim, and are always at War with the Possessors. They are a Mixture of *Arabs* and *Negroes*. He adds, that *Iguidi*, which the *Sansons* place in *Targa*, and where 'tis said *Cato* winter'd after his long Journey, is the Name of its chief Town,

Town, and *Lempta* that of the Desert only. But the *Sanfons* call its Capital *Digir*, and place it on a River that runs to *Borno*.

5. *TARGA*, *TERGA*, or *TAGRA*.

Moll bounds it on the E. with *Lempta*; on the N. with *Tegorarin*, *Zeb*, and *Techort*; on the W. with *Zuenziga*; and on the S. with Part of *Negroland*, and extends it 550 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and 327 where broadest. The *Sanfons* make it about 430 Miles from N. to S. and 480 from E. to W. *Dapper* says, there's a Race of *Africans* here of the same Name; that there are some deep Wells of good Water on the Side of *Zuenziga*; that the Air is temperate, and the Soil abounds with good Pasture. 'Tis frequented in the Winter by *Arabs*, who live in a Desert between *Segelmesse* and *Hair*; but in Summer encamp in the Passages of Mount *Atlas*, between *Fez* and *Segelmesse*. There are some *Arabs* among them, who are as it were their Vassals, because of their Poverty, and others live in such Parts of the Desert where there is Water, and where they till some small Fields, and live like *Bereberes*; but both Sorts live for most Part by stealing Negroes, and carrying them to sell in *Numidia* and *Barbary*. Some say, the Name of the Place is *Hair*, and *Targa* that of the People. *Leo*, *Dapper*, and the *Sanfons*, say, there's a Sort of Manna falls here every Morning, which the Inhabitants gather in small Vessels, mingle with Water, and put it into their Pottage and Sawces, which *Leo* says prevents those Diseases that would else arise from their unhealthy Air. They transport it to *Agades* in *Lempta* and elsewhere, and sell it at 2 d. a Pint.

6. *Z U E N Z I G A*.

Moll extends it 420 Miles from N. to S. and 315 from E. to W. and bounds it with *Tagra* on the W. *Segelmesse* and *Tegorarin* on the N. *Zanhaga* on the W. and Part of *Negroland* on the S. The *Sanfons* bound it also with Part of *Tesset* on the W. and make it 360 Miles from N. to S. and as much where broadest. *Dapper* says, this Desert is drier and more barren than the rest, and is inhabited by the *Guafseri*. The Merchants

who travel this Way from *Tremesen* to *Tombuto* and the Kingdom of *Tca* are in Danger of their Lives, because Men and Beasts die here sometimes with Thirst, particularly in the Territory of *Gogden*, where a Man may travel 9 Days without finding any Water, unless it be that of a few Marshes, which soon stinks. The Inhabitants are *Africans*; but there are some *Arabs*, who take Tribute from those of *Sugulmesse* for the Lands which they till, and wander thro' the Deserts as far as *Iguid*, staying at such Places where there's Pasture for the Cattle, of which they have Plenty. They have Store of Dates from the Frontier of *Biledulgerid*, where they rule by great Numbers of Horse. There are other *Arabs* here called *Garfa* and *Esgue*, who are all very noble, so that the Kings of *Barbary* court their Alliance, and marry their Governors Daughters. The *Sanfons* say, they are formidable to all their Neighbours, especially the Negroes, whom they take and sell for Slaves into *Fez*: But if any of these *Arabs* fall into the Hands of Negroes, they cut them in Pieces.

7. *Z A N H A G A* or *Z E N E G A*.

The most W. Part of *Libya*. 'Tis bounded on the E. with *Zuenziga*, on the N. with *Tesset*, on the W. with the *Atlantick Ocean*, and on the S. with *Gualata* and *Tombuto* in *Negroland*. *Moll* extends it 690 Miles from E. to W. and 270 where broadest from N. to S. The *Sanfons* make it not above 225 M. in Breadth. *Leo* says, 'tis so dry and barren, that there's scarce a Drop of Water in 100 Miles, but what is bitter and brackish, and drawn out of deep Wells. *Marmol* calls the People *Senega*, and says, they pretend to be the ancientest and most powerful Tribe in this Country; that they have reign'd in *Ethiopia*; and that some of the *Negroland* Kings are descended from them. They are black and Sun burnt. They feed for most Part on Milk and the Flesh of Wild Goats, and other Beasts which they hunt. Their Country is level, without House, Mountain, Wood or River; so that Travellers have no Marks for their Conduct, but the Winds, Stars, and such Fowls as resort to inhabited Places for Carrion. *Dapper* says, it takes up all the Country between Cape

Non and the Mouth of the *Niger*; yet he makes *Gualata* and *Tombuto* its Southern Boundary, together with the People called *Benayes* and *Gelofes*. He says, the People that live in this Desert are *Berveches*, *Ludays*, *Duleins*, *Senegues*, and some *Arabs*, most of whom live upon other's Estates, take away their Cattle, and carry them to *Dara*, &c. for Dates. The *Arabs* of *Beniamir* sometimes rove about this Country; but their principal Residence is between Cape *Non* and *Tagavest*. He adds, that in this Country lies the Desert of *Azaoad*, where the Merchant gave 10000 Ducats for a Pitcher of Water, as formerly mentioned. The *Sansons* say, that those who live nearest the Coast trade with the *Portuguese*, by exchanging their *Tibar* Gold for several of their Commodities.

The most remarkable Desert of this Country is *Tegaza* or *Tegassa*, on the E. Frontier. *Leo* says, 'tis noted for abundance of Salt whiter than Marble, which is digged by Strangers out of Pits, and sold to Merchants, who carry it upon Camels to *Tombuto*, where Salt is very scarce. These Miners live in little Huts placed at the Mouth of the Pits, and are often starved, if the Merchants happen to come too late with their Victuals, for they work 20 Days Journey from any inhabited Place, and sometimes the S. E. Wind blinds them, so that they are in great Danger of their Lives; yet they have more Workmen than enough. *Marmol* says, their Salt Quarry lies among rocky Mountains, one of which he thinks

was pointed at by *Herodotus*, where he speaks of a Mountain between the *African Thebes* and *Hercules's Pillars*. *Dapper* says, that some of the Caravan always stay and work at the Mines till the Merchants come back from *Tombuto*; and that the People of *Dara* carry *Tibar* Gold from hence to *Taragalel* and *Morocco* for the Xeriff. *Morery* says, the Inhabitants of this Desert never care to be seen by other Nations, and that they trade with those of *Zanhaga*, by laying their Salt on the Banks of a River, and then withdraw; after which the others come, and lay by each Heap of Salt the Price they are minded to give for it; and after these are withdrawn, they of *Tegaza* return and take the Gold so left. He adds, that two of these Savages were taken, and dy'd without being ever heard to speak, which makes People believe they are dumb. The *Sansons* say, their Salt is carried 4 or 500 Leagues into *Negroland*; that in some Places it serves instead of Money; that they use it in others every Moment, and let it melt in their Mouths, to keep their Gums from rotting, to which they are very subject.

Marmol mentions the River of Gold, or *River del Oro*, which *Moll* places in this Province, and says, 'tis only a Bay of the Sea which shoots up a great Way within Land; and that it had that Name because here the *Portuguese* got some *Tibar* Gold, in Ransom for some *Moors* whom they had taken Prisoners, which was the first Gold they had met with in this Part of the World.

C H A P. IX.

N E G R O L A N D.

Sanfons and Luyts's TABLE OF NIGRITIA OR NEGROLAND.

NEGROLAND, divided into Three Parts, viz.	On the hither Side of Ni- ger.	Biafar King- dom.	{	Besegua, Besegue, or Bisegue Kingdom.	
				Buguba or Byagoo Kingdom.	
				Guinola or Guinala Kingdom.	
			Melli K. —	{	Cantory or Cantori, Beria, Melli.
			Soufi or Sou- fos K. —		
			Mandinga K.		Mandinga, Tocrur.
			Gago K. —	{	Caceres, Bonaes, Gago, Tombi, Bunci, Dau.
			Guber K. —		Malal, Guber, Tuspa.
			Zegzeg or Zeg- zet K. —	{	Zegzeg or Zegzet, Chanara or Ghanara.
			Zanfara K. —		Zanfara, Reghebil or Rheghebil.
			Gangara K. —	{	Semegonda, Semegonde, or Se- magda, Secmara, Tirqua or Tirque, Gangara.
			Cassena K. —		Nebrina, Cassena, Marasa, Tirea.
			Cano K. —	{	Tassava, Gerima, Cano or Chana.
			Agades K. —		Agades, Deghir, Mayma or Maima, Mura, Cutumbo.
			Tombut K. —	{	Berissa, Gueguena or Guegene, Salla, Tombut, Canvia, To- cror, Caragoli, Cassali.
			Gualata. K. —		Fulli, Hebedesex, Gandia, Gua- lata, Angra, Arguyn or Ar- guin, Hoden.
			Geneboa K. —	{	Joudejaba or Joude-Jabe, Sam- balamech or Sambalameci, Patesau, Kellen, Ganar, Brack, Cockio or Kockio, Formalick, Genehoa.
			Jaloffe's Peo- ple. —		Julieto, Gambia, Budomel, Sol- lul, Emboul, Ivala or Joala, Barfa, Nabara or Nabare, Charles Fort.
	Casanga's Peo- ple. —	{	Bintah, Codan, Serra, Casama, Jura.		
	Bijago's Peo- ple. —		Catcheo, Amatado, Times, Por- vacao, Boyla, Boila, or Bogla.		
	Between the Branches of the Niger.				

The famous River of Negroland is Niger, which falls into the Atlantick Ocean by these Six Arms or Mouths, viz. Rio Grande, St. Domingo, Casamanza, Rio dos Oxtros, Gambia, Senega.

NEGROLAND.

THE *Sanfons* place it between the Tropick of *Cancer* and the Equinox, bound it with *Zaara* on the N. the Ocean on the W. the Coast of *Guinea* on the S. and on the E. with Part of the Desert of *Zaara* and *Congo*, and extend it 2400 Miles from Cape *Blanco* on the *Atlantick* Shore to the Frontiers of *Ethiopia*, and almost 900 on the Coast where 'tis broadest. *Moll* makes it the same Breadth, but 1650 Miles from E. to W. *Luyts* extends it from Long. 3. to 45 or 46. and on the Coast from Lat. 8. almost as far as the Tropick of *Cancer*, wherein he agrees with the *Sanfons*. *Leo* says, its S. Boundaries were unknown in his Time. *Du Pleffis* bounds it with Part of *Congo* on the S. as well as *Guinea*, and extends it almost 800 Leagues from E. to W. but not above 30 where broadest. *Heylin* carries it E. as far as *Upper Ethiopia*, and S. to the *Ethiopick* Ocean and the River *Zaire* in *Loango*; but then he takes in *Nubia* and the Coast of *Guinea*, which others exclude. *Dapper*, who seems to agree with *Heylin*, bounds it on the E. with the *Nile*, and on the S. with the *Ethiopick* Ocean and the Country of *Prestor John*, and extends it 1140 Leagues from Cape *Verd* to *Dangala* in *Libya*, over against the *Nile*, and 510 from *Gualata* to the Cape of *Lopez Gonsalvo* in *Loango*; or from N. Lat. 23 $\frac{1}{2}$. to S. Lat. 2.

Dapper says, the Ancients call'd the Inhabitants of this Country *Ethiopians*, *Nigrites*, or *Melanes*, i. e. Negroes or Blacks, either from the River *Niger*, which passes thro' the Country, or from the black Dust which covers all the Deserts from Mount *Atlas* to that River, or from the People's natural Complexion. The *Sanfons* reject the first, and chuse the last; but *Heylin* approves the first. Others, who assign their Blackness as peculiar to the Race of *Canaan*, say, that Foreigners preserve their Whiteness in this Country; and that the *Chinese* and *Americans*, who are under the same Zone, are not so black as the Negroes.

Dapper divides it into the following Inland and Maritime Provinces. The former are *Gualata*, *Guinea*, *Melli*, *Tombut*, *Gago*, *Guber*, *Agadex*, *Cano*, *Cassena*, *Zegzeg*, *Zanfara*, *Gangara*, *Borno*, *Gaoga*, which lie along the

Niger in the Road from *Cairo*; and *Bito*, *Temiam*, *Dauma*, *Medra*, and *Gorhan*, which lie further E. and S. but we have described *Borno* and *Gaoga* in the former Chapter, and shall refer the 4 last to *Ethiopia*, according to *Luyts*'s Division. His Maritime Provinces are, *Zenega* or the Country of *Jalofes*, the Kingdoms of the *Barcecius*, the *Taluppi*, *Casamanca*, and *Buramas*, the Islands of *Biseges* or *Bigiokos*, the Kingdoms of *Guinala*, *Bigwada*, *Mandinga*, *Bena*, *Soufi*, *Sierra-Leona* or *Bolmberre*, the Islands *Los Idolos*, and *Las Bravas*, all the Coast of *Guinea* and its Dependencies, with the Islands of *Amboise* and *Corisco*; but *Luyts* and the *Sanfons* exclude *Sierra-Leona* and the Coast of *Guinea*, of which we shall give an Account in the next Chapter, and refer the Islands to be treated of hereafter. *Du Pleffis* divides *Negroland* into two Parts, viz. 1. The Country N. of the *Niger* and *Gambia*, which contains *Gualata*, *Genehoa*, *Tombut*, *Agades*, *Cano*, *Cassena*, *Gangara*, and the People between the *Senegal* and *Gambia*, called *Jalofes*, *Sereres*, *Barbecins*, &c. 2. That South of those Rivers, which contains *Zanfara*, *Bito*, *Zegzeg*, *Guber*, *Gago*, *Mandinga*, *Cantory*, *Melli*, and the *Casanga's* who inhabit between the Rivers *Gambia* and *St. Domingo*, and the *Bisagos* between the latter and the *Niger*. We refer for the Division of *Luyts* and the *Sanfons* to their Table. *Morery* reckons up above 20 Kingdoms and People as follows, viz. *Borno*, *Guangara*, *Cano*, *Cassena*, *Agades*, *Tombut*, *Canvia*, *Gualata*, *Genehoa*, and *Fouli*, N. of the *Niger*; and on the S. *Zanfara*, *Zegzeg*, *Gago*, *Bangana*, *Cantory*, *Mandinga*, *Caragoulis*, *Soufos*, *Beccabena*, and *Melli*, besides the *Biafares*, *Jalofes*, and *Gambayes*, who live about the Mouths of the *Niger*. *Heylin* divides it into *Ora*, *Anterosa*, or the W. Coast, *Gualata*, *Agadex*, *Cano*, *Casena*, *Senega*, *Gambia*, *Tombuto*, *Melli*, *Ghenioa*, *Guber*, *Jalofes*, *Guinea*, *Benin*, *Guangara*, *Borno*, *Gaoga*, *Nubia*, *Bito*, *Temiano*, *Zegzeg*, *Zanfara*, *Gorhan*, *Medra*, and *Daum*. But we refer *Benin* to *Guinea*, and shall follow the Division of *Luyts* and the *Sanfons*, according to their Table prefixed to this Chapter.

Its chief Rivers are as follow; 1. *Niger*, which runs thro' the whole Country. *Dapper* says, the *Arabs* call it *Hued*, *Nichar*, or *Nigar*; and the Ancients, *Asana* and *Asanaga*, according to *Sanutius*. *Leo* thinks it rises from a Lake E. of the Desert of *Sew*.
The

The *African* Geographers say, 'tis a Branch of the *Nile*, which running under Ground, rises in the aforesaid Lake; and some say, that both these Rivers rise from the same Fountain, because there are the same Monsters and Fish in both, and because they overflow at the same Time; for which Reason 'tis like the *Sansons* call this River the *Nile of the Negroes*. *Pliny* and other ancient Geographers were of the like Opinion, because both Rivers yield the same Reeds, that are already mentioned in the *Nile*. Modern Geographers say, it rises from a Lake of the same Name on the Confines of *Madra* and *Vanque* in *Abyssinia*; and that from thence it runs W. thro' *Biafar* and *Nubia*, and hiding it self for about 25 Leagues under Ground, rises between *Guangara*, *Biafar*, *Cassena*, and *Zegzeg*, and forms the Lake of *Sigisma* or *Guarda*, (or as others say *Borno*) between *Mandinga*, *Guber*, and *Gago*, on the S. and *Cano* and *Agadex* on the N. from whence it runs W. between *Tombut* on the N. and *Melli* on the S. where it spreads into a Lake, from whence it runs into the Ocean by 4 Branches, call'd by different Names, of which by and by. Some think the *Niger* rises in a Desert call'd the *Negroes Sea*. *Leo* says, that during its Inundation, which increases and falls with the *Nile*, one may travel over all the Country in a Bark, tho' not without great Danger; and *Marmol* says, their Barks are not so well built nor strong as those of *Egypt*. Some think that this and the *Nile* are two Branches of *Gihon*, one of the Rivers of Paradise. *Ptolomy* says, the Lake *Nigritis* is form'd by the Conjunction of the *Niger* with the *Mandrus* and *Thalamantis*; that it divides Northward into two Arms, that run toward the Mountains of *Ursagula* and *Sagapula*, and that afterwards it forms a third, which runs E. above the Lake of *Libya*, which he places Long. 35. 16. Lat. 16 $\frac{1}{2}$. But *Leo* affirms the contrary, and the Merchants who go up this River from *Gualata* and the *Gelofes* to *Cairo* say, that all its Branches run Westward. *Du Plessis* says, it has three Branches. *Luyts* and *Morery* say, it falls into the Ocean by 6 great Streams, which are all but one, S. of the Cape of *Verde*; and that the Tide, which ebbs and flows every 6 Hours, runs above 25 Leag. into the Country. *Marmol* reckons no more

than two Branches, viz. the *Senega* and *Gambia*.

2. The River of *St. Juan* or *John*. *Dapper* says, 'tis the first Branch of the *Niger*, and runs into the Gulph of *Arguin*, with *Tofia*, a good Harbour, at its Mouth; but *Moll* places this River 135 Miles N. of the most Northern Branch of the *Niger*.

The 3d is *Senega*, *Senegal*, or *Canaga*, which (according to the Maps) seems to be the first Branch of the *Niger* to the N. tho' *Dapper* makes it the second. Some think it the *Daras* of *Ptolomy*. *Dapper* says, it receives different Names according to the different People by which it passes, so that the *Jalofes* call it *Dengueh*; the *Tucorons*, *Maso*; the *Saragoles*, *Colle*; the *Baganes*, *Zimbala*; and the Inhabitants of *Tombut*, *Iza* or *Tca*, which last *Marmol* says it keeps to its Source. The *Portuguese* gave it the Name of *Zenega* or *Sanaga*, from a Lord with whom they first traded at their Arrival in this Country. Tho' this River is generally taken for a Branch of the *Niger*, yet some say it rises out of two Lakes Eastward, called the *Che-lidonian* Lakes by *Ptolomy*, viz. the Lake of *Gaoga* and the Lake of *Nuba*, or the River of *Ghir*. Its Course is very long and streight, and it falls into the Ocean N. Lat. 16. 48 Leagues from the River of *Gambia*, and 25 above Cape *Verd*. It forms several barren Islands towards its Mouth, which are only habitable by Serpents and Wild Beasts, and there are several Rocks and Sand Banks in its Channel, which render it unnavigable, and Cataracts in some Places like those of the *Nile*. *Morery* says, the Ocean runs 60 Leagues up this River. He places its Source in *Ethiopia*, not far from the *Nile*. He makes it the most N. Boundary of the Negroes, and says, that this and the River *Gamba* rise and fall at the same Time with the *Nile*, and *Pory* and others make it the same with the River *Niger*. *Dapper* says, it has a Communication with the *Gambia* by little Canals, and abounds with several Sorts of Fish and Water Animals, such as Crocodiles, River Horses, and Horn'd Serpents. *Marmol* says, that its Mouth is very deep, and half a League broad. He adds, that this and the other Branch of *Gambia* forms an Isle, which has great Sand-Banks before it, that shoot out a League into the Sea, and

are cover'd in Flood-time. *Moll* calls them *Pargas Banks*, over against *Cape Verd Islands*. *Marmol* places its Mouth Lat. 15. and says, 'twas discover'd by the *Portuguese* in 1445. The Water of this River is white, till it mixes with the Red Water of the River *Lahamar*, at a Place called *Busitembo*, i. e. White and Red: And the Negroes say, these two Waters are of such a contrary Quality, that when mix'd, they prove Emetick, tho' separately they have no such Effect. *Sir William Monson* says, this River leads to *Tombagatu* and *Gago*, which he calls the richest Places in the World for Gold, and observes, that several *English*, &c. have attempted to find out the Way, but to little Purpose, for want of due Preparations and Precautions, for which we refer to him.

4. *Gambee, Gambia, or Gambia*. *Mr. Jobson*, who ran hither in 20 Days from *Dartmouth*, says, it spreads into so many Rivers, Bays, and Creeks, that 'tis very intricate for 30 Leagues up to *Tancrovally*; but elsewhere the main Channel is easily discern'd. It flows up to *Baracunda*, which is near 200 Leagues in the lowest Season; but it never goes higher, and not so high in Land-Floods. There are many River-Horses and Crocodiles here, which the People call *Bum-bos*, and say they have devour'd many of their Friends. Their Musky Scent spoils both the Taste of the Water and Fish. There's Store of Fowl about the Banks, which dare not go into the River for fear of the Crocodiles. There's Plenty of Mallet and other Fish here, and our Author saw one like a Bream, which being touched by a Sailor, he presently lost the Use of his Arms, and another the Use of his Legs; but their Sense came to them again, and 'tis said it benums all the Fishes it touches, and then devours them, yet *Jobson* says, 'tis very good Meat. *Dapper* tells us, the Coast is so low at the Mouth of this River, that it cannot be distinguished from the Sea when the Weather is not clear. 'Tis fordable near the Village of *Tinda*; but the Negroes dare not pass it for fear of the Crocodiles. There are several Islands and Villages on it, of which hereafter, when we come to describe the Countries about the Mouths of the *Niger*.

5. *San Domingo*. *Moll* unites it with *Rio Grande* by an Arm call'd *Catcheo* or *Chatechaw*.

6. *Rio Grande*. *Dapper* says, it runs into the Sea over against the Isles of *Bisegos* or *Bigiobos*, and has two Branches called *Guinala* and *Biguba*, from the Provinces thro' which they pass. These already mention'd being the chief, we shall defer the rest to our Account of the particular Provinces.

Dapper says, the Soil in general abounds with several Sorts of Corn, especially Millet and Rice; that 'tis interspersed with Mountains and Forrests, except along the *Niger*; that the Inhabitants have all a black Skin and white Teeth; that they are strong and vigorous; but that they don't live to a very great Age, which he ascribes to their immoderate Venery. Their Teeth keep sound to their Death. *Leo* says, the Soil is extream hot, but abounds with Cattle, Cocons, Cucumbers, large Melons, Onions, and several other Herbs, which they plant near the Cities. It has no Fruit-Trees, but some great ones call'd *Goron*, which bear a bitter Fruit like a Chesnut. He says, there are no Mountains neither here nor in *Libya*, but several Lakes and Marshes; and that Rain does it neither Good nor Harm, because 'tis well enough water'd by the Inundations of the *Niger* and its Branches. The Air is very temperate, and so wholesome, that they scarce know what the Venereal Disease is, and many of the *Barbarians* have been cured of it by coming hither, as well as into *Numidia*. Their Women are subject to the Falling Sickness; but they pretend they are only possess'd with a Spirit. The Men are Strangers to Arts and common Sense, are meer Brutes, and their Women are common, except in the chief Towns. They have great Numbers of Elephants, which keep together in Companies; and if they meet a Man by chance, shun him; but when they pursue them, they knock them down with their Trunks, and trample 'em to Death. The *Ethiopian* Hunters catch them by making Inclosures with Stakes and great Boughs in the Woods, leaving an open Entry with a Door, lying flat upon the Ground, which they pull up with Ropes to stop the Passage, when the Elephant, which loves shady Inclosures, comes hither to rest, and then they kill him with Arrows. *Dupleffis* says, the Soil produces some Cotton and Flax, and that their chief Merchandize is Skins, Ivory, Ambergreece, Gold Dust, and

and Slaves, which they steal from their Neighbours, and sell their own Children to Europeans, who generally transport them to America to work in the Plantations of Sugar or Tobacco, or to till the Ground. The *Sanfons* say, that *Negroland* has two Harvests a Year, with Corn enough at each for five whole Years, so that they never sow their Lands but when their Stock is almost out. They lay up their Corn in Ditches or Trenches call'd *Matamore*. The *Nubian* Geographer quoted by *Heylin* says, they have no Fruits but Dates, which are bought by the Inhabitants of *Vareclan* from *Segelmesse* or *Zeb*; but that on the Banks of the *Niger*, there are *Indian* Reeds and large Woods of Ebony, Box, Sallows, Tamarisks, &c. where the Negroes and their Cattle shade themselves in the Heat of the Day, and which abound with Lions, Leopards, Deer, Hares, white Weazels, Hedge-hogs, and other wild and tame Beasts. But he says, they have little Corn besides *Guinea* Wheat, of which they make their Drink. *Heylin* adds, that in some Parts the Soil is always green, and exceeding fruitful, especially within the Compass of the *Niger* and its Branches, and that in others they have Mines of pure Gold and Silver; so that he thinks the *Portuguese* might have made as rich a Factory here as in the *Indies*. *Morery* says, they sow no Corn, but Millet; that they have very large Pease of several Colours, and great Beans of a bright Red; that they have no Rain but in *July*, *August*, and *September*; and that they have no Wine but what they draw from the Palm-Trees, by making an Incision in the Trunks with a Hatchet. By this Means they draw off 3 or 4 Quarts from one Tree in 24 Hours. The Liquor is sweet at first, but grows stronger in two or three Days, and in 15 or 16 Days turns fower. *Morden* says, the *Niger* somewhat qualifies the Heat of the Country; but that the Rains breed several Distempers.

Leo says, they speak the *Sungay* Language in *Inner Guinea*, *Gualata*, *Tombut*, *Melli*, and *Gago*, and another Language called *Guber* in the Kingdom of that Name, and in *Cano*, *Cassena*, *Zegzeg*, and *Gangara*. *Heylin* says, those of *Gualata* have also a Language of their own.

Leo tells us, that anciently *Negroland* was the only inhabited Country of *Africa*, and

that its Kingdoms had their several Kings, till most of them became subject to the King of *Tombuto*, a few to the K. of *Borno*, and the rest to the K. of *Gaoga*. He adds, that this Country is never visited with the Plague. *Marmol* says, most of their Rivers were discovered by the *Portuguese*, who sail 2 or 300 Leagues up the Country, in order to traffick. *Leo* reports, that most of *Negroland* lay undiscover'd, till the 380th Year of the *Hegyra*, when it was found out by a *Mahometan*, at which Time it was inhabited by a numerous but brutish People, equally ignorant of Government and Husbandry, who only kept Cattle, wore and lay upon the Skins of Beasts, and liv'd in promiscuous Embraces, without Restraint. They kept at home, and wag'd War with no Nation. Some worshipped the Sun, and others the Fire, and there was another Sort, which our Author names not, that liv'd nearer to the Rules of Christianity. They were first subdued, he says, by *Joseph* King of *Morocco*, of the Race of *Almohades*, and then by the 5 *Libyan* Tribes, who divided them into 15 Parts, and taught them the *Mahometan* Law, and several Handicraft Trades, while they learn'd the *Barbarian* Language from the *Barbary* Merchants, with whom they traded: But one of the *Libyan* Kings being slain by the King of *Tombuto* above-mentioned in 1526, they recover'd their Liberty, and made the latter, who was then a General, and by Birth a Negro, one of their Kings. By a 15 Years War, he conquer'd large Dominions, and made the other Princes his Tributaries. After which he made a League with his Neighbours, and exhausted his Treasure by a Pilgrimage to *Mecca*.

Heylin says, the Country is well inhabited. Their Arms are Bows and Arrows, made of Reeds and Clubs of Ebony, which they use with great Dexterity and Courage. Their Houses are built of Earth and small Timber. They go almost naked, because of the Heat of the Country, and affect Necklaces and Bracelets. Camel's Flesh and Fish are their best Dainties. He adds, that before the *Portuguese* came hither, the People seem'd void of Wit or Reason, were luxurious, and for most Part Idolaters, with a Mixture of *Mahometism*; and that at their Arrival, they took their Ships for great Birds,

Birds, with white Wings; and after better Acquaintance, could not be convinced but that the Eyes, which were painted on the Beaks of the Ships, were the Eyes by which they saw how to steer. When they heard the Noise of the Guns, they thought they were the Devil's Handicraft, took Bagpipes to be living Creatures, and after they felt them, could not be perswaded but that they were the Work of God's own Hand. Their Nobles too (if such Blockheads deserve so noble a Name) are ignorant of whatever belongs to civil Society, and yet so reverent to their King, that they sit in his Presence with their Elbows on their Knees, and their Hands on their Faces. They anoint their Hair with the Fat of Fishes, which makes them stink abominably. They are so fond of their own black Complexion, and so much abhor a white one, that in Contempt they paint the Devil white. He observes, that they have try'd all Religions, and agree in none. 'Tis said, they were first Idolaters, then Jews, then Christians, for a while, till 973, when *Mahometism* prevailed first in *Melli*, then in *Tombuto*, *Gualata*, and all the other Provinces. He adds, that the Successors of the King of *Tombuto* above-mentioned were the greatest of the 5 Kings, and obtained the supreme Power over all the rest; but that about 1590, according to *Hakluyt*, they were reduced by the Kings of *Fez* and *Morocco*, to whom *Heylin* believ'd it was still subject in his Time, and govern'd by a Viceroy. The other 4 he says were,

1. The K. of *Mandinga*, who was Lord of *Benin*, *Giolofo*, and the Kings of *Guinea*.
2. The King of *Borno*, the only one descended of the *Libyan* Race, next in Power to the King of *Tombuto*.
3. The King of *Gualata*, who is supreme within that Province only: And,
4. The King of *Gaoga*, who is the supreme Lord over all the rest of the Provinces. But *Heylin* adds, that in his Time the King of *Tombuto* had the greatest Power, and was like to bring the rest under his Command. *Morery* says, that the Inhabitants of the Sea-Coast are more civil than those that dwell farther up in the Country, because of their Commerce with the *Portuguese*, and that many of them are turn'd Christians. He tells us, that they are always at War with one another, and that they sell the Captives on both Sides to

other *Africans*, or to the *Arabians* and *Portuguese* for Slaves. *Du Plessis* says, those that live in the Towns are *Mahometans*; but those in the Deserts have no Religion or Law. They have no manner of Genius, and hate Work, which gave Occasion to the Proverb, That he that would bring a Negro to Reason, must give him enough of Victuals, a great deal of Work, and frequent Bastinadoes. *Dapper* says, that some of the People are free, and others subject to Kings, of whom the King of *Borno* is the least, and he of *Gaoga* the next in Power to the King of *Tombuto*. *Morery* says, the *Dutch* have some Holds here, and trade with the Natives for Ostrich Feathers, Gums, Amber, and Gold.

We come now to the particular Geography of *Negroland*, and shall begin with

I. G U A L A T A,

Has *Zanhaga* on the N. *Geneboa* or *Senega* on the S. the *Atlantick* Ocean on the W. and *Tombuto* on the E. is one of the least of the Provinces, according to the *Sanfons*, who extend it 500 Miles from E. to W. and near 220 from N. to S. *Moll* makes it but 360 Miles in Length. *Leo* says, it contains but three great Villages, with some Orange and Date Trees, and lies S. of *Geneboa*, contrary to our Maps. In our Author's Time it had a Prince, that was tributary to the King of *Tombuto*, who over-run this Country in 1526, and restor'd it for an Annual Tribute. The Inhabitants are black and thick skull'd, but very kind to Strangers, and free in Trade. They cover their Heads so, that almost all their Face is hid. They have no Form of a Commonwealth, nor no Learning but what they have from the *Arabs*, and lead miserable Lives. They have little Flesh, but Plenty of Miller, and a round white Sort of Pulse, not common in *Europe*. *Dapper* says, they have also Rice and Barley, and that the Inhabitants, who are called *Benais*, have no Judges, and worship Fire. *Du Plessis* makes this the first Province of Northern *Negroland*, and says, it contains some Mines of Gold.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Galata*, its Capital, which *Moll* places on the River *St. Cyprian*, about 60 Miles E. from its Influx into the Bay of that Name, and 140

N. E.

N. E. of Cape Blanco. *Leo* places it 300 Miles S. of Nun, 500 N. from Tombuto, and 200 from the Ocean, and says, it was the Royal Seat of the *Libyan* Governors, when the *Senegues* were Sovereigns in these Parts, and frequented by the *Barbary* Merchants, till *P. Heli's* Reign, when they remov'd to Tombut and Gago, which quite ruin'd it. *Heylin* places it 100 Miles from the Ocean, with Ora Anterosa between them.

2. Cape Blanco, or the White Cape. *Moll* places it Lat. $20\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $2\frac{1}{2}$. *Anth. Galvano*, in his Book of the Discoveries of the World, says, that in 1441 it was discover'd by Nunyo *Tristan* and *Anth. Gonsalvo*. *Marmol* says, 'tis a Point of Sand that appears white at a Distance, from whence it had the Name, and that from hence the Coast begins to take another Turn, is called the Ora Anterosa of *Heylin*, from the Village *Anterote*, as far as the River *Senega*, and makes a Gulph, to which the Current tends. *Sir Francis Drake* arrived here in January 1577. *Sir Richard Hawkins*, who arrived here in his Voyage to the South Sea, says, 'tis low sandy Land, and very dangerous, because it has Sand Banks for 4 Leagues into the Sea, cover'd with Water. *Morery* says, they are 10 or 12 Cubits high, and that it has a spacious safe Harbour.

3. Hoden or Guaden. *Moll* places it 120 Miles E. from the Cape: The *Sanfons* 220 more to the N. E. *Sanutius* places it 6 Days Journey from the said Cape, Lat. $19\frac{1}{2}$. *Dapper* says, 'tis not wall'd, and only built for the Conveniency of the *Arabs* and Caravans that travel from Tombut into *Barbary*. The Inhabitants breed Store of Cattle, so that Flesh is cheaper here than any where else in the Province, for they have Camels, Goats, and Ostriches, whose Eggs are good to eat, but are much infested with Lions and Leopards. They transport Copper, Silver, and other Merchandize, to Tombut for Gold. *Morery* says, they are implacable Enemies to the Christians; that their Product is Dates and Barley; and that many of them rob in the neighbouring Deserts.

4. Arguin, two Islands. *Moll* places them on the Coast, at the Mouth of the River *St. Juan*, Lat. $19\frac{1}{2}$. and 40 or 50 M. S. of Cape Blanco. *Galvano* says, that in 1455 or 1461, *Don Alfonso K.* of Portugal built a Castle in one of 'em, and appointed *Mendez* his Governor. But *Morery* says, the Portuguese were beat

out by the Dutch in 1633 or 1638, and here again by the English some Years after; that the French ruin'd it in 1678; and that the Dutch began to settle there again when he wrote. *Dapper* places these Islands 12 Leag. from the Cape, says they were discover'd by *Tristan* in 1443, and that they are seven Rocks, expos'd to the Winds and Waves, which had so many several Names, before the Portuguese built a Fort at one Corner, which was 405 Foot in Compass, and fortified on the Land-Side with a Wall 24 Foot high, and 11 broad, and with three Batteries, two of which were pointed to the Land, and the other to the Sea. *Heylin* calls the Inhabitants *Azanbays*. *Luyts* says, 'tis the Capital of a Country of the same Name.

2. G E N E H O A, G E N N I, or G U I. N E A.

This must be distinguished from the Coasts of Guinea, of which we shall treat in the next Chapter.

The *Sanfons* bound it with *Gualata* on the N. the Ocean on the W. Tombut on the E. and the Country of *Jalofes* on the S. and extend it above 240 Miles between the Rivers *St. Juan* on the N. and *Senega* on the S. and 330 where longest from E. to W. *Moll* calls this Country *Senega*; but tho he begins it at the River of *St. Juan*, he does not carry it so far as the River *Senega*, and makes it no more than 275 Miles from E. to W. and 165 from N. to S. *Leo* misplaces it N. of *Gualata*, and extends it 500 Miles from N. to S. and 250 Miles along the *Niger* from its Mouth. He says, it abounds with Barley, Rice, Cattle, Fish, and Cotton, which last they exchange for European Cloth, Armour, &c. brought out of *Barbary*. Their Coin is most Part Gold, without any Inscription: But in Way of Retail, they use Pieces of Iron of a Pound, half Pound, and quarter. They have no Fruit, and import Dates from *Gualata* and *Numidia*; nor no Town or Castle, but a large Village, where the Prince and chief Men reside, their Houses being built with Chalk, and thatch'd. The Inhabitants wear black or blue Cotton, with which they cover their Heads; but the Priests and Doctors of the Law wear white. In July, August, and September, the *Niger* overflows, and turns this Vil.

Village into an Island, and then the *Tombut* Merchants import their Goods in Canoes made of one Plank, which they row by Day, and at Night fasten to the Shore, on which they lodge. *Dapper* says, there's a Desert of 160 Leagues between this Province and *Gualata*, and carry it as far S. as *Melli*. He adds, that 'twas subject to the *Lumptuni's*, and paid them Tribute under the Reign of *Soni Heli*; but his Successor *Tzchia K.* of *Tombut* having conquer'd the K. of *Genehoa*, carried him Prisoner to *Gago*, where he died, reduced his Kingdom to a tributary Province, placed a Governor over it, and remov'd the great Fair which was kept in its Village on the *Niger* to *Tombut*. *Heylin* says, the Province is rich, and that 'twas called by the Ancients *Autolata*, *Ichthyophagi*; and by *Pliny*, *Autoles*. For he says, the Coasters live for most Part on Fish, and the rest on Lizards or other Vermin. In the Summer they stay at home all Day, and travel in the Night, because of the scorching Heat. They sell their Children for Slaves. They have no Trees, and little Corn, which is often devour'd by Swarms of Locusts, which the People kill, dry, and eat. He adds, that the Coasts of *Guinea*, which lie to the S. had their Name from hence, when discover'd by the *Portuguese*. We shall leave the several Nations about the Mouths of the *Niger* to be described by themselves, and proceed, according to *Dapper*, to the next Province of

3. M E L L I.

This is the most S. Maritime Province of *Negroland*. The *Sansons* bound it with the Ocean on the W. the *Biafares* and *Cantory* on the N. the *Soufi* on the E. and *Malaguette* on the S. from which 'tis parted by the Mountains *Sierra Leona*, and extend it 270 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and 180 where broadest. *Leo* places this N. of *Genehoa*, contrary to the Maps, and extends it 300 Miles along a River that falls into the *Niger*, which is probably *Rio Grande*; but the *Sansons* don't extend it so far N. He says, it abounds with Corn, Flesh, and Cotton, and is full of wealthy Tradersmen and Merchants. The King gives honourable Entertainment to all Strangers. There are no Colleges, but many Temples, where the

Priests and Professors of the Law read Lectures. The People are more sensible, civil, and industrious, than all the other Negroes, and turn'd *Mahometans* while they were subject to the Uncle of *Joseph* King of *Morocco*, whose Posterity continu'd in the Sovereignty till *Tzchia K.* of *Tombut* put them under a severe Tribute in 1520. *Dapper* bounds it on the E. with *Gago*. *Du Plessis* says, it abounds with Dates. The *Sansons* say, here are many good Towns, because of the Conveniency of one of the Branches of the *Niger*, by which they can transport their Dates, Grapes, Cottons, &c. and that they have a famous College, and many Doctors of *Haly's* Sect, where the Youth come to study from all Parts of *Negroland*. *Heylin* misplaces this E. of *Tombut*. *Morery* places *Mandinga* and *Sages* to the E.

It has its Name from its Capital *Melli*, which *Leo* says was a large Village, that contain'd above 6000 Families in his Time. *Dapper* says, the Sovereign keeps his Court here, and he places it 30 Days Journey from *Tombut*.

4. T O M B U T or T O N G U B U T U.

The *Sansons* bound it with *Genehoa* and *Gualata* on the W. *Zanhaga* and *Zuenziga* on the N. *Agades* on the E. and *Gago*, *Mandinga*, *Cantory*, and the People called *Jaloses*, on the S. and extend it near 400 Miles from N. to S. and 580 from E. to W. *Moll* bounds it with *Gualata* and *Senega* on the W. *Zanhaga* on the N. *Meczara* on the E. *Mandinga* on the S. and the *Jaloffi* on the S. W. and extends it 315 Miles from E. to W. *Dapper* says, they have many Wells and Fountains, and that the Country abounds with Wheat, Barley, and Millet, and such Store of Cattle, that they have Plenty of Milk and Butter; but Salt is very dear, for they have none but what comes from the Pits at *Tegaza*. They have no good Breed of Horses, but import a good Number from *Barbary*, which when they arrive, the King picks out those he likes best, and pays well for them. The Negroes here are *Mahometans*, but good humour'd, brisk, and civil. They sing and dance at the Sound of little Drums and Bells. They keep a great many Slaves of both Sexes, and the King in our Author's Time maintained learned Men at his

own Charge; but was a great Enemy to the *Jews*, whom he would not suffer to trade in his Country. They have a great Number of *Arabick* Books brought out of *Barbary*, which are sold dearer than any other Merchandize. All the Women, except the Slaves, veil their Faces when they go abroad. Their Coin is little Pieces of fine unminted Gold. He adds, that the King of *Tombut* styles himself Emperor of *Melli*, and that his Treasure consists in great Ingots of Gold, of which some weigh 13 Hundred. He has Tribute from *Gualata*, *Cano*, *Cassena*, *Zegzeg*, *Guber*, and *Melli*, and 1500 Ducats a Year from his Vassal the King of *Agades*. He is so revered, that when his Subjects have a Mind to speak to him, they fall flat on the Ground, and throw Dust upon their Head and Shoulders before they propose their Business, and approach to him on their Knees. *Morery* says, his ordinary Guard is 3000 Horse, besides a vast Number of Foot, who use poison'd Arrows; but he was drove out, says *Heylin*, by the King of *Gago*, and in 1594 the King of *Fez* and *Morocco* sent 1700 Men to conquer this Country, who, tho' many of them perish'd in the Deserts for want of Water, took *Gago* and *Tombut*, and forc'd the King to pay 60 Quintals of Gold *per Annum*, the People being altogether unskilful in War. *Dupleffis* includes *Moll's Mecza* or *Meczara* in this Country. The *Sanfons* say, it abounds with Gold, and that the King, who is a *Mahometan*, is so powerful, that he marched against the Xeriffs of *Morocco* with 300000 Men. *Sir William Monson* says, that this and *Gago* yield the greatest Quantities of the finest Gold in the World. *Heylin* says, this Province is water'd by a Branch of the *Niger*, and that the Food of the Inhabitants is Flesh, Butter, Milk, and Fish, mingled together, which they make neither toothsome nor wholesome. He adds, that the King is the richest Prince in *Africa*, except the *Abassine* Emperor; and that tho' he lost great Part of his Kingdom in 1589 to the Xeriff of *Morocco*, who extended his Empire six Months Journey beyond the City of that Name, yet he recover'd what was taken from him, and became as great as before.

The chief City is, 1. *Tombuto* or *Tombut*, which the *Sanfons* place on the N. Side of the River *Senega*, and in the S. W. Corner

of the Province, Long. 9. Lat. 15. *Moll* Long. 6½. and *Rob.* Long. 20. 15. *Leo* says, 'twas founded by King *Mense Suleiman* in the 620th Year of the Hegyra, or A. D. 1221. 12 Miles from one of the Branches of the *Niger*, and 250 Leagues from *Dara* and *Segulmesse*. It had no Houses in our Author's Time, but only Cottages built with Chalk, and thatch'd; but *Dapper* says, that they were anciently very sumptuous. It had a stately Temple built of Stone and Lime, and a Princely Palace, of which an excellent Workman of *Grenada* was the Architect. 'Twas well stock'd with Merchants and Traders, especially Linen and Woollen Weavers: Besides, they have *European* Cloth imported from *Barbary*. The Women sell all Sorts of Victuals. The Merchants were so rich in our Author's Time, that the King married both his Daughters to two of them. When the *Niger* overflows, the Water is brought into the Town by Conduits, tho' they have many Wells of fresh Water. A Camel's Load of Salt brought hither from *Tegaza*, 170 Leagues to the N. costs 80 Ducats. When the King goes abroad, he rides upon a Camel, led by one of his Noblemen, and all his Soldiers are on Horseback. Six Pieces and ⅔ of their Gold Coin weighs about an Ounce; but in petty Bargains they use *Persia* Shells, 400 of which are worth a Ducat. He adds, that the Citizens are courteous, jolly, and genteel; that they have no Gardens nor Orchards; and that the City is much expos'd to Fire. *Dapper* says, the Merchants of *Fez*, *Morocco*, and *Cairo*, enrich this City by their Commerce; and that they exchange a great deal of Merchandize for the Gold which the Inhabitants receive from those of *Mandinga*. *Heylin* places this City 400 Leagues S. of *Morocco*. He dates its Foundation from the 610th of the Hegyra, or A. C. 1201. *Roberts* says, here are several *English*, *Dutch*, and *French* Merchants.

2. *Cabra*. *Leo* places it on the *Niger*, about 12 Miles from *Tombuto*, and says, 'tis a large unwall'd Town, where the Merchants embark for *Guinea* and *Melli*; that the Inhabitants and Buildings are not inferior to those of *Tombut*; and that they are govern'd by a Judge or Viceroy appointed by the King of *Tombut*. *Heylin* calls it the Port of *Tombut*; but we don't find it in the Maps.

5. G U B E R or G U L E R.

The *Sanfons* bound it with *Gago* on the W. Part of *Agades* and *Cano* on the N. *Zegzeg* on the E. and the Coast of *Guinea* on the S. and extend it 408 Miles from E. to W. and 180 where broadest. *Moll* places it between *Niger* and the Lake of *Garde* on the N. and *Guinea* on the S. *Leo* says, 'tis encompassed with high Mountains, inhabited by Shepherds, abounds with Cattle that are smaller than in other Places; and that the *Niger* overflows the whole Country once a Year, at which Time the Inhabitants sow their Seed. *Dapper* says, 'tis parted 100 Leagues E. from *Gago* by a large Desert 14 Leagues from the *Niger*; that 'tis full of populous Villages, and abounds with Pasture, Rice, and Millet. Here are a great many Merchants and Artificers, most of whom make Cotton, Cloth, or Slippers, after the *Roman* Fashion, and sell them at *Gago* and *Tombut*. *Morery* says, its King is absolute. *Heylin* places this Country E. of *Genehoa*, and says, 'tis of the same Length. *Du Plessis* says, it abounds with Wood. The *Sanfons* say, the People are pretty civil, and their Woods and Deserts full of Cattle.

Its Capital is of the same Name, which *Moll* and the *Sanfons* place on a little River that runs into the Lake of *Garde* on the N. *Leo* says, 'twas a great Village, with almost 6000 Families, frequented by all Sorts of Merchants, and the Seat Royal of its King, who was slain in his Time by *Yschia* King of *Tombut*.

6. A G A D E Z.

The *Sanfons* place it between *Tombut* on the W. *Zuenziga* and *Targa* on the N. *Cano* on the E. and *Guber* and *Gago* on the S. from which 'tis parted by the *Niger* and the Lake of *Garde*, and extend it above 530 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and almost 420 where broadest from E. to W. *Moll* bounds it with *Meczara* on the W. *Leo* says, 'tis inhabited by Shepherds, who dwell in Huts of Bulrushes and Boughs, which, when they remove, they carry on Oxen. He adds, that in his Time, whoever pleas'd the Inhabitants of the Desert best, was sure to be King. *Dapper* says, this Country extends

farther N. into the *Libyan* Deserts than *Gualata*; that the Province abounds with Pasture, Cattle, and Fountains; and that they gather Manna in the Deserts, which the People sell to the Merchants who come for it, and pay great Duties to the Prince of this Country, who pays 150000 Ducats Tribute to the King of *Tombut*, and depends on the Tribe of *Zuenziga* in *Libya*, whose Captains have a Power to depose him, and set up another in his Room. The *Sanfons* say, this Country abounds with Cattle more than any thing else.

Its Capital is of the same Name, which *Moll* and the *Sanfons* place on a River that runs into the Lake *Garde*, the former 270 Miles N. of *Guber*, and the latter 330. *Dapper* says, 'tis wall'd, and that the Houses are built after the *Moorish* Fashion, with the King's Palace in the Middle. He adds, that the People of the Town are most Merchants and Foreigners, the rest being Artificers or the Prince's Soldiers. *Morery* says, they are for most Part Natives of *Barbary*, who trade betwixt that Country, *Cano* and *Borno*. *Heylin* says, the People are civiler and better natur'd than the other Negroes; and that the Place has a Correspondence with the Ocean by the River *Senega*, because of its Situation on another River which he says falls into it.

7. C A N O or G H A N A.

The *Sanfons* and *Moll* bound it with *Agades* on the W. *Targa* and *Lempta* on the N. *Cassina* on the E. and *Guber* on the S. from which 'tis parted by the River *Niger*. The former extend it 420 Miles from N. to S. and above 360 where broadest; the latter 490 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and 315 on the Banks of the *Niger* where broadest. *Leo* places it 500 Miles E. of the *Niger*, and says, 'tis chiefly inhabited by Herdsmen or Labourers; that it abounds with Wheat, Rice, Cotton, Deserts, woody Mountains, Springs, Citrons, and well tasted Lemons. *Dapper* places this Country 170 Leagues from *Agades*, and says, 'tis well stor'd with Oxen and Sheep, and full of open Villages. *Morery* says, its King was formerly very powerful, and kept a great Army on foot, with which he made the Kings of *Zegzeg* and *Cassena* Tributaries; but that *Yschia* King of *Tombut*,

Tombut, on Pretence of assisting them, made them Way by Treachery, and three Years after wag'd War against the King of *Cano*, whom he forced, after a long Siege of his Capital, to marry one of his Daughters, and to pay him one Third of his Revenues. He resides in the Capital, which, with the River whereon it stands, are both of the same Name, and the latter runs into the *Niger*, according to *Moll* and the *Sanfons*. The former places it above 300 Miles S.E. of *Agades*, and above 330 N.E. of *Guber*. The *Sanfons* place it 330 from the former, and 270 from the latter. *Leo* says, it stands in the Heart of the Kingdom, and is inhabited by rich Merchants and a civil People; and that the Houses are for most Part built of Chalk. *Dapper* says, it has Walls of Wood and Stone, or Earth, and that the Houses are of the same. He places it Long. $30\frac{1}{2}$. Lat. 17. and adds, that the Inhabitants are addicted to Arts and Commerce. *Morery* says, it lies near a Lake, wherein he agrees with *Moll* and the *Sanfons*. The *Arabian* Geographer says, 'tis divided into two Parts on both Sides the Lake, and reckons it the greatest, richest, and most populous, Town in *Negroland*. He says, 'tis resorted to by Merchants from the most W. Parts, as well as those in the Neighbourhood; and in a Word, he tells Wonders of the Justice and Government of its King, of his fine Palace, Throne, rich Moveables, &c.

8. C A S S E N A.

The *Sanfons* bound it with *Cano* on the W. *Lempta* on the N. *Gangara* on the E. and *Zegzeg* on the S. and extend it almost 390 Miles from N. to S. and 255 from E. to W. *Moll* 300 from N. to S. and 195 from E. to W. They both part it from *Zegzeg* by the River *Niger*. *Leo* says, 'tis a mountainous woody Country, and yields nothing but some Barley and Millet, so that the Inhabitants are almost starv'd. They are very black, with large flat Noses, and thick Lips, dwell in sorry Cottages, have not above 300 Families in any Village, and had formerly a King; but he was slain by *Tzchia* K. of *Tombut*; upon which they became his Tributaries.

9. Z E G Z E G, Z E Z A G, or Z E G Z E T,

Is bounded with *Cassena* on the N. *Guber* on the W. *Cano* on the N. W. *Benin* on the S. and *Zanfara* on the E. The *Sanfons* extend it 390 Miles from E. to W. and 260 where broadest: *Moll* almost 330 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and 214 from N. to S. where broadest. *Leo* bounds it with *Cano* on the S. E. contrary to our Maps, and places it 150 Miles from *Cassena*. He says, the Plains are intolerably hot, but the Mountains so cold, that in Winter the Inhabitants, who are a rich Trading People, keep great Fires near their Bedsteads when they go to sleep. Their Fields are well water'd and fruitful. They have been subject to the King of *Tombuto* ever since he kill'd their King. *Dapper* bounds it with *Cassena* on the N. W. and says, their Habitations are as mean as those of that Province, from which the River *Niger* parts it. The *Sanfons* say, it abounds with Horses.

10. Z A N F A R A or J A N F A R A,

Is bounded with *Zegzeg* on the W. *Cassena* on the N. W. and *Gangara* on the N. from both which 'tis parted by the River *Niger*; Part of *Borno* and *Biafara* on the E. and Part of the latter and *Benin* on the S. The *Sanfons* extend it above 600 Miles from E. to W. and above 240 where broadest, and say, that the People of this Province and *Zegzeg* are very ignorant and dull. *Leo* says, it abounds with Corn, Rice, Millet, and Cotton; that the People are tall, black, broad Fac'd, and very barbarous; and that their King was kill'd by *Tzchia* King of *Tombut*, to whom they became Tributary. *Dapper* says, the latter poison'd him, and murder'd many of his Subjects. *Heylin* bounds this Kingdom on the E. with *Nubia*.

11. G U A N G A R A or G A N G A R A.

The *Sanfons* bound it with *Lempta* and *Borno* on the N. Part of *Borno* on the E. *Zanfara* on the S. from which 'tis parted by the *Niger*, and *Cassena* on the W. and extend

it 540 Miles from E. to W. and 260 where broadest. *Leo* bounds it with *Zanfara* on the N. W. and says, that by the Incursions of *Tschia* King of *Tombut* on one Side, and the King of *Borno* on the other, it lost all its Trade with Foreign Nations; but they fetch great Store of *Tibar* Gold from a Country on the S. and the Roads being unpassable by Camels, because of craggy Mountains, they bring it on the Backs of Slaves that travel 10 or 12 Miles a Day, and carry a prodigious Weight of Merchandize and Provisions for the Merchants and Soldiers that guard them. *Dapper* says, it has but one Wall'd Town, (which is of the same Name) besides little Villages and sorry Cottages; but *Heylin* says, 'tis rich and populous. The Inhabitants are very dull. He adds, that the Prince has commonly 7000 Archers and 500 Horsemen in his Pay, which he can raise in a little Time, and that he treats his Subjects as Slaves. *Morery* says, their Weapons are Bows, Arrows, and Scymiters. The *Sanfons* say, this Country abounds with Gold.

12. G A G O,

Is bounded with *Mandinga* on the W. Part of *Tombut* and *Agades* on the N. *Guber* and Part of *Guinea* Coast on the E. and the latter on the S. The *Sanfons* extend it 480 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and 390 in the S. Part where broadest. *Leo* says, it yields Plenty of Corn, Flesh, Melons, Citrons, and Rice; but they have little Wine, Trees or Fruit, tho' they have choice Springs of fresh Water. Besides its Capital, it contains only a few Villages and Hamlets, inhabited by Husbandmen and Shepherds, who in Winter wear Beast Skins, and Shoes of Camel's Leather; but in Summer go quite naked, except their Privities. He adds, that they are oppressed by heavy Taxes, and unacquainted with Learning and Civility. *Dapper* says, this Province is separated from *Guber* by a Desert of 100 Leagues in Length, and that it abounds with Rice, Cattle, and Pasture, together with Cucumbers and Gourds. The Merchants of *Morocco* come hither for Gold, as formerly mentioned, this and that of *Tombagatu* being reckon'd the purest Gold in the World. The Inhabitants are so dull

and ignorant, that they count a Person that can but read and write a Man of Learning, which not one in a Hundred among them can do. He adds, that their Prince has been Tributary to the King of *Morocco* ever since *Muley Hanef* seiz'd its Capital, when he made an Expedition against the Negroes with 1700 Men, tho' most of them perish'd in the Deserts, the Arms of the Inhabitants being only poison'd Poles and Arrows. The *Sanfons* say, they have no Salt of their own, and that they pay a Camel's Load of Gold for as much Salt to the Emperor of *Morocco*. *Leo* says, the King has a Guard of Horse and Foot, and a Seraglio of Concubines and Wives in a private Palace, attended by Eunuchs. He decides all Controversies in Person, attended with his Secretaries, Treasurers, Auditors, &c.

He resides at his Capital, *Gago*, which the *Sanfons* place on a River that runs S. into the *Niger*, Lat. $11\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 19. above 560 Miles S. E. of *Tombut*: *Moll* Lat. $12\frac{1}{3}$. Long. 16. and but 510 Miles from *Tombut*. *Leo* makes it but 400 Miles S. from that City, and says, 'tis a large unwall'd Town; that the Houses were all very mean in his Time, except the King's Palace; and that their Merchants, who have a great Market for *Barbary* and *European* Cloth, are very rich. On the Market Days, he says there was a Place appointed for the Sale of Slaves, where a Child or a Lad of 15 Years old went for 6 Ducats. He adds, that all Sorts of Commodities were imported hither in great Quantities, and for great Prices; so that an *European* Horse, bought for 10 Ducats, would yield 40 or 50 here; that the coarsest *European* Cloth would bring 4 Ducats an Ell, and the *Venice* or *Turkey* Scarlet 30 Ducats; and that Swords, Spears, Bridles, and Spurs, are also very dear. *Dapper* places it Long. 35. Lat. $8\frac{1}{2}$. and says, it has no Fortification. The *Sanfons* say, the People never speak to the King but upon their Knees, of what Quality soever they be, on Pain of having their Estates confiscated, and their Wives and Children sold to Foreigners for Slaves. They add, that those which are brought to the Market for Sale are either such as they steal from one another's Dominions, Malefactors, disobedient Children, or such as their Parents cannot provide for. Many of them are bought up by the *Afri-*

cans themselves, but more by the Europeans, who transport them to the Isles of *St. Thomas*, *Cape Verd*, the *Canaries*, *Brasil*, &c. where they labour in the Mines, Sugar-Fields, or do other hard Work.

13. B I T O.

Moll makes it a Town in *Zanfara*; but we do not find it in the *Sansons*. *Dapper* makes it a Kingdom, with *Guber* on the W. *Caro* and *Zegzeg* on the N. and *Temiam* on the E. He places the Capital, of the same Name, Long. 19. and Lat. 8. 10. and says, the Inhabitants are rich, and have a Prince. *Moll* Long. 29. Lat. 13 $\frac{1}{4}$.

14. A brief Description of the Coast of Negroland, according to *Dapper*.

He begins it at *Cape Verd*, the most Western Point of the Coast, of which we shall take farther Notice when we come to the Country of the *Faloffes*. Three Leagues from thence to the S. lies the Village of *Refrisco*, then that of *Cumino*, and three Leagues further to the S. E. *Enducura*, from whence a Way leads to *Guimeberi*, *Punto*, and to *Porto d'Ale*, which is 12 Leagues from *Goree Island*, and 9 or 10 from *Refrisco*. West of *Porto d'Ale* lies a Cape, which the Portuguese call *Punto de Porto d'Ale*; and in the Harbour there's a great Stone, which, because it resembles the Figure of a Whale, is called the *Whale's Stone*. The Coast between those Places is muddy, and not above 8 Fathom deep, so that Ships must lie two Leagues off. Not far from *Porto d'Ale* is the Cape, which the Portuguese call *Cabo de Masse*. The Coast from hence to *Refrisco* is very calm and deep. About 4 Leagues and a half from the said Port is another called *Porto Novo*; after which he places *Punto Sereno*, *Punto Lugar*, and the Village of *Juala*, which is 10 or 12 Leagues from *Porto d'Ale*. Three Leagues S. of *Juala* is the Mouth of the River *la Grace*, and 8 Leagues further the River *Borsalo*, then that of *Gambia*, *St. Mary's Cape*, the *Rio des Ostros*, or the River of Oysters, the River *Rha* or *Casamanca*, and then *Cape Roxo*. Three Leagues from thence is the Great *Cape Velu* or the Dry Cape, and a League further the Lesser *Cape Velu* or the Shoal of Sea-Gulls. Three Leagues

from hence is the Mouth of the River *Calcheo*, a Branch of *St. Domingo* or *Jarim*, which runs into the Sea a little further. More to the S. lies the River *das Ilelas*, (so called from three little Islands near it) which runs thro' the Country of *Burami* or *Papais*, and then *Rio Grande*, which falls into the Sea over against the Islands *Bisegos* or *Bigiokos*. To the S. of these Islands he places the River *Donalui*, then that of *Nunno Tristan*, and two Leagues further that of *Tabito* or *Vergas*, which runs into the Ocean near *Cape Verges*, or the Virgin's Cape of *Moll*, where begins the Kingdom of *Sierra-Leona*, which we shall describe in its Place.

We shall treat of these Places more particularly in the several Countries to which they belong, and come now to describe the Countries about the Branches of the *Niger*, according to *Promise*, wherein we shall for most Part follow *Dapper's* Account, which seems the best and most particular.

15. The Country of the FALOFFES, or Moll's SENEGA.

Marmol calls it *Gelofes* or *Chelofes*, and *Heylin* *Gialofi*. *Dapper* places it between the *Zenega* and *Gambia*, two Arms of the *Niger*, and extends it very far into the Country. He bounds it on the W. with the Ocean; on the E. with *Tuchusor*; on the S. with the Kingdom of *Gambia*, from which the River of that Name parts it; and on the N. with the River *Senega*. He makes it 114 Leagues from E. to W. and 60 along the Coast. The *Sansons* make the former 420 Miles, and the latter 120; but *Moll* extends it 360 Miles from E. to W. and 210 on the Land-Side, where he makes it broadest. *Dapper* says, 'tis inhabited by the *Barbecins*, the *Tucorons*, the *Saragoles*, the Inhabitants of *Manienga*, and the *Messes*. The chief Monarch of the Country is called the *Great Falof*, who styles himself Sovereign of 13 or 14 Kingdoms, the Kings of *Baool*, *Cayor*, *Juala*, and *Ale*, being his Vassals, and his Dominion extends from *Cape Verd* to *Cassan*. His natural Sovereign'd over the Country of *Baool*, and was called by the Inhabitants *Louchi Four*. His Territory begins E. of the Village of *Camino*, and extends 25 Leagues as far as *Porto d'Ale*. The King lives two Days Journey from the Coast, at a Place called *Lambaye*, and some-

Sometimes at *Sangay*, and bears the Title of *Tain*. The King of *Cayor*, who also styles himself King of *Cape Verd*, and Parts adjacent, resides at the same Distance from the Coast. The Kingdom of *Juala*, which is separated from that of *Ale* by the River *la Grace*, is about 30 Leagues in Extent, and has a petty King called *Walli Silla*, who also resides at the like Distance from the Coast. The Countries of *Cayor* and *Borsala* extend N. round the Kingdoms of *Ale* and *Juala*, and have a Village at each End on the Land Side; one of which, called *Taray*, belongs to *Cayor*; and the other, named *Birguisea*, to *Borsala*, separated from each other by a Forrest of 12 or 15 Leagues. The Kingdom of *Ale* joins to that of *Brocallo*, which is the greatest, is inhabited by the *Barberins*, and is bounded by the River *Gambia*. *Du Plessis* extends the whole Country of *Jalofes* 40 Leagues along the Coast, and 100 from E. to W. *Dapper* says, that there are no Wall'd Towns, but open Villages in all this Country.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Cape Verd*, on the Coast, between the Rivers *Senega* and *Gambia*, and one of the most famous Capes of *Africa*. *Dapper* says, the Portuguese gave it this Name, because 'twas cover'd with Green; that 'tis called *Besecher* and *Mandan-gar* by the Inhabitants; and he thinks it the *Arfinarion* which *Ptolomy* sets down in N. Lat. 10. 40. The Portuguese and Dutch Mariners place it in Lat. 14. 21. and Lon. 3. and *Moll* and the *Sansons* in Lat. 14. 30. and Long. 2. or 2½. *Dapper* says, this Cape is low, uneven, runs very far into the Sea; and that on the N. Side, where it joins the Continent, 'tis encompassed with a sandy Soil, and several Villages, which are seen when Mariners double the Cape. *Morery* says, there's 7 small Desert Islands under it, call'd *Barbacene*, besides the *Cape Verd* Islands that lie further out into the Sea, of which hereafter. He adds, that it was first discover'd in 1455 by *Alovis de Cadamasta*, a *Venetian* in the Portuguese Service. *Luyts* dates its Discovery in 1445 or 1446, by *Denis Ferdinando*, a Portuguese, and says, the Dutch are now Masters of it, according to *Leu-holfius*. He adds, that 'tis much frequented by the Europeans for Trade, and lies 20 Leag. from the Mouth of the River *Senega*, and 240 from the Town of *Genchoua*. *Moll* pla-

ces it 90 Miles S. W. from the Mouth of the *Senega*, and above 60 N. W. from that of *Gambia*. The *Sansons* 100 from the latter, and 80 from the former. *Ortelius* and *Cluverius* say, this Cape was formerly call'd *Promontorium*, or *Cornu Hesperium*. *Galvano* says, that when the Portuguese found it, they set up a Wooden Cross on the Shore.

James Lange, a Dutchman, who made a Voyage hither about the Close of the Year 1621, gives the following Account of the Cape and the adjacent Country, as we find it bound up with *Harris's* Collection. He places it Lat. 14. 40. He says, the *Moors* here have Canoes made of the Trunk of a Tree, with two or three Sails one above the other; and that their chief Traffick is in Hides and Elephants Teeth. He met here divers Portuguese and *Moors*, the Posterity of those who were banish'd from *Spain*, and some *Jews*, who had their own Priests. He says, their Women, of whom they marry several at a time, go half naked, with only a Piece of Stuff hanging down before from the Waist to the Knees, and the Men wrap theirs round their Middles; but the Boys and Girls go naked till 15 or 16 Years old. The Women wear Chains of Chrystal, Beads or Corals, about their Waist. They make Incisions in their Foreheads, mark their Arms, Legs and Bellies, with the Figures of Serpents or other Creatures, and anoint themselves with Grease every Morning to make their Skins shine. The Men wear a Piece of red Leather about their Necks, which they call *Pheritie*, and mark it with certain Characters. They use it chiefly in the Wars, and say it renders them invulnerable. They are often at Variance with their Neighbours, by which Means they are expert in the Use of their Arms, which are Bows and Arrows, or a Lance and Half-Pike. The Men mind only their Arms and Hunting, and make their Wives their Drudges both at home and in the Field. They sleep on Mats spread upon the Ground. They smook Tobacco first in the Morning, and both Sexes have two or three Pipes constantly hanging down from about their Necks. This is their Breakfast: Besides which, they eat only twice a Day, and that very moderately too; and tho' the Men are great Drunkards, especially at Funerals; when they spend 5 or 6 Days together in Drink.

Drinking and Weeping by Turns, yet upon a Pinch, he says they can live 3 Days together without any Drink. Their common Draught is fair Water, or a Liquor made of Millet and Palm-Wine, and sometimes they mix Water with the latter, for their Wine is very strong. If a Foreigner or Native swears by the King's Head, he forfeits his Estate, and suffers Banishment. After the King's Death, none of his Children can inherit the Crown, but his Nephews may, and his Wives are looked upon as no more than private Widows; but their Children are bred up in the Palace, and reckon'd among the *Fidalgo's* or Nobility. He saw Negroes there, who they said liv'd farther within Land, and ador'd the Sun just before set, by falling on their Knees, bowing to the Ground, and throwing Dust upon their Heads. In their Huts they had made a kind of Trench about 3 Foot high, which served for an Altar, where they said their Prayers for half an Hour together upon their Knees, turning their Heads in the Evening to the W. and in the Morning to the E. Some of the *Jewish* Priests here had married Negro Women. They abstain from Wine, and reckon Adultery as great a Crime as Theft. Some of the Negroes on the Shore worship Trees and Rocks, but most of them the Devil, tho' they believe there is a God, who, they say, being very good to Mankind, needs not their Devotion; but that the Devil must be worshipp'd, because he is naturally inclin'd to Mischief; so that they never put out to Sea till they have sacrific'd to the Devil some Branches of Trees, Horns or Shells painted red, which they lay upon a kind of Altar, kneel before it bare-headed, and kill a Fowl, which, while 'tis a bleeding, one of their Priests mutters out certain Words till 'tis dead, whilst he that performs the Sacrifice falls on the Ground, sprinkles the Altar with Blood, and lays the two Wings upon it. They believe the Immortality of the Soul, and the Resurrection of the Dead, but that it shall be with white Bodies like the *Europeans*.

Our Author says, the Cape produces Civet-Cats and Ambergreece, tho' not so much as the Country nearer the River *Senegal*. Here are several Sorts of Birds, of which there are some called *Aphiaprappen*, which

make no Noise, are very large, of a bright black Colour, and have a fine Tuft on their Heads, with a Crimson-colour'd Spot on each Side, mix'd with White. There's another Sort of Birds like Pelicans, and great Numbers of small ones, especially Turtles. Provisions are so cheap here, that a String of Coral will purchase a good Sheep, and two Quarts of Brandy an Ox. There are great Quantities of Fish on the Coast, especially Sword-Fish, and the Negroes are so dextrous at catching them, that many of them live by nothing else. They go out commonly in the Evening 20 or 30 Canoes together, and having rang'd themselves in a Line, they set Fire to some combustible Matter they carry with them, and hang a small Cord about their Necks, with Hooks and Lines fasten'd to them, and pull up the Fish when they feel them touch the Bait. He adds, that there are abundance of great Schar's or Sharks here, which bite Men and Beasts in two; and when they go to snap at any thing, turn upon their Backs, because their upper Jaw is longer than their under one. There's one Sort call'd the Cross-Schar, with a Cross upon its Snout above 7 or 8 Foot long, and an Eye at each of the two Extremities, the Bulk of his Body being proportionable to the Cross. A small Fish constantly swims before it like its Pilot. Here's another kind of Fish called *Suckers*, with flat Heads; and *Dorades*, like Dolphins, appearing with various Colours under Water. They catch them with Hooks, hung with small Shreds of white Linen, which the *Dorades* mistaking for flying Fish, are catch'd by the Bait.

2. The Island *Goeree*, so called by the *Dutch*, says *Dapper*, because of its good Harbour, lies within Cannon-shot of the Continent, and in Lat. 14. 35. *Du Plessis* says, the *French* have a Governor in these Parts, who resides in a Fort near the Mouth of the River *Senegal*, to manage the Concerns of the *French* Company of *Senegal*. *Moll* places this Island a few Miles E. of the Cape, but the *Sansons* more S. *Morery* says, 'tis a little Island depending on the Kingdom of *Alex*, but 3 Miles from Cape *Verd*; and that the *Dutch* built a Castle in it, call'd Fort *Nassau*; but that the *French*, who took it in 1677, under the Conduct of the Count d'*Estrees*, demolished it, and built another, of which they

they remained the Masters in our Author's Time. *Dapper* says, that beyond the Village of *Refrisco*, which is 3 or 4 Leagues from *Cape Verd*, and a Cannon-shot from the Shore, there's a high Rock in the Sea, with some Shoals under Water, which are call'd *Campan's Banks*, from the famous Corsair *Nicholas Campan*, who gave them this Name as he pass'd over them. He says, *Cape Masse*, on the same Coast, has that Name, because the Masts of Ships are often split by the Wind that blows from two neighbouring Mountains, which obliges Mariners when they double it to bear but few Sails. Farther S. he places the Village *Juala*, which he says lies on a little River, and is inhabited by *Portuguese* and *Mulatto's*, which are a certain swarthy People that came hither to trade, and are descended from White Fathers and Negro Mothers. Six or 7 Leagues to the E. along the Coast, he places the Village *Candima*, and *Geroep* 8 Leagues further in the Country, where lives an *Alcayor* and some *Portuguese*. He observes, that there are two great Roads which cross this Country, beginning from the Village of *Refrisco*, one running to the N. W. and the other to the N. Ten Leag. from *Refrisco*, in the N Road, lies the Village of *Emduto*, which is always govern'd by a Person of the ancientest Family in the Place, and is the common Stage of Travelers. From hence a little to the E. there's a Village, which is the Residence of their Priests call'd *Licherins*, and the Pontiff *Alletrop*. Six Leagues further lies the Village of *Endir*, where live 4 or 5 *Portuguese* Families, and some *Mulatto's*. About two Leag. from hence to the N. lies the Village of *Magar*, where the K. of *Cayor* resides sometimes; and 10 Leagues further E. the Village of *Emboul*, with that Prince's Palace, which is separated from the other Houses by green Pales, and great Walks of Trees. There's a fine Square before the Palace for managing Horses. None dare approach the Castle without a Permission, because there the Prince keeps his Seraglio. He adds, that the Houses, which lie a Musket-shot from the Palace, are but sorry Huts, of one Story high. Fifteen Leagues from hence *Dapper* places *Embar*, a Village where the Princes of the Blood live that may succeed to the Crown. Five or six Leagues

further on the Bank of the River *Senega* is the Village of *Beyhourta*, where the King of *Cayor* keeps a Farmer to receive the Imposts. He says, the *French*, who have a Fort at the Mouth of this River, depend on the King of *Cayor*, and pay him 16 per Cent. for such Skins as are bought up there. In the Kingdom of *Baool*, which he begins 25 Leagues E. of *Camino*, lies *Lambaye*, which is the chief Habitation of the Kingdom; and 3 Leagues to the W. another great Village called *Sangay*, where the Prince has also a Palace.

The Capital of the Kingdom of *Zenega*, and where the Great *Jalof* keeps his Court, is *Tubacatum*. The Air here, says *Dapper*, is excessive hot, and Rains and Tempests, mix'd with Thunder and Lightning, begin commonly about *September*, when the S. E. and E. S. E. Winds often cause Storms in the neighbouring Sea; but 'tis worse when the Wind is at S. which commonly happens in *August*. The unwholesomest Month for the Inhabitants is *October*, because then the Wind and Rain cease, and the Air grows intolerably hot; but in *November* the S. E. Wind begins again to refresh the Earth, and lasts till *May*.

Nine Leagues S. from *Juala* lies the Mouth of the River *Borsalo*, which is shut up by great Banks, so that one must go up 4 or 5 Leagues along the River to find 4 or 5 Fathom Water. The Sides are full of Villages; and about 15 Leagues from the Coast, on the E. Bank, there's a good Fountain of fresh Water, known by a great Tree 4 Fathom thick, where the Inhabitants are supplied, for the Water of the River is salt, and the Tide flows up it above 60 Leagues.

Three Leagues from *Juala*, near *Punto Sereno*, lies the little River call'd *Rio de la Grace*, which divides the Kingdoms of *Ale* and *Juala*. At the Mouth of it is a Sand-Bank, dry at low Water, and affords fresh Springs. A little further S. lies the River *Bassangamar*, with Shelves of the same Name at its Mouth. A little further lies the River call'd by the *Portuguese*, *Rio des Ostros*, because it abounds with Oysters. There's no other River betwixt *Borsalo* and *Gambee*, nor any Inhabitants, all that Country being filled with Wood.

Four Leagues N. E. from *Jandos* is the Lake of *Eutan*, 7 Leagues and a half long, three

three quarters of a League broad, and 5 or 6 Foot deep. In the rainy Season it abounds with Fish, and is swelled with many Torrents; but in the Heat of Summer one may pass it on Foot, and then are found small Horns call'd *Simbos*, which those of *Angola* use for Money. Near the Village *Sanyeng* there's a Fountain 10 Fathom deep, whose Water is of a sweet Taste, and us'd by the Inhabitants, because their other Fountains are unwholesome. The Negroes say, there are Brooks in this Country whose Waters poison Camels and Horses, but no other Cattle. This Country is all low, and the Soil fat, especially that which lies on the Banks of the *Senega* and *Gambia*; but 'tis so parched in Summer, that the Clefts of the Ground are deep enough to bury a Horse. Tho' this Soil be proper for all Sorts of Corn and Fruits, the Inhabitants are so lazy and dull, that they have very little except some Beans, which are of a vast Size. Yet about *Cape Verd* there's Store of Rice, Cardamums, and Barley, whose Grains are as large as our Pease. Their Seed-time is in *July*, and their Harvest in *September*, before the Time of the Inundation. Their most common Grain is a Sort of Millet, which the *Indians* call *Maiz*. They sow it when the Ground is dry, and cover it with a little Sand, but throw no Earth upon it, alledging that the Heat would so dry it up after the Rain and Inundation, that it could not grow. They have no Grapes, but make Wine of Dates, and have an Oil of an excellent Smell and Taste, which makes their Victuals as yellow as Saffron. They have abundance of Pasturage, fine Trees, and all Sorts of Herbs. Over against the Harbour of *Ale*, on the Road to *Juala*, there's a pleasant Forrest call'd *Tapa*: It is very thick, with large Trees, and serves for shady Walks to the *Portuguese* at *Porto d'Ale*. Tobacco grows very well here; but the Inhabitants don't cultivate it. They have also Tamarinds and Ananas, and were they industrious, might have all other Sorts of Plants and Grain, but Oranges and Lemons, which don't thrive here. In the rainy Season they have a Fruit call'd *Foles*, very like an Orange in Colour and Size, but the Skin harder, and the Juice sharper. They have another wild Fruit resembling a Date, but lesser and sweeter. It grows on a Shrub,

which is perfectly loaden with it. They make Oil of it, and a Wine call'd *Schonkon*, smaller than Palm-Wine. They have another Tree called *Syby*, with Fruit like Coco-Nuts: Of this they make Wine, but not so good as that of Dates.

Their other Fruits are, 1. *Cacatons*, round and flattish, of a dark Green without, a fine Green within, and full of a sharp refreshing Juice. 2. *Naniples*, like Walnuts, the Bark yellow and soft, the Juice refreshing and sharp, and mix'd with Water, is good against Distempers that proceed from excessive Heat. 3. *Nompatas*, a green sweet Fruit, of the Size of a Nut, and grows on great Trees. 4. *Tombacumba*, a Fruit larger than any of the rest, which grows also on great Trees, but is hot and unpleasant to the Taste. 5. Another white like Mulberries. They have Plenty of Cotton, and might have more if they took Care to cultivate it. 6. A certain Shrub, which the *Portuguese* call the *Dying Tree*. Its Leaves are like Rue, and us'd by the Inhabitants to dye Blue. They gather the Leaves at Day-break, pound them very small in a Wooden Mortar, dry them in the Sun, reduce them to a Powder, and lay them up in an Earthen Pot, over which they place another filled with the Ashes of the Wood of that Tree, into which they pour Water, which drops thro' the said Ashes out of a little Hole at the Bottom into the Pot underneath. When the powder'd Leaves are moist enough, they dry them 10 Days more in the Sun; after which they take off the first Crust, which makes a fine Dye; the second serves for coarse Stuffs, and the Bottom is good for nothing.

They have great Store of Cattle, and sell abundance of Skins and Hides. Their Beeves are less than those of *Holland*, and they are frequently obliged to change Pastures, because of their Drought. The King of *Baool* has above 5000 Beeves, and each of his Courtiers in Proportion. They have likewise abundance of Camels, Mules, Horses, Asses, Deer, and Sheep with short Wool, Goats and Wolves, but generally less than in *Europe*. They have a sort of Animal shap'd almost like a Hog, with very little Hair, their Feet like those of a Badger, but much larger. They dig the Ground like a Mole, and eat Pismires. The Negroes

groes say, they will make away as fast under Ground as a Man can above it. Their Hares are less than ours. They have also Civet-Cats, Monkeys, and Apes. They have a venomous Animal call'd *Alacarons*, as large as Crabs, with Claws like them, and a Sting like Scorpions. Travellers are obliged to make Fires by Night round the Places where they lodge, to prevent Mischief by them, and must likewise keep strong Guards against Robbers.

They have more Birds than Beasts, and particularly vast Numbers of great and small, yellow and green, Parrots, which the Negroes hate, because of the Damage they do their Trees. Their Pullets and Geese differ from ours in their Feathers. They have most of the same Fowls with us, and their Partridges have black and white Spots. They have one peculiar Bird call'd *Accarvian*, with a red Tuft on its Head, and two Rows of white Feathers on each Side. It sometimes extends that Tuft in a round Form, and is as large as a Peacock.

Their Rivers are full of Fish, especially Carps and Crabs, and their Sea-Coast abounds with Fish of all Sorts. They have one called *Harkehau*, that resembles a Salmon, is very well tasted, but not red. The River of *la Grace* is full of Crocodiles, which sleep in the Sun with their Mouths open, but run at the Sight of a Man. They are much annoy'd with Reptiles, especially Locusts, which a N. E. Wind brings from *Arabia*, in such Numbers, that they eat up all the Greens, and frequently occasion such a Famine, that the Inhabitants are forced to sell themselves for Bread to the *Portuguese* and others, as happen'd in 1640, and 1641. They are much infested with Pismires and Serpents, and make use of Enchantments against the latter, of which they have a Sort that do not hurt; so that they suffer them freely to come into their Houses, where they catch Rats, and are supposed by the Natives to be animated with the Souls of their deceased Friends. Therefore they forbid the killing of them, and fancy that if any of them be killed, some Person or other will suddenly die near the Place. Their most dangerous Serpents are of so monstrous a Size, that they can swallow a Beef. They have many small Reptiles called *Leguans*, which they eat as they do Lizards,

of whom there's a small Sort, which piss upon them while they sleep, and their Water occasions Ulcers.

Betwixt *Beybourte* and the *French* Fortress, the Channel of the River *Senega* is cover'd with hard Salt two Foot thick. They dig it up with Iron Instruments, and dry it on the Bank. 'Tis very white, and the Quantity inexhaustible, for what they dig up one Day is supplied the next. This Salt belongs to the King of *Cayor*, who has given the Property of it to a Priest, and those that dig it must present him with a Suit of Clothes made at *Cape Verd*, and a Measure of Millet. The People S. of *Senega* are sold for 100 Crowns more in *America* than those on the N. because they are more black, robust, and handsome. They are very vicious, luxurious, thievish, Lyars, and jealous, their Women being given to Pleasures, and fond of Strangers. When they talk, they stretch out their Necks like Turkeys, and speak quick. They are very ignorant, and much addicted to Enchantments, by which they pretend to cure the Bitings of Serpents, and prevent their doing other Mischief, as also to kill and cure whom they please. The Inhabitants of *Comino* are brave, and preserve their Liberty against both the Kings of *Cayor* and *Baool*, tho' they lie betwixt them. Those of *Porto d' Ale* and *Juala* are the greatest Cheats in the Country.

Their Houses are Wooden Huts cover'd with Straw, and their Beds 4 or 5 Pieces of Timber rais'd a Foot and a half above the Ground, with a Mat of Rushes, which serves them for Beds and Coverlets. They have no Wall'd Towns or Castles, and their Kings Palaces are only 9 or 10 such Huts plac'd in a Circle, encompassed with a Hedge of Bulrushes, and a Gate, so low that one must creep under it. Their Moveables are some Arms, Earthen Pots, Axes, and Spades for digging the Ground, for they till none, and those who live near Rivers have a few sorry Fishing-Nets. Most of them are Labourers, Fishers, or Shepherds. They have few Merchants or Tradesmen, and along the *Senega* we find only Weavers and Smiths, who make Horse-shoes, and clean their Arms. Of their Beeve-Skins they make Bucklers, Scabbards for Swords, Sandals, and Saddles; and for Spurs, they use a

Goat.

Food: They are very lazy, except at Seed-time and Harvest, when all Hands are at work. The Men reap the Millet, and the Women thresh and fan it; after which they put it into great Panniers of Straw, which they cover with Greens and Stones, and leave them in the Field, without robbing one another.

They eat 4 or 5 times a Day, but little at a time, and the Men and Women apart. Their chief Diet is Pulse and Millet, and after grinding the latter, put it into a large Vessel, mix it with Water, and stir the Paste till it breaks into Pieces as small as the Grains of the Millet, and this is their Bread. The largest Sort of Millet they call *Seryn*, of which they peel the Husk. The *Portuguese* dress it as they do Rice, and say it tastes well. Their Clothes are Gowns made of square Pieces of Cotton: The Women tie one of them about their Middle, and the other over their Heads. The Men tie theirs in Form of a Mantle, which covers half their Body, and hangs as low as their Heels. Those of most Note wear a white Shift as low as their Knees, with very large Sleeves, and wear another Garment over it, which resembles a Pair of Drawers, but so thick, that they can scarce walk. These Negroes use a great deal of old Cloth brought from *Holland*, which they like better than their own Cotton, because more cool. All their Women, young and old, go bare-foot, with their Shoulders, Breast and Bosom, naked. Most of the Men go wholly naked, except a Goat's Tail round their Middle, only at *Cape Verd* they wear short Garments. They marry without any Ceremony, keep as many Wives as they can, and divorce them when they please. The King has above 40, who are all respected alike. They live by themselves in a certain Lordship, where they have People to serve them, and look after their Flocks and Lands. He diverts himself with them by Turns, and his Courtiers follow his Example. Their Child-Bed Women rise up very soon, suckle their Children till they are able to go, and have not the Company of their Husbands after they are big and while they have Nurses, because they fancy it will make the Children die, and this is one of the Reasons for their Plurality of Wives. The Women are very tender of their Children

till they can run about, but then leave them to themselves, and take no Care of their Education.

When any one dies, all the Kindred come to mourn, and to assist at the Funeral. The Corps is preceded by some Drums, and followed by the Relations according to their Rank, the Men first, and the Women afterwards. They bury them with their Cloaths on in a shallow Ditch, which they cover with a great Piece of Earth. If the Deceased be a Person of Quality, they put a Piece of White Cloth over his Grave. They so much abhor Drummers, that they will neither suffer them, their Wives, nor their Children, to be buried in the Earth, or thrown into Water, but thrust them into the Trunks of old hollow Trees, because they fancy that the Water where they are buried will produce no Fish, nor the Earth Fruit: Yet these Drummers are well enough esteem'd by their Princes and great Men, during their Lives, being generally their Musicians in Time of Peace. But they must not come into the Antichamber of their Prince, and if a Courtier marry a Drummer's Daughter, or debauch his Wife, he must come no more to the King's Presence. Their Drums are made of the Trunks of hollow Trees, about 4 or 5 Foot long, are covered on one Side with a Goat-Skin, and open on the other.

The King of *Senega* lays no Taxes on his Subjects, so that his Revenue consists in the Presents of Horses, and other great and small Cattel, Pulse and Millet, which other Princes pay to him in order to obtain his Favour; and he raises a great deal of Money by selling Slaves.

The Kings of this Country, and particularly he of *Baool*, seizes the Goods of foreign Merchants as soon as they die, without being so just as to pay their Debts; and they frequently poison them for their Estates; so that *Dapper* says, 'tis safest for Strangers who trade here to have no fix'd Habitation, but to keep a Shipboard.

The King of *Juala* takes Ten per Cent. of all Merchandise, and an annual Tribute from his Subjects according to their Ability, which comes to little, they are so very poor; but they serve him in Time of War for nothing.

The chief Commodities of the Country of *Jalofes* are, Beeves Hides, which they steep sometimes in Salt Water, to preserve them from Worms; then they dry them in the Sun. Their other Commodities are, Ivory, Wax, Ambergreece, Gum Arabick, Gold and Silver. In the Village of *Geroep*, they have a Market every Fourth Day for Cloaths, Cotton, Slaves, Tobacco, Horses, Camels, and great and small Cattle of all Sorts. At *Camino* and *Jamesil*, they have the like Market for Cattle and Provisions of all Kinds. The greatest Trade for Cloaths and Skins is at *Camino*, where they usually give two Hides for a Yard of Iron. The Goods which sell best here, are Chrystal, Lace, Coral and Brandy. *Refrisco*, *Ale*, and *Juala*, are the best Places for Trade, and the properest Season is *March* and *April*, and from *October* to *December*. The rest of the Year the Negroes spend in Agriculture, when it is dangerous to be on those Coasts, because of Tempests.

A further Account of Cape V E R D.

Sir Henry Middleton, who touched here in 1610, it being the 6th General Voyage set out by our *East-India* Company, praises the Road of *Cape Verd* as the best he knew of for all Conveniencies that might invite a Ship, not only for the Dispatch of Business, it being not at all out of the Way, but for the Plenty of good fresh Fish, and the Advantage of Watering.

M. *Rennefort*, who was sent hither with others by the *French East India* Company in 1665, gives the following Account of *Cape Verd* and the neighbouring Country, which we meet with in no Author besides.

He says, there are two Heights at the Cape, which are seen a great Way off, and encompassed with Rocks beat with the Waves into different Figures, which he says are as diverting to Mariners in a Calm, as dangerous in a Storm. The *English*, *Portuguese*, and *Dutch*, were a long Time disputing a little Island near this Place; but the last were in Possession of it in our Author's Time, and had two Forts, one on a Rock to guard the Access to it by Sea, and the other in a Plain, where they stor'd their Magazines. They had also a Governor, and a Garrison of 200 Men, with 40 Cannon. The Island is about a League round. M. *Rennefort* with his Company landed at the first

Bay next to *Cape Verd* for Wood and ~~Water~~ and were conducted by the Negroes to a Village, whose Name he does not mention, which was the Residence of the Alcaid or Governor, and not above 600 Paces from the Shore. There were about 100 round Cottages 4 Foot and a half high, and the Top rose up to a Point like the Ice-houses in *France*. Every Cottage had a double Round of Pales, made of Palm-Tree Branches, with a small Court at the Entrance. The Alcaid's Hut was bigger than the rest, and stood in the Middle of four others, in one of which he lodged himself, his Women in two others, and his Horse in the 4th. When they were admitted to the Alcaid's Presence, they found him sitting on a Stool, with a Turban of white and blue Cotton on his Head, a kind of Cloth call'd *Pagne* over his Shoulders, another about his Middle which hung down to his Knees, and a Piece of Leather about his Feet in the Nature of Sandals; but his Legs and Arms were naked. His Officers lay some all at length on the Ground, others sat cross-legged, and the chief Counsellor lean'd on the Alcaid's Knees: He bow'd to the *Frenchmen* very gravely on his Stool, and they presented him with a Bottle of Brandy, of which he drank first, and then gave to the Counsellor, who both drank it almost out. Upon this he granted the *Frenchmen* Leave to Wood and Water, on Condition that they should give him 6 Bottles of Brandy, 6 Ells of Linen-Cloth, and a Bar of Iron, by Way of Anchorage-Duty for each Ship, besides a Bottle of Brandy for the Wood and Water. He adds, that while they were with the Alcaid, 50 of his Grandees came to wait upon him, arm'd with Cutlasses, Bows and Arrows, Half-Pikes, and Zagays.

Rennefort tells us, that the most considerable Inhabitants of *Cape Verd* have the same Cloths over their Shoulders as the Alcaid. The common People cover their Privities with a Piece of Linen; and instead of a Turban, some wear a little Basket like a Fig-Frail; but most of 'em go bare-headed. Those who have long Hair, curl it on both Sides their Heads, so that it strikes against their Ears, and leave a great Curl behind, which turns up to a Point on the Forehead. The Women's Habit is so like the Men's, that the Sexes are not known from each other

ther but by their different Humours. Their Women of Quality wear Bracelets, Beads of Silver, Coral, Glass or small Shells, and little Packets call'd *Gris-Gris*, with Ear-Pendants and Necklaces. He gives the following Account of the Ceremonies that were observed here after the Death of the aforesaid Counsellor, who having got drunk aboard, and attempting to swim ashore in a Storm, was drown'd. Upon the News of his Death, his Wives came down to the Sea-Coast where he was drown'd, lamenting and praying the Waves to throw up the Deceased's Body. The Night coming on, they accus'd the Sea of Cruelty, and retir'd to the Village, where they were no sooner got home, but they fell on the Ground, and tore off their Hair, and two young Men plac'd themselves on both Sides the Door, and made a doleful Noise on two round Instruments like Kettle-Drums. After three Days Lamentation, they made a Sacrifice for the Deceased, and a Fire of Palm-Tree Branches, while 100 Persons of both Sexes made great Cries towards the West, and pray'd the Sun to favour the Spirit of the Deceased, till the Priest having held up his Hands for a quarter of an Hour towards the Sun-set, killed a Beeve, caused his Entrails to be burnt, and cut the Sacrifice into several Pieces, giving one to each of the Deceased's Relations.

Rennefort says, they hunted here, and killed two Roebucks, a great many Wild Fowl of the same Taste and Size, as Pheasants, with Partridges, Turtles, and Parrots. They shot a Tyger, and wounded another. They also saw a Lioness, but did not hunt her, because they had not Arms fit for the Chace. They found Villages, where the Inhabitants presented them with Bananas as long as small Cucumbers, and offer'd them their Daughters for Bits of Glass and some Sweet-meats. They saw also Citron and Orange Trees, but low and without Fruit, and a noble Plantation of Palm-Trees, which afford the Inhabitants a refreshing Shade against the excessive Heat of the Climate. Here they met with a Negro Priest, who upon a Dispute with a Popish Missionary about Religion, pretended to prove the Truth of his own, by pulling out a large Dagger, and giving Leave to the Missionary to stab him with it if he could; but the

latter not thinking fit to try the Experiment, the Negro Priest put it to his own Breast, and seem'd to thrust it with all his Force, without hurting himself, if we may believe *Rennefort*; but be that how it will, it is a plain Instance, that *Turkish* Priests can work pretended Miracles as well as the Popish ones.

He gives the following Account of the Provisions, &c. of the Inhabitants of *Cape Verd*. He says, they have small black Cattle and Sheep like those of *Barbary*, with large Tails, and Store of Goats. They use boil'd Rice and Millet instead of Bread, and catch Fish in the Sea, but seldom eat them. They also hunt Fowls and Beasts with Zagays, for they know not how to make or manage Fire-Arms. They drink Palm-Wine, and the Coco serves them both for Meat and Drink. They have Camels to carry their Skins and Ivory, with which they trade. Their other Merchandizes are, Gold Dust, which comes from the Banks of the *Senegal*; and Musk, that is brought from a far greater Distance. They have a few small Horses too, which he says are as beautiful as those of *Melinda*, that are counted the finest in the World.

Our Author places the Village of *Refrisco*, mentioned by *Dapper*, in a Bay 3 Leagues S. of the Cape, where there was a Governor, that then depended on King *Damen*, who gave 'em Leave to traffick for Hides, Ivory, and whatever the Country afforded, on paying him 8 per Cent. The Alcaid was lodged in a spacious Hut of Planks, rais'd 12 Foot high, with other Huts about it in Form of a Crescent, and before his Hut there were 4000 Beeves Hides pil'd up, and 30 Elephants Teeth. He treated them with Wild Fowl, and Liquors he had received from *Senegal*. There were in the Village about 1600 Natives, besides some *French* and *Portuguese*, whose Trade was chiefly managed by the Widow of one of their Merchants. The Alcaid's Daughters serv'd the Company, and were handsome enough, but half naked. The most remarkable Fish on the Coast he says are the *Requins*, which are about the Thickness of a Man, and 8 or 9 Foot long. They have 3 Rows of Teeth as sharp as Darts, catch their Prey on their Backs, and are always attended with some little Fish, which the Seamen call their Guides,

Guides, and others that lodge on their Fins, and never leave them till they are taken. These the Seamen call *Remoras*. The *Requin* is hard and unfavoury, and over his Eyes there are two Holes fill'd with Slime, which petrifies in the Air, and is said to be good for the Falling Sicknefs. There are so many Porpoises here, that when the Sea is swelled, they cover it for 3 or 4 Leagues together. The Natives catch them with a Trident, which they dart at them, and keep the Rope to which it is fasten'd in their Hands, as the Whale-Fishers do their Harping-Irons. There are other Fish call'd *Bonites*, of the Size of Salmon, which mix with the Porpoises, and are taken in the same Manner. 'Tis they that pursue the Flying Fish which abound here. There's abundance of grey and white Sea-Fowl in this Sea, which they catch with Hooks like Fish. He says, there are also Multitudes of large Whales on this Coast.

Dapper gives us the following Cargo of what Goods the Dutch trade with hither, and are most valued by the Negroes.

Bars of Iron, 28 or 30 to the Hundred Weight, Malt Spirits, Copper Basins, from 7 to 10 Inches wide, made after the *Spanish* Fashion, with narrow Brims; Copper Plates of a Pound Weight, Wooll-Cards; coarse, blue, narrow Serges; red, yellow and blue Cloth of four Threads; red, yellow and white Ratines; comb'd Wooll, white, blue, red and yellow; Worsted, red and yellow; several Sorts of Corn, Rock Coral, Scymiters or Cutlasses, Copper Trumpets, coarse Red Caps, round Padlocks, Rock Chrystal, Seamens Knives, Mens coarse Shirts, and fine ones with Lace at the Neck and Sleeves; *Haerlem* Suits of Cloaths, *Silesia* Cloths called *Acros*, for the Coast of *Guinea*; fine Cloths, fine Cotton Cloths; Paper, coarse and fine; Earthen Pots, white and blue; *Leyden* Coverlids, *Irish* Mantles, *Maroquin* Shoes, Hats, coarse white Thread, Glass Bottles with Tin Stoppers, Needles of all Kinds, besides all Sorts of Goods which can be put up in little Boxes.

The usual Arms of the *Jaloses* are Bows and Arrows, a Sort of Javelins, and a

crooked Weapon like a *Turkish* Half Scymiter. Some of them wear great Bucklers made of Beeves Hides, with a Scymiter and a large Knife at their Sides, a Lance and two Darts in their Hands. They have little Horses, which are very nimble, and some Barbs, but the last very dear. They usually give ten or twelve Slaves for a good Horse, each Slave being valued at 29 Bars of Iron. As soon as they buy their Horses, they use a Charm to make them invulnerable. Their Horsemen are much dreaded by their Neighbours. They are very dextrous, can stand upright in their Saddles when their Horses run at full Speed, gather up Stones as they ride, and shoot their Arrows before, behind, and on every Side, can leap off and on in a Moment, and fight with Scymiters, Lances, and poison'd Arrows. When they make War, they don't trouble themselves to take Towns, but burn their Enemy's Villages. The chief Sign of a remarkable Defeat is when they lose the Royal Drum, which they call *Omlambe*, and preserve with as much Care as the *Romans* did their Eagles.

When the King of *Ale* undertakes an Expedition, he assembles his Counsellors in a Forrest near his Palace. They draw up round a Ditch of 3 Foot deep, dug on purpose, and consult with their Heads bow'd downwards to the Ditch. After they come to a Resolution, they fill up the Ditch, and the King tells them, *Our Secret is now bury'd, for the Ditch will reveal it to no Body*. This makes so great an Impression on them, that their Designs are never known till they be put in Execution. Formerly their Kings were chosen by the *Grandeers*, who dethron'd them at Pleasure; but now the Crown is Hereditary, yet so as all the Brethren have a Right to succeed, and the Crown never descends to the Son of the eldest till all his Uncles be dead. The Subjects respect their Princes mightily; and when they speak to them, approach them by degrees, with their Body naked, creeping on their Knees, and throwing Dust on their Heads. When they come within two Paces, they begin to speak in the most submissive Terms they can think of, and keep their Faces cover'd. The Prince answers gravely in two or three Words, keeping as much State as he can in his Behaviour and Retinue. When a Gentleman

tleman speaks to him, he must pull off his Shift, throw it over his Left Shoulder, and must keep nothing on but his Drawers; and when the Prince appears in Publick, he is always attended by a great Number of Gentlemen and Courtiers in Arms.

The King of *Cayor* keeps a Governor called *Alcaid* in every Village on the Coast of *Cape Verd*, who causes the Ships at Anchor in the several Ports to pay each three Iron Bars by Way of Acknowledgment; but if the Pilots be ignorant, they impose upon them, and oblige them to give 10 Iron Bars for Permission to take in fresh Water, besides the same Value in other Merchandizes, and a Bottle of Brandy.

In the Time of *Zuchali K. of Senega*, Anno 1455, one *Budomel* was Governor of the Coast of *Cape Verd*, and after his Death the Kings of *Cayor* took his Name, adding to it their own for a Title of Honour, as the Roman Emperors did that of *Cesar*. This occasioned a Mistake in some Geographers, who took *Budomel* for a Place on this Coast, and mark'd it so in the Maps.

The Inhabitants of this Country have very few Laws, and for most Part follow their own vicious Inclinations. When a Man dies, his Brothers and Sisters come and take all he has, leaving his Children destitute of every thing. The Reason they give is, that they are not sure the Children are his, whereas they are sure he was their Brother, because born of the same Mother. They don't regard Justice in Causes either Civil or Criminal, but those who give the King most are sure to be on the right Side. *Sanutius* says, the Inhabitants of *Ale* are Idolaters; that they worship the New Moon, sacrifice living Creatures, and offer up Pulse, Millet, and Rice, to Idols, which they keep conceal'd in Trunks of Trees in the midst of a shady Forrest. But *Dapper* says, that in short, these People have scarce any Religion, Temples, Assemblies, or Worship, tho' they have some Morabouts or *Mahometan* Priests; but instead of instructing them, they do what they can to keep them in Ignorance, in order to fleece them, and make them believe that God requires nothing of them but to carry some Notes in *Arabian* Characters about them, which those Knaves sell at a dear Rate, and the richer Sort buy great Numbers of them, which they hang

in their Hair and other Parts. The Negroes can neither read nor write; and to continue them in Ignorance, the Priests have enjoin'd it as a Law upon themselves to marry into one another's Families, and to teach no body else to read or write; so that those poor People have only a confus'd Notion of the Being of a God, but think it not necessary to pray to him, alledging, that he who causes Tempests, Thunder, and Lightning, is so potent, that he has no need of our Prayers, and that 'tis impossible he can have a Son, and therefore they abhor the Christian Religion. *Heylin* says, that *Bemoin*, one of the Kings of the *Faloses*, was obliged by Civil Wars in 1489 to go to the K. of *Portugal* for Assistance, and was like to turn Christian; but being murder'd by the *Portuguese* General, the Hopes of Christianity in these Parts fell with him.

16. *Gambia, Cassan, Cantor, Wolly, Borsalo, and Casamansa, Kingdoms.*

Dapper says, *Gambia* is very small, and lies near the River of that Name, S. of *Zenega*, and that the petty Kingdoms of *Cassan*, *Great Cantor*, *Wolly*, and *Borsalo*, did once depend on the K. of *Mandimanza*. The K. of *Great Cantor*, who is almost continually at War with him of *Borsalo*, possesses the S. Side of the River *Gambia*, and has several petty Princes for his Vassals. The Country of *Borsalo* lies near the Coast, and extends from the N. Side of that River to *Tantaconda*, including the Kingdom of *Wolly*. Tho' the Coast at the Mouth of *Gambia* is very low, yet farther S. 'tis higher, full of great Trees, and runs from N. E. to S. W. There are several populous Villages on both Sides that River, which overflows the Country, and makes it as fruitful as the *Nile* does *Egypt*. At the Mouth of it there's a Village call'd *Barra*, because all the Ships which anchor on this Coast are obliged to give a Bar of Iron to the King of *Borsalo*. Four Leagues S. from the Coast, near a Brook which runs into *Gambia*, *Dapper* places the Village of *Bintam*, which he says is inhabited by some *Portuguese*; and 50 Leag. further there's a Whirlpool, which is marked by two Sea-Horses, that Mariners may shun them. He adds, there's another on the

the other Side, with a Wooden Cross near it, and the Village of *Mansibaer* a small League beyond it, which is inhabited by a few *Portuguese*, and a Family of *Mulatto's*. The Tide, as we said before, goes no higher than *Baraconda*, so that those who go further up are obliged to use Oars, and it requires 10 Days Time to arrive at *Tinda*, because the Heat is so violent at Noon, that they cannot row but 4 Hours in the Morning, and as many in the Evening. *Dapper* places the Town of *Selico* a great Way further in the Country, and says, 'tis one of the most Trading Places here. About 4 Leagues from the River of *Gambia* lies *Great Cassan*, where the King keeps his Court. *Moll* places it on the N. Side of the River, and 216 Miles from its Mouth. *Dapper* mentions several small Islands in this River, and among the rest the Isle of Elephants, so called because it abounds with those Beasts. It lies Mid-way betwixt the Mouth of the River and *Cantor*.

The Air of these Countries is excessive hot, but very uncertain in the Winter Season, from the End of *June* to *October*, when it commonly rains about Noon, because then the E. and S. E. Winds raise many Fogs from the Sea, which are followed by Thunder, Lightning, and Storms of Rain, especially from the Beginning of *July* to the Middle of *August*. When the Rainy Season begins, the Air is very unwholesome, causes Blisters and Boils in the Bodies of those who go naked, and breeds Worms in the Clothes of those who wear any; but it has not that Effect after a little Continuance. The *Portuguese* of *Juala* and *Catcheo* come hither and trade Tobacco, which thrives well near the River of *Gambia* and above *Cassan*. They sow no Corn, but Millet and Rice. They have Plenty of Cotton, but not so many Lemons, Oranges, and Ananas, as some Authors say. They have Trees of a prodigious Bigness on the Coast; but some of them, tho' 17 Paces in Compass, are not above 20 in Height. Both Sides of the River between *Tankerval* and *Tondeba* are planted with great Trees, that grow in a marshy Bottom. They have both wild and tame Beasts; and near the River of *Gambia* there's such Plenty of Cattle and all Sorts of Game, that a Bar of Iron will purchase a Beast of 3 or 4 Hundred Weight,

which at *Cape Verd* costs 4 or 5. There's also Store of Musk here.

Dapper says, that before the Christians came hither, the People were very barbarous, but are since more tractable; yet both Princes and People are so addicted to Brandy, that if a Stranger presents a King with a Bottle, he is sure of a favourable Audience. Their Riches consist chiefly in Slaves; but the Inhabitants of *Jaye* have a great deal of Gold. The Weavers along the *Gambia* truck Cloths with the Whites that live about *Sierra Leona* and on the Gold Coast for Ivory, Red Wood, and Gold. These Cloths are of three Sorts; 1. One called *Panosakes*, two Ells and a half long, and one and a half broad. The Ground is white, and there are red Stripes through the whole Breadth. The 2d they call *Bontans*, two Ells long, and an Ell and a half broad, cross'd with 6 Bands sew'd upon one another. The 3d, call'd *Barfoul*, are large Suits with blue Stripes. The ordinary Price of those Suits is for one of the first, one Bar of Iron; for three of the 2d, two; and for two of the 3d, one.

Every Body here is obliged to cultivate their Grounds, except the King and his chief Courtiers, for whom the Subjects do it; and old People, for whom the young ones are obliged to work; and here, as elsewhere, they have no Plows, but dig with Spades. Their Diet is Millet, Pulse, Milk, and Flesh. They boil their Millet, and eat it hot instead of Bread. The Priests and their Children drink nothing that's strong. The Houses here are like those of *Zenega*. At *Nabaya* they have round Huts, with Walls of red Clay, cover'd with Canes. Both Men and Women wear only a Shift with large Sleeves, that come down to their Knees, Cotton Drawers, and a white Cap with a Feather. Their Arms are Lances, Bows, and poison'd Arrows. *Sanutius* says, they are very brave, and with their little Canoes, which they manage with wonderful Dexterity, attack the *Portuguese* Caravels, without valuing their Cannon. The Goods imported here by the *Dutch* are much the same with those mentioned in the Country of the *Jalofes*, besides ordinary Swords, and some whose Handles are silver'd or gilt, Salt, Roan Caps, Ferret, Crape, Pewter Porringers, Woollen Cloth, Copper Cauldrons, Copper

Copper and Tin Bracelets, enamell'd Bracelets, Rings, Ear-Pendants, Copper and Iron Kettles, Fish-Hooks, Glasses plain and gilt, and Cloves. The *Dutch* truck these Things for Ivory, Gold, and other Goods of this Country. The King of *Cassan* allows the *English*, *Dutch*, *French*, *Portuguese*, and *Flemings*, to trade in his Country, and the Negroes trade here among themselves, by exchanging the Commodities of one Province for those of another. In the Middle of the Spring they have a Fair at *Mansibaer*, behind a Mountain, for Pullets, Goats, Cows, Salt, Cotton, Mats, and all the Goods of the Country except Skins. They have every *Monday* a Market in a great Field near that Village. They have also two Fairs at *Cassan*, besides some small ones at other Places on the *Gambia*. The *Portuguese* and *Mulatto's* on that River send their Slaves far up the Country with Iron and Coral, to buy Ivory and Skins; but they are long detain'd by the rainy Season. The *Arabians* of *Barbary* trade to *Jaye* with great Numbers of Camels loaden with all Sorts of Goods, for which they purchase Gold from a People who live above that Village, and have abundance of that Metal, but will not be seen; so that the *Arabians* leave their Goods in certain Places done up in Parcels, against which the Inhabitants lay down what they think them worth in Gold. If the Merchant don't think it enough, he carries off his Goods, or lays them in another Place till he have his Price, and the Inhabitants do the same till they have bargain'd thus three times; after which they trade no more for that Season. The Reason why these Negroes won't be seen is, because they are much deform'd by a Swelling in the lower Parts of their Bellies, so that they are forced to use Salt to prevent the Tumors from rotting, and therefore purchase it dear, which makes it the best Commodity in this Country. There's a great Trade of Skins at *Tinda*. Iron sells not so well there as in other Places which are nearer; but at *Joliet* they willingly give Gold for it. Those of *Selico* purchase Negro Slaves with Salt, and sell them to the *Portuguese*, and the *Morabouts* there live in separate Houses, have some dark Knowledge of the Old Testament, and own Christ to be a great Prophet. When any one dies, they bury all his Gold with

him, and reckon him happiest that has most laid in his Grave.

Mr. *Jobson*, whose Voyage to the River *Gambia* in 1618 is abstracted in *Harris's Travels*, Vol. I. gives this further Account of these Countries.

The Inhabitants go together by Townships, and fish in their Lakes and Ponds with Baskets. At the Mouth of the River dwell the *Mandingo's*, who are very civil to the *English*, but hate the *Portuguese*, whom they banish'd for their Treachery in murdering the Company of an *English Ship* that receiv'd them amicably on board. These *Mandingo's* are idle, except in Seed-time and Harvest, know not how to catch Flesh or Fish, feed commonly on boil'd Grain, and reckon it wholesomest not to eat but before the Sun rise, and after it sets. Their usual Drink is Water, tho' they have a Sort of Wine and Ale. They eat no Pullets, but barter them with Strangers. *Cassan* and other Cities in this Country are fortified with Turrets, Ditches, and Pales. They have Ant-hills 20 Foot high, whose Cavities will contain 12 Men. They pay the same Respect to their Kings as those of *Zenega*, and after receiving Audience, lay their Hands on the King's Thigh, and then retire. If *Morabouts* be present at the Audience, they pray for the King. Their Clothes are of Cotton, of which they have great Fields planted like Rose-Bushes. They use *Gris-Gris*, or *Gregorys*, made of hollow Leather like those of *Senega*, with Spells in them, writ in *Arabick*, which they purchase from the Priests, and think no Evil can befall them while they wear these Fooleries, which they do in Form of a Cross on the upper Parts of their Bodies, and apply them in case of Sickness or Sores, as we do Physick and Plaisters, and tie them likewise about Horses Necks to preserve them from Hurt. They abstain from their Wives after Conception, as those of *Senega*, and punish no Crime with Death but Adultery. Their Way of Marrying is very comical. They must agree with the King and the Woman's Friends for a Sum of Money, and her Part is kept to buy her another Husband if she be left a Widow. When the Bargain is made, the young Man and his Friends

carry off the Maid by Moon-light. The Shriek and the young Men of the Town endeavour to rescue her, while others carry her off with great Shouts to the Bridegroom's House, assisted by the Maids of the Town, who hope it will come to their Turn next. The Wives live in great Subjection to their Husbands, and dress their Meat, but never eat with them. The Succession to the Crown falls to the Brethren of the deceased King, one after another, and then to the Son of the eldest, as in other neighbouring Countries. The Life of a Prince here is to eat, drink, sleep, and keep Company with his Women. When their Morabouts die, they are buried in their own Houses. Other Morabouts sing their Praise in Verse, and he that does it best has a Present; after which he mixes some of the Earth dug out of the Grave with Water, forms it into a Ball, which is kept as a Relick, and his Son is immediately made his Successor. They have great Books and Manuscripts, which they carry about with them, write their Laws in a different Language from the Vulgar, with Pencils on smooth Boards, and have a Privilege of travelling with their Families thro' all the neighbouring Countries, tho' at War with one another; and when they beg from Europeans, look on a Quire of Paper as a valuable Gift, and write their *Gris-Gris* on it. All the Inhabitants of *Setico* are Morabouts, and exchange Slaves with the King of *Borsalo* for Salt, which they barter for Gold and Cola-Nuts, or for Blood-Stones, with the *Portuguese*, which their Women wear about their Waists to prevent Bloody-Fluxes. They go naked from the Middle upwards, to shew their painted Skins. Our Author says, there's another Sort of People here call'd *Falbies*, who wander about with their Herds of Goats and Beeves for Pasture, for which they agree with the King, and when the Rain falls remove to the Mountains. They constantly watch their Cattle and the Haunts of Crocodiles, and are such Slaves to the *Mandingo's*, that the latter will have a Share in their Beef and other Commodities, if they know when they are sold; but higher up the River they are Lords of the Country, excluding the Blacks, with whom they are generally at War. He says, that one of the most vendible Commodities here

is Bay-Salt, for which the Natives exchange Elephants Teeth, Cotton, and Negroes Clothes. *Jobson* tells us, that upon Notice from one of their Blacks, 500 Men and Women, who had never seen Whites before, came to trade with them. The Men wore raw Hides, with the Beasts Tails hanging down behind. The Women of Quality had Gold Ear-Rings, and ask'd for divers Commodities; but the Men chiefly wanted Salt. The King of this Country gave our Author and his Company a Piece of Land, to them and their Heirs for ever. When they circumcise their Children, the People flock together as at a Fair, make Fires under every great Tree and by the Doors of their Houses, and have Dancing, Drums, and a Sort of Musick call'd *Ballards*, that have 17 Keys like Virginals, upon which one plays with two Sticks, that have round Leather Balls at the End. *Jobson*, who saw this Ceremony, says, he heard a roaring Noise at some Distance from the Spot, which they said was the Voice of *Hore*, i. e. a Spirit that comes to great Feasts, for whom they provide Plenty of Rice, Corn, Beef, and other Flesh ready dress'd, which they say he instantly devour'd; and if he be not satisfied, he gets into a Boy's Belly for 9 Days, and then the Boy must be redeemed for Beef, and continue mute so many Days after. But our Author observes, that this was only a Trick of the Priests, who lay roaring all the while to fright the People to Circumcision.

They have 3 principal Trades; 1. The Smith, who makes Swords, Darts, barbed Arrows, and Instruments of Husbandry. 2. The *Gris Gris* Maker, who also makes neat Bridles and Saddles of their Deer and Goat Skins. 3. Those who temper the Earth for the Walls of their Houses, and for Pots to boil Meat in. They also make Tobacco-Pipes but two Inches long, and neatly glaz'd, together with Mats, which they use instead of Coin. Besides Rice, they have 5 other Sorts of Grain like Seeds, which they boil, roll up in Balls, and then eat instead of Bread. There are delicious Bananas near the Mouth of the River *Gambia*, with Store of Lemons, Oranges, and Groves of Palm-Trees. They keep their Ale in great Gourds, and when the King makes a Feast, never part till they have

have made an End of it. Their Gourds grow like our Pompions, from the Bigness of an Egg to that of a Bushel, and they make several Sorts of Vessels of it to eat, drink, and wash Clothes in. They have great Store of Locust Trees and wild Honey. The Cola-Nuts are like large Chestnuts, flat on both Sides, without a hard Shell, and tho' 'tis bitter, yet causes any thing which is taken next after it to taste very sweet. Our Author says, 50 of them will purchase a Wife. He adds, that there are many Lions, Jackals, Ounces, Leopards, Civet-Cats, Porcupines that hunt their Poultry, Elephants, Wild Bulls and Boars, Antelopes and Deer, great Herds of Monkeys and Baboons, of which some are very big, with a Land Fowl call'd the *Stalker*, which they say is as tall as a Man, and has more Flesh on its Back than a Lamb, and another call'd a *Wake*, which makes a great Noise when he flies, besides *Guinea* Hens like Pheasants, Partridges that keep near the Houses for fear of the Monkeys, Quails, Pigeons, Parrots, Parakites, and a strange Sort of Birds which have no Legs, but two Strings, by which they hang with their Heads downwards like dead Leaves on a Tree, which they also resemble in Colour.

17. The Country of the Barbecins.

Dapper says, it lies along the Coast, N. of *Zenega*, and consists of the Kingdoms of *Ale* and *Brocallo*. Their Capital, and the Seat of their King, is *Yagoa*. The Inhabitants breed many Horses, and the neighbouring Forrests are full of Elephants, but their Teeth less than elsewhere. At the End of *Ale* there's excellent Tobacco, near the Village *Embamma*; and 4 Leagues further E. lies *Banguisea*, whose Territory is plain and woody. On the same Coast, below *Cape Verd*, there are 3 Desert Islands, call'd *Barbecines*, with fine Woods, and abundance of Fowls unknown to us. On the Coast of these Islands are many Fish, and among the rest those called Gold Fish, which weigh 5 Pound apiece. The King's Daughters here print Figures of several Beasts upon their Bodies, and rub them

with a certain Herb, which makes the Impression lasting. They prick their Lips with Thorns, make them and their Mouths big; and the more ugly they make themselves, the more beautiful they are esteem'd.

18. The Arriareo's and Faluppo's.

Dapper says, they dwell betwixt *Cape St. Mary's* and *San Domingo*. This Coast is low, and abounds with Pasture and Cattle, so that a good Cow may be bought for a Tin Basin of 3 or 4 Pound Weight, and an Ell and a half of coarse Cloth; a Goat for a little Dish, and a Pullet for 3 Skeins of Thread. They have Store of Date Wine, and sell a Pot for two or three Needles full of Thread. They are handsomer than those of *Angola*, and will not trade with Whites, or come aboard their Ships, without Hostages, because they formerly carried off some of them to be Slaves. They go naked from the Belly upward, and cover their Privities with a little Cloth that hangs down to their Knees. Their Riches consist in the Number of their Wives.

Dapper gives the following Account of the Situation of the Rivers, Countries, &c. on the Coast, from the River *Rha* to the Kingdom of *Sierra-Leona*.

About 20 Leagues from the River *Gambia*, Lat. 12. 27. lies the River *Rha* or *Casamance*, which gives Name to the Kingdom it washes. Beyond that River lies *Cape Roxo*, Lat. 12. 15. Long. 14. Eight Leagues further S. E. lies the great *Cape Velu*, and 4 Leagues further little *Cape Velu*. Some Geographers make these three Capes Islands. Great *Cape Velu* is cover'd with Briars and Thorns, and has only one Village. From hence you go to the River *St. Domingo*, after having passed the *Red Cape*, *North Bank*, *Easter-Eve Cape*, and *Black Cape*. In Lat. 11. 48. *Dapper* places the Mouth of a Branch of the River of *St. Domingo*, call'd *Catchee*, at the Mouth of which there's a Sand-Bank, which makes the River muddy for a League and a half above the Coast, till we come to the Village of *Catchee*, where it joins with

another River called *Sargedogou*. Beyond *St. Domingo* lies the River *de las Ilelas*, which crosses the Country of *Papais*. Beyond those Islands, at the Entrance of *Guinala* and *Biguba* Kingdoms, which lie above 70 Leagues from *Cape Verd*, are 17 small Islands, call'd *Bisegos*. The River *Donaluy*, which washes the Country of the *Maluces* or *Cocolis*, lies S. of those Islands. Beyond that River is that call'd *Nunno Tristan*, and two Leagues farther that of *Tabito* or *Vagas*, which waters a Province of the same Name. From hence we enter the Province of *Cape*, water'd by the two great Rivers *Caluz* and *Caceres*. Further in the Country, along the River of *Gambia*, are the Kingdoms of *Mandinga*, *Bena*, and *Sousos*. A little higher towards the South is the River *Marine*; and returning by the Coast, we find the Mountains and Kingdom of *Sierra-Leona*. In the Arch which the Coast forms, between the Islands of *Bisegos* and *Sierra-Leona*, lies the River of *Sierres*, and at its Mouth the Islands of *Tamara* or *Los Idolos*, and on the S. Confines of *Sierra-Leona* the Isles of *Bananes*.

19. The Country of *Casangas*, or *Casamanca* Kingdom.

THE *Sansons* bound it with the River *Gambia* on the N. which parts it from the Country of the *Falofes*, as *St. Domingo* does from *Bijagos* on the S. with the Conflux of those two Rivers on the E. and the *Atlantick* Ocean on the W. and extend it 340 Miles from E. to W. and but 90 on the Coast where broadest. *Dapper* extends it along the River *Rha* or *Casamanca* to the Coast E. of the People call'd *Bukuns*, and says, 'tis water'd by several Rivers, particularly by *Casamanca* and *St. Domingo*, which running out into several Branches, make it very fruitful. The *Portuguese* built a Fort, which they call'd *St. Philip*, on the Bank of this River, in Lat. $11\frac{1}{2}$. to prevent the Incurfions of the Negroes. They then drove a considerable Trade on the River *Casamanca*, and transferred it afterwards to *Catcheo*, where a Colony of *Portuguese* settled themselves on the Bank of the River of that Name, and collected Slaves for their

Countrymen; so that the greatest Trade of this miserable Country was in Men, Prisoners of War, and even Freemen, whom their Kings sold, according to the abominable Custom of this Part of the World, and from hence, *St. James*, one of the *Cape Verd* Islands, *Refresco*, *Ale*, and *Juala*, the *Portuguese* had most of the Slaves they sent to *New Carthagena* in *America*. Those they bought at *Catcheo* were vigorous, and sold usually at 10 Crowns per Head more than others. The Goods which sell best here are *Spanish* Wines and Fruits, Brandy, Oil, Iron, Silk and Woollen Stuffs, Linen Cloth, Lace, Galoon, Needles, and Thread.

The King of *Casamanca* depends on the King of *Jaxem*, and he is Vassal to another, and all of them together to the King of *Mandinga*. The Inhabitants worship an Idol call'd *China*. They make a Procession to his Honour November 29, at Midnight, and their chief Priest called *Aracani* carries a Veil of blue Silk, with a Bundle of small Wood, and dead Men's Bones painted on it, supposed to be the Bones of those that willingly sacrific'd themselves to this Idol. When the Procession is over, they put their Idol into the Trunk of a hollow Tree, where they offer Burnt-Offerings, with Honey, and after saying their Prayers to him, return home.

20. The *Buramos* or *Papais*.

Dapper says, they are Neighbours to the *Casanga's*, and dwell about the River *St. Domingo*, extending beyond the Mouth of *Rio Grande*. Their Capital and the Residence of their King is *Jarem*, 8 Leagues from the Harbour of *St. Domingo*. In this Quarter lies *Catcheo*, which the *Sansons* place in Lat. 12. Long. 6. betwixt *St. Domingo* and *Rio Grande*. At the Mouth of *St. Domingo* there are several little pleasant Islands, abounding with Trees, Fruit, and Streams, and inhabited by *Buramo's*, who are subject to a Prince of their own. They are Idolaters, dwell in Huts of Earth, cover'd with Leaves of Trees, and both Sexes file their Teeth to make them sharp and handsome. The Women, says *Jarric*, put Water in their Mouths in the Morning, and keep

keep it there till Noon, to prevent their drinking or speaking while about their Business.

21. The Islands of Bisegos or Bigiohos.

Dapper places them S. from those of *Buramos*, over against the Kingdom of *Guinala*. They are 17, inhabited by People called *Bijago's*. The chief Island is what the *Portuguese* call *Formosa*, or the Island of *Ferdinand de Po*, who first discover'd it. Its N. Point is in Lat. 11. 43. 6 or 7 Leagues from Cape Roxo. These Islands are well water'd and fruitful, abound with Trees, Palm-Wine, Oil, and several Fruits. The Soil is level, and proper for all Sorts of Corn, but the Inhabitants only plant Rice. They have Ivory, Wax, and Long Pepper, which is so much esteem'd by the *Turks*. The Coasts and Rivers abound with Fish. They have several Sorts of Animals, and often find *Ambergreece* on the Shores. The Inhabitants are large and brave, so that in 1607 they chas'd the Kings of *Biafares* and the *Portuguese* out of several Places, and forced them to have Recourse to the *Spaniards* for Assistance. They drove the King of *Biguba* out of his Country, and took 6 Provinces from the K. of *Guinala*. They are always at War with their Neighbours on the Continent, and take many Prisoners, whom they sell to the *Portuguese*. Each Island has its particular Prince, but all subject to him of *Formosa*.

22. Guinala Kingdom,

IS inhabited by Negroes called *Biafares*, and lies, says *Dapper*, upon an Arm of *Rio Grande* call'd *Guinala*, with *Bijagos* on the S. (but the *Sansons* say on the N.) and the *Maluces* on the E. Their Capital is the Harbour of *Guinala*, over against that of the Cross, which belongs to the *Portuguese*. The People are healthful, their Air and Diet being good. Their King never appears in Publick but with great Magnificence, and a numerous Guard of Archers. He keeps 50 large Mastives, cover'd with Skins of Sea-Oxen, which are almost impenetrable,

and there's a Man to attend each. These Men and the Dogs keep Guard at Night, so that no Person dare come near the Place; for these Dogs, when let loose, tear all they meet. The Design of this Guard is to prevent the Inhabitants from being stole in the Night, and carried off for Slaves.

When the King dies, 12 Men in long Gowns, made of Feathers of several Colours, proclaim his Death thro' the Streets with shrill Trumpets, and all the Inhabitants come out in a white Garb, and continue abroad till the prime Ministers chuse another Prince. They wash the Corps of the deceased King, burn his Entrails to their Idol, and keep the Ashes to be bury'd with the Corps. In a Month after they solemnize his Funeral, and all his Subjects bring Balm, Incense, *Ambergreece*, Musk, and other Drugs, to perfume the Corps. The Princes of the Blood go first on Horseback in White. The Nobles follow them in long Gowns of white Silk, and the common People bring up the Rear, marching with Flutes and Hautboys to the Sepulchre. They sacrifice on his Tomb his Wives, chief Favourites, Servants, and Horses, to attend him in the other World, but put them to Death in so cruel a Manner, that the poor Wretches make their Escape if they can when they think their Master is near his End. This King has still 6 Kings who are his Vassals, tho' the *Bijago's* have taken 6 more from him. He invests them with a Hat, which is a Badge of Royalty, and has several other Lords, who form his Privy-Council. The Inhabitants of *Guinala* are Pagans as well as the *Casanga's*. The Jesuits attempted their Conversion in 1607, but with little Effect. The *Sansons* extend the Country of the *Biafares* almost 300 Miles from N. E. to S. W. but not above 90 where broadest.

23. Biguba Kingdom.

Dapper says, it lies above *Guinala*, on the same River, and the People are also called *Biafares*. They have the same Customs with those of *Guinala*, only when their King dies, he that has the longest Sword carries the Crown. The chief Places are the Harbour of *Biguba* and *Balola*, the latter inhabited by a People called *Tangos-Maas*, descended

ded from the Portuguese, who mix'd with the Natives, and have some Remains of Christianity, but in other Things are as barbarous as the rest, go naked, and make Incisions in their Bodies.

24. Mandinga Kingdom, or Songo.

Dapper says, 'tis so call'd from a Colony of Negroes, who live on the Banks of the *Gambia*, 120 Leagues from the Coast. He tells us, their Country extends from N. Lat. 9. to 11. *Moll* places it betwixt Lat. 10. and 16. on both Sides the *Niger*; and says, it has Gold Mines. He makes it about 360 Miles from N. to S. but of an unequal Breadth, and about 300 where broadest. The *Sanfons* bound it with the *Niger* on the N. which parts it from *Tombut* Cantory, and the *Soufi* on the W. the latter with the Coast of *Guinea* on the S. and *Gago* on the E. They extend it 220 Miles from E. to W. and above 250 on the E. Frontier where broadest. The *Spaniards* call it *Mandimenca*; and *Marmol*, *Mani Inga*. *Dapper* says, its chief Place is some Leagues E. from *Cape Palmas*, and is call'd *Sango*. *Moll* calls it also *Mandinga*, or *Songa*, and places it at the Head of the River *Guinala*, about Lat. 13. Long. 10. 60 Miles S. from the *Niger*, and 400 E. from the W. Coast, so much do they differ as to its Situation. *Dapper* adds, That the Negroes here are handsomer than those of *Guinea*, but barbarous and perfidious. They are excellent Horsemen, and therefore much coveted by other Princes, who always place them in their Vanguards. The *Arabian* Merchants trade hither for Gold, which they transport in great Plenty to *Tombut*, and sell to the Merchants of *Barbary*. Some Time ago the King of this Country was so potent, that most of the Princes of *Upper Guinea* were his Vassals, as those of *Borsalo*, the *Jalofes*, *Casanga's*, and most of those who liv'd on the River *Gambia*; but now they are almost independant. The Inhabitants were formerly great Idolaters, and much given to Magick and Inchantments. They still entertain Magicians, which they call *Beverins*; though they are lately turn'd *Ma-hometans*. Their chief Priest lives in their

Capital, and is a famous Magician, says *Dapper*, pretending to have Power to conjure up the Devils, in order to torment his Enemies.

25. Bena, or the Country of the Soufi.

THE *Sanfons* bound it with Part of *Mallaguet* and *Melli* on the W. Cantory and Part of *Mandinga* on the N. Part of the latter and *Guinea* Coast on the E. and *Mallaguet* on the S. and extend it 280 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and 220 where broadest. *Dapper* says, it lies 8 or 9 Days Journey N. of *Torra* and *Sierra-Leona*, and S. of *Mandinga*. The Soil is very rugged, and is full of Mountains and Hills, cover'd with Trees and green Herbs, and interspers'd with Rivers. They have Mines of Iron finer than any in *Europe*. Here are Serpents as big as a Man's Thigh, and spotted with several lively Colours. The King commonly keeps one of them in his Arms, and fondles it as *European* Ladies do their Lap-Dogs; for which Reason he is call'd the King of Serpents.

When any Person dies here, the Kindred and Friends make great Lamentation, and then meet to solemnize the Funeral. They carry with them Cloth, Gold, and other Necessaries for Life, to make an Offering on his Sepulchre, which they divide into three Parts, one for the King, another for the Undertakers of the Funeral, and the third they lay on the Bier, for the Use of the Deceased in the next World. Kings and Great Men are generally buried by Night, in By-places, and without much Attendance, because (as our Author thinks) the great Sums of Gold and Silver which are buried with them may not be stole away: For this Reason, says he, they are often buried at the Mouths of Rivers, by turning off the Course of the Water till the Sepulchre is finished, and then restoring the Current again. Sometimes also they raise a little Tent of Woollen Cloth over the Graves of Persons of Note, and leave it there till Time has quite consum'd it. Hither the surviving Kindred come often to pray for Deliverance from their Sorrows. *Dapper* adds, That the King of *Bena* and

and all his Subjects are Idolaters; and that though he commands Seven Kingdoms, yet he is but a Vassal to the Emperor of all the *Soufi*.

Dapper comes next to the Country of *Sierra-Leona*, which, thô *Luyts* and the *Sansons* describe in the Coast of *Guinea*, we shall give an Account of it here, to avoid Confusion, and to vary as little as possible from *Dapper's* Position, which seems most exact.

26. *Sierra-Leona, or Bolmberre.*

Dapper says, *Sierra Leona* is the Name of a Chain of Mountains, a Kingdom, and a River; though the Spanish Word signifies no more than the *Lion's Mountain*. He derives the Name from the beating of the Waves on one of the Rocks on this Coast, which make a great Noise like the Roaring of a Lion: To which he adds, That the Tops of these Mountains being always cover'd with Clouds, though the Sun shines perpendicular upon them twice a Year, it causes lightning and Thunders, which are heard at Sea 20 or 30 Leagues from the Coast. *Bolmberre*, he says, is the Name of the Country, signifying a Piece of Ground that is fruitful, and low by Situation, and alluding properly to that Part which lies 9 Leagues from Cape *Tagrin*, or Cape *Lodo*, along the Coast. *Dapper* begins it at *Cabo Verga*, or *Moll's Cape Virgins*, and ends it at *Tagrin*, which he says is a very high Cape in N. Lat. 8. 13. and seen a great Way off at Sea. 'Tis water'd by above 13 Rivers, which run into the Ocean, with Forrests of Oranges, and great Villages on their Banks, very convenient for Trade. The first River which *Dapper* places next *Virgin's Cape* is *Rio dal Pedras*, so call'd from the great Number of Stones and Rocks in its Channel. 'Tis a great River, runs out into many Branches, and forms several Islands, particularly that of *Cagafian*, or *Cagacais*, where the Portuguese have built a Fort for the Security of their Trade. Next he places the Rivers, call'd *Rio Pichel*, *Rio das Palmas*, *Rio Pogne*, *Rio de Congramo*, *Rio Casses*, and *Rio Carocane*, with two others, call'd *Capar* and *Tambasine*, which rise out of the Mountains of *Machumala*, where

there is a great Rock of Chrystal. Next he sets down the River *Tagarim*, or *Mitombo*, now *Rio de Sierra Leona*, N. of the Cape of that Name. He says, 'tis 12 Miles over at the Mouth, and that in the Middle of its Course Northwards there are Banks of Sand which appear in Sight when the Water is low. At this Place, he says, the River divides into three Currents, one running North, another South, and the third between both. The Portuguese Barks sail up the two first with Safety, but durst not venture in the third. There are some other little Sand-banks in this River near the Isle of *Tasso*, but Barks pass over them. On the South of Cape *Sierra-Leona* there's another River call'd *Bangue*, which with the latter forms a *Peninsula*, so narrow, that the Negro Watermen go from one River to the other with their Boats on their Shoulders. There are several Villages, Provinces, and Kingdoms, along the River of *Sierra Leona*, the North Side of which is call'd *Bolm*, or *Bolow*, i. e. low, (which is a common Name here for all low marshy Countries) and the S. Side *Timna*. On the N. Side of the River *Sierra Leona*, *Dapper* places the Village of *Sorboracasa*; two Leagues from thence, in a Sandy Gulph, is the chief Place where all Ships that arrive on this Coast take in fresh Water, with a Village near it on each Side. He says, That *Serboracasa* lies in a Country call'd *Serbow*, and extends from the Shore as far as the Midway between the said Watering-place and the Village of *Bagos*. Eight or ten Paces from the Shore is a wet Ditch, which forms another Watering-place, where the Water falls from a higher Ground, but so little at a Time, that in a dry Season there's scarce enough for 6 Vessels. About 3 Leagues from hence is a low Spot of Ground, all full of Trees, except in a little Space, where rises a Fountain. About a Musket-shot from the Coast there's a Village, where the King's Brother resides, and where the River is extreamly rapid, because it falls from a high Ground. About three Leagues above that Village it divides into three Branches: That which runs to the N. E. from whence they bring Red-wood and Banda, is navigable by great Ships, but the middle Channel will bear only small ones, because there are many Rocks and Sand-

banks

banks in its Channel. The Village of *Bagos*, 4 Leagues from the common Watering-place, is shaded on one Side by great Trees, and two Leagues further E. is the Village of *Tomby*, where the *English* use to anchor. Hence we come to the Isle of *Tasso*, which seems at a Distance Part of the Continent: And *Dapper* says, That when one is at the Right Hand of it on the E. Side, we may discover a Heap of little Islands that look like Hay-cocks in a Meadow. Forty or fifty Leagues above the Mouth of this River *Dapper* places the Kingdom of *Mitombo*, from which he says the River of *Sierra-Leona* took that Name. He adds, That in this Kingdom, on the S. Side of the River, lies a Village call'd *Os Alagoas* by the *Portuguese*, who possess it, and by the Assistance of the Negroes hinder other Whites from coming to settle there.

Jarrick says, That *Sierra-Leona* is wholesomer than any Country in *Africa*, and that the Air is better than in *Portugal*, and many other Places in *Europe*, because neither the Cold nor the Heat is excessive, the Freshness of the Winds moderating the Heat of the Sun, which is very remarkable in a Country so near the Equinox. This Author adds, That few People here die of any Sickness, but most with old Age or sudden Death. *Dapper*, who doubts the Truth of his Report, says, That in *June* and *July* the Air is cover'd with Clouds and Mists, which are accompanied with Rains, Storms, and S. W. Winds; and that the first Rain breeds such Blisters and Vermin in those on whom it falls, as is common to the People about *Gambia* formerly mention'd, that in *May*, when the rainy Season begins, the Water of the Rivers is very unwholesome; and he thinks, that the Earth contracts some malignant Quality by the excessive Heat, which is dissolved by the continual Rains. He adds further, That several Mariners of the *Dutch East-India* Company that have anchor'd on this Coast for Refreshment and in the Beginning of the rainy Season, have catch'd dangerous Distempers; tho' perhaps some owe them to the immoderate Eating of raw Fruits, rather than any thing else: For,

Dapper says, 'tis also reckon'd one of the fruitfulest Countries in *Africa*, and abounds

with Rice, white Millet, and two or three Sorts of Paradise-Corn. Oranges, Lemons, Citrons, *India* Figs, Dates and Grapes, grow here of their own Accord, without Cultivating. There is Store of Cotton, a red Wood which is better for Dying than that which comes from *Brasil*, because it will die seven times; another Wood call'd *Angelin*, fit for Building of Ships; and there's another Tree whose Bark is fit to make Okum to caulk them. There's also Wax, Ivory, and long and round Pepper, which is more esteem'd than that of the *Indies*; for which Reason the King of *Spain* prohibits the Importation of it into his Territories; but the *English*, *Dutch*, and *French*, who come into these Parts, carry it into *Europe*, and the *Portuguese* trade with it to *Guinea*, where 'tis very much valued. Here are also some Mines of Iron and Gold. In the Mountain *Machamala*, near the *Bananes* Isles, there's a great Rock of Chrystal, with several Pyramids of the same turn'd upside down, so that they seem to hang in the Air; and our Author says, that a Stroke with ones Finger makes 'em sound like a Bell. He tells us, That there are three Sorts of Apes here, especially one call'd *Barris*, which they catch when young, and bring up with so much Art, that they make them walk upright like Men, pound Millet in a Mortar, draw Water in a Pitcher, to cry out when they fall, to turn Spits, and to do a Thousand other little Tricks for the Diversion of their Masters; so that, he says, they are as tractable and almost as serviceable as their Slaves. The S. Part of *Sierra-Leona*, which is farthest from the Coast, abounds with Poultry; and at *Serboracasa* Ships may take on Board all Sorts of Provisions; yet they are commonly dear, because the Villages are almost always at War with one another; but the Rivers are full of Fish, and the Coast produces better Oysters than any in *Europe*.

The Inhabitants of *Sierra-Leona* are rather swarthy than black. They print Marks in their Faces, and other Parts of their Bodies, with a hot Iron, bore their Ears and Nostrils for Rings and Jewels, and go naked except a Sash about their Middles. There are two Sorts of Negroes here, viz. the ancient Inhabitants, call'd
Capes,

Capes, who are more ingenious than the rest in all these Parts to learn any thing; but since their Country yields enough to maintain them, they love Quiet, and are Enemies to War; and, 2. the *Cumba's*, or *Manes*, i. e. *Anthropophagi*, a Sort of meer Brutes, who eat Men. *Dapper* says, That in 1515. they made an Incurſion into the Country of *Capes* for Plunder, and being charm'd with the Fruitfulness of the Soil, resolv'd to settle there, which they did, and expell'd the *Capes* from all Places wherever they came, selling some to the *Portuguese*, and eating the rest; but they chose for most part to surrender as Slaves to the *Portuguese*.

In every Village there's a great House separate from the rest, where the Girls are sent for a Year to be instructed by some old Man, and at the Year's End they all make a Procession with Musick to a Place, where they dance before their Fathers and several young Men, who when the Ball is done chuse those they like best for their Wives, and then make a Present to the Fathers and the Master.

They interr their Kings in the high Roads without their Villages, and cover their Tombs with Tents of Straw, because, say they, those who have serv'd in Publick ought to be plac'd thus in Sight of the World after their Death: But they bury private Persons in their Houses, with their Bracelets, Rings, and Jewels, and bewail them in publick Places. They exchange Ambergreece, Chryſtal, Pearls, Ivory, Wax, excellent *Brazil* Wood, Long Pepper, and Ingots of Gold, for the Commodities of *Europe*. The Language of the N. Part of *Sierra-Leona*, call'd *Bolm*, is very coarse, and difficult to be understood or pronounced, but that in the S. Part is much smother and easier. The *Capes* and the *Cumba's* have their Kings, who do Justice themselves, and give Audience for that Purpose in a great Court of that Palace, call'd *Funcos*, where they sit on a high Throne, with their Counsellors on each Side in lower Seats. The Parties appear before him with their Solicitors and Council, adorn'd with several Sorts of Feathers, small Bells on their Feet, Darts in their Hands, on which they rest, and a Mask on

their Faces, that they may speak with more Freedom, and without being known. Then the King, with the Advice of his Counsellors, pronounces Sentence. When the King chuses a new Counsellor, he introduces him into the Council-Chamber, where he places him on a wooden Seat appointed for the Ceremony, daubs his Cheeks with the bloody Guts of a Goat, throwing the Meal of Rice upon them at the same Time, and then puts a red Hat upon his Head, and invests him with the Stile and Title of *Solatequi*, or the King's Counsellor. Some Authors add, That he is carried through the Town in Triumph in the same Seat: That they make a great Feast for 3 Days, with Tilts and Tournaments after the Manner of the Country; and that the Women dance, sing, and kill a Beeve, whose Flesh they distribute among the People.

When the King dies, his Son succeeds him, if he has any, but otherwise his Brother, or the nearest Male of Kin. Before he is proclaimed they send for him to his House, load him with Chains, and bring him to the Palace, where he must suffer a certain Number of Blows. Then they break his Chains, cloath him with Royal Robes, and bring him into the Court, where the chief Men of the Kingdom are assembled, and the Dean of the *Solatequi's*, after a long Speech, proving the King's Right to the Crown, puts the Royal Ensign into his Hands, which is only a Sort of Ax to cut off the Criminals Heads. But *Dapper* observes, That since *Sierra-Leona* became subject to the Kings of *Quoja*, or *Cabo-Monte*, they send a Governor hither with the Title of *Dondagh*, which signifies King.

The People were all Idolaters till 1607 when the Jesuit *Barreira* baptized the whole Royal Family, and several other Persons, and the *Portueze* christen'd the King *Don Philip de Lion*, alluding to the Name of the Country: But *Dapper* says, the present King, though he has been baptized, follows Idolatry still, to gain the Love of the People. He adds, That all the Coast from the N. Bank of the River *Sierra-Leona* as far as beyond the *Rio das Pedras*, belongs to a King named *Fatuma*, or *Fatima*, who has for his Vassals *Temfila*, *Temfertam*, and

Don Michel, who baptized in our Author's Time.

The *Dutch* import into the River *Sierra-Leona* Iron Bars, Linen Cloth, Basins, Earthen Mugs, Buttons, several Sorts of artificial Pearls, Copper Medals, Bracelets, Ear-Pendants, little Axes, Seamens Knives, fine Cravats, coarse Lace, Chrystal, printed Callicoes of a coarse Red, *Spanish* Wine, Olive Oil, Brandy, all Sorts of great Coral, coarse narrow Serges, Fillets, and Silk Gashes, which the Negro Women wear about their Middles. The *English* built a Fort for the Security of their Trade in a small Island in the River *Sierra-Leona*, but the *Dutch* Admiral *Ruyter* took it in Jan. 1664. with a Booty of 4 or 500 Elephants-Teeth, a great Number of Copper-Kettles and Bars of Iron, and 60 or 70 Load of Salt, besides other considerable Merchandize. Sir *Francis Drake* and his Company arrived in these Parts about 1579. where they found great Store of Elephants, and Trees that had Oysters fasten'd to them, on which they liv'd and multiplied. Mr. *Tho. Candish*, who came hither in 1586. says, That on the S. Side of *Sierra-Leona* they had but 5 Fathom Water at lowest, and from 8 to 16 Fathom about 14 Leagues to the S. W. all the Way running into the Harbour of *Sierra-Leona*. He add'd, That they ruin'd a Town of the Negroes here, who had kill'd one of his Men with a poison'd Arrow, and that the Tide at the Harbour of *Sierra-Leona* flows S. W.

To this we thought fit to add the following Account of *Sierra-Leona*, as we find it in the third Voyage, set forth by our *East-India* Company in 1607. taken from the Journals of Captain *William Keeling*, Chief Commander, and Mr. *Finch*, a Merchant.

The King of the Country then resided in the Bottom of the Bay of *Sierra-Leona*, and had several petty Princes in Subjection, one of whom liv'd at a Town within the second Court, and another on the other Side the Bay. His Dominions reach'd 40 Leagues within the Land, and his Tribute was paid him in Cotton Cloth, Elephants-Teeth, and Gold. He and his chief Nobles were decently clad in Fustian Jackets, and Breeches, and some had Hats: But the

Commons had only a Cotton Cloth about their Waists, which hung down before, and the Children were stark naked. Some of the Men wear their Hair in Tufts; others cut off Part, and leave the rest standing crosswise. The Women shave theirs close. They pull off all the Hair from their Eyelids, and file their Teeth sharp enough to crack a Bone. They live upon Roots and Fruits, which they plant about their Houses, such as Gourds, Potatoes, Pumpions, Plantanes, and *Guinea* Pepper, together with Herbs, and Cockles and Oysters, which they eat Shells and all, without opening them first. They have little Crops of Rice just by their Houses, but no more than what serves their Family, and make their Bread of a little Grain call'd Pene, like the Seed of Winter-Savory. They have little Flesh, except now and then some Venison, which they catch in the Mountains; but have Store of Fish, and are good Anglers in their Way. Both Men and Women are great Smokers of Tobacco. They press the Juice out of the green Leaves, dry them on a Potsheard over the Coals, and so cut them for Use, for they say, if the Juice remained in the Leaves, it makes them drunk. The Bowls of their Pipes are made of Clay, and very large, and in the lower End of them they stick a small hollow Cane a Foot and half long, through which they draw the Smoak, and swallow it.

Their Towns consist of about 30 or 40 Houses in a Cluster, cover'd with Reeds, and inclos'd with Mud-walls like our Hogsties. They hang up a Mat for the Door, lie all Night on Billets cover'd with Mats, and line their Rooms with the same. Their Household Stuff is only two or three Earthen Pots to keep Water and boil Meat in, one Gourd to fetch Palmito Wine in, another for a Quaffing-Cup, a few Earthen Dishes for their Loblolly, a Basket or two to gather Cockles, and a Knapsack made of the Bark of Trees to carry their Provisions, Pipes and Tobacco. Their Arms are, a little short Sword, which they hammer out of a Piece of Iron, a Bow and Quiver of Arrows headed with Iron, and poison'd, or else a Case of Javelins pointed in like manner, and sometimes both.

The People are strong, big, and well made, pretty courageous, and civil too, considering their rude Education. They are very just, punish Theft with present Death, and keep for most Part to their own Wives, of whom they are extremely jealous. They have *Portuguese* Jesuits, and a Chappel; but they circumcise, and keep Idols of Wood in their Houses, so that our Author does not determine whether Christianity, Judaism, or Paganism, prevails most; yet he says, the Jesuits have taught them to observe some Holidays, and that they seem'd to express some Notion of a God, by lifting up their Hands to Heaven, and other devout Actions of the like Nature.

The Country yields Variety of excellent Fruit-Trees, which grow wild by entire Woods. They have few Oranges, but Lemons and Palmito Trees enough; and that there's a vast long Wood of the former just by the Watering-place near the Town. The Palmito Wine is their strong Drink, and Water their small; but the Men give the Women little or none of the former. They are so nimble, that they can run up Trees like Cats; and tho' there are no Boughs nor any thing else to hold by on their Palmito's, (which are also very large and high) except just at the Top, yet they mount up with incredible Swiftmess, and come down again in good Order with their Gourd of Wine. They do it fastening a Withey about the Tree and their own Middle, and bearing their Body a little back, they raise up that Part of the Withey that goes about the Tree, and so by the Help of their Feet lift themselves upwards very cleverly. They have several Sorts of Plumbs, some good and well tasted, of a Black and Wheaten Colour: The Black are largest, and of a more Aromatick Flavour than the others. They have a Fruit call'd *Mansamilios*, like a Wheaten Plum; but the Juice of it proves fatal if spurted in the Eyes, as does also that of the Boughs. There's another Fruit call'd *Beningenions*, as big as a Lemon, with a reddish Rind, and very wholesome: Another call'd *Begnills*, as big as Apples, with a rough knotty Skin, which, when par'd off, resembles a Strawberry in Taste, Colour, and Grain. They have great Store of wild Grapes in the Woods, but they are

bitter. They observed another Fruit here of a dark Yellow, growing 7 or 8 in a Cluster, as long and as big as a Man's Finger, somewhat soft and downy, with a Pulp of a sweet and pleasant Taste; but how wholesome, they do not say. They have poisonous Beans, which grow upon great Trees in the Woods like Beeches. Of these there are three different Sorts; the first large and tall, call'd *Oyon*, bears a Cod like a Bean, containing 4 or 5 square Beans, almost like the Seed of a Tamarind, enclos'd with a hard Peel like a Shell, and a yellow Kernel within it, which is dangerous Poison, and us'd by the Negroes for poisoning their Darts. The 2d Sort is less, the Cod crooked, thick rinded, 6 or 7 Inches in the Bending, half as much in Breadth, and encloses 5 Beans an Inch long each. The 3d has Leaves like the former, but the Food much bigger, standing on a strong woody Stalk, thick and mossy, a little indented on the Sides, 9 Inches long and 5 broad, and contains 5 Beans, longer than the others, which are call'd *Quenda*, and said to be venomous. They have also Trees like Willows, which bear a Fruit like Pescods. Up far in the Country there's a Fruit call'd *Gola*, as big as a Walnut, hard, reddish, bitter, jagged, full of Corners, and enclos'd in a hard Shell like that. 'Tis much valued in the Country, and serves for Meat and Money too, for this passes here in Trade, as Gold and Silver does elsewhere. They love to mix it with the Rind of a certain Tree, and chew it, and in Company it goes round out of one Man's Mouth into another's, as old Women smook Tobacco, for they don't swallow any Part of it. They have Store of Cotton, of which they make pretty good Cloth about a quarter broad, and with this they cover themselves before. They die their Purfes and Mats with the Red Wood call'd *Cambo*.

To this our Author adds the following Account of their most noted Trees, Fruits, and Plants. The Lemon Tree is like a Crab in several Points, full of Prickles, and bears a slender Leaf like a Willow. It yields plentifully, the Fruit begins to ripen in *August*, and holds upon the Tree till *October*.

The *Plantan* Tree is of a moderate Height, and as big as a Man's Thigh. 'Tis not of a dense, compact, woody Substance, but seems to consist of several Orders of Leaves or Skins wrapped close upon one another, like an Artichoke. It has no Branches, but the Leaves shoot immediately out of the Trunk thro' the whole Length of it, and are for most Part two Ells long and one broad, with one long Rib going through the Middle of them. The *Plantans* themselves hang ten or twelve in a Cluster, each a Span long, and almost as thick as a Man's Wrist, somewhat crooked, and bending inward. It looks green at first, but turns yellow as it ripens, and the Pulp within is of the same Colour, and a pleasant Taste. Beneath the Fruit, on the same Stalk, hangs down a Tuft of Leaves sharp pointed. They call the Fruit *Bananas*. They are ripe in *September* and *October*, and if gather'd green, will ripen of their own Accord, so as to be eatable in 6 Weeks time.

Their *Guinea* Pepper, of which he says they have no great Plenty, grows wild in the Woods. The Plant is small like Privet or Prickwood, adorn'd with little slender Leaves, and bears a Fruit call'd *Bangue*, like Barberries in Form and Colour; but they don't hang in Bunches, and only two or three together about the Stalk.

The *Pene*, formerly mentioned, of which they make their Bread, he says is a small slender Plant like Grass, and that the Seed lies in the Stalk, and not enclos'd in any Husk. He thinks it to be the same that the *Turks* call *Cuscus*; and the *Portuguese*, *Tfande*.

That call'd the *Oyster Tree* is like a Willow, but the Leaf very broad, and almost as thick as Leather, with small Knobs like those of the Cypress. They grow about the Bays, their Boughs hang down into the Water, are as it were overflown by the Tide, and laden with Oysters, which stick to them with Mud and Slime.

Next our Author gives an Account of their Fish, which he says are Mulletts, Rays, Thornbacks, Old Wives, Gar-Fish, Cavalios like Mackarel, Pikes, Sword Fish with Snouts a Yard long, tooth'd on both Sides like a Saw; Dog Fish, Sharks, and others like them with a flat broad Snout like a

Shovel, and a Fish call'd *Shoemakers*, with Tusks like a Barbel, and grunt like Hogs.

Their chief Fowl he says are White Pelicans, as large as Swans, with a mighty long Bill, Hearn, Curlews, Boobies, Ox-Eyes, and other Sorts unknown to us, particularly grey Parrots, and Party-colour'd *Guinea* Hens of the Size of a Pheasant.

Their Mountains, he says, are full of Lions, Tigers, and Ounces, and their Woods of Monkeys. There are also some Porcupines, and Plenty of Elephants far up in the Country, but few about the Bays. Our Authors say, the Natives told them here was a strange Beast call'd a Carbuncle, seen only in the Night. They say, it has a shining Stone in its Forehead, which renders him visible in the Dark, and directs him to find out his Food. 'Tis very timorous and shy, and so quick of Hearing, that it flies at the least Noise. They add, that there's a Muscular Film or Skin over that bright Stone, which the Creature draws close when it hears any Noise, and so leaves his Pursuers to blunder in the Dark.

Their chief Commodities, say the same Authors, are Gold and Elephants Teeth, which the *Portuguese* purchase far up in the Country with Beads, Bells, Knives, Glasses, Copper and Iron Vessels, &c. but they tell us, that about the Sea-Coast, where the People are more in the Way of Commerce, they will barter Victuals for Toys; but understand the Value of their Gold better than to part with it at so cheap a Rate.

The Cape of *Sierra-Leona* lies pretty low, but the Land over it very high, and may be seen 14 or 15 Leagues in a clear Day. There's a great Rock of a remarkable Figure to the W. of the Cape. There's from 9 to 16 Fathom Water N. and S. with the Rock at a Mile and a half Distance; and within half a Mile there's 7 Fathom very good Shoaling between the Ship and Rock. As you pass it there's 20 Fathom, and Shoaling to 18, 16, 12, and 10 Fathom, all the Way into the Roads bordering near the Shore, for there's a considerable Sand-Bank that lies about two Miles from the N. Shore, where the Sea breaks. There's convenient Anchorage in 10 Fathom Water, and good Ground, the Cape of *Sierra-Leona* bearing W. by

W. by N. the N. Point of the Bay bearing N. W. and the aforesaid Breach or Sand-Bank N. N. E. They observe further, that coming in they were N. and S. with the Rock. It bare with the S. Point and with the *Ilha Verd* N. by W. and S. by E. The latter they say is a round Spot, and a particular Mark for all that are bound hither from the S. The same Author tells us, that their Observations of the Variation of the Compass from 2 Deg. N. Lat. to this Place prov'd erroneous, and that 30 Leagues must be added to each Distance when there's a Reference to any E. Meridian; and if to a W. Meridian, so many subtracted from it. They say, all the Watering hereabouts is very good and convenient; but that the best Watering-place and Road too is the 4th Bay to the E. of the Cape of *Sierra Leona*, where the Water runs almost W. S. W. and rises 12 Foot at a Spring Tide. When you have the *Ilha Verd* bearing from you S. E. half Southerly, and the Point of *Sierra Leona* N. E. by E. half Easterly, and about 3 Leagues from you, there's a strong Tide which sets N. E. by E. They place the Road of *Sierra Leona* in N. Lat. 8. 36. and say, it lies 3 or 4 Miles almost E. from the Cape, and found the Variation here 1 Deg. 50 Min. N. E.

Admiral *Beaulieu* places the Cape in N. Lat. 8. and says, the Needle varies there 2 Deg. $\frac{3}{4}$. N. E. He was here in 1619, and says, the King then resided at *Sasena* on the Coast, about 4 Leagues from *Tagrin*; that the Country is pleasant; and that at the Bottom of the Creek there was a Brook of fresh Water, whose Banks towards the Sea were shaded with Citron Trees, Willows, and thick Woods; that there are some Plains fit for Pasture; but the Soil is generally Stone or Iron-colour'd Rock: That their Houses are better than those of Cape *Verd*; that the Natives worship little horrible Images like Devils, and small Lumps of black Earth call'd *Grigris*, in the Form of Sugar Biscuits, which he understood to be the Nests of Ants; that they offer them Fruits, and the Heads of Monkeys, Baboons, and other Beasts; that when they salute one another, they cry, *Tout hant*; but when a White, *Ta as Menti*. That they are better than the other Negroes, but began

to improve in Cunning when he was there, by conversing with the People of several Nations that touch there; that the 3d Creek from Cape *Sierra Leona* is convenient for taking in Water, Wood, Citrons, Oranges, and Hoops for Water-Casks, which are to be had for little or nothing; that they had good Rice here, in Exchange for the like Quantities of Salt; that there's no Flesh here, unless Pullets, which he says are very scarce; and little Accommodation for Hunting, but all its Creeks are full of Fish. Some place this Cape about 1110 Miles from Cape *Bajadore*. *Schouten* says 'tis the highest Land between Cape *Verd* and the Coast of *Guinea*: and that the Island of *Madrabomba* lies on the S. Point of it, and N. from the Shallows of an Island call'd *St. Anne's*. He tells us, that there are 3 Islands call'd *Madrabomba*, and that they are very high, and lie all on a Row, S. W. and N. E. half a League from *Sierra Leona* to the Seaward, where there's 4 or 5 Fathom at low Water at the W. End, and soft muddy Ground, with from two to six Fathom elsewhere. The Land seem'd to him full of desert Bogs. As he went ashore, he found a River whose Mouth was stopped up with Sands, Cliffs, and Rocks, but navigable within. Here he saw Tortoises, Crocodiles, Monkeys, Wild Oxen, and Birds that bark like Dogs, but no Fruit besides a few Lemons.

Mr. *Candish*, who was here in 1586, says, that *Madrabomba* lies 10 Leagues from the Point of *Sierra Leona*, and only bore Plantanes; that there was a Town at the E. End of the Island, to which he supposed the Negroes did sometimes resort, because they had left Provisions there; that they have fresh Water in three or four Places on the N. Side, but none on the S. and that the whole Island is nothing but a Wood, except a few Houses here and there, encompassed with Plantan Trees, whose Fruit is choice Food. He adds, that in September 'tis very subject to Storms of Rain and Thunder. He says, that the Village of *Sierra Leona* consisted but of 8 or 9 poor Houses, cover'd with Straw; but fresh Water ran down in great Quantities from every high Hill; and there's such abundance of Lemons, that they might have had above 10000 for a few

few Beads and Knives. The *Sanfons* say, the Natives make good Soap of the Oil, and Ashes of the Palm-Tree. *Struys* confirms the pernicious Effects of their Water to Strangers in the Month of *May*, at which Time the rainy Season begins, and then he says it causes burning Fevers, Fluxes, and other violent Distempers, in such Strangers as drink it; and he adds, as we before observ'd, that every Drop of the Rain at its first coming makes a Bladder in the Skin, or breeds a Worm in the Cloaths on which it falls. That Author was here in 1648, and he gives us the following diverting Account how ill his Commadore was serv'd by the then King of this Country, and of the Method he took to revenge himself. The Commadore at his Arrival sent the King a Present of 5 Iron Bars, a Barrel of Brandy, and another of Spanish Wine, which the King and his Courtiers, who look'd like sorry Fishermen, so well lik'd, that they demanded a double Present of the same, which was accordingly granted, (tho' against the Commadore's Will) because he greatly wanted Water, Wood, Oranges, Citrons, and other Refreshments. Upon this they came aboard every Day with Fruit, and seem'd very easy; but soon after the King sent them Word, That he would have a third Present before the Ship's Company should come ashore. This greatly provok'd the Commadore, so that he resolv'd upon a Revenge, and for that Purpose invited the King aboard, telling him he should have Satisfaction. The King went aboard without any Scruple, attended only by 5 or 6 Gentlemen, and hasten'd to the Captain's Cabin; but instead of being regal'd, as he expected, he was put in Irons, and the Commadore, who told him he was too great a Brute for the Dignity of a King, threaten'd to hang him up; but at the Instance of the Officers belonging to the Ship, who represented the Danger that might ensue, he was thrown into the Sea; upon which his Retinue hasten'd ashore in their Canoes, and began to make Head against the Ship's Crew at their landing; but they were put to Flight, and the Commadore, after having furnish'd himself with Necessaries, robb'd their Gardens, and burnt and plun-

der'd their Houses. *Struys* was told, that the same King had serv'd others of his Countrymen in the like Nature, and that he had been twice thrown into the Sea within a Fortnight.

The Rocks of *Idolos*, or those call'd Idol Islands, lie near this Coast, with which we shall conclude our Account of *Negroland*. They are four according to the *Sanfons*, and lie between 8 and 9 Deg. of Long. and N. Lat. *Moll* makes them but three, and places them about Lat. 9. and Long. 5. near 30 Miles from the Coast. Admiral *Beaulieu* places them in Lat. 9 $\frac{1}{2}$. 25 Leagues from Cape *Sierra Leona*, and says, they are the highest Land, except *Tagrin*, between that and Cape *Verd*. That call'd *Great Idol*, which is the largest and most S. of these Islands, affords Water, and several Sorts of Fruits and Fowls; but its Inhabitants, who are numerous, are not to be dealt with without Hostages. That call'd the *Lesser Idol* also affords Water: Besides which, there are other Islands too small and inconsiderable to be mentioned. They are so call'd from a River of that Name in the Continent, whose Mouth lies opposite to them, about 3 or 4 Leagues off. The Natives are Negroes, Idolaters, and great Hunters and Eaters of Elephants. They drove no Commerce with the Continent in our Author's Time, and their Coast lies so high, that 'tis hard to land upon them. He supposes they put off their Elephants Teeth in the River of *Tagrin*. He adds, that Cassade and Knives are proper Commodities for the Place; and that he saw several Spouts on this Coast. *Dapper* says, they are also call'd *Tamara*, and lie about 20 Leagues below *Virgin's Cape*. He observes, that when one is on the North Side, they seem to join to the Continent by the S. W. He says, they afford all Sorts of Refreshment to Mariners, and yield good Tobacco; but the Inhabitants are capricious, and so mistrustful, that they will not suffer the *Dutch* to land there; and that their chief Traffick is in Salt and Brandy, for which they exchange Ivory and Gold. These Islands, and the opposite Coast of *Negroland*, from the N. Side of the River *Sierra Leona* to *Rio das Pedras*, depend on a King nam'd *Fatuma* or *Fatima*, as we formerly observ'd.

Over

Over against the S. Point of *Sierra Leona*, a little League from the Shore, *Dapper* places two or three Islands call'd *Bannanas*, *Bonas*, or *Las Bravas*, which are high Land and Woody; and 7 Leagues further to the S. E. three other small Islands call'd *Sombreras*, where he says they make excellent Wine and Oil of Dates, and of the Lees of both an excellent Sort of Soap, better than that of *Europe*; for which Reason the *Portuguese* for-

bid its Importation into their Country, lest it should spoil the Sale of their own. There are also Sugar-Canes in several Parts of these Islands, which grow of their own Accord. *Dapper* says, that between the Islands *Las Bravas* and *Sombreras*, the Coast of the Main Land forms a Bow like the *Pampus* near *Amsterdam*; and that *James le Maire* coming hither in 1615 to find out the Mouth of the River *Sierra Leona*, discover'd 4 more.

C H A P. X.

G U I N E A Coast.

Sansons and Luyts's TABLE of GUINEA Coast.

<p>GUINEA, divided into Three Parts, viz.</p>	<p>Benin King- dom, con- taining,</p>	<p>On the East,</p>	<p>Badis, Coffo or Cosfo, Benin, Agotton or Agaton, Aroba or Arobe, Ouwerra or Ou- werre, Belli, Calabar or Ca- labari, Old Calabar, Beni, Hodi or Bodi, Focko, Cabo Formoso or Formosa Cape, Loebo.</p>
		<p>On the West,</p>	<p>Ody, Curamo, Daroera, Ardra or Ardar, Foulaen, Popou.</p>
		<p>On the East,</p>	<p>Laya or Laye, Pompeno, Chri- stianburg, Cinko, Akra, Berkue or Barku, Annamboas, Cor- mantin, Anishan, Mouree or Nassaw Fort, Corso Cape and Castle, St. George del Mina Fort, Commendo, Anta or Ante, Axym, Archim, and Areem, Bumaz, Fetu, Fantin, Sabou, Adws, Aboras, Dau- ma, Acanes Major & Minor, or Acanes Pequenos, and Acanes Grandes, Ocanu, Ca- tamanu, S. Lourenzo.</p>
	<p>Proper Guinea, in which are,</p>	<p>On the West,</p>	<p>Corisseno, Xabanda, Cuceres, Uxoo, Labora or Labore, Pa- rigorn or Parigom, Brum, Alderrada, Bacorees, Jamo, Bogia or Boggia, Tabbo, Af- sina or Affine, Corby, Peto or Berby, Growaly, Adaows People.</p>
	<p>Malaguetta or Maleguette, comprehen- ding,</p>	<p>On the N.</p>	<p>Settera Major, Crou, Settera Mi- nor, Subyma or Salyma, Petit Dieppe or Little Deppa, Faly, Hamaya, Maffagh or Maffach, Jegwonga.</p>
		<p>On the S.</p>	<p>Bagga, Sherbro, Timaa, Bugos.</p>



GUINEA Coast.

MOLL bounds it with *Negroland* on the N. and the Sea on the S. and extends it from the Mouth of the River *Sierra Leona* on the W. to the River *Camarones* on the E. 1500 Miles in a direct Line, from Long. $5\frac{1}{2}$. to 32. but he makes the Breadth unequal. *Heylin* from Long. 10. to 30. The *Sansons* from Long. $8\frac{1}{4}$. to above 36. They place it between the R. *Niger* and the Equinoctial Line, to which some extend it, but others not so far; yet there are those who carry it from the Kingdom of *Congo* to the N. Side of the *Niger*. *Luyts* extends it from Long. 9. to 37. and from N. Lat. 4. to 12. The River of *Sierra Leona* parts it from the Country of that Name, and the *Camarones* from *Lower Ethiopia*. The *Sansons* make this Maritime Country 7 or 800 Leagues in a direct Line from E. to W. and about 100, 150, or somewhat more, in Breadth. The *Portuguese* call all the Country between *Zemeg* and the Kingdom of *Congo*, *Upper Guinea*; and *Congo*, *Angola*, *Monomotapa*, *Zanzibar*, *Ajan*, &c. *Lower Guinea*. *Dapper* extends it further S. E. than *Moll* or the *Sansons*, even to *Cape Loop* or *Lopas*, which lies in a Deg. and a half S. Lat. including the Gulph and Islands of *St. Thomas*. This Coast is much traded to by *Europeans*. *Morery* says, 'twas first discover'd in 1346 by the *French*, who sent Colonies hither; but that during their Civil Wars in the Reigns of *Charles VI.* and *Charles VII.* they were expelled by the *Portuguese*, *English*, *Dutch*, *Danes*, and *Swedes*. *Du Plessis* says, 'tis not half so large as *Negroland*, to which it formerly belong'd, but is much more populous. *Sir William Monson* says, it was not discover'd till 1471, in the Days of *Alonso I.* the 5th King of *Portugal*; and *Heylin*, that 'twas found out in 1452, in the Reign of *John II.* by Prince *Henry Duke of Viseo*, Son of *John I.*

Morery says, the Soil is fruitful, but the Heat intolerable; and that the chief Product is Cotton, Rice, Sugar-Canes, Gold, Elephants, Peacocks, Apes, and Ivory. *Sir William Monson* says, the Air is so very hot, that when any of the monstrous Beasts, with which this Country abounds, dies,

it causes such an intolerable Stench, that it corrupts the Air, and breeds a Pestilence.

The TRADE of GUINEA.

SIR *William Monson* tells us, that the aforesaid *Alonso King of Portugal* enjoy'd the Sovereignty of *Guinea*, without Interruption by any other Nation, till 1481, when the Negroes invited the *English*, and offer'd them a convenient Tract of Ground for their Settlement, and a Fleet was preparing accordingly; but King *John II.* of *Portugal* sent an Ambassador to confirm the old League with our King *Edward IV.* to acquaint him with his Title to *Guinea*, and to desire him to lay aside his Design, which King *Edward* was induced to comply with, the rather, because his Domestick Troubles hinder'd him from the Opportunity of making any Foreign Addition to his Dominions. But in 1553, *Sir William Monson* says, that a *Portuguese* Grandee, who had been misrepresented to his Prince, and forced to fly, came to *England*, and discover'd the Product of *Guinea* (where he had formerly liv'd) to some of our Merchants, whom he encourag'd to send a Fleet to that Coast. Upon this, the King his Master invited him home, with the Promise of a great Reward, and upon his Refusal plotted his Death; but he had Notice on't, and went on the Voyage, which was spoil'd by the Wilfulness of *Windham* the Commander, who preferred his own Measures to the Experience of the *Portuguese* Don. After they had acquir'd great Riches by Trade, the *Portuguese* represented the Danger of Sicknes if they stay'd longer on the Coast, and was for returning home; but *Windham* rejected his Advice, and soon after they both died of a contagious Distemper, as did many of their Company. *Sir William* doubts not, if that Voyage had been discreetly carried on, but it would have return'd great Profit then, and have settled a Trade to *Guinea* for the Time to come. He observes, that this happen'd too about the Beginning of the *Portuguese* Plantation, which would have given us an Opportunity to eat them out of that Trade, and to discover new Lands and

Trades within the Country. But Sir William says, that tho' since Don John of Portugal's Embassy to Edward IV. as above mentioned, the English never attempted a Footing in Guinea, which he ascribes to the Unwholesomeness of the Climate and Air, yet we continued a Yearly Trade to the Coast on this Side the Equinoctial, after the Year 1553, that Qu. Elizabeth granted many Patents to her Subjects of the West for that Purpose. 'Tis needless to add, that many Voyages have been since made to this Coast by the English, with profitable Returns: But Sir William observes, that we could never attain to a Trade at *Castle de la Mina*, which is the chief Place, and belong'd to the Portuguese; tho' he is of Opinion, that Queen Elizabeth might have subdued the Country, and settled her Subjects and a Trade thither, with as much Benefit as accrued from it to the King of Spain. And to obviate the Objection from the Unhealthfulness of the Climate, he advis'd that we should set out hither in September, stay no longer than March, keep to a certain Diet, not eat too much Fruit, and shun the Morning Dew and the Company of Negro Women. Sir William says, he found the greatest Death of our Men to be in their Return home out of the hot Countries into the cold, which he ascribes chiefly to the Want of Clothes for poor Mariners. Heylin says, that in 1477, when the Portuguese were more intent on new Discoveries, than in securing their old ones, the Castilians fetch'd a great deal of Gold from this Country: But that in 1479, the Trade was by Agreement left free to the Portuguese, who then built Fort St. George de la Mina.

Sir William Monson says, the Soil affords as great Plenty of Merchandize as the West-Indies, especially good Ginger; but the King of Spain won't suffer them to plant any other than what they call Green Ginger for their own Use, because the Value of it mayn't sink in the West-Indies. The Curious may see Sir William Monson's Advice and Plan, which he lays down for the Conquest of Guinea, in his Naval Tracts, bound up with the Third Volume of Churchill's Collections. He adds, that in his Time the

King of Portugal farm'd the sole Trade of this Country to one of his Grandees, who sent his Merchandize to *Castle de la Mina*, whither the Negroes resorted with their Commodities from all Parts of the Country, by which *Mina* became a continual Mart, and was always furnish'd with Gold. Galvano says, that in 1469, the King of Portugal farm'd it for 5 Years to one Gamez for 138*l.* 17*s.* 9*d.* $\frac{1}{2}$. on Condition that he should discover 100 Leagues every Year. Sir William tells us, the Dutch have extended their Trade to several Places of Guinea which anciently belong'd to the Portuguese, as the first Discoverers; and that they daily resort hither, and are well receiv'd by the Negroes, who bring them Gold and other rich Commodities in Truck for their slight Merchandize. The Sansons say, that the Chamber of Amsterdam alone reap'd such a vast Profit by the Merchandizes which the East-India Company of the Netherlands imported from this Country, that in the Space of 12 Years, between 1624 and 1636, their Ivory gain'd them 1200000 Livres, their Hides the like Sum, and Wax near 100000 Livres, besides the Gold, Ambergreece, and other Commodities which they brought home, and exclusive of what the other Chambers gain'd to their Share; and they add, that since *St. George de la Mina* fell into the Hands of their Company, they have been the only great Gainers by the Trade to this Coast; for they say, that in one Year the Dutch brought away as much Gold as was worth two Millions of Livres, in Exchange for Toys. Du Plessis says, the Dutch import hither Wollen and Linen Cloths, Arms, Glass Ware, and Hard Ware; that they have good Forts and Settlements on the Coasts, which belong to their West-India Company; and that the English and Danes have some Forts too; but that the Dutch have obliged the Portuguese to retire further within Land, where they have made Alliances with the Natives, by whom they are much respected.

John Snoek, a Dutchman, who was here in 1702, says, in his Description of the Gold Coast of Guinea, that in the Time of Peace and a brisk Trade,

The Dutch West-India Company ex- port Yearly in Gold ————	1500
The English African Company ————	1200
The Zealand Interlopers ————	1500
The English Interlopers ————	1000
But the latter in 1699, 1700, and 1701, exported twice as much.	
The Brandenburgers and Danes ————	1000
The Portuguese and French ————	800

So that according to the Dutch Computation of a Tun of Gold at 100000 Guilders, (which is almost 10000*l.* Sterling) *Snoek* computes that 23 Tuns of Gold is carried off hence Yearly, at the Rate of 3 Marks to 1000 Guilders, when the Negroes are at Peace with one another, and the Passes safe and open: And supposing the Dutch West-India Company has about one Fifth of the Whole, he says, that nevertheless when Trade is low, they can't get by it, but must make up the Deficiency by trading to other Coasts. What remains further to be said on Account of the Trade of Guinea, shall be taken Notice of in the particular Description of the several Coasts, together with the People's Manners and Customs, Religions, Languages, and Government, and the Soil and Product of each.

Dapper divides this Country into 5 Coasts, call'd the Grain Coast, the Tooth Coast, the Coast of five or six Bands, (so called from its chief Merchandize, which consists of Cotton Cloths made of so many Bands sew'd together) the Coast of Quagua, and the Gold Coast. *Luyts*, *Du Plessis*, and the *Sansons*, divide it into *Malaguette*, *Guinea Proper*, and *Benin*; but we shall chuse *Moll's* Division of this Country into the Grain Coast, Ivory or Tooth Coast, Gold Coast, Slave Coast, and the Kingdom of *Benin*.

Snoek the Dutchman, whose Account seems the newest and most particular of any that we have yet met with, does also agree with *Moll's* Division; but in our particular Geography we shall follow our Table, and take in all the Countries mentioned by *Dapper* and *Snoek*, without making a separate Article for any single Province or Kingdom, except for such as are the chief and most noted.

We thought fit to begin with the General Account of all the Coast of Guinea, that

the Reader may the better trace the particular Descriptions, with which we shall follow it.

A brief Survey of all the Coast of Guinea, from Cape Sierra Leona on the W. where we left off in Negroland, to the River of Camarones, which is the E. Frontier of the Country, taken from Dapper.

AFTER doubling the Cape, he places,
1. The Rivers *Palmas* and *Galinhas*, which he says water the Country of *Bolm*, *Gilm*, and *Quiliga*. 2. The Kingdom of *Quoja*, whose Coast is water'd by the Rivers *Magwibba* or *Rio Nova*, *Maruah*, *Plizogue*, and *Menoch* or *Rio Aguado*. 3. *Cabo Monte*, in N. Lat. 5. 43. 4. *Cape Mesurado*, a very high Mountain, 18 Leagues from the former, with the Mouth of the River *St. Paul* at the Distance of two Leagues. 5. *Rio Junk*, 15 Leagues from *Cape Mesurado*. 6. *St. John's River*, 12 Leagues from the former. 7. *Tabo Cane*, a Village 8 or 9 Leagues from the River of *St. John*, and another a little farther, which the French call *Petit Diepe*, and the Negroes *Tabo Dagrou*. 8. The Mouth of the River *Sesto*, where he begins the Grain Coast, with a Village of the same Name at 2 Leagues, and a Cape 8 Leagues further, which the Portuguese call *Cabo Baixos*. 9. The Village of *Zanwyn*, 4 or 5 Leagues from the Cape, with others almost at the End of every League, till you come to *Cape Palmas*. 10. *Growaly*, or *Growa*, a Village two Leagues beyond *Cape Palmas*, where *Dapper* ends the Grain Coast, and begins that called the Tooth or Ivory Coast. 11. The Village of *Tabo*, 30 Leagues from *Cape Palmas*, with the Village of *Petiero* two Leagues further, over against a Sand-Bank; after which there are two other Villages, till you come to the Mouth of the River of *St. Andre*, in N. Lat. 4½. Here he says the Coast turns like a Bow, and that the S. Side faces a Red Country, so called from the Colour of the Rocks which are about it. 12. *Cape la Hou*, beyond

Yond those Rocks, where our Author begins the Coast of *Quaqua*. 13. *Cotrou* or *Ca-trou*, a Village two Leagues farther in a Valley, where there are no Trees nor Plants. 14. The Village of *Jakke la Hou*, 6 Leagues from the former, on that which he calls the Coast of *six Bands*, with that of *Jak* in *Jakko*, and a bottomless Well. 15. The Village of *Corbi la Hou*, 24 Leagues from Cape *la Hou*, on that called the Coast of *five Bands*, where he says the Sea is so deep, that 'tis 40 or 50 Fathom, within a Stone's Throw from Land. 16. The Village of *Affine*, 18 Leagues further, where *Dapper* ends the Coast of *Quaqua*, and begins the Gold Coast, with *Atchim* and several Villages, till you come to *Cabo das tres Puntas*, and others from thence to Cape *Corse*, and the Castle of *St. George de la Mina*. 17. The Salt River of *Bensa*, and that of Fresh Water call'd *Utri*. 18. The Village of *Moure* and *Nassaw* Fort. 19. *Cormantin*, 3 Leagues from *Moure*, *Anemabo* a League further, and *Adja* about a Cannon-shot from the last. 20. Cape *Velu*, the Bay of the Granary, the Devil's Mountain, Old and New *Biamba*, Great *Berca*, *Jaka*, *Coxbrood*, and *Little Berca*, whose Harbours are all defended with Rocks and Sand-Banks. 21. *Accara*, above 20 Leagues from *Cormantin*, where he ends the Gold Coast. 22. The Kingdom of *Labbede*, 3 Leagues further. 23. The Kingdom of *Ningo*. 24. A Habitation of Fishers called *Ley*. 25. The Mouth of *Rio Volta*, with a small Sand-Bank before it, 18 Leagues from *Sinco*, one of the Villages of *Ningo*. 26. The *Cabo Montego* of the Portuguese, 4 Leagues from *Rio Volta*, between which the Country is low, and the Coast, which runs by several little Forrefts, turns E. S. E. After doubling the Cape, it bends Eastward like a Bow as far as the Village of *Popou*; from thence it enclines to the S. for the Space of 12 Leagues, till you come to *Little Arder* in the Kingdom of *Arer*; after which it turns N. E. to the Town of *Jakkein*, and the Villages of *Joio* and *Ba*, 3 Days Journey further. 27. The Mouth of *Rio Lagos*, 24 Leagues from *Little Arder*, is shut up by a Sand-Bank. 28. The River of *Benin*, in the Kingdom of that Name, 27 Leag. from the former. 29. *Rio Forcado*, whose Mouth *Dapper* places 36 Leagues from *Benin*, and waters the Kingdom of *Ouwerra*. 30. The Cape which the

Portuguese call *Cabo Formoso*, at the E. End of that Kingdom, in N. Lat. 4. 8. 31. The Mouth of the River called *Real de Calbaire*, 20 Leagues from the Cape, between which 7 small Brooks run into the Sea, viz. *Rio Non* and *Rio Odi*, in Lat. 4. 10. three others call'd *Rio de St. Nicholas*, with *Rio de tres Irmãos*, and *Rio Sambreiro*. 32. The Country of *Bani*, and the River *Loitomba*, some Leag. from *Rio Real*, and 24 Leagues from this River another, which the *Flemings* call *Old Calbaria*: Then *Rio del Rey*, which is a very great River, and over against it a small one, which the Negroes call *Camarones Pekkene*; and then the great River of *Camarones*, which, as we observed before, parts this Country from *Lower Ethiopia*. *Dapper* says, that between *Rio del Rey* and *Rio dos Camarones*, lies the Country which the Spaniards call *Alta Terra di Ambosi*, with a Cape 6 Leagues from *Rio del Rey*. He adds, that the Mouth of the River of *Camarones* lies 6 Leagues S. E. from this Cape. We shall treat more particularly of the Chief of these Villages, Capes and Rivers, in the several Provinces or Countries to which they are assigned.

MALAGUETTA Province.

THE *Sansons* bound it with the Mountains of *Sierra Leona*, which part it from *Melli* on the W. with *Soufi* on the N. Proper *Guinea* on the E. and the *Atlantick* Ocean on the S. and S. W. and extend it 490 Miles along the Coast between the Capes of *Sierra Leona* and *Palmas*, and above 300 on the E. Side where broadest. They say, it had this Name because it abounds with *Melegueta*, which are Spices of several Sorts, like *Turkish* Corn, some of which tast like Pepper, and this is what they call *Paradise Grain* or *Guinea Pepper*. There's another very strong Sort of Long Pepper, an Ounce of which will go as far as a Pound of that of *Calecut*, and therefore the Portuguese won't permit it to be imported; but the *English*, *Dutch* and *French*, do. *Snoek* says, it grows like large Grass-Reeds on Shrubs in red Husks, which contain the *Melegueta*, separated into 4 or 5 Divisions, and cover'd by a white Film. The *Sansons* say, they have also Palm Trees, of which they make excellent Wine; Gold, Ivory, Cotton, &c.

Du Plessis divides this Province into *Sierra Leona* Coast on the W. and *Malaguetta Proper* or *Grain* Coast on the E. *Luyts* says, this is the least of his 3 Divisions, and that the Mountains of *Sierra Leona* bound it on the N. from *Negroland*; that 'tis of a Triangular Form, and inhabited by different Sorts of People, subject to several Princes. *Morery* makes it but 60 Leagues from the River *Sanguin* to *Cape Palmas*, and says, 'twas planted first by the *French*, and afterwards by the *Portuguese*, *English* and *Dutch*. It contains the several Countries and Coasts following.

I. Bolm, Cilm, Quilliga, and Carrodoe.

D*apper* places these Provinces along the Coast, S. of *Sierra Leona*, and about the Rivers *Palmas* and *Galinhas*. He says, *Bolm* lies about the former, which is also call'd *Selbole*, in N. Lat. 8. This River divides near its Mouth into two Branches, one of which runs W. and is called *Torro*, and the other S. and called the River of *St. Anne*. The River of *Torro* overflows its Banks two or three times a Year, and forms several Islands, but is shallow, and not navigable for Vessels of above 18 or 20 Tun, because the Tide is hinder'd from coming up by several little Sand-Banks. The Word *Bolm* in the Language of the Country signifies a Low and Marshy Soil. The Prince of *Bolm* resides at the Village of *Baga*, about 20 Leagues up the River *das Palmas*, on the Left Side. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 7. 20. Long. 10 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Dapper* says, the *English* and *Dutch* have Tents and Warehouses here; but that the former drive the greatest Trade. He places the Country of *Cilm* 14 or 15 Leagues higher, and says, the Inhabitants are called *Cilm Monou*. The Country about this River, for 30 or 40 Leagues from its Mouth, is full of Villages, and there's one of 5000 Houses, called *Quinamora*, which the *Sansons* place 45 Miles N. E. from *Baga*. *Dapper* says, the People are treacherous, and attack the Ships of the Whites when they have an Advantage. The River *Selbole* breeds a great many Crocodiles and Sea Horses, and forms an Island near its Mouth 6 Leag.

in Length, by separating into the two Branches above mentioned. 'Tis shaded on both Sides with Trees, and that which the *Portuguese* call *Cape St. Anne* lies at the West End on't. *Moll* places this Island about Lat. 6. makes it above 70 Miles in Length from E. to W. and sets the *British* Factory of *Sherboro* at the E. End. *Dampier*, who anchor'd in the Mouth of this River, says, we have a good Trade here with Camwood, us'd by *Dyers*; that there's a large Village near the Shore inhabited by Negroes, with low Houses, except one in the Middle; and that they have good Palm Wine, Rice, Fowls, Honey, and Sugar-Canes. The *Portuguese* call this Island in their Maps *Ferula* or *Farellons*; but the *Dutch*, *Massacoya*, from the Name of the Governor that commanded here under the King of *Quoja* at the Time of their late Voyages. 'Tis encompassed with Rocks, and before it there's a great Sand-Bank called *Baixos de S. Anna*. The *Sansons* place the Island, by the Name of *Massacoya*, in Lat. 7. *Dapper* says, the Coast and Island abounds with Bananas, Injames, Potatoes, Bacoves, and Ananas, with several Animals, and other Fruits good to eat. They fish about the Rocks here for Oyster-Shells, in which they say are Pearls, but are in great Danger of being devour'd by the Sea-Monsters, which are frequent about this Coast and Island. There are so many Elephants, that they come often into the Villages. The Inhabitants of *Massacoya* are more civiliz'd than those of *Quinamora*, and wear Cotton Gowns, which reach as low as their Knees. They are all Idolaters; and tho' they use Circumcision, they assign no other Reason for it than Antiquity.

Dapper places *Quilliga* on the S. Side of *Bolm* and *Cilm*, along the Coast, and about the River *Galinhas* and *Carrodoe*, 40 or 50 Leagues further up that River. He says, the Soil of both is water'd by some Rivers, and that the River *Maqualbary*, and that which the *Portuguese* call *Rio das Galinhas*, because of the great Number of Pullets on its Banks, lies W. from *Quoja*, and 18 Leag. from *Rio das Palmas*, rises in the Country of *Hondo*, and has two Islands at its Mouth. The People of *Quilliga* speak a different Language from the other Negroes. Those of *Carrodoe* are always at Variance with the

the Lords of *Hondo*; and tho' they are taken for Brutes and Fools, yet are capable of giving a reasonable Answer when they come to sell any thing to the King or Courtiers of *Quoja*. *Dapper* adds, that the several Provinces of *Bolm*, *Cilm*, *Quilliga*, and *Carrodoboe*, are govern'd by Viceroys sent by the King of *Quoja*; and that upon the River of *Galinhas* there's a great Trade for Skins, which the Whites go to fetch in their Canoes as far as *Carrodoboe* and *Hondo*.

2. The Kingdom of Quoja.

Dapper places it about *Cabo Monte*, 20 Leagues S. E. of *Rio das Galinhas*, in N. Lat. 5. 43. and divides it into two Parts, called *Vybercoma* and *Kquojabercoma*, and inhabited by a People called *Carous*, that liv'd in one of the Provinces of the Kingdom of *Folgia*, and by the Assistance of their Allies made themselves Masters of this Country. He tells us, that *Veybercoma*, i. e. the Country of *Vey*, the Name of the ancient Inhabitants of this Kingdom, lies near *Cabo Monte*, over against the River of *Mavab*; and that the Country over against that Cape, thro' which the River *Mavab* runs into the Sea, is called *Dauwala*. The People called *Veys* are almost extinguished by the continual Wars which they have had with the *Carous* and *Folgia's*, and have only a few ruinous Villages. The other ancient Inhabitants of this Country, called *Puy*, had the same Fate; so that few of them are left, except such as to avoid the Fury of the Conquerors mix'd with them by Marriage.

Quojabercoma or *Quoja*, which is also the Name of the Language of the modern Inhabitants, begins at the Mouth of *Magwibba* or New River, and reaches to that of *St. Paul*, which divides this Country from *Gebbe*. There are several Villages in this Kingdom along the New River, at the Mouth of which lies *Cabo Monte*, a very high Mountain, that is seen at a great Distance by Mariners who come from the W. and resembles a Helmet; but when nearer, appears of an oval Figure, with an Eminence in the Middle, that looks like a Saddle. The *Sansons* place it about Lat. 6½. *Snoek* says,

the Land for 10 Miles E. of the Cape is low, and abounds with Villages. He was civilly welcom'd at the Cape by the King and Inhabitants, but could meet only with two Elephant's Teeth, tho' sometimes they are very plentiful here. Their principal Place of Abode is three small Villages of about 30 Huts, where he was treated with Wine. The King was an elderly Man, called *John of Cape Mount*. He had a rusty brown Cloak on, and a Woollen Cap on his Head, so that his whole Equipage was not worth 40 s. The Negroes said he had above 400 Wives, who lived with him in one Village about 3 M. from the River. He had 12 Sons, each of whom had a Principality of 8 Huts, and 4 Daughters, who maintain'd themselves by conferring their Favours on Strangers at a very reasonable Price. The Inhabitants are chiefly employed in planting of Rice, and boiling of Salt, which is all for the King's Use, they being his Slaves. The other Product is Store of great Mithio, Jammes, Potatoes, Paquovers, Bananas, Ananas, &c. a few Sheep, some Poultry, but no Black Cattle or Hogs. They have many Elephants, Tygers, Buffaloes, Harts, and other Wild Beasts. They have Plenty of Fish in their Rivers and Seas, and catch them with large Nets. The Men marry as many Wives as they can maintain, make them work and fare hard, and are very contented Cuckolds. The Habit of the Men is like Shifts with wide Sleeves, that come as low as their Knees. The Women have only a narrow Cloth about their Middle, and frequently go quite naked. Their only Religion is Obedience to their Kings and Governors. They have seldom any War, but end Disputes with their Neighbours amicably; and their Weapons, which are Bows and Arrows, serve them chiefly for Ornament. *Dapper* says, the River *Magwibba* is salt about two Leagues upward. *Snoek* says, 'tis a fine long River, and (according to the Negroes) falls into the River *Sierra Leona*, which is at a great Distance from this Place. *Dapper* adds, that there's a Sand-Bank at its Mouth; but the *English* and *French* sail up with small Vessels as far as the Village *Davarouja*, where 'tis very deep, and 400 Foot broad; but about that Place there are so many Rocks and Waterfalls, that there's no sailing

failing further. A League up the River on the Left there's the Village of *Jegwonga*, where one of their Kings lived, till he was drove away by the People called *Dogo* to the Isle of *Massagh*, in a Lake form'd by another River. Further up there's a great Village call'd *Ferboeffaja*, and several others, whose Inhabitants live by making Salt. There are three other great Rivers in this Kingdom, called *Mavah*, *Plizoge*, and *Menoch*, or *Rio Aguado*. The *Mavah*, which was inhabited by People called *Puymonou*, till they were expelled by the *Carous*, runs 35 Leag. and falls with a deep Mouth into the Ocean a League N. from *Cabo Monte*. *Plizoge* falls into the Sea almost in the same Place, and with the Mouth of *Mavah* covers all the Coast; but sometimes it dries up in one Place, and flows in another. Four Leagues from its Mouth it forms a great Lake two Leagues broad where narrowest, in which lies the Isle of *Massagh*. The *Menoch* rises in the Country of the *Hondo's*, and falls into the Sea 8 or 9 Leagues from *Cabo Monte*. 'Tis large and deep, but not navigable, because of a Sand-Bank at its Mouth, and Rocks and Waterfalls in its Stream. Its Banks are cover'd with Red-Wood Trees.

The other People in the Neighbourhood have much the same Customs and Religion: The first of them are the *Galarveys*, subject to those of *Quojas*. They live about the Head of the River *Mavah*, 30 or 40 Leagues from the Coast, at the Side of a great Forest, 8 or 10 Days Journey in Length. Beyond this Forest, near the Confines of *Hondo* and *Manoe*, live the *Gala's*, subject to the K. of *Manoe*. *Hondo* lies by the Side of the great Forest, further N.E. than the *Galarveys*. It contains the Province of *Dago*, and near this live the High *Quoja's*, whose Language differs from the Low *Quoja's* as much as *German* from the *Dutch*.

The Kingdoms of *Folgia* and *Manoe* lie near two small Rivers, called by the Portuguese, *Rio Junk*, and *Arveredo*, which fall into the Sea about 15 Leagues S. of *Cape Mesurado*, N. Lat. 5. and separate those two Kingdoms. *Caron* is a Province of *Folgia*, and the People named *Carous* live about the same Rivers, 15 or 18 Leagues from the Coast.

Dapper gives the following Account of the Natural History of this Country in general.

THE Seasons from *Cape St. Anne* to the *Cape of Palms* are the same as on the Coast of *Sierra Leona*. The Winter or Rainy Season begins in *May*, and lasts till *October*, during which, but especially the three last Months, a N. W. Wind occasions such Tempests and swelling Seas, that 'tis very troublesome sailing S. and there's no landing on the Shore. Here are both Land and Sea Winds on this Coast. The first begin at Midnight, and last almost till Noon, and the latter begin at two a Clock, and continue the rest of the Day and Part of the Night. The Season is very fair, and the Sky clear, from *October* to *May*, but then they want Water.

The chief Product of *Quoja* and the adjacent Countries are, 1. A Tree call'd *Bonde*, the highest of all their Trees, and 6 or 7 Fathom thick. Its Bark is full of large Thorns. The Wood is oily, and serves to make Canoes, Chairs, and Dishes. Its Roots, which appear 5 or 6 Foot above Ground, make Planks, Doors, &c. They cut its Branches, which easily take Root, and plant them about their Villages. Of the Ashes they make excellent Soap. 2. *Bassi*, a Tree two or three Fathom thick, and of a proportionable Height. The Bark is red, and good for Dying, and of the Wood they make Canoes. 3. *Kaey*, a tall thick Tree; the Wood is hard, makes the most lasting Canoes, and the Bark and Leaves are us'd for Physick. 4. *Billegoh*, a high thick Tree, much harder than the *Kaey*, and used also in Physick. 5. *Bossy*, has a dry Bark, oily Wood, of whose Ashes they make Soap, and bears long yellow Prunes, that are sharp, and good to eat. 6. *Mille*, of the same Nature with the *Bonde*. 7. *Borrouw*, a small Tree, whose Bark is covered with crooked Thorns like the Talons of a Hawk. When 'tis cut, on its Leaves pressed, it sends forth a white Juice, which they make use of as a Purge when their other Medicines don't operate. Its Timber is brittle, and good

good for nothing. 8. *Mamno*, a high thick Tree: It bears white Prunes, of a sharp Taste, used in Physick, and they keep all the Year if bury'd in the Ground. 9. *Quony*, a high thick Tree, of which they make Mortars to beat the Rice, because it is tough. Round this Tree grow little Shrubs, with the Juice of which the Negroes poison their Arrows. 10. *Hoqualla*, a great Tree, which bears Cods of a Foot and a half long, with flat Beans within, which they burn, and make Soap of the Ashes. The Bark and Leaves are also used in Physick. 11. *Dombock*, bears a Fruit like Medlars, which they eat. The Infusion of its Bark is used in Vomits. The Wood is red like Brasil, and used for Canoes and Sugar-Boxes. 12. *Kolack*, is a Tree with high Branches, and bears a good Fruit like Prunes. 13. *Bongia*, is of a middling Size, with yellow Bark, used in Physick, as is that of the *Kolack*. 14. *Duy*, bears good Apples, and its Bark is used to make Wine and other Liquors strong. 15. *Miaucony*, whose Bark is as hot as Pepper, and good against many Diseases. 16. *Palm-Trees*, which yield abundance of Wine, and are already described. 17. *Bang*, is like the Palm-Tree, and yields a red Wine. It has long Branches, which they use for Measuring-Rods. 18. *Dongah*, a large Tree, which bears a Fruit like Nuts, of a very good Taste. 19. *Bondou*, which looks yellow while growing; but if cut, turns hard and red. 20. *Jaaja*, which the Dutch call *Mangelaar*, grows in marshy Places, and on the Banks of Rivers, and Oysters stick frequently to its Roots, which, with its Branches, are so numerous, that 'tis hard to distinguish the principal Trunk and Root. 21. *Cola* or *Toglouw*, of a middling Size. It bears a Fruit within a Husk, divided into 5 or 6 Grains, which are bitterish, and occasion Thirst. The Negroes use them in Enchantments, and the Portuguese have a great Value for them. 22. Cotton, Lemon, Orange Trees, Bananas, and Bacoves. 23. *Ignames* or *Injames*, large Roots of 9 or 10 Pound Weight, white and mealy, and when boil'd, are eat instead of Bread. 24. *Batatas*, Roots which taste like Turneps, but more dry and sweet. They have also Sugar-Canes and Tobacco. 25. *Quelle-Tagge*, one of their best Herbs, has little Leaves, which creep on the

Ground; and boiled with Meat, tastes well. 26. *Quantiach*, with a high Stalk and large Leaves, has the same Qualities.

Dapper comes next to give an Account of their most remarkable Animals as follow: 1. *Janaka*, a Beast of the Size of a Horse, but not so long nor thin. It has a long reddish Neck spotted with White, takes great Leaps, has Horns as long as a Beeve, and has Bags on his Sides much us'd by Magicians, who bellow thro' them to make their Words pass for Oracles. There's a small Sort of these Creatures about the Size of a Hart, with Horns of a Span long. They are reddish, and have also Bags or Bladders, by which they breath when they run or leap. 2. Buffaloes in such Numbers, that they destroy the Rice Fields. 3. Antelopes, *Tebbe*, and *Culma*, all which they catch with Nets. 4. Red Hogs as large as ours, and Black ones which are much larger, and very dangerous, because of their Tusks. 5. Two Sorts of Hedgehogs, the one as large as our Hogs, defend themselves against the Leopards, and the Wounds they give are incurable, their Bristles are so long and thick. The lesser ones are like ours. 6. Camelions, which the Negroes look upon to be ominous, and that some of their Relations will die whenever they appear. 7. *Quogelo*, much like a Crocodile. Some of them are 6 or 7 Foot long. They are cover'd with strong Scales, under which they contract themselves when attacked by Leopards, so that they can't bite them. They have long Tongues, with which they lick Ants out of their Nests. 8. Civet-Cats in great Number. 9. Satyrs, which the Portuguese call Savages. They have large Heads, thick heavy Bodies, nervous Arms, no Tails, walk sometimes upright, and at other times on all four. They feed on Fruit and wild Honey, fight continually with one another, dare attack armed Men, and force Women. The Negroes fancy them to be of Humane Race. 10. Tygers and Leopards: The former, our Author says, do no Hurt to Men, but the latter are very dangerous, and therefore they hunt them with Nets and Traps. When they take one, they must carry him to the Place where their King lives. The Negroes call those Beasts the Kings of the Forests; and when the Leopard-Hunters approach the Royal Village, the Inhabitants think

think themselves bound in Honour to go and fight them, to hinder their bringing any other King among them but their own. The Huntsmen and they fight it out with Fists and Clubs; and if the former conquer, the King sends a Man to bring them to the Village, and the Leopard is roasted in the Market-place. The King has the Skin and Teeth, and the Flesh is distributed among the People, who keep Holiday on this Occasion. The King eats none of this Flesh, because he says he must not feast upon another King; nor will he sit on his Skin, but sells it immediately, and presents his Teeth to his Wives, who make Bracelets of them, mix'd with Coral. When the Hunters are not strong enough to make this Bravado, they hire a Jugler, with two or three bold Fellows, to carry the Leopard into the Town by Night, and set him down in the Market-place. Then the Jugler hides himself with some of his Acquaintance, till some Body see the Beast. The first that discovers it, runs thro' the Town, crying, *They have brought another King here unknown to us.* This brings all the Mob together. Then the Jugler comes out, and every one claps him on the Shoulder, tells him he's a brave Fellow, and fit to be trusted on Occasion, since now they have seen what he can do. 11. Dogs which cannot bark, nor make any other Noise. 12. Vipers, and large venomous Serpents of other Sorts, which will swallow Men, Sheep or Deer, at once. 13. Eagles of two Sorts; the largest hunt Wild Beasts, and the lesser (a Bastard Sort) feed upon Fish. 14. Many Sorts of Vultures, and a certain Bird call'd *Poi*, with crooked Talons, by which it catches Crabs. 15. Multitudes of Parrots and other beautiful Birds. 16. One called *Clofijf*, which is black, and of the Size of a Starling, by whose Singing they judge of good and bad Events, and accordingly follow or abandon their Designs. They believe this so firmly, that when any one dies, they say the *Clofijf* has sung over him. 17. Another Bird called *Fonton*, about the Size of a Lark, of great Use to the Natives, because it never fails to give them Notice when it discovers any Buffalo, Tyger, Elephant, Serpent, or Swarms of Bees in the Woods. This Bird constantly flies about People's Heads till they follow it,

and when it comes to the Place, perches upon a Tree and sings, and then they are sure by looking about to find what it has discover'd. 18. A Multitude of Bats as large as Pigeons, which hang in such Clusters upon the Branches of Trees, that they frequently break Branches as big as one's Leg. 19. Another about the Size of a Sparrow, which digs its Nest in Trees with its Bill. The Negroes say, this Bird complained to *Canou*, whom they call the God of Heaven, that she could never build her Nest any where but Men robb'd her of her Young, and therefore pray'd that he would let the Heaven fall and crush them. *Canou* answer'd, He would, if the Bird would first dig down all the Trees, for they would bear up the Sky, and hinder the Men from being crush'd, tho' it should fall. 20. Several Sorts of Partridges. 21. A Bird called *Qfonfoo*: 'Tis black, of the Size of a Raven, feeds on the Tops of Trees, and when the young ones are ready to be hatched, the Female plucks off all her own Feathers to cover them, and the Male feeds them till the Female recovers her Feathers. 22. White and Blue Swans, abundance of Cranes, and a little Bird called *Jouwe*, of the Size of a Lark, which lays its Eggs by the Way-Side, and is famous among the Magicians. 23. They have many Swarms of Bees, which make their Honey in hollow Trees; but their Forests are so thick and large, that they don't find one Half of it. There's also a Sort of small Bees, whose Honey has a sharp Taste, is of a brown Colour, and the Wax black. The Inhabitants are much infested with stinging Wasps and Multitudes of Gnats, which hinder them from Sleep; and Grasshoppers abound so much, that the Negroes fancy they fall from the Sky.

Dapper comes next to their Manners and Customs as follows: They live chiefly by Agriculture, and never sell or buy Estates; for above two Thirds of the Country being wast, any one may take what Quantity of Ground they please. When they have got one Crop, they let the Ground lie fallow for two or three Years. They sow their Rice about the Middle of *January* or Beginning of *February*. When they cultivate new Ground, they cut down the Trees for some Time, that the Earth may dry.

The Rice springs up generally three Days after 'tis sown ; but they take great Care to prevent its being destroyed by Birds and Beasts. They secure it against the latter by strong Hedges ; and when it begins to ripen, they drive away the Birds by Bows and Arrows, or Slings. The Women weed the Ground, while the Men cut down and grub up the Trees. The Women do likewise sow and tread out the Rice, and pound the Millet. The Seasons being different in the low and mountainous Countries, they sow in the latter about *May*, after the Rains are over ; and as they fall sooner or later, as the Countries lie nearer or farther from the Sea, those who are industrious may have three Harvests in a Year, by observing the Seasons and Places. The Men are generally employed in Fishing, Hunting, and Building of Houses. Every one may hunt and fish where they please ; but none except the better Sort, well attended, hunt Elephants and Buffaloes, because 'tis dangerous, and costs abundance of Lives. The K. has the Half of all those Creatures that are taken, and of others one Third ; but he has all the Sea-Horses and other Marine Monsters. He has about the Tenth of Rice and Millet, and they offer the First Fruits of their Corn and Hunting to their Idol called *Belly*, for the Safety of their own Souls, and those of their deceased Relations.

Their Houses are round, as are also their Villages, and their Fortifications are Palisades of Trees, with a sort of Bulwark at each Corner, and a Gate so narrow, that only one Man can enter at a time. At each Gate they have a little Box of 15 or 16 Foot, which they turn about with a sort of Skrew ; and in their Walls, &c. are little Holes, from whence they shoot upon the Enemy. In the Middle of the Village there's a great Square, where the People meet for Diversion. Their Streets lie in Form of a Cross, and end each at a Gate. This is the Form of the most considerable Villages and Towns, where the chief Inhabitants of the Country have Houses, to which they retire in Time of War, &c.

The People nam'd *Carous* are forbid by their Princes to eat Beef or Scale-Fish, for they are of Opinion, that those who do so, will either die or fall under some great Calamity. These People are very luxurious,

and entertain a great many Wives, who are much given to Whoredom and Drunkenness. They'll give any thing for Brandy except Ivory, which they highly esteem. They are very obliging to one another, and make mutual Presents of Cloths, Victuals, and Slaves, and the Rich do willingly contribute to the Funerals of the Poor. They make no Scruple to rob *Europeans*, but seem otherwise to be of a good Temper, never swear or blaspheme, and very rarely commit Murder. They are very superstitious, and have Necromancers, who pretend to enchant Men, Beasts, Plants, &c. but *Dapper* is of Opinion, that they perform their mischievous Designs chiefly by Poison. The Negroes say, that none but those of a melancholy and revengeful Humour follow that Art, or such as retire to the Woods to bewail their Misfortunes, when the Devil of Envy appears to them in the Form of a Plant or an Animal, and teaches them what Herbs to use for hurting Man or Beast. But our Author says, they teach this villainous Art to one another, and are put to Death for it when discover'd. They use other Herbs as Preservatives against those Enchantments ; and if they take them first, they suppose the Devil of Envy has no Power to hurt them. They avoid living or travelling alone in those desert Places as much as they can, because otherwise they lose their Reputation.

The young Men when they court do sometimes serve their Mistresses 4 or 5 Years. They usually invite the young Woman they court to a Treat, and if she would pass for chaste, she must not go without two or three Invitations. Then she comes to her Gallant's House without further Ceremony, and cohabits with him for 10 or 12 Days before she demands her Dowry, especially if she live in the same Village ; but if her Parents have a Mind she should return sooner, then she demands her Dowry, which is some Ornaments, as a Coral, Necklace, Rings, or *European* Clothes and Stuffs, with a Chest to put them in, and a Slave to attend them. If she bring forth a Boy, the Father sends for it ; and if a Girl, the Mother keeps it. Thus it is common for them to lie together without being married, for they don't value whether their Wives be Maids or no. If the Man have a Mind

after

after Trial to keep her as his Wife, he sends back Presents to her Parents, and demands their Consent. If they receive the Presents, the Bargain is made, but otherwise 'tis none. The Fathers frequently make Presents with their Daughters; but 'tis not the Husband's Interest to receive them; for if the Woman in this Case take a Fancy to any other Man, the Husband must not complain of it, or use her ill; and if he do, her Relations compare what he has received with what he has given her, and reproach him with Ingratitude; so that in short a poor Man has always the worst on't here, as well as in *France*; yet those we call weighty Lasses are much sought after in these Parts. When a Male Infant is 7 or 8 Days old, at which Time they name them, they chuse a Man for Godfather, who comes with all his Family into the Village early in the Morning, before the People are up, and goes near the Parent's House. They are arm'd with Bucklers, Bows and Arrows, and give great Huzza's, at which all the People rise, take Arms, and answer them with the like Acclamations. After having clatter'd their Lances and discharg'd some Arrows, out of a Bravado, the Godfather fetches the Infant, puts a little Bow in his Hands, and talks to him above half an Hour, exhorting him to be diligent in tilling the Ground, that he may have a good Harvest of Rice, and give of it to those that come to see him, not to debauch another's Wife, nor to suffer his own to be debauched, with a great deal more of such Stuff. When the Ceremony is over, they carry the Infant to his Mother, and the Company divide, some to the Tavern, and others to Hunting, who return in the Afternoon with their Game, which the Mother boils in a great Pot full of Rice, and they spend the rest of the Day in Diversion. When they name their Daughters, the Godmother goes to the Mother's House where the Child is, places it on a Mat in the midst of a Crowd of Women, puts a Ladle into her Hands, and exhorts her to be diligent, to keep her self clean and handsome, to be chaste, and not to leave one Husband for another: And when she is married, the Godmother advises her to be careful in dressing her Victuals, to be complaisant to her Husband, to go a hunting with him, and to be helpful to him

in all other Things, that he may love her above the rest of his Wives. The Women won't let the Men have to do with them while they suckle their Children, or at least till they are 18 Months old, for fear it should spoil their Milk.

Dapper says, the People are subject to many Distempers, particularly the Dysentery, which made such Ravage in the Year 1626 in the Kingdom of *Sierra Leona* and Parts adjacent, that the Ground continued three Years without Cultivation. The Small-pox, often seizes both young and old. They are also subject to the Head and Tooth-ach, to the Ptytick, and are apt to lose their Noses, Lips, or other Members, like those who have the Venereal Disease, tho' many of their Strumpets are free enough from it. The Country being extreme hot, and the People ignorant and superstitious, abundance of them grow mad or whimsical; so that some of them fancy, that such of them as have unawares trod upon the Eggs of the Bird *Jouwa*, will lose all their Children. The Priests and Magicians, who encourage this ridiculous Whim, tell them, after some Conjurations, that provided they eat no Fowl, and call the first Child *Jouwa*, after the Name of the Bird, they may escape the Danger. Their Excess in Palm Wine and Venery brings many Diseases upon them, and particularly such an incurable Swelling in one of the Cods of those of riper Years, that it puts them to exquisite Pain, and hinders them from Walking or Business.

When a Man dies, all his Kindred meet to bewail him, and one of 'em makes a Funeral Oration in the Tongue he likes best, for they generally understand 5 or 6 of their neighbour Languages. If the Orator don't make a bombastick Discourse, the Company take it ill, and threaten that he shan't be lamented at his Death. When their Howling is over, they wash the Corps, set it upright, with Props to support it, put on the Deceased's best Suit, and if he have none good, some of his Friends lend him one. Then they dress his Hair, put a Bow and Arrows in his Hands, and spare no Cost to make the Solemnity what they call magnificent. And tho' the Deceased be rich, his Friends and Relations bring Presents to his Funeral, such as Needles, small Kettles, Basins, Cloths, Dishes, Pots, &c. When the Corps

is dressed, the nearest of Kin kneel down before it with their Backs towards it, and shoot an Arrow out of a Bow with all their Might, to signify that if he was killed by an Enemy, they are ready to fight him, and bring him to Justice; but if no living Creature was the Cause of his Death, and consequently there's no Room for their Revenge, they endeavour to bury the Corps with as much Grandeur as possible; and while they are making Preparations, they set a Person to drive away the Flies, which swarm about Carcasses in these hot Countries. Then a Company of Women come to comfort the Widow, and the Men carry the Corps on a Bier upon their Shoulders into any of the Villages which are S. of the River of *Plizoge*, and bury it in a Ditch two or three Foot deep. If the Deceased was rich, or had rich Relations, they bury with him Mats, Cloths, Kettles, Basins, and Coral Necklaces, pack'd up in two or three Mats. Then they fill up the Ditch, and lay a painted Mat upon it, which they fasten to the Ground with great Nails. If it be a Man, they drive an Iron Fork into his Tomb, on which they hang his Weapons; and if a Woman, Plates and Porringers. Last of all, they build a Hut over the Sepulchre, and carry Victuals thither from Time to Time. When Men of Quality die, they take two of his Female Slaves, who they design shall serve him in the other World, make them stay near the Corps while they get it ready, present them with the finest Diet and Apparel, and then strangle them and bury them with their Master. This occasions such of those Wretches as can, to fly when their Master is ill; but they return after the Funeral, when they are only upbraided with being ungrateful to eat their Master's Bread, and not die with him; upon which they make the common Excuse, that Life is sweet, &c. and then are employed as before. When the Mourning begins, the Deceased's chief Friends vow with their Hands on their Idol, to wear no Colour but White and Black, to eat no Rice, to drink nothing but Water out of a Ditch, and not to lie with their Wives or Husbands for 8 or 15 Days; or if the Deceased be a Person of Quality, not in a Month. When this Term is expired, they go a second time to the Idol, lay their

Hands on it, and declare the Accomplishment of their Vow; after which they feast and make merry. Then the Kindred of the Deceased make Presents to those that have fasted, of Basins, Suits of Clothes, Baskets full of Salt, Mats, Bits of Iron, &c. according to their Quality, and the richest give a Bar of Iron, a Coral Necklace, or some other Rarity. When the Relations of the Deceased suspect that he did not die a natural Death, they make Conjurations, and enquire of the Spirit of the Deceased how he came by his Death. They take the Corps, or else a Piece of his Clothes, the Parings of his Nails, and some of his Hair, to which they add chew'd Mammo, and the Shavings of *Bonde* or Red Wood, and make a Ball of it, which they tie to one of those Pestles with which they use to pound Rice, and place the Ends of the Pestle upon two Men's Heads. Then a Man takes two Hatchets, and striking them one against t'other, asks the Deceased, How he came by his Death, and whether God took him. They pretend, that when the Spirit would say Yes, those who bear up the Pestle find themselves obliged to droop their Heads; and if No, to shake them. Then they ask whether he has taken too great a Quantity of Medicine, or such as was ill prepar'd; which if so, they pretend Silence; but if the Deceased was poison'd, they ask who did it, whether Man or Woman, with the Name and Place of Abode, and the Bearers signify the Answer by stooping or shaking their Heads. When they have found out the Persons, they seize them, and put the Question to them; which if they confess, they are cruelly punish'd; and if they deny, they are referred to the Trial of *Quony* thus: They take the Bark of a Tree of that Name, press out the Juice fairly before the Friends of the Accused, scrape the Outside of the Bark into Water, pound the Scrapings in a Mortar, and after that Liquor (which is bitter) is settled, they make the Accused drink a Pot of it in the Morning fasting; and if it kills him, they burn his Corps, or throw it into a River; but if he does well, they count him innocent. If the Spirit be mute, and give no Sign when ask'd, they enquire whether he is bound by any Enchantment; and if he affirms this by a Sign, they bury the Corps without more ado; and

and then the Kindred go to consult the *Jakehmos*, who ramble about the Country in Companies, pretend to Divination like Gipsies, and they name the Party who they say enchanted him.

Next, *Dapper* gives an Account of their Right of Succession. When a Person dies, and leaves all his Children Minors, the eldest of his Brothers seizes his Goods, Slaves, Wives and Children, except the Mother of the eldest: And if the Father makes his eldest Son his Heir, tho' he be not of Age, he must appear before the King with all his Relations, arm'd with a Bow, Quiver, and Arrows, and rest one of the Ends of his Bow upon the Ground, to signify that he is able to fill up his Father's Room in the Army, and that by Consequence he ought to enter upon the Possession of his Estate. Then he gives the Standers-by a Trial of his Skill, by drawing his Bow, and assures the King, that he thinks himself able enough to bear the Weight of his Domestick Affairs, and that his Youth ought to be no Objection, since tho' the Value of Iron be known by its Weight, 'tis not so with Man. After the Death of the eldest, the youngest succeeds him; but if the eldest lives and has Children, he remains Master of the whole, and the Cadets can call nothing their own but the Slaves, which the Father gave them in his Life-time, and are kept only till they are big enough to get their Livings. If a Father leaves none but Daughters, one of his Brothers seizes the whole Estate; but if there be no Males in the Family, it falls to the King, and he causes the Daughters to be brought up.

The Language of the *Folgia's* is the best and most common in these Parts, and those of the *Quoja's*, *Gebbes*, and *Gala's*, are but Dialects of it. The Negroes say, that besides the *Pleiades*, there are 5 Stars at the Head of *Taurus*, called *Manja Ding*, i. e. The Infant Lord, by which they distinguish Midnight and Noon, Summer and Winter, for they do not tell the Hours nor Days of the Month.

Dapper comes next to their Government. He says, the Countries of *Cilm*, *Bolm*, and *Bolmberre*, depend on the Kingdom of *Quoja*, tho' they are more powerful States than the latter, and the *Quoja's* will not permit the Envoys nor Merchants of their Eastern Neighbours to come into their Dominions,

lest they should discover their Weakness, and ruin their Commerce, which is their principal Support, by hindering them from exchanging their Vassal's Commodities for *European* Merchandize. He adds, that the People above the *Quoja's* observe the like Precaution. He says, the King of the *Quoja's*, when he wrote, was the 5th or 6th Successor of *Bocwaha*, General of the *Carous*, who having help'd the *Folgia's* to defeat the *Vess*, liked the Pleasantness and Fruitfulness of the Country, and seiz'd it for himself. The King of *Quoja* being Tributary to that of *Folgia*, when the former dies, his Successor goes to pay Homage to the latter thus: They make him fall flat on the Ground, throw a Handful of Earth upon him, ask what Name he will have, repeating several till they come to the right, and at the same time give him the Title of *Dondag* and the Crown of *Quoja*, with a Bow, Quiver, and Arrows, to defend it; after which he pays his Tribute in Slaves, Cloths, Kettles, Basins, &c. The King of *Quoja* is very absolute within his own Dominions; and when a Thing is proposed in his Council, he seldom stays for above two or three Votes, and concludes it without taking the Opinion of the rest. He sits upon a Buckler, to signify that he is the Defence of the Kingdom. When a Person of Note refuses to appear before him at his Summons, he sends him his Buckler, to signify, *That if he will not obey, he had as good be Master, and undertake the Weight of the Government himself.* The Messengers are two Drummers, who never cease beating in the Person's Ears till he follows them, which he rarely fails to do with all possible Speed; and when he comes into the King's Presence, prostrates himself on the Ground, throws Dust on his Face, and restoring back the Buckler, confesses his Unworthiness to bear it, and endeavours to excuse his Delay as well as he can. When any one goes to pay his Respects to the King, and to beg his Favour, he makes Presents to the Chief of his Wives, and prays her to offer them to the King. She carries them to the Prince, and prays him to let the Man come and kiss the Ground in his Presence. The Request is granted if the King like the Person and Presents, otherwise he sends the latter back again; but the Man takes Care not to receive them, and

and gets his Friends to intercede for him to the King. If he is so happy as to obtain Leave, he enters into the Hall of Audience, where the Prince sits on a neat Mat, and leans against a kind of Sedan. When he is advanced within two Paces of the King, he bends the Knee, and leaning with his Elbow on the Ground, he salutes the King with the Title of *Dondag*, and then the Prince makes a Sign to him to give an Account of his Case. Strangers, when they come to pay their Respects to the Prince, are at first introduced; and if they have any thing to propose, are allowed an Interpreter. If he have any Complaints against the Natives, the King promises to do them Justice, after having heard his Adversary. Those who go to thank him for any Favour, put off all their Clothes except a Pair of Drawers, fall with their Bellies to the Ground, then turn upon their Backs, bend their Knees, rub their Foreheads with Dust, strike the Ground with their Elbows, and cry out three times, *Dondag*. The King sometimes praises or thanks them, and at other times reprimands them, and upbraids them with their Crimes, that they mayn't fall into them any more. When a Foreign Ambassador goes to wait upon the King, he sends him Word as soon as he enters his Dominions, and he is desired to stay in the first Village, till all Things are ready for his Reception at Court. Then he makes his Entry with abundance of Pomp, attended by a great Number of Soldiers, who exercise themselves at Tournament with Lance and Buckler, Bow and Arrows, and he is conducted to the Town-House with Beat of Drum, and other Instruments of War. But if he be an Ambassador from the King of *Folgia*, he desires Leave to exercise on the Place of Arms, and sometimes does it of his own Accord. Then the Ambassador comes to Audience, and if he is admitted, falls down upon his Knees before the King, turns his Back to him, and draws a Bow with all the Force he can, to signify that he will oppose the King's Enemies with all his Might, and his Retinue make great Shouts. He receives Ambassadors in a Place open on all Sides, where he sits, attended with the Archers of his Guard. After these Ceremonies, the Ambassador desires to be heard on the Subject of his Embassy, and

if the King is disposed, he consults upon it, and gives him an Answer by an Interpreter. Then the Envoy offers the King his Presents, telling him at the same time in whose Name they are made, and the Reason why. Then the King appoints the Envoy and all his Retinue to be carried to a House, where the Prince's Slaves bring them Water to wash, and his Wives bring them Rice, Wine, and other Provisions. After Dinner, the King sends them Presents of a Kettle, Basin, or the like. Our Author observes, that when the *Dutch* come to make their Court to this Prince, he does them the Honour to make them eat at his Table, which is a Favour that he grants to no Negro of what Quality soever. When the King dies, the eldest of his Brothers seizes all his Estate, except such Lands and Slaves which the Deceased gave to his Children during his Life. As the *Quoja's* depend on the *Folgia's*, so the latter are Vassals to the K. of *Manou*, a powerful Prince, who commands a great Tract of Land. The King of *Folgia* pays him every Year a Tribute of Slaves, Salt, Red Cloths, Basons, Kettles, &c. and the K. of *Manou* gives him, by Way of Acknowledgment, some Habits of *Quaqu*, of which he makes a Present to the K. of the *Quoja's*, and he to the Lords of *Bolm* and *Hondo*, his Vassals; for the People depend on one another, and the Sovereign has nothing to do with his Vassals Subjects. Those of the superior Prince are Gentlemen born in his Vassal's Country, and have a Right to bear Arms there, and exercise the Bow and Arrow, without asking any body's Leave. *Mendi Manou*, as the *Folgia's* call him, i. e. the Lord of *Manou*, keeps his Dominions more by Cunning than Force. The *Folgia's* imitate him in this; and their Language, which is the finest and most majestick of all that are spoke in *Guinea*, gives them no small Help. Besides, they know how to make themselves feared, and poison those who give them Uneasiness. The Country of *Hondo* is governed by several Lords, whose Habitations are very remote from one another; but all do Homage to the King of the *Quoja's*, and send him every Year a good Number of Slaves and Elephants Teeth, for which he returns other small Presents, such as Stuffs, Habits, Copper Basins, Salt, &c.

Dapper follows this with an Account of their Religion. He says, all the Inhabitants of *Bolm*, *Timna*, *Cilm*, *Hondo*, *Quoja*, *Folgia*, *Gala*, and *Manou*, are circumcis'd in the *Mahometan* Way. They own but one God, the Creator of Heaven and Earth, and of all Things therein contain'd, and worship no Creature. They never represent the Deity nor Spirits by the Figures of Men and Animals: Yet in *Bolm* and *Timna* there are Busts in the high Roads and near their Houses, which the Inhabitants raise to the Memory of their deceased Friends. They call the Almighty *Canou*, and believe him to be a Punisher of Crimes, and a Witness of the Sincerity of their Words; that he takes Cognizance of all Things, and will judge all; and they have a common Saying, That a Time will come when the Wicked shall receive their due Reward: But they think that all Persons after Death become pure Spirits, that know all, and are concern'd in every thing done in their Families; so that they consult them in their Doubts, and call upon them for Help in their Adversity. When they go to hunt an Elephant or Buffalo, or on any other dangerous Enterprize, they slay a Sacrifice to the Ghosts of their Kindred, and carry an Offering of Wine or Rice to their Tomb. They make a solemn Funeral Banquet in their Families with great Rejoycing. The King calls upon the Souls of his Father and Mother, and prays them to make Trade flourish in his Kingdom, to bring over a great Number of *Europeans* to it, and for what other Necessaries he wants; for they imagine the Spirits of the Deceased are the Protectors of their Family, and therefore pray to them not only on their Tombs, but when they are sick or in Trouble, they carry Meat to the Highways, call upon their Spirits, and spill Wine to their Honour. They think they reside in Groves, therefore when they are afflicted they go to retired Places, and cry out for Help from God and them; so that they have no Temples, but one of these Woods near every Habitation, enclos'd with a Hedge, where none must enter but such as have the Marks of their Sect, for fear of being put to Death by the Spirits. They carry all Sorts of Provisions hither several times a Year, according to the Goodness of their Harvest, and their Success in Hunting. They observe

Circumcision as a Custom Time out of Mind, and think it the Ordinance of God. They circumcise their Children when they are a Year and a half old, tho sometimes the tender Mothers defer it till they are two or three Years old: But our Author observes, that the longer they put it off, the more difficult will be the Cure of the Wound, because the Children there going naked, and exposed to the Wind and Sun, it often turns to an Ulcer; but they apply a Mixture of bruis'd Herbs for a Remedy. He says, they have another Ceremony called *Belli-paaro*: 'Tis observed once in every 20 or 25 Years, when a certain Number of Persons are enter'd into the Assembly of Spirits, which gives them a Privilege to go into their Groves, where they eat up the Offerings brought thither by the People, and make them believe they are devour'd by the Spirits. They are strictly forbid to discover the Secret to any Person whatsoever. Those who are of this Assembly tell strange Stories of this Ceremony, viz. That they are roasted; that their Life and Manners are entirely chang'd; and that they receive a Spirit and Knowledge quite different. They mark themselves with Streaks over their Shoulders, which seem to be made by the Pricks of a Needle. All that have this Mark pass for Spiritual Men; and when they arrive at such an Age, have Votes in all Assemblies, where they treat of Affairs of State, and judge of all important Causes, whether Civil or Criminal, while the rest are counted prophane, unclean, and ignorant Men, and dare not give their Opinion in any Thing of Moment.

The Ceremony is celebrated after this Manner: A Place is marked out by the King's Order in the Middle of a Wood of Olives, whither they bring some young Persons that are not marked. They shed a great many Tears by the Way, for they are made to believe that they must suffer no less than Death to undergo this Change; so that they dispose of all they have, as if they were leaving the World. Some of the old Standers always attend these Novices, to instruct them to dance, and to recite Verses in Praise of their Idol *Belli*. They take special Care not to let them starve with Hunger, because they think that would en-

danger

danger the Benefit of the Spiritual Resurrection. Therefore they give them Part of the Offerings brought by their Mothers, from whom some of the old Men are appointed to receive them without the Wood, at which Time the good Women never fail to request them to take Care of their Children, and not to let the Change reduce them to Ashes. They live thus 4 or 5 Years; for besides a convenient Village in the Middle of the Wood, they divert themselves with Hunting and Fishing, and the King sometimes passes two or three Days here. Our Author adds, that they punish those who discover the Secret with the utmost Severity, and permit no Person but those that are of their Society to come within 4 or 5 Leagues of the sacred Grove, on Pain of being carried away by their Spirits, not excepting the King's Daughter, unless it happens that there's no other Way to such a Field or Village but within that Distance; and if so, those who pass it must sing and make a Noise all the while, that they may be heard. After the young Novices have been a long Time instructed, they are shut up in little Houses made for the purpose at one End of the Wood, where they begin to renew their Correspondence with Mankind, and to speak with the Women who bring them Eatables. They affect such a Simplicity, that they pretend they know no body, nor none of the Customs of the Country, such as Washing, Rubbing with Oil, &c. Here they stay a while longer, and some of the old Standers endeavour to perfect them in the Knowledge of Peace and War, and whatever relates to the Government of the State. When they enter into these little Houses, they cover their Bodies all over with Goose Feathers and Caps of the Bark of Trees, which hang down over their Faces. But after they have been here some Days, they bring them Habits, little Bells for their Legs, and Coral Necklaces, thick set with the Teeth of Leopards. Their Hair is ty'd up in neat Tresses, and in this Equipage they are led to a great Square, where all the People of the Neighbourhood meet together. Here they give the first Trial of their Capacity by a Dance; but those who have not learn'd it perfect, must return thither no more, and are degraded, despised,

and derided by the Women, who say, They have spent all their Time in eating Rice. When the Dance is over, the old Standers carry the young Novices to their Fathers and Mothers, tell them that those are their Parents, and shew them the Name which was given them in the Wood; after which they pretend to know them again, and then they live as before. One of the most considerable Privileges of this Fraternity is, that they may forbid such or such a Thing with a Curse, which they call *Belli Paaro*, i. e. By Vertue of the Divine Vengeance: For which End they drive a Stick into the Ground, and encompass it with a Bundle of Cork or Reeds, and two or three of them repeat *Hucquono Hucquo* three times. Those who make any Infraction on this Prohibition, are punished according to the Nature of the Crime. In some Cases they put them to cruel Torture, by rolling the Criminal in a Basket full of Thorns thro' the Village, and throwing Water, in which Pepper has been infus'd, into his Mouth and Eyes, and over all his Body. For Adultery, the Magistrate of the Place pronounces the Execration; but for the first Fault they only give a severe Reprimand, when they bring the Woman accus'd into the Council Chamber, and after having call'd upon the *Jannanes* or Spirits, blind the Party's Eyes, for they say 'tis impossible for them to see the Spirits and live. Then they make a strange Noise all on a sudden, like that of our Puppets, which one of the Counsellors interprets, that the Adulterers must leave her bad Life, and keep close and true to her Husband, on Pain of being carried away by the Spirits, if she commits the like Fault again. They execute this Punishment thus: They have Rakes in Pay who come into the Village in the Night-time, some on one Side, and some on the other, making a terrible Noise, till they come to the Criminals, whom they seize and hurry away to the Wood, without ever hearing them speak. And while this is doing, the Women are forbid to peep out at the Windows, on Pain of the like Punishment, so that none dare break Silence. The King also, who is the Head of the Society of *Belli*, professes Obedience to his Orders; but he takes Care to hinder them from doing the like Execution on such of his Wives as are the Daughters

of neighbour Princes, for fear of disturbing the Peace. No Person is deliver'd up to the Spirits till they have thoroughly examined his Crime; and when they want Proof, they boil the Bark of Trees and some Herbs in fresh Water, pronounce Curses upon it, and pour it upon the Hands of the Party accused, who, if innocent, they pretend it will fall to the Ground without hurting him; but if guilty, 'twill burn. We shall not take Notice of the several Ingredients, but refer for them to *Dapper*, who says, that they send a little Boy to draw the Water who never touch'd a Woman, and must return from the Fountain backward, without looking on either Side; for they say, the least of these Ceremonies wanting, would spoil the Performance. They hang the Pot over the Fire in the open Air, at the Rising or Setting of the Sun. The Wood which they use under it must never serve to light another, and they take great Heed how they go forward or backward, for fear (as they pretend) of overturning the Pot. The *Bollimo*, or he who pronounces the Curses, takes a Drop every now and then to know when the Herbs are infus'd enough, and mutters all the while the Names of the Persons accused for the Things he would prognosticate. When all is ready, they pretend the Spirits walk round the Pot; but they are only the Voices of Persons conceal'd, who tell the *Bollimo* what he must do. Then he washes the Arms and Legs of the Person accused with fresh Water, to prevent any Fraud, and dips into the Pot with his Staff, which is chewed at one End like Liquorish. He lets the Water drop upon the Arms or Legs of the Person accused, and says, If he is guilty of the Crime charged upon him, may this Water burn him: But if the Water does him no Harm, they declare him innocent, and make the like Trial upon the next that they suspect.

After Conviction, they are speedily condemned and executed, and their most common Punishment is as follows: The Criminal may chuse the Place of his Execution, for there's none set apart for that Purpose. The Executioner leads him thither blindfold, with his Hands ty'd behind him. When they are come to the Place, he makes him kneel with his Head bow'd down, and

having pierced it quite through with a *Zagaye*, he strikes it off with a Hatcher, for otherwise they think he might live. Then he divides the Body into 4 Quarters, which the Women carry into the Fields to feed their Birds; but they leave the Head to the Criminal's Friends, who boil it, drink the Liquor, and hang up the Skull on the Statue of their Idol *Ferisso*. *Dapper* adds, that the Customs of *Gala*, *Hondo*, *Bolm*, and *Cilm*, are much the same with these.

He gives an Account next of their Female Sectaries, who practise Circumcision on their own Sex with a particular Mark. Their chief Priestess lives at *Gala*, but repairs to the principal Village of the *Quoja's* for the Celebration of this Ceremony. The Assembly is compos'd of Girls about 10 or 12 Years old, and of Women not yet initiated. At the Beginning of the Ceremony, the Priestess gives the Probationers some Fowls, and makes them promise to live withher, and they call this the Covenant of Pullets. Then they shave their Heads, and carry their Hair to a Brook, where they consecrate it; after which the Priestess circumcises their *Pudenda*, which is 10 or 12 Days a curing. They live 4 or 5 Months together in a Wood, where they learn Dances and obscene Songs. The Priestess strips off their Clothes when they enter the Wood, and never restores them again, so that they go all the while naked; and tho' the old Dames of this Herd may go and come when they please, yet they are obliged to leave their Clothes at the Gate when they come into the Wood. When these Wood-Nuns are ready to depart, they make themselves Vests of the Bark of a Tree painted Red. Their Kindred bring them Coral Necklaces, Bracelets, little Bells, and other Ornaments, with which the Priestess leads them forth to a Place where they dance by Turns at the Beat of Drum before the People. But *Dapper* says, that all the Privilege which they have above others of their Sex is, that if they swear by the Mark of their Circumcision, they'll be the sooner believed.

As to their Festivals, he says they have few set ones. They keep the first Day of the Moon's Appearance, and will not till their Ground on that Day, nor on the Day when any one undergoes the Trial of *Quoni*, nor when any one dies in the Village, for

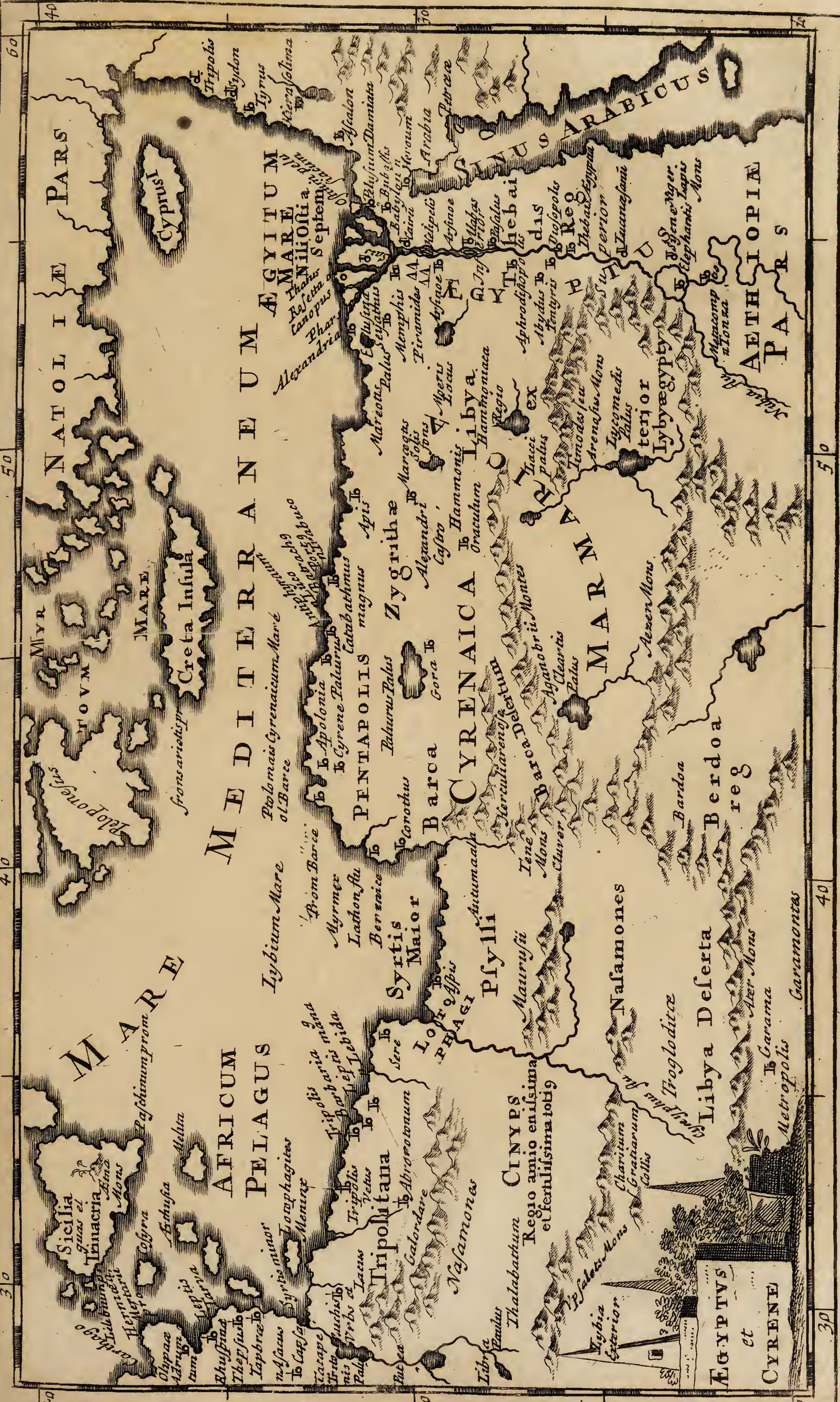
fear their Rice and Millet should turn red, because those are Days of Blood. But our Author observes, this does not hinder them from Hunting. To this he adds a very particular Account how the *Carous* got the Possession of these Provinces; but we refer the Curious to his Book.

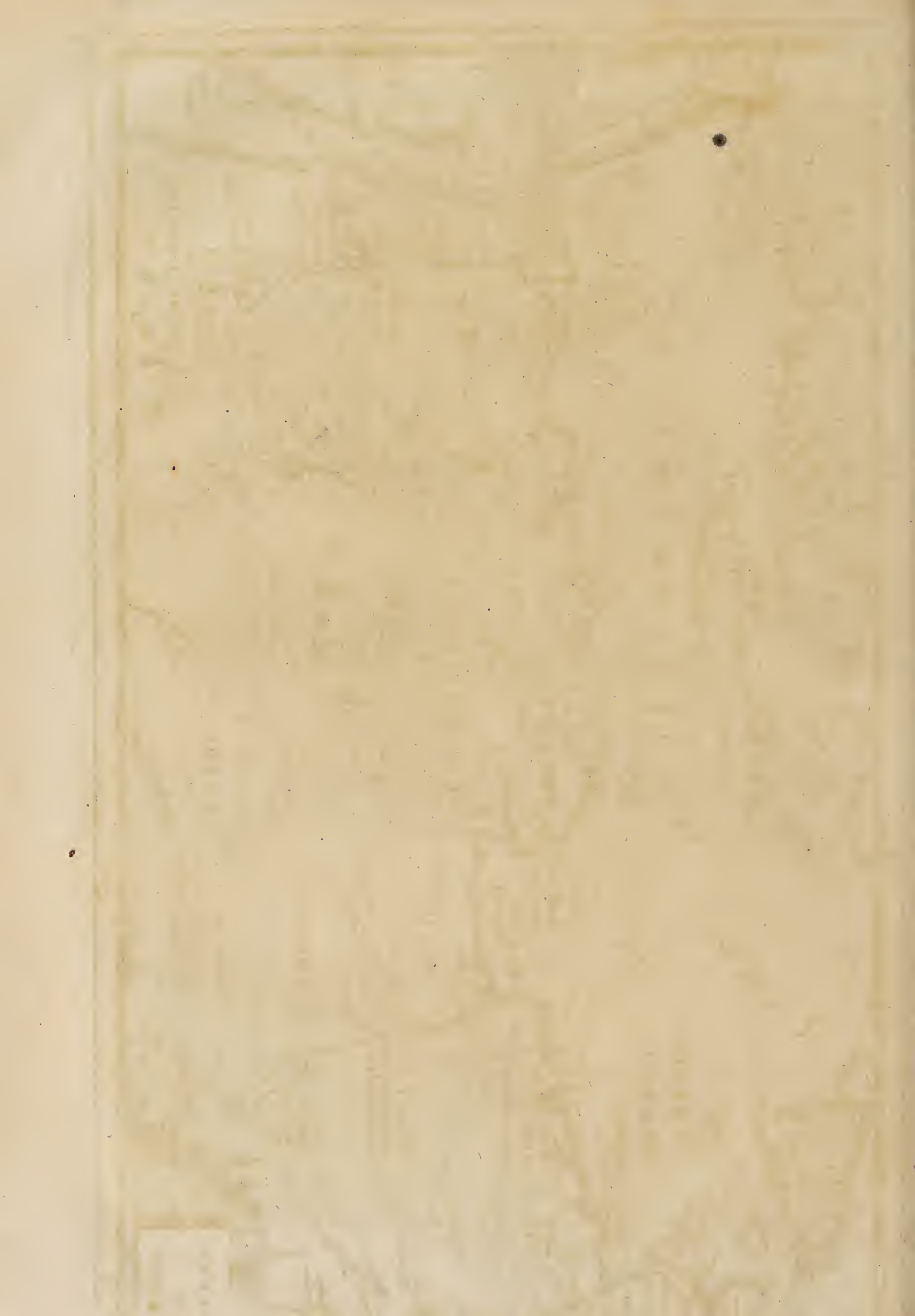
3. Cape Mesurado or Mizurado, and the Country as far as Grain Coast.

THE *Sanfons* place this Cape almost 60 Miles S. E. from *Cabo Monte*, *Moll* 80, and *Dapper* 18 Leagues. The latter says, 'tis very high, especially on the N. Side; but *Snoek* says, 'tis not so high as *Cabo Monte*, nor no more than 10 Miles from it. *Dapper* says, it appears of a reddish Colour to Ships that come from the N. that it bends towards the Sea on the S. Side; and that the Shore about it resembles an Island, because the Continent cannot be discover'd afar off, the Soil is so low. He adds, that the Country is inhabited by the *Gebbes*, who are subject to the *Carous*. *Snoek*, who anchor'd here in November 1702, says, they could get but Three Hundred Weight of Teeth here in two Days time, because the Negroes were shy, and told him, That about two Months before the *English* had been there with two large Vessels, and had ravaged the Country, destroy'd all their Canoes, plunder'd their Houses, and carried off some of the People for Slaves; upon which the remainder fled to the Inland Country, where most of them continued when our Author was here. There are three Villages two Miles W. of this Cape, with about 20 Houses each, which he says are the finest he saw in his whole Voyage. Each of them had three neat Apartments, and cover'd at the Tops like Hayricks, and at every House 50 or 60 Men, Women and Children, liv'd all together promiscuously. The Women are handsome, and have Liberty, as he was told, to be Whores for Money. The Inhabitants in general are civil and good natur'd. Two old Men here pretended to be Captains, and obliged our Author to pay 7 Pound of Copper as Custom; but they would not come aboard, and

they fly if an armed Man go ashore. The Men put their Work upon their Wives, and their chief Trade is in Palm Wine, which is very plentiful and good here. They mind no Religion, but Eating and Drinking, and making Merry. They have the same Habits, Cattle and Fruit, with those of *Cabo Monte*. *Snoek* says, they told him they knew of no Enemy but the *English*; and as they had already some of our Nation Prisoners, they declared they would endeavour to get as many as the *English* had carried off of their Natives.

Three Leagues W. of this Cape, *Dapper* places the Mouth of the River *St. Paul*, which he says is very small, and so shallow, that it will not bear any Ships larger than Skiffs or Sloops. *Snoek* says, it runs into the Sea, and is 5 or 6 Foot deep in the Entrance. He adds, that it takes its Course W. 3 Miles from hence, and E. directly to *Rio Sestre*, whither the Natives trade daily with their Canoes in the Product of their Country or Elephants Teeth, because more Ships come to that River than this. *Dapper* says, the Coast from hence to *Cabo Monte* is 15 Leag. in Length, very low, and cover'd with Thickets; and that from hence towards *Mesurado* 'tis also very flat, and forms a Bow. *Snoek* says, that within 5 Miles of *Mesurado*, there are three different Places with different Land; the first pretty low, the last higher, and the middlemost higher than both. He says, he saw no Village till he came to *Rio Junk*, where the Land seems low; but on the W. Side of the River there are three round Hills, the largest in the Middle. The *Sanfons* place this River above 30 Miles E. of Cape *Mesurado*. *Dapper* makes it 12 or 15 Leagues, and says, its Channel is but 8 Foot deep, and has several Sand-Banks, so that Sloops can scarce sail in it with Safety. *Snoek* says, that where it runs into the Sea, the Land appears for most Part even and doubled; and *Dapper*, that the E. Side is much higher than the W. and cover'd all over with Thickets; and that the S. Side is full of Trees. The former tells us, that a Mile E. from the River are two large Clefts, which render this Rock very discernible, tho' it may be easily known by the Multitude of Rocks, of which the Shore is full. He adds, that the Coast here extends from E. to S. and from W. to N.





Twelve Miles from *Rio Junk*, *Dapper* places that of *St. John*, another River, which he says falls into the Sea, with great Trees on its Banks, and that the Coast between both turns from S. E. to E. On the E. Side of this River there's a high Mountain, which resembles a Bow; 9 Leagues from whence lies the Village of *Tabo Cano*, and over against a Shoal in the Sea, not far from the Coast: After which you come to a Village which the Negroes call *Tabo Dagrou*, and the *French*, *Petit Diepe*, with a River of the same Name, which *Dapper* places 22 Miles E. of *Rio Junk*.

Three Miles W. of *Rio Sestre*, *Snoek* says there's a pleasant Wood, with a Village in it call'd *Corra*, the Negroes of which Place came in a Canoe to our Author's Company, and invited them to trade for Elephants Teeth, of which they said they had a good Stock. The Burning of the Sea here was so fierce, that they could not go ashore with a Boat or Sloop. About a quarter of a Mile within the Wood there are two Salt Villages, one of 12, the other of 6 Houses, forrily built, whose Inhabitants boil Salt, and seem to be wild Men, but are very civil. Their Women are very fruitful, and our Author saw one who had 4 Children at a Birth.

4. GRAIN COAST.

Dapper says, 'tis so call'd from the Grain of *Paradise*, with which it abounds. He begins it at *Rio Sestos*, and extends it 60 Leagues further, viz. to 3 Leagues beyond *Cape Palmas*. *Moll* calls all the Country from *Sierra Leona* to *Bottema*, 50 Miles beyond the River *Sestro* or *Sestos*, by the Name of the *Grain Coast*, and extends it 285 Miles from E. to W. in a direct Line along the Coast, and as much in Breadth. He bounds it with that call'd *Ivory Coast* on the E. *Mandinga* in *Negroland* on the N. *Melli* on the W. and the Sea on the S. *Du Plessis* says, the *French* call it *La Coste des Greves*, or the Sandy Coast; that the Inner Parts of it are scarce known, and that it has no Harbours besides those of *Sestre* or *Settera Major* and *Minor*, which are frequented by *Europeans*. *Dapper* says, all this Coast is muddy and full of Shoals, so that 'tis dangerous to come

near it. The best Season for Mariners to visit it, is in *February*, *March* or *April*, when the Air is serene and fann'd by the West Wind. But about the End of *May*, and sometimes at the Beginning, the S. and S. W. Winds rise, and cause violent Storms, accompanied with Thunder, Lightning, and great Rains, and this Season often holds to the End of *January*. Besides, when the Sun is in either of the Equinoxes, our Author says it darts its Rays perpendicularly on this Coast, tho' *Moll* sets it 5 or 6 Deg. N. of the Line.

Dapper says, it abounds with Millet, Cotton, Rice, excellent Palm Wine, and especially with *Melegette*, *Guinea Pepper*, or the Grain of *Paradise*, of which he gives this Description: The Plant that bears it has thick Leaves 4 Inches long and 3 broad. The middle Stem is very high, and sends forth several Filaments, which spread obliquely over all the Leaf like those of the Clove-Tree, and the Stems and Fruit tast like Cloves, but not quite so strong. The Fruit is of an oval Figure, about the Bigness of a Fig, and the Stalk is limber, and of a ruddy or pale brown Colour, but poisonous. It serves to cover the clear Grains, and has several Angles smaller than those of Pepper. The Grains are contain'd in little Shells, and separated from one another within into 4 or 5 Divisions, by white Filaments as strong as Pepper or Ginger. Those which are not ripe are red and well tasted; but those are best which are of a Chesnut Colour, large, heavy, and compact, and the Black is the least Sort which takes that Colour, by fermenting in the Ships, where they contract Moisture. *Snoek* says, the Shells are red, and look very fine at a Distance. He adds, that it grows also like large Grass-Reeds.

Dapper says, the Country abounds with several Sorts of Animals; but the Inhabitants are guilty of Theft and Perjury, and in some Places Man-eaters; yet the *English*, *Dutch*, and *French*, often trade hither for *Guinea Pepper*, Rice, and Elephants Teeth. The Pepper Factories are at *Croum*, *Growery*, *Wappen*, *Settera Major*, and *Gojave*. The best Elephants Teeth, and the largest Pepper-Corns, are those which come from *Rio Sestos*. The Pepper which is bought there between the Middle of *November* and the Month of

March, is always of the preceding Year's Crop, because the New does not shoot out till January. The Dutch give in Exchange for it Iron Bars, Kettles, Basons, Coral, and Ferret, and the common Barter is 150 or 200 Pound of Pepper for a Bar of Iron, at the Rate of 32 or 33 to the Thousand Weight. The English drive a great Trade up the Rivers *St. Paul*, *Junk*, and *St. John*, for Red Wood and Ivory; but *Dapper* says the Dutch cannot, because those Rivers are only navigable for Skiffs and little Barks.

He tells us, that they have a King in this Country, who is absolute, and has Governors in all the Villages. His Subjects Religion is not very different from those of *Cabo Monte*, but they are more addicted to Enchantments and the Worship of Dæmons. They pray to the Dead to help them to live holy Lives, and celebrate the first Appearance of the New Moon with Dances and other Sports.

The most noted River is that call'd *Rio Sefos* or *Sestro*. *Moll* places it 44 Miles S. E. of *Cape Mizurado*, and the *Sanfons* 80. *Dapper* says, 'tis of difficult Entrance, because of the Rapidity of its Current, and of the Shoals at its Mouth. *Snoek* says, the Land before it is very low, and that beyond it are two Hills, one of which appears like a Semi circle. At a Mile to the W. are two great Rocks, and as far to the E. a Point of Land which runs out into the Sea, so that this River is easy to be found. There are many Rocks in its Entrance, which lie 6 Foot under Water, so that 'tis easy to pass over them with laden Boats and Sloops, except two that appear above Water, which may easily be avoided. Our Author praises this for a delightful River, and says, that its Banks are thick set with Trees and Villages, and that it receives several Rivulets and small Springs. He tells us, there's one Village close to the Shore, on a rising Ground, with about 60 neat Houses, so high, that some may be seen 3 Miles at Sea; but he does not give us its Name. He observes, that the Buildings here differ only from those of *Mizurado* in more Stories.

The first noted Village is that call'd the *King's Village*, which *Dapper* places 4 or 5 Leagues up this River, and where he says Merchant Ships commonly anchor. *Snoek* says, it lies but 3 Miles up the River, and

has about 30 Houses. The King here in his Time was an old Man, called *Peter*, (for the great Men here affect *European* Names) who pretended, that all the Inhabitants of this Village were descended from him. *Snoek* tells us, contrary to *Dapper*, that his Subjects are very civil, and laborious in Agriculture and Trade. He says, their Habit, Fruits, Cattle, and Fish, are the same with those about *Cape Mizurado*. They plant a great deal of Rice, which increases prodigiously, and is their chief Employment. These Countries live in such Peace with others, that our Author says he heard of no Wars here, but a few Skirmishes which happen'd formerly with the Inland Negroes, who burnt their Village by Surprise; but they took most of them Prisoners, and sold them, which entirely ended the War. The People of Quality drive a constant Trade in Rice, Malaget, and some Elephants Teeth.

Snoek gives this Account of their Funeral Customs, of which he says he was Spectator at the Interrment of an old Woman. They cover'd the Corps as soon as dead with a Cloth, and the People of the Village, both old and young, came and placed themselves round it, each with a few Banana Leaves, to shade the Corps from the Sun. The Men ran about the House, and howl'd like Madmen, and the Women strain'd their Wind-pipes so, that 'twas difficult to determine which Sex bawl'd loudest. This they did incessantly for 24 Hours, till the second Day, when an empty Canoe was brought just before the Deceased's House, and the Corps was laid into it, with a Pot of Rice and another of Palm Wine, lest she should want in her Journey, and then the Canoe was filled with all Sorts of green Plants. After this the Cry was renewed for half an Hour, and then 10 young Fellows carried the Corps and Canoe to the River, where it was transported to her Birth-place, and buried there, which they always observe, be the Place never so far off; and if the Deceased has not left Effects enough, the Neighbours are obliged to bear the Charge. Three Days after the Interrment of the Corps, the Relations and Friends returned home, with a Sheep and a great deal of Palm Wine for the Funeral Banquet, to which they invited our Author, who eat and

and drank heartily with them; but he says he was obliged to make them so many Presents, that upon summing up the Total, he found the whole Expence of the Feast was defrayed out of his Pocket, and he enter'd it as a Memorandum in his Note-Book never to venture again to an old Woman's Funeral. He adds, that the *English* Ships generally come thick upon this Coast.

He says, that beyond *Rio Sestre* the Coast is plain double Land, and extends N. W. and S. E. and 3 Miles below it he places that called *Little Sestre*, with a great mountainous Rock over against it; and about a Mile and a half further E. a Point which butts out into the Sea, with a great Rock near it on the Land, which is white at Top, and at Sea looks like a Ship under Sail. *Dapper* calls it *Cape See*, and the *Portuguese* *Cabo Baixos*, because of the Sand-Banks about it; but he places it 7 Leagues beyond *Rio Sestos*. Four Leagues from this Cape, *Dapper* sets the Village of *Zanwijn*, with a River of the same Name, which he says was formerly the chief Village for Commerce in this Country; but that 'tis since much decay'd. The Merchandize which the *Dutch* bring hither is the same as mentioned in *Sierra Leona*. *Snoek* calls this Place *Sanguin*, and exchanged Annabasses here for Malaguet. He says, the Negroes here are bigotted to an Opinion, that dextrous Robbery is lawful; so that tho' they'll buy Commodities, they won't pay for them, if they are not watch'd. The Land hereabouts is easily distinguish'd by several high Trees to the Eastward. *Moll* places a small Island call'd *Palma* a little beyond *Rio Sestre*; but we find no Account of it.

Snoek says, that about a Mile to the E. of *Sanguin* lies *Boffoe*, which may be known by a plain Sand Point, encompassed with great and small Rocks. There was a Negro here who call'd himself *James*, and pretended to be Captain of the Place. He spoke a mix'd Jargon of *English* and *Portuguese*, seem'd a great Lover of the Female Sex, and said he had 10 Wives, of which he now and then spar'd one to his Son *Joost*; and when our Author told him that no Place in the World allow'd such Wickedness, he laugh'd out and said, *They were Fools then, but for his People they knew better Things.*

Three Miles farther *Snoek* places the Vil-

lage of *Bottewa* on the Shore, where *Moll*, who places it 45 Miles S. E. of *Rio Sestre*, begins that call'd the *Tooth* or *Ivory Coast*, of which by and by. *Snoek* says, a great Rock appears in the Sea half a Mile to the W. and another about a Mile below it; and that a Mile beyond this the high Land of *Bottewa* appears, with a great many high Hills. *Dapper* places *Bottewa* over against a Hill called *Cabo Swijne*, and says, that there's a Village and River of the same Name on this Coast, wherein the *Sansons* agree with him. *Snoek* calls the Village *Sino*, and places it a Mile and a half beyond *Bottewa*. He says, 'tis distinguishable by a great Rock upon a Sand-Point, butting a little into the Sea; and that the Negroes say, the River behind it runs far within Land, and is almost as considerable as *Rio Sestre*. He adds, that the Coast here extends S. E. and by E. and N. W. and by W. with very even Land. *Dapper* places the Village of *Sabre Bon* 6 Leag. from the River *Swijne*; and 6 Leag. further the Village of *Crouw*, which the *Sansons* and *Moll* call *Settera* or *Sestre Crou*, or *Minor*, the former placing it almost 90 Miles N. W. of *Cape Palmas*, but the latter not much above 60. *Snoek* says, the Land here is flat and low, and the Village fair, and larger than *Elmina*. Behind it the Land is higher, and interspersed with a great many large, but Leaveless Trees. This Place may be known by two great Rocks on the Shore, half a Mile from each other; and *Dapper* says, there's a Cape on one Side of it, which has three black Extremities beat with the Sea. *Snoek* says, the Negroes here are pretty honest, and much more regular than those who live higher up. Their Language is quite unintelligible, so that 'tis impossible to learn their Manners and Customs. They have Plenty of Cattle and Fruits, the same with those at other Places, and their Fish and Fishery does not differ from those on the *Gold Coast*. *Dapper* says, there's a Reservatory near it, where Sailors take in fresh Water.

Six or seven Leagues from hence *Dapper* places the Village of *Wappen* or *Wabbo*, which he says has fresh Water, 5 or 6 wild Trees on the E. Side, and a Rock over against it, which is the largest on this Coast; and tho' it does not appear very high above Water, is encompassed with a great Number of lesser ones, some above, and others below.

below Water. A little further there's another Rock, between which and the Continent there's a Reservatory of fresh Water, which falls into it out of a Wood, and is covered against the Tide; yet the Water is commonly a little saltish just over against the Shore; so that Mariners who come hither for fresh Water carry their Tubs ashore to the Negroes, who fill them for some Pieces of Ferret or Coral. *Snoek* says, that *Wappo* lies but 3 Miles from *Sestre Crow*, and is known by tall straggling Trees with red Tops, upon a high Hill beyond the Shore. This Coast extends E. S. E. and W. S. W. with flat Land to within 3 Miles W. of Cape *Palmas*, where a Point of Land shoots out into the Sea, which at a Distance looks like a Dolphin, and has a large Village on it. *Dapper* places the Village of *Drowijn* next to *Wappen*; but *Snoek* and *Moll* set it beyond Cape *Palmas*. The former says, that at *Settera Major*, which he places next after *Drowijn*, there's a great Basin always full of fresh Water among Rocks, which lay hid in the Sea. After this he sets *Garway* and *Greyway*, or *Grouwai*, which the *Sansons* call *Gerroway*, and place about 17 Miles W. of Cape *Palmas*. *Dapper* says, that a Cannon-shot from this Place there's a round Mountain, which serves for a Signal to Pilots, and a little R. which tho' full of Rocks and Sand-Banks, yet 'tis navigable with a Skiff, especially on the S. Side, where there are some Houses. He adds, that Ships may Wood and Water here.

Then he comes to *Cabo Palmas* or *Palm Cape*, which he places in N. Lat. 4. 15. *Oliver Noort* 3 $\frac{1}{2}$. and *Moll* in Lat. 3. 50. The latter places it 170 Miles S. E. of Cape *Mizurado*, and the *Sansons* 240. *Dapper* says, that on the W. Side of it are 3 little round Hills, and a little further on the Continent a small Grove of Palm-Trees, which growing on a rising Ground, may be discover'd a pretty Way at Sea, and gave Name to this Cape. Behind it there's a Bay, where Vessels ride safe, especially from the S. Wind. A German League on the E. Side of the Bay there's a Rock below the Shore, which advances towards the main Land like a long Mountain. Over against the W. Point of the Cape, there's a great Chain of Rocks even with the Surface of the Water, which goes from S. E. to E. for a Leag. and half by

Sea; and 3 Leagues beyond a Sand-Bank, which is 10 or 11 Fathom in Depth. Ships that come between both run great Danger of a Wreck. *Snoek* says, 'tis sometimes difficult to double this Cape, when Ships come too near the Shore. Three Leagues to the E. of this Cape *Dapper* places the Village of *Gruwa*, with which he bounds the *Grain Coast*, as the *Sansons* do the Country called *Malaguet* with the Cape of *Palmas*.

5. PROPER GUINEA.

THE *Sansons* bound it with *Gago* and *Guber* in *Negroland* on the N. the *Soufi* and *Malaguet* on the W. the Ocean on the S. and with *Benin* and Part of *Zegzeg* in *Negroland* on the E. They extend it 720 Miles from E. to W. on the Frontiers of *Negroland*, above 600 in a direct Line along the Coast from Cape *Palmas* to beyond the River of *Volta*, and 380 from N. to S. where broadest. 'Tis the greatest and most known of their three Divisions, gives Name to the whole Country, and contains those call'd the *Gold* and *Ivory Coasts*, the former on the E. and the latter on the W. *Luyts* says, 'tis dignified with the Title of a Kingdom, and has a powerful Emperor, to whom many Kings and Princes are obliged to do Homage, and pay Tribute. He divides it into the E. and W. Part, the former extending from *Benin* to the River *Mansu* or *Masum*, which according to the *Sansons* falls into the Sea at *Axim*, and the latter between that River and the Province of *Malequette*.

We shall give the following brief History of this Country in general from *Robert's Map of Commerce*.

The *Portuguese* call all this the *Golden Coast*, because of the rich Commerce they drove here in their former Plantations. They were the first that ranged this Shore, and having some small Knowledge of the Commodities, and the People's Way of Trade, landed, and built Forts and Factories here, which they found so beneficial, that 'tis supposed this alone drew them to search this Coast to the Cape of *Good Hope*, and then to the *East-Indies*: For by their fair Dealing and civil Usage of the Negroes, they drew the

the Inhabitants to trade with them; and according to the Custom of *Portugal*, appointed Factors for the King's particular Account in every Port and Town, as if he intended to apply the Profits of Merchandizing to defray the Charges of his Conquest and Garrisons. They exchange'd Salt, Iron, Tin, Copper Basins, Knives, Cloth, and other *European* Commodities, for Cattle, Corn, Rice, and for Gold both in Sand (called *Tibar*) and in Ingots. The *English* and other Nations, desirous to share in this rich Trade, failed hither in a short Time after; but were obliged to anchor along the Coast nearest the best Towns, and durst not land their Goods for fear of the *Portuguese*; so that by signifying to the Inhabitants what Commodities they brought, and by their fair Dealing, they engaged the *Moors* to come aboard their Ships with their Gold. They came aboard early in the Morning with their Canoes and Scuts, some to traffick for themselves, and some called *Tolkens* or Factors for others, who carry at their Girdles a Purse with small Clouts or Papers, containing several Men's Gold. When they have made their Barter, they return at Noon to the Shore. Our Author observes, that these Factors have something for their Pains by Way of Brokerage or Factorage. He charges the *Netherlanders* with first spoiling this Golden Trade, by undermining the *English*, and hiring the Pilots, Boatmen, and *Tolkens*, underhand to carry the Merchants of the Country aboard their Ships instead of *English*; and the latter using the same Method to outvie the others, gave the Brokers an Opportunity to raise their Duty from 6 to 7 *per Cent*. Besides, those *Tolkens* juggled with the *Flémings*, and cheated the *Moorish* Inland Merchants, who came to change Gold for the *European* Commodities; so that these were obliged to cheat the *English*, &c. to make up their Loss, which proved such a Derriment to their Trade, that unless they could connive at the *Tolkens* Villany as well as the *Dutch*, their Commodities would lie upon Hand. *Roberts* says, the Customs vary in several Ports, and are only paid by the Inhabitants, if the Christian bring not his Goods ashore to sell. Every Harbour has a peculiar Officer, to whom every Merchant that comes to buy Wares pays Toll for his Person, tho' he buy

no Goods; and to prevent Fraud, the Prince's Son or near Kinsman is always join'd as an Assistant to the Collector. If a Merchant buy any Commodities aboard a Ship for less than two Ounces of Gold at a time, then he must compound with the Customer for the Duty as his proper Fee; but if he buy above two Ounces of Gold, then the Custom is an Angel of Gold for every two Ounces. Their current Coin is Gold, either in Sands or Ingots, according to the Fineness, which our Merchants distinguish by 24 artificial Needles, made by Allay of Metals from the basest Sort of Gold to the finest of 24 Carots fine, and have Rules to value it in Proportion to its Fineness or Coarseness. They use no Money or Minted Coin in Payment; but when they buy a Commodity, they pay each other by square Pieces of Gold of such or such a Weight. About *Mina* they use *Kacorawns*, which is Gold Wire cut into small Pieces. In other Places they use little Pieces of Iron of a Finger's Length, stamp'd with some Characters; and in such Places where they know not how to melt Gold, they sell it or pay it to one another in Sand by Weight, according as they shall agree in Value and Quantity. Their Weights are made of Copper, with little round Scales of the same, like a hollow Orange-Pill to hold the Gold: But we refer to *Roberts* for their particular Weights and Measures. He observes, that when the *Portuguese* open'd a Trade here, they impos'd upon the Negroes with bad Ware; but this made them more cautious in trading with the *English*, *French* and *Dutch*, so that they are now become as good Judges as the Sellers. They know no Number beyond Ten; so that before they traded with the *English*, they rehearsed so many Words for one Number, that it put them out of their Tale; and forced them to begin again; but now, when they have occasion to count more than Ten, they take a Finger into their Hand for every Ten, till both their Hands are full, and then they mark down One Hundred, and so on. He observes, that neither the *English*, *French* or *Dutch*, make any great Profit by this Trade now-a-days, because the Negroes have enhanc'd the Value of their Gold, and look narrowly to the Goodness, Weight and Measure, of the Commodities

for which they exchange it. They at first took the *Portuguese* and all white Men for one Nation; but now they know the Difference, and the *English* having been found the fairest Traders with them, they are more welcome, and speed better here than any other Nations. Our Author does not speak of the Sugar Trade, or of the Plenty of Sugar-Canes on the Coast; but he says the King of *Portugal*, while he wrote, farm'd that Trade solely to his own Subjects, on Condition that it be sold to none others, and to be sent only for *Lisbon*, to gain a great Custom impos'd upon it by that Means. He adds, that this made the *Dutch* build and fortify in some Places, and especially at *Mina*, where a River only parted them from the *Spaniards*, with whom they were at continual Variance. We shall give a further Account of the Sequel when we come to *Mina* on the *Gold Coast*, and proceed first to

6. TOOTH or IVORY COAST.

Dapper says, it has this Name because of the Elephants Teeth or Ivory with which it abounds; and that the *Portuguese* call it the *Coast of Ill People*. He extends it about 75 Leagues from *Gruwa* on the W. to Cape *Lahou* on the E. *Moll*, who bounds it with the *Gold Coast* on the E. *Negroland* on the N. *Grain Coast* on the W. and the Ocean on the S. extends it 440 Miles from N. to S. and 343 in a direct Line along the Coast, from *Bottewa* on the W. to the *Gold River* on the E. The *Sansons* extend it 374 Miles from Cape *Palmas* to that of *Three Points*, which is above 30 Miles farther E. than *Moll*, and say, 'tis very commodious and well inhabited; and that the *English*, *French*, *Dutch* and *Portuguese*, with the *Hanse Towns*, trade to several Harbours on this Coast for Ivory, Skins, Wax, and *Ambergreece*. *Du Pleffis* says, 'tis inhabited by the *Adaous*, whom he divides into the Coasts of *Good People* and *Ill People*. *Luyts* and the *Sansons* place the former on the E. and the latter on the W.

Dapper says, that 4 or 5 Leagues from Cape *Palmas* there's a River which runs into very low Ground, and on the E. Side of it a very high Rock. *Snoek* says, the Coast bears E. and by N. and W. and by S. for

26 Miles as far as *Druwin*, and is all high and flat Land. He tells us, that he never saw more covetous Men nor wilder Savages than the Negroes of *Druwin*. They have sharp Teeth, and are Man-eaters, so that 'tis not safe to land here; but they bring their Ivory a Ship-board; yet there's no trading with them without considerable Loss, for they beg every thing they fancy, and if deny'd, leap over-board, and make away to Shore. *Moll* places *Druwin* above 70 Miles from Cape *Palmas* to the E. The Land-marks here are very plain, and distinguished by lofty Trees, and 3 or 4 large Villages about half a Mile from each other.

Thirty five Leagues from Cape *Palmas*, *Dapper* places the Village of *Tabo*, and says, that 5 or 6 Leagues to the W. the Coast forms an oblique Angle, bounded by a Tree, with a Rock next to that, a Mountain which bends towards the Sea, and a Sand-Bank before it, with some Rocks under Water. Here he says *Tabo* lies, and that there's 14 Fathom Water. According to him, the Coast runs from W. to E. for 6 Leagues from Cape *Palmas*, and from N. E. by E. to N. E. for 30 Leagues farther, viz. to *Tabo*. Four Miles from thence he places the Village *Petiero*, over against a Rock, smaller than the preceding one; 5 Leagues farther the Village of *Tahoe*; and at the Distance of 6 Leagues more that of *Berbi*. Next to this he places the Mouth of the River of *St. Andrew* or *Andries*, in N. Lat. $4\frac{1}{2}$. the *Sansons* in Lat. 5. 90 Miles N. E. of Cape *Palmas*. *Snoek* says, it takes its Course West, and is navigable by Barks, if there were but secure Trading. The Country abounds with *Milho*, *Jamames*, *Paquovens*, *Bananas*, and in short with whatever the *Gold Coast* produces, besides abundance of Kine, Sheep, Poultry, &c. with Wild Beasts, and all Necessaries for Life; but they will sell no Part on't but the worst, which they can't eat themselves, and that at a dear Rate too. *Dapper* says, that in a Bay on the W. Side of this River there's a very straight Hill, cover'd with Trees, green behind, and a Bank of Sand on the E. Side; so that he advises Mariners to keep out in the main Sea. Here the Coast bends like a Bow, and runs to the S. E. over against the Red Country, which has that Name from certain Hills.

Hills. *Snoek* says, they are 16 red Cliffs, a Mile and a half S. E. and by S. from the River *St. Andrew*, which take up 3 Miles in Length, and are seen 6 or 7 Miles at Sea in clear Weather. Here he says he saw no Negroes nor Villages, and that the Coast bears as above to Cape *Lahoe* or *Lahou*, 27 Miles from *Drumyn*. *Moll* places the Cape almost 45 Miles from the River of *St. Andrew*, in Lat. 4. Long. 13. 16. Here *Dapper* ends the *Tooth Coast*. *Snoek* says, the Land here is very low on the Sea-Side, and that there is a large Village which stretches a Mile along the Shore, with Multitudes of Coco-Trees between the Houses, several high Hills 3 Miles beyond it on the Land, and a large River a Mile W. of the Cape, which runs to the River of *St. Andrew*, and a great many Miles into the Inland Country, as also Eastward, tho' not very far. He says, the Negroes here are affable, civil, and easy to be dealt with; but they held up their Elephants Teeth dear when he was there, because of the great Numbers of *English* and *Dutch* Interlopers which had been lately on the Coast. They have Plenty of all Provisions, better and cheaper than at *Drumyn*; and the Negroes here told our Author, they were very populous, and rul'd by one chief Governor. *Dapper* says, they drive a great Trade in Cotton Gowns, of 6 Bands sew'd together, for which they truck Salt with their Neighbours, who are more remote from the Coast, and carry it far up in the Country, where they sell it to a white People riding upon Mules or Asses, and arm'd with Lances, suppos'd to be the *Moors* of *Barbary*. The Negroes give *Acori* or Bracelets of yellow Amber for those Habits, for they make light of Coral.

7. Q U A Q U A C O A S T.

D*apper* begins it at Cape *Lahoe*, and extends it E. as far as *Affine*. He says that 'tis low, and the W. Part cover'd with Thickets. The Inhabitants look more barbarous than any in *Guinea*, tho' in the main they are more polite than the rest. They don't reckon Kisses decent when they bid each other welcome or farewell. When they come to traffick with the Merchant Vessels on the Coast, they put their Hands

in the Water, and drop it into their Eyes, to signify, that they would sooner lose their Sight than cheat in Commerce. They also abhor Drunkenness; and tho' they have a great Number of Palm Trees, they drink none of the Wine, but a Liquor call'd the Wine of *Bordon* or *Tombe*, which they mix with Water. They make the same Habits as we mentioned at Cape *La Hou*. All their Coast depended on a King call'd *Saccou* in our Author's Time, who was formidable to his Neighbours, because he pass'd for a great Magician, and they believed he could destroy all his Enemies by his Enchantments. In the Beginning of *December*, he us'd to send a Canoe to the *Gold Coast* with some Bolus's, made up of Spices, Stones and Horns, which, after pronouncing certain Words, were thrown into the Sea, and this they believ'd was a powerful Charm against Tempests; so that after the Return of the Canoe, the Merchants made Voyages to the *Gold Coast* with their Habits in their Turns, without wronging one another, so that every one had Time to put off his Merchandize. This lasted till the End of *April*, when the Canoe was sent out by the Enchanter to absolve the Sea, as they call'd it, and to give it Respite for a Time, during which the People stay'd ashore. *Dapper* adds, that one of the fundamental Laws of the Government of the *Quaqua's* is, that every one shall live in the Condition to which he was born; so that those who are born of Fishers, must follow no other Employ, and the like. Their Worship is full of ridiculous Superstitions, and sometimes they sacrifice Men. *James Lange*, who was on this Coast about 1621, says, a great many Negroes came in their Canoes about his Ship, but would not venture aboard, till the Master dropped some Sea-Water into his Eyes three times, crying, *Quaqua*, and then would enter no farther than the Sides of the Ship, for fear of the great Guns and Muskets. They had many Incisions in their Faces, and a large Ivory Ring thro' their Noses, which reach'd below their Chin; so that they toss their Millet and Rice, which they make into small Balls, and whatever else they put in their Mouths, thro' that Ring. Their Hair was long enough to reach to the Ground, so that they twisted it round their Heads as the *Turks* do their Turbans.

E e e

He

He adds, that they brought some Elephants Teeth to sell, and a Wench about 14 or 15 Years of Age. *Snoek* says, the Natives call their Country *Adoum*, and themselves *Adow-sians*, and wonders why they are call'd *Quaquans* in the Maps, for he observ'd no such Difference in their Speech from the other Negroes, that any should compare it to the Noise of Ducks. He adds, that they are expert Swimmers and Divers.

Dapper places a Village call'd *Kairou* or *Coutron* in a dry naked Valley two Leagues from the Cape; and 5 or 6 Leagues further that of *Jaque Lahoe* or *Jakke la Hou*, which *Snoek* sets but 3 Miles from the Cape, and *Moll* above 50. *Snoek* says, the Coast here bears as it does at Cape *Lahoe*. *Dapper*, who begins that Part of the *Quaqu* Coast here, called the *Coast of Six Bands*, says, the Soil is not very good. Seven Leagues farther he places the Village of *Jakin*, *Jakko*, or *Jaque*, which *Moll* makes above 43 Miles. Nine Leagues farther from thence, *Dapper* says there's a Place in the Sea call'd the Bottomless Pit, for at high Water it cannot be sounded in some Places, and is above 50 Fathom deep a Musket-shot from the Shore, so that Ships that come near this Place must drop their Anchors in Time, lest they are overtaken with a Calm when they are at this Pit, and drove with the next Tide upon the Coast. He adds, that there are two Marks upon the Shore at both Ends of it, by which it may be known, viz. a Rock on the W. and a square Grove on the E. But *Snoek* places this Pit no more than 4 Miles from the last mentioned Village, and says, it has been prov'd by Experience that 'tis fathomable. *Dapper* says, the Coast from Cape *La Hou* to this Pit runs E. He begins that Part of *Quaqu* Coast call'd the *Coast of Five Bands* at *Corbi la Hou*, a Village 24 Leagues from the Cape of that Name, where he says the Sea is very deep, being from 30 to 40 Fathom a Stone's-throw from the Shore; and 20 Leagues farther the Village of *Affine*, where he begins that call'd the *Gold Coast*. He adds, that the Coast turns S. E. from that which he calls the Bottomless Pit to *Affine*.

8. The GOLD COAST.

MOLL bounds it with *Ivory Coast* on the W. *Gago* in *Negroland* on the N. the *Slave Coast* on the E. and the Sea on the S. and extends it from the *Gold River* on the S. W. to *Christiansburg*, the *Danish Fort*, on the S. E. 220 Miles in a direct Line along the Coast, and 400 Miles from N. to S. where broadest. *Dapper*, who says it has this Name because it has several Gold Mines, begins it at the Village of *Atchim* or *Affine*, and carries it 75 Leagues as far as *Accara* or *Acra*, and some extend it as far as *Rio Vulto*, and even to *Rio Jagos*, or the River of *Benin*. *Du Plessis* says, 'tis greater, richer, and more populous, than the *Ivory Coast*. *Snoek* extends it but 60 Miles from the *Gold River*, 3 Miles W. of *Affine*, or 12 above *Axim*, to the Village *Pouni*, 7 or 8 Miles E. of *Acra*. He divides it into 11 Countries on the Coast, each containing two or three Towns or Villages, besides the *European Forts*. Seven of these he says are Kingdoms, govern'd by their respective Kings, and the rest by some of the chief Men, like Commonwealths. He adds, that their greatest and most populous Towns lie for most Part within Land. *Dapper* reckons up a far greater Number of petty Kingdoms than *Snoek*, of all which we shall treat in Order when we come to the particular Description; but shall first premise the General Account of this Coast from these two Authors, wherein we are obliged to be larger than ordinary, because the Main is as well applicable to other Parts of the Coast of *Guinea*; and we hope our Readers will not think us tedious, since the Account will be the newest and most curious that is yet extant, and because the rich Trade of our *African Company* centers on this Coast.

We begin with the Climate and Air. *Snoek* says, the *Gold Coast* lies about N. Lat. 5. The Heat is very violent from *October* to *March* inclusive, but much more tolerable in the 6 other Months, and sometimes cold enough for a Fire. The Evenings are cool all the Year round, and thick sulphurous Fogs arise from the Valleys betwixt the Moun-



AURITAN
Africa Propria
nunc

BARBARIA

Oceanus
Atlantici
Pars

Fortunatae
Insulae

Rysbadium
Promont

Rysbadig Mons

HISPANIAE
Pars
Hispas
Pars

Gades in Cadix
Fretum Herculeum
Tingis
in Tanger

Subur in
Iarache
Sala in

Cyfa in
Tengis in

MADAGASCAR

Maurenlii
Morocci
Regnum
Pydon pelion seu
campus frumentum

TINGITANA
Bocanum

Taradante

Adas Major Mons

Melano Getulane

Atlas Mons

MARIS MEDITERRANEI
Pars
Siciliae
Pars

Oran
Tulca Casarea
Muluchaf

Alger
Tunis
Tepusa
Tremizen

MAURITANIA
Regnum

ITANIA
Regnum

ESARIENSIS
Regnum

NUMI
Regnum

GETULIA
Regnum

LIDIA EXTERIOR
Regnum

Libia Palus
Nilius Solino
Garamantes

Nigritae

Atlas Mons

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

Amfago
Bulagragia
Curiaulia
Gyficavene
Constantina
Mysenun
Zama Regia

Nilus
Bulagragia
Curiaulia
Gyficavene
Constantina
Mysenun
Zama Regia

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

AFRICA PROPRIA
Pars

Mountains, especially near Rivers or watry Places. They commonly rise in the Winter, but especially in *July* and *August*, and the Negroes add to the Stench of them by laying their Fish to rot for several Days before they eat it, and easing their Bodies round their Houses, and all over their Towns. *Dapper* says, that in *January* the Wind blows from S. E. or S. grows stronger in *February*, and often brings Rain. About the End of *March* and the Beginning of *April*, a Fortnight sooner or later, they have boisterous Winds by Land and Sea, accompanied by violent Thunder and Lightning. The *Portuguese* call them *Travadoes*, and they commonly last till *May*. Their Tempests begin with a S. E. Wind. The Land Winds cease by degrees, and are succeeded by Rain, which lasts till *April*; but they are often interrupted by clear Days. The S. W. S. S. W. and W. S. W. Winds, blow upon the Coast in *June* and *July*; the S. W. and S. about the End of *July* and all *August*; but sometimes there's no Wind at all, at which Time the Weather is coldest, thick Mists arise, and a stinking Fog hangs about the Top of Ships, but commonly descends no lower. The Rains end with *April*, the S. Winds purge the Air, and the Summer begins when the Sun goes farther from their Horizon, which continues till *March*. He adds, that this is the finest Season, but the hottest of all the Year. *Snoek* says, their Summer begins with *September*, and lasts the 5 following Months; and that the Winter takes up the other 6 Months, of which two are rainy, two misty, and two windy; but the Seasons often vary, and the Summer begins a Month earlier in some Years than in others. The Rains generally last longer at *Axim* than any where else on this Coast; for *Snoek* affirms, they hold there at least half the Year. He gives Account of several terrible Storms which happen'd here in his Time, for which we refer to him.

Dapper gives this Account of their Soil and Seed-time. All the Coast, at least from the Village of *Mina*, is barren, desert, and full of Mountains and Forrests; the Ways so narrow, that two Men can scarce go abreast, and cover'd with Thickets, which the Sun-beams cannot enter. The Coast from the Cape of *Three Points* to *Acara* is

very high, and runs for most Part E. N. E. or W. S. W. The Inland Part of the Country abounds in Millet and Pasture. They generally sow no more than what they think will serve them, so that most of their Land lies untill'd; for they have no Oxen or Horses to plow the Ground, but cut down the Trees, burn them, throw the Ashes on their Lands, turn up the Ground, and cover their Seed with the Strength of their Arms. They keep the Day before the Seed-time, which is commonly the 20th of *April*, as a Festival, when every Family goes in their best Habits to the Fields, where they have Mirth and good Chear at the Master's Cost, and at Night they return, the Master cover'd with his Arms, and the Women singing and dancing. They begin with the King's Fields, and those of the Village *Brasso*; and when they have done, they have a great Feast of Palm Wine and Mutton. As soon as the Millet begins to come up, they raise a Wooden Hut in the Fields, cover'd with Straw, where they place their Children for Scarecrows to keep off the Birds.

Snoek gives the following Account of their Trees, viz. 1. The *Palm*, which, with Bread and Fish, subsists most of the People on the Coast. It bears Nuts, which roasted while young, tast deliciously; and when old, are cover'd with a red Shell, black on the hinder Part, which contains the Oil, that is naturally red, and if kept some Years, turns white. They use it for Sawce, which is nauseous to new Comers; but our Author says, 'tis strengthening and wholesome, and he prefers it for several Dishes before the Oil of Olives. After the Oil is pressed out, the Pulp serves the Negroes for a Dainty, and if kept till old, is extraordinary good to fatten Hogs. How they draw off the Wine, we have formerly mentioned. While new, 'tis very delicious, but intoxicating. That which the Peasants daily bring to the Shore, is poor and adulterated, and more intoxicating than agreeable, tho' they dash it with a great deal of Water. They make the same Use of the Tree and Leaves as in the *East-Indies*. There are 3 other Sorts of this Tree, which yield each a different Wine, one Sort drawn nowhere but at *Fantyn*, and call'd *Quaker*, because of its inebriating Qualities. 'Tis

fold at double the Price of the common Sort, and so greedily bought up, that there's seldom enough for the Demand. 'Tis somewhat pleasanter than the first Sort, but much stronger, and the Trees are not above half as big as the right Palm Trees. There's another Sort call'd *Pardon*, of a different Taste, but as pleasant as the former, tho' not so strong. 'Tis drawn at *Ancober*, *Abo-kroe*, *Axim*, and *Ante*. These Trees are not cut as the others, but the Wine is drawn out of them while growing, as the *Suri* is drawn out of the *Coco* Tree in the *East-Indies*. They force out every Drop that can be had, which makes the Trees wither. There's another Kind call'd *Crissia*, produced in *Antejabi* and *Adom*, which is of a different Flavour from all the rest, and has no manner of Strength. When fresh, it tastes like Milk; and 9 or 10 Hours after 'tis drawn, is not fit to be drank, nor good for any thing. 'Tis drawn from the Trees, the same Way as that call'd *Pardon*. The Negroes say, too much of it causes a Distention of the Yard, to which Distemper the People thereabouts are more subject than any where else, if we may believe our Author. The Trunks of the *Quaker* Trees are not above half so big as the right Palms, but both shoot their Branches upwards. The *Pardon* Trees grow like the *Coco*'s, but on a smaller Stalk, and so do the *Crissia* Trees; but they are not above a quarter so high as the *Pardon* Trees. He adds, that the Natives bring a prodigious Quantity of Palm Wine to the Shore. They commonly sell an Anchor of 5 Gallons for about Half a Crown; but at some Times and Places 'tis as dear again as at others.

2. The *Coco* Tree, of which the Negroes make no other Use than the Nut. They grow here from 30 to 50 Foot high. The Branches are like those of Palm, but not so long, nor fit for such Uses. They bear Fruit in the 4th or 5th Year, and live at least 50. They have also wild *Coco*'s call'd Palms, which yield a Fruit that few of the *Europeans* eat, but the Negroes do. 'Tis much thicker than the true *Coco*, especially in the Middle, but is smaller by one half at the Top and Bottom. There's a Fruit at the Top on't, which looks like the Pith of a Tree, and is call'd Palm Cabbage, because

it has a Cabbagey Taste. In *Axim* there are vast Quantities of sweet and sour Oranges. The sweet are pretty good, and there are some in the Garden of *Elmina* (which is full of them) that come very near those of *China*. They have few or none in the other Countries of this Coast, and our Author denies that there are any along the River *Boutry*, tho' M. *Focquenbrog* affirms they grow there in great Multitudes. Lemon Trees grow all over the Coast, and are called *Brambas*. They are commonly pressed at *Moure*, where, if the Season be not drier than ordinary, they deliver out above 200 Awms of Lime Juice every Year. An Awm of Lime-Juice or pickled small Lemons is sold for about 20 or 25 s.

3. The *Papay* Tree. Some say, it has no Branches or Leaves, and that it does not grow above a Man's Height; but *Snoek* confutes them thus: He says the Trunk is several Foot thick, compos'd of a spongy Wood, hollow, and easily to be cut through with a Hatchet. The Fruit grows at first at the Top of the Trunk without Branches; but afterwards the Tree shoots out Branches towards the Top, which resemble young Stocks, whereon the Fruit grows. At the Top of the Trunk and Branches, other small Sprigs shoot out like Reeds, but crooked and hollow; and at the End of them grow fine broad Leaves like those of Vines, but they differ in Size. Some of these Trees are 30 Foot high. The Fruit is about half as big as the *Coco*-Nut, of an oval Shape, green without, and white within; but with Age it turns red within, and is full of white Kernels, which are the Seed from whence they are produc'd. The *Papay* taste somewhat worse than *Pompions*. There are Multitudes of these Trees along the Coast, and of two Sorts, call'd Male and Female, because the one bears no Fruit, but is always full of Blossoms, consisting of a long white Flower; and the other bears the same Blossoms, but not so long nor so many. Some pretend, that the Females yield most Fruit when the Males grow near them, which we shall not affirm.

4. The *Pisang* Tree. *Snoek* says, 'tis divided into *Bakovens* and *Bananas*. The *Bakovens* yield a good Fruit, but it bears only in one Year, and then the Stock is cut off from the Root, of which rise 5 or 6 fresh ones.

ones. The Stock grows almost to twice a Man's Height. Some think our first Parents hid their Nakedness with the Leaves of this Tree, because they are long and broad enough, and call'd Fig-Leaves, after the Name of *Indian Figs*; but *Snoek* says, they are very unfit for Cloathing or Covering, because the least Touch of a Finger makes a Hole in them. There are several other Trees here, whose Fruit is unknown to *Europeans*, and eaten by very few. Our Author mentions a Sort of Fruit like our blue and white Plums in Form and Colour; but they are very sweet and mealy. There's also the *Cormantin* Apple, so call'd because it most abounds in the Country of that Name. He says, 'tis as big as a Walnut on the Tree, has a yellow Rind enclining to red, 4 large flat black Kernels in the Core, and a red and white Pulp of a sharp sweet Taste. 'Tis very agreeable and refreshing, and comfortable to the Sick, especially those afflicted with the Bloody Flux, for 'tis very astringent, and if boild with Wine and Sugar, is more useful and agreeable than Tamarinds. They have a few Pomegranates about *Elmina* and *Moure*, but they generally fall off before they are ripe. *Snoek* concludes his Account of the Fruit Trees with the *Mourese* Vine, so call'd because there's no Vines on the Coast, but one Sort at *Moure*, which yields Grapes in *August* and *January*, for they will not thrive any where else but there.

Then our Author comes to give an Account of the Wild Trees on the *Gold Coast*. He convicts *M. Focquenbrog* of a Mistake in saying, that at *Elmina*, and for several Miles adjacent, there's neither Leaf, Grass, nor Tree, and says, he was too partial in his Description of this Coast; but he owns, the Country about *Elmina* is more bare of Trees than other Places. He affirms, that the whole Coast is full of high and low Trees, and charming shady Groves. Some of the Trees are extraordinary large, and others above a Musket-shot in Height, which are called Capot Trees, from a Cotton that they yield of the same Name, which is very proper for filling of Beds here, where Feather-Beds are much too hot. The Wood of it is light and porous, and scarce fit for any other Use than making of Canoes. Our Author supposes, that that which the *Dutch* found on *Prince's Island*, 24 Fathom

in Compass, was this Capot Tree, and says, there's one at *Axim* on this Coast which 10 Men could scarce grasp, the Body of it is so much extended by the prodigious Sprouts which closely surround it. There are several Trees which furnish very fine Working-Wood; 1. A yellow Wood, of which they make fine Chairs and Tables. It grows in the Country of *Ante*, near the *Brandenburg Fort Acoda*, and behind the *Dutch Fort* at *Apam*. 2. Red and yellow Wood fit for the same Use, which grows at *Rio de Gabon*. He adds, that there's good Wood here for the making of Rudders, small Masts, and other Naval Necessaries; and that the Negroes have in all Parts of the Country some particular Trees under which they perform their religious Worship.

He comes next to their Fruits, which are, 1. *Milbio*, by most taken for the *Turkish* Wheat. They sow and reap it twice a Year. The first Harvest is generally in *August*, and the other at the latter End of the Year, tho' but small; for they don't sow much against this Time for want of Rain, without which this Grain will not come up well. He says, that two Men can cultivate as much Land as one Plow can turn up in *Holland*, and that their Corn soon takes Root. When 'tis at its full Growth, 'tis almost twice a Man's Height, and yields from one to four Ears of *Milbio*, each of which contains 3 or 400 Grains of Millet. When 'tis first reap'd in Time of Peace, a Thousand Stalks (which when thresh'd yield about 5 Bushels) may be bought for an *English* Crown, and in some Places for a third or fourth Part less. The Grain is white and red; the former looks finest, but the red is counted best. When 'tis beaten small and sifted from the Bran, it makes pretty good Bread, but somewhat heavy for want of Yest; but our Author thinks, that if it was ground, bolted and bak'd, like our Corn, it would make very good Bread. There's a lesser Sort of *Milbio*, which the *Portuguese* call *Maiz*. It has a Grain like Coriander-Seed, is made into Bread, and resembles our slighter Sort of Rye. It tastes very well, is nourishing, and grows like the great *Milbio*, only the Stalk is not so thick, nor the Ears cover'd with Leaves; but 'tis more expos'd to the Birds, and is not sown near so much as the larger Sort,

Sort, so that 'tis one half dearer. Both these Sorts are sow'd all along the Coast, but least at *Axim*, and therefore dearer there than elsewhere. The Country of *Ante*, in fruitful Years and Time of Peace, produces vast Quantities, so that 1000 Stalks are bought at most for 3 s. 2 d. and a Sack for less than 1 s. 10 d. but in Time of War it rises extravagantly, and our Author says, he has known 1000 Stalks fold for an Ounce of Gold. He ascribes this partly to the great Number of *English* Slave Ships that come Yearly to this Coast, which he says are not so well victual'd as the *Dutch*, and oblig'd to buy many Thousand Sacks a Year. *Milho* rises generally betwixt *February* and Harvest, from a Crown to a Pound Sterling for 1000 Stalks.

2. *Rice*, which is very scarce on the Shore, except at *Axim* or *Ante*; but is so plentiful on the higher Part of the Coast, that one may get a Ship-load on't well cleans'd for a Penny or less per Pound, which is the Price of that which is unsifted at *Axim*, *Ante*, *Abocroe*, and *Ancober*.

3. *Jammes*. They grow under the Earth like Turneps, are about two Spans long, and as much in Thickness, and shoot out a long Leaf almost like that of *French* Beans, with little Prickles, that climbs up Stakes set on purpose by the Negroes, by which they know when 'tis ripe, and then they dig it up. The Inside is white as Snow, and if roasted or boil'd, are eaten by the Negroes and several *Europeans* for Bread. It tastes like Earth Nuts, and tho' not so sweet, is drier and firmer. Abundance of them grow in the Country of *Ante*, but most in *Saboe*, from whence they are sent by Thousands when in Season to other Places. Some buy them at *Moure* for 14 s. a Hundred, and sell them again at other Places for good Profit. They never grow unless some of the Fruit it self be planted.

4. *Potatoes*. They send forth a green Leaf that runs along the Ground. Some of the Branches cut off and planted, soon bear Potatoes. They are of an oval Shape, like large long Turneps. They are white within, and serve for the same Use as *Jammes*, especially at *Fida*, where they are the Negroes ordinary Diet. They are sweet, eat much better than *Jammes*, and taste like boil'd Chestnuts. They abound most in the

Countries of *Saboe* and *Ante*. Our Author was told, that before the *Portuguese* came to this Coast, the Negroes liv'd only upon these two Fruits, and a few Roots of Trees, and knew nothing of *Milho* till it was brought hither by that Nation, and he thinks this the more probable, because there are at this Day Countries in the Promontory of *Guinea* where little or no *Milho* is cultivated, and the Inhabitants live on these Fruits, especially *Jammes*.

5. *Beans* of several Sorts, some like our Garden Beans, others larger, their Cods about three quarters of a Yard long, and the Beans of a bright Red, and a small Sort like those called *Princesses* Beans in *Holland*, only they are of a deep Red. They are very fine and nourishing. They all grow like *French* Beans, either prop'd up, or creeping by a Hedge, except, 1. A small Sort call'd *Foootjes*, which run along the Ground like Potatoes, with long slender Husks, and are extraordinary good to eat while green. 2. Some which grow on Trees as big as Gooseberry Bushes, and are shell'd like green Pease, but are neither sweet nor soft. 3. A Sort call'd *Gobbe-Gobbes*, which grow together in a Cod under Ground, shoot out a small Leaf above the Surface of the Earth, and tho' the worst of all the Sorts of Beans, yet are eaten by several. 4. *Angola* Beans, that grow under Ground, and were first transported hither from the Country of that Name. They are agreeable if fry'd. And, 5. The last Sort, which grow under the Earth too, and are the best of all; but they don't grow in Cods, are eaten raw, and taste like Hazel Nuts. They are commonly broken in Pieces, soak'd in Water, then squeez'd in a Cloth, and yield a Liquor, which if boil'd with Rice, passes every where for Milk; and if mix'd with a little Sugar, Cinnamon, and Butter, Strangers would think it the same.

Their choicest Fruits are, 1. *Ananas*, formerly describ'd in *Asia*. 2. *Water Melons*, which *Snoek* praises for a nobler and more agreeable Fruit than the former, and much more proper for Feverish Persons than the *Ananas*. He says, the immature and small ones are white within and green without; but when ripe, their green Coat is speckled with white, and the inside Whiteness intermix'd with Red; and the more it participates of the

the Red, 'tis the riper, and proves the more watry, cooling, and delicious to the Palate. While 'tis green, they eat it for a Sallad instead of Cucumbers, and its Kernels, which when ripe turn black, are then fit to plant. These grow like Cucumbers, but bear a different Leaf. They are about twice as big as ours, and would be very plentiful if the Negroes were not idle. They are in their Prime in *July* and *August*, and come twice in fruitful Years. 3. A Fruit on Shrubs, which tastes and looks like Cardamum. 4. *Piment*; or that which *Europeans* call *Spanish Pepper*, grows here in Abundance on Shrubs, almost of the same Size, but somewhat lower than Gooseberry Bushes. There's the great and small Sort, both green at first; but afterwards the small turns to a fine red, and the large to a red and black. 'Tis much hotter than common Pepper, especially the smaller Sort, which is not above a quarter as large as the other, but grows on Trees six times as high and wider. If pickled in Vinegar and Lime-Juice, especially in the last, 'tis reckon'd good for the Stomach.

They have none of our common Herbs, but Plenty of Tarragon and Tobacco, especially the last, which stinks abominably when smoak'd, tho' the Negroes like it well enough. Their Pipes are made of Reeds 6 Foot long, that rest on the Ground, with a Stone or Earthen Bowl large enough for two or three Handfuls of Tobacco, which they smoke out without Intermission. All the Inland Negroes take this Sort of Tobacco; but those who are daily conversant with *Europeans*, have *Portuguese* or rather *Brasil* Tobacco, which stinks almost as bad: Yet both Sexes are so fond on't, that they prefer it before Victuals, which so enhances the Price, that a *Portuguese* Fathom, which is not near a Pound Weight, costs 5 s. or a Gold Quarter of a *Jacobus*. The Tobacco Leaf here grows on a Plant two Foot high, two or three Hands Breadth in Length, one in Breadth, and bears a small Bell-Flower, which when ripe turns to Seed. There's another Fruit which the Negroes call *Boesi*, and we Kool or Cabbage; but *Snoek* says, it better deserves the Name of *Anca* or the *African Beetel*, because it exactly agrees with

the Taste and Virtue of the *Indian Beetel*. He tells us, that it grows on lofty Trees, in a Shell like a Walnut, but larger, and has a Kernel divided into several Parts, of which some are white, others red. Both Negroes and *Europeans* are besotted to this Fruit, which they chew, and after the Juice is suck'd, spit it out. It has a harsh and almost bitter Taste, and draws the Chewer's Mouth almost close. Its sole Vertue is Diuretick, and its Admirers pretend it helps to relish the Palm Wine. 'Tis commonly eaten with Salt and Malagueta. We come next to give an Account of their Salt Works.

Dapper says, there are several at *Labbede*, *Anten*, and *Sinco*, which furnish the whole Country with Salt. In *November*, *December*, and *January*, they fill the Ditches with Water, and make Salt enough to work upon the whole Year. They easily refine it, for they boil it but once; after which it whitens and breaks of its own Accord. When 'tis boil'd, they put it up in small Cane Baskets, cover'd with green Leaves, (that the Heat of the Sun may not injure it) which harden it like Sugar-Loaves; but it loses this Firmness in excessive Heat. *Snoek* says, the Inhabitants get vast Riches by the boiling of Salt, especially in Time of Peace, for all the Inland Negroes are obliged to fetch it from the Shore, which makes it very dear, so that the meaner Sort are forced to use a saltish Herb instead on't. He tells us, that some Miles within Land, beyond *Ardea*, from whence most of the Slaves are brought, one, and sometimes two Slaves, are sold for a Handful of Salt. He says, some boil the salt Water so long in Coppers till it comes to Salt; but this is the most tedious and wasting Way, and is only practis'd where the Land is so high, that the Sea or salt Rivers can't overflow them. But where the Sea or River Water frequently overflows, they dig deep Pits to receive it; after which the freshest and finest Part of the Water is dry'd up by the Sun. The Soil here is saltish and nitrous, so that our Author observes, that a small Quantity of Water will make better Salt, and that quicker than a great deal.

Snoek gives the following general Account of the Gold Countries, where and how 'tis digged, with its several Species, and the Weights 'tis weighed by.

THE first Country that produceth Gold is *Dinkira*, 5 Days Journey within Land from *Elmina*, and above 10 from *Axim*, because of the Badness of the Roads. 'Tis but small and thinly inhabited; but the People have by their Valour so improv'd in Power, that they are honour'd by all the neighbour Nations, except *Asiante* and *Axim*, who are stronger. Besides their Mines, they get vast Treasures of Gold by Plunder or Commerce, in which they are abundantly more expert than other Negroes. The Countries of *Wassa*, *Encasse*, and *Juffer*, are subject to it, each of which produces some Gold, and border upon one another, and the last on *Commany*. Their own Gold, and what they brought from other Parts, satisfied the Demand of the whole Coast from *Axim* to *Zaconde*, during the *Commanian* Wars with the *Dutch* in about 1700. But since the Merchants don't travel farther than to *Chama*, *Commany*, *Elmina*, and *Cabocors*, so that the upper Coast is not extraordinarily supplied with Gold; for all the Mines in *Eguira*, *Adom*, *Abocroe*, and *Ancober*, which lie betwixt *Dinkira* and them, are not enough for all the upper Forts; so that in 1694, the *Brandenburghers* nor *Dutch* did not receive above two or three Marks of Gold in a Month, Trade was then so dull. He says, the Gold brought by the *Dinkirans* is fine, only 'tis too much mix'd with Fetichos, viz. Artificial Gold, compos'd of various Ingredients, and some of them odly shap'd. They cast them into any Form they please, in Moulds made of black heavy Earth. They frequently mix this artificial Gold with one Third, and sometimes half Silver and Copper, and *Europeans* must take it among the rest, otherwise the Negroes sometimes take back all their pure Gold. Some of their Fetichos are cast of Mountain Gold, without Alloy, which they generally keep to adorn themselves with,

unless they are obliged to part with them for Necessity, or when they are filled with the ponderous Earth above-mentioned, to impose on the Buyer. *Snoek* tells us, that *Dinkira* was lately destroyed by the King of *Asiante*, by this Means:

The Kings of *Dinkira* and *Asiante* having sent their Wives to compliment each other in Quality of Ambassadors, they were loaded by both with considerable Presents, but the King of *Dinkira* debauch'd one of them; upon which the King of *Asiante* vowing Revenge, he offer'd him several Hundred Marks of Gold to put it up; but the enrag'd Prince rais'd a great Army; and tho' the King of *Dinkira* dy'd in the mean time, he invaded his Country about the Beginning of the Year 1702, and defeated the *Dinkirans* in two Battles, wherein the Negroes say above 100000 Men were killed, and amongst them 30000 who came from *Akim* to the Assistance of the *Dinkirans*. They add, that the Plunder took up the *Asiantines* 15 Days time, and that the King's Booty alone amounted to several Thousand Marks of Gold.

Snoek says, the second Gold Country is *Acanny*, whose Inhabitants were fam'd for great Traders long before the *Dinkirans*, and brought the Gold of *Asiante* and *Akim*, with some of their own, hither to Market; and that which they sold was always so fine, that the Negroes still call the best Gold *Acanny-Sica*, or *Acanny* Gold. They us'd to carry their Goods in Company with the Inhabitants of *Cabesterra*, to *Elmina*, *Cabocors*, *Mouree*, *Annamabo*, *Cormantyn*, and as far as the *English* Village of *Simpa*. Their Gold was never mix'd with Fetiches; but they were very humourfome in Dealing, tho' not so peevish and positive as those of *Dinkira*. They fell out with the *Dinkirans*, who gave them such a total Defeat, that all their Leading-Men, and many of the inferior Sort, were killed and taken Prisoners, and the rest were forced to part with all they had to redeem those that were in Slavery.

The 3d he mentions is *Akim*, whose Gold, which he says is the finest of any that is carried from the Coast, is easily distinguished by its deep Colour. Those of *Acra* took off the greatest Part of this Metal when our Author was here, and sold it again

again very pure, without Fetiches or Kakraas. The Natives say, that very few know the Extent of this Country within Land. *Snoek* tells us, that it had formerly a King, who had Command of the whole Country; but the Prince in his Time had only a Part on't; for the principal Men fearing he would prove a Tyrant, took Part of the Administration into their own Hands, which causes Divisions among the People, that hinders them from preying on their Neighbours.

To these Countries he adds *Afiante*, which he says yields more Gold than *Dinkira*, *Ananse* which lies betwixt both, and *Awine* another Gold Country, which he says is the first on the *Gold Coast*, and far above *Axim*. He tells us, that the Inhabitants of *Awine* us'd to bring down large Quantities of fine Gold, and were the fairest Dealers of all the Negroes, till their Country was subdued by the *Dinkirans*, who easily reduc'd them, because they were divided. He adds, that the Negroes keep their Mines sacred, and won't suffer *Europeans* to come near them.

Dapper gives us this Account of the particular Places where Gold is found.

He says, 'tis not only found in the Mountains, but sometimes the Sea throws it up upon the Shore, where the Women go for it at low Water. He tells us, that the Mines are scarce known by the common People, and only wrought by the Slaves of the several Kings, who trade with it to the *Dutch* by other Negroes. Some of their Rivers pass with a strong Current through the Mines, and carry away small Pieces of Gold, which sinking with their own Weight, in Places where there are Waterfalls, the Negroes dive with a Bowl in their Hands, which they fill with whatever they can scrape up at the Bottom, and after they are come up they wash the Dirt from it. Sometimes they find Bits as big as a Bean, and at others only small Dust, which is hard to separate from the Sand; but they often dive several Days successively without finding any thing. These Divers are frequent in the Rivers of *Atzin* and *Igwira*. Most Travellers think there's no Gold for 30 Leagues above the Coast to the N. nor beyond *Sinco* and *Pissi* towards the E. because there's none

at *Soco*, which is but 3 or 4 Days Journey from the Shore, nor beyond *Ningo*. Near *Little Commendo* there's a Hill on the Coast, from whence the Inhabitants had abundance of Gold in 1622. But the Negroes being ignorant how to work the Mines, the Workmen were often killed or hurt, so that the King of *Guaffo* caus'd it to be shut up. They are so jealous of Strangers coming to their Mines, that they invent a great many Stories to terrify them, and say they hear a Noise, and often see Apparitions, which hurt the Miners; but our Author observes, they had better tell the Truth, by saying, that a great Number of Slaves die at the Mines by the Stench and Infection of the Air, and by hard Labour, and especially by the Earth, which falls in when they open the Mines, and that the most Gold they generally get of a Day is not worth above two or three Lewis d'Ors. *Snoek* says, the best Gold is found about some particular Hills, where the Negroes dig Pits, and separate it from the Earth that sticks to it; and that when the Women visit the Shores for it, they go naked, except a Cloth about their Middles, with Troughs, in which they wash the Earth and Sand from the Gold; but he thinks they lose a great deal for want of Skill to separate it from the Ore; and that they leave large Quantities of pure Gold behind, because they dig at Random, without the least Knowledge of the Veins of the Mines. We come next to treat of its several Sorts and Qualities.

Dapper says, the best is that which is bought just as it comes out of the Mines, without being either wrought or melted, and that some Mines yield better than others. He reckons the Gold of *Atzin* and *Adom* finest, because the Negroes melt it without Adulteration. The *Acanists* trade only in Cast Gold, which they give out for very good; but if Foreigners be not aware, they'll give Bracelets of Copper and Silver gilt over. He adds, that the Gold of *Acara* is reckon'd the best in all the Coast, and that the Bracelets which are sold there are of pure massy Gold. *Snoek* says, that call'd Gold Dust is almost as fine as Flower, and the best as well as dearest. The other Sort, which is call'd Mountain Gold, is in Pieces from the Weight of a Farthing to 20 or 30 Guineas, and the Negroes pretend that

Sometimes they find Pieces as heavy as 100 or 200 Guineas. When melted, it touches better than Dust Gold; but the Multitude of small Stones which always stick to it, occasion a great Loss in the Melting, for which Reason the other is most valued. There are several Sorts of false Gold: 1. That which is mix'd with Silver or Copper, and cast into Fetiches formerly mentioned, which the Negroes cut into small Bits worth about a Halfpenny, and lay out at Market for Necessaries; and the Women know them so well at first Sight, that they never mistake their Value, and they pay them to each other by Tale. They are called *Kakeraas*. The Negroes make vast Numbers of them; and tho' the Gold is but little worth, and will yield but 40 s. an Ounce in Europe, yet 'tis current over all the Coast, and with it the Dutch pay their Garrisons their Subsistence-Money, besides what they spend in the Country, and the large Quantities which the French and Portuguese Annually send to Europe.

The Negroes are subtle Artists in Counterfeiting or Sophisticating Gold, which Dapper says they practise chiefly upon Bracelets, or the small Pieces of Money above-mentioned, which are no bigger than a Pin's Head, squar'd and made flat with a Mallet. With these, he says, they mix yellow Copper so nicely, that when they come to be coin'd, 'tis not known till after they have been current a while, which makes them turn pale; but he says, the only Method to try them upon the Spot is Aqua Fortis. The Portuguese first taught 'em to melt Gold; but then they learn'd to mix too much red Copper and Silver with it, to which the People of *Fantin* are especially subject. They also gild Silver and Copper on both Sides, perhaps the Thickness of a Knife, which always keeps Colour, so that the Cheat can't be discover'd without a Graving Tool. *Snoek* says, the common false Mountain Gold is a Mixture of Silver, Copper, and Gold, extreme high colour'd, to facilitate the Cheat. They also tinge the Powder of Coral and the Filings of Copper so artificially, that there's no distinguishing them but by the Weight from Gold Dust, till in a Month or two when they lose their Lustre. If the Pieces be large, Europeans discover the False from the True by cutting

them quite thro' with a Knife. If they are small like Mountain Gold, they beat them with a Hammer on a Stone, when, if they are made of Coral, they crumble into small Bits; and if otherwise, they try them with a Knife; but the only Way by which they distinguish small Bits and Dust Gold is by putting them into a Copper Basen, winnowing them with the Fingers, and blowing very strongly, so that the false Gold flies away, and the true falls into the Basen; but our Author ridicules the Experiment of Aqua Fortis, mentioned by Dapper. We shall refer to Dapper and *Snoek* for their Gold Coins and Weights, and only add, that their Weights and Scales are of Copper, round and hollow like an Orange-Peel; but that the Peasants who live far within Land use Wooden Scales, and certain black and red Beans for the Weights, which they know how to adjust to the European Weights; and that their Payments, if the Sum be considerable, are made by Weight, otherwise in the small Money of the Country above-mentioned, which they learn'd of the Portuguese, before whose Time they traded solely by Barter. Dapper says, that the Inland Negroes have no Money at all, but sell the Gold as it comes rough out of the Mines, because they know not how to cast it; and that they have a Coin at *Accara* which consists of small Pieces of Iron about the Length of one's Finger, in Form of a Cross, or a Nail without a Head, and mark'd with a Half-Moon.

We come next to give an Account of their Beasts, of which they have both Wild and Tame in Abundance, particularly Elephants, and as they say white Tygers and Leopards, who do no Mischief to Men, but commonly fall upon Cattle. They have Hares, Stags and Hinds, with Horns like those of Goats. Their Dogs are like ours, and have commonly sharp Noses, Skins that are black or white, red or spotted, and slender Legs and Feet; but they cannot bark. The Negroes who eat them lead them to Markets for Sale by two and two in a String, give a Sheep in Exchange for a large one, and the first Present that a Gentleman makes to his Wife is a Dog. The Negroes have a great Value for European Dogs, and think that their Barking is Speaking. They are mighty fond of Cats, because

because they are much infested with Rats and Mice; but they eat their Flesh. Their Beeves are like ours, but not half so large. 'Tis hard to bring up their Calves, and they are but sorry Meat, because the Soil here is so dry, that their Cows give little or no Milk. They have Hogs, which the *Portuguese* first brought hither. They are smaller than ours, and very tender Meat. They have also Goats, Wild-Boars, and Porcupines, but no Horses; and when *Europeans* give them any, they kill and eat them. They have Civet-Cats, Apes and Monkeys, some of which have black Heads, white Beards, spotted Skins, white Bellies, black Tails, and their Backs streak'd with Black. There are others which have white Noses, and the Negroes lay Traps for them on the Trees. *Snoek* says, that *Dinkira*, *Ascante*, *Akim*, and other Inland Countries, have abundance of Horn'd Cattle; but they only send a few Bulls and Cows to the Coast. Great Quantities are also bred at *Axim*, *Pocquesou*, and *Elmina*, and especially at *Acra*, where they have an Opportunity to bring them from the Countries of *Aquamboe* and *Lampi*. In all other Places on the *Gold Coast* there are only Bulls and Cows, for the Negroes know not how to geld Bullocks. There's pretty good Pasture at *Axim*, *Pocquesou*, and *Acra*; but at *Elmina* and Parts adjacent the Cattle are always dry and lean. This is the only Place where Cows are milk'd. *Snoek* observes, that all Animals here, tho' large, are very light, so that a Cow at full Growth does not weigh above two Hundred and a half, tho' by her Bulk she would be thought to weigh one Half more, which he ascribes to their sorry Food. But tho' their Beef is of an unpleasant Taste, yet one of them costs 12 *l*. They have great Numbers of Sheep all over the Coast, but small and hairy instead of Wool; and tho' their Flesh is very dry, yet the Price of one of them is about 27 *s*. Our Author prefers a gelt young Ram, fatten'd with fry'd Barley-Meal, before their Mutton. He says, their Goats are very small, but much fatter and more fleshy than their Sheep, so that some Men prefer the former, especially the Male ones, which gelt young, soon grow bigger, and very fat. The Price of a full grown Goat is about 12 *s*. He tells us, that the Negroes account for the rank Smell of

their Goats thus: They pretend, that in the Beginning of the World, the He-Goats perceiving a certain Goddess used to anoint her self with sweet Ointment and Oil, desired her to anoint them with the same; but instead of that, she besmear'd them with stinking Ointment; and that the Goats believing it to be the same, fly to Shelter whenever it rains, lest the Water should wash it off. *Snoek* says, they have great Numbers of Horses within Land, tho' none on the Coast. They are about the Size of the Northern Horses, but not near so well shap'd nor mettlesome. Their Heads and Necks, which they always carry downwards, are like those of an Ass. They go as if they were falling, won't stir without Blows, and are so low, that a tall Rider may touch the Ground with his Feet. They have Asses, which are somewhat higher and handsomer in their Kind than the Horses, and the Negroes use them only to ride on; but they don't live long, which *Snoek* ascribes to their Want of good Feeding. He says, those Hogs which the Negroes breed are very sorry Meat; yet one of 90 Pound Weight yields 3 *l*. but that those fatten'd at *Fida* by the *Europeans* prove better tasted and firmer than ours. *European* Dogs alter here so strangely in Process of Time, that their Ears grow long and stiff like Foxes, to whose Colour they also encline, and in three or four Litters their Barking turns into a Howl. He observes, that Cats are not subject to this Change, and that the Negroes never eat them but in Necessity.

Snoek gives the following Account of their Wild Beasts.

He says, their Elephants are about 12 Foot high, and much less than those in the *East-Indies*, but resemble them in their Nature and Shape, are very prejudicial to Fruit-Trees, and eat some of their Fig-Trees, Fruit and Stem. The Negroes say, they never offer any Violence to People they meet in the Woods, unless shot at and miss'd, yet follow Men into the Water. *Ante* abounds with them, especially the Inland Country, and some come daily to the Shore among the Forts, where they do a great deal of Mischief. There are some also betwixt *Axim* and *Acra*, especially in the Country

try of *Fetu*, and many are killed every Year about *Acra*; but there are none in *Ardra* and *Fida*. Our Author proves, that Elephants do not shed their Teeth, as some have asserted. He says, they have a few Bufflers, whose Flesh is very good Meat, and Tygers of 4 or 5 Sorts, which differ both in Size and Spots; but they are all so fierce, that they spare neither Man nor Beast, and the Negroes distinguish them by several Names. The young ones may be brought up as tame as Dogs; but their savage Nature returns at some Time or other. They have Jackals, which are most common about *Acra* and *Aquamboe*, and devour whatever they meet with. They used to come to the Dutch Forts at *Acra* to steal their Hogs and Sheep, till they were destroyed by Muskets loaded for the Purpose, and baited with Mutton. All their Rivers are full of dark brown Crocodiles, especially at *Lama* and *Boutry*. The Negroes make Caps of their Skin as hard as Bone. They have few Wild Boars, and those not near so wild as in *Europe*; but they are delicious tender Meat, and their Fat is extraordinary fine. There are Drovers of Harts all along the Coast, especially at *Ante* and *Acra*. The Negroes say, they always detach one of their Number before to watch whether any Man be near. There are about 20 Sorts of them, some as large as small Cows, others no bigger than Sheep, Cats, &c. most of which are red, with a black List on the Back, and some of them red streak'd with white. All of them are good to eat, but especially two Sorts, one of a pale Mouse Colour, and another red Sort not above half so big, which are both extraordinary beautiful, with small black Horns, and such little Legs, that some of them are no bigger than the small End of a Tobacco-Pipe; but they are so swift and nimble, that the Negroes call them the King of Harts. There's another Sort about 4 Foot long, of a slender Shape, with long Feet, Head and Ears, and of an Orange Colour streak'd with White. They have abundance of Hares like ours at *Apam*, *Acra*, and *Fida*, and Porcupines which grow to the Height of about two Foot, and bite very sharp. Their Quills are about two Spans long, and the Negroes and some Whites count its Flesh very nice Food. There's another Sort

of Creatures like Hedgehogs, but they cannot roll as they do. *Snoek* gives us the Draught of another Creature, which the Negroes call *Potto*, and the *Europeans* Sluggard, because it takes up a whole Day in advancing 10 Steps forward. Some say, that when he climbs a Tree, he devours all the Fruit and Leaves before he comes down; and that tho' he is fat and in very good Case when he descends, yet he grows as lank as ever in the Time that he is reaching to another Tree; so that sometimes he dies with Hunger if the Trees be far from one another, and he meets with nothing else in his Way. *Snoek* thinks it the ugliest Creature in the whole Creation. He tells us, that its fore Feet are like Hands, and the Head unproportionably large. Some of them, while young, are of a pale Mouse Colour; and when old, red, and cover'd with a Sort of Hair as thick set as Flocks of Wool. There's another Sort of Beasts which lurk in the Corn-Fields like Rats, and do much Mischief. They are called Wild Rats, and bigger than Cats. The Negroes and some *Europeans* count their Flesh a Dainty; and our Author says, they are very fat and tender, and have nothing but their ugly Name and Shape that is possible to create the least Aversion; so that some cut off the Head, Feet, and Tail, before they bring it to Table. There's another Sort of Wild Rats, most common at *Axim*. They are as long as the former, but very slender, and called *Boutees*. Very few besides the Negroes eat them. They do a great deal of Damage to the Stores of Millet and Rice, and make such Havock, besides what they eat and carry off, that they spoil more sow'd Corn in one Night, than 100 House-Rats. There are three Sorts of Wild Cats, besides the Civet ones, and the latter are bought when young for about 8 s. These are very difficult to bring up. Their Food is Pap, boil'd or made of Millet, with a little Flesh or Fish. They yield Civet when very young, of which that of the Males is best, because the Females can't avoid pissing into the Civet-Bag, which spoils it. Their other Wild Cats are spotted like Tygers, are as fierce, and very mischievous to the Poultry. They have Mice which yield a musky Scent too; but they have no Bags, so that our Author thinks the

The Odour proceeds from the Skin. There's another small Four-footed Beast, which the Negroes call *Berbe*, and the *Europeans* Wine-bibber, because 'tis greedy of Palm Wine. 'Tis almost like a Cat, only the Snout is sharper, the Body smaller, and spotted like the Civet-Cats. There's a second Sort not much bigger than a House-Rat, of a red and grey Colour, mix'd with small white Specks in the Hair, the Tail being of long Hair speckled after the same Manner, and about 3 Fingers broad. These are also called Wine-bibbers; but they better deserve the Name of Squirrels. There's a 3d Sort, which at full Growth are about as big again, and red. 'Tis very mischievous, bites violently, and flies at Man and Beast. 'Tis called *Kokeboe*, and is a great Enemy to the Poultry. There's an amphibious Animal called *Leguaen*, which lives both in Water and on Land. 'Tis shap'd almost like a Crocodile, is seldom above 4 Foot long, and the Body black, speckled, with round Eyes, and a very tender Skin. He is an Enemy to the Poultry only, amongst which he sometimes makes a great Slaughter. Several *Europeans* eat their Flesh, and all agree that 'tis much finer Meat than Fowls. There's another Animal that keeps in the Woods: Its Body is long and slender, with a long Tail, and a hairy Sort of Brush at the End on't. 'Tis of a pale Colour, inclining to brown, and the Hair is long and brown. The Negroes call him *Arompo* or Man-eater, because he opens Graves for dead Corps. The Negroes say, that when he has dug one up, he does not presently fall on't, but goes round it several times, to signify, as they pretend, the Unlawfulness of seizing another Man's Goods, without first doing something, or giving himself some Trouble upon that Account; but *Snoek* thinks 'tis rather to see if there be any Man near, like to force his Prey from him. He says, here are above 100000 Apes, of a great many various Species, the chief of which are the common Sort, called *Smitten*, of a pale Mouse Colour, which grow to a wonderful Size, so that some are 5 Foot long, and not much less than a Man. They are very mischievous, and so bold, that they will attack a Man. There's a great Number of them behind the *English* Fort at *Wimba*. Some of the Negroes say they can

speak, but won't for fear of being set to work. These Apes are very ugly, and the next Sort is like them, but they are not a quarter so big, and they will learn whatever they are taught. There's a 3d Sort, which are very beautiful, and generally grow to the Height of two Foot. Their Hair is black, and above a Finger's Length, and they have a long white Beard, so that they are called Bearded little Men. Of their Skins are made the Caps of the *Tie-Ties*, who are the King's publick Cryers. These Monkeys are sold for 18 or 20 s. apiece. There are two or three other Sorts of Monkeys, each alike handsome, but not above half so big as the former. They have short Hair, of a mix'd Colour, partaking of grey, black, white, and red, and for most Part they have a white Breast and Beard. There are about 20 Sorts of the smaller Apes, all which are very fine, but too tender to bring into *Europe*. They are all very thievish. When they steal Millet, they take one or two Stalks in each Paw, as much under their fore Legs, two or three in their Mouths, and march away leaping on their hind Legs. If they are pursued, they hold fast that in their Mouths, but throw away the rest, that it may not clog their Flight. They are also so nice, that they narrowly examine every Stalk of Millet they pluck, and if they don't like it, pull another. They have Thousands of Lizards, especially under the Walls of the Forts, whither they come for Spiders, Worms, Flies, and such Food. There are several Kinds of them. Some of the largest have a Tail about a Foot long, and a Hand broad, of a dark Colour, and half their Head red. The rest are about the same Size, and differ only in Colour. They are all of them extremely ugly, except one Sort, which is green, and about half as big as the other, and another Sort called *Salamanders*, one half less than the last. They are of a grey Colour, and clear the Chambers from small Vermine. There are two other small Animals, the one of a green Colour speckled with grey, and the other a Mixture of green, Gold Colour, and grey, together. There are Camelions, which we have formerly described, and refer the Curious for a farther Account of them to *Cornelius Bruyn's Travels into Asia*, where he describes those of *Smyrna*; only *Snoek* ob-

serves the following Particulars wherein these differ from others. He says, they live 4 Years, and have been often brought alive into *Europe*. They do not open their Mouths and loll out their Tongues to catch Flies as the rest; but he observes, that they agree in all other Particulars. He adds, that their Eggs are cover'd with a thick pliable Flesh like Lizards, Snakes, and Tortoises, without any hard Shell, like Birds Eggs. We come next to their Fowl and Birds.

Dapper says, the *Portuguese* of the Isle of *St. Thomas* bring Pullets to this Coast, which multiply exceedingly. They eat a great deal of Millet, and grow as fat as Capons, but are much smaller, and their Hens Eggs are no bigger than those of Pigeons, which the *Portuguese* do also bring hither; but they don't thrive so well. *Snoek* says, here are also Ducks and Turkeys, but the latter are only in the Hands of the *Dutch*, for the Negroes have none. Cocks and Hens are so Plenty all over this Coast in Time of Peace, that four may be bought for 4s. 6d. but so scarce in War-time, that two can't be purchased for that Price. At *Axim* they are fat and good, tho' small about *Elmina* and other Places, and contain so little Flesh, that three are not enough for a good Stomach. *Snoek* says, that Ducks have not been long known on the Coast, and cannot tell from what Country they were brought hither; but he observes, they are not like those of *Europe*, being half as big again, and of another Colour, which is commonly white, or black or white, and brown mixed. The Drakes have a large red Knob on their Bills, almost like Turkeys; but it does not hang so loose, and is very like a Cherry. The Ducks spend best while young, for when old they are tough and insipid. He adds, that there's a great Number of Pigeons at some of the Forts, which are all of the common Species of Wild Doves, and are pretty good Food. *Dapper* says, the *Dutch* brought Geese hither, but they don't multiply, and are very dear. Tho' there's free Liberty for Fowling or Bird catching, yet few mind the Sport, so that there's abundance of Birds here, such as blue Parrots, which, if taught while young, talk better than the great ones, but not so well as the green Parrots of *Brasil*. There's another Sort of small green Parrots, with a long

Tail, and speckled with small Spots of an Orange Colour, and another larger Sort with red Feathers, a black Tail, and a Spot of the same Colour upon their Bills. There are other small Birds like our yellow Chaffinches, which build their Nests in the Branches of Trees, for fear of Serpents and the like Vermine. There's another Sort of small Chaffinches that haunt the Millet-Fields; and when the Negroes catch them, they eat them alive, Feathers and all. There are also Sparrows and other small Birds. Amongst those of *Prev*, there's one mischievous Sort with Heads like Turkey-Cocks, and Bodies like Eagles. The Negroes are so afraid of them, that they carry them Victuals to the Tops of their Mountains. They are always wallowing in Dung, and smell at a Distance as bad as common Shores. Here are also a few Woodcocks, Turtles with black Streaks round their Necks, and Pheasants like ours; but their Feathers are of a different Colour, and spotted with a bright blue and white. Their Tail is short, and their Flesh is not so good as that of Pullets. They have a Bird called *Pittoir*, which is reckoned a Bird of Augury. There are also Cranes, Herons, Storks, Peacocks, spotted Crows, and several other Sorts of Birds, which very much resemble ours, except some little Difference in the Feet, Head, or Feathers. *Snoek* says, there are vast Numbers of Pheasants about *Acra*, *Aquamboe*, and *Apam*. They are about the Size of a Hen, have a Sky-colour'd Ring about their Necks, which is about two Fingers broad, and have a fine black Tuft on their Heads. In short, our Author so commends their Beauty, that he thinks them the most charming Product of *Guinea* next to its Gold. There's one Sort he says called the *Fidase* Pheasant, because most common in that Country, tho' they are sometimes caught on this Coast. 'Tis almost as big as the former, but not near so beautiful. Its Body is grey and white, speckled with blue. Its Head is bald, and cover'd with a hard Skin all over knotty, and on each Side of its Bill, which is yellow, there grows a red Jollop. There's a vast Number of Partridges all over the Coast, especially at *Fida*, which, when in Season, are very good Food. They have delicate Wild Ducks, but smaller than ours. There are two Sorts of them,

one like other Ducks in Shape and Size, but of such a beautiful green Colour, with fine red Bills and Feet, that our Author, who saw two of them just shot, says he would have given 10*l*. for them if they had been alive. But he observes, that none of this Species have been seen here before or since. The 2d Sort is shaped like the former, his Feet and Bill are yellow, and his Body adorned with an equal Mixture of green and grey, but not near so fine as the former. There are two or three Species of Turtles; the first are small, of a bay Colour, and are tenderer Food than the second, which are of a much brighter Colour. The 3d Sort are as tough and large as the others, of a fine green, with yellow Bills and Feet, a few red Feathers, and large white speckled Rings round their Eyes, some of which are intermix'd with blue. Thousands of the two last Sorts of Turtles harbour about a large Rock above the Dutch Fort at *Axim*; but the same is so cover'd with Underwoods, that 'tis hard to come at them. They roost there in the Evening, and in the Morning fly abroad for Food. There are Crooked Bills and several Sorts of Snipes here, some of which prove good Food, but the most are tough, and little worth. Besides Multitudes of other great and small Birds which are eatable, there are others only remarkable for their Beauty and Rarity; as, 1. Those called Crown Birds, of which there are several in *Fida* and *Ardra*, and some about *Acra*. Their Legs and Body are about the Size of a Stork. Their Heads are adorned with a yellowish Tuft, intermixed with speckled Feathers, strutting like Hogs Bristles. Their Feathers are for most Part black, and their Wings full of large red, yellow, white, and black Quills. Their Heads are beautify'd with purple Spots half a Thumb's Breadth on each Side, and the fore Part of their Heads is thick set with black downy Feathers, that at a Distance look like Velvet. *Snook* adds, that these Birds are much esteemed in *Europe*; but that there's nothing rare in them besides their Head and Neck. 2. Another Sort of Birds which are most beautiful and rare, and only to be met with at *Apam*, where he supposes are great Numbers of them. They are like a Parrot, especially in the Bill, which is dark yellow:

The Breast and Belly is of a fine green, and the upper Part pleasantly intermixed with a grey, red, Sky Colour, and deep Blue. The Head, Neck and Tail, are all green: The Feathers rise on his Head like a Comb, and large Eyes, with two of the finest red Rays above and below that can be imagined. Upon the whole, our Author concludes, that this Bird is not to be matched for Beauty; but he does not tell us its Name. Here are blue and white Herons, which several eat, and an unknown Bird called *Portuguese*, which is as big in the Body as a Goose, mostly white, and some eat it. They have Eagles like those in *Europe*, and ravenous Birds on the Coast like Falcons, which, tho' little bigger than Doves, carry the largest Chickens off the Ground. There are also Kites, which steal Fish and Flesh as well as Fowl, and often seize the former in the Hands of the Market-Women. There's a fine Fowl that harbours near their Lakes and Rivers, which is about as large as a Chicken, the upper Part of the Body black or brown, speckled with white, and the under deep yellow or red. It has also a Tuft of speckled Feathers rising like a Comb, and a very thick and long Bill in Proportion to his Body. They have also Crown Birds twice as fine as those of *Fida*, of green, red, blue, Sky Colour, brown, black, white, and other Colours. They have a long Tail, from whence the Negroes pull the Feathers they wear on their Heads. They are called Crown Birds, because some have a beautiful Blue, and others a Gold Colour Tuft, on their Heads. He says, *M. Focquenbrog* mistakes these Birds for Peacocks. He adds, there's another ugly Bird, which he thinks is not to be matched in the whole World. The Negroes call it *Pokkoe*. 'Tis about the Size of a Goose, with very long broad Wings, dark coloured Feathers, and the under Part of the Body overspread with Ash-colour'd Plumes, very like Hair. It has a Maw under the Neck about a Span long, and as thick as a Man's Arm, that looks like a red Skin, in which he hoards his Food. Its Neck, which is pretty long, and the red Knob in the Nape, is furnished with Feathers as well as the under Part of the Body. The Head is much too large for its Body, and very bald, except a few Hairs. The Eyes are large and black, and the Bill

extraordinary thick and long. It devours as much Fish at once as would suffice 4 Men, catches them when thrown to it very nimbly, and throws them down whole into its Maw, and swallows whole Rats. When 'tis set upon by Dogs, &c. it pecks and snaps with its Bill. *Snoek* describes another Bird of the like Size, but a longer Neck, which, when it stretches and stands upright, is much higher than a Man. Its Body is intermixed with black, white, red, sky, and other Colours, and his Eyes are large and yellow. Our Author does not tell us its Name, nor of these other Birds on this Coast, *viz.* one which devours Grain, and has a long sharp Bill, yellow and light blue Feathers, a black Semi-circle about the Neck, a large Tail, composed of yellow, blue, and black Feathers, and a few Feathers on its Head. 2. Another of the same Shape and Species, only its Bill is thick, short, and black. The Feet and under Part of the Body are also black, but its Back yellow. 3. One like the first, only it has some grey and yellow Feathers, a sharp Bill, and very long Feet and Claws, in Proportion to its Size. 4. Another beautiful Bird, but half so big as the former, and shaped like a Sparrow. It has a black Head and Breast, grey Wings and Feet, and the rest of the Body of a bright red. 5. One which exceeds all the rest in Beauty. It harbours about the Rivers, and lives upon the small Fish. The Tuft on its Head, the Wings and Back, are blue, enclining to a Sky Colour, as are also the Feathers of its Neck, which are pretty long. The Breast is of a dark yellow, mixed with blue and red Feathers, and the Feet and Bill of a bright red, very thick and long. 6. Another Granivorous Bird: Its Breast, the Belly and Neck, are of a reddish yellow, the Head is entirely black, except a beautiful yellow Spot on the fore Part, the Back and Wings are black, and the Tail is mixed with black, yellow, and red Feathers. 7. One as big again as the former: Its Breast and Belly are of a fine red, the Back, Wings and Tail, black, and the upper Part of his Head of a bright yellow. There are two small Sorts of Parochites or Sparrows, different from the rest, which are like those of *Europe*. The whole Coast, especially the lower Part, abounds with them. They are of a

green Colour, mixed with a fine red, and some of them have a few yellow and black Feathers. Their Bill is red and crooked. He adds, that they are very beautiful, and that the *Dutch* send good Numbers of them to *Holland*, where they yield a good Price; yet most of them frequently die in the Passage, tho' a certain Author says they live 30, 40, or more Years. They generally buy a Dozen of them in *Guinea* for a Rixdollar. *Snoek* observes, that tho' there are Parrots all over the Coast, yet most of them come from Countries far within Land; and that those of *Benin*, *Calbary*, and *Cape Lopez*, are most valued, because far fetched, tho' they are older, and not so easily taught as those caught on the Coast. He tells us, that they are generally blue, and that this Sort is not so dear in *Holland* as on the Coast, where they often cost from 3 to 5 *l.* apiece. He concludes his Account of their Birds with one whose Feathers are spotted with little Specks, which the Negroes represent like Stars. It has a hollow piercing Voice, which they compare to the Lowing of a Bull; and they were formerly so superstitious, that when they heard it on the Left Hand, they put a Stop to their Journies; but now they are wiser, except here and there an extraordinary Bigot. Our Author sent over Draughts of most of these Birds in their proper Shapes, Size and Colours, for which we refer the Curious to himself; but he takes Notice, that all hitherto mentioned are not a fifth Part of what he observed in this Country, besides those which he never saw.

We come next to their Reptiles. *Dapper* says, the Heat of the Country breeds Swarms of Reptiles, Flies, and other Sorts of Insects, particularly great black Ants, which earth themselves like Moles, and destroy the Bee-hives. There are also Vipers, and great and small Serpents, whose ordinary Size is about 20 Hands Breadth long, and 5 broad. There are also Land-Crabs, which dig into the Ground like Moles, are of a purple Colour, and have a very tender Flesh. Besides, there's a great Multitude of Locusts, which rise sometimes from the Heart of *Africa*, and overspread the Coast, consuming all the Greens, and causing a great Famine, because they have so much of their Land uncultivated. *Snoek* says, Toads

Toads and Frogs are as numerous here as in *Europe*, the latter of the same Size, but some of the former much larger; and our Author says, he saw some at the *English Village Adja*, betwixt *Moure* and *Cormantyn*, where they are very numerous, and as broad as a common Table-Plate. Here are also some Land-Tortoises, and great Numbers and Variety of Snakes, some of which are monstrous large, and 20 Foot long, so that they devour Men and Beasts. Most of them are venomous, especially one Sort, which is scarce a Yard long, two Spans thick, and spotted with white, black, and yellow. These Snakes creep into People's Houses and Chambers, and there are some with two Heads. He takes Notice of one Sort 14 Foot long, with two Claws within two Foot of his Tail, which helps them in their March. It has a Head and Row of Teeth like a Pike. There's another Snake he says about 5 Foot long, as thick as a Man's Arm, and streak'd with black, brown, yellow, and white. Its Head is very broad and flat. It injures neither Man or Beast, otherwise than by a small Horn or Tooth, which irregularly from the upper Jaw strikes thro' its Nose, and is white, hard, and sharp like an Awl. The Negroes going bare-foot, often tread on it unawares, because when its Belly is full, it falls into such a sound Sleep, that no Noise can awake it, so that 'tis easily taken or killed. There are also large Scorpions, some as big as small Lobsters, and furnished with such Claws and Feet, and their Bodies cover'd all over with long Hair. Some of them have a small Bladder full of Poison, of half a Finger's Breadth, at the End of their Tails, which they spurt out when they strike either Man or Beast, and is mortal. There are also Multitudes of Millipedes or Hoglice, which the *Portuguese* call *Centepees*, and carry a Sting that occasions a very sharp Pain for 3 or 4 Hours, and then ceases. They infest all the Ports. The longest of them are about a Span. They are flat and red like other Worms, and have two small Horns or Claws, with which they strike. They have about 30, or 40 Feet on each Side of their Bodies. They have vast Numbers of Bees, Crickets, Caterpillars, Grasshoppers, and above 20 Sorts of Worms, Ants, and Beetles. They have vast Quantities of excellent Ho-

ney and Wax, especially about *Rio de Gabon*, *Cape Lopez*, and farther in the Gulph of *Guinea*. Their Ants, if we may believe *Snoek*, make Nests twice a Man's Height, of the Earth which they turn up in Fields and Hills, besides other large ones which they build in high Trees. They come sometimes in such Swarms to their Forts and Chambers on the Coast, that they frequently oblige the People to rise out of their Beds in the Night; for they are so rapacious, that no Animal can stand before them. They often fall on live Sheep, Chicken, and other Fowls, and leave nothing behind but Skeletons. They surround a Rat till they are strong enough to carry him off; and when they are too weak, they fetch a greater Force in a Moment, and then march off with their Prey, assisting one another in the Carriage. These Pismires are great and small, white, black, and red, and the Sting of the latter is more enflaming and painful than that of the Millipedes. The White are transparent like Glass, and in one Night eat thro' a thick Wooden Chest of Goods. *M. Focquenbrog* says, these Ants have a King as large as a Crey-Fish; but this our Author dares not affirm.

We come next to treat of their Fish, with which we shall conclude the Natural History of this Country. *Snoek* says, the Sea and Rivers seem to contest which shall produce the best. The former abounds with, 1. That call'd the *Brazilian Cod*, as large as our common Cod, but more fat and delicate. 2. Great and small Jacks or Pikes, which are fat and good in their Season, and not so hairy as in *Holland*. 3. Plaice and Flounders; the first appear seldom, but the second are very Plenty, but not so thick and good as those in *Holland*, nor of the same Shape. 4. Those called *Pisie Pamphers*, a small flat Fish, which are more delicate than all the rest on the Coast. 5. Another flat Sort, but rounder, distinguished by the obscene Name of C—Coverer. 6. Half-Koords, Corcoades, Giltheads, and other large Fish, as black and white Carabins, which are cheap and good Food for the common People. 7. Great Plenty of three or four Sorts of Bream, two of which are very fat and delicate, and commonly called *Jacob Evertzen end Roojeud*. 8. A middle-siz'd Fish, called Flat-Noses, from their flat

Snouts, in Taste like our Haddock. 9. A Sort much less, which are a kind of Pouts, called by the *Dutch*, *Baardmannetjes*, or little Bearded-Men, from Hairs at their Chops like a Beard. 10. Some Mackarel, and vast Shoals of the Saffer or King's-Fish, as the *Dutch* call them, which taste like Eels, and in their Season are very fat and good. When gutted and dry'd, they are eaten instead of Salmon. 11. A small Fish called *Aboes*, like our Trouts, but much firmer and more delicate, and they are taken by Thousands. 12. Plenty of good Ray or Thornback, great and small. 13. Extraordinary Dabs and Soles, the latter exceeding those in *Holland*. 14. Lobsters, Crabs, Shrimps, and Prawns, with Thousands of two Sorts of Sprats, great and small, which are very fat when in Season, but the former stringy and not much esteemed; yet the last are very good, especially if pickled or dry'd like Herrings, by which Ways they Yearly preserve great Quantities.

As for their River Fish, there are three Sorts, besides those which come out of the Sea; 1. *Carmou*, a white Fish, the largest of which are about three quarters of a Yard long, as thick as a Man's Arm, and very delicious, but a little too fat and oily. 2. Mulletts like the former, only they are less, and have not so thick a Head, but they are full as good. 3. A Fish called *Bataria*, the largest of which are pretty good, if they do not taste muddy. Some have taken them for Pearch; but *Snoek* says, they don't resemble them. He observes, that a Man may make a good Meal here on Fish for about 6*d*. and sometimes for half the Price, according to the Course of the Market; but in Winter, when commonly there's no Fish, the Poor are almost starv'd. He adds, that there are Sword-Fish on the Coast, and others called by the *Dutch* *Noord-Kapers* or Northern Capers, which in the Prime of the Fishing Season come towards the Shore, and frighten away all the Fish. They are large and unweildy like Whales, and about 40 Foot long. They swim for most Part on the Surface of the Water, with a young one or two near them, which springing to the Top in Imitation of the Dam, mount above Water. They blow up the Water with great Violence, and put the Sea in as great a Ferment as a Ship under Sail. There's al-

so a Sort of Fish called *Hays* or *Requiens*, and by some Sea-Dogs, tho' not at all like them. They are very thick and long, and some betwixt 20 and 30 Foot. Their Head is broad and flat, and their Snout sharp; and as to the rest, they are very ugly. This is the Negroes best and most common Food. They are daily taken on the *Gold Coast* in great Shoals. The *Europeans* never eat them, because they are tough; but to remedy this, the Negroes lay them 7 or 8 Days to rot and stink, and then they are reckon'd a Dainty. They drive a great Trade with them to the Inland Country. It does not spawn like other Fish, nor lay Eggs like the Tortoise, but casts forth its Young like Four-footed Beasts. They do no Damage on this Coast, but are very ravenous at *Fida* and *Andra*, where the Slave Trade is managed, so that if a Person falls or is thrown overboard, four or five of them together swim to him, and rend the Limbs in a Moment; and if any comes in too late for a Share, he is ready to eat the others; and when they attack one another, they mount their Heads and half their Bodies above the Surface of the Water, and fall on with terrible Slaps. When this Fish seizes any Prey, it is obliged to turn it self on the Back, because the Mouth is placed so far behind and low, that he cannot come at any thing upwards. It has sharp Teeth, and strikes with its Tail, which is prodigious strong. Our Author thinks they prey upon smaller Fish on this Coast; but there being none at *Andra* and *Fida*, they are glad to take up with humane Bodies, which he says they love so well, that they follow *European* Ships for three Weeks or a Month, in Expectation of the Dead that are thrown over-board. Thus much for the Natural History of the *Gold Coast*.

We come next to give an Account of the *Dutch* Trade hither. *Dapper* says, their *East-India* Company have Warehouses and Vessels at Anchor in all the considerable Ports at *Atzin*, the Cape of *Three Points*, *Bottrouw*, *Tacorari*, *Sama*, *Mina*, *Moure*, *Agitaki*, *Anten*, *Anemabo*, *Adja*, *Cormentin*, and *Acara*, besides several other Ports mentioned by *Moll*, (of which hereafter) and that they send hither the following Merchandize, viz. *Silesia* Cloths half whiten'd, *Hesse* Cloths not whiten'd at all, Bed-Cloths half used, Chaplets

of Beads in Form of a Crucifix, *Cyprus* Habits; Red, Blue, Yellow, and Green Cloths of *Rochel*, *Turkey* Hangings, Reddish Stuffs of *Leyden*, *Leyden* Coverlets of White, Red, and Green Frize; *Turkey* Bills and Sabres, Habits of Red and Yellow Stuffs, common Habits of *Haerlem*, Stewing Basons, Barbers Basons, polish'd Kettles, Dishes beat with the Figures of Men, Pails for drawing Water hammer'd out, round Copper Buckets tinned in the Inside to put out Fires, Copper Padlocks and Bracelets, Trumpets, Pewter Cisterns, Dishes and Porringers, some deep Dishes without Ears, great and small Fishing Lines, flat Lead made round like Organ-Pipes, *Spanish* Wine, *Sarsaparilla*, Iron Bars, 32 or 33 of which weigh 10 Quintals; Hatchets of *Amersfort*, Seamen's Knives, Looking-Glasses, *Venice* Coral, all Sorts of *Venice* Ferret, *Acori*, a bluish Kind of Coral, Sheep Skins, strip'd and lozeng'd *Indian* Callicoës. They also import hither the Habits made at *Cape Verd*, *Arder*, and along the Coast of *Quaqua*, which sell well here. The other most vendible Merchandizes are Linen and Woollen Cloth, Utensils of Copper and Iron, such as Kettles and Knives, and especially Brandy. The General of the *East-India* Company sets the Price upon all Merchandize. *Snoek* says, if any Goods are catched that the Negroes sell to *English* and *Zealand* Interlopers, they are forfeited, and the Buyers heavily fin'd; but they bribe the Slaves which are set as Watches over them to let them pass by Night, so that the *Dutch* Company have not a Hundredth Part of the Gold of this Land. He tells us, that the Natives run the Risque of trading with them, because their Goods are sometimes better than the Company's, and always one Third cheaper. The *Dutch* Interlopers are fitted out by private Merchants in *Holland*, tho' their *West-India* Company have a Patent for the sole Trade of this Coast, and a Power to punish all Offenders with Loss of Life and Goods, and to make free Prize of their Ships; but our Author complains, that this Law is not rigorously executed, because tho' a few Examples have been made of some of the Ring-leaders, yet some or other of the Company's Officers let them slip thro' their Fingers for Interest. He adds, that the *Portuguese* come on this Coast with a Pretence of sel-

ling *Brasil* Tobacco, Brandy, Rum, and other *American* Commodities, and are besides as richly laden as the Interlopers, for they buy their Lading, take their Men on board, and fit out other Ships, in *Holland*, and this too very often at the Expence of *Dutch* Merchants and some *Jews*, who know how to obtain a *Portuguese* Pass. We come next to give an Account of the Negroes, and first of their Stature, Complexion, and Temper.

Dapper says, the Men are pretty well made, vigorous, and of a middling Stature. They have a round Complexion, little Ears, bright Eyes, large Eyelids, and flat Noses, which they reckon a great Beauty. Their Teeth are as white as Ivory, and they are seldom without a Tooth-picker in their Mouths. Their Mien is sower and wild, as well as their Temper, and their Beards do not come out before 30 Years of Age. They have broad Shoulders, and large Arms and Hands, with Nails, which they let grow as long as a Finger's Joint. They are slender Wasted, and have great Feet and long Toes, so that they are good Racers. They are sharp and lively, ingenious, quick of Apprehension, and have a nice Forecast in their Way of Trade. They are given to Covetousness, Pride, Debauchery, Quarrels, Hatred, Envy, and Revenge. The Inhabitants of the flat Country cannot swim, and are afraid of Water; but those on the Coast learn their Children betimes to dabble in the Water and dive; and the *Portuguese* have transported several of their ablest Swimmers to *America* and the Isle of *San Marguerita*, to serve the Pearl Fishery. Their Women are of a pretty good Size, but they have great Breasts, so long that they can throw them over their Shoulders, to give their Children Suck as they carry them on their Backs. They are such great Dancers, that they cannot stand still if they hear a Drum, or any other Musick, tho' perhaps they have a Child at their Breasts, and another in their Bellies; and in their Jigs, they tie little Bells to their Legs to increase the Noise. They dance two and two, and play a Thousand apish Tricks, smiting themselves all the while on the Shoulders with a Horse's Tail, throwing a nasty Dish-clout on the Ground, kicking it up with their Toes, and catching it again in their Hands

before it falls. They are very subject to Fleas and Lice, so that they wash their Bodies every Morning and Night, and rub their Skin with Palm Oil, to make it the clearer as well as the freer from those Vermin. They reckon it ill Manners to break Wind before Company, and to do their Needs upon the Ground, for which Purpose they build Huts of the Boughs of Trees, supported by Stakes, and raised some Feet above the Ground, which when full they burn them, and make others. They outdo the *Arabs* in Theft, and boast of it as a Mark of Courage, tho' they do it more out of a Custom than Necessity, so that their rich Merchants, when they come aboard *European* Ships and find nothing of any great Value, catch up old rusty Nails, and the Lead with which they are sometimes cover'd, to keep them from Rust. They have also Plenty of Receivers, which convey the Goods stolen from one to another in a trice. When they are taken in the Fact, they are thrash'd as they deserve; and if they have the good Luck to escape by swimming away without Blows, they are sure never to come aboard again for fear of rough Treatment. They make no Scruple to break their Words if they find their Account in it, and will serve those they get most by: Yet they'll swear and make a Thousand Grimaces to assure *Europeans* of their Fidelity, by rubbing their Heads upon the Shoes, Bosom, and Shoulders of Strangers, striking their Hands, invoking their Saints or Fetis, kissing the Images which they carry about them, crying several times, *Jau, Jau, Jau*, and pledging Imprecations in certain Drinks; but they are never the sooner believ'd or trusted. In short, *Snoek* says, they seem to be all born and bred Villains, and so idle, that nothing but meer Necessity can force them to work. They are besides incredibly careless and stupid, and so unconcern'd at Misfortunes, that tho' they happen to be beat out of the Field, or to receive any great Loss, they feast, make merry, and dance; so that (says our Author) their Prosperity and Adversity are only distinguish'd in their Cloathing and Shaving their Heads, of which hereafter. He confirms what *M. Fequenbrog* says, that they feast at Graves; and when their Houses are on Fire, cry, *Let them burn*, while

they are singing, dancing, and drinking. Thus (says he) they sing till they die, and then dance into the Grave. They always sleep sound, and never care for to Morrow. Their Young are very vain, and desirous to pass for Persons of Quality, tho' perhaps but Slaves; yet they carefully adorn their Bodies, and are very fine in their Way. *Dapper* says, that the burning Heat of the Sun, succeeded on a sudden with the fresh Rains, occasions great Maladies in Foreigners, who are not so much us'd to their Weather, and have a tenderer Skin than the Negroes; but that the latter are healthful and long liv'd. The most unwholesome Living he says is about *Mina*, where the Negroes themselves are often seized with a Distemper which breeds Worms in the most fleshy Parts of the Body, and some have a great many in their Arms, Legs, Hands, and Feet, &c. which cause great Pains, and sometimes a Fever; but others han't above one or two, and scarce feel them. Some Foreigners have them on the Coast, others on their Return, and some 6 Months or a Year afterwards. None are exempt from them, and those who go often to the Coast have them every time, according to *Dapper*. Some ascribe it to the Seamen's Excess in Palm Wine and Women, or in Cakes of Millet, or in a certain Fish, in which the Negroes say Worms breed; but our Author says, that those who have abstained from all this have yet had the Worms; and he thinks it proceeds rather from the Malignity of the Air, and the infected Water which the Negroes draw and sell aboard *European* Ships, because at *Acara* and all other Places on the *Gold Coast*, except about *Moure* and *Mina*, there are none of these Worms. Some have them but three Weeks, and others three Months. Blisters rise first like the Biting of Fleas, which turn to an Ulcer, and then a Worm appears between the Skin and Flesh, which is often as thick as a great Fiddle-String, and an Ell or two long; but sometimes 'tis shorter, and as small as the Treble String of a Lute. Some think 'tis not a Worm, but a corrupted Nerve. *Dapper* denies this, because it moves when drawn out of the Wound. He says, there's no curing of the Ulcer till the Worm pierces the Skin it self, and peeps out its Head, when they draw it forth as gently

as possible, till they feel great Resistance, then they fasten the Part that is drawn out to a Stick, for fear it should shrink in again; and after it has lain so a while, they try again to draw it forth, renewing their Endeavours, and winding the Worm about the Stick till 'tis quite out, and the Patient at Ease. They are careful not to pull it out too rashly, lest the Wound should inflame, and take Care to keep it from the Cold. The Negroes only wash the Wound with salt Water, without plucking out the Worm, or any other ado. *Snoek* says, if the Worm happens to break, they are put to a double Torture, the remaining Part of the Worm either rotting in the Body, or breaking out at some other Place; and that the Negroes are most afflicted with them, and chiefly in their Legs, and that some have 10 at a time. The *Dutch* are most tormented with them at *Cormantyn* and *Apam*. He adds, that the Worm Disease is frequent all over the Coast. *Dapper* says, the Negroes are excessive Lovers of Women, and often catch the foul Disease, wherein they find Relief by *Sarsaparilla*, brought hither by the *Dutch*. When an Ulcer comes, they let it ripen of it self; and if it does not ripen so soon as they would have it, they make 5 or 6 great Incisions about the Place, which they reckon as Marks of Gentility and Ornament, tho' they render them very deformed. They are never cured, says *Snoek*, unless they fall into the Hands of *European* Surgeons. They have none of their own; so that when they let Blood, they give a Stroke with a Knife in some Part of the Body. Their Sick are very miserable, helpless, and abandon'd by all the World, so that they often die rather with Hunger, Misery and Despair, than their first Distemper. *Snoek* says, the Small-pox is one of their most epidemical Diseases, and that it swept away Thousands of Men in 14 Years before his Time. In *Ante* several Negroes are afflicted with ravenous Appetites, which is ascribed to their drinking a Sort of Palm Wine called *Crisia*. When the Natives are wounded in the Wars or otherwise, they know no Cure but by green Plants, which they boil in Water, and foment the Part with the Decoction, which he says many times proves effectual, their Vegetables being of a wonderful healing Virtue: But

some knowing neither their Nature or Use, apply their Fomentations in vain, while the Wound gangrenes, and at best turns to a perpetual Running. He ascribes the Unwholesomeness of this Coast, 1. To the Heat of the Day and Coolness of the Night, which he thinks occasions contrary Effects, especially in such Bodies as are not accustomed to bear more Heat than Cold, by too hastily throwing off their Clothes. But 2dly and chiefly, To the thick, sulphurous, and stinking Fogs, which rise every Morning in the Valleys, and falls so thick, that 'tis almost impossible for Strangers especially (whose Bodies are more sensible of it than the Natives) to escape the Infection while fasting. And he observes, that since these Fogs happen in the Winter, *Europeans* are sicker then than in Summer. He says, few *Europeans* come hither who are not at first seized by a Sickness, which carries off a great many, chiefly for want of proper Comfort and Nourishment, which their corrupted Medicines and Barber-Surgeons cannot give. Besides, he complains of the Want of nourishing Diet and Restoratives proper for weak Stomachs; for he says, there's nothing good to be had here but Fish, Kitchen Herbs, and Spoon Meats, their Cattle and Poultry being all dry, lean and tough. Some contract Distempers here by drinking Palm Wine and Brandy to Excess; after which they are often forced to take up with Bread, Oil, Salt, or a little Fish. Our Author inclines to their Opinion who think that such Places where the Wind blows continually and very fresh, and where the Negroes make the least Stench, are most healthful, and he prefers *Boutry* and *Zacondee*. He adds, that the Negroes live healthful Lives, but not long ones, and observes, that several of them are grey-headed like old Men, but are not so. This he ascribes to their too early and excessive Venery, which so weakens them, that a Fit of Sickness generally carries them off when 50 Years of Age or under; for they begin so soon here, that Children of 9 Years old know how the World is propagated, because they are us'd to obscene Conversation, and before 12 reduce it into Practice, so that 'tis next to impossible to meet with a Maid in her Marriageable Years. For this Reason, those who would secure a Maiden-head,

head, marry young. We come next to the Negroes Habits.

Dapper says, the Men wear a Gown of Linen or Cotton, which they tie about their Middles, and hangs down to their Legs. They have several Fashions of cutting their Hair. Some shave their Heads in Form of a Crescent, others of a Cross, and others of a Triangle or Square, and among 50 Persons, you shall scarce find two whose Hair is cut alike. They wear 3 or 4 Ivory Bracelets flatted round, and engraved with several Crosses and other Figures. They have also Coral Necklaces, whose Grains are polished, and of the Size of Cherry-stones; and they wear several Rounds of these polish'd Corals, mix'd with Grains of Gold of the same Bigness, about their Legs. Persons of Distinction wear Gold Necklaces; but they have all in general some nasty Clout about their Feet, which they wear in Honour of their Saints, and never drink or eat without shedding some upon their Fetis. On their Heads they wear a Cap of the Bark of a Tree which has a long Tassel, and goes several times round their Heads. They have also several other Sorts of little Caps made of Flags or Reeds, and broad-brimm'd Hats of matted Rushes, and the Skin of Dogs or Kids. Their Women's Gowns are almost like the Men's; but besides the Sash which keeps it up, they have a Leather Belt round their Middles, to which they hang their Knives, Purfes, and a Bunch of Keys, for Ornament, tho' many have neither Trunk nor Wardrobe. This Belt is also covered with several nasty Rags, which are the Signs and Images of their Saints or Fetis, besides a Mat made of the Bark of a Tree. *Dapper* observes, that they wear this Habit at home; but when they go abroad, they wash all their Bodies naked in a Kettle; after which they put on a Kind of Shirt, which they tie about their Bodies with a Girdle, throw another Piece of Linen over it, which they tie below the Breast like a Petticoat, and over all this they put on a Gown of strip'd Stuff, which they tuck up under the Arm like a Riding-Hood. They are very nice about their Head and Hairs, adorn them with Knots of Ribands, and anoint them with Palm Oil. In the Middle they leave a Tuft of Hair, where they place *Acori*, which is a Sort of

blue Coral, and keep a Sort of Comb there which has about two Teeth, of the Length of one's Finger, with which they often comb their Heads, because they are very subject to Lice. Besides, they use it in their Salutations, as we shall shew by and by. *Dapper* adds, that they make Incisions a Finger's Length on their Foreheads and about their Ears, which they suffer to rise to the Thickness of a Finger, and then put Colours into them. They also make white Streaks under their Eyelids, and spoil all their Face and Breast with Pricks and Stains, so that at a Distance they look like a black Silk Stuff striped and spotted with several other Colours. Their Ear-Pendants are Buckles of yellow Copper or Pewter, and they have Bracelets of Ivory or Copper, and Rings of the same about their Legs. Their unmarried Daughters wear a great many Buckles of Brass Wire about their Arms. *Snoek* gives us much the same Account of their Apparel and Ornaments, but has these farther Particulars. Some wear long Hair curl'd and platted together, and ty'd up to the Crown of their Heads. Others turn it into small Curls, moisten it with Oil and a Sort of Dye, and then adjust it in the Shape of Roses. They wear Gold Fetiches between their Hair, or a Sort of Coral, here called *Conte de Terra*, which is sometimes of a quadruple Value to the Gold. He observes, that their *Acori* or blue Coral above mentioned is pretty large, and so valued, that 'tis generally weighed against Gold. They are very fond of *European* Hats. Their Arms, Legs and Waist, are adorned with Gold and Coral. Their common Habit is made of 3 or 4 Ells of Velvet, Silk, Cloth, Perpetuana, or other Stuff, and several have 50 Sorts of Stuff in one Habit. Some wear Rings about their Arms made of Ivory, Gold, Silver, &c. and Strings of Coral or Chains of Gold about their Necks. The *Manceroes* or Youth don't go so fine, and the *Caboceroes* or chief People affect a mean Habit, and to pass for poor rather than rich Men, for they wear only a good Gown, a Cap made of Hart's Skin, a String or Chain of Coral about their Necks, and a Staff in their Hands. The common People, such as Wine drawers, Fishermen, &c. are very poorly habited, some with an Ell or two of sorry Stuff, others with a sort of Girdle only

only drawn thro' betwixt their Legs, and wrapped about them to cover their Nakedness. The Fishermen have besides a Cap made of Hart's Skin or Rushes; but they chuse rather Sailors Hats if they can get them. Their Women go much finer here than the Men, as well as elsewhere, and wear Strings of Coral and Gold enough about their Waist to cover their Nakedness, if they had no Clothes, besides what they wear about their Necks, Arms, and Legs. The Paan or Gown which they wear on the lower Part of their Bodies is often three or four times as long as the Man's. They wind it round their Waist, and bind it on with a Fillet of red Cloth or something else about half Ell broad, and two Ells long, to make it sit close. Both Ends of the Fillet hang out on their Gown, which their Ladies of Quality trim with Gold and Silver Lace. He adds, that they throw a Veil of Silk or other fine Stuff about their Shoulders, and set off their Arms with Rings of Gold, Silver, and Ivory.

Dapper and *Snoek* give us the following Account of their Children's Birth and Education, their Marriages, and Women.

Snoek says, the Men never trouble themselves at all with the former, and the Women but little. The Mother suckles the Infant for two or three Years, till 'tis able to go, and then gives it a Piece of dry Bread, and turns it out to shift for it self. The Women are up almost as soon as down, and there's no Gossiping or Groaning Feasts. Our Author knew one of their Women deliver'd of two Children in a quarter of an Hour, without any Shrieks or Cries, and the same Day saw her go to the Sea Side to wash her self; and they are seldom ill enough to keep their Beds more than one Day. They make no Provision of Linen or other Necessaries for the Birth; yet the Infant's Limbs grow as vigorous and proportionate as ours, only their Navels are larger. As soon as a Child is born, they send for the Priest called *Feticheer* or *Confoe*, who binds Ropes, Coral, and other Trash, about its Head, Body, Arms, and Legs, and then exorcises it, in order, as they say, to arm it against Sickness and ill Accidents. The Children wear those

Ropes, &c. till 7 Years of Age, and then put on a Lappet of half an Ell of Stuffs. If the Father is a Fisherman or Husbandman, and the Child a Male, he breeds him up early to his Calling, lets him take all Opportunities of Profit, since he is soon to shift for himself, and contents him with a little sorry Food. After the Priest has consecrated the Child, if above the common Rank, it has two Names given it, (tho' always called by one) the first that of the Day of the Week on which born; and the next, if a Son, is his Grandfather's; or if a Girl, her Grandmother's: Yet some Parents give them their own Names, or those of their Relations. After this, their Names increase with their Years; so that if any one fights valiantly in the Wars, or kills a Wild Beast, he gets a new Name, insomuch that some have no less than 20. But they reckon that the chief Name which they give him when they drink Palm Wine together in the Market-place. Besides, when the Mother has had above 7 Children, they call the rest the 8th, 9th, and so on. The Children are circumcised no where on the *Gold Coast* but at *Acra*, and this our Author thinks they learnt by their Trade with the *Moors* and *Barbarians*. He adds, that the Children of the chief or rich People, whose Relations are enclin'd to it, are frequently married before they know the Difference of Sexes; and that several Families, for the Sake of new Kindred, marry their Children as soon as born, without any Ceremony, but the mutual Agreement of the Parents.

Dapper says, a Man may marry as many Wives as he can maintain; and if he is convicted of Adultery, he is only obliged to give the Value of 3 or 4 Franks to each of his Wives; but if the Woman be guilty of the like Crime, he may divorce and sell her. When a young Man has a Mind to a Girl, he spends no Time in Courtship, but only asks the Parents or Relations Consent; and if he be not a Slave, or so poor that he cannot give her a Dowry, which consists only of 7 or 8 Franks for her Parents, and two Sutes of the same Value for the Bride, he is sure to obtain her, and may carry her home the same Night. In the mean time, the Bride-Maids stay with the new-married Couple, that they may have Opportunity

to grow acquainted before they lie together. *Snoek* says, they have few Marriage Ceremonies, nor no tedious Disputes about Settlements. If the Bride is too young, the Man leaves her some Time with her Parents. She brings no Fortune, and 'tis sufficient if the Man has enough to defray the Expences of the Wedding Day, which consist in a little Gold, Wine and Brandy, a Sheep for the Relations, and new Clothes for the Bride, which are proportion'd to the Circumstances of the Bridegroom, who keeps an exact Account of what he bestows on the Bride and her Friends, that if she takes Pet and leave him, he may demand all again, which she or her Friends must pay to the utmost, together with the Wedding Charges. But this is not done when he puts her away, unless he produce very good Reasons for so doing. There's no Feasting or Jollitry on the Wedding-Day. The Bride is dressed for several Days successively with fine Clothes, Gold and other Ornaments, which they frequently borrow or hire for the purpose. As their Riches consist in the Multitude of their Slaves, so does their Grandeur in the Number of their Wives; so that those who strive to appear greatest have 20, but the rest generally from 3 to 10. Most of these Wives are obliged to till the Ground, plant Milhio or Jammes, or do other Work, and to get Victuals for their Husbands, while the latter do nothing but tattle and drink Palm Wine, which the Wives are often obliged to find Money for by hard Labour. But some are better Husbands, especially the Sellers of Palm Wine and the Fishermen, who either go out to fish, or hire themselves to the *Europeans* for Rowers. The richer Sort have two Wives perpetually exempted from Labour, the first of which is the oldest and principal Wife, who is House-keeper, and commands all the rest, and the second is consecrated to his God, and therefore called *Bossun*, of whom they are so jealous, that if a Man salutes them, they'll severely punish them in private; but they do not watch the rest so narrowly, especially if they get them Money. These *Bossuns*, who are generally the handsomest, are Slaves bought with a Design to be consecrated to their God, and they lie with them always on their Birth-Day or Night, and on that Day of the Week which

is dedicated to their God. The Wives of the chief Merchants or Traders are the happiest, because not obliged to much Labour out of the House, and they are well provided for by their Husbands. *Snoek* observes, that several Negroes marry many Wives only to get a Living by them, and to wear gilt Horns; for they order them to allure other Men to their Embraces, and then discover them; so that they pretend to some they have no Husbands; and to such as know they have, they swear eternal Secrecy, but keep it no longer than the next time they see their Husbands, who are sure to fleece the Adulterers, and make them repent of their Credulity; for the Fine among common People is from 4 to 6 Pounds Sterling, but the Rich pay a greater Sum; and if he has lain with a considerable Man's Wife, it costs a Hundred or Two of Pounds. When these Cases are brought before their Courts of Judicature, the Negroes first deny the Charge, and oblige the Accusers to confirm it by Evidence; upon which the Woman displays the whole Action in open Court in its natural broad Terms and Colours, with all the Circumstances of Time, Place, and Manner; after which the Man, who sometimes pleads he intended, but did not stay Time enough, to act the Crime, is put to his Oath; and if he forswears it, he is clear; but otherwise, Sentence passes against him. Married People here have no Community of Goods, but each has his or her particular Property. The Wives generally bear the Charge of House-keeping, and the Man pays for Cloathing the Family. *Dapper* says, that when the Husband dies, the Women commonly claim the Jewels they had of him; and that the Son cannot succeed the Father to the Crown, but Brother to Brother, and the youngest Son to the eldest; and if the King has no Brother, his Throne and Domains fall to his Sister's Children. *Snoek* says, none of the Children of private Persons inherit their Parents Effects, except at *Acra*; and that when the Man or Wife dies, the Relations seize all, without leaving the Widow or Widower the least Share, tho' they are often obliged to contribute towards the Funeral Charges. Some Negroes have also Concubines, of whom they are fonder than their Wives; but their Children are reckon'd

reckon'd illegitimate and foreign. If a Negro has a Child by his Slave, whether married to her or not, his Heir will esteem and keep it only as a Slave; but some take Care to make their Children free with the usual Ceremonies before they die; after which they are treated as free Persons. If a Man be a King or Captain of a Town, his eldest Son succeeds him in the Office, but can claim nothing save his Shield and Sabre; and Parents that have a Mind to bestow any thing on their Children in their Life-time, must do it very private, else the Relations after their Death will oblige the Children to refund the utmost Farthing. He observes, that Brothers and Sisters Children are their right and lawful Heirs; and that the eldest Son is Heir to his Mother's Brother or his Son, as the eldest Daughter is Heiress of her Mother's Sister or her Daughter; which Custom our Author thinks deriv'd from some of the *East-India* Kings, who, as we observ'd in *Asia*, to prevent their Kingdoms descending to a Bastard Race, make their Sisters Sons Successors, because they are surer their Nephews are of the Blood Royal than they can be of their own Children. He says, that the Negroes are often ruin'd by their Slaves, because they are responsible for the Fines they contract by Theft, Adultery, or other Crimes, and that they are also responsible for their Sons, Nephews, or other Relations; but the latter help one another by mutual Contributions, else the Criminal would be condemned to Death or Slavery. *Snoek* tells us, the Inland Negroes are more severe in Cases of Adultery than those on the Coast; and that the Relations are often involv'd in the Offender's Ruin, because if the injur'd Person be a great Man, he not only ruins the Malefactor, but removes his Relations quite out of the Way. If the guilty Person be a Slave, he must certainly suffer the most cruel Death that can be devised, besides a Fine laid upon his Master; and if a Woman be caught in Adultery, she runs great Danger of her Life, unless her Relations pacify the Husband with a large Sum of Money. If she lies with her Husband's Slaves, both are infallibly condemn'd to Death; and besides, the Relations are oblig'd to pay a Sum to the Husband. *Snoek* observes, that every considerable Negro is

commonly his own Judge in this Case; and if he wants Help to revenge himself, he calls his Friends, who are sure of a Share in the Penalty. The Inland Negroes are richer than those on the Coast, and therefore punish Persons guilty of Adultery with the utmost Severity, so that sometimes their Fines amount to above 5000 *l.* which is a greater Fortune than any our Author says he could find on the Coast, not excepting their Kings, unless those of *Aquamboe* and *Acron*, who possess more Gold than all the rest together. He observes, that notwithstanding the Severity of the Punishment on both Sexes, yet the Inland Women try all Ways to tempt the Men to their Embraces, and are so fiery, that if they can get a young Man alone, they'll tear the Clothes off of his secret Parts, throw themselves upon him, and swear they'll accuse him to their Husbands of Attempts upon their Chastity, if he does not yield to their Desires. Some also watch the Men where they go to sleep, lie down softly by their Sides, awake them, and then use all their Arts to raise their Passion. But if it prove in vain, they assure him they will make such a Noise as shall occasion their being surpris'd together; after which the Man's Death will be inevitable. Moreover, to allure the Men, they protest no body knows they are come thither, and that they can retire without Suspicion; so that the Men are oblig'd to satisfy their Lusts to get rid of 'em; and if it holds a Secret for a while, they repeat the Crime so often, that 'tis discover'd, and they receive their Reward. If the Negro Women are never so jealous of their Husbands, none but their chief Wives durst chide them, which they do sometimes, and threaten to leave them; but if the Man be not in a good Humour, they smart for it. Every Wife strives to please and charm her Husband most; and they generally take his Matrimonial Favours by Turns; but none besides the Favourites lie with their Husbands all Night. When the Wives are pregnant, their Husbands shew them abundance of Respect; and if it be the first time, make rich Offerings to their Idol for a safe Delivery. He adds, that as soon as they find themselves big with Child, they are brought to the Sea-Shore to be washed, and follow'd thither by Boys and Girls,

H h h

that

that throw Dirt at her all the Way. In the Country of *Ante*, if a Woman has had 10 Children, she is obliged to live a whole Year in a solitary Hut remote from her Husband, and all the rest of Mankind, during which she is carefully furnished with all Necessaries for Life, and then returns and lives with her Husband again. Their Women are also separated from their Husbands during their Menses, and obliged to remain as unclean in a small Hut near their Father's or Husband's House, which Custom our Author thinks deriv'd to them the same Way as their Circumcision already mentioned. Several of both Sexes live unmarried; but there are commonly more single Women than Men, and few Negroes die unmarried, unless they are very young. The Men marry as soon as they can raise Money for the Wedding Charges; but the Women continue longer unmarried, because then they have more Pleasure and Freedom, and because there are so many Women here to one Man, that they are obliged to stay till they are ask'd, tho' they please their Appetites in the mean while as often as they think fit, without being thought e're the worse for it. *Snock* tells us, that in the Countries of *Eguira*, *Ancober*, *Axim*, *Ante*, and *Adom*, there are several Women who never marry, and who only are call'd Whores, because they are thus initiated in the Practice. When their young Men want a Whore, they petition the Magistrates of the Place to buy one for the Publick; upon which either they or the Petitioners themselves purchase a beautiful Female Slave, whom they bring into the Market-place, accompanied with another experienc'd in the Trade, to instruct her in her Behaviour. Then they smear her all over with Earth, and offer several Offerings for her Success in her future Practice. Then a little Boy, who is not ripe enough for the Affairs of Love, makes a Feint of lying with her, to shew that she must admit all Comers indifferently, not excepting little Boys. Then she is obliged to confine her self for 8 or 10 Days in a small Hut a little out of the Way, and to lie with every Man that comes thither; after which she obtains the honourable Name of *Abelcre* or Common Whore, and has a Dwelling-place prepar'd for her near one of her Masters, or

in some other particular Place of the Town, where she is obliged as long as she lives to refuse no Man the Use of her Body, tho' he offers never so little; so that no body is obliged to give more than his Generosity prompts to. They give what Money they get to their Masters, who return them enough out on't for Clothes and Necessaries. But when once they are P—x'd, the People leave them, and their Masters forsake them, so that they come to a miserable End. But our Author says, they are so much esteem'd while they are sound and in their Prime, that nothing afflicts them so sensibly as the seizing of these Creatures. Thus when the *Europeans* have any Dispute with the Negroes, they seize and confine one of these publick Whores; upon which the young Men hast to the Magistrates, and beg them to give Satisfaction, that they may have their Whores at Liberty again, otherwise they shall be forc'd to risk the Danger of lying with other Men's Wives. There are none of these publick Whores at *Commany*, *Elmina*, *Fetu*, *Saboe*, *Fantya*, &c. but private ones enough, who tho' not common, yet are pretty reasonable in their Price. Besides, there are Schools full of handsome Girls, which Matrons breed up for the purpose. There are great Plenty of them in and about *Fida*, where they are cheaper than on the Coast. At the same Place there's a great Multitude of Huts, about 10 Foot long and 6 broad, near the chief Roads, where these Whores are obliged to ply at certain Days in the Week, for the Relief of all Travellers: And the Country is so populous, and the married Women kept up all the while so strict, that our Author was told that some of them had lain with 30 Men in a Day. Their common Price is 3 little Shells call'd *Boesjes* and *Caurits*, which are about a Farthing. They may work on other Days too if they please, for no body has any Propriety in them, and they have no Superiors. Some of the most considerable Ladies, when on their Death-Bed, use to buy some of these foreign Female Slaves, and make a Present of them to the Publick, for which they believe they shall have a Reward in the other Life. Our Author observes, that the End of these Whores is as miserable as those of the *Gold Coast*, and that they seldom arrive to a moderate Age. *Dapper*

per says, that at *Atzim* and in the neighbouring Country, as far as the *Quaqua* Coast, there are two or three publick licens'd Whores in every Village. He adds the following Particulars about the Ceremonies observed at their Institution. They make them sit down upon a Mat of Straw, when one of the oldest Whores sticks a Pullet in the Neck, and sprinkles their Heads, Shoulders, and Arms, with some Drops of the Blood, making horrible Imprecations, and threatening them with Death, if they deny their Company to the first that shall desire it, without demanding any more Money than the Sum above mentioned, tho' their Gallants be very rich, and not to exclude their own Parents and Relations out of the Number of their Favourites. The Magistrates, in Requital for their Earnings, permit them to seize what Victuals they can come at, either in the Market or in private Houses, and no body dares strike or molest them under great Penalties. Then the Women rise and are view'd in private by a Woman, upon whose Report that they are found and true Women, they are washed, covered with white Woollen, and made to sit down again upon the Mat, where they are adorn'd with Bracelets, and their Breasts, Shoulders, and Arms, whited over with Chalk or Lime, and two young Men carry each of them in a Chair upon their Shoulders, followed by all the Spectators to the Village, where they conclude the Feast with Dancing and Debauchery. We come now to the Negroes Diet.

Snoek says, the common People fare hard, and make 2 *d.* a Day suffice one Person in Victuals. Their common Food is a Pot full of Millet, boil'd to the Consistence of Bread, or else Jambs and Potatoes, over which they pour a little Palm Oil, and add a few boil'd Herbs and stinking Fish. They reckon this a Nicety, and only buy Oxen, Sheep, Hens, or other Flesh, for Holidays. He observes, that they do this out of Covetousness more than Want of Money or Stomach, and that they eat heartily of the best when they come to well furnish'd Tables. The Rich fare but little better, and have only a few more Fish and Herbs: But for an extraordinary Dish, they make Mallaget of a Handful of Corn and Dough, with Fish and some Palm Oil boil'd together in

Water, which our Author says is pretty wholesome and agreeable to those who are us'd to it. On the other hand they drink the more, and are such Lovers of strong Liquors, that they must have Brandy in the Morning, and Palm Wine in the Afternoon, to which and Tobacco both Sexes are besotted, and their Children are taught it at 3 or 4 Years of Age. *Dapper* says, they beat their Millet in a Stone Mortar, sift it, and then reduce it to Meal, with which they mingle Water, and form Cakes as big as one's two Fists. They make them fat with Palm Oil, roll them sometimes in Herbs, and then put them into a Linen Rag to boil. Their most common Diet is Fish, Batatas, Bananas, and other Roots or Pulse, *viz.* boil'd Rice and Beans; and their common Drink is Palm Wine mingled with Water, or Beer made of *Turkey* Corn. Our Author says, they have several Ceremonies at their Tippling Bouts, one of which is laying their Hands upon the Head of him that drinks first, and crying with a loud Voice, *Tautosi, Tautosi*. After they have drank, they spill a Drop of Wine on the Ground, in Honour of their Fetis, with a confused Noise, of which nothing can be distinguished but the Sound of I. O. U. If they have several Fetis's or Images about them, they sprinkle every one with some Drops of the Liquor, imagining that otherwise they should not drink in good Friendship. *Dapper* adds, that they have such swinging Stomachs, that as soon as they rise from one Table, they are ready for another Repast; that they sit upon the Ground to eat without Order, and gormandize like Hogs; and that by Way of Bravado, they sometimes take a Morsel between their three middle Fingers, and throw it directly down their Throats without chewing.

Dapper says, that when Acquaintance chance to meet in a Morning, they embrace one another tenderly, take each other by the Thumb and fore Finger of the Right Hand, and snap them two or three times; after which they bow their Heads, and cry, *Ausi, Ausi*, i. e. Good Morrow. *Snoek* says, that those on the Coast uncover their Heads, which the Inland People do not reckon any Sign of Respect. Then they ask each other, *How they slept?* And they reply, *Very well*. When

one Negro is visited by another, he takes his Guest by the Hand, nips his two middle Fingers together, and bids him welcome, if it be the first time; but if he has been there before, and is return'd again, the Master of the House says, *You went out, and are return'd*, intimating he wishes him good Luck; to which the Guest answers, *I am come again*. And this, says our Author, passes on both Sides for refin'd Civility. They are extraordinary civil when they receive Visits from one that lives in another Country; and after Compliments are passed, the Wife or a She-Slave brings Water and Ointment to wash and anoint him, as they did in ancient Times. The Visits of Kings and great Men are accompanied with several odd Ceremonies. When a King or Lord of a Town is advanc'd near to another King's Seat, he sends one of his Retinue to compliment and advise him of his coming, and the latter returns a Messenger with his Ambassador, to assure him of a hearty Welcome. While they are on the Way, the King or General ranges all his Soldiers in Battle-array, which are commonly about 3 or 400 Men, in the Market-place, or Court of the Palace, where they sit expecting their Guest, who advances but slowly for the more State, and is attended by a great Number of arm'd Men leaping and dancing, and making a dismal Noise. When he is come to the Place where the other sits expecting him, he sends all his unarm'd People of Fashion to present their Hands, by Way of Salutation, to the other's Men and to himself, and then the two Kings or Generals, arm'd with Shields, approach each other, when, if the Visitant be of higher Rank than himself, he embraces and welcomes him three times; but if below him, he only presents his Hand to him thrice, and fills up his middle Finger at three successive Advances, and then the Guest and his Attendants sit down against one another; after which he comes and welcomes him and his Followers with three circular Advances. Then he returns and sits down in his Place, sends Persons to salute and welcome the rest of his Visitant's Troop, and to enquire after their Health, and the Intent of their coming, which the Chief generally answers by Messengers of his own. These Ceremonies commonly last an

Hour or more, till the Entertainer rises, and obliges his Guest to go to his House, where he is presented by the King and great Men of the Town with Sheep, Fowl, Jamames, or the like. We come now to their Employments and Occupations.

Snoek says, they have few Manual Arts, and that their chief Employments (besides casting of Fetiches, formerly mentioned) are making Wooden or Earthen Cups, Troughs, matting of Chairs, making of Copper Ointment Boxes, and Bracelets of Gold, Silver, or Ivory, and the like Toys. They have pretty good Smiths, who make all Sorts of Arms they want, except Guns; as also Necessaries for Agriculture and House-keeping, with Sabres and all cutting Instruments, tho' they have no Notion of Steel. Their chief Tools are a Stone for an Anvil, with a Pair of Tongs, and small Bellows with three or more Pipes, which blow very strong, and are their own Invention. They also make nice Gold and Silver Hatbands for *Europeans*, which are so fine, that *Snoek* questions if our Artists could do the like; but they are poorly paid for their Labour. *Dapper* says, they make Canoes all of one Piece out of the Trunk of a Tree after this Manner: They shape it round at both Ends, and then bore it with an Iron Instrument. They leave the Thickness of two Fingers at the Bottom, and of one at the Sides, and burn Straw in the Inside, that the Heat of the Sun may not cleave it, and that Worms may not enter it. They strengthen the Sides with Posts, and at each End there's a kind of Gallion a Foot long, and a Hand's Breadth in Thickness, by which they take up the Canoe on their Shoulders when they launch, or carry it ashore; for when they come to land, they carry their Canoes with them, and set them to dry on 4 Feet, in order to keep them from rotting, and to make them light. They have a kind of Helm in the Poop, and use Oars almost like ours. These Canoes are of a different Bigness. Those which the Fishermen have are commonly about 16 Foot long, and two broad. Those for War or Carriage are from 35 to 40 Foot long, five broad, and three high, and there are some that will hold 50 or 60 arm'd Men, especially at the Cape of *Three Points*, where they have Trees 17 or 18 Fathom in Cir-

Circumference. The small Canoes hold but one Man the broad Way; but the long Way, 7 or 8 may sit one by another. They row with an incredible Swiftneſs, eſpecially in a Calm, when one Man can with Eaſe manage a ſmall Canoe. They are ſo light, that ſometimes they overturn; but the Negroes are ſo dextrous, that they ſoon recover them, and draw the Water out. Yet they are afraid when they make long Voyages, and therefore uſe ſeveral ſuperſtitious Ceremonies, in hopes to ſave the Veſſel, ſuch as carrying little Images of their Saints, ſacrificing a Sheep or a He-Goat to their Fetifi, and hanging the Viſtim at the Prow of their Canoes. *Dapper* obſerves, that the Inhabitants of *Hondo* and the *Upper Quoja's* don't uſe Canoes; but when they croſs a River, make Bridges of Canes or Reeds, which they bind ſtrongly together with Cords, ſenc'd on both Sides with Rails, and tie them to the neareſt Trees on the Banks. He adds, that they paſs the largeſt Rivers on theſe Bridges, and that they are of uſe at Sand-Banks, Waterfalls, and the like Places, which are not navigable for Canoes. *Snoek* ſays, the largeſt are about 30 Foot long and 6 broad, and the ſmalleſt 13 long and 3 broad; and that the biggeſt will carry as much as an indifferent Merchant-man's Boat. They are row'd according to their Size, by from 2 to 15 Rowers, which, when they exceed two, muſt always be an odd Number, becauſe they are obliged to ſit in Couples, and an odd one muſt ſteer. He ſays, their Oars are a Sort of Paddles made like Spades, with Handles of about the ſame Length. Their Fiſhing Canoes generally carry two or three Men each, with ſmall Hooks, Harping Irons to ſtick into the great Fiſh when they are hook'd, beſides Caſting and other large Nets, which laſt they plant in the Sea over Night, and draw them in the Morning, when they are frequently full of all Sorts of Fiſh, unleſs a Sword Fiſh gets in, which commonly tears the Net in Pieces with its Snout. But if the Negroes, who are greedy Eaters of this Fiſh, are timely inform'd on't, they ſend out two or three Canoes well furniſh'd with Harping Irons, and take him.

We ſhall proceed next to their Languages, of which *Dapper* ſays they have ſeveral; but that of the *Acaniſſi* is moſt general, and

ſpoken almoſt over all *Guinea*, except at *Anten*, *Acara*, *Ningo*, and *Sinco*, which have their particular Dialects: But none of them can read or write, nor have they any Manuſcripts or printed Books. He adds, that thoſe who trade upon the Coaſt underſtand a little *French*, *Portugueſe*, or *Flemiſh*. *Snoek* ſays, they have 7 or 8 Languages within 60 Miles, ſo different, that half of them are unintelligible to any but the reſpective Natives, inſomuch that the Negroes of *Junmore*, but 10 Miles above *Axim*, can't underſtand thoſe of *Egira*, *Abocroe*, *Ancober*, and *Axim*. That of *Axim* is a very harſh brutal Sound, that of *Ante* not much pleaſanter, tho' very different, and that of *Acra* more ſhocking than all the reſt. The other Coaſt Negroes, except thoſe of *Aquamboe*, generally underſtand one another. He obſerves, that the Languages of the Inland Negroes are by much the pleaſanteſt, eſpecially thoſe of *Dinkira*, *Akim*, *Acanny*, and *Adom*. He adds, that there's no learning their Languages, particularly the Pronunciation of thoſe of the Coaſt, to Perfection, becauſe they have ſuch harſh Sounds, and have no Uſe of Letters.

Our Authors lead us next to the ſeveral Degrees of Negroes, and, 1. Of the Kings and their Courts. *Snoek* ſays, that Kings or Captains are ſynonymous Words here. Their Dignity deſcends commonly from Father to Son, and in Deſcent of Iſſue to the next Male Heir, tho' ſometimes he who has moſt Slaves and Money is preferred. They have few pompous Ceremonies at their Inauguration, and know nothing of Coronations or Coronation-Oaths; but the new King is ſhewn in Publick, and ſometimes carried thro' his Territories, and the Affair is finiſhed in one merry Day. When there are two Competitors, each Pretender, to confirm the Loyalty of his Followers, obliges them to ſwear Allegiance. In ſhort, all Things run very ſmoothly, and a few Offerings are made as uſual on all ſolemn Occaſions. Some of their Kings have no more Land than a ſingle Captain or Bailiff of a Village; and before the *Europeans* came hither, they had no higher Title than that of Captain or Colonel, the one being appropriated to a Country, and the other to a Village. They are obliged to maintain their Power by Force, and the

more Gold and Slaves they have, the more they are honour'd; but without these they would have no Command over their Subjects, and must pray and pay too for the Execution of their Commands. Our Author observes, they are naturally cruel enough to turn Tyrants, and fine the People so severely for Trifles, that they cannot forget it all their Life-time: Yet 'tis done with a Colour of Justice; and when the King has any thing to charge on another, he refers the Matter to the *Caboceros*, (of whom we shall give an Account by and by) who aggravate the Crime as much as possible, and take Care to please the King in their Judgment. They keep no State in their Courts, no Guard at their Palace-Gates, nor no Attendance on their Persons; and when they go abroad, have only a Boy to carry their Sabre, and another their Stool or Chair, and receive no more Respect in the Streets than a Cocker, for the meanest Slave never stirs a Step out of the Way; so that they never display their Grandeur but at Visits, when, besides the Shields which their Retinues carry for their Use, they hold up an Umbrella over their Heads, lest the Gentlemen's black Skins should be tanned by the Sun. At such Times also their Wives are deck'd with Gold and other rich Ornaments, especially a long String of Gold, and *Conte di Terra* or Coral, tho' the Clothes which they and their Husbands too wear in the Towns are sometimes not worth a Shilling, and not sufficient to distinguish them from the meanest Slaves. These Princes are miserably covetous, will catch at a Present, tho' the Donor be never so poor; and in a Word, says our Author, their Diet and Manner of Living is the same with the meanest of their Subjects. When the Palm Wine comes from the Inland Country, they go in the Afternoons with the Slaves to the Market, where they sit down sociably together, admitting any one to bring his Stool and sit with them, and there they tittle and bowze till they are so drunk, that they waste two Thirds of their Liquor, besides what they drink, in which they take great Pride. Their Conduct is very impertinent and noisy, and their Discourse rank Bawdy, in which their Women are not ashamed to bear a Part. In short, our Author says, 'tis a perfect Babbling and Scold-

ing School, where every one gives the other his own (as we call it); but the Kings on slight Occasions break their Heads, those only excepted who are in Repute among the People, some of whom have more Authority than their Masters, and having exercised a long Command over their Dependants, they get Slaves by their own Trading, and in Process of Time grow so powerful, that they often oppose their Masters, and will not be appeas'd without a Present. A King here is always ready to be hir'd to the Assistance of his Neighbours in their Wars, because the greatest Part of the Money agreed for falls to his Share, but takes no Care after the Payment of the Money whether his Auxiliaries are ready at the Time appointed; yet they had rather be Mediators betwixt contending Parties, because then they get Money from both; and they keep the Breach open as long as they can, to get the more Money. Our Author observes, that they subsist chiefly on this and their Fines, their Revenues being but small; for tho' they lay a Toll on all Goods that pass thro' their Country, yet the Collectors, who are always some of the principal Men, let the King have very little on't. Some Kings live on the Labour of themselves and Slaves, so that those who have but few Slaves are not very rich; and our Author says, he knew some of them so poor, that they had not Money nor Credit to command a Bottle of Palm Wine for their Guests. He adds, that their Children are educated like the common Negroes. When the Princes are old enough to work for their Living, they plow the Land, or draw Palm Wine, and carry it to the Market for Sale, or are employ'd in the like Occupations. If we may believe *Snook*, some are advanc'd to the Throne from *European* Liveries, or worse than Foot-Boys. *Dapper* says, their Kings banish or recal, make Peace and War as they please, and protect whom they will from Justice. They often ask Money by Way of Loan, but none durst ever demand the Payment till they die, when, because the Heirs of his Estate don't inherit his Crown, they carry their Petitions to the new King, who thinks it a Point of Honour to do them Justice.

2. The Princesses either plow or turn Whores. Several of them are married young,

young, without Regard to Birth or Family, and the Princes too often marry Slaves; but the Issue of the former are free, and the latter Slaves.

3. Officers of the Court, such as Braffoos or Ensigns, Sabre-Bearers, *Tie Ties*, publick Cryers or Proclaimers, Attendants on their Wives, Horn-blowers, or Trumpeters and Drummers. Their Braffoos are a Sort of Marshals, and if they have Courage charge first in Battles. The Sabre or Sword-Bearers are generally about four, and the Gentlemen entrusted with it are sometimes sent as Ambassadors to Foreign Courts; as are also the *Tie Ties* or Publick Cryers, whose particular Caps are their Protection or Pass. Every Town has one of these Officers to cry what is lost or stolen, and to proclaim the Governor's Orders. Besides, they proclaim Silence when there's a Noise in Council, by crying, *Tie, Tie*, from whence they have this Name. They wear Caps made of the Skin of black Apes, formerly mentioned among their Beasts, and carry in their Hands a Bunch made of the Hair of an Elephant's Tail, and small Rushes to defend their Master from the Flies. There are also Attendants on the King's Wives, to see that no Strangers pluck the Fruit of their Master's Orchard. But *Snoek* thinks they do this enough themselves. They also keep all the King's Treasury, carry the Keys, and must give an Account to the next Successor.

4. The *Caboceroes* or Chief Men. *Snoek* says, they take Care of the Welfare of Cities and Villages, appease Tumults, and have the same Sorts of Officers with the Kings. They are commonly limited to a set Number, and consist for most Part of old Men, who are chose out of the Commonalty when there are many Vacancies. They are obliged to present their Electing Brethren with a Cow and some Drink, and then they are confirm'd. At *Axim* the Candidate must be a Native or House-keeper, and sometimes a Resident there himself as well as his Wives. If there be one or more elected, they are all brought to the *Dutch* Fort at *Axim*, where, upon a Request to be admitted Members of their Society, an Oath is administred to them on the Bible to be true to the *Dutch*, and to assist them with their whole Force against all Enemies

whatsoever, and to deport themselves always as loyal Subjects. Then they take an Oath like the former, respecting their own Nation, and confirm both by an Imprecation, that God would strike them dead if they did not keep their Oaths, and lay the Bible on their Breasts and Heads to render the Oath more obligatory. Then the Factor registers their Names, and admits them as Members of the Assembly, and to all the Rights, &c. thereof; so that after the ordinary Presents, they are *Caboceroes* during Life. *Snoek* says, their Election is somewhat different in other Places of the Coast; but in what Particulars he does not mention.

5. Those who have got Riches by Trade or Inheritance, whom some represent as their best Noblemen, tho' they are so by no other Creation but their Money. These, says *Snoek*, to acquire a great Name, buy about 7 small Elephants Teeth, which they make into Blowing-Horns, and teach their Families to play all Sorts of Tunes on them. Then they invite their Friends and Relations to come and see the Blowing-Horns, and make merry with them for several Days together, during which their Wives and Slaves appear with as much Splendor as possible, and borrow Gold and Coral of their Friends, among whom they distribute Presents. After the Festival is over, they blow their Horns, which none are permitted to do who have not thus aggrandiz'd themselves; but if they are inclin'd to divert themselves, they must borrow them. After this, a Negro makes himself Master first of one, and then of another Shield, of which he makes as pompous a Shew as that of the Horns, and is oblig'd to lie in Battle-array the first Night, with all his Family, to intimate, that he won't fear any Danger in Defence of his People. Then he passes the remaining Days of the Feast, which are generally about eight, in Shooting and Martial Exercises, as well as Dancing and all Sorts of Mirth, himself and his Family being as richly dress'd as possible, and all that he has in the World expos'd to publick View, and remov'd from Place to Place. *Snoek* observes, that this Festival is not so expensive as the former, for instead of making Presents, he receives very valuable ones; and when he designs to

to divert himself, or go to the Wars, he may carry two Shields, which is a Favour allow'd to none but those who are thus qualified. He adds, that tho' they are accounted Noblemen, yet they apply themselves to nothing but Trade. *Dapper* gives this farther Account of them: They first desire Leave of the Brasso or Captain, which when they have obtain'd, they give Notice on't to the Gentry of the Village, and send to each a Pullet and a Pot of Palm Wine, desiring them to be present such a Day in the Market-place, whither they come accordingly in their best Equipage, while the necessary Preparations are made to give them a splendid Reception. First they bring a Cow, after which the Men take the upper End of the Market, while the Brasso ranges himself on one Side with a Company of spruce young Lads, arm'd with Shields and Zagayes. All this while the Musick plays, the Drums beat, the Trumpets sound, with Dancing, Tournaments, and all other Diversions possible. Then comes the Candidate, follow'd by a Boy that carries a Chair for him to sit in. And all who are design'd hereafter for the same Honour come to congratulate him, and taking some Thatch off of the Roof of an House, throw it down before him, that he may trample it under his Feet. The Ladies at the other End of the Place crowd about the Candidate's Wife, and pay her the like Honours. They dress her Head with little Crosses and Fetiches of Gold, put a Chain of Gold about her Neck, a Horse's Tail in her Hand, and a great Ring of Gold about her Right Arm, which has a Plate of massy Gold at both Ends. Then they bring the Cow to the Place where they are, cause her to pass in Review before the new Lady and all her Companions, and all the Gentlemen follow dancing and leaping. When this is done, they lead the Beast back, and tie it to the Place where it was before. The young Men continue their Rejoycings with the Beat of Drum, Sports, Tournaments and Courses, and the Women with Songs and Dances. Some carry the Man, and others his Wife, in Chairs about the Town, throw Meal now and then in their Faces, and at Night carry them home. The next Day they go to fetch them again with great Ceremony, and divert themselves as the Day before.

The 3d Day they kill the Cow, and divide it into 4 Quarters, which are eaten by the Guests; but the new Gentleman and his Wife don't tast a Bit, and believe they should die within a Year if they did. During the Festival, the Candidate sets up a white Flag upon the Roof of his House, in Token of Joy; and when 'tis ended, the Gentry send him the Head of the Cow, painted with several Colours, and dressed with sorry Rags, which are the Fetiches, being the Mark and Titles of his Nobility. This Quality, says *Dapper*, gives him the Privilege of keeping, selling or exchanging, Slaves; and he observes, that as the Ceremonies of the Festival commonly cost the Candidates 4 or 500 Franks, unless they have Friends that make them good Presents, they are commonly ruin'd by it, and forc'd to get their Living by their Labour. Nevertheless they are very proud of their Rank, and get Slaves as fast as they can find Work for them, in order to make themselves rich. They keep a Festival every Year on the Anniversary of their Reception, and treat one another in their Turns. There's also another Festival celebrated, with the usual Fooleries, by the whole Body of the Nobility on the 6th of July at the Brasso's House, whither they bring their painted Cows Heads.

6. The common People, who are employ'd in the Vintage, Tillage, and Fishing.

7. The Slaves who are sold by their Relations, taken in War, or become so by Poverty. We come now to the Negroes Architecture.

Dapper says, their Villages on the Coast are only sorry nasty Huts, and that when the Wind sits right, they stink two Leagues at Sea; but the Inland Towns are larger, more trading and populous; and tho' they have no Gates, Ramparts or Fortifications, yet they are commonly situate on Mountains, encompassed with Forrests, or in other Places which are naturally strong, and whose Avenues are narrow, and easily guarded. He observes, that the Reason of this Difference betwixt the Inland Towns and those on the Coast is, because the latter are chiefly inhabited by Brokers, Interpreters, Watermen, Fishers, Footmen, and Slaves. Their Wooden Huts are built on 4 Posts of the Height of a Man, fix'd at the 4 Corners, and

and cover'd with Branches bound one to another. Between the four main Posts lesser ones are plac'd, of the same Length as near as possible to the others. Then they cover the Boughs with a Bed of Clay half a Foot thick, which the Sun dries so hard as Bricks. The Walls are rubbed in the Inside with a kind of thin Plaister, which is white, red, or black. The Roof consists of two Pieces made of Palm-Tree Leaves, laid sloping, which they join together when it rains; but in fair Weather they keep them open with two Sticks. The Entrance is a square Court, with a Gate of Rushes, which they fasten with twisted Millet Straw. The Floor is of red smooth Earth, with a round Hole in the Middle, where they stow their Flasks of Palm Wine. One of these Houses may be built in 8 or 9 Days, and purchas'd for 10 or 12 Franks. They are commonly rais'd 3 or 4 together in a Square, and there are Spaces between them hedg'd in with Millet Straw, where the Women dress their Viſtuals. Their Streets are very crooked and dirty, slippery in Time of Rain, because of the Clay, and so narrow, that there's Room but for one Man to pass abreast. The Houses of their Brasso's or Governors are in the Middle of their Markets, and separated from the others by Inclosures, where are Apartments for the Women, Guards, and Slaves. They are somewhat larger and higher than the Houses of the common People, have several Gates to pass from one to the other, and the Roofs are thatch'd with Millet Straw. In the Middle there's a square Tent, cover'd on all Sides with thick Leaves, to keep off the Heat of the Sun, where the Brasso's receive such Persons of Quality as come to visit them, and before the Palace Gate there are two Holes, with two Vessels in them full of Water, whose Brims are even with the Ground. *Snoek* says, that tho' they have fruitful Hills, and fine Rivers and Vallies, yet they don't chuse them for the Situation of their Houses, and never mend their rugged Roads, tho' they lead never so much about. *Dapper* says, their Moveables are as ordinary as their Houses, and consist only in a few Wooden Boxes they buy of the *Dutch*, in which they lock up all they have; some Frails of Millet Straw to carry their Goods in to Market;

some Arms, such as Lances, Zagays, Bows and Arrows, Mats to lie upon, Wooden Benches, some Boiling Pots, a great Kettle to wash in, and two or three Flaggons for their Palm Wine. Then he gives an Account of their Musical Instruments. They have Drums made of the Trunk of a Tree, plated at both Ends with Copper, and cover'd with Goat's Skin. They have little Bells, and a kind of Guitar, compos'd of a Piece of Wood and six Canes. *Snoek* says, they have many Instruments, but all of them yield horrid Musick. The chief are the Blowing-Horns, formerly mentioned, in which he says they cut several Images of Men and Beasts, which are scarce to be discern'd one from another. At the lower End of them they tie a Piece of Rope, colour'd black with Hen's or Sheep's Blood, and at the small End there's a square Hole, where they blow. They have 10 Sorts of Drums, according to *Snoek*, who says, most of them are cover'd at one End with a Sheep-Skin, and left open at the other, which they set on the Ground like a Kettle-Drum, and when they remove them hang them by a String about their Necks. Sometimes they beat with two long Sticks made Hammer-fashion, and sometimes with a straight Stick, or their bare Hands, either of which makes a dismal Noise, especially when they beat them in Consort with the Horns, at which Time they always set a little Boy to strike upon a hollow Piece of Iron with a Piece of Wood, which makes a Noise worse than all the rest. They have lately invented a Sort of small Drums, cover'd on both Sides with a Skin, and shap'd like an Hour-Glass. He adds, that their best Instrument is somewhat like a Harp, and made of a hollow Piece of Wood two Hands Breadth long, and one broad, from the hinder Part of which a Stick comes cross to the fore Part, and upon the Instrument are 5 or 6 extended Strings.

Snoek observes, that the poorest Negroes never beg, but bind themselves for a Sum of Money to Masters, who are oblig'd to find them all Necessaries, and set them a moderate Task, which is chiefly to defend their Masters on Occasion, and in Sowing-time to work as much as they will themselves. But there are Beggars enough among the Rich, as we formerly mention'd, insomuch

that *Snoek* says, their Kings are not ashamed to beg for such Trifles as they might purchase for 1 *d.* or 2 *d.* Then he gives a Character of their *Tapoeyers* or *Mulattoes*, which are a Race begotten by *Europeans* on the *Negro* or *Mulatto* Women. He says, they are a Parcel of Villains, neither true to the *Negroes* or *Europeans*, nor to themselves, so that they are often at Variance. They call themselves Christians, tho' as great Idolaters as the *Negroes*. Most of the Women are publick Whores to the *Europeans*, and private ones to the *Negroes*; so that our Author is at a Loss to give them a Character as bad as they deserve, but says, that whatever is naturally vilest in the *Europeans* and *Negroes*, is united in this Bastard Race. The Men are commonly Soldiers in the *Europeans* Service, and clad like them; but the Women pride themselves in a particular Dress. Those of Fashion wear a fine Shift, and over that a short Jacket of Silk or Stuff without Sleeves, which reaches from their Armpits to their Hips, and are fasten'd at the Shoulders. They wear several Caps one over another, the uppermost of Silk, pleated before, and round at the Top, to make it sit fast, upon all which they have a Sort of Fillet that comes twice or thrice round their Heads. Below their Hips they are cloathed like the *Negro* Women; but the Poor go naked in the upper Part. Their Young and Old are both ugly, and their old Women the very Pictures of Envy. *Snoek* adds, that in Process of Time their Bodies turn speckled with white, brown, and yellow Spots, like Tygers.

We come next to treat of the Religion of the *Negroes*, and some of their superstitious Opinions. *Snoek* says, they have so many Religions, that there's scarce a Village or private Family which does not differ from another upon this Head in some Opinions or other. However, almost all the Coast *Negroes* have learn'd, by their Converse with the *Europeans*, to believe in one true God, to whom they ascribe the Creation of the World, and all Things therein contain'd, but are not able to form a just Idea of the Deity: Yet they never make any Offerings to God, nor call upon him in Time of Need, but pray to their Fetiches for Success in all their Undertak-

ings. Some of them have different Opinions too concerning the Creation; for many of them believe, that Man was made by a great Spider. Others say, that in the Beginning God created Black as well as White Men, and offer'd them two Sorts of Gifts, viz. Gold, and Reading and Writing; upon which the Blacks chose the first, and the Whites the latter; but that God, incensed at the Blacks Avarice, resolved they should for ever be Slaves to the Whites. Others say, that Man at his first Creation was not shap'd as now, and that the Parts of Generation were plac'd more in View, and to better Conveniency; and they alledge, that God did this out of Respect to Modesty, when the World grew so populous, that the present Shape was sufficient to keep up the Race of Mankind. Some also say, that the first Men came out of Holes and Pits. They have likewise a World of Notions concerning the Planets and Stars, and say, that they can see a Fellow in the Moon beating a Drum. They believe there's no Gold in any Country but their own, and that no Blacks understand Letters; and they have no Notion of the World's Extent but what they learn from the *Europeans*. Their false Gods are called *Fetiches*, as we formerly observ'd, or *Bossoms*; and when they make Offerings to or desire any Information from 'em, they cry, *Let us make Fetiche, i. e. Let us go to worship and hear what our God sayeth.* When they are injur'd by another, they also make Fetiches to destroy him in the following Manner: They cause some Victuals and Drink to be exorcis'd by their Feticheer or Priest, and scatter it where the Enemy uses to pass, and believe that he who does but touch it shall certainly die soon after. Those who are afraid of this, when they come to such Places, cause themselves to be carried over them, in which Case it has no Effect on the Persons or Bearers, nor on no body else. When they are robbed, they use the like Means for the Discovery and Punishment of the Thief; and they are so bigotted to the Opinion of its Certainty, that they have always something ready on which to charge its contrary Success, and there's no altering their Sentiments. But if any Person be caught strewing this Poison, he is severely punish'd, and sometimes with Death, tho' it be on
the

the last Account of Thieving, which is here frequently allow'd. When Persons confirm an Oath, they also make use of Fetiches; and when they drink the Oath-Draught, which every Swearer is obliged to do, they wish the Fetiche may kill them if they don't perform it. When any Nation is hir'd to another's Assistance, all the Chief ones are obliged to drink the Liquor too, with an Imprecation, that the Fetiche may kill them if they don't assist with Vigour to extirpate their Enemy. But *Snoek* says, Oaths of this Kind are frequently broken, by applying to the Priest in whose Presence they enter'd into the Obligation, and who they believe can absolve them. Some Negroes, before they take their Oaths, oblige the Priest to swear first, and drink the Oath-Draught, with an Imprecation, that the Fetiche may kill him if he ever absolves any Person from the Oath without the unanimous Consent of all concern'd. Our Author observes, that Oaths taken in this Manner are generally kept inviolable. The Negroes believe that Perjurers shall be swelled by the Oath-Drink till they burst, or else soon die of a languishing Sickness; and that it shall fare worst of all with guilty Women, who take this Draught to acquit themselves from the Charge of Adultery. If a Person be suspected of Thievery, and the Indictment be not fully made out, he must clear himself by drinking the Oath-Draught, and wish the Fetiche may kill him if he be guilty. They have numerous Ways of taking Oaths, especially one more solemn than ordinary, and us'd on special Occasions, thus: Every Priest has his particular Idol, prepared in a singular Manner, but most of 'em like the following Description: They have a great Wooden Pipe filled with Earth, Oil, Blood, the Bones of dead Men and Beasts, Feathers, Hair, and in short all Sorts of Trash and Excrements. The Negro who is to take an Oath before this Idol is placed directly over against it, and asks the Priest the Idol's Name. Upon Information, he calls it by its Name, recites the Contents of his intended Oath at large, and petitions that the Idol may punish him with Death if he swear falsely. Then he goes round the Pipe, and stands still and swears a second time in the Place and Manner as before, and this he repeats a

third time; after which the Priest takes some of the Ingredients out of the Pipe, besmears the Swearer's Head, Arms, Belly, and Legs, with it, and holding it above his Head, turns it three times round. Then he cuts off a Bit of the Nail of one Finger in each Hand, of one Toe of each Foot, and some of the Hair of his Head, which he throws into the Pipe where the Idol is lodged, and then the Oath becomes firmly obligatory. Before the Negroes begin a War, drive a Bargain, travel, or do any thing of Importance, they consult their false God by the Priest concerning the Event of the Undertaking, who generally encourages them to hope for good Success, whereupon they take his Word, and perform all his Commands, which are generally to offer up Sheep, Hogs, Fowls, Dogs and Cats, to their Idol, and sometimes Clothes, Wine, and Gold; all which the Priest sweeps to himself, (besides the Money given him for his Trouble) only he gives the Guts and Garbage of the slaughter'd Victims to his Idol to play withal. If the Priest is inclin'd to oblige the Querist, the Questions are put to the Idol in his Presence, and generally in one of the two following Methods: 1. By filling the Pipe with about 20 small Bits of Leather, with some Trash of the same Nature bound up in the Middle, some of which Ingredients signify good Success, and others the contrary. The Priest ~~shuffles~~ *shuffles* the Bundle together several times; and then if those which preface a good Issue happen to come frequently together, the Priest affirms, that the Undertaking shall end well: But our Author observes, that he can by Slight of Hand make which he pleases of the Leathers to come together; and that if he ever gives them a discouraging Answer, 'tis only to extort more Offerings from them, on Pretence of appeasing the angry Deity. 2. By pretending to take up a Sort of wild Nuts at guess, and letting them fall again, and then forming the Predictions from the Number falling even or odd. In short, the Priests have all the Opportunities in the World to fleece the People for their Credulity; and if the Event happens contrary to their Presage, they pretend the sacred Rites were not carefully perform'd, but slubber'd over in Part or omitted, and that the God was therefore

enrag'd. This takes so well, that the Priest is never accus'd of Falshood; and if his Predictions happen right, he is well rewarded, and cry'd up for the wisest and holiest Man in the World. When the Weather is unseasonable, or the Soil unfruitful, the Chiefs of the Town or Nation advise with the Priest what Course is properest to remove the Calamity, and his Orders are immediately proclaimed thro' the Land by a Cryer, with a large Penalty on all Transgressors. When their Fishery is at a low Ebb, they make Offerings to the Sea, which generally happens about *August* or *September*, when they commonly take vast Numbers of Fish, which the Negroes believe to be an Effect of their Offering. Every Village almost has a small Grove, where the Governors and chief People frequently repair to make their Offerings. They reckon them so sacred, that none durst defile them, or cut or break the Branches, for fear of the ordinary Punishment, and an universal Malediction. Every Person has also a particular Idol, which they worship that Day of the Week whereon they were born. This they call their *Bossom* or Holiday, and drink no Palm Wine before Sun-set. They are habited all in White, and smear'd with white Earth, as a Sign of Purity. Most of the Negroes, especially the chief ones, have another Week-Day sanctified to their Fetiches besides this, on which they offer a Cock; or if they are rich, a Sheep to their Idol, and then tear it in Pieces, and carry it to the Fire, every one snatching a Part, so that the Owner has the least Share on't. They cut the Guts into small Bits, and squeeze out the Excrements with their Fingers, which they boil with the Lungs, Liver and Heart, season'd with a little Salt and *Guinea* Pepper, without washing it from the Blood, and count it a great Dainty. *Snoek* observes, that the Negroes agree with the Papists in many ridiculous Ceremonies, particularly in Point of Abstinence, for they have set Days on which they must not drink Wine, and some are forbid the eating of one Sort or another of Flesh or Fowl as long as they live. They also plead Antiquity for their Religious Institutions as well as the *Romanists*; so that our Author thinks if it was possible to convert the Negroes to Christia-

nity, the Roman Catholicks would succeed sooner than the Protestants. He adds, that their Children will not be perswaded to eat what was restrain'd from their Parents. Amongst their great Number of false Gods, every Man, or at least House-keeper, has one, who they believe narrowly inspects their Lives, and rewards or punishes good or evil Men. They believe Rewards to consist in the Multiplicity of their Wives and Slaves, and Punishments in the Want of them; but they think Death the worst of all others, and 'tis to the Fear of this that our Author ascribes their Zeal in religious Matters, and their Abstinence from forbidden Meats and Drinks. They reckon Murder, Adultery, Thievery, and the like Crimes, which can be expiated with Money, no Sins. They have different Notions of a future State. Most of them believe that after a Person's Death he goes immediately to another World, where he lives in the same Character as here, and makes use of all the Offerings made by his Friends and Relations after his Death. They have no Idea of future Rewards or Punishments, only some think the Deceased are immediately convey'd to a famous River in the Inland Country call'd *Bosmanque*, where their God enquires what Lives they have led; and if they have religiously observ'd Holidays, abstain'd from forbidden Meats, and inviolably kept their Oaths, they say, they are gently wafted over the River to a Land abounding with all Delights, like *Mahomet's* Paradise; but if they have transgressed any of those Rules, then they say the Idol drowns them in the River. Others say, that after Death they are transported to the Land of the Whites, and are chang'd into white Men. The Inland Negroes tell the Blacks on the Coast, that in a very fine House far within Land there lives a great Priest, who changes the Winds and Weather; that his House, tho' without any Roof, is always shelter'd from Rain; that he knows all Things past and future; that he cures all Distempers, and works abundance of Miracles; that all his Neighbours must be examin'd by him after Death; and that if they have led good Lives, he sends them in Peace to a Place of Happiness; but that otherwise, he kills them a second time with a Club made on purpose, and

and placed near his House. In short, they make a Demi-God of him, and our Author says he was living in his Time, and that they daily related fresh Miracles of his working, ascribing their Legerdemain and Conjurations to the Gift of God; yet the Negroes believe there's a Devil, and that he often does them a great deal of Mischief; but our Author contradicts those who say they pray and sacrifice to him, and *Dapper* for saying, that when the Negroes eat or drink, they throw Part to the Ground for the Devil, tho' he owns they do it to oblige their Idols or deceased Friends. Once a Year they pretend to banish the Devil out of all their Towns, with a Procession and abundance of Ceremony. *Snoek*, who saw this twice at *Axim*, where they make the greatest Stir about it, says, that 'tis preceded by a Feast of 8 Days, accompanied with Singing, Dancing, and all manner of Jollitry, during which they give such a Loose to all Lampooning and Scandal, that they sing of one another's Villanies and Frauds without Punishment or the least Interruption, till they have had their Bellyfuls of Drink, when they turn their Bacchanalian Satyrs into Songs of Praise. On the 8th Day in the Morning they dress up an Image of the Devil, and hunt him with a dismal Cry, baiting him with Dirt, Excrements, Stones, Wood, or any thing they can come at. When they think they have drove the Devil far enough out of Town, they all return, and thus the Procession ends. From hence our Author observes, that the Negroes believe there are more Devils than one, because they drive him out of above 100 Towns at the same Time; and the better to keep him from returning, the Women scour all their Wooden and Earthen Vessels. The Negroes of *Ante* are tormented with a worse Devil, tho' they call him a God, which is a Giant, one Side of whose Body is sound, and the other rotten, which they say is immediate Death for any one to touch. The silly People endeavour to let him have his Bellyful, to which Purpose, says our Author, Thousands of Pots or Troughs of Viſtuals are continually found standing in the *Antese* Country. They believe the Apparition of Spirits and Ghosts, and that they often terrify the People; so that when any, especially a Person of Note,

dies, they say he appears for several Nights together near his late Dwelling. They have no solemn Festivals, but that called the Fair after their Harvest is ended, and that of banishing the Devil. They have no Notion of the Division of Time into Months and Weeks, besides what they have learnt from the *Europeans*, but reckon their Time by the Moon, and from thence know when 'tis proper to sow; yet they have been long acquainted with the Division of Months into Weeks and Days, and give each Day of the Week a peculiar Name. Their Sabbath falls on our *Tuesday*, but at *Ante* on *Friday*, on which no Person must fish, tho' he may do any other Work. The Inland Negroes divide their Time into Lucky and Unlucky. In some Countries the great fortunate Time lasts 19, and the lesser 7 Days, with 7 ill or unfortunate Days between them, when they never travel, till their Land, or undertake any thing of Consequence: and the Inhabitants of *Aquamboe* return all Presents sent on those Days, or at least cause them to be laid in a separate Place till the lucky Days come. Our Author observes, that there's no Certainty how this Distinction of good and bad Days came to be first settled among them, and adds, that the several Nations do all of them vary in Point of Time from one another, and that the Coast Negroes believe all Times alike. The Natives on the *Gold Coast* are not acquainted with Image Worship, but at *Ardra* there are Thousands of Idols. *Snoek* winds up his Account of their Religion and Superstition with observing, that the Negroes ascribe every uncommon Accident to a Miracle. *Dapper* says, that the *French* and *Portuguese* have sent several Missionaries hither to convert the Natives, but without Success. We come now to the Negroes Customs in Sickness, Death, and Funerals.

Snoek says, that the Sick are attended according to their Circumstances. Their Priests are their Physicians, who perswade the Relations, that the Patient cannot be recover'd without some Offerings to the false God; and pretending to make Enquiry what Sacrifice will be most acceptable to the Deity, he tells them a Sheep, Hog, Cock, or whatever himself likes best, which is sometimes Gold, Cloth, Drink, &c. in Pro-

portion.

portion to the Patient's Ability; for tho' they are such arrant Cheats, yet they have so much Conscience to consider the Man's Circumstances: Yet whatever they require, the Negroes freely part with; and if by any Means the Patient recovers, the Doctor is well rewarded besides, and extolled to the Skies, wherein *Snoek* contradicts *M. Focquenbrog*, who says, they had as lief see the Devil as the Doctor when they are cur'd. If the Patient grow worse, they make fresh Offerings, more expensive than the former, which they repeat till he recover or die. Sometimes they discharge one Physician, paying his Fees, and call another, who begins anew, condemns his Predecessor's Method, and causes very expensive Offerings to be made, that he may make the most of his Time, lest he should meet with his Predecessor's Fate. Thus their Physicians are often chang'd 20 times successively, and the Negroes place such Confidence in these Offerings, that sometimes they force the Priests to make them, insomuch that the very Boys here who are Slaves to the *Europeans*, if they have a good Master, run unbidden to the Priest to make Offerings for him as soon as ever he is sick; and sometimes Things are found in the Chambers of the chief Foreigners, consecrated by the Priests, and hid there with an Intent to preserve the Master's Life. The *Mulatto* Women are addicted to the same Superstition, if any *Europeans* that love and pay them well fall sick, whether they be their Husbands or Gallants; and our Author observes with Concern, that here are some *Europeans* too who are fond of this idolatrous Worship, and wear the Priests Charms about their Bodies. He says, the chief Medicines us'd here are Lime-Juice, Malaget, Cardamum, the Roots, Branches, and Gums, of Trees, and 30 several Sorts of green Herbs, which have an extraordinary healing Vertue. He observes, that their Remedies seem pernicious in the Cases wherein they are given, but yet prove very successful; and that several *Europeans* have been also cur'd by them, when their Physicians knew not what to prescribe. If the Patient die, whether his Death be natural or not, the Priest and Relations enquire whether the Deceased was ever perjur'd, and if he was, they take that to be the Cause, and Death

its Punishment; but if otherwise, they enquire whether he had any powerful Enemies that laid Fetiches in his Way; and if he had any, they sometimes find out and severely punish them. In short, *Snoek* says they are nicely inquisitive of this Matter, and that the *Dutch* and *Brandenburghers* having in his time sent each a young Man with Presents to the King of *Dinkira*, he dying soon after, they were both bound while the Priests made Enquiry whether the Presents they brought were poisonous; but being declared free, they were dismissed. When there is no Suspicion of Poison, they enquire whether any of the Family duly attended the Deceased, or were liberal enough in their Offerings. But if after all it prove not so, and the Cause remain undiscover'd, then they say the Person died because he or she was deficient in the Performance of their religious Rites. Then the Priest goes to the Deceased, asks him why he died, and informs the Relations of such Answers as suit best with his own Interest and Credit, which he pretends are made to him by God and the Dead, and therefore pass for undoubted Truth. *Snoek* contradicts those Authors from his own Experience, who say the Negroes apply directly to the Devil for Advice in dubious Cases, and govern themselves according to his Answer, for they only address themselves to their false Gods or Priests. The customary Questions to the Dead are put several Ways; some take the Corps upon their Shoulders in the Presence of the Priest, and then 'tis ask'd, Did not you die for such a Cause? And if he did, the Bearers are obliged to incline the Body towards the Querist, which they take for an affirmative Answer; but if otherwise, they stand still. As soon as the sick Person expires, they set up a dismal Crying and Squeaking thro' the whole Town, and the Youth of the Deceased's Acquaintance generally pay their last Devoirs to him, by firing several Musket-shot. If the Deceased be a Man, the Wives immediately shave their Heads close, smear their Bodies with white Earth, put on an old Garment, and run about the Streets with their Hair hanging about their Shoulders, and making a dismal Noise, continually repeating the Deceased's Name and great Actions, which lasts for several Days, till the

the Corps is bury'd. If a great Man is killed in Battle, and his Companions have no Opportunity to secure or bury him, his Wives are obliged to be in Mourning, and to keep their Heads shorn, till the Corps is brought home and bury'd. About 10 or 12 Years after they renew the Funeral Ceremonies, with as much Pomp and Solemnity as if he had dy'd but a few Days past, and the Wives put on their Mourning, &c. as before. While the Women lament abroad, the nearest Relations stay at home howling over the Corps, and washing and cleansing themselves with the usual Ceremonies. The Relations assemble also from all Parts, and he that is absent must pay a severe Fine, without a good Excuse. The Deceased's Relations and Town's People come also to join their Lamentations, with Presents of Gold, Brandy, fine Clothes, Sheets, &c. which they pretend is carried to the Grave with the Corps, and the larger the Present is, the more honourable they count the Donor. During this Concourse of the People, Brandy in the Morning and Palm Wine in the Afternoon are very briskly filled about, so that a rich Negro's Funeral becomes very chargeable: For after all this, they are richly cloath'd when put into the Coffin; besides which, other fine Clothes, Gold Fetiches, Corals, *Conte di Terra*, &c. are put into the Coffin with him for his Use in the other World. They adjust the Coffin Furniture in Proportion to what the Deceased leaves the Heirs, or to their Convenience. When this is over, the Relations and Friends meet together, and after two or three Days the Corps is bury'd, before which a Parcel of young Soldiers fire their Muskets all the Way till 'tis laid in the Ground, and a Crowd of Men and Women follow without Order, some silent, others crying and shrieking, and others laughing. When the Corps is interr'd, the Company go where they please, but most to the House of Mourning, where they drink and are merry for several Days successively. Sometimes they keep a King or great Person a whole Year above Ground; and to preserve it from rotting, lay it on a Bier, which they put over a gentle clear Fire, that by degrees dries it. Others bury them privately in their own Houses, but give out the while, that they preserve the Corps

in the same Manner, and will perform the publick Obsequies in due Time and Place. When the Day is come for burying the King, publick Notice is given in his own and neighbour Countries, which draws a vast Concourse of People to see the Funeral Solemnities, on which Occasion every one puts on his best Habit, and more Splendor may be seen in one Day, than otherwise in several Years. They also kill several Slaves to attend the deceased King in the other World, together with the Bossoms, which are one of his Wives and one of his chief Servants, whom he had dedicated in his Life to his false God. They also sell poor aged and weak Men, who are past their Labour, on purpose to be made Victims in these accursed Offerings; and our Author says, that what with hacking, piercing, &c. they endure a Thousand Deaths, and himself saw 11 Persons killed in this Manner, one of whom, after extreme Torture, was deliver'd to a Child of 6 Years old, who was an Hour in cutting off his Head with a Sabre; but he observes, that the *Europeans* don't suffer this in Places where they have any Authority, yet the Negroes remove privately to do it elsewhere. He says, they generally build a Hut or plant a little Bed of Rice on the Grave, into which they throw several worthless Goods of the Deceased, but not Household Stuff or valuable Moveables, as some Authors report. At *Axim* and other Places they set Earthen Images on the Graves, and wash them a Year after the Funeral, when they renew the Funeral Ceremonies in as expensive a Manner as before. He adds, that the Negroes are so fond of being bury'd in their own Country, that if a Person dies out of it, they bring the Corps home to be bury'd, unless it be too far off, in which case they bury him on the Spot; and if he has any Friends there, they cut off the Head, an Arm or Leg, cleanse and boil it, and carry it to his own Country, where they are interred with great Solemnity. *Dapper* says, that tho' the Rich are interred with their finest Habits, Gold and Jewels, yet they take them out of the Coffin as soon as 'tis laid in the Ground, and put in the Room some sorry Habit, and Goat's Flesh for the Deceased to live on in the other World. He gives an Instance of

a Boy that was shut up alive in a hollow Tree at *Azim*, with the Corps of a Cabocero.

We shall conclude our General History of this Country with the following Account of the Negroes Government, Administration of Justice and Punishments, Methods of War and Arms.

Snoek charges their Government with Licentiousness and Irregularity, which he ascribes to the small Authority of their Caboceroes, and says, that their Remissness and absurd Customs occasion frequent Wars. We have already observed that there are both Monarchies and Commonwealths here, and have also given an Account of the former. *Snoek* instances in those of *Axim* and *Ante*, which he says are the most regular Republicks, the rest being so confus'd, that there's no giving a tolerable Account of their Administration. The Government of *Axim* consists of Caboceroes or chief Men, and Manceroes or young Men. The former have the Administration of all Civil Affairs; but National Concerns, such as making Peace and War, raising Money, &c. fall under the Cognizance of both Parts, on which Occasions the Manceroes often manage with a high Hand, if the Caboceroes are not rich in Gold and Slaves.

They distribute Justice thus: If a Negro has a Quarrel with another, he carries Presents of Gold and Brandy to the Caboceroes, shews his Case to them, and desires them to oblige his Adversaries to make speedy and ample Satisfaction. If he meets with Favour, a Council is call'd immediately, or at farthest within two or three Days, and Judgment given on his Side, more in Regard to the Bribe than Justice; but if they are incens'd against the Plaintiff, or receive larger Presents from his Adversary, they declare on the contrary Side, or at least keep off the Trial, obliging the injur'd Person, after fruitless Sollicitations, to wait his Life-time perhaps for juster Judges: But sometimes the Parties will not wait so long for Justice, but seize the first Parcel of Gold or other Goods that fall in their Way, whether of their Adversaries or Neighbours, and keep them till they have full Satisfaction, or are at Peace with their Adversaries, or forc'd to Restitution. If he is strong enough to defend his Capture,

he engages a 3d Person in the Suit, on Account of the Seizure of his Effects, for Security, who hath his Remedy on the Person on whose Account he hath suffer'd this Damage, which occasions frequent Murders, and sometimes Wars. If the Sentence of the Caboceroes be just, or the Cause come before the *Dutch* Factory at *Axim*, 'tis adjudged against him who is prov'd to be in the wrong; but if he can clear himself by Witness, he is discharged; and if neither of the Parties have any Evidence, the Accused is also cleared upon his own Oath; but otherwise, he is liable to pay the Charges, upon the Plaintiff's giving in the same upon Oath. They prefer the Oath of Purgation before that of Accusation; for if the Plaintiff prove his Complaint by one or two Witnesses, the Defendant must not swear. This frequently occasions Perjury, &c. and he that is injur'd this Way seeks all Opportunities of Revenge; but our Author observes, that this Injustice very seldom occurs any where but in far Inland Places, which are beyond the Cognizance of the *Dutch* Forts; for all Suits arising near their Forts are finally determined by the Factors and the Caboceroes, from whom there's no Appeal, unless to the Director-General in some rare Cases, where they have been misinform'd. The Causes here are seldom so difficult as to require the Advice of Council, and the Suits, Plaintiffs, Defendants, and Judges, are equally simple.

Snoek says, the Negroes pay their Fines willingly. They punish Murder by Death or a Fine, which is of two Sorts, with Respect to the Free-born and the Slaves; but Persons are seldom executed for it, if they have Effects or Friends enough to pay the Fine. At *Axim*, the Fine for the Murder of a Free-born Negro is 500 Crowns, tho' some Abatement is generally granted by the Relations of the Deceased, who may be contented with as little as they please; but great Persons pay 9 or 10 times the Sum, in which Case 'tis left to the Judges. No Fines accrue to the King, as some Authors report, only something for his Trouble when he has been Assistant in getting them. The Murder of a Slave is usually fin'd 36 Crowns; but the Murderer generally pleads hard for an Abatement, and seldom pays more

more than a Gold Chain of about 32 Crowns. If a Murtherer cannot pay his Fine, they hack, prick, and torture him a Thousand Ways; but sometimes the *Dutch* send for the Malefactor, and dispatch him at once, by striking off his Head. Robbers must restore the Goods, and pay a Fine, in which they have a Regard to the Value of the Things, the Place where, and the Person by whom stolen. The Fines are laid according to the Ability of the Offenders, but never above, unless after an Accumulation of Crimes, when the Party is sent into Slavery, which makes the rich Negroes generally plead Poverty, lest they or their Relations should fall into the Hands of unmerciful Judges. The Stealing of Men or Cattle is always severely punish'd, and sometimes with Death, and they will sooner put a Man to Death for Sheep-stealing than Murder, especially in such Places where they are in no Subjection to the *Europeans*, who generally punish it by a Fine. All Fines at *Axim* are paid to the Factor, who distributes them to the injur'd Persons, after deducting his Fee, which us'd to be very considerable; but a certain Gentleman reduc'd it to 8 Crowns only for the Decision of the most important Suit, contrary to the old Municipal Customs of the Country, according to *Snoek*. After this, he shews the Perquisites which accrue to the Factor at *Axim* in his judicial Office. The Factor has two Third Shares of the Fines, and the Caboceroes the other. But if it be Murder, Robbery, or forcing the Payment of Debts, the Complainants have three Fourths, and the rest is divided between the Factor and Caboceroes, according to the Proportion of one Third to the latter, and two Thirds to the former. Those for whom the Factor gets in a Debt, pay one Fourth of the whole Receipt. *Snoek* observes, that the *Dutch* at *Axim* keep up their Authority so high, that the Negroes there dare not decide any Cause without Leave from the Factor, on Forfeiture of all the Gains, which is done with an Intent to prevent the Negroes from all Opportunities of forming any Designs in Prejudice of the Factory. He adds, that in several Places on the Coast, and especially those where the *Dutch* have little or no Power, and in case of small Debts, the Creditors, without asking their

Money of the Debtors, or citing them before the Judges, seize the first Thing they can meet with, thô of six times the Value, without regarding who is the Proprietor, who when he comes to demand it, is told that he must go to their Debtors, and take the Payment of them, which he does accordingly, and extorts what Price he pleases to demand for his Goods, without Controul; so that sometimes a poor Man is obliged to pay a Shilling for every Penny of the Debt, because the Creditor is generally more potent than he, or has the King or some great Man to support him. Sometimes also they extort Money from Persons by threatening to murder or wound them, or others at their Cost, on Pretence of Damage receiv'd from themselves or their Dependants; and our Author, who saw this Execution done twice, says, the Innocent suffer as much as if they had been really guilty. In every Village there's another Sort of a Court, under the Direction of the Manceroes, for trying all trivial Crimes, of which the Negroes are frequently guilty, such as beating or slandering one another. When an Affront of this Kind is given, the injur'd Person applies to the Manceroes, and tells them, that such a one has abus'd him, and that he sells or surrenders him to them to be punish'd according to his Desert. Then these Gentlemen apprehend, and after slight Examination fine the Offender, which if he refuse to pay, the Manceroes take up as much Goods in the Market as it amounts to on his Account, who is forced to pay it accordingly, and spend the Money in Palm Wine and Brandy: But if they have no Cause brought before them the whole Day, they study Pretences of Quarrel to summon Persons before them, that they may have Money to buy Liquor. We come now to their Methods of War, &c.

When the Negroes enter upon War, the Caboceroes and Manceroes join their Councils together. *Snoek* says, their Wars are chiefly occasion'd by the Recovery of Debts, and the Disputes of some of the chief People among them. They frequently break the Peace in this Manner: A Leading-Man in one Country having Money owing him from a Person in another, which is not paid him in Time, causes as many Goods, Free-

men, and Slaves, to be seized by Force in his Debtor's Country, as will richly pay him. Then the Men are clapp'd in Irons, and if not redeem'd, sold to raise Money for the Payment of the Debt. If the Debtor be an honest Man, and the Debt just, he immediately endeavours to satisfy his Creditors, and free his Countrymen, else their Relations, if powerful, force him to it. But when the Debt is disputable, the Debtor represents his Creditor among his Countrymen as an unjust Man, and if they believe him, endeavours to make some of the other Country Prisoners by Way of Reprizal; upon which they arm on both Sides, and endeavour to bring over the Caboceroes to their Party, because they have always some Men at their Beck, and next the Soldiers; so that it often happens the entire Ruin of a Country is owing to a Trifle, unless the principal Men make Peace, which commonly happens about Sowing-time, when the People have a Desire to return home to till the Ground, for they serve in the War without Pay, and bear their own Expences too. Sometimes the Governors go to War, because one makes a better Figure or has more Wealth than another, and invade each other's Countries, where they fall to killing and plunder, without the least Notice or Declaration of War. Sometimes the injur'd Nations hire another to assist them, who send them Auxiliaries well arm'd and appointed for less than 2000 *l.* their chief Aim being at Plunder. The Wages are divided betwixt the Caboceroes and Manceroes; but the former are so cunning, that the latter have not above Half a Crown or 5 *s.* apiece: And tho' the Plunder is principally design'd to defray the Expence of the War, and the Remainder to be divided, yet every Man catches what he can; but if there be no Booty, the Manceroes return home at Pleasure. Each is under a particular Chieftain; but he can only command his Slaves, for the Negroes don't own their Authority, or even that of their Kings, unless compelled by exorbitant Power; and if their Leader marches up first towards the Enemy, there are not many will follow him. War is so cheap here, that *Snoek* says, the four Years War which the *Dutch* had with the *Commanyschians* (except the Damage done to their

Trade) did not cost them in all 6000 *l.* for which they had 5 Nations successively in Pay. He observes, that an Offensive War may be managed here with 4000 Men in the Field, but that a Defensive one requires more; that what they call an Army on the Coast does not amount sometimes to above 2000, except at *Fantyn* and *Aquamboe*, the first of which can raise 25000 Men, and the latter many more. The Inland Potentates have numerous Armies, able to over-run whole Countries; but those on the Coast are so weak, that 5 or 6 together cannot raise 25000 Men; so that, together with their Cowardice, few Men are killed in a Battle, for they run as soon as they see a Man drop by their Sides, or a Brother Officer that is too much pressed. When they fight, every Commander crowds his Men together without Order, and keeps in the Middle. They run stooping and listning, that the Bullets may fly over their Heads. Others creep towards the Enemy, and when they are come close enough, let fly at once, but then run back as fast as they can to their Army to load their Arms, and fall on again. In short, *Snoek* says, their ridiculous Gestures, stooping, creeping, and crying, make them look more like Monkeys playing together, than like Soldiers engag'd. The Booty which the common Soldiers chiefly aim at are the Prisoners, Ornaments of Gold, and *Coute di Terra*, with the two last of which the Negroes, especially those within Land, so load themselves in their Dress, that they can scarce march. Common Prisoners, if not ransom'd, are kept or sold for Slaves; but for others, they are well guarded, and highly ransom'd; and if they take the Person that was the first Occasion of the War, they'll scarce let him go for his Weight in Gold, for fear he should hatch more Mischief. The most potent Negroes are Slaves till they are ransom'd, tho' the Sum demanded is often more than they and all their Friends can raise; but some are so revengeful against their Prisoners, that they murder them when they have no Hopes of a Ransom. Their Wars generally last long, and they often lie encamp'd a whole Year one against another without doing any thing, besides a few Skirmishes; but both Sides return home against rainy Weather. *Snoek* observes, that tho'

tho' this is chiefly owing to the Priests, without whose Suffrage they scarce venture a Battle, yet they advise them against it, on Pretence that the Gods have not yet declar'd in their Favour, and say a Battle will have an ill Issue. But if they see the Army much superior to the Enemy in Numbers and Courage, then they advise a Battle; and if it does not succeed well, they pretend to lay the Blame on the Commanders or Soldiers, for which the whole Army is punish'd, or find out some other Excuse to bring themselves off with a clear Character. *Dapper* says, that in War all go out to the Field, except old Men, Women, and Children under 18 or 20 Years of Age; that Drums and Trumpets play all the Time of Battle; and that some of them eat the Flesh of their dead Enemies, make Cups of their Skulls, and carry their Heads about in Triumph for a Fortnight or three Weeks, with Songs to the Praise of their Nation, and the Confusion of their Enemies.

Dapper says too, that when they go to War, they disguise themselves all over, by marking their Faces, Breasts, and the rest of their Bodies, with Lines, Crosses, Serpents, and several other Figures, of white, yellow, red, and other Colours. They have a very singular Gorget, which is a great Ring as thick as one's Arm, made of the Branches of Trees twisted together, which serves to ward off the Blows of their Hatchets. Their Head-piece is a Cap made of the Skin of a Crocodile or a Leopard, adorn'd with the Feathers of a red Parrot, and two or four Horns before. The Leaders wear a Crown of the Teeth of Elephants or Sea-Horses. They tie their Belt, in which hangs their Cutlafs or Sword, between their Legs, in order to keep down the Piece of Cloth which covers their Privy Parts. Their Cutlasses are broader at the Point than the Hilt, and carry but one Edge. Their Scabbards are of Dog or Goat's Skin, and the Hilt of a large red Shell about a Hand's Breadth; but some are of the Jaw-bone of an Ape or a Tyger. Their other Arms are Zagays, Arrows, and Bucklers. The first are of Wood, and have two Plates of Iron of an equal Weight at both Ends, that they may bear a Poize when they dart them. Their Bucklers are 5 or 6 Foot long, 3 or 4 broad, and made of matted Hoops

or Osiers, like a Plank, turning crooked towards the Ends, and the Middle is supported by a Cross of Copper or Iron, where are the Handles to hold it by. Some cover their Bucklers with Leather gilt or a Tyger's Skin, and lay a Plate of Iron or Copper over it two Foot long, and one broad. Their Bows are made of a very hard but pliant Wood, and their Arrows have instead of Feathers a Piece of Dog's Skin with the Hair on, which covers them from one End half Way, and their Points are poison'd with the Juice of venomous Herbs; but they are only us'd against the Enemies of the State. They have some large Drums 20 Foot long, which are always hung up in State before the King's Palace, or the House of the Captain of the Village, and never beat but at solemn Festivals and Days of publick Rejoycing. There are other Drums in Form like our Children's Tops, which none must beat but the Nobility. Their Trumpets are of Ivory, carv'd out with several Figures, to be sounded either at one End, or by a Hole in the Middle, and none durst blow them but the King or Captain. The *Portuguese* have taught the Negroes on the Coast to fire Arquebusses, and the *Dutch* daily bring them Muskets and Carabines, which the Inhabitants of *Mina* know how to use as well as the *Europeans*, and they throw their Zagays with wonderful Dexterity. *Snoek* says, they discharge their Fire-Arms sitting, creeping or lying down. He excuses the *Dutch* in bringing them Arms, because their Trade would be indifferent without this and Gunpowder, and the Negroes would otherwise be furnished by the *English*, *Danes*, and *Brandenburgers*; and he says, that tho' they all agreed to import none, yet the *English* and *Zealand* Interlopers would take their Opportunity to supply them. Their Swords are like Chopping-Knives, two Hands broad at the End, and but one at the Handle, 3 or 4 Spans long, crooked at the Top, and pretty strong, but blunt. They have a Wooden Guard, adorned on one Side, and sometimes on both, with small globular Knobs, cover'd with a Sort of Skin, and some have only Bits of Rope tinged black with the Blood of Sheep or other Cattle, and adorn'd with a Bunch of Horse-Hair; but Persons of Quality have thin Plates of Gold. Their Sheaths are almost

open on one Side, to which is sometimes hung, by Way of Ornament, a Tyger's Head. They wear them when they go out at their Left Hip, hanging in a Belt girt about their Waists, or stuck in their Vest, which is round about their Bodies, and comes betwixt their Legs, that they may run the swifter. Besides, they wear another Belt, with about 20 Bandaliers. Our Author says, their Caps of Crocodile's Skin are adorned on each Side with a red Shell, and behind with a Bunch of Horse-Hair, and about their Heads they wear a heavy Iron Chain, or something else instead on't. He observes, that the Bow and Arrows are not much us'd by the Coast Negroes, except those of *Aquamboe*, who are such dextrous Archers, that when they hunt Hares, they lodge their small fine Arrows in what Part of the Hare's Body is desired; but he says, they are headed with Feathers, contrary to *Dapper*, and that none of the Coast Negroes use poison'd ones, (but those of *Awince*) or know what Poison is. They have two Sorts of Zagays, the least about half an Ell long and slender, which they dart; and the largest, about twice as long and broad, have the upper Part pointed with Iron like a Pike. They are of several Forms; some of them are cover'd for the Length of a Span or two, and there's always one or other to carry them after them. They hold their Shields in their Left Hand, and dart the Zagays with the Right, in which they hold their Sabres. They cover themselves with their Bucklers, so that 'tis impossible to come at them; but they are not Proof against a Musket-Ball, and serve only to ward off the Arrows, Zagays, and Sabres. He adds, that they have a few Cannon, which they know not how to manage, and only discharge them by Way of Salvo's.

We thought fit to premise the following Account of the *English Trade to Africa*, before we come to their Settlements in particular.

It appears from a Tract published at London in 1708; and entituled, *Considerations upon the Trade to Guinea*, That the *English* export thither Yearly 30000 Pieces of Woollen Cloth, large Quantities of wrought Iron, Guns, Swords, Knives, Gunpowder, Brass, and Pewter, together with some tri-

vial Merchandize from *India*, the *Mediterranean*, *Holland*, and *Sweden*, the whole amounting to the Value of 100000 *l.* a Year in Time of Peace, when he says 100 Ships are directly employ'd every Year in the *Guinea Trade*, but not above 60 in the Time of War. He reckons that each Ship so employ'd carries 200 (in all 20000) Negroes to the *West-Indies*, which in Time of Peace amounts to 200000 *l.* at the common Rate of 10 *l.* per Head, and computes the common Freight of those Hundred Ships from the *West-Indies* to be worth 100000 *l.* more. To which he adds, that the Camwood, Ivory, Wax, Gold, and other Commodities, brought hither from *Guinea*, amount in Time of Peace to another 100000 *l.* He sets down 200000 *l.* more for a Year's Value of the Labour of 20000 Negroes in our own Plantations, at the Rate of 15 *l.* per Head; but the whole Profit will the better appear from the following Table.

	<i>l.</i>
Exports to <i>Guinea</i> —————	100000
Freight of 20000 Negroes —————	200000
Freight of 100 Ships from the } <i>West-Indies</i> —————	100000
Teeth, Wood, Wax, and Gold, } from <i>Guinea</i> —————	100000
Merchants Profit and Insurance —	100000
Labour of the 20000 Negroes in } the Colonies —————	200000
100 Ships extraordinary to help } bring the Freight from the } <i>West-Indies</i> —————	100000
Amount of the Yearly Profit ———	900000

The Author of this little Tract endeavours to prove, that our *Guinea Trade* is still capable of far greater Improvement, if 'twas freed from its present Incumbrances of 10 *l.* per Cent. and free and open for all Adventurers on an equal Bottom, and observes, that our Imports from *Guinea* are all useful and necessary, and no Way prejudicial to our Product or Labour. He tells us, that the *African Company* was erected in 1672, and had a Patent for the sole Trade to this Coast; but there were so many Complaints that they could not supply the Plantations with a third Part of what Negroes they wanted, that the Matter was examin'd.

examin'd in Parliament, and an Act passed in 1697, whereby Liberty was given to any other Subjects to trade within the Limits of the Company, paying 10 *l.* per Cent. for the Privilege, which, together with one Third of the Forfeitures, goes for maintaining the Forts and Castles.

He adds, that the Welfare of our *West-India* Plantations, and our Trade to *New Spain*, depends entirely on the Improvement of our Negro Trade to *Guinea*, as is further prov'd by a Piece published here in 1710, entituled, *A true State of the Difference between the Royal African Company and the Separate Traders*. We refer to the latter for a particular Account of the Charge requisite to keep our *African* Forts in a Condition of Defence, and of what has been allowed for that End by our *African* Company.

This Author, whose Account is newer than any that has yet come to our Hands, gives the following Relation of the Fort of *Gamboa*, upon the River of that Name, which being one of the most considerable that belongs to our Company in *Africa*, we thought it as proper to insert it here, as if we had done it in the Country of that Name. He places the Mouth of the River in N. Lat. 12. 47. and the Fort upon *James's* Island, which lies about 8 Leagues up in the Middle of the River, where 'tis about 3 Miles over. He says, at low Water the Island does not take up above three times the Ground that the *Royal Exchange* stands on, and that the Fort is quadrangular, and has 4 Bastions, which he says were rebuilt in 1704, before which it lay so open, that it could easily be enter'd; but he observes, that they are very irregular, and not able to defend one another, and finds other Faults in the Fortifications, for which we refer to the Book it self. The River is salt, and there's no fresh Water here but what the Boats fetch at a Distance, which the Natives often stop by an Embargo on some Pretence or other, on purpose to oblige our Governor to send a Present to their King, which he must do or perish. The Houses are all thatch'd. There are 5 Guns apiece at the N. W. N. E. and S. E. Bastions, and 6 at that on the S. W. but they stand or lie on the Ground for want of Platforms, besides 17 others without, 10 of which are laid upon Timber on the N. Side, like those

on the Tower-Wharf, and the rest lie scatter'd about. The Walls of the Fort are about 17 Foot high, of a proportionable Thickness, and handsomely built, with small sandy Stones, cemented with the Lime of the Country, which proves very firm. Our Author says, that in *June* 1709, the whole Garrison consisted only of the Governor, two Factors, &c. a Lieutenant, two Serjeants, two Corporals, and nine Soldiers; but he sets down 61 private Soldiers as necessary, besides Officers, the Charge of which he asserts would not exceed 1200 *l.* per Ann. He computes the Charge of our Company here in Presents to the *African* Princes thus:

	Bars a Year.
To the King of <i>Barra</i> —————	40
Governor of the King's Town } to the King's Alcaid ———— }	6
Governor of the <i>English</i> Town } to the Alcaid of <i>Jellofree</i> — }	6
The King's Steward to the } King's Charee ————— }	2
The Governor of <i>Jello Free-</i> } <i>Port</i> , where the <i>English</i> Ship- } ping take in Water, to the } Alcaid there ————— }	4
A Present to the King and his } Officers ————— }	14
	—
	In all 72
	—

Which he reckons cost about 12 *l.* 12 *s.* at the Rate of 3 *s.* 6 *d.* a Bar in *London*, and says, that all the other Presents of Brandy, &c. which are generally made to those Princes, cannot amount to above so much more. He tells us, that in *September* 1708, a *French* Privateer of 8 Guns and 30 Men from *Martinico* landed on the Island, and with 7 Men surpris'd and took the Fort by Scalado, without firing a Piece, tho' the Garrison, including the Officers, was above 20, and then ransom'd it for 40 or 50 Slaves.

Then he gives an Account of our other Factories of *Serrelion* and *Sherbrow*, which are so near each other, that one Governor serves both. In *May* 1709, he says there were at *Serrelion* 13 Whites, including the Governor, &c. and but four in *Sherbrow*, who were only settled there to look after the Company's Effects. He tells us, that

the Officers and Soldiers in both Places live in Huts built with Mud, and thatch'd; and that they have a few Guns scatter'd about on the Ground without Carriages. He computes the Yearly Charge of both these to our Company at 341*l.* 10*s.* but says, that 41 common Soldiers are necessary for the Defence of the Place, besides the proper Officers. He observes, that the *African* Company received from the Commencement of the Act to September 1707, 87465*l.* 9*s.* 6*d.* from the Duty of 10 per Cent. in England, besides many Thousands of Pounds from our Plantations abroad, and especially in *Barbadoes*, where the Payments amounted in 9 Years time to 7443*l.* 15*s.* 9*d.* He complains (with what Justice we know not) that the Company's Agents hinder'd the Negroes in his Time from trafficking with the Ships of the Separate Traders, and gave such Protection to the *Dutch* Interlopers, that they engrossed the greatest Part of 224000*l.* Worth of Gold, at which he values the Annual Produce of the *Gold Coast*; whereas 'tis said, that formerly our *African* Company us'd to coin 50000 Guineas per Annum, and that they might still coin treble the Number, if it were not for the *Dutch* Interlopers, and the Circumvention of the *Portuguese*, who he pretends are supplied by the Company with Slaves for *Brasil*, in Exchange for Sugar, Rum, Tobacco, &c. notwithstanding the Act of 10 per Cent. &c. prohibits the *English* from importing Negroes any where but to our own Colonies. We refer those concern'd to his Reflections on this Matter, and shall only add his Account of the Negroes we import hence to the *West Indies*. He says, that those in *Barbadoes* amounted in his Time to 79000, and require an Annual Supply of 4000; that *Jamaica* requires 10000, the *Leeward* Islands 6000, and the Colonies on the Continent 6000 more; in all 26000 Negroes. He proves, that the Company imported to the *West-India* Islands between 1680 and 1688, when they had an exclusive Trade, 46396 Negroes, and but 17760 from 1698, when the 10 per Cent. Act commenc'd, to 1707; whereas the Separate Traders within the same Space imported 71268 Negroes into *Barbadoes*, *Jamaica*, and *Antegoa*, besides what they carried into other *American* Plantations. That in

1700, 1701, and 1702, above 42000 Negroes were imported into *Barbadoes*, *Jamaica*, and *Antegoa*, whereof all but 4000 by the Separate Traders. That from the Time the aforesaid Act commenc'd to 1709, the Separate Traders had imported into *Maryland* above 6000 Negroes, (and the Company none) which enabled them to make 24000 Hogsheads of Tobacco more every Year than before. He adds, that there are 15000 Negroes in *Virginia*, and that the *African* Company never imported thither 2000.

We come now to the particular Geography of the *Gold Coast* of *Guinea*.

9. Affi, Affinee, Atsyn, or Atchin Kingdom.

DApper says, the Negroes call it *Aksem*, and bounds it with *Little Incaffan* on the E. *Iguira* on the N. and on the S. with the Sea and some Rocks. He says, there are but 3 Villages on the Coast. About 4 Leagues W. from the Cape of *Three Points*, there's the Mouth of a River which has little Water, but is said to rise a great Way off in the Country of *Iguira*; and another River which runs from a great Distance, and some Negroes of *Acania* say it crosses the whole Province. There's another River in this Kingdom which the Negroes call *Mancu*: It runs thro' the Province of *Iguira*, and is not navigable by Boats, because of Rocks, at the Bottom of which the Negroes find a great deal of Gold. *Snoek* says, the Country is well cultivated, and abounds with a great Number of large, fine, populous Villages, some on the Shore, and others on the main Land. The most considerable of the former lie under the *Brandenburg* and *Dutch* Forts, of which the latter is by much the best, and the *Dutch* Factor here has an absolute Power over the neighbouring Country, as we have already observed in the Government of *Axim* in the General History of the *Gold Coast*.

The most noted Places here are, 1. *Affinee* or *Affi*. *Moll* and the *Sansons* place it on the E. Side of the River *Suerio* or *Siveria Costa*, on the Shore; but the former sets it in the *Ivory Coast*. *Snoek* places it about 7 Miles from that called the *Bottomless Pit*, and says, the

the Coast bears E. and by S. and that the only Trade here is for Gold, there being no Elephants Teeth. The *French* in our Author's Time had a Lodge here on the Shore, encompassed with Palisadoes, mounted with 5 Cannon, guarded by 8 Men, and well furnished with Provisions, except Water, which the Negroes of *Affine*, who retir'd upon their Arrival a Mile within Land, always endeavour to keep from them; so that 'twas thought the *French* could not long subsist here without Assistance from *Europe*. He adds, that the Coast from hence to Cape *Apollonia* or *Three Points* bears E. S. E. that the Trade betwixt this Place and *Rio Cobre* is very inconsiderable, and the little Gold Dust which is brought hither either sophisticated, or of very small Value, since the Country was conquer'd and laid waste; tho' 9 or 10 Years before our Author's Time its Commerce was in a flourishing State.

2. *Atchim*, *Axim*, or *St. Anthony's Fort*. The *Sanfons* place it beyond the River *Manca*, almost 90 Miles E. of *Affinee*, and *Moll* but 60 Miles from thence on the other Side of the River *Combre*. *Dapper* places it about 4 Leagues W. from the Cape of *Three Points*, and says, that in the Time of King *Emanuel*, the *Portuguese* built a Fort here, with the Consent of the Negroes, and called it *St. Anthony's*, but lost it to the *Dutch*, with other Places, in February 1642, before the Conclusion of the Truce between both Nations. He adds, that when the Sun shines, 'tis visible a great Way at Sea; but when Ships are near it, a Rock lies over against it, which hinders the Sight on't. *Snoek* says, that the Fort is not large, but beautiful, strong, and well situate. It has three good Batteries, besides Breast-Works, Out-Works, high Walls on the Land-Side, and a good Number of Guns.

Snoek tells us, that *Axim* was a potent Monarchy till the Arrival of the *Brandenburghers*; upon which some of the Inhabitants put themselves under their Protection, but the rest adher'd to the Government of the *Dutch*. He extends it 6 Miles from the River *Cobre* to the Village *Boeswa*, a Mile W. of the *Dutch* Fort near the Village of *Boutry*. The Inhabitants, he says, are for most Part wealthy, and sell a great deal of Gold underhand to the *English* and *Zealand*.

Interlopers, tho' if discover'd the *Dutch* confiscate their Goods, and lay a Fine upon their Persons. The Inhabitants follow Trade, Fishing, and Agriculture, especially in the Tillage of Rice, which grows here more than any where, and is transported all over the *Gold Coast*, for which they return Millet, Jammes, Potatoes, and Palm Oil, all which are very rare here, for the Soil is moist, and bears few Fruits besides Rice.

3. *Rio Cobre*, or the River *Ancober*, i. e. *Serpentine*, so called (*Says Snoek*) by the *Portuguese* from its Turning and Winding. He places it a Mile or two above Fort *St. Anthony*, and says, it runs 20 Miles within Land; that 'tis a pleasant River, and has a wide Mouth, but shallow; after which it grows deeper and narrower. The Banks are adorned with fine lofty Trees, that yield a delightful Shade, and their Branches are hung with fine Birds and diverting Apes all the Way. About a Mile up the River there's a fine populous Village, which extends a quarter of a Mile on the W. Bank. In these Parts there are a great Number of the like Villages, that together make up three several Countries, of which the first next the Sea is called *Ancober*, the middlemost *Abocroe*, and the farthest within Land *Eguira*, the two last being Commonwealths, and the other a Monarchy. Some Years ago the *Dutch* had a Fort and a considerable Trade in *Eguira*, there being an Afflux of Gold hither from all Foreign Parts, besides what comes out of the Mines of the Country; but the same was blown up by Order from the Commander in Chief of the Negroes, during a Negotiation betwixt him and the *Dutch*, to which he had invited them, by shooting Gold instead of Bullets, and himself perished with his Enemies.

4. *Fredericksburg*. *Moll* places it about 10 Miles S. E. from *St. Anthony's Fort*. *Snoek* says, 'tis the principal Fortress of the *Prussians* on this Coast, and lies but 3 Miles E. from *St. Anthony's Fort*, on the Hill *Mamfro*, near the Village *Pocquesos*. 'Tis handsome, pretty large, and defended with 4 great Batteries, and 46 small Cannon. Its Gate is the finest on the Coast, but too large for the Structure. On the E. it has a beautiful Out-work, which deprives the Fort of a great Part of its Strength, so that it would be easily gain'd by an Attack on the W. Side.

Besides,

Besides, the Breast Works are built no higher than a Man's Knee, so that none can come upon the Batteries, but the Negroes may easily reach them with a Musket-shot. There are a great many fine Dwellings in the Inside. The Commander in Chief of this and another Fort, which, with a Lodge, are all that belong to the *Prussians* on this Coast, takes the Title of Director-General, under the King of *Prussia* and his *African* Company. In *Snoek's* Time, the Commanders and Servants, except common Soldiers, were for most Part *Dutch*, who, tho' they aimed at it, could never accomplish an absolute Dominion over the Blacks, either because of their intestine Divisions, or the villainous Nature of their Negroes, who are for most Part such Rogues as have fled to them for Refuge from the *Dutch*.

10. Little Incaffan Kingdom.

Dapper bounds it on the W. with *Atsyn*, on the N. with *Eguira*, on the E. with *Anten*, and on the S. with the Sea and the Cape of *Three Points*.

'Tis only noted for, 1. The Village *Ta-erama*, which *Moll* places about 11 Miles S. E. from *Fredericksburg*, and *Snoek* in the Middle of the Cape of *Three Points*, where he says the *Brandenburghers* built a Lodge in 1674, and design'd a Fort, to keep the neighbouring Watering-place in their Power; but our Author says, this and their two Forts have been so expensive to them, that they'll scarce build a new one.

2. *Acoda*, where the *Brandenburghers* have another Fort, called *Dorothea*, two Miles and a half E. below the Cape of *Three Points*. *Snoek* says, that 11 Years before he wrote, (which is about 10 Years ago) the *Dutch* enlarg'd it, and deliver'd it to the *Brandenburghers*, who have since much strengthen'd and improv'd it. 'Tis a House with a flat Roof, on which are two small Batteries and Half-Curtins, planted with several little Cannon, and 'tis well furnished with Rooms and Conveniencies, tho' slightly built, and somewhat crowded. He adds, that 'tis subject to the King of *Ante*.

3. *Cabo de tres Puntas*, or the Cape of *Three Points*. *Dapper* places it in Lat. 4. 10. wherein *Moll* agrees with him; but the *San-*

sons in Lat. 4. 20. Some call it Cape *Apolonia*. *Snoek* says, 'tis low plain Ground, and is only known by three Hills behind it; and that the Land from hence to *Axim*, which is about 7 Miles, is full of Thousands of *Coco-Trees*, with a very broad flat Shore, fit for travelling with Coach or Chaise.

11. Ante or Anten Kingdom.

Dapper places it about 10 Leagues from the Cape of *Three Points*, and 15 from *Atchin*, and bounds it with *Little Incaffan* on the W. *Eguira* on the N. W. *Mompa* on the N. N. W. *Adom* on the N. *Tabeu* on the N. E. and *Guaffo* on the E. and says, it abounds with Plants and Animals, especially Hens, Goats, Jujames, Ananas, and Palm Trees, from which they draw such excellent Wine and Oil, that the Negroes supply all the Country with it for 15 or 20 Leagues round, and transport it in Canoes over all the *Gold Coast*. The Inhabitants of the Coast live upon Fishing and Agriculture, and never take Part in the Quarrels of the *Europeans*, who come thither to traffick. The *English* and *Dutch* began to settle here; but finding here was no Gold, and that that which came from *Eguira* was not worth much, they desisted. Nevertheless, 'tis a good Coast for Wood and Water, and all other Refreshments for Mariners. *Dapper* adds, that the King of *Anten* resides 4 or 5 Leagues from the Coast, and has *Brasso's* or Captains in every Village. *Snoek* says, the Natives call this Country *Hante*, and begins it at the Village *Boeswa*, two Miles E. of *Acoda*. 'Twas divided for several Years into the Upper and Lower, of which *Axim*, already described, made the former, and was very populous and potent, and the People, who were very martial and great Plunderers, us'd to annoy the *Dutch* very frequently; but they are since much weaken'd by their continual Wars with *Adom* and other neighbour Countries. *Snoek* reckons this Country about 8 or 9 Miles long from *Acoda* to a Mile and a half below *Zaconde*, where he ends it. 'Tis so pleasant by Situation, that *M. Focquenbrog* compares it to the Country of *Cleve*; and our Author says, 'tis interspersed with Hills, cover'd with extraordinary

ordinary high fine Trees, and with wide Valleys, which are so proper for the planting of all Sorts of Fruit, that if they were as well cultivated as water'd, they would produce Eatables enough for half the Coast. It abounds with very good Rice, and the richest Sort of Millet, whose Grain is red, together with Potatoes and other Fruits, all good in their Kind, and there are many Fruit-Trees. The Sugar-Canes are larger, and abound more here than any where else in these Parts; but our Author observes, that by the last War betwixt the *Anteans* and *Adomians*, this Country, which about 1690 was blessed with numerous and populous Villages, plentiful Harvests, and abundance of Cattle, was quite ruin'd and strip-ped of its Inhabitants, except a few who took Shelter under the *Dutch* Fort near *Boutry*, so that most of the Land was left wild and uncultivated. He says, 'tis water'd by a fresh wide River, which runs by the *Dutch* Fort near *Boutry* to the Inland Country, and is overshadow'd by the Leaves of high Trees on both Sides, and other lesser ones which are hung with Oysters; but 'tis navigable no more than 3 Miles from the Shore. It abounds with Fish and Crocodiles, as the Country does with Apes, Harts, Elephants, Tygers, Wild Cats, &c.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Dikjeschoff*, *Dickys-Cove*, or the Fort of *Dix-Cove*, properly called *Infuma* or *Infama*. *Moll* places it 10 Miles E. of the Cape of *Three Points*. *Snoek* says, the *Brandenburghers* having set up the Elector's Flag here, the *English* often disputed the Ground with them, till the former not finding it turn to great Account, quietly yielded it up to the *English*, who in 1691 built a small and slight Fort here. 'Tis not a Place of good Trade, if we may believe *Snoek*, and the Negroes hereabouts are so untractable, fraudulent, and villainous, that the *English* could not deal with him in his Time, for they repelled Force by Force, and having almost taken the Fort by Siege, obliged the *English* to their own Terms, abridged them of their Power, and imposed false Gold upon all their Ships that came thither to trade, in which he would make us believe the *English* chief Governor then on the Coast had a Hand, because they could obtain no Redress from him when apply'd to. He observes, that this Cheat is

become so common here, that the Place deserves the Name of the *False Mint* of *Guinea*; and that in his Time Two Pounds Sterling of false Gold were publickly sold for a Crown in good Gold. The Author of the *True State of the Difference between the Royal African Company and the Separate Traders*, printed in 1710, says, 'tis a square Fort with 8 Guns, seldom musters above 6 Men, and sometimes fewer, and is only kept up as a Place to provide Lime, Plank, and Timber, for the Repairs of our other Forts in these Parts: But he says, it requires 20 common Soldiers to put it in a due State of Defence, besides a Governor, Gunner, and Serjeant, the Annual Charge whereof he says would amount to 337 l. 10 s.

2. The Village *Boutry*, *Bottrouw*, or *Boutroe*. *Snoek* says, 'tis pretty large and populous, and that the Inhabitants are fairer Dealers than those of *Infuma*. He sets it a Mile and a half from the former, at the Foot of a high Hill, whereon the *Dutch* have a small ill shap'd Fort, built in an oblong Form, divided into two Parts, and called *Batenstein*, which *Moll* places 9 Miles E. of *Dix-Cove*. *Snoek* adds, that it has two sorry Batteries, planted with 8 small Guns; that for several Years before his Time the *Dutch* lost more than they got by it; and that 'tis the healthfullest Place on the Coast.

3. *Tocorary*, *Takorari*, or *Moll's Taccoradoc*, which he places about 14 Miles E. of the former, *Snoek* a Mile W. of *Zaconde*, and the *Sansons* 28 Miles N.E. of the Cape of *Three Points*. *Dapper* says, this is the chief Place of *Ante*, and has a good Harbour, with a Fort near it belonging to the *Dutch East-India Company*, and called *Fort Witsen*, after the Name of an illustrious Family in *Holland*. In 1664, the *English* Captains *Holmes* and *Cubits* besieg'd it with two Men of War, 6 Frigats, and 6 other Vessels, and took it by Storm; but the next Year the *Dutch* Admiral *Ruyter* retook it, and considering that 'twas a Place of little Importance, and that it could not be maintain'd without more Charge than Profit, raz'd it to the Ground, and at the same Time the *Dutch* Governor, *John Valkenburg*, sent 900 Negroes hither from the Neighbourhood of *Fort St. George de la Mina*, who being mortal Enemies to those of *Takorari*, plunder'd the Village, destroying it with Fire and Sword,

and cutting off the Heads of all that they took Prisoners. *Snoek* says, the *English*, *Dutch*, *Brandenburghers*, *Swedes*, and *Danes*, have all had their Turns in the Possession of this Fort, and that *De Ruyter* lost it, but it fell again afterwards in the Hands of the *Dutch*, who, when our Author was here, managed their Traffick in a Negro's House, where having no Success, they wholly quitted it, and the Town was so destroyed in the War with the *Adomese*, that 'tis only inhabited by a few poor People.

4. *Zaconde*, *Succande*, or *Secunde*. *Snoek* says, 'tis a Village 4 Miles beyond *Boutry*, with a small *Dutch* Fort call'd *Orange*, and the Ruins of an *English* one about a Musket-shot farther. They were both in being 6 Years before he wrote; but the Trade was so bad, and the Officers of each Fort so jealous of one another, that they both lived in miserable Poverty, at the Expence of the *English* and *Dutch* Companies: Soon after which the *English* Fort was burnt by the *Antean* Negroes, the chief Commander and some of the *English* killed, the rest plunder'd, and nothing left standing but the Walls; so that the Place remained to the *Dutch* but very little to their Advantage, except one Year when they traded here for a large Quantity of Gold, which the *English* understanding, made several Attempts to rebuild their Fort, but were always obstructed by the *Antean* Negroes. He adds, that before the War betwixt *Adom* and *Ante*, the Healthfulness of the Place made it one of the finest and richest Villages both in Money and People upon the whole Coast; but the *Adomese* Conquerors entirely destroy'd it; so that tho' there are a few slight Dwellings built since, and 'tis like to grow an indifferent Village, yet it will require several Years to recover its former Grandeur. The Author of the *Present State of the Differences between the African Company and Separate Traders* says, the Garrison is but a little useless House, defended with eight Guns and two Men; but that it requires 10 common Soldiers, besides a Governor, Gunner, and Serjeant; and that the Charge thereof would be 207 l. 10 s. a Year.

5. *Sama* or *Chamah*. *Moll* places this about 10 Miles E. from the former, and the *Sansons* near the Mouth of a River that runs into the Sea, 23 Miles N. E. of *Tecorary*. *Dap-*

per makes it no more than 4 great Leagues from the latter, and says, it lies on a Hill, contains about 200 Houses, and is divided into three Quarters, each commanded by a Captain. Most of the Inhabitants are Fishermen, and tributary to the King of *Gavi*. The *Portuguese* had a Redoubt here, but suffer'd it to run to Ruin, and the *Dutch* seiz'd it; and seeing 'twas very convenient to them for Wood and Water, they repair'd it, and planted a Battery on it 14 Foot square. They also rebuilt the Factory, because it was proper for Trade, and for a Concourse of the Negroes of *Adom* and *Wassa*. 'Tis water'd by a clear River, which is suppos'd to come from a great Distance, but is not navigable above 7 or 8 Leagues higher. Some Years ago they sent 6 Persons in a Sloop, with 3 Weeks Provisions, to seek out a Passage; but after they had made 10 or 12 Days Voyage, they were obliged to return *re infecta*, because the Channel was full of Cataracts. *Snoek* says, the Town is pretty large and populous, but the Inhabitants poorer than any on the *Gold Coast*. The *Dutch* Fort here is no bigger than that at *Boutry*, and has the same Number of Guns; but 'tis somewhat longer, has 4 small Batteries, and still retains the Name of *St. Sebastians*, given it by the *Portuguese*. In the *Dutch* Wars with *England*, it was almost levelled to the Ground, and was only encompassed with Palisadoes, which *Snoek* says the *English* attacked in Conjunction with the *Jalishians*, but could not force it, and that ever since they have enjoy'd it without Disturbance. *Snoek* says, the *Chamascian* River, or *Rio de St. Juan*, which the Negroes call *Bossum Pra*, and worship as a God, runs from the *Dutch* Fort 100 Miles within Land, according to the Report of the Negroes, is somewhat less than that of *Ancober*, but pretty wide, and navigable by loaden Boats from the Sea, if the Pilots avoid a Rock near its Mouth, which the Sailors call the *Sugar Rock*. The *Dutch* furnish their Ships from hence with Wood and Water, and the Fort with Fuel, without which Advantages he thinks they could not maintain it, because the Commerce here is but small, the keeping of it very chargeable, and they are continually plagu'd by the villainous Negroes of *Adom*, of whom hereafter.

12. The Kingdom of Guaffo or Great Commendo.

Dapper bounds it on the W. with *Tabou* and *Anten*, from which 'tis separated by a little River, *Adom* on the N.W. *Abrambo* on the N. *Fetu* on the E. and the Sea on the S. He says, *Commendo*, *Fetu*, and *Sabon*, were formerly only one Kingdom, but now three. The Negroes of *Mina* have often burnt their Villages, and some Years ago those of *Abrambo* gain'd a Victory over them, and killed their King; for the Inhabitants are better Fishers than Warriors, and they often go out to catch Fish early in the Morning with 60 or 80 Canoes. He adds, that the Soil is inferior to none in these Parts for Fruits and all Commodities.

Snoek, who calls this Country *Commany*, says, it extends but 5 Miles along the Shore from the River of *Chama* to the Town of *Mina*, and is about the same Breadth.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Little Commendo* or *Commany*. *Dapper* says, the Negroes call it *Aitako*, *Agitaki*, or *Akitaki*, and the Portuguese, *Adea de Torres*, and places it four short Leagues E. of *Sama*, on the Confines of the Kingdom of *Fetu*. *Snoek* says, it lies in the middle Part of the Shore; that the Negroes call it *Ekke Tokki*; and that the English have a large Stone Fort here with four Batteries, besides a Turret fit to be planted with Guns, in which they were settled by the Negroes to spite the Dutch at the Fort of *Vredenburg* in the Neighbourhood, with whom the Inhabitants were then at War. The Author of the *State of the Difference between the African Company and the Separate Traders* says, our Fort is square, with 24 Guns, and 17 Men to defend it; but that it would require 24 Soldiers to garrison it as it ought to be, besides a Governor, Gunner, Serjeant, Corporal, Surgeon, Surgeon's Mate, and Chaplain, the Annual Charge whereof he computes would amount to 510 l. 10 s. and he supposes that the Chaplain, Surgeon, and his Mate, might also serve *Succande* and *Dickys-Cove*, because they lie so near each other.

2. *Vreden-Burgh*. *Snoek* says, this is a Dutch Fort, but a Musket-shot or two from the former; that 'twas built in 1688; and that

'tis a large square Building, and has as many Batteries as that; but tho' 'tis big enough for 60 Men to live in, and there are Port-Holes in the Breast-Work for 32 Guns, yet there are not near so many of either. In 1695, the Negroes attacked this Fort, when our Author says he commanded here with less than 20 Men, and bravely repulsed them.

3. *Guaffo* or *Great Commenda*. *Dapper* says, 'tis the chief Place within Land, and has a Market, where Provisions are Plenty, and sold very cheap.

4. The Castle of *Mina* or Fort St. George on the Coast. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 5. 10. Long. 21. 20. *Moll* Long. 18. *Heylin* says, the Place was discover'd by Prince Henry, Son of John I. in 1452; and *Harris*, that it was discovered by *Gamez*, a Citizen of *Lisbon*, to whom King *Alphonfus* farmed the Discovery of this Coast, as we formerly mentioned. In 1481, 1482, or 1484, or as others say 1486, King John II. of Portugal caused a Castle to be built here, and dignified the Place with the Privileges of a City. *Harris* says, that in the Church a Priest was appointed to pray for the Soul of K. Henry: Soon after which the King assumed the Title of Lord of *Guinea*; but the then Prince of the Country and the Negroes would have hinder'd the Building of the Castle, till partly by fair Means, and partly by foul, they were quieted; after which the King ordered Stone Pillars to be set up in several Places of the Coast, with the Portuguese Arms upon them, shewing the Times and Authors of the Discoveries. Sir *William Monson* says, the Portuguese fortified it, made it the chief Place of their Trade to this Coast, and were furnish'd with great Quantities of Gold from hence; that the Town was fairly built and wealthy, the People civil, and the Country pleasant and fruitful; and that the Portuguese trusted most to the Number of the Negroes, whose Hearts they had won, by telling them, that what Wars soever they had with others, were to defend them from those who sought to murder them, and possess their Country. *Dapper* says, 'tis called *Mina* from the Mines of Gold in the Neighbourhood, and places it on the Confines of the Kingdom of *Fetu*, at the Bottom of an Arch, which the Coast forms in that Place, on the Banks of a little

the salt River called *Benja*, and 3 Leagues from *Little Commendo*. He says, the Building appears very ancient by the Dates and Ruins; that 'tis the common Opinion of the Natives, that the *French* were here in 1383, before the *Portuguese*; and that the *Dutch* some Years ago found carved upon a Stone the two first Figures of N^o 1300, but could not discern the other two. Its Antiquity is farther proved by an Inscription over the Gate of the Factory, shewing that 'twas built in the Time of K. *John II.* of *Portugal*, where he says the Figures are as plain as if they were but newly carved.

Dapper tells us, that the Castle stands upon a very high Rock, washed on one Side with the Sea, and that the Walls are of such hard Stone, that 'tis difficult to make a considerable Breach in them, and the Castle so high, that 'tis impossible to storm it. On the Sea-Side the Walls are not very high, because the Bastions, which are flank'd at Bottom, are of a great Height; but on the Land-Side they are very high, tho' not thick. 'Tis 14 Rods broad, and 32 in Length, *Rhinland* Measure, besides the Out-works, which extend from the River-Side to the Shore. The *Portuguese* had made two Batteries on this Side, and planted 6 Cannon on each: However, the *Dutch* took it in 1637 or 1638, after two or three Days Siege, because on the Land-Side, over against *St. Jago's* Mountain, where it should have been strongest, there was only one Battery, defended by 6 small Brass Pieces, and the N.E. Point guarded by no more than two small Pieces, planted on an old Gate, and walled up. We refer for the Particulars of this Siege to *Dapper*, and shall only observe from him, that the intestine Divisions of the *Portuguese* in the Place made the *Dutch* Governor of *Guinea* and *Angola* take the Opportunity to acquaint the *Dutch West-India* Company with it, who immediately sent 9 Ships, laden with Men, Provisions, and Warlike Stores, to the Coast, where being join'd by the Fleet sent by the *Dutch* Governor-General of the Coast, and reinforced by the young Men of *Commendo*, whom they had won with great Promises, they made the Descent near *Mina*, betwixt that and *Cape Corse*, with 800 Soldiers and 500 Seamen, besides the Auxiliary Negroes.

That having sent 4 Companies of Musketers against a Party of Negroes who lay in Wait on a neighbouring Hill to fall upon them, the Negroes cut them all off, and carried their Heads away in Triumph, because they advanced too far; but they were afterwards put to Flight. The *Dutch* fired upon the Castle from two Cannon and a Mortar on a neighbouring Hill, at too great a Distance, where they could do no Execution, while the Negroes of *Commendo*, who fell upon the Village of *Mina*, were obliged to retire by the Cannon of the Besieged. The Besiegers also poured in abundance of Grenadoes, but without Success, till they redoubled the Fire of their Cannon, which obliged the Besieged to capitulate on very dishonourable Terms; the chief of which were, That all the Soldiers, *Portuguese* and *Mulatto's*, might go out with their Goods, but leave all their Money behind; That they should be transported, with necessary Provisions, to the Isle of *St. Thomas*; That the Conquerors should keep all the Merchandize and Slaves, except 12, which the Besieged might carry out with them; That they might also carry away all their Church Ornaments, except those of Gold and Silver; and, That the Garrison should march out without an Ensign. There were found in the Castle 30 Cannon, 9000 Pound of Powder, 800 Bullets, 10 Tun of Balls, 300 Stone Balls, and 36 *Spanish* Swords, besides a great many other Instruments of War, which were for most Part rusty. The *Dutch* put 140 Men in Garrison, and at the same Time sent a Canoe to *Atzyn*, with a Summons to the *Portuguese* Governor there to surrender; but he knew they could not attack him that stormy Season, and sent them Word, That he would defend the Place to the last Drop of his Blood. They also made a Redoubt on *St. Jago's* Hill, of which hereafter, and repair'd the ruin'd Battery in the Out-Works of the Castle, for the Defence of the River and Battery on the Coast, there being no other Communication betwixt this and the Inland Battery but by two Ascents of almost 40 Steps, the Soldiers Lodgings were sunk lower, and a Gallery made all round from the Sea to the new Bastion. *Heylin* says, this Castle was called *St. George*, after the Name of the *Cappadocian* Martyr,

Martyr, and places it 5 Leagues E. of the Cape of *Three Points*. The *Sanfons* place it on the Coast of *Fetu*. *Snoek* sets it 3 Miles below *Vredenburg*, but says there are no Gold Mines here for several Miles round, contrary to *Dapper*, tho' 'tis brought hither from all Parts. He says, the Castle has not its Equal on the Coast for Strength and Beauty. 'Tis built square, with very high Walls, has four good Batteries within, and one on the Out-works. On the Land Side there are two Canals cut in the Rock on which it stands, that are always furnished with Rain and fresh Water enough for the Garrison and Ships, besides three fine large Cisterns in the Castle. There are several Brass Cannon to defend it: Besides, the lower Battery is filled with Iron Pieces, which are fired by Way of Salutation to Ships, &c. There's Room enough for a Garrison of 200 Men. In short, 'tis the chief Place on the Coast belonging to the *Dutch*, the Residence of their General, principal Governor, chief Factor, and chief Fiscal, and the Place where the Accounts of the whole Coast are kept, and where all their Ships anchor and unlade; for which Purpose they have fine Warehouses, from whence their other Forts are supplied with the Commodities they want. The Negroes (says *Snoek*) come hither daily with their Gold, for which, after 'tis weigh'd, try'd, and purify'd, the *Dutch* exchange their Commodities. If the Factor gives any Credit, he is responsible for the Value to the Company, and must not charge the Presents made to the Negro Merchants to their Account, because the Company, to encourage them to Diligence, superadd a certain Advance to their Factors for that Purpose, by which they are sometimes considerable Gainers. Besides, the *Dutch* get good Profit by the Assistance which they give the Negroes in carrying home their Commodities, because there are no Carts, Waggon, or Horses. Those who come from the Inland Country to trade are for most Part Slaves, the chief of which is called the Caravan, and has the greatest Trust. The *Dutch* treat him as a great Merchant, to prevent him from removing the Trade to the *English*, *Danes*, and *Brandenburghers*.

Snoek gives this Account of the *Dutch* Officers here, and their Degrees of Prefer-

ment. Formerly the Company's Assistants were chose out of the Garrison; but lately the Company finding that idle Sots, and Persons no way capable, were advanced above others that were better qualified, ordered, that no Soldiers should be preferred to the Places of Assistants, who are sometimes promoted to the Government of the whole Coast, tho' their Office is the lowest of those that belong to Trade or the Pen. His Salary is 16 Guilders per Month, and 20 more for Board-Wages, and his first Step to Preferment is that of Under-Commissary or Factor, with a Salary of 24 Guilders per Month. These Sub-Factors receive most of the Gold, for which they are accountable to the Factor or Chief Factor, who is entrusted with the Trade of the Place, and is also accountable to the Company. There is a Warehouse-keeper, who has Wine, Beer, Brandy, Flesh, Pease, Beans, Oats, and all moist Goods and Edibles, under his Keeping. He is narrowly watched by the Factor or Chief Factor, who is obliged to make good all Losses that the Company suffer by the Warehouse-keeper's Extravagancy. Such of the Under-Commissaries as are oldest or best qualified are chosen Factors to reside at the Out-Forts. He has a Salary of 36 Guilders, with an Allowance of 10 Guilders for a Servant or two, and 20 Guilders Board-Wages per Month, besides the above-mentioned Advance on the Trade. The Council at *Mina* pick out the oldest and most experienced of these Factors to send them to *Mourree* and *Cormantyn*, where, if they be confirm'd by the Company, who fill up these Posts themselves, their Salary is rais'd to 80 Guilders per Month. The Company also puts in the Chief Factor at *Elmina*, or the second Person upon the Coast, who has 100 Guilders per Month. These Chief Factors have the same Advance on Merchandize and Board-Wages as the other Factors: Besides which, the second Person has 10 Guilders per Month allowed for a Servant, and the General's or Governor's Table is at his Service. The Governor-General is entrusted with the Company's Authority over the whole Coast, of which he is Director-General, with a Salary of 300 Guilders per Month, besides large Perquisites out of the Trade. The Chief Factors of *Mourree* and *Cormantyn* had also,

also, till very lately, the Advantage of the Slave Trade of *Fida* and *Ardra*, which was more profitable to them than the Gold Trade, the latter being so low there, that without the former they could not live up to the Port of their Dignity; but some having complained that they grew too rich by this Means, the Directors of the Company entrust the Slave Trade to the Masters of the Ships which they send hither. Besides these already mentioned at *Elmina*, there's,

1. The Chief Fiscal, whose Salary is but 50 Guilders, and 10 Guilders *per Month* for a Servant, besides the Liberty of the General's Table; but if he is diligent, his Perquisites are very large, for he has a third Share of all the Forfeits of Gold or other Commodities unlawfully traded for on the Coast, besides a third Part of the Fines set upon the Negroes, and the Forfeiture of Wages inflicted on Offending Officers or Servants by the Governor and Council.
2. The Book-keeper-General, who takes Place next the Fiscal, keeps the Company's Books of Accounts, and has 70 Guilders Salary, besides 10 Guilders *per Month* for his Servants, and 25 Guilders more for a free Table. He has also an Under-Book-keeper to assist him, whose Salary is 30 Guilders *per Month*, and two Assistants.
3. The Book-keeper or Accomptant of the Garrison, whose Title shews his Office. He has 24 Guilders Salary, and sells by Auction the Effects of all Persons who die upon the Coast, for which he is allowed 5 *per Cent*. Sometimes also there's a Secretary, who has 50 Guilders *per Month*, and 3 or 4 Assistants under him; but at other Times they have only an Under-Secretary, and the above-mentioned Number of Assistants.
4. The Under-Fiscal, whose Office is the lowest and most contemptible of all. He is commonly called Auditor, but is no better than an Informer. He has 20 Guilders *per Month*, and one Tenth of all Forfeitures. But tho' his Person is so despis'd, yet he takes Place of all the Sub-Factors, as the Fiscal does of all the Chief Factors, and even the second Person on the Coast; tho' by the Governor's Leave that Place belongs not only to the Chief Factor of *Elmina*, but to those of *Mouree* and *Cormantyn*.
5. A Minister, who has 100 Guilders *per Month*, besides 10 Guilders *per Month* for a Servant,

and a Place at the Governor's Table. There is also a Clerk with 20 Guilders *per Month*, and the *Dutch* here are obliged to go to Church every Day, on Forfeiture of 25 Stivers, and of double on *Sundays* and *Thursdays*. To conclude, *Snoek* sums up their Officers in the following Order, according to their Rank of Precedency: The Director-General, the Preacher, the Fiscal, the Chief Factor, 2 or 3 Chief Factors, 7 or 8 Factors, 9 or 10 Sub-Factors, 18 or 20 Assistants more or less, a Warehouse-keeper, Accomptant or Book-keeper General, Under Book-keeper, Accomptant or Book-keeper to the Garrison, Clerk of the Church, and the Auditor. He reckons 60 Officers in all upon the Coast, and says, one Third of them are Assistants, who seldom miss of Preferment. Then he gives an Account of the *Dutch* Government of this Coast, which he says is principally vested in the supreme Ruler, who issues Commands to all the Governors of the Out-Forts, who are obliged to obey and to transact no Matters of Importance without his Consent. But Affairs of more than ordinary Importance and Difficulty are or ought to be laid before the Council, which is composed of the Director-General, the Fiscal, Chief Factors, Ensign-Bearer, and sometimes the Accomptant-General; to which are added the Factors of the Out-Forts, as occasional or extraordinary Counsellors. Here every Member is free to offer his Thoughts; but they generally favour the Sentiments of the Governor, who acts very arbitrarily, and obliges his Inferiors to submit to his Will, tho' it be contrary to Reason, or sends them off the Coast for Disobedience; from whence he concludes, that the Council is really of no other Use than to participate of the Governor's Faults, and to shelter him from being responsible for them.

Dapper says, the Village or Town of *Mina* lies under the Castle, and is naturally strong, because it is situate in a narrow Place, and could only be enter'd by the Village of *Commendo*, on which Side the *Portuguese* built a Wall from the Sea to the River, and encompassed it with Ditches and Bastions. The Soil is low and barren, and they have Provisions of Millet, Palm Wine, Sugar, Ananas, &c. in Exchange for Gold

and Fish from their Neighbours of *Fetu*, *Abremboe*, *Commendo*, and *Acania*; but the Village is pretty populous, and upon Occasion can furnish about 2000 Men fit to bear Arms, amongst whom are 200 Christians of the Race of *Mulatto's*. They are almost all Fishers, and pay the Fifth of all Prizes to the Castle by Way of Tribute. Some of them polish Coral. Anciently this Village belong'd to two Masters, viz. Part to the King of *Guaffo*, and Part to the King of *Fetu*. They owe their Liberty to the *Portuguese*, and live now in the Form of a Republick, under the Direction of the Governor of the Castle, and some chief Men of their own Country. The Village is divided into 3 Parts, commanded each by a *Brasso* or Captain; and if any Quarrel arise among themselves, they meet at the House of the oldest *Brasso*, where they form their Resolution, and carry it to the Governor, who approves or rejects it, as he thinks proper. But if any of their Neighbours of *Commendo* or *Fetu* does any of them Wrong, they all take one another's Parts, and the Leaders go and beg the Governor's Leave to make Reprizals upon the Lands of the Offender. In a Word, the *Dutch* imitate the *Portuguese*, by taking Care to protect and encourage them, in order to make them warlike and formidable to their Neighbours. *Snoek* says, the Natives call this Village *Oddena*, and that 'tis long and pretty broad. The Houses are built of Rock Stone. He observes, that about 20 Years ago it was very populous, and eight times as strong as now, the Inhabitants being very formidable to the Negroes on the Coast; but the Small-pox, the *Commanian* War, and the Tyranny of some of their Governors, have very much depopulated and impoverished them, so that it can scarce furnish 50 armed Men without the Help of the *Europeans* Servants. They are dispersed over all the *Gold Coast*; but our Author says, when he came first hither he told 5 or 600 Canoes which went out every Morning to fish; but now scarce 100, and those very poor.

Snoek adds, that there's a small River near the Village which runs half a Mile within Land, and parts *Commany* from *Fetu*. *Dapper* calls it *Benja*. *M. Focquenbrog* says, the Water is 10 times saltier than Brine; but

our Author says, 'tis as fresh as Rain Water in *May* and *June*, which he ascribes to the great Rains that fall at that Time, and run from the Hills like a Torrent into the River; but he thinks it probable that the Soil being very nitrous, and the River shallow in dry Seasons, the Sea-Water in this River may be sooner congealed into Salt by the Sun than in the main Sea. He adds, that they boil Salt here, which turns to good Profit. *Dapper* says, about half a League from the Village of *Mina*, there's another River called *Utri*, which overflows in the rainy Season, and is not navigable because full of Rocks. The Water is so fresh and good, that Ships come hither often to take it in, and the Garrison and Townsmen drink it, there being no other Spring of fresh Water within 3 Leagues of the Place.

13. *Fetu Kingdom.*

D*Apper* bounds it with *Guaffo* on the W. *Atty* on the N. *Sabou* on the E. and the Sea on the S. He says, there are several Villages on the Coast, inhabited by Fishermen and Boilers of Salt. *Snoek*, who begins it at *St. Jago's Hill* or the Salt River, and ends it below the *Danish Mount* beyond *Cape Corse*, says, 'tis 40 Miles long, and as much in Breadth, and was formerly so populous, that it was formidable to all the neighbour Nations, and subjected *Commany* to its Government; but is now almost depopulated by the continual Wars, and ready to own Obedience to the *Commanians*; for the King and his Nobles dare not stir without a Permission of the King of *Commany*. He assigns the chief Cause of this to the *Commanian* Wars with the *Dutch*, when Part of the Inhabitants of *Fetu* adher'd to the latter, and the rest to the *Commanians*, wherein they lost so many Men, that there were scarce Hands enough left to till the Ground, which he says is as fruitful and pleasant as *Ante*, and abounds with fine populous Towns, enriched with vast Quantities of Corn, Cattle, Palm Wine, and Oil, and adorn'd with smooth streight Paths and thick Rows of Trees from *Elmina* to *Simbe*, (which is a Village about a Mile and a half up the *Fetuan* Country) besides lofty Trees on the Hills, and fresh Rivers.

All the Inhabitants apply themselves to sowing of Corn, or pressing the Wine and Oil from the Palm-Tree. *Du Plessis* says, the King lives in a Town of the same Name on the Coast, where he drives a great Trade in Slaves.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Conraadsburg*, or the Dutch Fort of *St. Jago*, on the Hill of the same Name, which *Dapper* derives from a little Chappel which the Portuguese built there, and places W. of the Castle beyond the River. He says, that as soon as the Dutch were Masters of the Castle of *Mina*, they fortified this Mountain, to hinder the Access to it on that Side, and raised a Battery upon a Square of 24 Rods, which they carried 12 Foot high, and encompassed with a Stone Wall. The Ascent to it on the Side of the Castle is easy enough, but 'tis in a manner inaccessible towards *Fetu* and *Commendo*. *Dapper* adds, that behind *St. Jago's* Hill there's another of the same Height; and that over against it in the Castle there's a Battery without Flanks, but a few Cannon to fire upon *St. Jago's* Fort in case of Need. *Snoek* says, 'tis a beautiful, quadrangular, and strong Fort, with 4 good Batteries within, and 4 lesser ones in the Out-Wall. 'Tis well furnished with Cannon, and is adorned with a high Tower in the Middle, from the Top of which there's a fine Prospect of the neighbouring Country, and one may discover Ships 7 or 8 Miles at Sea. 'Twas from this Hill that the Dutch Cannon did most Execution upon *St. George's* Castle; and *Snoek* says, that that Castle cannot hold out long after this Fort and Hill are gain'd by the Besiegers; so that the Dutch take as much Care of this as of the Castle of *Mina*, and have always an Ensign here, with a good Garrison under his Command.

2. *Cabo Corso* or *Carco*, or *Cape Coast-Castle*, which the Negroes call *Igwa* or *Oegwa*. *Moll* places it above 100 Miles N. E. of the Cape of *Three Points*, in Lat. $4\frac{3}{4}$. Long. $18\frac{1}{4}$. *Dapper* places it but two Leagues from *Mina*, and says, the Inhabitants, who are great Fishers, supply their Neighbours with Fish in Exchange for Gold and other Commodities. The Dutch had a Fort here, well furnish'd with Men and Ammunition; but Captain *Holmes* took it in the Name of the English African Company, as he had before

done the Forts of *Tacorary*, *Adja*, and *Anne-mabo*, and this became the most considerable Settlement we had on the Coast of *Guinea*. The Year after, Admiral *Ruyter*, having retaken *Tacorary* and *Cormantyn*, concerted a Design with General *Valkenburg* to attack it; but they were forced to abandon their Project, the rather, because the Natives threaten'd to side with the English if they were attack'd. *Snoek* places it about three Miles by Land and two by Sea from *St. Jago*, and says, that the English Fort here is the largest and the finest on the whole Coast, next to that of *St. George d'Elmina*. Within it are fine well built Houses, and before it a high Turret for the People to retire to when attacked by the Negroes. It has 4 very large Batteries, besides a 5th planted with 13 Cannon, pointing towards the Road. Besides which, there's a great Rock just before it, so that 'tis impossible to shoot at it from the Sea; but he finds Fault that the Garrison is generally very weak, that they entertain all Dutch Deserters, and that they kill themselves with Punch, for which he says the Agents here make the Soldiers pay double the Value; but we wish our Author be not too partial in this Matter. He adds, that there's a Village under the Fort which was formerly pretty populous; but it suffer'd so much in the *Commanian* War, and the English Interlopers have transported so many of the Inhabitants to *Fida* to assist them in the Slave Trade, that now 'tis half wasted, and the Houses in Ruins. Behind this Town the English have a round Tower, defended with 6 Cannon, and about as many Men, built to awe the Negroes of the Town, and to defend them from the Inland Negroes their Enemies; but *Snoek* thinks it an unnecessary Charge, and that the Castle is enough without it. Under the Castle there's a House like a small Fort, with a Flag on it, and some Cannon, which was inhabited in our Author's Time by an English Mulatto, one *Edward Barter*, who had greater Power on the Coast than all the 3 English Agents together, in whom the chief Command of the Coast is jointly vested, who he says do not stay here long enough to be well acquainted with the Affairs of the Coast, and suffer themselves to be guided by him. He could raise a great Number of Soldiers amongst

amongst his own Slaves and Freemen, had great Honour paid him, and none could trade with the *English* without first making Interest to him. He adds, that the *Mulatto* pretended to be a Christian, but had above 8 Wives, and as many Mistresses. The Author of the *True State of the Difference between our African Company and the Separate Traders* says, this is the strongest Fort which belongs to the Company in all *Africa*, and is defended with 42 Guns, but has seldom in Garrison above 33 Soldiers, besides the Captain-General, Governor and Commander in Chief, Lieutenant-General and Book-keeper, Lieutenant-General and Store-keeper; and Lieutenant-General and Gold-taker; whereas he says it requires 86 Soldiers, besides the Governor, two Lieutenants, three Serjeants, three Corporals, two Gunners, with each their Mate, one Surgeon and his Mate, and a Chaplain, the Charge of which he computes at 1333 *l.* a Year. He adds, that the Ground-Rents paid here for all the Forts on the Coast amount to 800 *l.* per Annum.

3. The *Danish Mount*. *Snoek* says, it was so called because the *Danes* had it before the *English*, who have a Fort here called *Fort-Royal*, which, tho' a Place of such great Importance, that it can level *Cape Coast* to the Ground with 6 Cannon, lay 4 Years neglected like a desolate Cottage, with shatter'd Walls and thatch'd Houses, and might easily have been taken by 12 Men; but in 1699 the *African Company* gave Orders to repair it; whereupon they pulled down the old Fort, and began to rebuild a new one, which was not finished in our Author's Time; but the Author of the *True State of the Difference between our African Company and the Separate Traders* says, 'tis now demolished, because it stood upon a Promontory which commanded their chief Fort; tho' he thinks that if the Company had but have kept it in a tolerable State of Defence, they need not have fear'd its being taken by the Enemy; it was so strong by Situation, that a little Improvement would have made it impregnable.

Mr. *Hillier*, in two Letters dated at *Cape Corse* in 1688, and wrote to Dr. *Bathurst*, President of *Trinity College* in *Oxford*, gives the following Account of the Customs of the Inhabitants, as we find it in the 3d Vo-

lume of *Miscellanea Curiosa*, published in 1707 by the Royal Society.

The Kingdom, he says, is Elective. In 1687, while our Author was here, *Ahen Pehin Ashrive*, then King of this Country, dy'd, after he had deliver'd his Sword to the Dey, who is the chief Man during the Interregnum, and commanded him to be constant to the *English*, else he would haunt him after his Death. Then the People met at *Feston*, and pitched upon the Dey, since he had all the Power in his Hands, tho' he was not of the Blood Royal; but he prevail'd with them to excuse him, because of the Charge on't, so that they chose *Ahenaco*, Brother to the Deceased. He adds, that when they execute any Criminals, they make them drink Palm Wine and dance, while every one has Leave to strike and push them; after which they tumble them in the Sand, and first cut off their Legs, Arms, Thighs and Heads. They consecrate new Drums or Trumpets with humane Blood, and drink Palm Wine in Publick out of Men's Skulls.

He says, the Shore lies almost E. and W. and quite open to the Sea on the S. The Country is full of small Hills and narrow Valleys, and cover'd with thick low Shrubs. They don't till above the 10th Part of their Ground, and their Land is overgrown with Shrubs within half a Year, because they don't root them up, but only cut or burn them close to the Earth. They sow their Corn in little Holes made at convenient Distances. The People are so very lazy, that tho' their Tillage be easy, and their Soil produces 100 fold, and tho' there are Hands enough, and every Man may chuse what Land he will that is not tilled by another, yet one scarce Year almost starves them: Nevertheless they are subtle, and apt to cheat. The Place is unhealthy, which he ascribes to the Steams that arise from the Earth; their Soil sandy, with a kind of whitish Marle under it, almost like Fuller's Earth; and their Well-Water of a sweet and subacid Taste, like Vitriol. The Air is extream hot and piercing, and clearer than ours one Day with another. The Inhabitants keep no Account of their Age, but some of them are very grey. The *English* here are often destroyed by their bad Diet and Way of Living; for Mr. *Hillier* says, they

they eat little for want of a Stomach and Money to buy Necessaries; but they drink to Excess of hot strong Liquors, which they can the easier have upon Trust; and if they prefer cold, it throws them immediately into the Flux. He adds, that Tornada's are very common here. He gives a Monthly Account of the Weather all the Year round, to which we refer the Curious.

14. Sabou or Saboe Kingdom.

Dapper says, it has *Fetu* on the W. *Atty* on the N. *Fantin* on the E. and the Sea on the S. and but three Villages on the Coast, and one 2 or 3 Miles within Land. The Country is very fruitful, and abounds with Millet, Injames, Potatoes, and other Fruits, because the Inhabitants are more laborious, and follow Husbandry more than their Neighbours. 'Tis about 7 Leagues in Compass, and the Prince can raise about 1500 Men. The *Dutch* here live in a good Understanding with him, except when he oppresses the Negroes of *Moure*, who are under their Protection; so that when the Prince of *Atty*, his Neighbour, came to invade him with an Army superior to his own, the *Dutch* lent him two Cannon, and 60 or 70 Muskets, which did them so good Service, that they gained the Victory; but he died soon after, and left a virtuous Successor. He adds, that the Trade of *Saboe* owes its Improvement to the *Acanists* and the *Dutch*. *Snoek* says, this Country begins at the Bottom of the *Danish Mount*, and ends at the *Iron Mount*, about half a Mile below *Mouree*, two Miles along the Shore, and about twice as broad. 'Tis about equal in Power with *Commany*; and our Author, who charges the Miscarriage of the *Dutch* Design against *Commany* partly upon the King of *Saboe's* Treachery, says, the People are as bad Villains as those of that Country. He adds, that formerly the Natives sent two Ambassadors to the *Dutch* Company at *Amsterdam*.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Congo*. *Snoek* says, it lies a little half Mile from the *Danish Mount*, and that formerly the *Dutch* had a fine Stone-House here, situate upon two Hillocks, where they planted their Flag. He adds, that there's but just enough left

to prove their Propriety, and that they built here only to keep out other *Europeans*, lest they should settle, and spoil their Trade at *Mouree*. *Dapper* says, they make Salt here.

2. *Mouree*, i. e. the *Dutch* Church-Yard, because (according to *Dapper*) 'tis the Burial-place of their Countrymen. He sets this and the neighbouring Fort *Nassau* in N. Lat. 5. 10. and says, the Houses are so far from one another, that the Village seems as large as that of *Mina*, but is not above a quarter so populous, and can scarce raise 200 good Soldiers. Besides, the *Acanists* hire many of the Houses. The Inhabitants were the first that contracted Friendship with the *Dutch*, and permitted them to land on their Coasts, for which Cause the *Portuguese* in one Night came to fire their Canoes. In a very little Time this became the most Trading Place in all the *Gold Coast*, because the Natives agreed so well with the *Dutch*. *Snoek* says, contrary to *Dapper*, that this Village is not so large, but more populous than *Elmina*; that 100 Canoes are daily laden here with Fruits and Palm Oil for *Axim* and *Akra*; and that most of the Inhabitants are Fishermen, who go out every Morning 4 or 500 Canoes together to fish, and at their Return pay the 5th Fish as Toll to the *Dutch* Factor, who governs the Town. Our Author observes, that the *Dutch* have the same Toll at *Axim*, *Chama*, and *Elmina*, which are conquer'd Places; but that no other *Europeans* have this Prerogative, nor bear such a sovereign Sway over the Negroes as they do, which he says is chiefly their own Fault.

Dapper says, the *Dutch* Fort *Nassau*, which lies above it, and stands about a Leag. E. from *Cape Coast*, over against the Village of *Mouree*, was built at the Order of the States, and then deliver'd to their *West-India* Company. Before the *Dutch* were Masters of *Mina*, the Ramparts were only sorry round Bastions of Earth, that always wanted mending, and the *Dutch* durst not fortify it for fear of giving Umbrage to the *Portuguese* and Negroes; but after the taking of *Mina*, they made new Fortifications, and repair'd the old ones. They also augmented the Garrison, and besides *European* Soldiers, put in 50 Negro Slaves of approv'd Fidelity. *Snoek* says, the Fort is almost square, but broadest in the Front, and that 'tis furnished with four

four Batteries, 18 Cannon, and higher Walls than those of any Fort upon the Coast, except *Elmina*. The Curtain takes in the two Sea-Batteries, and is spacious enough to make such a Battery as the *English* have at *Cape Coast*. There's a Tower at each of the four Corners, and, next *Elmina*, 'tis the best Fort which the *Dutch* have on the Coast. It was formerly garrison'd by 70 or 80 Men; but now *Snoek* says, there are not near so many, tho' still enough to defend it against the Negroes. *Moll* and the *Sansons* place it about 16 Miles N. E. from *Elmina*. *Luyts* says, there's a convenient Harbour.

3. *Sabou*, a Village, which gives Name to the whole Province. *Dapper* says, it lies 2 or 3 Leagues from the Shore, is very large and populous, and the Residence of the King, who the *Sansons* say is counted the most potent of all on this Coast, and they extend his Dominions 70 Leagues along the Sea, and near 200 within Land.

James Lange, a *Dutchman*, who was on this Coast about 1622, says, the Negroes here are very mischievous. He gives the following Account of what he observ'd in a Visit which he and some of his Companions paid to the King, which may serve to give a farther Idea of the Court and Country. When they came to Court, the King, whom they found sitting with 12 of his Noblemen, made 'em sit down on low Benches. After they had presented him with two Bottles of Brandy, which he gladly accepted, a Negro came in with a naked Scymiter in one Hand, and the Head of a Traytor who had attempted to kill the King in the other, which, kneeling, he laid at our Author's Feet, and desired him and his Companions to stamp on it three times with their Right Feet, which when they had done, the King order'd it to be boiled. While Dinner was preparing, the King granted them Leave to hunt Deer and Boufflers; and when they returned, gave them a Cup of Wine mix'd with Eggs. At Dinner the King eat of the boil'd Negroes Head, and the *Dutch* of Mutton and Venison, during which they drank so plentifully, that some of them committed several Outrages, one of which cut down a Banana Tree of 100 Years standing in the Market, and another committed Murder; upon which the Negroes were up in Arms, and killed and wounded some of

them; so that the King was obliged to detain the rest at Court till the People's Fury was over. He gives this Account of the Death and Interrment of an eminent Negro, of which he was Eye-witness. The Man was troubled with a Rupture, the Torture whereof made him rip up his Belly with a Knife, of which he dy'd next Day. Then he was sew'd up in a Piece of Stuff, adorn'd with Gold Medals, representing their Fetiches or Idols, and carried on 6 Men's Shoulders to a Grave about a League from the Village, where several green Branches were stuck round it into the Earth. The Bearers ran with it at full Speed for a while, and then stopping on a sudden, a Horn was blown, which set the Women and Children a howling, and making a Noise with the Bells fasten'd to their Feet. This was repeated several times, till they came to the Grave, into which, when they had laid the Corps, the Bearers leap'd to take off the Golden Medals, tho' they made the People believe they were bury'd with the Corps. After they had lain about a quarter of an Hour at the Head of the Corps, they laid Boughs over the Grave, which they covered with Earth to a Man's Height, and then set a large Flaggon on it full of Palm Wine. Some of their Tombs are higher than their ordinary Houses. For the rest, they agree with the other Negroes. Mr. *Lange* adds, that the Inhabitants are docile enough, but such gross Idolaters, that they worship the very Rocks and Whale-bones, and on certain Days they adore the Trees dedicated to their Idols, which the Priests serve with Water and Meat. They are also great Sorcerers.

Snoek says, the *Iron Mount*, where he ends this Country, is about a quarter of a Mile long, and has a fine Walk upon Top, thick shaded with Trees.

15. Fantyn Kingdom.

Dapper says, 'tis a populous Country and takes its Name from a Village where the King resides, about 6 Leagues from the Shore, in the Middle of many others. He bounds it with *Sabou* on the W. *Atty*, *Aqua*, and *Tonqua*, on the N. *Agwana* on the E and the Sea on the S. The *Dutch* import

import hither *Silefia* Cloths, Copper, Iron, Worsted and Linen Caps, &c. He adds, that the Government here is invested in the Hands of several Chief Men, but there's one above the rest, whom they call Braffo, who commands all the Country for 15 or 16 Leagues round; and when there's no Civil War in his Dominions, can raise 8 or 10000 Men. His Revenues arise from certain Duties paid by the Inhabitants, and from the Imposts of the Merchandizes, which the *Acanists* come hither to buy; but *Snoek* says, he has no more Power than the other Caboceroes or Chief Men. He extends this Country from the Foot of the *Iron Mount* 10 Miles along the Coast, but does not tell us how many it takes up in Breadth. He says, the *Dutch* have a Fort here, and the *English* another, besides three Lodges; and that the Country is exceeding populous, notwithstanding their frequent Civil Wars, and very rich in Gold, Slaves, and all Necessaries, especially Corn, whereof they sell abundance to the *English* Ships, which has made them so haughty, that *Europeans* are obliged to stand uncover'd when they deal with them. The Inland Inhabitants, besides Trading, till the Ground, and draw Palm Wine, of which that Sort call'd the *Quaker* grows here. The Negroes drive a great Trade with the Interlopers, in Sight of the *English* and *Dutch*, who durst not hinder them for fear of losing all their Footing. There are about 4000 Fishermen in this Country, and when the Inhabitants have a Mind to it, they stop up all the Passes to hinder the Inland Merchants from coming to the Coast, and sometimes keep back the Provisions too, till they have forc'd the *Europeans* to their Terms. The *Dutch* formerly agreed to pay them a good Sum of ready Money, besides 300 Guilders for every one of their Company's Ships that should bring Goods thither, except the Slave Ships, in Consideration of the Assistance they gave them in taking Fort *Amsterdam*, &c. but now *Snoek* says, they force the *Dutch* to pay for their Slave Ships as well as others, and that they also extort a good Sum a Year from the *English*.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Queen Anne's Point*, which *Moll* places next to *Mouree*. The Author of the *True State of the Difference between the African Company and the Separate*

Traders says, 'tis like a Tower, has 6 Guns, with about as many Men in Garrison, and was built chiefly to hinder the Natives from trading with our private Ships, especially in Corn, unless the Sellers or the Buyers pay a certain Duty upon every Measure to the Company's Agent.

2. *Ingenisian*. *Snoek*, who places it half a Mile W. of *Annamabo*, says, there was an *English* Flag here in his Time, and but one Man in Garrison. We suppose it to be that which *Dapper* calls *Janasta*, with an *English* Fort, which he places betwixt *Adja* and *Annemabo*, and that called *Annasham*, by the Author of the *True State of the Difference between the African Company and the Separate Traders*, who says, the Fort is only a thatch'd House with two Men in Garrison, and that they are set there to hinder the Natives from trafficking with the Separate Traders.

3. *Annamabo* or *Annamboa*. *Dapper* places this Village a Mile W. of *Cormantyn*, and two Leagues E. of *Mouree*, and says, that 'tis divided into two Parts, both inhabited by Fishermen, one by those only of *Mina*, and the other by the Natives. The *Dutch* had a Fort here in his Time. The Harbour is almost as good as that at *Mina*, and their Trade flourishes. *Snoek* says, the *English* have a small neat Fort here, which *Moll* calls *Charles Fort*, and that the Road is always full of *English* Ships. There's a good Gold and Slave Trade here; but the *English* and *Zealand* Interlopers run away with the greatest Part. He observes, that sometimes the Negroes confine the *English* to their Fort, and when they dislike the Governor, send him to *Cape Coast* in a Canoe by Way of Contempt, which the *English* are not able to oppose, but must make their Peace by a Present. He reckons this the strongest Town on the whole Coast, and says, it can furnish as many armed Men as the whole Kingdom of *Saboe* or *Commany*, tho' tis but a 5th Part of *Fantyn*. The Author of the *True State of the Difference between the African Company and the Separate Traders* says, the Fort bears the Figure of a Half Diamond, and has 10 Guns and 8 Men.

4. *Adja* or *Agga*. *Dapper* places this a Cannon-shot W. of *Annemabo*, and says, the *Dutch* had a Fort here, till Captain *Holmes* took it by Vertue of the Grant of the Coast of *Fantyn* made to the *English*, exclusive of all

all other *Europeans*. But our Author says, that *April 30, 1624*, before the *English* arrived here, the King of *Fantyn* gave it to the *Dutch*, and permitted them to build Forts there for the Security of their Commerce. He complains, with what Justice we know not, that when the *English* took this Place, and after they had given Quarter to the Garrison, they cut off the Noses and Ears of some, and then cut their Throats, flea'd others, and took the Dead out of their Graves to cut off their Heads, and carry them in Triumph upon a Lance like the most barbarous Negroes. He adds, that Admiral *Ruyter* arrived next Year with several Ships; upon which the *English* abandon'd the Fort, and left a lighted Match, which was to set Fire to several Tuns of Powder about the Time when they conjectur'd the *Dutch* would fall to plunder; but these staying somewhat later than expected, the Blow failed, and only blew up the Walls. *Snoek* says too, the *English* and *Dutch* had a joint Garrison here, but that the former forc'd out the latter by Treachery, and treated them with Barbarity. The *English* have a Flag upon a Negro's House here, and a Factor to buy Millet for their Slave Ships; but he says, he vends most underhand to the Interlopers. The Author of the *True State of the Difference between the African Company and the Separate Traders* says, the Castle here is like that at *Annasban*, but has only one Man in Garrison, who is paid 12 l. a Year. He adds, that 'tis chiefly employed in the Company's private Affairs.

5. *Cormantyn*. *Dapper* says, 'tis the principal Place on the Coast of *Fantyn*, as large as *Mouree*, and but 3 Leagues from it, with a Harbour, which has the most dangerous Entrance of any on the Coast. The *English* had a very great Trade here, and a good Castle, with 4 Bulwarks, which was taken by Admiral *Ruyter* the 8th of *February 1665*, with the Assistance of several Thousand Negroes of *Fantyn*, whom they had hired for a great Sum of Money. We refer to *Dapper* for the Particulars, who says, it fell again into our Hands, and was the chief Place of the *English* Trade, where we have built another Castle, defended with 4 Bulwarks, and 32 Cannon. The *Dutch* had also a great Trade here some Years ago, and

their *West-India* Company kept a Man of War here; but the Charge was so great, that they abandon'd it, to the Mortification of the *Acanists* and the Negroes of *Fantyn*, who seeing they should be left to the Mercy of the *English*, prevail'd with the *Dutch* General to erect a Factory at *Annemabo*, because of the Conveniency of the Harbour, but remov'd it for more Safety to *Adja*, a Cannon-shot from *Annemabo* and *Janasia*, while the *English* made Presents to the *Brasso* and the principal Men among the *Acanists* to hinder it, but all in vain, because the Negroes knew that the Neighbourhood of those two Nations would very much contribute to the Cheapness of *European* Merchandize. *Snoek* says, *Cormantyn* has been in the Hands of the *Dutch* ever since 1665, and that they have a Fort here called *Amsterdam*, which is pretty large, and has a great Battery, besides three small ones, furnish'd with 20 Cannon. The Governor here is a Chief Factor; but the Commerce did not bear the Expence of keeping it in our Author's Time, for the Village was very poor and small. But he says, *Great Cormantyn*, which lies upon a high Hill a Cannon-shot below their Fort, is very large, and inhabited by 800 or 1000 Fishermen, besides Merchants and other Traders. He adds, that *Fantyn* extends 7 or 8 Miles beyond this on the Shore, which is all the Way full of pretty little Villages, and that two Years before his Time the *English* planted another Flag, and began to build a Fort at *Fantyn*; but when he wrote, they were removing all the Materials away again.

16. *Acron Kingdom*.

Snoek says, 'tis very well situate for Trade, and had a King in his Time, who was 70 Years old; and under the Protection of his principal Subjects, especially his General, who was a bitter Enemy to the *Dutch*. This Prince was reckon'd the richest in ready Money of all on the Coast, except the King of *Aquamboe*; but our Author saw him in such a mean Habit, that all he had about him was not worth Half a Crown. The People very seldom go to War, for the *Fantineans* protect them from all Injury, so that they till their Lands in Quiet, and have such

such a plentiful Harvest every Year, that they dispose of great Part of the Crop to other Countries. It abounds with Wild Fowl and Quadrupedes, especially Harts, Hares, Partridges, and Pheasants. He divides it into *Little* and *Great Acron*, the last of which he says lies within Land, and is a sort of Republick, without any Dependence on the former, but both live in perfect Amity.

The chief and only Place here mention'd by *Snoek* is the Village *Apam*, which *Moll* places 20 Miles N. E. of the *Dutch Fort Amsterdam*. *Snoek* says, that in 1697 the *Dutch* began to build a small Fort here, which is now fortified with two Batteries, and eight Cannon, besides a fine Turret, and called *Fort Leydsamheyd*, i. e. *Patience*, because the Negroes frequently oppos'd them in the building on't. The Trade here is but dull, and the Inhabitants very morose. The Village is very small, and only inhabited by Fishermen; but 'tis so well situate, that our Author thinks, if the Natives were more tractable, it might in a few Years become very populous. The Fort is built on a Hill, with a Vale behind it about a Mile square, and a pleasant salt River a little below it, that runs about a Mile within Land, which abounds with Fish and Fowl.

17. Agonna or Agwana Kingdom.

Dapper says, 'tis also called the Country of *Johannes Concomo*, one of its Princes, who was a great Warrior, and bounds it with *Fantin* and *Sanquai* on the W. *Aquemboe* and *Abonee* on the N. and on the E. with *Great Acara*. *Snoek* begins it about that called *Devils Mount* by the Seamen, because 'tis so high, that they often see it at a Distance long before they can reach it, especially when the Wind is contrary. Some say, this Hill contains vast Quantities of Gold, and that Showers of Rain wash it off with the Sand, where the Negroes go and pick it up. He adds, that Mr. *Baggs* was sent hither by the Directors of the *English African Company* with necessary Instruments to dig out the Gold; but he dy'd in his Time at *Cape Corse*. *Dapper* says, it lies over against the Shore; that the Coast between *Cormantyn* and this Mountain runs for 9 Leagues from

E. to S. and that it turns from E. to N. from hence to *Bercu*, which is 7 Leagues, and from E. to N. E. from thence to the Mountain of *Coxbrood*, which is 7 Leagues more. He adds, that the Country about this Mountain is low, and well planted with small Trees; that the farther one goes from the Shore, 'tis higher and more mountainous; and that beyond those Trees the Coast is dry and barren. Those who live within Land employ themselves in Agriculture, those on the Coast in Fishing, the rest (particularly those of *Bercu*) in making Arms, Gold Chains, and other Pieces of Handicraft; and they buy up very little *European Merchandize*.

Snoek says, this Country was govern'd in his Time by a Woman, contrary to the Custom of the other Negro Kingdoms. She kept the Government entirely to herself, and was unmarried; but she us'd to buy Slaves for her own Diversion, and made it Capital for them to lie with other Women. 'Tis as fruitful and pleasant as *Acron*, but larger, more potent, and richer, and has a fine large fresh River, which they say abounds with as many Oysters, Fish, and all Sorts of Apes, as any on the Coast.

Dapper says, there are several Villages along the Coast, the chief of which are, 1. *Wimba* or *Simpa*. *Moll* calls it *Winnebah*, and places it 20 Miles N. E. of *Apam*. *Snoek* says, 'tis about as large as other Villages, pleasantly situate among Trees, and chiefly inhabited by Fishermen. He tells us, that very near it, about the Middle of *Agonna*, the *English* built a small Fort in 1694, which is cover'd with a flat Roof, and has four little Batteries and Guns, but no stronger than that at *Dickys-Cove*; and the Trade here is as dull as at *Apam*, because of the Wars in the Inland Country, tho' 'tis well enough situate for Commerce. The Author of the *True State of the Difference between the African Company and the Separate Traders* says, the Fort is square, with 10 Guns, and but 8 Men, tho' it requires 20 Soldiers, besides proper Officers, the Charge of which he computes at 378 l. per Annum.

2. *Bercu*, which we suppose to be that called *Barracow* by *Moll*. *Dapper* says, there's abundance of Poultry here, cheaper than elsewhere; and that the Inhabitants make a Liquor called *Pitow*, which is somewhat

what like Small-Beer. When the Dutch come to this Part of the Coast, they put in at *Bercu*, where the Merchants of *Acara* come down to traffick with them in Slaves, which they exchange for Stamins and Linen Cloth. He adds, that the common Price of the Slaves is two Ounces of Gold. The French used to land here also formerly; but now 'tis not so much frequented.

18. Aquamboe or Aquemboe.

DApper makes this an Inland Province, unfrequented by the Merchants, and bounds it with *Ahim* on the W. *Cuahoe* on the N. *Igwana* on the S. and *Abonoe* and *Aboera* on the E. *Snoek* owns, that most Part of it is situate within Land; but he says, the King's Power extends over several petty Princes for above 20 Miles on the Coast, whom he governs in such an arbitrary Manner, that 'tis a Proverb, That there are but two Sorts of Men here, of whom the King and his Friends are one, and their Slaves the other. The Negroes of this Country are very haughty, but so warlike, that they are formidable to all their Neighbours except *Akim*. The King's Armies daily plunder the Nations under his Power, which they durst not oppose, because he always revenges his Soldiers Quarrels. A little before our Author's Time, the Government was administred by a young King and his Father; but the former was dethroned on Pretence of his Minority by his Mother and his Father's Brother; so that the latter reigned jointly with his Father till 1699, when the old King died, and the young Prince, who now reigns, establish'd himself solely on the Throne, in Exclusion of his Uncle. Our Author exclaims against the old King for a wicked base Prince, and such an inveterate Enemy to the Europeans, that tho' he received from the English, Dutch and Danes, an Ounce of Gold, in Acknowledgment of the Liberty given them by his Predecessors to build in his Dominions, yet he was continually vexatious to them, and upon the least Fancy that he was injur'd, would shut up the Passes, to prevent the Merchants from coming to trade with them. But he says, the present King is a better Friend to the Europeans, especially the

Dutch. *Snoek* adds, that the King and his Nobles are so rich in Gold and Slaves, that he thinks this Country contains more Wealth than all the rest on the Coast, and that the Inhabitants follow Merchandize, Tillage, and especially War, wherein they are daily engaged with some of the neighbour Nations, who are very populous, and from whom they take a vast Number of Prisoners, most of which they sell to the Europeans; so that our Author thinks as many Slaves are sold here as on the whole Coast besides, not excepting *Annamabo*. They leave Fishing and the Boiling Salt, of which they have great Plenty, to the Coast Negroes, who are either born in this Country, or come from other Places to live here, where they multiply, and inhabit several fine Towns. These also drive as great a Trade with Foreign Ships as those of *Axim* and *Fantyn*. He observes, that all the Negroes here in general, that can get Arms, are Soldiers as long as the War continues; and that when 'tis over, every Man follows his particular Calling, except some, who are so fond of a Military Life, that they go to serve in their Neighbours Wars. But there are few Soldiers among the Fishermen, because being on the Shore, and protected by the Europeans, they are seldom attacked, and need no Arms.

19. Accara or Akra Kingdom.

DApper says, 'tis 15 or 16 Leagues in Compass, and bounds it on the W. with *Agwana* and *Abonoe*; *Aboura* and *Bonoe* on the N. *Labbede* and *Ningo* on the E. and the Sea on the S. He mentions no more than three Villages on the Coast, and one within Land, and says, that Provisions, and especially Fruits, are sometimes so dear here, that there's scarce enough about Seed-time to subsist all the Armies; but he tells us, that the King is far more powerful and absolute than the neighbour Princes, can raise 15 or 16000 Men, and gains equal Respect from all the Whites that arrive on the Coast. The King never permits his Neighbours of *Aquamboe* and *Aquimera* to come thro' his Territories to traffick on the Coast, so that his Subjects have the sole Profit of Commerce, and carry the European Commodities

to a Market which is kept three times a Week at *Abonoe*, where they gain 20 or 30 per Cent. Neither would he permit the Foreign Merchants to erect Factories upon his Territories, but they were obliged to keep aboard their Vessels, till some Time ago, that he sold the Village *Acara* to the *Dutch West India Company*, who soon raised a Factory and a Fort here, of which by and by. He appoints an Officer, who resides at *Great Acara*, where he sets a Price on all Merchandize, judges all Differences that happen, without Appeal, and punishes Offenders with the utmost Severity; so that the Merchants stand in as much Awe of him as of the King. *Snoek*, who includes this Country in the Kingdom of *Aquamboe*, says, the Inhabitants were conquered by the *Aquamboeans*, and driven to a Place called *Little Popo* on the *Slave Coast*.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Acara* or *Acra*, *Dapper* calls it the *Greater*, and says, 'twas the Seat of the King, about 6 Leagues from the Shore, and about 7 Miles from *Abonoe*.

2. *Acara the Lesser*. *Moll* places it on the Coast, above 80 Miles N. E. of *Cape Coast Castle*. *Dapper* says, 'tis the chief Maritime Town of this Kingdom, and lies almost at the Extremity of the *Gold Coast*, above 20 Leagues from *Cormantyn*. He observes, that this was the best Place of Trade before *Mourée* and *Cormantyn* came in Vogue, especially while Commerce was free, and before private Traders were excluded from it by the Laws of the *Dutch West-India Company*. This Village alone furnishes one Third of the Gold which is carried off from the Coast, and 'tis brought hither from the Country of *Abonoe* or *Quahoe*, and *Acania*. Here are also sold 300 Slaves a Year, for 40 or 45 *l.* each, or for the like Value in Iron, fine Linen, or other Merchandizes, which yield more here than in any other Harbours on the Coast, provided they are the best, which the Negroes have the Skill to know.

Snoek says, the *English*, *Dutch* and *Danes*, have each a Fort here, which are the best on the Coast. The first he says towards the W. is the *English*, which is well built and square, and has 4 Batteries, high thick Walls, especially towards the *Dutch Fort*, and 25 Cannon, but most of them very

small and slight, as is the *Garrison*. The Author of the *True State of the Difference between the Royal African Company and the Separate Traders* says, it has three good Bastions and a round Flanker, a white Tower in the Middle for the Governor's Lodgings, with a very serviceable Spur to the Land, and the Face of a good Platform to the Sea; but the latter has no Guns, and there are only 15 Men in the Fort; whereas he says it ought to be garrison'd with 24 Soldiers, besides Officers, the Annual Charge whereof he computes would amount to 492 *l.*

Dapper says, the *Dutch Fort* is of Rock Stone, 62 Foot long, and 24 broad; that the Roof is of Wood, supported with Beams, and til'd; that 'tis encompassed with Bulwarks; and that there are Port-holes in the Walls for great Guns. *Snoek* says, that it lies within a Cannon-shot below the *English Fort*, and is called *Creveceur*; and that 'tis larger, and has better Guns than the *English Fort*, but thinner Walls.

Snoek says, that the *Danes Fort*, called *Christiansburg*, and the only one they have on this Coast, stands a Cannon-shot below the *Dutch Fort*. The Negroes took it from them in 1693, because several of the *Garrison* died, and kept it till two *Danish Ships* arrived on the Coast, when, by Means of a considerable Present to the King of *Aquamboe*, and by the Intercession of the *Dutch*, it was restored to them; upon which they put in such a strong Garrison out of their Ships, that the latter were easily taken by the Pyrates in the Sight of *Guinea*. Our Author observes, that it would be too strong for the united Force of the *English* and *Dutch*. He says, 'tis square, with 4 Batteries, and 20 Guns, looks very beautiful, and as if it were but one continued Battery, the Roof being entirely flat, so that Cannon may be planted on all Parts of it. *Snoek* adds, that the Authority of each Nation here is confin'd within the Forts; that they are obliged to be only on the Defensive; and that it would be sure Destruction to make any Attempt upon the Negroes. Each Fort he says has an adjacent Village, distinguished by a particular Name, tho' the general one is *Acra*. He observes, that the three Companies don't hurt one another's Trade, each being stocked with Necessaries which the other has not, and there being Gold

Gold and Slaves enough for them all, especially of the former, of which sometimes more is receiv'd here than on the whole Coast besides, and the Trade would still be greater, only the Negroes are generally at Variance with those of *Akim*, who demand Tribute of them by Vertue of a Feudal Right, which the *Aquamboeans* refuse, lest in Time it might cost them their whole Country. But the King secures the Peace and Commerce of his Dominions by sowing Strife betwixt the Governing-Men of *Akim*.

We find no Mention of *Skidoe*, a *British* Façtory, which *Moll* places on the W. Side of *Acra*; nor do the Maps take Notice of *Quedah*, which the Author of the *True State of the Difference between the African Company and the Separate Traders* says is a Neutral Port, where all Nations trade without Distinction under the King's Protection; and that our Company has a Fort here 3 Miles within Land, which is only a Warehouse for their Goods; but we suppose this Author's *Quedah* and *Moll's Skidoe* to be the same. *Snoek* ends the *Gold Coast* at *Ponni*, a Place of very small Trade, where the *Dutch* began a Fort, but did not finish it, for fear they should be perpetually plagu'd by the old King of *Aquemboe* above-mentioned. Before we quite leave the *Gold Coast*, we thought proper to give a brief Account from *Dapper* of the several petty Kingdoms which border upon it within Land as follows.

20. The Inland Kingdoms which border upon the Gold Coast.

Dapper says, they are, 1. *Igwira*, which he bounds on the N. with *Atzyn* and *Little Incassia*, on the S. with *Great Incassia*, and on the W. with *Mompa*. They say, it abounds with Gold, and that all that comes to *Albine*, *Affine*, and 20 Leagues W. of the Cape of *Three Points*, is brought from hence; and our Author tells us of two Burghers that went some Years ago to *Little Commendo* to raise their Fortunes, and that after a while they returned to *Europe*, very wealthy by the Trade which they drove to *Igwira*. The *Portuguese* had a Fort here, but the Negroes forc'd them to abandon it to the *Dutch*.

2. *Great Incassia* or *Incassan*. *Dapper* bounds it with *Igwira* on the S. and *Wassa* and *Wanqui* on the E. as he does *Little Incassan*, with the Great one on the S. and *Wassa* and *Wanqui* also on the E. He says, the People have no Commerce with the *Europeans*, and that those of *Great Incassan* often cross the Kingdom of *Adom*, and carry Gold to the *Dutch* at *Little Commendo*, when there are no Vessels at *Affine* or *Albine*.

3. *Tabeu*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a little Province, with *Anten* on the S. *Adom* on the N. W. and *Guaffo*, from which 'tis parted by a Brook, on the E. The Inhabitants carry their Commodities to sell at *Sama*, where the *Dutch* have a Fort, and where the *Portuguese*, when they were Masters of the Castle of *Mina*, came to provide Corn and Fowls.

4. *Adom*. *Dapper* bounds it with *Tabeu* and *Guaffo* on the E. *Wassa* on the N. and *Abramboe* on the E. N. E. The Negroes here come sometimes to *Little Commendo* to trade with the *Dutch* in Gold, when the Soldiers and Robbers infest the Road to the Coast through *Anten*. *Snoek* says, this Country extends along the Rivers of *St. Juan* and *Ancober*, with several Islands in the former, adorned with fine Towns and Villages; that there's 16 Miles on the Strand from one River to the other, and that it runs up the River of *St. Juan* in a straight Line, and then turns with a narrow Slip of Land towards *Rio Cobre*. 'Tis governed by 5 or 6 of the chief Men like a Republick; but *Snoek* says, they are a Crew of Villains; yet he observes, that if they were unanimous, they might raise a powerful Army, to the Terror of their Neighbours. He tells us, that in 1690 they began a War against the *Antese*, which lasted 3 or 4 Years, till they had almost ruin'd them; but they still continue to defy them. Some Years ago, they also obliged the three Nations on the River of *Ancober* by Force of Arms to buy their Peace for a large Sum of Gold, in which Wars the *Adomese* had a Monster of a General, who, tho' cowardly enough, was so blood-thirsty, that he caused 5 of the principal Men of *Ante*, whom he had taken Prisoners, to be wounded all over, and then suck'd their Blood; and if Opportunity was wanting, he exercis'd the same Cruelty on his Subjects. However, the Natives are

very powerful and rich, their Country being the Thorowfare for those that go to the Islands to trade. Besides, they have several Gold Mines, one of which was discovered about 3 Years before our Author's Time. But all this makes them very haughty. It abounds with Corn and other Fruits in such Plenty, that they sell great Quantities, besides what they use themselves. There's also Store of Wild and Tame Beasts, Fish, and all Necessaries for Life.

5. *Mompa*. Dapper bounds it on the W. with *Igwira*, on the N. with *Great Incassan*, *Wassa*, and *Adem*, and on the E. with the Maritime Country of *Anten*.

6. *Wassa*. Dapper bounds it on the N. with *Wanqui*, on the E. with *Abramboe* and *Cuiforo*, on the W. with *Great Incassan*, and on the N. W. with *Little Incassan*. He says, it produces little Corn, but abounds with Gold, which 'tis the only Employ of the Inhabitants to dig; but their Neighbours bring them Necessaries, and the Europeans Merchandize.

7. *Wanqui*. Dapper bounds it with *Little Incassan* on the W. *Wassa* on the S. and *Bonoe* on the N. and says, that the Negroes have Gold, and make fine Habits, in which they traffick with the *Acanists*.

8. *Abramboe*. He bounds it on the W. with *Adom* and *Wassa*, on the S. with *Gueffo*, on the N. with *Cuiforo*, on the N. E. with *Acania*, on the E. with *Atti*, and on the S. E. with *Fetu*, and says, 'tis a populous Country; that most of the Inhabitants follow Husbandry; that some go every Week to *Mouree* to buy up Woollen, Linen, and Iron, for Gold; and others are Brokers, and keep the Markets. Some Years ago they had Wars with the *Acanists*, who burnt most of their Villages.

9. *Cuiforo*. He bounds this on the W. with *Wassa*; *Abramboe* on the S. *Bonoe* on the N. and *Acania* on the E. He says, 'tis a flat Country, and has no Forrests; that the Inhabitants are very simple, and have no Commerce with the *Dutch*.

10. *Bonoe*. Dapper bounds it with *Wanqui* on the W. *Cuiforo* on the S. and *Acania* and *Inta* on the E. and says, it has little or no Trade.

11. *Atty*. He bounds it with *Abramboe* on the W. *Fetu*, *Sabou*, and *Fantyn*, on the S. and *Dahoe* on the N. and says, that before

they depended on those of *Acania*, they traded with the *Dutch*; but the *Acanists* have engrossed all the Trade, and obliged them to till the Ground. There's a Market here well frequented, whither the *Acanists* come to sell Iron, and several other Sorts of Merchandize.

12. *Acania* or *Acanny*. Dapper bounds it with *Cuiforo* and *Bonoe* on the W. *Dahoe*, *Atti*, and *Abramboe*, on the S. *Inta* on the N. and *Ahim* on the E. He says, the People are great Merchants, furnish almost two Thirds of the Gold which the Europeans bring from this Coast, and carry the Merchandizes which they take in Exchange on both Sides to such Parts of the Negroes Country as are very remote from the Sea, where they have their Accommodation gratis. They are very affable, couragious, and rich in Gold and Slaves. Their Language is almost the same with that of *Fetu*, *Atty*, *Sabou*, *Commendoe*, and *Abramboe*, but somewhat smoother. Those who go to the Coast for Traffick generally understand a little Portuguese.

13. *Inta*. He bounds it on the W. with *Acania*, on the N. with an unknown Country, and on the E. with *Ahim* and *Acam*. The *Dutch* have no Trade with the Inhabitants.

14. *Ahim*. Dapper says, 'tis also called *Great Acania*, and has *Acania* on the W. *Aqua* and *Sanquay* on the S. *Inta*, *Acam*, and *Cuahoe*, on the N. and *Aquemboe* on the W. The Negroes are very haughty, and much richer than the *Acanists*. They never come to the Coast to traffick with Foreigners, their greatest Trade being with the Inland Negroes, in buying and selling European Merchandize.

15. *Acam*. He bounds it with *Inta* on the W. *Ahim* on the S. *Cuahoe* and *Tafoe* on the E. and on the N. with an unknown Country, and says, that this is not noted for Trade.

16. *Aqua*. Dapper bounds it on the W. with *Dahoe* and *Atty*; on the S. with *Fantyn*, to which 'tis tributary; and on the N. with *Ahim*.

17. *Sanquay*. He bounds it on the S. with *Fantyn*, on the N. with *Ahim*, and on the W. with *Igwana*, and says, the People are subject to the King of *Igwana*, who often come to buy old stinking Fish from

from those of Cape *Velu*, and carry it home.

18. *Abonoe*. Dapper says, 'tis a little Country, with *Aquemboe* on the W. *Igmana* on the S. *Aboera* on the N. and on the E. with Part of that and *Great Acara*; and that it has a Market two Leagues on this Side *Great Acara*, which is frequented from all Parts far and near.

19. *Cuahoe*. He bounds it with *Acam* on the W. *Aquemboe* and *Abim* on the S. *Tasoe* on the N. and *Aboera* and *Cammanah* on the E. and says, that the Inhabitants are counted Cheats.

20. *Tasoe*. Dapper bounds it with *Acam* on the W. *Quahoe* on the S. and that and *Cammanah* on the E. They say, it abounds with Gold, which is sold for most Part in *Abonoe*, from whence 'tis carried to *Mouree*.

21. *Aboera*. He bounds it with *Aquemboe* on the W. *Quahoe* and *Cammanah* on the N. *Abonoe* and *Great Acara* on the S. and *Bonoe* on the E. and says, it yields abundance of Gold, which the Inhabitants carry to the Market of *Great Acara* in the Country of *Abonoe*.

22. *Quahoe*. Dapper places it N. of *Cammanah* and *Little Acara*; and E. of *Tasoe*, and says, it also produces great Store of Gold, which is carried to the same Market. *Snoek* says, its Inhabitants pass to *Acra* thro' *Aquamboe*.

23. *Cammanah*. Dapper bounds it on the W. with *Cuahoe*, on the N. with *Quahoe*, on the S. with *Aboera* and *Bonoe*, and on the E. with *Equea*, *Latabi*, and *Little Acara*, and says, the Inhabitants, who are Husbandmen, furnish their Neighbours with Corn.

24. *Bonoe*. He bounds it on the W. with *Aboera*; *Cammanah* on the N. *Great Acara* on the S. and *Equea* and *Ningo* on the E. and says, that the Inhabitants live by carrying Merchandizes to sell to their Neighbours.

21. The SLAVE COAST.

MOLL carries it from the Danish Fort of *Christiansburg*, where he ends the *Gold Coast*, to *Benin*; but some carry the *Gold Coast* as far as *Rio Volta*. The first Kingdom mentioned here by Dapper is *Labbede*, which he says is a small Maritime

Province, with *Great Acara* on the W. and *Ningo* on the E. and N. There's a pleasant walled Town of the same Name upon the Coast, 3 Leagues E. of *Little Acara*. The Country is full of Plains and Meadows, and water'd with several Brooks. The Inhabitants have a King, and are employed some in making Salt, others in tilling the Ground, and others trade in great Cattle, which they either bring up themselves, or fetch from *Lec*, 12 or 15 Leagues lower, and carry them to sell at *Acara*. The Dutch too sometimes go thither for Gold.

2. *Ningo*. This Dapper bounds with *Great Acara* on the W. and *Equea* and *Little Acara* on the N. and says, it has 4 Villages on the Coast, viz. 1. *Temina*, a League and a half from *Ningo*. 2. *Sinco*, at the same Distance from *Temina*, and 10 Leagues E. from *Acara*, discovered by the Dutch in 1600. 3. *Piffy*. 4. *Ningo*, 4 or 5 Leagues from *Acara*, and 2 from *Labbede*. The adjacent Soil abounds with Pasture, whither the Merchants of *Acara* come to buy up Cattle to transport them to *Mouree*. Most of the Inhabitants are Fishermen, who go along the Shore in their Canoes by the Light of Lamps, with a kind of Basket, which they throw over the Fish. There's another pretty Village within Land called *Spice*, which is noted for Plenty of Orange Trees. He adds, that the Entrance of the several Harbours is full of Rocks, and that some Years ago the Dutch traded to *Ningo*, *Sinco*, and *Piffy*; but when the Gold failed them, they went no farther than *Acara*.

Snoek says, that the Land betwixt *Ponni* and *Rio Volta* is 13 Miles long, and inhabited by the Negroes of *Acra*, *Lampi*, and *Aquamboe*. He tells us, that those of *Lampi* have a Sovereign called the King of *Ladingcour*; but he and his Subjects are Vassals to the King of *Aquamboe*, who upon the least Disgust cuts them a Foot shorter. The adjacent Country is pretty populous and fruitful, and abounds with Cows, Hogs, Sheep, Poultry, &c. which are daily bought cheap here by the Blacks of the *Gold Coast* to transport to the Upper Coast. They also buy up some Slaves here; but most of them are transported hence by the English, French, and Portuguese Ships. He observes, that sometimes this Trade proves very advantageous here, especially about *Lay*; but 'tis very un-

certain, because when the Inland Countries are at Peace, there are none to be got. Besides Trade, the Inhabitants employ themselves in Tillage and Fishing, the first of which turns to good Account; but the Fishery, especially on the Sea, to little or none at all, because the Shore here is high, and sometimes inaccessible by small Canoes. However, they have Lakes and Rivers which abound with Fish.

The only Place of Note here is *Ley* or *Lay*, a Village between *Sinco* and *Rio Volta*, inhabited by Fishermen and Herdsmen, and abounding with Beeves and Cows, from 40 to 70 Livres apiece. The *Sansons* place this Village in *Ningo*, 45 Miles W. of *Rio Volta*. *Dapper* and *Snoek* give the following Account of that River.

Dapper places its Mouth 20 Leagues from *Sinco*, and says, the Water is very low there, because of a Sand-Bank which lies over against it, which, tho' it does not run very far into the Sea, yet it stops up the River so that Sloops can't enter it; but one may discover from the Top of a Main-mast that the Channel is very broad. The Sea-Water over against its Mouth is white within a Mile of the Shore, and sweet till one comes to 10 Fathom deep, because of the Violence of the Current. *Moll* and the *Sansons* extend it 315 Miles N. as far as *Guber* in *Negroland*. The latter call it *Volta*. *Snoek* thinks the *Portuguese* called it *Volta*, because of its rapid Flux and Reflux. He praises it for a fine wide River, and says, it falls with such Violence into the Sea, that 'tis sometimes visible 3 or 4 Miles from the Shore, and carries a great many Trees, which stopping at the Mouth of the River, occasion a terrible burning of the Waves, so that the Canoes can pass it but twice in the Year, viz. betwixt *April* and *November*, just before the rainy Season, when the Reflux of the River is not so swift.

22. Coto Kingdom, or the Land of Lampi.

Snoek, who begins it on the E. Side of this River, says, 'tis but a weak Kingdom at best, and daily decays by its Wars with *Popo*, which had held for some Years successively when he wrote, and were like

to last longer if they did not make Peace, or engage some other Country to their Assistance, because alone they are a pretty equal Match. In the mean time the King of *Aquamboe* sends Helps to the weakest Side, that neither may be destroyed; but in 1700 those of *Little Popo* surpris'd those of *Coto*, and expelled them from their Country; but our Author does not doubt they will be restored by those of *Aquamboe*. He says, there are no Hills or Trees in this Country, except Palm Trees in abundance, and that the Soil is dry, sandy, and barren, but stocked with Cattle enough for the Inhabitants. They have Plenty of River Fish, but can get none out of the Sea, because of the violent Burnings which extend from hence to *Ardra* and beyond. Our Author, when he was here, says, he found both Prince and People very civil and good natur'd. They resemble those of the *Gold Coast* in Politicks, Oeconomicks, and Religion, and have a vast Number of Idols. Their Language is very like that of *Acra*. They have a small Trade, and are generally poor. They get most by travelling within Land, and stealing Men, whom they sell to the *Europeans*. We refer to what we said P. 372 of this Volume for *Dapper's* Account of *Cape Montego* in this Country, and the neighbouring Coast. He adds, that 'tis a rugged Country, full of wet Ditches, and that here's a little River whose Mouth is shut up by Sands, and marked by Trees on the E. Side.

This leads us to *Benin*, the third and last Division of *Guinea*, according to *Luyts* and the *Sansons*; but before we proceed to that, we here thought fit to inform our Readers, that we are obliged for all or most of the Discoveries which we have yet communicated under *Snoek's* Name to *Bosman*, one of his Contemporaries, whose Letters are bound up with his; for the Coast from *Cabo Monte* to *Ardra* is described by *Bosman*, and the *Tooth* and *Grain Coast*, with all the Tract W. of the *Gold Coast*, by *Snoek*, of whose Authority *Bosman* does not fail to give a very good Testimony. To this we shall only add *Bosman's* Account how the *French* lost their Aim of settling on the *Gold Coast*. He says, that some Years ago they us'd to detain all the Negroes that came on board from the Coast, and then sold 'em for Slaves

to the *West Indies*. Amongst the rest, they secur'd one *Lewis Hannibal*, a Man of a more sprightly Genius than most of his Countrymen, who was carried to the *French Court*, where (tho' he was but a *Cabocer's Slave*) he pretended to be the King of *Affinee's Son* and Heir, the same that the *European Mercury* for 1701 called by Mistake the King of *Syria*. The Writer of that *Mercury* says, that after he had been a long Time instructed in the Christian Religion, he was baptized by the Bishop of *Meaux*, the King being his Godfather, received the Sacrament from the Cardinal de *Noailles*, offer'd a Picture to the *Virgin Mary*, to whose Protection he submitted his Territories, and vow'd at his Return to do his Utmost to convert his (pretended) Subjects. *Bosman* says, he was conveyed home by two or three Men of War, after the King made him several rich Presents; and that he is again return'd to Paganism, to the great Disappointment of the *French Court*, who thought by this Means to have fixed themselves on the *Gola Coast*.

23. B E N I N.

MOLL bounds it with the *Gold Coast* on the W. *Biafar* in *Lower Ethiopia* on the E. the *Atlantick Ocean* and the Gulph of *Guinea* or *St. Thomas* on the S. and *Zigzeg* and *Zanfara* in *Negroland* on the N. He extends it 470 Miles from N. to S. and 720 from E. to W. including the *Slave Coast* and *Rio Volta*, and makes the *Danish Fort* at *Christiansburg* on the W. and the River *Camarones* on the E. its Maritime Boundaries. The *Sanfons*, who bound it on the W. with all *Guinea Proper*, and begin it near *Popou*, 15 Miles E. of *Rio Volta*, make it 690 Miles from E. to W. within Land, 360 from N. to S. where broadest, and above 250 Leagues along the Coast, dividing it by the Cape *Formoso* into E. *Benin*, which contains the Rivers *Real de Calabri*, *del Rey* and *Camarones*; and the W. containing the Rivers of *Benin* and *Lagoa*, with the whole Tract as far as *Proper Guinea*; but they say, the E. Part is more healthful than the W.

But since most Geographers and Travelers begin *Proper Benin* at the River of that Name, we thought fit to defer its General History, till we have gone thro' the other

Provinces of the *Slave Coast* on the W. Side of that River.

24. L I T T L E P O P O.

MOLL places it 25 Miles E. of *Rio Volta*. *Snoek* says, that the Soil is like that of *Coto*, from which it lies about 10 Miles; but 'tis so very sandy and barren, that they are obliged to *Fida* for all or greatest Part of their Provisions, and the Sand gets into all the Victuals they dress. We formerly observed, that the Inhabitants were expelled hither by the King of *Aquamboe*, and our Author believes they'll never return home. They are not populous, but very warlike; and he tells us, that not many Years before he wrote, they had a brave Prince called *Aforri*, Brother to the present King, who assisted the King of *Great Ardra* to quash a Rebellion of his Subjects of *Offra*, wasted their Country, and deliver'd up the chief Offender to his Sovereign. After this, he invaded and encamped in the Midst of *Fida*, and made a timely Retreat for want of Powder, and upon Advice that those of *Coto* were coming to the Assistance of *Fida*. This made him go to War with his Neighbours of *Coto*, but was so desperate for Revenge, that he fell upon a much superior Army, and flew into the midst of his Enemies, where, after a stout Resistance, he and several of his Men were killed upon the Spot. But the present King always attacked the *Cotosians* in their weakest Condition, till at last they were drove out of their Country, as we observed before. The Inhabitants are more courageous and successful in Plunder and the Slave Trade than those of *Coto*; but a Ship must wait here some Months before it can have her full Freight of Slaves; and the Natives are so deceitful, that they generally pretend they have a Stock of Slaves, for no other End but to draw the Merchant ashore, and get what they can from him, besides making him stay. They cheat the *Portuguese* more than any other Nation; but they are forc'd to trade with them, because they can't get Slaves for their sorry Goods any where else. They were also very villainous to the *Danes* in 1698, and as bad to an *English Ship* a Year or two before: But *Snoek* says, the same

same Ship returning hither again in his Time, had no sooner anchor'd before *Popo*, but the King's Son and other great Men came aboard, whom they clapp'd in the Bilboes, and kept them there till they had recover'd Damages, and a Sum besides. He observes however, that the present King's Brother would not suffer his Subjects to impose upon *Europeans*; and that in his Reign a *Dutch* Ship dealt here in 11 Days for above 500 Slaves, which he says is never likely to happen again. He adds, that the Inhabitants resemble those of *Akra* in Religion and Government, and that their Country is much infested with Rats.

25. Great Popo or Popou Kingdom.

MOLL places it 20 Miles N. E. of *Lesser Popo*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a Village on the Coast shaded with a small Wood. *Bosman* says, it lies 4 Miles E. from *Little Popo*, and that its King was first subject to *Fida*; but the present King being set upon the Throne by the King of *Fida*, in the Room of his Brother, whom he had banish'd, he ungratefully revolted; upon which the *Fidasian* sent a great Army against *Popo*, while some *French* Ships, which furnished him with Ammunition and other Necessaries, failed to attack it by Sea; but *Popo* being situate in the midst of a River, they were forced to lay Floats to come at them, and the People were so well prepar'd, that after they had killed a great many, both *French* and *Fidasians*, by firing unperceiv'd out of their Houses, the rest quitted their Arms, and fled with such great Precipitation, that if the *Popoeans* had pursued them, 'tis probable that not one *Frenchman* would have escaped alive, because they are not near so swift as the Negroes. Since this, the King of *Fida* has spared no Cost to hire other Nations to revenge his Quarrel; but he has been cheated on all Hands, so that he is obliged to let the King of *Popo* remain in quiet Possession of his Island. *Bosman* also calls it a Village, and says, the Inhabitants have scarce any other Dwelling-place; but 'tis so thinly Peopled, and so infested by the *Fidasians*, that the Natives can't till their Land in Quiet, so that they

often want Provisions, and would be starv'd if they were not furnished underhand by some *Fidasians*, who run the Risk of losing their Heads, because of the Profit they get by this Commerce. The Natives of *Great Popo* trade also in Slaves, which, if no Ships come hither, they sell to those of *Little Popo*; but their greatest Gain is by the Fish which they catch in their River, and trade with abroad. Some Years ago, *Bosman* says the *Dutch* had a House or Lodge here; but they left it, because the Trade was ruin'd by the Quarrel with *Fida*. The People speak the *Adrasian* Language, with very small Alteration, and their Government is upon the same Foot, of which more in the Description of *Fida*.

26. FIDA Kingdom.

MOLL places the Town of *Fida* or *Whiddah* near the Bottom of a Bay, about 17 Miles N. E. from *Great Popo*. *Bosman* places it but 4 or 5 Miles E. of *Popo*, and says, it has a very dangerous Harbour, because the Sea burning there, is very violent, so that there's no landing with Safety, especially in *April*, *May*, *June*, and *July*, when great Quantities of Goods are lost, and many Men drown'd. Besides, there's such a strong Eastern Tide at that Season, that no Boat or Sloop can get up it by rowing; but the Men are obliged to stem it along by sticking their Poles in the Ground, so that those who trade hither for Slaves are detained twice longer than is otherwise necessary.

Bosman gives us the following General Account of this Country from his own Observation, which we recommend for the best Description of the *Slave Coast* we have met with.

It extends about 9 Miles along the Shore, and 6 within Land, and is 12 Miles broad in some Places, but much narrower in others. 'Tis so populous, that in the King's Village, or those of the Viceroy's, there are as many People as in a common Kingdom on the *Gold Coast*. In short, 'tis full of great and small Villages, for those who live out of the great ones build where they please, so

so that the Villages increase with the Families. Their Houses are round at the Top, and encompassed with Mud Walls or Hedges, besides great Numbers of all Sorts of fine lofty Trees, which afford a very delightful Prospect, the rather because there are no Hills, but the whole is an insensibly rising Ground, covered with Grass or Trees, and abounding with Corn, Beans, vast Numbers of Potatoes, and other Fruits, so that there's little or no wast Ground, and the Negroes sow again the very Day after they have reap'd. Their Corn is, 1. The Great Milhio or Millet, which is as good, tho' not so large, as that on the *Gold Coast*. They only use it in brewing of Beer, so that they don't sow much of it. 2. Small Milhio or Maiz, like that on the *Gold Coast*, which they sow twice a Year, and much more at one Time than another. They sow so much of this, that they scarce leave a Foot-path unplanted; but they have none to spare at the Year's end, because the Country is so populous, and they sell vast Quantities to the *Pops*'s and other neighbouring Countries, so that one barren Year causes such a terrible Famine, that Freemen sometimes sell themselves for Food, and others turn away their Slaves because they cannot keep them. *Bosman* tells us of an *English* Ship that was here in such a Time, that got a whole Load of Slaves for no other Merchandize than Provisions. 3. Another Sort of Milhio like the last, which grows on Stalks like Oats in *Holland*. The Grain is reddish, and requires 7 or 8 Months to ripen. The Negroes mix it with Great Milhio to strengthen their Beer. The Negro Women are good Brewers, and brew one Sort as strong as the Beers in *Holland*, which costs a Rixdollar per Bottle, whereas the common Sort is but 3 *d*. None drink Water here but the Slaves, because 'tis drawn out of Wells 20 or 30 Fathom deep, and but 6 or 8 Foot wide, so that no Sun can reach it, which makes it very cold, and so unwholesome in this hot Country, that it causes a Fever; and their best Beer is so hot, that our Author advises *Europeans* to dash it with an equal Quantity of Water. They have no Ovens, but boil all their Bread, instead of which they commonly eat Potatoes. They have a few Jammes, but not so good as those on the *Gold Coast*. They have several Sorts of small

Beans in great Plenty, particularly one Sort they call *Acras*, of which the *Dutch* make Oil Cakes, as light as those in *Holland*. They have a little Ginger, a few Onions, and all the other Fruits that grow on the *Gold Coast*, particularly Citrons, Lemons, Oranges, Bakkovens, Bananas, and Piemont, besides abundance of Tamarinds, and other Fruit-Trees that are unknown, and scarce merit a Description. There are abundance of Palm Trees, which they chiefly cultivate for their Oil, for the Natives generally prefer their Beer to the Wine, for which Reason they also fell the Pardon Trees, whose Wood is very durable for Building. In short, the Soil is so fruitful, that *Bosman* thinks that all *African* and several *European* Fruits would grow here, and he made an Experiment in Cabbages, Carrots, Turneps, Raddishes, Parsley, and Salad-Herbs, which thrived here as well as in *Europe*. He also thinks the Soil fit for Plantations of Sugar-Canes, and says, it produces Plenty of Indigo as good as any in the World, with which the Inhabitants dye all their Clothes, but wast four times more than they need, for want of Skill in using it.

They have Oxen, Cows, Goats, Sheep and Hogs, in Shape like those of the *Gold Coast*, but fatter and better tasted, for they have as fine Pasture as any in *Europe*. The Price of an Ox or Cow is 10 Rixdollars, a Sheep or a Hog two, and a Goat one. They have Horses no better than those on the *Gold Coast*, which cost almost 4 *l*. apiece. There are not many Wild Beasts, except a few Deer about the Town of *Fida*; but the Inland Country abounds with Elephants, Tygers, Buffaloes, Hares, and several Sorts of Deer. They have a few Turkeys and Ducks, and a vast Number of little fat Pullets, which may be had for about 6 *d*. apiece in Money, and for 3 *d*. in Way of Barter; so that he says three Tobacco-Pipes will purchase the best they have. Here are vast Numbers of Wild Fowl, such as Geese, Ducks, Snipes, and 20 other Sorts, all very good and cheap; so that a Dozen of Pipes will purchase a choice Dish or two of Wild Fowl. There are so many Turtle-Doves, that a good Marksman may kill a Hundred or more in a Day. They have Birds of Prey too, tho' not so many as on the *Gold Coast*, particularly the Crown-Bird formerly mentioned.

tioned in the *Gold Coast*, and another Bird as big as a Chicken, with short Legs and Neck, hairy Eyes and Eyelids, a short thick Bill, and mottled with Black and Blue. We come now to give an Account of the Slave Trade.

Bosman premises, that formerly the *Dutch* were better provided for by the King than all other Nations, and had a double Portion of his Favours; but that since they have entrusted their Slave Trade to the Captains of Ships, both the King and Natives treat them with very small Respect, because he complains that the Captains are ignorant of the People's Manners, and know not how to treat them with due Decency, which he thinks will end in the Ruin of the Slave Trade. He says, that that Commerce is managed thus: When the Factors come to *Fida*, they first pay the Customs of the King and great Men, which amount to about 100 *l.* in *Guinea* Value, as the Goods must yield there. After this they have Licence to trade, which is published thro' the Land by a Cryer. They are first obliged to buy the King's whole Stock of Slaves at a set Price, which is commonly one Third or one Fourth higher than ordinary, and then they may deal with any of the Subjects. If there be no Stock of Slaves, the Factors must trust the Inhabitants with Goods to the Value of 100 or 200 Slaves, which they send far and near into the Inland Country to all the Markets to purchase Slaves, who are for most Part Prisoners of War, sold by the Victors; for Kindred don't sell one another, as some give out, unless in Cases of extreme Necessity. When the Slaves are brought to *Fida*, they are first put in a Prison, and then brought out into a large Plain for Sale, where the Surgeons examine both Sexes naked, and those that prove sound and serviceable are set apart, and the Invalids, whom they here call *Mackrons*, (who are above 35 Years old, lame, dim sighted, grey hair'd, or diseased,) are thrown out; after which the others are number'd, the Name of the Deliverer enter'd, and the Slaves are marked in the Breast or elsewhere with a red hot Iron, bearing the respective Arms or Names of the *English*, *Dutch*, *French*, or other Companies who are the Purchasers, that they may know one another's Slaves, and to prevent the Negroes from exchan-

ging them for worse. The Slaves go at an established Price, and the Women are about one Fourth or one Fifth cheaper than the Men. The Owners generally demand *Boesies*, which is the Coin of this Country, for their Slaves; but the *Europeans* make a Division on this Head, to make one Sort of Goods help off another, by which Means they have the Slaves one half cheaper than if they made their Payments in *Boesies*. When the Bargain is made for the Slaves, they are returned to the Prison, where the *Europeans* keep them for 2 *d.* a Day each with Bread and Water, but take the first Opportunity to send 'em on board to save Charges, and then their Owners strip them stark naked. Our Author pretends that the *Dutch* Masters of Ships keep their Slaves better than all other *Europeans*. He says, they feed them three times a Day with indifferent good Victuals, and keep both Sexes in separate Apartments, where they lie as crowded as can be. Some of the Slaves that come from a far Inland Country make the rest believe, that the *Europeans* only buy them to fatten for the Shambles, insomuch that they often rebel, and sometimes combine to kill their new Masters, quit the Ship, and set her adrift. Our Author observes, that in 4 Years Time the *Portuguese* lost 4 Ships in this Manner.

He comes next to the Government of *Fida*, which he says, so far as it relates to the Country or the War, is vested in the King and great Men; but in Criminal Cases the King assembles his Council, to whom he opens the Indictment, and requires each Person to pronounce his Sentence, which if he likes, he orders to be put in Execution; but otherwise, he obliges the Council to retire, and punishes the Malefactor as he pleases. Their only Capital Crimes are Murder and Adultery, with the Wives of the King or his great Men. Our Author gives an Instance of two Blacks condemn'd for Murder, who were cut open alive; after which their Entrails were taken out and burnt, and their Corps filled with Salt, and fixed on a Stake in the Middle of a Market. He also gives us an Instance of a Negro condemned for lying with one of the King's Wives. He was set in an open Field, where the great Men shot at him with *Zagays*. After this, his Criminal Member was cut off

off in Presence of the Adultress, which he was obliged to throw into the Fire himself, and then both were bound Hand and Foot, and put into a deep Pit: After which the Executioners set a Pot of boiling Water on the Fire, which they lav'd by degrees upon the Criminals, till it was half out, and then they pour'd the Remainder on them at once, and filling the Pit with Earth, bury'd them alive. To this our Author adds another pleasant Instance of a young Negro that had shut himself up in a Woman's Habit in the King's Seraglio, where he enjoy'd several of his Wives, till, for fear of Discovery, they were resolved to make up a Pack of the King's Goods, and fly into the Country; but the Negro and one Woman only were catch'd, who were so true to the rest, that they chose to be tortur'd and burnt rather than discover them; tho' our Author says, that when the Negro was at the Stake, he laugh'd, and told the King's Wives, that he could not forbear it, to see them so forward to bring Fuel to burn him, with whom they had spent so many merry Nights. *Bosman* says, that the rest of the Negroes Crimes are commonly compounded by a Fine, which the King takes himself, without calling his Captains to his Assistance, except he be a chief Favourite, as was Captain *Carter* in our Author's Time, who was called Captain *Blank*, because all *European* Affairs were entrusted to him. If an accused Person denies the Charge, he must clear himself by Fetiches, as on the *Gold Coast*, or else they are brought to a River not far from the Court, which they say drowns none but the Guilty; but most of them are Swimmers, and easily come out for paying a certain Sum to the King. The Viceroy's generally follow the same Rule, and condemn the Malefactors to pay a certain Sum to their Use. *Bosman* brings us next to his Description of the Court.

He says, the King, who was some Years above 50 when he was there, was as vigorous as a Man of 35. He was very civil and generous at first; but our Author observes, that his Flatterers have made him so obstinate and humourful, that there's no dealing with him. He picks out the Prime of the *European* Merchandize in Exchange for his Slaves, so that sometimes the Merchants can't put off the Remainder to any

Advantage at all. He has no Retinue besides his Wives, which are above 1000, with whom he goes abroad in great Splendour once or twice a Year, when all of them are dressed in their richest Habits and Ornaments of Coral. He takes no Man in his Company, but advertises all his great Men beforehand where he intends to divert himself, whither they go to wait for him; but they must keep off at a Distance from his Wives, and only see them pass by. He spends the rest of his Time at home with his Wives, except when he gives Audience to his Captains; after which he goes to another Place of Audience, to discourse the *Europeans* about Trade, where our Author says, for want of other Business, he often gam'd with him for an Ox, Hog, Sheep, &c. but never for Money or other Goods, and that what he won the King sent him home; and if he lost, would demand nothing from him. In the Place of Audience are two Foot-stools, one broad, cover'd with a Cloth, on an oval Stool, according to the Custom of the Country, which is for the King, and the other cover'd with Mats for the *Europeans*, to sit next the King and converse with him, which, out of Complacency, they always do bare-headed, and without their Swords, because the King does not like that any should appear armed before him. He is very sociable and liberal, but no Man must drink out of his Glass or Cup, and he never uses that which hath but once touched another's Lips. He is fond of the Company of *Europeans* at his Table, which at such Times is pretty well furnished and served. All his Nobles lie flat on the Earth round the Table, dare not rise while he is present, and out of Complaisance to the King's Diet, eat the Scraps left by the *Europeans*, whether they like it or no, and tho' they have ten times better at home. His chief Officers are, 1. The *Phidalgo's* or Viceroy's, who rule as arbitrarily, and keep as great State in their Provinces as the King himself. 2. His Chief Captains, most of whom are also Viceroy's over some Country or other. 3. The Common Captains, of whom there's a great Number, with each a particular Character, such as the Captains of the Market, Slaves, Prison, Shore, and the like. There's also a great many Honorary Captains without Offices, for each of which

Posts every Person must pay the King a good Sum of Money. His Revenue is very large, in Proportion to his Country, and he has above 1000 Collectors dispersed in all Roads and Markets, for there's nothing so mean sold in the whole Kingdom but the King has Toll for it, tho' the Collectors retain so much, that he scarce receives one Fourth of the whole. There are three principal Collectors appointed over the Slave Trade, who receive each a Rixdollar for every Slave that is traded for; but the King receives nothing on't, for they agree underhand with the Sellers. But if the Slaves be bought with the Money of the Country, the Sum contracted for is paid in the King's Presence, and he receives three Rixdollars for every Slave; yet some of his Subjects fetch their Money by Night, or at other unseasonable Times, on purpose to cheat him, and the *Europeans* never deny them their Money upon Demand, because they can't do without them. The Half of all the Fines and Tolls in his Viceroyalties does also accrue to the King; but he scarce ever gets one Fourth. He has also as much Toll from the Fish in the River that runs by the two *Popo's*, and another by *Jakin*, as amounts to 100 Slaves; but the Collectors receive as much again. Besides, there are the Revenues that arise either by Toll, the King's own Trade, or Custom from every Ship that comes hither for Trade, which our Author computes at about 400 l. and sometimes 50 Ships come hither in a Year, tho' at other Times not above half so many. On the other hand, the King's Expences are very great, for besides the large Sums which he daily provides for the reducing of *Popo* and *Offra*, the necessary Charges of his Household, and the rich Offerings he is obliged to make to his Idols, yet he is daily obliged to keep 4000 Men, and to give them Meat and Drink. *Bosman* observes, that his chief Nobles eat with him daily, or at least in his Presence; but that tho' he drinks in Publick, yet none must see him eat, nor know where he lies, except his Wives; so that if one ask where the King lay last Night, they say, Where did God lodge? Which our Author thinks is to preserve a deep Respect among the People, and to prevent being surpris'd by his Enemies. He also makes great Presents to *Europeans*, and daily

furnishes their Tables with Plenty of Flesh, Fowl, Bread, Fruit, Beer, and all other Necessaries. We come next to give a more particular Account of his Seraglio.

If a Person happen barely to touch any Part of the Body of one of the King's Wives, he loses his Head, or his Liberty for ever; so that all whose Business lies near the King's Houses call out aloud, that his Wives may know there's a Man in the Way, and no Man enters his House but when it wants Repair, and then his Wives withdraw to other Apartments, and the Workmen continually cry out to them to keep within; for if they should happen but to see them, 'tis a Crime. In like Manner, when the King's Wives go into the Field to work, which they do daily by Hundreds, they cry out to every Man they meet to *stand clear*; upon which he either falls on his Knees, or flat on the Ground, till they are pass'd by, without daring to look on them. Upon the least Disgust, the King sometimes sells 18 or 20 of his Wives, whose Places are soon supplied with fresh ones by three of his chief Captains, who take Care of the Seraglio, and present any Virgin they like to the King, without Controul or Opposition. If the King like her, he lies with her twice or thrice, and then she must pass the remainder of her Life like a Nun, for which Reason some prefer a speedy Death before such a Life. 'Tis an universal Custom with the King, Captains, and Commonalty, that if the Father die, the eldest Son enjoys all the Goods, Cattle, and Wives, and provides a separate Apartment and sufficient Subsistence for his Mother, if she can't live without it. *Bosman* adds, that in his Time the King married his only Daughter to the *English* Company's Factor here. His Commands are often executed by his Wives, who go sometimes 3 or 400 together, and pull down a Malefactor's House without Interruption, because 'tis so fatal for any to touch them. Our Author relates a pleasant Adventure of a Negro that he knew, who hearing that Orders were issued out to plunder and demolish his House for some Crime, with which he was wrongfully charged before the King, and the Time being too short to clear himself, he stay'd at home, contrary to the Custom, till the Wives came and
bad

had him retire immediately; but he had placed a Tun of Gunpowder just by him, with which he swore he would blow up them and himself too if they came nearer; upon which they made the best of their Way back to the King; but the Negro was there before them, and gave such clear Proofs of his Innocence, that the King declared him guiltless.

The King's Subjects reverence him as a Demi-God, for none of what Degree soever appear before him without Kneeling or Prostration. When they go to salute him in the Morning, they fall flat before the Door of his House, kiss the Earth three times successively, clap their Hands, mutter some Words in his Praise, and then crawl in on all four to his Presence, where they repeat the same Reverence, and tremble at every Word he speaks; but when his Back is turned, they forget all he said, and know how to delude him with Lies. He wears fine Stuffs of Silk, Gold or Silver, especially when he goes to visit any of the *Europeans*, who are lodg'd round his Court. *Bosman* says, that the *Dutch* Lodging here is very large, and contains 3 Warehouses and 7 Chambers, besides a fine Court within, adorned on each Side with a cover'd Gallery; but he tells us, that the Lodgings of the rest of the *Europeans* are very mean and inconvenient. The King had, when he was here, 3 handsome Sons and a Daughter, besides the small ones kept within Doors. The eldest Son, who is Heir Apparent to the Crown, is very beautiful, but so perverse and deceitful, that our Author wishes, that for the Good of his Country, he may never succeed, for he keeps Emissaries every where to steal from the *Europeans* as well as Blacks, not excepting his Father, and never stirs abroad but in the Night, partly out of Pride, because the common People shan't see him, and partly to avoid the Necessity of appearing in his Father's Presence. The second and youngest Son is most like his Father, especially in Civility, so that the great Men make their Court to him; and our Author doubts not but, after the King's Decease, the greatest Number will endeavour to place him upon the Throne, which 'tis probable the eldest will oppose both by Foreign and Domestick Force, and then *Bosman* wishes that the *Europeans*, if

they are able, would join with the youngest, as they did in the Case of the present King, who, tho' the younger Brother, was forcibly fix'd on the Throne by the *Dutch*, *French*, and *Portuguese*, by whose Means his elder Brother was expelled and banished, which is the Reason why the present King favours the *Europeans*. As soon as ever the King's Death is publickly known, the People rob one another publickly without Impunity, as if there was an End of all Reason and Justice, till a new King is settled in the Throne, who prohibits all such Outrages by Proclamation, wherein he is strictly obeyed. This Proclamation is also published, tho' the chief Commanders be not agreed in the Establishment of a new King, which sometimes is a Matter of long Dispute. Having done with the Court, we proceed next to their Wars, Force and Arms.

Bosman says, they can bring 200000 Men into the Field; but they are so weak and cowardly, that they durst not stand against 5000 well appointed Negroes of the *Gold Coast*; for they mind Trade and Husbandry more than War, have no able Commanders, and are terribly afraid of Death. The Command of the Army is commonly entrusted to some ordinary Person, whom the Inferiors will not obey, while the Captains and chief Men stay at home for Fear. The Natives of *Ardra* are as bad, so that *Bosman* says they never fight against one another with their own Men, but hire the *Gold Coast* Negroes, of which the Natives of *Aquamboe* are generally first at hand, tho' their Neighbours of *Coto* and *Pepo*, if united, would be more proper. The Arms both of *Fida* and *Ardra* are a few Muskets, Bows and Arrows, fine and strong Hangers and Zagays, and Clubs a Yard long, of which every Man has 5 or 6. 'Tis 5 or 6 Inches thick, round and even, except a Knot at the Bottom a Hand's Breadth, and three Fingers thick. These Clubs are made of heavy Wood. They throw them very dextrously, and wherever they fall they bruise or break a Man's Limbs, so that the *Gold Coast* Negroes fear them almost as much as a Musket. We shall add to this, *Bosman's* Account of the Manners and Customs of the People of this Country as follows.

He says, they exceed all the other Negroes both in good and bad Qualities. They are all very civil and obliging, never seize the *Europeans* for any thing besides a Morning's Draught, and had rather give than receive; but they love to hear their Services acknowledged, and are very fond of their ancient Customs. They are also very civil to each other, and if an Inferior visits or meets his Superior, he immediately falls on his Knees, kisses the Earth three times, claps his Hands, wishes him a good Day or Night, and congratulates him, which the other barely answers in the Posture he finds him, with softly clapping his Hands, and wishing the other a good Day; but if he be extraordinary complaisant, he says, 'Tis enough. All the while the Inferior remains sitting or prostrate till the other departs; but if his Affairs call him away, he begs Leave, and retires creeping on the Ground, for they reckon it Criminal to sit on a Chair or Bench before their Superiors. The like Respect is paid by the younger to the elder Brothers, the Children to their Fathers, and the Wives to their Husbands; and none deliver or receive any thing to or from their Superiors but upon the Knee, or with both Hands together, in Token of Subjection, and they never speak to them but with their Hands before their Mouths. When two Equals meet, they kneel both together, clap Hands, and wish one another a good Day; which Ceremonies are also nicely observed by their Followers on each Side. If a Person sneeze, all that are present fall on their Knees, and after kissing the Earth and clapping their Hands, wish him Joy. When a Person receives a Present from his Superior, he claps it in his Hands, and after kissing the Earth very submissively, returns Thanks. Both Sexes here are very industrious and laborious. All of them follow Agriculture, except the King and a few great Men; besides which, they spin Cotton, weave fine Cloths, make Calabasses, Wooden Vessels, Zagays and Smith's Ware, and several other Handicrafts, in greater Perfection than on the *Gold Coast*, besides some which those have not. The Women brew and dress Victuals, which they carry to Market with their Husbands Merchandize, so that both Sexes get Money, with which they live

more splendidly, and keep better Tables, than the Blacks on the *Gold Coast*. They work for small Wages, and the meaner Sort carry the *Europeans* Goods from the Shore to the King's Village, which is about three Miles, from 8 *d.* to 12 *d.* a Load, the Price of every Burthen being exactly adjusted in Proportion to the Weight. But our Author says, they go so fast with a Hundred Weight, that the *Dutch* can scarce keep up with them with no more than an Ounce. The richer Sort, besides the Husbandry, in which their Wives and Slaves are employ'd, drive a considerable Trade in Slaves, and all other Sorts of Commodities. They deliver out 1000 Slaves every Month, if there are no Ships at *Jakin*. The rest of their Manners and Customs are like those on the *Gold Coast*; but they exceed them in Polygamy, for they have here 40 or 50, their chief Captains 3 or 400, and some 1000 Wives, who for most Part till the Ground, except the handsomest, who stay at home to wait on their Husbands. The Negroes here are so jealous, that a rich Person will not suffer a Man to enter the Houses where his Wives reside, and on the least Suspicion sell them to the *Europeans*; and if a Person debauches a rich Man's Wife, the Offender is put to Death, and his whole Family condemned to Slavery. The Men are very vigorous, and the Women as fruitful, so that they have commonly a numerous Issue; and our Author affirms, that he has seen Men here who were Fathers of 200 Children. He gives two Instances of this Sort, one of them from the King's own Mouth, who assured him, that one of his Viceroy's, with his Sons and Grandsons, could make up the Number of 2000, besides Daughters, or any that were dead.

The People, tho' not so barbarous as their Neighbours of *Ardra*, &c. who poison the *Europeans* for every small Affront, yet our Author says, they are the arrantest Thieves in the World, as the King own'd to him in Discourse; and that when they carry *Europeans* Goods from the Shore to the King's Village of *Fida*, they rob them, tho' never so well watch'd; and if discover'd, have the Assurance to pretend they would not work so hard for such small Wages, without the Liberty of Stealing. In short, they are so cunning, that *Bosman* says there's no Way to

to prevent them, but leaving their Country; and that tho' Complaint be made to the King, and he orders strict Search to be made after the Guilty, yet none durst inform against them for fear of the King's eldest Son, who commonly shares with and protects them.

He comes next to their Apparel, which he says is richer than those of the *Gold Coast*, except in Gold and Silver, of which they have none, and know not its Value. The Men's upper Garment is about 8 or 9 Yards long, which they wrap very decently round their Bodies, and under it they wear 5 or 6 others of different Sorts one above another: But none must wear Red except those of the Royal Family. The Women also wear several Gowns one over another, which are each about a Yard and a quarter long, and they buckle their two Ends on their Bellies, so that they sit close behind, but so loose before, that the least Puff of Wind makes them fly open. All the Men, Women and Children, shave their Heads and Beards very close, and go bare-headed in all Weathers.

When they fall sick, they exceed the *Gold Coast* Negroes in the Number of their Offerings for the Recovery of their Health, which is the Employment of several whole Days. Their Remedies are the same with those on the *Gold Coast*, but their Offerings are very different; and here they set a Place apart for the Purpose in the open Air, which they hedge about with Reeds, &c. where they constantly sacrifice to obtain Health and Prosperity. They are so fearful of Death, that they won't bear to hear it nam'd, and 'tis Capital for any Negro to speak on't in the Presence of the King, who told our Author he should always live. But at length he grew so familiar with the King and great Men, that he ridicul'd their extravagant Fear, and accustomed them to do the same.

Bosman says; they have no Festivals or Division of Time, but count their Seed-time by Moon-shines, and know that every third Day is a great Market-Day. They are as good Accomptants by their Heads as others with Pen and Ink. He adds, that menstruous Women are reckon'd unclean, and prohibited Entrance into great Men's Houses, on Pain of Death or perpetual Slavery;

that they circumcise Children from 4 to 10 Years of Age, but give no other Reason for it than Tradition; that their Musical Instruments are better than those on the *Gold Coast*, but they never use them in Time of Mourning; and that they stake their Wives and Children first, and then their Estates and Bodies, at Gaming.

He comes next to their Religion and Superstition, with which we shall conclude our General Account of this Country.

They are more superstitious than any in the World, and own that their Idols are innumerable; for when they undertake any thing of Importance, they make an Offering to the first thing they see in their Way, whether Animate or Inanimate, and vow to rank it in the Number of their Gods if the Undertaking be crown'd with Success; but if it prove the contrary, they exclude it. They have a feint Notion of the true God, call him Omnipotent and Omnipresent, believe him the Creator of the World, and prefer him before their Idols, but don't pray or sacrifice to him, because they say he is too high and great to condescend to the World, and commits the Government of it to their Idols. They have three chief Gods; 1. Snakes; 2. High Trees; and, 3. The Sea, to which their Prayers are universally put up, and as they think particular Provinces are assign'd, with this Difference only, that the Sea and Trees must not interfere with the Snake, which they say corrects both by its Influence when they are idle and lazy. They invoke the Snake in all extreme Necessities and Difficulties, and great Offerings are made to it, especially from the King, of Money, Silks, Stuffs, all *European* and *African* Commodities, Cattle, with other good Eatables and Liquors, so that the King sometimes is tir'd out, and stops his Hand. There's a Snake-house two Miles from the King's Village, under a fine lofty Tree, where they say the chief Snake resides, whom they represent as thick as a Man, and of an excessive Length. They pretend that a great Number of Years ago he left another Country (because of the Wickedness of the People) to come to them; upon which they entertain'd him with extraordinary Reverence, and carried him upon a Silken Carpet to this House. The Kings of *Fida* us'd to come

come hither once a Year in Pilgrimage with great State and Offerings, as well as Gifts to the great Men that accompanied them; but the present King has for several Years disus'd it; and to lessen the Expence, orders it to be done by some of his Wives for him. From the Time that the small Milhio is sow'd till it grows up to Man's Height, the People think the Snakes pick up all the pretty Girls they can find in the Night, and make them run distracted; wherefore their Friends confine them several Months after this in a particular House for the Purpose, on Pretence of curing their Madness, and furnish them with all Manner of Necessaries, in which the Priests have a Share; and when the Time is expir'd, they are set at Liberty, after paying for their Cure and Keeping, which is adjusted in Proportion to the People's Circumstances, and amounts one Girl with another to about 5 *l.* apiece. The Number of Girls thus imprison'd rises to several Thousands, every Village having a particular House for the Purpose, and some large ones two or three. The King has a great Revenue from this Custom, tho' the Money is commonly supposed to be solely appropriated to the Priests for their Expence in the Snake Worship. The Priests oblige young Women, either by Promises or Threats, to pretend that they are affected by the Snake, and for that End to cry as loud as they can in the Street, when no body is nigh, that the Snake had fast hold of them, and bid them go to the Snake-house, and to feign sudden Madness, which obliges their Friends to follow the Snake's Orders. When they come out, the Priests conjure them not to discover the Sham, on Pain of being immediately burnt alive, which they have Power and Cruelty enough to execute upon such as are guilty. Our Author says, that during his Stay at *Fida*, the King caused his Daughter to be seized with a pretended Snake, and confined a while in the Snake-house. He saw her brought back to Court in a very splendid Manner, with all the other Girls that had been her Fellow Prisoners. She was naked, except only a Silk Scarf which passed betwixt her Legs, adorned with the richest Coral. She gave her self many extravagant Airs, while the Musick play'd, and the chief Ladies of the

Country flock'd to her for 3 or 4 Days together with their Presents. The Negroes dare not oppose or discover this Cheat, for fear of losing the Favour of the Court and Clergy, and sometimes their Lives too. The Negroes have such a Reverence for Snakes, that 'tis Capital for any to touch one of them with a Stick; and our Author says, that when the *English* first came hither to trade, some of them having killed a Snake which they found in their House, and thrown it out without any Thoughts of Danger, the Negroes murder'd them all, and burned their House and Goods, which made the *English* refrain coming hither for a long Time, till they were better acquainted with the Negroes Snake Worship. For this Cause the *Europeans* Houses are sadly haunted with Snakes, which the Negroes, when desir'd, gently carry out of Doors. These Snakes however do no Mischief, their Sting is no worse than a Flea-bite, and the Negroes pretend that their Bite secures them from the Sting of poisonous Snakes. There are frequent Battles between the Idol and Venomous Snakes, wherein the latter, who are larger, and arm'd with stronger Weapons than the other, often bite and master them, unless they are help'd by their Worshippers. The Idol Serpents are streak'd with White, Yellow, and Brown, and some are a Fathom long, and as thick as a Man's Arm. They frequently hunt and eat Rats, but are so narrow Throated, that they can scarce get them down into their Bellies. The Negroes can't endure to hear their Idol Snakes ridicul'd or rail'd at; and if one of them happens to be burnt in a Fire, every one that hears it stops his Ears, and gives Money to attone, as they pretend, for their Carelessness; yet they believe that the Snake will soon return again after he is burnt, to revenge himself on those who were the Occasion of his Death. He adds, that in 1697, a Hog being bitten by a Snake, devour'd him in Sight of the Negroes; upon which the Priests obtain'd the King's Proclamation for killing all the Hogs throughout the Country, which was accordingly doing with a great Slaughter, tho' many of the Owners stood up in their Defence, till the King issued his Counter-Orders.

Next our Author comes to their Tree and Sea Worship. He says, their Trees are their Second-Rate Gods, who are only pray'd and sacrific'd to in Time of Sickness, for they think the Recovery of Health is as properly the Work of the Trees as the Snakes. Besides, they also sacrifice at the same Time to several inferior Deities, and sometimes kill and eat Part of a Man, besides many other Extravagancies. When the Sea rages, so that Ships are kept off a long time at Sea, the Negroes throw all Sorts of Goods into it by Way of Sacrifice; but the Priests don't much encourage this Worship, because there's none left for them.

Their Priests and Priestesses are not liable to Capital Punishment for any Crime whatsoever, yet the present King, with the Consent of his Grandees, put one of the Priests to Death for High Treason. Their Priestesses, tho' perhaps but Slaves before, are called God's Children, are as much or more respected than the Priests, and bear such a Sway over their Husbands, that they are obliged to speak to and serve them upon the Knee, for which Reason the most sensible Negroes never marry a Priestess, nor care that their Wives should be promoted to that Dignity; but they dare not oppose it.

Bosman adds, that the Negroes have some Idea of Hell, the Devil, and the Apparition of Spirits. They believe Hell to be a fixed Place under the Earth, where the Wicked are punished with Fire, in which our Author observes, that they were lately confirmed by an old Sorceress who came to them (as she pretended) from Hell, and said, she saw several of her Acquaintance there in Torment. He says, Polygamy is the greatest Obstacle to the Negroes Conversion, and that they vouch no other Authority for their Idolatry, than that their Ancestors did so before them.

27. Great Ardra or Arder Kingdom.

D*apper* says, 'tis 18 Leagues along the Sea, beginning 4 Leagues E. from *Popou*, and ending at *Aqua*.

It has several Villages, govern'd by the King's Fidalgo's or Viceroy's, of which the

chief are, 1. *Little Ardra*. *Dapper* says, that it lies farthest W. takes up 300 Rod of *Rhinland* Measure, and extends almost to a salt River. The Coast from *Popou* to this Place is 12 Leagues, and runs from E. to S. 'Tis very low, with a few Trees scatter'd here and there; but 3 Leagues W. of *Arder* there are 4 Woods, of which the Westernmost is the greatest. *Bosman* says, the Europeans call this *Offra*, and that it lies a little lower, but farther within Land, than *Jakin*. The Dutch had formerly a Lodge here and a Factor, with a considerable Trade; but he was killed, and the Land laid waste by the *Papoeans*, since which it has for most Part laid untill'd; but the Kings of *Great Ardra* and *Fida* strive for the Mastery of it.

2. *Jakkein* or *Jakin*, lies (according to *Dapper*) a good League N. N. E. from *Little Ardra*, and the Dutch call'd it so from the Name of the Commander who was here when they came. The Town is 1500 Rods in Compass, surrounded with a Ditch, water'd by a River, and is the Seat of a Governor. *Bosman* says, 'tis subject to *Great Ardra*, whose King has a Viceroy here, and that it lies but 3 or 4 Miles E. of *Fida*.

3. *Great Ardra*. *Dapper* places it 18 Leag. from the Coast towards the N. N. E. and says, 'tis an open unwall'd Village; but the Houses are so straggling, that 'tis 5 or 6 Leagues round, according to the Negroes. 'Tis the Seat of the King, who has two Palaces here as big as a handsome Village, but only one is inhabited, the other being to retire to in case of Fire or other Accident. Both of them are encompassed with a Wall of Earth 4 or 5 Foot thick, and they contain several Apartments. There's a good Road to *Ardra*, and there are Houses in it where they make Beer of Millet. The Air is very mortal to Europeans; yet the Inhabitants are healthy, strong, and long liv'd, and the Small-pox is the only epidemical Distemper they are subject to. The Country is full of Villages, well situate for Trade, and abounds with Millet, Palm Wine, Plants, and Fruits, which last all the Year round, such as Injames, Potatoes, Oranges, Citrons, Coco-Nuts, &c. It has many fine Plains and Valleys, interspersed with large Rivers and great high Roads. They make much Salt upon the Coast, whi.

whither those of *Curamo* come in their Canoes to fetch that and other Provisions. There are a great many Horses in the Neighbourhood of *Ardra*.

Dapper gives us this Account how they brew their Millet Beer: They soak the Millet in Water till it becomes soft, dry it in the Sun, and then grind it in a Mortar or between two Mill-stones. After 'tis ground, they lay boiling Water on the Meal, more or less, in Proportion to the Strength which they design for their Beer, and let it alone to ferment; but *Dapper* says, this Liquor proves scorbutick, unless mingled with Water.

He tells us, that their Houses have Walls of Earth two or three Foot thick, and are thatch'd; that they have no more Moveables than suffice to dress their Victuals, and to sleep on, with some Arms for their Defence and Hunting. They commonly eat Millet, Rice, and Herbage, with their Bread, and sometimes Fowls, Beef, Pork, and the Flesh of Goats and Dogs. The common People wear three or four Cloths about their Bodies, the first of which reaches to their Knees, the second a little higher, and so the rest in Proportion. They are generally proud in their Habits, which are of fine Linen embroider'd with Gold. Besides this, People of Fashion wear a Cloak of the same; but they go bare-footed as well as the rest. Both Sexes keep themselves very neat, and wash every Night and Morning, especially the Women, who often perfume themselves with Musk and aromatick Herbs. Their Daughters take such extreme Liberty, that they are easily courted, and they make a Match without consulting their Friends. Polygamy and Adultery are as common here as at *Fida*, &c. and the Gentlemen are so extravagantly lewd, that they take Girls of a good Family at 9 or 10 Years of Age, and make them wait at Table naked till they are ripe enough to be their Wives, and then they give them Clothes. All the Presents they make at a Marriage is two or three Sutes, which the Bridegroom gives to the Bride, and 7 or 8 Pots of Beer to their Friends and Relations. The Women are very submissive to their Husbands, but many of them are barren, and few have above two or three Children all their Lives. If a Woman bear Twins,

they count her an Adulteress, for they think it impossible that a Woman should conceive two Children by one Man. Their Funerals are much the same with those on the *Gold Coast*, and Persons of both Sexes are invited to the Interrment.

Dapper observes, that the Negroes of this Country despise their Mother Tongue, and use another called *Ulcumy*. The *Dutch* drive a great Trade into these Parts, especially into *Little Arder*, where they exchange their Merchandizes for Slaves. One of their most vendible Commodities is a Sort of little Shells called *Boesjes*, which are fished up below the *Maldivie* Islands, and brought hither in *India* Vessels from *Goa* and *Cochin*. These Shells are the only Coin which goes here in Trade. A Slave is worth about 100 of them, and sometimes they are so scarce, that they are worth two Franks a Pound Weight, in which Case fine red Corals pass in their room. In all Purchases, one Third of the Payment is made in *Boesjes*, and the other two Thirds in the following Merchandizes, which are imported hither by *Europeans*, viz. White and Red *Java* Damasks, gilt Leather, *Cyprian* Habits, red Cloth with large Fringes, Iron Bars, red Copper Chafing-Dishes, fine Linens, Copper Bracelets, red Coral, Horses with white Tails, Priests Caps; black Hats, shallow crown'd, and broad brimm'd; Cambrick, gilt Looking-Glasses, Brandy, red Cloths embroider'd with Gold and Silver, Seamen's Knives, red and white *Italian* Taffeta's, fine Silk Stuffs with white Stripes, thin Damasks, Velvets embroider'd with Gold and Silk, *India* Damasks with white Flowers, *Indian* Silks, Cotton Habits, and *Acori* or blue Coral. The same Merchandizes serve also *Benin* and *Rio Lagos*. *Dapper* says, that the *Dutch West-India* Company have a Warehouse at *Ba*, one of the Villages on this Coast, with a free Market every 4 Days. The chief Commodity sold here is Salt, which the People come to lade in their Canoes. They have another 6 or 7 Leagues farther, near a great Tree, where the Inhabitants meet from all Parts of the Neighbourhood, and sometimes to the Number of 3 or 4000, with all the Commodities of the Country. When the *Dutch* arrive upon the Coasts, the People come in Troops to welcome them with Musick and Dancing, and the King's Gen-

Gentlemen at their Head, follow'd with a great Number of Porters, to bring them and their Presents to the King. The Deputies accordingly wait upon him, and make their Proposal in *Portuguese*. To obtain a Grant for Trade, they are obliged to present him with a Piece of fine Coral, 6 *Cyprus* Habits, and 3 or 4 Pieces of Table Linen, besides 20 Shells, or else 16 yellow Rings, which must be paid the Dancers and Musicians, and 10 Copper Bracelets for every Basket full of Merchandize, besides the Charge of the Porter. The King causes the Goods to be carefully view'd before any are given out, in order to chuse the best for himself; but the *Dutch* conceal the finest Stuffs, and shew none but ordinary ones to the Officers, who pretend that they are to carry all to the King, but juggle underhand with the Merchants, in order to buy the best Pennyworths themselves. Besides the Presents made to the King, some must also be given to his Son, to the Foello or Captain of the *Europeans*, to the Porters of the Palace, and to several Whores. When the Deputies sent from the Ships have done their Business at Court, they are carried back to the Village of *Stok-vis*, two Miles to the S. E. and lodg'd in a House there, where they may trade for Slaves; but when they would trade for *Acori*, they must pay 40 Bracelets of yellow Copper, 20 Pullets, a Goat, a Piece of Cannequin, and a little Piece of Taffeta for the Cryer. There's a Captain or Intendant of the Skiffs, called *Hongo*, to whom a certain Sum must be paid for every landing of Goods, which in 12 times amounts almost to the Value of a Slave. For this he is obliged always to keep Men upon the Landing-place, to take Care of People and their Goods in case of Shipwreck; for the Tide is so violent, that the Road here is very dangerous. The Merchants must also give at their Departure two Muskets and 25 Pound of Powder, or the Value of 9 Slaves in Silk Stuffs, to the King, besides a Piece of Taffeta and one of Velvet, which must be given to *Carte Foello* and *Hongo*. *Dapper* adds, that a Tin Ring will purchase a Pot of Beer; two Rings, a Tun of fresh Water and a Faggot; three, a Basket of Salt; and four, 5 Pullets.

These Negroes make War like the rest, with a great deal of Cruelty and Disorder; but the People of *Foulaan* disown the King's Authority, and often send Parties, who plunder his frontier Villages. The King of *Arder* makes a noble Figure. He places a Fidalgo or Gentleman in all his Villages, who exacts great Contributions; but as soon as he dies, the King seizes all the Deceased's Goods to himself. Then he sends the Children to work for their Livings in the Salt Mines. As the King treats his Nobles, so they deal with the common People. Neither are the King's Sons excepted out of this Rule, for none but the eldest succeeds to the Throne, and he seizes all his Father's Estate, without giving his Cadets any Appanage, to put them out of any Power of rebelling: And as a farther Mark of his Sovereignty, some of his Slaves and Concubines are strangled two or three Months after his Death.

The Inhabitants of *Arder* have no publick Place of Worship. All Persons of Quality have their Fetichers at home, which they apply to in case of Sickness, with the same Ceremonies as those on the *Gold Coast*. They don't believe a future Life, and say, 'tis impossible that a Body which has rotted in the Earth should rise again; but they think that those who die in Battle don't lie above two Days in their Graves. *Bosman* says, that when the Ships are at *Fida*, the King of *Great Ardra*, through whose Territories most of the Slaves are obliged to come, commonly shuts up all the Passes, so that his Subjects trade underhand with those of *Fida*, notwithstanding their King is such an implacable Enemy to the *Fidese*; yet the Trade does not flourish so well as when the King of *Ardra* leaves the Commerce open. Their Arms are the same with those of *Fida*; but tho' the King is twenty times as powerful as he of *Fida*, yet he has not the Courage to attack him. Our Author relates, that in his Time an Ambassador came to him from the Inland Country with Complaints from many of his Subjects, and to pray him to restrain the Oppression of his Viceroys, or else his Master must be forced to take them into his Protection; but the King of *Great Ardra* ridicul'd the Message, and murder'd the Ambassador: Upon which

his Master raised a great Army, which, when joined by the *Fidasians*, was a Million strong, all brave Horsemen, with whom he invaded and presently conquer'd half the King of *Ardra's* Territories, where he made a terrible Slaughter. Our Author was told, that these People us'd to cut and carry off all the Privities of their slaughter'd Enemies, and that none durst presume to take an Enemy Prisoner that was not furnish'd with 100 of these Trophies; but he does not vouch it for Truth. He observes, that this victorious General was hanged after his Return by the King, because he did not bring the Person of the King of *Great Ardra* with him, whose Life he aimed at more than his Subjects. He adds, that this Nation is very formidable to all the neighbouring Negroes, and that they tell 1000 strange Things of them.

The Inland Countries mentioned in this Division by *Dapper* are,

1. *Equea*, which he bounds on the E. with *Bonoe*, *Cammanah* on the S. *Ningo* on the N. and *Lataby* on the W. and says, that the Inhabitants follow Trade.

2. *Lataby*, which he bounds on the W. with *Equea* and *Cammanah*; on the N. and E. with *Little Acara*, and on the S. with *Ningo*. He says, there's a great Market here, but inferior to that of *Abonoe*.

3. *Acarady*, which he bounds with *Cammanah* on the W. *Quahoe* on the N. *Lataby* and *Ningo* on the S. and is said to abound with Gold as good as that of *Acara*, which the Inhabitants carry to *Abonoe* to sell. The Lands adjacent are not so full of Trees, nor so fertile, as those about *Cor-mantyn*.

4. *Infoco*, which, according to the Report of the *Acanists*, is four or five Days Journey from the Coast. The interjacent Country is unknown, and very much infested with Robbers. The People make very fine Habits, which they exchange for those brought to them from *Europeans*, or sell for Silver, for they know neither Gold nor Copper.

28. The Coast of Rio Lagos and Curamo, and the Kingdom of Ulcami or Ulcuma.

Dapper places the Mouth of *Rio Lagos* 24 Leag. E. of *Little Ardra*, and says, there's a Sand-Bank before it, which almost entirely shuts it up, only on the E. Side it may be enter'd with a Sloop, but not without great Danger. At the first Village on the E. Side of the River, there's a little Brook which comes from the W. and waters several Villages in its Course; but *Rio Lagos* goes up N. or N. E. as far as an Eminence which looks toward the E. and as far as the Village of *Curamo*, which lies on the S. Side of that River. The *Dutch*, he adds, come hither to buy Cotton Habits for the *Gold Coast*. *Luyts* says, that the Lake of *Curamo*, marked by *Moll*, is 50 Leagues in Compass. *Dapper* says, *Ulcami* is a powerful Inland Country, between *Arder* and *Benin* to the N. E. It sends a great many Slaves to *Little Ardra*, where they are sold to the *Europeans*. They circumcise their Male Children like the *Mahometans*, and when their Girls are 10 or 11 Years old, they lay a little Stick with Ants about it to the Privy Parts, and change them ever now and then for fresh ones, instead of Circumcision.

29. Benin Proper or East Benin.

IT begins at the River *Benin*, which *Moll* calls *Formosa*, from whence he makes it 345 Miles in a direct Line to the River of *Camarones*, and the *Sansons* above 390. *Heylin* reports, that the King of this Country keeps 600 Wives, with whom he goes out twice a Year in Pomp; that the Quality have most of them 80 Wives, and the poorest 10 or 12; that the People cut three Lines in their Skin down to their Navel, esteeming it necessary to Salvation; and that both Sexes go naked till they are married, and then cloath themselves from the Waist to the Knees. The *Sansons* say, this Coun-

Country is more healthful than *Guinea Proper*, so that the People live 100 Years and upwards; that here are the same Fruits and Animals as in *Guinea Proper*, but the People are civiller to Strangers; and that the King is powerful, and very affectionate to his Subjects.

Dapper bounds it on the N. W. with *Ulcami*, *Jaboe*, *Ifago*, and *Oedobo*; *Gaboe* on the N. which is 8 Days Journey from the City of *Great Benin*; *Istanna*, *Forcado*, and *Ouwerra*, on the E. and the Sea on the S. He says, the Northern Boundaries of this Kingdom are unknown, because of great Woods on that Frontier, which are impassable; but 'tis certain, that 'tis 150 Leagues in Length from E. to W. There are also a great many Towns and Villages, whose Names are unknown between *Benin* and the Kingdom of *Ulcami*, and along the River of that Name.

He says, the Soil is low, cover'd with Woods, and interspersed with some Rivers and Lakes; but there's Want of Water in many Places, especially in the Road from *Gotton* to *Great Benin*. The King has Men in Pay to furnish Travellers with Water, who keep great Pots full of that which is fresh and clear at convenient Distances, with a Shell to drink out of; but no Person must take a Drop without paying for it; and if the Waterman is absent, they leave their Money, and pursue their Journey.

Their chief R. is *Benin* or *Formosa* R. which the Natives call *Arbo*. *Dapper* places its Mouth 25 Leagues E. of *Rio Lagos*, and says, 'tis so broad, that tho' there's a Sand-Bank before it, yet Yachts and Sloops may easily enter it; but the Channel is very narrow and crooked betwixt *Arbon* and *Gotton*. When 'tis high Water, 'tis not above 10 Foot deep at the Mouth; but it sends forth several Rivulets, which water the Country, and one amongst the rest which runs into *Rio Lago*. These Rivers abound with Crocodiles, Sea-Horses, and several Sorts of excellent Fish, particularly one which is very small, and makes ones Arm shake if they touch it. *David van Nyendael*, in a Letter dated in September 1702, and bound up with *Bosman* and *Snoek's* Letters, says, this River and the neighbouring Cape of *Formosa* lie about 50 Miles E. of *Ardra*, and shews it self very plainly if enter'd on

the W. Side, for from *Ardra* the Land is even and woody. The W. Point is much higher, and looks like a Rock, with the Top cut off; but the E. Point is low Land, and the Mouth is about a Mile wide, till you sail farther up, where 'tis wider in some Places, and narrower in others. It runs into innumerable Branches, some of which are wide enough to be called Rivers, and the Banks of each are inhabited by a particular Nation, govern'd by their own King, but all Vassals to the King of *Benin*. 'Tis very difficult to sail up this River without a Pilot. Our Author does not tell us its Length and Source, but he says 'tis very much infested by poor Robbers who live just at its Mouth, are called the Pyrates of *Usa*, and sail into all Parts of the River, seizing what Men, Cattle, and Goods, they can come at, which they sell to the first Comers for Victuals. The *Portuguese* inform'd him, that here was a Land-Road to *Calbary*, and a better by Water, and that it was easy to get with a Canoe into the Rivers *Lagos*, *El Rey*, *Camarones*, &c. The Country for several Miles above the Mouth of this River is every where low and morassy, adorned with great Numbers of high and low Trees, and divided into a great many Islands, besides several floating Isles cover'd with Reeds, and toss'd from one Place to another by the Winds. He adds, that the River is very pleasant, but unwholesome, as well as most of the Rivers on the Coast, which he ascribes to the noxious Exhalations that continually hover about them, especially in low Grounds and Morasses.

Dapper says, the Country abounds with Wild and Tame Beasts, especially Elephants, Tygers, Leopards, Stags, Wild-Boars, Apes, Civets, Wild-Cats, Horses, Asses, Hares, Goats, Sheep which have Hair instead of Wool, all Sorts of Reptiles, Snails, Toads, Serpents, &c. several Sorts of Birds, such as Parrots, Pigeons, Turtles, Partridges, Storks, Ostriches, and the like. Plants also thrive here very well. The Road from *Gotton* to *Benin* is lin'd on both Sides with Orange and Lemon Trees. They have Pepper, but not so much as in the *Indies*, and the Grain is less. They have Cotton Trees which bear well, and the People make Habits of the Cotton. *Dapper* observes, that some Years

ago the *Dutch* carried the Grain of this Plant to *Mouree* on the *Gold Coast*, where they sow'd it in *March*, and by *November* those Seeds grew to great Trees, which had ripe Fruits.

He says, the People have good Laws and a regular Government; that they are more addicted to Luxury than to Robbery and Drunkenness; and that the Men are better shap'd than the Women. They dress like the Inhabitants of *Ardra*, only the common People wear but one of those great Wrappers. The Women have a Petticoat as low as the Calves of their Legs, curl their Hair like a Garland, dye half of it black, and the other half red, and wear Copper Rings on their Arms. No Courtier dare cloath himself, or let his Hair grow, till the King has presented him with a Suit of Apparel; but sometimes the King gives the young Men a Wife in the room of Apparel, and then 'tis the same thing. Neither may the Women wear a Gown till their Husbands give them one, so that some of both Sexes, from 20 to 25 Years of Age, run naked about the Streets. The Men may marry as many Wives and keep as many Concubines as they please; but 'tis Death for the Negro Women to lie with the Whites. If a Woman has a Son, and her Husband die, she becomes a Slave to her Child, and cannot marry again without his Consent; and if a Man has a Mind to the Widow, he must apply to the Son, and give him a young Wench in her Place; but they have commonly so much Respect for their Mothers, that they charge the Bridegrooms never to sell them without the King's Leave. When the Girls come to 13 or 14 Years of Age, they reckon themselves their own Mistresses. When a Man dies, all his Wives and Concubines are at the King's Disposal; but such as he has not yet enjoy'd are divided between the Male Children, who either keep or marry them to others. The King picks out the prettiest of his Wives for Regetaires, *i. e.* Whores, who are obliged to let him have a Share of their Gain. If one of them bring forth a Son, she is freed from Tribute; if a Daughter, the King takes her into his Protection, and lodges her at a proper Time and Place. Those Regetaires form a kind of separate Republick, and have their Officers and Colletresses, who

have immediate Resort to the Great Fiadors or Counsellors of State. The Women reckon it a Disgrace to have two Children at a Birth. They kill many Slaves after the Death of Persons of Quality. They interr the Dead in their Clothes, and make merry with Musick and Dancing for a Week after. Sometimes they open the Sepulchre, to make new Offerings of Men and Beasts. When a Woman dies, her Kindred carry all her Moveables into the Street, where they celebrate the Praises of the Deceased with Vocal and Instrumental Musick. The Husband remains Master of all, and the Children have nothing but what their Mother gave them in her Life-time. On the other hand, the Women fall into the King's Power by the Death of their Husbands; but sometimes he gives to the eldest of the Family the Goods and Slaves of the Father, and such of his Wives as he has not enjoyed.

As to their Trade, *Dapper* says, no Person may negotiate or buy any thing whatsoever of *Europeans* but the Fiadors and Merchants, whom the King nominates for that End. 'Tis dangerous for a Soldier to enter into the Christians Warehouses. As soon as a Ship arrives upon the Coast, Notice is given to the King, who sends two or three Fiadors and 20 or 30 Merchants to traffick with the *Europeans*. Accordingly they repair with Diligence to *Gotton*, where the *Dutch* have a Warehouse, taking as many Canoes and Rowers by the Way as they want; and if the Owners complain, they demand of them, Whether they are not the King's Subjects, and willing to employ their Substance to his Service? When they come to *Gotton*, they mark out the finest and most commodious Houses, and carry their Goods thither, without asking the Owners Leave, insomuch that the People are often obliged to quit their Lodgings for them; and on the Day of their Arrival they dress Viſtuals for them, without making any Demand for their Trouble. The first Interview between the Fiadors and the *Dutch* is only a Viſit of Compliments, to which the former come in stately Habits, with Necklaces of Jasper or fine Coral, to welcome the *Dutch* in the King's Name, to ask them what News from *Europe* and from their State, and to offer them some Fruits for

for a Present; all which the *Dutch* answer with the like Compliments, and only take Time to make them drink. The next Day the *Fiadors* return to see their Goods. If they are such Goods as they are us'd to, they take them at the same Price they formerly bought them for; but if they are new, they sometimes spend whole Months in bargaining. The Merchandize imported hither by the *Dutch* are, Cloths of Gold and Silver, Red and Scarlet Cloths, Drinking Cups which have red Streaks at one End, all Sorts of fine Cotton and Linen, Oranges, Lemons, and other green Fruits preserv'd, red Velvet, Bracelets of yellow Copper weighing 5 Ounces and a half, Lavender, Ferret Riband of a Violet Colour, thick Flannel, fine Corals, *Haerlem* Stuffs well gumm'd and flower'd, Ear-Pendants of red Glass, gilt Looking-Glasses, Iron Bars, Chrystal Stones, and Boesjes or *India* Shells for Money. The Goods which the *Dutch* receiv'd in Exchange are strip'd Cotton Habits, which are sold on the *Gold Coast*, and blue ones which they carry to the Rivers of *Gaben* and *Angola*; Jasper Stones, Female Slaves, (for they won't sell Men) Leopards Skins, Pepper, and *Acori*, a Sort of blue Coral which grows in the Water upon a stony Bottom in Form of a Tree. The Habits made at *Benin* are of Cotton-Yarn, 4 threads, two Ells and a half or three quarters long, and two short Ells wide; but there are lesser ones which are only three threads. Every 4 Days there's a Market at *Gotton*, whither they bring Victuals and Clothes from *Arbon*, *Benin*, and *Coffo*, a Day's Journey E. beyond *Benin*. There are several great Plains betwixt the latter and *Gotton*, where there's a Market, to which all the Country round repair to buy Necessaries. All Differences are decided by the Nobles of the Country. *David van Nyendael* says, that tho' the Inhabitants are so good natur'd that they'll make a double Return for any Presents they receive, yet they are not to be forced to good Manners. They are very expert in Business, and will part with none of their old Customs; but they are very tedious in Dealing, which yet they manage with so many ceremonious Civilities, that 'tis impossible to be angry with them. The *Dutch* are forced at their Arrival to trust them with Goods, to make Panes or Cloths

of, and often stay so long for the Payment, that the Advancement of the Season, the Consumption of their Provisions, and the Mortality of their Men, obliges them to go away without it; but they are honestly paid the next Time they come. Their Factors understand a little *Portuguese*. Europeans at their Arrival are obliged to pay a few Customs to them and the Governors; but they are so inconsiderable, that our Author does not think them worth Mention. He adds, that the Natives are forced to pretend a great deal of Civility to their Neighbours, and are very reserved, lest they should represent one another as great Traders to the Governors, who upon such a Discovery would certainly accuse them of some Crime or other, in order to seize their Effects; so that those who have no Share in the Government, always plead Poverty.

Dapper says, their Arms are a Pike and Buckler, a Bow, and poison'd Arrows. Such Gentlemen as go Volunteers into the Field to make a Figure, wear a fine Scarlet Habit, a Collar of the Teeth of Elephants and Leopards, a red furr'd Turban edg'd with the Skin of a Leopard or Civer, with a Horse's Tail hanging at the End on't. The Soldiers go naked from the Waist upwards, but below they wear a Vest as fine as Silk. The General is called *Ouwe Asserri*. He commands without Controul, and takes all the Plunder to himself, except what the Soldiers can get by Stealth; yet they are very courageous and generous, never quit their Posts, tho' they see Death before their Eyes, and after a Battle go to thank their Prince for the Honour he did them to employ them in his Service, and bring back the rest of the Arrows to the King's Arsenal, where their Feticheers or Priests poison new ones in the room of those that are lost.

He says, that the K. of *Benin* is so potent, that he can raise 20000 Men in one Day, and 80 or 100000 in a very little Time. The Kings of *Istanna*, *Forcado*, *Jaboe*, *Ifago*, and *Oedobo*, are his Vassals, and all his Subjects his Slaves, and they wear the Badge of it in an Incision, which the King causes to be made in their Infant Bodies when their Parents present them to him. The three Great *Fiadors* are the three prime Ministers of State next to the General, who govern

each a Quarter of the Town of *Benin*. The other Towns have also their *Fiadors*, as *Gotton*, which has 5, and *Arbon* 7, who judge of Civil Causes; but Criminal Matters are referred to the Great *Fiadors* of the Capital, who are often brib'd to Injustice. The King sometimes keeps above 1000 Wives. When he dies, those whom he has enjoy'd are shut up in a *Seraglio*, where they have each a separate Apartment, and are guarded by Eunuchs, and the rest fall to his Successor. He goes round his Palace once a Year in Publick on Horseback in his Royal Robes, with 3 or 400 Gentlemen, Horse and Foot, and a Company of Musicians, some before, and others behind: They lead some tame Leopards in Chains, with a great many Dwarfs and Fools to divert the King; and after the Procession is over, they strangle or cut off the Heads of 10, 12, or 15 Slaves, who they believe will rise again in another Country, and better their Condition; and that when they go there themselves, every one will find out his Slaves again. There's a certain Day whereon they shew to all Comers the King's Treasury, which consist in Jaspers, Coral, and other Rarities, and the King bestows Offices and Rewards, which commonly consist of Slaves and Women. The Prince in *Dapper's* Time had such a profound Veneration for his Mother, that he would do nothing without her Advice; and there being a certain Law which prohibited her to be seen by Men, she liv'd then at a fine House without the Town, where she was served by a great Number of Women and Girls. When the K. dies, they dig a Vault for him in his Palace so deep, that sometimes the Workmen fall into the Water, and are drown'd. When the Corps is ready to be interred, all his Favourites and Servitors come to offer the Deceased their Service and Company in the other World. They dispute a long Time who shall have this Privilege, and those whom the Deceased lov'd best carry it from the rest. When they are descended into the Tomb, they roll a Stone over it, and cause it to be watched Day and Night. The next Day they open the Sepulchre, and ask those within it, What they are doing? and, Whether any of them are gone yet to attend the King? To which they generally

answer, No. The 3d Day they ask the same Question, and often receive for Answer, That such and such a one are gone before, whom they reckon very happy. In 4 or 5 Days Time, when no Voice is heard, and 'tis supposed the poor Wretches are all dead, Word is sent to the Presumptive Heir of the Crown, who causes a great Fire to be forthwith made over the Tomb, where he causes Flesh to be roasted and given to the People, which is the Ceremony of his Installation. They interr also with the deceased King great Part of his Clothes, Moveables, and *Indian* Shells: But some Authors say, they throw dead Carcasses without Heads into the Tomb instead of live Persons; and that as soon as 'tis cover'd, they kill a great many Persons in the Streets and Houses, whose Heads they cut off, and cover with a Piece of Cloth, which none are to take off.

The new King institutes Annual Feasts to the Honour of his Predecessor, which are celebrated by the Sacrifices of several Hecatombs, and 4 or 500 Men. They kill 23 in a Day, who are for most Part Criminals, and kept for this Solemnity. When the Time of the Sacrifices draws nigh, and there is not a sufficient Number of these Victims, the King causes all that walk the Streets at Night without a Flambeau to be carried to Prison, after which they are sure to be put to Death, unless they be rich enough to give a good Bribe. A great *Fiador* cannot save his Slave, without finding another in his room. When the Feticheers have a Mind to sacrifice to the Devil, they beg one of these condemn'd Persons of the Court. After this, *Dapper* comes to speak of their Right of Succession to the Crown.

If the King has no Children, the Crown falls to his Brothers; but there are seldom any wanting where there are so many Wives. When the Prince finds himself near his last Hour, he sends for one of his Gentlemen, who has the Title of *Onegwa*, and tells him in Secret his last Will, and which of his Children he has chose for his Successor. For some Time after the King's Death, this Gentleman remains Regent of the Kingdom, and all the Presumptive Heirs come to make their Court to him for the Crown till the Time of Nomination is come, when he calls the General, and tells him which of

the Sons the King has appointed his Successor. The General, after having caused the Regent to repeat and confirm his Declaration 4 or 5 times, goes away without Reply; whereupon the Regent sends for the Successor, and bids him go and offer the General great Presents if he will consent to his Election. Some Days after the General returns to Court, and after having demanded of the Gentleman two or three times more, whether his Nomination is truly that of the Deceased, he makes the Heir kneel, and proclaims him King; after which the latter rises, and thanks them. Then he is apparell'd with the Royal Ornaments, and goes to the Throne, where all the Officers of the Army come to pay him their Respects on their Knees. When the Ceremony is over, the King goes to keep his Court in another Village nam'd *Osoboe*, because at first he may not act, tho' he has the Liberty to go to *Benin* to assist at the Sacrifice of Men and Beasts offer'd on his Father's Sepulchre, where he is sprinkled with the Blood of the Victims. But when the King has proved by his Conduct that he is worthy to fill the Throne of his Ancestors, the General goes to fetch and conduct him into *Benin*; after which he begins to act as Sovereign.

Dapper concludes with their Religion. He says, the Negroes own a God, that created and governs Heaven and Earth, but think it needless to serve him, because he is good natur'd; whereas they think it their Duty to pray and sacrifice to the Devil, for fear he should hurt them. They call God *Ori-fa*. They have their Fetis or Idols of Wood, green Herbs, &c. and keep Priests, who pretend to be Magicians, and the People apply to 'em for Advice in their Doubts. They make a great Sacrifice every Year to the Sea, and their greatest Oath is by the Ocean and their King. They have several Festivals, which they celebrate with Sports, Dances, Sacrifices, and good Cheer, but barbarously defile 'em with humane Victims. To this we thought fit to subjoin *David van Nyendael's* General Account of *Benin*, writ in 1702, because the Reader may see how he differs from *Dapper*.

He says, the Country is very woody, infested with Swarms of Gnats, and very mortal to *Europeans*; yet the Face of it is

even, the Ground rising without Hills, and adorned with a Multitude of Trees, which stand as regular as if planted so by Order. All the several Nations here are Vassals to the King of *Benin*, except those of *Awerri*, where the *Portuguese* live, and the Pyrates of *Ufa*. Tho' they are all Freemen, yet the King treats them as his Slaves, and they are proud of the Title. This Country is not so populous as *Ardra*, the Towns stand so far asunder. There are three States here besides the King, who governs absolutely:

1. Three great Lords, who are always near the King's Person, whom they acquaint with all Messages, and return Answers. They act as they think fit in the King's Name, so that the whole Government depends solely on them, the rather because but very few Persons are admitted into the King's Presence.
2. *Are de Roe*, or Street Kings, of which some preside over the Commonalty, and others over the Slaves, some over Military Affairs, others over Husbandry, and the like. Out of these the King chuses his Viceroys; but they are all responsible to the three great Men, by whose Recommendation they obtain these Posts. The King dignifies them with a String of Coral like a Garter of Knighthood, which they must wear continually about their Necks, on Pain of Death; and our Author knew 5 Men that were put to Death for neglecting to wear a Chain of Coral not worth 2*d*. The King has these Corals in his own Custody, and 'tis Death to counterfeit them, or keep any without his Grant. They are made of a pale red Sort of Earth or Stone, well glaz'd, and like speckled red Marble.
3. The *Fiadors* above mentioned, under which Rank are reckon'd the Merchants, Intercessors, and Elders, which have all a Grant to wear the Coral. Few of the Commonalty are industrious, except the Poor, but follow Commerce, tho' they have never so little Stock, and lay all their Work upon their Wives and Slaves. They have few Mechanicks besides Weavers, Smiths, Carpenters, or Leatherdressers; but all their Workmanship is very clumsy. The Rich eat and drink of the best, which is commonly Beef, Mutton, or Chickens, and Jammes for their Bread, which, after they have boil'd, they beat very fine, and then make Cakes on't. They

fre-

frequently treat one another, and relieve the Poor. The meaner Sort content themselves with smoak'd or dry'd Fish, Jammes, Bananas, and Beans, and drink Water and sorry Pardon Wine; but the better Sort drink Water and Brandy when they can get it. The King, Lords, and every rich Governor, maintain several Poor at their Place of Residence, and employ those that can work, so that here are no Beggars, and very few that are extraordinary poor. They are very liberal, especially to *Europeans*, and sometimes give beyond their Ability.

The Habit of the Negroes here is neat, ornamental, and much finer than that of the Negroes on the *Gold Coast*. The Rich, when they are abroad, wear first a white Callico or Cotton Cloth about a Yard long, and half so broad, which serves them as Drawers, and over that a finer white Cotton Dress, commonly 16 or 20 Yards long, which they plait in the Middle, and cast over it a Scarf of a Yard long, two Spans broad, and fringed or laced at the End like the Female Negroes on the *Gold Coast*. The upper Part of their Body is for most Part naked. But when they are at home, they only wear a coarse Paan instead of Drawers, cover'd with a great painted Cloth worn here, which they wear like a Cloak. The meaner Sort wear a coarser Stuff, and only differ from the Rich in the Meanness of their Garb. The great Ladies wear Callico Paans woven in this Country, which are finely chequer'd with several Colours. These Paans or Clothes are not very long, and buckled together like those wore at *Fida*, only the latter are open before, and these behind or on one Side. They cover the upper Part of their Bodies with a beautiful Cloth of a Yard long, instead of a Veil, like that which the Women wear on the *Gold Coast*. They have Coral Necklaces very agreeably plaited, Copper or Iron Rings about their Arms, and some about their Legs, and their Fingers are full of Copper Rings. Almost all the Children go naked, the Boys till they are 10 or 12 Years old, and the Girls till they are 14 or 15, except some Strings of Coral about their Middles. The Men don't curl their Hair, and only buckle it in two or three Places, in order to hang a great Coral to it; but the Women's Hair is artificially buckled, and divided on the

Crown like a Cock's Comb inverted, by which Means the small Curls are placed in exact Order. Some divide their Hair into 20 or more Plaits and Curls, according to its Quantity, and anoint it with the Oil which they roast out of the Kernels of Nuts, which in Process of Time turns their black Hair into a Green or Yellow, of which they are very fond. They marry as many Women as they can keep, but have few Ceremonies, only the Rich treat the Bride's Friends more splendidly than the Poor. If a Man likes a Virgin, he sends one of his chief Relations to her House to ask her Friends Consent, which is seldom deny'd, unless she is promis'd before. Then the Bridegroom cloaths her with a rich Suit of Apparel, Necklaces, and Bracelets, treats the Relations on both Sides, and so the Wedding is ended. Our Author observes, that the Treat is not made either at the Bride or Bridegroom's House, but sent ready dress'd to both their Houses. They are very jealous of their own Countrymen, but not at all of *Europeans*, to whom sometimes, when Business calls them away, they recommend their Wives for Diversion; but no Male Negro is allow'd to come near the Women's Apartment. The Wives of the meaner Sort go wherever their Business calls them, and the others are always kept out of the common Road of Transgression. When a Man receives a Visit, the Wives immediately withdraw; but if the Visitants are *Europeans*, their Husbands permit them to stay. Adultery is seldom practis'd here, because 'tis severely punished. If any of the Commonalty suspect his Wife's Chastity, he tries to catch her in the Fact, for otherwise he cannot punish her; and if he succeeds, he has a good Title to all the Adulterer's Effects and Money, and then cudgels his Wife and turns her off: But the Wives of the Rich generally reconcile the offended Husband with a good Sum of Money, to divert the Scandal of their Families. If the Governors catch their Wives in Adultery, they kill both them and their Gallants on the Spot, and throw their Bodies upon a Dunghil. The Negroes are very libidinous, which they ascribe to their Pardon Wine and good Eating. They are not inclin'd to obscene Discourse, but reckon him a Wit that hints at the Subject by

by diverting Fables or Similitudes. A Woman is not allow'd the Caresses of Matrimony during her Pregnancy, and if she is deliver'd of a Male Infant, 'tis presented to the King, from whence all the Males of the Land are called the King's Slaves; but the Females live with the Father till of Age, and then he marries them at his Discretion. Eight or 14 Days, or sometimes longer, after the Birth, the Children of either Sex are circumcised, and marked with small Incisions all over their Bodies. When they are a Week old, the Parents think them past all Danger, make a small Feast, and strew the Ways with dress'd Victuals, to prevent the Evil Spirits, as they think, from doing them any Mischief. If a Woman bear two Children at once, they immediately tell it to the King, who causes publick Rejoycings, with all Sorts of Musick; and the Father gets a wet Nurse to suckle one of the Children. Our Author observes, contrary to *Dapper*, that Twin Births are esteem'd good Omens in all Parts of *Benin*, except at *Arebo*, where they kill and sacrifice both Mother and Infants to a Devil, which they think harbours in a neighbouring Wood. Indeed sometimes the Man buys off his Wife, by sacrificing a Female Slave in her room; but there's no Redemption for the Children. He gives some Instances of this Barbarity, and says, it has forced many Men, when their Wives Delivery is near, to send them to another Country. They reckon the aforesaid Wood so sacred, that they never permit a foreign Negro or his Wives to enter it; and if a Person accidentally happen upon a Path which leads to it, he must go to the End of it before he returns. They think that if this Law and the Sacrifices were violated, the Land would be visited with a fore Plague: Yet our Author, to ridicule their Faith, went a shooting into this Wood, and designedly turn'd before he had gone half to the End of the Path; but the Priests pretended their God, or rather Devil, did not trouble his Head with the Whites; but if a Negro should presume so far, the Danger would soon appear. The Women are generally prolifick, and the Men vigorous, so that they multiply apace. They reckon menstruous Women very unclean, and won't permit them to enter their Husbands

Houses, or touch any thing about them, but confine them to a separate House till they are clean and wash'd. They derive this Custom and Circumcision from no other Authority than Tradition. The People here are not so fearful of Death as some of their Neighbours, and ascribe the Length or Brevity of their Lives to their Gods, yet they do all they can to keep off Death; for when they fall sick, they apply first to the Priest, who acts the Doctor here in both Capacities. He tries green Herbs, and if they fail, sacrifices. If the Patient recovers, he is cry'd up to the Skies; but otherwise, he is turn'd off, and another call'd in his room; but as soon as ever the Patient recovers, they are discharged without any Respect; so that if the Priests here have no other Dependance, our Author observes they must be very poor, because every one almost offers his own Sacrifices, and performs the other Service to his Idols himself. When a Person dies, the Corps is washed; and if a Native of *Benin* dies afar off, the Body is dry'd over a gentle Fire, put into a Coffin whose Planks are nicely glued, and brought home with all convenient Speed for Interrment; but sometimes a proper Conveyance does not offer in several Years. The nearest Relations, Wives and Slaves, go into Mourning. Some shave their Hair, others their Beards, or half their Heads, &c. and the publick Mourning commonly lasts a Fortnight. Their Cries are set to the Tunes of Musick, but there are intermediate Stops to drink in; and when the Funeral is over, every one retires home; but the nearest Relations continue their Mourning for several Months. The eldest Son is sole Heir to a Person of Quality, but he must present a Slave by Way of Herriot to the King, and another to the three great Lords, with a Petition to succeed his Father in the same Quality, which is accordingly granted. He gives his Brothers no more than he pleases, but he maintains his Mother according to her Condition, and allows her besides to keep whatever she has of his Father's. He takes home the rest of the Widows, (if he likes them) especially those which have not had any Children, for his own Use. The rest he also entertains with their Children, and sets them to work, but has no Matrimonial Society with them.

Our Author says, here are as many of this last Sort as of Prostitutes in other Countries. If the Deceased leaves no Children, the Brothers or the next of Kin inherit; but if they fail, the King becomes Heir himself.

He says, the King is only a nominal Sovereign, but the three great Lords real ones, without whose Consent the Governors of every Province dare not act. If a Negro be convicted of Thievery, which is very rare here, he is obliged to Restitution, and fined; and if he is poor, after Restitution, he is beaten; but if the Robbery be done upon any of the Government, 'tis Death. Murder is more rare than Thievery. Whoever kills a Man, is punished with Death; but if a Prince of the Blood or other Person of Quality be the Murderer, he is sent under a strong Guard to the utmost Borders of the King's Territories: Yet since none of these banish'd Persons ever return, the Negroes take it for granted that their Guard conduct them to the *Elysian* Fields. If it be Chance-Medley, (as we call it) the Offender may come off by giving the Deceased a handsome Funeral, and finding a Slave to suffer in his room. He is obliged to kneel, and touch the Slave on his Forehead as he is killed, and then he must pay a large Sum to the great Lords; after which he obtains his Freedom. All other Crimes are subject to Fines, proportion'd to the Offence, which in case of Poverty must be satisfied by Corporal Punishment. If Accusations are not clear, the Accused must purge himself by Trial, which is practis'd five several Ways, four of which take Place in slight Offences and Civil Causes, and the 5th in Treason or other high Crimes; but 'tis only allowed to Persons of Quality, and that by the King's special Order. Our Author describes them as follows: 1. The Accused are carried to the Priest, who greases a Cock's Quill, with which he pierces the Tongue of the Accused. If it pass easily through, 'tis a Sign of Innocence, and the Wound they pretend will soon close up without Pain; but if he be guilty, the Quill sticks in his Tongue. 2. The Priest sticks 7 or 9 Cocks Quills in an oblong Clot of Earth, which the Party suspected must draw out successively. If they come out easily, 'tis a Sign of Innocence; but other-

wise, of Guilt. 3. The Juice of certain green Herbs is spurted into the Eyes of the accused Person, who is thought innocent if it does not hurt him; but if guilty, it makes his Eyes red. 4. The Priest strokes the Prisoner's Tongue three times with a red hot Copper Arm Ring, and pronounces Judgment according as he cries out, more or less.

These four our Author saw, but the next he has only by Hearsay, as follows: If a Person is accused of a very great Crime, he petitions the King for Leave to be brought to a certain River, which they pretend bears up the Innocent tho' he cannot swim, and drowns the Guilty, be he never so good a Swimmer. They add, that the Water grows very turbulent as soon as a guilty Person is thrown into it, till he is got to the Bottom; but our Author ridicules this Proof, and says, it does not happen in 20 Years. All Fines on Robbery he says are divided betwixt the Person robbed, the Governor, and the three great Lords before mention'd: But if the latter think they han't enough, they frequently send them back to the Governors, and inform them, in the King's Name, that they are too small, and ought to be so much more. Accordingly the Governors, tho' they know the King has no Hand in the Matter, are obliged to obey, and generally send double the Sum required, for fear of the Displeasure of the Lords.

He comes next to their Musick, which he says is great and small Drums, like those on the *Gold Coast*; and cover'd with Leather or Skins, besides Iron Bells and Callabasses, hung round with *Boesjes*, which serve them instead of Castagnets. They have another Instrument which they call a Harp, strung with 6 or 7 extended Reeds, upon which they play very artfully, sing finely, and dance very justly to the Tune. They play at no other Games but with Beans, and that never for Money, but Diversion.

As to their Religion, he says 'tis very absurd and perplex'd. They profess to worship both Gods and Devils in humane and brutal Images, of which some are Elephants Teeth, Claws, dead Men's Heads, Skeletons, &c. They sacrifice to every extraordinary Phenomenon in Nature as a God, and every Man is his own Priest; yet some have

have a tolerable Notion of the Deity, to whom they ascribe Omnipresence, Omnipotence, Omniscience, and Invisibilty, and believe he governs all Things by his Providence. They make no Images of him, because they say 'tis impossible to represent what is invisible, and believe their Idols to be the Images of his subordinate Deities, and Mediators betwixt him and Men. They call all that is ill by the Name of the Devil, and worship him for fear he should hurt them; yet they don't represent him by any particular Image, but worship one and the same Idol, whether they intend God or the Devil. They say the Ghosts of their deceased Friends appear to them in their Sleep, and warn them to make such or such an Offering, which, if they are able, they do as soon as they rise, and otherwise borrow of their Neighbours, for fear some heavy Affliction should follow upon the Neglect on't. They'll grant, when told on't, that these are only idle Dreams, but plead that the Custom of their Ancestors obliges them to observe it. Their daily Offerings consist only of a few boil'd Jammes mix'd with Oil, or a Cock, when the Idol has only the Blood, and themselves the Flesh. Once a Year the great Men make stately and expensive Sacrifices, wherein they slaughter Multitudes of great and small Cattle, with which they feast their Friends for several Days successively, and also make them Presents. They think the Sea the Place of Bliss or Torment in the future Life. They call the Shadow of a Man *Passadoor* or Conductor, which they believe shall testify how he has liv'd; and that if well, he is rais'd to great Dignity; and if ill, he shall perish with Hunger. Every Corner of their Houses is fill'd with their Idols, as are also several small Huts about them, whither they sometimes go to sacrifice. They have as many different Festivals as the Papists, the chief of which is called the Coral Feast in *May*, when the King is present, that being the only Time of the Year when he appears in Publick. Our Author, who saw this, says, the King sat in his Royal Robes under a fine Canopy, with his Wives and chief Officers in their richest Dresses all round him; after which the Procession began, and then the King remov'd into the open

Air to sacrifice to the Gods, with the loud Acclamations of the People; after which he made room for them to perform the same Devotions, and then return'd home, where the rest of the Day was spent in Feasting on all Sorts of Provisions and Pardon Wine, of which the common People had their Share. Our Author says, he could not learn the Meaning of this Feast, because the Negroes, when ask'd, pretended Ignorance. Every 5th Day is their Sabbath, upon which the Grandees sacrifice Cows, Sheep, and Goats, and the Commonalty Dogs, Cats, Chickens, and the like; of all which, large Portions are distributed to the Poor, to oblige them to celebrate the Sabbath. Once a Year they commemorate the Death of their Relations. They divide Time into Years, Months, Weeks, and Days, to each of which they give a particular Name, and reckon 14 Months to the Year.

Tho' they are continually invaded by the Pyrates or Robbers, and their Neighbours, who are not subject to the King of *Benin*, yet they are so undisciplin'd in War, that when they are called out into the Field, they are ashamed of their Conduct. They have no Officers, and are so cowardly, that nothing but Extremity can oblige them to take Arms for their Defence, than which they often chuse rather to suffer the greatest Losses. When their Flight is prevented, they return upon the Enemy, but are soon forced to run away or surrender. Their Weapons are Cutlasses or Hangers, small Ponyards, Assaguays, Bows, and poison'd Arrows. They have light Shields made of small Bamboes, which are not able to ward off a Blow. He comes next to the Product of *Benin*.

He says, they have Horses, Cows, Sheep, Dogs, Cats, Poultry, &c. good and cheap. Their Cattle, tho' small, are very good, yet the Negroes prefer Dogs and Cats Flesh. They have abundance of Elephants, with some Lions, Tigers, Jackals, large Baboons, which will attack a Body of Men; all Sorts of Apes; so many edible wild Beasts, that a good Marksman may subsist himself on the Sport, besides several Sorts of Harts, wild Hogs, and other Quadrupedes. Amongst their chief Fowls are green and blue Pheas-

sants and Partridges, Turtle and Ring Doves, Ducks, Crooked Bills, Snipes, divers Water Hens, and Crown Birds; but the Negroes seldom take any, unless in a Net, for they don't care to use Fire-Arms; yet sometimes they kill Harts and wild Swine with their Affaguays. All the Fish they have comes from the Rivers Mouth, where they are dry'd and smoak'd; but most are ill tasted, and stink for want of being salted. Their Fruits are Corn or Great Milhio, which is cheap, and increases here wonderfully; but 'tis not esteemed, so that they sow but little on't. Sometimes they employ the *Ar-dra* Women to brew Beer with it; but it proves disagreeable and hot. They have a few Potatoes, and abundance of Jammes, which they eat instead of Bread, with all other Edibles, and are very careful to plant and gather it in due Season. They have two Sorts of Beans like Horse-Beans, of a hot disagreeable Taste, and unwholesome. There's no Rice, tho' the Land is proper enough for it in some Places. They have two Sorts of Coco-Nuts, *Cormantyn* Apples, *Paguovens*, Bananas, wild Figs, and others, which, tho' uncommon, are not extraordinary. The Soil is not good near the River, because of the Damps that rise from the Water; but 'tis very fruitful a little Distance from it. The Inhabitants make good Dyes of Green, Blue, Black, Red, and Yellow. They prepare the Blue from Indigo, which grows here in Plenty, and the rest they extract from certain Trees by Friction and Decoction. They make better Soap than any in *Guinea*; but their Manner of making it differs little from that made on the *Gold Coast*. They have a prodigious Number of Cotton Trees, and not only all the Inhabitants wear it, but they export Thousands of woven Cloths a Year to other Places.

Neyendael concludes his General Description of *Benin* with an Account of the King's Revenue, which he says is very large, and impossible to be calculated, because some on't is paid in the Coin of the Country, and the rest in Cattle, Poultry, Cloths, Fruits, or other Necessaries for his Household, so that he is obliged to no Expence on that Account, and lays up the Coin untouched. No Duties are paid for Importation or Exportation of Goods, but every

one pays an Annual Sum to the Governor of the Place where he lives for Liberty to trade, of which he sends Part to the King. *Europeans* are very civilly treated here, and all the Customs they pay to the King, Lords, Governors, and Merchants, don't amount to above 6*l.* Sterling per Ship.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Loebo*, which the *Sansons* and *Dapper* place near the Mouth of the River of *Benin*. The latter notes it for the Residence of a famous Priest in his Time, who was a Nobleman, and boasted of high Genealogy from the most eminent Magicians, who, because they pretended to be Masters of the Sea and Winds, and to foretel the Arrival of Ships, were honour'd by the King with the Grant of this Village and its Inhabitants, which their Successors of the same Profession have ever since enjoy'd. But the Envoys of *Benin* are not permitted to visit him when they come into this Village, nor has he the Liberty to enter *Benin*.

2. *Arebo*, *Aroba*, *Arobon*, *Arbon*, or *Argon*, where the *Dutch* have a Factory. The *Sansons* place this on the same River, above 60 Miles N. E. of *Loebo*, and so does *David van Neyendael*. He says, this is the common Trading Place, and that Ships conveniently come so far up this River. 'Tis a fine, large, oblong Town, and pretty populous. The Houses are like those of *Boededoe*, but larger. This and the adjacent Country is govern'd by a Viceroy. The *English* had also a Factory here formerly, but they left it, and 'tis now demolish'd. *Dapper* places it 20 Leagues up the River above *Loebo* on the Left Hand, and says, 'tis 500 Paces long and 100 broad, and that the neighbouring Fields are full of Thorny Bushes.

3. *Boededoe*, otherwise called *Hodi* or *Bodi*. *Moll* places it near the Coast, on an Arm that falls into the Mouth of the River *Benin* on the E. Side. *Neyendael* says, it contains about 50 thatch'd Cottages, and, with the neighbouring Country, is govern'd by a Viceroy and some *Grandeas*, who have Power to determine Civil Causes, and to levy Taxes, but refer all Matters of Importance to the Court.

4. *Agotton*, *Gotton*, or *Agatton*. *Moll* places it on the E. Side of the River *Benin*, about 30 Miles

30 Miles N. of *Boededoe*, and 60 S. of *Benin*. The *Sanfons* place it almost 44 Miles N. E. of *Arebo*, and but 30 S. of *Benin*. *Dapper* sets it about 30 Leagues above *Arebo*, and 14 or 15 below *Benin*, and says, 'tis as long as that, and somewhat broader. *Neyendaël* places it a Day's Journey by Land from *Benin*, and says, 'twas formerly a Place of considerable Trade, but is almost ruin'd by the Wars. It stands on a small Hill in the River, where it just touches the main Land. The Ruins shew that it was once a large Village, and much more agreeable than the others, for which Reason the Negroes use all Diligence in rebuilding it. He adds, that 'tis encompassed with all Sorts of Fruit Trees, and that the Inhabitants of the neighbouring Villages come hither at every considerable Market, which is held here for five Days.

5. *Benin*. *Moll* places it on the River of its own Name, N. Lat. $7\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $24\frac{1}{4}$. the *Sanfons* Lat. $8\frac{1}{4}$. Long. $30\frac{1}{4}$. *James Lange* says, the *Dutch* Factors are obliged to stay here 6 Months; but few return alive, because the Place, tho' pleasant enough, is very unwholesome. *Dapper* says, the *Dutch* call it *Great Benin*, because 'tis the greatest Town in these Parts. The Queen's Palace is three Leagues round, and the Town five. The latter is inclos'd on one Side with a Mud Wall 10 Foot in Height, and on the other Side 'tis naturally fortified by a Marsh, encompassed with Brushes and Shrubs, which extends from one End of the Wall to the other. It has several Gates 8 or 9 Foot high, and 5 broad, which are all of one Piece of Wood, and turn upon a Post like Meadow Gates. The King's Palace is on the right Side of the Town near the Gate of *Gotton*. 'Tis a walled Pile of Buildings, which takes up as much Ground as the Town of *Haerlem*. It contains several Apartments for the Prince's Ministers, and fine Galleries, most of which are as large as those of the Exchange at *Amsterdam*, and supported by neat wooden Pillars, enshased with Copper, on which their Victories are finely engraved. Most of the Houses of the Palace are cover'd with Palm-Tree Branches, in the Form of square Planks, and at each Corner is a small Pyramidal Tower, with a Copper Bird on the

Top spreading its Wings. The Town contains 30 large straight Streets 26 Foot broad, which are crossed by abundance of lesser ones. The Houses are built uniform and close to one another, with Roofs, Pent-houses, and Ballustrades, and shaded with the Leaves of Palm-Trees and Bananas, and are but one Story high. Nevertheless the Houses of the Gentry have great Galleries within, and several Rooms whose Walls and Cieling are of red Earth, and they keep 'em as neat as the *Dutch*; besides, every Woman cleans her own Door. *Luyts* says, this is the neatest City on the Continent of *Guinea*, and observes, that several Maps represent it as divided into two Parts by the River.

Dapper's Account being none of the newest, we shall here subjoin that given by *Neyendaël*, who was here in 1702. He places it about 10 Miles within Land from *Agaton*, but says, that now it scarce deserves the Name of a City. 'Tis about 4 Miles large. The Streets are of a vast Length and Breadth, where there are daily Markets of Cotton, Kine, Elephants Teeth, *European* Wares, and all the Commodities of the Country; but half the Houses are in Ruins, and the rest are very straggling; yet they are large and handsome, with Clay Walls, for there are no Stones in the Country, and cover'd at the Top with Straw or Leaves. The Architecture is tolerable, and resembles that of *Axim*. The Inhabitants are all Natives, and admit no Foreigners. There are several rich Men here, who daily attend the Court, and leave all other Affairs to their Wives and Slaves, who go to traffick in all the neighbouring Villages, or else are hir'd by the Day, and are obliged to bring most of their Wages or their Gain in Trade to their Masters. All Male Slaves here are Foreigners, for they make none of the Natives, who are all free, and call'd the King's Slaves, nor suffer none to be transported out of the Kingdom; yet the Females are left to their Discretion. The ordinary Citizens live very idle Lives, till Ships arrive in the River, and then they go to them to trade with their Goods: But if no Ships come, they send their Slaves to *Rio Lagos* or other Places to buy Fish, of which they make a gainful Trade far within Land. The

The Mechanics don't trouble themselves with the Affairs of the Court or Commerce, and the rest follow Husbandry or the like for a Living. They oblige their Wives to keep the Markets, till the Ground, and look after their Family; all which they perform very chearfully. They are very obliging to all, especially *Europeans*, but don't like the *Portuguese*. Our Author gives the following Account of the King's Court, his Manner of giving Audience, his Person, and the Cause of the present Ruin of the City.

The Court, he says, is very wide, stands on a great Plain, with no Houses about it, and has nothing rare. At the Entrance there's a long Gallery, supported by 58 strong Planks about 12 Foot high instead of Pillars, which are only hack'd out, instead of being saw'd or plan'd. Beyond this there's a Mud or Earthen Wall, which has three Gates, one at each Corner, and another in the Middle, which has a Wooden Turret like a Chimney 60 or 70 Foot high, and on the Top a large Copper Snake finely cast, whose Head hangs downwards. Beyond one of these Gates there's a Plain about a quarter of a Mile, almost square, and encompassed with a low Wall. At the End on't there's a Gallery like the first, but without Wall or Turret. Half on't was lately broke down by Thunder, since which none have offer'd to rebuild it. This Gallery has a Gate at each End, one of which leads into a third Gallery like the former, and supported by Planks wretchedly carv'd with humane Figures. Behind a white Carpet he saw 11 Men's Heads forrily cast in Copper, which are some of the King's Gods, and an Elephant's Tooth upon each. This Gallery leads thro' a Gate into another great Plain, and a 4th Gallery beyond, which is the King's Dwelling-House, with another Snake upon Top. In the first Apartment, at the Entrance of the Plain, is the King's Chamber of Audience, where our Author spoke with him in Presence of his three great Lords. He was sitting on an Ivory Couch, under a Canopy of *Indian* Silk. He had a fine Mien, and was about 40 Years of Age. 'Tis the Custom for Ambassadors to stand at 30 Paces Distance, but our Author had the Favour to advance

within 8 or 10 Paces. There was no Person in the Hall besides those three Lords, the King, and a Negro with a drawn Sword. Those three Lords report all Messages to the King, and his Answer, so that none else can determine whether they make a faithful Report. On the King's Left Hand, against a fine Piece of Tapestry, there were 7 white scow'r'd Elephants Teeth on Ivory Pedestals, in which Manner most of the King's Gods are placed within his House. Our Author presented him with a Silk Night-Gown, which was carried to him covered with Mats, and guarded before and behind by Negroes armed with white Staves, to beat off those that stand in the Way, in order to prevent the King from being kill'd, or his Gods from being poison'd.

He says, the Ruin of this Town, and the fine Country round it, which stands on a Level, and is adorned with Thousands of lovely tall Trees, was occasioned by the Prince's causing two of the Street Kings to be killed, on Pretence that they had conspired to take away his Life, tho' the World knew the contrary, and that his only Aim was at their Wealth. After this the King was opposed by a third Man, who being universally beloved, fled with three Fourths of the Citizens out of the Town; upon which the King assembled a Body of Men from the neighbouring Country, and caused them to be pursued; but the King of the Street and his Followers repulsed them with great Loss, and came back to the City, which he plunder'd all but the King's Court, and then retired; but continued to rob the Inhabitants of the Town for 10 Years, till (thro' the Mediation of the *Portuguese*) a Peace was concluded, by which he was fully pardoned, and desired by the King to return to his former Habitation: But *Neyendaël* says, he removed two or three Days Journey from *Benin*, where he keeps as noble a Court, with most of the Citizens, as the King, and that those few that returned home were amicably received, and preferred to Places of Honour, in order to invite the rest to come home, because the greatest Part of the Town lies uninhabited.

6. *Meiborg* is a Village in this Country, where *Neyendaël* says the *Dutch* had formerly a considerable Factory, and thinks it had this Name from one of their Factors; but he does not tell us where it stands, nor do we find it in *Moll* or the *Sanfons*. He tells us, that their last Factor ravished one of the Governor's Wives; upon which he came against him with a Party of armed Men, and tho' he fled aboard one of the *Dutch* Ships which then lay there, gave him his Death's Wound. But the Company's Director-General then on the Coast sent a Yacht with Soldiers from *Elmina* to *Benin*, with strict Orders to take full Revenge, which they executed with so much Rigour, that they killed and took every Person of the Village that could not escape, and the King of *Great Benin* caused the Offender and his whole Race to the 3d and 4th Generation to be cut in Pieces.

29. The Kingdoms of *Ifago*, *Jaboe*, *Odobo*, *Istanna*, and *Gaboe*, according to *Dapper*.

Ifago lies W. of *Benin*. The Inhabitants raised a great Army of Horse to surprize that City; but the Citizens having Notice on't, dug a great many Pits in the Avenues to the Town, covered them with a little Earth, and by a cunning Stratagem drew the *Ifago's* into them, and then cut them in Pieces, by which Means their King became Vassal to him of *Benin*.

Jaboe and *Odobo* lie on the same Side; but they are not so considerable as *Ifago*.

Istanna lies E. of *Benin*. It was formerly a powerful Kingdom, but now 'tis subject to *Benin*.

Gaboe lies near the River of *Benin*, about 8 Days Journey above the City of that Name. It abounds with *Acori* and *Jasper*, and the *Dutch* have a great many Slaves from thence. The Inhabitants are courteous, and almost like those of *Benin*. But we find none of these Places in our Maps.

30. *Ouwerra* or *Forcado* Kingdom.

MOLL places the Mouth of the River *Forcado* or *Forcades* 50 Miles S. E. from that of the River *Benin*, and *Dapper* about 36 Leagues. The latter places the Kingdom of *Ouwerra* along this River, and says, that the Mouth of it is shaded with Trees on both Sides, is above 1500 Paces broad, and will carry a Vessel that draws 7 or 8 Foot Water.

Dapper says, the Air is full of hot, thick, unwholesome Vapours, and 'tis mortal to such Foreigners as lie down in the open Air to sleep. The Soil is dry and lean, and only bears such Plants as love Heat and Dryness, as *Coco-Nuts*, sweet and sour Oranges, Pepper, of which the Inhabitants don't plant much; abundance of Bananas, and a Grain called *Mandihoca*, which they grind and make Bread of. There is no Pasture, and consequently no Cattle, and all the tame Creatures they have are Pullets. They have a good Fishery, and sometimes kill Sea-Oxen, which are well tasted.

The People, he says, are pretty well shaped, and have more Spirit in many Things than those of *Benin*. They may, without asking Leave of the King, as they do at *Benin*, wear Habits of Cotton and Silk, which they gird about their Loins like Infants Swaddling-Cloths. All the People of both Sexes are marked with three Incisions, one upon the Forehead, and two others upon the Temples. They wear their Hair long or short, and have as many Wives as they please. The Widows belong to the King, and are at his Disposal.

The King of *Ouwerra* is an Ally, tho' in some Sort a Vassal, to the King of *Benin*, but otherwise very absolute in his Dominions. He has three Counsellors, who have each their Province assigned them; and judge without Appeal. *Don Antonio de Mingo* reigned in 1644, and was a *Mulatto*, or one of the *Portuguese* Race; his Father having been in *Portugal*, where he married his

his Mother. Accordingly this Prince is habited after the *Portuguese* Fashion, and wears a Sword by his Side like the other *Mulatto's*.

Their Religious Ceremonies are much the same with those of *Benin*, only they have more Reason, for they abhor Devils, won't suffer Magicians, nor use Poysonings, so that *Dapper* thinks it would be easy to convert them to Christianity. He observes, that the King and most of the Inhabitants have some Byass to the *Romish* Religion.

The chief Town here is of the same Name, viz. *Ouwerra* or *Awerri*. The *Sanfons* place it on a little River 60 Miles S. E. of *Benin*, and 50 from *Agotton*. *Dapper* says, 'tis the Seat of the King, 40 Leagues from the Sea, and that 'tis washed on one Side by the River *Forcado*, and shaded on the other by Forrests. The Houses are like those of *Benin*; the best are very neat, and covered with Palm-Tree Leaves, but the Walls are of Clay. The King's Palace is built after the Model of that of *Benin*, but 'tis much smaller, and the Town is not above 1500 Paces round. There's a *Portuguese* Church here, with an Altar, Crucifix, two Candlesticks, and the Images of the Virgin *Mary* and the Apostles, whither some of the Negroes come with Beads to worship. He adds, that a few of them can read and write, and are in Love with *Portuguese* Books. *Neyendaël* says, the River on which it lies falls into *Formosa* about a Mile and a half from its Mouth, and that the *Portuguese* have a Lodge here. *Dapper* says, the *Dutch* bring the same Merchandizes hither as to *Benin*, which they exchange for proper Slaves to the Number of 200 one Year with another. The Negroes here spend whole Months in making a Bargain, but never recede from it when made. The *Portuguese* us'd to give them Credit, but the *Dutch* won't use them to it, and demand their Slaves at the Delivery of their Goods. Men and Women without Distinction come to their Warehouses to traffick with them. He adds, that they have a few Jaspers and Acori.

Dapper gives this Description of the Coast from Cape *Formosa*, at the E. End of this Kingdom, to the Country of *Amboises*.

He places the Cape in N. Lat. 4. 8. wherein *Moll* and the *Sanfons* agree with him. He says, the Coast from the River of *Benin* to this Cape is so low, that tho' it be covered with Trees, it cannot be seen when the Sea flows but 25 Fathom Height. On the W. Side of the Cape there is a little River with a Village, and on the Left Hand before its Mouth a Sand-Bank, which appears in Sight at low Water. There are 7 other Rivers which cross this Country between the Cape and *Rio Real*, or the River of *Calbaria*, 25 Leagues to the E.

1. *Rio Non*, a small League from the Cape.
2. *Rio Odi*, at the Distance of 6 Leagues, with a very wide Mouth, in Lat. 4. 10.
- The 3d and 4th are of the same Bigness, and near one another; but he does not tell us their Names.
5. *St. Nicholas*.
6. *Rio de tres Irmaus*.
7. *Rio Sambreiro*, which runs up towards the N. W.

There are so many Sand-Banks at the Mouths of these Rivers, that they are only navigable by small Vessels in the fair Season from November to April. He observes, that these Rivers are thus marked in some Maps, viz. *Rio de Lempto*, *Rio de Telano*, *Rio de St. Barbara*, and *Rio de St. Bartholomeo*.

31. The Provinces of Calbaria, Kirke, Moco, and Bani, according to Dapper.

Calbaria is so called from the R. *Real de Calabari*, which is a great River that comes down from the N. but is shallow in very many Places, and not able to bear great Vessels. On the W. Side of the River near the Coast there's a Village, which the *Dutch* call *Wyndorp*, and the Negroes *Fokke*, because it abounds with Wine. 'Tis mentioned by *Moll* and the *Sanfons*. A little above this Place two Branches run from the River, one E. and the other W. but the main Course of the River runs N. In the W. Arm there's a Road 3 or 4 Leagues in Length for such Yachts as come hither to trade; and on the N. Side on't there's the Village of *Calbaria*, where the *Dutch* drive their main Trade. 'Tis inclosed with Palisadoes, and defended on the N. by a marshy Wood.

Wood. On the S. Side of this Brook there is an Island of an oval Figure, the Soil of which is low, and covered with Trees; but it looks afar off as Part of the Continents, because 'tis separated from it only by a small Canal. Twelve Leagues W. of *Calbaria* lies the Village of *Belli*, which is under the Direction of a Captain; and 20 Leagues above the Mouth of *Rio Real*, there's an Arm which runs from it to the E. N. E. with several Rivers on each Side.

At the same Distance from the Coast, he begins the Province of *Krike*, and bounds it on the W. with *Moco*. He bounds the latter on the S. with *Bani*, whose chief Village is *Culeba*, the Seat of a Governor, who has 9 or 10 others under him, and whose Territories extend from the W. Side of the River of *Calbaria*. The Negroes who live along the E. Banks of *Calbaria* eat the Flesh of their Enemies whom they kill in Battle, but sell the Prisoners at *Calbaria* for Slaves. When their Daughters are marriageable, they circumcise them with Ants, as they do at *Ardra*. In the Province of *Moco* they coin Iron Money, every Piece of which is as big as the Palm of one's Hand, with a Tail a Span long.

The Merchandize which *Europeans*, and especially the *Dutch*, bring to this River for Slaves, are Bracelets of grey unpolish'd Copper, and small Bars of red Copper polish'd with a Hammer, about 5 Quarterns apiece, and an Ell and a quarter long. They give 14 or 15 of them for a good Slave. The Negroes work these Bars like Wire, and then cut them into three equal Lengths, which they twist together for Bracelets and Necklaces, for the Bracelets which are brought to them from *Europe* serve 'em instead of Money. The Canoes of *Calbaria* are from 50 to 70 Foot long, hold 20 Rowers on a Side, besides 60 or 80 Persons, and the Ends terminate in a Point, but the Middle is 6 Foot over. Boards are laid from one Side to the other of about a Hand's Breadth, on which the Rowers sit, each with his Shield and Bundle of Zagays by his Side, because these People are almost continually at War with one another. Every Canoe has a Fire, by which they dress their Victuals, and the

Masters of the Canoe lie all round. When they are obliged to lie at Sea, they cover themselves with a Tent of Mats spread upon Poles, which are supported by Forks stuck in Holes made for the purpose in the aforesaid Planks. They lay other flat Sticks upon the Planks, and cover them with Reed Mats, on which they lie; but the Slaves lie out exposed to the Wind and Weather. They buy some of these from their Neighbours, who also purchase them from People that live farther N. The Provisions which these Negroes generally bring in their Canoes are Injames, Bananas, Palm-Oil, Pork, Beel, and Fowls. They also carry Slaves to *Belli*; but the Vent is not so good there as on the E. Side of the River *Calbaria*.

Three Leagues from the Mouth of *Rio Real de Calbaria*, *Dapper* places the River *Loitomba*, which the *Portuguese* call *Rio St. Domingo*. There's a great Village at the Extremity of its Mouth on the E. Side, which is full of Negroes, who trade for Slaves, and go to fetch them in Countries remote from the Coast. The next River he says is that of *Old Calbaria* or *Calborg*, because the Country between both has no Water. The Coast from *Rio Real* to *Old Calbaria*, which is 24 Leagues, runs E. S. E. The next to the E. is *Rio del Rey* or the King's River, which is very wide, and three Fathom deep, upon a muddy Bottom, without either Sand-Banks or Rocks to stop up its Entrance. On the N. Banks of the River there's the Ruins of a Village, where formerly one Captain *Sampson* was Governor, who being expelled by the Negroes of *Ambo*, turned Robber; after which his Enemies quite destroyed the Village, so that only a few sorry Huts are left, which are covered at Top and Bottom with the Leaves of Palm Trees. The Country about the River *del Rey* is low and marshy, so that they have no sweet Water but what rains from the Element, for which they make the *Europeans*, who come hither to trade, pay very dear.

The People who live far from the Coast near the Source of the River are called *Calbongos*. They are very wicked and deceitful, so that Parents sell their Children, Husbands

bands their Wives, Brothers their Sisters, &c. for Slaves. They are very nasty and ill shap'd. They go quite naked, except a Wrapper about their Privities. They deform themselves with various Colours, and print several Figures on their Foreheads and the rest of their Bodies. If a Person be accused, he makes an Incision in his Arm, and sucks his Blood; after which they reckon him innocent. They do the same in the Country of *Amboises*, at *Ambo*, and *Boeteri*, whose Inhabitants are always at War with those of *Rio del Rey*. The main Trade of this River is in Slaves, which they exchange for small Copper Bars, and 13 or 14 of 'em, which make up 22 Pound Weight, purchase a good Slave. Europeans also bring hither such Beads of Coral and Copper Basins as they cannot sell on the *Gold Coast*. The Negroes here sell *Acori*, *Zagays*, Knives, and Elephants Teeth, of which three commonly weigh a Quintal. In some Years they have traded with 400 Quintals of Elephants Teeth and 500 Slaves. The Market is kept in a Village near the Coast, upon the Side of a Brook, which runs into this River. Half Way between *Rio del Rey* and the River of *Camarones* is a small, narrow, but deep River, which the Negroes call *Camarones Pikkene*. The Coast between this and the greater River *Camarones* is a low Plain, covered with Trees, five Leagues in Length, and runs E. S. E. Slaves are sold about both those Rivers. *Moll* makes it a little above 30 Miles from *New Callebar* on the W. to the Old one on the E.

32. The Province of Ambosine, or the High-Land of Ambosi.

Dapper says, the Spaniards deservedly gave it this Name, because 'tis as high as the Pike of *Teneriff*. He bounds it with *Rio del Rey* on the W. and the River *Camarones* on the E. and says, it has a Cape of the same Name on the Coast, 6 Leagues from *Rio del Rey*. There are several Villages in the W. Part of the Country, the chief of which is called *Badi*, *Bodiwa*, or *Cesse*, where there are Slaves, but very lit-

tle *Acori*. The Country abounds with Fruit, Cattle, and Wild Fowl. They have no Palm Wine, but instead on't they make a very pleasant Liquor of certain Roots called *Gajanlas*, boil'd in Water. In short, 'tis a Place where Ships may take in all manner of Refreshments. Six Leagues S. E. from the Cape *Ambosine*, and 7 from the River of *Camarones*, there are three small Isles in the Ocean, called the Islands of *Amboises*, the Eastermost of which is the largest and most populous, and almost as high as the High-Land of *Ambosi*. Sometimes Ships pass between these Islands, and anchor under the largest to trade for Slaves and Elephants Teeth, or to take in Provisions and Palm Wine, which abounds in this Island: But *Dapper* observes, that Ships seldom come hither, because the Trade is not very brisk here, and they can have Slaves from other Parts. He adds, that those who live in the middle Island are the refinedst Negroes on the Coast, and often go over to the Continent to get a Living.

We shall describe the other Islands in the Gulph of Guinea or *St. Thomas* with the rest of the chief *African* Islands, after we have finished the Continent.

The River of *Great Camarones* or *Jamoer*, which separates this Country from *Lower Ethiopia*, is not very deep in some Places. About the Mouth of the River, a little S. from the Coast, there's a small Island called, *The Isle of Buffaloes*; and towards the main Sea there's a Chain of Rocks even with the Water, which runs E. S. E. On the N. Side of the River *Camarones*, near the Coast, live a People called *Calbongos*, who *Dapper* says are almost continually at War with their Neighbours of the same Name. They have a Chief called *Monneba*, who is reckoned in his Neighbourhood for a potent Prince. The Village where he resides stands upon a Hill, and the Houses, which are built square, form the finest Prospect on all this Coast. They have Plenty of Provisions, such as Injames, Bananas, Palm Wine, and Bordon Wine, which is produced from a lesser Palm than ordinary, that grows in marshy Places. There are few Elephants Teeth and *Acori*, but Plenty of Slaves.

Slaves. The *Dutch* bring hither Boesjes, small Bars and Pots of Copper, Kettles beat with a Hammer, Presses for Oranges and Lemons, Lavender, Cows Horns, and Wheels for Winding, Spinning, &c. He adds, that Acori is only found betwixt *Rio del Rey* and the River *Camarones*, and that the *Dutch* exchange it for Stuffs, and carry it to sell on the *Gold Coast*.

Having thus finished *Guinea*, we come next to *Lower Ethiopia*, which, with the

Upper, will conclude our Description of the Continent of *Africa*, where we began, and therefore we thought fit to insert the Tables of both together, as we find them drawn by *Luyts* and the *Sansons*. But we shall begin first with *Lower Ethiopia*, and prefix *Moll's* Map of that Country when we come to *Congo*, because the Provinces of *Biafar* and *Loango*, which we shall first treat of in Order, are set down in his Map of *Guinea*.

A General TABLE of ETHIOPIA.

ETHIOPIA
divided in-
to 2 Parts,
viz.

The UPPER
ETHIOPIA,
containing,

The Kingdom of Nubia.

Abyssinia or the Empire of
the Abyssines, containing,

Zanguebar, in which are,

The Islands over against
Zanguebar strictly taken.

The Empire of Monamugi.

The Empire of Monomo-
tapa.

The Country of Cafaria
or Cafres.

The LOWER
ETHIOPIA,
in which are,

The Kingdom of Congo.

The Kingdom of Biafar
or Biafara.

The Islands over against
Biafar or Biafara.

Meroe Isle, Ximencha or Xi-
menche, Ambiancantiva or
Ambiancative, Dambea, Van-
gua or Vangue, Damut, Na-
rea, Zet, Cafates, Goyama or
Goyame, Agag, Bagamidri or
Bagamodri, Beleguanza or
Beleguanze, Amara, Ambiam
Nova, Quara, Fungi, Gavi,
Gazabela, Tirut, Gorga, Za-
flan, Gemen, Gora, Oxia, Xoa,
Fatigar or Fatigara, Dobas,
Angota or Angote, Tigre-Ma-
hon and Tigre-Barnagasso.

The Coasts of Abex, Ajan, and
Proper Zanguebar.

Penda, Zanzibar, St. Roch, Mon-
fia, Comorre or Comeres Isles,
Madagascar, St. Marie or
Santa Maria, Nazara or Na-
zare, St. Maurice, Bourbon.

Monamugi Empire strictly ta-
ken, Malemba Kingdom.

Monomotapa Kingdom, Butua
Kingdom.

The Kingdoms of Quiteva or
Quiteve, Sofala, Chicanda,
Sedanda, Fumes Land or
Terra dos Fumos, Terra do Na-
tal, Terra Deserta, Cimbebas
Kingdom, Cape of Good Hope.

The Kingdoms of Angola,
Congo, and Loango, the Gia-
ques, Gales, Gala, or Galla
People, the Ansicans or An-
zicans People.

Macoco, Gizingbomba or Giring-
bomba, Medra, Biafar or Bia-
fara, and Gabon, Kingdoms.

Annobon, St. Thomas, Prince's
Island, Fernando Po's Island.

Four particular Tables of the UPPER ETHIOPIA.

I. The Kingdom of NUBIA, containing, ———

On or near the River Nile,	Jalac, Risa or Rissa, Gula or Sulla, Angimi, Nuabia, Dangala or Dancala, Zaghaira, Gualva, Cusa, Gerham.
On or near the R. Nubia,	Sabaha, Mathan, Omot, Coala, Tagua, Samma or Samna, Tamalma.
Between the Nubia and the Nile Rivers,	Salom, Zagbara, Demba, Dargan, Dagra, Domocla or Damocla, Jadia or Jadie, Zigida or Zigide.

Meroe Island.	Esera or Esere, Sarahoes or Sarahoesum.
Ximencha or Ximenche.	Amersen, Syra or Syre.
Ambiancantiva.	Ambiancantiva.
Dambea. ———	Dambea, Chedaflan.
Vangua or Vangue.	Maitagazi, Vangua or Vangne.
Damut. ———	Guga, Cotla, Damut.

On the West,

Narea.	
Zet. ———	Zet.
Cafates. ———	Cafates.
Goyama or Goyame.	
Agag. ———	Agag.

Bagamidri or Bagamedri.	Azuga or Asuga, Therua, Ambadara, Sova, Baza, Ermita, Machada.
-------------------------	--

Beleguanza or Beleguanze.	Beleguanza or Beleguanze.
---------------------------	---------------------------

In the Middle, ———

Amara. ———	Amara.
Ambiam. ———	Ambiam.
Nova. ———	Nova.
Quara. ———	Quara.
Fungi. ———	Fungi.
Garvi. ———	Garvi.
Gazabela or Gasabela.	Gazabela or Gasabela.
Tirut. ———	Tirut.
Gorga. ———	Gorga.
Zaflan. ———	Zaflan.
Gemen. ———	Gemen.

Gora.	
Oxia.	
Xoa.	
Fatigar or Fatigara.	

Dobas. ———	Dobas.
------------	--------

On the East,

Angota or Angote.	Angotina, Olabi, Fugabella, Baggana, Angota, Betmaria.
Tigremahon or Tigre.	Manadela or Manadella, Couora, Belleta, Agro or Agrum, Sabaina, Chaxumo.

Barnagasso.	Zama, Barua or Barova, Ema- cen.
-------------	-------------------------------------

III. ZAN-

II. ABRSSINIA, or the Kingdom of the ABRSSINES, comprehending, according to the common Maps,

III. ZAN-
GUEBAR,
containing,

The Coast of <i>Abex.</i>	On the North. ————	The Town and Island of Sua- quem or Suaquen, Ercoco or Erquico, Mazua Isle.
	Dancala or Dangali King- dom on the S. ————	Degibeldara, Degibelcora, Vel- la.
The Coast of <i>Ajan.</i>	Adel Kingdom. ————	Zeila, Barbora, Meta, Salira, Dardura, Aromata, or the Cape of Guardafuni or Gar- dafuy, Zocotora or Dioscori- des's Isle, Tallara, Azuma, Carfur, Alsum, Camara, Vel- ha, Norvecara, Comizara, Adel, Ara, Mautra.
	Adea Kingdom. ————	Zachet, Orgabra, Barraboa, Hu- gat, Quilmanea, Monks Lake and Island, Bandel, Brava, Magadoxo.
The Coast of Proper Zan- guebar.	Chelicia or Chelicie King- dom. ————	Chelicia or Chelicie.
	Pata Kingdom. ————	Pata.
	Lamon Kingdom. ————	Lamon.
	Melinda or Melinde King- dom. ————	Oya, Gazza or Gazze, Melinda or Melinde.
	Monbaza or Monbaze King- dom. ————	Butuapa, Oygnia, Monbaza or Monbaze.
	Quiloa Kingdom. ————	Simis, Camia, Sabia, Quilon, Xango.
The nearest.	Mosambique or Mosanbique Kingdom. ————	Querimba, Serincapa, Pinda, Mo- sambique or Mosanbique.
	Mongal or Mongalo King- dom. ————	Angos, Ankos, or Agoch, Due, Monia, Quiloana or Quiloane, Mongal or Mongalo,
The most re- mote.	Penda. Zanzibar. St. Roch. Monfia.	
	Comeres or Comorre Islands.	Gasida, Aliola, Angowan, May- otta, St. Juan, Cenbracas.
IV. The ISLANDS over against Proper Zan- guebar.	Madagascar or Dauphine Island, and St. Laurent.	Fanshera or Fanshere, Fort Dau- phin, Tonobaja or Tonobaya Port, St. Augustin's Port, St. James's P. St. Vincent's P. St. Andrew's P. Round P. or Vingaghora, Cacambout P. Mannajara P. Manapatan P.
	St. Marie or Santa Maria. Nazara or Nazare. St. Maurice.	
	Bourbon and Mascaregne.	St. Paul's Port. St. Denis's P. Assumption P.

Six particular Tables of the LOWER ETHIOPIA.

I. The Empire of MO- NOEMUGI, containing,	Monæmugi Empire strictly taken. —————	On the East.	{ Gambia, Astagoa, Agag, Cas- mur, Beifa.
		On the West.	{ Bagamedro, Zambra or Zembre, or Zambeze.
II. The Em- pire of M O- N O M O T A- P A.	Malemba Kingdom on the Lake Zambra or Zembre. —————		{ Debsan or Dabsan, Meti.
			{ Carma, Gallila, Zet, Dobbet, Armeta, Maitagasi, Bera, Ge- bugha, Butua, Amara.
	Batua King- dom.	On the North. —————	{ Hagal or Hagala, Quietevi or Quiticui, Bafat, Tialso, Tan- go, Zimbira or Zimbire.
		On the South. —————	{ Garma, Adia, Mosata, Cumis- sa.
	Monomotapa Kingdom.	On the West. —————	{ Vallonta, Belegura, Joares, Ze- daia or Zedaja, Monomotapa, Fuggi, Agraseda or Agrasede, Moggir, and Mogar.
		On the East. —————	{ Quiteva or Quiteve King- dom. —————
III. CAFFA- RIA or CAFRES, containing,	On the East,	Sofala Kingdom. —————	{ Sofala.
		Sedanda Kingdom.	
		Chicanga Kingdom.	
		Terra dos Fumes.	
		Terra do Natal.	
	On the S. —	Terra Deserta.	
		Cape of Good Hope. ———	{ Dutch Fort, Table Bay and Mount.
		Cimbebas Kingdom. ———	{ Cape Noir, Negro, or Cabo- Negro.
	On the W. —	Malemba Kingdom. ———	
		Islands over against Caffa- ria or Cafrerie. ———	{ St. Helena, Old and New.
IV. The Kingdom of CONGO, in which are,	Angola King- dom.	On or near the Sea. ———	{ Benguela, Quiconga, Benguela Vielha or Old Benguela.
		In the Inland Country. —	{ Mochime, Massargan, Engaza, Engaze, or Dongo.
	The People.	Giaques, Gales or Gale. —	{ Zara or Zaire, Dagar or Dan- gar, Vamba.
		Ansicans or Anzicains.	
	Congo King- dom.	Pango Marquisate. ———	{ Cundi, Pango, Argota or An- gote.
		Sundi or Sunde Dutchy. —	{ Sundi or Sunde, Betequa, Iri.
		Batta Dukedom. ———	{ Cangeu, Batta, Agisymba or Agisimba.
		Pemba Marquisate. ———	{ Lelunda, St. Salvador, Pemba.
		Bamba Dutchy. ———	{ Loanda, S. Paulo, Mord'o, Bam- ba.
		Songo Earldom. ———	{ Sonko, Bombo, Matinga, Malem- ba.

The King-
dom of Congo
still.

Loango King-
dom.

On the Sea-Coast. ———

In the Inland Country. ———

Loango, Sellaga, Quanni, Ma-
jumba.

Katta or Katta, Boecemeala,
Setta, Sette, or Zeita.

V. The King-
dom of BIA-
FAR or BIA-
FARA, com-
prehending,

On the East,

Macoco Kingdom. ———

Giringbomba Kingdom. ———

Medra Kingdom. ———

Biafar or Biafara King-
dom. ———

Gabon Kingdom. ———

Macoco.

Giringbomba.

Guidan, Medra, Tebeldera.

Biafar or Biafara, Borca.

Gabon, Corisco, Maceira.

VI. The
Islands over
against Biafa-
ra, viz.

Remote ———

Near ———

Annobon or Annobo.

St. Thomas.

Prince's Island.

Fernando Po's Isle.

St. Thomas Town.

The princi-
pal Rivers of
Ethiopia run-
ning into the
Sea.

Mediterranean.

Of the Caf-
fars.

Of Congo.

The Nile, which receives
the Rivers ———

The Zambra or Zambere,
divided into ———

The Sunga.

The Coanza.

The Lelunda.

The Zara or Zaire.

Gema, Kelti, Branti, Gamala,
Abea, Baxila, Ruca or Rue-
cam, Maleg, Tacaza or Ta-
caze, Nubia

Rio de el Esperitu Santo or
St. Esprit, Zambra or Zam-
bere.

C H A P. XI.

Lower ETHIOPIA.

PTOLOMY called it *Ethiopia Interior*, because it lay more within Land than the Upper; and for the contrary Reason late Writers have called it *Exterior*, because 'tis situate beyond or without the other. Heylin says, that *Inferior* was added to distinguish it from the Upper, which lies on the E. and N. He derives the Name of *Ethiopia* from the Greek *Aiðw* to burn, and *ἔθ* Countenance, because of the violent Heats of the Sun, which scorch the People's Complexions. Marmol says, the Negroes call it *Beled-ala-abid*, and that 'tis larger than all *Barbary*, *Biledulgerid*, or *Negroland*, together.

He bounds it with the Ocean on the W. the Country of *Abyssines* on the S. *Ethiopia* near *Egypt* on the E. and the Deserts of *Sahara* on the N. Dapper begins it on the N. Side of the River *Zaire* near the Equinoctial, and extends it to the Cape of Good Hope, the most S. Point of *Africa*. Mr. Pory and Gordon bound it with the River *Zaire* and *Abyssinia* or the *Upper Ethiopia* on the N. and say, that on the other Sides 'tis encompassed with the Ocean, stretching N. to the Entrance of the *Red Sea*, and bounding the *Upper Ethiopia* E. W. and S. Heylin bounds it on the E. with the Sea, which he calls the *Red Sea*, from the Bottom of the *Arabian Gulph* to the S. Ocean; on the W. with the *Ethiopic Ocean*; on the N. with *Negroland* and the *Higher Ethiopia*; and on the S. with the main Ocean, which parts it from *Terra Australis Incognita*. The *Sansons* begin it at the River *Camarones*, at the Bottom of the Gulph of *St. Thomas*, which parts it from *Benin*, and carry it round the Capes of Good Hope and *Corrientes* to the River of *Cuama*, which separates it from *Zanguebar*, Part of *Upper Ethiopia*. Luyts bounds it on the E. by the Sea of the *Cassers*, *Zanguebar*, *Abys-*

synia, and *Nubia*; on the N. by the Desert of *Zaara* and *Negroland*; on the W. by *Guinea*, the Sea of Congo, and Part of the *Cassarian*; and on the S. by the same Sea of the *Cassers*. Its greatest Length, according to Moll, is from the Fountain of the River *Camarones* in N. Lat. 9. to the Cape of Good Hope in S. Lat. 35. i. e. 2640 Miles.

Heylin says, it contains all *Ptolomy's Ethiopia Interior*, Part of his *Ethiopia sub Egypto*, and all those Lands which he called *Terra Incognita*. As to its Character in general, *Aubanus* says 'tis Mountainous on the W. Sandy in the Midst, and Desert towards the E. Marmol says, some of the Negroes of this Country worship the Sun, Moon, and Stars; others Water, Fire, and some the first living Thing they meet at their going abroad. He observes, that some of them receiv'd the Jewish Religion, with those of *Upper Ethiopia*, after the Queen of *Sheba* return'd from *Solomon*, and continued in it till the Queen of *Candace's* Eunuch, baptiz'd by *St. Philip*, taught them the Christian Faith. But in 1067 *Abubequer's* Son invaded this Country, and introduc'd *Mahometism* in such Parts as lie towards the Deserts of *Zaara* and *Egypt*: And as for those that live on the Sea-Coast, they are brutish Idolaters, and more like Monsters than Men, except a few who have been converted to Christianity since the Portuguese failed that Way. In short, Gordon says, they are a dull, savage, kind of People, and have Variety of Languages as well as Manners and Customs, of which we shall give an Account in the several Provinces.

Heylin divides it into *Zanguebar*, *Monomotapa*, *Cafraria*, and *Manicongo*; the *Sansons* into *Congo*, *Monomotapa*, and *Cassreria*, each of which they subdivide into two other Parts, viz. *Proper Congo*, and the Country betwixt that

that and *Guinea*, *Monomotapa* Proper, *Monæmugi*, and *Caffraria*, on the W. Side of the Cape of Good Hope, and *Caffraria* on the E. beyond it. *Luyts* divides it into the Inland Empires of *Monæmugi* and *Monomotapa*, and the Maritime Kingdoms of *Congo* and *Biafara*, and the Coasts of the *Caffers*. Besides *Zanguebar*, *Gordon* and others add *Ajan* and *Abex*; but *Luyts*, the *Sansons*, and other Geographers of best Note, include all three in *Upper Ethiopia*, where we shall describe them, and in the mean time follow *Luyts's* Division of *Lower Ethiopia* as the most exact, and begin with

I. BIAFAR or BIAFRA Kingdom.

Dapper bounds it on the W. with *Benin*, with some Mountains on the E. which separate it from *Medra*, and extends it Southward to the 4th Degree of N. Lat. *Luyts* observes, that some Geographers give this Name to all the Country, which is bounded on the E. by the Lake and River of *Niger*, on the N. by the Kingdoms of *Borno* and *Zanfara* in *Negroland*, and on the W. by that of *Benin* and the Gulph of *St. Thomas*.

Gordon says, the Air here is extremely hot, but qualified by daily Showers of Rain, which *Luyts* says falls from *April* to *August*. The former adds, that 'tis not so fruitful as *Congo*; and the latter, that it abounds with Palm Trees, which yield a pleasant Wine; and that the Champain Country breeds Elephants, Bufflers, and monstrous Serpents.

Dapper says, the Inhabitants are the most addicted to Magick of all the Negroes, by which they pretend to raise Storms of Rain, Thunder and Lightning, and for that Purpose they sometimes sacrifice their Children to the Devil. *Luyts* says, they are very subtle, and great Robbers; that they dye their Bodies with several Colours, and their Kings chalk theirs to render them the more beautiful; and that they worship the Sun, Moon, and Trees, as well as the Devil.

Gordon says, they are rul'd by their own Kings, who have several Princes under them, and (according to *Luyts*) are called *Mani*. Their Capital of the same Name lies on the River *Camarones*, above 270 Miles N. E. from its Mouth, according to *Maß*

and the *Sansons*, and between 7 and 8 Deg. of N. Lat. but *Hues* places it in Lat. 6. 10.

Luyts says, its several Kingdoms are *Macoco*, *Giringbomba*, and *Medra*, on the E. with *Biafar* Proper and *Gabon* on the W. which have most of them Capitals of the same Name.

I. M A C O C O.

Dapper says, 'tis a great Country N. of the River *Zaire*, and 2 or 300 Leagues from the Coasts of *Loango* and *Congo*. The Inhabitants are called *Monsoles* or *Meticas*. They are Man-eaters, and our Author thinks them the Ancestors of the *Jagi*. Their King is reckon'd far more potent than he of *Congo*, has 10 Kings for his Vassals, and commands a Country of such a vast Extent, that (if we may believe *Dapper*) 200 Men are daily killed in his Palace, some of whom are Criminals, and others Slaves of Tribute, and the King and Court dine upon their Flesh after 'tis dress'd, tho' they have Plenty enough of Cattle and other Provisions. The King has a noble Retinue and Palace, but not so splendid as he of *Congo*, who has learnt Grandeur of the *Portuguese*. His chief Riches consist in Slaves, *Simbo's* or Shells of *Loanda*, *Boesjes* or *India* Shells, and in little Pieces of Stuff, and the like Trifles, which are as much esteemed here as Gold and Silver in *Europe*. He is obliged to have a great Number of Soldiers on his N. Frontiers, to keep out his Enemy the King of *Mujaco*, of whom we have no Account; but 'tis supposed he is a very potent Prince, because the King of *Macoco* with all his Power finds it difficult to withstand him. He adds, that there are several Forrests in this Kingdom inhabited by Dwarfs, of which more hereafter. *Morery* places this Country in *Upper Ethiopia*, towards the River *Quirus*.

Its Capital *Monfol* is placed by *Dapper* 300 Leagues from the Coast, and he says the *Portuguese* of *Louango* send hither their *Pombero's*, who are Slaves taught to read, write, and cypher, and of known Fidelity to buy Slaves, Ivory, and Copper, who in their Return load other Slaves with their Merchandizes, so that the Carriage costs them nothing. *Fer* calls the Inhabitants of this Country *Anzicains*, says it lies E. of the King.

Kingdom of *Loango*, and that the Inhabitants eat one another, without Respect to Sex or Kindred.

2. F U N G E N O.

Dapper says, 'tis a Kingdom tributary to *Great Macoco*, and situate between the two Rivers *Zaire* and *Coango*, E. of *Conde*. The *Portuguese* come hither to buy Slaves and Stuffs made of the Bark of the Tree *Matombe*, which is composed of long Filaments like Hemp. These Stuffs pass instead of Coin in *Louando* and *Angola*. *Vossius* says, the People are called *Fungeni*.

3. GIRINGBOMBA or GIRIBUMA.

Dapper says, this Kingdom lies N. E. of *Macoco*, and that the King, who is as powerful as any of his Neighbours, has 15 other Princes for his Vassals. He is an Ally to the *Great Macoco*, and their Subjects resemble one another in their Temper, Customs, and Superstition. *Vossius* places this Country in *Upper Ethiopia*, and its Capital on the River *Gingiro* or *Giring*.

4. P O M B O.

Dapper places this Province above 150 Leagues from the Town of *Louango*, over against the Country of the *Abyssins*, and says, it depends on the *Great Macoco*. Some Geographers say, that the *Portuguese* call all the Country about a great Lake between both Seas (and supposed to be *Zembre*) by this Name; but *Dapper* says this is not certain. 'Tis thought that all the Negroes along the Coast of *Angola* deriv'd their Laws and Customs from the Inhabitants of *Pombo*. The *Portuguese* of *Louango*, *Congo*, and *Louando St. Paulo*, send hither the trustiest Slaves they can pick out, to exchange their *Simbo* Cloths, *Canary* Wines, Shells of *Loando* and *India*, and other Merchandize, for Slaves and Ivory; and they are called *Pomberos* from the Trade they drive at this Place. Sometimes they have 100 or 150 Slaves, whom they load with Flaggons of Wine, covered with Mats of Rushes: But they often betray their Trust, and run away with Slaves and all; yet the *Portuguese* are obliged to employ the Negroes, because no Euro-

pean could be able to endure the Hunger, Thirst and Fatigue, of the Journey. Besides, the Air is so unwholesome, that if a Foreigner travels by Moon-light, his Head would swell as big as two. The Road hither from *Louando* along the Coast, by the Way of *Louando St. Paulo*, is very long and inconvenient, and full of frightful Rocks and Torrents, which overflow so much in Time of Rain, that Travellers are sometimes detained 12 or 15 Days. Besides, 'tis infested by the *Jagi*, who rob all Passengers they can meet with.

5. AMBUILA or AMBOILLE.

Dapper says, this Country is 6 Days Journey every Way. He bounds it on the E. with *Quingengo*, from which 'tis about a Day's Journey; on the N. and N. E. with the River *Loza*, which separates it from the Province of *Oando*; on the W. with *Congo*, and on the S. with *Canvangombe*, in the Place where 'tis said the Rivers *Danda*, *Loza*, and *Lucala*, arise. The Country abounds with Fields of Fruit and Meadows of Pasture, which feed a great many Cattle. The Inhabitants were never subject to the King of *Congo*, but are afraid of provoking him to Arms. It contains 15 Lordships, the chief of which are *Matuy-Nungo*, *Pingen*, *Hoiquianbole*, *Ambuila*, and *Louando*. He adds, that there's a good Trade here for Slaves, who are taken in the same Manner as at *Pombo*.

6. GABON or GABOU Kingdom, or the Land which the Sanfons call CAPONS.

Dapper says, the Rivers betwixt that of *Camarones* and the River *Gabon* are *Monoca*, *Borba* or *Boura*, *Rio de Campo*, and *Rio de St. Benito*, in 2 Deg. N. Lat. with a high Mountain 4 Leagues and a half to the E. where the Coast begins to run S. and N. Ten Leagues E. from *St. Benito* there's another River in N. Lat. 1. 35. and 4 Leagues from thence another very great one. Beyond this there's a Bay 8 Fathom deep, and 6 Leagues to the S. the Cape of *St. John*, with a Stone Bank. On the S. Side of the Cape lies *Rio Danger*, which runs into the Sea in S. Lat. 1. and is the only River which is frequented by the *Dutch*. *Dapper* adds, that the Negroes that live on the Banks of these Rivers

are large, strong Men, under several Kings, who are almost continually at War with one another. He says, that the River *Gabon*, which *Linschöten* calls *Gaba*, and some Geographers *Gabam*, lies under the Line, 20 Leagues from the River *Danger*. He makes the Mouth of it 4 Miles broad, but says it contracts insensibly, so that 'tis no more than two near the Isle of *Pengo*. It abounds with Crocodiles and Sea-Horses. *Bosman* places it 15 Miles from Cape *Lopez di Gonsalvez*, and says, 'tis known to all Nations that ever sail'd this Way. It divides into several Branches, and is navigable by small Ships for some Miles within Land; but he does not tell us how far it runs. 'Tis frequented both for Trade and the Cleaning and Refitting of Vessels, which they unlade first at *Prince's Island*, and then by Means of a strong Tide drive up into a sort of dry Ground here, which gives them an Opportunity of repairing them all round. The Bottom is very uneven, especially at the Mouth, as if it were full of Rocks, and the Ebb here is so strong, that there's no sailing into the River till it be Flood. He adds, that it has all Sorts of good Fish, which the People dart with their *Zagays* as they sail along in their Canoes.

The Soil produces Jammes, Potatoes, small Beans, Bananas, which they roast and eat before they are ripe, together with Plenty of Fruits which grow upon Trees, but no Milhio or other Corn; and our Author says, 'twill not bear Corn, nor most other Fruits.

Dapper says, there are several Islands in the River, inhabited by a cruel sort of People, who take a Pleasure in tricking and robbing of Foreigners; but their Women are not so rude. They marry the Mother her Son, or the Father his Daughter, without Distinction. Their Houses are thatched with Reeds and Banana Leaves. They sit on the Ground at Meals. The Rich have Pewter, and the meaner Sort Earthen Ware. Their common Food is Batatas, Injames, Bananas, and other Roots boil'd or fry'd. They serve up smok'd Flesh and Fish dry'd in the Sun in one Dish. They never drink till after their Meals, and then take large Draughts of Water, Palm Wine, or a Liquor call'd *Melaffo*. Their Habits are a sort of Cloth wove of the Bark of a Tree

call'd *Matombe*, over which they wear the Skin of an Ape or a Civet, with a little Bell hanging in the Middle. Most of the Men and Women go bare-headed, and their Hair is agreeably dressed. Some wear Hats made of the Bark of a Tree, or of Coconut, and others a Plume of Feathers set round their Heads on a Wire. Some make Holes in their upper Lips, wherein they stick little Bits of Ivory, and others make a Slit in their under Lips, thro' which they loll their Tongues. Both Sexes wear Silver Rings in their Ears and Noses, of three or four Ounces Weight, except the Poor, who use small Splinters of Wood 5 or 6 Fingers long, and Rings of Ivory and Horn. They paint their Bodies Red, make one of their Eyes of that Colour, and the other pale Yellow. They paint 3 Rays upon their Faces, and tie a Belt of Buffler's Skin 5 or 6 Hands Breadth in Length round their Waists; and since 'tis too short for both Ends to meet, they add a little String to it, to which is fasten'd an Iron Chain, whereon they hang their Knives. Some hang little Boxes about their Necks, which they will not suffer one to look into. The Women wear Aprons made of Mats, and the Men never go abroad without their Swords. The *Sansons* say, the People are poor and spiteful; and *Bosman*, that they are poor and proud. The latter says, they are divided into three Classes, one lives with the King, another with the Prince, and the third with neither, but live quietly, while the two first are always robbing and plundering one another by Night. They are great Brandy-drinkers, so that they'll sell a pretty large Elephant's Tooth for one Drinking-Bout; and when they are half drunk, they fall a fighting; and if they are in a Ship, throw one another's Clothes over-board. Some of them wear old Perukes, which they buy of the *Europeans* for Wax, Honey, Parrots, Monkies, or other Refreshments, which was formerly a great Trade here; but in our Author's Time there came so many Merchants for 4 Years together as quite spoil'd it. Tho' they drink so much Brandy, they know no Difference when 'tis half mixed with Water, and will not drink a Drop when they come aboard *European* Ships till they have received a Present; and if it be very long first, they make bold

to ask the *Europeans* whether they think they will drink for nothing, in which the *Europeans* are obliged to humour them, or they'll send them no Ivory. In the mean time they are very ready to make Foreigners Presents at their first Arrival; but if the Returns be too long a coming, they ask for the Counter-Presents, or threaten to take back their own again, which they often do, especially if the Present be not worth more than theirs. They are very awkward and troublesome in Dealing, and *Bosman* compares them to Brute Beasts. Their Cloathing (he says) is like that of the other Negroes, but very mean, and they make up their Apparel out of the old Clothes which they buy of *Europeans*. They don't seem to have much Religion, but are very superstitious, and have a great Number of Idols. The Men are generally large, robust, and well shap'd. They besmear their Bodies with the Fat of Elephants and Buffles, and the red Colour with which they paint stinks abominably. The Women prostitute themselves to all Comers for Knives or the like Trifles; but they smell very rank of their Paint. He adds, that the Men's chief Employment is in Hunting and Fishery.

Dapper says, the *Dutch* trade to this River with Elephants Teeth for Slaves, and that 4 Teeth of 120 or 140 Pound Weight purchase a Slave. They also bring Elephants Tails, and that Part of their Skin which covers their Backs, and sell them on the *Gold Coast* to great Profit. *Bosman* says, they also trade here with Wax and Honey, and that the *Zealand* Interlopers visit it all the Year round for Trade, to cleanse their Ships, and for Wood and Water.

Dapper tells us, that when the King of *Pongo* is at War with any of his Neighbours, and fears the Success, he retires into an Island strong by Nature, and fortified by some Cannon, which the Negroes took on board the *French*, *Flemish*, and *Portuguese* Vessels. This Prince had almost dethroned the King of *Lopez-Gonsalvez*, and seized his Country; but the *Dutch* offered their Mediation, and reconciled them. After this the King of *Pongo* sent 50 or 60 Canoes full of Soldiers up the River, who (after they had landed) went with their Canoes upon their Shoulders, and plundered the

Country of the *Camarones* of Elephants Teeth, Slaves, and other Booty. He made the like Incursions into the Country of the *Amboises*, along *Rio del Rey* and the Banks of *Olibatte*, by which he render'd himself very formidable to his Neighbours. He adds, that he has Plenty of Ivory and Slaves, and that he appoints a Lieutenant in his Villages, whom they call *Chave-Ponto*. *Bosman* says, their Government is very licentious, and that they shew very little Regard to their King, who has only the Shadow of Royalty. The King in our Author's Time worked at the Smith's Trade, and let out his Wives to the *Europeans* for his Living; yet he was very poor, as well as his People.

The chief Islands of this River are, 1. *Corisco*, which signifies Lightning among the *Portuguese*, who *Dapper* says gave it this Name, because it lightned when they first discover'd it. He places it 3 or 4 Leagues S. of *St. John's Cape*. 'Tis low, and encompassed with Sands, except on the N.W. Side, where 'tis a little higher and stony. *Sanutius* says, 'tis cover'd all over with Trees of Red Wood. *Dapper* places the Road where Ships anchor 45 Miles N. of the Line, and says, a Brook of fresh Water comes out of a Wood on the N.W. which becomes salt after long running. He adds, that this Island stands in the King of *Benin's* Territories, is half a League in Extent, and has Plenty of Wood and Water, but is not inhabited. *Du Pleffis* places it on the River of *Angex* in the Kingdom of *Catombo*, which he makes one of the Divisions of N. Congo. *Bosman* makes the Greater and Lesser *Corisco* two Islands in the Gulph of *Guinea*, and says, the *Dutch* had once a Lodge on the former; but they abandon'd it, because 'twas too far, and turn'd to very little Account. The *Sansons* set down but one *Corisco*, which they place above 180 Miles up a River. *Moll* places it above 120 Miles up the River *St. Benito*.

2. *Pongo* or *Pengo*, which the *Flemings* call the King's Island, because *Dapper* says 'tis the Seat of their King, who has a great Palace here. *Moll* places it in the Mouth of the River *de Angre*, whose Banks the *Sansons* say are inhabited by a People that delight in War.

3. The Isle of *Parrots*, which *Dapper* says is so called because it abounds with those Birds. *Moll* places this in the River *Gambon*, above 20 Miles S. of *Ango*.

The most noted Capes here are, 1. *Cape St. Claire*, a very high Point on the N. Side of the Mouth of the River *Gabon*, according to *Dapper*, who says 'tis like that of *St. John*; but 'tis distinguished by a Piece of white Earth, which looks like a Sail as one comes near the Coast. The Soil is very poor. He adds, that towards the S. Point the Shore is low, and cover'd with Trees; and that some Leagues further S. there are Downs called *Serniffes*, mixed with white Spots, with some Plains opposite them it on the N. Side, against which the Sea beats with great Violence.

2. *Sand Point* or *South Nook*, which *Dapper* places 3 or 4 Miles within the Country. *Bosman* says, there's better Water here than at *Cape Lopez*, and that the neighbouring Country abounds with Elephants, Buffles, Wild Boars, &c. Their Buffles are red, with strait Horns extended backward, about the Size of an Ox, and run swift, tho' they seemed lame behind. The Negroes say, that when shot, they fly at the Men if they are in the Way, and kill them; but they generally prevent it by shooting them from high Trees. There is Plenty of Pasture here, so that their Flesh is good and fat.

3. *Cape Lopes, de Loop, or de Lopez Gonsalvez*. *Lange* says, that the adjacent Country abounds with Camels, Lions, Tygers, Bufflers, Civet-Cats, Monkies, and Parrots; and that their Priests go every Midnight into a Wood with a crooked Stick, and a Bell fasten'd at the End on't, to consult the Devil, as they pretend, about secret Matters. *Dapper* places this Cape 12 Leagues S. of *Gabon*, in S. Lat. 1. and the Road where Ships anchor in Lat. 1. 46. He says, that the Negroes don't live at the Cape; but as soon as they see a Ship coming, they run to the Shore with their Ivory, and stay there a few Houses till the Ships depart. The King of the Country lives 7 or 8 Leagues within Land. Most of the Inhabitants of this and the Coast of *Gabon* understand a little *Portuguese*. He observes, that in *March*, *April* and *May*, the Tide runs S. from this Cape along the Coast of *Angola*; but at other Times it flows N. The *Sanfons* say,

the Inhabitants resemble those of *Gabon* in their Manners and Customs. *Bosman* makes it the farthest Point of the Gulph of *Guinea*, and places it in a few Minutes of S. Lat. He says, 'tis as much or more frequented than *Gabon*, because most of the Slave Ships come hither for Wood and Water, of which there's always Plenty, and the former ready cut in great Quantities, of which they sell a whole Fathom for a Bar of Iron. *Europeans* present the King with 3 or 4 Knives, a Piece of Cloth or Coral, or a Bottle of Malt Spirits, by Way of Acknowledgment for the Liberty of fetching Water. The Trade here consists in Elephants Teeth, Wax, and Honey, with which it abounds; but there's not enough for the Multitude of Ships which daily touch here. The *Grandeas* distinguish themselves by the Name of King, Prince, and Admiral; but they have only the Titles, like those of *Gabon*; and our Author says, there's no manner of Difference betwixt the Inhabitants of both Places, only those of *Gabon* are the most civil and sociable. There's a good Road here, full of prodigious Shoals of Fish; and tho' there are some Sand-Banks near it, yet they are safely passable at high Water.

Lange says, that the River *Olibatta*, which *Moll* and the *Sanfons* place on the E. Side of the Cape, and *Dapper* on the S. is full of Sea-Horses, with Feet like Swans Feet, and two long Teeth more beautiful than Ivory. *Dapper* says, the principal Trade of these Parts is managed in this River.

II. C O N G O.

Heylin says, it has the Name from its chief Kingdom, and bounds it on the S. with *Cafraria*, and the Mountains of the *Moon*; on the W. with the *Ethiopick* or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the N. with *Benin*, and other Parts of *Negroland*; and on the E. with *Zanzibar*, and Part of the *Abyssine* Empire. *Fer*, who also calls it *Lower Guinea*, bounds it with *Monomotapa* on the S. and the Lake of *Zaire* on the E. *Du Plessis* extends it from Long. 30. to 50. and from North Lat. 14. to South Lat. 15. and bounds it on the W. with the *Ethiopick* Ocean, the Sea, and the Country of *Guinea*. *Luyts* and others

others extend it no farther than from the Northern Tract of the W. Part of *Cafraria* to *St. Catherine's Cape*, in S. Lat. 2. and some begin it betwixt that and *Cape Ledo*, in S. Lat. 10. The *Sansons* and others extend these Dominions no farther than *Congo Proper*; but *Luyts*, whom *Moll* follows, bounds it on the S. with the Kingdoms of *Mataman* and *Malemba*; on the E. by the *Lake Zaire* and *Abyssinia*; on the N. by *Maccoco* and *Gabon*; and on the W. by the Sea of *Congo*.

Heylin says, the Air is so temperate, that Winter here is like Autumn in *Italy*, and that the very Tops of the Mountains are free from Cold, so that the People do not add to their Cloathing, or increase their Fires. The Days and Nights here are almost equal all the Year round, because the Country lies under and on both Sides the Equator. The Heats of the Summer are cool'd by continual strong Winds, Rains, and the great Dews of the Nights. *Luyts* says, the Rain falls every Day from *April* to *September*, but at no other Time.

Morery says, the Soil is very fruitful, because of a great many Rivers which overflow the Country in rainy Weather. It abounds with very good Citrons and Oranges, Dates, of which the Negroes make Wine; Cedars, Cassia, Tamarinds, and other odoriferous Trees, together with several Wild Beasts, particularly great Elephants, one of whose Teeth is above Two Hundred Weight; Wild Boars called *Engalo*, the Shavings of whose Teeth they boil in Broth, and prescribe it as a certain Remedy against Fevers; for which Reason the *Portuguese* buy great Quantities of it. He adds, that there is also seen on these Trees a pretty spotted Beast called *Entiengie*, which never comes to the Ground, but they say dies as soon as it touches it. Its Fur is wore by none but Kings, and such Lords as they give Leave to. *Heylin* says, it abounds with Herbs, Plants, and great Store of Pasture, which feeds Multitudes of Cattle, Sheep, Goats, Stags, Deer, Hares, and Conies, together with Serpents, which will eat a Deer at once; ravenous Tygers, and abundance of Wild and Tame Fowl. *Morden* says, here are Mines of Gold and Silver, tho' the Natives use Shells for Money. *For* and *Du Plessis* tell us too, that it abounds

with Rice, Millet, Pepper, Sugar-Canes, and with the same Animals as *Guinea*; and the *Sansons*, that they have Mines of Iron, Chrystal, Marble, Jasper, Porphyry, &c.

Morery says, that most of the Natives are very black, but not so deformed as those of *Nubia* and *Guinea*. They are proud and insolent to one another, but obliging to Strangers. They are witty and fiery, but withal so cowardly, that 20 *Europeans* will make 200 of them run. Their Governors have the Title of *Mani*, with the Name of the Province they command. Besides, some Lords have the Title of Dukes, others of Counts, and Lords of lesser Quality are only called *Mani*. The *Portuguese* call them all *Souas*: But he adds, that before they introduced Christianity here, great Persons had no other Name besides that of their Lordships, and the common People the Names of Beasts and Plants; but afterwards they were named at their Baptism. *Heylin* describes the Blacks here of low Stature, thick Lips, strong, and long liv'd, with very little curl'd Hair on their Heads, and the Apples of their Eyes of several Colours, which makes them look ghastly. They are so populous, that 'tis said the *Portuguese* alone send from hence 28000 Slaves a Year to *Brasil*, without any visible Diminution of their Number. As for their Religion, some worship the Sun and Moon, others the Earth, and others Wild Beasts and Serpents. Christianity was first preached to them in the Reign of *John II. King of Portugal*, Anno 1490, by *Gonzalus de Sufa*, who converted and baptized the King, his Uncle, his Queen, and one of his Sons, with a great many of his chief Subjects, who, when their first Bishop came to live among them, caused the Ways from the Coast to *Banza*, which is 150 Miles, to be covered with Mats, and offered him as he passed along abundance of Lambs, Chickens, Kids, Partridges, Fish, Venison, and other Necessaries: But tho' many of the other Provinces too were converted, they apostatized to their former Paganism. Father *Maffeus*, a Jesuit, says, that three *Dominican* Fryars were the first Religious Persons sent hither about the Year 1485, (when the *Portuguese* first discovered this Part of the World), one of whom was killed, and had his Vestments and Utensils abused by the *Giaghs*, when

when they over-ran Congo, and the other two died natural Deaths. They were succeeded by 12 *Franciscans*, to whom alone some ascribe the whole Conversion of this Country; for they pretend their Predecessors had not Time enough, tho' it seems he that was killed had been Chaplain to the *Congolan* Army, which gave him a great Opportunity, if he took the Pains to improve it. Several other Missionaries were sent hither after these, and in 1640, Pope *Urban VIII.* at the Request of *Don Alvaro VI.* King of Congo, dispatched others; but they met with so many Delays, that they did not arrive here till the Year 1645, under the Pontificate of *Innocent X.* and the Reign of *Don Garcia II.* *Alvaro's* Successor. They were very well received, especially by the Count of *Sogno*, who met them several Miles from his Palace, went to Mass with them, and adorned their Altars with the choicest Furniture in his Wardrobe. After this, he with one of his Sons were baptized, as were also the King, Queen, and Prince of Congo. *Morery* tells us, that in 1647 the Pope, at the King of Congo's Desire, sent *Capuchins* hither, who were well received, and soon spread themselves thro' the Provinces; since which they have been often followed by others to labour in the same Vineyard, particularly the Fathers *Michael Angelo* of *Gattina*, *Denis de Carli* of *Piacenza*, and *Jerom Merolla da Sorrento*, three *Capuchins*, (sent in 1666, 1667, and 1682,) whose Voyages, bound up with *Churchill's* Collection, Vol. I. furnish us with several curious and new Remarks on this Country, which we shall intersperse with our Description when we come to the particular Geography. *Morden* says, the *Congolans* in general have so little Regard to Learning, that when *Emanuel* King of *Portugal* sent one of their Kings all the fairest Books of the Law he could meet with, and Doctors to expound them, he sent the Doctors back, and ordered the Books to be burnt, saying, they were enough to confound his Subjects Brains, and that they only wanted Sense and Reason. *Fer* says of the People in general, that they are good natur'd, strong, and pretty gross. They make Cloths, Velvets, Damasks, Brocards, &c. very well, but neglect Architecture, tho' they have the best Stones in the World for Building.

All their Musick is nothing but a confused Noise of several Strings, with Singing, and their Money little grey Shells taken on the Coast of *Bamba*. *Luyts* says, the Inhabitants are well set, and have vast Musches. They are generally cloathed with Cotton Shrowds, live in mean Cottages, and use Fish-Shells and Potsherds instead of Money. Tho' they are ignorant of most Arts and Sciences, yet they understand the Use of Physical Herbs, and every Man is his own Doctor. Christianity is chiefly professed by some of those who live near the Coast; but there are many Idolaters in the Inland Country. He adds, that they are very apt to steal Foreigners Goods, and that the Women are incontinent, and fond of white Men. We refer for the rest of their History to the particular Provinces.

Du Plessis, who calls this whole Country we are now about to treat of by the Name of South Congo, divides it into the Kingdoms of *Louango*, *Cacongo*, *Congo Proper*, *Dongo* or *Angola*, and the Country of *Anzicains*, with their Subdivisions. The three chief Divisions of *M. Fer* are *Loango*, *Congo Proper*, and *Angola*, to which *Luyts* adds the Territories of the *Gale* and *Ansicans*, according to our Tables. Our Map brings us first to

I. LOANGO, LOUANGA, or the Land of BRAMAS.

The *Sansons* extend it 220 Miles in a direct Line along the Coast, from Cape *St. Catherine* on the N. W. to the River *Loango* on the S. E. *Moll*, who begins it at Cape *Lopas*, almost 60 Miles farther N. W. makes it 290 Miles from thence to the River *Zara*, where it falls into the Ocean on the S. E. The former extend it 350 Miles from E. to W. where longest, and *Moll* 300. They bound it with the Countries of *Anzicains*, *Monsoles*, and *Pombo*, on the E. *Sunde* and *Songo* on the S. the Sea on the W. and the Country of *Gabon* on the N. *Dapper* bounds it on the S. with the Kingdom of *Cacongo*. *Pigafetta* bounds it on the S. with Cape *St. Catherine*, contrary to our Maps, and extends it N. as far as Cape *Lopas*, and 150 German Leagues within Land. But *Sam. Bruno*, with whom *Moll* agrees, separates it from *Congo Proper* on the S. by the River *Zaire*.

He

He bounds it on the E. with the Country of *Amboes*, a People betwixt them and the *Anzicains*. *Heylin* carries it N. as far as *Benin*, and extends it 200 Miles within Land. *Ovington* says, the Air here is very hot and sulphurous, because it lies under the Line; but the Natives endure it well enough.

Heylin says, 'tis pretty fruitful, and abounds with Elephants more than any of the other Provinces. *Fer* says, it abounds with Corn and Palm Trees, which afford the Natives Bread, Wine, Oil, and Apparel. He adds, that it yields all other Necessaries for Life; but the *Sanfons* say, here's no Gold or Silver; and *Ovington* observes, they have no Value for those Metals, but prefer Pewter or Brass before them. He says, they have Store of Cattle, and Sheep with harsh Hair like Dogs instead of Wool. *Dapper* says, the Country produces great and small Millet, Batataes, Bacoves, Injames, Ginger, and other Fruits unknown to us, together with Pot-Herbs, Gourds, Sugar-Canes, Tobacco, Ananas which grow wild in the Fields, some Grain of Paradise, Bananas, Mandioquas, a mealy Root, of which hereafter; Majara, an Herb which they eat with broil'd Fish, Salt and *Brasil* Pepper; Callebasses, which they dry when ripe, and make Bottles of them for Wine and Oil; red well-tasted Apples, which grow on Dwarf-Trees; Cucumbers, and Cola-Trees, which they plant 10 or 12 together in Form of a Pavillion: The Fruit is pretty good, but hinders Sleep if eaten at Night. They have Cassia, and Malondo, an aromack Root, but very few Oranges, Lemons, and Coco-Nuts, because they don't take the Pains to cultivate them. They have Cotton and *Brasil* Pepper, which grows here of its own Accord, together with three Sorts of Pease; one Sort is very large, and grows under Ground; the two others are like our small Beans and *Turkey* Pease. They have also two Sorts of Beans very much valued by the Gentry. They have a Tree called *Matomba*, which yields Wine, but not very good. Its Branches serve to make Bed-Posts, and Poles that they lay upon Houses, which they afterwards cover with Leaves. He adds, that these Trees and Fruits are to be met with every where except at *Majumbia* and *Cape Lopez*, where the Inhabitants don't take the

Pains to cultivate them, but are contented with the Bread of Bananas and Fish. Here are also three Harvests a Year of small Millet and Pulse. They don't know the Use of Ploughs, but dig up the Ground by the Strength of their own Arms with a Sort of Spade like a Mason's Trowel. He says, they have Hogs, Kine, Goats, Wild-Fowl, and all Sorts of Game.

Sir *Thomas Herbert* says, the People of this Country are Man-eaters, and such nimble Archers, that they can shoot up a Dozen Arrows before one falls to the Ground. Their other Arms are Cutlasses, long and small Clubs, and Darts barbed with Iron, very sharp and bright, and sometimes poison'd with the Juice of the *Quacumburez* Tree, which is like Milk. They have a high Tree called *Miconda*, which is 12 Fathom about, but too porous for Building. He adds, that they have Store of Gold, contrary to the *Sanfons*.

Dapper says, the People are strong, vigorous, well shap'd, jealous, luxurious, vigilant, active for Gain, suspicious of Strangers, free to those they know, and great Drinkers of Palm Wine. *Ovington* says, they are numerous. The former adds, that they are meer Slaves to their Nobility, only they are at Liberty to go out of the Country; but while they stay, they must own them for their Protectors, and be entirely at their Service; and the Gentleman in Requitall is obliged to defend them, and to procure them Justice at his own Charge. He determines all Causes in his Wine-Cellar, where he treats his Assistants with Provisions, and 7. or 8. Flaggons of Wine. He adds, that the common People pay so much Honour to those Noblemen, that when they chance to meet them, they fall on their Knees, strike their Hands, and turn their Eyes from them, because they think it rude to look on them.

Dapper says, all their Habits are wove out of Palm-Tree Leaves, the first Sprigs being cut off, dry'd, and soften'd with Palm Wine rubbed between their Hands. The Men are naked to the Waist, which they gird about with a Robe that reaches to their Feet. These Robes are of four Sorts: The finest and best are embroider'd; and tho' but two Spans and a half in Breadth, take up their best Workmen above a Fortnight to make

one. None wear them but the King, without his Leave. The second Sort is also figur'd, and looks as well as the other, but is not half so fine. The two other Sorts, which are worn by the common People, are of coarser Workmanship, and all plain. Some are flownc'd like some *European* Stuffs. All the Males are obliged by a certain Law to wear over their Privy Parts the Skin of a wild or tame Cat, Otter, Monkey, or Civet. Some of them are very prettily spotted, but none must wear that Sort besides the King without his Leave. He and his Gentlemen wear 5 or 6 of them sew'd together, with the black and white Feathers of a Parrot stuck in the Middle in Form of a Rose, and edg'd with Elephants Hair. They tie on their Clothes with a String made of the Hemp which is drawn from the Leaves of the *Matomba* Tree; besides two Girdles which they wear one over another, of Thread or red or black Lint, and commonly three Ells and a quarter broad. Those who can't afford it make Girdles of Rushes of Palm-Tree Sprigs, and the Bark of a Tree called *Catta*, of which the *Portuguese* make Matches. They put the Skin between the two Belts, tie it in several Knots, and fasten many little Bells to it. They wear Necklaces of white and black Corals, and triangular Chains of Brass. They have also flat Shells about the Size of a Wafer, which they make round, and polish for their Necklaces, as also Elephants Teeth. The common People go bare legged, but the better Sort wear about their Legs Rings of Copper or Iron about the Thickness of one's little Finger, or Beads of black and white Coral. They also wear Bracelets; but they make 5 or 6 of every one of those which the *Dutch* bring'em. They wear Copper Rings on their Fingers, of which they also make Idols, and others use Bracelets of Coral. Behind their Shoulders they hang a Bag wrought with the Needle, about an Ell long, in which they put their Gourd Bottles. They have Caps also wrought with the Needle, but much more artificially. They never go abroad without their Arms. The Women's Robes, which are of the same Stuff with the Men's, don't reach below the Knee. Sometimes they wear over them Cloths of *Haerlem* or other *European* Stuffs, but without any Girdle. They

go with their Heads and the upper Parts of their Bodies naked, but wear some Strings of Coral about their Necks, Arms and Legs.

Dapper says, their ordinary Diet is fresh Fish smoak'd, especially Pilchards, which they season with *Achi* or *Brasil* Pepper, Palm-Oil, and a little Salt; but the better Sort eat Bread of Millet, with other Provisions.

He tells us, that their common Oath in Discourse is, by the King; but in the Way of Justice, they make the accused Person drink a Glass full of Bondes, which are the Scrapings of a reddish Root mixed together, upon which the Ganga makes his Imprecations. The poor deluded People derive all sad Accidents from the *Moquisses*, or their Enemies Idols; so that if a Man is drown'd, they say he was bewitched; if he is devour'd by a Wild Beast, they pretend that his Enemy was turned into such a Beast, and the like. When a Person has a Mind to accuse another, he goes to the King, and prays him to appoint a Judge of the Bondes, on paying the Duties. The Prince's Council commonly names 9 or 10, who go to the Highway at 3 a Clock in the Afternoon, and there sit down in the Form of a Semicycle. Then the Accuser comes with all his Kindred and Neighbours, exhorts the Judges to do him Justice, and causes them to confirm their Promise by an Oath in the Name of the Fetisis. The Person accused appears with all his Friends and Neighbours on the other Side, in order to be examin'd. Then they present the accused Persons with a Cup full of the Liquor of Bondes, and while they drink, the Judges beat a Drum. When every one has drank, and returned to his Place, the Judges throw little Sticks of Bacoves at the Accused, ordering them to fall to the Ground if they are guilty; and if innocent, to make Water. Then the Judges cut the Sticks in Pieces, and scatter them on the Ground; upon which the Persons accused rise and walk up and down upon these Sticks; and if any one has a Mind to make Water, and does it upon one of those Splinters, they carry him home with Shouts of Joy; but if any chance to fall down, the Fright and Cries of his Assistants stun him, so that he has no Power to get up again. They take this for a real Sign of Guilt;

Guilt; and if the Person deserves Death, or has many Enemies, they carry him forth with a little Way out of the Town into the high Road, and quarter him; but otherwise, they give him a Drench of certain Herbs and humane Excrements, which they pretend is to expel the Poison of the Bondes; but it often proves more fatal than the first Dose. He observes, that those who administer this Liquor of Bondes are very Villains, commit a Thousand roguish Tricks, and spare nothing to ruin those they hate. But the Rich commonly hire their Slaves to drink it for them; and if they are very sick, they give them the common Purge for the Bondes, and make their Masters drink it too. Besides, some get clear off with a Bribe. When a Person is condemned, they ask the King's Leave to execute him: But before the Answer returns, they are generally half killed by the Blows and other Insults that are common with all Mobs. Both Sexes, young and old, love to share in the Execution. He adds, that Witches are often burnt.

Next *Dapper* comes to their Marriage, in which he says they have no other Formality than to get the Friends Consent. Some chuse Children of 7 or 8 Years old, and carry them home, where they breed them up according to their own Fancy for their Wives: But the Parents commonly keep the Daughters till they have had their *Menses*. Then they make them shave their Heads, and leave only a little Hair to grow round at the Extremities like a Garland, to signify that they are marriageable; upon which the Gallants give the Parents a Meeting, bring the Money, and take the Girls away. If a Man has to do with a Girl before she has had her *Menses*, he is obliged to atone before the King and the whole Court by Dances and ridiculous Ceremonies, and then the Prince gives him a Discharge. Some think that without this formal Absolution their Lands would grow dry and barren; but our Author says, most of them ridicule this Superstition, and have more Wit than to acquaint the King with all the Liberties they take with their Spouses. He tells us, that their Women are put to all the Slavery: They till the Ground, sow, gather in Harvest, pound the Miller, make the Bread, dress Viſtuals, and the Men on-

ly prepare the Drink. They dare not speak to their Husbands but on their Knees, and as soon as they see them, must clap their Hands to testify their Joy and Respect. While a Woman has her *Menses*, she is cautious of touching her Husband's Viſtuals, or coming into his Sight, dawbs her Body with Red Wood, and binds her Head with a Cord. If a Man debauches his Neighbour's Wife, he comes off for Money; but the Women pay much dearer, are sometimes turn'd out of Doors for less Faults than Adultery, and those that entertain them are obliged to pay a Sum of Money, or find other Women in their Place. Yet it seldom happens that they draw away one another's Wives, but are commonly Informers, when they spy out such an unlawful Correspondence. If an Affront of this Nature be put upon Gentlemen, they make no Noise on't, but take Revenge in Private. *Dapper* adds, that the Children always follow the Condition of their Mothers, whether they be bond or free.

As to their Employments, he says they have Weavers, Hatters, Smiths, Potters, Polishers of Coral and Shells, Masons, Fishermen, Canoe-builders, Vintners, &c. They make a Sort of Napkins three quarters of an Ell square, of the Sprigs of the Tree *Matomba*, which they peel off like Hemp. They also make little Pieces of Stuff of it called *Libongos*, which the Portuguese transport to *Louando St. Paulo*, where they go instead of Money, and four of them sew'd together are called *Panos Sambes*. They give 17 *Libongi* for a Feather-Bed of *Silefia*, and 5 for a Pound of Ivory. The *Louango* Money consists of Handkerchiefs, and small square Pieces of *Matomba* Cloth, the least a Span and a half square, and are worth about 1 d. *Dapper* adds, that before the Establishment of the *West India* Company of the *Netherlands*, the Dutch gave these Handkerchiefs for Copper, Ivory, and other Goods that they bought here, which advanced the Value of them; but that now they are very much sunk, and they use the Shells called *Simbo*, which are found near the Island of *Loanda*.

Dapper says, their chief Trade is in Slaves, Ivory, Copper, Pewter, Lead and Iron, which they fetch from Mines at a great Distance, particularly at *Sondi*, in the Road

from *Pombo* to the Country of the *Abyssines*, whither a Company of Smiths go every *September*, and set their Slaves at work in the Copper Mines; but they are not good Refiners, and leave much Dross of other Metals in it, except the *Europeans* give them good Founders to teach them. They return about *May* with Copper and small Elephants Teeth. The *Portuguese* also bring Elephants Tails from hence, and transport them to *Louando St. Paulo* for the Use of the Negroes, who weave the Hair into Necklaces and Girdles. In Exchange for Ivory and Slaves, the Inhabitants of *Louango* carry those of *Boekkemale*, Salt, Palm-Oil, Cutlasses, *Silefia* Feather-Beds, square black Looking-Glasses, Cushions of the Cloth of Palm-Trees, and other Rarities, with which they load their Slaves, when they han't Time to go thither themselves. He observes, that the Trade of *Louango* to *Pombo*, *Sondi*, *Monfol*, and *Great Macoco*, would be very good, were it not for the *Jago's*, who rob upon the Roads. He adds, that *Europeans* are obliged to make Presents to the King, the Chief of his Wives, to two Gentlemen who are Intendants of his Finances, and to the Governor of *Majumba*, for Liberty to trade. Besides, they are obliged to see certain Fishermen on the Coast, who understand a little *Portuguese*, for Interpreters, because the Natives understand none but their Mother Tongue. *Ovington* says, the Money current among themselves is thin Mats of Grass about 16 Inches square, for one of which they buy three Kankies or small Farthing Cakes when Corn is dear, and 5 when 'tis cheap. They also use these Mats in adorning their Bodies, and covering their Privy Parts.

Dapper comes next to their Funerals. He says, that when any are sick, their Relations seem very unconcern'd, but cry and howl as soon as they are dead. They expose the Corps three Hours in the Street, come about it in Crowds, ask, Why it dy'd, and whether it wanted Victuals and Drink? Mean while, the Kindred bring out all the Houshold Goods to interr with the Deceased, and then some of the Company take the Corps upon their Shoulders, and run with it to the Grave, the rest following in the same Pace, and there throw in the Corps, with the Deceased's Goods. If

there be more than the Tomb will hold, they tie the rest to Pots fix'd there for the Purpose, and cut them in Pieces, to prevent their being stolen; after which the Kindred meet every Night and Morning for 6 Weeks to lament over the Deceased. When a Person of Quality is sick, they set all the Magicians in the Country at work to cure him; and if he dies, all his Neighbours and Acquaintance come to his House with their Hands on their Heads, crying and singing mournful Ditties. They lay out the Deceased in the Middle of his Chamber, and placing him upon a Mat or Beam, supported by Wooden Pillars, shave him, pare his Nails, wash him, and rub him with Red Wood. The Men stand by him while the Women dance, and sing his Funeral Praises. This lasts for two or three Days, and then he is interred with his Goods, as before. Besides this, they enquire if the Deceased's Life was not shorten'd by the Enchantments of some *Moquisie*, in this Manner: One of the Relations goes to the *Ganga*, who sitting on the Ground behind his House, lays a great Knife before him, presses it often with his Fingers, then rubs his Hands, and demands of the Spirits, Whether the Deceased was kill'd by Enchantment? When the *Ganga* has rubbed his Hands so long that he seems to have lost his Senses, they make no Doubt but the Deceased dy'd a violent Death. Then they continue their Questions to him, in order to find out the Author: But if the *Ganga* does not give satisfactory Answers, they run about to others perhaps for two or three Months, till they have Ground to fix an Accusation on some Person of the Village, and then they ask Leave of the King to put the Party to the Tryal of Bondes, already mention'd: Upon this Occasion all the Inhabitants of the Place appear, for the Absence of any one denotes them guilty. Those who preside at this Examination first chuse a Man out of every Quarter, and make him drink; and if any of them falls down, all those of the particular Quarter for which he drank must pass the like Examination one after another; but if none fall, then the Women must drink in their Turns; and if one of them make but the least Trip, they presently condemn and execute her as a Sorceress without Mercy.

As to their Right of Inheritance, *Dapper* says, that after a Man's Death, his Brothers and Sisters are Heirs of all, and obliged to bring up the Children till they are able to shift for themselves.

We come next to their Religious Superstitions. *Herbert* says, they reckon the Sun and Moon Man and Wife, and the Stars their Children, and make the Devil their Oracle: Yet *Dapper* says, most of them have a faint Idea of God, and term him *Sambian Pongo*. They use Circumcision, but give no other Reason for it than Tradition. They have House-Devils and Field-Devils, who they say preside over Rains, Winds, Storms, Agriculture, Fish, and Sea-Monsters. They pretend that some of them preserve Health, and keep off Maladies and bad Accidents; others protect their Families, and some prophesy and reveal Mysteries. Some of these Images represent a Man, others little Staffs, tipp'd at one End with some Metal, on which is engrav'd the Figure of a Man's Head. They dress up the Heads of these Images with Cock's Feathers, and cover their Bodies with several Pieces of Cloth. There are some lesser ones which they wear about their Necks like Boxes, or only a String in Form of a Necklace or Bracelet, to which they tie little Feathers, and two or three Shells. Their other Idols are in a Buffler's Horn, whose Concavity they fill up, and put an Iron Buckle at the least End, to which they hang small Pieces of Stuff; or else they knead red and white Earth with Water in a great Pot, till it rises as much above the Brims as there is in the Vessel. They mark some white Lines upon the Sides, whereon they paint several Colours, and fasten some Hooks, Nails, and Iron Stubbs, in it, on which they hang Shells and Pieces of Stuff. Their Field Idols are of two Sorts, Good and Bad. When they set up an Image to one Sort, they do the like to the other, for fear of incurring its Hatred. Those who dedicate themselves to serve as *Moquisses* or Priests are cross or distemper'd old Men. They have several ridiculous Ceremonies at their Consecration; but we refer for the Particulars to *Dapper*, and only observe, that they have a Ring fasten'd about their Arm to put them in Mind of the Promise they then make; so that when they swear, they do it by their

Ring, wishing that the Devil, to whom they are consecrated, may carry them away if they don't say true, or make good their Promise. But *Dapper* takes Notice, that they seldom swear, and when they do, they never fail of keeping their Words. The King wears *Mokisses* or Memorials of these Idols in so many different Forms, as our Author thought would be too long to describe. They say, that when any one is sick, the Kindred meet and invoke his Devil for several Days successively, till he enters into his Body; and then they ask him, Why he afflicts a Person that is dedicated to his Service, and what Ordinances he has broke? To which they pretend the Devil makes Answer by the Mouth of the Patient, and then they endeavour to expiate the Offence by Offerings.

As to their Opinions of the Reasonable Soul, *Dapper* says, those of the Royal Race imagine that the Souls of the Deceased enter into the Bodies of those who are born in their Family. Some think the Soul mortal, others that the Souls of the Deceased become the Penates of their respective Families, and therefore they build them little Places under the Pent-house about a Span in Height, where every time they go to Meals they make an Offering of their Provisions. They hold there's no such thing as natural Death, but that all Persons are killed by the Malice and Enchantments of their Enemies, who they say raise them up again by the same Witchcraft, and transport them to the Deserts, where they make them work to enrich themselves, and give them no Salt to their Victuals, because they pretend that the least Taste of that would make them pursue their Murderers to the utmost. Some also, and particularly the Inhabitants of *Gobbi*, think that by these Sorceries they call out Souls from one Country to another. Others say, that when a *Moquisso* is provoked by the Breach of any Vow made to him, he has Power to punish the Criminal with Death. These Vows are imposed by the Fetisero's on all Infants before their Parents, and consist of Prohibitions rather than Commandments. Some for Instance are enjoined to abstain from such Flesh, Fowl, Fish, Herbs, Fruits, or the like, and if they do eat, to let no body know on't, but bury the Bones in a deep Hole in the Ground.

Ground, where no Creature can touch 'em. Some must not go over Water, tho' it were only to pass a Ditch: Others may go over Bridges, but they must not sail in Canoes; with the like whimsical Prohibitions, respecting their Persons and Garbs. Their Ceremony of Purgation, if they chance to touch any thing defil'd, is no less ridiculous; but we refer the Curious for it to *Dapper*. He says, that if a Person commit Fornication, they prohibit him to eat of the Breast of a Buffler.

Our Author gives the following particular Explanation of what the *Ethiopians* intend by their *Moquisses* or *Mokiffes*. He says, they give this Name to every Thing which they think contains any secret or incomprehensible Virtue, to do Good or Evil, and to discover Things past or to come. But they pay no Worship to 'em, nor believe any thing of a future Life, but only understand by their *Mokiffes* certain hidden Qualities, of whose Cause and Effects they can give no Account; so that nothing but meer Fancy, as our Author observes, makes them ascribe good or ill Fortune to the Observation or Infraſſion of their Vows already mentioned. The Ignorant are farther confirmed in this by Antiquity, Custom, Education, and the Example of Kings and great Lords, who have an Interest in fomenting the Superstition, on purpose to gain the Respect of the People; and here *Dapper* observes, that they give their King the additional Title of *Moquisse*, to signify his unlimited Power, by which he is able with one Word to make rich or poor, to exalt or humble, and to put whole Provinces in Trouble, and Men in the Dust. Nay, they pretend that he has also a Power to bring down Rain, to turn himself into a Wild-Beast, and to make a Knot upon an Elephant's Tooth. The great Lords pretend to share in this Power, and have more or fewer Laws of *Moquisses* to observe, in Proportion to the Degree they stand in from the Royal Power and Dignity. Accordingly the Son of the King's Sister, while it sucks, is kept at *Kina*, and prohibited the Use of Pork. After he is wean'd, they remove him to *Moanza*, where he must not eat of the Fruit *Cola* in Company. When his Beard begins to appear, they carry him to the *Ganga Simeca*, a famous Priest, who enjoins him to eat no Pullets but such as

he kills and dresses himself. Then he is carried to *Salassi*, *Boeke*, and *Caye*, and is obliged to a great Number of Ceremonies till he succeeds in the Throne; after which he drowns the *Moquisses* and all in the Sea. All the Priests or *Moquisses* bear the Name of *Ganga*, with some Surname, taken either from the Place, Altar, Temple or Idol, to which they belong.

Dapper gives this Account of them: The Mosque of *Thirico* is placed in a great House of a considerable Village, 4 Leagues North from *Boarye*, and supported by Statues of Men. The *Ganga*, who is Lord of the Village, comes to do Homage to the *Moquisse*, by beating with a Stick upon a Fleece of Wool like the Clothworkers, and prays to him for the King's Health, the Prosperity of his Country, the Fruitfulness of his Lands, a flourishing Trade, and good Success in Fishing; and when the King is mentioned, the People then present clap their Hands. A great deal of Furniture belongs to the Worship of the *Moquisse* of *Boessi batta*; but the whole is never us'd, except on extraordinary Occasions. There are Drums and other Musical Instruments, little Bells, Juglers, Dancers, and a Bowl which they use like a Jugler's Box. 'Tis made of a Skin with Hair like that of a Lion. They fill it with several Sorts of Shells, Flints, little Bells, dry Plants, Herbs, Plumes, Mountain Chrystal, Gums, Bark of Trees, Roots, Grains, Pieces of Stuff, Fish-Bones, Claws and Horns, with the Teeth, Hair and Nails, of white Dwarfs, and other Stuffs. 'Tis sew'd at Top, and adorned with the Feathers of Parrots, Hens, or other Birds, with Laces and Pieces of Cloth of several Colours hanging round. On both Sides of the Bowl there are two Gourd Bottles, cover'd all over with great Shells, with a Plume of Feathers upon the Top, and a Bundle of Iron Hooks. The Feathers are dy'd with the Juice of certain Herbs and Red-Wood, and there's a Hole for pouring out the Wine and drinking. The *Ethiopians* are so fond of this Bowl, that they always carry it with them, tho' it be in Voyages of 50 or 60 Leagues, and tho' when full it weighs 10 or 12 Pound; yet they imagine it renders their Burden lighter. When they have a Mind to invoke the *Moquisse* for the Cure of the Sick, they bring this

this Bowl full of Trumpery, and the Ganga sits down upon the Ground, talks to himself as if he was in a Passion, and squeezes the Bowl between his Knees till it bursts, and the Contents fall out. All the while he tingles little Bells between his Fingers, and two of his Assistants strike upon a Drum and a Plate of Iron. Then the Ganga gathers up all the Things into the Bowl, rubs it against his Breast, puts it to his Nose, and every time pronounces certain Words. He paints his Eyelids, Face, and all his Body, with red and white Figures, representing Angles and Crosses, makes violent Contorsions of his Body, and raises and falls his Voice to Extremes. The People ever and anon mix their Cries with his; and when they hear him pronounce the Word *Mariomena*, they all cry out *Ka*. After the Ganga has counterfeited a Fit of Extasy, they pretend to bring him to his Senses again, by blowing a sharp Juice out of a Cane into his Face. Then he discovers what the *Boesi-batta* has revealed to him, prescribes the Remedies, tells what Ganga's must be consulted, and the Moquisies who are the Cause of the pretended Enchantment upon the Patient. They also apply to the Ganga's to know why it does not rain, whether such a one is dead, and to find out Robbers, together with Things past or to come, and the like. At the Village of *Kinka* on the Coast, which is the common Cœmetery of the Country, there's the Wooden Statue of *Kikokoo*, which represents a Man sitting. They pretend that he sits there to guard the Dead, lest the Magicians should pull them out of their Graves, and force them to work and fish with them in the Night. They say he also presides over the Sea, prevents Tempests, and brings Ships safe to Harbour. They celebrate the Feast of *Bomba* with Drums, which they beat with Hands and Feet. There are also ridiculous Dancers, who have Plumes of Feathers on their Heads dy'd with several Colours, a Suit of *Matomba* Cloth about their Bodies, and in each Hand a Rattle. Sometimes one of the Dancers runs away, and hides himself in a Wood, that he may be sought by Beat of Drum. Sometimes they cut down Trees, and draw them out of the Forrest, and in a Word commit all manner of Fooleries they can

think of. The Moquisie of *Malemba* is in more than ordinary Vogue, because they think it contributes to Health. 'Tis a Mat about a Foot and a half square, to which they hang Bottles, Shells, Feathers, Pipes of dry Cassia, little Bells, Rattles, Bones, &c. all dy'd Red. When they celebrate his Festival, a little Boy beats a Drum, and shakes the little Bells and Pipes of Cassia. They mingle chew'd *Cola*, the Filing of Red Wood, and Holy Water, in a Pot, and they throw it with Sparaguss upon the Moquisie, the King, and the Ganga, and have Songs suited to the Solemnity. The Gentlemen who are Spectators receive some Drops of the Holy Water, and when all is over, have the Honour to carry about the *Malemba* and the Appurtenances. The Feast of the Moquisie *Macongo* is celebrated almost after the same Manner, with Drums, Rattles, Osier-Baskets, Hooks, &c. dy'd Red. Moquisie *Mymi* has a green Arbour upon the Road, shaded with Bananas, Bacoves, and other Trees. The Negroes won't presume to touch it if they have had to do with their Wives the Night before. The Moquisie *Kymaye*, which is in a Village near *Boarye*, consists of Pieces of broken Pots, rotten Crowns of Hats, old Caps, and the like Stuff. The Ganga is a Jugler, whose Employment is to mark the People with white Chalk. He sits on a Skin, and pretends to expel Maladies, to make Plants thrive, to bring down Rain from Heaven, and assumes a Power over the Sea and Fishing. He also boasts his Descent from the Great *Kykokas*. There's a great Number of other Moquisies, to which they are such Bigots, that many of them refuse to drink with those who do not worship the same Moquisie as they do.

Dapper tells us, that the oldest Negroes say, this Kingdom was formerly divided into several Sovereignities, inhabited by different People, who were a long Time at War with one another. They were wild, and eat one another, as the *Fago's* do to this Day. Their common Food was Bananas, and the Flesh of Wild-Boars, Goats, Bufflers, Elephants, and other Venison, together with Fish, which they had from their own Rivers, when the Sea fail'd them. After a long War between these Princes, 'tis said that he of *Louango*, being strongest, sub-

subdued the others; tho' the Fortune of War had been so various for several Years, that *Mani*, *Wansi*, *Manipiri*, and *Manicy-longo*, beat him twice: But when they were conquer'd, *Mani Majumba* and the Governors of other more Northern Provinces submitted; after which he divided their Lands among his most faithful Servants, and leaving some Men in his own Country to govern it, he retired to the Province of *Piri*, and from thence soon after to *Banza Louangiri* or *Loango*, the present Seat of their Kings. *Heylin* says, the Inhabitants are called *Bramas*, and that their King was once subject to him of *Congo*, till he and the King of the *Anziqui* freed themselves from his Subjection; tho' the King of *Congo* is still called King of both, and reckons the King of *Loango* his Ally. We shall conclude our General History of this Country with an Account of the King's Officers and Court, from *Dapper*.

He has several Ministers of State, who are also Governors of his Provinces. The first is Admiral and Governor of *Louangiri*. The second commands in *Louango Mongo*, with two other Lords his Assistants, because that Province is too considerable for the Management of a single Person. The third is Sovereign of *Cylongatiamocango*, Governor of *Cylongo*, and Commissioner to enquire after Enchanters, and the Judgment of the *Bondes*. The 4th is Governor of *Piri*; the 5th Intendant of the Artillery; the 6th Governor of *Pottorvey*; the 7th Vice-Admiral; the 8th Chief Cup-bearer. Besides, there are a great many inferior Officers, and a Captain in every Quarter of *Louango*. This Prince is able to bring a prodigious Army into the Field, for which Reason he is very formidable to his Neighbours the Kings of *Cacongo*, *Goi*, and *Angola*; but he makes no Advantage of his superior Power, and lives in Peace with them. They don't punish Robbers with Death, but only force them to Restitution, and tie them to a Tree with their Hands behind them, to expose them to the Derision of those that pass by. If a Debtor prove Bankrupt, the Creditor may seize and detain the Person of any of his Relations till he is paid. The King has sometimes, according to the Report of the Negroes, 7000 Wives, for the new King always takes those of his Predecessor,

and adds a great Number of others himself: But he shuts up most of them in a Seraglio, and keeps them to work, except some that he picks out for his Diversion. If any of his Wives grow big, and he suspect her Chastity, she must undergo the Trial of *Bondes*, formerly mentioned, and if condemn'd, she and the Adulterer are burnt alive. The Council of State chuse the oldest of the Royal Race, and give her the Title of *Maconda*, i. e. Queen Mother or Regent. The King is obliged to shew more Respect to her than to his own Mother, so that the King dares undertake nothing without her Consent, nor deny her any Request, for fear, by her great Interest, she should stir up the People to Rebellion. This Regent, the King's Mother, and his Sisters, have the Privilege to lie with as many Men as they please, and none dares complain or endeavour to do themselves Justice the same Way, without exposing themselves to the imminent Danger of losing their Lives. When the King dies, his Brothers succeed him each in their Rank. They live in separate Towns, of which they are Sovereigns, and are fixed the nearer or farther off from the City of *Louango*, in Proportion to their Relation to the Crown, to which they can have no manner of Title if their Mother be not of noble Extraction. The King had 5 Brothers when our Author wrote, who were all very jealous of one another. If any one die, they presently give it out that he was poison'd by the rest, that they might be nearer to the Crown. The King wears *European* Stuffs, and both he and his Gentlemen are bound by a Vow to wear about their Arms the Skin of the same Species of Wild-Cats, which the Subjects hang on their Girdles, as we formerly observed. The King makes but two Meals a Day, and has two separate Houses, one for Eating, and the other for Drinking. He dines about 10 in the Forenoon. His Provision is served up in Baskets, and a Man goes before the Waiters ringing a Bell, to give Notice that the King's Table is going to be cover'd. When his Majesty comes to Dinner, the Master of the Household waits upon him to the Table, and then presently retires, leaves the King alone, and shuts the Chamber-Door, because neither Man or Beast may see the King eat

eat or drink on Pain of Death; and our Author instances in a fine Dog which had been presented him by the *Portuguese*, that he caus'd to be killed upon the Spot for his coming in, tho' he was very fond of him before. Nay, at another Time he says a Gentleman's Child having slept by Chance near the King in the Wine-House, and waking while his Majesty was drinking, he sentenced him to Death, and all the Favour which his Father was able to obtain was only a Week's Reprieve; after which his Nose was struck with a Hammer till the Blood dropped upon the King's Moccasins, and then he was drawn with a Cord about his Neck along the great Road, where they execute such as fall in the Tryal of the Bondes. When the King has dined, he is attended with a great many Noblemen, Officers, and his chief Favourites, to the Wine-House, which is the stateliest Structure of all the Palace, and is encompassed with a Court and a Palisado of Palm-Trees, where the King administers Justice to all that come. The Front is open a-top to let in the Light, and behind there's a By-place 20 Foot long, and 12 broad, where they keep the Wine for the King's own Use. 'Tis hung with Tapestry 8 Foot high, against which stands the King's Throne, which is made of little Rounds of Palm-Tree Branches very neatly twisted. 'Tis 5 Foot long, a Foot and a half high, and two Foot broad. There's a red and black Oser Basket on each Side, where the Negroes say he lays up Charms for the Preservation of his Person. Two Cup-bearers stand on both Sides: The one holds a pointed Piece of Iron in each Hand, which he strikes together when the King is going to drink, at the Sound of which all the People within or without the Room fall flat on their Faces, and lie there till the Cup-bearer gives the same Notice that the King has taken his Draught. The other presents the Cup to the Prince, with his Back towards him, and receives it the same Way. When the People rise again, they clap their Hands for Joy, and make Wishes for the King's Prosperity. They never drink in his Presence but with their Backs towards him. If there be a great deal of Business, he stays in the Chamber of Justice till 6 or 7 a Clock at Night; but otherwise, he goes

away at 4, and spends the fore Part of the Evening with his Wives. An Hour after Sun-set he retires into his Chamber to Supper, and then returns again to the Wine-House, where he stays till 9 or 10 a Clock at Night. He avoids Drunkenness, for fear of forfeiting his Subjects Respect, which is such, that none will drink out of the King's Vessel, nor touch what he leaves on his Plate, but bury all his Scraps in the Ground. The King never goes out of his Palace but on solemn Feast-Days, or some important Occasion, such as the receiving Foreign Ambassadors, suppressing Tumults, or hunting the Leopards, who make great Ravages near *Louango*. He also shews himself on the Day that they begin to till his Fields, when his Vassals bring their Tribute, and come to do him Homage. They chuse a great Place for the Purpose in the Middle of the Town, where they raise a Throne. They make the Seat of white and black Oser very neatly matted, and adorned with several small Curiosities, particularly a square Scutchion made of several little Patches of *European* Cloth of divers Colours, which hangs upon a Stick that is set up at the Back of the Seat. They place near him 7 or 8 Fans made of a Sort of Thread which they call *Pofet Mana*. 'Tis a Knot of Strings an Ell long, and as much broad, with great Tufts, which they tie round a Club about as thick as a Man's Arm, and three Ells long. This Club is adorned with a Capital, which resembles half a Globe, and is inlaid with little Horns and the Boesies of the Maldives, and stuck with white and black Parrots Feathers. Persons are kept in Pay to turn these Fans, which by their whirling round cause a fresh Air. They spread the Royal Seat with a Carpet 40 Ells long, and 24 broad, on which none must lay their Feet but the King and his Children. At 3 or 4 Paces Distance from the Carpet sit a great many Gentlemen holding Buffers Tails in Wooden Handles of half an Ell, cover'd with Leather or Cloth, and adorned with Cocks Quills and Feathers. Some sit upon the bare Ground, others upon Carpets of 4 or 5 Ells, but all cross-legged, and the Servants keep behind their Masters in the same Posture. He has Musick of three Sorts, *viz.* Horns of Ivory, and Drums

made of the Trunks of hollow Trees, cover'd on one Side with a Skin, and on the other there's an Opening two Fingers broad. They are beat 4 at once, sometimes with the bare Hands, and at other Times with a Hand and Drum-Stick. The third Sort is like Kettle-Drums, with a round Plank of Wood at Bottom full of Holes, of a Finger's Length, at each of which they hang two little Copper Plates, which make a Jingle when they are mov'd like a Horse's Collar of Bells. While the Musick plays, the Gentlemen dance round the Carpet. When the King has a Mind to testify his Approbation of any one's Dancing, he holds out his Arm to him; upon which the Dancer throws himself on the Ground, tumbles in the Dust, and then rises up, strikes his Hands, embraces the King's Knees, and lays his Head in his Bosom, which they call Saluting their Prince. The King's Vassals have also their separate Seats during this Solemnity, have the same Honour from their Subjects, salute one another by their respective Dependants, and send their Compliments to the King each by their own Subjects. Four Ushers attend before the King's Carpet with Iron Instruments, some an Ell in Length, which look like a Bell turn'd upside down. They strike them against Wood when they proclaim Silence, the King's Orders, or publick Outcries. He is also attended by Dwarfs, who stand with their Backs turned against him. They have prodigious great Heads, and wear a Skin ty'd with a String in Form of a Cap. The Negroes say, there's a certain Province full of Forrests, inhabited by none but this Sort of Dwarfs, and that they kill the most Elephants. They are called *Bakke Bakke*, and *Mimos*. White Men stand also before the Carpet, who wear the same Skins on their Heads, have light Hair, blue Eyes, and their Skin is of a pale livid Colour, like that of a dead Corps. Their Eyes are weak in the Day, yet strong and sparkling in the Light of the Moon. The Negroes look upon them as Monsters, and will not let them multiply. They are descended from Negro Parents, which some attribute to the Strength of the Mother's Imagination in Child-bearing; but *Vossius* says, that in certain Provinces of *Guinea* remote from the Coast, there are entire Nations of the same

Colour, whom the true Blacks will not come near for fear of Infection; from whence that learned Critick concludes, that those white *Moors* are no better than Lepers, and that their Whiteness is the Effect of a Malady, which dries up the Skin; and our Author says, that all the Negroes would be subject to the like, if they did not prevent it by repeated Frictions of their Bodies with Oil and Fat, which he thinks is both a Preservative of Health, and contributes to the black Lustre of their Complexions, which they reckon the sovereign Degree of Beauty. He observes, that the Negroes their Enemies often attack them in the Day, and put them to Flight; but the white *Moors* make the same Reprizals on them in the Night. The *Portuguese* call them *Albini*; and because they are strong, carried some of them to their Mines in *Brasil*; but they had rather die than be Slaves. The *Portuguese* and *Dutch* Travellers say, they have seen some *Albini* in the *Indies*, *Borneo*, and in *New Guinea*. The King of *Louango* uses the Ministry of the *Albini* in the Honours which he pays to the *Moquisses*; for which Reason the People call themselves *Moquisses Campestres*, i. e. Field Devils.

In important Affairs, the King takes the Advice of his Nobles, who are then permitted to come to the Carpet with their Attendants, and he often sends for some of the Princes to consult with them. The Audience holds from 3 a Clock in the Afternoon to 4 or 6 at Night, according to Business.

Every 4th of *January* all his Subjects Wives are obliged to repair to his Palace, to receive Orders to go and sow his Lands, which are in a large Plain, two Leagues long, and one broad. Some Men also go with them, but 'tis only to swagger about with their Arms, to allot every one her Task, and to keep them from Mischief or Quarrelling. The King also comes to them at 3 a Clock in the Afternoon to encourage them to perform their Work well, and none must be absent from this Rendezvous, on Pain of 9 or 10 Sols Fine in the Money of that Country. The Wives also of those who are the Subjects of any Noble that is a Vassal to the King, are obliged to do as much for their particular Master; but then when Harvest comes, he distributes all the Crop

Crop among the Peasants. *Dapper* adds, that all Lands are common; but that as soon as any one begins to clear a Field, it becomes his sole Propriety, and none must seize or appropriate any Part of it.

When an Embassador or a Gentleman wants to speak with the King, he demands Audience by striking his Hands two or three times, to which an Answer is returned with the same Ceremony. Then he says, *Audience in the Name of God*: To which they reply, *May God live for ever*; and then he is admitted. When a Gentleman has kill'd a Leopard, he brings its Tail to *Louango* at the End of a Palm-Tree Stick, and lays it on the Ground at one of the Corners of the King's Carpets. When they discover a Leopard about *Louango*, the Prince causes the Drum to be beat, and all the Inhabitants of the Town to take Arms. If his Lurking-place be too far for a Walk, the King causes himself to be carried thither in a square Chair made of matted Osier, and cover'd with blue Cloth. 'Tis two Foot deep, and carried by two Poles on four Men's Shoulders. When he is come to the Wood, some post themselves to watch the Avenues, and the rest fall to bending their Bows, preparing their Arrows and Zagays, spreading the Toils, beating the Forrest, cutting down the Trees, and sounding the Horn, which rouses the Leopard, and when he tries to make his Escape, they soon kill him with many Arrows; upon which he falls into the Toils; then the King orders the Leopard to be flea'd, and his Skin to be laid aside for himself, and they open his Body, take out his Gall, which they think deadly Poison, and therefore throw it into the Sea, and they bury the rest in a deep Ditch, which they dig on the Spot for the Purpose.

Their King's Funerals are solemnized with extraordinary Pomp. They interr the Corps in Vaults under Ground in their best Habits, and sitting on a Chair, and round them they set small Images of Wood and Wax, representing those who served them when alive, together with Pots, Kettles, Chests, and other Moveables. *Dapper* observes, that formerly they used to kill a great Number of Slaves at their Funerals; but that now they begin to leave off that barbarous Practice in a very great Measure.

Dapper and *Du Plessis* say, *Louango* contains divers Countries, the chief of which are, *Louangiri*, *Louango-Mongo*, *Cylongo*, and *Piri*. The first has a Capital of the same Name upon the Ocean, in the Hands of the Portuguese; but the other three have only Villages. The *Sanfons* say, it has 6 Provinces, but they don't tell us their Names. *Dapper* says, *Louangiri* is water'd with several small Rivers and Brooks, which makes it very fruitful, and therefore populous. The Inhabitants live on Fish, and make Cloths. They are called *Mouviri*, from the Word *Piri*, it being only a Contraction of *Moutsie Piri*, i. e. the People of *Piri*. *Louango-Mongo* is large and mountainous: 'Tis also full of Palm-Trees, which yield a vast Quantity of Oil. The Inhabitants are Merchants, and employ themselves in making Cloths. 'Tis now become the Birth-place of the Kings of *Louango*, who have made it their ordinary Residence since they subdued their Neighbours. *Chilongo* is the largest of all these Provinces. 'Tis very populous and mountainous in some Places, but in others it runs out into great Plains. The Inhabitants are very clownish, and drive a great Trade in Elephants Teeth. *Piri* is a plain Country, populous, and full of Woods and Fruit-Trees. It abounds with Wild Fowl, and has some Cattle. The Inhabitants are very peaceable, Lovers of their Prince, and richer in Lands than all his other Subjects. They live chiefly on Milk Diet, and Venison.

The first Rivers in this Country next to *Olibatta*, according to *Moll*, are those of *S. Bacias*, *Paradia*, and *Ferdinand de Paz*, near Cape *St. Catherine*; but *Dapper* and the *Sanfons* place them in *Gabon*; so that the first River, according to them, is *Sette* or *Zette*, which falls into the Sea above 50 Miles S. E. from Cape *St. Catherine*, say the *Sanfons*, and but 30 according to *Moll*. *Dapper*, who says the Country about it is called by the same Name, places it 16 Leagues from *Majumba*, and says, the Soil produces great and small Millet, Batatafes, Palm-Wine, and Red-Wood, which the Inhabitants call *Tacoel*, of two Sorts; the least is called *Quines*, and bought by the Portuguese. The best is heaviest, hardest, and reddest. 'Tis the chief Trade of the Inhabitants, and those of *Louango* do also deal in it. The

Merchants come hither to buy it, and carry it to *Majumba*. They cut it in Pieces 5 or 6 Foot long, 9 Inches broad, and 3 in Thickness. The Inhabitants live on Millet, Bananas, and Venison, which is pretty Plenty, together with a few Goats and Poultry.

Dapper sets another Province called *Gobby* between this and Cape *Lopaz*, which abounds with Lakes and Rivers, that are navigable by Canoes, and feed a great Number of Fish and Sea-Horses. The chief Town of the Country is a Day's Journey from the Coast. The People don't only allow Polygamy, but when they receive any Visits, they proffer their Guests one of their Wives to accompany them all Night; but the Women are generally so unruly, that their Husbands are forced to thresh them into good Manners even before the Honey-Month is out. They are generally at War with their Neighbours of *Comma*, that live between them and Cape *Lopaz*. Their Arms are Zagays, Bows, and Arrows. The *Dutch* bring them Muskets, Gunpowder, Kettles of polish'd Copper, and coarse Cloths. Their Language, Superstition, and Customs, are like those of *Louango*.

To this *Dapper* adds the Province of *Dingi*, which he bounds with those of *Louango*, *Cacongo*, and *Vango*, and says, 'tis a large Country, full of Towns and Villages, and an hereditary Principality, under the Protection of the Kings of *Louango*.

He says, *Bokke-Meale* or *Bouke-Meyale* is another Inland Province, inhabited by the *Jagi*, N. E. of *Louango*, and supposes it above 150 Leagues from the Coast, because the Negroes who come hither to traffick are 3 Months going and coming. The *Louangese*, who he says sell the most Ivory to the *Europeans*, buy it of the *Jagos* here, whither they bring Salt in Baskets on the Heads of their Slaves. The *Jagos* fetch their Elephants Teeth from certain little Men called *Mimi* and *Bakke Bakke*, subject to *Great Macoco*. The *Jagos* say, those Dwarfs render themselves invisible when they go a Hunting. They eat the Flesh of what Game they kill, and sell the Tusks. The *Louangese* trade hither with great Knives from *Majumba*. They also vend here Palm-Oil, Feather-Beds, Ananas, and little Drinking Cups, for Pieces of Stuff called *Libongi*.

He observes, that the *Mimi*, besides the Teeth of those Elephants which they kill themselves, do every Year in the dry Season set Fire to the Bushes, in order to look for the Tusks of dead Animals, which they often find half spoiled; but yet sell them at a good Price. He adds, that the Inhabitants of *Bokke-Meale* are tributary to the King of *Louango*, and bound to follow him in the Wars; and that betwixt that Province and *Louango*, there's a great Forrest of 5 or 6 Days Journey full of Wild Beasts.

Having done with the Inland Country, we return again to the Coast, where we find Cape *Neger* or *Negro* on the E. Frontiers of *Sette*. The *Sansons* place it in S. Lat. 3. Long. 35 $\frac{3}{4}$. *Dapper* says, it looks black afar off, because 'tis all cover'd with Trees, for which Reason the *Portuguese* gave it that Name. Beyond this Cape the Sea forms an Arch or Road, that the Inhabitants call the Road of *Majumba*. 'Tis half a League to the S. End, which is low, and cover'd with Trees; but further within Land there's a red Mountain, which the Inhabitants call *Mituta*. He adds, that within the Country there's a Salt Lake a League over, which runs into the Sea by some little Brooks half a League N. of the Cape, and that sometimes the Sea throws up so much Sand into their Mouths as quite stops 'em up.

Here *Dapper* begins the Country of *Majumba*, so called from a Village of the same Name on the Coast. He bounds it on the N. with the River *Cobby*, which abounds with Oysters and Sea-Horses, and has Salt Water towards its Mouth, where 'tis not above 5 or 6 Foot deep; but higher, 'tis very broad and deep, runs S. 20 Leagues almost as far as *Louango*, and is navigated by Canoes, in which they carry Red-Wood. The Soil is not very fat, yet it abounds with Bananas, that serve them for Bread, and Palm-Trees, of which they make Store of Wine. The Lakes and Rivers of this Country abound with Fish, especially Oysters, which the Women catch with great Sticks, and smoak them, (as we pickle them) by which Means they keep several Months. The Natives call all Fish *Marinsy* when they are fresh, and *Barbette* when they are smoak'd, and send the latter to several Places.



The South West Part of
AFRICA
Containing Congo, Ango
la, Benguela, Monomoti,
tapa, Caffers, Terra de
Natal &c
By
Herman Moll Geographer.

60 120 180 240 300
Miles of Great Britain



SOUTHERN
Cape of Good Hope

Handwritten text in a cursive script, likely a letter or document. The text is written in dark ink on aged, yellowed paper. The handwriting is somewhat faded and difficult to decipher, but appears to be a continuous flow of text.



Vertical text or a signature, possibly a date or a name, located in the lower right quadrant of the page. It is written in a dark ink and appears to be a single line of text.

Places. The Prince of *Louangiri*, who is Sovereign of the Country, has 10 per Cent. for all Red-Wood which comes by the River of *Sette* to *Majumba*. Mariners who come from the S. may see the Coast of *Majumba* at 4 Leagues Distance, if the Weather be clear, because there are two Mountains near *Sellage* which resemble the Breasts of a Woman, and may be seen from the Village of *Quanni* and *Louango*. He adds, that from those Mountains there's a great Shelf along the Shore for two Leagues as far as the River *Quila*, which having water'd a fruitful Country, falls into the Sea with a great Noise.

The chief Place here is *Majumba* Village, which the *Sanfons* place in an Island formed by the two Mouths of a River, 70 Miles N. W. from the City of *Louango*. *Dapper* says, 'tis very long, and subject to Inundation when the Water is high, at which Time the Inhabitants help one another in removing their Huts. 'Tis the Seat of a Governor for the King of *Louango*; but the People are so unruly, that he finds it very difficult to keep them in Order. There was formerly a great Demand here for Elephants Teeth; but now its Trade is almost lost. He adds, that there's a Sand-Bank over-against Cape *Quilongo*, near the Village *Sellage*, 12 or 13 Leagues South of *Majumba*, which runs very far out into the Sea. He begins the Province of *Cylangatiamocango* on the Confines of *Majumba*, and extends it to the N. Side of the River of *Quila*. He says, 'twas formerly a separate Kingdom, till made tributary to the King of *Louango*; but that the Inhabitants have still their Privileges; and when their Governor dies, they chuse another, without asking their Prince's Advice.

The Capital Town of all these Parts, and the Seat of the King of *Louango*, is *Louango*, *Banza*, *Louangiri*, or *Boarie*, which *Dapper* places in S. Lat. $4\frac{1}{2}$. and a League and a half from the Coast, S. of the River of its own Name, contrary to the *Sanfons*, who place that River on the S. and encompass the Town like an Island with two Arms of another River. *Moll* sets it Lat. $2\frac{1}{3}$. Long. 30. 75 Miles N. W. of *Malemba*, and 50 according to the *Sanfons*. *Dapper* says, 'tis almost as large as *Roan*, but the Buildings not comparable. The Streets are kept

neat, and before the Houses they have great Rows of Palm-Trees, Bananas, and Bakoves. Some have them planted also behind, and others quite round. The King's Palace stands in the Middle of the Town, is encompassed with a Palisado of Palm-Tree, and forms a large Square a League and a half in Length. There are a great many Apartments for his Women, who live 8 in a Company, and may not go out of the Court without express Leave from the King, or some of his Officers, who keep Guard over them. The Houses are long, and the Roofs flat in the Middle, but sloping at both Ends, and supported by tall thick Masts, of which those that bear up the highest Part stand 10 or 12 Foot above the others. There are also high Columns, and the Height of the Houses is proportion'd to their Length and Breadth. Every House has two or three several Rooms. That where they keep their Money, has commonly a Back-Door and a Padlock. Every House is hedg'd all round with Palm-Tree Branches and Bulrushes. Some are inclos'd with Canes, 7 or 8 Houses or more together. They have separate Quarters, but unequally divided. The People are very faithful and helpful one to another, unless they suspect Sorcery. Their Moveables are Gourd-Bottles, Pots, Baskets, Mats, and Hat-Blocks.

2. The People *ANSICANS* or *ANZICAINS*, with the *GIAQUES* or *JAGOS*, *GALES* or *GALÆ*.

Pigafetta bounds their Country on the E. with the River *Umbre*, which runs into the *Zaire* and the Kingdom of *Wangua*; on the W. with the Country of *Amboes*, who are Neighbours to *Louango*; on the N. with some of the Nubian Deserts; and on the S. with the Provinces of *Songo* and *Sunde*, which are Part of *Proper Congo*. *Jarrik* extends this Country from *Cacongo* to *Nubia*, but does not distinguish its Boundaries on the E. and W. *Heylin* bounds it on the N. with Part of *Negroland*, on the S. with *Zaire*, and on the W. with Part of *Songo* and *Louango*, from whence he extends it E. as far almost as the Lake of *Zembre*. *Luyts* bounds it with the Territories of the *Gale* on the E. and *Louango* on the W. The People are Man-

Man-eaters, without Respect to Kindred, as we have formerly observed; and *Luyts* says, they are also called *Anziqui* and *Anti-quainers*. *Dapper* says, the Soil produces red and white Sandal Wood; but they count the white the best, and make an Ointment on't for chafing the Body and preserving Health, by grinding it to Powder, and mixing it with Palm-Oil. Here are also Mines of Copper and Rhinoceros's, which they carry from hence to *Congo*, besides a great many Lions and other Wild Beasts. He says, the Inhabitants, both *Anzicans* and *Jagos*, are vigorous clever Fellows, and climb the Mountains like Goats. Their Women are pretty well shap'd. The Men are fearless of Death, and fool-hardy. They are frank, and know not what Tricking is; but yet they are so brutish, that *Europeans* don't care to deal with them; for humane Flesh is sold as common at their Shambles as Butchers Meat is here. They think they have a Right to deal as they please with their Enemies and Slaves; so that when they can't sell their Prisoners, they fatten, kill, and eat them; and he tells us, that sometimes the Slaves, when they are weary of Service, offer their Throats to their Masters Knives. They make their Bellies the Sepulchres of their Dead, and fall to jointing their Bodies as soon as ever they have breathed their last. The common People of both Sexes go bare-footed, and naked from the Waist upwards; but the better Sort wear red or black Caps made of *Portuguese* Velvet, with long Robes of Silk or Cloth. The Women frequently kill and eat their Children as soon as they are born. These People have no Fields, Estates, or fixed Residence, but wander about like the *Arabs*, without sowing or reaping, and live by nothing but Robbery and Homicide. They understand the Language of *Congo*; but their own is so barbarous, that the *Congese* can't learn it. Their Money is *Simbos*, the Shells formerly mentioned, which are brought hither from *Angola* with Salt, Silk, Glasses, Knives, and other Merchandize, to be exchanged for the Slaves of *Nubia* and this Country. Their Arms are small strong Bows, cover'd with the Skin of a Serpent, and their String is the tough Twig of a Tree, like Reeds, which never breaks. Their Arrows are short, light, and of very hard

Wood, and they are as good Archers as the *Brama's*. They have Field-Axes which serve for two Uses, one of the Ends being sharp to cut withal, and the other blunt like a Hammer. The Helve or Handle, which is set in the Middle, is but half as long as the Iron. 'Tis made round at the End like an Apple, and garnish'd with a Serpent's Skin. They cover themselves with the flat End of their Ax like a Buckler, and wield it with such Activity as to keep off their Enemies Arrows. They also carry Ponyards in Sheaths of Serpents Skin, which they hang in Ivory Belts three Fingers long, and two broad. Their Bucklers are of Wood, and garnish'd with the Skin of a Dant. They worship the Sun and Moon in the Shape of a Man and a Woman: Besides, every one has his Idol, to whom they sacrifice when they go to War. They also consult them in all difficult Enterprizes, and pretend that the Devil gives them Instructions. *Dapper* adds, that the King of *Anfico* commands 13 Kingdoms, is called the *Great Macoco*, and is reckon'd the most potent Prince of all *Africa*. *Heylin* says, the People here are so faithful, that they'll suffer Death rather than betray their Trust. They have no Towns of Note.

As for the *Jagos* or *Giaequi*, *Dapper* says they are the most inhumane of all the *Anthropophagi*. They had once 3 Generals, who commanded as many Armies; but the ancient *Jagos* are almost extinct, because when they won Victories over one another, they chose the youngest and cleverest Fellows among the Prisoners as Marks to shoot at. They kill and eat those who are afraid; and if any seem undaunted, they bore Holes thro' their Ears and Nostrils, pull out two fore Teeth of their upper Jaw, and learn them so much Barbarity, that they soon outstrip their Masters in Cruelty. The *Jagos* are spread almost over all *Africa*, but especially in this Country, and S. E. of *Angola*, where the old Men say they came formerly out of *Sierra-Leona*, and spread like a Torrent as far as *Benguela*; but being weaken'd by their many Victories, so that they were not strong enough to force the Passages for a Retreat, they penetrated into the Country as far as the Confines of *Monomotapa*, where the Inhabitants gave them Battle, and put them to Flight, which compelled them to live

live in *Anfico* and the Neighbourhood of *Angola*; yet some doubt the Truth of the whole Story. *Heylin* calls them *Galla*, and places them on the Borders of the *Abyssine* Empire. He says, they have no Houses, Laws or Government, and have lately made great Desolations in the Country of *Prester John*. *Luyts* places the *Gala* between the Lake of *Aquilunda* on the W. and that of *Zara* on the E. on the Mountains of the Sun, and bounds them with the *Anficans* on the W. He says, they derive their Original from the Inland Country of *Guinea*. *Morery* says, they are strong and very nimble, worship the Sun, Moon, and other Idols, and are as barbarous as the *Anficans*.

III. CONGO PROPER.

A *Anthony Galvano* says, that this Country was first discovered in 1484 by *Caon*, or, as *Harris* calls him, *Diego Cau*, who was sent hither by King *John II.* of *Portugal*. He set up Pillars of Stone and other Memorials in the Country, especially about the Banks of the River *Zaire*, and in two Voyages discover'd 1125 Miles from Cape *St. Catherine* along the Coast.

The *Sanfons* extend it from the River *Louango* on the N. to *Coanza* on the S. 300 Miles along the Coast. *Moll*, who begins it at the River *Zaire*, extends it but 210 Miles along the Coast to the Town and Island of *Loando*; but he makes it 570 where longest from N. to S. and almost 390 where broadest from E. to W. He bounds it on the N. with *Louango*, on the E. with the Mountains of *Sunda*, on the S. with *Angola*, and on the W. with the Ocean. *Dapper*, who excludes *Goy* and *Cacongo*, which he places in *Louango*, makes it 118 Miles in Length, and 180 in Breadth. He observes, that Geographers differ much in the Boundary of this Country, but favours *Pigafetta* and *Linschotten*, who bound it on the N. with *Louango* and *Anfico*, on the S. with *Angola* and *Malemba*, on the W. with the Sea, and on the E. with certain Mountains which abound with Silver, Chrystal, and Saltpetre; the River *Verbele*, and the Kingdom of *Cacongo*, to which *Jarri* adds the *Giaques*. *Luyts* bounds it on the E. by the Territories of the *Gala*, on the N. by the *Anficans* and *Louango*, on the W. by

the Sea, and on the S. by *Angola*, and says, it was formerly much larger, so that Captain *Smith* reckon'd it every Way 600 Miles Diameter.

Dapper says, their Winter begins soon after the Middle of *March*, and their Summer in *September*; but the Rain only distinguishes the former from the latter, the Heat being almost intolerable during the Intervals, especially two Hours before and after Noon. There are two rainy Seasons, the wettest of which is their Winter, viz. during *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*, when it generally rains every Day. It rains also in *September* and *October*, but so little, that our Author calls it their Spring, and from that Time to the End of *March* it does not rain one Drop. *Carli*, one of the Missionaries, who was sent hither about 1666, observes, there are two Harvests a Year; for he says, they begin to sow in *January*, and reap in *April*, and sow again in *September*, and reap in *December*.

Dapper says, the Soil is well water'd with many Rivers, which overflow in the rainy Season, and render the Country very fruitful, especially the Provinces of *Batta*, *Pembo*, and the Parts adjacent, in so much that they furnish those that want with several Sorts of Corn and Provisions. Besides, *Pembo* is full of Meadows, Orchards, and Fruit-Trees, and yields a Sort of Grain called *Luco*, which, tho' no bigger than Mustard-Seed, they grind and bake it as they do Rye in *Holland*. They have also the Millet call'd *Mazza*, and Turkey Wheat which they call *Mazza Manputo*, i.e. Portuguese Corn, with which they fatten their Hogs. They have Rice very cheap, and great Lemons, Bananas, Coco-Nuts, Gourds, Melons, and Cucumbers. Their Palm-Trees yield Store of Wine, and their Cola-Trees fragrant well tasted Fruit, which the *Ethiopians* chew, as the *Indians* do the Leaves of Betel. There are Trees call'd *Ozegues*, which are a Sort of Prune-Tree, with yellow Fruit, of a good Smell and Taste. Of the Boughs they make Hedges, Palisadoes, and Pavillions or Arbours. The Banks of the River *Lelunda*, as far as *St. Salvador*, furnish the Inhabitants with Plenty of Cedar and other Wood to burn and make Canoes. About the Maritime Villages of the Dutchy of *Bamba*, near the River of *Onza*, they have

have Plenty of Beans and Millet, and breed abundance of Poultry, for which Foreign Merchants give in Exchange *Panos-Simbo*s, small Looking-Glasses, and others for Drinking. Here are also Canes of Sugar and Mandikoca. Their Rivers are full of Fish. Some say, there are Mines of Gold about *Banza*; but our Author doubts it, because the *Portuguese*, who have been here so long, never discover'd any. He says, there are Mines in the Province of *Pembo* and the Neighbourhood of *St. Salvador* that yield a very yellow Sort of Copper, which he supposes gave Occasion to this Error; but he says, 'tis not so good as the Copper of *Angola* and *Benguela*, and that that which they fetch from a greater Distance is not worth the Trouble and Charge of bringing it. The Copper of *Songo* is better than that of *Pembo*; but there's another coarser Sort, of which they make the grey Bracelets of *Louando*, wherewith the *Portuguese* trade to *Calbaria* and *Rio del Rey*. *Linschotten* says, they have Silver Mines at *Bamba*, and at *Sundo* Mines of Iron, with which they make Swords, Knives, Axes, &c. *Luyts* says, the Country is well cultivated.

Dapper says, all the Provinces, especially that of *Bamba*, abound with great and small Cattle, particularly Goats, which bear Young three or four times a Year. They have Plenty of Turkeys, Geese, Ducks, and Poultry. They have Elephants, which they say never shed their Tusks. They hunt them, eat their Flesh, and count their Snouts a dainty Bit. Some Teeth are often found spoil'd in the Forrests a long Time after the Death of the Elephants; yet the Natives sell them as well as the best. If an Elephant, when wounded, catch any one of his Hunters, he kills him, and buries him in a Hole which he digs in the Ground with his Tusks, and then fills again, and covers it with the Branches of Trees; for which Reason they dodge him at a Distance, and pursue him by the Track of his Blood, till his Weakness makes him fall, and then they dart him to Death; for the *Ethiopians* han't the Skill to take live Elephants, and tame them like the *Indians*. They say, that in the Head of some Elephants they find a sort of Bezoar Stone of a Purple Colour, which is not very hard, and us'd in Dying, and for Physick. Their Bufflers have red

Skins and black Horns, of which they make Musical Instruments. They do more Mischief than any other Beasts when they are wounded, so that the Hunters are obliged to keep off at a great Distance when they shoot them. They say, his Breath is so venomous, that if an Ox eat of the Pasture in any Place where it has been just feeding, it kills him on the Spot. The Flesh is coarse and tough. The *Portuguese* cut, dry it, and feed their Slaves with it. They have wild Horses call'd *Azebro*, which have the Look of Mules, and are spotted with white, black, and a Colour Part red and Part blue. They are very swift, and as difficult to be tam'd as catch'd. However, a *Portuguese* took 4 of them, and carried them for a Present to the King, who put them in his Coach, and gave the Man the Office of Royal Notary at *Angola* to him and his Heirs. There's another Beast call'd *Empalanga*, resembling a Lant or an Ox. 'Tis good to eat, has two Horns, and is of different Colours. There's another with two Horns like a Stag, and called *Envoeri*; also one called *Masoco*, i. e. Great Beast, of the Size of a Horse, with long slender Legs, long Neck, a greyish Colour, strip'd with white, and two long, small, sharp Horns. Its Dung is like that of Sheep, smells like Musk, but not so strong, and its Hoofs are good against the Stiffness of the Nerves. They have Tygers, which they say never attack white Men; and if they meet an *European* and a Negro together, they are sure to fall upon the latter, without touching the other. Its Flesh is reckoned so venomous, that they say if any should eat of it, it would make him turn mad in an instant. The King of *Congo* gives a considerable Reward to every one that brings him a Tyger's Skin of his own killing, on Condition that the Whiskers be still on. The Lions are not so fierce as their Tygers, but they roar horribly in the Night. Their Wolves love the Smell of Palm-Oil. They are bigger than those of *Europe*, with great Heads and Necks. Their Skin is grey, and spotted with black Spots, but not so fine as the Tygers. They have also Foxes, Stags, Roebucks, Rabbits like great Rats, which they eat, and a prodigious Number of Hares, because they are not hunted as ours are in *Europe*. They take Beavers in the Province

Province of *Batta*, whose Skin is as dear as the Price of a Slave, so that none wears them without the King's Leave. In *Batta*, upon the Banks of the River *Zaire*, are several Sorts of Apes and Monkies. They have an extraordinary Sort of Wild-Boar call'd *Emgalo*, formerly mentioned. *Dapper* adds, that it has two terrible Tusks in its Mouth, which it grinds so as to scare the stoutest Heart. The Shavings of its Teeth are very dear, and reckon'd an Antidote. They also say, that when this Creature is sick, it rubs its Tusks against a Stone, and cures it self by licking up the Dust that comes off from its Teeth. They have also a Sort of Deer called *Golungo*, about the Size of a Sheep, with a reddish Skin spotted with white, and two pointed Horns upon its Head. They count its Flesh sacred, and had rather suffer Death than eat it, or touch the Instruments with which it is killed, or the Vessel in which 'tis boiled, or so much as light a Fire on the Spot where it is dressed by others. They have Squirrels whose Tails are much longer than ours, Bears, Wild-Cats, venomous Serpents and Vipers, Peacocks which the King keeps in a wall'd Park on the Confines of *Angola*, wild and tame Partridges, Pheasants, Pigeons, Turtles, Eagles, Faulcons, Vultures, and Sparhawks, but they know not how to fly them at Game. They have also Birds like Cranes, as big as Geese, with a red Neck and Legs, and white and black Feathers, together with Pelicans and green Parrots, which they learn to talk. They call Owls *Cariam-Pemba*, as they do the Devil, and think it bodes ill Luck to see them. They have Bees which make their Nests in Forrests, and some on the Tops of Houses; and four Sorts of Ants, the largest of which have sharp Stings, that cause dangerous Blisters wherever they light. They have also a prodigious Number of Flies on the Banks of their Rivers. As for the *Entiengie*, formerly mentioned, *Dapper* adds, that 'tis always attended with 20 or more little black Creatures before and behind it, like its Guards; and that when the 10 who are in the Van fall into the Hunter's Snare, those who are behind run away, and leave the *Entiengie* for a Prey.

The chief Rivers in this Country are as follow; 1. A River which *Dapper* places beyond *Rio de las Borreras Roxas*, or the Ri-

ver of Red Sand, with three small Islands in its Mouth, and a Gulph called *Baja de las Almadras*, or the Bay of Canoes, because there's a Dock where they are built, and a good Harbour for Barks and small Vessels; but he does not tell us its Name, tho' we suppose it to be *Cacongo*, a little River which he places N. of the *Zaire*, and says, that after it has water'd greatest Part of the Kingdom of that Name in a Course of 25 or 30 Leagues, it falls into the Ocean in S. Lat. 5. The *Sansons* place its Source in the Mountains between *Boeckemeale* and the People call'd *Monsoles*.

2. The *Zaire* or *Zara*, the great River of Congo, which *Pigafetta* says comes from three Lakes, viz. the *Zambre*, from whence the Nile flows; the *Zaire*, from whence come the Rivers of *Lelunda* and *Coanza*; and a Lake form'd by the Nile. But the principal Lake is *Zambre*, which is as it were the Centre, from whence most of the Rivers of this Part of *Africa* proceed, particularly the Nile, which runs to the N. *Cuama* and *Cuavo* to the E. *Zeila* and *Manice* or *Manhesen* to the S. and the River of *Zaire* to the W. whose many Branches water all the W. Part of *Africa* situate beyond the Line, viz. the Kingdoms of Congo, *Angola*, *Monomotapa*, *Mattamam*, *Bagamadri*, and *Agassymba*, as far as to the Cape of Good Hope; whereas the Nile, *Cuama*, *Coavo*, *Zeila*, and *Manice*, cross *Abyssinia*, and all the Country between the Red Sea and *Cuama*. To return to the *Zaire*, *Dapper* places its Mouth in S. Lat. 5. 40. and says, 'tis 3 Miles broad, and runs into the Ocean with such a Torrent, that 'tis perceived 12 Miles from the Coast at high Tide, which runs W. N. W. and N. W. and by N. After you have lost Sight of Land, you may discover black Water, Greens, Canes, and Reeds, that look like small Islands, and are carried from the Tops of Rocks by the Tide, which is so strong, that without a full Wind in the Sails, 'tis impossible to anchor in the Road of Cape *Padren*. The River is navigable no more than 20 or 25 Leagues above its Mouth, because of Cascades in the Middle of its Channel, which fall from the Rocks with a Noise that may be heard two or three Leagues off. The Branches which come from it are very commodious for the Merchants and Inhabitants, who pass from one Village

to another in their Canoes. He observes, that the People that live on the Banks are of a little Stature. He places the Islands of *Bommo* and *Quintala* in its Mouth, with several others in its Channel, which he says are very populous; and that the Inhabitants refuse to pay Tribute to the King of Congo, who despairs of reducing them to his Obedience, because they are very nimble and dextrous with their Canoes, which carry each 200 Soldiers, and are built of a great Tree called *Licondo*, which two or three Men can scarce fathom. There's Store of Iron in the Isle of *Bommo*, but no Houses in neither of the Islands, because the Soil is very low and marshy, and generally overflown; so that the Negroes live for most Part in their Canoes, or under great Trees in Huts, which they build with the Leaves and Branches of Trees some Feet above Ground. They are strong and vigorous, but live like Beasts; for their Youth indulge their Lusts without Marriage, or any other Ceremony of Contract, only their first Mistresses have a sort of Authority over the rest. They are counted great Sorcerers, and 'tis said they have Communication with the Devil; for which End one of them masks himself, and runs about in a Disguise for three Days like a Madman, when they seek him out, and after some superstitious Ceremonies ask him Questions, which he pretends to answer by the Mouth of the Devil. In the Island of *Quintalla*, *Dapper* says there's a Silver Idol, which none dare touch but the Priest, who, as often as he goes to it, seeks a new Path, that none else may find the Way thither. Kings and whole Nations make considerable Offerings to it, and they are hung upon Posts all round the Idol, which stands in a great Court, encompassed with a Wall of Ivory. Such of the Islanders as retain their Liberty have a Chief, whom they chuse by Majority of Voices; and the rest, who depend on the King of Congo, are govern'd by Commanders of his sending. They all trade in Palm-Wine and Matombe, and their Arms are Bows and Arrows, and Zagays. He adds, that the *Zaire* breeds Crocodiles, Sea-Horses, and a Sort of Water-Hogs call'd *Ambizianguo*. *Merolla*, one of the Jesuits Missionaries, calls the Port at the Mouth of the River, *Sogno*, and says, the Banks are

wonderful pleasant, and shaded with Trees called *Mangas*, like Lawrels; that at the joining of each Branch shoot forth a long Root, which hangs down to the Mud, and there springs up again one after another like a little Wood, so that 'tis hard to distinguish the Suckers from the Plant. He makes its Mouth 10 Leagues wide, and observes, that some by Mistake including the Mouth of another Branch in it, make it 30. The Waters are yellowish, and may be discern'd above 30 Leagues at Sea, which he says occasion'd the Discovery of Congo in 1485 by the Portuguese Admiral, as already mentioned, who putting into the River, and asking the Negroes the Name of both the River and the Country, they not understanding him, cry'd, *Zevoco*, i. e. *I can't tell*; from whence by Corruption it has since been called *Zaire*. Upon this the Portuguese set up a fine Marble Cross on one of the Points of the River, which the Dutch afterwards broke down; but when the Jesuit was there, he says there were the Ruins of the Basis, with the Portuguese Arms on it, and a Gothic Inscription, but scarce legible. He places the Lake from whence this River rises in the Kingdom of *Matamba*, subject to the Q. of *Singa*, and says, there's a Monster in it which differs from Humane Kind only in want of Reason and Speech. 'Tis Male and Female. He saw one of the latter taken in a Net. It was black, had long Hair, long Fingers, and large Nails. It liv'd but 24 Hours out of the Water, and would tast no manner of Food all that Time. He tells us, that in the River *Zaire* there's the Mermaid, of which he gives us this Account. It has a large Hide upon its Back, perforated in several Places, which it can open or shut. He thinks its Ribs proper to stanch Blood, but that the greatest of its Physical Vertues lies in two little Bones in its Ears. Its Entrails are like Swines, and it tastes like Pork, for which Reason he says the Negroes call it the Water-Sow. It reaches its Head out of the Water, and feeds upon the Grass on its Banks. 'Tis only to be taken in Rain, which so disturbs the Water, that it can't well discern the Approach of the Fishermen, who paddle up softly in a little Boat to the Place where the Fish lies, which they know by the Motion it causes in the Water, and then dart her with a Lance;

Lance; and if they cannot hold her with one, they strike in another, by which Means they tire her. Here are fat Pilchards as large as Herrings, which the Negroes catch after the same Manner, but with less Trouble. He observes, that their Lances are long Staffs, made of round hard Wood, 6 or 7 Spans in Compass, to which they fasten several Darts. He tells us, that the Water-Horses in this River are as large again as Land ones. They have short thick Legs, round Feet, a wide Mouth, with a double Row of hook Teeth, and long Tusks in the lower Jaw like those of a Wild Boar, with which, when they are in a Fury, they tear whatever comes near them. They neigh like Horses, and feed ashore in the Night, but keep in the Water all Day. The Female always goes with the Male, which fights desperately in her Defence, and when she is big with Young, or has lately dropped her Foal, (which she generally does in Fens where there is little Water) the Male rages with Jealousy, and assaults the Barks as they pass along the River, and if they be little, overturns them with his Heels, for which Reason the People chuse to go about rather than come near the Marshes. The Negroes hunt them in the Night when they go to feed upon Land. They stop up the Way back to the Water with Barks, get up into Trees for Safety, and when the Horse returns, they shoot him with Arrows. Sometimes they fly away after they are wounded, and finding no open Passage to the River, run to the next Precipice, and leap off from it into the Water, by which Means they break their Legs, and then are easily taken. Their Flesh is little valued, and eaten only by the meaner Sort of People. It has a Yard, and two Stones in his Ears as large as Hen's Eggs, which the Jesuit says are good to dissolve the Stone in the Kidneys or Bladder. The latter beat to Powder, and dissolv'd in fair Water, are also good against the Stoppage of Urine. He observes, that in their Islands they mount to their Huts by Ladders, which they draw up and let down at Pleasure, and that they are built on Stakes, to secure themselves from the Sea-Horses which feed there in the Night. They have the like near the Forrests for fear of Lions and Tigers. He adds, that the Sea-Horses always

keep out of salt Water; that there are no Crocodiles in this River, but Variety of excellent Fish, which the Inhabitants take several Ways, and might catch greater Numbers of them than they do, if they were not lazy, and that the Right of Fishing with Nets is wholly reserved to the Prince; but any may do it with his Leave; and when he wants Fish, he sends his Servants with his own Nets for it.

Ovington, who confirms what *Merolla* says as to the Largeness of the Mouth of this River, and the Length it runs into the Ocean, says, it has a Course of 400 Leagues; that at its Entrance into Congo, it sometimes borrows that Name; and that it forceth its Waters along the Coast almost as far as Cape *Lopar*. He adds, that there are certain Springs on the Shore which have a sensible Saltness and Freshness, according to the Tide or Ebb of the Ocean. *Morery* says, there's such abundance of Anchovies here, that in the Winter they leap ashore. *Heylin* says, there's no sailing here above 5 Miles against the Stream, because of the Cataracts in it, which are more terrible than those of the Nile. He adds, that its Islands are now subject to the Kings of Congo; and that as it passes thro' Songo, 'tis so turbulent, broad, and full of Islands, that one Part of the Country has little or no Commerce with the other.

The principal Rivers which run into the Zaire, according to *Dapper*, are, 1. The *Umbre*, which *Sanutius* calls *Vambre*. It rises from some Mountains in the N. and runs Eastward to the E. Frontiers of Congo, where it falls into the Zaire. 2. *Brancare*, according to *Pigafetta*, or the *Bancare* of *Sanutius*. It rises from the same Mountains as the *Vambre*, and *Sanutius* says runs into the Lake from whence the Nile flows; but *Pigafetta* assures us, upon the Report of *Edward Lopez*, that it meets with the Zaire on the E. Confines of the Province of Pango, near the Chrystal Mountains. 3. The River *Barbele* or *Verbele*, which rises out of the same Lake as the Nile, passes thro' the Lake *Aquilonda*, waters the Town of Pango, and then unites with the Zaire.

On the S. Side of the River Zaire, near its Mouth, lies Cape *Padron*, where *Dapper* says the Coast is very high; but the Soil is red, and good for nothing. On this Cape the Portuguese set up a Cross, and built a

Chapel above an Age ago. Eight Leagues from hence up the River lies the Palace of Count *Sonho*, where the *Dutch* trade. Within a Cannon-shot N. of the Cape, there's another call'd *St. Paul's Cape*, with a good Road for Ships, and a Gulph two Leagues farther N. on the S. Side of the *Zaire*, call'd *Pampus Rock*.

The 3d Capital River of *Congo*, and the next beyond the *Zaire*, is *Lelunda*. *Dapper* says, it rises from the same Lake as the *Coanza*, waters the Mountain of *St. Salvador*, which it leaves to the N. and after several Tours to the W. N. W. runs into the Sea. The Course of the River is pretty rapid, yet sometimes it dries up, and is not navigable for great Vessels, because of Rocks in its Mouth, and the Violence of the Tide: However the Negroes sail it in Canoes. The *Sanfons* place its Mouth 20 Miles from that of the *Zaire*.

4. *Ambris* or *Ambrizi*. They place this in Lat. $7\frac{1}{4}$. above 50 Miles S. of *Lelunda*, and bring it out of the Province of *Pemba*. *Dapper* sets it in Lat. 6. and says, 'tis very large, and full of Fish; but there are so many Rocks in its Mouth, that it can only be enter'd by Barks. It comes from the same Lake as the River *Lelunda*, passes pretty near the Town of *St. Salvador*; and tho' its Current be rapid, yet the Water is muddy. Here *Dapper* begins the Lordship of *Bamba*. Forty five Leagues from the Coast, on the S. Side of this River, he says there's a Ford, where certain Duties are paid to the King for Passage to the other Side. The People on the S. Side of the River, near the Coast, make Salt by letting in the Sea-Water into Earthen Vessels, which makes the Salt greyish and sandy; yet they export it to *Pemba* and many other Parts. *Moll* places its Mouth 60 Miles from *Lelunda*.

5. *Loze*. *Dapper* says, the Water here is so shallow, that the People durst not venture upon it in their Canoes, but only in Skiffs; and that 30 Leagues up the River from the Coast there's another Shallow, where they pay Toll for Passage. The *Sanfons* place this River between *Ambris* and

6. *Encocoque-Matari*, or *Encoqui-Matarri*. *Dapper* says, its Mouth is almost stopped up by a Sand-Bank, that no Vessel can enter

it, and that the Water is as low in several Places as that of *Loze*.

7, 8. *Onza* or *Onzoni*, and *Libongo* or *Lemba*, which *Dapper* says are both fordable, and not navigable.

9. *Danda*. *Dapper* says, it has 5 or 6 Foot Water in its Mouth, especially at high Tide, when the Moon is S. W. The River abounds with Crocodiles, Sea-Horses, and Fish, and waters several fertile Fields. The S. Bank is higher than the N. but the Difference diminishes insensibly as one goes higher up, so that the Banks are of an equal Height about a League from its Mouth. He adds, that there are 7 little Mountains between this River and *Libongo*.

10. *Bengo*. Some think it to be only an Arm of the *Danda*. *Dapper* says, when the Tide is in its Mouth, it has 7 or 8 Foot Water; but when 'tis out, some Sand-Banks appear before it above the Surface, which are very dangerous; yet 'tis navigable for 20 or 25 Leagues. It rises a great Way off in the same Place, as the River *Lucale* does. In *March*, *April*, and *May*, it overflows with great Violence, and breaks down its Banks.

Heylin says, the Mountains of most Note here are, 1. *Sierra Complida*, or the Long Mountain. 2. *Mons Chrystalli*, or the Chrystalline Mountain, because it abounds with Chrystal. 3. *Sierra de Sol*, or the Mountain of the Sun, which is of an excessive Height. 4. *Montes Sal Nitri*, so called because they abound with that Mineral: And, 5. The Mountains of *Cabambe*, where there are rich Mines of Silver.

Dapper says, some of the Inhabitants have fair Hair. They are generally middle-siz'd, and have black or else blue Eyes. Their Lips are not so thick as the other Negroes, and some of them very handsome of their Complexion. They love *Spanish Wine* and *Brandy* to Excess. The Inhabitants of *Bamba* are most fam'd for their Valour, and are indeed the strongest; for *Pigafetta* says, some of them will with one Blow of an Ax cleave a Slave in two, or cut off a Bull's Head, and that they can lift up a Vessel of Wine, containing 325 Pound, and hold it up till 'tis drawn out. They are encouraged to Robbery by Impunity; and when any one has stole a Booty, he spends it in

in treating his Companions with Drink, and then chuses a Harbinger to go before him and cry, *Here comes the King of Congo*. There are very dangerous Robbers in the Road from *St. Salvador* to *Louando St. Paulo*. They are Nobles, and sometimes the King's Children, who falling into Disgrace, take to the High-Way, while their Friends labour at Court for their Restoration. In a Word, they used to make Conscience of nothing, and would not scruple to poison their Accomplices upon the least Quarrel; but *Dapper* says, such good Laws have been lately made, and executed with such Severity, by punishing all Offenders whatsoever with Death, that this abominable Practice begins to be disused. *Du Plessis* says, the Natives are the blackest of all the Negroes, and that there are none swarthy but the *Portuguese Mulatto's*.

Dapper informs us, they are most subject to an Ague and Fever, especially in Winter, when the Rain makes the Air hot, moist, and unwholesome. They are commonly cured by rubbing the Body twice or thrice with an Ointment made of the Dust of red Sandal-Wood, mix'd with Palm-Oil. They bleed in the Temples for the Head-ach. When they have made a little Incision in the Skin, they open it with a kind of Shells; after which they suck the Wound to fetch the Blood, and then let it bleed as long as they would have it. They use this Way of Bleeding in all Distempers. The Venereal Disease is also very frequent here, and they cure it with red Sandal-Wood. They also use Simples, the Bark of Trees, Roots, Minerals, Waters and Oils, in their several Remedies. *Gordon* says, they have a peculiar Language of their own.

Dapper tells us, that Persons of Quality wear large Gowns of Woollen Cloth or Serge, with a white Shirt next their Bodies, and a Sort of Sattin or Damask Petticoat, bound at Bottom. They also wear the Country Stuffs, made of the Bark of Matomba, or the Leaves of Palm-Tree, and dy'd red or black. They wear Boots, white Cotton Caps, Gold or Silver Girdles, and Necklaces of red Coral. Those of *Songo* wear very large Robes from the Waist downward. The Women, except those of *Goy*, and others N. of the River *Zaire*, cover their Breasts. They play at Cards for Simbo's or

Shells fished up at the Mouth of the *Rio de Genero*, which go for their Money. When they take a long Journey, they are carried in Baskets or Panniers of several Sorts by their Slaves; and for greater Speed, they take several with them to relieve one another. Those who are not able to maintain so many Slaves, hire Porters. *Sir William Monson* says, the *Portuguese* banish Criminals to *Congo*.

Dapper tells us, the Inhabitants marry with the Ceremonies of the Church of *Rome*, yet take as many Concubines as they can maintain. When the Lasses are weary of their Virginity, they perfume their Bodies with Oil, rub them with the Red Wood of *Majumba*, and go to live in some obscure House, where, after a Month's Stay, they chuse for their Husband the Gallant that pleases them best, who buys his Bride fine Clothes, and brings her from the House. He adds, that their Townsmen follow Commerce, and that their chief Traffick is with the *Europeans* in Slaves. The Country People follow Husbandry, and those who live on the Banks of the *Zaire* maintain themselves by Fishing, selling of Palm-Wine, and making of Stuffs. The Provinces of *Pembo*, *Songo*, and *Bamba*, yield but few Slaves, for the Natives can't endure Work, and die when transported into a Foreign Country. The best Slaves come from the Country of *Ambeille*, among the *Gingi*, *Jagos*, and *Casendas*, and from the Kingdom of *Angola*; so that they trade at *Bamba* with Foreign Slaves. The *Europeans* sell Simbos Shells at *Songo*, which is all their Trade there, where formerly they us'd to find *Panos Simbos*, Oil and Palm-Nuts, Ivory, Slaves, and Provisions. They find a great many Slaves in *Batta* and other remoter Provinces. Here is a great Consumption of the Stuffs called *Panos Cundos*. The Town of *St. Salvador* is the Rendezvous of Foreign Merchants, who carry thither *Turkey* Hangings, little blue Earthen Pitchers, Copper Basins, *English* Cloths, the Shells called *Loando-Simbos*, and *Boesjes*, the last of which they bring by Land from *Sofala* or *Mosambique*, together with Rings, Coral, &c. The *Portuguese* at *St. Salvador* use Weights and Measures, but the Negroes don't understand them; and our Author says, they han't much Occasion for them, for they are so poor,

poor, that out of 40000 Inhabitants in *St. Salvador*, of which great Part are those they call the Nobility, there are not above 10 or 12 Gentlemen that wear a Gold Chain and some small Jewels, and that all the Wealth of the richest is not worth above 200 Crowns, excepting their Slaves, which they take by Violence or in War. *Du Pleffis* says, they transport a great deal of Ivory, Cassia, and Tamarinds.

Dapper tells us, they think a Man immortal in himself, and that when he dies, he is either poison'd, or his Kindred call him to the other World: And if the Master or Mistress of a Family die, they impute the Cause to the Survivor; upon which the Kindred meet, seize the Deceased's Goods, and torture the Survivor for a Week together, by fleaing off his or her Skin, and telling them they must atone for their Friend's Death. At the Week's End the Widow or Widower is try'd, and if guilty, turn'd out of Doors; but if otherwise, restored to their Possessions. If there be three Brothers in a Family, and one of 'em dies, the other two share his Concubines between them; and when one of the two dies, the Survivor takes all; but at his Death, they fall to his Son and Heir, if he has any. *Morden* says, the Right of Succession here belongs only to the Males.

Dapper adds, that before the Arrival of the *Portuguese*, the Inhabitants were extremely idolatrous, and worshipped every one a God of their own Fancy, viz. Dragons, Serpents of a prodigious Bigness, Goats, Tygers, and other wild Beasts, and thought the Honour they paid them prevented them from doing them any Mischief. They also worshipped Birds, Herbs, Trees, and the Skins of Animals stuffed with Straw, and their Ceremonies were bending the Knee, falling flat with their Faces to the Ground, covering their Heads with Dust, and offering Things of Value to their Idols. The *Portuguese* have set up several Schools, where they instruct the People in Reading, Writing, and the Principles of Religion, and they keep a great many *Portuguese* Priests and Mulatto's, who have the same Ceremonies as the Latin Church. Most of the Negroes make an outward Profession of Christianity, but are Idolaters in their Hearts, and pay secret Worship to their

Idols; so that our Author observes, they have two Strings to their Bow, and when the Saints don't hear them, they call upon their Fetis. In the mean time they cover themselves all over with Beads and Crucifixes. They have several Churches, and a great many Negro and Mulatto Priests. When the Count of *Songo* goes to Mass, he dresses himself in a stately Habit, and wears Gold Chains and Coral Necklaces. He marches in State at the Sound of Drums and Horns, accompanied with his Guards, amongst whom are 5 or 6 Musketiers that fire from Time to Time, and others that carry Colours, who are all follow'd with a great Crowd of People. He adds, that there are some good Catholics in *Oando*, where there are Churches, Negro Schoolmasters and Priests, that baptize and say Mass.

Dapper says, they begin their Year on the 15th of May, and form their Months by the Course of the Moon; but they don't count the Hours.

Dapper, *Morey*, and *Heylin*, give us the following History of their Kings since the *Portuguese* introduced Christianity, wherein 'tis to be observed, that they were always baptized with the Names of the Royal Family of *Portugal*.

Ann. 1486. I. *John*, who received his Name at his Baptism in 1490, in Honour of *John II.* who was then King of *Portugal*. *Morey* says, this Prince caused the Ceremonies to be performed in Publick, for an Example to his Subjects, and order'd a Church to be built, whereof the first Stone was laid on May 3. the Day of his Baptism. But some of his Subjects, who inhabited the Islands in the Lake of *Zembre*, rebelled in the mean time, and wasted the adjacent Country, so that he set out immediately with 6 of his Lords, and 80000 Men, and suppressed them. Before he went, the *Portuguese* Ambassador gave him a Standard, with a Cross in the Middle, telling him, that was a Mark of entering into the Croisade which Pope *Innocent VIII.* had publish'd against the Infidels. Upon this, the Queen was also baptized *Leonora*, after the Name of the then Queen of *Portugal*. After this, the King's eldest Son was baptized *Alphon-*
sius, after the Name of the Infant of *Portu-*
gal.

gal. But his second Son being a debauched Person, continued in his Idolatry, and withdrew from Court with some of his Followers. A little after the King's Concubines, who left him because he had embraced Christianity, got themselves to be readmitted, and engaged him in his old Superstition. His eldest Son would have reclaimed him; but he only lost his Father's good Will, and the second Son was recalled to Court, so that the new Converts had no Repose till this King's Death.

II. *Alphonfus*, his eldest Son. *Morery* says, he came by Night to the Palace, because he knew himself to be hated by those who were apostatized to their Idolatry, and next Morning assembled the chief Courtiers, who saluted him King. His Brother, whom *Heylin* calls *Panse Aquiline*, who was then out of Town waiting for some Forces, hastened back with all the Troops he could muster, but was defeated and made Prisoner. Some say, he died in Prison, and others upon a Scaffold, persisting in his Error to the last. After this, *Alphonfus* reduced all that revolted, on Pretence of Religion; and *Heylin* says, he reigned 50 Years, in which Time he advanced the Gospel, built and furnished Churches, and caused all Idols to be pulled down. *Merolla*, one of the Jesuits Missionaries, calls his Brother *Pansanguitina*, and reports, that when *Alphonso* forc'd him to fly to the Mountains, he was met there by some Christian Negroes, who took and carried him bound to the King his Brother, who embraced him with great Tendernefs, and endeavoured the Good both of his Soul and Body, but all in vain. His Lieutenant-General, being threaten'd with Death if he did not turn Christian, was baptized and set at Liberty, with an Injunction by Way of Penance, that he should be obliged to bring Water for all such as were to be baptized. They say, that *St. James* was seen assisting at this Battle; and *Merolla* adds, that for this Reason he has ever since been received for the Patron of Congo and *Angola*, and other neighbour Nations.

III. *Pedro*, the Son of *Alphonso*, in whose Time a College of 28 Canons was founded in the Cathedral of *St. Saviours*.

IV. *Francisco* his Son, whose Reign was but short.

V. *Diego* or *James*, one of *Francisco's* Kinsmen, in whose Time the Romish Religion was scandaliz'd by the vicious Lives of some of the Secular Clergy; yet our Author says, that in his Time *John III.* King of *Portugal*, sent four Jesuits hither, who are said to have converted 5000 Persons, and to have built three Churches in five Months.

VI. *Henry* his Brother, who succeeded after a sharp War about the Succession, in which all the Portuguese of *St. Saviours* were slain, except the Priests. He had not reigned long before he was killed in a Battle against the *Anziques*.

VII. *Alvarez* his Son. *Dapper* calls him his Son-in-Law, and the last of the ancient Race of the King's of Congo. He gives the following brief Account of this King's Wars with the *Jagos*, who, as we formerly observed, are a Vagabond Nation of Robbers, without King, Religion, or Houses. They came from *Ansico* and *Angola*, destroy'd the whole Province of *Batta* with Fire and Sword, and encamped in a Plain before *St. Salvador*, where they defeated the King in a set Battle, and obliged him to retire into the Town with great Loss; after which he fled with his chief Lords, and a great Number of Portuguese Priests and others, to an Island in the *Zaire*, called *Ilha das Caval-las*, because it abounds with Horses. In the mean time the *Jagos* laid *St. Salvador* in Ashes, and took abundance of Captives, whom they killed and eat. In short, the Desolation was so great, that a Slave worth 10 Crowns was sold for a Loaf, insomuch that most of the Inhabitants, who fled for their Lives to the Forrests and Mountains, were famish'd, and others sold themselves to the Portuguese, who transported them to the Island of *St. Thomas*. Nay, the Princes of the Blood and chief Lords were reduced to the Condition of Slaves. Most of those who retired to the Island fell sick, because of the Unwholesomeness of the Air, and the King himself was seized with a Dropsy, which he carried with him to his Grave. However, when Things were at the Extremity, he sent an Ambassador to desire Relief from *Sebastian* King of *Portugal*, who sent him a new-raised Regiment of 600 Men, with several Gentlemen and Volunteers. They took in Arms and Provisions

sions at the Island of *St. Thomas*, and when they had join'd the King in the Island, made a Descent upon the Continent, and at last put the *Jagos* to Flight, with their Muskets and Cannon; but there were several Battles, and it was a Year and a half before they were able to re-establish the King of *Congo* in the quiet Possession of his Throne. Afterwards the King sent an Ambassador to thank his *Portuguese* Majesty, and to desire a fresh Supply of Priests to propagate Christianity through all his Dominions. He also offered to make himself a Vassal to the Crown of *Portugal*, and to pay him an Annual Tribute of Slaves; but King *Sebastian* generously refus'd the Offer, return'd him an obliging Answer, wherein he stiled him Brother, and told him, he desir'd no more than his Perseverance in the Christian Religion.

VIII. *Alvarez II.* Son of the former, according to *Heylin*, who says, he made pressing Instances with *Sebastian* and *Henry* Kings of *Portugal* for a new Supply of Priests, the old Store being wasted in the Islands of *Zaire*. *Dapper* gives us this Relation of his Wars with the Count of *Songo*, the powerfullest of all his Vassals, and the most troublesome. The advantagious Situation of the Count's Territories behind the Forrest of *Findemguolla*, so that they were scarce accessible by a great Army, made him refuse to acknowledge the King of *Congo* for his Sovereign, but only as his Ally. Our Author observes by the Way, that this was the Count who, at the Sollicitation of the *Portuguese*, burnt the Factories of the *Dutch West-India Company*; but was obliged to rebuild them in 1643, when the *Dutch* were Masters of *Louando St. Paulo*. He says, the War we are speaking of began in 1636, when *Alvarez* rais'd some Forces, with which, and a Reinforcement of 80 *Portuguese*, commanded by the Governor of *Louando St. Paulo*, he marched to invade the Count's Territories; but the *Songois* surpris'd him by Ambuscade in the Forrest, cut his Army in Pieces, and carried him Prisoner to their Master; and to ransom himself, he was obliged to yield up divers Lands to the Count, one of which was the Principality of *Mocato*. The next Year the King rais'd a new Army, but was again defeated, and his Subjects blam'd him for marching against them with so small a

Force, when he might easily have oppress'd them with Numbers. *Dapper* says, these two Battles were only the Seeds of a long and bloody War which broke out between these two Princes in 1641, upon the following Occasion.

The Count of *Songo's* Son being excluded from his Father's Succession by a prevailing Faction, retired in Discontent to the Territories of the Duke of *Bamba*, where he met with more Enemies, who gave him an ill Reception; but when the Traitor dy'd, he was recall'd home and restor'd with a general Applause. After this, he sought to make himself independent of the King of *Congo*, and refused to do him Homage for his Lordship, pleading, that his Birth, and the free Election of the People, had given him a sufficient Right. Upon this, the King, who had before given him the Principality of *Mocato*, transferred it to his Son *Alphonfus*, who immediately rais'd Troops to take Possession of his new Principality, and the *Songois* arm'd on the other Hand to oppose him. They came at length to a close Engagement on April 29. 1645. when the Royal Army was cut in Pieces, and the Prince and his chief Generals made Prisoners; after which their Heads were cut off, and carried in Triumph upon Pikes, with Dancing, Leaping, and the usual Marks of Joy, only the Prince *Alphonfus* was spar'd by Order of the Count, who was his Cousin, and therefore treated him according to his Quality. Upon this, the King of *Congo* his Father rais'd such a numerous Army the next Year, as if he design'd to have overspread the whole Province of *Songo*. He gave the chief Command to the Duke of *Bamba*, who drew towards the Frontiers with most of the Nobility of the Kingdom, and 3 or 400 *Mulatto's*; but the Count's Forces laid Ambuscades in several Parts of the Forrest of *Findemguolla*, and surpris'd and charg'd them with such Valour, that the General, Nobles, and best of the Soldiers, were killed on the Spot, and the rest fled. This forced the K. of *Congo* to pay a great Ransom for his Son's Liberty, and to yield new Provinces to the Count. He was no sooner at Freedom, but the King, abhorring to be rivall'd, study'd Means how to revenge himself on the Count, and thought that a Foreign Militia would do the Business. For this End, he

he sent Ambassadors to *Brasil*, with Letters for C. *Maurice*, then Governor for the States General in the *West-Indies*, and a Present of 200 Slaves and a Gold Chain for himself, and other Slaves for the Counsellor of State. As soon as the Count of *Songo* heard this, he sent an Ambassador to *Holland*, and two others to Count *Maurice*, to pray him to continue Neuter. The *Dutch* Governor being an Ally to both, chose to be Mediator, order'd his Lieutenants in *Congo* and *Angola* to preserve the Peace between both Nations, and dismissed the Ambassadors, with Presents for themselves and Masters. He sent the King of *Congo* a Cloak of red Velvet trimmed with Gold and Silver Lace, a Cloth Coat, a Silk Waistcoat, and a Castor Hat, with a Band of Gold and Silk. To the Count of *Songo* he sent an open Chair lin'd with Silk, embroidered with Gold and Silver, a Cloak, a Castor Hat, and a Sword and Belt, adorned with a Silver Fringe. Yet the King of *Congo* and the Duke of *Bamba* sent fresh Ambassadors to C. *Maurice*, who gave them a civil Reception, and sent them to *Holland*, whither they carried Letters from their Master to the States General, to Prince *Frederick Henry*, and to the Intendants of the *West-India* Company. *Dapper* does not tell us the Purport nor Effect of their Letters, but only adds, that the Ambassadors were very black, strong, and nimble, and us'd to rub their Joints with Palm-Oil to make them supple; that they could leap well, and shew as many Tricks as if they were born to be Rope-Dancers and Gladiators; and that some of the States having invited them to Dinner, they were so complaisant that they shew'd 'em how the K. of *Congo* sits upon his Throne, and how the Negroes adore him, with other Customs of the Court, of which by and by.

IX. *Alvarez* III. This Prince is only mentioned by *Heylin*, who says, he was natural Son to the former, and therefore oppos'd by one of his Sisters and a younger Brother, who were legitimate; but that he defeated them in 1587, and built a Church to the *Virgin Mary* on the Field of Battle.

Merolla, the Popish Missionary, adds this further Account of their Kings.

X. *Alphonso* III. whom *Merolla* calls Don *Garcia*, and says, he was crown'd in the Time of Pope *Innocent* X. by a Missionary, after the Manner of the *Romish* Princes, by Vertue of a Bull and a Regal Crown, which Pope *Urban* VIII. granted the Kings of *Congo*.

XI. Don *Garcia* II. *Merolla* calls him the 17th Christian King of this Country, and says he was a great Tyrant, and extirpated several of the chief Families in his Kingdom, to preserve the Succession in his own Line. On his Death-Bed he consulted none but Wizards and Sorcerers, who hating his Son Don *Alphonso*, for fear that he would banish them when he came to the Crown, made the Father believe that he had design'd to poison him; upon which he declar'd his Son unworthy, and having got him murder'd, and nam'd Don *Antonio* I. his second Son, for his Successor, he died in the 21st Year of his Reign.

XII. Don *Antonio* I. He had a Hand in the Murder of his Brother, and all his other Relations. After he had killed his Wife, whom he falsely accused of Adultery, he married a near Kinswoman that he had formerly been in Love with, and us'd her Relations as bad. The *Portuguese* and Whites could not forbear shewing their Hatred at his Barbarity, for which he vow'd to beat and whip them out of his Dominions, and marched against them with an Army of 900000 Men, according to the Testimony of *Merolla* and another Jesuit, on a Day which was very remarkable for a prodigious Storm of Rain and Thunder, and in which he was like to have been devour'd by a Tiger, had not a Friar that attended the King to dissuade him from his Enterprize cleft him in two with a Scymiter. The *Portuguese*, being resolved to find out the Gold Mines which the *Congolans* had long promis'd, but still delay'd to shew them, assembled 400 brave *Europeans*, with near 2000 Negro Slaves, and lodg'd them in the Marquisate of *Pemba*, where they were soon after assaulted by above 80000 *Ethiopians*, who surrounded them and gave Signal for a Battle, tho' a Missionary endeavour'd to make Peace between both Armies. The *Portuguese* fired from their Guns and two Cannon (which were all they had) with such Success, that they routed their Enemies

mies with a terrible Slaughter, and forced the King to fly with the Friar behind a Rock, which was broke down by the Cannon, and both were killed by its Fall. Those that fled left all their Baggage and the King's Utensils of Gold behind them. Our Author observes, that since this fatal Slaughter, the Negroes have never car'd to dig for Gold, for fear of losing their Country and Liberty. The Conquerors cut off the dead King's Head, and carried it with the Crown and Scepter to *Loanda*, where they bury'd it, as appears by some Painting which *Merolla* says he saw upon the Wall of our Lady of *Nazareth's* Church. Innumerable Slaughters followed his Death, because every one thought it his Right to command rather than obey. The *Portuguese*, tho' they had taken the Crown in War, said they were ready to resign it when requir'd. His Successor sent an Ambassador with a great Retinue from *St. Salvador* to *Loanda* for it; but he was stopped by the Duke of *Bamba* as he passed thro' his Territories, that Prince having been always an Enemy to *Congo* on Account of his Pretences to that Crown, founded on his Descent from *Donna Anna*, one of the Rival Queens, of which we shall say more by and by. In the mean time the Crown was stole away, and *Lobo*, the Governor of *Loando*, caused one of Silver gilt to be made at his own Charge. 'Tis said this Man laid the first Foundation of a Communication with *Congo*, and render'd it dependent on *Portugal*. Our Author does not tell us the Name of *Antonio's* Successor; but we suppose it was *Don John Emanuel Gritho*, of whom he gives us no other Account than of a Letter he receiv'd from this King, dated at *Lemba* in *Febr.* 1688. wherein the King signs thus; *Your Reverence's Spiritual Son the Prince of Congo, Don John Emanuel Gritho, who treads on the Lion in his Mother's Kingdom.*

To this we thought fit to add what our Author observ'd at the Court of the Queen Mother of *Congo* as follows: At his Entrance into the three first Apartments he met Servants with Torches, who introduced him into the Presence of the Queen, who sat wrapped up in a Cloak, with nothing under but her Shift, and her Daughter on a Carpet by her. Her Name was *Donna Potentiana*. She always strove to make her self

powerful, and was a great Enemy to the Queen Dowager *Donna Anna*, and to *Donna Agnes*, another Queen, who all three often inflam'd the Kingdom, by seeking each to have her Husband crown'd. *Merolla* adds, that before he left this Country, he prevailed with the King of *Congo* to level the Place where the Wizards meet, and to take the Banners from the Burial-places.

We come next to their Election, Coronation, Titles, &c. *Dapper* says, they chuse one of the King's Sons for Successor, without Respect to Age or Legitimacy, because they think all the Children of Parents equal by the Law of Nature, and make Merit the only Difference; and that sometimes they pass by the Children, and elect the King's Brother. The Election is decided by Majority of Voices, and absolutely depends on the Chief of their Nobility and the *Portuguese*; but formerly the Duke of *Bamba* was Presumptive Heir of the Crown. On the Coronation-Day, all the Gentlemen and *Portuguese* meet in a square open Court of the Palace, encompassed with a Plaister Wall 5 Hands Breadth in Height. They set a Crown embroider'd with Gold, Silver, and Silk, together with three Gold Bracelets of the Thickness of one's little Finger, and a Velvet Purse, with the Pope's Bull and Indulgences in a Velvet Chair of State, before which lie Cushions of the same, and fine Tapestry. In the mean time he that is chosen knows it not, but sits down among the Crowd, for there are only 10 or 12 Gentlemen acquainted with the Secret. Then the Ceremony is open'd by the Heralds, who make a loud Proclamation in these Words: *Whosoever thou art that art elected King, take Care that thou be not an Extortioner, revengeful, and unjust: Be a Friend to the Poor, give Alms for the Redemption of Captives and Slaves, succour the Afflicted, favour the Church, preserve Peace in thy Kingdom, and never break the Alliance between thee and the King of Portugal thy Brother.* The Proclamation is succeeded by the Sound of Flutes and Hautboys; after which two of the Electors take the Elected by the Hand, and lead him to the Royal Chair, where one puts on the Crown, and the other his Bracelets and Cloak, and then a Priest, follow'd by his Clerk, in a white Chasuble and Stole, repre-

representing the Person of a Viceroy, brings him the Mass-Book and the Gospels, on which he takes an Oath, that he will inviolably observe every Thing that is required of him by the Herald. When the Ceremony is ended, all the People reconduct the new King to his Palace, and some of the Crowd throw Dust on him, to put him in Mind, that tho' he is now a King, yet he will be nothing one Day but Dust and Ashes. After this, the new Prince stays at home for 8 Days together, to receive the Congratulations of his Nobility, the Portuguese, and Clergy. The Negro Gentry salute him by kneeling before him on both Knees, and clapping their Hands for Joy, for which they have the Honour to kiss his Majesty's Hand. The Portuguese bend but one Knee, and the Priests make only a low Reverence, and kiss their Hands as they rise. The Week after the King shews himself to the People in Publick, and makes a Speech, assuring them, that he will faithfully keep his Coronation-Oath and Promises, and that he will have no other Aim in all his Actions but the Prosperity of his Kingdom, the Good of his Subjects, and the Propagation of Christianity. Then the People take an Oath of Fidelity, but they seldom or never keep it, because they revolt and hatch Treason for the least Occasion, lay great Rains, Droughts, or any unexpected Calamities, to his Charge, and think no Attonement sufficient but his Death.

Heylin says, the Imperial Stile is King of Congo, Bamba, Sango, Samdi, Bangu, Batti, Pemba, Abundi, Matana, Quisoma, Angola, and Cacongo; Lord of the Congemes, Amozale, Langultungi, Anzuichi, Cucchi, and Zoanghi; and that the King's Coat of Arms is Mars, 5 Swords meeting in Base-Sol. He adds, that this Coat was taken by Alphonso, the 2d King in the before-mentioned Catalogue, because in the Battle which he fought against Panse Aquitine, he and his Soldiers pretended they saw 5 Swords hanging in the Air with their Points turn'd directly against their Enemy.

Morery says, the Royal Stile runs thus: "Manicongo, by the Grace of God, King of Congo, Angola, Macumba, Ocanga, Cumba, Lulta, Zouza; Lord of the Dutchies of Batta, Sunda, Bamba, Ambuille, and their

"Dependencies, of the County of Songo, "Angoy, Cacongo, of the Monarchy of the "Ambondes, and Master of the great River "Zaire.

Heylin says, the King has no Garrisons or fortified Towns, but his Subjects are so numerous, that he is able to raise 400000 Men in Bamba only, and 70000 at least, well exercis'd in Wars, with the Jaggies out of the Province of Batta, besides what may be drawn from the other Provinces. He raises a great Revenue from his Mines of Silver and other Metals, from the Cockle-Shell Trade, which he keeps wholly to himself, from the Trade of Slaves and Elephants Teeth, and from the Tribute paid him by the King of Angola. In short, his Revenue is uncertain, because 'tis not paid in Coin; but our Author thinks he is as rich and well furnish'd as any Monarch in Africa. Dapper, who is more particular, says, he has an Annual Tribute from the Dukes of Bamba, Batta, Sundo, &c. the Counts of Pembo, Pango, and other Vassals, who pay it on St. James's Day to the King's Commissioners in Simbo's, Miller, and Cattle. The Noblemen meet and celebrate the Day as a Festival, and the King gives them a small Present. When all Charges are paid, our Author says, the King has 120 Crowns left to defray the Expence of the Household. He adds, that some Vassals, besides the ordinary Tribute, present him out of their own Generosity with a Couple of Goats, Palm-Wine, Nuts and Oil, with Bacoves and other Fruits.

Dapper says, that in 1642, when the Dutch were Masters of Louando St. Paulo, they sent Ambassadors to St. Salvador to treat of an Alliance with the King of Congo. He gives us this Account of their Reception: They were received in the Night by the Light of Flambeaus, and passed 200 Paces thro' two Ranks of Men, each holding a Wax Taper. The King was in a Chapel built of Clay, and cover'd with Leaves and Greens. A Copper Candlestick, with several Branches, containing lighted Wax Tapers, was hung in the Middle. The King was dressed in a Night Gown of Cloth of Gold. He had three great Gold Chains about his Neck, a Carbuncle on his Right Thumb, and two great Emeralds on his Left Hand. He had a Cross of Gold fasten'd on the Left Sleeve

of his Gown, with a fine polish'd Chrystal set in the Middle. On his Head he wore a white Cap, and grey Boots on his Legs and Feet. A Page stood on each Hand of him. He that was on the Right had a Linen Fan to cool him, and the other held a Bow and a Pewter Scepter wrapped up in fine Linen. The Words, *Don Alvarez King of Congo*, were embroider'd in Capitals on the Head of his Throne or Velvet Chair, under a Canopy of white Sattin embroider'd with Gold, and fring'd with Silk. The Pavement was cover'd with *Turkey Carpet*, and his Interpreter sat a little lower at his Right Hand.

Denis Carli, who with other Missionaries went to salute *Don Alvaro*, the second King of Congo, in their Way to *Bamba thro' Pemba*, gives us the following Account of his Attendance and Habit. When they met him, he was preceded by the Sound of Trumpets, Fifes, Drums, and Cornets. He was then about 20 Years old, and clad with a Scarlet Cloak and Gold Buttons. He says, that he commonly wears white Buskins upon colour'd Silk Stockings, and that 'twas reported he had new Clothes every Day; but the Father could scarce credit it, in a Country where fine Stuffs and good Tailors are scarce. Before him went 24 young Blacks, all Sons of Dukes or Marquisses, who wore about their Middle a Handkerchief of Palm-Tree Cloth dy'd Black, and a Cloak of blue *European* Cloth hanging down to the Ground; but all of them were bare headed and bare footed. He had about 100 Officers with him in the like Dress, and after them came a Crowd of other Blacks with only those black Handkerchiefs. Near the King went a Black who carried his Umbrella, which was of Silk and Fire Colour, lac'd with Gold, and another who carried a Chair of Carnation Velvet with Gold Nails, and the Wood all gilt. Two others in red Coats carried his red Hammock, and a Staff cover'd with red Velvet. He adds, that in 1646, when King *Alphonso III.* gave Audience to some Missionaries, he had on a Vest of Cloth of Gold set with Precious Stones, and on his Hat a Crown of Diamonds, besides other Stones of great Value. He sat on a Chair, under a Canopy of rich Crimson Velvet, with gilt Nails, and under his Feet was a great Carpet, with

two Stools of the same Colour, and Silk lac'd with Gold.

Dapper says, the King commonly wears a white Cap, and gives one of the same Fashion to his Favourites and Gentlemen, who hold their Lands of the Crown; so that 'tis a Badge of their Nobility, as it is of their Disgrace when the King re-demands it. When he goes out with all his Gentlemen dress'd in their Caps, he puts on a Hat over his own; but the Heat soon obliges him to take it off, and then he thrusts his Cap to one Side of his Head, as if he intended it should fall, which it surely does, and then all the Gentlemen hast to take it up; but the King won't receive it again, looks upon the Fall of his Cap as a gross Affront, returns home in a Huff, and next Day resolves to make his Subjects pay dearly for it, by sending 2 or 300 Officers over all his Provinces to exact new Imposts. *Dapper* tells us, that on the Day of his Marriage, he gets all his Subjects Beds measur'd, and makes them pay a certain Sum, according to their Bigness, as a Fee to the Princess or Chief of his Concubines, who is called *Mani Mombanda*. She lives in an Apartment of the Palace with her Damsels, who lie out almost all Night, and watch their Mistress by Turns. They are very grateful for the Princess's Kindness, insomuch that when a Gallant climbs the Palace Walls, and gets into the Queen's Chambers, they pretend they don't see him; but if the King should come to know it, 'twould cost the Gallant his Life, tho' he were an *European*. Yet tho' he is a Christian, *Dapper* adds, that he lies with the Queen's Damsels or any other Woman, without minding his Confessor; and that he brings up young Girls, whom none must touch till he die, which makes the Princess so mad, that she tries all Methods to pay him in his own Coin.

Dapper says, that when the King of Congo dies, they bury him sitting in a great Tomb; and before Christianity was known and professed here, 'twas anciently the Custom to inter 12 young Virgins with him alive, to serve him in the other World, and the Ladies of Quality us'd to contend which should be the first of the Number. They were dressed in their best Apparel, and all the Family gave them Presents, that they might

might make a good Appearance in the other World, and buy them Necessaries. He observes, that they continue to this Day to celebrate the first Week of the Funerals of their Kings and great Lords with good Cheer; and that every Year they keep the Day of his Death with Feasting.

We come next to their Government, Laws, Arms, &c. with which we shall conclude the General History of *Proper Congo*.

Dapper says, their Governors have learnt of the *Portuguese* to command the greater Respect from their Subjects by a Majestick Appearance in rich Stuffs, sitting in Velvet Chairs, and leaning upon Cushions on a Pavement cover'd with a *Turkey* Carpet. The Prince has an absolute Command over his Subjects, and condemns those who offend him to perpetual Slavery without Mercy. 'Tis one of his chief Diversions to treat and wait upon his Pages and the Nobility of his Palace after himself has dined. About Noon the King causes his Household to be number'd, and orders all the Pots to be brought him. In the one there are Beans, in the other Flesh, and in another Millet; but there's no seasoning but Salt and Palm-Oil. The King serves the great Lords first, gives each their Mefs in a Wooden Spoon, and sends every one a Bottle of Palm-Wine. Others are placed at different Tables 7 or 8 together, and have Pottage given them in a great Dish. When the Feast is over, all the Guests fall at the King's Feet, and testify their Acknowledgments of his Liberality by shaking their Heads, clapping their Hands, and bending their Knees. Then they spend the Afternoon in taking Tobacco, and drinking Palm-Wine, till the King and his whole Court fall down drunk upon the Spot. When the Prince goes abroad, he is attended by all the Nobility of his Palace, some before, and others behind him, leaping and dancing to the Sound of great Drums, long Ivory Flutes like Hautboys, and other Musical Instruments playing before, like so many Tumblers and Rope-Dancers. When he goes to Church, he is also attended thither and back again by the Seculars and Regular *Portuguese*. When he is in Publick, he wears a great long Cloak like a Priest's Caslock, which is of Silk, Velvet, or Woollen Cloth, lin'd with Plush,

together with Gold Chains, Coral Bracelets, and a fine Hat edg'd with a Gold Galoom. He has commonly 100 Pages in his Service, who wear a coarse black Ratteen, and live within the Verge of his Palace. He eats after the *Portuguese* Fashion at a high Table, where he sits all alone, and is served out of Plate; but he has not much.

Dapper says, the King has a Judge for Civil Causes in every Province, who has Power to imprison, set at Liberty or fine; but an Appeal may be brought to the King, who is the Sovereign Judge, and takes Cognizance of Criminal Matters. His Counsellors are 10 or 12 of his Favourites, whom he consults on all important Occasions, and to whom he commits the Execution of his Designs. They severely punish Magick and Idolatry, put Homicides to Death, and burn Witches or Sorcerers. After Condemnation, all the Criminal's Goods are confiscated to the King, notwithstanding the Complaints of Wives and Children; and many times Men are condemn'd to Banishment without due Proof, in order that their Goods may be confiscated to the King.

He tells us, that their Military Equipage is very singular. The Captains wear square Caps, adorned with the Feathers of Peacocks, Ostriches, Cocks, &c. The upper Part of their Bodies is naked, only they wear across their Shoulders Iron Chains, whose Links are as thick as one's little Finger. Their Arms are great broad Axes, Ponyards with a Haft like our Knives, Bows 6 Hands Breadth long, Arrows with Iron Hooks, and Feathers to make them lighter, together with Muskets, Fuses, and Bucklers, of the Bark of a Tree, lin'd with a Buffler's Skin. They are all Foot, for they have no Horse. They march at the Sound of Drum and Horn at the General's Command, but without Order, and keep too far off from their Enemies to skirmish. They are very nimble in facing about, changing Posts, and warding off Blows. They begin their Attacks with certain young Men, who have little Bells hung at their Girdles to animate the Soldiers. When the Commander gives a Signal, the first Battalion after Charge falls back, and is reliev'd by another. The General keeps in the Center of the Army, for if he fall on the Spot, all the Authority and

and Bravery of the other Officers won't prevail with them to forbear flying the very next Minute. In a Word, *Dapper* says, they are very sorry Soldiers, and never get Provisions and Convoys enough for their Army; but they begin now to learn from the *Portuguese*.

We come next to the particular Geography of *Proper Congo*. 'Tis commonly divided, according to our Tables, into the 6 Provinces of *Bamba*, *Songo* or *Sonho*, *Sundo*, *Pango*, *Batta*, and *Pembo*, which the *Sansons* say contain 30 or 40000 Villages. *Luyts* says, that the four last lie within Land, and the two first on the Sea-Coasts. Captain *Smith*, a Traveller, excludes *Songo*, and reckons only the other five. But we shall follow our Table, and, according to our Map, the first Division we come to is

I. SONGO, SOGNO, or SONHO.

The *Sansons* bound it with *Loango* on the N. *Sunde* and *Pemba* on the E. *Bamba* on the S. and the Ocean on the W. They make it almost 200 Miles where longest from N. to S. tho' scarce 160 in a direct Line along the Coast from the River *Loango* to that of *Ambrizi*, and the same where broadest from E. to W. *Heylin* bounds it on the E. with *Batta* and *Anzicana*. Some extend it from the River *Ambrizi* to the Red Mountains on the Side of *Loango*. It lies on both Sides the River *Zaire*. *Dapper* says, 'tis almost encompassed with the Forrest of *Findemguella*, and divided into several Lordships, which were formerly independent, but now hold of the King of *Congo*. *Luyts* says, it abounds with Monkeys and Parrots, both green and grey. *Merolla* says, 'tis an absolute Earldom, but tributary to *Congo*. He makes it a Peninsula, and bounds it with *Bamba* on the E. with the Ocean on the W. and S. and with the River *Zaire* on the N. which parts it from *Angoy*. He places this River in the Torrid Zone, S. Lat. 6. and says, all its Islands are inhabited by Christians.

Merolla, who has taken most Pains in the Natural History of this Country, says, they till the Ground without Plow or Spade thus: Against the rainy Season they gather up the Herbs and Roots into Heaps, and then burn them upon the Land. After the first Shower, they turn up the Ground with

a slight How, fix'd to a Handle of about two Spans long. With this they dig with one Hand, while with the other they scatter the Seed, which they have always ready in a Bag by their Sides. Agriculture belongs solely to the Women, who are commonly forced to carry their Children upon their Backs in Swathing-Rolls, to prevent their being hurt by the great Number of Insects that come out of the Earth on this Occasion, for they are too fond to leave them at home. They also carry them in a Sort of Hammock upon their Shoulders when they go with any Burdens. They sow and reap in *June*, if the Heavens favour them with Rain. They sow *Indian Wheat*, a Sort of small Kidney-Beans, and other various Kinds of Pulse, for most Part unknown to us, particularly the *Mandois*, which grow three or four together under Ground, and are about the Bigness of an Olive. They draw a Milk from them like that of Almonds. There's another Sort of Pulse call'd *Incumbe*, which grows under Ground, is like a Musket-Ball, and very wholesome and well tasted. There are some wild ones found, and amongst them Nutmegs, which fall from the Trees. They have a Sort of Roots call'd *Bataras*, which, when roasted, tast like Chestnuts. They bruise their Mandioca as small as Rice, yet do not make Bread of it, but eat it raw, or else in Broth. It casts no Seed, so that they propagate it by breaking off a Branch, and burying it in the Ground, where it will soon spread and flourish. The *Portuguese* use more of it than the Blacks. There's another Sort made of boiled Roots, which they use instead of Bread. There's a Sort of Pulse call'd *Ouwanda*, like Rice. It grows upon a Shrub, lasts two or three Years, and multiplies exceedingly every 6 Months. They have another Pulse call'd *Noanza*, which is brought from *Brasil*. 'Tis exceeding white, very like *Indian Beans*, and therefore the *Portuguese* call them *Brasil Beans*. There's another Sort of Pulse call'd *Congula*, which is highly esteem'd by the Negroes, but not by the Europeans. They have Maiz also like *Indian Wheat*. That called *Massa Bomballa* grows up with Stalks as high as our Wheat, which it resembles in Ears and Whiteness. It yields a white Flower. The Seed of the Herb *Massango* is like our Hemp-Seed. The Plant called

called *Afeley* runs up as high as a Halbert, with Ears like our Millet. It gripes those who don't use to eat on't. That call *Luvo* may be preserv'd many Years. 'Tis very wholesome. Its Ear is triangular, its Grain like Millet, and its Colour red. They have Ananas and other Fruit-Trees, particularly, 1. That called the *Count*, which *Merolla* says is most esteemed. Its Fruit is like a Giant Pear, with an ordinary Coat, but as white as Milk within. Its Seed is like a Bean, and its Juice so pleasant, that 'tis commonly given to sick People to recover their Tastes. Several of them grow wild about the Mountains of *Congo*. 2. The *Cashui* Fruit. 'Tis much larger than an Apple, and when ripe, finely beautified with Yellow and Crimson. Its Core yields another Fruit of a dusky Colour, which, when roasted in the Fire, tastes like a Chesnut, and is naturally hot, tho' the other is mild and refreshing. The *Guaiavas* are like Pears. They have short Stalks, are Yellow without, Carnation within, and have very hard Seeds, which stick close to the Pulp. They have a Sort of tart Plums called *Chichere*, which are given to People in Fevers. There's also Colas, several Sorts of Palm-Trees that yield both Wine and Oil, of which some have Clusters so large, that a Man can't carry above one or two of them. Where these Trees don't grow, the People make Wine by soaking *Indian* Wheat in Water, which they afterwards take out, press it, and put the Liquor into a Pot, from whence 'tis drawn off into another fit for drinking. They call it *Guallo*. There's one Sort of Palm called *Tamgra*, which bears a Fruit like Olives, but is insipid, and falls to the Share of the Monkeys; and there's another Sort whose Fruit consists of long Strings of little hard Balls, which, when pounded and mix'd with the Powder of *Engalla* or Wild Boar's Teeth, compose a wonderful Cordial. Here's also another Palm like the *Matomba* Tree formerly mentioned, whose Leaves yield a Sort of Thread, of which the Natives weave Cloth. The smallest Branches are smooth and pliant, and serve to make Travelling Nets, and of the greater they build their Houses. There's a Tree called *Maboute*, with a Fruit like Oranges. 'Tis exceeding round and tough rinded, and contains se-

veral Seeds like those in Pomegranates, but more confusedly. It has a very pleasant Taste, enclining to sharp, and is commonly given to feverish Persons for a Cooler. The small Sort is better than the greatest. The *Donno* Tree has a Bark like Cinnamon, and there's a Tree whose Wood smells and tastes like Garlick. The *Aliconde* is so large, that Hogs are commonly kept from the Sun within its hollow Trunk. It has a Fruit like Pompions, with a Stalk about the Bigness of a Man's Finger, and two or three Foot long. The Shells are commonly used for Vessels or Bottles. The inner Rind, when well soak'd and beaten, yields a Sort of Matter to spin, much more durable and finer than Hemp. They have abundance of Cotton, Medicinal Vegetables, Drugs, and some Pepper, with great Woods of Lemon and Orange Trees, as good as *China*.

Merolla gives us this Account of their Birds. They have a Sort of Sparrows and Turtles like ours. The first change their Colour to Red in Time of Rain, and then return to their old Colour. There are small Eagles, and several Sorts of Parrots, different from those of *Brasil*. They have Crows which are white upon their Breasts and the Top of their Wings, but black every where else like ours. They have Pelicans which are all over black, except on their Breasts, that are Flesh Colour'd like a Turkey's Neck. He tells us of one remarkable Sort of Birds here, which haunt near the Rivers, and dance and leap at the least Sound of Musick. They are pretty large and white, with long Bills, Necks and Feet. There's another Sort of very white Birds, so fine, especially in their Tails, that the *European* Ladies buy them at any Rate for Ornament. There are many other Birds and Fowl, which our Author omits. He says, their small Birds build their Nests like our Swallows, and that for this Purpose they draw out the Thread of Palm-Leaves with their Beaks. They build round a slender Bough, so that their Nests are rocked by the high Winds. The largest Birds build either on the Top in the Trunk, or in the thorny Boughs of the Tree called *Mafuma*, whose Prickles are exceeding hard, and its Fruit like a green Citron. When open'd, it throws forth a wonderful fine Wool, with which they stuff Pillows and Bolsters.

They

They have wild Hens finer and better tasted than the tame ones, and Partridges like ours; but they don't regard them. He tells us of another wonderful Bird here described by Father *Cavazzi* in his *Historical Descriptions*, Book I. P. 50. N^o 153. 'Tis pretty like a Sparrow, and looks all black at a Distance; but upon a nearer View 'tis discover'd to be bluish. It sings as soon as the Day breaks, and the Jesuit says it pronounces Jesus Christ almost articulately. He tells us of another Bird mentioned by Father *Copra*, in his *Cambr. Illust.* which says plainly, *Va dritto*, i. e. Go right; and of another, especially in the Kingdom of *Matamba*, which sings *Vuichi, Vuichi*, i. e. Honey, Honey, in the Language of the Negroes. They skip from one Place to another, and rest upon the Tree where the Honey is, that the Passengers may take it, and the Bird feeds on what remains.

They have abundance of Elephants, which *Merolla* says they kill after this Manner: When they are got together in a Herd, the Hunter anoints himself all over with their Dung, and gets in among them with his Lance, where he creeps under their Bellies, till he has an Opportunity to strike one of them under the Ear; after which he escapes immediately before the Beast turns about; and the rest being deceived by the Smell of their Dung, take no Notice of his crying out and frowning, but suppose it to be only one of their Young, and going away, leave him a Prey to the Hunter. If the Elephant pursues him, he takes to several Roads, and so baffles him. The Negroes distil a Water by the Sun from the Bones of Elephants Legs, which they count good against Asthmas, Sciaticas, or any cold Humours. Some of the Pagans, particularly the *Giaghi*, have such an Opinion of the Strength of Elephants Tails, that when any of their Captains or chief Lords die, they commonly preserve one in Memory of him, and pay a Sort of Adoration to it. They often hunt them for this Reason alone; and our Author observes, they are so superstitious, that if it be not cut off at one Blow from the Body of a live Elephant, they think it has no Vertue. He says, they have no Lions, Tigers, or Wolves; and that when any of them, especially Tigers, happen to enter the Count's Domi-

nions, he that first discovers them must go immediately and acquaint the Governor, who raises the Country to drive them out into the open Field by Shouts, Drums, and other Warlike Instruments, when they single out a Person to assault him with a sharp long Knife in one Hand, and a slight Shield in the other, to defend him from the Leaps of the Beast, till he finds an Opportunity to cut off one or more of his Legs, and to make him fall. Their Lions seldom do any Hurt, unless provok'd. They have Wild Dogs which go out in great Numbers to hunt, and set upon all Lions, Tigers, and Elephants, which they meet with, till they kill them, tho' they lose never so many of their Company: Yet they do little or no Damage to the Inhabitants. They are red Hair'd, have small slender Bodies, and their Tails turn up upon their Backs like Greyhounds. They have Wolves that scratch thro' the Walls of their Houses, which are built with Palm Leaves, and devour the Inhabitants. They have also wild Men and Women, which are sometimes taken in Hunting; Baboons, and divers Sorts of Monkeys, with great Numbers of wild Goats and Boars in the Woods. They have tame Goats which bring three or four young ones at a time, Sheep with Hair instead of Wool, Rams without Horns, and Ewes which are not near so fruitful as the Goats. They prefer Goats Flesh before Mutton, and they chuse to geld their young Goats rather than their Lambs. They have Serpents, especially the *Copras*, which climb about in the Houses and Trees Night and Day. They spit Poison at a great Distance into People's Eyes, which certainly makes them blind, if they don't presently anoint them with Woman's Milk. There's another Sort call'd *Embambe*, which leap upon Travellers, twine themselves round their Bodies, and fix a sharp Sting which they carry in their Tails into his Breast, that presently makes them burst. The Natives have no Way to cure themselves but by cutting the Serpent in two with a Knife, which they carry about them for that Purpose, as soon as it has enter'd its Sting.

Ovington, whose Observations at *Malemba*, the chief Place in *Songo*, deserve to be interspersed with those of the Missionaries, gives us this Account of the People, and first

first of their Salutations, &c. When they meet one another, they bow at some Distance, and fall upon their Knees; after which each of them rise up, clap Hands together four or five times, then they approach one another, join their Palms together, and then each joins his own Hands as before. They are humble, easy of Access, and have an Aspect that is neither stiff nor morose. Both the Prince and Men of Quality are serv'd upon the Knee, and they always ask Alms or a considerable Favour kneeling. He adds, that they are great Lovers of Brandy, and horrid Swearers in *European* Oaths, which they first learnt from the Sailors.

Merolla says, the Gentry wear a Sort of Straw Garment on their Shoulders, that reaches down to their Waists, curiously wrought, with their Arms hanging out at two Slits, and ending in two Tassels, which hang down on their Right Side. They have a Cloth girt about their Waists, which on one Side hangs down to the Ground, and the most honourable of them wear a wrought Silk Cap neatly quilted. The Ladies have a Sort of Straw Petticoat called *Modello*, that reaches to their Middles, and from the Waist upwards to their Breasts they have a Piece of Cloth, which they bring twice about them, and that which goes about a second time they wrap round their Head like a Veil in the Church. Both Sexes smook much in long Pipes. The Vulgar have only a Cloth about their Loins, which reaches no lower than their Knees, and in the Inland Parts they have only enough to cover their Shame. They generally go stark naked within Doors, because of the excessive Heat for 9 Months together, before and after *June, July, and August*. *Ovington* says, those of most Note wear a Sort of Net-work Nightrail about their Shoulders, which is close wrought either white or black, and made of one entire Piece, with a Hole in the Middle, just big enough to thrust their Heads thro' when they put it on; but some prefer an *English* Dress if they can purchase it, and wear it only upon Festivals or other publick Days. Many of the Nobility smear their Faces with red Paint, to make them look gay and lively.

He says, the Diet of the common People is but ordinary, because they can't purchase Flesh. Their common Food is Corn, Herbs, and Spring-Water. Sometimes they have a little Fish, which, with a few Pindars, they reckon a Dainty. They are a Sort of Pulse sown under Ground, where they sprout above the Surface in a Cod, which is an Inch long, like that of our Pease and Beans, and they are commonly eat with Beef and Pork. Our Author says, he brought some of them over, which were sown in the Bishop of *London's* Garden. The Negroes love no Flesh till 'tis unfavoury, and therefore dry it upon the Roofs of their Houses, and sometimes bury it under Ground, till it proves tender by being tainted. They are very temperate in their Eating, and live commonly to 70 or 80 Years of Age in perfect Health.

Merolla says, the married People live very lovingly together, and that the Women are very true to their Husbands, whether Blacks or Whites, and never have any Bastards. He observes, that if any obtain a Pipe out of a Woman's Mouth, 'tis look'd on as an Earnest of farther Favour. He adds, that they are such Observers of all Fasts enjoind by the Church, that they would not transgress, unless commanded to it to save their Lives. They meet together on the first Day of *Lent*, to vow a strict Continence till *Easter*; and if they transgress, they voluntarily undergo a severe Penance.

He tells us, that when the Negroes have any private Quarrels, each assembles as many of his Friends as he can, and go to the Place of Challenge, where drawing up in Sight of each other, they first argue the Case coolly, and then rail at one another till they fall to downright Blows. Then they beat their Drums, which are made of one entire Piece of thin Wood like great Earthen Jars. They are cover'd with a Beast's Skin, beat with the Hand, and sound louder than ours. They carry Guns, but throw them away after the first Onset. They set them against their Breasts without taking Aim, and generally shoot over their Enemies Heads, because they squat down as soon as they see the Flash in the Pan. After they have done with their Fire-Arms,

Z z z

they

they take to their Bows and Arrows, which, when at a Distance, they shoot up into the Air, that they may do the more Mischief when they fall; and when they are near, they shoot them in a direct Line. When they fall, the Enemy gather them up to use them again. Sometimes they poison their Arrows, and cure the Wounds they make by Piss. They also use great and small Knives, Axes, &c. which they buy of the *Europeans*. When they engage, those that are conquer'd become Slaves to the Conquerors if taken; and if not, often kill themselves for Madness. He adds, that sometimes too the *Christians* make Slaves of one another for Trifles. On the contrary *Ovington* observes, that the *Africans* in general seldom decide their Quarrels in the open Field by Sword or Gun, but slyly revenge most Affronts by secret Poison; that when they go to War, 'tis more for the Sake of Captives to make Slaves of them, than for any other End; and that they exchange them for Fire-Arms and Ammunition. He adds, that in his Time there was a hot War between the Kings of *Malemba* and *Cabinde*, which they say commenc'd upon the Departure of a beautiful Woman from the Country of *Malemba* to the King of *Cabinde*. There's a *Mafouko* or Deputy-General at *Malemba*, to whom our Author and his Company presented a large Cheese and two Bottles of Brandy, which he returned with a Kid, a small Callebash of Palm-Wine, a Cock, and a little Vessel of Lime-Juice, and those who carried it spoke the *English* Language, which many of them have in some measure attain'd, by the frequent Traffick and Stay of the *English* in these Parts.

Ovington says, that in order to preserve the Royal Race untainted, they chuse the King's Sister's Son for Successor, because they think that the Female Offspring secures the Succession more than the Male, and she is at Liberty to pick out her Gallant wherever she will. They use Circumcision, which is perform'd by one set apart for that Office. Every 5th Day is their Sabbath, when some reputable Persons of Years and Discretion preach to the Youth against Stealth, Uncleaness, Adultery, Murder, and other Vices, with all the

Rhetorick and Zeal that they are Masters of, and threaten them with a future miserable State in the dreadful Society of *Benimbe*, i. e. the Devil, if they continue obstinate, and promise them Happiness with *Zammampoango*, i. e. God, if they follow his Advice. They believe the Immortality of the Soul, and future Rewards and Punishments. They think that *Zammampoango* inhabits above, and that he is the Creator and Sovereign of the Sun, Moon, the Heavens and the Earth. They are afraid to walk out in dark, gloomy, dull Weather, for they believe that *Benimbe* or the Devil often comes into the Fields, cover'd with Mists and thick Darkness, where he punishes the Wicked more or less, so that some die of the Bruises he gives them, and others are confin'd to their Beds.

We come next to treat of the Counts of *Songo*, &c. *Merolla* says, there are 9 Electors, who generally chuse a new Count before the old one is bury'd. During the *Interregnum* a Child governs, who is obey'd by all as much as if he was lawful Prince. When the Election is over, 'tis represented to the Missionaries for their Approbation, that they may publish it in the Church, or else our Author says it goes for nothing. When the Count is dead, the Countess Dowager (like the Queen Dowager of *Congo*) returns to her first Home, and lives in Private, only she has the Privilege to take Place next to the Countess Regent. Sometimes there are 3 or 4 Countess Dowagers at once, because the Women live much longer than the Men, and because no body dare marry them except the Successor. They are enjoin'd to strict Continence in their Widowhood, and if they are lewd, they are punish'd by Fire or the Sword. If the Son or any other Person of the Blood has a Mind to succeed his Relation even in the Life-time of the dying Prince, it commonly causes great Commotions in the State, because they are generally put in the Throne by Factions, exclusive of the Electors. For this Reason the Death of all is conceal'd as much as possible. He says, that the Jesuits enjoined one of their Counts a severe Penance for having murder'd several of his Subjects. The Count's Sons after his Death are no more than private Gentlemen; and if

if their Father has a Mind to buy them any Estates, he must publish thro' his Dominions that he does it with his own Money, arising from his own Rents, or else the Children will run the Risk of being turn'd out after his Death: But he may grant such Crown-Lands as he reduces to Tillage how he pleases; and *Merolla* tells us, that himself and his Brethren used to beg some Crown-Lands for such Slaves as were baptized, to cultivate them for their own Advantage.

His Dominions are very large and full of Cities, with several Territories and Towns subject to them, which the Natives call *Libattas*. Every Governor is obliged to assist at the first Mass in *St. Salvador* on *St. James's* Day, or else send a Deputy, on Pain of losing his Employment, and paying a Fine. While Mass is saying, at the Reading of the Gospel, he has a lighted Torch brought him, which is held by one of his Pages; and when 'tis read, he has the Mass-Book given him to kiss. On Festival Days he is twice perfumed with Incense, and at the End of the Mass he goes to the Altar for the Priest's Blessing, who lays his Hands upon his Head while he is kneeling, and pronounces some devout Ejaculations. When the Priest goes out to disrobe himself, the Count retires to his private Prayers, and then goes to the Vestry to pay his Respects to the Priest or Missionary, who courteously receives him, and accompanies him back as far as the Door of the Church. As soon as the Count is come out, he falls on his Knees again, and the Standers-by cuff themselves on the Ear as a Token of their Fidelity, and he makes them a Sign with his Fingers by Way of Approbation. At his coming out of the Church on the principal Feast-Days, he commonly practises some Warlike Exercise; but at others the Captain-General performs that Part for him, or else his Courtiers entertain themselves with dancing to Musick. When they sing Mass on the most solemn Feasts, the Guards which attend the Count to Church give a Volley of Musket-shot, with Drums beating, and other Musick. The Captain-General and the Governors have their several Places assigned them in the Church, to prevent Disputes. The Noblemen kneel on Carpets, Cushions being only allowed for the Countess to sit on.

Merolla says, that every one pays Allegiance to the Count on *St. James's* Day after the following Manner: They erect a Throne in the great Market-place for the Count, who comes thither publickly to receive the Blessing of the Missionary, that stays for him in the Church. Then he performs two Feats of Arms. In the first he uses a Bow and Arrows, and has a Crown of Feathers on his Head: In the other he exercises with a Fuscée, and wears a Hat adorned with Plumes of Feathers, a Gold Chain and Cross about his Neck, with a long String of Coral fix'd to it, which hangs down to his Knees. He wears a short Scarlet Cloak all embroidered about his Shoulders, with two Slits to put out his Arms on each Side, and several other fine Things. He is imitated in both by the Captain-General and the People, who use the same Gestures and Motions they would do were they to fight with an Enemy. When the Count has ended his Exercise, he goes to sit upon his Throne, which is erected for him under a great Tree in the S. Side of the Market. As soon as the Captain-General has done, he places himself on a high Seat, cover'd with Leather, on the E. Side of one of the Churches, that he may the better see and be seen. The Military Exercises are performed successively by the Electors and the *Mani*, each being as the Captain at the Head of his Company, and carrying a Specimen of what they are obliged to offer every Year to the Count for the Subsistence of themselves and Court. For Instance, if they are to give Fish, they carry a Couple ty'd together on the Head of a Spear; if Oil, the Palm-Fruit that produces it; or if Flesh, the Horn of some Beast, and sometimes a Man wrapped about in a Cow's-Skin. The *Mani's* dispose of the Syndickship to those that are most worthy, and remove such as don't execute the Office well. He says, that the great Affluence of the People on this Occasion finds the Missionaries Business for a Fortnight in Marriages, Confessions, and Infant Baptism; and he says, he baptized about 272 Infants in one Day. When all the Ceremonies are at an end, the People take the Missionaries Blessing, and return home.

Merolla thus describes the Office of the *Mani*: They receive the King's Revenue,

and employ Husbandmen to cultivate the Crown-Lands when the Rains have made them fit for Tillage. At Reaping-time, they reserve a certain Part of the Corn to themselves as their Due, and have a Perquisite besides. All Civil and Criminal Matters are decided by them, except some particular Cases, which are referred to the Prince or his Delegates. When the Parties have agreed to come to a Trial, the Plaintiff first urges his Reasons on his Knees before the Judge, who sits on a Carpet, with a little Staff in his Hand, under some shady Tree, and sometimes in a great Straw Hut built for the Purpose. Then he hears the Defendant, and calls for Witnesses, upon whose Non-Attendance the Cause must be put off to another Day; but if they appear and give Evidence, the Judge pronounces Sentence according to the Dictates of Nature and Reason, for they have no Sort of Laws. He that gets the Cause, pays something to the Judge's Box, and falls flat along on the Ground, to shew his Gratitude; and when he goes home, whither he is accompanied by his Friends, who make a Noise on't all the Way, he is obliged to treat them with an Entertainment, which holds sometimes a Night and a Day; and if the Cause be very considerable, three or four Nights together. In the mean time our Author says, that he who has lost the Day goes home quiet, without the least Murmur or ill Will; but we dare not warrant this. *Merolla* says, they keep other Feasts, such as on the Birth-Days of their Patrons, their Advancement to any Dignity, or the like, when every one endeavours to bring his Lord the best Present he can afford, and assists at the common Solemnity besides. He gives us the following Relation of a Pagan Feast, solemnized upon the Birth-Day of the *Cassangi*, the most potent Emperor of the *Giaghi*, that border on the Kingdom of *Matumba*, and are at continual Enmity with the Queen of *Singa*, a Friend to the *Portuguese*, who has formerly been very serviceable to the Whites; but now *Merolla* says, they generally make use of the Assistance of another Prince of the *Giaghi*, called *Calangola*. The Feast is celebrated thus: The *Cassangi*'s Subjects meet, according to Summons, in a vast Body on some spacious Plain; after which they ga-

ther into a Ring, leaving a large void Space in the Middle, with several Trees. They erect a Sort of Scaffold on the Top of one of them, capable to contain the *Cassangi*, with the Chief of his Lords; after which, at a convenient Distance, they chain down to the Trunk of a Tree one of the fiercest Lions they can get. When all this is done, the People set up a prodigious Halloo, and make a harsh Noise with ugly Musick. After this they give a Sign for Silence, when the Lion's Tail is cut off, to make him the more furious, and then he is let loose, where he makes a terrible Havock among the unarmed Company, till the People resolve either to kill him or be killed, furround, and run him down by Numbers. When he is killed, they devour all the dead Bodies, strike up their Musick again, singing and dancing, and crying, *Long live our Cassangi*: After which they go to his Palace, where he treats them, and then they return home with Joy.

Merolla comes next to describe the Count's Habit and Musick: It differs according to the several Feasts and Occasions. He commonly wears a Vest of Straw-Cloth girt close about him, and of such a peculiar Workmanship, that none must wear the like without his Leave. It hangs down to the Ground, as does likewise a Cloak of Bays, which he wears over it on his bare Back. On Feast-Days he wears instead of it a short Scarlet Cloak, fring'd all round with the same Cloth pink'd. On the most solemn Days he puts on a Shirt of the finest Linen, with yellow or crimson Silk Stockings, and a Cloak of flower'd Silk, which bears the Name of the Spring. When he communicates at the Altar, he wears a Cloak all over white, which trails along upon the Pavement. He goes to Church three times a Week, with a Velvet Chair and Cushion carried before him, and himself in a Net on two Men's Shoulders, each with a Commander's Staff in his Hand, the one all Silver, and the other only of Ebony tipp'd. He wears a Hat cover'd first with Taffety, and next with a Sort of very fine Feathers. On his Head he generally wears a little Silk stitch'd Cap, which few wear besides himself. A Musician marches before him with several little Bells, fasten'd to an Iron two Spans long, which he gingles, and sings all the

the while to the Honour of his Lord. He is attended with other Musicians, playing on different Instruments, us'd at Festivals, the chief of which are those called *Embuchi*, that belong only to their Kings and Princes of the Blood. They are Trumpets made of the finest Ivory, and about the Length of a Man's Arm. They have no Holes like our Flutes, but play with their Fingers on the lower Mouth. They play 6 or 4 of them in Confort to one Pipe. The *Longa* is an Instrument made of two Iron Bells, joined by a Piece of Iron Arch-wife, and sounded by striking it with a little Stick. Both these are carried before their Princes, especially when they make any Proclamation. But the Instrument which is most in Request, and used by the *Abundi*, who are a People of *Angola*, *Matamba*, &c. is the *Manimba*. It consists of 16 Callabashes of different Sizes, placed in Order between two Side-boards joined together, or a long Frame hanging about a Man's Neck by a Thong. Over the Mouths of the Callabashes there are thin sounding Slips of red Wood called *Tanilla*, a little above a Span long, which being beaten with two little Sticks, makes the Callabashes sound like an Organ. Four other Instruments are play'd in Confort with it by as many Musicians, and sometimes they add that called the *Cassuto*, which is a hollow Piece of Wood, that sounds high, about a Yard long, cover'd with a Board cut like a Ladder, or with cross Slits at small Distances, and running a Stick along, it makes a Sound within which passes for a Tenor. The Base to this Confort is the *Quilando*, made of a very large Callabash, two or three Spans long, very broad at one End, and sharp at the other like a taper Bottle. 'Tis beat to answer the *Cassuto*, and has Cuts all along like to that. Our Author observes, that this Harmony seems pleasant enough at a Distance, but very harsh upon the Spot, because of the beating of so many Sticks. There's another Instrument of this Confort which the Natives call *Nsambi*. 'Tis like a small Guittar, but without a Head, instead whereof there are five little Iron Bows, which, when the Instrument is to be tun'd, are let more or less into the Body of it. The Strings of this Instrument are made of the Thread of Palm Trees. 'Tis play'd

on with both the Thumbs, and the Musician leans it upon his Breast. The Musick of it is low, but pleasant enough. Besides the great Drums used in the Army, there's another Sort of a lesser Size called *Neamba*. They are either made of the Fruit of a Tree called *Aliconda*, or else of hollow'd Wood, with a Skin over one End. They are commonly used at Pagan Feasts or Merry-makings, and are beat with the Hands. When the Missionaries hear them in the Night, *Merolla* says they run immediately to the Place, and spoil their Sport. He observes, that the *Giughi* use these Drums at Feasts when they sacrifice humane Flesh to the Memory of their deceased Friends, and when they invoke the Devil. He gives this farther Narrative of the Count's Habit: From his Neck to his Knees there commonly hang several Strings of Purple, together with a large Chain of the finest Gold, and a massy Cross before his Breast, to demonstrate his being a Christian. He generally wears Bracelets of precious Corals about his Wrist, and fine Gold Chains on all solemn Days. His Fingers are almost always cover'd with Rings, and he goes in Slippers. He has two Umbrella's of Peacock's Feathers, and two others of Straw fixed on long Poles, generally carried before him, and two Horses Tails with him to drive away the Flies, tho' *Merolla* says very few come near him. He observes, that these Offices are commonly conferred on his chief Favourites and Relations.

We shall conclude the General Description of *Songo* with an Account of the Missionaries, and their Observations, taken from *Merolla*, who was one of them. He says, that as soon as a Missionary arrives in any City, the *Mani* or Governor publishes a Proclamation in the Night when the People are at home, for all to appear before him to have their Spiritual Necessities reliev'd, and to continue so long with him as there is occasion; and that if the *Mani* be negligent, the Jesuits cause them to do publick Penance, or to be turned out. Not long after their Arrival, they prevailed with the K. of *Congo* and the Count of *Songo* by an Address to exclude Protestants, and especially the *English* and *Dutch*, from buying Slaves here, and they endeavoured to persuade the People to trade solely with the

Portuguese, exclusive of the *Hollanders*, but in vain, because, 1. They would not have the *Portuguese* settle among them: 2. Because they would give them no Opportunity to sell their Arms and Ammunition amongst them: And, 3. Because they always undervalued the Slaves. And for these Reasons *Merolla* observes, that the *Portuguese* could never get Footing in *Sogno*. Upon the Arrival of an *English* Ship here to trade with Arms, &c. for Slaves, *Merolla* complained of it to the Count; but he excused himself, saying, *He had so many Enemies round him, that he ought to provide himself with Warlike Stores, and that he was the Head of the Church in his own Dominions.* This so provoked the Jesuit, that he made bold to excommunicate the Count, by Authority from the Bishop of *Angola*, and sent him Word, *That he would not open the Church-Doors till those Hereticks (as he called them) were gone.* In the mean time the Count made Proclamation at three a Clock in the Morning, forbidding his Subjects to go any more to the Jesuits Church; and they all believed that the Jesuit opposed the *English* and *Dutch* Trade, on purpose that their Country might be unprovided of Arms and Ammunition when their Enemies the *Portuguese* came against them. About the same Time the Count intercepted some Letters from *Merolla* to his Superior in *Angola*, and sent one to the Bishop of *Loanda*, complaining that he would not administer the Sacraments, nor open the Church, and that he had condemned the Wizards to Death in the open Congregation. *Merolla* says, that not long after the Small-pox raged with great Fury in the Count's Dominions, which the People supposed to be a Judgment upon them for the Obstinacy of the Count, and advised him to retract his Error, or they would force him; and tho' he comply'd so far as to take off his Injunction, they made him ask Forgiveness of *Merolla*, that the Church-Doors might be again set open. This was done accordingly, in such a Manner that we thought fit to relate it, as the true Character of the Pride of Popish Missionaries; when they go to propagate their Faith in Pagan Countries. The Count was attended with his Courtiers, dressed as they used to be at the Reception of Ambassadors, and himself went in Sackcloth

bare-footed, with a Crown of Thorns on his Head, a Crucifix in his Hand, and a large Cable-Rope about his Neck. They went thus to the Convent, and as soon as he came to the Gate, he fell with his Face to the Ground, and asked Forgiveness, with a Promise that he would make Satisfaction. He then gave his Crucifix to one of his Attendants, and kneeling, kiss'd *Merolla's* Feet. Upon this he rais'd him from the Ground, took off his Crown of Thorns and Rope, pressed him to repent, and then dismissed him. The Count went again to *Merolla* to have his Excommunication taken off, and was accordingly absolved by the Superior upon his Arrival from *Angola*, after that *Merolla* had given Absolution himself to his Accomplices. Notwithstanding this, another *English* Ship came some Time after, and traded there by the Permission of the Count, for which he was again excommunicated, and *Merolla* published a Manifesto, that none should sell Slaves to the *English*, but only Ivory, Ebony, &c. on Pain of the like Excommunication; so that tho' the *English* Captain had made several Presents to the Count and his Negroes for a free Slave-Trade, yet they could not get any, nor were the Presents return'd, for which the Captain went aboard in the Night, and bilked his Landlord. About the same Time another *Dutch* Ship arrived, whose Landing one of the Missionaries opposed, and on *Easter* Day, which was a great Festival thro' all the Count's Dominions, went to Court, where he was treating all his Electors and Governors, that go to wish him a happy *Easter*, according to Custom, on Pain of being treated as Rebels, and there blamed them for admitting the *Dutch*, and for solemnizing the Feast while the Count was under Excommunication. Upon this, the chief Elector was in a Passion, and so provoked the Jesuit, that the latter insolently gave him a Box on the Ear, which, tho' the People very much resented, and crowded to his Defence, yet the Count and his Generals interposed, and conducted the Jesuit safe to his Convent; and *Merolla* gained so far upon these blind Converts, that he prevailed with the Elector to recant his Error publicly at the Church-Door, to beg the Father's Pardon, kiss his Feet, and to beg Forgiveness of the Count for presuming to incite

incite his Subjects to Rebellion; upon which *Merolla* absolved the Elector and his Followers. The Count, who was all the while under Excommunication, sent to *Merolla* to absolve him; but he refused to do it till the *Dutch* were gone. Nevertheless the Count sent another Messenger, and promised to agree to all the Jesuits Demands; upon which *Merolla* made him do Penance at Mass in a Mourning Habit, attended with the Electors and Captains; and forced them to swear by the Mass-Book, that they would sooner lose their Lives, than suffer any *English* Ship to enter their Ports again. Another Part of the Count's Penance was, that he should oblige 300 of those that liv'd in unlawful Wedlock to marry, which he did accordingly. *Merolla* says, that his Companion caused above 600 others to be married in 6 Weeks; soon after which he dy'd, and the Count honour'd his Funeral with his Presence. Our Author presented the King and Queen of *Cacongo* with two Crowns, one of Chrystal, and the other of common Glass, which they accepted and wore, tho' they have a Law to the contrary. He observ'd three monstrous Births here, the one of a Child born with a Beard and all its Teeth; two Twins, one white, and the other black; and a white Child born of a black Woman. He adds, that every City in *Sogno* has a particular Place, with a Cross in the Middle, where those that have not satisfied the *Easter* Command, or that die before Confession, are buried by themselves without the Help of the Missioners; but that they allow Christian Burial to those that have received all the Sacraments, give them Refreshments when they are sick, and look after them; and that all this is done *Gratis*, because they mayn't apply to their Wizards.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Cacongo* or *Cacombo*, which *Dapper* calls a Kingdom, and bounds it with the Sea on the W. the River *Loango Louise* on the N. in S. Lat. $4\frac{1}{2}$. the Kingdom of *Goy* and the River of *Sonho* on the S. and S. W. He extends it two Days Journey E. from the Capital, and says, the Coast which runs from S. to N. is low for 15 or 20 Leagues as far as *Loango Louise*, where it begins to rise and form a Mountain, near which there's a Place the Inhabitants call *Great Cascais*,

with a little River a League to the S. that falls into the Sea. The River of *Cacongo*, having run 20 or 30 Leagues thro' the whole Country, falls into the Ocean, S. Lat. 5. according to *Dapper* and the *Sansons*, and $3\frac{2}{3}$ according to *Moll*, who puts it in *Loango*. The former places the Village of *Malemba* on the Coast 4 Miles to the S. of this River, and says, there's a Gulph and a good Road for Ships, and that 'tis the chief Place for Trade. The neighbouring Country is called *Little Cascais*. 'Tis low, and extends as far as the Bay of *Cabinde*, in S. Lat. 5. 24. in the Middle between the Rivers of *Cacongo* and *Zaire*. He adds, that the Coast between these two Rivers is full of Rocks and dangerous, and that there lies the Kingdom of *Goy*, of which hereafter. The Country which is between the Capital of *Cacongo* and the River of *Sonho* is full of Forrests and Mountains, and not extraordinary fruitful, because meanly cultivated; yet the Inhabitants are almost as numerous as those of *Loango*. He gives them the Character of Sharping, Treacherous, Quarrellsome, Lazy Poltroons, and says, the *Gays*, who are always working them, would soon reduce them to a small Number, if the King of *Loango* did not sometimes interpose. The *Cacongo's* follow Commerce, as well as Husbandry and Fishery. They trade in small Pieces of Stuff, which the *Dutch* call *Kassen Bladen*, in black Caps made of Needle-work, in Plates of Metal, Weapons of Iron, Tobacco, Dust of Red Wood, Cloth, and other Foreign Merchandizes, which they go to sell at *Congo*, *Sonho*, &c. or exchange for Slaves. The *Portuguese* and *Dutch* trade hither with the same Merchandize as they do to *Loango*, but they are not obliged to make such great Presents here for Liberty to trade. The People's Manners, Religion and Government, are entirely the same with those of *Loango*. The King of *Cacongo* is hinder'd by a certain Law from meddling with any *European* Goods; but he keeps Guards on one Side of the River of *Sonho*, as the King of *Loango* does on the other, to take Toll of the Passengers, and to watch against Invaders. The Province of *Serri* or *Sarri*, situate on the South Side of this River, depended on *Cacongo*; but the King caused it to be plunder'd, and turn'd out

out the Inhabitants for Rebellion. He adds, that there's another Province on the Confines of the Kingdom of Goy, called *Lemba*, from the Name of its chief Village, near which there are Mines of Copper, that the *Europeans* come hither to dig. It abounds also with Ivory, Slaves, and Beans. The *Sanfons* bound *Cacongo* with *Congo* on the W. the *Anziquains* on the N. and the *Jagos* on the S. *Merolla*, who went to convert the King of *Cacongo*, praises his Country for its commodious Situation between three well frequented Ports, viz *Loango*, *Capinda*, and *Cacongo*, tho' the last is not very safe. He says, the Soil is for most Part flat, of a black Mould, and pretty fruitful, because of frequent Showers, and the Air is wholesome. The People he tells us are more courteous than ordinary, were very respectful to the *Romish* Missionaries, and that they once burnt their Idols when the Plague was among them, saying, *If they would not help them then, when would they?* He says, the Count of *Songo* married his Sister to the King of *Cacongo*, on Condition that he should embrace Christianity, which he accordingly promised, and that he would have a Church built in his Dominions; but he dy'd before the Missionaries arriv'd. He also promis'd, that a Cross should be erected in one of the Islands of the *Zaire*, which *Merolla* calls *Zaria Cacongo*, and says, it lies in the Middle of the River, abounds with all Sorts of Provisions, is very populous, plain, rais'd 8 Fathom above the Water, and divided from the Kingdom of *Congo* by a Bridge.

2. *Goy*, another Kingdom, which *Merolla* and the *Sanfons* call *Angoy*. *Dapper* bounds it with the Sea on the W. the River *Zaire* on the S. and *Cacongo* on the E. and N. In 1631, *C. Sonho* enter'd with an Army into this Country, where he dethroned the King, and set up his own Son in his room, who afterwards assisted his Father in gaining several Victories over the K. of *Cacongo*, and plundering his Capital; from which Time *C. Sonho*, and the Kings of *Goy* and *Loango*, have liv'd in Amity with one another. The King of *Congo* claims the Sovereignty of *Cacongo* and *Goy*; but the Princes who command there will not own him, and act absolutely in their respective Dominions. This Country yields Millet and Beans, and the Sea and Rivers are full of Fish; but

the People are very villainous, insult Foreigners; and tho' their Country is but small, yet they are proud, and strive to out-brave their Neighbours. *Merolla* says, that a certain *Mani* or Governor, who married a *Mulatta*, that was Daughter to a rich *Portuguese*, being encouraged by his Father-in-Law, took the Opportunity of a Quarrel betwixt the King of *Congo* and an Usurper of *Loango*, (who had put the lawful King to Death) to rebel against the King of *Cacongo*, and to set up himself in his room. But he observes, that the Usurper of *Loango* did not live long, and was succeeded by a Christian Prince. He says, he never heard that any Christian Prince reign'd in *Angoy*, that Country having been always inhabited by a Sort of Sorcerers and Magicians, and professed Enemies to the People of *Sogno* and *Cacongo*. He adds, that when *C. Sonho* depos'd the K. of *Goy* above-mentioned, he vow'd never to suffer any to bear Office or Dignity in his Kingdom, unless they were Christians; and that he believes the King of *Cacongo* sought the Count's Friendship on purpose to have the People of *Angoy* kept under. He says, the Fishermen here have Draw-Nets, with Weights and Canes instead of Corks, and that they are made of the Thread of a certain Root, which when beaten becomes like Hemp. The Shores here abound with Oysters, as the Country does with Civet-Cats, which are sold in great Numbers to the Whites. They are white and black, like a large Cat. When they take the Civet, they shut the Male in a Cage, catch him by the Tail, and then skim off the Sweat of his Body with a Spoon. Besides these, there are Wild Cats. He says, the most civiliz'd Inhabitants wear a Piece of Cotton over their Shoulders, and another about their Loins, which they buy for Slaves and Ivory. Others have only a short Apron. They wear a small Horn about their Necks, anoint it every Full Moon with an Oil given them by the Wizards, and then bind it about with Spells. They wear their Hair according to their Quality. The Queen has her's close shav'd on the Crown, with little Tufts left all round. Some have it left in a Circle like Monks, others have theirs pleated down in Points towards their Foreheads and Necks, and the rest shav'd close to the Head.

Head. They take as many Wives as they please; and tho' she that best pleases the Husband commands the rest, yet he has a Power to put her away. The Ladies of the Blood have a Liberty to chuse what Man they like, and have absolute Power of Life or Death if they do not please; and when Strangers come to their Houses, the Women must lie with them for the first Night or two, tho' the Husband be at home. The People are also very superstitious, and the King wears enchanted Bracelets, with several other Magick Charms. When any thing is stolen, the Wizards make Proclamation for the Thieves to restore it, or else they'll proceed to discover them by Conjurati^on. To this End they administer Oaths, for the more Solemnity, in the Presence of their Idol, which they place on a Table in the Fields, dressed like a Merry-Andrew, with a Party-colour'd Vest, and a red Cap; and if the Thief be discovered, he must die. They place one of them before the Gates of most of their Houses. Some are 5 or 6 Foot high, others smaller, and all badly carved. The People, especially the Women, fall on their Knees at every New Moon, or else stand and clap their Hands, crying out, *So may I renew my Life, as thou art renew'd*. But if the Moon be clouded, they do nothing, for they think then it loses its Vertue. *Merolla* gives this brief Account of a Place which he discover'd, where they were invoking Evil Spirits. There was a sorry Hut on a small rising Ground, hung on one Side with two coarse nasty Aprons. In the Middle there was a Mud-Wall about two Foot high, behind which the Wizard plac'd himself to pronounce the Devil's Oracles. He had a Tuft of Feathers on his Head, and two long naked Knives in his Hand, and within there was a very large Fire. The Coast is much infested with Gnats, who suck humane Blood till they burst and drop off. There's no Antidote here against the Poison of Herbs but Lemon-Juice, nor none against the Poison of Wood, &c. but the Bark of the Tree call'd *Mignamigua*.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Cabinda* or *Capinda*, where *Dapper* says the Portuguese Ships in their Passage by the *Zaire* to *Lou-ando St. Paulo* put in for Refreshment. It has a Gulph with a good Harbour, Plenty

of Provisions, and Wood and Water enough may be had by making a Present to the Governor. The Portuguese have a Warehouse here for the Stuffs call'd *Panos Simbos*, made by the Inhabitants of *Goy*, which they transport to *Loango* in Exchange for European Merchandize, and the finest Red Wood which they bring from *Majumba*. The *Sansons* place it 30 Miles S. E. from *Malemba*, a little more N. from the Capital of its own Name on the Coast, and almost 60 from *Sonho* or *Songo*. *Moll* places it but 44 Miles from *Songo*. Just before the Mouth of the *Zaire* there's a Cape, which the Portuguese call *Punto de Palmarinho*. *Merolla* says, the Houses of *Capinda* are sorry thatch'd Huts, some round, and others square; and that the House of the *Mafucea*, who is Receiver of the Whites, is built of the same Materials, but has several Rooms, defended each by two Brass Guns within, and two great ones at the Gate.

2. *Pinde*, a Village, noted for the Trade of the Portuguese its Possessors, who *Dapper* says do Homage for it to the Count of *Sonho*. *Merolla* places this Town 12 Miles from the Sea, and says, the Portuguese have a Church here dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*, with her Statue in *Basso-Relievo*, and that there was formerly a Convent of *Capuchins* here; but the Air being bad so near the River, 'twas removed to *Sogno*, the Residence of the Count.

3. *Sogno* or *Sonho*, a League on the S. Side of the *Zaire*, 23 Miles from the Sea, according to the *Sansons* and *Moll*. *Merolla* says, there are several Churches here, built for most Part of Boards, in one of which the Counts of *Songo* are interred, and in the other the Kings of *Congo*. The Houses are generally thatched, and fenced all round with Palm-Branches, or Leaves interwoven together. The Floors are of Loam, well beat and harden'd, and the Roofs and Cielings of Rushes. They are hung within with a Sort of Osier Mats, variously colour'd, and some with Rushes, because more warm in the Winter. The Count's Palace is four-square, and built with Boards; but the Front is always painted with a Sort of Colour that issues out of the plain'd Wood. Such of the Gentry too as can obtain Leave from the Counts may have the like.

4. *Bomangoij*. *Merolla* makes it the Metropolis of *Angoy*, on the River *Zaire*, and says, that the Governor's House looks like a wall'd Citadel at a Distance; but when one comes near it, its Walls are only large Stakes stuck into the Ground, and raised up to the Top with others of the same Bigness. There are two large Ways within, subdivided into lesser Paths. The Rooms are all hung within with fine Oziers of divers Colours. But tho' their Houses are built with nothing but Straw, Stakes, and Oziers, yet they have Brass Guns to defend them.

5. *Boma*. *Merolla* says, 'tis a pretty large, populous, and plentiful Island, tributary to the King of *Congo*, and encompassed with several others belonging to the Count of *Songo*. We suppose it to be the same with *Bomono*, formerly mentioned, and placed by *Dapper* with *Quintalla*, and several others at the Mouth of the *Zaire*. *Merolla* says, the Inhabitants don't circumcise, but use Baptism when the Missioners come to *Songo*. The Lord of the Island pretends to be a true *Gentile*, and will let none touch him, lest his enchanted Iron and Brass Rings about his Arms should lose their Vertue. When our Author saw him, he sat in a Leather Chair under an Umbrella, with a Linen Apron about his Middle, and an old Scarlet Cloak about his Shoulders. They keep all their Fires here without Doors, for fear of burning their Straw-Houses. Tho' *Merolla* made several Presents to the *Mani* for the better Success of his Mission, yet he was obliged to give others when he went away, otherwise he threaten'd to cut off the Watermen's Heads if they carried him.

Merolla gives a more particular Account of the Oaths, Tests and Trials, us'd by the Negroes, than any we have yet met with: But since they are not very different from those we have already mentioned, we shall say no more of them, but refer the Curious to himself. He observes, that the Negroes of this Country, when absolv'd, think themselves free from any Crime that Man can charge them with, and complains that the Successor of *Stephen* Count of *Songo* gave Encouragement to Wizards, &c. for which he was reprimanded, and obliged to ask Pardon. If a Wizard that is taken be a Freeman, and abjures, he must do Penance

for the first Offence, pay an *Indian* Piece about the Value of a Slave for the second; and if he offends a third time, he is sold for a Slave, and the Price distributed among the Poor. If the Offender be a Slave, he is presently sold to the Whites, from which they would almost redeem themselves with the Price of their Lives. In either of these Cases, our Author says a Person is deputed to receive and distribute the Money, or to take Linen of the same Value in Exchange for it, in order to wrap the dead Poor in, according to the Custom of the Country. Prisons here are but slight, because they are most commonly built with Reeds, so that *Europeans* generally carry their Slaves aboard. Sorcery is only used by the meanest Sort of People, who are the sole Pretenders here to Physick and Surgery, and make People believe the Vertues of their Medicines are communicated to them by the Devil; and if their Physick fails, they ascribe it to an unlucky Bird which flew over their Heads, or invent some other lying Excuse. They use their Charms over the Sick in the Night-time; and if any die, they ascribe it to other Causes besides the Distemper; upon which the Kindred, who think no body dies a natural Death, try hellish Methods to discover the Murderers. He adds, that these Wizards pretend 'tis in their Power to grant or prevent wet Weather or a Drought, and that in some Parts of *Songo* they have not had Rain for 17 Years together. The Head of their Sorcerers is stil'd in their Language *Ganga Chitorne*. The count him God of the Earth and its Product, and therefore pay him the First Fruits. He pretends that he can communicate this Power to others whenever he pleases, and that his Body is incapable of suffering a natural Death; so that to cover the Cheat, when he finds his End approaching, either by Age or Sickness, he pretends to resign his Magick Power to one of his Disciples, and then he commands him to strangle him with a Halter in Publick, or to knock his Brains out with a Club. The ignorant Natives think that if this Office were not thus continually filled, the Earth would soon become barren, and Mankind perish. But our Author says, that in his Time many of these Magicians were put to Death, and banish'd.

Merolla, amongst his Observations, gives this farther Account of the Kings of Congo and the Counts of Songo, which, if it had sooner occurred to our Perusal, should have been interspersed in their History; but we thought it too material to omit, and hope the Reader will please to refer himself backward, in order to preserve the Connexion. He says, that one of their Kings, whose Name he does not tell us, being desirous to be crown'd, offered to give the Portuguese of Angola the Country of Songo and two Mines of Gold for their Assistance if he succeeded. Accordingly the Portuguese, to make sure of their Bargain, set forwards to Songo, and were joined in the Way by great Numbers of the King's Subjects. The Count of Songo, who knew no Right the K. of Congo had to dispose of his Country to the Portuguese, since it was an independent Sovereignty, raised a great Army to oppose them; but because they were ignorant of the Use of Fire Arms and the Portuguese Way of Fighting, they were soon routed, with the Loss of a great many Prisoners, and the Count's Life. After this, his Dowager and the Songese petitioned the Portuguese Captain to stop his Hostilities, and he should have Satisfaction; but the latter was resolved to pursue his Victory to the last Town, at which the People were much enraged; and one of the Chief of them, being of the Blood of the Counts, told them, That if they would chuse him for their Count, he would soon rid them of their Fears of the Portuguese. As soon as he was chose, he advis'd them to shave their Heads, (which is practised to this Day among both Sexes) and to bind Palm-Leaves about their Temples, to distinguish them from the Blacks in the Portuguese Army. He also caution'd them against the Fear of their Guns, and not to mind the Knives, Bits of Coral, Cloth, and other European Toys, which the Portuguese used to throw among them to put them into Disorder. He ordered them to shoot always at the Men, and not at the Horses, and to strike off their Heads that offer'd to run away. For their farther Encouragement, he commanded them to kill and eat all their Domestick Animals, rather than they should become a Prey to the Portuguese, which made all Cattle so scarce, that a Maid was afterwards

sold for a Calf, and a Woman for a Cow. The new Count having called in his Neighbours to his Assistance, made a great Army, and laid an Ambush at *Chitombo*, by which he broke and put the Portuguese and their Allies, who were the *Giaghi* and the *Congese*, to Flight, while many of the Slaves who were Prisoners return'd to the Conquerors. The few Portuguese that stood their Ground longest were at last put to Flight, and killed in the Pursuit all but 6, who being brought before the Count, and put to the Choice of Slavery or Death, preferred the latter, which was forthwith executed upon the Spot. The Songese took all their Baggage and Artillery, with which, and some Cannon bought of the Dutch, they mounted a Fortress built of Earth at the Mouth of the *Zaire*. After this, the Count insulted the Governor of *Loanda* with the Present of a White's Leg and Arm. Our Author says, the Count received 13 Wounds in this Battle, of which he died in a Month after; but his Successor so hated the Portuguese, that he would deal neither with them nor the *Capuchins*, whom he reckon'd their Accomplices, and therefore wrote to the Pope's Nuncio in *Flanders* to furnish him with new Missionaries, which was done accordingly, and the Count caused two *Capuchins* to be dragged out of his Dominions for two Miles together with their Faces grating upon the Sands, of which one of them died soon after, and the other hardly recovered. This Barbarity made the new Missionaries leave the Country, which so enraged the People, that they seized upon the Count, sent him bound to an Island of his Dominions in the *Zaire*, and afterwards threw him with a Weight about his Neck into the Sea, for attempting his Restoration. During this they chose a new Count, who recalled one of the banish'd *Capuchins* that surviv'd, and invited another; so that this Order resided there afterwards without the least Molestation, and baptized several Hundreds of Men, Women and Children, in a Day. In our Author's Time there were 18 Churches in the Count's Dominions. He says, many of the converted Natives live very good Lives, and that the others have the following ridiculous Customs, besides those we formerly observed. When a Son is marriageable, his Parents send him with a Present, which

serves for the Portion, to the Parents of the young Woman that he fancies, and desire their Consent. They also send a Pitcher of Palm-Wine, of which, before they receive the Presents, the Father drinks first, then the Mother, and afterwards 'tis handed among the Company. When this is done, the Father returns an Answer. If he rejects the Offer, he makes Excuses; and if he accepts it, he takes the Portion, and the young Man comes with his Friends to receive the Woman at her Parents Hands, and conducts her to his own Habitation, where he tries her whether she will prove prolifick, diligent, and obedient, otherwise he sends her home again, and has his Present restor'd; but if the Fault be on his Side, he can recover nothing. The Woman is not looked upon the worse for being returned, but soon undergoes another Trial. They are very fickle and hard to be pleased, but true to their Husbands after Marriage, and when it happens otherwise, which *Merolla* observes it seldom does, the Adulterer must give the Husband the Value of a Slave, and his Wife must forthwith beg his Pardon, or else he will have a Divorce. Those that cohabit without lawful Matrimony, are fin'd in as much of the Country Money as amounts to the Value of 8 or 9 Crowns Sterling. The Father of the Bride must not complain, tho' the Present be never so small, because that would be no better than selling his Daughter; for the Prevention of which, all Men are rated by the Publick in Proportion to their Ability. The Bride's Parents reckon they have a Sort of Right to the Presents for maintaining their Daughter to the Time of Marriage, and he is the richest Person here who has most Daughters. Sometimes, among the meaner Sort, when a Man draws near his End, who has taken a Woman for his Wife whom he has not yet married, he leaves her to some Kinsman, to save returning the Portion. But the Missionaries made an Order, That he who receives a Woman in this Manner, shall be bastinado'd. They never marry their Daughters against their Fancy. The Man's Business is to procure his Wife an Habitation, to cloath her according to her Condition, to prune the Trees, to grub up Roots in the Fields, and to carry home the Palm-Wine as often as it

flows. The Woman goes to Market, works in the Fields as soon as the rainy Season comes, and there stays till Noon, when she returns home to provide her Husband's Dinner. He sits at Table by himself, while she waits; and when he has done, gives the rest to his Wife and Children. When the Women are with Child, they cloath themselves from the Loins to the Knees with the Rind of a Tree called *Mirrone*, which the Wizards give them to cause an easy Delivery. The Wood is very hard, the Leaves like those of the Orange-Tree, and every Bough sends down abundance of Roots to the Ground. 'Tis generally planted near their Houses, and the People adore it like an Idol, so that they dare not tread upon its Leaves, and in some Places leave Callabashes full of Wine at the Foot of them, to quench their Thirst. But when any Branch is broke, they cease to worship it, and peel off the Bark for the Use above-mentioned. They bind their young Children with certain Cords made by the Wizards, who also teach them to utter a kind of Spell while they are binding 'em. They likewise at the same time hang about 'em the Bones and Teeth of Animals, as Preservatives against Diseases, and some Mothers hang *Agnus Dei's* Medals and Relicks to the Cords. When the Parents wean any of their Children, which they call Lifting them, they lay it on the Ground while they have Carnal Copulation together, and then the Father takes it up by the Arm, and holds it in the Air, which they believe makes him grow the stronger. They always keep their young Children naked upon the Ground, to make them grow more hardy, and they tie a Bell about them as soon as they can go alone, that they may not be lost. They carry their Infants as soon as born to the Wizards to know their Fortune, which they pretend to prognosticate by turning the Child about in their Arms, and viewing the Muscles and other Parts of the Body. They make the same Observations upon the Sick, and if they die contrary to their Predictions, they have always an Excuse at hand. The Parents or the Wizards prescribe certain Rules to young People, which they call *Chegilla*, namely, to abstain from eating some Sorts of Poultry, Fleish, Fruits, Roots, and the like, which they observe with great Strictness;

ness; and sometimes, when the Parents neglect to give these Rules, they think they shall die out of Hand, unless they go to receive it of the Wizards. When the Maids are overtaken with the Courses, there they stay, tho' without Doors, till one of their Kindred comes to carry them into the House; then they are allowed two Maids and a separate Apartment, where they must keep lock'd up for two or three Months together, and take Care to speak to no Man all the time, to wash so many times a Day, to anoint themselves with the Dust of Red Wood temper'd with Water, and the like superstitious Ceremonies, which they call the Casket of Fire or Water. Without this they think they should always be barren, tho' Experience shews them the contrary. The Owners of their Lands, instead of Fences, plant several Rows of Stakes, and bind them about with Bundles of Magick Herbs, which they pretend will kill such as offer them any Damage.

Merolla says, that among the Laws they made to prevent these Disorders, one was, That all the *Mani's* who liv'd in unlawful Matrimony should be forthwith turn'd out of their Places. They perswaded all the chief Courtiers to marry their Wives. They impos'd Whipping on those that robbed or spoiled the Fields, and order'd Palm-Branches, consecrated on *Palm-Sunday*, to be set round their Fields, and the Cords made of them to be bound about their Infants instead of their Magick Trumpery. They also sent about their Scholars in Harvest-time with a Standard, accompanied with several of the Count's Sons and Relations, to see if all was in Order, and to pull down what Spells they found.

2. The Dutchy of B A M B A.

Dapper extends it from N. to W. upon the Coast between the Rivers *Ambris* and *Danda*, and bounds it on the S. with *Angola*, and on the E. with the Lake of *Aquilonda* and the Province of *Sissama*. The *Sansons*, who carry it much farther S. than the River *Danda*, extend it 150 Miles along the Coast, and almost as much where broadest. They bound it with *Songo* on the N. the Sea on the W. *Angola* on the S. and *Pemba* on the E. *Du Plessis* says, it abounds with large Ele-

phants, Stags, Buffaloes, Tygers, Civet-Cats, and Parrots; *Luyis*, with Dragons, Vipers, Eagles, and Falcons; and *Heylin* says, there are Silver Mines here. The *Sansons* say, that upon Occasion this Province can furnish 400000 strong Fighting Men, who are all hearty to their Prince, and therefore 'tis reckoned the Bulwark of *Congo*. *Carli* says, the Great Duke of *Bamba* is a Christian, subject to the King of *Congo*; and *Angelo*, that his Country is as big as *Naples* and *Sicily* together. The former adds, that sometimes they scare away the Wild Beasts, by setting Fire to the Herbage, which being scorched by the Heat of the Sun, presently burns, and spreads for above a League, consuming every thing in its Way. The Soil is black and fruitful. There are some Pullets and Beans here, which last is the chief Diet of the Women while they till the Ground. The Ways are not stony, and they have high thick Grass, thro' which the Inhabitants go bare footed, because of the excessive Heat. Two of them carry Foreigners in Hammocks between two Poles. They have fine Parrots of all Colours, which talk like those of *America*, but are seldom brought into *Europe*. There's a Bird bigger than an Eagle, of a dark Yellow, which cries like a Child. They have Variety of *European*, *African*, and *American* Fruits, but no Apples or Pears. *Carli* praises the Natives for their Charity to one another. When their Harvest is over, which is twice a Year, they put all the Kidney-Beans, the *Indian* Wheat, &c. into separate Heaps, of which they give the *Macolonte* or Governor enough for his Maintenance, lay aside some for Seed, and divide the rest among the Cottages, in Proportion to the Number of Inhabitants. They never lay in more Provisions at a time than just serves for next Meal. When they travel, they cut up the Grass with a Piece of Wood, which they sharpen for the Purpose, and near the Roots they find little white Balls, which they eat with great Satisfaction. and they are as well content with the worst as the best. They take no manner of Care of their Children when grown up. Their Cola-Nuts grow in Roots on Trees like Pig-Nuts, are as big as a Lemon, and contain 4 or 5 red Nuts within. They put Earth about them to keep them fresh; and when they eat them, wash them, and drink

drink of the Water. They have a bitterish Taste; but the Water drunk after them makes them very sweet. He says, that they baptized several Hundred Children while in this Country; but there are abundance of Sorcerers and Enchanters who meet at Night, and keep Spies abroad, so that they cannot be taken, tho' the King gives Leave to several of his great Men, who know their Lurking places, to fire their Cottages. He says, the Soil is always green hereabouts, and that when the Ground is burnt any where, the Grass springs up again immediately. The Great Duke, called *Done Theodosia*, when he was there, said he was once offer'd the Crown, but refus'd it, because he might be nearer the *Portuguese* to drink Wine and Brandy, for they have none there but what is brought out of *Europe*. He was habited like the King, but with fewer Attendance. He wore a Coat down to his Knees, made of Palm-Tree Leaves dy'd black, and over it a Cloak of blue Cloth. He had a red Cap, with a Gold Galoon about it, a large Pair of Beads about his Neck, with above 50 Medals, and bare Legs and Feet. Fifty Blacks play'd before him on several Musical Instruments, and he was followed by 25 Men of Note, and 100 Archers. The Men are of no Trade, except a few who work in Iron, or make Cloths of Palm-Tree Leaves. The Women of Quality wear Petticoats of the finest *European* Cloth down to their Heels. They cover their Back, Breast, and Left Arm, with a Mantle of the same, and leave the Right Arm naked. The inferior Sort wear Stuffs of less Value, and the Commonalty Stuffs made of Palm-Tree Leaves, whereof they have only a Petticoat. There are no Physicians or Medicines here, so that the People leave all to Nature, only sometimes they use Bleeding. They allow the Sick to drink as much they will. He contradicts those who say, that the Tygers of this Country will not attack Whites as well as Blacks. The Natives count Goat's Milk a great Dainty. They deny Eggs to sick People, because they are reckon'd too hot in these Parts. He computes that 3500 of their Money-Shells amount to the Value of a Pistole, which is the Price they give here for a Pullet. Their Walls are of Clay, and their Houses much infested with large Rats,

and some keep tame Monkies, which blow hard upon them when they come, and make them run away. The Blacks have a rank Smell, which some *Europeans* correct by strewing Musk about their Rooms. They are also much infested with Ants, which get into their Rooms in vast Swarms, and devour all they come near, so that the People are often obliged to rise in the Night, and set Fire to their Houses to burn them out. He observes, that in *Angola* they devour whole Cows in one Night, all but the Bones; that 'tis hard to make them quit their Hold; and that some of them fly. The Blacks smook Tobacco in Pipes of an Ell long, with great Bowls. The *Portuguese* are forbid, on Pain of Excommunication, to carry any Blacks from hence to *Brasil* before they are baptized; and when they have them aboard, they fasten several Hundred Men to one another with Stakes in the Hold, that they may not rise. They keep the Women between the Decks, those that are with Child in the great Cabin, and the Children they press together in the Steer-ridge.

To return to the Geography of *Bamba*, *Pigafetta* says, it contains the Lordships of *Lembo*, *Dandi*, *Bengo*, *Coanza*, *Cozzansi*, along the Coast, with *Angangi*, *Chingengo*, *Metollo*, *Chabonda*, and some others of less Importance, within Land. Some Geographers join Part of the Province of *Senho* to it, and subdivide them into a great many Lordships, govern'd by the King's Vassals, whom the *Portuguese* call *Souas*. *Dapper* says, the chief are those of *Engombia*, *Muchama*, *Canvanguo*, *Mussula*, *Bumby*, *Bamba*, and *Engombia Cabonda*, who can raise a considerable Army.

The several Lordships are separated by Mountains, and for the better preserving their Boundaries, each *Soua* keeps Villages on his own Frontiers, that the Inhabitants may watch against the Encroachments of their Neighbours. By this Means they apply themselves to Business and Trade daily with one another, and the *Souas* reside for most Part in the Frontier Villages, which our Author observes gains their Subjects Hearts. The Prince of *Bamba* is the powerfulest of all the King of *Congo's* Vassals, and General of his Army. He commands a great many Villages, and lays Claim

Claim to the *Anbondanes* Country to the S. of *Danda*; but the K. of *Angola* is in Possession of it, and claims all the Country between the Rivers *Danda* and *Quanza*. The People of *Bamba* are Christians, as well as most of the *Conghese*, so that there are several Jesuits among them, with many *Mulatto's* and Negro Priests.

The chief Towns here are, 1. The Capital, of its own Name. The *Sansons* place it between the Rivers *Ambrizi* and *Loze*, Lat. $8\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $38\frac{1}{4}$. above 50 Miles from the Coast. *Carli* says, 'tis a large populous Town, 70 Leagues from the Sea, and the Seat of the Great Duke. It has a Church and a Convent of *Capuchins*, both containing little Cells of Mud-Walls cover'd with Straw, and there's a fine Garden belonging to them, planted with the choicest Sorts of *European*, *African*, and *American* Fruits. There are a great many Blacks here who understand *Portuguese*, for it lies in the Road from *Loando* to *St. Salvador*, and is 10 Days Journey from *Pemba*. In the Church there's a pretty large Chapel of Timber-work, with the Tombs of the deceased Dukes, and Clay Figures on them like our Mortars, cover'd with Red.

Dapper calls the Capital *Panga*, and places it 36 Leag. from the Coast, between *Pambo* and *Sonho*, and 6 Days Journey from *Loando St. Paulo*. He says, 'tis a great Town, but the Houses do not join, and are almost like those of *Louango* and *Cacongo*. He adds, that there are some Clay Churches, and that 'tis situate on hilly Ground, water'd by two Brooks, which the *Sansons* call *Ambrizi* and *Loze*.

2. *Mussula*, upon the Coast, where the *Dutch* have a Factory. The *Sansons* place it 72 Miles N. of *Loando St. Paulo*, and 60 S. W. of *Bamba*.

3. *Loando St. Paulo*, or *St. Paul de Loanda*, a Town and Island of the same Name on the Coast, near the Frontiers of *Angola*, in Lat. $7\frac{1}{2}$. and Long. 33. according to *Moll*. The *Sansons* place the Town on the Shore, and make the other a Peninsula over against it, near the Mouth of the River *Coanza*, in Lat. 8. 54. and Long. 37. 20. *Dapper*, who places it in *Angola*, and makes it the Capital of a Province of its own Name, says, 'twas built in 1578, by the first Governor the

Portuguese ever had in these Parts. 'Tis large, and lies upon the Side of a Hill near the Coast, from N. W. to S. E. There are three Convents, one of the Jesuits, another of the *Capuchins*, and another in that called the Lower Town, which runs to the Shore, and 'tis fortified with 5 Castles, two Forts, a Redoubt, and Battery. The Churches and Religious Houses are fair, but 'tis not walled, and the Entrance of the Harbour is only defended by Bulwarks. On *St. Paul's* Hill on the N. which is a little higher than that whereon the Town stands, there are 3 or 4 Houses, with the Ruins of a Jesuits Convent. Before 1641, when he says the *Dutch* took this Town, it had 6 *Portuguese* Churches, viz. a Cathedral dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*, another underneath to *St. Sacrament*, the Jesuits Church called *St. Anthony's*, the Negroes Church called *St. Goser*, the Church and Convent of *Cordeliers*, and an Hospital called *Misericordia*, that has 24 Apartments, with Directors to take Care of the Revenues, which arise from certain Lands, and a Tribute paid by all Ships that arrive; as also a Physician, Surgeon, Apothecary, and other proper Officers to look after the Sick.

Dapper places the Island 8 Leagues W. of the River *Bengo*, and *Moll* almost 50 Miles to the S. The former says, it has a fair, large, and safe Harbour; that the Island extends from S. W. to W. and from N. E. to E. and is 10 Leagues long, tho' but three quarters of a League in Breadth, so that either Shore may be seen from the Top of a Ship at the other. *Morden* makes it 7 Leagues long, and one and a half over. *Pigafetta* thinks 'twas formed by the Conflux of the Rivers *Bengo* and *Coanza* into the Sea, which bringing down a great deal of Mud and Gravel with them, 'twas kept back by the Violence of the Tide, which adding Froth and Slime to it, by degrees form'd the Island; for which Reason the Soil is low, dry, and sandy, and produces nothing but a few scattering Bushes on the S. Side. The Coast of the Island is so strait, that a Musket shot from the Shore 'tis 27 Fathom deep, and above 100 at the Distance of a League. It contains 7 *Libattes* or Villages, the chief of which the *Portuguese* call *S. Esprit*. The only Product here is the Shells called *Simbos*, for-

formerly mention'd ; yet the *Portuguese* made it very pleasant, and planted it with Gardens of Oranges, Lemons, Citrons, Pomegranates, Figs, Bananas, Coco-Nuts, and Grapes. Here is a Tree which the Inhabitants call *Ensada* ; *Clusius*, the *Indian Fig-Tree* ; and the *Portuguese*, the Tree of Roots. 'Tis the same that takes Root so often, as has been formerly described both here and in the *East-Indies*. There are some small Cattle and Wild Swine in the Woods. *Pigafetta* says, that at high Water the Springs here are sweet, and salt at Ebb. Their Canoes are of Palm-Tree, and go with Oars and Sails. *Luyts* says, the Town is the Seat of a *Portuguese* Governor, and of the Bishop of *Congo* and *Angola*, since they retook it from the *Dutch*. *Heylin* says, there are no Rivers in the Island, but the King of *Congo* keeps a Governor in it on purpose to take Care of the Fishery of Shells, which are of several Colours, and exceed all the rest on the Coast of *Congo* in Lustre and Goodness. The Women go into the Water, and gather them up with the Sand into Baskets. *Angelo*, one of the Missionaries, says, 'tis the Capital of all the Country which the *Portuguese* possess in these Parts ; and that there are, besides *Carmelites* and *Franciscans*, many Jesuits here, to whom the King of *Portugal* allows 200 Cruzadoes a Year, *i. e.* 266*l.* 13*s.* 4*d.* They keep Schools besides their other Functions, and the Country People give them the Property of several Houses, and of 12000 Slaves of different Trades, who, when they have no Employ at home, earn them a Cruzado a Day in the publick Service. The Houses of the Whites are of Lime and Stone, and those of the Blacks of Mud and Straw. He computes that there are 3000 Whites here, and Blacks innumerable, that serve as Slaves to the former, of whom some have 50, and others no less than 2 or 300, or as many Thousands, according to their Ability. When the Whites go about the Town, they are followed by two Blacks with a Hammock of Net-work, in which they carry them when they travel. Another Black goes by his Master's Side, and shades him from the scorching Sun with an Umbrella ; and when any two meet about Business, they walk Side by Side under one Umbrella. When the white Women go abroad, which is seldom, they are carried in

a cover'd Net, and attended by Slaves, of whom both Sexes kneel when they speak to their Master or Mistress. The Inhabitants of *Loanda* eat abundance of Fish, Cow-Beef, Goat's Flesh, and Mutton ; but all their Flesh is more fat than wholesome. Their Sheeps Tails are larger than any of the four Quarters. Instead of Bread, they use *Mansjoza* and *Indian Wheat*, which they make into Paste ; but 'tis not so good as Bread. They drink bad Water, which is brought from a neighbouring Island, where they dig a Trench even with the Sea, and the Water freshens as it strains thro' the Sand, but does not thoroughly purge it self, or else they fetch it from a River 12 or 14 Miles off in their Canoes, which are made of one Piece of Timber, and have a Hole at the Bottom, that they open when they are in the River, and stop up when the Canoe is full. When they come home, they strain it from the Dirt, and then let it stand to settle. *European Wine* is often sold here for 60 Milreys, or 20*l.* a Pipe, at other Times for above 30*l.* and sometimes there's none to be had. Besides the *Simbos* Shells, which our Author says the *Africans* value so much, that they call them God's Children, they buy and sell with *Macutes*, *Birames*, and *Indian Pieces* or *Muleches*. The *Macutes* are Pieces of Cloth made of Straw, a Yard long, of which 10 are worth 100 Reys. The *Birames* are Pieces of coarse Cotton Cloth made in the *Indies*, 5 Ells long, and worth 200 Reys, and the *Muleches* are Negroes about 20 Years old, worth 20 Reys apiece. He adds, that young Women are of the same Value as Men. *Merolla* says, there's a Chapter here of 8 or 9 Canons, and that the Governor precedes all others in any of the *Portuguese* Conquests in *Ethiopia*. He says, one of the Convents belongs to the bare-footed *Carmelites*, and another to the *Franciscan* Friars. There is also the House of the Father Superior of the Jesuits, who supports the Convents and the Missions of *Carmelites*, which are sent from hence by the Charity of the People. He says, that several Bodies have been transported from *Rome* to be interred in St. *Anthony's* Church here. There's also a Royal Chapel 8 square, with a large Cupola of an extraordinary Height, and a Vault underneath for Burial.

Dapper says, the *Jagos* were in Possession of the Island till the *Portuguese* drove them to *Maffingan*. He gives this Account how the *Dutch* took and lost it again to the *Portuguese*. C. Maurice of *Nassau*, Governor of *Brasil*, finding that he could not make his Government turn to Account, without importing a great Number of Negroes from the *African* Coasts to till the Ground, and make their Sugar, because the Slaves that they brought from *Ardra*, *Calbaria*, and *Rio del Rey*, were not sufficient, the *West-India* Council of War sent 21 Ships, manned with 2000 Soldiers, 900 Marines, and 200 *Brasilians*, which arrived August 24. 1641. at this Port. The *Portuguese* Governor encamped upon the Shore with 900 Europeans, a great Number of Negroes, and 2 Pieces of Cannon, to oppose their Landing; and after some slight Skirmishes, the *Angolese* fled first, and the *Portuguese* and Governor after them, leaving the Artillery and Provisions to the *Dutch*, with a few drunken Soldiers and old Men. They found 29 Brass Cannon, and 69 of Iron, besides Store of Ammunition, Wine, Meal, and other Provisions, and 30 Sloops. Then they fortified an old House on the Banks of the River *Bengo*, and placed a *Dutch* Garrison there, lest the Enemy should hinder them from fetching Water. The Negroes attacked this Post, but were repulsed. Dapper observes, that two Days before, the *Portuguese* Governor having Advice of the Approach of the *Dutch* Fleet, thought they only design'd to take some good Prize, and return, so that he order'd the Townsmen to secure their Goods, Wives and Children; but when he saw they intended to make themselves Masters of the Country, he complained of it by a Letter to their Admiral, pretending that the Differences between their respective Masters being accommodated, both Nations ought to treat each other as Allies. The *Dutch* answered, They knew nothing of this Treaty, nor whom the Governor serv'd, whether the King of *Portugal* or the King of *Spain*, and that in short 'twas now too late to use Arguments, since they had opposed their Landing, and treated them as Enemies. Upon this, the Governor retired to *Maffingan*, and demanded 8 Days Time to consider whether to obey the States, or to quit

the Country. But because at the Expiration of that Term he shuffled, and made very slender Proposals, he was order'd to retire 30 Leagues from the Town of *Louando*, and the Truce was prolonged for 9 Months; after which he was forc'd to own their High Mightinesses, or retire for good and all: But he chose the latter, and went with the *Portuguese* to settle on the Banks of the *Bengo*, which being naturally fertile, they cultivated with that Success, that all the adjacent Plains were turn'd into Fields, Gardens, and Orchards, which produced such Plenty of Fruits, that they had more than they could consume themselves, which they sent to this City. Here the *Portuguese* Governor began to fortify his Camp, to double his Guards, to distribute Ammunition to his Followers, and 'twas reported that he only waited for a Reinforcement of 200 Men from *Bania* to go and fall upon the *Dutch*, who had no sooner Notice of it, but in May, 1648, sent 100 Men to *Bengo* to prevent them. As soon as the *Portuguese* Guard perceived them, they fired upon them; while the *Dutch* still advanced without firing: But seeing themselves discover'd, and all the *Portuguese* under Arms, they gave the Attack, and after having forced the first Centinels, went and besieged the Governor's House, which was in a great Square in the Middle of the Village, where the Soldiers of the Guard and Moradors made a brave Defence; but were defeated with the Loss of 20 killed, and as many wounded, including the Governor among the latter. All the rest were carried Prisoners to *Louando St. Paulo*, and transported from thence to *Fernamboc* in *Brasil*, except the Governor and some of the principal Officers, who were detain'd at *Angola*. In the mean time the *Portuguese* published a Manifesto at *Lisbon*, complaining of the violent Infraction of a Truce for 10 Years, commencing in 1641, the three first Articles of which imported, That all Hostilities were to cease in *Europe* from the Moment the Treaty was publish'd, and in other Countries as soon as the News did reach thither; whereas the *Dutch West-India* Company, upon the first Notice of the Negotiation, ordered their Admiral, who was sailing to *America*, to seize what Places he thought convenient. Yet for all

these Complaints, the *Dutch* kept the City of *Loando* till the 21st of *August* 1648, when they yielded it to the *Portuguese* by an honourable Capitulation, evacuated it on the 24th of the same Month, and removed to *Fort Mols*, of which by and by. *Dapper* adds, that besides the Governor which the King of *Portugal* keeps here, there are two *Bradores* or *Echevins*, an *Ovidor* or Bailiff, two Judges, and a Secretary. His Revenues consist in the Tributes paid him by the *Souas*, his Vassals, and the Imposts on Commodities imported, and Slaves exported. There's an Officer at *Lisbon* called the *Contratador*, who farms these Imposts, and keeps a Factor at *Louando St. Paulo*, who, like a Consul, judges of Civil Matters, and has two Notaries and two Ushers for his Service. The Ecclesiastical Government of *Louando* is in the Hands of a Bishop, Suffragan to him at *St. Thomas's Isle*; for the People of that Island were converted to Christianity before the *Angolese*, and the first that preached at *Louando St. Paulo* came from that Island.

Merolla gives us the following Account of the Manners and Customs of the *Portuguese* and other Foreigners in this City. They are, 1. Priests, and other Religious Men, who are but few in Comparison to the rest. 2. Traders, and those in Offices, who are many: And, 3. Condemn'd Persons, sent hither by the Courts of Justice, particularly Sodomites, who he says are frequent in the Popish Churches, and give more liberally to the Convents and the Poor than the rest. Most of the Women differ little from the Blacks but in their Skin. The meaner Sort domineer over their Husbands, and drive them out of their Houses, or else force them always to keep at home, where they combine with their She-Blacks to starve them, and sometimes take away their Clothes, on Pretence that they belong to the Family in general. What comes by the Mother descends to the Daughters, who, when married, generally keep at home, either for the Heat, bad Weather, or because they are big with Child; and when they grow old, they don't care to be seen, for fear of discovering their Wrinkles. The better Sort take the Air in their Nets, with a Carpet thrown over them, and 12 or more Persons to attend them, of whom two

carry the Net, and two more the Umbrella's on each Side; four Negro Waiting-Maids hold the Corners of the Carpet, and four walk before to spread the Carpet for the Mistress to kneel on in Church. They never walk on Foot and without Attendance but on Holy *Thursday*. When there is any Stage-Play or Tilting, all the Women go to it, tho' they are sick. There are great Numbers of *Mulatto's* here, who mortally hate the Negroes, not excepting their Mothers, and strive to equal the Whites; but they are not permitted to sit in their Presence. The Bastard Female *Mulatto's* wear no Smocks nor Petticoats, and have only a Piece of Cloth girt under their Arms. The Males wear Breeches and Stockings, and generally become Priests or Soldiers, and hate the *Capuchins*, because they procured Orders from *Rome* in Prejudice of their Priesthood. The Soldiers travel thro' the Kingdom in Nets, exact as much Respect from the Negroes as the Whites; and if the Governor of any Place where they come delay to furnish them with Men, and what Necessaries they want, or do not treat them as they require, they draw their Swords, and take what they can find in his House, tho' perhaps they are not going about the King's but their own Business. They take what Edibles they want on the Road without Thanks to the Negroes, and beat them if they murmur. Those that go about to buy Slaves, get the Negro Women with Child, and the next Time they return the same Way take the Bastards, and bring them to *Loanda*, on Pretence of giving them better Education, but really to sell them for Slaves. *Merolla* observes, that this, with many other ill Actions committed with Impunity by the *Mulatto's*, is a great Obstruction to the Conversion of the Natives; and he complains, that the same Abuse is also practis'd by many of the Whites: But he says, that in his Time the Governor restrain'd the *Mulatto's* for a while, by forcing them to pay for their Carriage and Baggage wherever they travelled. If the Father does not declare his Bastards Legitimate, they are ever looked upon as Slaves.

Merolla also gives the following Account of the Natives of this Country. They are all, but a few, Slaves to the Whites, who send them to the Farms, two Days Journey from

from the City, to till the Ground, or employ them in catching Fish, whereby the Masters maintain their Families, and sell those they can spare, for these Seas abound with vast Numbers, so that they are sold cheap. 'Tis the common Food of the Blacks; but the Whites seldom eat them except at Nights, for they are not extraordinary well tasted. These Slaves are also employed in Building; but it goes on so slow, that tho' when a Child is born, such Whites as can afford it, begin a House, they rarely finish it before he is at full Growth. They make the Plaister of Sea-Shells, of which there are great Quantities on the Shore. They burn them in Kilns like ours, and make good white Lime. Many of them likewise are expert Barber-Surgeons, and others of different Trades. When they manure the Ground, they turn it up with Spades into a Ridge, leaving Furrows on either Side, into which, when the Rivers are filled by Rain from the Mountains, they cut the Banks, and let in the Water; after which they let it out again into Canals, and close up the Banks. Then they sow, and in three Months time reap.

Merolla gives this different Account of their Coins from *Angelo*: That called *Intagas* corresponds to our Silver. They are Pieces of thick Cotton Cloth about the Size of two large Handkerchiefs, and worth about 1 s. 6 d. each. The *Folingas* are of a finer Cotton, like that which Seamen tie round their Wastes, and worth 3 s. 6 d. Those which answer our Gold Coins are the *Birami*, made of fine Linen, each Parcel of which goes for 7 or 8 s.

He comes next to treat of the Customs of their Slaves, which are different, according to the various Nations they belong to. The She-Slaves are commonly Whores, because their Mistresses will not let them marry; and if they are got with Child, they count it no Shame: But sometimes the Priests force them to marry their Gallants, who often change Wives with one another for a Time, and then take their own again. The Women that live at their Master's Country Farms hire each a Man, on Condition that he shall not leave them till they have a Child by him, and they maintain him all the while. The Women here are very jealous of their Husbands, and (as we

formerly observed) buy and sell, &c. while the Men spin or weave Cotton, &c. at home.

Our Author, who was an Eye-Witness of their Funeral Ceremonies, says, that (especially in *Cacongo* and *Angoy*) they don't bury the Deceased till all their Relations are met. They kill Hens, sprinkle the House within and without with the Blood, and throw the Carcasses upon the Top, as a Charm to prevent the Apparition of the Deceased; for they believe that whoever sees a Ghost will presently die, and some do at the very Conceit on't, especially if there has been any former Difference betwixt them and the Deceased. After the Ceremony of the Hens, they proceed to Lamentation, and some hold Pepper to their Noses instead of Onions to force Tears. When they have howled a while, they carouse merrily at the Expence of the nearest a-kin to the Deceased, whose Corps still lies in the House: Then they beat a Drum as a Signal to rise to Dancing. When one Company is weary, another begins, and after they have danc'd round, they retire into particular Places, where they are lock'd up in the Dark, and commit all manner of Lewdness, for then they think impure Copulation lawful; and this is succeeded by several superstitious and idolatrous Practices. When the Master of a Family dies, his principal Wife exposes her Body to all Comers, on Condition that none speak a Word in her Chamber. Our Author complains that these Abominations are also practised by some that pretend to be Christians, both in *Angola* and in this City and Neighbourhood. When any great Person dies, the Pagans spread the Way in which the Corps passes with Leaves and Branches, and carry it in such a streight Line to the Grave, that they pull down all Houses and Walls in the Way. They also bury the Living with the Dead, and furnish the Tomb with Provisions. Their Burial-places are for most Part in the Fields. Some have a long streight Beast's Horn fixed on them, some a large Heap of Earth, some an Earthen Vessel, and others Arbors. They don't put the Corps in any Coffin, but only wrap it up in good Cotton-Linen sew'd close together, and adorned on the Outside with several superstitious Fooleries, according to

the Quality of the Deceased. The Poor are only wrapped up in Straw Mats. *Morery* places *Loanda* City Long. 34. 40. Lat. 9. 10. 180 Miles S. of the River *Zaire*.

On the S. Side the *Sansons* place the Road called *Barra de Corymba*, which was formerly 5 Fathom deep; but the Water is now almost dry'd up, and 'tis full of Sand-Banks 6 Foot under Water, so that 'tis only to be enter'd by small Vessels. The *Portuguese* built two Redoubts on both Sides the Harbour, which the Violence of the Waves beat down. The *Sansons* place it 22 Miles S. W. of *Loanda* City. *Dapper* says, that 3 Leagues from hence to the N. E. upon the main Land, stands the Cape of *Palms*, called by the *Portuguese*, *Punto de Palmarinho*; and two Leagues to the S. a Harbour, which the *Dutch* call *Slapers Haven*, or the Harbour of Sleepers; or *Kalkovens*, i. e. the Lime-Kiln, because the *Portuguese* make Lime there of Oyster-Shells burnt. Fifteen Miles S. of *Corymba* the *Sansons* place Fort *Mols*, on the N. Side of the River *Coanza*, which parts this Country from *Angola*. *Dapper* says, that after the *Dutch* restored *Loanda* to the *Portuguese*, they retired hither and built this Fort, on purpose to hinder their Traffick. It stands about a Musket shot from the Mouth of the River, is 32 Foot long, and 20 broad, and is made of Planks and Palisadoes cover'd with Earth. The Top is about 4 Foot thick, and there were Port-holes mounted with 4 Cannon, and encompassed with Moss and Weeds.

In this Country *Carli* places *Colombo*, two Days Journey from *Loanda*; but we do not find it in our Maps, nor does it agree with *Corymba* above-mentioned, because of the different Distance from *Loanda*: However 'tis not far from the River *Coanza*. He says, there's a fine Garden, with Orange, Lemon, and other Sorts of Fruit Trees, particularly one called *Besou*, like our *John Apple*, with a Chesnut at the End on't not unlike ours. They don't eat it because 'tis full of Fibers, but they suck the Juice, which has a Muscadine Taste. They boil the Chesnut, which tastes like our Almonds, and is very hot, but the Apple cold. Several *Portuguese* Farmers live near this Place, who keep Cows, Sheep and Hogs; but they know not how to make Cheese, because 'tis difficult to bring their Milk to a Curd.

There's a Church, with a fine Row of Trees from it to the above-mention'd River. These Trees bear a harsh Sort of Fruit like great Plums, and always hold their Leaves. Here are Multitudes of Gnats and Flies, Lions, Crocodiles, and Serpents 25 Foot long, and as thick as a good Colt, which devour the Cattle in the Night; and when they have swallowed a Sheep, go into the Sun to digest it. They are fat, and the Negroes kill and eat them, for which End they flea them, and throw away nothing but the Head, Tail, and Entrails. The Fishermen took a great Fish while he was here, which was as round as a Coach-Wheel, with two Tets in the Middle, a Mouth a Span long, and Holes thro' which it sees and hears. The Flesh is delicious, and as fine as Veal. They make Beads of the Ribs to stop Bleeding.

3. S U N D E, S U N D A, or S U N D I Dutchy.

Luyts says, 'tis bounded with *Pango* on the E. water'd by the *Zaire*, and abounds with Metal, especially Iron, on which the Inhabitants set a greater Value than on the other Sorts. *Heylin* bounds it on the S. with *Batta*, on the N. with the River *Zaire*, on the E. with *Barbele*, and on the W. with *Songo*. The Inhabitants make Swords, Knives, and Armour, of their Iron, and furnish Foreign Merchants with Martins, Sables, and other rich Furs. He makes it 40 Miles in Breadth betwixt the River of *Zaire* and *Batta*, and not much more in Length, and says, 'tis the best Region of the Kingdom. The *Sansons* bound it with *Pango* on the E. Part of that and *Loango* on the N. *Songo* on the W. and *Pemba* and *Batta* on the S. They make it 140 Miles from N. to S. where broadest, and 200 from E. to W. where longest, with the great River *Zaire* running thro' it. *Dapper* begins it 12 Miles W. of *St. Salvador*, and extends it beyond the Cataracts of the *Zaire*, along its Banks, as far as *Anfro* to the N. He says, that River waters it on the E. as far as the Influx of the River *Brancare*, from whence he extends it to the Chrystal Mountains, and bounds it on the S. with the Province of *Pango*. The only Town of Note here is its Capital of its own Name, which the *Sansons*

Sanfons place in the E. Part of the Dutchy, Lat. $5\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $31\frac{1}{4}$. 20 Miles S. of the *Zaire*, 160 N. E. of *St. Salvador*, and above 240 from *Bamba*. *Dapper* says, 'tis the Seat of a Viceroy, near the Cascades of the *Zaire*. *Moll* places it nearer the *Zaire* than the *Sanfons*, and but 80 Miles N. of *St. Salvador*.

4. The Marquisate of PANGO.

The *Sanfons* bound it with *Anfican* and *Moufoles* People on the N. Part of *Loango* and *Sunde* on the W. *Batta* and the *Jagos* on the S. and *Cacongo* on the E. They make it 330 Miles from E. to W. where longest, and 270 in its greatest Breadth. *Heylin* makes the Mountains of the Sun its E. Frontier, and bounds it on the W. with *Pemba* and *Songo*, and on the N. E. with the *Langue-lungi*, supposed to be the *Ethiopes Hesperij* of *Ptolomy*, a barbarous Nation mentioned in the Imperial Stile of *Congo*. *Heylin* says, that this Marquisate was formerly a Kingdom of it self, or rather (as *Dapper* says) a free Province, but now subject to the Kings of *Congo*. *Luyts* says, 'tis water'd by the River *Zaire*. *Dapper* bounds it with *Sunde* on the N.

The only Town here of Note is the Capital of its own Name, which *Heylin* places on the W. Side of the River *Barbele*, and says, 'tis the Seat of a Viceroy. *Dapper* says, 'twas formerly called *Panguelongos*. The *Sanfons* place it 260 Miles N. E. from *St. Salvador*, and almost 340 from *Bamba*. *Moll* makes it but 200 from the former.

5. The Dukedom of BATA.

The *Sanfons* bound it with *Pango* and *Sunde* on the N. *Pemba* on the W. the Inland Part of *Angola* on the S. the Mountains of the Sun on the E. and the Lake *Aquilunda* on the S. E. They make it 240 Miles from N. W. to S. E. and 180 where broadest. *Dapper* says, 'twas anciently called *Aghirimba*, and lies N. E. or N. from *Pango*, 150 Leagues from the Coast, and extends it E. over the River *Barbele* as far as the Sun and *Saltpetre* Mountains, and from thence Southward as far as *Montes Cremados*, or the Burning Mountains. He adds, that all the Country, from its Capital as far as *Pango*, abounds

with Corn. *Morey* says, the People are warlike, and frequently in Arms to defend themselves against the *Jagos* about the Sun and *Saltpetre* Mountains. *Heylin* bounds it with Part of *Pemba* on the S.

The only Town of Note here is the Capital of its own Name, which the *Sanfons* place on the Frontiers of *Sunde*, near a River that falls into the *Lelunda*, and in Lat. $6\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 41. 10. above 100 Miles N. E. from *St. Salvador*. *Dapper* says, 'tis the Seat of a Viceroy, and that the Road from hence to *St. Salvador* is full of Villages. *Heylin* places it on the Banks of *Lelunda*, and says, the Viceroy, who is always of the Blood Royal, has the Honour sometimes to sit at the King's own Table, which none else may do, and that no body dares to contradict him.

Dapper places *Cende d'Orango*, or the Province of *Pombo*, (described P. 499. of this Vol.) about 200 Leagues E. from this Place, and adds, that 'tis water'd by the River of *Coanza*, which runs with a rapid Course into the *Zaire*; that by Vertue of an ancient Custom, the People are govern'd by a Woman deputed by the Viceroy of *Batta*; and that according to the Report of the Inhabitants, there are white Men towards the E. with long Hair, but not near so fair as *Europeans*.

6. The Province or Marquisate of PEMBA or PEMBO.

The *Sanfons* bound it on the W. with *Bamba*, on the N. with *Sunde*, on the E. with *Batta*, and on the S. with the Inland Part of *Angola*. They make it 180 Miles from N. to S. and 134 from E. to W. where broadest. *Dapper* says, it lies in the Center of the Kingdom. *Heylin* bounds it on the E. with the Lake *Zembre* and the River *Barbele*, and on the N. with *Batta*, and says, 'tis counted the richest and pleasantest Country of the Kingdom, and that it abounds with Palm and other Fruit Trees, always green. Its Water hurts none that drink on't; its Air is very wholesome, and the Soil fruitful in all Sorts of Grain, especially that call'd *Luco*, like Mustard-Seed, but bigger, which they grind in a Hand-Mill, and make Bread on't as good as Wheat. The People, tho' formerly very barbarous, imitate the *Portuguese*.

Buese in their Apparel and Behaviour; and they have such Skill in Physical Herbs, that every one is his own Doctor. They were anciently cloathed with Mats, and decked with Feathers, and the same Habit is still kept up by Villagers, and others of the poorer Sort. *Du Plessis* says, 'tis water'd with several Rivers, the chief of which is the *Lelunda*, that abounds with Fish, and is shaded with Cedars, whereof they make their Canoes. *Carli* the Missionary says, this Province lies 10 Days Journey from *Bamba*.

The Capital of this Province, and of the whole Kingdom of *Congo*, is that which *Marmol* calls *Ambas Congo*; the *Ethiopians*, *Banza* or the Court; and the *Portuguese*, *St. Salvador* or *St. Saviours*. The *Sansons* place it on a Hill or Rock N. of the River *Lelunda*, near a Branch which runs into it in Lat. $6\frac{3}{4}$. Long. $39\frac{1}{2}$. above 170 Miles N. E. of *Loanda St. Paul*. *Moll* sets it in Lat. $3\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 34. 210 Miles from *St. Paul de Loanda*. The former say, the King of *Congo* keeps his Court here for most Part, and that the Eminence on which it stands commands a Prospect very far into the Country. Some say it contains 10000 Inhabitants, and others no less than 100000, by which the *Sansons* think they mean 10000 Families, or 100000 Souls. *Dapper* places it almost in the Center of the Province, 76 French Leagues or 150 Miles from the Sea, on the S. E. Side of the River *Zaire*, and says, 'tis shaded with Palm-Trees, Tamarinds, Bacoves, Colas, Lemon and Orange Trees. It has only a Wall on the S. Side, which was built by the first Christian King for the Security of the *Portuguese*. He also caused his own Palace, and all the Royal Structures in the Neighbourhood, to be wall'd in, leaving an empty Space, where was afterwards built a Palace, with a Church-yard. The Top of the Hill is cover'd with Houses built close together. This is chiefly taken up by Persons of Quality, whose inclosed Structures look like a little Town by it self. The Houses of the common People stand in Rows in several Streets. They are large enough, but the Walls are only of Straw, except some of Brick, with thatch'd Roofs, built by the *Portuguese*. The King's Palace takes up as much Ground as a little Town. 'Tis encompassed with 4 neat Walls, of

which that towards the Quarter of the *Portuguese* is of Lime and Stone, but the rest only of Stubble. The Walls of their Rooms are hung with Straw matted, and finely wove-like Tapestry. Within the inner Wall of the Palace there are Gardens and Orchards, with pretty Arbours. There are 10 or 12 Churches besides the Cathedral, and 7 Chapels in the Town, and three Churches in the Prince's Castle. There's a Convent of Jesuits, where they catechise the People every Day, and Schools in which they teach them *Portuguese* and *Latin*. There are two Fountains of fresh Water, one in *St. James's Street*, and the other in the Court of the Palace, which never want repairing, and put the Inhabitants to no Charge. Besides, there's a Branch of the River *Lelunde* call'd *Vese*, which yields good Water, rises at the Foot of the Hill, and runs E. from the Town. The People go to fetch it, and it serves to moisten the neighbouring Fields. They drive their Cattle in the Evening to Town, and shut them up all Night in Inclosures near their Houses. They have Pigs and Goats enough, but few Cows or Sheep. *Du Plessis* says, the *Portuguese* have an Exchange here, and manage the chief Trade of the Town. *Heylin* says, 'tis a Bishop's See, and has a fair Cathedral, with 28 Canons, and the usual Officers. He adds, that the Plain on the Top of the Hill is two Dutch Miles round, and that most of the Inhabitants are *Portuguese*. *Carli* says, 'tis seated in the best Air in the Kingdom, and free from Gnats, Fleas or Bugs, but they are pester'd with Ants. He makes the King's Palace almost a League in Compass, and says, that before the *Portuguese* settled here, it was the only House that was boarded. The Cathedral is built with Stone, and contains the Tombs of the Kings of *Congo*. The Jesuits Convent is dedicated to *St. Ignatius*. That call'd *Our Lady of Victory* is of Mud, but whiten'd within and without, and was given to the *Capuchins* by King *Alphonso III*. *Morery* says, that the City is now surrounded with a Wall of the same Materials they build their Houses with, viz. of Wood and Branches of Trees join'd together with Mortar, because the Stones of the Country crumble in Pieces when they are cut or hammer'd. He places the Hill on which it stands 10 Leagues from the Sea,

Sea, and adds, that the *Portuguese* changed the Name from *Congo* to *St. Salvador*, in Acknowledgment of a memorable Victory which 36 of their Soldiers, and some of the King of *Congo's* Troops, gain'd over a great Army commanded by the King's Brother, who rebelled because he turn'd Christian.

IV. ANGOLA Kingdom.

JArric, Luyts, and the *Sanfons*, bound it with *Congo* on the N. *Mataman* on the S. *Malamba* on the E. and the Sea on the W. *Heylin* bounds it on the S. with *Caffraria*, on the N. with the Provinces of *Bamba* and *Pemba*, and on the E. with Part of *Zanzibar* in *Upper Ethiopia*.

The *Sanfons* extend it 100 Leagues on the Coast, from S. Lat. 10. to 14. and says, that several Lordships beyond that as far as *Cape Negro* are tributary to it. *Dapper*, who agrees with the *Sanfons* in its Boundaries, confines it between the River *Coanza* on the N. and the *Danda* on the S. and says, 'tis not above 30 Leagues along the Coast, but 150 Leagues in Length within Land, and as much again in Breadth at the Distance of 75 Leagues from the Shore. *Jarric* extends it 60 Leagues from the Mouth of the *Coanza* to the Gulph of *Cows*, or that which the *Sanfons* call *Milk Bay*, i. e. from Lat. 10. to 13. and *Pigafetta* says, that all the Country betwixt that and *Cape Negro*, which is 75 Leagues more, is tributary to it.

Heylin says, this Country was first discover'd by the *Portuguese* under *Diego Can* in 1476.

Dapper says, that *Angola* was the Name of the first Founder of this Kingdom, who revolted from the King of *Congo*, to whom he was tributary, and that the Natives call it *Dongo* or *Ambonde*.

The Air, he says, is very unwholesome; and that amongst the many Diseases to which the Natives are subject, there are Burning Fevers, which carry off a Man in less than 24 Hours. The best Remedy they have for it is letting a little Blood at every Fit. The Venereal Disease is also very frequent here, and not reckon'd scandalous. They use Herbs and Frictions to effect a

Cure, but not with so much Success as they do in *Europe*. There's another very common and dangerous Distemper call'd *Bitios de Cu*. 'Tis a kind of Dysentery, whose Prognosticks are an extraordinary Melancholy and Head-ach, with a Heaviness and Pain in the Eyes. As soon as these Symptoms approach, they make a Quarter of a Lemon-Peel into a Pill, and thrust it up into the Fundament, where they hold it as long as they can endure it; and if the Distemper be not inveterate, it infallibly works a Cure: But if it be, and causes a Flux of the Belly, which discharges greyish Matter, they infuse Tobacco-Leaves in Salt and Vinegar for two Hours, bruise them afterwards in a Mortar, and give the Patient a Glisten with them, which is so painful, that it requires two Men to hold him. They sometimes use another Glisten, which is not so sharp, compos'd of the Juice of an Herb called *Orore de Bitios*, Rose-Leaves, two Yolks of an Egg, with a little Allom and Oil of Roses. They also prevent the Distemper when the Signs of it begin to appear, by thrusting into the Fundament some Lint steep'd in a fresh Egg, beaten with Rose-Water, Sugar, and White-Lead. There's another Disease that much weakens the Sight, which they cure by applying to the Eyes the raw Liver of a Tunny Fish. They are often subject to a Pain in the Legs; and when a Person has not been thoroughly cured of the *Bitios*, or that the Mass of Blood is not well purified, he is in great Danger of being seized with what the *Indians* call *Beriberi*, viz. a Stiffness of the Joints, of which they cure themselves by rubbing their Bodies near a good Fire with the Oil found in the Island of *Sumatra*, and called there *Miniac Tennah*. It drops from the Rocks, and is good against all cold Humours and Weaknesses of the Nerves and Muscles, because 'tis very penetrating. They are also subject to the *Boesi*, which, like a Gangrene, first rots away the Nose, Fingers and Toes, then the Hands, Feet, and all the other Members by degrees, till it brings the Patient to his Grave. Those who are seized with it fancy they have offended their Fetisi or Moquisie, or eat of the Animal *Golungo*. That called *Embasser* is another very common Distemper here, which hardens the Spleen, makes it heavy, weak,

and

and yellowish. They cure it by drinking the Decoction of the Roots of the Tree called *Embotta*, of which they prefer those that lie to the E. and have the first Rays of the Sun. The Boughs of this Tree are very pliant, and fit for Bows. *Dapper* adds, that the Small-pox makes terrible Ravages in this Country, for want of proper Remedies to prevent or restrain it.

Luyts says, *Angola* abounds with Chrystal, Marble, Precious Stones, Gold, Silver, Copper, and other Metals. *Du Plessis* says, the Soil is become fruitful by good Manuring. *Knivet* tells us, that 'tis very champion, dry and black, without any Stones, and yields little Corn or Wood, but good Store of Plantanes. Captain *Smith* says, there's Plenty of Cattle and other Provisions here, *Dapper* says, the *Portuguese* have planted Oranges, Citrons, Pomegranates, Pears, Gegos, Ananas, and Vines, in some Parts of this Country, especially on the Banks of the *Bengo* and *Calucula*. The Country towards *Loando* is dry and barren; but the Fields, which are water'd by the River *Bengo*, are very fruitful, and yield Mandihoca, Millet, Beans, with several Sorts of Herbs and Fruit-Trees. All that Part of the Country lay formerly uncultivate, and they were obliged to fetch Provisions from other Parts, so that sometimes, when the *Brasil* Ships stay'd there too long, the Provisions failed them, and occasioned a Famine at *Loando*. But in 1629, and 1630, *Ferdinand de Sousa*, Governor for the *Portuguese*, order'd all the Inhabitants of *Louando* to cultivate each a Piece of Ground, in Proportion to their Families, so that in a little Time all the Inhabitants of *Louando* had a Farm; but such was the Desolation made by the Soldiers in 1641, when the *Dutch* took that City, that the joint Industry of the *Portuguese* and *Dutch* ever since the Peace has scarce been able to restore those fine Fields to their former State. The Province *Ilamba*, which *Dapper* makes one of the Divisions of *Angola*, produces large Millet, of which they make Bread, and Beans of a Chesnut Colour, called *Encossa*. They are very good and nourishing; but they say, too many of them cause Pains in the Belly. The *Europeans* buy great Quantities of them, and transport them to *America*. Their other Fruits are Ananas, Bananas, Patatas, Coco-

Nuts, Arosses, Anones, Goyaves, and Gegos. The Arosses are a small Sort of Pomegranates, but sharper and wholesomer than the others. The Gegos are a Sort of Prunes that grow on great Trees about the River *Bengo*. The Skin is of a greenish Yellow. They have a great Kernel and little Pulp, and so sharp, that they set the Teeth on Edge; but they are very wholesome, and given to the Sick to eat. They have also Tamarinds, and some white ones, which are said to be the Fruit of the Tree *Aliconda*. A little to the N. of *Bengo* there are small Coco-Nuts, supposed to be of the same Kind and Vertue with those in the *Maldivé* Islands, and a Sort of Malaguetta or Grain of Paradise. The Soil is also proper for Cotton, if it were but sown here, as well as for Turneps, Horse-Reddishies, Parsneps, Lettice, Purslane, Spinage, Hyssop, Thyme, Marjoram, Coriander, and, in short, all Sorts of Herbs and Fruits that grow in *Spain*. There's a Tree which the *Portuguese* call *Pao del Cebra*, or Snake-Wood, which is bitter, but very good against a Fever; and another call'd *Mofrissa Sonho*, which is an Antidote. In the Isle of *Massander*, on the Banks of *Bengo* and *Danda*, there grows the Plant called *Mandihoca*, the Root of which they grind and make Bread of, as formerly mentioned. 'Tis most plentiful about the Banks of the *Bengo*, from whence great Quantities are carried for Sale to *Louando* *St. Paulo*. *Dapper* observes, there are several Sorts of Mandihoca, especially in *Brasil*, so like one another, that only those who know them all, can distinguish them. He gives this farther Account on't. Its Leaves are like those of a Walnut-Tree, with several Filaments, and hang five together on one Branch. 'Tis 10 or 12 Foot high, except in *Brasil*, where 'tis not above the Height of a Man, and divided into several Branches, as pliant as those of *Oser*. The Trunk or Stem is only fit to burn, no more than the Seed, which is like that of *Palma Christi*. The Root is like Parsneps, and full of a white thick Juice like Milk. When they plant it, they turn up the Ground into little Hillocks like Mole-hills; then they cut off the Ends of the Branches of the Mandihoca, which are about a Foot long, and a Finger thick, and plant three or four of them on a Hillock leaning one against another,

ther, so that they are three or four Fingers above Ground. They grow so fast, that in 9 or 10 Months, or a Year at most, they arrive at their full Growth, and have Trunks as big as a Man's Leg. They also pull up all the Weeds about it twice a Year; and when they think it ripe, cut off the Tree close to the Ground, and pluck up the Root. Before they burn its Wood, they separate the Suckers for another Increase. They peel the Root before they grind it, for which End they have a Mill as thick as a little Chariot-Wheel, a Span in Breadth, cover'd with Copper, and indent-ed like a Rape or File. A Slave turns the Mill upon a Trendle, and another holds the Wood against the File, which grates the Flower underneath. There are always little Boys at hand to furnish the latter with Roots, and there are other Slaves which put the Gratings out of the Trendle into a great Copper Kettle, to dry them over the Fire. They have particular Houses for this Work, which are 100 Foot long, and 30 or 40 Feet or more in Breadth. The Kettles are commonly set in the Walls like Furnaces, 10 on a Side. The Mills are in the Middle, and every House has three, which may be removed upon Occasion to either Side. They can make as much Mandihoca as they will if they have Slaves enough; for a Peasant that has a House with 20 Furnaces, had need of 50 or 60 Persons to plant, prune, and cut the Trees, and to grind and dry the Roots; but they generally employ in this Work old Fellows that are good for nothing else, and little Children. Our Author adds, that the common Price of a Measure of this Meal, weighing 64 Pounds, is 2 or 300 Pence. He says, that *Almesiga* is a Gum which distils from a Tree, smells like *Elemmi*, and is good against Rheum or Bones out of Joint. They have a Plant which bears as good Aloes as those in the Island *Zocotora*. *Orore de Bitios*, formerly mentioned, is a Sort of Mallows. On the Side of the Rivers there are great Trees called *Mofuma*, whose Wood is as light as Cork, for which Reason they make Canoes on't, and a Sort of Wool sticks to it, with which the Seamen stuff Cushions, Bolsters, &c. The Tree called *Liconda* is very common in *Ilamba*, and thrives best in a dry high Ground. The Trunks of some of them

are 10, 12, or 15 Fathom thick; but they are soon overturn'd by a high Wind, because the Roots spread in Length from one Side to the other, but are scarce a Foot deep. The Fruit is like Coco-Nuts, only 'tis somewhat more oval, but the Kernel is worth nothing; and when there's a great Famine, the Negroes grind and eat it. The Wood is not fit to burn, but they beat the Bark, spin it like Hemp, and make Mill-Sacks and other coarse Cloths on't. The marshy Places about the Rivers abound with Canes of brown Sugar, which is better than that of the Island *St. Thomas*; but the Canes are so big, that 'tis very difficult to work them.

Luyts says, *Angola* abounds with Elephants, Fish, and Fowl, and *Dapper* adds Tigers, Leopards, Buffaloes, &c. as in the Kingdom of *Congo Proper*. He says, *Enfaca*, which consists of little else but Forrests, is fuller of Wild Beasts than *Ilamba*; but that the latter being more cultivate and populous, has most Cattle. Amongst other Creatures, it has the Satyr call'd *Quoja Morrou*, already describ'd in Part, P. 276. of this Vol. 'Tis so much like a Man, that many think it descended from a Man and an Ape; but the Negroes themselves reject this Opinion. *Dapper* tells us, that 30 Years before he wrote, one of these Creatures, a Female, was brought to *Holland*, and presented to Prince *Frederick Henry*. 'Twas as big as a Child of three Years old, but twice as thick, well set, strong and nimble, for it lifted up Things of a great Weight, and carried them from one Place to another. Her Breast and Belly was naked, but her Back cover'd with black Hair. Her Face was somewhat Humane, but her Nose flat and turn'd up. Her Ears, Breast and Nipples, Elbows, Legs and Feet, her Belly and *Pudenda*, were altogether like a Woman's. She often stood and walk'd upright on her two hind Feet. She drank very neatly, carrying the Cup with one Hand to her Mouth, and supporting it with the other. She also lay down to sleep with her Head upon a Bolster, and spread the Coverlet over her, as if she had been a humane Creature. Our Author supposes this to be the Satyr so often mentioned by Hearsay among the ancient Poets. *Gordon* says, there are Insects, and a Serpent here called *Embamma*, the same with the

Minia of the *Quojas*, which 'tis said swallows a young Deer at a Morsel. *Dapper* says, there's another very venomous Serpent, whose Back-Bone wore about the Neck cures the King's-Evil, and that here are the same Sorts of Birds as at *Congo Proper*.

We come now to the Rivers, the chief of which are, 1. *Coanza* or *Quanza*. The *Sansons* say, 'tis navigable for great Vessels, and derive it with *Moll* from the Lake *Aquilunda*, as they do the *Danda* already mentioned in *Congo*. The former place its Mouth Lat. $9\frac{1}{2}$. the latter in $8\frac{1}{2}$. the one 36 Miles from *Loanda*, and the other at least 60. *Dapper* agrees with the *Sansons* in its Lat. and sets it 6 long Leagues S. from that called the Harbour of *Sleepers*, 9 from Cape *Palmarinho*, and 7 N. from Cape *Laid*. He doubts of the Situation of its Source, because he says no *European* ever went up so far, but that 'tis the common Opinion it comes from the Lake of *Zembre*. They say, 'tis like the River *Lucar* in *Spain*; that its Mouth is near a League in Breadth, and that the N. Side, by which Ships enter, is deepest, being 12 Foot at high Water, and 8 at low. A League and a half from the Coast, over against its Mouth, there's a Shelve, which runs from N N. E. to S. S. W. The Channel of the River is deep enough, but not navigable above the Village of *Cambambe*, because of its rapid Course among Rocks and Cataracts. It runs with such Fury into the Ocean, that it makes the Water muddy two or three Leagues from the Shore. There's an Island of Bushy Trees over against its Mouth, so that 'tis difficult for Mariners to find it out. There are so many Windings in it from E. to W. that 'tis 45 Leagues by Water from the Coast to *Motchiama*; whereas 'tis no more than 30 by Land. Thirteen or 14 Leagues from its Mouth it divides into two Branches, and forms the Island *Massander*. The South Branch, which is the only navigable one, is deepest, and about a Musket-shot over, that being the ordinary Breadth of the River above the Island. *Dapper* says, that *Massander* is 6 Leagues long and 2 broad, and abounds with Fruits, especially *Mandihoca*, which grows there very large. There are three Harvests in a Year of Maiz or *Turkey Wheat*, and Millet, with Plenty of Palm-Trees and *Gojaves*. Fifteen or 16 Leagues

above this Island, which is not set down by *Moll* or the *Sansons*, *Dapper* places that of *Matchiama*, which he says is 4 or 5 Hours Journey in Length, a small Leag. in Breadth, and only consists of two little Hills. There's both Cattle and Pasture, and it has been inhabited for some Time by 5 or 6 *Portuguese* Families, who maintain themselves by the Slave Trade and the *Mandihoca*. *Moll* places it but 16 Miles from the Mouth of the *Coanza*; but the *Sansons* set it on the Continent, 8 Miles S. from the River, and 40 from Cape *Ledo* on the Coast. *Gordon* says, there are several Mines of Rock-Salt in this River and on the S. Side. *Morery* adds, this River rises in the Lake *Zaire*, and runs thro' that of *Aquilunda*.

2. *Lucala* or *Lucola*, mentioned by *Pigafetta*, but not specified either by *Moll* or the *Sansons*. *Dapper* says, it rises in the Confines of *Ambuila*, from the same Source as the *Danda*, runs from N. E. to S. W. and falls into the *Coanza* 38 Leagues from the Coast, and two Hours Journey from the *Portuguese* Fort at *Massingan*.

3. *Calucala*. *Dapper* says, it waters the Province of *Ilamba*, and falls into the *Coanza* near its Mouth; but 'tis very small, and remarkable for its Turnings and Windings, which are so many, that of 42 Lordships in this Country, there is not one which it does not water, or that is above a League from its Channel. *Dapper* adds, that there are some Lakes in this Kingdom, most of which are situate about the Rivers *Coanza* and *Bengo*, and the largest in the Territories of *Quihailo*, *Angoleme*, and *Chombe*. He says, that in the Lakes of *Quihaite* and *Angolone*, and in the River of *Quansa*, there are Water Animals, which the Negroes call *Ambisiangulo* and *Pesiengoni*; the *Portuguese*, *Pezze-Mouller*; and the *French* Pilots, *Syrens*. These Monsters are both Male and Female. They are 8 Foot long, and 4 broad, with short Arms and long Fingers, of 3 Joints like ours; yet they cannot shut their Hands close. They have an oval Head and Eyes, a high Forehead, a flat Nose, and a great Mouth, but no Chin or Ears, only there's a very thin Membrane in the Place where the Ears should be, where 'tis supposed that the Nerves of Hearing communicate. The Males have a Member like Horses, and the Females two small Dugs; but both Kinds are

are of a greyish Brown, and not to be distinguished in the Water. They lay Snares for them, and when they are caught, they sigh and cry like Women, till they are killed with Darts. Their Entrails and Flesh are like Hogs in Scent, Taste, and Form, the Lard being very thick, without much Lean. They say, that the Filings of certain Skull-Bones in the Male Syrens, if mix'd with Wine, are an excellent Remedy against the Gravel, and the Bone which extends towards the Membrane of the Ear above-mentioned is good against a bad Air, if we may believe the *Portuguese*. Of the Ribs of this Fish, and particularly those on the Left Side, they make Grains, which serve to staunch Bleeding. They also make Bracelets of them, which are worn as a Preservative. He adds, that they catch many of these Creatures on the E. Coast of *Africa* about *Sofala*, where they salt and transport its Flesh to other Places; but 'tis too rank, reckon'd unwholesome, and therefore seldom eaten. *Gordon* says, he saw one Hand of this Monster in the Repository of Rarities at *Leyden*, and two others at the *Museum Regium* at *Copenhagen*. *Dapper* says, that there are also in these Lakes, and in the Rivers *Quansa* and *Bengo*, Sea-Horses, Crocodiles, and abundance of good Fish, such as Crabs, Oysters, Mulletts, Soles, Pilchards, Lobsters, and several others with *Portuguese* Names; and that there are a great many Whales below the Island *Loando* from May to September.

We come next to the People. *Dapper* says, that the Country is so populous because of their Polygamy, and the Fruitfulness of their Women, that (if Need be) the King of *Angola* can raise 100000 or a Million of Men in a trice; but they are as cowardly as the *Congese*, so that in 1584, 500 (or as the *Sansons* say 150) *Portuguese*, joined by 8 or 10000 of the Inhabitants of *Congo*, routed 1200000 *Angolese*, and the next Year 600000 *Angolese* were defeated by 200 *Portuguese* and 10000 Negroes. *Knivet* says, their Complexion is the blackest of all the *Africans*. They have such a profound Respect for their King, that they think it the highest Crime to disobey him. They fight no Duels without his Permission and in his Presence. They pay their first Adorations to him by falling flat on their Faces, and

then kneel, in which Posture they crave his Leave to fight, when he strikes them over the Shoulders with a Horse-Tail, to signify his Consent. After the Duel is over, the Survivor (if there be any) comes to the King again, prostrates himself in the same Manner, and makes an Harangue: After which he rises, and takes the Horse's Tail from the King's Shoulder, waves it over his Head, lays it on his Shoulder again, and then goes away, with all the Nobles attending him. *Knivet* adds, that when the King goes abroad, he is attended by 2 or 300 Archers, 10 or 12 Musicians playing before him on Pipes made of Canes, who are followed by 5 or 6 Pages, and the Nobility in the Rear.

Dapper reckons up 4 Degrees of Persons in this Kingdom: 1. The Gentlemen called *Mocatas*. 2. The Natives of the Country who are free, of either Sex, whether Artificers or Husbandmen. 3. The *Quisicos* or Slaves of the Country, who are certain Families of Peasants who depend on the Nobility, and fall to them by Right of Inheritance: And, 4. Slaves bought or taken in the Wars: But since all the Souas are no better than Tyrants, they very often for trifling Crimes make Slaves of Persons of the two first Orders, and not only of the Person accus'd, but all his Family.

Knivet says, they have sorry Houses, cover'd with Earth, and divided into several low, narrow Partitions, which are all together no bigger than a reasonable Chamber. *Dapper* says, that none of the Houses in *Lower Ethiopia* have Cielings, except a few built by the *Portuguese* at *Louando St. Pauls* and *Massingan*, and that those of *Ensaca* and *Ilamba* are only sorry Wooden Huts cover'd with Straw; but those of *Ilamba* are a little stronger and more commodious, for the Dwellings of the Nobility are divided into several Apartments, with Doors in every Room to go in and out at. *Knivet* says, their Beds are made of Bulrushes, sew'd together with the Rind of a Tree.

Dapper says, their greatest Dainty is the Flesh of Dogs, of which they breed up great Numbers for the Shambles; and *Hyllin* says, that at the first coming of the *Portuguese* hither, they would give 20 Slaves and upwards for a large Dog. The former adds, that their Habit is like the *Congese*,

and that their finest Ornaments are Necklaces and Bracelets of Glass Beads strung on a Thread, which they call *Anzolos*. *Knivet* says, they have such a great Value for red, blue, and yellow Cloths, that they will give a Slave for a Piece of a Span square: They wear it before; and he tells us, that that, and the Skin of a great Weasel underneath, is all their Apparel.

Knivet says, the Men are allowed but one Wife at a time, and that he that lies with another forfeits his Ears. On the contrary, *Dapper* says, the Men take as many Wives as they can keep; but that the first has a Preheminence above the rest, if she be married according to the Christian Ceremonies. The former says, that all their Children are circumcised and named at one and the same Time; and the latter, that the Women who give Suck never come near their Husbands till their Children breed their Teeth, and then there's a Meeting of the Kindred, one of whom carries the Infant in his Arms from House to House, attended by all the Family, and begs for it. He adds, that the Women follow Husbandry, and the Men furnish the Family with Clothes.

Captain *Smith* says, the Portuguese buy above 5000 Slaves a Year here, who are many of them very handsome. *Dapper* says, 'tis their chief Trade here, and that they transport them from *Loando* Port to *America*, where they put them to hard Work in the Mines and Sugar-Mills, which Europeans have not Strength to bear. 'Tis said, that when the Spaniards were Masters of it, they transported 15000 Slaves a Year from *Angola* to *America*, and our Author thinks that the Portuguese at this Time send off few less. Since most of the Slaves come from *Pombo*, which is above 2 or 300 Leagues from the Coast, and suffer much by the Length of the Journey, the Portuguese, before they put them aboard, treat them in large Houses built for the Purpose with Palm-Wine and Oil, to strengthen them; and if the Fleet be not ready to unmoor, they are employ'd in Tillage, planting or cutting Mandihoca. If any of them fall sick, they are put in a Room by themselves, where they are well look'd after, and don't want for Lemons and Ceruse to cure them of the *Bitios*, formerly mentioned. When they are shipped off, they have Mats to lie upon, which are

changed every 10 Days. *Dapper* observes, that 'tis for want of these Precautions, and by suffering the poor founder'd Slaves to lie upon the bare Boards, that the Dutch have lost a great many in their Passage to *Brasil*. He adds, that the Portuguese and Dutch import hither Cloths with a great List, strip'd Feather-Beds, Stuffs of Crimson Silk, *Silesia* Cloths and fine Linen, *Haerlem* Stuffs, fine Velvets, Gold and Silver Lace large and small, black broad Serges, Turkey Tapestry, Thread of all Sorts of Colours, Sewing Silk, Canary Wine, Brandy, Olive Oil, Seamen's Knives, all Sorts of Grocery Wares, fine Sugar, large Fish-Hooks, great Pins as long as one's Finger, common Pins, Needles, little Bells, and other Toys. The *Sansons* say, they have the same Coin as the *Conghese*.

Knivet says, their Money is the Shells of Fishes, which they pick up upon the Shore, and which the Portuguese bring also in great Plenty from *Brasil*. *Dapper* says, they are called *Simbos*, and of two Sorts; that those of *Louando* are the best; and that the least are catched at *Rio de Janeiro* in *Brasil*, from whence they are transported to *Congo*, *Songo*, *Pinda*, and the Country of the *Jagos*. When they catch any at *Louando*, they throw them into a great Sieve. Those that are biggest, and do not fall through, they reckon best, and call them *Simbos*, *Sifados*, and the others *Fonda* and *Bomba*. They transport both Sorts to *Congo*. The Red Wood of *Majumba*, and the *Pao Hicongo* of *Benguela*, also pass here instead of Money. They put a set Price upon all Goods, &c. so that the Slaves cannot cheat their Masters. He says, that an Apple of *Cola* is worth 4 *Libongi's* or plain Handkerchiefs, which are three quarters of an Ell every Way, and made at *Louango* of the Flax of *Matombe*. Some are plain, others mark'd single, and others double, with the Arms of Portugal. Four plain ones sew'd together are worth a single one, or two *Sous French*; but one of the double ones is worth 10. None can transport these Stuffs to *Loando* without the Leave of the Commissioner at *Louango*. They have blue Cotton Stuffs from *Benin*, which are 5 Pieces sew'd together, two Ells and a half long, and two broad. Some of them are blue and white, and work'd with Figures. They also bring blue

blue Stuffs from the Island of *St. Thomas*, and change them for *Angolese* Slaves; but the Dye and Stuff are not so fine as those of *Benin*.

The *Sanfons* say, their Arms are the same with the *Conghese*.

Captain *Smith* says, they have no Armour, and that their Weapons are Clubs, Bows and Arrows, to which *Du Plessis* adds the Zagay and the Sabre; but he says they know not the Use of Muskets, and fight on Foot; so that *Dapper* says, the Captains themselves go a-foot, only sometimes they suffer themselves to be carried by their Slaves in a Chair.

Their Language, says *Dapper*, differs only from the *Conghese* in the Accent. They wash, comb, and adorn their Dead, with Glass Beads, wrap them up in white Sheets, and then carry them to the Grave, where they sprinkle the Earth with Wine and the Blood of Beasts.

We come next to their History and Government, with which we shall conclude the General Account of *Angola*. *Dapper* says, 'twas formerly divided into several Lordships, and each Soua was Sovereign in his own Dominions, tho' all paid Homage to the K. of *Congo*: But about 160 Years before our Author wrote, one of those Souas, called *Angola*, having made an Alliance with the *Portuguese*, made War with his Neighbours, conquer'd them by the Help of the Christians, and laid a Tribute on them; upon which he erected his Provinces into Kingdoms, took the Surname of *Inere*, and refus'd to own himself as the King of *Congo's* Vassal, but often sweeten'd him with Presents. *Inere* died about 1560, and was succeeded by his Son *Dambi Angola*, a sworn Enemy to the *Portuguese*; but his Son, who succeeded 18 Years after, renew'd the Alliance with *Portugal*. Affairs continued in this Posture, till the King having caused 30 or 40 Merchants to be put to Death who went to trade in his Capital, *Diaz de Nervais* declared a War against him, took many of his Cities, and seiz'd a great Number of his Provinces, which the *Portuguese* never restor'd, but are daily augmenting. *Herbert* relates, that this *Diaz*, in a Fight he had with the *Angolese*, took so many Negroes Prisoners, as having cut off their Noses, he filled two Buts, and pre-

sented them to the King of *Portugal*. The K. of *Angola* died in 1640, and left three Daughters and a Nephew. The eldest, called *Anna Xinga*, being baptized, pretended a Right to the Crown, according to the Laws of the Kingdom; but the *Portuguese* supporting the Nephew's Claim, she was obliged to yield it, and to retire into the Heart of the Country, whither she was follow'd by a great many *Grandeess*. She lost three Battles to the *Portuguese*, but still return'd with new Forces. They say, that afterwards, resolving to deal no more with the Christians, she retired 4 Days Journey above *Embatta*, and having defeated the *Jagos* in several Encounters, conquer'd at least as much Territory as she had lost, till she was again defeated by a *Portuguese* Major named *Don Pavo Darouva*, who took her two Sisters Prisoners; and one of them causing her self to be baptized, and being willing to continue among the Christians, her Sister *Xinga* still lov'd her, and sent her a great many Slaves to support the Dignity of her Train: Upon which, the *Portuguese* perceiving that she was able to furnish them with a Number of Slaves, made a Peace with her. This Princess had liv'd above 60 Years when our Author wrote, and is supposed by some to be still living, since all the Orders of the Kingdom are published in her Name. She was of such a Masculine Courage, that she made War her Diversion, and had such an Art in drawing away the *Portuguese* Slaves, that they deserted to her in great Companies. She was of a fierce and barbarous Temper, gave no Quarter to the *Portuguese*, and liv'd in the Field under Tents like the *Jagos*. Before she engag'd in any Military Expedition, she sacrific'd humane Victims to her Idol to know her Success. When she celebrated this horrid Festival, she put on Men's Habits, with Beast-Skins hanging before and behind, a Cutlass about her Neck, an Ax about her Waist; and holding a Bow and Arrows in her Hand, she danced with as much Activity as a young Lad, at the Sound of two Iron Bells. All her Companions imitated her ridiculous Gestures, and join'd in the Noise, till their Blood was heated, and then the Queen took one of them by the Head, cut it off with one Stroke of the Ax, and then drank a Bumper of the Blood. The boldest

Miscreants followed her Example, and strove with Zeal to shed the Blood of their Countrymen, and drink it as a Health to their Idol. She had a Silver Chest taken from the *Portuguese*, in which she laid the Bones of her Predecessor. Her Courtiers take as many Wives as they will; but the Wretches are obliged to strangle their Issue immediately after the Birth: And Captain *Fuller*, who was sent by the *Dutch West-India Company* to assist the Queen against the *Portuguese* in June 1648, says, that while he was at her Court, no less than 113 Infants were executed this Way without the Camp. Notwithstanding this savage Barbarity, yet she is so amorous, that she keeps 50 or 60 young Men, to whom she gives Names and Women's Clothes, while she bears the Name and Habit of a Man in the Army, for the greater Authority. She is also jealous; and to try the Fidelity of those young Men whom she calls her Concubines, she lets them frequent other Women's Company, but places a Spy over all their Actions. *Dapper* adds, that in 1646, this Qu. *Xinga* plunder'd all the Villages of *Oando*, and carried away the Inhabitants for Slaves; that the *Quijames*, a People who live on the S. Side of the River *Coanza*, paid her Annual Tribute; and that the Nephew who disputed the Throne with her, dying, and the *Portuguese* having advanc'd *Angola Sodesie*, who was of the same Family, to the Crown, this Prince privately sent her Presents every Year, in order to obtain her Protection. The King resides at the Village *Mapongo* above *Maffingan*, of which hereafter, where his Situation is so inaccessible, that he fears neither the Queen *Xinga* nor the *Jagos*. Our Author calls him the King of Congo's Ape, tho' for what Reason he does not tell us, and says, that he keeps a great Number of Peacocks, but forbids his Subjects to keep any, or so much as pluck a Feather from his, on Pain of Death, or being made Slaves, with their whole Families. Every Province is divided into Lordships, which have their particular Souas or Governors, who, tho' their Villages or Seats are only a Heap of sorry thatch'd Huts, hedg'd in with Briars, with a Walk of Trees on each Side, and very narrow Avenues; yet they take such State, that none but the *Macota's* or Nobility may come to them about

Business, and they must kneel and clap their Hands when they come into his Presence, to shew their Respect. Those who live in the Provinces conquer'd by the *Portuguese*, only possess their Lands by the Title of Vassals, and pay a Yearly Tribute of Slaves to the *Portuguese* Governor; but the Collectors extort one Half more than their Due by main Force. But *Dapper* observes, that the *Dutch*, while they were Masters of *Louando*, were as much Losers the other Way in demanding nothing of the People or Governors; so that the Negroes insulted the Company, and made Incursions upon their Subjects. The *Portuguese*, when any of them take a Journey, acquaint the Soua of the Place where they lodge, and that they want so many Cargadors to carry them and their Goods to such a Place: Upon which the Soua sends them as many as they want, who carry them on their Shoulders in a Chair like the great Lords of Congo, send them back at Night without any Compliment, and then demand others from the Soua of the Place they arriv'd at last. They have no Forms of Justice, but all depends on the Soua, and some Witnesses, who are believ'd without examining their Dispositions. If a Man dies never so little in Debt to the Soua, he seizes his Children, and makes them his Slaves by Authority.

Heylin says, the King resides at *Cabazza*, 150 Miles from the Sea, and gives this brief History of the State of *Angola*. When the *Portuguese* discover'd it, the King was Vassal to him of Congo, till the latter turn'd Christian, when the *Angolese* revolted, have ever since subsisted of themselves, without any Dependance on him, and tho' before they allowed the *Portuguese* to trade in their Dominions, yet afterwards they put to Death as many as they could find in *Cabazza*, on Pretence of Treason, but really because the *Portuguese* were in League with them. Upon this, *Paul Diaz*, Governor of these Parts for the King of Portugal, sent a few armed Men in Vessels up the River *Coanza*, and wasted the Country on both Sides, who in 1582, being joined by some of the King of Congo's Forces, defeated a Million of Men, according to some Authors; after which the Trade with Portugal reviv'd, and the King sent to him of Congo for Priests to instruct him in Christianity, but had none, because

because the State of Religion in that Country was at that Time declining. Then the Portuguese built or repaired a strong Fort near a convenient Bay, by which they secured their Trade, and commanded great Part of the Country, till about 1640, when Heylin says the Dutch treacherously dispossessed them by the following Means: After the Revolt of the Portuguese from Spain, the Dutch proclaimed a Cessation, and soon made a firm Peace with them; but it being not to commence till the End of the Year in the East-Indies, nor in Brasil till the End of half a Year after the Conclusion of the Treaty, they order'd their Fleets and Forces that were abroad to seize all they could belonging to the Portuguese. After which, some of them anchoring near the Fort of Angola, were joyfully receiv'd by the Portuguese into their Castles as good Friends; but as soon as they had Possession, they turned out the Portuguese Garrison in a Bark to shift for themselves, as we shall take Notice hereafter when we come to the Island of St. Thomas.

Heylin says, the Angolese in general are much given to Sorcery and Divination by the Flight of Birds, understand Medicinal Herbs and Drugs, and by Converse with the Devil, pretend to foretel Things to come. He adds, that all their Women at the first Sight of the new Moon turn their Backsides to her in Defiance, as the Cause of their Purgations. Morery says, most of the People are Idolaters, and have Temples, where they worship their Idols call'd *Moquisies*, by Vertue of which they believe that their Ganga's or Priests, who are held in great Veneration, have a Power to open and shut the Heavens, to discover Secrets, and to prophesy. He adds, that in 1584, the Jesuits baptized so many of the Natives, that in 6 Years after there were 20000 of them Christians. The Bishop of Angola resides at Louando St. Paulo. Du Plessis says, others have been converted by the Dutch.

We come next to the Division of Angola, where Dapper computes that there are eight chief Provinces or Mirinda's, which are each divided into several Lordships, viz. Loando, which he makes one of them, into 39; Ilamba into 42; Cambamba and Em-

bacco into 60 each; Massingan into 12, which some confound with those of Ilamba; besides Sinso, Icollo or Ocollo, and Ensaca or On-saca, the Number of whose Lordships is uncertain. Du Plessis divides it into 6 Provinces, viz. Embaca, Ensaca, Ilamba, Libolo, Lumbo, and Quisama, which are not set down in the Maps. The Sansons say, that in the last Century their Soba's were only Governors for the King of Congo, but now all subject to the Great Soba or King of Angola, who only sends a Present to the King of Congo by Way of Tribute. Morery, by adding Sinso to Dapper's Division, computes the Number of its chief Provinces at 8. We shall now treat of the chief in their Order, omitting Loando, which we have already described, according to Luyts and the Sansons, in Congo and Sinso, which Dapper places N. of Louando St. Paulo along the River Bengo as far as Ensaca; but says nothing more of it, nor do we find it in our Maps.

1. I L A M B A or E L A U M A.

Dapper says, 'tis above 300 Leagues in Compass, and near 100 in Length. He bounds it on the E. with Loando St. Paulo, and Icollo on the N. W. and extends it along the Bengo to the Province of Icollo on the S. E. and along the Quansa from Massingan to Cambamba; for tho' those Rivers are but 30 or 40 Leagues asunder near the Shore, they are near 100 towards the Extremity of the Province. He says, there's a Village here almost at every three Leagues, and 42 Lordships, each of which has a Soua or Governor, that commands the Villages within his Jurisdiction. We refer for their several Names to Dapper, who says, the principal Souas take Care of their Privileges and Boundaries. There are no Forrests nor Castles in the whole Province, except a single Fort, and some Hills cover'd with Trees, from whence their Situation is so exposed, that the Number of the Inhabitants, and their Skill in Archery, is their chief Defence. We refer for the rest that might be said of this Province to our General Account of Angola, and shall only add, that Morery says the Portuguese have taken so much Pains to cultivate it, that 'tis like another New Spain.

2. E N S A

2. E N S A C A.

Dapper places it between the Rivers *Bengo* and *Quansa*, 9 or 10 Leagues E. from *Loando St. Paulo*. He says, 'tis not above a Day's Journey in Length, but populous, and cultivated by some that live near the *Bengo*. Four or 5 Leagues from that River, there's an Eminence thick set with Bushes, whither the Negroes retire in Time of War, and from whence no Enemy can force them but by cutting off their Water, for there's none to be had here but that of the River *Quansa*, and of some Wells which dry up in the Summer. *Moll* and the *Sansons* mention neither of these two Provinces.

3. MASSINGAN or MASSAGAN,

Which, as we observed before, some Geographers confound with *Ilamba*. Dapper says, the Word signifies Conjunction, because the Castle from whence it has the Name is built upon the Conflux of the River *Lucala* on the N. and *Quansa* on the S. in Situation like Fort *Loewenstein* between the *Vasal* and the *Mense*. At first 'twas only a large Village, tho' the Houses were of Stone; but the Portuguese Governor who built *Loando St. Paulo* fortified this with a Citadel, to cover the Country from the Incursions of the King of *Angola*, with whom he was then at War, being assisted by some Auxiliaries from *Congo*. *Fer* places it 35 Leagues from the Sea, *Moll* 75 Miles S. E. from *St. Paul de Loanda*, and the *Sansons* 105. *Knipet*, who calls this the City *Masangano*, places it under the Line in a boggy Bottom, encompassed with 4 Hills, without a River, so that 'tis very unhealthy; yet he says the Portuguese here, tho' they are very regular in their Diet, Cloathing, and Physick, die like Rats. But he observes, they are fond of this Country because it abounds with Gold. The Inhabitants are frequently at War with their Neighbours of *Angica*, a Sort of *Mahometans* who prefer Death before Submission to their Enemies.

4. C A M B A M B A.

Dapper says, 'tis so called from its Capital, lies a Day's Journey E. of *Massingan* on

the Banks of the *Quansa*, and extends 8 or 10 Leagues along that River to the N. and E. We don't find any Place of this Name in the *Sansons*; but *Moll* places a Town called *Gambambe* (which we suppose to be the same) on a Hill 150 Miles S. of *Massingan*. Dapper says, the Portuguese have a Place of Arms here, inhabited by some Families of their own Nation, and Negroes that trade with Slaves; and *Morden* adds, that they have a Garrison here as well as at *Massagan*, for the Preservation of their Silver Mines.

5. E M B A C C A,

Only remarkable for the Village from whence it takes its Name, which Dapper says lies 8 Days Journey from *Massingan*, on the E. Side of the River *Lucala*, is inhabited both by Portuguese and Negroes, and fortified with a Castle. The *Sansons* place it near the Frontiers of *Pemba*, above 160 Miles E. from *Loando St. Paulo*, and 87 N. E. from *Massingan*. Forty five Miles to the S. W. in the Road to *Massingan*, lies *Mapongo*, according to the *Sansons*; but *Moll* sets it on a Hill between two of the S. Branches of the River *Ambriizi*, 95 Miles N. of *Massingan*. Dapper says, it stands upon a Rock above 10 Leagues in Compass, and so high, that it seems to touch the Clouds. There are fruitful Plains at the Bottom, which abound with all Necessaries, and are water'd with several Brooks. 'Tis only accessible on one Side, for which Reason the King chuses it for his Residence. *Morery* makes it not above two Leagues in Compass.

6. QUISAMA or QUISSAMBA.

Dapper extends it along the S. Side of the River *Coanza* from its Mouth above 30 Leagues within Land, and says, 'tis divided into several Lordships, the most powerful of which is *Motchima*, farthest from the Coast, and nearest the River. The others are 5 or 6 Leagues from its Banks. The chief Product is Millet, *Mandihoca*, and *Alicondes*, whose inward Bark being a Sort of Hemp, serves to make Cloth; and there is a poisonous Tree called *Quacumberez*, whose Trunk is almost the Size of a Man. If an Incision be made into it, a venomous Juice gushes out in abundance, the least

Drop

Drop of which falling on the Eye, takes away the Sight; and if thrown into a River, makes all the Fish swim dead upon the Surface in an Instant, if we may believe *Dapper*, who says 'tis such a burning gnawing Poison, that the Negroes fly from the very Shade of the Tree. The Country abounds also with great and small Cattle, and Wild Beasts, the same as the Provinces of *Ilamba* and *Ensaca*; but they have no fresh Water besides the Rain, that they keep in private Cisterns, which the Inhabitants are obliged by a great Oath in the Name of their Fetisi not to discover. There are Mines of Salt, of which the Inhabitants may take what they please, by paying a certain Duty to the Soua. They dig it out of the Hills in Pieces of an Ell long, and a Hand's Breadth over, of 18 or 20 Pound each, and they are as transparent as so much Ice or Chrystal. They first boil it in Water, then pound it, and it turns as white as the Salt which is refin'd in *Holland*. They have also some Mines of Iron, which, tho' they don't yield much, yet enough to make Arms, and Instruments to till the Ground. The *Quisames* boast of a better Extraction than the other Negroes, and therefore don't take the Pains to till the Ground themselves. They only carry Salt and Millet to the Markets, whither the People on the N. Side of the *Quansa* bring Slaves in Exchange for those Commodities. They trade with this Salt into all the neighbouring Provinces, and the *Portuguese* come to buy it, for there's none besides in all the Country. He adds, that the Islanders of *Louando* pretend to be Masters of all the Coast for 30 Leagues S. of the *Quansa*. *Heylin* calls this Country *Quisoma*, says it lies towards the Lake *Aquilunda*; and that tho' 'tis used in the King of *Congo's* Title, because formerly tributary to him, it belongs to the King of *Angola*. He adds, that 'twas once govern'd like a Commonwealth, till the King of *Angola* subdued them, because of the Aid they had given the *Portuguese* in their Wars against him.

7. L I B O L O.

Dapper bounds it with *Quisama* on the N. *Monomotapa* on the E. and *Rio Longo* and the Dominions of *Benguela* on the S. 'Tis di-

vided into several Lordships, whose Names we know not, tho' the Inhabitants are subject to the *Portuguese*. It abounds with Cattle and Honey, and the same Wild Beasts as in *Angola*, which is all we find of it.

8. BENGUELA or BENGUELLE.

Moll extends it 420 Miles along the Coast from N. to S. and 210 from E. to W. where broadest. He begins it at *Rio Longo* on the N. and ends it at *Cape Negro* on the S. where it bounds with *Mataman*; but some begin it as far as the River *Quansa*. *Dapper* gives us the following Description of a remarkable Wild Beast in this Country called *Abada*: 'Tis as big as a Colt of two Years old, with a Horn in its Forehead, and another in the Nape of its Neck. The first is smooth, from two to four Foot long, as thick as a Man's Leg towards the Root, but pointed towards the End, and bending forward. The last is more flat and short, of a black or deep brown Colour, tho' the Filing is white, the Head not so long as a Horse's, but flatter and shorter, the Hair thicker and coarser, and the Tail like that of an Ox, but not so long; its Mane is like a Horse's, and its Feet are cloven like a Stag's, but much bigger. While 'tis young, the Horn in the Forehead is straight; but as it grows, it bends like an Elephant's Tusk. *Merolla* says, it commonly grows to be as big as an Ox. They say, it sometimes plunges the Horn on its Forehead in the Water, to expel Venom; for which Reason the Negroes hunt it for the Horn, and kill it with their Darts and Arrows, for 'tis not very swift; but some Horns have more Virtue than others, according to the Age in which the Creatures are killed. To try the Goodness of the Horn, the *Portuguese* set the Point down upon the Floor, and hang a Sword over it, which just touches the great End of the Horn with its Point. If it be soft, the Sword will easily penetrate into it; but if it be hard and good, it only plays round. They make a Cataplasm of the Bones of this Creature reduc'd to Powder and mix'd with Water, and apply it to such Parts as are troubled with an inward Pain. They say it draws out the Cause, and closes up the Openings it makes when the Body is

D d d d

puri-

purified from the ill Humours. *Merolla* says, none but the Male has the Horn in the Forehead, and that 'tis as good as the Female if taken young, before it has coupled. *Morey* bounds this Country on the S. with the Mountain *Zihil*, and with the Rivers *Bengela* and *Suciga* about the City *Angola* on the N.

Angelo, one of the Father Missionaries, says, the Temper of the Climate here is so bad, that it kills those Strangers who eat of its Product at their first coming, or throws them into a dangerous Distemper; so that for this Reason, Passengers don't care to go ashore and drink the Water, which looks like Lye. They have Plenty of Flesh, which is well tasted, and their Beeves are little, without Horns; but the Air agrees so ill with Whites, that when they have been there some Time, it makes them pale, breaks their Voices, and they hold their Breath as it were between their Teeth. He adds, that those Whites who live here are the worst of Villains, for they are for most Part Exiles banish'd hither from *Lisbon* for some notorious Crimes, whose wicked Example hinders the Conversion of the Negroes. *Merolla* says, here are abundance of Date Trees, but not so good as those of the East; with Arbours and Walks of Vines, which, by reason of the Moistness of the Soil, produce Plenty of Grapes twice a Year; but they make no Wine, because the excessive Heat would rather putrefy than purge it. There are Springs every where, not above two Foot under the Surface, tho' 'tis so near the Sea. The Country abounds with Elephants, and the People make good Profit of their Teeth. They have Elks too, which they call the Excellent Beasts, because of the Vertue in one of their Feet, and they discover in which Foot it lies by knocking them down, when, to recover themselves of the Blow, they immediately lift up that Leg which is most efficacious, and scratch their Ear; upon which they lop it off with a sharp Scymiter. They say its Claws are an infallible Remedy against the Falling Sickness. These Beasts are about the Size of little Asses, of a brownish Colour, with long, broad, flagging Ears, like our Spaniels. They have the Creatures called *Engalla* and *Empalanga*, formerly described. Our Author adds, that

the Age of the latter is known by the twisting of its Horns; that 'tis somewhat like a Mule, with white Flesh, which is spongy and insipid, and the Natives are afraid to eat it. They say that the Wild Goat, if eaten while 'tis lustful, infallibly makes the Toe Nails drop off; but our Author thinks it a Fiction. He says, that when they are old, they have Stones in their Bellies like Bezoar Stones, which are a good Remedy in Poison, and of which those produced by the Male are the best. They are soft at first, but harden after they have been a while in the Air. They must be taken out as soon as the Beast is killed, otherwise they'll soon dissolve. There's another Sort of Beasts here called *Impunguazze*, which are a kind of Wild Cows, some red, others Ash Colour, and some black. They are all very swift, with exceeding long Horns in their Foreheads. When they are wounded in the Chace, they turn about upon the Hunters, and are sure to kill them if they don't get up in a Tree. Its Flesh is sound and well relish'd, and the Marrow an infallible Remedy against cold Humours and Aches. They make Targets of its Skin, which will resist the swiftest Arrows.

Merolla gives this Account how they make Slaves. The Negroes take to Wife as many Women as they please, who tempt Men to their Embraces, and then accuse them to their *Barracan* or supposed Husband, who presently imprisons, and afterwards sells them for Slaves to Strangers, and with the Money buy other She-Slaves for the same Trick. Others go up into the Country, where they seize Men by Force for some trifling Offence, and sell them for Slaves.

He says, their Coin is little Bits of Glass Coral brought hither by the *Portuguese*, which they also use for Bracelets, Necklaces, and other Ornaments. He adds, that the Whites Forts and Houses are compos'd of Wood and Clay after this Manner: Two Rows of strong Posts are fix'd in the Earth about two Spans asunder, and joined together at Top by several cross Pieces of a smaller Size. The Space between these Rows is filled up with Clay well beaten, smoothed on both Sides, and chequer'd with Creases, which look at first like a Stone Wall. Their Roofs are thatch'd like ours.

Merolla

Merolla adds, that the People that live far up in the Country resemble the *Giaghi* in their Manners and Customs.

Dapper reckons up the Villages, Rivers, and Bays, on the Coast, from the River *Quansa* on the N. to Cape *Negros* on the S. as follows: 1. The Gulph of *Maisotte*, five Leagues from that River, with little Shelves over against it even with the Water. 2. *Cabo Ledo*, 5 great Leagues farther. 3. The Cape of *Three Points*, 8 Leagues from Cape *Ledo*. 4. Cape *Falso*, 4 Leagues farther. 5. Cape *St. Bras*, 11 Leagues from the former. 6. The Bay of *Pullets*, so called because it abounds with those Creatures. *Dapper* says, the Coast is low and fruitful for 10 Leagues, and called *Old Benguela*. The Gulph is two Leagues long, a League and a half broad, and 10 or 12 Fathom deep, upon a muddy Bottom. On the S. Side, upon a Mountain, there's a great Village, where there are Plenty of Cows, Sheep, *Pullets*, and Elephants Teeth. *Mullets* are a good Commodity here. There is no fresh Water, and the People are obliged to fetch their Provisions far in the Country. The *Sanfons* place this N. of the Bay of *Pullets*, and Moll N. of Cape *Ledo*; the former in Lat. $10\frac{1}{2}$, the latter in Lat. $9\frac{1}{2}$. 7. *Rio Longo* or *Rio Moreno*, 5 Leagues from the Bay, whose Mouth, which *Dapper* places in S. Lat. 11. 4. is so shallow, that it will hardly bear a Skiff; yet the Negroes sail up it in little Vessels call'd *Jangales*. The *Portuguese* have often attempted an Entrance into this River to bring off their Slaves from *Massingan*; but the Rocks, Sand-Banks, and the Violence of the Tide, prevented them. 8. *Manikicongo*, 8 Leagues from the above-mentioned River. 'Tis a large Village at the Foot of a Mountain, where the *Portuguese* have a Factory. It abounds with large Cattle, Hogs and Ivory, for which they exchange Linen, Printed Callicoes, Guns and Powder. 9. *Catonbelle*. *Dapper* places its Mouth 15 Leagues from the last mentioned Village, and says, 'tis formed by two or three Branches of the River reunited. The Water is salt, and there are Ditches where they keep the Water for making their Salt. Its Entrance is very secure, and being but 16 Foot deep,

great Ships may safely come into it. 10. The *Good Bay*, which lies on the N. Side of the River, with a good Bottom for anchoring, and therefore the *Dutch* gave it this Name. Here the Coast is low and fruitful, but farther within Land high, and cover'd with Forests. 11. The Bay of *Benguela*. *Dapper* says, it lies on a Bottom fit for Anchorage, is two Leagues in Breadth from one Angle to another, and a League and a half from the Centre to the farthest Nook. On the N. Side lies the Village of *Benguela*, with a Fort. There's a Sand-Bank over against it, so that Ships are obliged to anchor a good League from the Shore, where there's only 5 Fathom Water. The Castle is enclosed with Palisadoes and Ditches, encompassed with Houses, and shaded with Bananas, Oranges, Lemons, Pomegranates, and *Bacoves*, and there's a Well of fresh Water behind. *Angelo* says, there's a *Portuguese* Governor and Garrison here, and about 200 white Inhabitants, besides abundance of Blacks. The Church, Fort, and Houses, are built of Mud and Straw. The Negro Fishermen here exchange Fish with the *Portuguese* for *Brasil* Roll Tobacco. *Morery* and *Fer* say, it belongs to the *Dutch*. The *Sanfons* place it Lat. $12\frac{1}{2}$. Long. $38\frac{1}{4}$. and *Moll*, who calls it *St. Philip*, in Lat. $10\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 34 . *Dapper* says, there are 7 Villages in the Neighbourhood which depend upon it, the chief whereof is *Monikisomba*, a great Village, which can raise 3000 Men. He adds, that the *Portuguese* were formerly settled in and about *Benguela*; but fearing they should be surrounded by the Natives, they retired to *Massingan*, whither the Negroes pursued them, and killed a great Number of them. On the W. Side of the Bay of *Benguela* he places a flat Mountain, which the *Portuguese* call *Sombriero*, and the *Flemings* *Klapmuts*, because at a Distance it looks like a Priest's three-corner'd Cap. There's a Bay over against it of the same Name, whose Water is clear, but not fit to drink. The Shore which runs to the S.E. is a great Plain of Sands, terminating in a fine Valley, cover'd with Trees; and 6 Leagues from thence to the W.S.W. there's a Pit where they make grey Salt like that of *France*, and sell great Quantities of it to the neighbouring Provinces.

Having done with Congo, we proceed to the next Division of *Lower Ethiopia*, according to the Tables of *Luyts* and the *Sansons*, which is,

V. Caffraria, Caffreria, or the Land of Cafres.

TIS the most S. Coast of *Ethiopia*. The *Sansons* extend it from the Frontiers of *Benguela* in Lat. $14\frac{1}{2}$. to the Cape of *Aguilhas*, the most S. Promontory of *Africa*, in Lat. 35. *Moll* begins it farther S. at Cape *Negro*, in Lat. $16\frac{1}{2}$. and extends it above 1140 Miles to Cape *Aguilhas*. *Fer* and others extend it from Cape *Negro* to the River *Cuama*, which separates it from *Zanguebar*. Some begin and end it with the Tropick of *Capricorn* on both Sides the Cape of *Good Hope*. *Du Plessis* says, it extends from Congo to *Zanguebar* in Form of a Semi-circle. *Morden* says, it lies Part in the Torrid and Part in the Temperate Zone, and takes up 12000 Leagues upon the Coast. *Dapper* excludes *Mataman*, according to *Sanutius*, who carries this Coast from the Mountains of the *Moon*, under the Tropick of *Capricorn*, in S. Lat. $23\frac{1}{2}$. to the Cape of *Good Hope*, and from thence Northward to the Coast of *Zanguebar*. Now according to this Position, 'tis bounded with the *Indian Ocean* on the E. the *Ethiopick Sea* on the W. the Southern Ocean on the S. and on the N. the Kingdoms of *Mataman*, *Monomotapa*, and the Coast of *Zanguebar*, or rather the Mountains of the *Moon*, which separate it on the N. from the rest of the Continent, that give Rise to many fine Vallies and Brooks that water the Plains, wherewith this Country is wonderfully diversified. *Heylin* bounds it on the E. with *Rio de Spirito Santo* or the River of the Holy Ghost, with the main Ocean on the S.W. and on the N. with *Manicongo* and *Zanzibar*. *Luyts* says, 'tis washed by the Sea of the *Cafers* on the S. and W. and bounded on the N. W. by Part of *Angola*, *Malemba*, and *Monomotapa*, which last serves in like Manner for its E. W. and N. Boundary, and by the Empire of *Monemugi* and the Coast of *Zanguebar*. The *Sansons* say, the Mountains of the *Moon*, which shut in *Monomotapa*, are its Inland Boundary. Part of these Mountains, which advance towards the Cape of *Good*

Hope, are called by the *Portuguese*, *Picos Frangosos*, i. e. Sharp or Pointed Rocks.

Heylin derives the Name from the *Arabick* Word *Cafras*, i. e. an Heretick, a Name which the *Arabians* give to Christians, Pagans, and those of their own Religion too who differ from them in Opinion. The *Sansons* say, they are called *Cafres*, because they have no Law nor Religion.

Du Plessis says, the Air is very sweet; and the *Sansons*, that 'tis sometimes temperate, and sometimes cold, especially when the Tops of the Mountains are cover'd with Ice and Snow. The former says, the Country is not well inhabited, and for most Part uncultivate, tho' the Soil is naturally fruitful and well water'd. The latter, that their Valleys and flat Country are very agreeable, and abound with Cattle, Wild-Fowl, and Fish. *Morden* says, the Coast lies low, and is full of Woods, which abound with Deer and other Wild Beasts; but the Soil produces fragrant Flowers and lovely Trees, which are frequented by Swarms of Bees. *Fer* says, it also yields Corn and White-Wine; and *Du Plessis*, that its chief Rivers are, *Cuama*, *St. Esprit*, and *Cumissa* or *los Infantes*, which *Morden* says are all known at the Head by the Name of *Zambera*.

As for the People in general, *Du Plessis* says they are of a tawny Complexion, *Morden* says quite black, rude, ill shap'd, thievish, and lawless. Some Places abound also with Anthropophagi, and, except those that trade with the *Dutch* and *Portuguese*, their Qualities are more bestial than humane. Their chief Employment is hunting of Elephants, Lants, Rhinoceroses, Tigers, Lions, and Buffaloes. They make no great Account of Linen or Woollen Stuffs, Looking-Glasses, or little Bells, which so much charm the other Negroes; but they have a great Value for Iron, Copper, Tin, Axes, Knives, Coral, Tobacco, and Brandy. *Linschotten* says, they commonly go naked, with their Bodies scar'd with Irons, and some of them file their Teeth as sharp as Needles. They count themselves beautiful, and white Men ugly, in whose Colour they paint the Devil. When they kill their Enemies, or take any of them Prisoners, they cut off their Privy Members, dry them well, and lay them at the King's Feet, who orders them to be returned Thanks, and dubs them Knights.

Knights: After which they tie the Members upon a String like a Bracelet, and at all Weddings or Feasts their Wives wear them about their Necks, which they count as great an Honour as we do the Garter. He adds, that many of these People are carried into the *East-Indies*, and sold at low Rates, especially in a Time of Dearth, when they'll sell Children of 8 or 10 Years of Age for 5 or 6 Measures of Rice, or for 3 or 4 Ducats apiece, and some come to sell their whole Families for Slaves. The *Sansons* say, that tho' they have little Law or Faith, yet they have divers Kings and Lords, and that they barter their Cattle with Foreigners for Knives, Scissors, Spoons, and other Toys; but *Morden* says, when the Seamen buy them, they are forced to tie the Oxen to Trees, and to pen up the Sheep, before they pay the Money, or else they will run after their old Keepers upon a peculiar Whistle. *Herbert* tells us, that while he was here, he saw no Signs of the Knowledge of a God, not the least Devotion, no Symptom of Heaven or Hell, no Place set apart for Worship, nor no Sabbath. *Morden* adds, that they have large Hips, sharp Backbones, frizled Hair, very thick Lips, great Heads, and flat Noses; but he doubts whether they are press'd in their Infancy, or whether they are made so by beating against their Mothers Backs, at which they are carried. They rub themselves with Ointment compos'd of several Sorts of Drugs, to prevent the Dropsy. They have great Knowledge of Simples, and have cur'd several Wounds which *European* Surgeons could not. *Luyts* says, the better Sort are cloathed with the raw Skins of Wild Beasts. They feed upon Fish, Rice, raw Flesh, and the Entrails of Animals, and live in Woods, Caves, and Mountains. *Heylin* says, they extend their Ears far below their Shoulders, by hanging in them Iron Chains, Glass, Bullets, Bells, and such ponderous Bawbles, which are Ornaments common to both Sexes, whose Apparel for most Part, especially among the Vulgar, is nothing but a Piece of Hide or Leather to hide their Privities. When the better Sort put on Sheep-Skins, they wear the Fleece next their Bodies in cold Weather; but at other Times they are fond to put that Side outward. They also wear their Guts about their

Necks uncleansed, with as much Pride as if they were of Pearl or Gold; for though they have Gold, yet they prefer Brass or Iron before it. *Morery* says, their Apparel is Buffle-Skins sew'd together in Form of a Cloak. Their Voice is so inarticulate, especially about the Cape, that 'tis scarce to be distinguished into Words or Syllables, but resembles the Gobbling of Turkeys; yet some of them speak *Dutch*, &c. *Morery* says, their Women carry Umbrella's made of Ostrich Feathers, which they wear round their Heads. Their Arms are Bows and Arrows, with a Zagay or Spear. They eat nothing but Roots boil'd in Water, or burn'd upon Coals, and the Flesh of their worst Cattle, which they never kill unless when old or sick. They feed also upon the dead Fish they find on the Shore. They put a great Value upon Sea-Dogs, which come in great Shoals to their Coasts, and kill them with Staffs. They live 5 or 6 Score Years, and when they die, are buried sitting, and all naked. 'Tis also the Custom for those who are a-kin to the Deceased to cut off the little Fingers of their Left Hands, and bury with them. Their Houses are Tents made of the Branches of Trees, and cover'd with Mats, some of which will hold 30 Persons. They'll give a Cow for a Bit of fine Brass twice as broad as the Palm of their Hand, and for a Piece of Tobacco. Some of them own a false Deity, which they call *Humme*; but they seldom worship him, unless when he sends them fair Weather, and complain of him when the Rain, Heat or Cold, incommodes them. They also adore the new Moon, and dance and sing all the Night. *Tavernier* and *Herbert* agree, that the Mother cuts out the Right Stone of every Male as soon as 'tis born. We shall insist no longer on the People's Manners and Customs, but refer the farther Account of them to the *Hottentots*, &c. about the Cape of Good Hope, whom *Dapper* says they in most Things resemble.

Luyts, who says the Coasts of *Cassaria* encompass the Empires of *Monæmugi* and *Monomotapa* in the Form almost of a Horse-shoe, extends the Western Part from the Southern to *Angola*, and says, 'tis a vast, but mountainous, barren, and a desert Country. *Duplexis* says, 'tis the wildest and most unknown

known of the three Coasts, and extends it from *Angola* to the Gulph of *Volta*, which begins the S. Coast.

Luyts and the *Sanfons* divide this Part of *Ethiopia* into E. S. and W. *Cassaria*. We shall begin with the last first, according to the Course of our Map. Here we find,

1. Mataman, Climbebe or Climbebas Kingdom.

Dapper, who makes this a separate Kingdom, exclusive of *Cassaria*, says, *Mataman* is the Name of the Kings, and *Climbebe* that of the Country. He bounds it with *Angola* on the N. the River *Bagamidri*, which separates it from *Monomotapa*, on the E. on the S. with the River *Bravagul* and the Mountains of the *Moon*, near the Tropick of *Capricorn*, and on the W. with the *Ethiopic* Sea, from *Cabo Negro* to the Mouth of the *Bravagul*, 5 Deg. 15 Min. or 315 Miles along the Coast. The *Sanfons* extend it from Lat. $14\frac{1}{4}$. to 24. almost 600 Miles, and 480 Miles from E. to W. where broadest. *Moll* makes the River *Magnice*, which flows from the Lake *Zachaf*, its Eastern Boundary, extends it 417 Miles along the Coast, from Lat. $16\frac{1}{2}$. to $23\frac{1}{4}$. and makes its greatest Breadth only 270 Miles, and but 116 near the River *Bravagul* where 'tis narrowest.

Dapper says, the Air is very temperate, and tho' the Coast be sandy, yet the Country is fruitful in all Sorts of Provisions, and contains Mines of Chrystal and several Metals. The N. Part of it is full of Trees. He observes, that in Lat. 20, 21, and 22. for 150 or 200 Leagues from the Shore, there's a kind of Sea-Weed call'd *Sargossa*, by which Mariners guess how far they are from the Continent of *Africa*. They know also that they are not far from the Coast when they see any of those Sea-Mews whose Wings are black at the Tip, which the *Dutch* call *Jan van Genten* or *Witte Mouwen*, for they never fly above 15 or 20 Leagues from the Shore. *Dapper* adds, that the King of this Country is a very absolute Prince, and that there are several Lords along the Coast who assume the Title of Kings; but their Territories are small and poor, the Soil being sandy, and the Harbours in a bad State, and not much frequented. *Juyts* says, some

make *Mataman* and *Cimbebas* two separate Kingdoms, and set the former at a greater Distance from the Sea than the latter; but most avoid that Distinction.

The most remarkable Places here are, 1. *Cape Negro* or *Caput Nigrum*, which *Moll* places in Lat. $16\frac{1}{3}$. Long. $31\frac{3}{4}$. and the *Sanfons* in Long. 27. *Dapper* says, it has this Name because it appears black to Mariners at a Distance, tho' there is no Soil of that Colour on the whole Coast from S. Lat. 21. to this Cape. Upon the Top there's a Column of Alabaster, in which are carv'd some Portuguese Letters and Arms, and there was formerly a Cross upon it; but 'tis now thrown down. The Coast here runs N. E. and E. N. E. At the Extremity of the N. Angle there's a Bay two Leagues broad, which runs so far into the Country, that when one is in the Centre, 'tis not possible to discern where it ends towards the Land-Side. The Shore is only Heaps of Sand, without the least Verdure. He adds, that on the E. Side of the Cape there are Mountains whose Tops are always cover'd with Snow, notwithstanding they are so near the Equator; and that to these join Mountains of Chrystal, which advance as far as *Malemba* near the Mountains of Silver, and to the Banks of the River *Coari*, which separates this Kingdom from *Angola*.

2. *Cabo de Ruipizes*, or *Cape de Ruyviz*, in Lat. 18. 90 Miles S. of the former, according to *Moll*. *Dapper* says, the Coast on the S. Side of it is high, and runs near 30 Miles from N. W. to N.

3. *Praya das Neves* or *Golfoprio*. *Moll* and the *Sanfons* call it *Praya das Pedras* or *Petras*, and the former places it 150 Miles from *Cape de Ruyviz*. *Dapper* places it in Lat. 19. 30. and says, the adjacent Country is full of Trees, and the Shore of Sands.

4. *St. Ambrose Bay* and Harbour. *Dapper* places it in Lat. 21. and says, the adjacent Coast is sandy.

5. *Baixo d' Antonio de Viava* or *Cazado*. *Dapper* says, the *Flemings* call it *Meeuvel Klip*, i. e. the Rock of Sea-Mews, because of the great Flights of those Birds which frequent it. It lies even with the Water near the Confines of *Mataman*, and some Geographers make it above 100 Leagues from *Cabo Negro*.

We come now to the S. Coast of *Caffaria*. *Du Plessis* extends it from the Gulph of *Volgas* to the River *St. Esprit*, and says, the *Dutch* at the Cape of *Good Hope* have, by their late frequent Voyages hither, much improv'd its Discovery. We find here,

1. Costa Deserta, or the Desert Coast,

SO called by the *Portuguese*. The *Sansons* extend it almost 570 Miles in a direct Line along the Coast from the Mouth of the River *St. Blas* on the N. W. to the River of the Cape of *Good Hope* on the S. E. and make its greatest Breadth 300 Miles. They bound it with *Mataman* on the N. *Monomotapa* on the E. the Cape of *Good Hope* Country on the S. and S. E. and the Ocean on the W. But since there is nothing here which merits a particular Description, we proceed to,

2. The Cape of Good Hope, or the Country of the Hottentots or Hodmadods.

BEfore we come to the particular Geography, we shall give an Account of the Natural History and People of this Country. *Heylin* says, they are called *Imbians* by others, and *Hottentots* or *Hodmadods* by themselves, according to *Gordon*, from the frequent Repetition of that or the like Word, which *Dampier* says they use when they call to one another upon any Occasion whatsoever.

Dapper says, the Air here is clear, serene, and temperate, except in *June* and *July*, when violent S. Winds arise, which bring Fogs and Snow, and sometimes freeze the Rivers half an Inch. There are also many times furious Whirlwinds, which break from the Tops of Mountains and the Middle of Clouds with such a Crash, that one would think the Elements were just a falling, and the Sea breaking its Bounds. 'Tis dangerous for Ships to anchor on this Coast while the Storm lasts. Their Winter is in *May*, *June*, and *July*, and it rains in such Torrents during the first two Months,

as lays all the flat Country under Water; but when the Rain ceases, the Water dreins off, and the Earth loses nothing of its Beauty. *Merolla* inserts a Relation how 6 or 8 *Portuguese* Criminals banish'd hither were all frozen to Death. *Dampier* objects against the Opinion of those *Europeans* who think it much colder here than in Places in the same Lat. to the N. of the Line, and imputes their Mistake to the sudden Change they find here by coming out of an Extremity of Heat, whether going or returning from the *East-Indies*. Some ascribe the Coldness of the S. Wind here to its blowing from the Sea; but he tells us from his own Observation, that the Sea-Winds are warmer than those from Land, except when a hot Bloom blows from the latter.

Dapper adds, the Soil is fit for all Sorts of Fruits, being fat and clayish in some Places, and stony and sandy in others. There are very many Shrubs and hard dry Wood on the Banks of the River *Douce* and *Table-Bay*; and they say, that far within the Country there are Trees large enough to cover 100 Persons with their Shade, which our Author supposes to be the *Indian Fig-Tree* formerly described. In the Country of *Cochoquas*, certain Roots grow in the Winter Season which the *Caffres* eat: Some have the Taste of Anniseed, others that of Swine-bread, and some have only Acorns like those of Oak. They have good Pasture, and their Plains and Valleys yield good Wheat, Rye, and Barley. They have also Plenty of sweet Herbs, and others for the Pot, Sorrel, Peaches, Apricocks, Chestnuts, and Olives. Their Gardens abound with Flowers. Their Tulips have a Root bigger than one's Fist, but it stinks, and consists of several thick Coats like Onions. The Stalk is a Span long and white, spotted with Purple: The Flower appears in the Month of *April*, and consists of 5 broad, long, thick, red Leaves. It grows upon the Cape, and was lately transplanted to *Holland*; but it only produc'd Leaves without the Flower. Their Daffadils have thick Leaves of a Finger's Length, full of Juice, and jagged like those of a Vine. Its Flower consists of 5 small Leaves, terminating in a Point towards a Circle in the Middle. The Flower is all over yellow, only the End of the Leaves is blackish. It has no Smell, and

and grows in the Downs and Sands. The Leaves of their Garlick are almost as thick as a Man's Finger, as big as his Hand, and of a pale Green. The Shank of their Sorrel is a Span in Height, and shoots out 5 or 6 long narrow Leaves, which are hard, and of a pale Green: The Root is knotty, and yellow on the Outside. They have other Herbs, for which we refer to *Dapper*. He says, that there swim at high Water, over-against the Coast, a big Sort of Reeds cover'd with Moss, and in Form like a Trumpet. They are called *Trombas*, and are longer than those about the Isle of *Tristan da Cunha*. He observes, that Mariners discover their Approach to this Coast by these Reeds and Sea-Weed, called *Sarcassa*, already mentioned, which abounds in this Sea for above 150 Leagues. He adds, that it yields Coral, and Shells which contain Pearls. *Dampier* says, the Soil is brown, and not deep, the Grass short, like that on our *Wiltshire* Downs, and the Trees but small and few, especially far within Land. 'Tis not very fat, but would be fruitful enough, if it was as well cultivated every where as 'tis for 20 or 30 Leag. up the Country, which is pretty well stock'd with Farms by *Dutch* Families and *French* Refugees; but there are few near the Harbour at the Cape. They have Plenty of Pease and other Pulse, with Apples, Pears, Quinces, large Pomegranates, and many other Sorts of Fruit, chiefly Grapes, which have thriv'd so well in late Years, that they have many Vineyards, and Wine enough for their own Use, besides great Quantities which they sell to Ships that touch here. He adds, that 'tis like the *French* High-Country White-Wine, pleasant and strong, but of a pale yellowish Colour. *Lockyer* says, they have Oranges and Lemons, large good Colliflowers and Cabbages, and abundance of all Sorts of boiling Roots.

Dapper says, they have abundance of great and small Cattle; that the Beeves are half a Foot higher than those of *Holland*: Some have long crooked Horns, some have them smooth, and hanging the Length of their Bodies, and others have none at all. These Beasts are fleshy, but not very fat. Their Sheep have very long Legs, and fat Tails that weigh about 18 or 20 Pound. Their

Forrests, Valleys, and Plains, yield Plenty of Game, Stags, Roebucks, and Bufflers, that herd by 60, 80, or 100 together. They have Deer with reddish Hair, so heavy, that a Man can run them down and catch them. Their Flesh is very good, and tastes like Lamb or Mutton. There are also Wild-Boars, Wild-Goats, Hares, and Rabbits. Among their Wild Beasts, they have Wolves, Leopards, and Tigers, which do abundance of Mischief; Elephants, Rhinoceroses, and Lions, which range about the Tops of the Mountains, and hunt their Prey by the Light of the Moon. They very often go with their Jackals as far as the Fort of the Cape, where the Guards are forced to light up Fires to scare them. They have a Sort of Rhinoceroses which have two Horns on their Nose. 'Tis as big as an Elephant, and has a Tail and Feet like that Beast. The Tail is Ash-grey. It has a black Fold upon the Nape, round and strait Ears, and runs faster than a Man. There are many Land and Water Tortoises, Dogs with short Tails, and black or red Hair, and there's scarce a *Hottentot* that travels without his Dog. *Du Plessis* says, here are Lants, Apes, Wild-Asses, Wild-Horses which kill themselves when taken, and Wild-Dogs without Tails or Ears, which go naturally to Hunting by Packs. *Dampier* says, here are Hogs, and that their Mutton is larger, fatter, and sweeter, than their Beef, because their short Pasture agrees best with the Sheep. They are brought home and penn'd up all Night for fear of the Wild-Beasts. He adds, that the Wild-Asses have chesnut or black and white Stripes two or three Fingers broad, running parallel with each other, and curiously mix'd from the Shoulder to the Rump. *Lockyer* says, they have Tiger-Cats, and that their Wild-Asses are above 13 Hands high, and the beautifulest Creatures in the World. They have small Manes and Tails, clean Limbs, short Bodies, and other Parts in Proportion. The Stripes run from the Tip of the Nose to the Tail, and make it of a more lovely Colour than a Leopard. He adds, that the *Dutch* have endeavour'd to preserve the Colts, which have sometimes been taken without Hurt; but they always pined away. There is a Deer, he says, five Foot and a half high at the Shoulders, of a dun

dun Colour, with long black Horns without Branches, like an Antelope.

Dapper says, they have great Numbers of Bees in their Woods, which make Honey in the Trunks of Trees, and several Sorts of Birds, such as Partridges, Quails, Larks, Sparrows, Woodcocks, Wild-Ducks, Peacocks, Sparhawks, white Pelicans as big as Hens, Cranes, white and black Storks, Pheasants, Magpies, Ostriches, and Flamengo's, which are as big as Geese, with long red Legs, red and crooked Bills, red Feathers on the Back, and the rest white. There are other Amphibious Birds which never stay from the Coast, and are a Sign to Mariners that they are not far from the Shore. These are, 1. *Penguins*, which are no bigger than GIBLETS. They have thick short Feathers, Wings no longer than those of Ducks when their great Feathers are pluck'd off; but they have a Fin to swim by at each Foot. They are spotted with white and black. Their Skin is very hard. They have a sharp Bill, and bite severely. They swim and dive, and keep sometimes at Sea, and at other times on the Rocks and on the Land. They make their Nests in the Thickets, and lay their Eggs in Holes which they make in the Sand. They generally lay 4 or 5 at a time, with white Shells, and bigger than those of Geese. They catch a great Number of them upon Land, because they cannot run, and they never stir from their Nests, tho' they see People coming, but only endeavour to defend themselves with their Bills, and are not to be forc'd out but by Blows. Their Flesh is viscous, and not good to eat till after 'tis boil'd two or three times in fresh Water, and fry'd in a Pan, which makes them tender and well tasted. 2. *Antenayas*. They are marked with several Spots, and are often seen to swim on the Top of a Sand-Bank about the Cape of *Aguilhas*. 3. *Alcatraces*. They are grey Birds almost like Sea-Mews. 4. *Garagians* differ little from the former. 5. *Jan van Genten* or *Witte Mouwen*. They are a Sort of Sea-Mews, all over white, except the Tip of their Wings, which is black. Besides these, *Dapper* says, there are other great Mews, which *Jacob van Nek*, in his *Indian Voyages*, calls *Kaap-Vogels*, or Birds of the Cape, with white Bellies and blue Backs, and other smaller Mews which have the

like Feathers. *Linschotten* mentions another Bird, which the *Portuguese* call *Mangas de Velludo* or Velvet Sleeves, because they have Wings all speckled with black, and move them incessantly like Pigeons. *Dampier* says, the Inhabitants sell such Ostrich Eggs as they find to Strangers; that they are laid about *Christmas*, and that the Meat of one of them is enough for two Men. *Lockyer* says, they have Doves, Canary-Birds, and Crows with white Rings about their Necks.

Dapper says, their Coasts abound with large Fish and Amphibious Monsters, such as Sea-Rabbers or Dogs, Sea-Horses, Sea-Hogs or Tunnies, Sea-Cats, and Sea-Wolves or Bears, which are like the Bears on Land, only their Snout is sharper, and they trail their hinder Paws like Wolves; but no Man is able to out-run them. They are ugly to look on, their Bites are almost mortal, and two or three Persons are little enough to fright them away. There are also Sea-Oxen, otherwise called Sea Devils. They are as big as an ordinary Ox, two or three times as big as Sea-Dogs, and they often graze in the Meadows. In Summer all these Monsters keep off at Sea; but in Winter the Cold makes them retire to the Shore and between the Rocks. *Dampier* says, they have a Sort of Fish not so big as a Herring, of which they pickle great Quantities a Year, and send them to *Europe*. They have great Numbers of Seals with very fine Skins, which prey upon other Fish. *Lockyer* says, here are Crawfish as large as our Lobsters, and like them when the great Claws are broke off. They sell 3 or 4 for 2 *d*. They have abundance of Codfish, especially on the Bank that runs out beyond Cape *Aguilhas*, where the *Dutch* angle for them when they are becalmed, and sometimes catch two on a Line. They have Sherks which breed like Land Animals, Sea-Lions, Whales, Albucore, Dolphins, and Flying Fish. Our Author confutes those who say, that the latter would continue in the Air if the Sun did not dry their Wings, and think rather that they dip into their own Element for Rest and Refreshment; for he says, that in a close Pursuit they are not able to hold out above 3 or 4 Flights, the first of which is with double

the Strength and twice as long as the last, tho' their Wings are then as moist as in the beginning, and that the large ones fly as far again as the small ones, which are altogether as wet. They are seldom found near the Shore, and never in small Bays or Rivers. We proceed next from the Monsters to the Men.

Dapper says, the *Hottentots* about the Cape are lean, but very large, with a livid Sun-burnt Complexion like the *Mullatto's* and *Japonefe*; but that those about *Vlees Bay* are smaller, of the common Size of *Europeans*, and of a brown reddish Colour. Their Hair is short and frizled like Wool, and the Women have it thicker than the Men. They have a large wrinkled Forehead, fine black Eyes, sparkling like those of a Hawk; but all their Noses are flat, and their Lips thick, especially the upper one. Their Teeth are very good, and white as Ivory. Their Neck is of a just Length; but they are narrow Shoulder'd, with great Arms, small skinny Fists, handsome Hands, and long Fingers; but they take a Pride in letting their Nails grow as long as Eagles Claws. Most of them have their Bellies lank, but very great Rumps, because that going stark naked, or wearing only wide Habits, their Bodies are not compact nor well pois'd. They have good Legs, but very tender towards the Calf, with small and well proportion'd Feet, particularly the Women's. They are so swift, strong and vigorous, that they can catch a Bull at full Speed. Since they are not subject either to the Measles or Small-pox, the Women have so smooth a Complexion, that a Painter cannot draw any thing more compleat. Those that are married have such large Breasts, that they give their Children Suck over their Shoulders. *Heylin* says, the Men are tall and square. *Dampier*, that they are of a middle Stature, with small Limbs and thin Bodies. Their Faces are of a flat oval Figure, with great Eyebrows; but he says, that their Noses are not so flat, nor their Lips so thick, as the Negroes of *Guinea*; that their Complexion is darker than the common *Indians*, but not so black as the Negroes or *New Hollanders*, nor is their Hair so much frizled.

Dapper tells us, they are extremely ignorant; but by their Conversation with the

Dutch, they begin to be refin'd. In the mean time they have some bright Beams of natural Reason, and understand the Laws of Nations and Nature. He commends them for their mutual Love, Fidelity, Sincerity, and Generosity, and says, that they never commit any Insult but when they are intoxicated by eating the Root *Dacha*, or drinking the Water in which 'tis infus'd. And if any, reduc'd by extream Poverty, take the Opportunity to pilfer any thing, they severely punish them. They are also very jealous of their Honour. When they go to the Fort at the Cape, they set themselves off with the fattest and most shining Skins, and adorn themselves with Ear-Pendants, Necklaces, Bracelets, and Rings of Tin. They think one Habitation no better than another, and 'tis common for those of one Village to take Arms rather than submit to their Neighbours; and if the Fortune of War be favourable to the one, the other must obey, and be for a long time expos'd to the Insolence of the Conqueror. *Tavernier* says, both Sexes are not ashamed to shew their Nakedness, and calls them a Sort of humane Beasts. *Heylin* says, they live by War and Rapine, and feed on the Flesh of their Enemies and Friends, using their Skulls for Drinking Cups. He adds, that when they go to the Wars, they always carry Fire before them, with which they threaten to roast or boil all that they overcome. They reckon the *Portuguese* Masters of all the Seas; and their King, whom they count the Lord of the whole Earth, shooteth his poison'd Arrows against Heaven as often as the Rain or Heat offends him. In 1589, about 80000 laid all *Zanzibar* waste as far as *Mombaza*, and devour'd the People. In short, *Gordon* says, they are the most nasty and brutish of all reasonable Creatures. *Dampier* tells us, they are abominably lazy, and chuse rather to be miserable, than to be at Pains for Plenty, in a Country which would so easily produce it; for *Lockyer* says, that as they knew not the least Part of Husbandry before the *Europeans* came among them, so now they practise nothing of it; whereupon the *Dutch* were forced to encourage Foreigners to transport themselves hither, which the *French* Refugees embrac'd in such Numbers, that 'tis said there are above 500 Families of 'em that

that live here in good Fashion. He adds, that the greatest Mark of Respect they shew to *Europeans* is to retire to a small Distance; but he thinks that Compliment rather forc'd than natural.

Dapper says, they have no Inclination to trade, but set a mighty Value upon Instruments of Iron; so that in 1595, a *Dutchman* made vast Profit by his Traffick with the *Caffres* of *Table-Bay*, for he had a good large Ox for a sorry Cutlass, two Oxen and three Sheep for an Iron Bar of Seventy Pound Weight broke in five Pieces; three Oxen and five Sheep for a Bill, a Hatchet, and some other Bits of Iron; and a Sheep for a Knife. But now that they can have this Sort of Merchandize from several Persons, they keep up their Cattle at a higher Price. *Dampier* was told when he was here, that the Inland *Hottentots* have still great Stocks of Cattle, which they sell to the *Dutch* for Rolls of Tobacco; and that they are such Lovers of the Weed, that they sell a Cow or a Sheep for as much twisted Tobacco as will reach from the Horns to the Tail.

Lockyer says, the main Design of the *Dutch* in settling at the Cape of *Good Hope*, was only to procure Provisions and Refreshments for their Ships going to and returning from the *Indies*, which they have long since so well provided for, that they are able to supply the greatest Fleets, and to export several Ship-loads of Wine Yearly to other Parts. They have no Shops; but the Inhabitants will buy any Commodities that are proper for the Place, being sure of a quick Sale among their Friends in the Country when the Ships are gone. The *Dutch* Governor and Council have the sole Power of ingrossing or tolerating Trade, and laying Duties on it. They employ two or three small Ships in Trade on the East Coast of *Africa*, *Madagascar*, and the Isles adjacent. Tho' Provisions are cheap, and Wine may be bought at the first Hand for 15 or 16 Rixdollars per Leaguer of 160 Gallons, yet the common Price for Strangers Diet is a Rixdollar per Day: Besides, they'll take *Spanish* Dollars and *English* Crowns for no more than 8 Skillings, the same that Rixdollars pass for, tho' there is at least 25 per Cent. Difference in their Value. Wine exported or retailed is charged

with a very high Excise. The *Burghers* pay nothing for what is drunk in their Families, under which Pretence the Company may be defrauded; but Publick Houses are so strictly watched, that they'll rarely venture to sell without paying their Duty, for fear of the Council's Fines, which are generally severe. The Red and White *Muccadels* are rich Wines, and bear double the Price of the common Sort, which is much like White Wine. The two former were sold when our Author was here for 80 Rixdollars per Leaguer, and the latter Sort from 32 to 40 on board out of the dearest Cellar. They usually reckon 10 Rixdollars for the Cask, Iron-bound. He gives the following List of the chief Commodities which are most vendible at the Cape, viz. Hats, Worsted Stockings, Beer in Bottles, Pewter Plates and Dishes, Starch, Tobacco and Pipes, small Flint Glasses, Cheese, Red-Herrings, *India* coarse Quilts and Palampores, *Madras* Betteelaes, Blue Long Cloth and Salampores, Strip'd coarse Gingham, *Balasore* Gingham, *Bengal* Cloths, and painted Callicoes of all Sorts, except the finest, Lacquer'd and *China* Ware, Sugar, Coffee, *Cornelian* Rings, Beads and Rangos, slight Silks, Slaves, &c. Ships bound from the Cape to *St. Helena* may take in Wine, *Batavia* Arack, and Sugar, without overstocking the Market, especially the two latter. In 1706, Arack was worth 80 Rixdollars per Leaguer, and sold at *St. Helena* for 160 *English* Crowns. Sugar at the Cape is worth 3 or 4 Stivers per *Dutch* lb. which is larger than the *English* by 7 or 8 per Cent. and from 6d. to 1s. at *St. Helena*, according to the Quantity imported. Tea is commonly sold at the Cape for a Rixdollar per Pound, which at *Brasil* is worth from 10 to 12 s. Sterling, which, if inverted again in Snuff, would (says our Author) make a pretty Voyage of it self for one who has not much to lay out. There's no less Difference betwixt the Cape and *Brasil* in other *Indian* Goods; so that our Author says, that those who in Defiance of the Company's Orders loose a Top-mast, or miss *St. Helena* to touch there, are to blame to part with any of their Commodities wherever they call by the Way. *Lockyer* observes, there was not long since a smart Trade driven nearer home; but 'tis now

under a great many Difficulties: Besides, that being only for the Sale of Goods, a round Sum became as it were a Burden; for the Profit on Tallow to bring home the Money would never satisfy an *Indian's* Conscience, and to make Returns by Bills was 7 or 8 *per Cent.* Discount, which was a great Discouragement to a *Cent. per Cent.* Man; whereas at *Brasil* there's Gold at a moderate Price, Snuff to keep a piddling Trade, and no Body to inform. He adds, that from the Cape to any Port betwixt *Bengal* and *Persia*, Ivory; and to all the *European* Settlements in *India*, Wine will bring 100 *per Cent.* Profit. Ivory and sometimes Ostrich Feathers are a good Return to *Europe*.

Dapper says, their chief Employments are manufacturing Iron, and putting it at the End of their Arrows and Zagays. They also make Mats of Rushes to cover their Cottages. They have no Fish-hooks, except the *Goringhaiconas*. The Wives are obliged to obey their Husbands without murmuring. Instead of a Gold Chain, the Bridegroom gives the Bride the great Gut of an Ox, which she must wear about her Neck till it drops in Pieces. For their Nuptial Feast, they take two of the largest Sheep they can get, and boil one Part and roast the other, which none but the new-married Couple and their Parents must eat; for if any other should touch it, they would hold the Marriage illegal. They eat the very Sheep-Skins cut in little Bits, and broil'd upon the Coals, after the Hair is scrap'd off. The Rejoycings end with the Day, and then the new married Couple Bed without any more Ceremony. They are not much given to Jealousy; but Adultery is severely punished.

Dapper adds, that when a small Theft is committed, the King or Chief only beats the Criminals with a Cudgel in Publick; but if it be committed in the Night-time, and the Robbery be of a more heinous Nature, such as the stealing of Cattle, Ear-Pendants, and Coral Necklaces, in which all their Wealth consists, they are severely punished; for they presently seize the Malefactor, bind him Hand and Foot, and keep him a whole Day without eating or drinking. The next Day, the oldest Men of the Village where the Fact is committed

go to demand Prosecution of the King of *Soldania*, who examines the Proofs, and if they are valid, the Criminal is carried without any Formality into a large Plain before the King and his numerous Attendants. There they bind him to a Tree with his Back turn'd, and whip him till the Blood starts out of his Shoulders; after which they turn his Face about to the People, and pour melted Pitch or some boiling hot Gum into his Neck and Stomach. After this they give him a little Breath, let him eat, and loose him, but afterwards bind him again Hand and Foot, and keep him three Days without Nourishment. Besides, sometimes if the Criminal survive this Usage, they compleat his Punishment with Banishment. If young Persons of an equal Rank are guilty of lewd Conversation together, they marry them; and if a young Woman proves with Child, she must be married to her Gallant, for otherwise she forfeits her Honour all her Life-time. They punish Adultery with the Lash; but such as are guilty of Incest, they throw, bound Hand and Foot, into a Ditch. Next Day they take out the Man first, hang him by the Neck to the Branch of a Tree, which some Persons under it bend down, while others cut off his Members, throw them about, and then let the Bough take its natural Swing, where the Corps is left to hang for a Terror. Then they take out the Woman, and burn her alive upon a Pile of Wood. They treat Murderers with equal Severity, especially if the Criminal be a Man of Parts, Wealth or Honour in the Government, for they look upon such to be inexcusable, and after hanging them on a Tree, throw their Bodies into the Graves of the Persons whom they have murder'd. They pierce the Knees of Assassins, and fasten them to their Shoulders, in which Posture they let them lie till dead. But if the Murderer be some poor silly Fellow, and committed the Fact in a passionate or drunken Fit, they only lash him and confiscate his Cattle, or give him some other Punishment less than Death, which our Author notes as a great Proof of the Virtue and natural Justice of the *Caffres*.

Heylin says, their Weapons are poison'd Arrows, and Poles burnt at the End. *Dapper* tells

us, they live in Tents in the Fields. The Fire-place is in the Middle; but since they know not how to make Chimnies, their Huts are smoaky. When they go to kindle a Fire, they put two small Splinters in a Hole, where they work them with their Feet till they strike Fire. *Heylin* says, they have a few Sheds on the Coast for the Use of Sailors. *Dampier* tells us, their Huts are the meanest that ever he saw. They are about 9 or 10 Foot high, and 10 or 12 in Breadth. They are as it were round, made with small Poles stuck into the Ground, and fasten'd together at the Top. They are partly cover'd with Hides, as well as Grass and Rushes, and they look at a Distance like Haycocks. They have only a little Hole on one Side about 3 or 4 Foot high to creep in and out at; and when the Wind comes in at the Door, they stop it up and make another in the opposite Side. They have no Beds, and lie all Night round the Fire. He adds, that their Household Furniture is commonly an Earthen Pot or two to boil Victuals.

Dapper says, they never kill any of their Beasts but such as are old or sick, and cannot follow the Herd, except on the Wedding-day, when they spare none. They eat their Sea-Dogs raw, or at least par-boil'd, without being wash'd or cleans'd. They love the Fat of Whales; and since they know nothing but Eating, they often cut off Pieces from the Skins which they wear about them, broil them, and then crack them between their Grinders like Bisket. If they are at a *Dutchman's* House, and there be a Pot over the Fire, they sip up the Scum boiling hot. When they find Honey in the Woods, they suck Wax and all. They give their Sick Cabbages boil'd with white Cheese, Mustard Leaves, and Bacon. They are great Lovers of Bread, and freely give the *Dutch* the best of their Cattle for it. They generally drink Milk or Water. They have learn'd of the *Europeans* to drink Wine and Brandy, and smoak Tobacco; but a small Matter makes them drunk. *Morery* says, their common Food is Butter and Milk. *Dampier*, that they live very hard, and are reported to fast two or three Days together when they travel. Their ordinary Food is Herbs or Shell-Fish, which they get

among the Rocks or other Places at low Water, because they have no Boats, Bark-logs, or Canoes. Those that live by the *Dutch Town* have their chief Subsistence from the *Dutch*, for one or more of them belongs to every House, where they do the Drudgery for their Food and Kitchen-Stuff. Three or four more of the nearest Relations wait at the Doors or near the *Dutch* House for the Scraps that come from Table, and are ready to go on Errands for the *Dutch* for little or nothing; but they won't stir for a Stranger under a Stiver. *Lockyer* says, the Price of a fat Sheep here is 8 or 9 Skillings at most. The *Dutch* farm the Mutton for a considerable Rent to one Butcher, who has the sole Licence of killing in the Town, and sells it for 2 *d.* a Pound, which is at least 100 *per Cent.* more than it costs him. All the Housekeepers are obliged to buy of him; but where there's a great Family, they take just enough to countenance the Consumption, and kill the rest at home privately in the Night; for the Government is not so strict in this as the Wine Excise. He allows the *Hottentots* the Guts, and sells the Skins for a Trifle to the Leather-dressers, who use a Bark which is redder than Oak for Tan Leather. Their Beef is dearer and worse than Mutton, therefore seldom sold in the Slaughter-house; but their Pork and Fowls are much like ours.

Dapper says, they wear a Mantle round their Shoulders, which reaches to their Thighs, is made of the Skins of a Sheep, Deer, Rabbit, or other Beast, and consists of three Pieces. Instead of Thread, they are sew'd together with the Nerves of the Animal, and a hard sharp Thorn serves them for their Needle. They commonly wear the hairy Side inward, and over them another Skin when they travel with the Hair outwards. In the Night, when they lie down, or when it rains, they throw a Lamb's Skin over their Heads, with the Woolly Side inwards, and ty'd on the Top with a Knot. Their Shoes are made of Rhinoceros's Skins, which are lasting. They are all flat, and fasten'd to the Feet with Leather Straps like Capuchins Sandals. The Women's Mantle is like the Men's, only 'tis a little longer, and they wear a Skin about their Loins which covers them behind.

hind. Their Cap is also of a Skin, which they tie with a Strap, as the Women of *Molcuere* in *Friseland* do theirs. The Women adorn their Hairs with little Plates like Pence, white Shells, Pieces of Leather, Glass, and Grains of Coral. They shave their Heads as they do their Beards, leaving here and there a Lock of Hair. They pluck off all the Hair from their Chins, and paint their Face with the blackest Colours they can find; so that when a *Hottentot* enters a *Dutchman's* House, he stares about for a Kettle to smear himself with the Soot. Some make Incisions in their Skins, and fill them with Grease, which makes them stink at 50 Paces Distance. Those who abound most in Cattle are known from others by their Habits, being more bedawb'd with Grease. Their Ear-Pendants are a Bunch of Coral in 9 or 10 Branches, each of the Weight of a Quartern. Besides, the Rich wear Chains of Tin about their Necks, Bracelets of Ivory, and Buckles of Copper, or of a Metal that is between Gold and Silver, which they bind so strait about their Wrists, that it causes Ulcers. They also wear the dry Guts about their Legs to defend them from the Thorns, and to make the greater Noise in Dancing. Some make a Pouch of them, which they hang about their Necks, wherein they lay Tobacco-Pipes, and certain Roots which they find in the Bottom of Rivers. When they are on a Journey, and come to a Desert, they chew these Roots before they sleep, and then scatter them in Bits round the Place, the Smell of which they fancy will drive away the Wild Beasts; but our Author ascribes this rather to the Fires which they light upon the Spot. When they go out, they take an Ostrich Feather and the Tail of a Wild-Cat, which they tie at the End of a Staff to shake off the Dust, and drive away the Flies, of which this Country is very full. The Women never go abroad without a Pocket full of Bawbles, and seldom without a Child in their Arms. *Morery* says, they go naked, except a Skin upon their Backs, and another before, and that they wear the Sheep-Skins with the Wool on, dressed with Cow-Dung and nasty Grease. *Dampier* says, they go bare-headed, and that the Sheep-Guts about their Legs are two or three Inches thick, some as high

as their Calves, and others up to their Knees. They are put on while green, and never pull'd off for 6 or 12 Months, till perhaps they have Occasion to eat them when upon the Road, for want of other Food at hand. They never pull off their Sheep-Skins but to destroy the Vermin, for which they often strip and sit two or three Hours naked in the Sun at Noon. *Lockyer* says, the Women never wear the Guts about their Legs till they are marriageable, and seldom before they have Husbands; and that the Girls of 9 or 10 Years old wear a few about their Necks and Wrists, but not so black or large as those about their Legs, which are filled with Wind before they are put on, to make them stay in regular Rings; and when they sit, they keep their Knees close, and their Feet far asunder, for fear of incommoding them. He observes, that many of their old Women have lost some or all their Toes, and that others are marked across their Noses and Foreheads with red Paint. He adds, that their Skins are much larger than the Men's, and are commonly Ox-Hides, which they manage with as fine an Air as the *Spaniards* do their Cloaks. Their Aprons are 6 or 7 Inches broad, and ty'd round their Waistes with Straps of the same. The Men secure their Privities in Cases 7 or 8 Inches long, as big as a Man's Arm, and made of spotted Deer-Skin with the Hair outward, which look as if they were always full.

Dapper says, they all speak the same Language, which is so inarticulate, that no Strangers can learn it. *Lockyer* tells us, their Words are not to be expressed by the *English* Alphabet, and are for most Part dead Sounds in their Throats like the Clockings of Brood Hens, especially when they are earnest and loud. *Morery* compares it to the Sound of Bells.

Dapper tells us, they are very superstitious, and pretend they have a Power to stop Wind and Rain. To do the latter, they dig a Hole in the Ground, wherein they put a Stick of Wood, with a fiery Coal upon the Top, and some Hairs, which no sooner burn and begin to stink, but they cover up the Hole with Sand, piss upon it, and then run away whooping. When they would lay the Wind, they take one of their fattest Skins, and hang it at

the

the End of a long Pole, pretending that if the Wind beats it down, it loses all its Force, and must of Consequence fall of its own Accord. They have two Instruments for the Celebration of the Festival of the New Moon; one is a Pot cover'd with a Skin well stretch'd, on which they beat with their Hands; the other is the String of a Violin extended in Form of a Bow, with a feather'd Pipe at the End. They don't play upon it with a Bow-string, but blow into the Pipe. At such Times they also raise Stones for the Women and Children to kneel before them. *Morery* says, they have no Notion of the Creation or a future Life, yet sacrifice to God for Rain and fair Weather; and *Dampier*, that they have no Temples nor Idols. *Lockyer* says, they dance at the Full of the Moon till they are weary every Night while it shines in mild Weather, and at Noon after their Dinners. *Dapper* says, the Daughter is Heir to the Mother, and the Sisters one to another; but if the Deceased be rich in Cattle, the Heiress must have Part of both her little Fingers cut off. *Morery* says, the Right of Inheritance belongs only to the eldest, who are serv'd by the younger Brothers. Their Physicians carry two-edg'd Knives. First they bleed the Patient in the Back, then they apply a hot Iron to his Arm; after which they drop into the Wound warm Milk, in which Herbs have been boil'd. Those of their Profession are known by Bundles of Roots and Herbs which they always wear about their Necks.

Gordon says, they have no manner of Government; but *Heylin*, they are govern'd by the Leaders of their several Clans which are as follow, according to *Dapper* and *Morery*.

1. The *Goringhaiconas*, whom the *Dutch* call Watermen, because they live by catching of Fish, which they sell to them for Bread. They are 4 or 5 poor Families, which amount to about 50 Persons, under the Conduct of a Chief call'd *Demtāa*, and by the *Dutch*, *Nicholas Das* or *Daim*, because the Natives banish'd him into the Island of that Name, and restor'd him upon his Repentance. They are very poor, and none but their Leader and his Brother wear greasy Skins, to denote their Wealth in Cattle. *Morery* says, they live near the *Dutch* Fort. 2. The *Gorachouquas*, surnamed To-

bacco-Stealers, are from 3 to 500 Men fit to bear Arms. Their Leader is call'd *Chore*, and his Brother *Gaking*, who both are habited in greasy Skins, and their sole Commerce is in great and small Cattle. 3. The *Goringhaiquas* or Men of the Cape, to which they pretend a Propriety, are about 95 Families, who can raise almost as many good Soldiers as the *Gorachouquas*, under their Leader *Gogofoa*, who in 1662 was a stout Man above 100 Years old. They hunt Wild Beasts. 4. The *Cochoquas* or *Saldanbars*, are 400 or 450 Families, in 15 or 16 Villages a quarter of a League from one another, in the Vallies of *Soldania* Bay, 27 Leagues N. W. from the Cape of *Good Hope*, which are built round, and hold each from 30 to 50 Families. There's a Space between the Houses for their Cattle, of which 'tis said they have 100000 Horned Beasts, and 2000 Sheep, which have long spotted Hair instead of Wool. Their Commander takes the Title of *Coehque*, and pretends to be King of all the *Caffres* that live for 75 Leag. about the Cape. 5. The *Great* and *Little Cariguriquas* and *Hosaas* live about the Vallies above-mentioned, and are Herdsmen as well as the *Cochoquas*. 6. The *Chamouquas* or *Chainoquas*. They live three Months Journey from the Cape, near the Country of the *Cobonas*. They are about 400 Persons, that have Store of Cattle, and their Leader call'd *Sousoa* wears a Leopard's Skin with the hairy Side inward, and the bald Side, which they wear outward, is dawb'd with Grease, according to the Custom of the Country. He has a Son, whom they carry about upon an Ox, because his Leg was broke by an Elephant. 7. The *Cobonas* or *Gobonas*, Inland Cannibals, who live far beyond the latter, and are the blackest of all the Negroes. They roast all Persons alive that they can catch, not excepting their Neighbours, who therefore deny that the *Cobonas* are of the Race of the *Caffres*. The Negroes of the Cape say, that they have very long Hair, and that they have not so many Cattle as the Inhabitants of the Coast; but that they have other Inland Rarities, and live by the Cultivation of Gourds. In 1659, a *Chainouqua* named *Chaihantimo*, assisted by some of those Comrades, took a Woman by Force from this Country, and carried her home and married her. Her Head was dressed

dressed very neatly like a Person of Quality's, and her Hair trail'd to the Ground. Some Time after, when he had Business at the Cape, the *Dutch* desir'd to see her; whereupon he sent 30 or 40 Men to fetch her; but they were attacked in their Return by a Party of *Soldanbars* that were then at War with the *Chainouquas*, who put them to flight, and ran the Woman thro' the Body with a Sword. *Chaihantimo* was like to break his Heart at the News, and presently set out to revenge himself upon the *Cochouquas*. 8. The *Sonquas*. They are some Thousands of Persons upon the high Mountains. Both Sexes understand Hunting, and live only upon Venison, and a Root that serves them for Bread. They train up Setting-Dogs to spring the Deer from their Holes, and they have Horses and Wild Asses so well shap'd, and spotted with such pretty lively Colours, that no Painter can match them. Their Horses have high, round, plump Buttocks, and the rest of their Bodies strip'd with Yellow, Black, Scarlet, and Azure; but their Wild-Asses are marked with White and Hazle. In 1662, they carried one of them to the Cape, where they sold it for Tobacco to the *Dutch*, who stuffed it with Straw, and hung it up in the Hall of the Castle for the Entertainment of Strangers. They are Robbers by Profession, and look upon all the Cattle they seize as good Prize, for they have Holes to hide in, where their Pursuers cannot find them. Their Habitations are only Branches cover'd with Rushes, which they leave standing, and build new ones when they are removed to new Pasture, because when they return they may find them ready to their Hands. They wear a Mantle of Bufflers Skins sew'd together, and the Women have Umbrella's made of Ostrich Feathers, which they tie round their Heads. 9. The *Namaquas*, who *Morery* says are naturally white, but paint themselves black. They live 150, and sometimes 200 Miles from the Cape, towards the W. Coast. In 1661, the Governor of the *Dutch* Colony sent 13 Persons in a Waggon to drive a Trade with them, and to see their Commodities. They received them very civilly, and 100 Musicians came to salute them, with each a Reed in his Mouth, which made a Noise like a Sea-Trumpet. They

placed themselves in a Circle, and one stood in the Middle who beat Time with a Stick. This lasted two or three Hours; after which they were conducted to the King's Palace, called *Acambia*, who treated them with Milk and Mutton, and the *Dutch* presented him with some Copper, Coral, Brandy, and Tobacco. Before the *Dutch* came, the *Namaquas* could not smook Tobacco, but they soon learn'd it. They are of a good Stature, and *Dapper* calls them Half-Giants. Their Women are neither unhandsome nor barren. They wear Beasts Skins which are not greas'd, like those of the Cape, but embellish'd with Bits of *Cambaya* Glass, that the *Namaquas* buy of the *Portuguese* in Exchange for their Cattle, with which they abound. These People often penetrate as far as *Monomotapa* and the Country of the *Bellugarins*. The Men wear a Shell of Ivory under their Bellies, and the Women a small Skin. They wear an Umbrella upon their Heads like the *Sonquas*, and go with the rest of their Bodies naked. Some adorn themselves with Ivory Bracelets and Copper Rings. Their Country yields good Pasture and a fat Soil, which, without Cultivation, produces Gourds, wherein they put their Milk. They have the Reputation of Warriors, and can raise about 2000 Fighting-Men, who are pretty robust and witty, laugh seldom, and speak but little. 10. The *Brigoudis*. The *Dutch* never saw them, but they were told by the *Namaquas* that they were a potent People, and rich in Cattle. 11. The *Heusaquas* live also very far N.W. from the Cape. The *Dutch* were never in their Country, but they saw three of them who came to the Coast, with the Commander of the *Chainouquas*, to trade in Cattle. They are Herdsmen and Husbandmen too, and among others sow a Root called *Dacha*, that intoxicates all that eat it, or drink any thing in which 'tis steep'd; and when the Women see their Husbands drunk with it, they sprinkle upon their Heads a certain fragrant Herb call'd *Boggoa*, which grows upon the Mountains like Broom. 'Tis said they catch Lions in Snares, tame them, lead them about by a Chain like Dogs, and carry them to the Field of Battle, where they let them go on a sudden against their Enemies. They make several Lines in their Skins of different Colours, and hang Leather Straps

Straps all round their Bodies. We have nothing concerning the *Hancumquas* their Neighbours. 12. The *Ubiquas*. They live in the middle of the Land, and are Robbers by Profession; for tho' they can't raise 500 Men, yet they have Mountains and Fastnesses to retire to, where 'tis hard to come at 'em. 13. The *Gonriguas*, who live near the E. Coasts towards the N. and have no great Space of Land. 14. The *Gassiguas*. They live about the Mouth of that which is call'd the *River without End*, and are rich and powerful, but sorry Warriors. 15. The *Sousiguas*. They live nearest to the Cape, and are allied to the *Odiques*. On the West Coast, in about Lat. 28. *Morery* says, the *Dutch* Governor in 1685 discover'd different Nations, in a pleasant fruitful Country, abounding with Beasts. The People are much more tractable than others. They are well made, strong Body'd, and wear their Hairs so long, that it covers all their Shoulders. They wear Tygers Skins, which hang to their Heels. Some of them are as white as the *Europeans*; but they black themselves with Grease and the Powder of a black Stone. They know how to melt and prepare Minerals, but put no great Value upon them, because they have a great Number of Gold and Silver Mines. The married Women have the Tops of their Heads shav'd, and pointed Shells hanging at their Ears. They have Flutes, Flagelets, Horns, and other Musick.

Dapper gives the following Account of a War that broke out in April 1659, between the *Dutch* Colony and the Natives of the Cape, who were supported by the *Gorachouquas* their Allies.

They did all the Mischief they could to the Colony, carried off their Cattle, and chose to attack them in rainy Weather, when their Fire-Arms could do no Execution. One of the *Caffres*, whom the *Dutch* call'd *Doman*, having been 4 or 5 Years at *Batavia*, and inform'd himself of the Manners of the *Europeans*, return'd to the Cape, where he liv'd a while with the *Dutch*, and wore their Habit; but the Love of his Country induc'd him at last to return home, in Company with his Comrade *Garabinga*, surnamed Flat-Nose, and they were both so

resolute and desperate, that 'twas impossible to stay them. In June that same Year, five *Dutch* Troopers met and attacked *Doman* and his Comrade, and three more *Hottentots*, who had just stole some Cattle from one of the Colony. They made a brave Defence, and three were wounded on both Sides. *Eycamma*, one of the wounded *Caffers*, was carried to the Fort; but *Doman* and his Comrade made their Escape. *Eycamma* was very civilly treated in the Fort, in order to oblige him to tell the Motives that engaged his Nation in Arms; but instead of that, he asked the *Dutch* their Reasons for seizing their Country. A Conference was held afterwards betwixt both Nations; but it broke up without Success, and the War was renew'd on both Sides for almost a Year, wherein the Barbarians did nothing but kill and plunder, till at last 'twas terminated by the following Accident: Two *Hottentots*, Prisoners in *Robin Island*, walking one Night along the Shore, found a Boat with two Oars, which was abandon'd, because it was old and leaky. However, they exposed their Lives for Liberty, and venturing on board, they had such a good Wind, that they soon reach'd the Habitations of the *Gorachouquas*. Some Time after one of them, with the Chief of the *Gorachouquas*, and 100 other *Caffres*, all disarm'd, and driving 13 fat Beasts before them, came to offer their Friendship to the *Dutch*, and yielded them all the Lands for 3 Leagues round the Fort, on Condition that they would till no farther. The *Dutch* gladly accepted the Proposal, admitted the Negroes into the Fort, and regal'd them with Bread, Tobacco, and Brandy. As soon as this was known abroad, the *Caffres* crowded to the Castle, to the Number of 2 or 300 Men, Women and Children, and they were follow'd by the *Goringhaiquas*, with their Leader at their Head, desiring to be included in the Treaty. They filled the Fort so full, that there was no Room to turn. The Governor order'd a Tun of Brandy to be set in the Hall, where Young and Old of both Sexes drank their Fill. When they were about half drunk, 2 or 300 Rolls of Tobacco and Bread were thrown into the Middle of the Room, for which the People scrambled. When they were thorow drunk, the Men danc'd and leap'd, and the Women

fung and clap'd their Hands, and both Sexes gave terrible Shouts, such as they are wont to scare away Wild-Beasts with. To crown the Feast, Presents were made to the Leaders of some Grains of red Coral Sticks and Plates of Copper, and Rolls of Tobacco to the rest: After which they went away content.

We come now to the particular Geography of this Part of the Coast, which is full of nothing but Mountains, Capes, Bays, and Roads, because the Negroes, as we said before, have no fix'd Habitations.

The chief are, 1. The Bay of *Saldanha* or *Soldania*, which is often visited by *English* Ships. *Moll* and the *Sansons* place it in S. Lat. $33\frac{1}{2}$. but they differ in the Long. which the former makes 35. and the latter 43. Captain *Davis* places it in Lat. 34. 10 Leag. from the Cape of *Good Hope*. He says, here are three good Rivers, and that in his Time the Natives were subject to the Great King of *Monomotapa*, and their only Weapons were Wooden Darts. They soon take an Affront, and are sure to revenge it; and he says, that one of the *Dutch* having disgusted them, they alarmed the Country by great Fires upon the Mountains, came down from the Hills in vast Multitudes with Cattle, on Pretence of Trade; and while the *Dutch* were viewing their Bargains, they attacked them on a sudden, and threw in their Darts so thick, that of the *Dutch* 13 fell on the Spot, and the rest took Flight. He adds, that 'tis a plentiful and pleasant Country both for Soil and Air, which cures most Sea-Diseases, and abounds with Mint, Calamint, Plantane, Ribwort, Trefoil, Scabious, and other useful Plants. The Plains and Valleys are water'd with wholesome Streams, which rise from the neighbouring Mountains. The champion Grounds are cover'd with Cattle, and the Forrests fill'd with Game, viz. Deer, Antelopes, Foxes, Hares, and Coneys. There's also Ostriches, Cranes, Herons, and Pelicans, besides abundance of other Wild and Tame Fowls. Admiral *Lancaster* says, there's a small Island in the Mouth of the Bay full of Seals and Penguins. Sir *Henry Middleton*, who was here in 1610, says, the Natives were not so forward to part with their Cattle for old Iron as formerly, when they would sell a fat Ox, or two or three good Sheep, for an Iron

Ring or a few Hob-Nails; but were much fonder of Copper-Plates of 3, 4, or 6 Inches square. He places this Bay 14 Leagues N. N. E. from the Cape of *Good Hope*, and 10 N. by W. from Cape *Falso*; both which are plainly to be seen out of the Bay, tho' there's another great Bay on this Side about 3 Leagues from *Soldania*, and all the Ground between is low and marshy. There's good and safe Anchorage in the Bay of *Soldania*, from 4. to 6 Fathom. He directs, that a Ship, when she comes into the Bay, should bring the N. Point of it to bear W. N. W. and by W. thwart of a Ledge of Rocks near the Shore. He observes, that the main Land here, tho' 13 Leagues distant, runs away so much to the W. and by W. that there's little more than three Points open to let in the N. W. Sea, which is always here the most stormy and troublesome. There's good Fishing here for Mulletts, Smelts, Thornbacks, Dogs, little Whales, Limpets, and Muscles. He observ'd a Sort of Tree here that bears a Fruit like a Pine-Apple, with the Seeds all eat out of the Husks by the Birds, and the Husks left upon the Tree. The Husks were more soft and spongy than those of a Pine-Apple. The Tree is low, very spreading at Top, and the Leaves are like our Housleek, but not quite so thick. He adds, that the Soil is very proper for *English* Plants, and thinks they would thrive much better here than at home. Captain *Peyton* says, there's a Town of 100 Houses about 5 Miles from the Bay, and that the People, when he was there, preferred Brass before Copper, and would not exchange their Cattle without Brass Pieces of a Foot square or more, or Basons, Skillets, Scummers, or such like Utensils. *Heylin* says, that Captain *Fitzherbert* took Possession of this Country for King *James I.* who call'd the Ascent to the Table Mountain, *King James's Mount*. But Mr. *Swan* tells us, that in July 1620, his Title was proclaimed here, and his Mount erected by Captain *Shilling*, Commander of the *London*, *Hart*, *Roebuck*, and *Eagle*, four new Ships sent hither by our *East-India* Company. Mr. *John Davis* of *Limehouse* places this Bay in Long. 28. E. and 30 Min. Variation from N. to E. He says, the Land here is all high, and easily known; but is commonly so dark and foggy, that if one come from the

the W. one may see the Breach of the Shore before one can make it. He observes, that the worst Winds for this Road are from the N. W. to the N. E. and that the Variation is 20 Deg. more or less, between this Road and the Coast of *Brasil*, according as one stands to the N. or S. but the more to the S. the more Variation, and to the N. the less. He adds, that the highest Variation of all is in S. Lat. $33\frac{1}{2}$. where it varies 21 Deg. from N. to E. and in Long. $7\frac{1}{2}$. Sir *Thomas Herbert* says, this Bay is so called from *Antonio Soldania*, a *Portuguese*; that 'tis 12 Leagues short of the Cape of *Good Hope*, of a Semicircular Form, and large and safe. *Dapper* places it 27 Leagues N. W. from the Cape. Sir *Thomas Rowe* says, the adjacent Country is separated from the Continent by a deep Gulph on the S. E. and a little River on the E. below *Table Mountain*, and that this Island contains 5 or 600 Persons; but other Travellers say nothing of it. *Nienhoff* tells us of several small Islands before the Bay, where those of the *Dassen* Island have the Liberty to fish, hunt, and fowl, and among the rest catch abundance of Partridges. He observes, that were it not for the Want of fresh Water, 'twould be preferable to *Table Bay*. Sir *William Monson* says, 'tis but 3 Leagues from the Cape, and that our Ships, in their Passage to the E. truck with the Natives for Water and Victuals; for they have the most and largest Oxen in the World. *Ten Rhyne* says, it has a pointed kind of Promontory at both Ends; but that the Islands are not so numerous, nor of the same Situation, as they are represented by the Maps. A vast Ridge of Mountains encompasses the Bay, with many hanging Rocks, well stor'd with Plants. He adds, that there's a great Quantity of Aloes in this Country, and that the Sea near the Shore is almost cover'd with Hadocks. *Rennefort* says, that in 1666, a Pillar was erected on the Shore with the *French King's Arms*, and an Inscription of his and the Founders Names. He adds, that there are 5 Islands in this Bay, two of which are fit for Cultivation; but the others are barren, and only haunted by Cormorants and other Birds, which live upon the Fish and the Slime of the Sea.

2. *Table Bay and Mountain*. Admiral *Lancaster* says, the latter stands over the Bay of

Soldania, and is so called because 'tis flat like a Table. There's nothing like it in all the Coast, and 'tis to be seen above 20 Leagues at Sea, according to *Schouten*. Admiral *Beaulieu* says, it lies in Lat. 34. that the Needle varies here $1\frac{3}{4}$ Deg. N. W. and that the Mountain is 1350 Foot in perpendicular Height from the Sea-Side to the Top. The Air here is very wholesome, and the Bay affords safe Anchorage with from 5 to 8 Fathom Water. There's more Rain and Wind in the Bay than the Shore; for the high Mountains stop the Clouds, which being driven by the Wind, discharge with Hurricanes in the Bay: But *Schouten* observes, that as they come, they go off on a sudden, without disturbing the Sea. When the Admiral was here, which was about 1620, his Men found a small Fortification of Earth, supposed to be built by the *Danes*. There's a Plain near it 10 or 12 Leagues broad, which has a good Soil, and terminates upon the Sea between Cape *Falso* and that of *Good Hope*, and at the Foot of the W. Mountains there are Woods, and large Trees of very hard Wood like Apple-Trees, but without Fruit. There are also pleasant Pastures with Cattle. A River of fresh Water runs along the Plain behind the Mountain, and falls into the Sea at the Bottom of the Bay, where there's a great Conflux of Water. It rises out of those Mountains between the Point of the Cape of *Good Hope* and *Table Bay*, which serve for Boundaries to the W. Sea. It makes several Fens, which run N. along the Sand-Banks, that terminate the Bay as far as the Place called the Conflux, where Barks of 50 or 60 Tun may enter at high Water. From the Foot of the *Table Mountain* to the S. there are a great many Trees, some of which afford Planks a Foot broad, and 18 or 20 Foot long, whose Trunk is strait like that of a Pear-Tree, their Leaves whitish and small, the Bark two Inches thick and reddish, the Heart of the Wood white and hard, and the whole Tree full of Sap. The Soil produces Sorrel, Fern, Broom, Cabbages, Mustard-Leaves, and other *European* Herbs and Plants. Cape *Falso* may be seen from this Mountain, and the Sea that washes the East-Side on't, which forms a large Bay as far as the Cape, where there are many Rocks, that are dangerous to Ships in a S. Wind.

Upon the Side of the Mountains of Cape Falso, a great River or an Arm of the Sea runs far up into the Country, and the same is observed upon the Inland Side of those of the Cape of Good Hope, upon all which Mountains there are abundance of Goats, Fallow Deer as big as Harts, Partridges, and all Sorts of Fowl; Baboons, Monkeys, Lyons, white Wolves, Foxes, Porcupines, Ostriches, &c.

The Admiral gives this Character of the Inhabitants of Table Bay. They are the most miserable Salvages in the World, for they neither till the Ground or fish, nor so much as venture upon the Sea, since they know not how to make Canoes. They are of a low Stature, especially their Women, and look as meagre as if they were almost starv'd. Their chief Food is white Roots about the Bigness of small Chestnuts, which have a Stalk like a Leek, but narrower, and not indented, that bears a white Flower. They feed heartily upon broil'd Cockle-fish, Whales, or whatever dead Fish they find upon the Shore, tho' putrify'd. They eat the very Skins, Heads, and Entrails, of Sea-Bears and Penguins, and, in short, all manner of stinking Guts and Garbage, after putting them under the Ashes, and squeezing them between two Stones. The first thing they do when they meet an *European*, is to shew their Stomach, which they shrink in, and so make themselves hollow-breasted. They have frequent Wars with one another, which he supposes are upon Account of their Cattle. They cover their Privities with a Sheep's Tail, and wear the Skin of Sheep or some other Animal over one Shoulder like a Scarf. The better Sort wear dry'd Tripe about their Necks, with a little Knife hanging to it shap'd like a Lance in a Wooden Sheath. They cut off one of their Testicles at 10 or 12 Years of Age, which our Author supposes is to qualify themselves for running, because they outdo most in that Exercise; but *Ovington* thinks 'tis to restrain Propagation, because if they get more Children than they can keep, they murder them. Some hang about their Necks a thin Copper Plate a Hand long, and 4 or 5 Inches broad. Some have Bracelets of Copper or Iron, with a Hole in the Middle; and those who seem to have most Command, have commonly a Stick in their

Hands, with a Fox's Tail at one End. They marry, but have no Religion. They are great Dancers, and their common Salutation to *Europeans* is dancing to a Song, which from the Beginning to the End is nothing but *Hautitou*. When they come to the *Europeans* Tents, they hide their Bows and Quivers under Bushes. They are apt to steal Iron or Copper, but don't value Linen or Apparel. They have frizzled Hair, but wear no Ornaments in it like the Negroes of *Guinea*. They have no Sheds, but lie with their Families all Night among the Bushes, up to the Bellies in Sand, under Skins stretched like an Umbrella upon two Sticks laid across, with one in the Middle to fasten it to the Ground. He says, that there's abundance of Penguins, Sea-Bears, Rats, Adders, Camelions, and Lizards, about the neighbouring Rocks and Islands. He adds to the Description we gave a little before of the Penguins, that they have no Wings, but two broad Paws, with which they walk upright, and dig the Ground to make their Nests, a white Belly, a black Back, a thick Head, and a Bill like a Raven's. In the Morning they repair to the Sea, where they swim and feed upon Fish, and return at Night to their Nests. They have not the Taste of Flesh, and our Author takes 'em for feather'd Fish. *Nienhoff* says, they have short Legs; and *Beaulieu*, that the Sea-Bears bleat like Sheep. Some are large, and have a Skin as thick as a Wolf's, with very soft Hair. They have two Paws before, and two Fins behind, cannot stay long under Water without taking the Air, live upon the Fish, and in the Night retire to the Rocks. He adds, that both the Bears and Penguins tast rank of the Oil of Fish.

To return to Table Bay, *Nieuhoff* says, it has a sandy Bottom, and that the Shore here all along is very rocky. There's Plenty of good fresh Water. The Top of the Mountain is often cover'd with small Clouds. There's such abundance of Fish here, especially Mulletts, that his Company pull'd up as many at one Draught as would load a Sloop. When he was here, the Fields were cover'd with white Lillies and Tulips; but few of the Ships Crews went ashore, because Arack, Brandy, and Water-Melons, were excessive dear. The Bay is about 4 Leagues in Compass, *Dapper* says 6, so that

that a Fleet of Ships may safely go in or out with any Wind, except the N. W. The Mountain is two Leagues high, but small in Circumference, and therefore of steep and difficult Access. 'Tis divided by a vast Cliff from another called the *Devil's Mountain*. It has no Grass or Trees towards the Sea, but on the Land-Side fine Woods, with tall streight Trees fit for Building, and towards the Fort there are abundance of lesser Trees for Fuel. Among the rest, there's Store of wild Almond-Trees, with bitter Fruit, which the *Hottentots* say is poisonous, and abundance of wild tall Pine-Trees, that bear nothing but a Husk. *William Ten Rhyn* of *Deventry*, Physician in Ordinary and Member of the Council of Justice to the *Dutch East-India Company*, who made a Voyage to these Parts in 1673, says, the *Table Mountain* is 5 Leagues in Height, and serves for a Guide to the Mountaineers of those Parts. It yields abundance of the Shrubs called *Laky Jalnitre*, whose Roots grow cross-wise like Net-work, and extend in two Branches to the Foot of the Mountain. He adds, that that called the *Devil's Mountain* is commonly all over stormy, while the Weather is fair in the adjacent Country. *Schouten* places the Bay in Lat. 24. which we impute rather to a Mistake of the Press, than suppose he could wilfully differ so much from all Geographers and Travelers, who set it 10 Degrees farther S. He adds, that the *Dutch* trade here with the *Hottentots* in Copper, Pewter, Glass Ware, Tobacco, &c. in Exchange for the Cattle which those People steal from their Neighbours at the Bay of *Soldania*, and in the South Parts of *Monomotapa*. He and two of his Companions ascended the Mountain in 1658 by a very narrow Path, which terminates about half-way. On one Side it was all over craggy, with a Valley underneath, and on the other Side a large Brook run down, which afforded Water for the Wild-Beasts at the Bottom. About the Middle there was a Passage 4 Foot broad, thro' which they were forced to climb by the Grass, and the Rocks were so close, that 'twas hard to find a Passage between them. In some Places there was Plenty of Grass, sweet Flowers, and green Herbs. There were some Pieces of Rock as big as Houses, which hung over others with scarce

any visible Foundation, but seem'd rather to be cleft from others, and look'd as if they were falling. In 7 Hours time they reach'd to the Top of the *Table Mountain*, on which they din'd. 'Tis not above 6 or 7 Foot square, and has some Outcasts like Walls jutting out in a Building, with Precipices underneath. 'Tis pav'd as it were with a Rock, and in some of the Holes they found Water, which he supposes distill'd from the thick Clouds, that commonly cover all the upper Half of the Mountain; but when they were there, the Weather was clear, so that they took a View of the neighbouring Country. They could scarce discern the Ships in the Bay; the *Dutch Fort* look'd like a Point. They were not able to distinguish the Houses, Gardens, and Fields, adjoining to it. In short, nothing appear'd to them of any Bulk but the Top of *Lyons Mountain*; for they could not discover the Plains in the Middle, and the high Mountains N. of the Cape look'd as if they were no more than 40 Paces distant. That Side of the Mountain next the Bay is as bare and strait as a Wall, and it seem'd to incline so much to the plain Side, as if it was ready to fall. Very near the Top there were great even Spaces like little Plains, with small Shrubs and good Grass, which was very high and flourishing, tho' so much expos'd to the Wind. They saw no Lakes or Fish-Ponds there, as some have maintain'd. They slid down upon their Backs, it was so steep, and had like to have lost their Way among the Nettles, Caverns, Marshes, Rocks, and Bushes. *Rennesfort* says, this Mountain is 4 Leagues in Diameter; and *Dapper*, that 'tis an Hour's Journey from the Shore, and that on the S. Side on't there's that called the *Valley of Wood*, because 'tis cover'd with Shrubs and Thickets. He adds, that on the E. Side on't there are some Lakes, with Rushes and Bushes, where there's abundance of Geese, Drakes, Teal, and Snipes.

3. The Cape of *Good Hope*, the most South Point of *Africa*. *Dr. Harris* says, that 'twas first discover'd about 1487 by *Barth. Diaz* or *Dyos*, a Portuguese Captain, in the Reign of *John II. King of Portugal*, who sent him to these Parts in quest of *Prester John*, the Great Emperor of *Ethiopia*. *Heylin* says, the Captain was also called *Vasco de Gama*,
and

and that he did not discover it till 1497 or 1498, according to the *Sansons* and *Ten Rhyne*. *Heylin* adds, that the Discovery was first design'd to be made in 1484; but the *Portuguese* spent much Time in procuring from the Pope a Grant of all the Lands and Trade they should find; and when they began, 'twas some Years before they reach'd the Cape. Sir *William Monson* differs from them all, and says, that the Cape, with 150 Leagues farther E. was found by the same Man in 1459. But *Ovington*, who makes them two different Persons, tells us, that *Barth. Diaz* first discover'd it in 1487, under the Reign of *John II.* and *Vasco de Gama* in 1497, under King *Emanuel* of *Portugal*.

Heylin and *Harris* agree, that *Barth.* called it *Tormento* or *Tormentosa*, in Remembrance of the Storms he met with here; and *Mandelsloe*, that King *John* named it the Cape of *Good Hope* in 1493, because, after the *Portuguese* had doubled it, they were in Hopes of a prosperous Voyage, or (as some think) because it was the utmost Bound of their Hopes; but *Du Plessis* says, they did not double it till 1498. *Morden* tells us, that some call it the *Lyon of the Sea*, and others the *Head of Africa*. *Columbus*, who wrote the Life of the Admiral his Father, says, that its proper Name at first was *Age-Singue*.

Moll places it in S. Lat. $34\frac{1}{2}$. and in the same Deg. of Long. The *Sansons* agree in the Lat. but make the Long. $44\frac{1}{2}$. *Pigafetta* places it 1600 Leagues from the Cape of *Malacca*, and the *Portuguese* Sea-Charts 2000 Leagues from *Java*; but Mr. *Candish*, who sail'd it in 9 Weeks, makes it no more than 1850, and 40 or 50 W. and by S. from Cape *Falso*. *Herbert* places it in Lat. 34. 3. Long. 28. from the Meridian of the *Lizard*, and 48 from the *Azores*; 6600 *English* Miles from the Land's-End in *Cornwall*, 5550 from the *Greater Java*, 5400 from *Surat*, and 1800 N. W. from *St. Helena*. *Mandelsloe* sets it in Lat. 36. and *Dapper* 30 Leagues W. from Cape *Aguilhas*, and but 8 or 9 from Cape *Falso*. *Ten Rhyne* places it Long. 39. 25. from *Gibraltar*, and *Luyts* almost in the Middle between *England* and the *East-Indies*, 520 *Spanish* Leagues from the Island of *St. Helena*. *Dampier* agrees with *Moll*; but Captain *Rogers*, who made a Voyage hither in 1710, places it in Lat. $34\frac{1}{4}$.

and Long. 17. from the Meridian of *London*.

Mr. *Davis* of *Limehouse*, who made five Voyages to the *East Indies*, says, the Variation here is 25 Minutes from N. to E. but Mr. *Ovington* observes, it alters much; for in 1670, it vary'd but 6; and in 1689, 11 Deg.

Nieuhoff, who was at this Cape in 1653, says, it jets out into the Sea like a *Demy-Island*, and is join'd on the N. Side to the Continent by a strait Neck of Land, with a Bay on each Side convenient for Anchorage. Mr. *Ovington* says, 'tis very safe, except in June, about their Mid-winter, when the N. W. Winds are sometimes so violent, that the Ships cannot ride out against them. However, here are great Improvements and Accommodations for the Inhabitants and Seamen. The Sailors are well furnish'd with fresh Water and Provisions, and in the Bay there's great Store of Fish pickled and put in Barrels, and sent home instead of pickled Herrings. There's such a Watering-place as is scarce to be matched in the World; for clear Water is convey'd from the Mountains in narrow Channels to the Shore, from whence 'tis carried in Leaden Pipes above 40 Foot into the Sea, and there rais'd so high above its Surface, that the Ships Long-Boats can row under the Pipes, and fill their Vessels with Ease.

Nieuhoff says, no Place in the World is more subject to Storms than the Cape, for two or three different Winds blow sometimes in different Parts of the Bay, which *Ten Rhyne* attributes to the different Position of the neighbouring Mountains, in respect to the several Parts of the Harbour. For this Reason *Ovington* says, Sailors us'd formerly to call it the *Lyon of the Ocean*, or the *Tempestuous Cape*, and would never touch upon it but when constrained by Necessity. He observes, that for the same Reason some conjecture this was the Place which *Ptolemy* and *Hanno* of *Carthage* called the *Chariot of the Gods*; and adds, that at this Day, if the *Indie* Ships are detained beyond their proper Season of returning, they sometimes beat the Ocean for a Week or Fortnight together, and are forced after all to retire to the Island *Mauritius* till the Winter is past. Captain *Rogers* says, that hard Flaws of Wind frequently blow very fresh off of *Table-Land*, betwixt E. S. E. and S. E.

Ten Rhyne says, the Cold here is not intense, nor are the Rivers froze, contrary to *Dapper*, and that they have very seldom any Hail, nor more than a white Frost in the greatest Extremity of Winter. They have but two Seasons here, as well as all over the *Indies*. Their Summer begins in *October*, and is continually dry, as the Winter is always rainy; but both are stormy.

Dapper says, the Coast between this and *Cape Aguilhas* is watered with three Rivers, viz. the *Fresh River*, the *Salt River*, and *Rio Jaquelina*, which run all three into the Ocean. The *Fresh River* is a little Brook which runs from the Foot of *Table Mountain*, and is not above Knee deep. *Pigafetta* says, it rises from the W. Side of the *Lake Gale*, between the Mountains of the *Moon*, and that it runs into the Sea near *Cape Falso*: But it appears by the common Maps of *Africa*, that the River which rises at this Lake is called *Camissa*, whose Mouth is more to the E. and nearer the Land of *Natal*. In 1644, the *Dutch* began a Fort over against the River, to hinder others from watering there, but did not finish it. The Mouth of the *Salt River* lies two Miles E. from the *Fresh*, and is so called, because in the hot and dry Season it forms Lumps of white Salt as high as a Man can reach, and enough to load a Ship. Half a League from the Coast, a little Brook rises out of the Sand, and falls into this River; and 9 or 10 Leagues higher, it receives three other Rivers of fresh Water. The Mouth of *Rio de Jaquelina* lies E. from *Table Bay*, half a League farther. *Ten Rhyne* says, these other Rivers rise out of the adjacent Mountains: 1. The *Butter River*; 2. The *Kaffernals River*; 3. The *Mountain River*; 4. The *Endless River*, so called because its Extent is not known; 5. The *Broad River*, very pleasant, because of the many Trees on its Banks, but very shallow; and, 6. The *Fenny River*; all which are clear, sweet, and wholesome, their Springs being purify'd by the Heat of the Climate.

Herbert says, their Rivers abound with Variety of Fish, such as Trouts, Pike, Pickerel, Tench, Eels, Crabs, Lobsters, Rock-fish, Cockles, Muscles, Lympit, and Tortoises, which are small, but curiously coloured; good Oysters, Thornbacks, Gudgeons, &c. which are taken at the Flood in the fresh

Water. *Nienhoff* says, there's a fine Sort of Fish here, in Taste like our Cod, and called the *Hottentots Fish*, because they are very dextrous in taking them, or rather because they delight in it, according to *Ten Rhyne*, who says, 'tis a Sort of Carp, and covered all over with thick Scales. There's the Fish too called *Torpedo* by the *Latins*, because they say, when 'tis entangled, it sends forth a Juice which seizes the Fishermen with a Cramp in all their Limbs. *Ten Rhyne* adds, there's another Fish called *Guaperuas* by the *Brasilians*, together with Lampreys, Salmons, Mulletts, Mussels, Giltheads, and another kind of Carp different from the former, which is a very delicious Fish, called *Stone-Broeklem*. There are also Bristers, Wrinkles, Cuttles, a certain Fish called the *Swimmerly*, *Parepus* and *Slautilus* by *Pliny*, and small Creatures which stick to the Rocks very close with their Feet, and in the Excretion of their Fibres resemble our Roses, whence the *Dutch* call them *Klipperfen* or *Rock-roses*.

Herbert tells us, the adjacent Soil is always covered with Grass, Flowers, and Herbs, such as Agrimony, Betony, Mint, Calamint, Scabious, Spinage, Thyme, Carduus Benedictus, Coloquintida, &c. *Ten Rhyne* says, it produces more Plants than any thing else, particularly the *Kali*, (so much esteemed by the Ancients) which grows in great Plenty near the Shore, and Broom-heath of several Sorts in the Valleys, with Sea-green, Dog Onion, and Daffadils, with Heads as big as a Man's, which in the Night smell like Stork-Bill. There's a very fragrant Tree on the Mountains with hard Wood, which the *Dutch* therefore call Iron-Wood; but 'tis only used for Fuel. There are also whole Woods of Shrubs, Aloes, and good Scammony, with *Indian Night-Shade*, and delicious Melons in their Gardens, which are very good Refreshment to Mariners. They have few Palm-Trees, and those too without any Fruit: But our Author observes, that the Lower Palm-Tree and the Coco-Tree never blossom without the Tropicks, and that they thrive best, and their Fruits prove either lesser or bigger, as they are nearer or farther from the Equinox. *Herbert* says, they have Marchasites and Minerals in their Mountains; but they are not very common. He adds to their other

other Beasts, mentioned P. 576, large Cows with Bunch'd Backs, Sheep with long Ears like Hounds, Antelopes, Baboons of extraordinary Sizes and Colours, Panthers, Pard, Zebrae or Py'd-Horses, Camels, and Unicorns. *Nieuhoff* says, their Oxen are very fat and thick set, and that the Horns of some are bent back close to the Neck. They are generally a Foot and a half taller than the *Dutch* Oxen. Their Sea-Cows are bigger than an *European* Ox, and have no Horns, but long Ears and round Eyes, with a short Tail, and thick Legs and Feet. They have no Hair upon their Bodies, but prodigious large Teeth. They are seldom to be seen, because when they steal ashore, they graze in the Marshes near the Lakes, where they dive under Water as often as they please. Their Flesh is like other Beef, but coarser, and when salted, keeps as well as *Dutch* Beef. He adds, that they have Porcupines and Rockdoes; that their Sheep have Hair like our Goats, and that there's a Wild-Beast like an Elephant, with two Horns on the Top of the Nose, a Tail like that of an Elephant, and a Bush of black Hair on the Head, where it joins to the Neck, with two streight round Horns, and short Mouse-colour'd Hair over all the Body. He observes, that their Beasts of Prey are seldom to be met with near the Sea-Shore, because the Inhabitants have a Reward for every one they kill. *Ten Rhyne* says, they have Elks, Hedgehogs, Lynces, Badgers, Otters, Goats, and Evecks, some finely spotted, and others of an Ash Colour. There's also a few of the Creatures which the *Dutch* call Pismire-Eaters, but not so big as those of *Brasil*.

Herbert adds to their Birds in P. 577, Hens, Geese, Turkeys, Thrushes, Pintado's, Vultures, Eagles, and black Cormorants, which are as big as a Goose, and after Battles smell the Carcasses many Miles. *Nieuhoff* says, they have Birds called *Faysons* and *Gavoytoyns*, Rock-Ducks with yellow Necks, Teal, Wood and Water Snipes, a Sort of Demi-Ducks, Ravens, blue, white, and black Cranes. The white ones are pretty large, the black ones about as big as Sea-Gulls, and they live chiefly in the Marshes. There's also a Sort of Reed-Bird, with red Necks and Legs, and Birds like our Geese, which lay Eggs without Yelk: They are so

full, and tast so much like Fish, that they are not eatable. There's another Sort of Geese less than ours, with grey Spots all over their Bodies; but their Legs are larger, and they are not to be tamed, because they kill any other Bird that comes within their Reach. He adds, that their Flamingo's are of a pale Red, but some of their Feathers are half white and half black, and the uppermost are of a rosy Colour. *Ten Rhyne* says, they have Hens, Bittorns, *Guinea* Cocks and Hens, Felfares, Didappers, Fen-Ducks, Pochards, red and grey Partridges, Lapwings, Nightingales, Owls, Martinets, Swallows of various Colours, and the *Colybrides*, described by *Pliny*. They are like Pelicans, with divers Feathers standing up an End, and suck a certain knotted Plant.

The same Author says, they have innumerable Insects, particularly *Spanish* Flies, Butterflies, Glow-Worms, several Sorts of Locusts, Corn-Worms of divers Colours, Spiders as big as a Man's Fist, with many Legs, and Pismires. They have Vipers as large again as those of *France*, Salamanders, Scorpions, long Earwigs, Lizards, and Toads three times bigger than ours, with two long Feet trailing behind like Otters, which are produc'd from a certain Sea-fish like a Toad, full of Prickles, with long Feet join'd to the Outside of the Belly. In fine, here are so many Beasts and Insects of different Kinds, that our Author favours the Opinion of *Aristotle*, That whereas *Asia* produces the fiercest, and *Europe* the strongest Beasts, *Africa* has the most various Kinds, which he ascribes to the promiscuous Copulation of the Wild-Beasts which flock out of the Deserts in great Numbers to the Rivers for fresh Water.

Notwithstanding the Signs already mentioned, by which Mariners know their Approach to this Cape, *Dampier* observes, that the best Rule used by *English* Seamen is to mind the Variation of the Compass when they come near the Cape, by taking the Sun's Amplitude Morning and Evening on the Azimuth, by which they know their Situation from the Cape, and can shape their Course right without making Land, contrary to the *Dutch*, who being settled here, do always touch at the Cape in their *East-India* Voyages both going and coming.

He

He adds, that there's good Sounding off the Cape 50 or 60 Leagues at Sea to the S.

We come next to give an Account of the *Dutch* Fort and Town here. *Dapper* says, the Fort stands near the *Table Bay*, at the Foot of the *Table Mountain*; that 'tis four-square, and furnished with Cannon and a Garrison, strong enough to defend it against a Million of *Caffres*. It belongs to the *Dutch West India* Company, who appoint the Governor, Counsellors, and Serjeant-Major, that takes Care of the Militia. *Du Plessis* says, the *Dutch* settled here in 1651, (and *Luyts* in 1650) after having purchas'd about a League of Land of one of the petty Kings for some Brandy and Tobacco. Then they only built a Wooden Fort, and garrison'd it with 100 Men, and 12 or 15 Cannon; but in 1680, they built a Free-stone Fort with 5 Bastions, and furnish'd it with above 60 Pieces of Artillery. *Nieuhoff* says, it stands on the Banks of the *Fresh River*, and that there's a small Redoubt on those of the *Salt River*. *Rennefort*, who was here in 1666, tells us, that the Bastions are strengthened with Fraises and Palisadoes, and encompassed with Ditches full of the Water of the Sea; that the Front is a Wall of Free-stone at the Bottom, and of Brick at the Top, with 6 Cannon which command the Road, besides 26 others; and that it had a Garrison of 400 Men, besides the Governor and chief Factor, with about 20 indifferent Houses round it, inhabited by the *Dutch*. *Lockyer* says, it stands about a Musket-shot from the Town, but is not very strong, because 'tis commanded by a rising Ground under the *Table Land*. *Dapper* says, there's a Garden belonging to it of about 15 Acres of Ground, well planted with Flowers and Fruit-Trees, and that on the other Side of the *Table Mountain* the Governor has an Orchard twice as big. *Du Plessis* tells us, the Garden has 4 Rows of Trees, and that 'tis stock'd with the choicest Plants in the World. *Schouten* says, it produces Water Melons, Radishes, Cabbages, Parsneps, Turneps, Sallads, with other Fruits and Refreshments for Mariners; and *Rennefort*, that the Company has a fine House here, well built, and richly furnish'd; that 'tis two Leagues from the Fort by Land; and that the Garden yields all Sorts of Herbs and Pulse. In his Time there were two Olive-

Trees well hung with Fruit, and fine Pippins, Boon-Christian Pears, Quinces, Pomegranates, Oranges, Nuts, Chesnuts, besides two inclosed Acres of Vines, whose Wine tastes like Rhenish. *Ten Rhyne* says, here are whole Walks of Lemon and Citron Trees, parted by Rosemary and Lawrel Hedges very even, and as high as most of our Trees, and that 'tis water'd by a pleasant Brook, which rises at the Foot of the neighbouring Mountain, and is cut into Channels. *Dampier* says, the House and Garden is wall'd in with a high Stone Wall; that the latter is full of fine Gravel Walks and Arbors; that the Fruit-Trees, Roots and Herbs, are hedg'd in each by themselves in very fine Order; and that there's a Liberty for all Strangers to walk in it. *Ovington* praises it too for its fine Alleys of Cypress, and says, 'tis cut out upon a rising Hill, and that the Walks are kept so clean, that scarce a Leaf is to be seen upon the Ground in the Winter. Most of their Fruit ripens twice a Year, and many Trees are verdant all the Year. Thirty three Negro Slaves, besides *Europeans*, are daily employ'd in looking after it, and the *French* Jesuits that made a Voyage to *Siam* own'd, that 'twas equal, if not superior, to the chief Gardens in *France*. But Mr. *Lockyer*, who was here in 1706, says, 'twas then declining, most of the Hedges being run into Trees above 20 Foot high, so that they were very thin near the Ground: Besides, the Wall'd Ponds are in many Places fallen in, and above half full of Mud and Filth. He says, the Walks are long, and in pretty good Order; but there are no fine Knots nor Devices, and but few Flowers. 'Tis fenced on one Side with a Ditch, and there is a Slave-house at the End towards the Town, which is kept in a better Manner than that towards the *Table Land*, where the Walks are over-run with Weeds, and the Hedges very much neglected. He adds, that the Company are very careful of their Slaves; and that the Negro Women are so fond of white Children, that they would willingly have no other, so that the Breed is highly improved, many of them being as white as *Europeans*.

Du Plessis says, the Town or Village is a Musket-shot from the Fort, and contains 200 neat Stone-Houses, built after the *Dutch*

Fashion. *Schouten* says, 'twas in a very thriving Condition when he was here. *Dampier* tells us, the Stone is taken out of a Quarry in the Neighbourhood; but that there were not above 60 Houses in his Time, and those low, and only three of them that sold strong Liquors, one for Wine, another for Beer and Mum, and another for Brandy and Tobacco, all very dear. *Lockyer* says, the Town is open on all Sides, with regular Streets, and Houses of one or two Stories; and that the Church and Hospital are the only publick Buildings here of Note, the former being neat, and large enough for all the Inhabitants, and the latter able to hold 2 or 300 sick Persons; but he observes, that the Country is so healthful, that there's seldom above half a Dozen in it at a time. They have large Store-houses for the Rigging of Ships, with Cranes, &c. and *Hottentots* attend on the Wooden Bridge, over which the Water is convey'd from the *Table Land* into the Sea, to carry Parcels to the Town, and for other Service, which he says they do very honestly and carefully. *Captain Cook* says, the Town formerly belong'd to the *English*. *Dapper* tells us, that some *Dutch* Husbandmen live in the Neighbourhood of the Fort, under the Protection of the Governor, to whom they give Part of their Harvest. *Rennefort* says, there are *Dutch* Settlements from the Company's House to the Sea; and *Dampier*, that there are several small Gardens and Vineyards beyond the Company's Garden toward the Mountains, which belong to private Men; but that there are no other Settlements within 20 Miles. *Ovington* says, the *Dutch* have extended their Plantations above 75 *English* Miles in the Country, and that there's still a vast Space of untill'd Land before them. *Schouten* says, there's very good Pasture, to which the *Dutch* Peasants drive out their Cattle in the Morning, and bring them home at Night to their Stalls, because of the Wild-Beasts. He adds, that most of them live very poorly, especially those that are far in the Country, and that they cultivate the Ground every Day more and more. *Du Plessis* says, the *Dutch* have several Settlements in a fine Plain of near 10 Leagues beyond a neighbouring Mountain, which is full of Apes, and that they furnish Refreshments enough for above 150 Ships that ar-

rive there Yearly, of which most are *Dutch*. *Nieuhoff* says, they have several fine Gardens all along the River behind the Fort, full of Cabbages, &c. In short, the *Dutch* have improved this Cape to a wonderful Degree of Advantage and Conveniency, as is confessed by all modern Travellers, particularly our own Countryman Mr. *Ovington*, who was here in 1693, and gives such an elegant Account of this Matter, that we thought fit to repeat it in his own Words, as follows:

' The Industry of the *Hollanders* (says he) ' has enlarged their Borders so far upon the ' main Land of this delightful fertile Cape, ' that were they ever put to those Straits ' as to be forced to decamp and leave their ' native Country, here they might fix in a ' Soil of so much more desirable Habitation, ' that they might thank the Fates ' that caused the Change, and bless the Authors of their Misery. Here they might ' live without any Danger of the Seas incroaching upon their Banks, to threaten ' continually a second Deluge, and free ' from all Dread of Invasion from any ' neighbouring Land Tyrant; and might ' spread themselves over spacious Plains, ' which would afford them Work sufficient ' for all their Husbandry, and Pastures pleasant and large enough for all their Cattle. ' And because nothing can please these ' People so much as Trade and Traffick, ' therefore here they might find convenient ' Harbours for their Ships, by which they ' might keep up the Spirit of Merchandizing, and establish their Commerce to the ' *Indies* and other Parts of the World. The ' Refugees of *France*, who are received here ' with the same Privilege the *Dutch* enjoy, ' acknowledge the Happiness of their Transportation; and boast that their Misfortunes are turned into their Felicity, since ' they are bless'd here with peaceable Dwellings and kind Accommodations, who had ' not formerly where in Safety to lay their ' Heads.

' Such as come hither to cultivate the ' Land for their own Livelihood, and the ' Benefit of the Grand Proprietors, are allowed their Transportation from *Holland* ' *Gratis*. After their Arrival, they are invited to range and view the Country, ' and

and survey such Parts as lie wild and un-manur'd, where they may chuse such a Portion as they fancy they are able to stock and manure, and will yield them a commodious Settlement for their Families and their Posterity, without any Rent or other Acknowledgment to the *Dutch East-India Company*, but the Sale of their Goods to the Governor, and at his Price. This by the way presses hard upon the Tenants, and keeps them under by running the chief Profits of what they possess into the Company's Hands. The Governor and Council agree with the Countryman for his Goods and Cattle at a very low Rate, and sell them again to the Ships that put in there as dear as they please, because all Men are restrained from vending any Commodities to Strangers without the Council's Leave. But however, the industrious Planters want neither Plenty of Wine for their Tables, nor Variety of Tame and Wild Fowls for their ordinary Entertainments, of which they have often rather too much Store than any Scarcity, because the Company has no Occasion for them, and therefore they lie dead upon their Hands. Some upon this Account quit the Place, and very few of any Substance but may sooner increase their Goods than their Treasure.

Those whose Poverty renders them unable to stock their Land, the Kindness of the Governor provides with Necessaries, till their Abilities can reach a Payment, which has mightily increased the Number of Inhabitants within a few Years. For whereas about 9 Years since, they could scarce reckon above 4 or 500 Planters, they can now number almost as many Thousands, abundance of whom were sent hither by the *French Persecution*, who are much delighted with the Convenience of their Dwelling.

The same Author says, the Governor lives in great Grandeur: His Table is well furnished with the choicest *European, Asian, and African Wines*, and all other Rarities that the Country affords. His Dishes and Plates are all of massy Silver, and before the Departure of their Fleets, he invites the *Dutch Commanders* to a publick Feast. He adds, that to prevent the Inhabitants

from any Surprizal, the Governor took necessary Attendance and Provisions with him, and travelled by Compass for several Weeks over vast untill'd Lands, to find its Northerly Bounds and Situation, till he came to inaccessible Mountains, which he thought a sufficient Bulwark on the Land-Side. We come next to the *Dutch Government and Customs*.

Mr. *Lockyer*, another of our Countrymen, who was here in 1706, says, the Civil Government of the Town is left wholly to the Burghers, where the Company's Interest is not concern'd; but in such Case, the Interest of a private Person must give Way to the Governor and Council, who have Power of Life and Death, according to the Laws of *Holland*. They break Murderers on the Rack, but punish lesser Crimes with Banishment for 99 Years to *Penguin Island*, where they are employed in drawing Stones for Building. Mr. *Ovington* says, the Impositions upon Wine and other Liquors sold by Retail are so high, that tho' there are not above 500 Inhabitants in the Town of the Cape, besides those that are brought in Ships, and come out of the Country, yet the Annual Impost upon *European Beer and Wine* is 4000 Guilders, that upon *Cape Wine* 4100, besides Brandy, Arack, and other distill'd Waters, that pay 20000 Guilders *per Annum* to the Governor for Licences; all which, according to our Accounts, raise between 2 and 3000 *l. Sterling per Annum*, which makes the Vintners exact extravagant Rates from their Guests: For he that drinks Brandy, must pay after the Rate of 10 *s.* a Bottle for it, and the Cape Wine, which yields but 6 *d.* a Quart in the Cask, is Half a Crown in the Tavern. He observes, that their Wines, tho' they are coloured like Rhenish, and pass by that Name in the *Indies*, yet they are harder, less palatable, and more intoxicating. *Lockyer* says, their current Money is the same as in *Holland*.

4. The Mountain of Lyons. Dapper places it a little W. of the Table Mountain, nearer the Sea, and thinks it has its Name from the great Number of Lyons upon it, or from its Form, which is not unlike a Lyon Rampant. Schouten says the former. *Nieuhoff* compares it to a Lyon Dormant. *Mercator* says, 'tis so called from the Noise of the

Winds here, which resembles the Roaring of a Lyon; but *Ten Rhyne* agrees with *Nieuhoff*. *Schouten* says, it yields good Pasture, with Plenty of Herbs and sweet Flowers, but few Trees; that it reaches above the Clouds, but is inaccessible to the Top, because of craggy Rocks; and that there's a green Valley betwixt this and *Table Mountain*, which is full of Goats and Deer. *Nieuhoff* says, that besides Lyons, there are great Numbers of Baboons upon this Mountain, which sometimes throw Stones at those that try to ascend it, and force them down. *Dapper* says, there's another called the *Mountain of Winds* over against this Mountain.

5. *Picos Fragos Mountains*. *Dapper* places them near the *Table Mountain*, and says, the Portuguese Words signify naked craggy Rocks. They are a long Chain of Hills, whose Tops almost touch the Clouds, and are always cover'd with Snow. There's a great rapid River at the Foot of them, which waters the adjacent Country.

6. *Cape Falso*. *Moll* places it about 30 Miles E. beyond that of *Good Hope*. *Mr. Candish* places it E. and a little by N. and says, 'tis very easy to be known by three high Hills over against it, at a little Distance from each other, the highest of which is the middlemost, and the Ground is much lower by the Sea-Side. *Mandelsloe* places it within 7 Leagues of the Cape of *Good Hope*. *Heylin* says, the Portuguese gave it the Name of *Falso*, because they mistook it for the Cape of *Good Hope* in their Return home. *Dapper* places it 8 or 9 Leagues beyond the Cape of *Good Hope*, and compares the Situation of the three Hills here to the Form of a Flower-de-Lys. *Du Plessis* places this Cape 10 Leagues S. from that of *Good Hope*.

7. *Cape Aguilhas* or *Agalhas*, or *Needles*. *Moll* places it about 45 Miles E. from the former. *Harris* calls this the most S. Promontory of *Africa*, and says, that about the Year 1600, there was no Variation; that in 1622, it varied 2 Deg. W. in 1675, 8 Deg. and 1691, 11 Deg. Captain *Davis* places it in Lat. 35. and Captain *Keeling* in 35. 26. *Mr. Davis* of *Limehouse* says, the Compass varies here 30 Min. from N. to W. He observes, that at 7 or 8 Leagues Distance from Land to the E. of this Cape,

there's from 70 to 40 Fathom black sandy Ground for about 100 Leagues; but there's deep ozie Water to the W. of it. *Delaval* says, it shoots 15 Leagues farther into the Sea than the Cape of *Good Hope*, and that 'tis so called, because when a Ship comes before it, there's no Variation of the Compass, but the Needle points directly N. *Mandelsloe* places it 60 Leagues from the Cape of *Good Hope*, and *Dapper* but 30. The latter says, there's a Road near it full of Fish, which runs 25 Leagues out into the main Sea, beginning at the *Fresh River* on the W. and ending at the *Fish Bay* on the E.

Having thus finished the Geography of the S. Coast of *Caffraria*, we shall conclude with a little farther Account of the *Hottentots* from *Nieuhoff*, *Schouten*, *Rennefort*, and *Ten Rhyne*, because they differ from others in many Particulars.

Ten Rhyne says, the Men meet and dance at the Moon-rising, while the Women clap their Hands and sing to them; and that if they happen to see themselves in a Looking-Glass, they are so delighted with their own Shape, that they fall a dancing till they drop down for Weariness. If a Woman bears Twins, a Male and Female, they kill the latter. The Women cut off as many Joints of their Fingers as they have had Husbands, and begin with the first Joint of the little Finger. They allow Polygamy. They revenge Murder by pursuing the Criminals, beating them with Clubs, killing them with Javelins, and sometimes exercising their Cruelties upon their dead Bodies. They compound for Adultery and Theft by Retaliation. If a Lad falls sick, they feast upon a fat Ox, hang the Paunch and Guts about his Neck till they rot off, and then they are devour'd by some old Man. If their Women have an easy Labour, they skilfully manage all the natural Ligaments; but if they are afflicted with hard Labour, they use a certain Herb to expel the Fruit, which they pretend they are forbid to discover. Their Time of Lying in is soon over, and they bring up their Infants very coarsely; for after they have kept them two or three Weeks at home without Swathing-Clouts, they tie them to their Backs, teach them to smook Tobacco at 4 Months of Age,

Age, in 4 Months more put them upon their Feet, and then 'tis said they are coated. At 8 or 9 Years of Age, they learn the Use of Arms, by shooting a Piece of Meat put by their Parents on a Post, from whence they must hit it off or starve. They are luxurious by Nature, but Poverty forces them to be temperate; for which Reason they have no Varieties at their Tables. Instead of Bread, they use Sword-Grass, which the Women dig out of the Fens; for they find Provision, as well as look after the House, Cattle, &c. They also make much use of the Leaves of Sea-green of different Kinds, which the *Dutch* call Wild Figs. Their Butter is good, and made of the Milk of Sheep as well as Cows. They flea a Bird, and turning the Skin with the Feathers upward, tie it to a Stick or Cane, and stir the Milk with it, till the serous is separated from the oily Part. They also eat the Butter-milk, and sometimes wash their Hands in it. They don't love Cheese, nor know how to make it. They eat no Shell-Fish, nor others which have not Scales; but they delight much in Breems. They are all such Admirers of Tobacco, that tho' they are never so much at Variance, they'll hand about a Pipe to one another without Exception. There's a certain Root here called *Arwa*, or *Lake Stobbin*, so venomous, that it bites and blisters the Tongue. The *Hottentots* separate the pernicious Sulphur by the Fire, which binds the volatile corroding Salt, and so renders it eatable. This Root is much sought after by the *Hedgehogs*. He adds, that both the Kings and People feed upon the dry'd Skins of Beasts, after they have worn them upon their Feet, and sometimes upon Excrements mix'd with other Nastiness. *Du Plessis* says, they eat their own Lice; and *Herbert* tells us, they eat Locusts with Salt, and open the Graves for dead Corps. He adds, that they leave those that are helpless by Age or Sickness to starve upon the Mountains, or be destroy'd by Wild Beasts. They have Drinking-Cups made of Shells gathered on the Shore, or of Tortoise-Shells, after they have eaten the Flesh. They call them *Sirigoes*, and roast them in the Ashes, or exchange them for Tobacco, for want of which they drink fair Water out of their Hands. Sometimes they roast their Meat on a Tile, some-

times under the Ashes, and often eat it raw; and some of the better Sort have Earthen Pots, or Pieces of Trees hollow'd, in which they put their Meat. They are not only lustful and perfidious, but so bloody as to strike their Arrows and other Weapons into the Bodies of their Enemies after they are dead. Their lustful Way of Living weakens them, and makes them old before their Time; yet they cannot be luxurious for want of Necessaries, and live for most Part upon Herbs. They don't allow their Women to eat any Beef or fresh Milk, but only Mutton, and that very sparingly. They are nevertheless very nice in their Palates, and live contented. They are so good natur'd, that if one of their Neighbours lose his Cattle, they stock him again; but they are very much wedded to their own Opinions. They sit like a Child in the Womb, with their Heads bent betwixt their Knees, which they embrace with their Arms. They mourn three Days for the Deceased with terrible Howlings about their Huts. They bury them in a Hole under Ground, and cover it with a Stone. They perform Copulation like Brutes, the Women lying on one Side, somewhat higher than the Men. The Entrance of their Cabbins is arch'd on the Top. The Coverings and Walls are made of *African* Sword-grass Leaves, (the Head of which they use for Bread) very closely twisted together. They dig Holes in their Huts, in which they lie wrapped in Sheep-Skins, in the same Posture as they sit, and the Wives lie in another Hole next to their Husbands. Their Huts are commonly rank'd on the Hills or near the Banks of Rivers, among Trees, in a Sort of Inclosure 5 or 6 Paces from one another, where they keep their Cattle. When they are to change their Habitations, their Captain gives them a Signal by a great Fire. The Women carry all the Household Stuff, &c. in Leathern Bags, and their Huts are loaded upon the Backs of Oxen, which serve to carry their Husbands Baggage, when they go into the Wars. *Ovington* says, their Huts are fashion'd like Bee-hives. *Ten Rhyme* adds, that when they poison their Arms, they put the Point into the Mouth of a Serpent, tie it for fear of falling out, and then to increase the Venom, cut off the Head of the Serpent, under whose Jaws lie the Bladders.

ders which receive the Poison. He observes, that it may be taken without Danger; but if communicated by the Sting of the Creature, 'tis mortal. They take the Opportunity of bad Weather to surprise their Enemies, but fly if they meet them in the open Field when 'tis fair, except they are much superior in Number, when they fall on with terrible Cries like Madmen; but keep out of the Reach of Fire-Arms when they engage with *Europeans*. They employ their Wives on Messages, and if any of them are taken Prisoners, dismiss them without Ransom. Their Leaders or Captains are not distinguished by their Arms, only their Staff has two Knobs, and their Vest is somewhat cleaner than the common Soldiers; but they never go abroad without 5 or 6 old Fellows, who compose their Council of War. *Herbert* says, that when they sit, they put their Hands to their Shoe-Straps, that they may steal while they look you in the Face. *Schouten* says, they revenge Seamen's Affronts by throwing Stones at them, and that they are more civiliz'd farther towards *Monomotapa*. *Nieuhoff* tells us, they marry as many Wives as they please; that as soon as the Maid is betrothed, her Mother cuts off the first Joint of her little Finger, which is ty'd to the Bridegroom's, buries it, and then they kill a Cow for the Wedding Dinner, whose Guts, when dry'd, are put about her Legs, and the green Twigs, which till then distinguished her for a Maid, are taken off. *Ten Rhyne* says, they must have their Captain's Consent after their Parents; and that sometimes all their Subsistence consists only in a Club, an Ox to carry their Hut upon, a Milch Cow, or 10 or 12 Sheep. The richer Sort divorce themselves at Pleasure. They commonly kill 2 or 3 Oxen as well as Sheep for the Marriage Feast. When they have taken off the Skin, they hang up the Flesh a little in the Air, boil it in its own Fat, roast the Guts in its Ashes, and then treat their Friends with it. *Mr. Ovington* says, contrary to the rest, that they disallow Polygamy in all but their Chief, who may entertain 3 Wives at once; that the Wives begin with the little Finger, and proceed to the middle; and that some fond Husbands imitate them, but more out of Humour than Necessity. *Ten*

Rhyne and *Nieuhoff* say, the Women's Privities are so relax'd, that they hang out with Labels like Part of a Man's Yard, of which they are so proud, that when Strangers come to visit them, they take aside their Leathern Apron, and expose them to their View. The latter adds, that if they have any young Children, they carry them in a Bag at their Backs; and the former, that every Village or Plantation has its Leader, who governs without Controul; but the *Esseques* are the only People that are rul'd by a King. He gives this Account of their Way of Trafficking: 'Tis usual for the Governor of the *Dutch* Fort to send a Factor or two, with some Soldiers, furnished with a good Quantity of *Virginia* Tobacco, or the black and worse Sort, (which they esteem most) with some Beads of Coral, Glass or Copper, and *Aquavitæ*, which they purchase for their Cattle and some Panther Skins. Their Way of Exchange is thus: The *Dutch* Merchants offer a Piece of Tobacco of about two Spans in Length for an Ox or a Sheep, and always add a Piece by little and little, without which they would not think themselves obliged to the Bargain. Then they desire a certain Quantity of *Aquavitæ*, the Value of which must be deducted from the Quantity of Tobacco, which they value less by one Fourth. But at the first Meeting, the *Dutch* Factors always present them with a Piece of this Weed, which they seek to retaliate by a Present of Sheep; so that by this Means they sometimes exchange 100 or 200 Oxen at a time, besides Sheep. The *Dutch* Governor sends his Factors only once a Year to the *Esseques*, to make them the more eager after the Tobacco, and they commonly present the Factors with the best Mutton at their Meeting; but the latter conceal their whole Stock, for fear the Barbarians should kill them. They are so fond of white Oxen or Cows, that they never exchange them; and 'tis their constant Wish, That God, whom they call the Great Captain, may bless them with a white Ox. The ordinary Meeting Places of the Merchants are, 1. Near the Horse-Guard, upon the utmost Borders of the *Dutch*. 2. At the Pits near the River, which is the Boundary of the *Hottentots* Country under the *Dutch*

Dutch Jurisdiction on that Side. 3. On the other Side of the Mountain, in the same Part of the Country. 4. Near the *Hafferbutts* River. 5. Near the *Leak-Huts*. 6. Near the *Butter* River. 7. At the *Endless* River. 8. Near *Jacob Ragen's* Tree. 9. Near the *Geese-Huts*. 10. Near the *Broad* River. 11. At the Place called *Paradise*, from its pleasant Situation; but there are no good Springs, the Water being tainted with a white clayish Mixture: And, 12. Near the *Hudshel Bay*, about 136 Leagues from the Fort. The same Author tells us, that the *Hottentots* chief Medicinal Remedies are Suction and Unction; that they fear nothing but the Poison of Arrows or venomous Beasts; and that if they are wounded by them, they beat the afflicted Part with a small Stick till 'tis depriv'd of Sense, and then scarify and suck it till the Blood follows. If the Wound proves malignant, or like to turn to a Gangrene, they cut it out with the sharp Points of their Arrows; and if it has infected a Member, they immediately cut it off. They cure all Contusions by Unctions with Beef or Mutton Suet, and then scarify and suck the Part till they draw the Blood thro' the Skin. They cure the Rheumatism in the same Manner, only they expose the Part after 'tis well anointed before the Fire, and then suck it. They cure the Cholick almost in an Instant by a certain Aromatick Root. They also stamp a kind of Date called *Dacha*, which they afterwards make into a Paste in the Sun, and then use it as the *Mahometans* do Opium. They never cut the Navel Strings of new-born Infants, but only tie them close till they fall off of themselves. They pretend to Magick, and to draw Fish to their Baits with the Sound of their Pipes, which are like ours. He adds, that the brown Olive Complexion of those that live nearest the Cape is owing more to their Grease, with which they besmear themselves from their Birth, than to Nature. *Rennefort* says, they worship the Fire in the Absence of the Sun; and *Nieuhoff*, that they follow the Course of the Sun, by changing the Pasture of their Cattle; and that when the Sun comes to the Tropick of *Capricorn*, they feed them on the S. E. Side of the Rivulet, and on the N. Side when it returns to the Tropick of *Cancer*. They

keep at home in rainy Weather, and are afraid to creep abroad till 'tis fair: Then they are merry, and lift up their Eyes to Heaven, as if they gave Thanks; for they say, when the Great Captain is angry with them, he punishes them with Rain, because he knows 'tis contrary to their Nature. They think the Word God not sufficient to express the Glory of the Supreme Being, and punish those that use it. When they talk of the Devil, they point to the Ground. They believe that those that die near the Cape shall rise again behind the Mountains, which our Author thinks they learned from the *Dutch* and *Portuguese*. *Ten Rhyne* says, when they have killed any *Dutchmen*, and are afraid of Revenge, they mutter to one another in broken *Dutch*, *What shall we do? The Dutchmen will kill us: But if they kill me, I'll go directly to our Great Captain, who will make me a Present of white Oxen.* And when 'tis a very serene Day, they say, *Our Great Captain will present us with white Oxen.* He adds, that sometimes they'll sit down by the Side of a River, and throw in little Balls of Clay in Honour of the Sun.

There are these other Islands, Bays, &c. on the Coast not yet described, with which we shall conclude this Part of *Cassraria*.

1. *Robben* Island, or the Island of *Coneys*, N. of the Cape. *Mr. Davis* says, 'tis a little Island so called from the Multitude of *Coneys* there, and places it 5 or 6 Leagues from the Bay of *Soldania*, in Lat. 33. 27. He adds, that it has bad Ground about it, and a dangerous Ledge of Rocks on the W. Side on't, lying off to the Seaward; but a Ship may go safely enough betwixt it and the Main, the Shore being all along free from any Danger, but what may easily be discern'd. *Herbert* places it 14 Leagues from *Soldania* Bay, and says, the *Coneys* here are larger than Cats, but strong Meat; and that here are abundance of *Penguins* or white Birds, which live in Holes like the *Coneys*. *Dapper* says, 'tis two Leagues in Compass, and lies before the Mouth of *Table Bay*, but 4 Miles from the Continent. 'Tis larger, higher, and more cover'd with Green, than

2. *Dassen* Island, or the Island of *Deer*, which *Dapper* places but 8 Leagues farther S. and

and says, it owes its Name to the Deer, with which *Spilbergen* stock'd this Island, as he did the former with Coneys, in 1601. Since which Time they are vastly multiplied. The *English* and *Dutch* brought Sheep hither, which grow very fat, and the Tails of some are above two Foot thick, and weigh 19 Pound, and they have 34 Pound of Fat which sticks to their Entrails, besides that between the Skin and Flesh; but there's no fresh Water neither in this nor the former Island, and the Soil is so sandy, that it bears nothing but Bushes and Flowers. He adds, that there's another called *Frans* or *French* Island, N. from the two former; but it does not merit a Description. *Nieuhoff* says, the Sheep of *Robben* Island are fatten'd by a certain Herb, which grows there in great Plenty, with yellow Leaves almost like Cowslips. He calls *Dassen*, *Doe* Island, and says, there were great Numbers of Does here formerly; but now they are much diminished. He places it to the N. E. of *Robben* Island, in Lat. 34. 33. and says, 'tis about a League in Compass, and produces many Sea-Rabbits and Penguins; but 'twas only inhabited in his Time by 4 Families, with their Slaves, whose chief Employment is to breed up Pigs and Poultry, and to draw Oil from the Sea-Rabbits, which they sell to the Inhabitants in and near the Fort. The People of this Island have Liberty to fish and hunt in several small Islands before the Bay of *Saldanha*, where they catch vast Quantities of Partridges, Mulletts, and other Fish. *Ten Rhyn* says, 'tis defended by a small Garrison. He places the *Rabbit* or *Robben* Island 8 Leagues from the *Dutch* Fort at the Cape, and 8 from *Dassen* Island, and says, it produces abundance of Camelions, lesser than those of the *Indies*, besides Insects, Serpents and Spiders, as big as a Man's Fist. He adds, that several exil'd Prisoners were employ'd there in his Time in burning of Muscle-Shells, to make Lime for the Island.

The chief Bays on the E. Side of the Cape *Aguilhas* are, 1. *Flesh* Bay, which *Dapper* places in Lat. 34. 40. and 67 Leagues from the Cape of *Good Hope*. He says, 'tis so called because *Peter Both* found some here when he discover'd it in 1661. There's a little Island in it, or rather a Rock, which

is open to all Winds but the N. A Brook runs at the W. Side on't, where Mariners may take in fresh Water.

2. *Fish* Bay, 12 or 15 Leagues farther E. *Dapper* says, *Peter Both* discover'd it, and gave it this Name. It receives a River of fresh Water into its Bosom 25 or 30 Leag. farther E. in S. Lat. 34 $\frac{1}{2}$. The same Pilot found out the Bay of *Mascles*, which the *Portuguese* afterwards called *Seno Formoso*.

3. The Bay which the *Portuguese* call *Seno del Lago*, because, says *Dapper*, the Sea has so washed away its Banks, that it looks like a Lake. It contains several Roads and Islands, particularly that which the *Portuguese* call *Ilha dos Chaos*. He takes Notice of three Capes between these two Bays, viz. *Cabo de S. Francisco*, *Cabo das Serras*, near which is the Island *Content*, and *Cabo d'Arequito*. The River of *St. Christophle*, which the *Portuguese* call *Rio de St. Christian*, and the *Caffres*, *Nagoa*, and which has three Islands in its Mouth, runs a little farther to the N. E.

We come next to the third and last Division of *Caffraria*, namely, the E. which *Du Plessis* extends from the Mouth of the River *St. Esprit* to *Zanguebar*, containing the Territories of *Querunda*, *Zimba*, *Senha*, and the Kingdom of *Sofala*. He says, 'tis more fruitful than the two other Coasts, and that in some of the Mountains there are Mines of the finest Gold in the World.

Luyts says, the Inhabitants are more civiliz'd than the other *Caffres*; that they have Laws and Kings; and that even the Savages of the Woods and Mountains are obedient to their Commanders. Some of them are *Mahometans*, and others follow the Rites and Customs of the *Portuguese* and *Dutch*, with whom they converse. *Moll* extends it from the R. *Zambeze* in Lat. 18. which parts it from *Zanguebar* on the N. to that of *St. Christopher* towards the Cape of *Good Hope* in 32. The *Sansons* carry it farther N. than the River *Zambeze*, to that of *Guama*, which he places in Lat. 19. They say, that the Inhabitants are for most Part subject to the K. of *Monomotapa*, who dividing his Dominions into 4 Parts about 50 Years ago, gave his eldest Son the Inland, which is the largest Part of the Country, and his other three Children *Quiteva*, *Sidanda*, and *Chicanga*, on the Sea-Coast: And tho' *Sofala* is more

more independent, yet it pays Tribute both to *Monomotapa* and *Portugal*. *Monomotapa* and *Monæmugi* take up all the W. Part of this Coast.

Having mentioned its Divisions, we shall begin with the most Southerly one, viz. *Terra do Natal*. *Dapper*, who begins it at *Rio de St. Christian*, which the *Caffres* call *Nagoa*, says, 'tis called *Terra do Natal* by the *Portuguese*, because they discover'd it on *Christmas-Day*; and *Luyts*, that 'twas perform'd by *Vasco de Gama*. *De la Val* says, these Seas are seldom free from violent Storms.

2. *Inhambana*, which *Moll* places on the Coast next to *Terra do Natal*; but *Luyts*, *Heylin*, and the *Sansons*, set it farther within Land in *Monomotapa*, where we shall describe it; and passing over *Terra dos Fumos*, *Chicanga*, and *Sedanda*, on the Coast, which are little known, proceed next to

3. *Sofala* or *Zefala*, another Kingdom on the Coast. *Herbert* says, 'tis Part of the ancient *Egysimba*, and that it abounds with Mines of Gold. 'Tis bounded on the W. with Part of *Monæmugi*. *Dapper* extends it from the River *Cuama* on the N. to *Rio de Spirito Santo* on the S. and bounds it with Part of *Monomotapa* on the W.

He says, the chief Rivers here are, 1. *Magnice*, with its Mouth, in Lat. 27. 40. The *Portuguese* called it at first *Rio dos Lagos*, or the River of Lakes; but in 1545, *Lawrence Marches* gave it the Name of *Rio de Spirito Sancto*. They say, it rises in the Lake *Goyame*, and after a Course of some Leagues, divides into two Branches, the Southern of which keeps the Name of *Magnice*, and falls into a Gulph over against the Cape of *Fishes*. It receives three Rivers a little before it runs into the Sea, the first called *Nagoa* or *St. Christopher*, because 'twas discover'd on the Festival of that Saint; the 2d *Lawrence*, from the Name of the Mariner above-mentioned, both which Rivers rise from the Mountains of the *Moon* in the Province of *Toroa*; and the 3d called *Arroe*, which comes from the N. and the Gold Mines of *Monomotapa*. The N. Branch is called *Cuama*, *Quama*, or *Covagna*, the Name of a Castle which the *Turks* built on its Banks a little above the Citadel. The Inhabitants call this River *Sambrevre*. 'Tis much larger and deeper than the other Branch, because it receives 6 other large Rivers, that pass thro' *Monomotapa*, and

wash off the Sands from the Gold Mines. This River runs into the Sea by 7 Mouths, where there are as many Islands well inhabited. In 1500, the *Portuguese* built a Fort near the Mouths of the *Cuama*, to reduce the *Caffres* under their Obedience, and afterwards remained absolute Masters of the Country. *Cabo das Corrientes*, or Cape *Corrientes*, lies in the Middle of the Coast, in Lat. 23 $\frac{1}{2}$. but *Moll* places it farther S. in the Country of *Inhambane*. *Dapper* says, that betwixt this Cape and the Island of *Madagascar* are Rocks and Sand-Banks, on which many Ships are cast away. He calls the Country beyond the Cape as far as *Cuama*, *Matuca*, and says, the Capes of *St. Sebastian* and *St. Catherine* lie on that Coast.

He tells us, that the Air of *Sofala*, especially at *Matuca*, is very good, and that the Country from Cape *Corrientes* to the Mouth of *Cuama* is plain, fruitful, and populous, but the contrary from that Cape to the River *Magnice*. The Coast is very low, and Mariners discover their Approach to it more by the Smell than their Sight, because it abounds with fragrant Flowers. There are also Elephants, Lyons, &c. The People are well shap'd, tho' for most Part Negroes, and have very few of a brown Complexion. Those about the Cape are much more affable and civiliz'd than the *Caffres* of the Capes of *Good Hope* and *Aguilhas*. They commonly eat Rice, Flesh and Fish. They only cover themselves from the Waist to the Knees with a Habit of Silk or Cotton, which is brought to them from *Cambaya*, and wear a Ponyard by their Sides with an Ivory Hilt, and a Turban of Scarlet or Silk. Most of them speak the Language of the Country, but some, *Arabick*, because, before the *Portuguese* traded to this Coast, there came many Merchants from *Arabia Felix*, who increasing every Day, began to settle in the Desert Isles of *Cuama*, and from thence passed over to the Continent. The Inhabitants affirm, that the Mines of *Sofala* yield above two Millions of Metigals per Ann. each amounting to 14 Livres of French Money; that the Ships of *Zidem* and *Mecca* carry off above two Millions a Year in Time of Peace; and that the Governor of *Mosambique*, whose Office lasts but 3 Years, has above 300000 Crowns Revenue, without reckoning the Soldiers Pay, and the King

of Portugal's Tribute. From hence Moquet concludes this to be the Ophir whither Solomon sent Ships every three Years from Esiogeger to fetch Gold. This Conjecture is supported by several Edifices, which appear to have been built by Foreigners, and some Inscriptions in unknown Characters, as also by the Seventy, who translate Ophir, 1 Kings, 9. 28. Σωφείρα, which, since Liquids are often put one for another, Sopheira does not differ very much from Sofala. Besides, Thomas Lopez, in his India Voyages, reports, that the Inhabitants of this Country boast they have Books which prove, that in the Time of Solomon, the Israelites sail'd every three Years towards these Parts to fetch Gold. The Inhabitants of Quiloa, Mombaza, and Melinda, come to this Country in little Boats called Zambucs, with Stuffs of white and blue Cotton Silks, and red and yellow Ambergreece, which they change with the People of this Country for Gold and Ivory, and these sell them again to the Subjects of Monomotapa, who give 'em Gold in Return without weighing it. They say, that when the Sofalese see Ships coming, they light up Fires, to signify that they shall be welcome. They know how to make Stuffs of white Cotton, but cannot dye them; and when they would make Party-colour'd Vests, they unravel the dy'd Cloths of Cambaya, and mix them with their white Thread. The Portuguese have taught them the Use of Muskets and Gunpowder, so that they use Fire-Arms as well as Bows and Arrows. 'Tis said, that the King of Sofala, who was a Mahometan and Vassal of Monomotapa, rebelled against him, and put himself under the Protection of Portugal. Spilbergen says, that the Prince in his Time was by Birth a Portuguese; but Jarric will have it that he was only tributary to that Nation. In Marmol's Time, he held of the Emperor of Monomotapa. Dapper adds, that the Coast is Peopled with the Caffres, the Natives of the Country, who are of no Religion, and the Mahometans, who came to settle there 200 Years ago.

Heylin places this Country in Zanguebar, to the S. of Mosambique, from which 'tis parted by the River Cuama, and extends it to the Mountains called Mancia, which separate it from Monomotapa. He opposes their Opinion who think this to be Solo-

mon's Ophir, for Reasons, for which we refer the Curious to him. Pory says, the Portuguese since their Arrival have supplanted the Moors of Quiloa in their Gold Trade; Luyts, that here is good Store of Apes; and Morery, that the Portuguese call the King of this Country the Emperor of Gold; and that many of their Salvages eat Man's Flesh, and drink Beasts Blood. They believe one God only, whom they call Mozimo or Guiguimo, and have no Idols. They punish Sorcery severely, as well as Theft and Adultery. They have no Shew of Worship, except the Observation of certain Days, and the Celebration of Festivals in Memory of the Dead. When the Bodies of their dead Friends are consum'd, they take their Bones, and every 7th Day set Meat before them upon a Cloth, and after Prayers eat it themselves. They serve the King on their Knees, and instead of a Taster, some of his Officers eat his Scraps in his Presence. When he drinks, all his Attendants give a Shout, which is seconded, as soon as heard, by the Neighbours; so that he never drinks but it rings thro' the City, and the same is observed when he coughs or sneezes. All that come into his Presence must sit down, except the Arabians, Portuguese, and some of his Favourites, because, as 'tis thought, those who sit are not in a readiness to do any Mischief. None but some of their Grandees are allow'd to have Doors or Gates to their Houses, for they durst not demand any other Guard but the King's Protection. They have no Horses, so that the Inhabitants fight only on Foot. Among other Arms, they have small Hatchets; and besides his Guard, the King has 200 Mastiffs, which accompany him whenever he goes a Hunting or to Battle. In Seed-time and Harvest, the Queen goes with her Ladies into the Fields, and takes a Pleasure in assisting the Sowers and Reapers.

Its Capital and only Town of Note is Sofala, on the Coast, which Moll places Lat. $19\frac{3}{4}$. Long. $52\frac{1}{2}$. 420 Miles S. W. of Mosambique. The Sansons place it in an Island at the Mouth of a River of its own Name, Long. $64\frac{1}{2}$. Anthony Galvano says, that in 1505, Peter Anhey, a Portuguese, built a Fortrefs here, of which he was made Captain; and Herbert, that 'twas built on purpose to awe the Negroes. Dapper places it in one of the

the Islands of *Cuama*, and says, that the old Fort was neither large nor well built, and only encompassed with a Hedge. — *Morery* calls it a strong City, 150 Miles from *Zanguebar*, 340 from *Mosambique*, and 50 E. from the Gold Mines. *Heylin* says, the Island on which it stands is small, but commands the adjacent Land. Both Town and Island are subject to the *Portuguese*, who have one of the richest Factories here in the World, for they exchange their Cloth, &c. for their Gold, of which he reckons two Millions Sterling is brought in Yearly into the Town; but the Moors of *Magadoxo* and *Quiloa* had it before the *Portuguese*. *Du Plessis* places it about 17 Leagues from the Gold Mines. *Roberts* says, the *Portugal* Ships use to anchor here in Winter, when they cannot sail either forward or backward far enough to accomplish their Voyage; and that their *India* Fleets use to take in Water and Victuals here. He adds, that the Governor of *Mosambique* keeps a Factor here.

We proceed now to the next Division of *Lower Ethiopia*, according to our Tables, which is,

VI. MONOMOTAPA OR BENOMOTAPA Empire.

IT lies in an oval Form, according to *Moll*, 930 Miles from N. to S. and 645 where longest from E. to W. He encompasses it on all Sides with *Cassaria*, except *Monæmugi*, which bounds it on the N. The *Sansons* bound it with the latter on the N. E. and *Malemba* on the N. They extend it from Lat. $13\frac{1}{2}$ to $30\frac{3}{4}$. *Vincent Blanc* makes it not less than 2000 Leagues in Compass. 'Tis almost divided into two equal Parts by the Tropick of *Capricorn*; and *Du Plessis* makes it 345 Leagues from N. to S. and 240 from E. to W. *Dapper* includes it between the Rivers *Magnice* and *Quama*, and extends it from N. to S. from the River *Quama*, which separates it from *Monæmugi*, to the little Kingdoms about the Cape of *Good Hope*. He bounds it on the E. with *Sofala*, and on the W. and S. W. with the River *Magnice* and the neighbouring Mountains. *Cluverius* extends it from the *Red Sea* and the *Ethiopick* Ocean to the Cape of *Good Hope*, and makes it 1600 Miles long,

and 1200 broad, because most of the petty Dominions between that Cape and the River *Magnice* own the King of *Monomotapa* for their Sovereign. But those who make this Empire as it were a Peninsula, between the Rivers *Magnice* and *Quama*, say, 'tis but 735 Leagues in Compass. *Morery* bounds it on the N. with the Mountains of the *Moon*.

Dapper says, the Air is temperate. The Fields abound with Pasture and Fruits necessary for Life, and are water'd with several Rivers planted with Trees and Sugar-Canes, which come up without Cultivation; yet 'tis not very populous. The Inhabitants are rich in great Cattle, which they turn to better Account than their Gold. They have no Beasts of Burden, but abundance of Elephants, for they export great Quantities of Ivory. Among other Wild Beasts, there's a Sort of Stags call'd *Alsinge*, and Ostriches as large as Oxen. There's a Tree called *Coscoma*, which yields sweet Apples of a Violet Colour; but too many of them eaten at a time cause the Dysentery. The *Portuguese* call this Emperor the King of Gold, because there are several Mines of that Metal in his Dominions, besides what is found in the Rivers. The Inhabitants dive into the Rivers and Lakes, and bring out the Sand to separate it from the Gold. They are well shap'd, strong and healthy, with short, black, frizzled Hair, and more lively than those of *Mosambique* and *Melinda*. Those who don't follow Trade, love War, and they are charg'd with being seditious. Their ordinary Meat is salt Beef; their Bread, Cakes of Rice, Millet, and the Root *Ignames* or *Injames*; and their Drink, sower Milk, and the Oil of *Sesame*. But the King drinks nothing but Mead or *Palm-Wine*, perfum'd with Musk and *Ambergreece*. He is such a Lover of Perfume, that he spends two Pounds a Day for that End, and has nothing burnt before him but perfum'd Flambeaus. He causes 4 of them to be lighted up when the Weather is dark, and when he goes out in the Morning in a stately Chair, carried by 4 Gentlemen, and cover'd with a Canopy set with Precious Stones; for he never sets his Foot without the Palace but when they cut the Throat of a Beast for Sacrifice, and when he passes over it, his Courtiers make great Shouts, and watch the Motion of the Entrails,

and the Priests upon their Report calculate his Nativity. Their Kings never change their Fashion, except their Necklaces, Ribbons, and Buskins, but all wear Habits like those of their Predecessors. 'Tis a long Gown of Silk wove in the Country, for they prohibit Foreign Stuffs, for fear they should be poison'd. Upon that he wears a Sort of Petticoat, which reaches to his Knees, and turns up to his Waste. He wears a kind of Hedging-Bill, with a Hilt of Ivory, hanging by his Side, to encourage Husbandry, and carries two Arrows in his Hands, one to denote his Power to punish Criminals, and the other to shew his Readiness to protect his People. The Inhabitants go naked as low as the Waste; but from thence downward they wear a colour'd Piece of Woollen Cloth, and cover their Privy Parts with Gourds, especially when they go into the Fields, for fear of being bit by venomous Creatures. Persons of Quality wear Skins over their Habits, with a Tail that drails to the Ground. *Sannutius* says, that the common People wear Cotton-Cloth, and great Persons printed Callicoes embroider'd with Gold. The Daughters go stark naked, without any thing to cover their Shame; but when they are married and have Children, they cover their Bosom and the rest of their Bodies. They may take as many Wives as they can keep; but the first continues Mistress, and only her Children are Heirs, while the rest are look'd upon as Servants. The King has above 1000, who are all the Daughters of his Vassals; but the first is the Queen, and the eldest of her Children Successor to the Crown. They reckon it Criminal to marry the Daughters till of Age. They pay Religious Worship to the Dead, preserve their Bones, hang them up in a Court mark'd differently for Distinction, pay them a Visit once a Week in a white Habit, which is the Mourning of the Country, spread a Table before them with Provisions, pray to them for the King's Prosperity, and then eat to their Honour. No Tribute is demanded of any Body, but they never appear before the King or the Grandees without a Gift; for Custom has made it a Law among them for Inferiors never to speak to their Superiors without a Present, to shew their Respect. The Merchants are oblig'd to

make Presents to the King, unless they intend never to appear before him, and to forfeit his Favour; and Persons of Quality must spend seven Days in 30 in the King's Service. The *Portuguese* know so well how to make their Court, that they have obtained a Province of 90 Leagues in Compass, where there are several Mines of Gold. Their Arms are a Bow and Arrows, Darts, Ponyards, Cutlasses, and Sabres. The King always keeps a great many Troops on foot, but he has no Horse to mount them. They have a Warlike Sort of Women that cut off their Left Breasts, like the ancient *Amazons*, that they may fire with the more Freedom. They carry the same Arms as the Men, and shoot backward, while they pretend to be retiring; but when their Pursuers are near, they face about upon them, and kill all that oppose them. They raise a Wooden Hut in the Field near the King's Tents, where they keep a sacred inextinguishable Fire. While the War lasts, no Person washes either Hands or Face, and every one carries his own Provisions; but sometimes the King distributes Oxen and Sheep among his Men. They have the same barbarous Custom of cutting off their Prisoners Privy Members as the *Hottentots*, and make Chains of them too for their Wives Necks. They call the Emperor *Beno* or *Menomotapa*. *Texeira* says, that it ought to be *Munemotapa*, because the Kings beyond *Cassaria* bear the Title of *Mune* instead of *Mani*. He makes himself extremely respected by his Subjects, and every Body speaks to him on the Knee, except the *Portuguese* and his dearest Favourites. When he drinks or sneezes, all his Attendants wish him Joy, which passes from one to another thro' the whole Town. Forasmuch as he has a great many potent Vassals remote from his Capital, he takes Care to bring up their Successors at his Court, as Hostages of their Fidelity, and endeavours to win their Hearts by his Civility. Once a Year he sends Ambassadors to the Grandees depending on his Crown to give them Fire. As soon as they are arrived at the Vassal's Court, they publish in the Emperor's Name, That every one must put out his Fire, on Pain of being declared a Rebel, and those who submit go and light their Fire at that which the Ambassador gives the Vassal Prince. There is good
and

and speedy Justice over all his Dominions. They hear the Reasons and Depositions on both Sides, and then the Judges pronounce Sentence, which the King either confirms or annuls, as the Case requires. They do Execution in the open Field; but when the Affair is not ready for a Tryal, they tie the Person accused (if there is any Fear of his Escape) to a Tree, and guard him with Soldiers. When the Subjects have any Complaint, whether against the Judge or any great Nobleman, if the King finds it well grounded, he causes the Offender to be seiz'd, laid upon the Ground, and lash'd with a knotty Cord till the Blood comes; but they don't reckon this Punishment scandalous. They discover the Truth of a doubtful Matter by the Tryal of a certain Liquor, which if any one drinks without Harm, he is counted innocent; but if he vomits, they reckon him guilty.

Dapper adds, that most of the Inhabitants are Idolaters. They call God *Maziri* or *Atumo*, and believe him the Creator of the World. Their Festivals are the first Day of the New Moon, and the Anniversary of their Emperor's Birth. They pay great Honours to a Virgin they call *Peru*, and have certain Convents for their Daughters. The Portuguese Jesuits have converted a great Number of these Negroes to Christianity, and the Emperor himself, with his Mother, and above 300 Gentlemen, were baptized in 1560 by *Gonsalvo Sylveira*. He was christen'd *Sebastian*, the Name of the then King of Portugal; but being perswaded by four Turks that the Jesuit was a Magician, he caused his Head to be cut off. However, he liv'd to repent it, and punished the Muslemen in the same Manner. *Merery* says, that amongst other Fruit, it produces Rice and Sugar, and that the Inhabitants drive a great Trade in Ostrich Feathers and Elephants Teeth. He praises them for their Wit and Courage, but says the King is reputed severe.

Heylin, who says this Country is also called *Benomotaxa*, bounds it on the N. with the River *Guama* and the Mountain of *Magnice*, which parts it from *Zanzibar*; on the W. and S. by the River *del Spirito Santo*, by which 'tis separated from *Cassaria*; and on

the E. by the main Ocean; so that he makes it a Peninsula, 750 Spanish Leagues or 3250 Italian Miles in Compass. He says, it contains 25 Kingdoms, all govern'd by Kings, subject to the Emperor of *Monomotapa*; and that 'tis full of Forrests, infinite Herds of Cattle, and such Store of Elephants, besides other large Beasts, that they kill 5000 a Year for their Teeth. 'Tis said, they have 3000 Mines of Gold, some in the Hills of *Magnice*, and others in the Province of *Matuca* and *Boro*. He observes, that the Soil about the Mines is very dry and barren; that the Gold is the purest in all *Africa*; that it does not lie above 3 Foot under Ground; and that in some desert Places, they find great Pieces upon the Surface, some of which weigh an Ounce. He adds, that some of the Princes have 5000 *Caffres* to their Slaves, with which they go to War upon the least Occasion; and that the Governor of *Mosambique* furnishes them with Callicoes, Arms, &c. He says, the People are mean of Stature, but such Racers, that they out-run Horses; that they punish nothing more severely than Witchcraft, Adultery, and Theft; and that they have no Prisons, but punish Delinquents as soon as they are apprehended; for which Reason he says none but the Noblemen have Doors to their Houses. He tells us, that the Women here are as much respected as in *England*; that when the Emperor meets any, he gives them the Way; and that they solemnize their first *Menstrua* with a Feast. They have few Towns or Villages, and the Houses are so thin, that from the Border of *Sofala* to the Fort of *Torra*, which is 510 Miles, there's no Sign of any Building. The Emperor commands Part of *Cassaria*. He has a Battalion of *Amazons* about the Lake of *Zambre* and the Out-skirts of *Zanzibar*. Besides, he has 200 Mastives for his Guard. They reckon it greater Honour to stand than to sit before the King. Heylin adds, that after the King had caused the above-named Jesuit to be slain, the King of Portugal sent 1600 Men against him, under *Francisco Barretio*, to whom he offer'd an *Amende honorable*; but he being greedy of Revenge, preferred a Battle, in which he was overcome, his Forces soon after consum'd by Sickness, and the Hopes of Christianity.

stianity in this Kingdom fell, together with the *Portuguese* Interest.

Luyts says, contrary to *Heylin*, that Wood here is so scarce, that they make Fires commonly of Rice-Twigs and the Dung of Beasts. He observes, that this Empire takes its Name from the Emperor, contrary to the Custom of other Countries. *Vincent Blanc* and others say, he is saluted with the Title of *Great Tabaque*; that he is very grave and haughty; and that he is always dress'd with Chains and Precious Stones like a Bride. The *Sanfons* say, he has a great Number of Officers at his Court, who serve with Order and Silence. They are known wherever they go by a *Talmassora*, which they wear upon their Shoulders, which is adorned in Proportion to their Condition, and in the same Fashion with the King's. Their Houses are of Wood and Earth whiten'd, and in Fashion like a Tent or a Bell. Those which belong to Persons of Quality are highest. They add, that now Christianity is settled here with the Consent of the Prince, who permits the *Portuguese* to work in the Gold and Silver Mines. Their Winter is when the Sun is about the Tropick of *Cancer*, and is pretty cold, because of the Mountains which encompass it on all Sides. They say, the Emperor is one of the most potent Princes of *Africa* in Extent of Dominion, Wealth, and Number of Dependants; and that his Subjects punish Idolatry, Sorcery, Theft and Adultery, with Death.

Du Pleffis says, the Air here is hot. Some Geographers divide this Empire into 6 Kingdoms, and others into 25; but *Luyts* and the *Sanfons* only divide it into the two Kingdoms of *Monomotapa* and *Butua*, the former N. and the latter S.

This Part of the Country being not so much known as *Cassaria*, the chief Places we find taken Notice of are, 1. The City of *Monomotapa*, which *Moll* places near a Branch of the River *St. Esprit* or *Delagoa*, S. Lat. $25\frac{3}{4}$. Long. 39. The *Sanfons* agree in the Lat. but make the Long. $52\frac{1}{2}$. Some call it *Banamatapa*, and others *Madrogon*. *Dapper* says, 'tis a great Town, 6 Days Journey from a Palace called *Simboe*, and 20 Miles W. from *Sofala*. The Imperial Palace here is very large, with 4 great Porti-

co's, where the Emperor's Guards keep Centry in their Turns. The Out-Parts are fortified with Towers, and the Inside is divided into several spacious Rooms, garnish'd with Cotton Hangings of lively Colours, and trimmed with Gold. Some say, the Cieling, Beams and Rafters, are gilt or cover'd with Plates of Gold; that the Apartments are set out with Chairs, gilt, painted, and enamell'd, and Candlesticks of Ivory hung on Chains of Silver. His Plates are of Porcellane, adorned with Branches of Gold like those of Coral. The *Sanfons* say, he has other Palaces called *Symbaoe* in several Parts of his Dominions, especially one towards *Butua*, remarkable for the vast Size of the Stones in its Walls, and for several ancient and unknown Inscriptions over the Gate.

2. *Butua*, the Capital of a Kingdom of its own Name. *Moll* places it near the Conflux of another River, with that called *Santa Maria*, above 420 Miles N. of *Monomotapa*. *Dapper* calls it *Toraca* or *Torooa*, and extends it from the Mountains of the *Moon* and the Cape of *Fishes* on the S. to the River *Magnice* on the N. and *Bravagul* on the W. He says, that in the Middle of this Province, among the Iron Mines, there's a large square Castle of polish'd square Free-stones of a prodigious Size, plac'd one upon another without Lime or Mortar. The Walls are 25 Spans thick, but not proportionable in Height. There's an Inscription upon it in unknown Characters. The Natives say, 'twas built by the Devil, because there's no Stone Structure nearer it than the *Portuguese* Fort upon the Coast, which is above 200 Leagues from it. 'Tis much stronger than theirs, and here the Emperor keeps some of his Wives, and a good Garrison. Such Parts of this Province as are nearest the Coast are full of Meadows, without Trees, so that the Inhabitants are forced to burn the Dung of their Cattle in the cold Weather, when the Winds blow from the *Antarctick* Pole. At this Time too the Inhabitants go in furr'd Skins. They have many Elephants, and fine Salt-Pits, whither they come for it from the greatest Part of *Africa*. He adds, that the Town of *Fatuca* abounds with Gold, Silver, and Precious Stones; that there are two Gold Mines,

Mines, called *Boro* and *Quitici*, 200 Leagues from *Sofala*, which are the fullest in all the Country; and that the Governor of this Province is called *Buro*, and a Vassal to the Emperor of *Monomotapa*. *Heylin* extends this Province from the Mouth of the River *Spirito Santo* to Cape *Corrientes*, and says, it abounds in fat Pastures and great Herds of Cattle, and that the Castle above-mentioned was built to secure the Mines. Those who take *Sofala* for the Land of *Ophir*, think 'twas built by *Solomon*; but *Heylin* makes it 510 Miles more to the W.

3. *Quietervi* or *Quiticui*, and *Boro*. *Heylin* says, they are two Provinces that have Gold in their Mines and Rivers, which tho' not so pure as that of *Torra* and *Matuca*, yet serves their Turn so well as to spoil all Industry; for they work for no Necessaries, because the *Arabian Moors* bring them enough in Exchange for their Gold. *Moll* places the Town of *Quiticui* on the Side of a River that falls into the *Zambeze*, 180 M. N. E. of *Butua*, and 512 from *Monomotapa*.

4. *Matuca*. *Heylin* says, it has rich Mines of Gold, and that the Inhabitants are called *Botonghi*, who tho' they dwell between the Line and the Tropick, have such deep Snows in the Winter on the Tops of their Mountains, that they are forced to come down, lest they should be froze to Death.

5. *Inhaban* or *Inhamban*. *Dapper* places it under the Torrid Zone, over against the Cape of Good Hope. The Capital Town is *Tongue* or *Tongum*, the Seat Royal of its Kings, and memorable for the Baptism of the whole Royal Family in 1560 by *Gonsalvo Silveira*, when the King was christen'd *Constantine*, and the Queen *Mary*; yet most of the People are still Idolaters. He adds, that the Heat is very excessive here, and that 'tis frequented by some *Portuguese* Merchants. *Heylin* says, its King is Vassal and Tributary to the Emperor of *Monomotapa*. This Province lies between *Monomotapa* and *Cassaria*, so that Geographers place it in either; for the *Sansons* set it on the Frontiers of *Monœmugi* and *Zanguebar*, and *Moll* near Cape *Corrientes* on the Coast. We pass by the other Provinces, and proceed to the last Division of *Lower Ethiopia*, viz.

VII. Monœmugi or Moenhema-gi Empire, or Nimeamaye.

THE *Sansons* make it 780 Miles from E. to W. where longest, and 330 where broadest. They bound it with the *Abyssine* Empire and the Lake *Zembre* on the N. *Malemba* and Part of *Monomotapa* on the W. *Monomotapa* and *Cassaria* on the S. and *Zanguebar* and *Sofala* on the E. *Moll* bounds it on the N. with the Mountains of the *Moon*, that part it from *Macaco*.

Dapper says, 'tis an Inland Kingdom, in the midst of S. Africa. He bounds it on the E. with *Mombaza* and *Quiba*, and on the W. with the *Nile*, and the two Lakes from whence it rises. There are some petty Sovereignties between this Empire and that of *Prester John*, that are always Vassals to either, whichever is conquer'd. It abounds with Gold, Silver, Copper, and Elephants. They say, the Inhabitants are white, and taller than *Europeans*. They wear Stuffs of Silk and Cotton, which they buy of Foreign Merchants. They have Necklaces of transparent Amber-beads, brought from *Cambaya*, that serve for Money instead of Gold, which they don't esteem, because 'tis so common. The Prince endeavours to keep Peace with the Kings of *Quiloa*, *Melinda*, and *Mombaza*, because then Trade flourishes, and his Subjects can have Silk, Cotton, and Amber-beads, for their Gold, Silver, Copper, and Ivory. Neither does he care to break with the Great *Macoco*, because the Negro Merchants his Subjects are obliged to pass thro' his Dominions in their Way to the *Portuguese* Markets at *Fungeno* and *Pombo d'Ocango*. The *Portuguese* say, they have heard it reported by some of the Negroes, that on the E. Side of this Kingdom there's a great Lake, that sends forth several Rivers, and is full of Islands inhabited by Negroes; that sometimes, on the same Side of the Country, they heard the Sound of Bells, and could discern Buildings very much like Churches; and that Men came from thence of a brown Sun-burnt Complexion to trade with

with the Islanders and the Subjects of *Monæmugi*. The Negroes of *Pombo d'Ocango* say, this Lake is 60 Days Journey E. from their Country, and that the Lands betwixt them are very pleasant and fruitful, water'd with fine Fountains, and stock'd with several Sorts of Birds and four-footed Beasts. There are Palm-Trees, from whence the Inhabitants draw Wine and Oil, and there is so much Honey, that the greatest Part is quite lost, because there's three times more than the Negroes can consume; but the Air is so unwholesome, that Christians dare not undertake the Voyage. *Heylin* places *Monæmugi* in *Zanguebar*, as he does *Sofala*, and says, it has *Mosambique* on the S. The Inhabitants cloath themselves from the Girdle downwards. He adds, that the King hath hitherto preserved his Estate against the King of *Monomotapa*, by the Assistance of a Sort of *Anthropophagi* call'd *Agag* or *Gala*,

who draw Lines upon their Cheeks with an Iron Instrument, force their Eyelids backwards, and in short are as lawless and barbarous as the *Jagos* their Neighbours, formerly mentioned. *Luyts* says, this Country is very much beset with Mountains, and that it has a Communication with *Sofala* by the River *Cuama*, with which 'tis water'd. Some of the latest Travellers say, that *Malemba*, which lies between the Lake *Zambra* and *Angola*, is included within this Empire; but Authors make a Distinction betwixt the Kingdom of *Monæmugi Proper* and *Malemba*. In short, the Provinces and Towns of these Inland Countries are so little known to *Europeans*, because not so convenient for their Commerce, and so remote from the Coast, that we shall now proceed to *Upper Ethiopia*, with which we shall finish the Continent of *Africa*.

C H A P. XII.

Upper E T H I O P I A.

IT is bounded on the N. with Egypt and the Desert of *Barca*; on the W. with the Desert of *Zaara*, and the Kingdoms of *Biafara* and *Congo*; on the S. with *Monamugi* and *Cassaria*; and on the E. with the Sea of *Zanguebar*, that of *Arabia*, the Streight of *Babelmandel*, and the *Red Sea*. *Moll* and the *Sansons* extend it from the farthest Limits of *Nabia*, under the Tropick of *Cancer*, in N. Lat. 24. to the Frontiers of *Sofala* in S. Lat. 18. and from the Frontiers of *Congo* in Long. 47 $\frac{1}{2}$. to Cape *Gardafuy* in Long. 85. but *Moll* only extends it from Long. 40. to 69. whereas *Luyts* places it betwixt N. Lat. 23. and S. Lat. 35. and from Long. 34. to 84. We shall refer the Soil, People, History and Government, to each of the three Divisions in their Order, and begin with

I. A B Y S S I N I A.

PLINY says, 'twas first called *Ætheria*, and then *Atlantia*, till the Greeks called it *Ethiopia*, from the violent Heat of the Sun.

Marmol calls it the Kingdom of *Abixins* or *Abexins*, *Abaxia*, *Abalsia*, *Habas*, or *Elhabae*, as the Coast near the *Red Sea* is called *Abex*. The *Sieur de la Croix* says, the Word *Abyssinia* is derived from the Inhabitants, whom the *Arabs* call *Abassi* or *Habaschi*, with their Article *Elhabaschi*, or rather from the *Abasenians*, who *Stephanus* says passed from *Arabia Felix* into *Africa*. *La Croix* conjectures, that the Etymology may also come from a certain Territory of *Ethiopia* called *Abissi*, which is under the Empire of

Prestor John, from whence 'tis thought the *Abyssines* came, *Thevenot* says, 'tis called in Arabick, *Abesch*, which *Ludolphus* interprets to be a Mixture of People, and that from hence the People are called *Habessines* or *Abessines*; but the Natives chuse to call themselves *Hiopiaujan* or *Ethiopians*, from the Greeks, a Name which was formerly common to all the swarthy People in *Asia*; and *Geez* and the Country of *Ag-azi*, or *Freemen*, which they assumed when they came from *Arabia Felix*, where they were reckon'd among the *Sabeans*, as the Germans called themselves *Franks* after they had passed the *Rhine*. The Addition of *Upper* serves only to distinguish it from the *Lower*; and 'tis stil'd *Lud* in Scripture; from *Ludim* the Son of *Mizraim*, who is supposed to have first planted it, according to *Bochart*, for whose Arguments, we refer the Curious to *Lib. 4.* of his *Phaleg*. Many of the Ancients called them *Indians*, the Greek Writers *Axumites*, others the Empire of *Negus*, and some the Kingdom of *Prestor John*. 'Tis also called *Major*, because 'tis bigger than the *Lower Ethiopia*; and *Interior*, because 'tis encompassed by the same on three Sides. Some think 'tis called *Abyssinia* from its River *Abas*.

The Limits of this Empire were formerly much larger than now, for the *Turks*, *Galla*, and their Neighbours, have so very much diminished it, that the *Abyssinian* Emperor scarce possesses one half of the Lands which were enjoyed by his Predecessors. *La Croix* says, that in 1537 the *Galla*, a Warlike People on the S. Side of *Abyssinia*, being tempted by the Fruitfulness of the Soil, and the Laziness of the People, (among

whom there were more Priests and Monks than Soldiers) made an Invasion on the Province of *Bali*, which they laid waste, with all the adjacent Country; and after a long War, and several Victories, they took from the *Abyssines*, *Fatagar*, *Doaro*, *Bali*, *Wed*, *Alaba*, *Zeudoro*, *Ogge*, *Bizarno*, *Oifate*, *Kambate*, and several other Lordships; so that if they had had a good Correspondence one among another, they would have subdued all *Abyssinia*. *Marmol* too says, the *Moors*, *Turks* and *Arabs*, made themselves Masters of all the Countries neighbouring upon the *Red Sea* all at once, by which Means the Empire is surrounded on all Sides with its Enemies, except the Prince of *Dancala*, and its Forces are much diminished after such great Losses. In the mean time ancient Historians say, this Country was formerly larger than all *Europe*, for they made it 1700 German Leagues in Compass, or (according to *Pigafetta*) 4000 French Leagues; whereas now, says *La Croix*, 'tis scarce bigger than *Spain* or *Poland*, and inferior to several Kingdoms of *Africa* in Extent and Power, and but 672 Leagues in Compass, according to *John Barros*, a Portuguese, who is reckon'd an exact Writer. *Ludolphus* says, the old Maps make it above 1800 Miles from N. to S. and 600 from the Port of *Bailleur* on the *Red Sea*, to the River *Nilus* at the farthest Limits of *Dembea*.

The ancient Boundaries of this Kingdom were, as some say, *Bugia* on the N. which bounds with *Egypt* and *Nubia*; on the W. *Nubia*, the Provinces of *Kanfila* and *Defilo*, the Kingdom of *Medra*, Part of *Negroland*, the Land of the *Jews*, and the Country of *Amazons*, which bounds with the Country of *Damot*; on the S. the Empires of *Monomotapa* and *Monæmugi*; and on the E. *Zanguebar*, *Ajan*, the Kingdom of *Adel*, and the Isle of *Meroe*, with the *Arabian Gulph*; but the *Mahometans* have all the last Tract from the *Red Sea* to a great Chain of Mountains between the *Nile* and the Sea, and are at perpetual War with the Inhabitants of *Barnagasso* or the Viceroy of *Tegre*. But 'tis to be observed, that several of the Kingdoms now mentioned do not own the King of *Abyssinia*, but are only set down for the better Description of the Boundaries. *Cluverius* gives almost the same Limits, by bounding it with the *Red Sea* and the Kingdoms

of *Ajan* and *Zanguebar* on the E. *Monomotapa* on the S. the Kingdoms of *Congo* and *Medra* on the W. and *Nubia* and *Egypt* on the N.

As for its modern Limits and Extent, the *Sansons* extend it from N. Lat. $19\frac{1}{2}$. to S. Lat. 14. on both Sides the Equinoctial; from the Mountains of the *Moon* and the Sources of the *Nile* on the S. to *Egypt* on the N. and from *Congo* and *Negroland* on the W. to the Coasts of *Zanguebar*, *Ajan*, and *Abex*, on the E. They bound it also with *Nubia* on the N. W. and makes it 800 Leagues from N. to S. 4, 5, or 600 from E. to W. and 2500 in Compass. *Moll* makes it 760 Miles from N. to S. and above 800 from E. to W. *Ludolphus* on the contrary makes it much lesser, and confines it between the 8th and 16th Deg. of N. Lat. 480 Miles in Length. The Portuguese say, 'tis 140 Leagues where broadest, viz. from the *Red Sea* to the farthest Limits of *Dembea*. It bounds with the Kingdom of *Fundi* or *Fungi* on the N. *Alaba* and *Jendero* on the S. the Rivers *Maleg* and *Nile* on the W. and had the *Red Sea* on the E. before the *Turks* took the Port of *Arkiko* and the Isle of *Matzua*. *Thevenot* says, 'tis above 7 Months Travel in Compass. Several Authors extend it from Long. 48. to 74. *Heylin* extends it from the Isle of *Meroe*, under N. Lat. 5. to S. Lat. 7. 1500 Miles long, half as broad, and 4300 Miles round; but then he includes the Kingdom of *Adel* and *Adea*, and the Provinces of *Quiloa* and *Mc-linda*. *Du Plessis* includes it from Long. 62. to 73.

The chief Rivers of this Country are,
1. The *Nile*, formerly described in *Egypt*, which *Ludolphus* says rises in *Gojam*, and passes by several other Kingdoms of this Country into *Dangala*, receiving all the Rivers of those Kingdoms in its Course. *Dapper* says, it divides *Abyssinia* in the Middle.
2. *Hawas* or *Hawasch*, which, according to *Ludolphus*, runs a great Way from its Source into the Sands. *Dapper* says, it rises in the Confines of *Shewa* and *Weda*, and waters the Kingdom of *Adel*, where the Inhabitants dig Canals to bring it into their Fields. *Du Plessis* tells us, that it falls into the Sands 20 or 25 Leagues above its Capital.
3. *Takase* or *Tacaze*. *Dapper* says, it rises in the Kingdom of *Angot*, near *Bagamedre* in the Mountain of *Azguagua*, and passes

ses thro' the Provinces of *Tegra* and *Walka-jita*, *Caffaria* and *Dequin*, into the Nile. *Ludolphus* says, it abounds with Crocodiles, as well as, 4. *Maleg* or *Melegi*, whose Source *Tellez* places in the Kingdom of *Damut*, and says, it runs into the Nile thro' the W. Part of *Abyssinia*. *La Croix* says, it runs first from E. to W. and then from S. to N. and falls into the Nile near the Kingdom of *Funchi*. 5. *Mareb*. *Dapper* says, it rises near *Fremona* in *Tegra*, and waters great Part of that Kingdom; after which it passes into *Caffaria*, where it runs for a long Space under the Earth; but sometimes they find its Water, and catch its Fish by digging only 4 or 5 Foot under Ground. It rises out of the Earth again at a Place not far from its Spring, and then runs into the Sands of *Dequin*. *Valentinian* mistakes this for the *Niger*. *La Croix* says, it does not lose itself in the Sands of *Dequin*, but separates the Provinces of *Saroe*, *Arse*, *Havre*, and *Sorat*, and passes from thence near the Monastery of *Allele* or *Alleluya* into *Ethiopian Barbary*, and falls at last into the River of *Tagare*. 6. *Zebe* or *Zebee*. *Dapper* says, it comes out of *Enaja*, encompasses the Kingdom of *Zendero* in Form of a Peninsula, runs Southward, and then falls into the Ocean near *Mombaca*. *La Croix* says, it rises in the Territory of *Boxa* in the Kingdom of *Narea*, and runs first W. and then N. Besides these, the *Jews* pretend there's another River here call'd *Sambation*, or the River of *Sabbath*, because it stops on the Sabbath-Day; but on the Week-Days brings down a great deal of Sand and Stones with it. They say, that there's a very great Number of *Jews* on the other Side of that River; but that they dare not pass it to see them, for fear of breaking the Sabbath, on which Day it can only be passed. *Pliny* and *Josephus* place this River in *Judea*, where the latter says *Titus Vespasian* liv'd. All the Rivers above-mentioned are unnavigable, because they are full of Rocks and Waterfalls. They have several Lakes here; but the chief are, 1. The Lake *Tzana* or *Dembea*, upon which they sail with great Hazard in Boats made only of the Trunk of a Tree. *Dapper* and *La Croix* say, it lies in N. Lat. $13\frac{1}{2}$. with which *Moll* agrees. *Tellez* says, 'tis 30 Leagues long, and 12 broad, and contains several Islands, the greatest of

which is called by the same Name. *Dupleffis* says, this Lake abounds with Crocodiles and Sea-Horses. There are 10 (*Morery* says 14) other Islands whither famous Men have been banish'd, and all of them but one are possessed by Monks. He adds, that this Lake is encompassed with Mountains, is 22 German Leagues long, and 15 broad, and that the Nile runs thro' it. Others make it 25 French Leagues in Length, and 15 in Breadth; and *Luyts* says, 'tis broader in the N. Part than in the S. 2. The Lake *Niger*. *Luyts* says, 'tis the least and most N. of all, lies between this Country and *Congo*, and according to *M. Robbe* 'tis 70 Leagues from N. to S. 30 in Breadth where widest, and about 160 in Compass. 3. *Zambre* or *Zambeza*. *Luyts* places it on the S. Side of the Equinoctial Line. *M. Robbe* extends it to the Kingdom of *Monæmugi*, 100 Leagues from N. to S. 80 where broadest, and above 350 in Compass, with a very large Island in the Middle. Many are of Opinion, that the Lake of *Zaire* is the same with *Zambre*: But those Authors who have given the most exact Account of this Country take no Notice of the former, and in the Maps the N. Part of the same Lake is commonly called *Zara*, on the S. *Zambra*, from two Towns, one on the W. and the other on the S. Side on't. 4. *Zaflan*. *Luyts* says, it lies farther E. is 140 Leagues from N. to S. 60 broad, and above 300 in Compass. *Morery* tells us, it formerly belong'd to the Emperor of the *Abyssinians*, but 'tis now possessed by the *Gale*. *Pliny* says, there's a Lake in this Country whose Waters are very salt six times in 24 Hours, but at all other times very palatable.

This Country is very full of Mountains. The chief are those of *Tegre* or *Tigra*. *Ludolphus* says, they are two Days Journey from the Red Sea. The highest of them is that called *Lamalmona*, whose Steps are so dangerous, and the Path so narrow, that if Company meet, and Men and Horses give Way, they fall down a Precipice, where they are never seen more. *Dapper* says, this Mountain must be pass'd to go to *Dembea*. Most of the Provinces, except *Dembea*, are full of the like Mountains. The high Hills of *Amara* and *Samen* are as it were the Back of *Abyssinia*. *Tellez* and *Ludolphus* say, here are also a great many high Rocks, called

Amba and *Amba-Dorbo*, to which the *Alps* and the *Pyrenees* are but low Hills; and tho' so steep that there's no Way of getting to the Top without Ladders and Ropes, by which they crane up their Cattle and other Necessaries, yet they are so spacious at the Top, that they contain Woods, Fields, Meadows, Fish-Ponds, &c. but some of them are so sharp, that they appear afar off like artificial Towers and Pyramids. The Mountain *Samen* is commonly inhabited by the *Jews*. *Tellez* says, that upon the Confines of *Amhara*, near *Schewa*, there's an inaccessible Mountain called *Amba-Geschen*, of which he gives this Description: 'Tis round on all Sides, and so high, that it looks like a Citadel cut out of the Rock. 'Tis half a League at Top, and requires half a Day's Journey to go round it at Bottom. 'Tis easy of Ascent at first, till you come to Rocks so steep, that the *Abyssinian* Beeves, which run about the Rocks like Goats, are forced to be drawn up by Ropes. The *Ethiopick* Princes were formerly banish'd hither by their Fathers the Emperors, that they might not attempt any thing against the State, and that the Height of their Residence might be proportionable to their high Birth. *Kircher* tells us from the Relation of *Peter Pais*, that in the Kingdom of *Gojam* there's a Rock so polish'd, that it looks like a Looking-Glass; and between all these Mountains there are such hollow Valleys and deep Abysses, that *Tellez* says the Earth looks as if it gap'd as far as the Centre. These high Mountains cool the scorching Heat, and are a Defence against their Enemies the Inhabitants of *Adel* and the *Gala*, who *Dapper* says would otherwise have overwhelmed them long ago, because they have no Wall'd Towns nor Fortifications. *La Croix* says, the Mountain or Rock *Amba-quexen*, just now mentioned, lies upon the Frontiers of *Xaoa*; and *Morery*, that it stands in a large Plain, 90 Mills round at Bottom; that the Rock is as smooth as a polish'd Wall, and grows lesser and lesser to the Top; that there's a Way cut up within the Rock with Holes for Light; that the Ascent is impregnablely fortified, but so easy, that one may ride up on Horseback; and that there's a spacious Hall in the Middle to rest in. On the Top, says *Morery*, there's a large Plain 20 Leagues round, encompass-

fed with a high Wall, and on the S. there's a rising Hill, with a sweet Spring, which waters the Gardens and Palaces, and forms a Lake for Cattle. The Plain abounds with Corn and all Sorts of Fruits, has two Monasteries, with 1500 Knights of St. *Anthony* in each, and 34 Palaces for the Emperor's Sons, in one of which is said to be a famous Library, with many valuable Books totally lost elsewhere, such as the Oracles of *Enoch*, and *Livy's* whole Works.

Ludolphus says, their Mountains abound with Metals and Minerals, especially Gold, which is also found in great Quantities, about the Bigness of a Tare, in the Shallows of Rivers, particularly in *Damota* and *Enarrea*, whither 'tis carried down from the Mountains by the Force of the Stream. Those two Provinces have no Silver, but Plenty of Lead and Iron, which *Anthony Fernandez* says they find on the Surface of the Earth without digging: Yet some think they have Silver and other Metals, but know not how to dig and refine them. In a Place called the Land of Salt, on the Confines of *Tigra* and *Argora*, there are natural Mountains of Salt, of a whitish Substance, which is soft and easy to cut in the Mines, but hardens in the Air. The Merchants carry it from hence in Caravans called *Casla* to the neighbour Nations, where they exchange it for Necessaries. Some say too, there's a Mountain of red Salt which is very medicinal. *Dapper* says, they have few Precious Stones, and that the Emperor's Crown consists only of false ones. They have a greater Esteem for Minerals, because they are medicinal. They have Antimony, which they think very proper to cure all Ocular Maladies, and mix with Soot to blacken their Eyebrows, as the Scriptures testify was the Practice of the ancient *Hebrews*. They have some Mines of Copper and Pewter, and more Sulphur (say the *Sansons*) than any other Country in the World.

Ludolphus says, the Air is as various as the several Regions, for in low and open Places the Heat of the Sun is intolerable, as in the Coasts and Isles of the *Red Sea*; but higher up the Mountains 'tis more temperate, and in some mountainous Countries the Cold is more dreaded than the Heat; but there's very seldom any Snow, and but little Hail, which makes the Country

try so healthy, that some live to 100 Years of Age. Yet there's terrible Thunder and Lightning, with violent Rains; and their Winter, which is very unpleasant, lasts three Months. He observes, that properly speaking, here are but three Seasons; first the Spring, called *Matzan*, which begins Sept. 25. and then the Summer, divided into two Parts, the first and best called *Tzadai* or *Autumn*, that begins December 25. and the last and hottest called *Hagai* or *Agas*, that begins June 25. according to our Author; but we suppose rather March 25. since it must follow their Harvest; and then their Winter begins on June 25. so that our Summer is their Winter. He adds, that tho' the Winds on the Mountains are for most Part healthful and temperate, yet they have sometimes a smoking Whirlwind called *Sendo*, that carries all before it; and that on the Coast of the Red Sea, as far as two Days Journey within Land, the Winter and Summer is the same as in Europe. *Thevenot* says, 'tis as cold here as at *Aleppo* or *Damascus*, except in the Countries by the Red Sea and at *Sennar*; and *Teller* says, that in many Places among the Mountains, the Summer is not so hot as in Portugal. *Dapper* tells us, that *Nonnosus*, who went Ambassador from the Emperor *Justinian* to the *Axumites*, observed, that from the City of the *Adulites* as far as *Ave*, the Air was dry and hot, while about *Axuma* and the rest of *Ethiopia* it was the Height of Winter. The Days and Nights are almost always equal, without any Morning or Evening Twilight. *La Croix* says, they have a Whirlwind called *Prester*, i. e. Serpent, of which an *Ethiopian* pretended to see one with the thickest Extremity downwards, and the rest twining in the Air like the Body of a Serpent. *Morery* says, that in *Guagere*, when the Sun is in *Leo* and *Taurus*, the People cast no Shadow.

Ludolphus says, that here are more and larger Wild Beasts than in any other Country, such as, 1. Elephants, which herd sometimes 100 together, and eat the Shrubs and Fruit-Trees, especially some like our Cherry-Trees, full of Pitch like Elder. When a Female and her Cub are permitted to lodge in a Field of Corn, they neither destroy it themselves, nor suffer others. The Ivory is made not of their Teeth, but of

the Horns which grow upon the Brows of the Males. 2. Panther-Camels, or *Camelopards*, with a Head and Neck like a Camel, and spotted like a Leopard, only the Spots are white, and the Skin reddish, as big as Elephants, but so tall, that a Man can only reach to his Knees, and some say a Man on Horseback may stand under its Belly. 3. *Zecora*, the most beautiful Creature in the World, about the Bigness of a Mule, but with longer Ears, and Circles of various Colours about its Body, some broader than others. The King of *Ethiopia* so values them, that one of them was sold for 2000 *Venetian* Pieces, or 4000 *Livres*, for a Present to the Great Mogul. *La Croix* says, the *Portuguese* call it a Wild-Ass. Besides these, here are Lions, Tigers, Wolves, Panthers, Hyænas, and Thousands of Apes, that help one another to turn over the Stones, in order to lick up the Worms and Ants, and sending Spies before to see if the Coast be clear, destroy whole Fields and Gardens. When they are pursued by Wild Beasts, they fling Dust in their Eyes to blind them. 4. A harmless Beast called *Fonkes*, in Latin *Cercopithecus*, which is Party-colour'd, and so tender, that it cannot be brought into Europe without being wrapped very warm. 5. *Arweharis*, a fierce strong Beast with one Horn, that feeds in the Woods. *La Croix* thinks it that which the *Arabians* call *Harish* or *Harshan*, and says, 'tis extraordinary swift, and like a Roebuck. Some think it the Unicorn of the Ancients; and since many deny that there is such a Creature, *Dapper* confutes them from several Discoveries that have been made, for which we refer to his Book.

Dapper says, their Elephants hurt no Body, unless they are attacked; and that if a Man meets them, he need only cry out, and hold up a Stick, and the Elephant will sheer off with his Snout between his Legs. *Ludolphus* says, that the *Cercopithecus* is full of greyish Spots, and that 'tis such an innocent Creature, that it has given Occasion to an elegant *Ethiopick* Rhyme, in Latin thus; *Hominem non lædo, frumentum non edo, oderunt me frustra*. He tells us, that their tame Beasts are of a much larger Size than those of any other Country, because of the Plenty of their Grass, and the Heat of their Country. Some of their Bulls are twice as big

big as ours, and their Horns 4 Foot broad. Their Horses are bold and strong, but never shod or us'd, unless in Battles or Races, for their Mules are for Burdens and long Journies. The Camels are never employ'd but in the plain Countries, where the hot Sands do not hurt their Feet. They have very large Sheep, whose woolly Tails weigh from 10 to 40 Pounds; so that the Owners are forced to tie a little Cart behind them to ease the Creature, and preserve the Wool. *Dapper* observes, that the Largeness of their Bullocks made the Ancients say, they had Horn'd Elephants. They feed them in Summer on the Mountains, and in Winter in the Plains. When they go to the Mountains, they ride upon the Mules, which they teach to amble, and lead the Horses. The latter are of several Colours, but generally black; and *Elmacin*, an *Arabian* Author, says, that *Cyriacus* King of *Nubia*, who 'tis said was also King of *Abyssinia*, in a War with the *Saracens*, brought 100000 black Horses into the Field mounted with Negroes. *Morery* says, their Horses are but small, and that their Forrests abound with Deer; but *Heylin* says, they do not hunt them. *Ludolphus* tells us, that they have many River-Horses, especially in the Lake of *Trana* or *Tzanie*, which destroy the Corn in the neighbouring Fields, and sometimes overturn small Boats, but are frightened with Fire. There are also mischievous Crocodiles and Water-Lizards, of which one Sort called *Angueg* is shap'd like a Dragon, as big as a Cat, and has a Tail that will cut a Man's Thigh in two. The Inhabitants hunt it, and eat its Flesh. The Lakes and Rivers abound too with Fish, and amongst the rest the *Torpil* or *Torpedo*, with which they cure Agues by tying the Patient to a Table, and applying the Fish to his Joints, which causes a cruel Pain over all his Members; but the Fit never returns again. He adds, that tho' if touch'd by the Man, it causes a fearful Trembling in a Man's Body, yet if one touch it with a Spear or Wand, its Feet and Sinews are presently benumm'd and bound. *Ludolphus* believes it good in the Gout, and the *Ethiopians* affirm, that 'twill drive the Devil himself out of a Man.

He says, that here are Birds of the largest Kind, such as Ostriches and Casawaws,

which never fly, but are both able to out-run a Horse at full Speed. The Flesh of the latter is prescrib'd as a good Remedy against the Biting of Serpents, for this Bird devours them without Harm, for which Reason the *Egyptians* call them *Ibides* and *Ophiomachi*, or Serpent-Eaters. There's a little Bird call'd *Pipi*, that leads the Hunters with its Note of *Pipi* to the Lurking-places of Wild-Beasts, and never ceases its Note till the Prey is pursued and killed. *Gordon* says, when it has discover'd Game, it cries out to the Huntsman, *Fonton Kerre*; and *Dapper*, that it feeds upon the Blood and Flesh of the Prey; that 'tis the same with the *Fonton* formerly describ'd in the Kingdom of *Quojas*; and that there's another Bird as big as an Ostrich, which in *Guinea* they call *Eme*. The *Sansons* say, here's Plenty of Wild-Fowl, especially a vast Number of Turtles.

Ludolphus tells us, that here are voracious scaly Dragons of the largest Size, tho' not venomous nor hurtful, otherwise than by the Bite, and they look like the Bark of an old Tree. They have Snakes call'd *Hydri*, whose Breath is so poisonous, that 'tis quickly mortal, without an Antidote; but is cur'd by drinking human Excrement in Water, as the Panther is observ'd to do, when he eats poison'd Flesh laid for him by the Hunters. They are most hurtful upon drying of the Moorish Grounds in the Summer, because they are then enrag'd with Drought and Heat. The Natives walk fearless among other Serpents, and kill 'em with a crooked Stick, and sometimes they drive their Cattle into Places strew'd with Serpents Eggs, that they may crush them with their Hoofs. *Dapper* says, the *Hydri* or Water-Serpents do also creep on Land; that they are as long and as thick as a Man's Arm, and of a red Dye; and that they lie under Herbs and Bushes. *Ludolphus* says, they have vast Numbers of Locusts, which spare neither Plants, Shrubs, nor Trees, but sometimes devour the Bark, and even destroy entire Provinces, so that several Years cannot repair the Damage, and then a general Mortality ensues, because the Natives never lay up Stores of Provisions or Forage; yet they support themselves a while by eating Locusts. They have black Bees without Stings, that make great Quantities of delicious

cious Honey and white Wax under Ground. There are several Sorts of Ants, whereof one Sort is called *Gundan*, that always march in Order of Battel, and have others that are their Slaves; and some with Wings. *Dapper* says, their Bees close up their Holes in the Ground, when a Man approaches, with such Art, that they cannot be perceived, for they put 4 or 5 of their Heads together in a Level with the Ground to stop up every Hole. He adds, that their Ants are large, voracious, and sharp Biters; but that they lay up no Stores of Corn, except the small ones, and those that have Wings.

We shall now conclude the Natural History of *Abyssinia* with a general Account of its Soil. *Ludolphus* says, 'tis so fruitful because of the long Summer, that in one and the same Place perhaps there's Seed-time and Harvest together; and that in some they have two, and in others three Crops a Year. They have Wheat, Barley, Millet, Pulse, &c. and another Sort of Corn called *Tef*, thought to be the same with our Rye, because they make good Bread of it, that smells and tastes like Rye. They value not Oats, but feed their Horses chiefly with Barley and Grass, which last abounds so much in more temperate Places, because of the perpetual Heat and Moisture distilling from the Mountains, that they never mow it. They have all Sorts of Herbs, and some of admirable Vertue, particularly the *Amadmagda*, which cures broken and disjointed Bones; and the *Affizoe*, which is such an Antidote against the Bite of Serpents, that he that eats the Root of it may safely walk in the midst of Adders, and handle the most venomous Snakes for many Years after. They have excellent Grapes; but they make no Wine, either from Ignorance, or because the excessive Heat sours the Liquor before the Lees are settled. Here are Plenty of *Indian* Figs of a delicious Smell and Taste, and sometimes 50 on a Stalk. Here are also Pomcitrons, Apricocks, Oranges, Peaches, and Pomegranates, that grow to full Perfection; and there's a Tree called *Enfete* or *Enfets*, which is like the *Indian* Fig-Tree, and 4 Yards, some say 6, in Diameter. When half cut down, it renews again by Means of many Shoots that spring from the Trunk, which being slic'd and boil'd, allays the Thirst, and the Leaves being

bruise'd and boil'd with Meal, are eaten by the Poor instead of a Hasty-Pudding. There's another Tree mentioned by *Godignus*, very good against Worms in the Belly, to which our Author says the *Abyssines* are much subject, by eating raw Flesh. He adds, that their Fields are always pleasant and flowry. *Dapper* says, the Seed of their *Tef* is less than Poppy-Seed, but longer; that the Herb *Affazoe* stupifies Serpents when they pass into its Shadow, and he supposes 'twas used by the *Psylli* mentioned in *Pliny*. They have abundance of Sugar-Canes, but no Spices were ever planted here, tho' he thinks the Soil is hot enough to nourish them. He makes the *Indian* Figs to be as big as Cucumbers, and *Ludolphus* supposes them to be the *Mandrakes* mentioned in Scripture, for which we refer to his Commentaries on his *Ethiopick* History. *Heylin* says, Part of this Country formerly abounded with Cinnamon, and was therefore call'd *Regio Cinnamomifera* by *Ptolomy*, till transported to *Egypt*. *Dapper* adds, that they have no Apples nor Pears, because the Season when they ripen with us is very tempestuous here; for their Trees bear Flowers and Fruit at the same Seasons as in *Europe*, tho' their Herbage flourishes in our Winter. Among other Products, *Morery* says they have Rice, Sugar, Ginger, Lemons, and Cotton, but little Wheat, to which *Heylin* adds Flax; but he says, they make no Cloth, and will not take the Pains to dig Channels from the Rivers to water their Lands. *Luyts* and *Gordon* observe, that the most fruitful Part of the Country is their champion Lands, and those that lie near the *Nile* and other Rivers; but that some mountainous Tracts, especially those remote from the *Nile*, are rocky, full of Caverns, rough, and altogether barren. The *Sansons* say, here are few Pot-Herbs. *Gordon* says, the longest Day in the Northmost Parts is 13 Hours and a half, and the shortest in the Southmost 10 a half. *Thevenot* says, their greatest Deserts are not above 3 or 4 Days Journey.

We proceed now to give an Account of the Inhabitants; and since we shall be chiefly obliged for it to the History of the famous Mr. *Job Ludolphus*, Privy Counsellor to the Duke of *Saxe-Weymar*, which is the most exact, we thought fit to acquaint our Readers,

Readers, that he declares he had his principal Assistance from Gregory an *Abyssine*, who came into *Germany*, and was honourably entertained by the Duke of *Saxony*, from whom he learnt the *Ethiopian* Language, and had Information of the Country. Besides, he consulted the *Ethiopian* History of *Balthazar Tellez*, written in the *Portuguese* Language, and collected from the Acts and Instructions of the *Jesuits*, (to whom he was Provincial) as also *Emanuel Almeyda's* Commentary, written in *Ethiopia*, and a Manuscript of *Alphonsus Mendoza*, the Latin *Ethiopian* Patriarch, attested by *Jerom Lupus*, a sworn Witness; to which Writers, he says, he the rather gave Credit, because he found them to agree in all Things with the Relations of Gregory the *Abyssine*.

He says, they are witty, lively, and good natur'd, and such natural Lovers of Justice, that if they happen to quarrel, they cuff a while, and then submit to Arbitrators, or the Judgment of the Lord of the Place, without more Dispute. They are desirous of Learning, which makes them admire Foreign Christians; but he says, their Civil Wars and Broils with the *Gallans* divert their Nobility from their Studies. The Natives of *Enarrea* or *Narea* are courageous and faithful, tho' in general there are no better Slaves; but those of *Tigra* are faithless and inconstant, bloody and revengeful. They are generally black and well shap'd, without blubber Lips and flat Noses, like the rest of the *Africans*; yet some of them are white; but the other *Ethiopians* reckon their Breath infectious, and shun them. For the rest, their Colour is either Black or Brown, tho' they are born Red, and soon after turn. They are very strong, and their Women commonly bring forth on their Knees without a Midwife; and they are so prolifick, that *Mendez*, the *Portugal* Patriarch, found in one Province 40000, and in others 100000 Souls. Besides the Natives, there's a Mixture of *Jews*, *Mahometans*, and *Pagans*. The *Jews* had formerly *Denbia*, *Wegara*, *Samen*, and other Provinces, till they were expelled from their Rocks and Fastnesses by *Susnens* or *Sasneus*; but now they are dispersed among the *Caffres* and neighbouring Provinces, and work as Weavers and Carpenters. The *Mahometans* live intermix'd with the Christians, and drive the greatest Trade with

the *Turks* and *Arabians*, and to all Parts of the *Red Sea*, exchanging *Abyssinian* Gold for *Indian* Wares. There are *Caffres* and other barbarous Nations among them, that wander about in the Deserts, without any Knowledge of Divine or Humane Government, devouring Dragons, Elephants, and whatever they meet; and there are other *Pagans*, such as the *Agawi* and *Gallans*. *Dapper* observes, that when the *Abyssines* fall into the Hands of the *Mahometans*, they are easily proselyted to their Religion, because they are already circumcised, according to their own Doctrine. He says, they are red skinn'd and nimble. He justly observes, that they would be far more numerous, if their Towns were wall'd, if they stor'd up Provisions, and took other Precautions necessary for the Comfort of Life, as the *Europeans*. Nevertheless *Du Plessis* says, the Villages are so thick in some Provinces, that they seem to be but one Town. *Theravenot* places the Mountains where the *Jews* liv'd three Weeks Journey from the Spring-head of the *Nile*, and says, that having grown powerful under one *Gidhon* their Captain, the King of *Ethiopia* took Umbrage, march'd against them with an Army, subdued them, and placed Christians in their Habitation, who dwell there, tho' they are always cover'd with Snow. *Gordon* says, many of the *Abyssines* are very ignorant and lazy, so perfidious, that they are not to be credited, unless they swear by the Life of their Emperor, and hate Smiths as much as the Devil; but he owns, that some are very ingenious and devout. The *Sanfons* say, that most of them have flat Noses and curl'd Hair. *Du Plessis* says, they are very courteous, but slovenly; that they are great Admirers of their Prince and Clergy, and very religious. *Morery* denies that the Country is populous. He says, the Women's Teats are as big as those of *Cassaria*, and that the Heathens think this Country was first Peopled, because nearest the Sun, whose Heat they suppose to have form'd Man, as it does Monsters, out of the Slime of the *Nile*. Some believe they were originally black; but *Vossius* and others say, they made themselves so at first, and then it became natural. *Morery* adds, that the People are of late grown more active and warlike by their Trade with the *Portuguese*,

aguefe, and Wars with the Turks and Galla.

Ludolphus fays, their Language is very near a-kin to the *Arabick*. He published an *Ethiopick* Lexicon and Grammar at London in 1661, which is their noblest and moft ancient Tongue, and was generally fpoke by the *Tigrenfes* when the King of *Abyffinia* liv'd in *Tigra*; but now 'tis only ufed in Writing, and has its Dignity continued in their Divine Worfhip, in the King's Charters, and other publick Writings. He remarks, that it frequently ferves to illustrate the Oriental Tongues, efpecially the Hebrew, whereof he gives an Inftance, for which we refer to him. But he fays, the prefent King, fince the Seat of Government is removed to the midft of the Empire, ufes the *Amarick* Dialect, or Language of *Amara*, which is as common among their Men of Quality and Learning, as *Latin* among the *Europeans*. They fay, that on the Coaft of *Africa*, every 15 or 20 *German* Miles produces a Diverfity of Language. *Dapper* fays, each Province has one; that the *Jews* here fpeak a Language which comes pretty near the *Talmud*; that the Language of the Country is called *Lefchana* Geez, the Language of Study, or the Language of the Kingdom of Geez; that the *Amarick* Language is much more difficult to write than the *Ethiopian*, and has 7 Characters foreign to it. *Gordon* thinks their Language has fome Affinity with the Hebrew and *Chaldaick*; and he obferves, that whereas the Letter *A* is reckon'd the firft in other Languages, 'tis the 13th in this, according to *Ludolphus's* Grammar.

Ludolphus fays, they marry and divorce after the Manner of the Chriftians; and that a Man who marries his Brother's Wife, or commits Polygamy, is not punifhed by the Civil Law, but excommunicated by the Ecclefiastick. They have the Priest's Bleffing at every Wedding, but no other Ceremonies worth mentioning; and their Marriages are diffolved by the King's Judges. *La Croix* obferves, they put away their Wives for Trifles, but praftife Polygamy frequently, notwithstanding the Spiritual Injunction. He fays, that when they divorce, they cut off the Hair of the Man and Woman, and fleeping them in Wine and Honey, lay thofe of the Man upon the Head of the

Woman, and *vice verfa*; that they allow no Sacrament of Confirmation, nor Extreme Unction; that they admit of Penitence after a very grofs Manner, and impofe rigorous Penances, fuch as to faft a whole Year, and the like.

Ludolphus fays, they feed upon Flefh that is raw or half boil'd, ufe Gall for Sauce, reckon the Greens which they find in the Bellies of their Beafths a Dainty, and feafon them with Salt and Pepper. They bake their Bread upon Embers in the Faftion of Oat-cakes. The Women pound their Corn with a Wooden Peftle, and where the Air is temperate, they have good Butter and Cheefe, for many of them live only upon their Cattle, whose Flefh they eat, and drink their Milk; and when they go to the Rocks, they carry 3 or 4 Goats with them, that they may fubfift upon their Milk. He adds, that after Dinner they fall a drinking till their Liquor is quite out; that they make choice *Metheglin*, becaufe of their Plenty of Honey, and for their Families, mix Water with it; and that they have another Sort of Liquor made of their Fruits, which is fweet as Ale, but white. *Thevenot* fays, the common People drink Wine made of Millet and *Saracen's* Wheat; but the King's Meat is drefsed, and he drinks Wine of Grapes. *Luyts* fays, they ferve up three particular Difhes to the Table at once, *viz.* one of Pears, cut in Form of a Crofs, another of Fire, and a third of Afhes, to represent the Redemption, Hell, and Death.

Ludolphus fays, none but their Princes wear Silk, the Clergy and Gentry Cotton; that the Poor cover themfelves with Skins, that hardly hide their Privities; and that fome of the Nobility and Priests are not afhamed to appear in Church or Chancel without their Breeches. The Boys and Girls go ftark naked. They are fo curious in their Hair, that they curl and anoint it with Butter, and reft their Heads upon a forked Pin all Night, that it may not rumple. *Thevenot* fays, they are cloathed after the Faftion of the *Franks*, and wear Cloth, Velvet, and other Stuffs imported to them by the *Red Sea*. *Luyts* fays, the Rich wear Silk, and the meaner Sort Cotton.

Ludolphus tells us, thofe that follow the Camp live in Huts made of Reeds or Rubbifh;

dawb'd over with Clay or Lome, and cover'd with Straw or Sedge, which they leave behind them when they remove their Camp; and that their Villages are built after the same Manner. *Thevenot* says, the Houses of their greatest Lords are very mean in comparison to ours. *Du Plessis* says, their Huts are generally but one Story, and at most but two. *Thevenot* tells us, they have all Trades except Watchmakers; but *Ludolphus* owns, they want Handicrafts, so that they are destitute of many Conveniences. The *Jews*, he says, are almost their only Cotton-Weavers, and their best Smiths, who make the Heads of Spears, &c. of Iron. And for the rest, every one takes Care to supply his own Wants. They have no Companies of Tradesmen, but every one teaches what he professes to his Children, and so the Trumpeters and Horn-winders are all of the same Family, and live apart by themselves. Their fine Temples, and the King's Palace at *Axuma*, shew that they were formerly skilled in Architecture; but since they have been engaged in War, they have left it off. Yet the Jesuits having brought Architects with them from *India*, built many Churches and Chappels of Stone and Mortar, to the great Dread of the *Abyssines*, who looked upon them as so many Forts; and *Peter Pays*, one of them, built a fine Palace for the King in *Gorgora*, by the *Tzaneo* Lake. He adds, that the *Abyssines* don't mind Physick, but cure Men like Horses by Burning and Cutting. They cure the Jaundice by burning a Semicircle about the Joint of the Arm with a crooked Iron, putting a little Cotton on the Place, and letting the vicious Humour drop from it, till the Distemper be gone. They also cure Wounds with Myrrhe, which is very common here. In short, every one is his own Physician, and if the Plague breaks out, they fly with their Herds into the Mountains.

Ludolphus says, the *Abyssines* don't care to travel, because they are ignorant of foreign Languages and Exchanges. When the *Mamelucks* were Lords of *Egypt*, they us'd to make Pilgrimages to *Jerusalem*, and from thence to *Rome*; but since the *Turks* got footing there, they so oppress Travellers with Exactions, that now the *Abyssines* very rarely go to *Jerusalem*. They use Mules

only in their Travelling, for no other Creature can climb over the Rocks and Mountains. The better Sort carry all their Household Stuff with them, because there's no Accommodation on the Road, and make Fires about their Tents at Night to scare away the Wild Beasts; but the Poor are forced to beg. Our Author tells a Story of some poor *Abyssines*, that being invited to a Cook's Shop at *Rome*, and thinking the Treat was Eleemosynary, one of them thanked the Host in a set Speech; but the Cook asking, *Who pays?* They were forced to pawn their Cloaks, (which were afterwards redeemed by the Pope) tho' they said, *he set his Meat and Wine before them without bargaining for Money, which was the very Thing they wanted.* But our Author observes, that in *Abyssinia* they appoint the chief Inhabitants to provide for the Poor. He says, the Way from *Egypt* to this Country is pepper'd with the Exactions of the *Turks*, and the Robberies of several Vagabond Nations thro' which they must pass. Yet several Troops of Merchants setting out from *Grand Cairo*, are carried up the *Nile* as far as *Manfalut*, and from thence they travel in Caravans thro' *Nabia* and *Sennar*, till they come to *Abyssinia*. They make it 14 Weeks Journey, tho' they might do it much sooner; but our Author observes, that the safest and shortest Cut is thro' the *Red Sea*; if you can agree with the *Turks*; for then either the Merchants set out from *Cairo* to *Suez*, a Port upon that Sea, and from thence to *Suaquen* and *Matzua*; or if they cannot endure the Sea so long, sail against the Stream from *Cairo* to *Gergea*, then travel by Land in two Days to *Gidda*, and thence in 4 Days to *Elcoffir*, where they take Shipping for *Gidda*, and so to *Suaquen*. This is the Way the *Mahometans* take, and our Author commends it for the safest. He says, 'tis about a Fortnight's Journey from *Guendra* to *Suaquen*, and 40 or 50 Days from thence to *Grand Cairo* by Land; so that 'tis three Months Journey from the Royal Camp to *Cairo*.

He says, that the *Arabians* who inhabit the Ports of the *Red Sea* are their chief Merchants, especially the *Mahometans*; for being of the same Religion, they have free Liberty of all the Ports. The *Armenians* too are great Traders among them, tho' their

their Worship does not much differ from the *Abyssines*. They import several Sorts of Commodities; but all they export is Gold: And because there's no Money coin'd here, the poor silly People finding their Gold among the Sand, or at the Roots of Trees, let it go again at low Rates; for if the Merchants deny it to be good, they exchange it for as much as they can, without questioning the Merchant's Exception. But the better Sort always carry a Touch-stone, wherewith they try their Gold, weigh it, and pay it by the Ounce, which in *Ethiopia* amounts to the Value of a *Spanish* Patacoon, or an Imperial Dollar. The Exchange in *Abyssinia* is made sometimes for Iron, but chiefly for Salt hewn out of the Mountains, with which one may purchase all Things, and in the remote Parts one may buy a good Mule for two or three Bricks of Salt. The Commodities imported, according to *Ludolphus*, are *Babylonian* Garments of all Sorts, viz. Velvet and Silk, but chiefly Woollen and Fustian, which the great Men wear instead of Purple, because they have lost the Skill of dying it. They covet Spices and Pepper to season their insipid Diet. They have few Wares for Export, besides Gold, Skins, Hides, Wax, Honey, and Ivory, but might have many more, if their Kings did encourage Traffick, by introducing the *Latin* Tongue, with *European* Arts and Handicrafts. *Ludolphus* says, the Manner of their Judicial Proceedings is very plain; for since they are generally ignorant of Writing, (except the Scribe of the Province, whom they hire for a small Matter) all Controversies are determined by Word of Mouth. The Defendant may refuse the Plaintiff's Witnesses if he suspects them; but they know not how to examine a Witness; and tho' they have the Liberty to appeal to the King and Court Tribunals, yet few will do it by reason of their Poverty, and the little Hopes of Redress. Besides, 'tis resented by the inferior Judges, who think themselves censur'd by such Appeals. They behead, hang or stone Capital Offenders, and drub others. They banish Criminals of Quality to the Lake *Tzanie*, or their high and steep Rocks. Murderers are put into the Hands of the Relations of the Person murder'd, either to pardon them for Mo-

ney, sell them for Slaves, or put them to what Death they please: But if the Murder be not found, the Inhabitants of the Place and all the Neighbourhood are fin'd.

He says, they love Divine Poesy above all the Liberal Arts, but hate the Prophane. They covet Learning, and were earnest with the Jesuits to teach their Children *Latin*; but they generally learn Languages by Converse, especially the *Arabick*. He adds, that they make doleful Lamentations for the Dead; for when they hear of the Death of any great Person or dear Friend, they fall to the Ground, and knock their Heads against it. Their King and great Men are bury'd with much Pomp; every one uses all Means to excite Tears, and the Relations wear tatter'd Habits instead of Mourning. They have no Service before the Corps is laid in the Grave, except a few of *David's* Psalms read by some Monks standing before the Church-Door. This leads us naturally to give an Account of their Conversion and Religion.

Ludolphus tells us, that they circumcise more for Custom-sake than Religion, and that 'tis done privately by any poor Woman, who rounds the Male's Fore-skin with a Knife, and cuts something from Girls which they think an Indecency and Superfluity of Nature. They reckon all kind of Meat clean, yet abstain from Swine's Flesh, Blood, and Things strangled, not in Obedience to *Moses*, but to the Apostolick Constitution, which has been always observ'd for many Ages in the E. and W. Churches, and ratified by some Councils. Nor do they allow the *Jews* Sabbath out of Respect to *Judaism*, but only because 'twas the ancient Custom of the Primitive Church, for which they have some old written Constitutions; and they prefer the Lord's-Day before it; for they believe that Christ rose from the Dead, that the Holy Ghost descended upon the Apostles, and that Christ will come to judge the World on that Day. Some say, that *Qu. Macqueda*, who they pretend was *Qu. of Sheba*, taught them the *Jewish* Law, which she received from *Solomon*, and *Qu. Candace* the Gospel; and others, that the *Abyssines* were converted to Christianity by *St. Matthew*; but *La Croix* tells us, that that Evangelist came no farther than *Nubia*. 'Tis also reported, that

they were converted by Qu. Candace's Eunuch, and baptized by Philip the Deacon; but Ludolphus says, their Conversion was begun and carried on A. C. 330. in the Time of St. Athanasius, under Constantine the Great, in the following Manner: Meropius, a Tyrian Merchant, dying at a Harbour on the Red Sea, left his two Sons, Frumentius and Adesius, who being carried to Court, were kindly received by the King, and employed in keeping his Accounts, during which they did all good Offices to Christian Merchants that came to these Parts, and became so famous for their Piety and Virtue, that they made the People in Love with Christianity. Upon this, Frumentius, whom some call St. Fromentiers or Fromenterius, was made the first Bishop of Ethiopia by St. Athanasius, Patriarch of Alexandria: After which he returned, baptized the Inhabitants, created Deacons, and built Churches. The Ethiopick Histories say, this happen'd in the Reign of Atzbeha and Abreha, two Brothers, and they call Frumentius, Abba-Salma.

Ludolphus adds, that after the Conversion of this Country, many Monks came from the Roman Empire to assist Frumentius, especially 9, who probably came from the neighbouring Parts of Egypt, (where this austere Way of Living was first practised by St. Paul, Anthony, and others, that fled hither from the Persecution of the Heathens) and seated themselves in Tigra, where they erected Chappels. He says, one of them, called Araganvi or Michael, is celebrated by the Ethiopick Poet for destroying the Kingdom of Arme or Satan, or a Serpent so called, worshipped by the ancient Ethiopians. Their Cells are to be seen still in Tigra, particularly that and the Sepulchre of Pantaleon, celebrated by their Poet for raising the Dead. Besides these, there were several great Doctors, Martyrs and Saints, fam'd for working Miracles, who mightily promoted the Christian Religion, but none more renowned for Sanctity than Gabra Menses Kadda, the Servant of the Holy Ghost, in whose Honour they keep a Holiday every Month. He also tells of other Monks and Nuns, whose Institutions and Habits are different from the Greeks and Latins; as also of the Miracles of their Saints, their Austerities, and Pennances, and adds, that every Abbot is supreme in his own

Monastery, and chose by the rest of the Monks, who he says wear no peculiar Habit, except their Crosses, which they carry, and live in scatter'd Cottages all over the Kingdom near the Churches, instead of Monasteries, where they read Prayers at certain Hours of the Day, and rattle over David's Psalms so fast, that none can follow them. Every one manures his own Lands, and lives upon the Product of his own Labour, which he may dispose of as he will. They do not marry, nor can their Children be admitted into the Clergy; yet they bear Civil Offices, are sometimes made Governors of Provinces, and go and come when they please. The Abyssines, says Ludolphus, together with the Christian Religion, received the Scriptures, which was translated into the Ethiopick Idiom of Tigra, from the Seventy, according to the Copy used in the Church of Alexandria. They have the New Testament translated from the Authentick Greek Text, which has not yet been brought entire into Europe, the Roman Edition, inserted in the Polyglot Bible, being printed from an imperfect Copy, for want of the Ethiopic Original, as is confess'd by the Editor. They have the Holy Scripture entire, and reckon as many Books as we, but divide the Old Testament into 4 Tomes, besides other Books joined to them, as follows: They call the first Tome Oretb, or the Law, containing 8 Books from Genesis to Ruth; the 2d Nagaste or Kings, containing 13 from Samuel to the Psalms, including the two Books of Tobit and Judith; the 3d Solomon, containing 5 Books, including the Book of Wisdom and Sirach; and the 4th Nabijat or the Prophets, containing 18 Books, including Baruch and Saphonia; of all which there are only a few printed, besides some at Rome in MS. and to these they add the two Books of Maccabees. They divide the New Testament into 24 Books, and 4 other Parts; the first containing the four Evangelists; the 2d, the Acts of the Apostles; the 3d, St. Paul's four Epistles; and the 4th, the seven Books of the other Apostles, ending with St. Jude's Epistle; to which they add as a Supplement St. John's Revelations. They have also a Volume called Synodum, or the Book of Synods, containing the Constitutions of the Apostles, as they are called, which are very different from those

45

50

80

85

The East PART of

Girat
Zaflan
Quarat
Bara
Fungi
MA

The Bogs Morasses or
Lakes of Zaflan

CACAO
Gazabela

Zinbanbe de
Mesuras
Chicambo de
Maves
Figueiral
The East PART of

Chicova
Banda
Zambeze
Merango
MONGA
MONOE
Bucuto
MUGI
Sena
Chetuchin
Luanche
V. Royal
Burro
Quiticui
PART OF

Degme
Meache
MONOMO
SOFALA
Sumbao
Sofala
Manica
S. Maria
SABI

Agresede
TAPA
Zimbaoe
Dauagul
Beleguras
Terra de
Natal

INHAMBAN
R. Ara
R. St Esprit
R. Marquis
R. St L

Amirante

7 Irmanos

3 Irmanos

N

Baffas das
Chagras

I. de Gratia

Pedro
Banhas

S. Miguel

Diego Gratirosa

I. Roquepiz

C E A N

Shole S. Brandon

60 120 180 240 300
Miles of Great Britain

The Island S. Ma
ry's and Part of y
Coast of Mada
gascar where Cap.
Every's Crew sett
le'd themselves.

S. Marys I.

10 20 30
British Miles.

45

50

85

90



those dispersed among us. They divide them into 8 Parts, and add them to the New Testament, as if they were of the same Authority, and contained the Pandects of Christianity. Next to these they reverence the Councils of *Nice*, *Constantinople*, and *Ephesus*, with other Provincial ones receiv'd in the Church till the Council of *Chalcedon*. But besides the 20 *Nicene* Canons which were always received in the *Greek* and *Latin* Churches, they admit of 84 other Canons now extant in *Arabick*, which were sent by *Constantine* their Emperor in 440 to *Jerusalem*, and thence brought to *Rome* in 1646. This Book of Synods contains first the Apostles Synod for ordering the Church, said to be written by *Clement*: After which follow the Councils of *Ancyra*, *Cæsaria*, *Nice*, *Gangra*, *Antiochia*, *Laodicea*, and *Sardis*; then the Acts of 318 holy Fathers, a Treatise of the Sabbath, a Declaration of the Doctrine of the Law, and a Decree and Canon of Penance. Our Author observes, that this Book was written at *Axuma*, with the King's Preface, and that there's annex'd to it their General Liturgy for Prayers and Ministration of the Communion, besides others proper for Holidays, viz. the Liturgy of our Lord, our Lady, the Apostles, and *St. Mark*, supposed to be written by some Holy Men, as that of our Lady by *Cypriacus*. He says, they have also a MS. Liturgy called the *Thanksgiving of Oblation*, which is read at the Sacrament: But their Symbolic Book, which is called the *Faith of the Fathers*, is collected from the Homilies of *St. Athanasius*, *Basil*, *Cyril*, and the four *Gregories*, and is of very great Authority. They have also Books of Martyrs, Lives of Saints, and Hymns in Praise of the Virgin *Mary*, whereof one lately written by *Abba George* is highly esteem'd. *Ludolphus* observes, that they affect uncouth Words in their *Anathema*, like the *Jews*: And since the Symbolic Book above-mentioned, which contains the genuine Doctrine of the *Ethiopic* Church, is not to be found in *Europe*, he has favoured the learned World with a very good Account of their Religion, collected from their publick Liturgies, and the Writings and Sayings of their most eminent Fathers, which we have taken the Pains to abstract as briefly as possible; and as we have al-

ready given such full Accounts of the Churches of *Europe* and *Asia*, we hope our Readers will not think us prolix on so particular a Subject as the Doctrine of a Christian Church, which makes so great a Figure in the S. Parts of *Africa*, behind the dark Clouds of *Mahometism* and Paganish Idolatry.

Then first, they own the Holy Scriptures to be the sole Rule of their Faith and Manners, and delight to repeat it in their Sermons. They use the *Nicene* Creed, and know nothing of that which we call the Apostles. They declare in their Liturgy, according to the Determinations of the Catholick Church before the Council of *Chalcedon*, that the three Persons in the Trinity are one God coequal, but say, the Holy Ghost proceeded only from the Father, and never add from the Son, as is printed in their Liturgy at *Rome*, tho' they own him to be equally the Spirit of the Father and the Son. They will not admit of the two Natures and Wills of Christ, but affirm him to be perfect God and perfect Man, without Confusion of the two Natures. They own the Merits of Christ to be sufficient for the Sins of all Mankind. They use Baptism according to the Institution of Christ, and the ancient Ceremonies of the Church, and administer the Communion both to Clergy and Laity after the Custom of all the Eastern Churches. They have not the Word Sacrament, nor do they use any other besides these two, being utterly ignorant of Confirmation and the Extreme Unction. They acknowledge the real Presence, but not Transubstantiation, and therefore they do not say at the Consecration, *This is my Body*; which Words alone, according to the Papists, can produce that Change, but, *This Bread is my Body*, and *this Cup is my Blood*; which Words have in them no such Force, neither do they attribute those Divine Honours to the consecrated Elements, which the Belief of Transubstantiation requires. As to the Soul, they believe 'tis immortal, and was first inspir'd into Man by God, not created, but drawn from the Matter, because they say God perfected all his Work on the 6th Day, and they think it absurd that he should be ty'd to create every Day new Souls for adulterous Births. They have several Opinions

of its State after Death; but 'tis generally believed, that the Souls of pious Men shall not see God before the Resurrection, but remain in some third Place till that Time, as seems to be imply'd in their Petition for the Dead, *Remember, Lord, the Souls of thy Servants, and release, O Lord, our Fathers*: Whence some have inferred, that they believe a Purgatory; but our Author says, they utterly deny it, and affirm that Petition to be only a Commemoration of the happy Estate of the Deceased, after the Custom of the ancient Church, who used to read the Names of the Martyrs out of the publick Registers in Honour to their Memory. They argue farther, that they only pray for the Souls of the Godly who dy'd many Ages ago, and that it would be a great Injury to their Memory to believe that they had been so long tormented in Purgatory. They deny that they give Divine Honours to departed Saints, while they call their Holidays Remembrances, and not Solemnities; yet they invoke them, tho' they know not how they can hear them, and also beg their Intercession, especially of the Virgin *Mary*, whom they exceedingly honour, and have her Picture, but erect no Statues to her. They also invoke the Angels, because they are said to appear to good Men and Women, and hear their Prayers, and they reckon 9 Orders of them, taking their Names from the Holy Scriptures. In their Catechism, they first teach their Youth three distinct Persons coequal in one God, and illustrate that Doctrine by the Sun, which, tho' one in Substance, has three distinct Things, *viz.* Rotundity, Light, and Heat. Then they teach them, that Christ was begotten of his Father without Time, born of the Virgin his Mother in Time, and that he is God and Man in one Person; and so for his Baptism, Fast-ing, Passion and Death, and the other Articles contained in the Apostles Creed. *La Croix* agrees, that these are the principal Points of their Belief, which he observes is very obscure and uncertain in several Things, because they themselves do not well understand it, and cannot explain it. We proceed now to their Rites and Ceremonies, according to *Ludolphus*.

The most famous of their Churches were built after the Form of the Temple of Je-

rusalem, with a Sanctuary and Outer Court; but the *Ethiopians*, by creating their Nobility and their Children Deacons and Subdeacons, admit them into the Choir, and the King's Children assume the Dignity of course carrying a Cross as the Badge of it, even after they come to the Crown, which by the Way our Author observes may be one Reason why the King is called *Presbyter* or *Prefter John*: But of this more hereafter. They stand all the Time of Divine Service, but may lean upon Crutches. They have so great a Veneration for their Churches, that when they come near one of them, they alight from their Mules, and walk a-foot till they are past them; and when they enter, they put off their Shoes at the Door, and never spit upon the Pavement. They have Pictures in their Churches, but abhor Statues, and 'tis counted a heinous Offence for any one to carry about him a Picture of Christ crucified, tho' their Clergy bear Crosses in their Hands, which are kissed by all who meet them, and they often sign themselves, and the Things that belong to them, with the Sign of the Cross, like the ancient Christians.

As to Baptism, when the Priest is to administer it to an adult Person, he begins with *Psal.* 52. perfumes him with Incense, enquires his Name, reads some Prayers, anoints several Parts of his Body with holy Oil, and lays his Hand upon his Head. Then the Convert lifting up his Right Hand, and looking to the W. abjures Satan; but turning to the E. and lifting up the same Hand, he makes a Vow to Christ, rehearses the Creed, and answers the Priest that he does believe it. After this, the Party is again anointed, and some Portions of Scripture read out of *St. John's Gospel*, the *Acts*, and the Epistles. They so pour the Oil into the Water prepared for Baptism, as to resemble in falling the Sign of the Cross. Then the Priest descending into a Pool, whither the Persons are conducted by the Deacons, (whom the Ancients therefore called *Susceptores* or Upholders) plunges them thrice under Water, saying, *I baptize thee in the Name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost*: After which, the Deacons assist them again in going out of the Pool. Being thus washed, and once more anointed, they are first cloathed with a white Under-

der-Garment, to signify the Purity of their Mind, and over that with a red Vest, in Token of their Salvation, purchased by the Blood of Christ; and so they are introduced into the Church, where they partake with other Christians of the Holy Communion. At their Departure, they are presented with Milk and Honey, and the Priest laying his Hand upon their Head, dignifies them with this Benediction; *Son of Baptism, go in Peace.* The Ceremonies of Baptizing Infants are much shorter; for they don't plunge them in the Water, but only sprinkle and dip them, and the Gossips answer in their Behalf. And that they may be in as good a Condition as adult Persons, they give them two or three Drops out of the sacred Cup, with some Crumbs of the holy Bread in it. Some have believed, that the *Ethiopians* were branded with a Mark after Baptism; but *Ludolphus* says, they disown any such Custom, and thinks the Mistake arose from the burning of the Temple Veins or new-born Children in *Africa*, to preserve them from Catarrhs. *Thevenot* says, they circumcise at 8 Days old, and baptize a Fortnight after, tho' formerly they baptized none till 30 Years of Age. Upon the 11th, which is our 6th of *January*, being the Midst of their Summer, and the Feast of *Epiphany*, they keep a joyful Festival in Commemoration of our Saviour's Baptism, when all of 'em without Distinction throng into the Rivers and Ponds, where they sport themselves, dive over Head and Ears; and if any meet a Priest, they crave a Blessing, and he says, *God bless thee.* Hence too, says our Author, many have said that they renewed their Baptism every Year, whereas the young People by their Sports make it rather a Day of Jollity than a Religious Festival. They don't doubt that Sinners are reconcil'd to God after Baptism, upon their Repentance and Confession; but instead of confessing particular Sins, they only say in general, *We have sinned*, and then the Offender is absolved in a few Words, with some gentle Stripes upon the Side with an Olive Twig. But if any confess Adultery or Murder, they are severely scourged, unless some of the Lashes be remitted at the Intercession of the Standers-by. If it be Theft, they are both severely lashed and obliged to Restoration. They reckon them-

selves in a State of Innocence till 25 Years of Age; but after that Term, as soon as they commit any notable Offence, they run to their Confessors, own they have sinned, and desire to receive the Communion for the Quiet of their Consciences. The Divine Service of the *Ethiopians* is compleated by the Administration of the Sacrament, after they have read their Liturgies, Homilies, and some Passages in the New Testament; for they don't use sacred Hymns or Preaching like ours. *Thevenot* says, they say Mass as the *Cophti* do, and he believes that most of them are Catholicks in their Hearts. *Ludolphus* refers to the Canon of the *Mass* for their Ceremonies, their several Prayers, and the Manner of sanctifying their Instruments and Vessels. In the Sanctuary he says stands the Holy Table, cover'd with a Canopy, and sustain'd with 4 Pillars at the Corners, whereupon they place first the Tabot or Chest, which is made in the Fashion of a Bier, and therefore our Author thinks it a Custom derived from the Christians of the three first Ages of Persecution, who being forced to meet in Caves or Church-Yards in the Night-time, did probably carry forth the Elements and Utensils to the Place of Meeting in Coffins or Chests made like a Bier, on Pretence of carrying out their Dead. And this Chest serv'd for a Table, about which they sat to communicate, and into which they put the Bones of any Martyrs that they found. After the Time of Persecution, these Chests were brought into the Churches, where by Degrees they were made like Tables; and at length were quite laid aside in some Churches, where they have only a consecrated Table or Altar; but the *Ethiopians* still retain both, tho' they have alter'd the Form of the Chest into a Table. These Chests were at first made of Wood, but afterward of Stone, of which Sort was a Marble Monument dug up in a Church-yard, being like an arch'd Bier, cover'd with a Linen Cloth, in which were the Loaves for the Communion, sign'd with a Salter-Cross, which the *Ethiopians* use to this Day, and of the same Form with the Wooden Chest at *Rome*, on which none but the Pope may celebrate. *Ludolphus* says, the other holy Utensils are the Dish, Cup, and Spoon, called the *Spoon of the Cross*, because the Handle ends

ends in a Cross, wherewith they distribute the Wine. They have also consecrated Urns and Censers, which they use to perfume with Incense, as the ancient Christians were forced to do in their Caves. They commonly use leaven'd Bread mark'd with a Cross, which they bake new every Day; but on the 5th Holiday of the Great Week, they use unleaven'd Bread, in Memory of Christ, and the Priest distributes the Pieces to the Communicants. Instead of Wine, they use the Liquor made of the bruis'd Stones of Raisins steep'd in Water, which the Deacon gives in a Spoon both to Laity and Clergy: After which the Sub-Deacon pours a Spoonful or two of Water into the Hollow of the Communicant's Hand, wherewith he first washes his Mouth, and then sips it up. The Time of receiving the Sacrament is left to every one's Liberty. Some take it every Week, some every Month, but all within the Church, for they count it a great Sin to receive it in private Houses, and none does it but the King. They always receive it fasting, and never spit on that Day. When they give the Communion to full Churches, the Priests are assisted by Sub-Presbyters and Sub-Deacons in reading the Prayers, and recommending both the Living and the Dead to God, which they call receiving the Dystich, and then some bring Bread, Oil, Tythes, First-Fruits, &c. which are given among the Poor. They keep the *Saturday* in Commemoration of the Creation, but more solemnly the Lord's-Day. They have no Bells of Brass or mix'd Metal, but only hollow Vessels of Iron, Stone, &c. with which they make a Noise. Their Church-Musick, both Vocal and Instrumental, is very harsh; yet they dance in Imitation of *David* to their Cymbals and Kettle-Drums, which they call Rejoycing before the Lord. They keep Fast-Days very strictly without Meat or Drink, sometimes till the 3d Evening, and every Week they fast the 4th and 6th Holiday, and all the 40 Days of *Lent*, except on *Sunday*, but make merry for 50 Days after *Easter*. They also observe all the other Festivals of the ancient Church, and particularly *Christmas-Day*, which is with them the 28th Day of *December*. *Ludolphus* adds, that they wash and perfume dead Bodies with Incense, and wrap them up in proper

Garments; but if the Deceased be of a noble Family, he is laid upon a Bier, cover'd with a Bull's Hide, and then the Clergy carry him laden with Crosses, Censers, and Holy Water, to the Grave, into which he is thrown, instead of being let down, after reading a Paragraph out of *St. John's Gospel*. They have several other Ceremonies, for which we refer to *Ludolphus*.

The supreme Power in all Affairs being vested, says the same Author, in the King, all Ecclesiastical Causes, except trifling Matters, are determin'd by his Judges, and the Clergy or Monks are punished as well as the Laity by Secular Judges. But Things concerning the Diocesan Law are left to the Clergy, whose chief Head is the Metropolitan, surnam'd *Abana*, i.e. *Our Father*, who by ancient Custom is consecrated at the King's Desire by the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, and sent out of *Egypt*; tho' now he and his Clergy are so poor and ignorant, that he is thought qualified enough if he can read but *Arabick*. *Ludolphus* observes, that such too are the Patriarchs he sends into *Ethiopia*, who as they know little, do as little, only in a set Form of Words they ordain Under-Clerks just as wise as themselves. But they have no Bishops or Archbishops, so that the whole Cure of the Church lies upon the Abbot of his Monks. There are Overseers who take Care of the Secular Matters of the Church, and compose Differences between the Clergy. They have also Canons who are particularly employed in those Offices which require Hymns. The *Nibrat* seems to be their Dean, under which are the Presbyter and Sub-Presbyter, Deacon and Sub-Deacon. He adds, that all their Clergy marry once, except their Monks; but if they marry twice, they are degraded. *La Croix* says, they perform the Divine Office after the Manner of the *Grecians*, and use Wax-Tapers; and *Alvarez* says, he has seen on an *Easter-Day* 6000 Men rank'd in two Lines before the Door of the Church, with each a Taper in his Hand, to receive the Emperor when he goes to the Divine Office. He is preceded by four Priests, carrying on their Shoulders 13 consecrated Stones, cover'd with Cases of Gold and Silk. The Clerks follow with a Censer and a little Bell, at the Sound of which every one gets out of the Way, and those who

who are on Horseback alight. *La Croix* adds, they are pretty scrupulous in observing *Lent*; for besides the Time that they anticipate to make up for *Saturday*, on which they do not feast no more than on *Sunday*, they only eat once towards the Evening, when they say Mass, and receive the Communion. He says, that several Seculars live wholly upon Bread and Water during *Lent*, tho' they are permitted to eat Fish and Pulse; and that several Monks and Secular Priests go every *Wednesday* and *Friday* up to the Neck in cold Water. Besides, the Laity fast also from *Trinity* to *Advent Sunday*; all which, he says, does so weaken them, that their Enemies make use of the *Lent* Season to attack them. We shall next give some Account of the Separation of the *Abyssines* from the Greek Church in the Time of the Council of *Chalcedon*.

Ludolphus says, the *Alexandrian* Church remained in Unity with it self and with the Greek Church till the Council of *Chalcedon*, called by us the 4th General Council, which having condemned the Heresy of *Eutyches*, *Archimandrites* of *Constantinople*, and his Patron *Dioscorus* Patriarch of *Alexandria*, who asserted there was but one Nature and one Will in Christ, (from whence their Followers were called *Monothelites*.) *Dioscorus* and his Party being expelled from *Alexandria*, retired whither they could, and some to *Abyssinia*, where they gave out that the Council of *Chalcedon* design'd to overthrow the ancient Doctrine, and introduce *Nestorianism* into the Church. Wherefore the *Abyssines* embraced the Doctrine of *Dioscorus*, and cry'd him up for a Saint and Martyr, who had been scourged, had his Teeth pulled out, and was banished for standing to the Truth, while they condemn'd the Council of *Chalcedon* for going about to divide the Substance of Christ, and, contrary to the Council of *Ephesus*, to make two Persons of one, which they think is the just Consequence of asserting two Natures and Wills in Christ: Yet they condemn *Eutyches* as a Heretick, tho' he was of the same Opinion with *Dioscorus*, and applaud *Timotheus*, by whose Doctrine the Followers of *Eutyches* were convicted. In the mean time, as we observed before, they do in Effect acknowledge two Natures in God, tho' they

deny it in Words; so that the Dispute seems chiefly to be about the Forms of Essence, Substance, Person, and Nature, which are very equivocal in their Language, as well as in the Greek, for they commonly apply Nature to Things created, and therefore are afraid to attribute it to God. *La Croix* observes, that they are called *Jacobites* from one *Jacob* of *Syria*, who strenuously maintain'd the Opinion of *Dioscorus*, and call their Adversaries *Melchites*, i. e. Royalists, because they follow'd the Opinion of the Emperor *Marcian*. The latter, he says, are at last fallen in with the Tenets of *Nestorius*, who only differ'd from *Eutyches* in Terms, and the Councils which condemn'd them were of the same Opinion; but the Heat of Dispute and the Interests of Factions made Arguments about Words pass for Capital Controversies. They allow the Bishop of *Rome*, says *Ludolphus*, to be the first Patriarch, but deny his Supremacy, and think it Antichristian in him to pretend to a Jurisdiction over the whole Church of Christ. Besides Transubstantiation, Purgatory, &c. 'tis observed, that they also disclaim Service in an unknown Tongue, and Auricular Confession; that they use different Forms in Baptism; that they eat no Beasts forbid by the old Law; and that they are much inclin'd to give Alms, and visit the Sick. Dr. *Heylin* somewhat differs from the rest, and says, they baptize the Males 40, and the Females 18 Days after Circumcision; and hold, that Infants dying unbaptized, are sanctified in the Womb, by Vertue of the Eucharist received by the Mother after her Conception. He adds, that their Patriarch, who is elected by the *Abassine* Monks of St. *Anthony's* Order remaining in *Jerusalem*, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, has the 7th Place in the Session of all General Councils, the Archbishop of *Babylon* only interposing between him and the Patriarch of *Jerusalem*; and that in some Points he has equal Privilege with the Emperor himself, besides the sole Power of Excommunications; but the Emperor confers all other Ecclesiastical Dignities from the Bishoprick to the lowest Benefice.

To compleat this Head, we thought fit to give some Account of the Success of the *Portuguese* and other Popish Missionaries, who

who were invited over, and had obtain'd good Footing here; but were at last expelled, as follows:

La Croix says, Father *Covillon*, a Portuguese Jesuit, arrived here in 1491, in the Reign of *Scander* or *Alexander*, Son of *Bede-Marian*, and *H.lena* the famous Heroine, who was afterwards Governess to the Emperor *David*, who perswaded him to settle here, and gave him considerable Lands for his Possession. Eight Years after, the Empress *H.lena*, who then govern'd here during the Minority of the Emperor *David*, sent one *Matthew*, an Armenian Merchant, with Letters and Presents to *Emanuel* King of Portugal. He arrived there in 1514, and return'd to Ethiopia in 1520, (when *David* had begun to reign) with a Portuguese Ambassador, and a French Priest called *Alvarez*, who was the King of Portugal's Chaplain. After they had stay'd 6 Years, the Emperor sent them back with an Ambassador, and *Ludolphus* says he sent the Priest with Letters of Submission, which he deliver'd to Pope *Clement VII.* in an Assembly of Cardinals, and in the Presence of *Charles V.* upon which, tho' the *Abyssines* made another Interpretation of the King's Intentions, *Paul III.* tolerated their Countrymen at Rome, and gave them Assistance out of his Purse towards Printing the New Testament, with their Liturgies, in the Ethiopic Languages. *La Croix* says, that during this, *Mahomet Branhaoor*, Captain of the King of Zeilan, made great Incursions into Abyssinia, which obliged the Emperor *David* to send *John Bermudius*, a Portuguese, who was afterwards chief Patriarch of Ethiopia, in Company with some *Abyssines*, to beg Assistance of the King of Portugal, who accordingly sent *Christopher Gama* in 1540 with 250 Soldiers, before whose Arrival *David* dy'd, and was succeeded by *Claudius*. *Gama* defeated *Mahomet* with wonderful Success; but pressing into the Midst of his Enemies to recover a Picture of our Lord, he was taken, and afterwards put to Death. It seems the Emperor had promised to give the Portuguese a third Part of *Mahomet's* Dominions if they won the Victory; but *La Croix* observes, that he was so far from keeping to his Word, that he very ungratefully persecuted them without any Colour of Reason, for fear lest they should seize his Empire.

In the mean time *Ludolphus* says, there was a great Appearance of Friendship at Rome, and Pope *Julius III.* sent one *John Nunnus Baret*, a Portuguese Jesuit, with the Title of Patriarch, and other Jesuits, particularly *Andrew Oviedo*, a Spaniard, Bishop of Nice, (who was to be his Successor in case he dy'd) with Orders to sift the Emperor *Claudius's* Intentions. While they were in India, they sent Envoys to him, to whom he gave small Encouragement, but promis'd that the Persons from whom they were sent should have fitting Reception at Matzua, and be conducted thence to his Court. *Oviedo* and 5 Associates, who were accordingly dispatched, were kindly received by the King, only he took it ill that they should talk to him of yielding Obedience to the Pope of Rome; but *Oviedo* still pressed him to it, which occasioned many Verbal and Epistolary Disputes, till *Oviedo* left his Court in a Rage, and published a Writing, wherein he branded the *Abyssines* with Heresies; and *La Croix* tells us, that he excommunicated the Emperor, because he would not permit the Portuguese to settle in his Dominions. *Ludolphus* adds, that *Claudius* being soon after slain in Battle, his Brother *Menas*, who succeeded him, revoked all the Indulgences he had granted to Papists, published many severe Edicts against them, and sending for *Oviedo*, drew his Scymiter in a great Rage, and had like to have killed him, if he had not been prevented by some of his Nobles: Upon which he fled to *Frenionia*, and there taught the Portuguese 30 Years, till the Time of *Menas's* Successor, who was more mild to the Portuguese; but at length the Turks having shut up the Avenues into Abyssinia, the Jesuits were all taken and put to Death. Upon this the Archbishop of Goa, about the Beginning of the last Century, sent hither one *Peter Pais*, a Jesuit, a Man of ready Wit, vers'd in Arts and Sciences, and famous for his happy Method of teaching Children, whom the King *Zadengel* invited, and honourably received at Court in 1604, and was so delighted with his Disputes, Mass and Sermons, that he told his Friends he was resolved to submit to the Pope, publish'd an Edict enjoining all Persons no longer to observe their Sabbath as an Holiday, and wrote Letters to Pope *Clement VIII.* and *Philip III.* of Spain, offering them his Friend-

Friendship, and desiring a Supply of Jesuits: Upon which the Nobility conspir'd against him, and slew him in Battel. However *Peter* was kindly treated by his Successor *Susneus*, who finding the Jesuits more diligent, eloquent, and exemplary, in their Calling than his own Metropolitans, wrote both to the Pope and the King of Spain for the Assistance of the Portuguese; and after he had received an Answer from his Holiness, promised to own him for Universal Pastor, and that he would admit a Patriarch from Rome. Upon this, his Brother and many of the Officers of his Army made publick Profession of the Roman Faith, and few oppos'd it except their Monks. Nevertheless the King, to shew that he had not rashly embraced a new Religion, appointed a publick Disputation about the two Natures in Christ, at which the Jesuits obtained an easy Victory; and the King publish'd an Edict, requiring all Persons to hold, That there were two Natures in Christ, but united in one Divine Person; and by another afterwards, made it Death for any one to deny it. Upon this, the People were so enraged, that *Simeon*, one of the Metropolitans, with the King's Son, some of the Nobility, and all the Clergy and Monks, resolv'd to live and die together in Defence of their ancient Religion; and *Simeon* fix'd an Excommunication upon the Doors of the great Church against all that embraced the new one, which provoked the King to publish another Edict, giving Liberty to every Person to embrace the Romish Religion, while *Simeon* thunder'd out his *Anathema's* against all that maintain'd the two Natures in Christ. The King's Mother and several great Persons fearing a Slaughter, went with *Simeon* and many Monks to the King, and begged him that he would desist from introducing any Innovation in Religion; but he was immovable, and at last much Blood was shed. The chief Conspirators were *Jamanaxus*, *Ælius* the King's Son-in-Law, and the Eunuch *Calfo*; and to give the better Colour to the Rebellion, *Simeon* once more publickly excommunicated all that were of the Latin Religion. During this, the Jesuits translated *Maldonat* and other Commentators into the *Ethiopic* Language, and the *Alexandrians* pursued them with bitter Invectives.

At last *Ælius* by an Edict commands all the *Franks* to quit *Tigra*, musters his Army, and with a small Troop madly rushes into his Father's Camp, and rode up to his Pavilion; but the Alarm being taken, he was stoned and stabbed to Death; after which the Soldiers fled, *Simeon* was slain, and *Calfo* beheaded, but *Jamanaxus* pardon'd. Upon this the King put forth an Edict, prohibiting the Observation of the Jewish Sabbath, and commanding the Husbandmen to spend it in Plowing and Sowing, which occasion'd *Jonael*, the Viceroy of *Bagemdra*, and others, to revolt, and then the chief Courtiers begged the King with Tears to pity the poor ignorant People, and not disturb their Minds with unreasonable Changes; but the King justified his Transactions, and upbraided them for their Sedition. After this, *Jonael* sent him a sharp Letter, demanding the Expulsion of the Jesuits; upon which the King presently commanded his nimblest Forces to march, and forced the Rebels to fly to inaccessible Rocks, which he could only block up at a Distance; so that *Jonael* being weaken'd by Desertions, fled to the *Galans*, who promis'd him Protection; but being underhand tempted by the King, they slew him. Nevertheless the Inhabitants of *S. Gojam* took Arms on the same Account, and refus'd Obedience to their Lord *Ras-Seelax*, except he would burn the Books translated into *Ethiopic*, and hang up the Fathers; but *Ras-Seelax* resolv'd to fight them, and obtained a Victory over them, which cost him dear, because 400 Monks, who had devoted themselves to die for their Religion, fought most desperately. The King was so encouraged with all these Victories, that he publicly renounced the *Alexandrian* Worship, confessed his Sins after the Roman Manner to *Peter Pays*, dismissed all his Concubines, and soon after published his Conversion to Popery in a Manifesto, inviting his Subjects to do as he had done, but with very little Success, and his Son began to foment Sedition, but was forced to fly to the Rocks, from whence he was allur'd to a neighbouring Wood by a false *Gallan*, and was there slain. Now *Susneus* sent a Letter, requesting the Pope to send him a Patriarch. *Alphonfus Mendez*, a Portuguese Jesuit, was accordingly created and sent, and in 1624 he

arrived in the King's Camp, when 'twas agreed, that the King should publicly swear Obedience to the Pope on the 11th of *February* following, which was done accordingly upon the 4 Evangelists, in Presence of the Royal Family, the Governors of the Provinces, and a great Number of Peers and Clergy, who after him took the same Oath, to which *Ras-Seelax* added this Clause for himself, *viz.* That he would be faithful to *Basilides*, the King's eldest Son, as long as he protected the *Romish* Faith, otherwise he would be the first of his Enemies, and drawing his Scymiter, threaten'd that those who did not keep their Oaths, should feel its Weight, and so the Solemnity concluded with an *Anathema* upon all that should so break their Oath. Immediately after the King published Edicts, That none should say Mass, or do any Part of the Priestly Office, without a Licence from the Patriarch; so that the *Alexandrian* Orders being accounted unlawful, most of their Priests were constrain'd to receive new Ordination, upon Condition that they should observe the *Roman* Forms of Worship, and not succour the Rebels. It was further enjoin'd, that *Lent* and *Easter* should be observed according to the Canons of the *Romish* Church, and that the Ladies should take the Oath of Supremacy to the Pope. Then they took Care for a Seat and Revenue answerable to the Dignity of the Patriarch, and Residences were built in several Provinces for the Jesuits, who were busy in baptizing the new Converts, and ordaining Ecclesiastical Persons, tho' many of them had been both baptized and ordained before. Sermons were also preached after the Manner of *Europe*, and *Ludolphus* says, the Jesuits gained many Thousand Converts. About two Years after, the Patriarch made a Visitation, wherein he found some Disturbances, because he found the Country People still lik'd their old Way best. Besides, a Seminary was set up for the Education of the *Abyssine* and *Portuguese* Children, and the young Ladies being taught to act a Comedy, wherein the Devils were brought upon the Stage, the silly People ran away for Fear, crying out, *O dear, they have brought us Devils.* But the wiser Sort were more terrified with the real Tragedies that followed; for *Tecla George*, one of the King's

Sons-in-Law, conspired with two Noblemen, and declared for their old Worship, causing all the Popish Crucifixes and Rosaries to be burnt, and his Popish Chaplain to be put to Death; but he was defeated by one of the King's Viceroys, who took him and his Sister Prisoners, and hang'd them both on a Tree. After this, several Accidents concurr'd to render the Jesuits odious. The Patriarch thunder'd out his *Anathema* against the Captain of the Guards, for seizing and detaining certain Farms claim'd by the Monks, which so frighten'd the Man, that he swoon'd; but the King interceded, and obtain'd his Absolution. However, the Nobles were offended to see their chief Counsellors so enslaved by a foreign Priest for the Sake of a Farm, which the King might take from the Monks when he pleas'd. Besides, the Abbot being dead, and buried in a Church consecrated after the *Roman* Manner, the Patriarch pronounc'd it profan'd by the Burial of a Heretick in it, so that Mass could not be said there. Upon this, the Rector caus'd it to be dug up and thrown by, which made the *Abyssines* complain that the *Franks* were more cruel than their bitterest Enemies, to deprive their Dead of decent Burial; adding, that by this the Living might see what they were to expect. In short, the People were generally incens'd, and the King began to look upon these Proceedings of the Patriarch as Diminutions of his Prerogative, which made him give Ear to his Adversaries, who at first only desired that the ancient Forms might be mended where it was necessary, without abrogating the whole, for so the People would be more quiet, who could not distinguish between the old and new Form of Worship. This was no sooner granted by the Patriarch, but 'twas reported that the King was return'd to his old Religion, and his Courtiers whisper'd him, that he would be in great Danger unless he renounced the *Roman* Religion, which was then grown very odious to the People. Soon after an Enthusiast came into the Palace, and cry'd out, That unless the King forthwith returned to the ancient Religion, he should be severely punished within a Fortnight. And tho' the Fellow was laugh'd at and drubb'd, yet the Vulgar reported, that an Angel was sent from Heaven

ven to the King to admonish him to turn to the ancient Faith. In the mean time the Courtiers propagated the Hatred against the Jesuits, and incensed the King against *Ras-Seelax*, the chief Friend of the *Portuguese*, upon a Jealousy lest he should invade the Royal Dignity; whereupon the King deprived him of great Part of his Lands, and his Military Commands. But tho' *Tecla George* had suffer'd, yet the Rebellion continued, for the *Agawi* chose one *Melcax*, a Youth of the Royal Blood, to whom resorted all that were disaffected to the King, and hated the *Roman* Religion, who were called *Lastaneers*, from *Lasta*, an invincible Rock; the chief Seat of the Rebellion. The King marched against them in Person with 27000 Men; but the Country People roll'd down Stones upon them from the Mountains, which put them into such Disorder, that the King's Left Wing was surrounded, and had like to have been cut to Pieces, if *Ke-bax* with 300 Men had not come to their Relief. Then the King went home, and recalled *Seelax*, who drove the *Lastaneers* back into their former Holes, after they had ravaged the Country, and suppressed another Rebellion in *Bagamedra*. But *Ke-bax* was surrounded and killed, with a great Slaughter of his Men. Upon this, the King was more and more pressed to forsake the Jesuits, and *Melcax* was so vain as to take upon him the Stile and Prerogatives of a King. He was daily increased with Numbers, and encouraged by the Nobility of *Tigra*, to whom he sent a Viceroy, with a select Band of Soldiers for a Convoy, who being surpris'd in their Jollitry, left 4000 Slain upon the Spot; but the *Lastaneers* reveng'd their Death, by killing an equal Number of the Royalists; whereupon *Ras-Seelax* was condemned for not sending timely Succours, and his Lands and Offices were granted to *Baslides*. This occasioned a fresh Complaint against the Jesuits, that as they had subjected the Empire in Ecclesiastical Matters to the Pope, so they intended to bring it under the Dominion of the *Portuguese* in Seculars; and that to this End, instead of Temples and Residences, they built Castles and Forts, from which they could not be driven by Spears and Arrows. The King gave some Ear to these Complaints, but still carried it fair to the Je-

suits, and kindly received a Bishop sent from *Rome*. And when he granted Indulgences for the Jubilee in 1625, some saying, *Who can forgive Sins but God?* He answer'd, That the Use of the Keys given to *Peter* belong'd to the Pope. Much about this Time the Viceroy of *Gojam* revolted, but was taken and drubbed to Death, and many of his Accomplices executed, which made the *Lastaneers* desperate, so that the King marched against them with all his Forces, but could not subdue them, because they fled to the Holes in the Rocks, where they lurk'd till they surpris'd a select Party of the King's Forces, and destroy'd them; after which the King, fearing to be closed up, retired in Hast to *Dembea*.

And now, says *Ludolphus*, the Jesuits Enemies redoubled their Complaints, that there would be no Peace so long as the *Romish* Religion bore Sway, and that it would be more expedient to retain the ancient Ceremonies, which were not contrary to Faith. By these and the like Suggestions the King was at last prevailed upon to press *Mendez* to remit as far as he could; which, for the saving all, he consented to, on Condition that nothing should be remitted by publick Acts, but by tacit Connivance. But when the King put forth an Edict, granting the Use of all ancient Ceremonies not repugnant to the *Romish* Faith, he was sharply reproved by *Mendez* for meddling with Spiritual Affairs. At last it was agreed by some of the Fathers, that the ancient Liturgy, corrected, should be read in the Mass; that their Festival should be kept at the usual Time, except *Easter*, and those that depend upon it; that any one, instead of the Sabbath, might fast on the 4th Holiday: And the King answered *Mendez*, That since his Religion was not introduced by Preaching and Miracles, but by his own Edicts, he had no Reason to complain of his last Edict. But these Concessions did not pacify the *Lastaneers* nor the other Malecontents; and the King, notwithstanding his Devotion to the Jesuits, being tired with the Complaints of the People, and the Importunities of his Friends, and troubled with a Jealousy of his Brother, the Contumacy of the *Lastaneers*, the Diminution of his Prerogative, and the Dread of losing his Kingdoms, began at length to think of abrogating the

Roman, and restoring the *Alexandrian* Worship. And what is very strange, he was fixed in this Resolution by a total Rout which he gave his Enemies the *Lastaneers*, of whom killing 8000 upon the Place, he was carried by some of the Favourers of the old Religion to see the Multitude of the Slain, where he was thus accosted: "These, Sir, are neither *Mahometans* nor Heathens, but Christians, once your Subjects, and our dear Countrymen, and with the same Sword that slays them, you stab your own Bowels; for they bear no Hatred to you, but are only averse to the Worship to which you would compel them. Therefore forbear, we beseech you, to compel them to Novelties, for which we are called Apostates.

These Importunities were seconded by the joint Prayers of the Queen, his eldest Son *Basilides*, and his Brother *Jamanax*, by which the King's Mind was at length so mollified, that *Basilides* summon'd a Meeting of the Nobility and chief Counsellors, wherein it was concluded, that there was no Remedy for the Calamities of the Kingdom but restoring the *Alexandrian* Religion. And the better to perswade those of a different Opinion, they gave it out, that the *Romans* and *Alexandrians* agreed in Points of Faith; that both affirmed Christ was true God and true Man; and that the Difference about one or two Natures was only a Question about Words, and not worth the Ruin of a mighty Empire: Whereupon the King gave Liberty for any one to return to the *Alexandrian* Worship. Upon this, the Patriarch and chief Fathers desired Audience of the King, wherein he rebuk'd and threaten'd him with the Indignation of God, the Pope, and the King of *Portugal*, for abusing the Victories he had gained of the *Portuguese*, to the Prejudice of the *Romish* Religion, for granting Toleration to the *Alexandrian* Worship, and for his Apostacy from that which he had freely embraced. To all which the King said, That he had done what he could, and never intended a total Alteration of Religion, but only a Concession of some Ceremonies. On the 24th of June, the Favourers of the old Religion prevailed with the Emperor for a publick Edict, to give his Subjects Leave to return to the Religion of their Ancestors,

which he signified to the Patriarch, who desired that a Difference might be put between those who had not embraced the *Romish* Religion, whom he might connive at, and those who had embraced it, to whom he could not grant the Liberty of returning to their old Religion without Sin; by which *Mendez* thought to put a Bar upon the King and all the Court, who professed the *Romish* Religion. But the King only answer'd, *How can this be done? I am now no more Lord of my Kingdom*; and presently the Drums beat, Trumpets sounded, and Proclamation was made, That since an innumerable Multitude had perished thro' Dislike of the *Roman* Religion, they might now freely exercise the Religion of their Ancestors. This Edict was received with universal Joy, and henceforward the old Ceremonies were used in the Communion, and Grape-stone Liquor instead of Wine. A few Days after, a general Circumcision was appointed, and the ancient Manner of washing at *Epiphany* was used by some to cleanse them from *Romish* Superstition. Then the Jesuits were turned out of their Churches, and their stately Cathedral at *Gorgora*, from which they carried all the consecrated Furniture, after they had spoiled the Sculpture and Pictures. *Susneus* dying in December 1652, *Ras-Seelax*, who continued firm in the *Romish* Religion, was banished, his Goods sequestred, and all that favour'd the Jesuits banished or put to Death. But the *Lastaneers* being uneasy till the Fathers were all turned out of *Ethiopia*, they were first sent to *Fremona*, where their Goods and Arms were taken from them, and then being commanded by the King to remove, they lurked for a while in a private House, till they were pulled out by the Ears, and deliver'd to the *Turks* in May 1634. And the *Abyssines* hasten'd their Removal, because they had sent for a Military Power from *India* to settle their Religion.

Ludolphus observes, that tho' the King's Command to depart was general, yet *Mendez* left behind him several Jesuits, who lurked about for some Time, but were at last taken, and most of them hanged. *Mendez* stay'd a Year with the *Turks* at *Suaquena*, but at last redeemed himself and his Companions with 4000 *German* Dollars, and got safe to *Goa*, from whence he sent an Account

count into *Portugal* of the sad State of *Ethiopia*, and desired a Military Aid to restore him. But all his Negotiations were in vain, because there was no considerable Party here to assist any Forces that should be sent, for the King put all to Death that favour'd the *Roman* Fathers, which occasioned the Ruin of many of the Nobility, and several Priests; and fearing an Invasion from the *Portuguese*, he bribed the Bashaws of *Suaquena* and *Matzua* to deny Entrance to any of the *Franks*. The Congregation for Propagating the Faith hearing that the *Portuguese* were generally odious, sent 6 *Capuchin* Fryars, all *Frenchmen*, with Letters of safe Conduct from the Emperor of the *Turks*, four of whom being killed in their Journey hither, the other two that stay'd at *Matzua* chose to return home. Yet three other *Capuchins* ventur'd to go to *Suaquena*, whence they sent a Letter to congratulate the *Abyssine* King; but he order'd the Bashaw to send him their Heads, which he did accordingly, with their Skins flead off, that he might know them to be *Franks* by their Colour, and Priests by their Shaving. 'Tis said, that *Mendez* dy'd in *India* in 1656; since whose Death, we have no certain Relations from *Abyssinia*. But the Report of *Tellez*, that their King had embraced *Mahometism*, is thought to be a Fiction, since his Letters to *Batavia*, dated since that Report was raised, begin with a Christian Preface. This leads us naturally to their Political History of *Abyssinia*, and an Account of their Kings.

The King of the *Abyssines* has been commonly known to *Europeans* by the Name of *Presbyter* or *Prestre-John*, which *Ludolphus* says was first given him by the *Portuguese*, in Mistake for one of the Name in *India* mentioned by *Paul* the *Venetian*: But our Author affirms, that some Ages ago there was a Christian Prince in the utmost Parts of *Africa*, who for his eminent Sanctity was called by the neighbour *Persians*, *Prestre Jan* or *Chan*, *Prestegiani* or Prince of the *Adories*, which in the *Persian* Language signifies an Apostolical Prince of excellent Servants, because of the happy Temper of the People or Prince of the Christians, who was driven out of his Kingdom long ago by *Cenclu* King of the *Tartars*; for *Ludolphus* observes, that the *Abyssines* are better priz'd

than others. *La Croix* tells us, 'tis the Opinion of some, that this Prince reign'd in *Cathay* or the N. Part of *China*; and *Morery*, that he was a Priest as well as King. *Pliny* thinks that *Candace* was the general Name of all their ancient Queens; and if we may believe *Heylin*, the *Ethiopians* say, that after the baptizing of her Son *Philip* by the Eunuch, the succeeding Emperors had the Name of *Philip*, till the religious Life of *John*, a Contemporary of the Emperor *Constantians*, honour'd as a Saint after his Decease, made them take his Name. Some say, that the Term *Prestre John* is but a Corruption of *Pretagian* or *Precious John*; and that the Word *Prete*, by which his Subjects call him, importeth no less; but *Heylin* says, his proper Name is *Prestegian*, and that 'twas given him for the Orthodoxy of his Belief. To his we shall add the Opinion of *Luyts*, who says, that about 500 Years ago there was a Christian Prince of a mighty Empire in the most remote Parts of *Asia*, who was a *Nestorian*, and named *Jahanna Ung-Chan* or *Unt Can*, and *Padesha Prestegiani* by his *Armenian* or *Nestorian* Subjects: But our Author observes, that he was not of *Ethiopia*, nor ever fled hither for Refuge, while many are of Opinion, that the Name of *Prestre John* owes its Original to that Monarch's Title, because *Peter Covillanus*, Ambassador from *John II.* King of *Portugal*, to *Prestre John*, resided at the Court of a Christian Prince in this Country that resembled *Prestre* in many Things reported of him, who was sty'd by the *Levant* Merchants *Prestre Chan*, i. e. a King or Prince of the Slaves; and among his own Subjects, *Gian* or *Belul-Gian*, i. e. a Precious Jewel; and *Gyam*, or arpotent King. From hence the *Portuguese* called him *Prestre John* or *Paep*. To conclude, *Hornius* observes this Difference, viz. that the *Asiatick* Prince was called *Prestegan* by the *Persians* and *Nestorians*, because he was an Apostolick Person; but that the *Abyssine* Prince was called by the *Indians* and *Persians*, *Prestre Chan*, i. e. King of Slaves, because great Numbers of them were brought from *Ethiopia*. *Ludolphus* says, that the Name of the King of the *Abyssines* is no more in the *Ethiopic* Language than King *Negus*; and that his common Title is *Negula*, *Nagust*, *Zaityopia*, King of the Kings of *Ethiopia*, or *Negascha*, *Nagascht*, King of Kings,

to distinguish him from the Rulers of some Provinces, who are stiled *Negus*; upon which Account the *Portuguese* call him Emperor of the *Abyssines*. But there's a new Name commonly given to the Kings of *Ethiopia* at their coming to the Crown, which generally signifies Reverence, as *Melech Saghead*, a Venerable Ruler, and sometimes a Gem, as *Wanag Sadhed*, a Precious Gem: Whence his Ambassador being sent into *Portugal*, called him *Precious John*, instead of *Preter Gianni*. The *Persians* and *Indians* call him *Padesha*, a Name which they only give to great Potentates. Besides these, he had many other Titles, as, "The Pillar of Faith, the Virgin's Incense, Supreme of his Kingdoms, the Beloved of God, sprung from the Stock of *Judah*, the Son of *David*, the Son of *Solomon*, the Son of the Column of *Sion*, the Son of the Seed of *Jacob*, the Son of the Hand of *Mary*, the Son of *Nahu* after the Flesh, the Son of *Peter* and *Paul* after the Spirit, Emperor of the Higher and Lesser *Ethiopia*, and of the most mighty Kingdoms, Dominions, and Countries of *Xoa*, *Goa*, *Cassares*, *Fatigar*, *Angotæ*, *Balignazo*, *Adea*, *Vangne*, and *Goyami*, where are the Fountains of the *Nile*; *Amara*, *Banguamedron*, *Ambea*, *Vangucum*, *Tigremaon*, *Barnagasso*, *Sabarim*, the Birth-place of the Queen of *Sheba*; and the Lord of all the Regions unto the Confines of *Egypt*." But *Ludolphus* says, this Variety caus'd great Confusion in their History, and therefore they are now quite disus'd; and the King, when he writes Letters abroad, only says, *Let the little Book of the Letter of Melec Saghed, King of the Kings of Ethiopia, come to the Hands of, &c.* His Seal is a Lion holding a Cross, with this Motto; *The Lion of the Tribe of Juda has won*; and they have a Tradition, that their Kings are descended from *Solomon*, which seems to be uncertain; but they may unquestionably derive their Succession from *Atzbeha* and *Abraba*, two Brothers, under whom the *Axumites* first received the Christian Religion; so that they are as ancient as any Royal Families in *Europe*. But *Bara*, an expert Herald, says, the King of *Ethiopia*'s Coat of Arms is *Luna*, a Cross Portate, *Mars* charg'd with a Crucifix, *Sol* between two Scourges of the 2d. The *Ethiopians*, according to *Ludolphus*, say, that the Queen

of *Sheba* was their Queen *Maqueba* or *Makeda*, who went with a great Train of Nobility and Royal Presents to King *Solomon*'s Court at *Jerusalem*, where she was by him taught to worship the true God, and after her Return, with abundance of Presents, she brought forth a Son called *Menilehec* or *Melec*, whom *Solomon* begot, and nam'd *David*. *Origen*, *Austin*, &c. agree that she came out of *Ethiopia*; but *Cyprian*, *Justin*, &c. say, she came from *Arabia*, because she carried such Presents with her as are the special Products of that Country; but our Author observes, that these two Opinions are easily reconciled, if with the ancient Writers we extend the ancient *Ethiopia* into *Arabia*: For they affirm the *Sabeans* and *Homerites* to have been Nations of *Ethiopia*, which no question were formerly seated in *Arabia Felix*; the rather, because that Region which the *Hebrews* call *Cush*, is by the Seventy render'd *Ethiopia*, and yet that Country is a Part of *Arabia*, whence the *Arabians* are called *Cushites*. For he notes, that the *Ethiopia* of the Ancients was divided into *Asiatic* and *African*; so that the Queen of *Sheba* may be said to come out of *Ethiopia*, tho' the *Sabeans* were a People of *S. Arabia*. Several Things are alledged to confirm the Descent of their Kings from *Solomon*, viz. the Consent of the Nation, the common Title of their Kings, who are all called *Israelitish* Kings, and the Motto in their Coat of Arms above mentioned; but the chief is the Continuation of their Officers in the same Family, and the Observation of other Customs and Ceremonies us'd in the *Hebrew* Commonwealth. Yet *Ludolphus* doubts of the Truth of this Tradition, because the *Israelitish* Rites might be introduced after *Solomon*'s Time upon another's Account, and he thinks the Title of *Israelitish* Kings does no more prove their Descent from them, than the Title of the King of the *Romans* proves his from the old *Romans*. Besides, he thinks it less probable, because then they had not the Scriptures either in their own or the *Hebrew* Language, and were not more earnest to visit the Temple of *Jerusalem*, and to assist their Brethren, when *Rehoboam*, the Brother of *Manelehec*, suffer'd the Revolt of the 10 Tribes, and when he was invaded by *Sisak* King of *Egypt*, when the *Jews* were carried Captive into *Babylon* by

by the King of *Affyria*, and when they were subdued by the *Romans*, tho' the Passages thro' *Arabia* or *Egypt* and the *Red Sea* were then open; and lastly, because they had not *Solomon's* Human Learning as well as his Religion, which generally go together: For he observes, that their Manner of Writing and Reading differs very much from that of the *Hebrews*, tho' some Letters seem to be borrow'd from the *Samaritans*. *Heylin* takes Notice, that *Josephus* giving too much Credit to some Talmudical Tales, or rather in Partiality to the *Jews*, tells how the *Ethiopians* invaded and endangered *Egypt*, till they were repulsed by *Moses*, who besieged and took the City of *Meroe*, or rather had it deliver'd to him by *Tharbis*, the King's Daughter, who fell in Love with him, and was married to him. But this Story is rejected by Men of Learning, as is also that which the *Ethiopians* tell of their own Original, namely, that *Chus* the Son of *Cham* first reigned in *Ethiopia*, to whom succeeded his Son *Régma*, and next after *Dedan*; and that from his Death to the Reign of *Aruch*, (the Time whereof is not mentioned) the People lived in Caves, as did the *Troglodytes*, an ancient Nation here several Ages after, till *Arac* first built the City of *Axuma*, which taught them the Use of Towns. But *Heylin* says, the Substance of the Legend is, that Queen *Maqueda* above-mentioned, the 4th from *Aruch*, sent her Son *Melilech* at 20 Years of Age to his Father *Solomon*, who instructed him in the Law, circumcised him, and called him *David*; after which, says he, they returned home with *Azarias*, the Son of *Zadok* the Priest, who stole the two Tables of the Law, and brought them into *Ethiopia*, where the old Queen resigned the Empire to her Son, whose Successors were afterwards called *David*, till *Indion*, the Eunuch of Queen *Candace*, returning home, baptized their young Prince by the Name of *Philip*. We refer to *Heylin* himself for his Confutation of this Legend, and shall only take Notice of what he says about *Maqueda*, who he affirms was Queen of the *Sabaens* in *Arabia Felix*, and not of the *Ethiopians*, not only because of the great Length of the Journey from hence to *Jerusalem*, but because if *Solomon* had had a Son by this Lady, 'tis probable he would never have suffer'd *Egypt* to have been quiet, whilst their

King made War upon *Rehoboam*, another of *Solomon's* Sons. The first Action of Moment which *Heylin* gives Credit to concerning these *Ethiopians*, is that which happen'd betwixt them and *Cambyses* King of *Persia*, who having a Mind to unite *Ethiopia* to *Egypt*, sent Ambassadors hither to search into the Passages of the Country, with a Tun of Wine, Bracelets, a Purple Habit, and a Box of sweet Ointments, for Presents to the King, who understanding the Cause of their Visit, rejected the Unguents and the Purple Robe as too effeminate, and laugh'd at the Bracelets as too weak Fetters to hold in a Prisoner, but was very well pleased with the Wine, and gave the Ambassadors at their Departure a strong *Ethiopian* Bow, a Foot longer than the *Persian* Bows, bidding them tell their Master, That till every *Persian* could bend it, it would not be safe for them to war upon their Dominions; and that he had good Reason to thank the Gods for giving the *Ethiopians* such Content as not to aim at the Conquest of their Neighbours Dominions. The next Transaction mentioned by *Heylin* is the Provocation given to the *Romans* in the Reign of *Augustus* by Queen *Candace*, who made War upon *Egypt*, but was forced by *Petronius* to purchase a Peace, with the Loss of Part of her Country. After this he observes, that the *Romans*, to curb them for the future, garrison'd *Philæ*, an *Ethiopian* City on the Borders of *Egypt*, and made it the Seat of their Deputy, till 'twas abandon'd in the Time of *Dioclesian*, because of the Charge of keeping it. He adds, that henceforwards the Kings of *Ethiopia* were reckon'd as Friends to the *Romans*, insomuch that the Emperor *Justinian* sent to *Helistheus*, as his Successor *Junius* did to *Archetas*, the then Kings of this Country, for Help against the *Persians*.

Upon the whole 'tis agreed, that the *Abyssine* Kings descended from the above-mentioned *Menelehec* or *David*; but we have little Certainty of 'em, only *Ludolphus* thinks Christ's Nativity happen'd in the 18th Year of *Basen's* Reign; and that Queen *Candace*, whose Eunuch is mention'd *Acts* 8. 27. was only Queen of that Part of *Ethiopia* called the Isle of *Meroe*, (who was succeeded by Queens of her Name for many Years according to *Pliny*) because 'twas forbidden by the Laws of *Ethiopia* that a Woman should

reign after *Menelebec*. *Ludolphus* says, that after *Basen*, for 327 Years, there's no Certainty till the Times of *Abreha* and his Brother *Atzbeha*, mentioned in the *Ethiopic* Liturgy, and by their Poet, who says, they taught the Gospel of Christ, and built him Temples. All Historians agree, that their next famous King was *Caleb*, who being informed that *Dunawas*, the last King of the *Sabeans*, afterwards called *Hamerites*, being a Jew, caused the Christians to be burnt together by Hundreds in large Pits dug for the Purpose, crossed over into *Arabia* with 120000 Men, and a Fleet of 423 Ships, defeated *Dunawas*, ruin'd his Kingdom, restor'd *Nagra* to the Christians, and made the Son of *St. Areta*, whom he had burnt, Governor. This Victory of *Caleb*, says our Author, together with the Martyrs of *Negra*, are celebrated by the *Ethiopic* Poet, who also mentions his Successor *Gebra-Meskel*, or the Servant of the Cross, who was succeeded by *Constantine Fiesenna* and *Delnoad*, who reigned about A. C. 960, and was the last of the *Salomonean* Family.

After his Death, *Ludolphus* says, the Kings of the *Zagean* Family held the Sceptre 540 Years. Of this Race he mentions *Newaja Christos*, or the Wealth of Christ, whom the Poet praises for building the House of God, and impoverishing himself to adorn it; and *Lalibala*, whose future Grandeur was portended by a Swarm of Bees that fell on him while an Infant, without doing him Hurt. After he began to reign, 'tis said he sent for Workmen from *Egypt*, and caused them to hew Temples and other stately Structures out of the solid Rock, only leaving where Need requir'd Pillars, Arches, and Walls, without cementing the Stones or Bricks with Lime or Lome, or joining the Roof with Rafter. *Francis Alvarez* attests upon Oath, that he saw 10 of these Temples, and brought over Draughts of them to *Europe*, *Ludolphus* tells us, that this generous Prince reigned 40 Years, and that the last of the Race was *Naacuto Laab*, who dy'd about A. D. 1300.

After his Death, our Author says, the Nobility of the Province of *Shema* restor'd *Joaninlec* or *Iconomlaco*, a Prince of the *Salomonean* Race, to the Throne of his Ancestors, whose Posterity 'tis said enjoy it to this Time. *Telles* reckons up 16 Kings to *Zar-a-*

Jacob. The chief Princes of this Race mentioned by *Ludolphus* are,

I. *Baeda-Marjam* or *Bede-Marian*, who he says came to the Crown about 1465, and died in 1475, leaving his Widow *Helena* behind him, a Woman of great Prudence and Courage, and famous among the *Europeans* for her Letters to *Emanuel I.* King of *Portugal*. She had the chief Management of Affairs during the Minority of *Etana Dangel*, called afterwards at his Inauguration

II. *David*. He was but 11 Years old when he began to reign. He was very prosperous at first; but giving himself up to Luxury, was forced to fly to the Rock *Damo*, where he died *Ætat.* 46. He was succeeded by

III. *Claudius* his Son, who came to the Kingdom when 'twas miserably shatter'd by the *Gallans*; but by the Assistance of *John II.* King of *Portugal*, who sent the valiant *Gama*, formerly mentioned, he overthrew vast Armies of the Barbarians, and laid the Foundation of restoring the *Abyssinian* Empire. *Ludolphus* says, he was very learned and stout, but was slain in Battle by the *Adelans* in 1558 or 1559, after he had gain'd great Advantages over them. He was succeeded by his Brother

IV. *Menas*, whom *Heylin* calls *Adam*. *Ludolphus* says, he was naturally cruel, and denied the *Portuguese* that Liberty of Religion which *Claudius* had granted; whereupon his Subjects revolted, and he was defeated and kill'd in Battle by one *Balruagassus*, a great Captain, whom *Heylin* styles the Viceroy of *Barnagasso*, who called in the *Turks* to his Assistance: Since which Time they have been Masters of the Coast upon the *Red Sea*.

V. *Sarza Denghel* succeeded, who was both stout and wise. He first drove the *Turks* out of *Tigra*, and would have forced them to quit the *Red Sea* Coast, but that our Author says he was recalled to defend his Dominions against the *Gallans*, who, after 25 Years Rapines upon his Country, began to form Armies. He was prosperous in his Wars, subdued *Enarrea*, and caused the Prince of it to turn Christian. He was firm to the *Alexandrian* Religion; and tho' he so far approved of the *Jesuits* Manners, that he granted them Liberty, yet he did

not like their Doctrine. *Ludolphus* says, he left no Male Issue behind him, except two natural Sons, of whom *Jacob*, the youngest, being but 7 Years of Age, was best beloved, which occasioned a bloody Civil War about the Succession, tho' the King, to prevent it, had declared his Brother's Son *Zadengel* his Successor, in Presence of his Nobles. But the latter being ambitious of having all the Sway in their own Hands during *Jacob*'s Minority, crown'd him, and removed *Zadengel* from Rock to Rock, lest his Subjects should join him. But our Author says, that after *Jacob* came to 15 Years of Age, he assumed the Government into his own Hands, which made the Guardians recal *Zadengel*, who was then lurking in the remotest Mountains of the Empire.

VI. *Zadengel*. They saluted him King by the Name of *Asnaff Saghed*. Our Author says, he was mild to a Fault, for he did not cut off the Nose and Eyes of *Jacob*, as is usually done to Rivals in the Empire, nor banish any of his Enemies, as by Law he might have done; but he praises him for his undaunted Courage, infomuch that when the *Gallans*, upon the Court Divisions, broke into *Abyssinia* with three Armies, and so overpower'd the King's Forces, that he was advis'd to an early Flight, he answer'd, *Here will I die, you may fly if you please, and so escape the Fury of the Gallans, but never the Infamy of deserting your King*. This so animated the Soldiers, that they broke in among the *Gallans* like desperate Men, and defeated them with such a Slaughter as was never known before. Then with a swift March he led his Army over Mountains and Rocks, and put another of the Enemy's Bodies to Flight with the same Success, and the 3d Army fled into their Fastnesses, where the *Abyssines* dislodged 400 of them, and put every one to Death. But about the Beginning of the 16th Century, when he embraced the Religion of *Rome*, as formerly mentioned, and began to prefer the *Portuguese* before his own Subjects, he was so hated by the People, that his chief Ministers and Nobility conspir'd against him, and forced him to a Battle, in which he fought bravely, but was at last abandon'd by his Soldiers, and killed with Darts thrown at a Distance into his Body. Our Author observes, that the Rebels pretended the

Portuguese designed to establish their Religion by Force of Arms, and so seize their Kingdom. He says, that after this Prince's Death, there was a Contest between *Susneus*, *David*'s Grandchild, and *Jacob*, about the Right of Succession, which was decided by the Sword to the Advantage of *Susneus*, and with the Slaughter of many of his Enemies, particularly *Jacob*, and *Peter* the Patriarch, who had thunder'd out his *Anathemas* against him. 'Tis said, those that escaped the Sword fled with so much Precipitation, tho' *Susneus* did not pursue them, that many of them, ignorant of the Country, fell headlong in the Night from a steep Rock.

VII. *Susneus* or *Sazinofius* courted the Friendship of the *Portuguese*, that they might teach him Gunnery, and the Use of Fire-Arms; and for this End he kindly received the Jesuits, set up the Popish Religion, and swore Obedience to the Pope, which was the Cause of several Wars, formerly described. A counterfeit *Jacob* started up in the 2d Year of his Reign; but by the Help of two Noblemen, who pretended to be his Friends, he was apprehended and put to Death. A little after this, our Author says, another Pretender came to *Paris* in 1631, or (as some say) 1638, that called himself *Tragax*, and feigned himself the Son of *Jacob*, and Heir to *Ethiopia*. He had Certificates from the Monks of *Palæstine*. The French King entertained him as a great Prince, and gave him a good Pension, and he had such a graceful Mien and Presence, that the Court never detected him, till he killed himself with Debauchery. Our Author adds, that *Susneus* was courteous and warlike, but very unhappy by his continual Wars, and the frequent Rebellion of his Subjects, upon the Account of the Change of his Religion, and that he died in 1632, leaving behind him several Sons and Daughters. He was succeeded by his Son

VIII. *Baslides*, who banish'd the Jesuits and their Patriarch, and would not allow the *Portuguese* a Priest to say Mass; after which he refused farther Commerce with the *Europeans*, for fear of the Forces which he was told were coming from *Rome* and *Portugal* to revenge that Affront; so that we have nothing more of Certainty about him or his Successors to this Time, only *Heylin* tells us, that in 1686, an Account

was given from *Hispahan*, the Capital of *Persia*, by a *Romish* Monk, that *Negus Jassock Adian Saguid* had succeeded *John Basilides*, and that the *Gallas* had provok'd him to lead all his Forces against them. This, adds the Account, is all the Changes that have happen'd here in Church or State since 1631; so that *Heylin* thinks this a Proof, that the same Family still holds the Sceptre.

We come next to give an Account of the *Abyssinian* Court and Government, and first of the Royal Family, according to *Ludolphus*.

He ascribes their frequent Rebellions in Part to their uncertain Race of Succession, and says, that tho' they pretend that none but the next a-kin lawful Male Issue may succeed; yet sometimes, by the Caballing and Interest of the Nobility and chief Officers, the younger Brother is preferred before the elder, and sometimes an illegitimate Son before a legitimate Kinsman. And because this made those on the Throne continually jealous of their Rivals, their Brothers us'd to be confin'd to the Rocks of *Geshem* and *Ambasel*, till their Turn came to succeed in the Throne, during which none durst facilitate their Escape, and the Prince Regent was always secure from Civil Wars. Our Author observes, that this Custom continued as a Fundamental Law in *Ethiopia* for 230 Years, till 1590, when King *Nadod* being sent for from the Rock to succeed, was so tenderly affected to his Son, that he prevailed with the Nobility to abolish this Custom.

The King's Power is absolute both in Ecclesiastical and Civil Affairs. He summons all Synods of the Clergy; and whenever he thinks necessary, sends for the Metropolitan out of *Egypt*, exercises full Jurisdiction over him and the rest of the Clergy, and punishes them according to their Offences; but he does not nominate to Benefices, as we formerly observed. His Power in Secular Affairs is bounded by no positive Laws, but sometimes he dispenses with those that are reckon'd the Fundamental Laws of the Kingdom. He has the sole Disposal of War and Peace, and all the Prerogatives that a King can claim; so that no private Person, except some few, can call

any thing his own, but all Lands and Farms are held at the King's Pleasure. Our Author observes, that this Custom makes them very submissive to their Kings, for they serve him both in Peace and War, and carry him Presents according to their Ability, in Hopes of obtaining new Farms, or securing those they have. Yet he tells us, there are some ancient illustrious Families who enjoy both Lands and Præfectures by Right of Inheritance, especially in *Tigra* and *Dambea*, over whom the King claims no Authority, but to confer the publick Employments Yearly upon others of the same Family.

Ludolphus remarks, that this great Power made them formerly terrible to their Neighbour Nations, especially the *Arabians*; and when the *Saracens* grew stronger, they relinquish'd *Axuma*, and conquer'd the Highland Parts of *Africa*; but they were ruin'd by their Wars with the *Adelans* and *Gallans*. However he says, their Power is still so great, that they might conquer those Barbarians, and recover their lost Dominions, if they would use *European* Arts and Arms, and encourage them by building Towns, and driving Commerce, and if the King would give his People and Soldiers some Inheritance in the Lands that are won from the Enemy, and erect them into Lordships. For this End, our Author thinks the Assistance of *European* Princes would be necessary, not only out of Charity, but to lessen the Power of the *Turk*, by depriving him of the Dominion of the *Red Sea*, and the Commerce of *Egypt*; and he blames the *Ethiopians* for permitting the *Turks* to be Masters of the Ports and Islands in the *Red Sea*, because 'tis thereby left to their Discretion what Persons or Commodities shall pass in or out.

He says, their King's Revenues are not paid in ready Money, but in the Products and Manufactures of the Country. *Enarrea* pays 1500 Ounces of Gold per Annum, *Gojam* 1100, and some Garments to the Value of 3000 *German* Dollars, together with 200 *Fustian* Tapestries; *Tigra* 25000 *Pataches*, *Dembea* 5000, and the others in Proportion. The Tolls are generally granted to the Nobility for their Subsistence, except those of the high Mountain *Lamalmora*, over which all the Merchandize must pass from

from the Red Sea into *Habessinia*, which the King reserves to himself. His Table is served also with Provisions from his own Lands and Farms, and *Dembea*, *Gojam*, and *Bagemdra*, find him Corn and Flesh; but his chief Tribute is from the Graziers, who pay him every 10th Ox or Cow once in three Years, *i. e.* a 30th Part every Year. Every Christian Weaver in his Dominions pays him Yearly a Fustian Garment, and every *Mahometan* a Patach, which amounts to 1000 Imperials a Year. All Things here are Dog-cheap, and a huge Ox may be bought for half a Dollar. The Soldiers live on Flesh and Fish, without any Bread, and Servants Wages are paid in Necessaries instead of Money.

Ludolphus tells us, that formerly the Kings of this Country used to be crown'd at *Axuma*, when the Army being drawn up, the Foot march first, then the Horse, after them the Courtiers in rich Habits, and last of all the Emperor, who alights off of his Horse near the Church of *Axuma*, and going forward on the Ground, spread with rich Carpets, he is stopped by a Silken Cord held cross the Street by some Virgins, who ask him thrice, Who he is? To which he replies, *I am the King of Sion*; and then drawing forth his Scymiter, cuts the Cord: Whereupon the Virgins cry out, *Verily, thou art our King of Sion*. Then the Guns are fired, which is follow'd with the Noise of Acclamations, Drums, Flutes and Trumpets. Then the Metropolitan, with all the Ecclesiastical Orders, singing Hymns, conduct the King to the first Porch of the Church, and there set the Crown on his Head, which is nothing but an Hat twice doubled, with an Azure-colour'd Silk broad Brim, trimm'd with Gold and Silver Plates like Lillies, with a Row of false Stones glittering between every Plate. Our Author observes by the Way, that besides *Axuma*, there are no Cities, and but few Towns, scarce worth mentioning, because the *Abyssines* chuse rather to live in fertile till'd Places; that they have no Forts; and that the Mountains of *Amhara*, where the King's Children were formerly kept, are their only Citadels. He adds, that they neither navigate their own Rivers, nor know what belongs to Carriage or Stores.

To return to the Court; *Ludolphus* tells

us, that after the Kings left *Axuma*, they lived in Tents till *Peter Pays* built them a Palace, as formerly mentioned; at which the Natives were so much amazed to see one Story over another, that they called it House upon House. The King dines alone, and after he rises, the Nobility that are invited take their Places, and have the Honour to eat his Leavings. Instead of Table Linen, they use thin Wafers made of Wheat or Rice Paste, which serves them for Bread. They have no Trenchers, Knives, Forks, Spoons, Salt-celler, Pepper, or Sugar-Box. Their Meat is boil'd Flesh and Broth of several Sorts, serv'd up by Women in broad Earthen Platters, and cover'd with Straw neatly woven and painted. As soon as the King's Dishes are set on the Table, the Hangings are let down, lest any should see him eat; for both he and the Nobility are fed by Children, who take the Meat and put it into their Mouths in great Gobblers; and if any Crumbs fall by, they put them again into their Chops, after they are soak'd in the Broth. Both Lord and Peasant never drink till they have done eating. Before and after Meals they commonly repeat the Psalter, the only Book they have for daily Prayer, and the whole is quickly babbled over at great Feasts, because 'tis distributed among several Readers. Before their frequent Losses, they used to have many Ceremonies at the Audience of Ambassadors; but now an Ambassador is admitted without Ceremony to see and salute the King, provided he bring Presents. They had formerly but two chief Ministers of State, who managed all Affairs, and were called *Bahitudet*, till abusing their Power, another was appointed called *Ras*, *i. e.* a Head, who at first was designed only for the Command of the Army, but soon advanced to the Management of all Affairs. Next to him there are two Comptrollers, of whom the uppermost is over all Viceroyes and Governors, and the other over the Household Servants. Next to the latter are the Viceroyes, Camp-masters, and Senators, who are called the Lesser Judges, and have an equal Jurisdiction as to all Crimes. They call the Captain of the King's Guard the Guardian of Fire, because from him they receive Heat and Warmth. The first Camp-master goes before

fore to mark out convenient Ground near some River, where there's Plenty of Wood and Grass; and having set up a Pale, with a Royal Banner at the Top, the King's Provision is pitched in the Middle of the Camp, with a large Space of Ground about it for the Nobility's Horses, and for those that bring Provisions. The Grandees and the rest of the Courtiers pitch their Tents next to him, and after them the common Soldiers in their Order and due Distance. When the Cryer proclaims the Day of Removal, every one knows how to pack up his Baggage, in what Order to march, and where to pitch his Tent again. Their Camps take up a great deal of Room, because they also contain the Soldiers Wives and Children, who bake their Bread, and make their Metheglin. The Camp-masters carry a great Sway in Matters of greatest Moment, and are therefore generally the best Springs of Sedition.

Our Author says, 'tis impossible to make War here in the Winter, because of the great Rains and Inundations. Nevertheless, the *Abyssines* are warlike, ride a Horse well, endure Hunger and Thirst beyond Belief, and honourably serve for no other Pay than such Lands as the King pleases to give them. But he observes, that their Poverty impoverishes the Countries thro' which they pass; and that because they cannot carry Provisions along with them over their rugged Mountains, they take by Force what is not freely given them, and so lay waste all the neighbouring Country. This, says he, hinders them from pursuing the *Gallans*, because they find nothing behind but untill'd Lands and empty Cottages. He adds, that they have about 1500 Muskets or Harquebusses, which they buy of the *Turks*, but little Powder, and not above 4 Musketeers, who are sorry Marksmen. The King's greatest Army hardly amounts to 40000, who are all Foot, except 4 or 5000 Horse. Their Weapons are Swords, Darts, Lances, and short Javelins, with which they first fight at a Distance, and afterwards Hand to Hand with their Swords and Bucklers. They ride on Mules, and lead their Horses, which they never mount till they are ready to charge the Enemy. They have commonly two Spears, one of which they dart at a Distance, and maintain a close Fight with

the other. The Fury of the first Onset generally wins their Battles, because they know not how to rally when disorder'd. They scorn to shun a Battle, to which our Author ascribes the Ruin of many of their Kings. He adds, that this Country is much infested with Robbers, that lurk among the Rocks and Mountains. Here *Ludolphus* takes Occasion to give an Account of the Wars of the *Abyssines* in the last Century, especially with the *Adelans*.

King *David*, he says, in the Beginning of his Reign defeated them in several Battles; but after the *Turks* had conquer'd *Egypt*, and taken some Ports of the *Red Sea*, the *Adelans* by their Assistance always became Victors. For in 1526, K. *Adelis* sent *Grainus*, a *Mahometan*, who invaded *Abyssinia*, and conquer'd all *Fatigara*; and tho' the War was carried on the first two Years with various Success, yet till 1640, when *David* died, the *Abyssines* were so frequently worsted, that they began to despair of their Country. Our Author ascribes these Misfortunes, 1. To the King's sluggish and voluptuous Temper; 2. To the Fire-Arms furnish'd the *Mahometan Adelans* by the *Turks* their Friends; and, 3. To the favourable Reception which the *Mahometans* of *Abyssinia* gave to their own Sect, when many of the *Abyssines* themselves join'd with the Conqueror; so that every thing threaten'd utter Destruction, till *Christopher Gomez* was sent from *Portugal* with 450 Musketeers, whose Success in rescuing this Country from the *Adelans* has been already mentioned. First he forced them to quit the Rock *Amba-Sanet*, which they thought impregnable; and when he came to a Battle, the *Mahometans* were so terrified with Field-Pieces and Muskets, that they were soon put into Disorder; after which their Forces fled, and the Camp was plunder'd. Then he attacked a steep Rock in *Samen*, defended by 1500 *Adelans*, where he slew all the Barbarians, took 80 Horses, 300 Mules, and other good Plunder. In the mean time one of the *Bashaws* of *Arabia* supplied *Grainus* with 700 Musketeers and 10 Field-Pieces. *Gomez*, before he knew of this, gave him Battle; but being overpower'd by the *Turks*, he was shot in the Thigh; upon which he and 14 more fled; but being apprehended and upbraided by *Grainus*, he gave him a surly Answer, for which

which he caused him to be tormented to Death. *Claudius* the King coming into the Army, and hearing that the *Turks* were all returned home except 200, attacked and defeated them by the Advice of the *Portuguese*, shot *Grainus* to Death, and exposed his Head to publick View. This made the *Abyssines* resume fresh Vigour; but the *Adelans* hearing they were too secure, broke in and defeated them, and killed *Claudius*.

Ludolphus says, the Kings of *Ethiopia* have several Tributary Princes under them, whereof *Gregory* the *Ethiopian* knew but four, viz. the Kings of *Sennar*, *Dancala*, *Garaga*, and *Enarrea*. All the rest, whether Kings or Governors, are appointed by the King to govern *pro tempore* during his Pleasure, that their Dependance on him may keep them honest. His Queen, Brothers, and others of the highest Rank, are called and accounted his Servants; for not only the same Word in their Language signifies Slaves, Subjects, and Domesticks, but they are bound at all Times to serve the King with their Body, and have no Property which they can claim. This appears farther from their slavish Ceremonies of Obeisance or Submission. Thus the *Bahituded*, his prime Minister, stands before the King's Pavilion naked to his Thighs, with his Head and Right Hand down to the Ground, crying out thrice, *Abeto*, which is thus explained; *Most merciful Lord, I am the meanest of the Court, that saddles your Horses*. Some Supplicants, instead of presenting written Petitions, stand at a certain Place early in the Morning, and cry with a loud Voice, *My King, my Apple of my Eye*. They use different Tones, according to their several Countries, and at Day-break such or such are commanded to be admitted and heard; but if it be a Matter of very great Moment, the King himself gives Audience, and returns Answer.

Thervenot says, there's 24 Tambours or Viceroyes in this Kingdom, and that the King has above 100 Wives, but keeps no Eunuchs, because they reckon Castration a Sin; so that the Women here have as much Liberty as in *Europe*. He calls the Mountain where the King's Children are kept *Ouohni*, and places it in the Province of *Omadaga*, two Days Journey from *Gonthar*. He says, there's a Place like a Ci-

stern on the Top of the Mountain, into which they are let down every Night, and taken up in the Day-time, and suffer'd to play and walk about. He tells us, that when the King dies, they chuse out the wittiest for Successor, without Regard to Birthright; and that when he comes to have Children, he sends them to *Ouohni*, and removes his Brothers to some other Place of Security. He says, that the Place where the Kings are buried is called *Ayesus*, and that 'tis a Sort of Grotto, where the Aged are laid on one Side, and the Young on t'other. He adds, that in the Time of the *Jesuits*, there was a Church of the same Name in the Place, with an excellent Library of Books of all Sorts and Languages. He supposes this to be the old *Ethiopian* Library. *La Croix* says, that when the King's Subjects speak to him, they call him *Hatzegue* or Sir; and that his Revenues would be vastly great, if they knew how to coin Money, settle Fiefs, lay Imposts, &c. like the Princes in *Europe*. He adds, that they gain every Year above 2500 Ounces of pure Gold out of two of their Provinces. *Heylin* says, the King's chief Support is *St. Anthony's* Order of Knighthood, to which every Gentleman must destinate a Son, if he has above two, but not the eldest; and out of these they chuse 12000 Horse for the Emperor's standing Guard. The Abbots of this Order, who are partly Religious, partly Military, live in two Monasteries in the Mountain of *Amara*, where these Knights are educated while young, and maintain'd when old and discharged from Service. He adds, that some of the *Portuguese* sent over hither to the Assistance of *Claudius* staying behind, and marrying to the *Ethiopian* Women, his Posterity are since increased to many Thousands, and are train'd up as Footmen to the Use of Fire-Arms, for which they are accounted the best Part of the Forces, and have Lands and other Privileges allow'd them for their Encouragement. *Heylin* tells us, that the Subjects pay such a slavish Veneration to the King, that anciently, if he was blind, lame, or wounded, they would inflict the same upon themselves; and that he is still so much honour'd by the highest Subject, that at his bare Name they put their Fingers to the Ground, and pay the same Reverence

to his Pavilion as if he was there. He seldom appears without a Crown on his Head, a Silver Crucifix in his Hand, and his Face cover'd with Taffata, which he lifts up or down according as he is minded. *Heylin* is not of the Opinion of some, who say, that the King is rich enough to purchase one Half of the World, and able to raise a Million of Men for present Service, or that he offer'd the *Portuguese* a Million of Money, and another of Men, to be employed in a War with the Infidels; but he says, the most knowing Men affirm, that when the ordinary Expences of his Court and Army are defrayed, the King lays up but three Millions of Crowns *per Annum*. His Revenue, besides the Crown Lands or Imperial Domain, arises from a Tax upon every House, from the Tenth of all that is dug out of the Mines, and from an Impost upon the great Lords Towns; and as for his Forces, he says he was never able to advance half that Number; but they are generally poor Cowards. He adds, that some of them pretend their King is always of a white Complexion. *Du Plessis* says, the Kings usually live under Tents in the open Field both in Peace and War; that all the Royal Family attend the King to the Wars, with all the great Lords and Ladies of the Court; and that every one marches with Arms, except Artificers and Husbandmen. Their Tents are form'd into fine Streets, and in the Middle the Emperor has four or five, with two others which serve for Churches, and at a little Distance those of the Ladies, chief Courtiers, and Officers. Sometimes the King changes his Residence every Year, and sometimes stays several Years in a Place. The King's Camp in our Author's Time used to be between *Amba-Marjan*, *Debsan*, and *Dancas*, very near the Lake *Dembea*, and in the Kingdom of that Name. He says, that he wears a Crown, cover'd with Plates of Gold and Silver, and some Pearls, and observes, that he carries a little Cross in his Hand, which is not a Sceptre, as some have thought, but a Badge of the Deacon's Order, that he may communicate with the Clergy in the Quire of the Church, and not in the Nave like the Laity. He adds, that the *Abyssine* Grandees do also carry this Sort of Cross for the same Reason. The *Sansons* tell us, that the Em-

peror *David*, at the Persuasion of *Michael Sylva*, a *Portuguese*, caused all the Gold dug out of his Mines and Rivers to be melted into square Pieces, with which he filled four great Halls, that were each supposed to contain 300 Millions of Gold, Silver at that Time being coin'd and circulated in Commerce; and they tell us of a Treasure in the 5th Hall which was full of Diamonds, all Sorts of Precious Stones, Pearls, &c. adding, that in this Emperor's Time Queen *Helena*, who was his Governess, boasted to *Emanuel* King of Portugal, that she could furnish 1000 Men of War, man them, and give them 200 Millions of Gold; and boasted, that she had Men, Gold and Provisions, as Plenty as the Sand in the Sea, or the Stars in the Firmament.

Ludolphus says, they have a few other Books besides their sacred ones, one of which is called the *Glory of Kings*. Our Author thinks it that which is highly esteemed as a second Gospel, contains the History of the Queen of *Sheba*, and is kept in the Palace of *Axuma*. They have also a Chronicle cited by *Claudius* in his Confession of Faith, a Book of Philosophy, which is much valu'd, and a Vocabulary of the *Amharic* or *Arabic* Tongue. They mind no Studies but those of their learned Language and sacred Matters, and most of the Children learn to read and write from their Parents, or else from the Monks for a small Stipend. They have little Skill in Logick and Natural Philosophy. They deny Antipodes, and fancy that such People must drop into Heaven. When the Sun rises and sets, they believe that he comes and goes thro' some Window, but don't think of its going under the Earth.

Having thus finished the General History of *Abyssinia*, and consequently of all Upper *Ethiopia*, we proceed now to its particular Geography, after some general Account of their Division into Kingdoms and Provinces. *Paulus Jovius* reckons up 40, *Matthew the Armenian* 60, *Tessa Sionius* 62, and *St. Nicolaus Godignus* but 26 Kingdoms, and 14 Provinces. *Tellez* and others differ as much in their Number, by confounding their Præfectures, which are under peculiar Governors, with the Kingdoms. *Gregory the Abyssine* reckons up 30 Kingdoms belonging to it of ancient Right, and *Ludolphus* 20, inclu-

including those conquer'd by the Gallans, of which he says the principal are *Amhara*, *Ghesen*, *Amhacel*, *Bagamidri*, *Cambata*, *Dembea*, *Enarrea*, *Gojam*, *Xea*, and *Tegra*. He tells us, that of the 30 Kingdoms reckon'd up by Mr. Gregory, the King of the *Abyssines* only enjoys 9, viz. *Amhara*, *Bajendra*, *Cambata*, *Damota*, *Dembea*, *Enarrea*, *Gojam*, *Samen*, and Part of *Sewa*, with other Kingdoms of less Note, and only 5 of the Provinces, which comprehend the best Part, but not half of the ancient *Abeffia*, the rest being subdued or destroyed by the Gallans. *Thevenot* reckons up the Provinces of *Gojam*, *Beghander*, *Dambea*, *Amara*, *Damond*, *Tegre*, and *Barnegas*, besides several Provinces govern'd by Princes, the King's Vassals. *Du Plessis* says, that *Dancala* has a King of its own; that *Tigra* is a Republick; and that the Gallans possess the Provinces and Kingdoms of *Bizamo*, *Gafat*, *Damot*, *Cont*, *Shat*, *Enarya*, *Zet*, *Guraghe*, *Cambate*, *Gombo*, *Ganz*, *Wed* or *Ogge*, *Fatagar*, *Balli*, *Ganhe*, *Dawaro*, *Ghedm*, *Ifat*, and *Angot* or *Hangor*; but we shall follow *Luyts's* Division, according to our Tables, and begin with the W. Part first.

The chief Kingdoms and Provinces here are,

1. *DAMUT*, *DAMOT*, *DAMOUT*, *DAMOND*, or *DAMOTA*.

The *Sansons* bound it with the Lake *Zaire* on the S. the River *Nile* on the E. Part of *Congo* on the W. and the Province of *Vangua* on the N. *La Croix* bounds it on the N. with *Bizamo* and *Gojam*, on the S.E. with that of *Narea*, on the S. with *Guraque*, and on the E. with the Kingdoms of *Gans* and *Xaa*. *Darvity* says, that the *Abyssines* divide this Kingdom into two Parts, and that they call one *Damot Dari*, and the other *Damot Adari*. *La Croix* says, here's that called the *Dead Mountain*, of difficult Access; the highest and coldest in all *Abyssinia*, whither the King used to send those he had a Mind to be rid of, who were carried up to the Top of the Mountain, and there soon perished with Hunger and Cold. *Heylin* says, they use to be cast headlong from it. The *Jesuits* have two Settlements in this Kingdom, and many Families of the Natives inhabit the Kingdom of *Goyam*, among the

Agas or *Agaux*, and in the Town of *Signeem*. He adds, that the *Jesuits* Residence, which was formerly in the Town of *Gabra*, near the *Agas*, and which was exposed to the Incursions of the *Galans*, was transferred hither by the Viceroy of *Damut*. *Heylin* bounds this Kingdom on the N. with *Amara*, on the W. with *Bazamedrum*, on the S. *Gojam*, and on the E. the great Lake of *Barcena*, and Part of *Zanguebar*. He says, it abounds with Gold, Ginger, Grapes, Fruits, and all Sorts of living Creatures. They sell great Numbers of Slaves into *Arabia*, *Egypt*, *Persia*, and *India*, where they are so much esteemed for their Dexterity and Fidelity in all Sorts of Employ, that they are advanced to great Offices by many of the Eastern Princes. He tells us, that they never broke their Trust but when they usurp'd *Bengala*, and kept it many Years in a Succession of the *Abyssine* Slaves, till they were lately outed by the Great Mogul. Their Oxen are said to be near as big as Elephants, with Horns so large, that they serve as Horns to carry, and as Barrels to keep, either Wine or Water. There's also said to be wild Unicorns no bigger than an Ass; but *Heylin* thinks them only Rhinoceroses. He tells us, that there's a Principality belonging to this Kingdom call'd *Couche*, which is said to have more Gold in it than all *Peru*; and the Fryars, who have several Monasteries here, call it a *Mountain all of Gold*. He adds, that the People are for most Part *Gentiles*; but that the Prince was lately baptized by the Abbot of the Monasteries on the Hill *Amara*, and named *Andrew* by the Emperor *Gradeus*, his Godfather. *Morery* says, it has a King of its own, independant on the Emperor of *Abyssinia*. *Luyts* places it under the Equator, and observes, that some Authors include *Malemba*, already describ'd in *Angola*, among the W. Provinces of this Kingdom. It has a Town of its own Name, but 'tis of no Note.

2. *VANGUA*, *FUNGIE*, or *VANGUE*.

Ludolphus says, 'twas a Part of ancient *Nubia*. The *Sansons* bound it with the Lake *Niger* or *Zaftan* on the W. the *Nile* on the E. *Ambiancantiva* on the N. and *Damut* on the S. 'Tis a very mountainous Province, which is all we can say of it.

N n n n

3. *DAM*

3. DAMBEA, DEMBYE, DEMBETA,
or DEMBEA.

The *Sansons* place it on both Sides the Nile, and bound it with *Ambiancantiva* on the N. *Bagamedri* on the S. and E. and *Vangue* on the S. W. *Ludolphus* says, 'tis famous for the Royal Camp which was removed hither from *Axuma*, contains 14 Præfectures, and that the *Jews* formerly dwelt here before they were expelled. *La Croix* says, 'tis crossed by divers Canals of the Nile, and contains a great Lake called *Bahr-Demba*, or the Sea of *Demba*. It has a Capital of its own Name, according to *Jarric*; but others call it *Zambee*, and *Du Pleffis*, *Amba-Marjan*. The Emperor resides here from November till Easter, but spends the rest of his Time in the Field. The Court is commonly kept at *Danzas*, or as *Godignus* says *Gubay*, a little Town near the Lake of *Demba*. *Pigafetta* calls the Capital *Belmachai*, and says, there are several little Towns near it. 'Tis a plain Country, and is overflowed by the Waters of the Lakes and Rivers, contrary to the Nature of all other Parts of *Ethiopia*. *La Croix* makes it 82 Miles from E. to W. and from 30 to 60 in Breadth, including the Lake *Dambee*.

He says, its chief Places are, 1. *Old Gorgone* or *Gorgora*, 3 Miles from the New, and in the Center of the Kingdom. Here the *Jesuits* settled, that they might be near to *Dancas* or *Dencation*, the Seat of the Emperor; but the Air being unwholesome here, they were permitted to remove to, 2. *New Gorgone*, a Peninsula in the Lake *Dambee*. Here the Emperor *Seltan Sequede* caused a Palace to be built, and the *Jesuit Pais* a Church and Seminary. 3. *Ganea*, or *Ganeta de Jesuire*, the *Paradise of Jesus*, built in a low Place, where there's Plenty of Water, and a Church, which contains the Tombs of the Emperors of the last Century. The *Jesuit Pais* caused a Church to be built here after the Model of the *European* Temples, and a Palace for the Emperor. 4. *Mount Dancation*. It lies at the E. End of *Dogara* and *Dambee*, and there's a Plain upon the Top, where the Emperor resided a long Time with his Court. There's a Palace upon it built after the *European* Model for the Patriarch *Mendez*, a House for the *Jesuits*, an ancient Church called *Giambanet*,

and 9000 Huts made of Stone, and cover'd with Stubble for the Soldiers. 5. *Depsan*, upon a Hill, 3 Miles from the Lake *Dambee*, formerly the Seat of the Empress. 'Tis a pleasant Place, water'd by two Rivers, one from the E. and the other from the N. which meet and form a Canal, and the Air is clear and wholesome. Over against it, between the N. and S. there's another steep Hill, whither the Inhabitants used to retire when attacked by their Enemies. On the E. Side of this Hill there's the Monastery of the Abbot *Eustachius*, and in the Town of *Depsan* there's a House which was built for the Patriarch *Mendez*. 6. *Mercereca* or *Macareca*, an Island in the Lake *Dambee*, which is a very commodious Retreat, and noted for a famous Monastery of the Order of the Abbot *Haymon*, and another of the Abbot *Eustachius*. 7. *Oideriega* or *Ondegue*, a Town at the W. End of *Dambee*, whither *Faciladas* retired with his Troops, because of the Plague. Some call it the Province of *Guimeluis*, and 'tis said, the *Jesuits* and *Capuchins* were hang'd at this Place. 8. *Empation*, a Country at the E. End of *Dambee*, and a Day's Journey from *New Gorgona*, which contains a famous Market for Caps. It extends 9 Miles from E. to W. and 6 from N. to S. and was granted to the Patriarch *Mendez* for the Subsistence of himself and the *Portuguese*. 9. *Goga*, between *Dambee* and *Bagamidri*. 'Twas formerly the Seat of the Emperor. 10. The Lake of *Fresh Water*, or Sea of *Dambee*, called *Barsena*, because *Sena* signifies the Peninsula, and *Bar* the Sea. 'Tis of such an irregular Form, that *La Croix* observes no Person has yet been able to give a true Description on't. He makes the Length on the S. Side 20 *Portuguese* Leagues, 35 on the N. and 12 over towards the Middle. It contains about 24 Isles and Peninsulas; *Morey* says but 15, some of which are inhabited, and have several Monasteries, and others Desert. The Nile, whose Fountains are not far distant, crosses the W. Side of the Lake for seven Leagues without mixing its Waters. Here are no Crocodiles, but many Sea-Horses, which since they could not come hither all the Way by Water, because of the Cataracts, are supposed to have come partly by Land. The Inhabitants sail on the Lake in little Boats called *Tancoas*, made of

of the Bark of Trees ; but they are sometimes beat to Pieces by the Sea-Horses. In one of the Islands call'd *Dec*, which contains 40 Acres, the Patriarch *Mendez* baptized 1400 Infants, and 1340 adult Persons. Father *Jeronymo Lobo* says, 'tis the biggest of all the Islands, and is two Leag. in Length, but very narrow ; and that it used to be the Place of Banishment for Courtiers. He adds, that here are abundance of Wild-Fowl, but few Fish. He makes the Lake 25 Leagues in Length, and 15 where broadest, and says, the *Nile* takes up but a quarter of a League in running thro' it. *Du Pleffis* says, it has Crocodiles as well as River-Horses. The Jesuit *Almeida* bounds this Country with *Goyam* on the N. and says, 'tis but 24 Leagues in Length, and 10 or 12 broad, excluding the Lake. *Telles* tells us, that the Governor of this Country pays the Emperor 5000 Patacoons *per Annum* ; and that the Peasants furnish him with a Load of Provisions, which he distributes to his Courtiers and Soldiers. He adds, that the Government of *Dambee* is hereditary in the Family of the *Cantibas*, descended from the Princes to whom it anciently belong'd. Some place the Middle of this Province in N. Lat. $13\frac{1}{2}$. *Du Pleffis* says, *Jonda* upon the Lake *Dembee* was the chief Settlement of the Portuguese Jesuits before the last Persecution here.

4. A M B I A N C A N T I V A.

Morery says, 'tis a Town and Kingdom of the same Name upon the *Nile*, betwixt *Nubia* and *Bagamedri*. *Luyts* bounds it with *Ximencha* on the S. and the *Sansons* with *Dambee* on the S. *Bagamedri* on the E. and *Nubia* on the N. but they place the Town almost 150 Miles W. of the *Nile*.

5. X I M E N C H A or X I M E N C H E.

The Maps place it on the S. of *Nubia*, and on the W. of the *Nile* ; but Travellers say nothing of it.

6. M E R O E Island.

The *Sansons* place it between N. Lat. 13. 16. and about Long. 60. *Ptolomy* and others of the Ancients placed it in Lat. 13.

and say, that in Lat. 11. the River *Astaboras* joins with the *Nile* ; that they run thus together to Lat. 12. where they separate again, and rejoin under Lat. 16. or 17. after having encompass'd that Tract of Ground which is called the Isle of *Meroe*. *Barros* says the same, but adds, that 'tis now call'd *Noba*. According to the new Atlas, the *Nile* and the *Tacaza* join here, and form a Lake called *Gueguere*. *Ortelius* and *Mercator* will have them rather to be only two Arms of the *Nile* ; but the Jesuits *Alphonso Mendez*, *Manoel d'Almeida*, and others, who have liv'd several Years in *Ethiopia* in Lat. 12. 13. and 14. who have passed the *Nile* and *Tacaza* several times, and who have narrowly observ'd their Course, say, that those two Rivers do not join in this Empire, but arise in two different Places, and never run within 60 Leagues from one another. They deny that the *Nile* separates into two Arms in this Country, and upon the whole affirm, that the Isle of *Meroe*, of which the Ancients have told so many Fables, is nothing but the Kingdom of *Goiam*, which the *Nile* almost encompasses. This they think the more probable, because they extend both from Lat. 12 to 13. and because there is no other Island under this Elevation. Geographers do also give the same Breadth of 30 Leagues to this Island as they do to the Kingdom of *Goiam* ; but this is sufficiently confuted by *Vossius*, as we shall shew hereafter. In the mean time *Lobo* observes, that they differ in its Compass, which they make 100 Leagues ; whereas he says *Goiam* is but 50. He thinks it impossible that the *Nile* can form this Island after it has run out of *Ethiopia*, because *Ptolomy*, who was an *Egyptian*, would not have fail'd to mention it if it had been in his Country, and the black Colour which *Lucian* gives to the Inhabitants agrees better with the *Ethiopians* than the *Egyptians*. He denies too, that 'tis one of those in the Lake of *Dambee*, because they are all too small, and thinks the Gold, Precious Stones, and other Products which the Ancients ascrib'd to it, fabulous. *Thevenot* says, 'tis formed by two Arms of the *Nile*, and reaches almost to the 17th Deg. of Lat. *La Croix* agrees with him, and places it on the Borders of *Egypt*, in N. Lat. 15. 20. and 15 Days Journey from *Syena*. He says, that that Arm of the *Nile*

which runs on the Left Side is the *Astapus* or *Astaboras* of *Ptolomy*, and now call'd *Abawi* in the Kingdom of *Ambara*. *Diodorus* says, 'twas so called from the Mother of *Cambyfes* K. of *Persia*; and *Strabo*, from his Sister, who died here. The Inhabitants call it *Naulebake*, i. e. the Mother of Good Ports; and according to *Marmol*, *Neuba*. Others say, that 'tis called *Saba*, *Bedamara*, and *Gueguere*; but *Jovius* asserts, that the latter is the Name of *Syena*. *Sanutius* makes it 100 Leag. in Length, and 30 in Breadth; but *Jovius* says 'tis bigger than *England*. *Vossius* is so far from agreeing with those who think *Goiam* the *Meroe* of the Ancients, that he endeavours to shew that they had no true Knowledge of *Meroe* when they took it for an Island, because the *Nile* makes none in *Ethiopia*, though *Strabo* says it forms several besides that of *Meroe*. *Strabo* plac'd the Town of its own Name at the N. End of the Island, and *Pliny* 70000 Stadia farther S. But *Vossius* seems positive, that this is the same Town which they now call *Beroa* or *Baroa*, the Capital of *Barnagasso*. He also charges the Ancients with a Mistake in placing *Meroe* too far from the *Red Sea*, which he ascribes to the Difficulty of the Roads, for all the Coast of the *Red Sea* is full of Mountains and Rocks, and the Ancients could only compute the Distance of Places by Days Journeys. *Heylin* places this Island in the Province of *Guagere*, and makes it 350 Miles in Length, and 125 in Breadth. He says, it abounds with Gold, Silver, Brass, Iron, Ivory, Ebony, Precious Stones, choice Mineral Salt, Palm-Trees which yield delicate Wine, and with most Sorts of wild and tame Beasts, especially Lyons, Leopards, Rhinocerots, Elephants, and Dragons. He tells us, that the Inhabitants are of the same Nature and Complexion with the rest, but that they are *Mahometans*, and profess'd Enemies to the *Abassine* Emperor, whose Dominions they often invade in Confederacy with the *Turks* and *Arabians*. *Pliny* reports, that when the Sun is in the 16th Deg. of *Taurus* and the 14th of *Leo*, the Inhabitants of this Island cast no Shadow, because 'tis perpendicular. The Ancients say, they used to live to 120 Years of Age, for which Reason they were called *Macrobii* by the *Greeks*; and that their Women had such great Breasts, that they

used to suckle their Children over their Shoulders, as they do now at the Cape of *Good Hope*. *Eusebius* says, the City of *Meroe* had its Name from *Merida*, the Mother of *Chenephris* King of *Egypt*; and *Josephus*, that 'twas formerly called *Saba*, from whence some were led into a Mistake that 'twas the Royal City of the Queen of *Sheba*, and this is so embraced by the Islanders, that they have restor'd the Name of *Saba* to it. Some tell us, says *Heylin*, that it has 5000 great fine Houses, with large Streets and Galleries on each Side over the Doors; 4 chief Gates (besides other inferior ones) built of *Alabaster* and *Jasper* after the antick Model, with Doors of *Cedar* finely carv'd, and Walks to them two Leagues in Length, beset with *Palms*, *Orange*, *Cedar*, *Cypress* Trees, &c. They add, that in the Place where the 4 Streets meet, that come from the chief Gates, there's a fine Arch upon stately Pillars, curiously wrought and gilded, with a Brass Statue of *St. Matthew* on the Top gilded; but others think there's no such City, or at least that 'tis not near so beautiful. *Heylin* says, this Island was once a peculiar Kingdom, and that the Kings were chose for their superior Strength, Person, or Stock of Cattle; but such Slaves to their Priests, that by a Messenger or Herald they sentenced them to Death at Pleasure, and advanced others in their Room, till one of them, wiser than his Predecessors, broke open the Temple with his Soldiers, and slew all the Priests, by which Means he freed himself and his Successors from so great a Slavery; but 'twas afterwards made a Province, honoured for most Part with the Seat of the Kings of *Ethiopia*, and noted anciently for the Table of the Sun, which (says our Author) was a Place near the City of *Meroe* always furnish'd with Variety of roast Meat set there by Night at the King's Command, and eat in the Day-time by all Comers. He adds, that in the Declension of this Kingdom, which he ascribes to the Inundation of the *Saracens* and other *Arabians*, the Island was seiz'd on by that People, who have ever since kept it, with the rest of the Country betwixt this and *Egypt*, thro' which great Troops of Pilgrims pass every Lent out of the *Abassine* Dominions to *Jerusalem*. *Luyts* observes, that the Maps separate *Meroe* from *Nubia* by the River *Nile*.

Having

Having finished the West Part, we proceed next to the Middle or Second Division of *Abyssinia*; the chief Provinces whereof are,

1. *BAGAMIDRI, BAGAMEDRI, BAGAMBDER, BAJEMDRA, or ABAGAMIDRI.*

Moll calls it *BAGEMUER*. *Ludolphus* says, 'tis a large Kingdom, water'd with many Rivers, and fruitful, and that 'tis divided into 13 Territories. *Sanutius* and *Tellez* say, 'tis a separate Kingdom; and others, that it depends on that of *Tegre*. *La Croix* bounds it with *Angot* on the E. and on the S. with *Amhara* and the *Nile*, which receives the River of *Banila*, that separates both Kingdoms. He makes it 60 Leagues in Length from the Town of *Sart* on the Frontiers of *Tegre*, and scarce 20 in Breadth, because several Territories are dismember'd from it which formerly belong'd to it. *Sanutius* makes it one of the biggest Kingdoms of *Abyssinia*, and extends it 120 Leag. along the *Nile* as far as the Isle of *Meroe*, between *Angot* and *Tegre*, which, together with *Amhara* and *Barnagas*, encompasses it, and *Gojam* bounds it on the S. In this Country he places the *Belloes* and *Goragues*. *La Croix* says, there are Mountains and high Rocks at the E. End, which are inhabited by a Port of the *Agaremiens*. He places the Capital, from whence the Kingdom has its Name, in a fine Plain on the Banks of the River *Suama*, and says, 'tis called the Royal Town, because the Viceroy of *Tegre* receives a second Crown here as a Badge of his Office, after having received one before in a Place of his own chusing, and after this he receives a third from the Hands of the Emperor of *Abyssinia*. Our Author says, this Ceremony had its Origine from *Dabra Libanos*, who lived in a Cave near this Town, and was in such great Esteem, that the Prince who reigned then in *Ethiopia* chose to be crown'd by the Saint's own Hand; after which all the Viceroys of *Tegre* were ordered to repair thither to receive their 2d Coronation. *Heylin* says, 'tis also called *Sagamedrum*, and lies on the W. of *Goiam*, betwixt the N. Parts of it and the River *Nile*, and runs along that River till it reaches *Meroe*, where it meets with

the S. Point of *Barnagasso*. Some extend it beyond that Island; but *Heylin* thinks they confute themselves by making it no longer than 600 Miles; whereas he says 'tis 1500 in its greatest Extent. He tells us, that it contains Mines of the purest Silver, which they draw out by Fire, that makes it run like long Rods of Metal. *Morery* says, it has the *Nile* on the W. and is divided into 17 Provinces, whereof some make so many Kingdoms. *Luyts* says, 'tis encompassed with Mountains. The *Sansons* bound it on the E. with *Amara*, *Angote*, *Tigre*, and *Barnagasso*; on the W. with *Dambea* and *Damout*; on the S. towards the Sources of the *Nile*, with *Goyame* and *Cafates*, and nearer the Mountains of the Moon with *Narea*, &c. and make it 4 or 500 Leagues along the *Nile* from *Meroe* to the Equinox.

2. *AMARA or AMHARA.*

Ludolphus says, 'tis the noblest Kingdom of all *Ethiopia*, upon Account of the Rocks *Ghesen* and *Amhasel*, or *Amara* or *Ambaquexen*, where the King's Sons us'd formerly to be secured, to prevent disturbing the State, and was therefore reckon'd the native Country of the present Kings and Nobility. He adds, that it has 36 Provinces belonging to it, and that 'tis situate under the Equinoctial, in which the *Sansons* agree with him; but *Moll* and *La Croix* place it in N. Lat. 11. and 12. The latter bounds it on the N. with the Kingdoms of *Bagameder* and *Angot*; on the E. with *Dankali* and the Territory of *Oifate*; on the S. with the Province of *Oleka*, which is separated from it by a Branch of the *Nile* called *Ruecan*; and on the W. with the Kingdom of *Dambea*. *Sanutius* bounds it on the N. with *Xaoa*, and a certain Lake on the Frontiers of *Angot*, where is the Island of *St. Stephen*, with the aforesaid Mountain of *Amara*; on the S. with Mountains and Vallies full of Apes; and on the W. with the Territories near the *Nile*. He says, it contains a great Number of Towns and Villages, but they are of no Note. *La Croix* observes, that the Rocks here are more craggy and inaccessible than elsewhere. That of *Tabac Maria*, where the River *Quea* falls into the *Nile*, has on the Top of it a fine Plain, water'd with two Brooks, and inclos'd with a Chain of Moun-

Mountains, with 12 Entries like as many Gates, and 7 Churches, the chief of which is called *St. John's*, and contains 5 Tombs of the ancient Emperors. *Heylin* bounds it on the S. with *Damut*, and on the E. with *Xoa*. He says, 'tis a champaign Country, fruitful enough, and abounding in Cattle. Its chief City, call'd *Amara*, is situate in the Heart of the Empire, in an Air so temperate, and a Soil so fruitful and pleasant, that he says some have mistaken it for Paradise. He tells us, that the aforesaid Mountain of *Amara* is a Day's Journey in Height. *Morery* says, it contains 56 large Provinces. *Moll* places the two Rocks above-mentioned in N. Lat. 10 $\frac{2}{3}$.

3. GOIAM, GOYAN, or GOTAME Kingdom.

Lobo makes it as big as *Portugal*. *Ludolphus* says, 'tis famous for the Fountains of the *Nile*, which almost surrounds it; and that it pays to the King of *Abyssinia* 1100 Ounces of Gold *per Annum*, besides Garments to the Value of 3000 German Dollars, and 200 Fustian Tapestries, together with Corn and Flesh; and 'tis said, they formerly paid 5000 Bay or Ash-colour'd Horses, till the Emperor *Malec Segued* excused them, that they might have Horses to defend themselves against the *Galans*. *Thervenot* says, 'tis governed by his Viceroy. *La Croix* bounds it on the N. with *Dembea*, and places it in N. Lat. 11. contrary to the *Sansons*, who set it in S. Lat. 5. and bound it with *Agag* on the N. the Lake *Zaire* and the *Nile* on the W. *Cafates* on the S. and *Quara* and *Fungi* on the E. *Tellez* and *Sanutius* make it 50 Leagues in Length from N. to S. and 30 from E. to W. which *La Croix* makes 80 where broadest, viz. from one Branch of the *Nile* to the other. He says, that River rises in the W. Part of the Kingdom, near a Village call'd *Sakahala*; and that there are several Nations here, particularly the *Agoas* on the N.W. who possess four considerable Towns; the *Gafates* on the N.E. and the People descended from *Agar* on the W. near the Source of the *Nile*, who all speak different Languages, according to *Tellez*. *La Croix* adds, that the Kingdom is of an oval Form; that the Middle is higher than the Extremities; and

that 8 Leagues from the Town of *Colebe*, and 10 from *Nebesse*, there's a very steep and almost inaccessible Mountain, with a Plain of an oval Figure on the Top, which is about 250 Fathom long, and 130 broad. There are two Paths to ascend it cross the Rocks. On one Side there's an admirable Spring of Water, and towards the *Nile* there's a Plain, separated from the Foot of the Mountain by a natural Ditch, where the Viceroy resides. *Nebesse* is noted, says *La Croix*, for the stately Temple built here by the Empress *Helena*, Governess to the Emperor *David*, which was afterwards destroyed by the *Galans*, but repaired by the Jesuits, who have taken up their Residence there as well as at *Kolella*, *Surka*, *Aduse*, *Tempa*, *Tassale*, *Fangala*, *Buniel*, *Tankoa*, and *Embete*, in this Kingdom. *La Croix* adds, that in this last Place there are the Ruins of a noble Stone Church, in Form of a Rose, formerly built by a Queen of *Ethiopia*; and that on the N. there's nothing but desert Mountains, where *Sanutius* says there are more Jesuits. *Heylin* bounds this Kingdom with *Damut* on the N. *Bagamedrum* on the W. and some Provinces of the *Lower Ethiopia* on the S. and E. He says 'tis pretty plentiful, except in the N. and that it abounds with Gold, but drossy, which the People know not how to refine, or else are loth to take the Pains, for fear it should tempt the *Turks* and *Arabians* to partake of the Booty. It has many Rivers, which fall down the Mountains with a mighty Violence and Noise like Thunder; and several Lakes, especially the two great ones, called *Zaire* and *Zaflan*, supposed by some to be the Fountains of the *Nile*, and reported to be full of Mermaids and Tritons; but *Heylin* thinks both fabulous, and supposes that these Lakes were discover'd by the *Romans* in *Nero's* Time, when they went in Search of the Fountains of the *Nile*. He adds, that this River passes thro' the vast Lake of *Dembee* or *Tzana*; and that betwixt this and the Province of *Damut*, there's said to be a Nation of warlike Amazons, with a Virgin Queen, whom they honour as a Goddess, and that they were first instituted by the Queen of *Saba*; but *Heylin* thinks it no truer than what some report of the Phoenix being seen here, or Griffins and Fowls so big as to make a Shadow like a Cloud, and owns

owns that he only hinted at these strange Reports to divert his Reader instead of Towns, &c. of which there are none here; but *Godignus* says it contains 20 Provinces. *Gordon* says, that according to the Reports of some Travellers, there are two great Rocks in the Mountains of this Kingdom so situate, that a Word only whisper'd at the Top is heard at a considerable Distance, insomuch that the joint Voices of many at once appear as loud as the Shout of a great Army.

4. NAREA, NEREA, or ENERREA,

The last and most Southern Kingdom of *Ethiopia*, thō *Ludolphus* says this of *Cambata*, which lies near it, whose Inhabitants, called *Hadiens*, are for most part Christians, mix'd with Pagans and *Mahometans*. *Lobo* says, it abounds with Mines and Metals; that it lies not far from *Sofala*, and under the same Parallel; and that it pays 10000 Pieces of Eight every Year to the Emperor. He adds, that the Course of the *Nile* is so intercepted with Rocks, that in 1629 he and his Companions passed over dry-shod into *Dambea*, by leaping from one Rock to another, and therefore 'twas called the Passage of *Jeronymo Lobo*. *Tellez* says, the River *Zebe* rises at *Boxa*, in the S. Part of this Kingdom, and that it pays more Gold in Dust to the Emperor than any other Country in *Ethiopia*; so that *Malec Segued*, who reign'd here from 1563 to 1596, had 5000 Ounces per Annum; that in other Years it paid 1500 Ounces and 1000; but that the Tribute has decreased ever since, especially when they are at War with the *Galans*. *Anthony Fernandez*, who was here with other Ambassadors in 1613, says, it begins at the River *Maleg*; but observes, that 'tis not so large as some make it, by confounding it with the Country of *Cassaria*, which encompasses it, and extends as far as the Coast of *Melinda*. He bounds it on the E. with *Baly*, and on the W. and S. W. with the Coast of *Angola*: And forasmuch as the Inhabitants of *Narea* trade with the *Cassres* on their Frontier, they also buy a great deal of Gold from them, in Exchange for Cows, Salt, &c. He makes it not above 30 or 40 Leagues in Extent, and says, the Inhabitants are more civil than their Neighbours. They

are of a good Stature, without thick Lips, have sharp Noses, a Complexion which is not very black, and are sincere and true to their Words. Their Country abounds in Provisions and all Sorts of Cattle. They give Gold by Weight for what they buy instead of Coin, as is practis'd over all *Ethiopia*; but they have little mark'd Plates of Iron two Fingers broad, and three in Length, which are their Money. He tells us, that they were formerly *Gentiles*, but received the Doctrine of the *Abyssines* about 60 Years before he was there. They are brave, and defend their Country well against the frequent Attacks of the *Galans*, without the Assistance of the Emperor, to whom they nevertheless pay Tribute of their own Accord, for he is not in a Capacity to force them, because his Troops must pass thro' the Country of the *Galans* to come hither; and besides, he has enough to do to appease the Rebellions which continually happen in other Kingdoms near the Places of his Residence. One of his chief Captains resided at that Time upon the high Mountain *Ganca* or *Gonca*, who gave him and his Companions a very civil Reception; but the Governor of *Nerea*, when they came to Court, fearing that they had a Design to bring over the *Portuguese*, would not let them proceed farther thro' his Dominions, and obliged them to turn towards *Baly*. *Ludolphus* says, 'tis inhabited both by Christians and *Gentiles*, and that 'twas subdued by *Melech Saghed*, who converted the Governor to Christianity. *Thevenot* says, the Country abounds with Civet-Cats, and that from hence comes all the Gold which passes on the Coasts of *Sofala* and *Guinea*. *La Croix* bounds it with *Damut* on the N. *Guraque* on the E. and *Gingiro* on the S. and says, 'tis reported to be three times bigger than *Bagamader*. *Lobo* places *Narea* in N. Lat. 8. and makes it 220 Leagues from thence to *Mazuan*. The *Sansons* bound it on the S. with the Mountains of the Moon, which *Marmol* calls the Mountains of *Bekt*, i. e. a Conflux of Waters, places under the Tropick of *Capricorn*, and extends from the Equinox to the Kingdom of *Esceva* thro' that of *Gogiana*. He says, they are higher than any other Mountains in *Africa* or *Europe*, and always cover'd with Snow and Ice, which the Sun melts when it shines upon them, and

and causes the Lakes to swell, and the Nile to overflow, as we formerly observed in Egypt. *Ethiopian* Merchants say, these Mountains and the adjacent Fields are furrounded by large bushy Forrests and Deserts full of Wild-Beasts. *Marmol* adds, that the Isle of *Meroe* contains three Kingdoms, whose Sovereigns in his Time differ'd in their Religion and Customs, and sometimes wage War one against another with great Cruelty. He says, one of them was a *Mahometan* on the W. Side of the Island, the second an idolatrous Negro on the S. Side, and the third an *Abyssinian* Christian on the S. Side.

We proceed now to the third and last Division of *Abyssinia*, viz. the E. Part towards *Zanguebar*, where the chief Kingdoms, &c. are.

1. X O A, X A O A, S H O A, or S E W A.

La Croix says, 'tis divided into Upper and Lower, and bounded with *Oifates* on the E. the Kingdom of *Ganz* on the S. *Gojam* on the W. and *Oleka* on the N. and that 'tis the farthest Kingdom subject to the King of *Abyssinia*. *Ludolphus* says, 'tis large and wealthy; and *Morery*, that the King of *Abyssinia* only possesses Part, the rest being taken from him by the *Galas*. The *Sansons* bound it with *Adea* on the E. *Fatigar* on the N. E. *Angot* on the W. and Part of *Zanguebar* on the S. and extend it above 330 Miles from N. to S. and 200 where broadest. *Heylin* bounds it on the W. with *Amara*, and on the S. with *Damut*, and says, it abounds with Corn and Cattle, but has few Towns of Note, and consists in Mountains and deep Vallies. He adds however, that it still remains subject to the Emperor of *Abyssinia*, with others of the Inland Provinces, notwithstanding the Calamities with which that Empire has been lately afflicted. *Pory* bounds it with *Goiame* on the W. *Walaka* on the N. and *Galla* on the E.

2. F A T I G A R, F A T E G A R, or F A T A G A R.

The *Sansons* bound it with the Kingdom of *Adel* on the E. *Adea* on the S. E. *Dancalum* on the N. *Tigremahon* on the N. W. *Angot* on the W. and *Xoa* on the S. W. They

make it 340 Miles where broadest from N. to S. and 380 from E. to W. where longest. *La Croix* bounds this Kingdom on the N. with the River of *Acaxe*, on the W. with the Kingdom of *Ogge*, and on the S. with the Province of *Gamat*. *Sanubius* says, it lies beyond that of *Adel*, on whose Frontiers *La Croix* tells us there's a Mountain called the Mountain of Fevers, near a Fair, whither the Inhabitants of both Kingdoms come to traffick by a very narrow Way on both Sides; and that there's another call'd the Mountain of the Lake, because there's a Lake upon it 3 Leagues in Compass, well stored with Fish, from whence flow many Rivers, that water the adjacent Fields, and there's a great Number of Churches and Monasteries. *Heylin* bounds it on the S. with *Barus*, and says, 'tis a champaign Country, abounding with Corn and Cattle, and Variety of pleasant Fruits. *Ludolphus* bounds it with *Balia* on the E. and says, 'twas formerly inhabited by Christians, and that it has a Præfect called *Fatagar Asgus*.

3. A N G O T.

The *Sansons* bound it with *Fatigar* and *Xoa* on the E. *Barus* and *Fungi* on the S. *Beleganza* and *Bagameder* on the W. and *Tigremahon* on the N. They extend it 510 Miles from N. to S. and almost 450 where broadest from E. to W. *Almeida* the Jesuit extends it but 60 Leagues in Length from *Larta* to the Nile, and but 20 in Breadth. *Godignus* bounds it on the E. with *Tegre*, which lies farther within the main Land, and *Sanutius* with the *Arabians* called *Dobas*. *La Croix* bounds it also on the N. with the same Kingdom of *Tegre*, from which 'tis separated by the River *Sabalet*, and on the S. with *Amara*. The chief Town, according to *Sanutius*, is *Defarzo*, with 1000 Houses, near the Frontiers of *Tegre*; and there's a Territory called *Abugana*, where there are several Churches, and one famous one called *Imbre Christos*. *Heylin* bounds it with the Nile on the W. and *Dancali* on the E. and says, it consists in Hills and Vallies, abounding with great Herds of Cattle, and the choicest Fruits. He places it in the Middle of *Ethiopia*, among those steep inaccessible Mountains where the Children of the Royal Family are kept till called to the Throne.

Throne. He says, the People eat but once in 24 Hours, and that commonly in the Night; that their Food is raw Venison or smoak'd Beef, and their chief Money Salt, Pepper, and Iron, which was generally the Barter of the Ancients.

4. D O B A S.

Moll bounds it with *Fatagar* on the N. *Adea* on the E. and *Alaba* on the W. The *Sansons* make it a Præfecture of *Fatagar* on the W. Side. *Heylin* bounds it with *Dangali* on the N.E. He says, 'tis large, and contains 12, some say 24 Præfectures, with such good Pasture, that the Kine here are said to be larger and more numerous than any where else: But the People are reported to be such profess'd Enemies to Christianity, that they won't suffer a Man to marry till he has killed 12 Christians. Some say they are Tributaries to the Emperor; but *Heylin* says, 'tis only when they list.

5. TIGREMAHON, TEGRE, or TIGRE.

The *Sansons* bound it with *Barnagasso* on the N. *Dancali* and *Dobas* on the E. *Angot* on the S. and the People called *Belloi* on the W. They make 300 Miles its greatest Breadth from N. to S. and 360 from E. to W. They subdivide it into 17 Provinces, and say, it enjoys a very temperate Air, and that it has Mines of Gold, Silver, Lead, Iron, Copper, and Sulphur. *Almeida* observes, that in order to fill up the void Spaces in the Maps of this Part of *Africa*, Geographers have made several Kingdoms out of one. Thus (says he) they have placed one Kingdom called *Tigray* near the Equinoctial, another in N. Lat. 7. called *Tigre-Mahon*, and a third farther out called the Kingdom of *Barnagas*; but he says, that these three Names are applied to one and the same Kingdom; and *La Croix* tells us, that *Mahon* is only the Appellative of the Viceroy of *Tegre*. *Almeida* begins it at *Macua*, a little Island near the Port *Arquico*, and carries it 12 Leagues along the *Red Sea* to *Dofalo*, another Port, and says, 'tis almost all inhabited by the *Moors*, who depend on the Turk. He makes it about 90 Leagues in Length, and 50 in Breadth, including *Barnagasso*,

and says, 'tis the largest and best of all the Kingdoms in *Ethiopia*. He bounds it on the N. with *Bagameder*, and on the E. with *Angote*, and extends it from thence to *Amahara* and the Banks of the *Nile*, where it meets with the great River *Boxilo*. *Ludolphus* says, 'tis the Frontier Kingdom of *Ethiopia*, but that there are not so many Governors as Præfectures in it, because two or three are sometimes under one Governor; and that it has high Mountains, particularly those of *Lamalmona*, two Days Journey from the *Red Sea*; and Mountains of Salt on the Frontiers of *Angote*. He adds, that Fevers are pretty rife here in the Spring, viz. about September and October. *La Croix* says, 'tis the most Eastern of all the Kingdoms of *Abyssinia*. *Alvarez* calls it *Ausen*. Some extend it N. as far as *Egypt*, *Bugia*, and *Nubia*, and W. as far as the Kingdom of *Dankali*; but then they include *Barnagasso*, which we shall describe by it self, because *Alvarez*, *Sanutius* and others, with whom our Tables agree, make it a separate Province under a particular Governor sent thither by the King. *La Croix* thinks it nevertheless a Part of *Tegre*. The latter bounds this Province with *Barnagasso* on the N. from which 'tis parted by the River *Marabo*; with the *Red Sea* on the E. the *Nile* on the W. and *Angot* on the S. *Heylin* bounds it on the N. with *Guagere*, and says, the Maritime Parts are chiefly possessed by the *Turks*, *Moors*, and *Arabians*, and the Inland Parts by a Mixture of Christians and Pagans. The Natives (he says) are black, deformed, miserable, and wicked. They have some Rivers, which are pretty dry in the Summer; but he says, with a little digging they find Water in them. He adds, that this Kingdom has a Prince of its own, who pays Homage to the *Abyssinian* Emperor, and a Yearly Tribute of 200 Horses of the best *Arabian* Breed, besides infinite Quantities of Silk, Cotton, Wool, and Gold.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Axuma*, *Ascum*, *Accum*, *Auxum*, *Kaxumo*, *Chaxumum*, or *Cassum*, so often mentioned by *Baronius* in his Annals. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 13 $\frac{3}{4}$. Long. 67. on the N. Side of the Kingdom. *Moll* Lat. 15 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 55 $\frac{1}{2}$. 160 Miles S. W. from the Port of *Arquiko* on the *Red Sea*. *Almeida* says, 'twas anciently a very famous City, as appears by the Ruins. The *Ethio-*

prians say, 'twas the Seat of the Queen of *Sheba*. Their Emperors kept their Court here for several Centuries, and are still crowned here, tho' 'tis now only a Village of some Hundred Houses. He places it 3 Leagues from *Fremona*, 45 from *Macua*, in Lat. 14. 30. and says, it has several ancient Ruins, particularly that of a great Church, which seems to have been 110 Fathom in Length, and 50 in Breadth, with 20 very high Stones cut like Pyramids, the highest being 104 Cubits in Height, and 10 in Breadth at the Basis. 'Tis raised upon Lays of Stones two Hands high. The least of those Pyramids are from 30 to 40 Hands high, and of rough Stone. The greatest of all lie all along upon the Ground, and were thrown down, 'tis said, by the *Turks* when they enter'd *Ethiopia*. 'Tis thought they were at first erected for an Ornament to the neighbouring Sepulchres, after the Manner of the *Egyptians*. Amongst the Ruins there's a rais'd Stone with an Inscription upon it in *Greek* and *Latin* Characters, but 'tis illegible. There's a Church here, where they say they keep their Altar-Stone, which is in Form of the Ark of the Old Testament, for fear the Roman Catholics should carry it away. *Ludolphus* says, that the *Gracians* called all the *Ethiopians* *Axumites* from this City. He places it 45 *Portuguese* Leagues, or 6 or 7 Days Journey, from the N. Sea; but he observes they are long ones, because of the Mountains. He calls it the Metropolis of *Abyssinia*, and says, it was anciently adorned with a noble Palace, Cathedral, and other fine Structures, with Obelisks, Sculptures, &c. but that now 'tis so defaced by the Wars with the *Moors*, and by Age, that 'tis almost totally ruin'd. Some think this the *Auxumon* or *Auxume* of *Ptolomy*, the *Axomites* of *Stephanus*, the *Auxumites* of *Arianus*, and the *Axomides* of *Procopius*. *La Croix* says, it lies in a fine Plain, well water'd, and that there are the three famous Churches of St. Michael, *Abalicanos*, and *Abba Pantaleon*, situate each upon a Hill about the Town. He thinks the Obelisks or Pyramids above-mentioned were set there in Honour of the Queen of *Sheba*'s Tomb, the Jesuits *Almeida* and *Mandez* having both endeavoured to prove that this was her Seat. *Heylin* thinks

it was the Seat of the Queen of *Candace*, mentioned in the *Acts*.

2. *Fremona*, *Fremone*, *Maegoa*, or *Maegoga*. *Moll* places it 83 Miles S. E. from the former. *Almeida* sets it almost in the Center of the Province, in N. Lat. 14 $\frac{1}{2}$. *La Croix* says, it stands upon a high Hill 135 Miles from *Mazua* Isle, and has its Name from St. *Fremonat* or *Fremantius*, the first Bishop of *Ethiopia*. The Mountains of *Lamalmonga* *Guea* and several others lie in the Road betwixt this Place and *Donea* and *Dambea*. He adds, that the *Portuguese* have built a Citadel here, and the Jesuits a Church, and the latter commonly reside here.

3. *Bisa*, *Bisam*, or *Biza*, i. e. Vision. *La Croix* says, they are high Mountains two Days Journey from *Dabaroa*, with Forrests full of Wild-Beasts, and several Monasteries, particularly that of the Vision of the Abbot *Eustachius*. He adds, that they are a Sanctuary for Rogues, because they lie at the End of the Kingdom; and that to the N. of *Kaxumo*, in the Territory of *Tarreto*, there are two Monasteries, the biggest of which is called *Alleluja*, and the other *Abbagerima*, both noted for the Residence of Jesuits, besides several other Places, particularly *Angeba*, where there's a Royal Palace, in which none must live but the Viceroy. *Heylin* says, there's one Monastery on the Top of a high Rock, where are 3000 Monks, that diet three and three together in a common Refectory, this being the chief of 6 others which he places in the Province of *Barnagasso*, the farthest not above 30 Miles distant. Besides, a great Number of poor Children are daily maintained here, and for this End they have all the Revenues of *Tigremahon*, the Tithes of the Mountain whereon it stands, which is very fruitful, rich, and at least 30 Miles in Compass, together with many good Farns at the Foot on't, and 100 small Villages belonging to them, out of which they yearly raise a great deal of Corn, and above 2000 Head of Cattle. They send the Novices or young Monks to manure the Lands abroad, or those about the House; so that none but the old ones are maintained at the Charge of the Monastery, tho' all alike bound to the Performance of Religious Offices.

We come now, according to Promise, to say something of *BARNAGASSO*, *BARNAGUES*, or *BARNAGAS*, the most Northern Province of *Abyssinia*, and the nearest to *Egypt*, which some mistake for a Part of *Tigremahon*. *Tellez* says, it contains three petty Lordships, with a small, but well built and populous Capital called *Baroa*, on a very pleasant and fruitful Hill near the River *Mareb*, which is well stored with Fish. *Alvarez* and *Sanutius* bound it on the N. with *Bugia* and *Nubia*, on the W. with the *Nile*, on the S. with the River *Mareb*, and some Mountains which part it from *Tigre*, and on the E. the *Red Sea*. The *Sansons* extend it 525 Miles from N. to S. and 330 where broadest, including the Coast of *Abex*, now possessed by the *Turks*, which we shall describe in *Zanguebar*. They say, that the Word *Barnagas* or *Barnagasso* signifies King or Lord of the Sea, because its Jurisdiction did formerly extend to all the Sea Coast from *Egypt* to *Dancala*, which is 250 Miles. *Heylin* bounds it on the W. with *Guagere*, or the Isle of *Meroe* on the *Nile*, with a Point of *Bagamedrum* on the S. W. *Dangali*, *Tigre*, and *Adel*, on the S. the *Red Sea* on the E. and on the N. *Balour*, and the Kingdoms of *Fasculum* and *Sua*, possessed by the *Turks*, which part it from *Egypt*. He tells us, that the *Turks* first invaded this Province in 1558, and forced the Governor to pay 1000 Ounces of Gold Yearly Tribute. He says, 'tis very fruitful, has Variety of Towns and Villages, and excellent Rivulets; and that on the W. Side of it there's a Mountain, which is spacious at Bottom, but then grows strait by Degrees, and enlarges it self again to a League in Compass at the Top, where there's a Palace, Church, Monastery, and two very large Cisterns, with a Piece of Ground able to entertain 500 Men: 'Tis only to be ascended one Way to a certain Mark, from whence they are drawn up to the Top of all with Cords and Baskets. For this Reason 'tis not to be taken by Force, nor by long Blockade, because it yields enough Provision; so that 'tis accounted the chief Hold of all this Province against the *Turks* and *Moors*. The Governor of *Barnagasso* pays the Emperor of *Ethiopia* 150 of the best Breed of Horses every Year, besides Silk and other Commodities.

La Croix says, that *Ogara* was formerly a Province of the Kingdom of *Bagamedri*, but now an independent State, of a high Situation, and colder Air than elsewhere. He makes it 90 Miles long, and 20 broad, and bounds it with the Mountain *Lamalmona* on the N. *Danea* on the S. E. *Bleat* and *Sequede* on the W. and *Argabale* on the E. He gives this brief Account of the *Gallans*, and the People called *Agay*, that are settled among the Inhabitants of this Country. He says, the former are descended from the *Jews*, after they were dispersed in the Time of *Salmanassar*, *Nebuchadnezzar*, and *Titus*, and settled themselves near the Kingdom of *Bali*. He observes, that they are the powerfulest Enemies of the *Abyssinian* Emperor, and have frequently invaded him, and seized great Part of his Empire. The *Agay*, he says, were not long ago universally Pagans, except a few who only professed the Name of Christians; but since many of them have been converted by the *Jesuits*. The first time that they came into *Ethiopia*, the Emperor quarter'd Part of them in the inaccessible Mountains of *Bagamedri*, which join to those of *Amahara*, and Part of them at the W. End of *Goiam*, in a Tract of Ground near the Source of the *Nile*, 20 Leagues long, and 7 broad, and divided into 20 mountainous Territories.

We shall conclude *Abyssinia* with a short Account of two Provinces in the S. Part of this Division, not mentioned in our Maps or Tables.

The first is *GINGIRO*, which, according to the Maps of the *Jesuits Almeida*, *Mendez*, *Pays*, and *Lobo*, is encompassed almost like a Peninsula with the River *Zabee*, and bounded with *Narea* on the W. *Cambaie* on the E. and *Gurague* on the N. We have the following Account of it from a Relation of *Upper Ethiopia* bound up with *Thevenot's* Collections. *Fernandez* the *Jesuit*, who travers'd this Country in 1613, in Company with the *Ethiopian* Ambassadors, bound to the Court of *Spain* from Sultan *Seged*, says, the then King of *Gingiro* was very much addicted to Magick, and that his Throne was a Sort of Cage 25 Spans in Height, 30 in Diameter, and terminating at the Top with an Orb like a Wheel, with a Carpet on it, whereupon the King sat,

Or rather perch'd, in a white Robe of fine Linnen, and all his Courtiers stood at the Bottom of the Throne, where he gave his Audiences. The Kingdom is small, and the Inhabitants are black like the *Caffres*; but they have not the same Features and Lineaments. They are all *Gentiles*, very much addicted to Magick, and have many extraordinary Customs. He observes, that *Gingiro* signifies a Monkey, and says, that the Prince's black Complexion, Gesture, and Manners, are all apish, and that the People are so brutish, that they kill their Kings and the Soldiers who return wounded from the Field of Battle, and alledge, that they ought to die rather than live with such Marks of the Enemies Advantage. The King never goes out of his Palace but before Sun-rise; and if it happens that the Sun appears before he is ready, he confines himself close all that Day in his Palace, does not ascend his Throne of Audience, and gives no Orders, because (say they) two Suns cannot exist in the World at the same Time. But to revenge the Disappointment, the Prince does not fail to be early enough next Morning.

When they elect a new King, they wrap the Body of the Deceased in rich Cloths, and put it in a Cow's-Skin just flea'd off. Then his Children and the Princes of the Blood go to hide themselves in a Wood, on Pretence of flying from the Honour. Upon this, the Electors, who are taken for great Sorcerers, hold a Council together, go to the Wood to seek him out that they have elected, and by Inchantment cause a Bird of Prey as big as an Eagle, which they call *Liber*, to fly down with a great Noise to the Place where he is. Then the Electors repair thither, and find him in the midst of Lyons, Tygers, Adders, Panthers, and the like Beasts, which they bring about him by Magick Art. 'Tis remarkable, that he makes Head against his Electors that come to carry him off to his new Dignity, and sometimes wounds and kills them; but they don't leave him till they have master'd him, which (says our Author) gives the strongest a great Share in his Favour. When they crown the King, they carry him to the Palace, and set him under a Tent. The 7th Day after the Death of the last King, the Magicians bring a Worm, which they say

came out of his Nostrils, wrap it in a Piece of Silk Stuff, and the new King bites off its Head with his Teeth. Then they carry the Deceased thro' sown Fields, on which they pray for his Blessing, to the Burial-place of the ancient Kings, which is in a little Wood, where they dig a Grave and interr him, but don't fill it up, because they say the Earth is not worthy to cover the Corps of their Prince, whose Grandeur is not inferior to the Sun. On the Day of Interrment, they kill several Cows over the Place, so that the Blood may fall down upon the King's Corps, and after that kill one there every Day while the new King lives, which falls to the Share of their Priests or rather Sorcerers, who let the Blood run into the Grave, but furnish their own Tables with the Meat.

To return to the new King, while he kills the Worm, the People shout for Joy, and wish him long Life, and the Festival concludes with his Installation on the Throne above-mentioned. Immediately after this he sends for his Predecessor's Favourites, and tells them, that since they were so much his Friends during Life, it was just they should accompany him into the other World to continue their Service, and then causes them all to be killed without any more ado. Then he chuses others in their Room, and fills up all the vacant Offices of his Kingdom; for our Author says, they make never the less Interest for the King's Favour, notwithstanding they are sure to be sacrificed at his Funeral. At the Time of Election, they burn all the deceased King's Houses and Goods (without Exception) to Ashes; and when a private Man dies, they not only burn his House and Trees, but also all the Plants about his Habitation, for fear (say they) lest the Deceased being used to those Places, should return thither again. After the Deceased's Palace is burnt, they build another, and a Throne upon it, after the Fashion of the Country. The Structure is supported by a great Piece of Wood in the Middle; but before they fell it in the Forrest, they kill the first Man that comes of a certain Family in the Kingdom, which for that Reason is exempt from all Tribute. Before the King sets his Foot within the Palace Gate, they kill another Man of the same Family, if the Palace has only one; but

but two if there be two Gates, and stain the Threshold, Lock, and Sides of the Gate, with his Blood.

When the King buys any Goods of Foreign Merchants that come into his Kingdom, he bargains to give them 20, 30, or more Slaves, whom he orders his Officers to chuse out of his Subjects. When they have this Authority, they enter boldly into the People's Houses, and take such Boys and Girls as they please, whom they deliver on the Spot to the Merchants without any Opposition. Our Author tells us, that no Family is exempted from this Vexation, but that whose Blood is shed to stain the King's Palace Gates. The same is observed when the King has a mind to make a Present of a Slave, in which Case he enjoins the Officers to pick out the handsomest they can find, from a Maxim they have, that a Gift ought always to be of the best. He adds, that the first thing which the King of *Gingiro* does after his Accession to the Crown, is to cause strict Search to be made over all his Dominions for those that have the Scurf, and so drown them in the River *Zebée*, for fear (say they) lest the Infection should reach the King.

2. *CAMBATA*. The Jesuits bound it with *Gingiro* on the W. *Adea* on the N. *Buzama* on the E. and *Alaba* on the S. E. It appears by the above-said Relation, bound up with *Thevenot*, that when *Fernandez* was here with the Ambassadors, there was a Prince or Governor here called *Amelmah*, who own'd the Emperor of *Ethiopia* for his Sovereign, as did also a People called *Guragues* on the Left Side of this Country; but it does not pay him Tribute, and is divided among several *Galans* and *Moors* of Quality. *Ludolphus* says, the Inhabitants are called *Hadians*, and are for most Part Christians, but mix'd with Pagans and *Mahometans*. We proceed now to the next Division of Upper *Ethiopia*, viz.

II. NUBIA Kingdom.

THE Reader will find this Country in *Moll's* Map of the E. Part of *Barbary*, where he bounds it with the Deserts of *Barca* and *Lybia* on the W. *Abyssinia* on the S. and E. and the Cataracts of the Nile and

Part of *Egypt* on the E. and N. and makes it above 860 Miles from N. W. to S. E. where longest, and 840 from E. to W. where broadest. The *Sansons* say, 'tis in a manner encompassed with Mountains, which separate it from the Desert of *Barca*, and *Egypt* on the N. *Saara* and *Negroland* on the W. and *Abyssinia* on the S. and that on the E. 'tis bounded partly by the Nile, which separates it from the Island *Gueguere*, and partly by an imaginary Line, which separates it from several Provinces, possessed some by the *Abyssines*, and others by the *Turks*. Thus they make it a long Square 400 Leagues from N. E. to S. W. and 200 from S. E. to N. W. *Leo* bounds it with *Gaoga* on the W. the Desert of *Goran* on the S. *Egypt* on the N. and the Nile on the E. *La Croix* says, the *Africans* call it *Neubæ*, and bounds it on the E. with the Provinces of *Bagamedri*, *Dafila*, and *Canfila*, in *Abyssinia*; but he reckons it among the Provinces of *Negroland*, and so does *Heylin*, who says, it has its Name from the *Nubæ*, an ancient and powerful People here, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, and different from those of the same Name on the Banks of the Red Sea, who were as short almost as *Pigmies*; for this Nation was anciently so warlike, that *Cyriachus*, one of their Kings, is said to have raised 100000 Horse for the Relief of the oppressed Christians in *Egypt*. The *Nubian* Geographer bounds it on the N. with Mount *Gembita*, on the W. with *Wantara*, and on the N. with the Kingdom of *Tagua*. *Morery* says, some call it the *Lesser Egypt*; that it extends along the Rivers Nile and Nubia 300 French Leagues in Length, and not much less in Breadth; and that it derives its Name from Nubia, which was formerly its Capital. *Dupleffis* and the *Sansons* extend it from N. Lat. 11. to 23. and from Long. 47. to 68. *Moll* from Lat. 15. to 25. *Gordon* from Long. 42. to 57. and from Lat. 9½. to 23. 840 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and 570 from E. to W. *Morden* makes it but 200 broad, and *Du Fer* 400 Leagues in Length. It appears by the Remarks made on the Relations of the Jesuits *Lobo* and *Telles*, that the *Arabian* Geographers and others of this Country say, that the Nile does not overflow no Part of Nubia, but that they are obliged to raise its Water with Engines; that its Banks are planted with Palm Trees; that it forms several

several Islands which are inhabited, and abound with Cattle, all Sorts of Game, and Fish: That most of the People were *Sabeans*; that they worshipped the Sun and Stars; that there are 10 Stations from the Rock of *Genadel* to the other End of *Nubia*; that this Country obeys *Sahab Elgebel*, i. e. the Lord of the Mountain; that the Balm-Tree grows no where but here; that the Princes of the Race of the Caliphs *Beni Unice*, at the Time of the Decay of their Family, retired into the Heart of this Country for Safety from their Enemies; that near the Town of *Alouach*, the *Nile* is divided into two Branches, of which that on the E. Side is of a Green Colour, and that on the W. White. *Haythou*, an *Armenian* Geographer, parts this Country from *Egypt* by a Desert of 10 Days Journey, call'd *Arane*. *La Croix* says, the *Nile* does overflow this Province, and render it fruitful in Corn and Pasture, and in Sugar; but 'tis too black, and not well tasted. There's a mortal Poison with which they drive great Traffick: 'Tis a little Grain which is gather'd at the End of an Herb like *Nettle*, and so strong, that our Author says one Grain is enough to kill 10 Men in a quarter of an Hour. It costs 100 Ducats an Ounce, *Heylin* says but 10, and that the King's Custom for it is as much as the Merchant's Price. *La Croix* adds, that they never sell it to Strangers without an Oath, that they will never use it in this Country. It also abounds with very fine Gold, Musk, Rue, Sandal Wood, and Plenty of Ivory, because of the Multitude of Elephants.

One of its chief Rivers is of its own Name, and he says it borrows its Waters from that of *Sira*, and runs afterwards into the *Nile* on the S. Side of *Egypt*. Its Canal is a little deeper than that of the *Nile*, and its Waters are so noxious to Crocodiles, that they die upon the Banks 5 or 6 Days after they are enter'd, &c.

La Croix tells us, they have a particular Language of their own; and tho' their present Religion is uncertain, yet he thinks it certain, that they were formerly for most Part Christians, because there are still to be seen the Ruins of above 150 Churches, where Christ, the Virgin, and several Saints, are represented in *Relievo*. *Haythou* says, they are still Christians; and *Brocard*, that

they administer Baptism as the *Abyssines* do, by the Impression of a hot Iron made in Form of a Cross upon the Body. Nevertheless *La Croix* says, their Ceremonies are mix'd with Christianity, *Mahometism*, and *Judaism*; but that they formerly depended on the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, and performed Divine Service in the *Coptick* Language. He adds, that they are govern'd by a King, whom the Grand Seignior ranks, by Way of Ostentation, in the Number of his Subjects, because the *Turks* have committed sundry Ravages in their Country.

La Croix says, the Inhabitants of the Towns live by Commerce, and those of the Villages by Husbandry; that they are extremely black, of a short Stature, and a Complexion pitted with the Small-pox, which comes upon them two or three times one after another. The Rich wear fine Linnen, and the Poor coarse, and in the hottest Weather go stark naked, except their Privities. They want no Courage, fight better on Horseback than a-foot, and lean so far over the Neck of the Horse, that at a Distance the Heads of the Rider and the Beast seem to be but one. In short, he says, they are like the *Centaurs* in the Fable; and that since they have learnt to poison their Arrows, the *Basha* of *Egypt* dares not attack them so often as formerly. *La Croix* tells us, that *Nubia* abounds with Lyons, Tygers, Crocodiles, Horses, and excellent Camels, which have one Bunch on the Back, and another on the Breast, that they rest on, but no Monsters. He says, that tho' the chief Food of their Camels is Barley, yet they sometimes put them out to Grass for 40 or 50 Days together; and that every Merchant has two Camels, of which one serves for nothing else scarce but to carry the Provisions.

Heylin says, the People were Christians from the Apostles Time to the Reign of *Cyriachus*, one of their Kings, but are now fallen off again to their former Idolatries, or become *Mahometans* for want of Pastors. *Alvarez* says, that when he was at the Court of the *Abyssine* Emperor, Ambassadors came thither from hence to desire a Supply of Jesuits, but were rejected. He tells us, that there is some Gold and other Metals; that the Country is naturally sandy, but full

full of Lakes and Rivers; and that the People for most Part are very wealthy, and manage a great Trade with the Merchants of *Egypt*. *Morey* says, they are witty; but that tho' the Country abounds with Sugar-Canes, yet the People know not how to make any Profit of them. Their King keeps considerable Forces on the Frontiers, to secure them against the Incursions of the *Turks* and *Abyssines*. He celebrates this Country for the Birth of him called the *Nubian* Geographer, and says, their Language is a Mixture of *Chaldean*, *Arabian*, and *Egyptian*.

Lays says, the Air here is excessive hot, and the Soil various, the Banks of the *Nile* being fruitful, and the rest dry and barren Deserts. He adds, that the King is a potent Prince, and that the People profess the Religion of the *Abyssines*, and build their Houses with Chalk. Many think that those Strollers called *Gypsies* derive their Original from this Country.

Morden says, they export Arms and Cloth; *Du Fer* says, the People are civil, and that their King has conquer'd and annex'd to his Dominions *Sennar*, which had a King of his own, who was tributary to the *Abyssine* Emperor; but none of his Dominions are much known.

Gordon says, 'tis seldom subject to Rain; that the longest Day in the N. Parts is 13 Hours and a half; and that the People are very strong and laborious. *Sanutius* says, there are some Emeralds in the Mountains on the Frontiers of *Gorham*.

The only Places of Note here are, 1. *Dancala* or *Dangala*, the Capital, which the *Sansons* place upon the *Nile*, Lat. $17\frac{1}{3}$. Long. $62\frac{1}{2}$. 90 Miles below the Isle of *Meroe*. *Moll* places it in Long. 52. *Leo* says, it contain'd in his Time 10000 Families, and was well stock'd with Civet and Sanders. *Thevenot* says, the King of *Dangala* is King of the *Berberins*, who are a Sort of *Mahometan* Negroes, and come in Crowds to *Cairo* to get Services. They are silly, and work all Day for two Maidins, or one and their Diet. They wear a blue Shirt, pleat all their Hair in Tresses, and oil it, to prevent the Breeding of Lice. When they fall out, they go before one of their Skeicks, who makes

them Friends, and if he sees Cause, fines them; after which they feast and make merry. When a *Frank* has got a Crocodile for the Skin, they'll beg it to eat, and dress it with a pretty good Sauce. When they have got together 10 or 12 Piasters, they will return home with it to their own Country, and go in Companies, that they may not be robbed by the *Arabs*. He adds, that the King of *Dangala* pays his Tribute to the King of *Ethiopia* in Cloth. *La Croix* says, this Town was formerly called *Tenupsis*, and that the Houses are only made of Wood or Laths, cover'd with Earth or Chalk, or Thatch and Mortar.

2. *Gorham*. The *Sansons* place it on the *Nile*, on the W. Side of the Island of *Gueguere*, 290 Miles S. W. of *Dancala*. Some place it in *Negroland*; but the *Sansons* prove them guilty of a Mistake, because the Negroes Residence is chiefly above and about the River *Niger*. *Sanutius* calls this a Kingdom, a People, and a Desert, and extends it almost the whole Length of the Island *Gueguere*; but he makes no Mention of any Town of this Name, no more than the *Nubian* Geographer, *Leo*, nor *Vincent Blanc*, who, tho' he says he was in these Parts, makes only Mention of the Desert. *Sanutius* tells us, there are Emeralds in the Mountains, which bound it on the S. from the Land of *Giudel*, according to *La Croix*. He bounds it with the Kingdom of *Madra* on the W. and *Gauga* on the N. and says, that the Inhabitants are worse than Brutes, and speak a Language which none but themselves can understand; yet nevertheless they have a King.

3. *Semen*, *Xionuche*, *Ximenche*, or the Land of *Giudel*. *La Croix* says, 'tis encompassed with Mountains, which separate it on the E. from the *Nile* and *Abyssinia*, on the S. from *Congo*, on the W. from *Benin*, and on the N. from *Dauma* and *Madra*.

4. The Desert of *Seth*, which he bounds with *Borno* on the N. and *Madra* on the E. and says, it abounds with Gold, which is carried to *Dauma* on the W. and S.

5. The Desert of *Seu* or *Zeu*. He says, it has Gold Mines on the N. *Dauma* on the E. certain unknown Mountains on the S. and *Borno* on the W. The *Sansons* say, they have taken the Distances of the several Towns

Towns in this Country from the Nubian Geographer, who says, that *Tamalma*, one of them, has a great many Inhabitants, but no Walls; that *Matham* is the Seat of the King of *Cazem*, who has several Towns here; and that *Zaghara* (probably that which *Moll* calls *Saghari*) is the best, and drives a pretty good Trade. The latter takes Notice, that the Ruins of many Christian Churches are still to be seen in these Parts.

We come now to the third Division of *Ethiopia*, the last of *Africa*, and that in which the *Sansons* include all the Coast of Upper *Ethiopia*, viz\

III. ZANGUEBAR, ZANQUEBAR, or ZANZIBAR.

LURTS and the *Sansons* divide it into the Coast of *Abex*, *Ajan*, and *Proper Zanguebar*, and bound it on the N. with Upper Egypt, on the W. by *Nubia*, *Abyssinia*, and *Monæmugi*, on the S. by *Caffaria*, and on the E. by the Sea of *Zanguebar* and the *Arabian Gulph*. *Marmol* extends it as far as Cape *Gardafuy*, in N. Lat. 12. *Paul* the *Venetian* called it *Zengibar*, but the *Arabians* *Zanguebar*, from the Word *Zangue*, which signifies Black. From hence he says the Inhabitants are called *Zangui*, i. e. *Negroes* and *Caffres*, because they have no Religion. We shall follow the Division of our Tables, and begin with

1. ZANGUEBAR.

Moll begins it in Lat. 18. and carries it almost a Degree beyond the Line. He extends it above 1000 Miles along the Coast, and 470 where broadest. The *Sansons* make the Length 5 or 600 Leagues, and say, the Ancients called it *Barbaria Regia*. They extend it from the River *Cuama* on the S. to the River *Quilmancus* or *Quilimanci* on the N. *La Croix* places it in Lower *Ethiopia*, and so does *Heylin*, who observes too, that the Country on both Sides this last River was anciently called *Barbaria*, as appears from the neighbouring Bay called *Sinus Barbaricus*; and that 'twas then much fam'd for the best Sort of Myrrhe, the *Myrrha Troglo-*

dytica and *Myrrha Barbara* being us'd for the same by some of the Ancients, because the *Troglodytes* and the People of this *Barbaria* join'd on one another; and our Author charges *Pliny* with a Mistake for saying, that the Myrrhe of this Country was only called *Barbara*, from its Drossiness. *Luyts* says, *Zanguebar* is almost square, but that the Sides are above four times longer from N. to S. than from E. to W. He adds, that the Coast is full of Bays and Winding Shores. *Du Plessis* carries it two Degrees beyond the Line. Some think it the *Agisymba* of *Ptolomy*.

'Tis bounded on the N. with *Ajan*, on the W. by *Abyssinia* and *Monæmugi*, on the S. by *Caffaria*, and on the E. by the Sea of *Zanguebar*. *La Croix* says, the Air is unwholesome, and the Fruits not good, because the Soil is low, marshy, and full of Lakes and Rivers. They have no Corn nor other Necessaries but what they have from other Parts, in Exchange for the Gold which they dig out of their Mines. *Fer* says, they drive a great Trade too in Ivory with Europeans, and especially with the Portuguese. *Du Plessis* says, the Air is very hot, but that the Land in some Parts abounds with Rice, Millet, Citrons, and Oranges. *Luyts* says, it yields good Pasture, and that their Sheep are extraordinary fat, and have Tails of a prodigious Weight. They have numerous Herds of Elephants; and he adds, that they have some Silver. *Heylin* says, the Country is full of Woods and Forrests.

La Croix tells us, that the Inhabitants have short frizled Hair, and wear a Vest of Woollen or painted Callico from the Waist downwards. Those of best Note dress themselves in Beasts Skins, with long Tails which drag behind upon the Ground. Those on the Coast live better than the rest; but their principal Food is Wild-Fruits, Pulse, and the Flesh and Milk of Wild-Beasts, especially that of the *Arabs* called *Beduins*, who live in the Inland Parts of *Zanguebar*, and draw a great Number of Cattle from the *Caffres*. He adds, that the Inhabitants are Idolaters; but *Morden* says, there's a Mixture of *Arabians* and *Mahometans*; and *Fer*, that they are very tractable. *Du Plessis* observes, that there are only a few Christians in such Places on the Coast as belong

to the *Portuguese*; upon which Account *Luyts* observes, that the King of *Portugal* is stiled, among the rest of his Titles, King of the farther Side of the *African Ocean*. *Heylin* says, the People are much addicted to Sorcery and Witchcraft, and that they go quite naked above the Waist. He adds, that the *Moors* on the Coast sail in little Vessels fow'd with Leather Thongs, and calked with Gum, without any other Sails than the Leaves of Palm-Trees.

He divides this Country into 15 Provinces, viz. *Melinde*, *Bombaza*, *Quiloa*, *Mosambique*, *Sofala*, *Moenhemage*, *Corova*, *Calen*, *Anzuga*, *Monzabo*, *Badin*, *Mombra*, *Mombizo*, *Embroe*, and *Marcaes*. *Gordon* says, it has several petty Kingdoms, but that the Places on the Sea-Coast are tributary to the *Portuguese*. *Du Pleffis* divides it into N. and S. *Zanguebar*, and calls the first the Coast of *Melinda*, and the last that of *Mozambique*, containing each three principal Kingdoms, besides other lesser ones, in the Description whereof we shall follow our Maps.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Mongal*, *Monagalum*, or *Mongalo*. *La Croix* and the *Sansons* place it about the Mouths of the *Cuama*, and the former says, 'tis a petty State of *Mahometan Arabs*, under a particular Prince of their own Religion; and that they trade in Gold with the Subjects of *Monomotapa*. *Du Pleffis* says, that it lies upon the River *Zembeze*, which separates it from the Coast of *Cassaria*. The *Sansons* say, that the Inhabitants trade in Manufactures of Cotton and Silk.

2. *Angos*, *Anhos*, *Agoch*, or *Angoche* Kingdom, according to *Moquet*. *La Croix* places it near another Branch of the *Cuama*, and says, it has several Isles within its Jurisdiction. The King is a *Mahometan*, and the Subjects are in Part *Arabian Merchants*, who trade with those of *Quiloa*, *Mombaze*, and *Melinda*, in Gold, Ivory, Stuffs of Silk and Cotton, and Amber-Beads of *Cambaya*. The rest of the Inhabitants are Pagan Negroes, of a short Stature, who wear Silk Turbans, with Robes of Silk or Cotton from the Waist downward, and speak a different Language from the *Arabians*. Some place it upon a River of its own Name, and *Luyts* makes it only a Town in *Mongal*. In this Country the *Sansons* place *St. Raphael*, near that which *Vasco de Gama* called the River of Good Signs,

where he erected a Stone Cross, and left two condemned Persons to observe the People and Country; but *Moll* places it N. of *Quiloa*.

3. *Mozambique*, *Mosambique*, or *Mozambicha*, a Kingdom, Island and Town, of the same Name. 'Twas discover'd by *Vasco de Gama* in 1498 for *Emanuel King of Portugal*, when the Inhabitants were for most Part *Mahometans*, but the genuine Natives Idolaters, all subject to the K. of *Quiloa*, and they drove a Trade to *Arabia*, *India*, and other Parts of the World. *Gama* and his Company were assaulted here when the Governor knew they were Christians. He is said to be the first that crossed from hence to *India*, which he did in 1502. Captain *Peyton* says, that the *Portuguese* have a Trade here as well as upon the River *Quama* for Gold, Silver, Amber-greece, Elephants-Teeth, and Slaves. They built a Castle here, which *Harris* says a Dutch Fleet in 1603 prepared to attack, and took several of their Ships then in the Harbour; but the *Portuguese* repulsed them. *La Croix* says, this happen'd in 1606, when the Dutch had but 4 Ships before it. *Marmol* thinks the Cape of *Mosambique* to be the *Prase* of *Ptolomy*, and says, the *Portuguese* Ships put into this Port for Refreshment and Necessaries to prosecute their Voyage to the *East-Indies*. Sir *Thomas Herbert* calls it a Peninsula, and places it near the afore-said *Prasum* of *Ptolomy*, in whose Time he says the People were Man-eaters, as the Negroes are at this Day. He adds, that the *Portuguese* have several Colonies and Forts all along these Coasts, and that the Sea of *Zanguebar* abounds with Dolphins. *Mandelsloe* says, the Isle of *Mosambique* does not lie above half a League from the Continent; that 'tis in the Possession of the *Portuguese*; and that tho' but half a League in Compass, yet the Governor gets 150000 l. a Year by the Trade of this Place, *Madagascar*, and *Sofala*, during his three Years Government. He adds, that the *Portuguese* first discover'd it in 1506, when the Captain civilly treated a Boat-full of Negroes on board his Ship, and gave them Presents; but they shot their Arrows at his Ship as soon as they were returned to their Boat, till the Captain humbled them by a Volley of small Shot and Cannon-Ball; and that *Rodrigo Pereira*, another *Portuguese* Captain, being forced upon the

the Coast the same Year by bad Weather, sent a Negro ashore that had some Knowledge of the Language, to signify that he came thither to settle Commerce, which they pretended to approve; but were no sooner got at a Distance from the *Portuguese*, than they fell upon the Moor with an Intention to kill him, if the *Portuguese* had not discharged their Fire-Arms, by which they killed some upon the Spot, and put the rest to Flight. Sir *William Monson* says, no Man must adventure in any Ship that goes from hence to *Goa* but the Governor, and such Persons as are married in Town, for none else are suffer'd to live there, because of Peopling the Place, which is very unwholesome and infectious. He tells us, that after the Governor's three Years are expired, he is bound to serve three Years more at the Command of the Viceroy of *Goa*, unless he has the King's Patent to the contrary. The Island is strong by Nature, and has Plenty of Provisions, except Corn, with a fair Town, which has many Conveniencies, like the Castle of *Mina*. He observes, that the *Portuguese* use this Place only for Refuge and Refreshment, and not for Trade, except what the Governor and Inhabitants drive to *Sofala*, which is under its Jurisdiction.

Gemelli says, the Island of *Mosambique* is three Miles round, and a Mile long, and that the Jesuits have a Garden of Palm-Trees here. The Fort lies on the Mouth of the Channel, which runs betwixt the Island and the Continent. It has four good Bastions, and 74 Cannon. The Governor has the Title of General of the River *Senna*, where he has his Lieutenant, which Employment is worth to him several Hundred Thousand Crowns. There are only a few Houses about the Fort, for the Inhabitants keep their best Effects on the Continent. Nevertheless there are Monasteries of Jesuits, *Dominicans*, and of *St. John de Dios*, besides the chief Church, and that of *Misericordia*. The Merchandizes brought hither by the Company's Ships are bought at a set Price by the Royal Factory, which afterwards sends them in little Vessels 300 Miles along the Coast to *Chilimani*, the Mouth of the River *Senna*, from whence they are sent up the River against the Stream in little Boats, which are 10 Days going up, and but 5 coming down, the River being full of

Shallows and Windings. The Negroes resort hither from Places 3 or 4 Months Journey distant to buy or take up Goods upon Credit for Gold, which they punctually bring next Year, unless Death prevents them. He adds, that the *Portuguese* gain above *Cent. per Cent.* by this Trade. Our Author tells us, that *Senna* is a little Town on the Right Hand of the River, inhabited by 50 *Portuguese* Families, who keep a great Number of Blacks to till the Ground, and dig the Mines, which are so full of Gold, that the Missionaries, when they return from this Place, carry away Ingots and Plates; and they say, that a Month's Journey up the Country, the Beasts Shoes are set on with Gold Nails.

To return to *Mozambique*, *Gemelli* says it lies 15 Days Journey from *Sofala*. *La Croix* places this Kingdom N. of *Angos*, and says, it commands three Islands, *viz. Mosambique*, which is the largest, *St. George*, and *St. James*, situate all three at the Mouth of the River of *Megineate*; and over against *St. George's* Island, about a Mile from thence, he places *Caboceira*, which he says is a Peninsula, join'd to the Continent by a little Slip of Land, which the Waves that beat it on both Sides overflow in the Tide; but at Ebb they retire, and then 'tis fordable.

Our Author tells us, that the Continent of *Mosambique* abounds in Millet, Rice, Pulse, Oranges, and Citrons, and a Plant which the *Portuguese* call *Pao d'Antac*, because its Root is a sovereign Remedy against a Disease called *Antac*, which the *Europeans* are often infected with by the Negroes. The Plant very much resembles our long Astrologe, and yields a Grain as big as green Pease, but somewhat longer. The Inhabitants make a Sort of Beer of Millet called *Huyembe*. This Country is so full of Wild-Beasts, Stags, Wild-Boars, and Elephants, that the Inhabitants are obliged to light up Fires about the Fields to keep them off, and dare not stir abroad without Firebrands or lighted Torches, to scare away the Elephants. There's also Plenty of large Cattle. In their Woods there are Wild-Fowls, which are spotted with White and Grey, and bigger than Turkeys; but they have Heads smaller than ordinary Hens, and a shorter Comb, but thicker and of a brighter Colour. The Inhabitants of *Mosambique*

Sambique have short frizled Hair, an oval Face, Lips two Fingers thick, and very white Teeth. They all go naked, except a Modesty-piece of blue Cotton, a Leaf or a Piece of Bark to cover their Privy Parts. They besmear their Bodies with Red Earth. Those that have a mind to distinguish themselves, paint Foliage upon their Bodies with Indigo, and make three Holes in each Lip, which they fill with Bones, Ivory, &c. They eat Fruits and Flesh, especially that of Elephants and Men, and kill all Prisoners for that End. They are false, brutish, and fit for hard Labour. In short, *La Croix* says, they have all Qualities natural to Slaves, and that they don't look upon Slavery as any great Hardship. He tells us, that this Country is divided into several Provinces and Lordships, which have each a different Dialect. The Inhabitants Wealth consists in Gold which they find in Rivers, Ebony, Ivory, and Slaves. They have no great Commerce together, except with those of the Coast, who come to visit them in their Canoes. They admit no Foreigners but the *Portuguese*. *La Croix* places the Island of *Mosambique* two Miles from the Continent, but says, the Point of the Continent runs out farther into the Sea than the Island. There's 8 or 10 Fathom Water in the Port, and Ships lie at Anchor a Stone's-throw from the Island, with the Continent on the N. Side, and on the S. the two little Islands above-mentioned, which are desert, and bear nothing but Shrubs and Bushes. The Pilot *Verhoeven* says, the Houses are very well built, and that the Castle stands a Musket-shot from the Town. The *Dominican* Convent is set apart for pious Uses, and 'tis a Sort of Hospital for those who come off sick from the Sea. The Fort is commended for the most regular Place which the *Portuguese* have upon all the Coast. 'Tis square, and encompassed with a treble Rampart, and a very large Ditch. The Air, says *La Croix*, is very hot, and they have no fresh Water, but a little Spring which runs among the Palm-Trees in the Middle of a Wood, and which is soon exhausted. However they bring some from *Cabo Ceira* on the Continent, and put it in large Earthen Jars. They also keep Rain-Water in Cisterns as big as our Cellars. With this they water their Gardens of Citrons, Oranges,

Ananas, and Fig-Trees. They have Sheep in this Part of the Country with Tails of 25 Pound Weight, as big as $\frac{1}{3}$ of their Bodies. Their Pork is very good and sound, so that the Physicians prescribe it to their Patients when they must not eat any thing else. There are Birds with black Feathers, Flesh and Bones, which they eat either raw or dress'd; and when boil'd, the Broth looks as black as Ink: Nevertheless their Flesh is very tender. The River of *Mosambique* is full of Fish, particularly one Sort which the Natives call *Marraxos*, and the *Portuguese*, *Tintoreas*, which devours all Men that fall or swim in the River. The Negroes of the Island are of a little Stature, with short-frizled Hair like Lambs Wooll; and when they are hot, they stink. They are naturally cruel, deceitful, and Enemies to Strangers, but so lazy and fearful, that the *Portuguese* know how to manage them. Their Ornaments are three or four Necklaces of White, Green, Blue, Red, and other Colours; 10 or 12 Bracelets of Copper or Pewter, Ear-Pendants of Brass Wire, and they make Incisions in their Skin. Besides Palm-Wine, they make Beer of Rice. The *Portuguese* are Masters both of the Island and Coast, and the Negroes are partly *Mahometans*, and partly Christians, but most of them *Caffres*. The Trade of the *Portuguese* consists chiefly in Spanish Wine, Oil, Stuffs, and Coral, which they transport from divers Parts to *Sena*, *Sofala*, &c. and the Negroes are employed in making Mats, which they export to *Goa*. Their ordinary Canoes are only made of the Trunk of a Tree; but when they build greater Vessels, they join several Planks together with the Cords of the Bark of Palm-Tree, for they don't use Iron or Nails. *Morden* says, the Fort is called *St. Mark's*, and that the Harbour lies on the N. Side of the City, and the two Islands above-mentioned on the Left Hand as one enters it. *Du Plessis* says, the King of *Mosambique* is commonly a *Mahometan*.

The *Sansons* place *Mosambique* in Lat. $15^{\circ} \frac{2}{3}$. Long. $68. 10$. *Moll* Lat. $14^{\circ} \frac{3}{4}$. Long. $59. 420$ Miles N. E. from *Sofala*, over against Cape *St. Andrea* in *Madagascar*, and near 1000 Miles from the Capes of *Good Hope* and *Gardafuy*. The former say, that among other Fruits, they have Coco's, and choice long Figs four times bigger than ours. The

Tree bears every Year, and only sends forth one Branch, on which several Figs ripen one after another, and last almost all the Year. The Leaves are large enough to cover a Person of middling Stature; and when the Tree dies, it leaves a Root from whence another Fig-Tree springs next Year. Some say, that *Gama* invented the Mariners Compass while he was here; but *Luyts* thinks 'twas known to the *Spaniards* 5 Years before, when *Columbus* set out on his Discovery of *America*. Some mistake *Mosambique* for *Solomon's Ophir*. *Heylin* says, the Natives were so rude and ignorant when the *Portuguese* first came among them, that they sold 15 Kine for a Shirt, a Razor, and a little Bell, and then quarrell'd who should have the Bell. He observes, that after the Governor has enrich'd himself by his three Years Administration at this Place, he must serve for three Years more at some Place in the *East-Indies* at his own Charge before he can return home. He adds, that the City stands in a low fenny Ground.

4. *Quiloa* Kingdom, Town and Island. *Harris* says, that after *Gama* had his first Repulse at *Mosambique*, he try'd to land here, but was disappointed. He makes the King of *Quiloa's* Dominions 900 Miles in Length, and says, that his Subjects are a mix'd Sort of People, but speak mostly *Arabick*. The Country abounds in clear Springs, Trees, wild and tame Cattle, a rich Soil, and good Fishing in its Rivers. 'Tis separated by a narrow Sea from Land, and he places it about 400 Miles from *Mosambique*. The City, he says, is large and populous, and the Houses magnificent and well furnish'd. They use a Sort of Bastard Frankincense about their Ships for want of Pitch. He adds, that *Capralis*, the *Portuguese* Admiral, who was here in 1500, was treating about a League of Amity with the then King; but 'twas broke off by the Treachery of the *Moors*.

The *Sanfons* place it in Lat. 9. 11. Long. 67 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Moll*, who calls it *Quiola*, in Long. 58. near Cape *del Gado*, over against the *Comoro* Islands, and 327 Miles N. from *Mosambique*. *La Croix* places it in Lat. 8. 50. near the Mouth of the River *Caavo*, which rises out of the Lake *Zambre*, and 160 Leagues from the Island of *Mosambique*. He says, the Soil of the Island is of the same Nature

with the Continent, and that there's a fine Town in the former, with Houses built after the *Spanish* Fashion, divided into several Stories and Apartments, and a Garden to each. *Linschotten* says, that the King in his Time was Vassal to the K. of *Monamugi*; and *La Croix*, that the Soil abounds with several Sorts of Grain and Fruits, such as Maiz or *Turkey* Wheat, of which they make Bread, Rice, Oranges, Citrons, &c. which thrive without much Pains. There's also Plenty of Turtles, Pigeons, Poultry, &c.

He tells us, that the Inhabitants imitate the *Arabian* or *Turkish* Dress. The Rich wear Cloth of Gold, Cotton, Silk or Scarlet, with Turbans of the same. The Women adorn themselves with Chains of Gold or Silver about their Arms and Legs, and fine Pendants in their Ears. The Men deck the Hilt of their Swords and Ponyards with fine Pearls and Precious Stones: But when any of their Kindred die, they put off those Ornaments, while the Men fast and shave their Heads. There are many substantial Merchants in the Town, who trade in Gold, Silver, *Ambergreece*, Pearls and Musk, and learn the Language of Foreigners, with whom they traffick. He adds, that most of the Inhabitants are zealous *Mahometans*, and the rest Pagans and *Caffres*. *Morden* observes, that the King of this Country was the first of all the Coast that became tributary to the *Portuguese*. He says, there are the same black Fowls here as in *Mosambique*. *Morery* says, the Port is much frequented, and that 'tis guarded with a strong Castle; and he places Old *Quiloa* 150 *French* Leagues from *Mosambique*. *Heylin* bounds this Country on the N. with *Mombaza*, and commends it for its Pleasantness. He says, most of the Inhabitants are descended from the *Arabians*, and that their Complexion is almost white. He commends their Women for Comeliness, rich Apparel, Civility, and Neatness in their Houses; and the Doctor adds, that while they are Children, their private Passages are sow'd up, leaving only a small Vent for their Urine, and that they are carefully kept at home till married: But if the Husband finds this Sign of her Virginity wanting, he sends her home with Reproach, and her Parents receive her with Disgrace. *Heylin* denies that the River *Coava*, which falls into the Channel

Channel over against this Island, flows from the Lake Zambre. He says, that the Town stands in a cool fresh Air, surrounded with Trees, which are always green.

La Croix says, there's another Town upon the main Land called *Old Quiloa*, built by *Haly*, Son of *Hofchen*, the King of *Persia*, and the Seat formerly of an *Arabian* Prince, who was a great Enemy to the Christians, and was so powerful, that his Empire reach'd above 250 Leagues, including *Mosambique*, *Angos*, and *Sofala*; but in 1505 *Fra. Almeida* put him to Flight, took his City, with 700 Men, and made his Kingdom tributary to *Portugal*, after the King had feigned himself sick, and prepared for a Defence of the City. *Heylin* gives this farther Account of it. He tells us, that *Ali* above-mentioned, whose Mother was an *Abassine*, quarrelling with his other Brethren, whose Mothers were *Persians*, travelled into these Parts, and bought this Island: After which, his Successors growing rich by the Trade of *Sofala*, not only extended their Dominions far within Land, but made the City of *Quiloa* one of the finest in these Parts. Our Author says, 'twas first taken in 1500 by *Vasco de Gama*; and that after the *Portuguese* had made *Abraham* the King tributary to their Crown, they erected Fortresses by his Leave in proper Places; but in 1505 deposed him, on Pretence that he did not pay his Tribute, and set up another in his Room, for which the *Arabians* took Arms, dethron'd the new King, demolish'd the Fortifications of the *Portuguese*, and expelled them, till 1509, when 'twas taken by *Almeida* above-mentioned, who was then Viceroy of *Africa* for the *Portuguese*. After this, the King of *Quiloa* agreed to pay a Yearly Tribute of 1500 Marks of Gold to the *Portuguese*, and the latter built a Fort on the Island, which *Pory* says was afterwards demolished by Order of the King of *Portugal*. He brands the Natives for tall Cowards, and adds, that the Island abounds with Millet, Cattle, Woods, Palm-Trees, Lemons, and Sugar-Canes. The *Sansons* say, that *Quiloa* lies almost 250 Leagues by Sea from *Mosambique*, and that 'tis very unhealthy to *Europeans*; and *Du Plessis* says, that for this Reason the *Portuguese* surrender'd the Town after they took it to the King of the Country, upon

Condition nevertheless of paying the Annual Tribute.

5. *Monbaza*, *Mombassa* or *Mombaza*, *Monbaccia* or *Mombase* Kingdom, Fort and Island, of the same Name. *Harris* says, the Air and Country here is sweet, fruitful, and pleasant, but the People false. The King of this Place sent 100 armed Men to surprise the Admiral *Gama*; but he escaped. The *Moors* say, that sometimes great Lumps of *Ambergreece* are found on this Coast. *Herbert* says, 'tis a small Island under S. Lat. 3. 50. wherein he agrees with the *Sansons*; but *Moll* places it in a Gulph, Lat. 4 $\frac{1}{2}$. at the Mouth of the River *Cuavo*. *La Croix* says, the Island is 12 Miles round, but a little Distance from the Continent, and gives its Name to a fine large Town situate upon a Rock, and defended by a strong Castle, where the Prince resides, and the Houses are built after the *Italian* Model. He tells us, that in 1505 *Fran. Almeida* plunder'd and burnt three Parts on't; after which 'twas rebuilt, and *Nugno d'Acugna* plunder'd it a second time. But the *Portuguese* considering the Cost of keeping it, intrenched themselves in the Citadel, from whence the *Arabian* Cheik expelled them in 1631. He extends it N. as far as the Town of *Orgaba* on the Banks of the River *Orchit*, which runs into the *Nile* near the Mountains of *Amara*, on the Frontiers of the Kingdom of *Melinda*. The King of *Mombaza* can raise 80000 Men; and when he marches his Forces into the Field, they drive Beasts before them to break the Enemy's Ranks, and receive their first Discharges. They are follow'd by Men that carry Fire before the Prince's Guards, to signify that the Vanquished must expect to be roasted and eaten. When he is in his Enemy's Dominions, he spares neither Man nor Beast, but causes all to be put to the Sword. He styles himself Emperor of the World, and pretends that all the Earth ought to be subject to his Orders, as the Sea is to the *Portuguese*. In excessive Rain or Heat, he shoots his Arrows against the Sun.

The Climate is very temperate, tho' so near the Line, because of the Rains and Dew, and the Earth being well water'd, abounds with Millet, Rice, sweet and sour Oranges, Lemons, Citrons, Pomegranates, Peaches.

Peaches without Stones, and all Sorts of Herbs. There's also Plenty of Wild-Fowl, and great and small Cattle, with very good Pasture. 'Tis inhabited by a Mixture of Whites, Negroes, and tawny People, cloath'd like the *Arabs*, with long Robes of Cloth of Gold and Silk. Their Bread is Cakes of Miller, and their Drink Beer made of Rice and Metheglin, which they keep in Vessels made of Cows Horns. The Island has a very good Harbour, frequented by the Merchants of *Zanzibar*, *Penda*, &c. *La Croix* adds, that the Kings of *Mombaza* and his Subjects were formerly Pagans; and thō in 1510, after the Arrival of the *Portuguese*, some of them were converted to Christianity, yet they turned *Mahometans*; for in 1631, tho' the King who was then upon the Throne married a Christian Woman, and was brought up from his Infancy in the Roman-Catholick Religion, yet quarrelling with the *Portuguese*, he massacred all the Christians, took the *Portuguese* Castle by Storm, and turn'd *Mahometan*, that he might have the Protection of the *Turks*. Thus far *La Croix*. *Morery* bounds it with *Quiloa* on the S. *Heylin* says, the Temper of the Soil and People is the same with *Melinda*. He places the Town 70 Miles from *Melinda*, and thinks that the Island and City resembles *Rhodes*. He makes the latter about a Leag. in Compass, and says 'tis walled round, and fortified with a Castle built by the *Portuguese*. The Streets are narrow, but well built, the Houses of Brick, and the Mosques large. He tells us, that tho' *Gama* took the Town in 1500, yet the *Portuguese* abandon'd it, because of the unhealthy Air. After this, in 1589, the *Portugal* Viceroy of *Goa* sent *Tho. de Catigno*, who took and plunder'd the Town, with 5 or 6 *Turkish* Gallies, and in them 46 great and small Cannon. All the *Turks* and Citizens, but those who escaped to the *Portuguese*, became a Prey to the Man-eaters called *Imbians*, who had before laid Siege to the City, and now devour'd the King and as many of the principal Citizens as were left behind. The *Sanseus* place it 150 Leagues from *Quiloa*, and say, that the Harbour affords Anchorage for great Vessels, and that the *Portuguese* still keep a Fort there for the Security of their Trade. *Morden* says, the *Portuguese* winter here sometimes, because of the Cheapness

of Provisions; but that the Entrance into the Harbour is so narrow and rocky, that in some Places there is not Room for above one Ship to enter. Captain *Peyton* says, the *Portuguese* trade here for Gold, Ambergreece, Elephants Teeth, and Slaves, in Exchange for the Commodities of *Surat*.

6. *Melinda*. *Harris* says, 'tis a fruitful Country, with a stately well built Town of the same Name. The People are Idolaters and Negroes, with short curl'd Hair, and naked from the Navel upward, but cover'd downward with Silk Down as far as the Calves of their Legs. *La Croix* says, it lies partly under the Line, and partly on the Coast. He extends it from the N. Frontiers of *Mombaza* to S. Lat. 2 $\frac{1}{2}$. as far as the River of *Quilimanci*, which has its Mouth towards the N. beyond the Line, and that it bounds *Chelicia* within Land. The Capital lies in a fine Plain. The Town contains a great many Houses, with Free-stone Walls, painted Rooms, and handsome Moveables. The Harbour is somewhat distant from the Town, because of Rocks, with which 'tis encompassed towards the Coast; but on the Land-Side there are fine Gardens. Some think 'tis the *Mondel* which *Avicenna* says produces black Aloes. The Soil abounds with all Necessaries for Life, except Wheat and Rye, so that instead of Bread they use the Root called *Patatas*. There are a great many Fruit-Trees and Plants, particularly choice Melons and Citrons. There's Deer and other Game, Oxen, and Sheep with Tails that weigh 20 or 30 Pounds, besides Poultry, Geese, and all Sorts of Wild-Fowl. The People beyond the River *Quilimanci* are white, as are also most of the Women of the Town of *Melinda*. They wear a Necklace and Girdle, with Bracelets of Gold and Silver, and Veils. The Men only wear a Turban, and a Robe of Cotton and Silk from the Waist downward. Some of them are very rich Merchants, and trade with the *Indians* of *Canbaya* in Gold, Ivory, Copper, Quicksilver, and all Sorts of Stuff. Their Arms are a Bow and Arrows, Buckler and Darts, and 'tis said they are the best Soldiers on the Coast; but those of *Mombaza* have been often too strong for them, and would have ruin'd them e're now, says our Author, had it not been for the *Portuguese*. The King causes himself to be carried up-

on the Shoulders of the chief Gentlemen of the Country, and they burn Perfumes before him when he passes thro' the Streets. When a Prince or great Nobleman comes to see him, he makes him pay the same Honours. He is very ready to hear the Complaints of his Subjects, distributes Justice without Respect of Persons, and 'tis dangerous to impose upon him. He shews no Favour to Slanderers, and the greatest Mercy which he shews to the dearest of his Favourites is to fine or cudgel them with his own Hands, more or less, in Proportion to the Crime. They strip the Malefactor, lay him upon the Floor in the Hall of Justice, and after he has been well beat, he rises, puts on his Clothes, kisses the King's Feet, and thanks him very submissively for his Goodness. Afterwards the King sends for him into the Hall, gives him his Letters of Grace before all his Council, forbids every one to divulge it, and conducts him out of the Palace with perfum'd Torches, according to Custom: But he causes those of inferior Rank to be punished by his Officers. When he appears in Publick, or goes abroad, he rides on a Horse richly harnessed, and is attended with the Shouts of the People. The Priests sacrifice a Hind, and as the Prince's Horse passes by, they carefully observe the Motion of his Entrails, by which they pretend to guess at the Success of his Voyage. They offer the like Sacrifice for the same End when an Ambassador comes from a Foreign Prince to treat of Affairs of Importance. When the King makes his Entry into the City, he is met by Crowds of the finest young Damsels, who present him with Flowers, burn Incense before him, strike with Sticks upon Basins, and sing at the Sound of Instruments to his Praise. Our Author observes, that some say the Inhabitants are Idolaters, and others, *Mahometans*. *Linschotten* says, there are both among them; but the Musulmen are of the Sect of *Emosades*, and do not entirely believe the Alcoran. The Roman Catholics, says *La Croix*, are also well settled at *Melinda*, where they have 17 Churches built by the Portuguese, and a Cross of gilt Marble. *Morery* says, that the Portuguese have a strong Castle, and drive a great Trade here, and that the King of the Country is their great Friend. Some think

the Coast is the *Asperum Mare* of *Ptolomy*. *Heylin* says, it has *Adea* on the N. that the Town is well wall'd; that the Soil abounds with Rice, Millet, Flesh, and Lemons, but have most of their Corn from *Cambaya*; and that the Houses are built of Lime and Stone. He tells us, that the Inhabitants of the Coast are *Arabians* by Descent and Religion, and that those of the Inland Country are for most Part original Natives and Heathens. Most of them are of an Olive Complexion, inclining to White. Some are black, but all more civil and polite than their Neighbours. They were first discover'd by the Portuguese in 1497, or as the *Sansons* say 1489, when they furnish'd *Vasco de Gama* with Pilots to direct him in his Way to the Indies, and have since been much befriended by that Nation. The *Nubian* Geographer says, they have an Iron Mine, which they work to great Advantage, and places the City two Days Sail N. of *Mombaza*. *Pory* extends the Kingdom 100 Miles within Land, and says the Capital is very rich. *Hakluyt* tells us, that in 1569 the Portuguese traded along this Coast from *Chaul*, and that there were many good Harbours, whither they brought coarse Bombast, and carried back Slaves, Ivory, Amber, and Gold. *Herbert* says, that most of the Shore from Cape *Corrientes* to the Equinoctial Line is called *Melinda*. *Luyts* says, the Town is honour'd with the Residence of the Court. The *Sansons* place it 30 Leagues by Land from *Mombaza*, and 60 by Sea, and say, the Houses are adorned with Windows and Terrasses. They add, that in 1589, the Kings of *Lamon* and *Chelicia* surpris'd the Portuguese Governor of *Melinda*, and others of his Countrymen, and sold them to the Turks, for which the Admiral *Thomas Sousa* attacked and took them Prisoners, cut off the King of *Lamo*'s Head, quarter'd the rest, and hung up their Limbs in divers Places for an Example. *Moll* places *Melinda* almost 60 Miles from St. *Anthony's* Fort at *Mombaza*. Captain *Sarris* says, the main Land of *Melinda* lies more E. than 'tis placed in our Maps, Sir *William Monson* says, that the Gulph between this and *Calicut* in the East-Indies is 700 Leagues over, and 32 Days Sail. 7. The Kingdoms of *Lamo*, *Pate*, *Sian*, *Chelicia*, and *Ampaza*. *La Croix* says, that

Lamo and *Pate* are two Kingdoms on the N. Side of the Line, facing one another, the former on the W. and the latter on the E. The Capital of *Lamo*, which is of the same Name, is a Sea-port and wall'd Town, and the Seat of a *Mahometan* Prince, who is a Vassal to the *Portuguese*. *Moll* calls it *Lamas*, and places it 45 Miles N. of *Melinda*, on a River of its own Name. *Pate* is a large well built Town and Island, with a good Harbour, and a *Portuguese* Castle in *Baya Formosa*. *Moll* places this 50 Miles N. of the former. There was another Fort between this and *Sian* called *Mondra*, which, tho' 'twas in the Hands of *Mahometans*, yet depended on this Nation; but the Prince refusing to pay Tribute, the *Portuguese* Admiral took and demolish'd it.

Sian, *Chelicia*, and *Ampaza*, are three petty Dominions very near one another, governed by three *Mahometan* Princes, and Vassals to the *Portuguese*, who deny them Liberty of Conscience, so that they often try to put themselves under the Protection of the Turk, which sometimes proves their Ruin, as it did particularly to the Kings of *Pate* and *Ampaza*. The *Sanfons* say, that these Countries are subject to *Melinda*. *Du Plessis* says, *Chelicia* is a small Kingdom about the Equator, with *Barraboa*, a Trading Town and good Harbour, which some Maps make the Capital of *Adea* in the Coast of *Ajan*; but *M. Fer* has corrected it in his Map, according to the Observation of the Royal Academy of Sciences.

II. The Coast of Ajan, Ayan, or Anian.

THE *Sanfons* extend it 980 Miles from the River *Quilimanci* to Cape *Gardafuy*, and 560 from thence to the Streight of *Babelmandel* where broadest. *Moll* makes the Length about 940 Miles, and the greatest Breadth 480. They bound it with *Zanguebar* on the S. *Abyssinia* on the W. the Streights of *Mecca* and *Babelmandel* on the N. and the Ocean on the E. and they extend it from the Equator to N. Lat. 11½. but *Du Plessis* carries it to Lat. 14. and says it abounds with all the Conveniencies of Life, especially good Horses, Wax, and Amber-greece. *Luyts* observes, that 'tis broadest

towards the N. but much contracted towards the S.

La Croix tells us, that the Inhabitants are generally white, with lank Hair; but farther from the Sea there are Negroes that lie with *Bedu'n* Women, and beget *Mulatto's*. The Kings of *Ajan* are often at War with the Emperor of the *Abyssines*, and sell all the Prisoners which they can take to the Merchants that come from *Cambaya*, *Aden*, and other Parts of *Arabia*, and bring colour'd Cloths, Glafs-Beads, Grapes, Dates, &c. which they exchange for Gold, Ivory, and Slaves. They are all good Mussulmen, except the *Beduins*, who are of the Sect of *Emosaides*. *Morden* says, 'tis sometimes called *New Arabia*. 'Tis subject Part to the Turk, and Part to its own Kings. *Luyts* says, it abounds with Corn, Cattle, Honey, and Pastures, water'd with several Rivers, and that the Inhabitants are partly of a white and partly of a black Complexion. Some divide this Coast into the Kingdoms of *Adel*, *Adea*, *Magadoxo*, and the Republick of *Brava*; but *Luyts* and others make the two latter only Subdivisions of *Adea*. We shall begin with the latter.

1. A D E A, or as some call it A B E X.

The *Sanfons* bound it with *Adel* on the N. *Fatigar* on the N. W. *Xoa* on the W. the River *Quilimanci*, which parts it from *Zanguebar*, on the S. and the Sea on the E. They extend it almost 500 Miles from N. E. to S. W. and 320 where broadest. *La Croix* bounds it with *Magadoxo* on the S. and *Oya*, which is Part of *Abyssinia*, on the W. He says, the King and all his Subjects are *Mahometans*, and tributary to the *Abyssinian* Emperor; but the Territory of *Granze* is full of Christians and Pagans. The Soil abounds with Fruits and fat Pasture, and some Parts are so woody, that they are forced to fell a great Number of Trees to open the Ways. The Inhabitants are rich in great Cattle, and have Cows as big as the largest Camels; but they have no Horns. They carry their Ears hanging down, and are cover'd with Hair as white as Snow. *Morery* misplaces this Country on the Red Sea, and says 'tis now for most Part subject to the *Portuguese* since they took *Magadoxo*; yet 'tis one of the Titles of the *Abyssinian* Emperor.

Emperors. *Heylin* says, the champion Country produces Wheat, Barley, &c. besides great Store of Horses. The People are of an Olive Colour, and some more inclined to Black than others. They go naked from the Girdle upwards, and poison'd Arrows are their only Arms. They speak the *Arabick*, with but a little Difference in the Pronunciation, and are descended from the *Arabians*, who some Hundred Years ago made themselves Masters of all the Sea-Coasts of both *Ethiopia's* as far as Cape *Corrientes*.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Barraboa*, upon the River *Quilimancus*, which the *Sanfons* place 330 Miles N. W. from *Magadoxo*. *La Croix* says, the Name in *Portuguese* signifies Good Coast, tho' it stands upon an Arm of the River at some Distance from the Shore. Most Geographers think it the Capital of this Territory, and that there is no such Town as *Alea*; but the *African* Maps of *M. du Fer*, drawn up according to the new Observations of the *French* Academy, shew that they are mistaken in both. Some say, the King Annually keeps his Court here.

2. *Brava*. *Moll* places it in an Island form'd by the River *Quilmanca* or *Quilmannai*, which *La Croix* says is called *Oby* nearer its Fountain. He tells us, 'tis a great walled Town, with Houses built after the *Moorish* Fashion, and situate a little beyond the Equator. 'Tis inhabited by several rich Merchants, who trade in Gold, Silver, Silk-Stuffs, &c. and pay an Annual Tribute of 4000 Livres to the *Portuguese* for their Protection. The chief Families are *Mahometans*, and descended from the 7 *Arabian* Brothers that took Refuge in these Parts from the Tyranny of the Kings of *Lacab* in *Arabia Felix*. The Government is Aristocratical, the only Republick known in *Africa*, and the Inhabitants have a Privilege to chuse 12 Cheques out of the ancientest Refugee Families, who have the Administration in their own Hands. There are vast Lumps of *Ambergreece* upon the Coast. *Heylin* says, the 7 Brethren first built this Town and *Magadoxo*, and that 'twas govern'd by 12 Aldermen or Common-Counsellors, but now subject to the *Portuguese*, who took it under *Tristram de Cagua*. He places it in a Province called *Barus*. *Du Plessis* says, the

Soil is very fruitful. *Sanutius* calls this Republick *Barraboa*.

3. *Magadoxo*, *Magadazo*, or *Magadoro*. *Moll* and the *Sanfons* place it on a River of its own Name to the N. of *Brava*, in N. Lat. 4. Long. 76½. The former in Lat. 1½. *Herbert* places it in Lat. 3. *La Croix* says, 'twas formerly a very powerful State, contain'd the whole Kingdom of *Adea*, and was 130 Leagues long, and 30 or 40 in Breadth, according to *Urrete*. 'Tis very populous, and the Place of Rendezvous for the *Portuguese* Merchants of *Cambaya* and *Adea*, who bring Stuffs, Drugs, Spices, &c. in Exchange for Gold, Ivory, Honey, Wax, and Slaves. He makes it a Kingdom, whose Sovereign is a *Mahometan*, and for this Reason all his Subjects who derive their Original from the *Arabians* speak *Arabick*, tho' they are a Mixture of Whites, Negroes, and Tawny-moors. When they go to War, they use poison'd Arrows, and their Country abounds with Barley, Fruits, Horses, and Cattle. 'Twas the Capital of the *Arabian* Colony, before 'twas stormed and taken by the *Portuguese* in the 15th Century. Some make it the Capital of *Adea*, tho' others make it a distinct Kingdom. *Luyts* says, 'tis the Seat of the King, and has a large Harbour and Castle. *Heylin* tells us, that the King pays a Tribute to the *Abyssinian* Emperor.

2. ADEL or ZEILA.

The *Sanfons* bound it on the S with *Adea*, on the E. with the Sea, on the W. with *Abyssinia* and *Dancala*, and on the N. with the Streights of *Babelmandel* or *Mecca*. They make it 600 Miles from E. to W. and 340 where broadest. *La Croix* makes *Suaquen* one of its N. Boundaries, and says 'tis 120 Leagues in Length from *Zeila* to the Cape of *Gardafuy*, and 72 from thence to the Confines of *Adea*. He says, there are no high Mountains here, and that it seldom rains; but 'tis well water'd with Rivers, particularly the *Hawasch*, which rises out of one of the Mountains of *Abyssinia*, upon the Frontiers of the Provinces of *Xaoa* and *Oge*; and being joined by the River *Mach*, runs E. with a broad deep Channel like the *Nile*; and after it has passed about 6 Miles from *Araz* in this Country, the Inhabitants divide it into so many Canals for watering their

their Ground; that it loses it self before it reaches the Sea. 'Tis true, the Soil about the Town of *Zeila* is so dry and sandy, that the Inhabitants are forced to go two Days Journey for fresh Water; but then they pass thro' a Country so abounding with Corn and other Fruits, that there's more than the People of *Zeila* and *Barbora* can spend, so that the *Arabians* of *Adea* and *Ziden* come hither to Market for Wheat, Millet, and Barley, and the Oil of *Sesame*. They have Sheep with a black Head and Neck, and Tails of 25 Pound Weight, and others which are all white, with Tails as long as a Man's Arm, twisted like the Sprig of a Vine. They have Cows with Horns like Stags, and black shaggy Hair, and others which are red, and only one Horn of a Foot long in the Middle of the Forehead, which turns backward. There is also Gold, Ivory, Incense, Pepper, and a great many Slaves, which they buy or steal in *Abyssinia*, and which the *Arabian* Merchants and those of *Cambaya* take in Exchange for Cloths, Amber Necklaces, Glass Beads, Grapes, and Dates; and the Inhabitants of *Quilaa*, *Melinda*, *Mombaza*, &c. come to *Barbora* to buy *Arabian* Horses.

The King and all his Subjects are *Mahometans*; and because he often makes War with the *Abyssine* Emperor, who is a Christian, the *Turks* reckon him for a Saint; yet the Grand Seignior is Master of all the Coast. The Inhabitants of all the Shore as far as *Barbora* are either white or brown, but they incline to a black Complexion the farther one goes to the N. W. They only wear Vests of Cotton from the Waist downwards; but Persons of Quality wear painted Callicoes that cover all their Bodies. They are very courageous, and delight in War; but since they know not how to forge their Arms, they purchase them of the *Turks* and *Arabians* for Part of their Slaves and Booty. *Heylin* says, it abounds too with Honey and Wax, and that the People on the Sea-Coast are of *Arabian* Parentage, but those within Land of the ancient *Ethiopic* Race, and for most part Pagans. The *Nubian* Geographer says, the Country was formerly subject to the Emperor of *Ethiopia*, and was possessed by Pagans, that erected Pillars, anointed them with Fat of Fishes, and then worshipped them. But *Heylin*

says, 'tis now under Kings of its own, which think themselves mightier than he. 'Tis said, they owe their Rise to *Gradogma* or *Gradameth*, who reigned in 1540, and after several Invasions forced *Claudius*, one of the Emperors, to retire into the Heart of his Country, and to beg the Assistance of the *Portuguese*, with whose Help having won two Battles, he was defeated in a 3d, and slain in a 4th in the Year 1559, when, tho' he had 60000 Foot and 5000 Horse of his own Subjects, besides the *Portuguese*, the King of *Adel* got the greatest Mass of Coin and Treasure that was ever seen, and sent his Prisoners for Slaves to the *Turks*. But *Dr. Heylin* says, he took the Advantage of the *Abyssines* when they had been weakened by their Lent Fast. However, after this he says the succeeding Emperors left this Kingdom out of the Imperial Stile, tho' they retained those of many other small Kingdoms, in which they had as little Power as in this. The *Sansons* say, that this Country is above 200 Leagues in Length, either upon the *Red Sea* or upon the main Ocean.

The chief Towns here are, 1. *Zeila*, which *Moll* places in a Gulph on the Straights of *Babelmandel*, over against *Aden*, Lat. 10 $\frac{1}{4}$. Long. 63 $\frac{1}{2}$. The *Sansons* place it Long. 75 $\frac{1}{2}$. and *La Croix* in Lat. 11. 20. in a Territory called *Barazan*. He says, 'tis one of the finest Towns of the Country, has a good Harbour, abundance of Inhabitants, regular Streets, and Houses built of Stone and Lime. *Herbert* says, it lies in or near *Ptolemy's Sinus Avalites*. The *Nubian* Geographer tells us, that in his Time, viz. the 12th Century, 'twas called *Zalegh*, and tho' small, 'twas very populous, the principal Port of all *Ethiopia*, and the Place where all Ships that traded hither from the *Red Sea* and *India* unladed. But *Heylin* says, that in 1516 the *Portuguese* burnt and plunder'd it. The *Sansons* say, 'twas anciently called *Avalis*, and *Morden*, that 'twas the Emporium of the *Trogloditæ*.

2. *Asum*, *Azum*, or *Affion*, upon the main Ocean. *La Croix* says 'tis small, but yields Plenty of Refreshments. Nevertheless few Vessels come hither to anchor, because it has no Port. *Moll* places it 140 Miles S. W. of Cape *Gardafuy*, and the *Sansons* almost 200.

3. *Guardafuy* or *Gardafui*, the most E. Cape of all *Africa*. The *Sansons* place it Lat. 11. Long. 84. *Moll* Long. 69. *Jeronymo Lobo* says, the Ancients called it the *Cape of Spices*, because 'twas frequented by Ships that came hither to unlade the Drugs of the *Indies*. He places it over against Cape *Fartac* in *Arabia*, about the Distance of 50 Leagues. Admiral *Beaulieu* says, there's Anchorage here in 9 Fathom Water upon good Ground, within a quarter of a League of the Land, which runs away N. W. $\frac{1}{4}$ W. and in 6 Fathom Water, but bad Ground at 4 Leagues. Several Springs of fresh Water fall from the Mountain into the Sea on its S. Side. The Coast is rocky, with few Bushes and Greens, and the adjacent Country very desert, dry, and hot, the Sun being in their Zenith, without either Shade or Wind. But about 3 Leagues to the W. N. W. there's a Place which is pretty verdant, where the Water is partly fresh and partly Salt. He places it in Lat. 12. and says, the Needle varies here $17\frac{3}{4}$ Deg. N. W. 'Tis the highest Land upon the Coast, and rises to a Precipice; and our Author thinks it the hottest Place in the World. There are no Houses, but wandering Men of a very large Size, with Bows in Proportion. There's no Wind under the Cape, because Cape *Orpin*, a Peninsula, in Lat $10\frac{1}{2}$. or 10. according to the Maps, about 3 or 4 Leagues broad, serves for a Shock to heighten and inflame the Wind, which runs along the Coast N. E. and S. W. whereas Cape *Guardafuy* is very high, and the Wind passing over a long Tract of dry and hot Land, does, in Conjunction with the Rays of the Sun, so heat its Surface, that the Wind is wasted above it. He adds, there are several Mountains between this and Cape *Orpin*, inhabited by Negroes in a mean *Arabian* Dress, with Swords and Zagays for their Arms. There is also a champion Country and a Ridge of Rocks near Cape *Orpin*, which shoots above half a League into the Sea, where there's a shallow Bay 3 Leagues broad shooting very far into the *Terra-Firma*, and abounding with Fish, and a sandy gravelly Soil. Our Author says, Cape *Orpin* is very bad Anchorage, and he calls it the Winter of the Country, because it is subject to violent Storms. 'Tis desert and inaccessible, by reason of the continual Violence of the

Wind, which never varies farther than from S. S. W. to S. W. but there's no Water nor Rain. He adds, that the Needle varies there $17\frac{2}{3}$ N. W. and that the Coast runs E. and W.

To return to Cape *Guardafuy*, 'twas anciently called the *Aromata* of *Ptolomy*, and is the first Inlet on this Side into the *Red Sea*. *Heylin* places it about 30 Leagues from the Island *Socotora*. Mr. *Ovington* says, that most of the Ships that come for this Sea in *April* or later desire for their Safety to make this Land; and that there's a small Mountain near it like an Island at a Distance, which joins the Main by low Land, and is called *Monte Felix* or *Feluck*, with a Town of its own Name. Captain *Saris* says, there's good Fishing here, with Plenty of Water and Wood at the Town, but not in the Bottom of the Bay. The Passage up to the Town is so large, that 3 Ships may go in a-breast without Danger between the high Hummock and the low sandy Point. He adds, that it yields choice Gums, which are a delicate Perfume when burnt, and curious Mats, which are greatly in Request at *Aden*, *Moha*, and the *East-Indies*.

We come now to the last Division of *Zanguebar*, with which we shall finish the Continent of *Africa*, viz.

2. The Coast of Abex or Habex.

IT is divided into the Coast properly so called, and *Dancala* or *Dangali*, or *Baly* Kingdom, which we shall describe first, because it lies next to *Adel*. The *Sansons* bound it with the *Red Sea* on the N. *Abyssinia* on the W. and S. and *Adel* on the E. They extend it 316 Miles along the Coast, and 120 where broadest.

The Author of the Remarks upon the Relations of the Jesuits *Lobo* and *Telles*, bound up with *Thevenot*, gives this Account on't. The King makes a very mean Figure, and is as unpolite as a Boor. They say, that the Country is four Days Journey in Length, and one in Breadth, and call it the Country of Salt, because all that is consumed in *Ethiopia* is fetched from hence, and it passes here instead of Coin. They take it out of a Rock, where they cut it in

Form of Bricks 8 Inches long, and 4 square. 'Tis very white, fine, and hard: A great Number of Workmen are continually employed to cut it, and they transport so much of it, that they lade 600 Camels and Mules with nothing else. 'Tis so hot in the Fields where they cut the Salt, that sometimes it melts the Wax upon the Letters in their Pockets. *Du Plessis* bounds it on the W. with *Angote*. *La Croix* begins it at the Mouth of the Red Sea, and extends it from Lat. $11\frac{1}{2}$. to $13\frac{1}{2}$. He bounds it on the W. with *Balgada*, on the S. with the Kingdom of *Arrio* or *Dobas*, and on the N. with the little Citadel of *Adefalo* in the Kingdom of *Tegre*, 30 Leagues from *Mazuan*. He says, it lies in the Form of a Triangle, and that the Soil is for most Part barren, and consists only of Thorns and Sand, without Rivers or Torrents. There are few Plains among the Mountains, and no Rain, but a little in Winter, so that Travellers are obliged to dig the Ground for Water, which is brackish. They have only low Huts for the Shepherds called *Bidum*; but on the Sea-Side there's a little Town with a Harbour and Citadel, called *Bailurium*, 10 Miles from the Mouth of the Sea. The King is a *Mahometan*, and very much dreads the *Abyssinian* Emperor. Formerly the King of *Dangali* was an Enemy to the *Abyssinians*, according to *Sanutius*; but *Godignus* and *Jarrik* tell us, that after that he became their Tributary; and *Du Plessis*, that he was their Ally. But our Author adds, that now the Kingdom is subject to the Grand Seignior, and that there's a Mountain here noted for the Monastery of *Debralibanos*, where the famous Abbot *John Haymon* was interred. It appears by a Tract bound up with *Thevenot's* Collection, and entituled, *A Discovery of some Countries between the Abyssinian Empire and the Coast of Melinda*, that it was possessed at one time both by the *Galans* and *Mahometans*. *Heylin* bounds this Country with *Barnagasso* on the N. *Adel* on the S. the Red Sea on the E. and on the W. with *Dobas*. He says, the Soil and People are of the same Nature with the Province of *Dobas*. It takes up some Part of the Gulph of *Arabia* within the Streights of *Babelmandel*, and without those Streights the greatest Part of that spacious Bay which was anciently called

Sinus Avaliticus, as far as the Promontory then called *Mosylon*, and now the Cape of *Docono*, near which the Sea makes a little Gulph, and then contracts it self on a sudden, so that the Chanel can't be above 10 or 12 Leagues broad, and there are 5 or 6 Islands in it that hinder the Passage of the Rocks near them, which are difficult to avoid. He adds, that there are two great Lakes in it full of Crocodiles. Some make this a Part of the Coast of *Ajan*; but *Luyts* annexes it to the Coast of *Abex*. He says, the Country hereabouts is more pleasant and fruitful than that of the Northern Tract, and is under the Jurisdiction of the *Moors*.

The chief Towns here, according to *La Croix* and *Heylin*, are, 1. *Bailurium*, that which *Moll* calls *Bayler*, a little Town with a Harbour and Castle 10 Miles from the Mouth of the Red Sea. 2. *Vella*, or rather *Leila*, according to *Davity*, a well frequented Harbour of the same Sea, in N. Lat. 3. *Heylin* says, 'tis the *Antiphila* of *Strabo*. 3. *Korkora*, a fine Place, adorned with the King's Palace, a fine Church, and a rich Monastery called *Nazareth*, which is situate to the E. 4. *Manadeli*, a populous Town, with about 2000 Houses.

3. The Coast of Abex, properly so called.

THE *Sansons* bound it with the Red Sea on the E. and S. *Nabia* and *Abyssinia*, with the Coast of *Ajan*, on the W. and S. and *Upper Egypt* on the N. They extend it 660 Miles along the Coast, and 200 where broadest. *Moll* makes it but 510 Miles in Length, and not 90 in Breadth. The *Sansons* say, that all this Coast was formerly subject to *Barnagasso*, till about 100 Years ago 'twas seized by the *Turks*. The Country is dry, not much cultivated, and drives but a small Trade. The People are fierce, and retain much of their ancient Barbarity. The Air is excessive hot and unhealthful, the Country dry, sandy, barren, and for most Part desert, especially towards the N. and the Inhabitants are generally *Mahometans*, and subject to the *Turks*. *Du Plessis* says, they imitate the *Abyssines* in their Manners. He extends it from N. Lat. 16. to 23.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Suaquem*, *Saquem*, or *Suaquen*. The *Sansons* place it near the Mouth of the River *Canfila*, on the N. Side of an Island of the same Name, over against the Harbour of *Ziden* in *Arabia*, at the Distance of near 100 Leagues from the latter. The *Turks* took it in 1558, and keep a *Basha* here, whose Dominion extends over all the *Red Sea*, and there's Coral Fishing near the above-mentioned Island. *Luyts* places it in the Middle between its innermost Bay and the Streight of *Babelmandel*. *Du Plessis* praises the Harbour, and says, the *Turks* have a good Garrison here, and that 'tis the grand Passage to *Ziden*. *Du Fer* places it 250 Leagues from *Suez*, and 260 from *Babelmandel*. *Lobo*, who was kept Prisoner for a while by the *Turks* in the Island of *Suaquem*, says, 'tis very small, round, and populous, and that there's a Custom-House where the K. of *Balou* shares the Duties of all Merchandizes with the *Turks*. He places it 100 Leag. N. W. from the Isle of *Massoua*, whereas *Moll* makes it but 160 Miles. He adds, that tho' this Island is smaller than *Massoua*, yet 'tis better fortified both by Art and Nature, because 'tis encompassed with Rocks, and that 'tis out of the Bounds of the *Turkish* Empire, and belongs of Right to the poor Prince of the Country call'd *Balou*. *Heylin* praises it for one of the richest Cities of the E. Parts of *Africa*, and says, the Harbour has some smooth Tides, sure Anchorage, will hold 300 Ships of great Burthen, and 'tis so commodious, that Vessels of all Sorts both within and without the Harbour are commonly unladen at the Merchants Doors, to which the Ship-Beaks serve for Bridges. 'Tis also well traded to by Land, because there's an open and safe Passage thro' the Mountains for the Carriage and Recarriage of Commodities to and from *Abyssinia*. The *Turks* call their Governor here the Beglerbeg of *Abassia*, and *Pory* says, that in his Time the *Turks* had a Garrison here of 3000 Men. Some say 'tis the *Ostium Sebasticum* of *Strabo*, others the *Ptolemais Ferarum* or the *Epitherias* of the Ancients, and some the *Succhæ* of *Pliny*, who numbers it among the Cities of the *Troglodites*, who 'tis observed are all called *Suchæi* in the Scripture.

2. *Erquiko*, *Ercocco*, *Ercoc*, *Arguico*, or *Ar-*

quica. *Moll* places it over against the Island *Matzuma*, almost 160 Miles S. E. from *Suaquem*. The *Sansons* make the Distance almost 240 Miles thro' the Forrest of *Xumeta*, which is almost full of Shrubs. They say it has a good Harbour, and that the Ancients called it *Magnum Littus*. Some say, the *Turks* have another *Basha* here. *Lobo*, who was a Prisoner also here for some time, says, it lies two Leagues above *Massoua*, and that 'tis a Place but ill fortified, and worse stor'd with Ammunition and Provisions, so that it only serves to keep the Water, which the Inhabitants of *Massoua* come to fetch every Day in little Boats. The Jesuits *Almeida* and *Tellez* say, that the Coast 12 Leagues from hence to *Dofalo*, another little shallow Harbour belonging to the *Turks*, is called *Tigre* Kingdom, and chiefly inhabited by the *Moors*. Some call it the *Adulis* of *Ptolemy*, and the *Aduliton* of *Pliny*. *Heylin* says, a Passage opens to it thro' the Mountains as well as to *Suachen*. *Morery* tell us, it has a convenient Harbour, and a good Trade, and that the *Turks* here are subject to the Beglerbeg of *Suaquen*.

3. The Island of *Matzua* or *Massoua*. *Lobo* says, it has about 1200 Fathom in Compass, and is in Form of a Man's Foot. There's a Road for Ships between the Island and the Continent, and the *Basha's* Lieutenant resides here as Judge of the Differences which happen about the Custom-House. He adds, that below it lies the Island of *Aleka*, which is 16 Leagues in Length, but narrow, and very populous, because there's a Fishery for Pearls.

4. *Risa*. *Lobo* says, it lies very near *Korondelo*, where the Children of *Israel* passed out of *Egypt*; and that this is the Place where they load and unload all Things that go to or from *Egypt*. It lies in the Opening of the Mountains which bound this Side of *Ethiopia*; and *Vossius* has well observed in his Book of the Origine of the *Nile*, that when 'tis Summer in that Part of the Mountains which is towards the Sea, 'tis Winter on the other Side. Our Author adds, that a Desert lies betwixt this and *Suaquem*, where in he agrees with *Moll*, who places this Town on the E. Side of the *Nile*, almost 300 Miles from *Suaquen*.

Having thus gone thro' the several Divisions of *Ethiopia*, we shall only add the following new Relation concerning this Country, abstracted from the Treatise of M. *Poncet*, M. D. who made himself so famous at *Cairo*, that he was prevailed upon to make a Voyage hither in 1698, 1699, and 1700, to undertake the Cure of the Emperor of *Ethiopia*, which he effected, and by that Means became better acquainted with the Constitutions, Laws and Customs, of the Court, than any other Traveller, besides the Opportunity he had to make Discoveries in the several Countries thro' which he passed.

Our Author says, the Kingdom of *Sennar* is bounded on the W. with that of *Sudan*, whither the Merchants of *Upper Egypt* trade for Gold and Slaves, and that the Kings of these two Countries are almost continually at Wars.

The chief Places he mentions here are,
1. *Machou*, a large Town on the E. Side of the *Nile*, which he says forms two great Islands full of Palm-Trees, *Senna* and *Coloquintida*. 'Tis the only inhabited Place between *Sudan* and *Helaoue*, and he places it in the Province of *Fungi*. It is subject to the King of *Sennar*, and begins the Country of the *Barberins*.

2. *Argos*. 'Tis the Seat of the Governor of the Province, and the chief Officers of the Customs, viz. the King of *Dongola*'s Son. It lies over against *Machou*, on the other Side of the *Nile*. M. *Poncet* tells us, that Prince never appears in Publick but on Horseback, cover'd with 200 little Brass Bells, and attended by 20 Musketeers, and 200 Soldiers arm'd with Lances and Sabres. The Duties he receives of Strangers consist of Soap and Linen. His Palace is large, and built of Sun-burnt Brick. The Walls are very high, and flank'd at Distances with great square Towers, but no Port-holes, because Muskets are their only Fire-Arms.

Dr. *Poncet* gives this Account of the Country and People: From *Machou* to *Sennar* there's a very pleasant Plain for about a League in Breadth, with the *Nile* in the Middle, out of which they pump the Water upon the Lands by Oxen; but beyond it there are Deserts. They trade by Barter of one Commodity for another, instead of using Silver. Their only Bread is *Dora*,

made of a small round Grain, of which they also make a Sort of thick sorry Beer almost every Hour, because it will not keep. They keep it in Gourds, and drink it till they are drunk. The People are healthy, and stronger than the *Europeans*. Their Houses are of Mud, low, and cover'd with the Reed of *Dora*. Their Horses are very well shap'd, and fit to be managed; but they are very much fatigued by their Saddles, which are high both before and behind. Persons of Quality go bare-headed with braided Hair, and bare-legged, with nothing but a single Sole on their Feet, made fast with Latchets. They wear an ill shap'd Vest without Sleeves. The common People wrap themselves up in a Piece of Linen Cloth of a Hundred several Fashions. The Children are almost naked. The Men always carry Lances, with Iron Hooks at one End, of which some are very neat. Those who wear Swords, carry them hanging on their Left Arms. They are very lewd and profane; and tho' they profess *Mahometism*, yet they know no more than the bare Formula of their Faith, which they repeat upon all Occasions. There's a great Number of Hermitages and Churches half ruin'd in this Country, and 'twas quite depopulated by the Plague about two Years before our Author was there.

3. *Dongola* or *Dancala*, the Seat of the King, who keeps a great Boat here to pass the *Nile* for the publick Good. It lies on the E. Side of the River, upon the Descent of a dry sandy Hill. The Houses are ill built, and the Streets half deserted, and filled with Heaps of Sand, occasioned by Floods from the Mountains. There's a large Castle in the Middle, but the Fortifications are very ordinary. However, it serves to awe the *Arabians*, who are Masters of the open Country, where they have the Liberty to feed their Flocks upon paying a small Tribute to the King. M. *Poncet* tells us, he had an Audience here of the King, who was clad in a Vest of green Velvet that reached to the Ground. He has a numerous Guard. Those next his Person carry before them a long Sword in the Scabbard. The outward Guards carry Half-Pikes. His Kingdom is Hereditary, but he pays a Tribute to the K. of *Sennar*.

4. *Korti*, a fair Town on the *Nile*. The People farther up the River are in Rebellion against the King of *Sennar*, and pillage the Caravans that pass thro' their Country, so that they are forced to turn off from the River between the S. and W. towards the great Desert of *Bibouda*, which is not to be crossed in less than 5 Days; yet there's Grass and Trees in it, so that 'tis not so frightful as the Deserts of *Libya*.

5. *Derreira*, a considerable Village upon the *Nile* which the Caravans come to, after crossing the above-mentioned Desert. Our Author says, this is a plentiful Country, and therefore he supposes the Inhabitants call'd it *Beladalla*, i. e. God's Country. He tells us, that there's scarce a Village from hence to the W. but the Inhabitants, who live in Tents, furnish Travellers with Provisions.

6. *Guerry*, the Seat of a Governor, who examines the Caravans whether any of the Company have the Small-pox, which makes as great a Destruction in this Country as the Plague in *Europe*, and causes them to perform Quarentain in the Place where they pass over the *Nile*. For this End they put both the Men and Goods in one Vessel, and draw the Beasts by Cords fasten'd about their Heads and Bellies, which they slacken according to the Motion of the Vessel; but many of the Beasts die in the Passage, because tho' the *Nile* is not broad here, yet 'tis rapid and deep.

7. *Alfaa*, a large Village built with square Stone, where the Men are tall and comely. From hence the Caravans, to avoid the great Windings of the *Nile*, pass thro' some Villages to the N. E. and cross a great Island, which is not set down in our Maps, to *Harbagy* and the Forrests of *Acaccias*, which are full of high thorny Trees, loaded with yellow and blue Flowers of a very agreeable Flavour, and stor'd with little green Parrots, a Sort of Woodboms, and many other Birds unknown in *Europe*. From hence they pass thro' large fruitful Plains to

8. *Sennar* or *Susa*, a City of charming Situation, and near a League and a half in Compass, but not neat, nor well govern'd. It contains near 100000 Souls, and lies on the W. Side of the *Nile*, upon an Eminence, Lat. 13. 4. (which is 2 Deg. more S. than

Moll) The Houses are but one Story, and ill built, but have a flat Roof, which is very convenient. The Suburbs consist of forty thatch'd Cottages. The King's Palace is surrounded with high Walls of Sun burnt Brick; but our Author says, 'tis only a confus'd Pile of Buildings. However, the Apartments are furnished with rich large Carpets after the Manner of the *Levant*. Our Author and his Company had an Audience here of the King, of which he gives the following Account: First they put off their Shoes, which is observed by all, both Strangers and Natives. Then they enter'd into a large Court pav'd with little square Tiles of different Colours, round which the Guards stood arm'd with Lances. There they were obliged to stop short before a Stone near the open Hall of Audience, to salute the King by falling upon their Knees, and thrice kissing the Ground, according to the Custom of the Country. He was then 19 Years of Age, black, but well shap'd, and of a majestick Presence, without thick Lips or a flat Nose, so common to his Subjects. He sat upon a rich Bed under a Canopy, with his Legs a-cross, and 20 old Men seated round him after the same Manner, but somewhat lower. He was cloathed with a long Vest of Silk embroider'd with Gold, girt with a fine Callico Scarf, and had a white Turban on his Head, and the old Men were dressed like him. At the Entrance of the Hall, the Prime Minister standing, complimented the King in the Names of our Author and his Company, and deliver'd back his Answer to us. Then they saluted the Prince a second time, and presented him with Crystals and other *European* Curiosities. He asked many Questions, and seemed to bear a profound Respect to the Emperor of *Ethiopia*. After an Hour's Audience, our Author and his Company retired, making three low Reverences. He ordered his Guards to attend them to their Lodgings, and sent them great Vessels filled with Butter and Honey, besides Oxen, Sheep, and other Provisions. This Prince dines twice a Week at one of his Country Houses a League from the Town. When he marches abroad, he is preceded by 3 or 400 Horsemen mounted upon fine Horses, and attended by a great Number of Footmen and Soldiers, loudly singing his Praises, and

and playing upon Tabors. Seven or Eight Hundred Women and Maids march with the Soldiers, and carry upon their Heads great round Baskets of Straw of different Colours, and finely made, representing all Sorts of Flowers, with Pyramidical Covers, and full of Copper Dishes tinn'd over, in which are Meats ready dress'd, and Fruits. These Dishes are first served up to the King, and then distributed among his Attendants. The March is closed by 2 or 300 Horsemen, that follow in the same Order as the foremost. The King, who never appears in Publick without a Silk Gawse over his Face of several Colours, sits down to Table as soon as he is arrived. His usual Diversions are to propose Prizes to the Nobility, and to shoot with them at a Mark with a Gun, at which our Author observes they were not then very expert. After the best Part of the Day is spent in this Exercise, they return to the Town in the same Order as they set out. They have this Entertainment every *Wednesday* and *Saturday*; but on other Days, the King holds a Council Morning and Evening, and administers Justice without leaving any Crime unpunished. They don't seek to protract Causes in this Country; but as soon as a Criminal is seiz'd, he is carried before the Judge, who examines, and if guilty, condemns him; after which they execute the Sentence upon the Spot, by throwing the Criminal upon the Ground, and beating him to Death upon the Breast with great Clubs.

Our Author says, all Things are so cheap at *Sennar*, that a Camel costs not above 7 or 8 Livres, an Ox 4 s. 2 d. a Sheep 1 s. 3 d. and a Hen but 1 d. They make Wheaten Bread for none but Strangers, and themselves only eat that of *Dora*, formerly mentioned, which is good enough while new, but grows insipid in a Day, and not fit to be eaten. 'Tis a Sort of large Cake about the Thickness of a Crown. The Commodities of this Country are Elephants Teeth, the Fruit called Tamarinds, Civet, Tobacco, Gold Dust, &c. They keep a Market every Day for all Sorts of Goods and Provisions in a wide Place in the Middle of the Town, and they have another before the King's Palace for Slaves, where they sit cross-legged upon the Ground, the Males on one Side, and the Females on the other. They sell

the strongest for 10 Crowns, which makes the *Egyptian* Merchants buy up great Numbers every Year. Their smallest Coin is a little Bit of Iron in the Figure of St. *Anthony's* Cross, worth about a *French* Double. The *Fadda* comes from *Turkey*, which is a small Silver Piece less than a *Denier*, and worth a Penny. They use none else but round *Spanish* Reals and Piasters, which are worth here about 4 Livres, for the square ones won't pass.

Our Author says, the Heats are so violent here from the Beginning of *January* to the End of *April*, which is their Summer, that a Man can scarce breath in the Day, and they are followed by great Rains for three Months, which cause a Mortality both among Men and Beasts: But this our Author imputes partly to the Nastiness of the Inhabitants, who suffer their Waters to stagnate for want of dreining them off. He tells us, that the People are naturally crafty and deceitful, but very superstitious *Mahometans*; yet they drink strong Liquors in private. Their common Draught is the Beer called *Bousa*, like that of *Dongola*, made of the Grain *Dora*, parch'd upon the Fire, and then steep'd 24 Hours in cold Water. Notwithstanding they love Coffee, yet they don't use it in *Ethiopia*. The Women of Quality wear a Silk or fine Callico Vest, with large Sleeves hanging down to the Ground. Their Hair is twisted, and adorned with Rings of Silver, Copper, Brass, Ivory or Glals, of various Colours, which are fasten'd to their Locks in Form of Crowns. They have others of the same about their Arms, Legs, Ears, and Nostrils. They wear several Rings too upon their Fingers set with Stones; but they are not fine. They wear nothing on their Feet but single Soles, fasten'd with Strings like those of *Dongola*, and the ordinary Women and Girls are only cover'd from the Waist to the Knee.

Dr. *Poncet* says, the Commodities imported here are Spices, Paper, Brass, Iron, Brass-Wire, Vermillion sublimate, white and yellow Arsenick, Iron Ware, *Spica* of *France*, *Mahaleb* of *Egypt*, which is strong scented, *Venice* Ware, which are Glass Beads of several Sorts and Colours, and Black called *Kool*, which they highly esteem, and use to blacken their Eyes and Eyebrows. Our Author observes, that the same Commodities have a

good Vent in *Ethiopia*, only at *Sennar* the large Glass Beads are preferred, and in *Ethiopia* the least. The Merchants here drive a great Trade to the East, and at the Time of the *Monsson* embark at *Suaquen* upon the *Red Sea*, where there's a Pearl Fishery that belongs to the Grand Seignior, and sail to *Mocha* in *Arabia Felix*, which is subject to the King of *Yemen*, and from thence proceed to *Surat* with Gold, Civet, and Elephants Teeth, for which they bring back Spices and other *Indian* Merchandize in Exchange. Our Author tells us, they commonly spend two Years in making that Voyage.

He says, that when the K. of *Sennar* dies, the Great Council meets, and orders the Throats to be cut of all the Brothers to the Prince his Successor; but our Author tells of one or two of the King's Brothers that had the good Fortune to be preserved from this barbarous Custom.

9. *Bacras*, a large Borough, the Lord of which was 130 Years old, and as strong as if he had been but 40. He had served five Kings of *Sennar*.

10. *Giesim*, a considerable Town on the Bank of the *Nile*, and in the Middle of a Forrest of Trees higher than our tallest Oaks, and some so big that 9 Men could scarce fathom. Their Leaf is like a Melon, and their Fruit, which is bitter, like a Gourd. There are some round ones, and others quite hollow by Nature, into which they enter'd thro' a little Door into a kind of Chamber open at the Top, where 50 Persons might easily stand close one by another. There's another Tree as high as the former, but no thicker than our Oaks. Its Fruit is like a Water-Melon in Form, but not quite so big. 'Tis divided within into little Cells fill'd with yellow Seeds, and a Substance that resembles Powder-Sugar, which is sharp, but has a pleasant refreshing Flavour. The Bark is hard and thick; the Blossom has five white Leaves like a Lilly, and Seed like that of a Poppy. There's another Sort of Tree here called *Deleb*, almost like Palm-Trees, but as high again, with Leaves like a Fan, but broader. Its Fruit grows round and in Bunches, and from the Stalk to the Middle somewhat thicker than that of Palm-Trees. 'Tis covered with 5 Shells in Form of a Cup. 'Tis yellow when ripe, and its Rind is so thick and hard, that when

the Winds shake the Trees, it knocks against one another, and makes a strange Noise; and if any should fall upon a Man's Head, 'twould certainly kill him. 'Tis difficult to crack the Shell, which contains a World of little Strings that support a Substance almost like Honey, which smells like Balm, and is very sweet and pleasant. In the Middle on't there's a Sort of large, hard, dark-coloured Pea, which is the Seed of the Tree. This Tree also bears another Fruit of the Figure of a Radish, covered with three Skins, which, when taken off, it tastes like roasted Chestnuts. The *Dom* is as it were the Male of the *Deleb*. 'Tis not half so high as the Palm-Tree, but its Leaves are almost as long, and twice as broad, and they make Baskets, Mats, and Sails of them, for the Vessels of the *Red Sea*. Its Fruit is a Foot long, cover'd with 5 or 6 Leaves, and its Meat is very nourishing, white, and sweet like Milk. There's another Tree called *Cougles*, of a prodigious Bulk. 'Tis as it were 9 or 10 great Trees bound and glued together after a very irregular Manner. It has a small Leaf, and bears no Fruit but little blue Flowers without Scent. There are several other Trees in the vast Forrests of this Country unknown to *Europeans*, and therefore they are omitted. *Giesim* lies in the Middle between the Town of *Sennar* and the Confines of *Ethiopia*, and in N. Lat. 10. according to the Jesuit *Brevedent*. Here Travellers are obliged to quit their Camels, because of the Mountains and poisonous Herbs; for which Reason they only use Mules and Horses in *Ethiopia*, but without shoeing them. Here they sell the Camels, upon Condition they shall be only made use of as far as *Girana*, whither the People resort to buy them. Here our Author saw a Caravan of *Gebertis*, who he says are *Mahometans*, that depend upon the Emperor of *Ethiopia*, who treats them like Slaves, as their Name imports. When it rains in these Parts, 'tis always preceded by Thunder and Lightning. The Heavens are generally serene in the Day; but the Heat is intolerable.

11. *Deleb*, a Village so called, by reason of the long Walks of Trees which reach almost out of Sight, and are planted Chequer-wise.

12. *Abotkna*. There's a kind of Box-Tree in the Neighbourhood which has neither the Leaf nor Hardness of ours. The Road is full of great thick Forrests of Tamarinds, always green, with Leaves a little longer than those of Cypress. They cast little blue Blossoms, which have a pretty Smell, and a Fruit almost like a Plumb called *d'Erdeb*.

13. *Serke*, a pretty Town of 5 or 600 neat Houses built of *Indian Canes* in a fine Vale, encompassed with Mountains. There's a little Brook at the going out of the Town which separates *Ethiopia* from the Kingdom of *Sennar*. There's a World of pleasant Fountains from hence to *Gondar*, the Capital of *Ethiopia*, and almost a Chain of delightful Mountains of different Figures, covered with Trees that are unknown in *Europe*, and that seem larger and higher than those of *Sennar*. Some of these Mountains rise in Pyramids, and others in Cones, and are so well cultivated, that there's no wast Ground, and so populous, as if 'twas one continued Town.

14. *Tambisso*, a large Village that belongs to the Patriarch of *Ethiopia*.

15. *Abiad*, another upon a high Mountain covered with Sycamores. From hence to *Giesim* the Fields are filled with Cotton. This Country abounds with Ebony Trees, *Indian Canes*, Bears, and Lyons, which are driven away by lighting great Fires. *Squinnantes*, and other Aromatick Plants and Herbs, grow upon the Mountains. The River *Gondova* in this Neighbourhood is very deep and rapid, and almost as broad as the *Seine* at *Paris*. It falls with such Violence from the Mountains, that in an Inundation it bears all before it, and in great Floods 'tis not to be passed under 10 Days. It falls into another River called *Tekefel*, i. e. Dreadful, and afterwards into the *Nile*. There are two other large Rivers here, bordered with great Box-Trees as high as our Beeches, and a Plain planted with Pomegranate Trees.

16. *Girama*, a Village on the Top of a Mountain, from whence there's a Prospect of the finest Country in the World. Here they leave the Camels to take Horses. Our Author tells us, that when the Emperor sends Messengers for any one to come to his Court, they recommend his Baggage to

the Lord of the first Village he meets upon the Road, who puts it into the Hands of his Vassals, that are obliged to carry it to the next Village, and from thence 'tis carefully deliver'd from one Village to another till they come to the Capital.

17. *Chelga*, a great fair Town, encompassed with Aloes. 'Tis a Place of great Commerce, and a daily Market, where the Inhabitants of the neighbouring Country come to buy Civet, Gold, and all Sorts of Cattle and Provisions. The K. of *Sennar* has here by the Emperor's Consent an Officer of the Customs, to receive all the Duties of Cotton which they bring from his Kingdom into *Ethiopia*, and are equally divided between those two Princes. About two Leagues N. of this Town there's a Torrent which falls from a high steep Mountain with a Cascade, and dividing into several Canals, waters all the Country, and renders it very fruitful.

18. *Barko*, a neat little Town in the Middle of a pleasant Plain, half a Day's Journey from *Gontar*, the Capital of *Ethiopia*, and within Sight on't.

19. *Gontar* or *Gondar*. *Moll* places it on the E. Side of the Lake *Tzana*, Lat. $13\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 54. but 204 M. S. E. of *Sennar* or *Susa*. Mr. *Poncet* says, the Emperor was very civil to him at his Arrival here, provided him a Lodging in the Palace; and when he went to the publick Audience, he was conducted by the Messengers thro' more than 20 Apartments into a Hall, where the Emperor was seated upon his Throne, which was a Sort of Couch cover'd with a red Damask Carpet, flower'd with Gold, and great Cushions round, wrought with the same. The Feet of the Throne were of massy Silver, and 'twas placed at the Bottom of the Hall in an Alcove, cover'd with a Dome, all shining with Gold and Azure. The Emperor was cloathed with a Silk Vest embroider'd with Gold, and very long Sleeves, and had a Scarf embroider'd after the same Manner. He was bare-headed, but his Hair was neatly braided, and his Forehead was adorned with a sparkling Emerald. He sat alone cross-legged; but the great Lords stood on each Side in their Ranks, with their Hands cross'd, and in a profound Silence. Our Author kiss'd the Emperor's Hand after three low Reverences; but he does

does not permit others to do it till they have fallen thrice on the Ground, and kissed his Feet. After some Questions and Answers, he presented the Emperor with Pictures, Looking Glasses, Crystals, and other fine Glass-Works, which the Emperor graciously received, and returned him a fine Collation. The Religious *Ethiopians* have a particular Devotion for the Day of the Assumption of the Virgin, and on this Day the Emperor communicates and appears in Publick. Our Author saw the Ceremony by the Emperor's Invitation, and gives this brief Account on't. Twelve Thousand Men were drawn up in Rank and File in the great Court of the Palace. The Emperor had a Vest of blue Velvet flower'd with Gold, which trailed upon the Ground. His Head was cover'd with a Muslin striped with Gold, in the Form of the Crowns of the Ancients, with the Middle of his Head bare, and his Shoes were wrought after the *Indian* Fashion, with Flowers beset with Pearls. Two Princes of the Blood richly dressed waited for him at the Palace Gate with a noble Canopy, under which the Emperor marched, with his Trumpets, Kettle-Drums, Flutes, Hautboys, &c. going before. He was followed by the 7 chief Ministers of the Empire, supporting each other by the Arms with Lances in their Hands, and their Heads covered almost like the Emperor's. One walked in the Middle bare-headed, carrying the Imperial Crown, resting upon his Breast. 'Tis very magnificent, and closed with a fine Cross of Precious Stones on the Top. The Officers of the Crown, supported in the same Manner, followed singing the Emperor's Praises, and answering as it were in Quires. Then came the Musketeers in their close-bodied Coats of different Colours, and were followed by the Archers carrying their Bows and Arrows. Lastly, the Procession was closed by the Emperor's Led-Horses richly harnessed, and covered with costly Stuffs of Gold hanging down to the Ground, and fine Tiger's Skins over them. The Patriarch in his Pontifical Habits, wrought with Crosses of Gold, waited for him at the Entrance of the Chapel, accompanied with near a Hundred Priests clad in White. They made a Lane on both Sides, and held an Iron Cross in their Hands, some within,

and others without the Chapel. The Patriarch took the Emperor by the Right Hand at the Entrance of the Chapel which is called *Tensa Christos*, i. e. the Church of the Resurrection, and led him through the Middle of Priests, holding each a lighted Flambeau in their Hands. They carried the Canopy over the Emperor up to his Praying-place, which was covered with a rich Carpet, and is almost like the Praying-Desks of the Prelates in *Italy*. The Emperor remained standing almost all the while, till the Time of Communion, which the Patriarch gave him under both Species. When the Ceremonies of the Mass, which were very fine, were ended, they fired two Cannon, as they had done at his Entrance, and so he returned to the Palace in the same Order he came. The Officer who bore the Crown deliver'd it to the High Treasurer, who carried it into the Treasury, accompanied by a Band of Fusileers. The Emperor, at his Arrival in the great Hall of his Palace, seated himself upon a Throne raised very high, with the two Princes his Children on each Side, and behind them the Ministers. All the Assembly continued standing in a profound Silence with their Hands across. After the Emperor had taken some Metheglin and Orange-Peel, which they presented him in a Gold Cup, those who had Favours to beg went in, and advanced up to the Foot of his Throne, where one of the Ministers took their Petitions, and read them aloud. Sometimes the Emperor reads them himself, and answers them out of Hand. That Day his Majesty eat in Publick, and with Ceremony. He was seated on a kind of Bed, with a great Table before him, and there were others of a lower Size for the Lords of the Court. Then they served up Beef, Mutton, and Fowl, dressed for the most part by Way of Ragout, but so much season'd with Pepper, and other Spices unknown to us, that an *European* can't eat them. He is served in *China* Ware, and but one Dish at a time. Our Author saw no Wild-Fowl, and he was assured that they eat none in *Ethiopia*. They serve up raw Pieces of Beef cut into Bits, water'd with the Gall of the Ox, and powder'd with Pepper and other Spices as a nice Dainty. They have another more unfavoury Ragout called *Menta*, which is made

of the Herbs which are not quite digested, taken out of the Paunch of a Beeve, and mixed with the Meat, and season'd with Mustard. The Emperor has a Taster, who tastes all Dishes served up to his Table; and if he happens to be intemperate, the Company have the Liberty to reprove him, and he rises immediately. Our Author observes, that the People drink nothing but Metheglin, tho' the Country abounds with choice Grapes, because their great Heats are so violent, that Grape Wine will not keep here. He says, they make their Metheglin thus: They make Malt, and parch Barley, as we do Coffee, and then reduce it to Powder. They do the same with a Root called *Taddo*. To four Parts of Water they put one of Honey in a varnish'd Vessel, and to 10 Pints of this Water they put two Ounces of Malt, and two of *Taddo*. They let it work 3 Hours in a warm Place, stir it sometimes, and after 3 Days it becomes choice fine Metheglin, and coloured like white *Spanish Wine*; but 'tis so strong, that they draw a Brandy from it as good as *French*. The Empress, who came after Dinner to pay a Visit to the Emperor, was covered all over with Jewels and costly Apparel, and at her Appearance all the Court retired but our Doctor and his Interpreter.

Our Author comes next to describe the Palace as follows: 'Tis great, spacious, and finely situate. It stands upon a Rising in the Middle of the Town, which overlooks all the neighbouring Country, is almost a League in Compass, and the Walls are of Free-stone, flanked with Towers, upon which are raised great Crosses of Stone. There are 4 Imperial Chapels within it called *Beit Christian*, which is the Name of the other Churches in the Empire, and signifies Houses of the Christians. They are served by a Hundred Priests, who have the Care of a College, where they teach the Holy Scriptures to the Officers of the Palace. There's another fine Palace here belonging to the Princess *Halcia*, the Emperor's Sister, who is married to one of the greatest Lords of the Empire, for they must not marry Foreigners. The Emperor has a great Esteem for her, and she goes thrice a Week to visit him. When she appears in Publick, she rides upon a Mule richly ac-

countred under a Canopy, carried by two of her Women on each Side. Four or Five Hundred Women sing her Praises round her, and play upon the Tabor. There are some Houses here built after the *European* Fashion; but the greatest Part of the rest resemble a Tunnel, with the Mouth downwards, and are only of one Story without Shops; yet the Town is 3 or 4 Leagues in Extent, and has a great Trade. There's a spacious Square, where the Merchants meet to treat of their Affairs, and to sell their Goods, and there's a Market from Morning to Night for all Sorts of Commodities, which are sold by every one in their proper Places upon Mats. Gold and Salt are the only Coin with which they traffick. The Gold is not stamped with the Prince's Image, but only in Wedges, cut as they have Occasion from an Ounce to half a Dram, which is the Value of 30 *French Sols*, and there are Goldsmiths every where to try its Goodness. They use Rock-Salt for small Money, which is as white as Snow, and as hard as Rock. They dig it out of the Mountain *Lafta*, and carry it into the Emperor's Magazines, where they form it into Bars called *Amouli*, or Half-Bars called *Courman*. Each Bar is a Foot long, and 3 Inches in Breadth and Thickness, and 10 of them is worth about 3 Livres. They break them according to the Sum they have to pay, and they use this Salt for Domestick Occasions as well as Money. There are about 100 Churches in the Town, and the Patriarch has a fair Palace near the Patriarchal Church. He names all the Superiors of the Monastery, and has an absolute Authority over the Monks, who are very numerous, because there are no other Priests in *Ethiopia*, as there is no other Bishop besides the Patriarch. The Emperor has a great Veneration for him, and gave our Author some Curiosities to present him with, which the Prelate civilly received, immediately put a Stole about his Neck, and holding an enamelled Cross in his Hand, recited some Prayers over his Head, in Token that for the future he would look upon him as one of his Flock and Children. M. *Poncet* observes, that the Priests have a great Power with the People, but sometimes abuse it, so that he says, the Emperor *Ali-Basli*, Grandfather to this Prince, caused

caused 7000 of them to be thrown headlong from the Mountain *Balbau* for Rebellion. Nevertheless there are still so many, that our Author was told by one of the Patriarchs, that he had made 10000 Priests and 6000 Deacons at one Ordination, the whole Ceremony whereof he says consists in this: That the Patriarch being seated, recites the Beginning of St. John's Gospel over the Heads of those whom he designs to ordain, and gives them his Blessing with an Iron Cross of 7 or 8 Pound Weight, which he holds in his Hand. But as for the Deacons, he only gives them his Blessing without reciting the Gospel. Our Author tells us, that the Emperor was so inconsolable for the Death of one of the Patriarchs, that he wore Mourning 6 Weeks, and lamented him twice a Day for the two first Weeks. He adds, that their Mourning Colour is Purple. *Mahometans* are hated by the *Ethiopians* as bad as *Europeans*; but they are tolerated in a separate Quarter in the lower Part of the Town, and called *Geben-tis*, i. e. Slaves. They can't endure to sit at Table with them, nor to eat Meat killed by *Mahometans*, nor drink in a Cup they have used, unless one of their Religious Men bless it by praying over it, and breathing into it thrice on Pretence of driving away the Evil Spirit: And when an *Ethiopian* meets a *Mahometan* in the Streets, he salutes him by the Left Hand in Contempt.

The Emperor has always a standing Army on the Frontiers of *Nerea*, and another upon those of *Goyame*, where are the richest Mines of Gold, which they refine, cast into Wedges, and carry to the Imperial Treasury, from whence 'tis never drawn out but for the Payment of the Troops, and the Expences of the Court. The Kingdom of *Agau*, which was formerly a Commonwealth under peculiar Laws, is one of his new Conquests. He gives and takes away from his Subjects as he thinks fit. When the Head of a Family dies, he seizes upon all his real Estate, but leaves two Thirds to the Children, and disposes of the other to a Favourite, who thereby becomes his Feudatary, and is obliged to serve him in War at his own Expence, and to provide Soldiers in Proportion to his Estate, by which Means the Emperor is able to raise powerful Ar-

mies in a short Time, and at a small Expence. There are Offices also in all the Provinces where they keep an exact Register of all that falls to the Crown by Deaths, which the Emperor distributes to his Feudataries in this Manner: He sends them a Headband of Taffeta with this Inscription in Gold Letters; *Jesus Emperor of Ethiopia, of the Tribe of Judah, who has always vanquished his Enemies.* The Officer fastens it about the Feudatary's Head, and then goes with Trumpets, Kettle Drums, &c. and Horsemen, to put him in Possession of his Estate. This Emperor's Ancestor used to have set Days for appearing in Publick; but the present one goes abroad when he pleases, either with State, or privately. When he appears in Ceremony, he rides upon a Horse richly harnessed, with a great Body of Horsemen round him, and 2000 Men before and after him. Lest the scorching Sun should fetch off the Skin from his Face, he wears a Past-board upon his Head bent Arch-wise, and cover'd with a rich Gold Stuff, which he fastens under his Chin, to avoid the Trouble of an Umbrella, and to enjoy the free Air. His common Diversion is to exercise his Troops, and to shoot, which he does so dextrously, that our Author says he is esteemed the best Marksman in his Dominions. The Rains begin here in April, and hold till the End of September. During the first three Months, the Days are fair; but as soon as the Sun sets, it rains till Sun-rising, and is commonly accompanied with Thunder and Lightning. To these Rains M. Poncet attributes the Inundation of the Nile, as we formerly observed, and not to the melting of the Snows, for he questions, with Reason, whether it ever snow'd in *Ethiopia*. He adds, that at this Time the Torrents swell extremely, and carry Gold with them, which is purer than that in the Mines, and the Peasants pick it up.

Our Author tells us, that there's no Country more populous or fruitful than *Ethiopia*, all the Fields and Mountains, of which there are great Numbers, being well cultivated. There are whole Plains of Cardamum and sweet-scented Ginger, the Plant whereof is four times as big as that of the *Indies*. There's a Multitude of Rivers border'd with Lillies, Jonquills, Tulips, and a vast Number of Flowers unknown in *Europe*.

Their Forrests are full of Orange, Citron, Jessamin, Pomegranate, and other Trees loaded with fragrant Blossoms, especially one which bears a sort of Roses of a sweeter Smell than ours. There's a very strange Creature here no bigger than a Cat, with a Man's Face, a white Beard, and a mournful Voice, which they say always keeps upon a Tree from its Birth to its Death, and that if 'tis taken, 'tis not to be tamed, but pines away and dies. The Emperor generally takes the Field when the Rains are ceased, and makes War against his powerful Enemies the Kings of *Galla* and *Changalla*, who were formerly tributary to this Empire, but revolted, and lived independent. The present Emperor summon'd them to return to his Obedience, made War against them upon their Refusal, and defeated them in several Battles, which has so-terrified them, that as soon as his Army appears in the Field, they retire to the Mountains, which are almost inaccessible, where they sell their Lives dear when attacked. This War, says our Author, made great Destruction in the Beginning, and many gallant Men were killed, because the Soldiers poison'd their Arms with the Juice of a Fruit like red Currants; but the *Ethiopians* have found out an Antidote, by applying a Plaister of their Urine soften'd in the Sand, which gives quick Relief. Before the Emperor opens the Campaign, he proclaims the Day of his setting out, and orders his Tents to be pitched in a great Plain within Sight of this City. They are very magnificent, and his is of red Velvet embroidered with Gold. Three Days after he orders his two great Silver Kettle-Drums to be carried about the Town, and then mounts on Horseback, and advances as far as *Arrington*, the Rendezvous of the whole Army. Then he spends 3 Days in the Review; after which he enters upon Action for three Months with Armies so numerous, that 'tis said he had one in 1699 which was between 4 and 500000 strong. There's a Palace at *Arrington* as fine as that at *Gondar*; but in the Emperor's Absence 'tis as it were a Desert. Four or Five Thousand Men are left there to guard the Crown, commanded by one of the principal Officers, who is always to remain there. M. Ponce observes, that the *Ethiopians* solemnize *Christmas* at our Old Stile; and that

at *Epiphany*, which they call *Gottas*, i.e. the Day of Washing, because then they bath themselves in Memory of Christ's Baptism, the Emperor and all his Court go to *Kaa*, a Palace near *Gondar*, where there's a fine Basin of Water for the Purpose. He tells us, that at their Festivals, of which there's a great Number in *Ethiopia*, the Emperor causes a Beef to be distributed to each Officer, which sometimes amounts to 2000. Our Author observes, that *Europeans* have been quite misinformed as to the Complexion of the *Ethiopians*, by Travellers confounding them with the *Nubians*, their Neighbours; for he says, the *Ethiopians* are tall, and of a Dun or Olive Colour, with comely Eyes, Nose and Lips, and white Teeth; whereas the Inhabitants of *Sennar* or *Nubia* are flat Nos'd, thick Lip'd, and Black.

As for their Apparel, he says those of Quality wear a Vest of Silk or fine Cotton Cloth, with a Sort of Scarf, and that the Citizens Habit is the same, only they wear no Silk, and their Cotton Cloth is not so fine. But the common People wear only a Pair of Cotton Drawers, and a Scarf over the rest of their Body. In their Salutations they put one another's Right Hand to their Lips, and wrap the Scarf of the Person they design to salute about their Bodies; so that those who wear no Vests, are half naked when they are saluted.

The Emperor calls himself *Jesua*, and tho' but 41 Years old in our Author's Time, had 8 Sons and 3 Daughters. He praises him for great Qualities, a quick Wit, sweet Humour, an extraordinary Stature, and for the handsomest Man in *Ethiopia*. He says, that he loves Arts and Sciences, but is fondest of War, is undaunted in the Field, and always at the Head of his Troops. He administers Justice with the utmost Impartiality, but so averse to Blood, that he relucts whenever he is obliged to condemn a Criminal, for he holds it unlawful for one Christian to shed the Blood of another, and therefore never sentences any to Death without the most undeniable Proof. The Guilty are punished by Hanging or Beheading: Some only with the Loss of Goods, and a Prohibition to all Persons to assist them with Money or Victuals, under severe Penalties, which forces the poor Wretches

to wander about like Beasts: But the Emperor, says our Author, is so merciful, that he is easily induced to grant them Favours. He remarks, that notwithstanding the *Ethiopians* are lively and passionate, yet such is their good Order and Government, that they seldom commit Murder or the like horrible Crimes, common to *Europeans*. The Emperor, it seems, was very curious to see how the Doctor extracted Essences, and for that Purpose sent him to *Tzemba*, a Monastery upon the River *Peb*, half a League from *Gondar*, and about 60 *French* Leagues from the *Nile*, where he came *incognito* to see him. By the way, our Author advertises those who bring Medicines hither to take none but Chymical Preparations, because Electuaries and Syrrups easily corrupt under the Line. He tells us, that the Emperor, during his Stay at *Tzemba*, had several Discourses with him about Religion, and diverted himself at other Times with seeing the Pages ride the great Horse, and perform their Exercises, at which they are very expert. He mentions one *Mourat*, who was the Emperor's Prime Minister in our Author's Time, that was above 104 Years old, and had been employed above 60 Years in the most important Negotiations to the *East-Indies*. He says, the Emperor had so great a Value for him, that he called him him *Baba*, i. e. Father. He had been often at the Sources of the *Nile*, and gave our Author the following Account of them, which our Reader may compare with the Description we have already given of them in *Egypt*.

" There are two plentiful Springs one on
 " the E. and the t'other W. on the Top of
 " a very high Mountain in the Kingdom of
 " *Goyam*, that form two Streams, which
 " run about the Middle of the Mountain
 " into a boggy Ground cover'd with Reeds,
 " and then disappear for 10 or 12 Leagues
 " till they join and form the R. *Nile*, which
 " being swelled by other Rivers, passes
 " without mixing its Waters thro' the Lake
 " *Dembea*, which lies in a very delicious
 " Country, full of large Boroughs, and
 " fine Woods of Lawrel, is 100 Leagues
 " in Length, and near 40 in Breadth, con-
 " tains a sweet Water much lighter than
 " that of the *Nile*, and has an Island to-
 " wards the Middle, where the Emperor

" has a Palace as stately, tho' not so large,
 " as that of *Gondar*.

Our Author attended the Emperor, who made a Voyage hither in a little Boat row'd by three Watermen, and made of Mats of Rushes neatly join'd, without Pitch or Tar, and holds about 6 Persons; but he wonders nevertheless how these Boats can be Proof against the Water. He says, that the above-mentioned Palace has a double Wall and two Churches, of which one is dedicated to *St. Claude*, the Name of the Island, and is almost a League in Compass,

20. *Emfras*, not so big, but pleasanter than *Gondar*, and better built. The Houses are separate from one another by Quicksets always green, cover'd with Flowers and Fruit, and mixed with Trees planted at an equal Distance, which our Author says is the Idea one ought to frame of most of the Towns of *Ethiopia*. The Emperor has a Palace here upon an Eminence, which commands the whole Town. This Place is famous for the Traffick of Slaves and Civet-Cats, of which they rear such prodigious Numbers, that some Merchants have 300. They give them raw Beef thrice a Week, and on other Days a sort of Milk-Pottage, perfume them from time to time with sweet Odors, and once a Week scrape off the Civet which issues from the Body with the Sweat, and put it up in a Beef's Horn, which they keep well stoppt. They gather their Vintage here in *February*. They have Bunches of Grapes of all Colours, which weigh 8 Pounds, and of which each Grape is as big as a large Nut. Their white Grapes are well tasted, but not much esteemed: But our Author could not learn they had any other Reason for it than their being of the Colour of the *Portuguese*, for their Priests make them hate *Europeans*, and all that are White. He adds, that this is the only Town in *Ethiopia* where the *Mahometans* are allowed the publick Exercise of their Religion, and where their Houses are mixed with those of the Christians.

The *Ethiopians*, says he, have only one Wife, but wish they might have more; and tho' their Priests are severe against those who have several Wives, yet the Judges are much more indulgent. *M. Poncet* owns they admit the Scripture and the Sacraments, but believe Transubstantiation, invoke the
 Saints,

Saints, communicate under both Species, and consecrate with leaven'd Bread. They observe four *Lents*, viz. the *Great Lent*, which lasts 50 Days; that of *St. Peter* and *St. Paul*, which continues 40 Days, and sometimes less, as *Easter* is more or less advanced; that of the Assumption of our Lady, which holds 15 Days; and that of *Advent*, which lasts 3 Weeks. In all these they abstain from Eggs, Butter and Cheese, and don't eat till Sun-set; but after that they may carouse till Midnight. There are no Olive-Trees here, so that they are forced to use an Oil which they draw from a well-tasted Grain. They fast with the same Rigour every *Wednesday* and *Friday* in the Year, always pray before Meals, and the Peasants leave their Work to go to Prayer. They excuse none from Fasting, admit Children to the Communion from 10 Years of Age, and afterwards oblige them to fast. Our Author says, they confess Sins very imperfectly thus: They prostrate themselves at the Feet of a Priest, accuse themselves in general of being great Sinners, and having merited Hell, without mentioning Particulars; and then the Priest holding the Gospels in his Left Hand, and a Cross in his Right, touches the Penitent's Eyes, Ears, Nose, Mouth, and Hands, recites some Prayers over him, reads the Gospel, makes several Signs of the Cross over him, gives him a Penance, and then dismisses him. They never enter their Churches but with bare Feet, for which Reason they cover the Pavement with Carpers, and never admit any with foul Linen. While they are in the Church, they don't speak a Word, nor blow their Nose, nor turn their Head on one Side. When they give the Communion, every one retires but the Priest and Communicants. Their Churches are very neat, and they use Pictures and Painting, but no Statues or carved Images. However our Author presented the Emperor with an inclosed Crucifix, and some Pictures of Saints in Miniature, which he kissed, and ordered to be carried into his Closet, and caused the Saints Names to be written at the Bottom in the *Ethiopick* Language. They offer Incense almost continually during the Mass and the Offices. They have no Musical Notes in their Books, but their Singing is true and agreeable, and mixed with

Instruments. The Priests rise twice in the Night to sing Psalms. Out of the Church their Habit is almost Secular, so that they are only distinguished by a yellow or blue Calot upon their Heads, which are the different Colours of their Orders. Our Author says, they are much revered in *Ethiopia*.

They circumcise their Children the 7th Day after their Birth, and afterwards baptize them; but if there be Danger of Death, they would not defer the latter. They don't reckon Circumcision as a Sacrament, but only a Ceremony in Imitation of Christ, and pretend that formerly the Popes tolerated the Practice in this Country, but declared they ought not to believe it necessary to Salvation. The Emperor was so taken with our Author, that when he was returning home for his Health, he offered him a considerable Settlement if he would stay, and would not let him depart till he had taken an Oath to return to him after his Recovery. He had given him such a flaming Character of the *French King*, that he courted his Alliance, and sent an Ambassador to him with Letters and Presents, which consisted in Elephants, Horses, and young *Ethiopian* Children, &c. When our Author took his Audience of Leave, the High Treasurer brought him a Bracelet of Gold, which the Emperor put about his Wrist with Sound of Kettle-Drum and Trumpets, which is reckoned an Honour equal to the *European* Order of Knighthood. Then he gave him the Mantle of Ceremony, and made him dine at a Table near his own, but lower: After which he took his Leave, and the Emperor ordered the Treasurer to furnish him with all Necessaries. He had an Officer with 100 Horse to conduct him to the Frontiers, besides an Interpreter, because every Province has a particular Language, and the principal Lords accompanied him two Leagues, according to Command. The Officer carried the Orders of the Court, which he produced to the Governor of every Village where they lodged. They are writ in a Roll of Parchment, put in a little Gourd, fasten'd to his Neck with Silk Strings. At his Arrival, the chief Men of the Place meet before the Governor's Gate, where he unties the Gourd in their Presence, takes out the Roll, and presents it with

with great Respect to the Governor, telling him, if he does not execute it, his Head must answer for it. When any Order is upon Pain of Death, as this is, 'tis writ in red Letters: The Governor takes it, puts it on his Head, and then gives Orders to defray the Expences of the Officer and his Company thro' his Government.

Our Author tells us, they made it a Day's Journey from *Gondar* to *Emfras*, because of a high Mountain by the Way, on which there's a fair Monastery, with a Church dedicated to *St. Anne*. 'Tis famous for Pilgrimages made to it from afar, and it has a clear Fountain, of which the Pilgrims drink out of Devotion. They pretend it works miraculous Cures by the Intercession of *St. Anne*, to whom the *Ethiopians* are much devoted. Our Author says, he was entertained here with Consorts of the Harp, a sort of Violin like ours, and a kind of Show, at which the Actors sing Verses in Honour of the Person they design to divert, and play a Thousand Tricks of Activity. Some dance to little Cymbals in several extravagant Postures: Others hold a naked Sabre in one Hand, and a Buckler in t'other, represent a Battle dancing, and cut strange Capers. Some hold a Lance in one Hand, and a Glass of Metheglin in t'other, and leap to a prodigious Height without spilling a Drop.

From *Emfras* our Author and his Company proceeded to *Coga*, which was formerly the Residence of the Emperors of *Ethiopia*. 'Tis a little Town, and finely situate in a very delightful Country. They spent 7 or 8 Days in passing thro' the Provinces of *Ogara*, where he says the Heats are not so excessive as elsewhere, because of the many high Mountains, among which there are Houses made in the very Rock, where some young People that met to be merry are said to have been petrify'd, and 'tis still said they are to be seen in the same Postures; but our Author thinks them only the extraordinary Congelations of Nature. He was also told they had Ice among these Mountains at certain Times of the Year; but he questions it. However he says, there's so many Houses among the Mountains, that they seem to be one continued Town. They are built round with a Roof of Rushes, which resembles a Tunnel turn'd

downwards, and are supported by Walls 10 or 12 Foot high. They are neat within, and adorned with Ranges of *Indian Canes*. They have Markets every where for Cattle, and all Sorts of Provisions, and the Country is very populous.

From hence they enter'd the Province of *Siry*, where they begin to speak the Language of *Tigra*; but before they came to the Capital, which is of the same Name, they passed the River *Tekesel*, i. e. Terrible, because of its rapid Stream. 'Tis four times broader than the *Seine* at *Paris*, but there's no Bridge, so that they pass over it in Boats. Our Author praises it for the pleasantest and fruitfulest Country in *Ethiopia*. There are delicious Plains, water'd with Fountains, and filled with large Forests of Orange, Citron, Jessamin, and Pomegranate Trees, which grow wild in *Ethiopia* without any Cultivation. The Meadows and Fields are cover'd with Tulips, Ranunculus's, Pinks, Lillies, Trees loaded with red and white Roses, and 1000 other Flowers unknown to us, more fragrant than those of *Provence*. The Governor of the Province has a handsome Castle, where he treated our Author, and gave him a young Elephant to be presented to the *French King*, pursuant to the Orders in the Gourd.

From the Province of *Siry* they passed into that of *Adova*, where the Capital is of the same Name. The Governor is one of the 7 prime Ministers of the Empire, and he has a Son married to one of the Emperor's Daughters, who has 24 little Governments and Principalities under his Jurisdiction. Here our Author was regal'd with wild Beef, which he says is much esteemed by the *Ethiopians*, and the Flesh is very good and tender; but he observes, that these Beeves have no Horns, and are not so large as the *French*. This Province abounds with Roebucks, and Apes of all Sizes, but no Hinds or Stags.

Then they enter'd the Province of *Saravi*, which produces the best Horses in *Ethiopia*, and furnishes the Emperor's Stables. They are mettlesome, high Crested, and as big as those of *Arabia*, but have no Shoes, because the *Ethiopians* know not the Use of Shooing any of their Beasts. From hence they reached to *Duvarna*, the Capital of the Kingdom of *Tigra*, which has two

Governors called *Barnagas*, i. e. Kings of the Sea, as we formerly observed. The Capital is divided into the Higher and Lower Towns, is about two Leagues round, and 'tis as it were the general Magazine of all the Commodities of *India*. All the Houses here are built with square Stone and flat Roofs. The River *Moraba* runs at the Foot of the Town, and falls into the *Tekefel*. *Moll* calls the Town *Dobarowa*, 21 Miles N. E. from *Gontar*, and the River *Mareb*. Our Author says, 'tis not broad, but very rapid, and not to be passed without Danger. While our Author was here, the two Governors received the News of the Death of Prince *Basil*, the Emperor's eldest Son, and Presumptive Heir, about 20 Years of Age. He gives him a good Character, for which we refer to him. He tells us, that he dy'd within 8 Days after his Return from a Campaign he had been making with the Emperor his Father against the *Gallans*, of whom he had killed 8 with his own Hand. At another Time he bravely saved his Father's Life in Battle at the Hazard of his own.

Our Author tells us, that sometimes the Emperor disguises himself, and keeps out of Sight with two or three of his Confidants, so that none know what's become of him, and once he absented himself two Months together, so that his Son was very uneasy, because 'twas believed he was dead; and some of the great Lords of the Court thinking to sooth his Ambition, desired him to take the Government upon himself, lest his Brothers might prevent him by an Insurrection, and promised to stand by him with their Lives and Fortunes; but he had such a tender Love to his Father, that he scorned their Proposal, and declared he would never mount the Throne till he had seen his Father's Corps, or was fully assured of his Death. But he returned soon after, and then the Flatterers disappeared. *M. Ponce* adds, that the Presumptive Heir of the Crown has a Principality annexed to his Title, which is called *Heleni*, with a fair Monastery, and a Church dedicated to *St. Helena*, fairer and larger than any he saw in all *Ethiopia*, from whence he supposes the Town had its Name. In the Middle of the Square before the Church there are three pyramidical and triangular Spires, all filled with Hieroglyphicks, and a Lock up-

on each Face of the Figures, which our Author thought strange, because the *Ethiopians* have no Locks. There are no Pedestals to be seen; but the Spires are as high as the Obelisk of the Palace before *St. Peter's* at *Rome* plac'd upon its Pedestal. This is supposed to have been the Queen of *Saba's* Country, because several Villages depending upon its Principality are to this Day called *Sabaim*. They get Marble in the Mountains not a whit inferior to that of *Europe*, and they find much fine Gold in tilling their Ground. The Religious of the above-mentioned Church wear yellow Skins, and a little Cap of the same. Our Author tells us, that when the News of the aforesaid Prince's Death arrived, he caused it to be proclaimed thro' all his Province with the Sound of Trumpet, and that every one shaved their Heads by Way of Mourning. The two Governors, with the Militia, and a vast Crowd of People, went to the *Virgin Mary's* Church, where they performed Service for the Prince, and then returned in the same Order they came. The two Governors sat in a great Hall, and placed our Author between them; after which the Officers and Persons of Note of both Sexes ranged round the Hall. Certain Women with Tabors and Men without placed themselves in the Middle of the Hall, and sang such a doleful Ditty to the Prince's Honour, that it made our Author weep an whole Hour that the Ceremony lasted. Others tore their Faces till they were covered with Blood, or burnt their Temples with little Wax Candles. None were in the Hall but Persons of Quality, for the common People stood without in the Courts, and made lamentable Cries. Our Author observes, these Ceremonies last commonly 3 Days; and that when an *Ethiopian* dies, there are dreadful Howlings on all Sides, for the Neighbours meet in the Deceased's House, and join with the Kindred in Lamentation. After they have washed the Corps with certain Ceremonies, they wrap it up in a new Cotton Winding-Sheet, and place it in a Coffin in the Middle of the Hall, with Wax Flambeaus, and then redouble their Cries to the Sound of little Tabors. Some pray to God for the Soul of the Deceased, others say Verses in his Praise, or tear their Hair, scratch their Faces, or burn

burn their Flesh with Flambeaus, till the Religious come to take away the Body. Having sung some Psalms, and made use of Incense, they begin their Procession with an Iron Cross in their Right Hands, and a Prayer-Book in their Left. They themselves carry the Body, and sing Psalms all the Way, while the Deceased's Friends follow with Cries, and drumming upon Tabors. They all have their Heads shav'd. When they pass by a Church, they stop and say some Prayers; and when they come to the Place of Burial, renew their Oblations of Incense, sing Psalms with a mournful Note, and then put the Body in the Ground. Those of Fashion are buried in Churches, others in Church-Yards, where they plant a Number of Crosses like the *Carthusian* Fryars. Then the Company return to the Deceased's House and feast. They meet for 3 Days together, Morning and Night, to bewail, and eat no where else during that Time: But afterwards they separate till the 8th Day after the Decease, and so continue to meet every 8th Day to mourn for two Hours for the Space of a whole Year to the Anniversary-Day. When a Prince or Person of eminent Quality dies, the Emperor does no Business for three Months, unless it be very pressing.

Dr. Poncet says, that from *Duvarna* the Lords of the Villages don't order the Baggage to be carried by their Vassals, but use Oxen call'd *Bers*, of a different Species from the common ones called *Frida*. They are very swift, but their Flesh is not good to eat. The Inhabitants, who are partly *Mahometans* and partly Christians, bring in Viſtuals and other Provisions to the Caravans. There's a very difficult Mountain, which our Author spent half a Day in climbing, and is all cover'd with Wood, in the Middle of which is a well built Monastery, with a wide Prospect of the *Red Sea*, and a vast Country. There are 100 Religious Persons in it, who lead a very austere Life, and who are habited in the same Manner as those of *Heleni*; but their Cells are very strait. They eat no Flesh, no more than the other Religious of *Ethiopia*. They seem very devout, and our Author says he saw a Man of 66 Years of Age who had lived for 7 Years upon nothing but the

Leaves of wild Olives. They drink no Metheglin, nor use no Wine here but at Mass. Our Author says, this Monastery is famous for a round Staff of Gold 4 Foot long, and as thick as a good Stick, which hangs in the Air. The Monks pretend, that Three hundred and odd Years ago, an *Anchoret* of great Austerity and Sanctity had a Vision of Jesus Christ in a Wilderness, and was by him commanded to build a Monastery in that Part of the Wood where he should find a Staff of Gold hanging in the Air, which he obey'd accordingly, and for this Reason 'tis called *Bihen Jesus*, or the Vision of Jesus; but we leave the Reader to make his own Reflections on the Story of its Foundation.

Our Author says, that the Island *Massoua* above described in Part is little better than a barren Rock, but has a Fortrefs, which is the Residence of the Grand Seignior's *Basha*. 'Tis not very strong, and he thinks one Man of War might take it. The *Basha* here gives a Governor to *Suaquen*, and there's a great Traffick here for Tortoises, from whence the Grand Seignior draws a considerable Revenue. The *Basha* stands in great Fear of the *Ethiopians*, because they can easily make themselves Masters of the Place by starving it, or cutting off their Water which they are obliged to fetch from *Arconva* or *Erquico* on the *Red Sea*. Our Author observes, that the *Dutch* have attempted more than once to settle a Trade with the *Ethiopians*, but in vain.

He mentions *Deheleg*, another Island in the *Red Sea*, where he says the Vessels that come from the *Indies* commonly put in for fresh Water and Provisions, of which there's great Plenty, except Bread, for the Inhabitants live mostly upon Flesh and Fish. The last he mentions on the Side of *Africa* is called *Abugafar*, i. e. Father of Pardon, the Name of a pretended Saint who lies in a Tomb here that is visited by the *Mahometans*, to prevent Shipwreck; for our Author says, there are many Shelves here which are very dangerous; but the Pilots who are acquainted with them pass them with Ease.

We shall now close *Africa* with a Description of its chief Islands.

C H A P. XIII.

*The AFRICAN ISLANDS.**Sanfons and Luyts's TABLES of the ISLANDS of AFRICA.*

The ISLANDS of
Cape Verd are 10 in
Number.

Five on the
South.

Brava.

Ist. de Feu or
Ilha do Fuego.

Ist. S. Jaques or
Ist. de St. Jago.

S. Domingo.

Ribera Grande.

S. Jaques or St. Jago
Capital.

Praya St. Marie or
Santa Maria.

Ist. de Mayo.

Ist. de Bona Vista.

Five on the
North.

Ilha do Sal.

I. do S. Nicholao.

I. da Santa Luzia or S. Lucia or Luce.

Ist. de S. Vincent or

I. do S. Vicente.

I. de S. Antoine or

I. san Antonio.

Fer Island. —

Palma Island.

Gomer Island.

Teneriffe Isle.

Canarie or Ca-
nary Island.

Forteventura
Island.

Lancerota or
Lancelotte
Island.

Fero, Ferro, or Hierro.

S. Cruz de la Palma.

Tassacorda, S. Andre, Brenia.

Gomera or Gomer.

Le Mont-Piko, or Pike Moun-
tain, St. Christoval de la
Luguna, La Ramela, Gera-
chico, Adeia, Gratiofa, S. Cruz,
Port La Rotana.

Tedla, Argorez, Galder, Guia,
Arginogi, Canarie or Canary.

Forteventura or Forteventura,
Chaliros, Baltarhay, Langa-
la, Poso-Negro, Tarafalo, Ri-
queroqua.

Rubicon, Porto de Cavalos,
Porto de Naos, Lancerota or
Lancelotte.

Seven Great-
er.

The Canary Islands
are 14.

The Canary Islands continued.

Seven Lesser.

Isla de los Lobos or
Des Loups Marins.
Rocco Island.
Gratiosa Island.
S. Clara or *S. Claire* Island.
Alagranca or *Alagranza* Island.
The Two Salvages Islands.

There are 12 Islands on the N. of the Canaries, viz.

Three at a little Distance.

Nine more remote called *Azores*.

The Desert Isl.

Madera or *Madeira* Isl.

Santo Porto Isl.

The most Western.

Those lying in the Middle.

The most Eastern.

Moncerico, *Moncherico*, or *Monchico*, *S. Croix* or *Santa Croce*.
Funchal or *Fonzal*.

Corvo or *Corbeau* Island, *Flores* Island.

Fayal Isl. *Pico* Isl. *S. George* or *St. Georgio* Isl. *Gratiosa* Isl.
Tercera or *Tercere* Isl. with the City of *Angra*.

S. Michel, *S. Miguel*, or *St. Michael* Isl. with the Town of *Punta del Gada*, *S. Marie* or *Santa Maria* Isl.

N. B. The rest are set down in the Tables of *Ethiopia*.

WE should have begun with *Malta*, and ended with *Socotora*; but the first being already described in *Europe*, and the last in *Asia*, we shall begin with those Islands in the *Atlantick* Ocean which lie N. from the *Canaries*, and are called,

A Z O R E S.

Alvano says, they were first inhabited in 1449 by Don *Henry* of *Portugal*, who discover'd the Coast of *Africa* from *Cape Non* to the Mountain *Sierra Leone*, and afterwards taken by *Christopher Columbus* in his Return from *New Spain*, which offended the King of *Portugal*. Nevertheless Pope *Alexander* gave them to the King of *Castille*.

Herbert tells of a Tradition that says they were discover'd in 1449, betwixt Lat. 38. and 40. by a Merchant of *Bourges* bound to *Lisbon*, and drove hither by Strefs of Weather, who called them the *Flemish* Islands; but that afterwards the *Portuguese* planted them, and gave 'em the Names of *St. George*, *St. Michael*, *St. Mary*; *Fayal*, from the Beach-

Trees which then abounded there; *Pycó*, from its Pyramidical Form; and *Tercera*, because it resembles three Isles. He says, they are very subject to Earthquakes, which he ascribes to the mixing of the Fire of the sulphurous Mountain *Pycó* with the Rivulets in the Vallies. *Linschotten* tells us, that there happen'd one in 1591 in *St. Michael's* Island, which continued from July 26, to August 12, and demolished *Villa Franca*, the best Town it had, and the *Spaniards* pretend that the adjacent Isle of *Corvo* did then rise out of the Sea; but 'tis certain they discovered that and *Flores*. In 1588, when the *English* were at War with *Spain*, the Earl of *Essen* plundered *Flores* and *Corvo*, gave *St. Michael* to be plundered by the Soldiers, did the like next Year to *Fayal*; and in 1597, *Pycó* was also made a Prey to Sir *Walter Rawleigh*. He adds, that they were called *Azores* from the many Eyries of Hawks found here; but *Ortelius* derives it from the Spanish Word *Essorer*, to dry or wither. Our Author supposes it the *Uxiana* and *Cassiteride* of the Ancients.

Mandelsloe says, the *Dutch* call them *Fleming* Islands, because the first Inhabitants of *Fayal*,

Fajal, one of its Islands, were Natives of the *Low Countries*, who settled themselves on that little River called by the *Portuguese*, *Ribera dos Hamencos*, where their Posterity still live, according to the Custom of their own Country. He makes the Number of these Islands 7, by adding *Graciosa*; but excludes *Flores* and *Corvo*, and says, they are all now subject to the Crown of *Portugal*; but the *Castillian* Governor made a gallant Defence in the two Forts of the City of *Angra* after the Revolution in *Portugal*, and did not surrender the Castle upon the Mountain till May 6, 1642. when he was starved out. He observes, that the bare Rocks here, that are not so much as cover'd with Earth, produce good Store of Vines, which thrive better there than in the Vallies; but their Wine is not near so good as that of the *Maderas* or *Canaries*. He says, that they abound with all Necessaries except Oil and Salt, for they have Plenty of Wheat, Pears, Apples, Citrons, Oranges, Peaches, Cherries, Plumbs, Walnuts, Chesnuts, Pot-Herbs of all Sorts, Potatoes, which are more esteemed in *Portugal*, and a certain Shrub which grows 5 or 6 Foot high, spreads its Roots by an infinite Number of yellowish Branches as small as a Hair, which are chiefly used for stuffing their Quilts and Beds; and our Author thinks that if they were spun, they would afford good Thread. They have abundance of Cattle, and all Sorts of tame Fowl and small Birds, but no wild Fowl or Venison. Their Wheat is very good, and every Family has a Vault, with an Entrance just big enough for one Man, where they lay their Wheat, which otherwise will not keep. From thence they carry it after *Christmas* to their Houses, and keep it the rest of the Year in Chests of Bulrushes without stirring it. Our Author ascribes the Frequency of the Earthquakes here to the Hollowness of the Rocks. He tells us, that in May 1614, 11 Churches and 9 Chapels, besides private Houses, were ruin'd by an Earthquake in the City of *Angra*, while the City of *Praya* was almost laid desolate; and that the whole Island of *St. Michael* was so terribly shaken in 1628, that at some small Distance from the Shore the Sea open'd in a Place where was 150 Fathom Water, and thrust forth a small Isle a League and a half in Length 60 Fathom above Water. Cedar is so common

in these Islands, that the People not only use it for their ordinary Household-Stuffs, but for Fuel, and make whole Waggon and Boats on't. They have scarce any Commodities to trade with except Provisions, which they sell to such *Portuguese* Ships as touch there for Refreshment in their Passage to the *East Indies* and *Brasil*. For this Reason the *Portuguese* find them so convenient, that they will not let Foreigners view the Coast of the Isle of *Tercera*, (which is the chief, the rest having no safe Roads nor any Forts) lest its Weakness should encourage them to land and settle here. The Air is very clear and wholesome; but our Author says, 'tis so sharp that it corrodes Iron, and consumes Stones in a few Years, wherefore they build with Flints, which having lain for a considerable Time under Water near the Sea-Side, are better qualified than other Stones to resist the Sharpness of the Air. *Mandelsloe* concludes with observing, that the W. Winds reign from these Islands to *England*. Sir *William Monson* says, that not one of these Islands has any other Harbour, but open Bays, subject to Winds and all other Dangers. They are Shore-deep, and there's no Possibility of Anchoring but close on board the Land. The Ground is so rocky, that it often frets the Cable, and then the Waves will force a Ship ashore; or being near the Land, and a Gale blowing off from Sea, the Ship must certainly be wrecked. Their Storms begin in *August*, and commonly last 9 Months with Violence, so that they are reckoned the most unconstant Seas in the World. Don *Pedro de Valdes*, who was taken Prisoner in the Action of 88 for *England*, was commanded with some Ships and 600 Soldiers to repair to these Islands, before *Tercera* had yielded to the King of *Spain*, there to protect all the Ships coming from the *Indies*, *Guinea*, or *Brasil*; but he had no sooner landed his Men, when such a Storm arose, that he durst not put in near the Shore to relieve his Men with Ordnance, so that they were all massacred.

Heylin describes these Islands in *Europe*, places them over-against *Lisbon*, at the Distance of 250 Leagues, and observes, that the Longitude is commonly reckoned from these Islands, because they were the most W. Part of the known World before the Disco-

Discovery of *America*. He says, that there are no Hawks here now, and that they are called *Terceras* from *Tercera*, the chief of the Number. He praises the Air, and says 'tis subject to few Diseases, except what the *Portuguese* call the Blood, i. e. an Imposthume breaking out at some Parts of the Body. They are furnished with Salt and Oil from *Portugal*, and the chief Commodities they transport are Canary-Birds, Dyers Woad, and Joyners Work, which they sell to the *Spaniards*. The Inhabitants are generally laborious, and excellent Husbandmen. They conform to the *Portuguese* Habit and Customs, but have a little Mixture of the *Flemings*, whom they affect above any others. He makes them 9 in Number, including *Corvo* and *Flores*, which he says lies nearest to *America*, as *St. Michael* and *St. Mary's* do to *Spain*; *Tercera* on the N. W. of them, and *St. George's*, *Graciosa*, *Pico*, *Fayal*, on the W. of *Tercera*. They were the last Members for the Crown of *Portugal* which held out for *Don Antonio* the Bastard against *Philip II.* of *Castille*, against whom *Emanuel de Sylva* gallantly defended *Tercera* Island, with the Help of the *French*; but 'twas at last taken by the Marquis of *Santa Cruz*, and the *French*, after Promise of Life, murder'd in cold Blood. It was afterwards garrison'd by none but the *Portuguese*, till for Reasons of State they put *Spaniards* in the Castle of *Angra* in *Tercera*, *Punta del Gada* in *St. Michael's*, and *Dorta* in *Fayal*. He adds, that these Islands are of so much Importance to the *Spaniards*, that without 'em they could not continue the Navigation to the *Indies*, *Ethiopia*, *Brasil*, and *New Spain*, because the Fleets bound from thence to *Lisbon* or *Seville* must of Necessity touch upon some of them. *Morery* says, they belong to the K. of *Portugal*, and that they abound with *Batatas*, which grow like Turneps, and eat very well. Some think these Islands are the *Cathiterides* of *Ptolomy*, or the *Cassiterides* of *Pliny*. The *Sansons* say, the Air is not very wholesome, and place them 300 Leag. from the Coast of *Africa*.

Luyts says, these Islands are also called the Upper, because of their Northern Situation with respect to the *Canaries*. He places them betwixt N. Lat. 37. and 41. in the Middle of the Ocean, and almost at an equal Distance from *Africa* and N. *America*,

in which he follows the *Sansons*; but he thinks they are nearer to *Spain* than to either, and says, that they are the most remote of all the *African* Islands from that Continent. He tells us, that it abounds with Fish, and several hot Baths and Springs, which turn Wood into Stone. *Ortelius* reports, that Passengers bound to *America*, as soon as they have passed the *Azores*, are immediately freed from Bugs, Fleas, Lice, and all such Vermin, which die at that very Instant. *M. du Fer* places these Islands over-against *New-England* and *New-Scotland* in *America*, almost under the same Lat. as those of *Newfoundland*, viz. 45. and in 350 of Long. *Morden* places them betwixt Lat. 37. and 46. and says, that they gather Dyers Woad every Year in two Places, called *Los Folhadores* and *Los Altares*; and that they have another beautiful Sort of Wood, red within, and wav'd without, which he supposes they call *Prince's Wood*. He adds, that these Islands were subdued by the *Portuguese* under *Prince Henry* in 1444. *Gordon* says, the Air enclines much to Heat, but is tolerably good, and very agreeable to the *Portuguese*; that they lie under the same Parallels of Latitude as the middle Provinces of *Spain*, and have the same Length of Days and Nights. He adds, that they are rul'd by a particular Governor sent hither from the *Portuguese* Court, who resides commonly at *Angra* in *Tercera*, where there's a Bishop under the Archbishop of *Lisbon*; and the chief Inhabitants being *Portuguese*, retain their own Language and Religion.

Du Plessis sets these Islands between Long. 347 and 357. and describes them among those of North *America*. *M. Dellon* in his Voyage to the *East-Indies* says, they transport most of their Wheat to *Portugal*, and may therefore be called the Granary of that Kingdom.

We proceed now to the particular Islands, and since most make them 9 in Number, by including *Corvo* and *Flores*, which lie farthest to the W. we shall begin with

1. *Corvo*, *Corua*, or *Cuervo*, which *Morden* places a little to the N. of *Flores*, between Lat. 40 and 41. *Herbert* says, it was discover'd by the *Spaniards*, who pretend that it rose out of the Sea in a Storm. He adds, that

that in 1588 it was plunder'd, together with *Flores*, by the Earl of *Essex*. *Mandelsloe* places it but two Leagues N. of *Flores*, but reckons neither of them among the *Azores*, because they lie so far to the W. *Heylin* says, it has this Name because it abounds with Crows. The Harbour is very unsafe, and the Place extremely poor, because of a great Number of Pyrates which lie betwixt them to intercept Merchant-Ships bound to *America*. But he thinks that tho' 'tis much smaller than the others, yet in Time it may be more considerable than any of the rest, because he conceives it to be the most natural Place for the first Meridian, since the Needle here points directly N. without Variation; but the *Sansons* observe, that some place this Meridian in the *Cape Verd* Islands, and others in the *Canaries*. *Morden* says, this and *Flores* lie nearest to *America*. He makes *Punta del Gada* its Capital, which *Luyts* and *Mandelsloe* place in *St. Michael's* Island.

2. *Flores*, *Floris*, or *Flora*. *Morden* places this Lat. 40. W. of *Fayal*. *Herbert* says, 'tis so called because it abounds with Flowers. *Mandelsloe* makes it 20 Leagues in Compass, and sets it 70 Leagues W. of *Tercera*. *Heylin* says, 'tis no more than 8 Miles round, but twice as big as *Corvo*, and abounds with Cattle and good Pasture. He and *Morden* make *Santa Cruz* its Capital, which is different from those of that Name in the Islands *Graciosa* and *Fayal*.

3. *Fayal*, which *Morden* places between Lat. 39 and 40. *Herbert* says, it retains this Name from the Beaches which abounded here at the Time of its Discovery. *Mandelsloe* makes it at least 17 or 18 Leagues in Circumference, and places it 7 Leagues S. W. from the Island *St. George*. He commends it for the best of all the *Azores* next to those of *Tercera* and *Michael*, and says, its Capital is *Villa Desta*, inhabited chiefly by the Posterity of the *Flemings* its Discoverers, who export from hence abundance of Provisions, especially Fish to the other Islands. *Sir William Monson* tells us, that in 1589 the *English*, under the E. of *Cumberland*, took 5 *Spanish* Ships here, notwithstanding the Fire of the Castle, to which they were moor'd, made themselves Masters of the Castle, with 45 great and small Cannon, plunder'd the Town, and then ransom'd it. *Heylin*

makes it 17 or 18 Miles long, and says it abounds with all Necessaries, particularly *Dyers Woad*, for which 'tis much frequented by our Merchants. He calls the chief Town *Dorta*, and says, it has a Castle with a *Spanish* Garrison, and that both the Town and Island were taken in 1597 by *Sir Walter Rawleigh*, in an Expedition called the *Island Voyage*, which was undertaken to divert the War with which the *Spaniards* then threaten'd us, and by seizing some of the Island to intercept the *Spanish* Fleet in their Passage to or from the *Indies*. And 'tis said, that tho' the *English* were not able to hold it long, yet the Booty they got in this Expedition amounted to 40000 Crowns. *Morey* says, the chief Town is of its own Name, and lies N. W. of the Island and Mountain *Pyco*; and that before it was taken, rifled, and ransomed for 2000 Ducats, it had 300 fair Houses, strongly built with Lime and Stone, doubly cover'd with hollow Tiles, and wainscotted with Cedar, and every House had a Garden with a Cistern, full of ripe Grapes, Tobacco, Figs, Peach-Trees, Oranges, Lemons, and Quinces.

4. *Pyco*. *Herbert* says, 'tis so called from its Pyramidical Shape. 'Tis extraordinary high Land, and rises into a Spire like *Teneriff* so far above the Clouds, that the Top is usually cover'd with Fogs, and is seldom to be discerned by the Sailors. 'Tis not above 10 Miles round, the Soil is for most Part sulphurous, and there are many hollow Places at which Smoke, Flame, and Brimstone, often evaporate; but there are pleasant Shades and Rivers in the Vallies, into which the Fire is sometimes vomited with a terrible Noise, which he supposes is the Cause of the frequent Earthquakes in these Islands. This Island was taken by the *English* under *Sir Walter Rawleigh* in 1597. Some reckon it one of the highest in the World, and say, that 'tis 5 Miles high. Others think it as high as *Teneriff*. *Mandelsloe* places it 3 Leagues to the S. E. of *Fayal*, 4 Leagues to the S. of *St. George*, and 12 to the W. S. W. of *Tercera*. 'Tis reckoned more fruitful than the other Islands. *Heylin* says, it abounds with Fruits, Cedars, and a large beautiful Tree called *Teixo*, whose Wood is very hard, red within, and wav'd, and allow'd to none but the King's Officers by a special Edict; and that they make very fine

fine Cabinets, which are much esteemed in Portugal. He makes this Island not so long, but much broader than that of *St. Michael*, and says, 'tis almost equal to it. He adds, that its chief Towns are *St. Sebastian* and *Callota de Nesquin*, both upon the Sea, and in the E. Parts of the Island. *Luyts* says, 'tis larger than *Fayal*, and of a longer Form. *Gordon* calls its Peak the *Pic of St. George*.

5. *St. George's Island*. *Mandelsloe* says, 'tis 12 Leagues long, and 3 broad, and lies 8 or 9 Leagues N. W. from *Tercera*. It has Plenty of Provisions, and is full of Mountains and Forrests of Cedars, which they sell to those of *Tercera*, where 'tis made up into Joyners and Cabinet-makers Work, and transported to other Places. *Heylin* says, they use their Cedars for Shipping or Fuel, and that its chief Town is of the same Name. *Morden* says, it has another called *Manodas*; and *Luyts*, that this, as well as the Islands of *St. Michael* and *St. Mary*, was so called from the Name of the Saint on whose Festival the Portuguese landed.

6. *Graciosa*. *Mandelsloe* places it 7 or 8 Leagues N. E. from *Tercera*, makes it not above 5 or 6 Leagues in Compass, and says 'tis so called from its Pleasantness, and Plenty of all Fruits. *Heylin* says, 'tis so well stored with Fruits, that they send great Quantities every Year to *Tercera*; that the Inhabitants are only poor Portuguese, who are not able to bear the Charge of the Garrison; and that the chief Town is called *La Plaisa*. It lies to the N. betwixt *St. George* and *Tercera*. *Sir William Monson* says, the Earl of Cumberland made a Descent on this Island in 1589, and after several Repulses at last forced the People to a Composition, and to send him Refreshments.

7. *Tercera*. *Herbert* says, 'tis so called because it resembles three Islands. 'Tis the biggest and fruitfulest of all the rest, and abounds with Wine, Oil, Corn, Fruit, Woad, &c. 'Tis chiefly famous for the Defence it gave Prior Don Antonio, the Titular King of Portugal, against the Spaniards, as may be seen at large in *Cunestagio's* Treatise of the Union of those two Crowns. *Mandelsloe* makes it 15 or 16 Leagues in Compass, and says, 'tis a Heap of Mountains which are almost inaccessible, without any safe Road or Harbour, except at its Capital, of which by and by. Its Oxen are

bigger and fairer than those of Europe, noted for excessive large Horns, and are as tame as our Dogs. *Sir William Monson* says, its natural Situation renders it more impregnable than all the other Islands in the Streights, it being encompassed with mighty high Cliffs, a few Bays excepted, which are fortified to prevent an Enemy's Landing. It was taken by the Marquis of *Santa Cruz* from Don Antonio, together with the other Islands. *Heylin* makes it 18 Miles round, and says, it abounds with Peaches, Apples, Lemons, Oranges, Cabbages, Turneps, Pot-Herbs, and as good Potatoes as any in the World, which are their chief Food, but more esteemed in Portugal than here, because of their Abundance. There's a Plant here about the Height of a Man, which bears no Fruit, but has a Root, from which the People draw a thin tender Film, wherewith they stuff their Mattresses instead of Feathers. They have Fowls enough for their own Use, but no Birds of Prey. *Heylin* owns, 'tis the chief Island, but denies that 'tis the biggest of the *Azores*. *Morery* says, tho' their Soil is good, yet their Corn will not keep, which makes them store it under Ground till Christmas. He tells us, that the English plundered it in 1597. *M. Dallon* says, the Portuguese kept their King *Alphonso* Prisoner here a considerable Time. He was banish'd hither by his Brother in 1668; but at last they removed him, for fear he should make his Escape. *Luyts* says, 'tis called *Tercera* or the Third, because 'tis the third Island of the *Azores* passing from Spain. *Du Plessis* says, 'tis also called the *Ile of Jesus Christ*. Some Geographers reckon it the Place of the first Meridian.

The chief Town here is *Angra*. *Herbert* says, it has the best Harbour of all the *Azores* Islands, defended by a strong Fort called *Brasil*, but has no very good Anchorage. *Mandelsloe* calls it the Metropolis of all the Islands, and says, 'tis the Seat of their Governors and Bishops. The Harbour is enclosed like a Crescent by two Mountains, which advance very far into the Ocean, are called *Brasil*, and may be seen 13 or 14 Leag. at Sea. For this Reason the Portuguese call it *Angra*, which signifies the New Moon. 'Tis defended by two Forts, one upon the Ascent of the Mountain, the other upon one of the Points of the Land which cover the

the Haven to defend its Entrance, and the opposite Point has two Towers, from whence they give Notice by a Signal to the Inhabitants what Vessels they espy at Sea. This City suffer'd by an Earthquake in 1614, when 11 Churches and 9 Chapels were ruin'd, besides private Houses. He adds, that there's a Spring about 3 Leagues off which turns Wood into Stone. Sir William Monson thinks that the Point called *Brazil* renders it the most impregnable Situation in the World. *Heylin* and *Morden* say, 'tis an Archbishop's See, has a Cathedral, and is walled as well as encompassed about with sharp Rocks. Both Town and Castle is well garrison'd by Spaniards; but *De Plessis* and *Morery* say, 'tis only a Bishop's See under the Bishop of *Lisbon*, and that one of its Castles is called *St. Philip*. *Luyts* says, it lies on the S Coast of the Island.

2. *Villa Praya*, which *Mandelsloe* places about 3 Leagues from *Angra*, and says, the Houses are well built, but that it is not populous, and has no great Trade. *Heylin* says, it lies on the Sea-Side, and is well walled.

The other Towns are *Barbara*, *St. Sebastian*, *Gualme*, and *Villa-Nova*; but they are of little Note.

8. *St. Michael's Island*. *Herbert* says, that in 1588 the E. of *Essex* gave it to his Soldiers for Plunder, after he had sent aboard 400000 Ducats and upwards, besides valuable Merchandize, for publick Use, and that the Earl of *Cumberland* had plunder'd it 8 Years before. He tells us, this is the only Place where the true Meridian is found, and that the Needle here varies neither E. nor W. but *Heylin* inclines rather to fix it in *Corvo*. *Mandelsloe* makes it about 20 Leagues long, and places it 28 Leagues S. E. from *Tercera*, in a Soil which abounds with more Wheat than they are able to spend. He says, its Capital is *Punta del Gada*; but there's no safe Road for Ships. Sir William Monson places it 300 Leagues from the Rock of *Lisbon*, and says, 'tis the biggest of all the Islands. In 1589, the E. of *Cumberland* took 2 Spanish Ships here under the Cannon of the Castle. *Heylin* places it a little Way N. of *St. Mary's*, and says, 'tis not so broad as long; and that *Punta del Gada* is more frequented than the Port of *Angra*, because here Strangers can go in and out when they please, which there they cannot. *Morden*

says, this Island has *Tercera* on the N. W. *Luyts* makes it 32 Leagues in Compass, and 28 from *Tercera*. He observes, that this and the next Island of *St. Mary's* are the two S. E. Islands of the *Azores*, and that several Geographers make them the Standard for computing Longitude. The Towns here are *Antonio*, *Villa-Franca*, and *Laguna*; but they are of little Note.

9. *St. Mary's Isle*. Mr. *Davis* makes this the Eastmost of the *Azores*, in Lat. 37. Long. 14. with a Variation of 1 Deg. 40 Min. from N. to E. *Mandelsloe* says, 'tis but 12 Leagues in Compass, and lies 12 Leagues S. of *St. Michael's*, and its Product is Potters-Earth and Provisions. *Heylin* places it next to *Spain*, and says, 'tis but 12 Miles round, and only inhabited by Spaniards, whose chief Employ is the making of Earthen Vessels. He thinks it so well fenced by Rocks, that the Inhabitants have no need of a Garrison, and adds, that the chief Town is of its own Name.

II. The M A D E R A S Islands over against Morocco.

IN which we include *Porto Santo* or the Holy Port, and the Desert Islands, because they lie very near that properly called *Madera*.

But the first we shall describe is *Santo Porto* or *Porto Santo*, which was governed by *Penestrello*, *Columbus's* Father-in-Law, till he died. *Harris* says, it was so called because discovered upon *All Saints Day* in 1419 by the Portuguese in the Time of their King *Henry*. He tells us, that after this the King gave it to *Penestrello*, with a Condition to People it, who brought a Ship hither, which, besides the Planters of this new Colony, had a Coney on board big with Young, which she discharged upon the Island, and the Increase was so great, that in two Years the numerous Breed destroy'd all the Labour of the Inhabitants, and they were not extirpated till they killed such vast Numbers of them, that they destroyed 3000 at a time in a small Islet. *Herbert* says, that it belongs to the Spaniards. He places it in Lat. 33. 12 Leagues N. E. from the *Maderas*. He makes it 25 Miles round, and says, it abounds

abounds with Wheat, Rye, Rice, Oxen, Sheep, Boars, Coneys, and the Drug called *Sanguis Draconum*, Fruits, Flowers, and Grapes. *Ortelius* thinks it the *Gerne* of *Ptolemy*, others the *Ombrio* or *Pluvialia* of *Pliny*; but *La Croix* thinks it *Ptolemy's Pena*. He places it over-against Cape *Cantin*, in Lat. 32. or 33 $\frac{1}{2}$. or according to others in Lat. 33. 40. and makes it not above five Leagues in Compass. He says, it was discovered by two Portuguese Gentlemen in 1428, and that it has no Harbour, but only a Gulph, very much secur'd from all Winds, except the S. S. E. and E. S. E. He adds, that it abounds with the best Honey and Wax.

Heylin places it about 40 Miles from *Madera*, and says, 'tis pretty populous, about 15 Miles in Compass, and has Plenty of Goats and Fish. He tells us, that the chief Town is of the same Name, and that it has a sorry Harbour, which was taken in 1596 by Sir *Amias Preston*, during our Wars with Spain; but after being plunder'd, 'twas abandon'd. Some say, this Island is much less than *Madera*, and but 8 Miles in Compass. *Luyts* says, 'tis subject to a Portuguese Governor and Bishop, but has no Fortifications, and lies open to Pyrates, so that those of *Salé* in 1606 carried off 6 or 700 of the Inhabitants, according to the *Sansons*. They tell us, that its Commodities are much the same with those of *Madera*. *Du Pléssis* places it but 3 Leagues N. E. from *Madera*. He adds, that it has a few Villages, and depends upon *Madera* for its Protection. Some reckon that this was the remotest Colony which the *Carthaginians* had in the Western Ocean.

2. *Madera Proper*, or *Madeira*, belonging to the Crown of Portugal. *Harris* says, this was discovered by *John Gonsalvo Zarco* and *Tristan de Vaz*, two Portuguese Gentlemen, just after *Porto Santo*, and that by the King's Consent 'twas divided into two Parts, of which one called *Funciale* was given to *Gonsalvo* and his Heirs, and *Tristan de Vaz* had the other named *Machio*, from *Macham* an Englishman, who sailing from England to Spain, was drove hither by a Tempest in 1344, where he landed with some of his Company, and having buried his Mistress here, built a Chapel for her, and left an Account of his Name and Adventure upon

her Tomb-stone; After which, with a Bark cut out of a Tree, without Sail or Oar, he reached the Coast of *Barbary*, where he was presented to the King, and by him sent to the King of *Castille*. Upon his Information, many went from *France* and *Castille* to discover this and the *Canary Islands*; but the Plantation here was not begun till 1420, when 'tis said there was so much Wood here, that *Gonsalvo* was forced to open his Way with a Fire, which he burnt for seven Years together, and that 'twas therefore called *Madera*, which in Spanish signifies Wood. Then the King ordered Sugar-Canes to be transported hither from *Sicily*, which our Author says thrived so well, that some Years the 5th Part has amounted to more than 60000 Arobes, each of which is 25 l. in a Spot of Ground 9 Miles in Compass. *Thevenot* says, it lies very high, but is commonly foggy. Sir *John Narborough* says, it has several irregular Hills, covered with Wood on the Top and down the Sides, as also with Vines planted by the Portuguese. *Merolla* tells us, that when he was here, the Inhabitants were mighty desirous to have a Convent of *Capuchins*, and that they sent a Gentleman for that Purpose to the King of Portugal. He makes it 70 Leagues from hence to *Palma*, one of the *Canaries*, and says, that those who sail thither from hence must have a strong Convoy to prevent Pyrates. Mr. *Ovington*, who was here in 1689, says, 'tis about 25 Miles long, 10 broad, and 60 round, in Lat. 32. He gives us the particular Account following of its Discovery, Natural History, &c. He says, the English Gentleman above-mentioned married a Lady of good Fortune at *Bristol*, and was drove to this Island as he was going for *France*, which, with the Desolateness of the Place, made him fall into a Fit of Melancholy, of which he died; but the rest of the Mariners sailed to *Barbary*, where they related their Adventure to some ingenious Portuguese, whom they encouraged to solicit their King to improve, and perfect their Discovery, which was done accordingly, and the Wilderness was soon turned into a Garden of Pleasure. Some say, the Portuguese first discover'd it in 1429. Our Author says, that the Ashes which remained on the Soil after the above-mentioned Fire made it yield 60 Fold, so that the Vines

brought forth more Grapes than Leaves, and Clusters two or three Spans long, and in short all its Products were so fair and plentiful, that it was called the Queen of Islands; but now he says the Increase is diminished to 25 Fold. The Air is very temperate and serene, for the Climates between Lat. 30 and 40 enjoy an equal Temperature of Heat and Cold. There are several pleasant and fruitful Vallies, watered with 7 or 8 Rivers which fall from the Mountains, that notwithstanding their Height and Steepness, are as well cultivated as our Plains with Corn and Vines, which last are prejudiced by the abundance of Clouds that breed there; but the former thrives well upon the Tops. Their chief Product, says our Author, is Grapes brought hither first from *Candy*, of which they make three or four Sorts of Wine, one coloured like *Champaign*, but not much esteemed; another strong and pale like White-Wine; another rich Sort called *Malmsey*; another like Tent in Colour, but not in Taste, and never drunk but when dashed with other Wines to give them a Tincture; and for fermenting and feeding them, they bruise and bake a certain Stone called *Jess*, and throw 9 or 10 Pounds Weight into every Pipe. When the *Madera* Wine is pricked, our Author tells us that it will revive if the Bung hole be opened to let in the Sun. The Product of the Vine is equally divided between the Proprietor and him that gathers and presses the Grapes; yet the former generally thrives while the latter is poor. The Jesuits, who contend everywhere for Precedency, are some of the chief Merchants, and are sole Masters of the *Malmsey* Vineyard, of which there is but one good one in the whole Island. 'Tis modestly computed that the Island produces 20000 Pipes of Wine *per Annum*, 8000 of which are supposed to be drunk upon the Island, 3 or 4 wasted in Leakage, and the rest transported for most Part to the *West-Indies*, especially to *Barbadoes*, where 'tis drunk more plentifully than *European* Wines. There are Plenty of Citrons, of which the Natives make a delicate Sweetmeat called *Sucker*, and load two or three small Ships with it every Year for *France*. They candy them with an excellent Sugar, which is often prescribed against Consumptions, and is

but rarely transported, because 'tis pretty scarce. Some Years they are in great want of Corn, and are threaten'd with Famine, because the Grain that grows here produces no great Plenty, so that sometimes they impress Ships in the Road to fetch some from the *Azores* Islands before they will allow them any Commerce. Nevertheless it abounds with Oranges, Lemons, Peaches, Apricocks, Plumbs, Cherries, Figs, and Walnuts; and the *English* Merchants, who are allowed to reside and traffick here, have transplanted from *England* Currans, Gooseberries, Philberts, &c. which thrive better in this Soil than many of their Fruits do in ours, which is too cold and moist. They have such a singular Esteem for the *Bonano* or Bananas, that they look upon it as the forbidden Fruit, the rather because its Leaves are large, and therefore they infer that *Adam* and *Eve* made Aprons of them. They hold it an inexpressible Crime to cut it, and pretend that after Dissection it resembles Christ on the Cross, which they say is to wound his sacred Image. The *English* Merchants here, who were about a Dozen in our Author's Time, imitate the *English* Way of Living in their City and Country-Houses, which are very pleasantly situate.

In the Time of Vintage, the Poor eat little but Bread and ripe Grapes. The same, with a moderate Mixture of Flesh, is the frequent Repast of those of better Note, by which Temperance in Diet, and the like Liquors, our Author observes they qualify their Venereal Excesses, and avoid Fevers, which might otherwise be common here in the hot Season. At their Entertainments, every one is at Liberty to drink as little Wine as he will, for the Servant gives the empty Glass to him that is to drink, and then pours out leisurely as much or as little as the Guest pleases; and when the Company breaks up, they don't make Water in the Streets, to prevent the Censure of Drunkenness, but chuse to do it in the Porches and Entries, and in the private Places behind the Doors. They affect a Gravity in their Garb, and are cloathed all in Black, in Complaisance, as 'tis supposed, to the Clergy, who challenge the chief Authority among them; but all wear Daggers and long Spado's, not excepting the Servants even while they wait at Table. Their Houses

Houses are not very magnificent, curious, or rich, either within or without, only some are a little higher than others. The most Part are flat Roofed, and all give Admittance to the open Air thro' the Windows, which without the Glass are kept open all the Day, and closed at Night with Wooden Shutters. No venomous Creature will live upon the Island; but there's abundance of Lizards, which destroy their Fruits, and whatever they come at. Our Author ascribes the Decrease of its Fertility to the constant breaking up of the Ground, so that they are forced to let it lie fallow for 3 or 4 Years; and then if there springs up no Broom, they give it over for barren; but he says, the Natives ingeniously impute it to the Growth of their Vices, among which he places their Lewdness in Front both of single and of married Persons. They often marry before any Interviews, insomuch that, if we may believe Mr. Ovington, he knew a young Gentleman, whose Fortune was valued at 60000 Dollars, engaged in Courtship with a Lady worth 8000; and tho' he had no Sight of her till the Day before Marriage, yet 'twas then only permitted thro' a Lettice, where he saw two young Ladies, and asking which was to be his Mistress, was answered, That to Morrow was Time enough to know that. They always enquire into the Family and Descent of the Courtiers, to prevent marrying with *Jews* or *Moors*, who are very numerous among them; and tho' they give the *English* the Preference, yet they oblige them to renounce their Religion for the Enjoyment of their Daughters. But besides, our Author tells us, that a certain old Gentlewoman here excepted against a young Pretender to her Daughter, because she had heard he was healthy, strong, temperate, chaste, and never infected with the Venereal Disease, for which Reason she thought him of a weak Constitution, for she supposed there was no need of the Restraints of Conscience for such an Offence, which she rather held as meritorious.

Nay, our Author tells us, that Murder itself is not only common and unpunished; but the Characteristick of Men of Rank, and he thinks they are the more encouraged to it by the easy Recourse they have to their Churches, which are very numerous,

and serve them as Sanctuaries. But if any are arrested before they have taken Shelter, Banishment or Confinement are the severest Punishments they inflict, and are often bought off by large Presents. The Clergy increase here like as in other Popish Countries, to the Oppression of the Laity, that they seem to vie with the Multitude; but none are admitted to the Priesthood unless they are possessed of some Patrimony, to prevent their becoming a Burthen to the Church, since otherwise the Labour of so few People would not suffice for the Support of so many rich Clergy. In the meantime they exclude all *Jews* and *Moors* from the Priesthood. He says, the Jesuits have the prevailing Authority over all the Orders, which he ascribes to their Absolutions and Pretences to stricter Sanctity than the rest, for which Reason they take Care to conceal all their Faults; but their Ignorance is so palpable, that scarce one Third of them understand *Latin*. Upon this Account, if any Delinquent is expelled the Convent, they conceal his Errors, lest they should prove a Scandal to the Society, and give no other Reason to the World for his Expulsion but that he was unworthy of their Society. The Jesuits, says our Author, have a Chapel in the Town, which is the most splendid of all their Churches. They celebrate the Vigils of all their Saints, especially that of St. *Ignatius*, with Variety of the choicest Anthems and Instrumental Musick, and abundance of Lights placed on their Steeples after Sun-set. Some of the Chapels, as well as Houses, are built upon the Descent of steep Hills, and near the Jesuits Chapel there's an Hospital much frequented by the Natives, and erected for those that are infected with the Venereal Disease. They adorn the Bodies of the Deceased for Interrment, and commonly bury in the Churches, where they mix Lime with the Earth to hasten the Consumption of the Corps, in order to make Room for others; but they allow no Burying-place to the *English*, so that they are thrown into the Sea; and our Author tells us, that they found out the Corps of an *English* Merchant which those of his Nation had deposited privately among the Rocks, dragged him about the Island, and then threw him into the Sea. Nevertheless he takes Notice,

Notice, that a dead *Englishman* was baptized and buried here for a Sum of Money, and that they reckon this Canonical. He observes, that the Canons of their Cathedral, which stands in the Middle of the City, are as well contrived for Ease as the others for Burying-Money; for the Constitutions of their Church oblige their Attendance at Morning Prayers by 4 a Clock; but for the Sake of those that are lazy and corpulent, they set the Clock an Hour backward. Mr. Ovington says, that the Jesuits detained some of his Company on Shore, for which, by Way of Reprizal, the Commander sent an armed Pinnace along the Shore, that seized a jolly Abbot and a Vicar coming up to the Town in a Boat, and kept them Prisoners, at which the Mob was so enraged, that he thought fit to return them, after the *English* Merchants had got Leave to go aboard. Our Author adds, that two or three Inquisitors, who wear the sacred Garb, examine all Ships that come into the Harbour, and will not suffer a Sailor to come ashore till they have pronounced the Ship healthful. *Sanutius* makes it 140 *Italian* or 35 *German* Leag. in Compass, 15 in Length from E. to W. and 6 in Breadth.

La Croix places it 13 Leagues from *Santo Porto*, and 60 from the *Canaries*, in Lat. 30. 31. He makes it of a triangular Figure, and says, it was formerly divided into four chief Parts, viz. *Monchrico* or *Marchico*, *Santo Cruz*, *Funzal*, and *Cambra de Lobos*, i. e. the Chamber of Wolves, because when it was discovered they found a great Cave here planted with Trees in Form of an arch'd Chamber, under a certain Point of Land which runs out into the Sea, where they saw the Footsteps of Sea-Wolves. He tells us, that the Diocese of *Madera* comprehends 36 Parish Churches, 5 Cloysters, 4 Hospitals, 82 Hermitages, and 25000 Inhabitants, besides abundance of Gardens; and that in 1625 it contained 6096 Houses, since which the Number is very much increased. He observes, that their Wines are best when they are two or three Years old, because by that Time the Heat of the Sun, which gives it a burning Taſt, is evaporated, and nothing remains but its pure natural Heat. He says, the Soil Yearly produces 30000 *Venetian* Measures of Corn called *Stares*, each of which weighs 133 Pounds; and

that the Grass and Trees grow so high, that the Islanders are forced to lop, cut, and burn great Part of them, and then plant Sugar-Canes in their Ashes, which thrive so well, that in 6 Months they attain to Maturity, and then they are cut. Among other Trees, they have several that produce Gum, particularly a sort of *Guaiacum* and Holy Wood; but because 'tis not so good as that which grows in the *Antilles* Islands, 'tis little esteemed. They have also large, bitter, sweet, Pomegranates, and in short our Author thinks it the delightfulest Place in the World. It abounds with tame Creatures, and on the Mountains there are abundance of Wild-Boars, Partridges, Pigeons, and Quails. They have also a little Honey and Wax. He says, the Inhabitants are honest and civiller than those of the *Canaries*; that they trade freely with all Nations in Sugar, Honey, Wax, Oranges, Citrons, Lemons, Pomegranates, Wines, Skins, &c. and that they are all *Roman* Catholicks. *Mocquet* calls this one of the *Canary* Islands. He says, their Sugar-Canes are very spungy, and that after they are cut they bruise them in a Mill, press out the Liquor, and boil it over and over in Vessels like those the Dyers use, till the Moisture is consum'd, and then refine it and put it in Earthen Moulds, where 'tis formed into Loaves. He adds, that the Substance or Husk that remains is reddish, or rather black, and that they therefore call it *Meleche*. *Du Plessis* places this Island 100 Leag. N. from the *Canaries*, 90 W. from the Coast of *Barbary*, and makes it 60 in Compass. *M. Fer* reckons 'tis 25 in Length, and 8 or 10 in Breadth. *Heylin* says, 'tis the biggest Island in the *Atlantick* Ocean, and places it Lat. 32.

Its chief Town is *Funzal*, *Funhial*, *Funchal* or *Fonchiale*, *Tunchal* or *Tonzal*, *Funghal* or *Funjal*. *Sir John Narborough* places it Lat. 32. 10. Long. 10. W. from the Lizard of *England*, and Meridian Distance 143 Leagues, on a Bay at the S. Side of the Isle. He says, 'tis well walled, and furnished with Artillery a Mile in Length, and three quarters in Breadth. There's a fair Harbour, where Ships may ride within the Reach of good Cannon, and a fine fresh Water River runs into the Bay from under a spacious Arch of the Town-Wall. He adds, that there's abundance of Pebble-Stones in the Bay

Bay near the Shore, Rocks in other Places, and deep Grounds to the E. Mr. Ovington says, some call it *Funchal*, because it abounds with Fennel, and that 'tis the sole Place of Trade from whence they export all their Wine and Sugar. He tells us, that tho' 'tis no bigger than a good Country Town, it contains almost 20 Churches and Chapels, particularly that called the Jesuits, with a Hospital near it for those that have been lewd. The Cathedral, which is said to be very magnificent, stands about the Middle of the City, whither they are obliged by their Canons to go to Prayers by 4 a Clock in the Morning, but they always keep the Clock an Hour backward. *La Croix* says, 'tis the See of a Bishop, but that it has no more than three Parish-Churches, and two Convents of *Franciscans*, one for the Men, built by the King of *Portugal*, and another for the Women built by *Gonsalvo* the Governor, besides the Jesuits College. He adds, that there's a Mountain near the Town from whence proceeds such abundance of Water, that it often causes an Inundation, which ruins the Bridges, Churches, Houses, &c. *Morery* says, it has a strong Fort, and lies on the E. Side of the Island, and that the Bishop has a Revenue of 8000 Ducats. 'Tis the Opinion of many learned Men, that the Romans knew it by the Name of *Junonis* or *Antolala*. *Luyts* says, the Portuguese Governor keeps a splendid Court here; and *Du Plessis*, that the Town is very long, but narrow, and situate at the Foot of a Mountain, $\frac{4}{5}$, others say $\frac{3}{4}$, of a League in Height; that 'tis defended by 3 Fortresses; that its Harbour is in Form of a Crescent; that Ships may anchor there within Pistol-shot of the Town; and that the Fort which commands the Harbour stands on a Rock in the Sea at the Right Hand.

3. The Desert Islands. Sir John Narborough says, they are high, barren, and rocky Isles, at the S. E. Point of *Madera*, about a Mile from the Shore, and that they treat to the S. E. He adds, that there's a small Chanel betwixt those Isles and the *Maderas*, which is deep, and passable without Danger when there's very little Wind at N. W. and fair Weather Course S. W. *Morery* says, 'tis called *Madera's* Warren, because it abounds with Game; and that there are 8 Mills for sawing

of Wood. *Luyts* says, 'tis so called from its desolate Barrenness, and that 'tis very small, and but 7 Miles from the E. Coast of *Madera*. *Moquet*, who was here in the Beginning of the last Century, says, that the chief City of *Madera* was then called by the same Name, and had two Fortresses, in one of which, viz the strongest, there was a *Castilian* Garrison, and in the other a *Portuguese*; but by his Description of it, it appears to be the same with *Fonchiale*. He says, 'twas then about as big as *St. Denis* in *France*, and very populous, there being a great many Slaves who work upon Sugar without the City.

III. The C A N A R I E S or C A N A R Y Islands.

DR. Harris is positive, that these are the same with those anciently called the *Fortunate Islands*, and agrees with *Hornius*, that they derived their Name of *Canaries* not a *Ca ribus*, according to *Pliny*, (for *Gomara* says, that when the *Fortunate Islands* were first discovered, no Dogs were found there) but a *Canana is*, from the *Phœnicians*, who, as *Scylax Caryandemus* saith, us'd to sail often from the Continent of *Africa* to *Cerne*, and some think that *Cerne* is only a Contraction of *Canaria*. 'Tis said, that in the Time of *Pliny* and *Juba*, the Inhabitants of these Islands left them; and since there is no Account whither they went, our Author thinks with *J. de Laet*, that they passed into *America*; after which, *Hornius* says they grew so barbarous, that they lost the Use and Knowledge of Fire. But it appears from *Pliny* and other ancient Writers, that when the *Fortunate Islands* were first discovered, there were the Ruins of great Buildings. Our Author observes in Favour of his Supposition, that the *Canarians* passed into *America*; that there's a great Agreement between them and the People of *Paria* and *Darien* as to the preserving of their Dead; and that those of *Nicaraguay* imitate the *Canarians* in giving their Princes the first Night with every Bride. He says, they were first made known to the French and Spaniards by *Macham* the Englishman, who discover'd the *Maderas*; and that one *Berance*, a Frenchman, who

who held three of them in Possession, compounded for them with K. Henry; but the Spaniard put in his Claim to them, as being conquer'd by that Frenchman under the Support of Castille, to which Crown they still belong, having gone thro' various Fortunes and Hands, as we shall hereafter mention.

De la Val places them in N. Lat. 28, 29, and 30. *Anthony Galvano* says, that in 1344, when *Peter IV.* was King of *Aragon*, one *De Cerda* went to conquer these Islands, by which they came to be commonly known in Spain and other Parts of Europe; and in 1395, in the Reign of *Henry III.* King of Castille, many Frenchmen and Castillians discovered these Islands, and seem to have been the first that landed there. In 1417, King *John II.* and his Mother *Katherine*, made *M. Betancourt* Governor of these Islands, with the Title of King, whither he went with a good Army, and conquered *Lancerota*, &c. where they built a Castle of Stone, and sent home Wax, Hides, and other Commodities. In 1431, they were given to the K. of Castille by Pope *Eugenius IV.* *Galvano* makes them 7 in Number, and says, the People eat raw Flesh, till the Ground with Ox-Horns, and that their Commodities are Wheat, Barley, Wine, Sugar, and Canary-Birds. He places them 800 Leagues from the American Islands called *Antibes*.

Sir Thomas Herbert observes, that some place the *Fortunate Islands* at the *Azores*, others at the *Hesperides*, some in Great Britain, and others at or near *Rhodes*; but he thinks it certain, that they were undiscovered till 1328, when they were accidentally found out by *Macham*, the afore-said Englishman, from whose Relation *Lewis de Cordexo* sailed hither, conquered them in 1330, and was made Governor by a Commission from *Pedro* King of *Aragon*. But in 1405, which some will have to be the first Discovery, *John II.* K. of Castille, displaced him; after which they were taken from the Castillian by *Vantacourt*, a Frenchman; but in 1417, the latter was dispossessed by *Betancour*, a well descended Gentleman, Kinsman to *Bracomonte*, the French Admiral, who with 10000 Volunteers conquer'd the Islands *Palma*, *Gomera*, *Lanzarota*, and *Forteventura*; but broke his Heart because he could not subdue the *Grand Canary*. Nevertheless, after this *Don Henrico*, Infant of Spain, took them, and uni-

ted them to the Spanish Monarchy. *Ptolomy* and *Mela* are supposed to have mistaken these Islands for *Deorum Curru*. *Plato*, *Aristotle*, and *Plutarch*, called them *Atlantiades*, and *Pliny* the *Hesperides*. *Herbert* places them 20 Leagues from *Morocco*, and 200 from Spain. *Ptolomy*, *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and other ancient Authors, called them *Canaria*, *Capraria*, *Nivaria*, *Juxonia*, *Ombrian* or *Pluvialia*, *Aprofita* or *Fracta Lancea*, and *Martin* adds *Casperia* or *Fortunata*; but now they are called *Canaria*, *La Palma*, *Teneriffa*, *Lancerota*, *Hierro*, *La Gomera*, and *Forteventura*. Anciently the Inhabitants knew no God but Nature, were ignorant of the Use of Fire, shaved with Flint-Stones, gave their Children to be suckled by Goats, hated the Slaughter of Beasts, used Women and every thing else in common, lived in Woods, and eat nothing but Herbs; yet they had some Glimmerings of the Soul's Immortality, for they washed their Dead, and set them upright in a Cave, with a Staff in one Hand, and a Pail of Milk and Wine set near them to support them in their Journey to Paradise; but they are now civilized, and profess Popery, and the Spanish Inquisition keeps all Protestants from them.

Mandelsloe says, they were called the *Fortunate Islands* because of their wholesome Air and Fertility. Some say they were called *Canarys*, because those who discover'd them in 1342 found abundance of Canes there; but our Author derives the Name from *Canaria*, the chief of its Islands. He extends them almost in a direct Line from E. to W. He says, that *Lewis Count of Clermont* having in 1348 a Grant of these Islands from the Pope, conquer'd them under the Protection of the K. of *Aragon*; but the same being afterwards relinquished by *Duke Lewis de Cerda*, the *Biscayans* and *Andalusians* surprised the Isle of *Lanzarotta*, and brought back so much Wealth, that the K. of Castille resolved upon the Conquest of these Islands, but was diverted by Wars with his Neighbours. After this, the above-mentioned *Betancourt* had a Commission from *Henry III.* then King of Spain, to conquer these Islands, on Condition that he and his Posterity should acknowledge the Sovereignty of the Crown of Castille. His Success is already mentioned; but the King of Castille sending a Bishop thither, it occasioned

tioned such a Difference betwixt him and Betancourt's Nephew, who succeeded his Uncle, that the King was forced to send thither one *Pedro Barba*, who having forced the *Frenchmen* thence, gave them as a Dowry with his Daughter to one *Perrera*, who styling himself King of the *Canaries*, try'd to make himself Master of all by the Conquest of the remaining Part of the Island; but not succeeding, he sold 4 of them to *Ferdinand* the Catholick, K. of *Aragon*, only reserving to himself that of *Gomera*, with the Title of Earl; but King *Ferdinand* soon found Means to reduce the two great Islands.

Captain *Dampier* says, these Islands abound with Beans, Pease, and Cockle, a Grain like Maiz, Papahs, Apples, Pears, Plumbs, Cherries, choice Peaches, Apricocks, Guavoes, Pomegranates, Citrons, Oranges, Limons, Limes, Pumpkins, the best Onions, Cabbages, Turneps, Potatoes, &c. and with Horses, Cows, Asses, Mules, Sheep, Goats, Hogs, Coneys, and Deer. Sir *William Monson* says, that in 1599 the *Dutch* sent a Fleet hither of 73 Ships, under the Command of *Peter van Doist*, and at their Return published a Book, entituled, *The Conquest of the Grand Canaries, made that Summer by 73 Sail of Ships sent out by the Command and Direction of the States General, &c. with the taking of a Town in the Island Gomera*; by which Title our Author observes they endeavoured to make the World believe that they had conquered all the *Canary* Islands, whereas they only surprised and took the City of *Palmas* in the Island of *Grand Canary*, where they took no Prisoners nor Booty, the Inhabitants being retired with all their Goods into the Mountains, so that they only delivered 36 Prisoners; but after they had taken the Town, some of the Soldiers, without their Officers Leave, did so much Mischief in the Country, that (for want of knowing the Passages) the *Spaniards* killed Scores at Times, and made the rest retire. Nevertheless they rifled their Cloysters, Monasteries, and Churches, and then burnt them to the Ground, for which Reason Sir *William Monson* severely reflects upon them. After this, the *Dutch* General took *Gomera* without Opposition, for all the People fled to the Mountains, where they killed many of the *Dutch* Stragglers.

Le Maire, who made a Voyage to these Islands in 1682 under M. *Dancourt*, Director-General of the *French* Royal *African* Company, says, they abound with Bread, Corn, Barley, Honey, Fowls, and all other Necessaries for good Living, particularly *Malmsey* Sack, which is imported every Year into *England*, *Holland*, *France*, and *Spain*, so that the Pagans thought them the *Elysian* Fields. Their Water is not very good, but they purge and make it wholesome by pouring it into Vessels of porous Stone made in the Shape of Mortars. Their Harvest is commonly in *March*, sometimes in *April*, and in several Places twice a Year, and the Soil is so fat, that a Cherry-Tree Slip bears Fruit in 6 Weeks time after grafting, and Flowers grow without Cultivation. He observes, that *Lancerota*, *Forteventura*, *Gomera*, and *Fer*, first embraced Christianity; but that the other three continued in Idolatry some Time after the Conquest of the *Spaniards* in 1460. However at last they followed their Example. He adds, that the *Spaniards* sent abundance of the Inhabitants for Slaves to *Spain*, in order to make an entire Conquest of the Country; but that those who stay'd behind became civiliz'd, and liv'd like their Conquerors. He tells us, that they are very fond of Strangers; that all the Islands are very mountainous, and well Peopled; and that the least is 60 Miles in Compass.

La Croix places these Islands between N. Lat. $26\frac{1}{2}$. and $29\frac{1}{2}$. thô *Ptolomy* extends them no farther than the 16th and he takes Notice, that some confound them with the *Cape Verd* Islands. Some by the Islands of *Ombrio* and *Junonia* understand *Porto Santo* and *Madera*; by *Pluitalia*, *Lancerota*; by *Casperia* or *Capraria*, *Forteventura*; and by *Canaria*, the *Great Canary*, which still retains its Name. *Purchas* and others include among the *Canaries* the small Islands of *Lobos*, *Roca*, *Graciosa*, *Sante Clara*, *Alegreanca*, and *Inferno*, to which *Ortelius* adds the *Salvages* Islands in the same Rank of that of *Alegreanca*, together with those of *Graciosa* and *Coro*, which *Thevenot* calls the *Isle of Stags*, the chief of which we shall hereafter describe in their Order. *La Croix* sets these Islands over against *Cape Nun* in *Morocco*, 70 or 80 Leagues from the Continent, and 9 or 10 Leagues from one another. He tells us,

U u u u

that

that the above-mentioned *John de Betancour* was a Native of *Caux* in *Normandy*; and that as soon as *John King* of *Castille* had transferred to him his Right to these Islands, he furnished him with all Necessaries for the Conquest; that at his first Arrival he seized the Harbour and Castle of *Lancerota*; after which he built the Cloyster of *St. Francis*, and a Church there, and then returned into *Spain*, where, according to *Gramaye*, he made over his Right to *Diego de Herrera* for a Sum of Money. Upon this, the latter took the Isle of *Fortaventura*, which he called by that Name in Honour of *St. Bonaventura*, on whose Festival he made the Descent. *Sanutius* says, that when *Betancour* arrived at the Islands of *Lancerota* and *Fortaventura*, he took Possession of them by the Consent of the Queen of *Castille*, and that his Heirs sold it after his Death to *K. John* while he was but young. The same Author says likewise, that *Diego de Herrera* made himself Master also of the Isles of *Ferro* and *Gomera*; and that after he had made a vain Attempt upon the others, he sold his Right to King *Ferdinand*, who made himself Master of *Grand Canary*, after an obstinate Fight with the Islanders. *La Croix* says, that *Alfonse* and *Bartelt de Lugo* being afterwards sent thither in 1512, conquer'd the Isle of *Fer* and 4 others before he was Master of *Palma*; but on the contrary *Sanutius* says, that *Gomera* and the Isle of *Fer* were discovered by *Ferdinand Dorias*, and the *Grand Canary*, *Palma*, and *Teneriff*, by *Alfonse de Lugo*, and *Peter de Vera*, a Gentleman of *Xeres*; and that all five were conquer'd by the Commission of King *Ferdinand* and Queen *Isabella*, viz. *Palma* and *Teneriff* by *Alfonse de Lugo*, and the three others by *Peter de Vera* and *Michael de Mexica*.

La Croix observes, that the Nearness of these Islands to the Tropick of *Cancer* exposes them to the vehement Heat of the Sun, as appears from their early Harvest. He says, the Soil is equally good, and produces that famous *Canary Wine* which is so much esteemed all over the World; but *Sanutius* says, that at first there was but one of these Islands which produced this Wine and Corn. Among other Fruits, they abound with Figs, Sugar-Canes, Palm-Trees, &c. which grow on the Bank of Rivers. It also produces abundance of the Plants common-

ly called *Orifelle*, which most Herbalists think the same that *Phalaris* of *Dioscorides*, and *Dalechamp* upon *Pliny*, take for the second Sort of Barley of *Theophrastus*, which bears *Canary Seed*. The Inhabitants cultivate this Seed with a great deal of Care for the Nourishment of those called the *Canary Birds*, and it thrives very well too if transported into *Europe*. There's a Sort of black Gum or Pitch called *Bre*, which abounds in the Isle of *Teneriff*, where they take it off of the Pines in this Manner: They cut and cleave those Trees into little Billers till they have 10 or 12 Waggon-load, and then lay them cross-wise one upon another over a great deep Hole, into which the Pitch drops by the Heat of the Fire, which they light first at the Top: But some only dig a Trench round the Tree, and then put in the Fire. The Sea here abounds with Fish, especially Sturgeons, which is the poor People's principal Food, and all the Islands have certain Marshes and Ditches, into which the Sea flows at high Tide, and afterwards the Water turns by Degrees and the Heat of the Sun, into Salt.

La Croix tells us, that the Inhabitants are strong, neither white nor black, but of a brown swarthy Complexion, and have flat wide Noses. They are very brisk and mettlesome. Those few of the ancient Barbarians that are left have abandoned their native Roughness, are called *Guanchas* by the Spaniards, and conform to their Way of Living. They talk little, and lisp; but they have good Stomachs, so that some of them can eat 20 Rabbits and a Goat at a Meal. They all speak good Spanish, besides the different Languages of the Country, and are of the *Romish* Religion. 'Tis said, that some of the Inhabitants fled to the Mountains at first out of Obstinacy, but that now they are all dispersed. He adds, that their chief Merchandize and Wealth consists in their Wines, Goats-Skins, Sugar, &c. *Dampier* says, they have Cocks, Hens, Ducks, Pigeons, Partridges, and other Fowl, besides Mackrel, and Plenty of other Fish; but all Provisions are dearest on the three most Trading Islands, which are *Grand Canary*, *Teneriff*, and *Palma*. He observes, that they are best noted for their *Malmsey* and other Wines, *Lancerota* for Horses, *Fortaventura* for Dunghil-Fowls, and *Gomera* for Deer.

The Governor in 1699 was Don *Pedro de Ponto*, a Native of *Teneriff*, and formerly President of *Panama* in the South Seas, from whence he brought Pearls to the Queen of *Spain*, and was therefore made Governor of the *Canaries*. He gives him the Character of a very worthy Person, and says, he was well beloved for his Moderation and Justice. *Roberts's* Map of Commerce says, they make great Quantities of Marmalade and other Conserves of their Sugars, and that they have excellent Woad for Dying. He adds, that they export 2000 Tuns of Wine every Year to *England* and *Holland*, besides their Woad and Sugars, for which the *English* bring hither Says, Serges, Bays, Linens, and the like. The same Weights, Measures, and Coins, are used here as at *Seville*.

Heylin observes, that the Ancients fixed the first Meridian among these Islands, which is since removed to *St. Michael's*, one of the *Azores*. He says, that then they made Prisoners and condemn'd Persons their ordinary Butchers, and obliged them to live in a separate Quarter. Each Island had a King of its own; yet they had a Common-Council out of all, consisting of 130 Persons, who had the chief Direction of all Matters Spiritual and Temporal, and us'd to have the first Night's Lodging with every Man's Bride. He adds, that they were of a mild Disposition, own'd one God, Creator of the Word, but agreed in nothing else, wore Goats-Skins, lived in Caves, and that they eat Dogs-Flesh to this very Day.

He gives a History of these Islands, which, since it differs in some Things from the Account already given, we shall briefly touch upon as follows: After the Decay of the *Roman* Empire, they lay undiscovered till about 1330, when they were found out by an *English* or (as some say) *French* Ship drove hither by Tempest. K. *Alphonso IV.* of *Portugal* sent *Lewis de Ordo* to conquer them; but being repulsed at *Gomera* in 1334, he gave over his Enterprize. Nevertheless the *Portuguese* found their Claim to these Islands upon this Ground. But Pope *Clement VI.* granted them to Prince *Lewis* of *Spain*, Son of *Alphonso de la Corde*, the right Heir of *Castille*, by the Name of the *Fortunate Islands*, and caused Soldiers to be levied in *France* and *Italy* to assist him in the Conquest, which gave such Umbrage to

the *English* Ambassadors then at *Rome*, who thought there were no other *Fortunate Islands* than those of *Great Britain*, that they posted an Express to the *English* Court to prevent the Danger of the suspected Conveyance. But nothing being done in Pursuance of the Pope's Grant, in 1393 some *Biscayners* fell among these Islands, and having pillaged *Lancerota*, returned into *Spain* with great Store of Wax, Hides, and other Commodities of the Island. Upon this *Katherine*, one of the Daughters of *John* Duke of *Lancaster*, the Dowager of K. *Henry* of *Portugal*, did, during the Minority of *John II.* commit the Conquest of them to *John* of *Betancourt* above-mentioned, who died in 1417, after he had subdued 4 of the Islands, and left his Son, who not being able to subdue *Canary*, whither most of the Islanders were retired, fortified himself in *Lancerota*, and took the Title of King, which he left soon after to one *Mencault*, in whose Time the Islands under his Command received the Gospel, and had an Episcopal See in *Lancerota*. But Complaint being made at the Court of *Castille* that this King sold his Subjects for Money, *Pedro Barva de Campos* was sent against him with three Men of War; after which the King of *Castille* gave him Leave to sell his Interest in these Islands to *Fernando Xeres*, a Knight of *Sevil*, who was assisted by that City to maintain his Purchase, and left the 4 lesser Islands to his Successors, while *Canary*, *Teneriff*, and the *Isles* of *Palmes*, were each under their own Kings. Thus it continued, says our Author, till 1483, when *Ferdinand the Catholick*, under the Conduct of two great Commanders, *Alphonso* of *Mexico* and *Pedro de Vera*, became Master of them, and translated the Bishop's See to the *Great Canary*; so that our Author observes, the Possession hath always belonged to the *Castilians*, notwithstanding the Claim of the *Portuguese*. He says, 'tis now divided into two Estates, the one subordinate to the other, *Gomera*, *Lancerota*, and *Hierro*, being in the Hands of private Subjects, and *Canaria*, *Palma*, *Teneriff*, and *Forteventura*, belonging to the Crown, to which 'tis said they yield 50000 Ducats a Year. He adds, that the Seat of Justice is fixed in the *Grand Canary*, whither all resort upon Occasion.

Luyts and the *Sansons* place these Islands over against the Capes of *Bojador* and *Nun* in *Teffet* in *Biledulgerid*, and extend the chief of them betwixt Lat. 26. and 28 or 29. Several Maps extend them from the first Meridian to the 7th Deg. of Long. *Luyts* adds, that the *Oricelum* above mentioned is much used in the dying of Cloths with a Purple Colour. *Morery* computes that they send 16000 Hogsheads of Wine every Year into *England*. He makes the Number of these Islands 12, including the lesser ones, and says, the People value Iron more than Silver or Gold. He adds, that in 1598 the Earl of *Cumberland* fitted out 11 Ships at his own Charge, with which he took *Lancerota*, *Boriquema*, and *Porto Rico*, where he would have settled a Colony; but his Men fell sick and died. The *Sansons* prove that these are *Ptolemy's Fortunate Islands* by a particular Discussion, to which we refer the Curious. *Morden* says, the Spanish *West-India* Fleets often rendezvous among these Islands, to receive Orders at what Part of *Spain* they shall unlade their Wealth. *Gordon* reckons *Dragon's Blood* and *Plantanes* among the Commodities of these Islands.

We come now to the particular Description of the *Canary Islands*, as they are set down in the Maps, beginning with

1. The *SALVAGES* or *SALVATICÆ* ISLAND.

Tho' 'tis not so considerable as any of the 7 principal Islands, and by some not reckoned among the *Canaries*, yet we mention it first, because it lies nearer to the *Madera* than the others. The *Sansons* say 'tis desert. Captain *Woodes Rogers*, who was at the taking of the rich *Acapulco* Ship, and visited this Island in 1708, says, that at a Distance it looks like the Island *Lundy* in *Bristol* Chanel. and that 'tis high, and two Miles long. *Luyts* makes it two Islands, and so does *Villalam*, who adds, that tho' they are barren and uninhabited, yet they are often frequented for the getting of *Canary* Birds, which are so numerous here, that there's no walking without crushing their Eggs.

2. The Island *PALMA*.

Merolla says, it lies 70 Leagues from *Madera*, and 216 from *Cape Verd*. *Herbert* 10 Leagues from *Fer* Island, and 20 from *Teneriff*. He says, 'tis very high and woody. *La Croix* makes it the Westermost of all the *Canaries*, and places it 12 Leagues N. from *Fer*, and 4 from *Gomera*, in N. Lat. 28. He says 'tis small, but very fruitful, abounds in Cattle and good Pasture, Grapes, Sugar, &c. that the Inhabitants make abundance of Milk and Cheese; and that its principal Traffick is in Wine. The *Sansons* think it to be the *Capraria* of the Ancients. They place it 12 or 15 Leagues N. W. of *Gomera*, and say, 'tis round or oval, 25 Leag. in Compass, and abounds in Corn, &c. It has a Town of its own Name, a safe Harbour, well frequented for Wines, which some reckon the best of the *Canaries*, and like *Malmsey*. They are transported thence to the *West-Indies* and elsewhere. The best comes from the Neighbourhood of *Brenia*, from whence they send above 12000 Pipes a Year. They add, that they have little Corn besides what is transported from *Teneriff*, and that there are 4 fine Sugar Engines, besides the Church and the Governor's Palace. *Morden* says, 'tis the Victualling-place of the Spanish Fleet in their Passage to *Pern* and *Brasil*. *Du Plessis* tells us, that in 1493, or as *Heylin* says in 1491, this Island was conquered for the Spaniards by *Alphonso Ferdinand de Lugo*. He makes it 26 Leagues in Compass, and says, it has a Volcano and several Villages, besides its Capital *Santa Cruz de la Palma*. *Luyts* says, 'tis well cultivated, 10 Miles long, and 7 broad. Dr *Heylin* says, that this, and the Islands *Canary* and *Teneriff*, make up the Bishoprick of the *Canaries*, the rest being in the Diocese of *Madera*. *Morery* tells us, that in 1677, its Volcano sent forth Fires, accompanied with Earthquakes, remarkable for their Quality and Continuance. *Nunno de Penna*, in his Historical Memoirs, says, that on the 13th of November 1677, a little after Sun-set, the Earth shook for 13 Leagues with a frightful Noise, that lasted 5 Days, during which the Earth opened in several Places; but the greatest Gap was upon that called

Mont aux Chevres, a Mile and a half from the Sea, from whence proceeded a great Fire, which cast up Stones and Pieces of Rock. The like happened in several Places thereabouts, and in less than a quarter of an Hour it made 28 Gaps about the Foot of the Mountain, which vomited up abundance of Flames and burning Stones. It took its Course over the Plain of *Los Cairos*, and ran with Violence towards the Holy Fountain; but coming near the Brink of the great Descent, turned to the Right, and forced its Way towards the Old Port, where the *Spaniards* landed when they made themselves Masters of these Islands. He adds, that on the 20th of November following, there was a second Eruption of the *Mont aux Chevres*, from whence came forth Stones and Fire, with great Earthquakes and Thunders for several Days, so that black Cinders were taken up at 7 Leagues Distance, the adjacent Ground was entirely wasted, and the Inhabitants forced to quit their Habitations.

3. FERRO, FERRAIN, FER, FIERRO, or HIERRO Island.

Herbert says, it lies S. S. W. from *Grand Canary*, and appears very high at Sea. He places it 10 Leagues from *Palma*, and makes it but 6 Leagues in Compass. He says, 'tis famous for a Tree called *Garre* by the Natives, and *Santo* by the *Spaniards*, which affords fresh Water to all the Inhabitants. 'Tis covered with a cloudy Mist some Part of the Day, which casts such a plentiful Dew upon the Leaves, as distils in Streams of clear sweet Drops into Stone Cisterns, that hold enough for all the People and Cattle, so that they never drink out of Rivers or Ponds. *Sir Richard Hawkins* says, this Tree stands upon the Declivity of a Hill, and is shaded with a multitude of stately Pines. 'Tis as big as a middling Oak 6 or 7 Yards high. The Bark is white, the Boughs ragged, the Leaf white on one Side, and green on the other; but it bears neither Fruit nor Flower. He says, the Mist covers it in the Night, and that the Inhabitants have laid Leaden Pipes, which carry all the Water to a great Pond in the Valley, which is handsomely paved, and holds 20000 Tun of Water; but he ob-

serves 'tis generally filled in a Night's time, and communicates its Water to several lesser Fountains, which disperse it thro' the Island. He adds, that the Island contains 7 or 8000 Inhabitants. *Mandelslo* says, it claims the next Place to *Teneriff*, and is so called from the Dryness of the Soil, which is as hard as Iron; for except a few Springs near the Shore, the whole Island has no Rivulet, Brook, Well, or Spring. He says, the Tree stands in the middle of the Island, and is like no other that he ever saw. It has very long narrow Leaves, which are always green. *La Croix* says, this Island was taken for the *Spaniards* in 1512 by *Alphonso* and *Bartelt de Lugo*. On the other Hand *Sanutus* tells us, this and *Gomera* Island were taken by *Diego de Herrera*, who afterwards sold his Right to King *Ferdinand*, and that both were discovered by *Ferdinand Dorias*. *La Croix* places this Island 8 Leagues from *Gomera*, in N. Lat. 2. Some think it the *Pluvialia* of *Ptolemy*, and the *Ombon Pluvialia* of *Pliny* and *Solinus*. It has some Towns, and in its Capital there's a Cloyster and a Church called *St. Francis*. He says, the aforesaid Mist never retires but in the Heat of the Day, and that its Water is received into two Stone Basins on the N. Side of the Tree, each 20 Foot square, and 4 deep. If it happens that this Mist fails in August, 'tis observed that its Absence is supplied by a Vapour which comes from the Sea-Side, and spreads about the Tree, where it turns into Dew, and runs along the Leaves like the Mist. Our Author tells us, that when the *Spaniards* landed here, the Inhabitants told them they had none but Rain Water, and hid this Tree with Sugar-Canes, Earth, &c. in Hopes to oblige the *Spaniards* to retire when they saw no Water; but a Harlot of the Island told the Secret to a *Spaniard*, who reveal'd it to his Commander; but it proved the Woman's Ruin. He says, its Leaves are a little bigger than those of the great Walnut-Tree, and that it bears a Fruit which resembles an Acorn, especially in its Husk, which contains a Kernel of a choice, sweet, aromatick Taste. He adds, that 'tis encompassed with a Stone Wall, and that its Soil is very fruitful, notwithstanding its Want of Water, and abounds in Corn, Sugar-Canes, and several Sorts of Fruits and Herbs, and some

good Number of Cattle, which furnish the Islanders with Milk and Cheese. *Hackluyt* calls the above-mentioned Tree an Olive, and says, the Island abounds with Orchel and Goats, and belongs to the Earl of *Gomera*, but has only one Vineyard, planted by one *Hill* of *Taunton* in England. *Heylin* says, 'tis called *Picri*, because of its Iron Mines, and that some think it the *Aprofitus* of *Ptolomy*. *Luyts* says, this is the most Western Island of all the *Canaries*, and that 'tis barren and untill'd for want of Rain. The Tree above-mentioned is said to be extremely ancient, and that it never fades; but some deny that it has any such Property, and say there are others of the same Kind, especially in the Island of *St. Thomas*. The *French* have made the first Meridian to pass thro' the W. Part of this Island ever since 1634, by the Command of King *Lewis XIII.* after he had consulted the most able Astronomers and Geographers. *John Nun de Pena* makes this Island 6 Leagues broad, 7 long, and 22 in Compass, and says, that it has a Town of its own Name, with a convenient Harbour. The *Sansons* place it 15 or 16 Leagues from *Palma*, and but 5 or 6 from *Gomera*. They observe the great Difference there is between Authors who have wrote of the Bigness of the Island, the Nature of its Soil, and its Water. The History of the Conquest of the *Canaries*, writ by two of the *Sieur Bethencour's* Domesticks, makes it 7 Leagues long and 5 broad. *Midnal* an *Englishman*, who was Factor here in 1526 for some *London* Merchants, makes it but 6 Miles in Compass, which seems very improbable. Another Writer says, here is Plenty of Sheep, Pigs, Wild-Fowl, &c. The History of the Conquest of these Islands says, the Coast is unpleasant here, but the Inland Country very high and delightful, where they have Plenty of Water, and frequent Rains. It adds, that the Water of the Tree is of a singular Virtue, and concocts in an Hour's time. *Jackson* an *Englishman*, who says he saw and measured this Tree in 1618, tells us, that it dries up and withers by Day. The aforesaid History of the Conquest mentions several Trees here of this Sort. Some place it on the Top of a very high Mountain, two Leagues from the Sea. *Sanctius* says, the Mist begins to rise about Noon, and that it continues till

next Day-break; but most say, that it always hangs about the Tree. From hence the *Sansons* judge that the Island is above 6 Leagues in Compass; that it abounds with all necessary Provisions for Men and Cattle; that there is Water upon the Coast and within Land, besides the Trees just now mentioned in the Middle of the Country, whose Water is used more than that of others, because of its singular Virtue. *Du Fer* says, this wonderful Tree is 40 Foot high, and the Trunk 12 Foot in Diameter, with no Branches. *Le Maire* seems to grant that there is such a sort of Tree here; but he was informed it never furnished so much Water.

4. G O M E R A Island.

Herbert places it 5 or 6 Leagues W. from *Teneriff*, and 12 from *Palma*, and makes it 8 in Length. *Sir William Monson* says, 'tis a poor weak Island, and that the *Dutch* took it the Beginning of the last Century without Opposition, while the Inhabitants fled to the Mountains, and killed many of the *Dutch* Stragglers. *La Croix* places it in Lat. 26 $\frac{1}{2}$. and says 'tis barren, but that Wine and Sugar would thrive here if cultivated; and that there's a Town of its own Name, with a Harbour on the Side of *Teneriff*, which the *Sansons* say is one of the best and most frequented in the *Canaries*. They place it 8 or 9 Leagues from *Teneriff*, and 12 or 15 S.E. from *Palma*, and make it 10 or 12 in Length. They say, that the *Spanish West India* Fleet often comes into its Harbour, and takes in Corn, Fruits, Sugar, Wine, &c. and that the Country is high, plain, feeds small Cattle, produces many Dragon Trees, and is encompassed with great deep Roads. *Heylin* says, that now 'tis as civil and well cultivated as any other of the Islands; but that the Men lie reciprocally with one another's Wives, and that the Sister's Son us'd to claim the Inheritance. He makes it 22 Leagues in Compass, tho' but 8 in Length, and says, the Haven is large; that the Ancients called it *Theode*; and that the Proprietor of it is an Earl. *Hackluyt* says, it yields Corn, Fruit, Wine, and Sugar; and *Morery*, that it has *Fer* on the W. *Luyts* places it on the S. of *Palma*, and says, it has Plenty of Apples.

Du Plessis says, 'twas discovered in 1445 by *Ferdinand Peraza*, a Spaniard.

5. T E N E R I F F.

Herbert says, 'tis 50 Miles long, and as populous as the *Grand Canary*. This Island is chiefly noted for that called the famous Pike of *Teneriff*, or the Pike of *Adam*. Most say 'tis 15 Miles high, but *Scaliger* reckons it 60, *Patricius* 70, *Thevet* 54, and one *Nicholls* an *Englishman*, who lived here, 47; but then 'tis supposed they compute the oblique Ascent; for *Varenus* says, 'tis but 4 Miles and 15 Furlongs perpendicular, and *Raymundus* but 3. *Sir Thomas* tells us, 'tis so high, that the Top is seen in clear Weather 120 Miles; and that there's Plenty of Wood at the Bottom, Snow in the Middle, and Flames on the Top, where there are Veins of Brimstone burning, which the People call the Devil's Cauldron. It rises from the Middle of the Island, and has a Ledge of Hills on each Side, which divide it. He places it 13 Leagues from *Grand Canary*, 20 from *Palma*, 5 from *Gomera*, 75 from the Continent of *Africa*, and 70 from *Madera*. He adds, that those who ascend it usually ride round for the Space of 7 Leagues, and then foot the rest. *Mandelstoe* says, 'tis called *El Pico de Terraira*, and reckoned the highest in the World, so that it requires 3 Days time to ascend it, and that must be in *July* or *August*, it being cover'd with Snow all the rest of the Year, tho' there falls none in any of the other Islands. For this Reason 'tis supposed to be the *Nivaria* of *Pliny*. *M. Rennefort* says, 'tis 47812 Foot high, and that the Middle is never without Snow, but that the Top is always dry, because 'tis above the middle Region. *Le Maire* says, the Snow never falls off nor freezes. *Dampier* says, 'tis best seen by Ships that are to the W. and *Captain Rogers*, that 'tis generally clouded, but that the Top is often visible above the Clouds when all the rest is covered with them. *La Croix* says, the *Moors* call it *El-bard*, others the Pike of *Teyde*, and that the Top is plain and even. The *Sansons* say, 'tis steep and round, and 45 *English* Miles in perpendicular Height. It often vomits Fire and Brimstone, and the Top resembles a Sugar-Loaf. Within two Miles of the Top

there's nothing but Ashes and Pumice-Stones, and the Wood at Bottom consists of Trees called *Vinatico*, whose Timber is heavy, and does not rot in the Water, and below them are pleasant Woods of Bay or Lawrel-Trees for 10 or 12 Miles, frequented by the Singing Birds of the *Canaries*. *Snellius* says, it rises up after the Manner of a vast Pillar of a Conical Figure, the lowest Parts of which are most spacious, and contracting by degrees to a sharp Point at the Top. Many of the *Dutch* Maps reckon the Beginning of Longitude from this Mountain. *Morery* makes it 15 Leagues high, and says, it does not vomit Flames now. *Hakluyt* says, 'tis half a Mile broad at Top, and hollow like a Cauldron. *Gordon* says, it looks like a large Mass of Rocks heaped up together in Form of a rugged Pyramid, and is thought by some natural Philosophers to have been raised on a sudden by a mighty Conflagration of sulphurous Matter; and in Favour of this Opinion 'tis alledged, that there's still a great Quantity of Sulphur nigh the Foot of the Pike, and that the Colour of the Rocks looks as if they had been long burnt in a Fire.

But the best Account of this famous Pike is to be seen in the History of the Royal Society of *London*, published by *Dr. Sprat*, late Bishop of *Rockester*, from a Relation of some considerable Merchants and others of Credit who went to the Top of it. For our Reader's Satisfaction, we have extracted it as follows:

They set out from *Oratavia*, and passed over several bare Mountains and sandy Places, till they came to the Foot of the Pike, where there are many huge Stones, which seem to have fallen down from some upper Part. After they had ascended about a Mile, they were obliged to quit their Horses, and tho' the Air was very mild in the Day-time, yet it was so cold and strong after Sun-set, that they were forced to keep great Fires all Night. The black Rocks begin a Mile above, and lie flat like a Pavement. From hence they proceeded to the Sugar-Loaf, where they began to travel again in a white Sand, with Shoes whose single Soles are made a Finger broader than the upper Leather, to facilitate the Passage. When they had climbed to the Top of the Pike, they found a strong Wind, and a con-

tinual breathing of a hot Sulphurous Vapour, which made their Faces sore, but no such Smoak as there was below. The Top on which they stood being not above a Yard broad, is the Brink of a Pit called the *Caldera*, which they judged to be a Musket-shot over, and near 4 Yards deep, in Shape like a Cone, hollow within like a Cauldron, and covered all over with small loose Stones mixed with Sulphur and Sand, which send forth a hot suffocating Stream. They descended 4 or 5 Yards into the *Caldera*, but no farther, because of its sliding from their Feet, and the Difficulty; but some have ventured to the Bottom. They observed a clear Sort of Sulphur upon the Stones like Salt; and from hence they kenned the *Grand Canary*, 14 Leagues distant, *Palma* 18, *Gomera* 7, and *Fer* above 20. So soon as the Sun appears, the Shadow of this Mountain seems to cover not only this and the *Grand Canaries* Island, but even the Sea to the very Horizon, where its Top seems to turn up, and cast its Shadow into the Air. Sometimes, especially during the N. W. Wind, the Clouds seem to hang above or to wrap themselves about the Pike, which they call the *Cappe*, and say 'tis a certain Sign of approaching Storms. There are several choice Springs on the Tops of the other Mountains. The sandy Way to the Foot of the Sugar-Loaf is steep, almost to a Perpendicular. There's a Cave 10 Yards deep and 15 broad, in Shape like an Oven or Cupola, with a Hole at the Top near 8 Yards over, by which they swung down by a Rope that their Servants held at the Top, till they came to a Bank of Snow. They were forced to swing thus, because in the Middle of the Bottom of this Cave, opposite to the Overture at the Top, there's a round Well of Water, the Surface whereof is about a Yard lower than the Snow, but as wide as the Mouth at Top, and about 6 Fathom deep. This is not supposed to be a Spring, but only dissolved Snow blown in, or Water dropping thro' the Rocks. About the Sides of this Grot, for some Height, there's Ice and Icicles hanging down to the Snow. When they returned to *Oratava* from this Mountain, their Faces were so red and sore, that they were forced to bath them with the Whites of Eggs, &c. to cool them. The whole perpendicular Height of

this Mountain is reckoned two Miles and a half. There are no Trees, Herbs, nor Shrubs, in all the Passage, but Pines, and among the whiter Sands a bushy Plant like Broom. On one Side there's a Sort of Cordon, which hath Stems of 8 Foot high, with a Trunk near half a Foot thick, every Stem growing in four Squares, and rising from the Ground like Tuffets of Rushes, upon the Edges of which grow small red Buttons or Berries, which contain a poisonous Milk, that immediately fetches off the Hair from the Skin. 'Tis said, this Plant is spread over all the Island, of which we come next to give an Account.

Heylin says, 'tis less than the *Grand Canary*, but that it is equally fruitful. He makes it 17 Leagues in Length, 48 Spanish Leagues in Compass, says 'tis rich, and has been subject to the *Spaniards* ever since 1496. He observes, that many late Geographers count the first Meridian from this Island, and places it in N. Lat. 27 $\frac{1}{2}$. He says, the Land lies all very high, and that it yields more Corn than any of the rest, besides the same Fruits which all the others produce. He adds, that before the Conquest of it, seven Kings reign'd in it, who dwelt in Caves, and wore Goats-Skins; and that this and the Islands of *Grand Canary* and *Palma* pay 50000 Ducats a Year to the King of Spain for Customs, besides 12000 to the Bishop. *Luyts* says, the Inhabitants and *Spaniards* call it *Thenerife*, and that it lies next to *Gomera* on the E. and almost in the Middle of the 7 *Canary* Islands. He makes it 8 Spanish Leagues in Breadth. He says, 'tis a very pleasant Island, and that after two Years War with the Natives, the *Spaniards* took it in September 1496, under *Alonso Ferdinando de Lugo*. He places it 36 Spanish Leagues E. of *Porteventura*, 10 from *Grand Canary*, 55 from the nearest Coast of *Africa*, 8 from *Gomera*, and 18 from *Ferro*. Some place it 16 Leagues N. W. from *Grand Canary*, and make it 24 or 25 Leagues in its greatest Breadth. The *Sansons* say, that it produces Wines, which are transported to the *West-Indies*, Honey, Sugar, Wax, Flax, Silk, &c. and that their best Vines grow on the Side of *Ramble*. There are certain Shrubs that yield a Liquor like Milk, which becomes thick, and turns into a choice Gum called *Taybuyba*. They cut the Dragon-Tree at the

the Bottom, and it sends forth a red Liquor called Dragon's Blood, which is used by the Apothecaries. *La Croix* places this Island 6 Leagues W. from the *Grand Canary*. *Thevet* and *Sanutius* make it the biggest of all the *Canaries*, and extend it 40 Leagues in Length; but *Gramaye* differs from them. *M. Rennefort* makes it 18 Leagues long, and 10 broad. He says, the Hills are full of Orange, Citron, and Pomegranate Trees. The Persons of Quality here are very civil, but the common People haughty and lazy like the *Spaniards*, so that they had rather live upon Radishes and Pulse than to take the Pains to hunt, tho' they have Plenty of Game. The Women go always covered with a Mask, and make a little Hole in it, thro' which they only look with one Eye. Their Corn is like that of *Turkey*. They have abundance of *Malmsey*, which generally costs 20 Ducats per Pipe, besides 17 Reals for the Duties of Exports, so that it amounts to 489 Livres of *France*, and contains 480 Pints of *Paris*. Money is common enough here, and the Merchants trade hither with great Advantage. The chief vendible Commodities here are Swords, Pistols, Knives, Coats, Habits, Cloaks black and grey, broad brimm'd Hats, Ribbons, Linen, &c. He adds, that this Island yields abundance of Sulphur, which they transport elsewhere, and that it contains about 5000 Souls.

Du Pleffis says, 'tis the biggest and richest of all the *Canaries*, and is said to yield above 28000 Tuns of the choicest *Canary Wine*. He makes it near 60 Leagues in Compass, and 25 Leagues in Length, but says, the Breadth is very unequal. He adds, that about the End of *December* in 1704, a terrible Earthquake happen'd here, which continued two entire Months without ceasing, when above 80000 Persons were killed, whole Towns overthrown, and others swallowed up by Fire, which, with the prodigious Eruption of Sulphur and Bitumen out of the Volcano's in the Mountains, turn'd the finest Country in the World into a Desert. *Dampier* says, it lies for most Part N. and S. and that 'tis pretty full of steep craggy Mountains, with Risings and Fallings, so that 'tis very troublesome to travel, except in the Cool of the Mornings and Evenings, and they use Asses both for

Riding and Carriage. The true *Malmsey Sack* grows here, which is said to be the best in the World; besides *Canary Wine*, and *Verdona* or Green Wine. The former grows chiefly on the W. Side of the Place, and is commonly sent to *Oratavia*, where the *English Merchants* have a great Trade for it. *Verdona* is a green strong Wine, harsher and sharper than *Canary*; but 'tis not so much esteemed in *Europe*; therefore 'tis exported to the *West-Indies*, where it will also keep best. 'Tis made chiefly on the E. Side of the Island, and shipped off at *Santa Cruz*. 'Tis said, they can raise 12000 armed Men on this Island. *Le Maire* says, that in his Time it contained about 15000 Souls.

Dr. Sprat's History of the Royal Society gives this Account of it, from the Information of a judicious and inquisitive Man that lived 20 Years here as a Physician and Merchant. His Opinion is, that the whole Island being mightily impregnated with Brimstone, did formerly take Fire, and blow up all or most Part of it at the same time, and that many Mountains of huge Stones calcin'd and burnt, which appear every where about the Island, especially in the S. W. Parts of it, were raised out of the Bowels of the Earth at the Time of that general Conflagration; and that the greatest Quantity of this Sulphur lying about the Center of the Island, raised the *Pico* to its present Height; for he says, these calcin'd Rocks lie 3 or 4 Miles almost round the Bottom of the *Pico*, in such Order one above another almost to the Sugar-Loaf, as if the whole Ground, swelling up together by the rising of the Brimstone, the Torrents and Rivers, did with a sudden Eruption tumble them from the rest of the Rocks, especially to the S. W. where, from the Top of the Mountain almost to the Shore, there are huge Heaps of these burnt Rocks one under another. And there remain to this Time the very Tracts of the Rivers of Brimstone as they ran over all this Part of the Island, which has so ruin'd the Soil, that 'twill produce nothing but Broom; but there are few or none of these Stones on the N. Side of the *Pico*, so that he concludes the Volcano discharged it self chiefly to the S. W. He adds farther, that several Metallick Mines were broke and

blown up at the same time, and that some of these calcin'd Rocks resemble Iron Ore, some Silver, and others Copper: Particularly in the S. W. Parts called the *Azuleios*, which are very high Mountains, where never was any *Englishman* but himself, that he heard of, there are vast Quantities of a loose bluish Earth, intermixed with blue Stones, which have a yellow Rust on them like that of Copper and Vitriol, and there were many Springs of Vitriolate Waters, where he supposes was a Copper Mine; and a Bell-founder of *Oratavia* told him, that out of two Horse-loads of this Earth, he got as much Gold as made two large Rings; and a *Portuguese* who had been in the *West-Indies* told him, that his Opinion was there were as good Mines of Gold and Silver as the best in the *Indies*. There are likewise hereabouts Nitrous Waters and Stones, cover'd with a deep Saffron-colour'd Rust, and tasting of Iron. He also mentions a Friend of his, who out of two Lumps of Ore brought from the Top of this Side the Mountain, made two Silver Spoons. All this he confirms from the late Instance of the *Palme* Island, where a Volcano was fired about 12 Years since, the Violence of which made so great an Earthquake in this Island, that he and others ran out of their Houses for fear they would fall. They heard the Noise of the Torrents of flaming Brimstone like Thunder, and saw the Fire very plain by Night for 6 Weeks together. In some Part of this Island there grows a crooked Shrub called *Legnan*, which they bring for *England* as a sweet Wood. There are likewise *Abricots*, *Peaches*, &c. in Standard, and *Pear-Trees* which bear twice a Year, *Almonds* of a tender Shell, *Palms*, *Plantans*, *Oranges* and *Lemons*, especially the *Pregnadas*, so called because they have small ones in their Bellies. They have also *Sugar-Canes*, a little *Cotton*, *Colloquintida*, &c. The *Roses* blow at *Christmas*. There are good large *Carnations*, but *Tulips* will not grow or thrive there. Their Rocks abound with *Samphier*, and their Meadows with a kind of *Clover*. There's another broader leav'd Grass near the Sea, which is so luscious and rank, that it kills all Horses that eat it, but no other Cattle. Some of their Wheat bears 80 Fold; but it grows not very high. Its Corn is bright like the

purest yellow Amber, and one Bushel has produced 130 in a seasonable Year. The *Canary* Birds breed in the *Barancos* or Gills, which the Water hath fretted away in the Mountains, and are very cold Places. There are also very beautiful Quails and Partridges, larger than ours, great Wood Pigeons, Turtles at Spring, Crows, and sometimes Falcons that come over from the Coast of *Barbary*. Their Bees thrive exceedingly in the Mountains, where they have wild Goats, which climb sometimes to the Top of the *Pics*, besides Hogs, and Multitudes of Conies. Among other Fish, they have the *Cherna*, a choice large Fish, better tasted than any of ours, besides the *Mero*, *Dolphin*, *Shark*, *Lobsters* without the great Claws, *Muscles*, *Periwinkles*, and the *Clacas*, which are reckoned the best Shell-Fish in the World. They breed in the Rocks, 5 or 6 under one great Shell, that has Holes at the Top, out of which they peep with their Nebs, and are taken out by breaking the Shells. There's another Fish like an Eel, with 6 or 7 Tails of a Span long, and its Head and Body is of the same Length. Besides, they have those called *Turtles* and *Cabridos*, which are better than our *Trouts*. The Island is full of Springs of pure Water that tastes like Milk; and in *Lalaguna*, where the Water is not so clear, they strain it thro' a kind of spongy Stone cut in Form of a *Bason*. Their best Vines grow within a Mile of the Sea, and will not thrive in any other Islands. He gives this Account of the *Guanchios* or ancient Inhabitants: A great Number of those who derive themselves from this People live at the Town of *Guimar*. They have such a Veneration for the dead Bodies of their Ancestors, and are so averse against molesting them, that 'tis Death for a Stranger to visit 'em in their Caves without Leave, which they seldom or never give. Their Corpses are variously sow'd up in Goat-Skins, with Thongs of the same closely fitted to their Bodies. Most of them are entire, the Eyes closed, Hair on the Head, Ears, Nose, Teeth, Lips, Beard all perfect, only discolour'd, and a little shrivell'd. He saw 3 or 400 of them in several Caves, some standing, others on Beds of Wood so harden'd by Art, (which the *Spaniards* call *Curar*, i. e. to cure a Piece of Wood) that no Iron can pierce it. He says,

says, that one Day when he was hunting Rabbits, which is the common Diversion here, a Ferret with a Bell about its Neck ran after a Coney into a Hole, where they lost the Sound of the Bell; upon which the Owner seeking after the Ferret among the Rocks and Shrubs, found the Mouth of a Cave, into which he no sooner enter'd, but he cry'd out for Fear at the Sight of one of those Bodies, lying with his Head on a great Stone, his Feet on a little Wall, and the rest of the Body upon a Bed of Wood. The Fellow was no sooner recovered of his Fright, but he cut a great Piece of Skin off of the Breast, which the Doctor says was more pliant than Kid's Leather, and so far from being rotten, that the Man used it for his Flail many Years after. These Bodies are very light, and in some broken Limbs he distinguished the Nerves and Tendons, and some Strings of the Veins and Arteries. The Doctor made it his chief Enquiry to know what Tradition they had concerning the Manner of preserving dead Bodies, and had this Account from some of them who were above 110 Years old, which, for the Information of the Curious, we have inserted as follows:

Anciently they had a particular Tribe of Men, who were their Priests, that kept this Art secret to themselves, and for this End never married out of their own Tribe; but upon the Conquest of the *Spaniards*, most of them were destroyed, and the Art lost with them, only they retained some Traditions of a few Ingredients. They took Butter of Goat's Milk, (mixed as some say with Hog's Grease) which they kept for the Purpose in the Skins, and in this they boiled a sort of wild Lavender, which grows very plentifully on the Rocks, an Herb called *Lara*, of a gummy Substance, which grows only under the Tops of the Mountains, a kind of *Cyclamen* or Sow-bread, and wild Sage, (which is very plentiful here) which, with other Herbs bruised and boiled in the Butter, made it a perfect Balsam. This done, they unbowelled the Corps. The poorer Sort, to save Charges, had only the Brain taken out behind, and were sew'd up in Skins with the Hair on, whereas the richer Sort were wrapt in Skins finely dressed, as is said before. After the Body was thus ordered, they had a *Lixi-*

vium ready made of the Bark of Pine-Trees, with which they washed the Body, drying it in the Sun in Summer, and in Stoves in the Winter, which they repeated very often. Then they spread the Balsam on both Sides, drying it again as before, which they continued till the Balsam had penetrated into the whole Habit, and the Muscles in all Parts appeared thro' the contracted Skin, so that the Body became exceeding light. Then they sew'd them up, as already mentioned. Our Doctor was told by these old People, that they have above twenty Caves of their Kings and great Persons, with their whole Families, which are unknown to any but themselves, and which they will never discover. Lastly, he says, that Bodies are found in Caves of the *Grand Canary* in Sacks, and quite consumed, not as these in *Teneriff*. Thus far of their Bodies and Embalming. We shall conclude our General Description of this Island with his Account of the People.

He says, they are poor, yet will not marry with the best *Spaniard*. Anciently, when they had no Knowledge of Iron, they made their Lances of Wood harden'd by Art, as above. He saw Earthen Pots so hard, that they cannot be broke, and that some of them are found in the Caves and old Bavances, which are used by the poor People that find them, to boil Meat in. They also harden'd Stone, viz. a kind of Slate now called *Tabona*, which they first formed to a proper Edge or Point, and then used either as Knives or Lancets. Their Food is Barley roasted, and then ground with little Mills made of Stone, and mixed with Milk and Honey, which they carry in Goat-Skins upon their Backs. They drink no Wine, nor eat much Flesh, and are generally very lean, but tall, active, and courageous. He tells us, that he saw them leap from one Rock to another from a vast Height till they came to the Bottom, and that sometimes they leap 10 Fathom deep at once after this Manner: They poise their Lance, which is about the Bigness of a Half-Pike, then aim the Point of it at any Piece of the Rock on which they intend to light, (tho sometimes not half a Foot broad) and at their going off clap their Feet close to the Lance, and so carry themselves in the Air. The Point of

the Lance first comes to the Place, which breaks the Force of their Fall; then they slide gently down by the Staff, and pitch with their Feet upon the Place at first intended, and so from Rock to Rock till they come to the Bottom. He added several Stories to this Effect, and how 28 of them escaped from the Battlements of a very high Castle in this Island, when the Governor thought them very secure; but he says, that sometimes their Novices break their Necks in learning. He told also, (and the same was seriously confirmed by a *Spaniard*, and another *Canary* Merchant then in Company) that they whistle so loud as to be heard 5 Miles off, throw Stones with as great a Force almost as that of a Bullet, and that they now use them, as they did anciently, in all their Fights.

The chief Towns here are, 1. *St. Christoval de Laguna*, *Laguna*, or *Linagona*. *Herbert* says, it stands at the Bottom of a Hill called *Garachica*, and exceeds all the Towns in the other Islands for abundance of choice Grapes, so that some say it yields 28000 Buts of Sack a Year. *Dampier* calls it the Metropolis of this Island, and says 'tis the Seat of the Governor-General of the *Canary* Islands. The Road from *Santa Cruz* to this Place is all the Way up a pretty steep Hill, yet Carts pass it up and down laden. There are some Taverns by the Way for Accommodation. The Land on each Side seems rocky and dry, but in many Places there are Spots of good Corn. At farther Distances there are small Vineyards by the Sides of the Mountains, intermixed with abundance of wast rocky Land, that bear nothing but Dildo Bushes, and are not fit for Cultivation. Here our Author met with some *English* Merchants, who treated him at Dinner, and shew'd him the Town. He tells us 'tis pretty large and compact, and yields an agreeable Prospect, but stands part against a Hill, and part in a Level. The Houses for most Part have strong Stone Walls, and are cover'd with Pantiles; and tho' they are not uniform, look pleasant enough. It has many fair Buildings, particularly two Parish Churches, with pretty high square Steeples, which over-top the other Buildings; two Nunneries, an Hospital, 4 Convents of *St. Austin*, *St. Dominick*, *St. Francis*, and *St. Diego*, besides Chapels,

and many handsome Gentlemen's Houses. The Streets are not regular, but for most part spacious, and pretty handsome, and near the Middle of the Town there's a large Parade, adorned with good Buildings. There's a strong Prison on one Side on't, and a large Conduit of good Water near it that supplies the Town from the Hills behind the Plain. They have many Gardens planted with Oranges, Limes, and other Fruits, with Pot-Herbs, Sallads, Flowers, &c. in the Middle; and our Author thinks that the Inhabitants might improve them more than they do, because the Town stands high from the Sea on the Brow of a Plain that is all open to the E. and has the constant Benefit of the true Trade Wind, which is commonly fair, and the Town is blessed with cool refreshing Breezes all the Day. There's a large Plain behind it three or four Leagues in Length, and two Miles wide, which produces a thick Sort of Grass, as green as ours at Spring. On the E. Side on't, near the Back of the Town, there's a natural Pond of fresh Water, which is half a Mile in Circumference; but being stagnant, 'tis only frequented by the Cattle. There is Plenty of several Sorts of Wild-Fowls. *Mr. Dampier* observes, that the Town is called *Laguna*, because that Word in *Spanish* signifies a Lake or Pond. The Plain is bounded on the W. N. W. and S. W. with steep Hills, as high above this Plain as the latter is above the Sea. From the Foot of one of these Mountains, the Water of the Conduit, which supplies the Town, is carried over the Plain in Stone Troughs raised on Pillars. It has a large Prospect to the E. Side as far as the *Grand Canary*. There are several Gardens, Arbors, a pleasant Plain, green Fields, Ponds, and Aqueducts. The Island is so mountainous, steep and craggy, that 'tis very troublesome travelling up and down, unless in the Cool of the Mornings and Evenings; and they use Mules and Asses for Riding and Carriage, as fittest for the stony uneven Roads. *M. Rennefort* places this Town two Leagues from the Pike, and says, there are thick Woods of very high Trees on both Sides the Spring above-mentioned. The same Author tells us, that the neighbouring Hills are cover'd with Orange, Citron, and Pomegranate Trees; and that at the Foot of the Mountain

Mountain, there's a very pleasant Wilderness, with a Spring on one Side which falls from the Descent of the Hill, and runs with an easy Channel for a League and a half thro' the adjacent Plains, from whence 'tis conveyed by an Aqueduct half a League in Length, till within 200 Paces of the City, where there are two very large Cisterns with Cocks. The *Sansons* place it 4 or 5 Leagues from the Sea, others but 3.

2. *St. Cruze, St. Croce, or St. Cruz.* *Dampier* says, 'tis a little unwall'd Town at the E. End of the Island, defended only by two Forts, where in 1657, in 6 Hours time, Admiral *Blake* burnt 16 Spanish Galleons, bound home from the *West-Indies*, tho' they were well manned, and had a Castle, and 7 Forts well provided to defend them. The Wrecks still lie in 15 Fathom Water. 'Tis one of the best Ports of the Island, especially in *January*. There's Anchorage from 30 to 50 Fathom in a black slimy Ground, not above half a Mile from the Shore; and if there are many Ships, they must ride close one by another. The Shore is generally high Land, and in most Places steep. It lies very open to the E. Winds, and when they reign, it makes the Sea swell, so that 'tis then bad Landing for Boats, and Ships are often forced to put to Sea, and sometimes to cut or slip their Anchors. The best Landing is in a small sandy Cove about a Mile to the N.E. of the Road, where there's good Water, which supplies Ships that lade here, and many times those that lade at *Oratavia* send Boats hither for it. Between this and *Santa Cruz* stand two little Forts, besides those which guard the Road, and there are some Batteries along the Coast. The Town contained in 1699 about 200 Stone Houses, strongly built, two Stories high, and covered with Pantiles. Its chief Buildings were two Convents and a Church. The *English* under Admiral *Blake* battered the Town very much, and the Captain says, the Marks of the Shot are still in the Fort-Walls, and that 'tis said most of the Plate lies in the Harbour, tho' some on't was hastily carried ashore at *Blake's* coming in Sight. The Governor lived in the main Fort close by the Sea. He gives him the Character of a civil, discreet Man, and says he keeps a Porter or Centinel, besides other Servants, and has 200 Muskets and some

Pikes hung up against the Walls, but no Wainscot, Hangings nor much Furniture, besides a few old Chairs, a Table, and two or three Forms. *Heylin* says, it stands three Leagues from the Sea. *Rennefort* says, the chief Fort has 4 Bastions, and that on the N. Side along the Coast there are three Sconces, and on the S. a Fort in Form of a Tower.

3. *Oratavia or Rotavia*, another Port on the W. Side of the Island. *Dampier* says, 'tis an ordinary Harbour, and worse incommoded by the W. Winds, than *St. Cruz* by the E. but that 'tis the chief Port for Trade, especially for Wine, and that therefore the principal Merchants reside here, with their Consul. He says, he was told that 'tis bigger than *Laguna*; that it has many Convents, tho' but one Church; and that before the N.W. Winds come on, a great Sea tumbles in on the Shore, and there's a black Sky in the N.W. upon which Ships put to Sea, and ply off and on till the Weather is over, and sometimes they must do so two or three times before they can take in their Lading, tho' the Weather be otherwise fair. The Relation published in Dr. *Sprat's* History of the Royal Society says, it lies on the N. Side of the Island, two Miles from the main Sea.

6. GRAND CANARY Islands.

'Tis agreed to be the *Canaria* of the Ancients. Mr. *Davis* of *Lime-house* places this Island Lat. 27. 40. Sir *Thomas Herbert* says, 'tis the Residence of the Grand Inquisitor and the Grand Council of Justice among the *Canaries*; that it abounds with Goats, Beeves, Asses, Hogs, Barley, Rye, Rice, Variety of Flowers, Grapes, &c. and Sugar-Houses, where they grind their Canes, and boil the Juice for Sugar. He extends it 50 Miles in Diameter, almost as broad as long, 13 Leagues from *St. Croix* in *Teneriff*, 20 from *Forteventura*, and 18 from *Lancerota*, and says, it has a large Bay at the S. End on't called *Maspomba*, which yields fresh Water. *Mandelsloe* says, 'tis the Seat of the Bishop of the *Canaries*; that the Inhabitants were reckoned about 9000 in his Time; and that besides its famous Wine, it produces Wheat, Honey, and Wax; and that they drive a great Trade in Leather with

the Spaniards, English, Dutch, and Hamburgers. He adds, that the first take in most of their fresh Provisions here for their *West-India* Voyages. Sir *William Monson* makes the Length and Breadth but 12 Leagues, and says, that besides many Villages, it has one Town bigger than the rest, which they call the City of *Palmes* or *Canary*. *La Croix* places it W. of *Lancerota* near Cape *Bojador*, but a little more to the N. He makes it 30 French or 18 German Leagues in Length. *Thevet* says, 'tis of a round Figure. *La Croix* tells us, that there are several Cloysters here, built for most part at the Charge of the *Genoese* Merchants; and that its Government and Jurisdiction extend over all Affairs Ecclesiastick and Secular. *Le Maire* makes it about 30 Leagues in Compass, and says, 'tis a very pleasant Island. The *Sansons* extend it 18 or 20 Leagues either Way, and say, 'tis not inferior to any of the Islands in Bigness, Fertility, and a good Air. They tell us, that it abounds in Potatoes, Melons, Apples, Pears, Oranges, Citrons, Pomegranates, Figs, Olives, Peaches, and especially in a Tree called *Plantano*, which thrives best near the Water, is cut, and sprouts again every Year with three or four Branches, which bear each 30 or 40 Apples like Cucumbers, and when ripe, turn blackish; but they eat more deliciously than Comfits. They abound with Fir-Trees, Dragon-Trees, Palm-Trees, and Wild-Fowl, but no Wood. *Heylin* says, 'tis reckoned the biggest of all the Islands, and 90 Miles in Compass, and that here are Plenty of Camels, of which, with their Cheese and Beasts-Skins, they make great Profit, but most of all from Dying-Woad. He adds, that they used to send 3000 Tuns of Wine every Year to *England* and the *Netherlands*. *Morery* says, here are 12 Sugar-Mills. *Luyts* makes it the most South of all the *Canary* Islands, between *Forteventura* on the E. and *Teneriff* on the W. and says, 'tis as pleasant as any of the other Islands. He places it 30 Leagues W. from Cape *Bojador*, and 100 S. from *Madera*, and extends it 11 Spanish Leagues in Length, 12 in Breadth, and 38 in Compass. *Du Plessis* says, the Harvest here is twice a Year, viz. February and May, and that 'twas discovered in 1483 by *Peter de Vera*, a Spaniard. He makes it 40 Leagues in Compass. *Dampier* says, 'tis much supe-

rior to *Teneriff* Island in Bulk and Value. *Leguat* says, the Turkish Ships generally cruise hereabout, to seize what Vessels they can that are outward-bound with Wines.

The chief Town here is *Canary* or *Palmes*. *La Croix* calls it the Capital of all the Islands, and says, 'tis the Seat of a Bishop, subject to the Metropolitan of *Sevil*, and has a Cathedral, with a Convent of St. *Francis* and others. The *Sansons* place it at the Bottom of a Bay on the E. Side of the Island, and say, 'tis a pretty Town, whose Inhabitants wear neat Apparel; and that its Streets, which are only of Sand, are always dry, tho' it rain never so much. They have good Wheat, and make very white Bread. *Le Maire* says, 'tis a League and a half from the Road, and defended by a sorry Castle. There's good Anchorage in the Road in 18 Fathom; but Ships must not come too near the Town, because there are Rocks under Water. The Castle which guards it stands on a Hill, and our Author says here are 12000 stout Inhabitants. He makes its Precincts near a League in Compass, and says, most of the Houses are well built, but no higher than two Stories, and flat Roofed, without any Ridge. He observes, that in the Day-time scarce any body is seen in the Streets, and adds, that there are 4 Religious Foundations here, one belonging to the *Dominicans*, one to the *Franciscans*, and two to the *Bernardins* and *Recollets*. *Luyts* says, 'tis a neat Town, with a convenient Harbour, and a fine Castle. *Morery* tells us, that the Inhabitants are rich. *Nickolls* an Englishman, who lived here 7 Years, says, the Air is very temperate, and that the Spaniards call it *La Ciudad di las Palmas*, or the City of Palm-Trees. Those who accompanied the Earl of *Cumberland* in his 11th Voyage to the *West-Indies* say, that 'tis a finer Country than *Teneriff*; yet the King of *Spain* is fonder of the latter, and keeps a greater Force to defend it.

7. FORTEVENTURA or FUERTAVENTURA, or the Island of Good Luck.

Herbert makes it 15 Leagues long, and 8 broad, and says, that this and *Lancerota* were taken by the English in 1596, so that both are since better fortified. Captain *Peyton* says, 'tis placed a Degree too far N. Gra-

maye and others reckon it the *Casperia* of *Ptolomy*, and the *Capraria* of *Pliny*. *La Croix* places it near *Barbary*, in Lat. 28 N. from *Lancerota*, and E. from the *Grand Canary*. He makes it but 3 Leagues broad. He adds, that it contains 3 or 4 little Towns, and a safe Harbour on the W. Side. The *Sansons* say, 'twas formerly call'd *Erbunia*, and place it but 10 or 12 Leagues from Cape *Bojadore*, 16 or 18 from *Grand Canary*, and 6 from *Lancelotta*. They extend it 25 Leagues in Length, and 15 or 16 where broadest, but say, that in the Middle 'tis not above a League or two over, where there's a Wall that divides it into two Parts. The Soil is partly mountainous, and partly champaign, abounding in Wheat and Barley. There are several Brooks of fresh Water along the Coast, and soft crooked Trees on their Banks that yield Gum, of which they make white Salt. There are Palm-Trees which bear Dates, Olive and Mastich Trees, Orichel for Dying, and a sort of Fig-Tree which yields Balm as white as Milk, that is of great Vertue for several Medicines. They make Cheese of the Milk of their Goats, of which it breeds above 50000 a Year. Besides, their Flesh is very good, and they make great Profit of their Skins and Fat, each Beast weighing 30 or 40 Pound. They add, that their Harbours are only fit for middling Vessels. *Heylin* makes it 10 Leagues broad, and places it 50 Leag. W. from Cape *d'Aguer* on the Continent, and 24 E. from *Grand Canary*, in Lat. 27. He says, it has Plenty of Oxen, but very little Wine. *Morery* places it S. of the Island *Lobos* or *Wolves*, and makes it 70 Leagues in Compass, but says 'tis not above 4 Leag. over in the Middle, and is subject to the King of Spain. *Luyts* places it but 18 Leag. from the Continent, but says 'tis 25 in Length, 8 in Breadth, and 56 in Compass, and that 'tis well cultivated. *Du Plessis* ascribes its Discovery to *John Betancourt*, a French Gentleman, in 1417.

8. LANCEROTA, LANSAROTE, LANZAROTTA, LANCELOTTA, LANCHAROTA, or LANGAROTA Island.

Mr. Davis of Limehouse places it N. Lat. 28. 40. Long. 5. 24. and says, the Compass varies

here 6 Deg. 6 Min. from N. to E. The Account of the Earl of Cumberland's Voyages to the *West Indies*, bound up with *Harris's Collection*, says, that in 1596, when the Earl came with his Fleet into the Road, which bears E. S. E. of the Island, he had Notice of a very rich Marquis here, who commanded this and the next Island of *Forteventura*: Upon which he sent 5 or 600 Soldiers ashore under Sir John Barkley, who pursued the Natives, but could not overtake them, for they ran like Bucks. When they came to their Town, which was 10 Miles from the Landing-place, they found every thing carried away except a little Cheese and some Wine, and the Governor with his Guards was fled from his Castle, tho' it was built of strong square stone, flank'd and fortified to Advantage, and defended with a great many Brass Guns, besides abundance of great Stones laid about in proper Places to knock out the Brains of the Assailants, and the Entrance was so high, that 'twas impossible for a Man to get in without a very long Ladder; so that 'twas thought 20 Men might easily have defended it against 500 only by shutting the Door, and pulling in the Ladder. *Cambden* says, the Earl was forced to give over his Design by the Sickneſs of his Men. The Account above-mentioned adds, that the Town consisted of 100 and odd Houses roughly built, and for most Part of one Story, with flat sloping Roofs to cast off the Rain. They were cover'd with Canes and Straw laid upon Rafter, and dawbed over with Mud which the Sun had harden'd. There was but one old tatter'd Church in it, with an Altar at one End, but no Chancel, Vestry, or other separate Room. There were no Seats, except Stone Benches along the Sides, nor no Windows, so that all the Light came in at the Doors. The prettiest and most convenient Structure was the Fryar's Convent, which had fine Gardens and Waters. The Inhabitants are strong and very tall. Their Arms are Lances and Stones. When a Man presents a Gun at them, they fall flat upon the Ground, and after the Discharge rise again, throw their Stones and Lances, and then run away. They are very stupid, and have little Religion. Abundance of Popish Bulls and Pardons were found in their Houses.

The Island it self, says the same Account, is somewhat oblong, and extends to the N. E. and S. W. 'Tis rather bigger than the Isle of *Wight*, and parted by a Ridge of Mountains, which afford nothing but Pasture to the Sheep and Goats; but the Valleys produce very good Wheat and Barley, tho' they seem sandy and dry. Besides Sheep and Goats, here are Asses, Kine, Camels, and a few small Horses. There's a Harvest the beginning of *April*, and another about *Michaelmas*. *Mandelsloe* says, that it was once surpris'd by the *Biscayans* and *Andalusians*, who brought away abundance of Wealth. Some take this Island for the *Plutalia* of *Ptolomy*, and the *Pluvialia* of *Pliny*; but *Bachius* and others with more Probability the Island *Fer*. *La Croix* places it N. of *Forteventura*, and W. of *Grand Canary*, in N. Lat. $29\frac{1}{2}$. and says, 'tis 12 Leagues long, and 7 broad. In this Island *Gramaye* places the Town of *Cayaz*, which was plunder'd in 1618, with the whole Island, by the Corsairs of *Algier*, when they carried off 1648 Persons into Slavery. *Herbert* says, 'tis less than *Teneriff*. The *Sansons* make it 16 or 18 Leag. in Length, and 10 or 12 in Breadth. They say, 'tis difficult of Access on the N. and W. Sides, and that the Country is plain towards the E. and has the same Properties as *Forteventura*. *Hylin* says, 'tis the first of the *Canary* Islands that was subject to the *Spaniards*; that the *Biscayners* discover'd it in 1493, pillag'd it, and carried off 170 of the chief Inhabitants Prisoners into *Spain*; upon which Discovery the Kings of *Castile* claimed a Propriety in all these Islands. Our Author places it Lat. 26. makes it 12 Leagues in Length, and adds, that Pope *Martin V.* erected an Episcopal See here, which in the Time of *Ferdinand the Catholick* was removed to the *Grand Canary*; and that it was formerly an Earldom, belonging to the Family of *Herrera*, who was also possessed of *Forteventura*. *Luyts* says, it took its Name from a *Portuguese*, and makes it the 7th and last of the chief *Canary* Islands, over against *Forteventura*. He makes it 24 Leagues in Compass, and 10 in Length, but scarce 4 in Breadth. *Du Plessis* says, 'twas discovered by *Betancourt* in the same Year as *Forteventura*. *Dampier* gives several Views of this and the Islands *Teneriff* and *Allegance*, to which we refer the Cu-

rious. *Morden* says, 'tis so difficult of Access sometimes, that 'tis called the Inaccessible or Enchanted Island.

Having thus described the chief *Canary* Islands, we proceed now to,

IV. The Islands of CAPE VERD.

'TIS generally agreed that these Islands are so called because they lie over against the Cape of that Name, and that they were first Peopled by the *Phœnicians*. *Harris* says, they were discover'd about 1440, a little before the Death of *K. Henry of Portugal*, by *Antonio de Nolle*, a *Genoese*, in his Commission. *Herbert* says, he was a *German*, and discover'd them in 1445, at the Charge of King *Alphonso V.* *De la Val* extends them from N. Lat. 14. to 20. *Sir Richard Hawkins* says, they are so hot and unhealthy, that it cost him near half his Company by Fevers, Fluxes, and other Distempers; and that sometimes it does not rain in 3 or 4 Years, when the Earth is so scorched, that a Man can scarce endure to go where the Sun shines, tho' he be never so well shod, which makes the People impatient to cool themselves at any Rate, and so lay themselves open to the N. E. Wind, that generally blows very fresh every Afternoon at 4 a Clock, by which Means they expose themselves to many dismal Disorders. To prevent this, Strangers who are most liable to these Inconveniencies cover their Heads with a Night-Cap, a Montero, and a Hat, and their Bodies with a Suit of thick Cloth, and a Gown furr'd or lined with Cotton or Bays, by which means they feel less of the Heat, and are more out of Danger of catching Cold. 'Tis also found here, that the Moon has very pernicious Effects upon such humane Bodies as are exposed to its Rays, therefore they never sleep in the open Air, or with their Windows open; and *Sir Richard Hawkins* tells us, he knew a Person who for sleeping one Night in his Cabin on the Coast of *Guinea* with the Moon shining upon him, had such a violent burning Pain in his Shoulder, that for above 20 Hours he was like a Madman, and was not freed from it at last without a great many Applications, and abundance of Pain.

He makes these Islands 6 in Number, and says, they belong to the Crown of *Portugal*; but the Anchorage is generally bad about them. They abound with Ambergreece, Civet, Elephants Teeth, Gold which they have from *Guinea*, Salt, Rice, Cotton, Wool, and Cloth, Spunges, Pumice-Stones, and Sugar. *Mandelsloe* makes them 10 in Number, and extends them from Lat. 15. to 19. He says, the *Dutch* call them the Salt Islands, because they abound with Salt. He makes the nearest 70, and the most remote 100 Leagues from the Continent, for which Reason he thinks they cannot be the *Gorgonides* of *Ptolomy*, because 'tis not probable that he who left so confused an Account of the *African* Coast should have any Knowledge of the Isles at so great a Distance. Some think they are called *Verd* or Green Islands, from a green Weed called *Sargasso*, like our Water-Cresses, which is so thick upon the Sea from Lat. 20. to 24. that Ships are sometimes stopped in their Passage without a strong Gale. He observes, that none of this Herb is seen any where else within 150 Leagues of the *African* Shore; but does not favour their Opinion who think 'tis washed from the Rocks in the *West-Indies*, and forced hither by the Winds, because the N. E. Winds reign here all the Year. He tells us, that when they were first discover'd by the *Portuguese*, they were uninhabited and desert, but that now they produce Millet, *Turkey* Wheat, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Bananas, Ananas, Ignanes, Potatoes, Melons, Citruls, Cucumbers, Pomegranates, Coco-Nuts, Figs and Raisins, twice a Year; and that they send whole Ship loads of Cattle, especially Goats, to *Brasil* from the three Islands of *Mayo*, *Sal*, and *Bonavista*. The *Portuguese* have also stored them with all Sorts of tame and wild Fowls, which are so increased, that they may be had almost for nothing. There's a sort of Bird here which the *Portuguese* call *Flamencos*, as big and white all over their Bodies as Swans; but their Wings are of a high red Colour. There are vast Numbers of Rabbits, and the Sea abounds with Fish, which great Numbers of the *Portuguese* Fisher-Boats catch, and carry hence to *Brasil*. Our Author observes, that these Islands lie extremely commodious for such Ships as trade to the *Indies*, because going they

may take in Refreshments at a very easy Rate in the Isle of *Mayo*, and in their Return at that of *St. Anthony*, the *Portuguese* Inhabitants being not in a Condition to prevent it. *Dampier* makes them as many in Number as *Mandelsloe*, and extends them from *Cape Verd* about 5 Deg. of Long. in Breadth, and from 14 to 19 of N. Lat. and says, they are inhabited by *Portuguese* Bandidi's, but that most of them seem mountainous and barren. He tells us the *Flamencos* are of the Shape of a Hern, but larger, and that they are very shy, and live in Ponds or muddy Places. When many of them stand together, (which they do one by one in a Row, except when feeding) they look at a Distance like a Brick Wall. They build their Nests with the Mud in the shallow Places of Ponds, which they raise up like Hillocks, tapering to the Top two Foot above the Water, where they have a Hole to lay their Eggs in, which when they do, or are hatching them, they stand with their long Legs in the Water close to the Hillocks, and so cover the Hollowness only with their Rumps; for if they should sit down upon them, the Weight of their Bodies would break them. They never lay more than two at a time, and seldom fewer. Their first Colour is light Grey; but as their Wing-Feathers spring out, they grow darker. The young ones cannot fly nor come to their true Colour and Shape till they are 10 or 11 Months old, but run very fast. Their Flesh is lean and black, but well enough tasted. They have large Tongues, and a Piece of Fat near the Root of them, which is counted a great Dainty. He adds, that the Natives have got the Way of adulterating Ambergreece; that they are all very poor, except those of *St. Jago*; and that he saw abundance of Flying Fish in his Passage hither from the *Canaries*. He observes, that 'tis a general Rule never to anchor to the Windward of any Island between the Tropicks. *Merolla* says, there's a Sort of Worms in these Islands that pierce into a Man's Heel, and creep under the Skin like a Horse-hair; and that the Way to extirpate them is either to scarify the Flesh, or else to seize them by one End, and draw them out by degrees. Admiral *Columbus* says, the Currents among these Islands set violently to the N. and N. W. Sir Wil.

Liam Mouſſon observes, that a constant Wind blows betwixt the N. and E. from the *Canaries* to the *West-Indies*. *Mocquet* ſays, theſe *Iſlands* are very much ſubject to Storms and high Winds, which come out at certain Hours of the Day, and drive ſometimes to Land, and ſometimes to Sea, which gives Occaſion to ſome to ſuppoſe that they are repulſed by the Sea-Winds. *Schouten* ſays, the neighbouring Sea ſwarms with Monſters, ſome called Sea Devils, an ugly Fiſh almoſt like Thornbacks, but bigger, and they ſwim very faſt. Beſides theſe, there are Sea-Dogs, Tunnies, Sea-Hogs, &c. which are of very hard Diſteſtion. The Dogs are coarſe Meat; but they taſt well with French or Rheniſh Wines, or ſuch good Sauce, and the Hogs eat well if ſeaſon'd with Pepper and Vinegar; but the Dorades, Bonites, Correttes, and Flying Fiſh, are much better Food. They catch great Quantities of the former with the Angle. The Flying Fiſh are purſued in the Sea by great Fiſh and Sea-Monſters, and in the Air by Mews, ſo that they often fly a Ship-board, where they are eaſily taken by the Mariners, who broil them upon a Gridiron. They have two Fins on their Back like Wings, with which they fly while they are wet; but as ſoon as they begin to dry, they fall down to the Water again, and wet them. *Struys* ſays, theſe *Iſlands* are very ſubject to thick Miſts of a reddiſh Colour, and a naſty Smell. He places them betwixt the Line and the Tropick of Cancer, ſo that the Sun is twice a Year over their Heads, and they have two Summers a Year. It rains almoſt continually from the End of June to the Middle of October, and 'tis accompanied with terrible Winds, Thunder and Lightning. When this Seaſon draws near, the Air grows thick and dark, the Salt in their Pits melts into Brine, the S. Winds riſe, and the Current runs faſter along the Coaſt. *Le Blanc* ſays, the *Iſlands* of Mayo, St. Vincent, St. Nicholas, St. Lucia, St. Anthony, and Bonaviſta, abound with Cattle and Veniſon, which the Inhabitants live by hunting, for they powder the Fleſh, and ſell it with the Skins to Strangers.

Some reckon that theſe *Iſlands* are the *Gorgades* of *Pliny*, which, as the Poets feign, were the ancient Reſidence of the three Siſters or *Gorgens*, the Daughters of *Phorcus*;

and others, that they were anciently called *Hesperides*, from *Ptolomy's* Cape of *Hesperia*, which is not far diſtant; yet *La Croix* thinks they were unknown to *Ptolomy*. The former places them betwixt the Capes *Blanc*, and 42 Leagues from the Continent, and extends them above 90 into the Sea. He obſerves, that Authors differ about the Number of theſe *Iſlands*, of which ſome reckon 12, others 11, and others 9; but that moſt are agreed there are 10 principal ones, viz. *Sal*, *Bonaviſta*, *Mayo*, *St. Jago*, *Fogo*, *Brava*, *St. Nicholas*, *St. Lucia*, *St. Vincent*, and *St. Anthony*, beſides other leſſer ones, whoſe Names are not known. *Jarric* ſays, they were firſt diſcover'd in 1446 by the *Portugueſe*; and *Sanutus*, by a certain *Venetian* called *Lewis*, of the Family of *Cadamosto*, who was ſent by the Infanta of Portugal to diſcover unknown Countries. *La Croix* adds, that now they are almoſt all Peopled. *Jarric* ſays, it never rains here but in *Auguſt*, *Septemb.* and *October*. *La Croix* tells us, that ſome Years the Salt in the Pits hardens in *January*, but commonly in *February* or *March*; that their Goats breed every three or four Months; and that they have Hens, Herons, Turtles, Turkeys, Partridges, and Quails. He adds, that the chief Riches of theſe *Iſlands* conſiſt in their Goat-Skins and Salt, which laſt they transport in great Quantities to Europe from *Sal*, *Bonaviſta*, *Mayo*, and *St. Jago*.

Mr. Ovington places theſe *Iſlands* 150 Leagues from the Shore of *Africa*, and ſays, that 10 of them are conſiderable, tho' not inhabited. Captain *Rogers*, who makes theſe *Iſlands* 10 in Number, as they are ſet down in *Moll's* Map, and in the Tables of *Luyts* and the *Sanſons*, ſays, that *St. Jago*, *St. Nicholas*, *St. Anthony*, *Bonaviſta*, *Brava*, *Mayo*, and *Fogo*, are inhabited. *Herbert* thinks them the *Hesperides* of the Ancients.

The *Sanſons* extend them from Long. 153. to 157. and ſay, that they compoſe a Semi-circle, of which the Convex Part faces the Continent, and the Points the Ocean. The N. W. Point is formed by the *Iſland* of *St. Anthony*. Thoſe of *St. Vincent*, *St. Nicholas*, and *St. Lucia*, follow between the E. and S. Thoſe of *Sal*, *Bonaviſta*, and *Mayo*, from the N. to the S. and are the moſt E. of all. Thoſe of *St. Jago*, *Fogo*, and *Brava*, are the moſt S. and run from E. to W. but advance

advance a little to the S. so that *St. Anthony* and *Brava* are the two Extremities of the Semicircle to the W. and *Bonavista* the Middle of it to the E. They make *St. Lucia*, *St. Nicholas*, and *St. Jago*, the biggest, *St. Anthony* and *St. Vincent* not half so big, and the others the least of all. They say, that *St. Jago* and *St. Lucia* are the most populous, and that *St. Nicholas*, *St. Vincent*, and *St. Anthony*, were reckoned desert by some formerly, because they had not near so many Inhabitants as they could maintain. When the Ships of the United Provinces came hither in 1622, they found 500 Souls in *St. Anthony*, all *Ethiopians*, as many in *St. Vincent* and *St. Nicholas*, and there are others at *Mayo*, who are strong and well shap'd; but 'tis believed there are *Portuguese* every where to keep them in Awe. Their Salt is formed in such Abundance out of the Sea-Water which is thrown upon the Islands, that they send 100 Ship-loads every Year into Foreign Parts, besides what they spend and waste; for 'tis said, the Island of *Mayo* is able to load 2000 Ships a Year with it, and each of the others almost as much. There are such Multitudes of Goats, that they go 1000 in a Flock. Their Skins are sent to *Brasil*, *Portugal*, &c. and they make good Marroquins of them. They salt the Flesh, and sell it to Ships that pass to or from the *Indies*. They have abundance of wild Horses, Oxen, Asses, and Apes. Their Turtles are two or three Foot long. They lay their Eggs in the Night, hide them in the Sand, and the Heat of the Sun hatches them. They have Wines in *Fogo* and *Brava* as good as the *Canaries*. *Linschotten* and *Davity* say, that the Sea is covered with the green Weed formerly mentioned, call'd *Sargasso*, as far as Lat. 34. and the *Sansons* say, the Sea is called by the same Name. The latter observe, that 'tis like Sea-Parsley, but yellower, and bears Grains or Berries at one End, which has no Taste nor Substance. They are above 60 Leagues from the Continent and Islands, and the *Sansons* think they are the same which hinder'd *Sataspes* from finishing his Voyage round *Africa*, after he was forced to this Enterprize by *Xerxes* for ravishing the Daughter of *Zopyrus*, the Son of *Megabydes*. They add, that the Position of these Islands answers more to *Ptolomy's Fortunate Islands* than the *Canaries*, since he

places the former between Lat. 10 and 16. whereas the *Canaries* are beyond 16. Also the Meridian of *Ptolomy's Fortunate Islands* is Long. 8 W. from the *African Shore*, the same as those of *Cape Verd*; but the same Meridian of the *Canaries* touches the *African Coast*. Besides, *Ptolomy* ranges his Islands in one and the same Meridian, and extends them from N. to S. 5 Deg. of Lat. between 10 and 16. And tho' the *Cape Verd* Islands are not exactly in the same Meridian, yet they take up the same Number of Deg. between Lat. 13 and 19. whereas the *Canaries* lie from E. to W. almost under one and the same Parallel, viz. Lat. 27. and extend from Long. 1. to 6. Yet for all these Reasons, the *Sansons* observe, that *Ptolomy's* Positions are often false, and they prove, as we formerly shew'd you, that the *Canaries* answer to his *Fortunate Islands*.

Heylin makes the chief Islands but 9, excluding *Brava*; and *Luyts* says, some reckon 20 in all; and that when they were first discovered, they abounded with Flocks of tame Doves. Some ascribe the Discovery of them to a *Venetian* in 1445, and *Nieuhoff* to the *Portuguese* in 1572. *Du Plessis* distinguishes them into 5 great ones, viz. *St. Jago*, *St. Nicholas*, *St. Lucia*, *St. Vincent*, and *St. Anthony*, and 5 lesser ones, viz. *Sal*, *Bonavista*, *Mayo*, *Fogo*, and *Brava*. *Gordon* says, some of these Islands are fruitful, the others very barren; that the Length of their Days and Nights is the same as in *Negroland*, both lying under the same Parallels of Lat. that the Inhabitants, who are *Portuguese*, resemble those on the Continent in their Way of Living; and that the Governor for the King of *Portugal* has the Title of Viceroy. *Leguat* says, that the Birds formerly mentioned, viz. *Flamengos*, are called *Flamans*, from *Flamboyns* Flaming. Most Authors describe their Beak like a *Spatula* or little Spoon; but *Mr. Willoughby* makes it sharp, and the latter thinks they were called *Flamantes*, because the Colour of some of their Feathers is like a Flame. Captain *Cook*, who in 1710 accompanied Captain *Rogers* in his Voyage to the *South Sea*, makes the chief Islands 11 in Number, by adding that called *Remes*. *Christopher Columbus* says; they are falsely named, for in his third Voyage he found them to be dry and barren. *Morden* says, that in some of them there are only Goats,

and no Inhabitants. We come now to describe the chief Islands of Cape Verd, and shall begin with the Westernmost, viz.

1. St. ANTHONY or ANTONIO Island.

Nieuhoff places it three Leagues from the Island of *St. Vincent*, over against it, and says, that at the Foot of its E. Point there's a small sandy Bay, fit only for small Vessels, and called by the Portuguese, *Et Pracaden Siniao*, where there are about 30 Huts, inhabited by Portuguese and Negroes, who live for most Part by Fruit, which tho' scarce, before 'twas transplanted hither by the Portuguese, yet abounds now in great Plenty, notwithstanding the Isle is full of high barren Rocks. Their Vines and most of their other Fruit-Trees bear twice a Year. They have abundance of all Sorts of Wild-Fowl and Goats; but the Heat is intolerable at Noon-Day. Captain *Rogers* says, there's a Governor here, who, tho' poor, reckons himself a great Man; that there's Plenty of Cattle, Hogs, Fowls, Musk, and Water-Melons, Oranges, Bananas, Potatoes, Limes, ordinary Brandy, Tobacco, Indian Corn, &c. that they exchange for Cloths or other Necessaries, which the Natives of all these Islands prefer before Money. The Inhabitants of this Island are poor, and will truck at any Price for what they want in such Payments as they can make. He adds, that there's a Deputy-Governor, and that the Landing-place is far from the inhabited Part of the Island.

La Croix says, 'tis the most N. of all the Islands, in N. Lat. 17. two Leagues or two and a half from the Isle of *St. Vincent*, with a Canal between both, which runs from S. W. to N. W. He extends the Island from N. E. to S. W. and says, it has two high Mountains, one as high as the Pike of *Teneriff*, and generally cover'd with the Clouds, especially its Top. He makes the Inhabitants about 500, and says, there's a Village at the N. End with about 20 little Houses, and 50 Families of Negroes and Whites, who have a Captain, a Priest, and a Schoolmaster. They all speak Portuguese. There's a Road near a Plain on the N. Side, in Lat. 16. 56. where there's a vast Heap of Waters when it rains, because of the

neighbouring high Mountains; but in dry Weather there's not a Drop to be seen there. There's abundance of Wood, Palm-Trees, Pomegranates, Sugar-Canes, and Baccoves, and there's an Orchard, of which only one Tree, that is a very high Palm, is seen at Sea. Mariners commonly come hither from *St. Vincent's* Bay with a Boat for Fruit, which they buy for Knives and such Trifles. There are three little Houses over against the Palm-Tree. There's another Orchard farther in the Island, from whence the Negroes bring their Fruit upon Asses to the Sea-Side to sell it to the Mariners. About the End of *December* they have great ripe Citrons and Limons. The *Sansons* say, this Island is less by above one half than the biggest, and that 'tis not above 100 Miles in Compass.

2. St. VINCENT.

Beaulieu says, the common Anchorage of this Island lies in Lat. 17. 20. the Needle varying 2 Deg. $\frac{1}{4}$. N. E. About the Middle of *August* it affords great Plenty of excellent Tortoises, called Free Tortoises, and distinguished from the others called *Cahouanes* by the Smoothness and Greenness of the Shell, the Largeness of their Body, the Smallness of their Head, and the Form of their Snout, which is like the Teeth of a Saw. They eat as well as a young Heifer, and some of them are 3 Hundred Weight. They lay their Eggs in the Night upon the Sand in *June* and *July*, and bury them a Foot deep. Those who hunt them take this Opportunity to slip behind, and turn them over upon their Backs; after which they cannot get again upon their Feet, but lie there till the Morning. Most of them have 250 Eggs shell'd, and as many unshell'd in their Bellies, which are very good.

There's abundance of young Kids; but Admiral *Beaulieu* saw no Fruit here except wild Figs, which were all spoiled with Worms. Under a high Mountain to the E. there are vast Quantities of Purslain. There's a great Number of wild Pines, but no other Wood besides some Shrubs, that have a milky Juice, which is very dangerous and painful to the Eyes if it touches them. There's very good Fishing along the Rocks, especially at a little Rock at the Entry of a Bay.

Bay, about a quarter of a League from the Anchorage, where 7 or 8 Men may catch Fish enough in two Hours time to serve 200. In short, our Author says 'tis as good a Place for Refreshment as *St. Hellens*, only the Water is brackish; but then 'tis more accessible all over, and furnished with pleasant Walks. He makes it about 9 Miles in Circumference, and says, it has always the Wind at N. E. and several pleasant Bays, especially that called *St. Vincent's*, towards the Isle of *St. Anthony*, which is the best Road that can be for Ships, there being 5 Fathom Water, on an excellent sandy Ground, shelter'd from all Winds. He adds, that they travell'd over most of the Island, but saw neither Men nor Houses. In 1601, or as *Nieuhoff* says in 1596, Captain *William Parker* of *Plimouth*, with two small Ships and 180 Men, took this Island, burnt the Town of the same Name, and gave the Spoil to the Soldiers. The latter adds, that it abounds with Oranges, Limons, Bakoras, and Pompions, which the Inhabitants exchange for Toys; but that otherwise 'tis rocky and barren, and affords nothing but Grass for the wild Goats. He makes it about 5 Leagues in Compass, and says, 'tis under the Command of a Portuguese Governor; and that the Inhabitants are Negroes, transplanted hither from several Parts to catch wild Goats, whose Skins they send to *Portugal*, and the Flesh which they can't spend they throw away. They have no Women, and lead wretched Lives. They have no fresh Water but what they gather in Bags of Goat-Skins at the Foot of the highest Rock, which being always cover'd with Clouds on the Top, sends a considerable Quantity of Rain-Water down to the Bottom by small natural Channels. The Governor's Residence is on one Side of the great Rock, not far from the Shore, and 3 Leagues from the Harbour. His Officers live in Huts cover'd with Tortoise-shells among Trees. Our Author went to the Top of the highest Rock, where he had a full Prospect of the Island. The Inhabitants have a ridiculous Story of a King's Daughter turned into a Serpent here.

La Croix places it about 30 Leagues W. from *Sal*, and two from *Lucia*, makes it 5 Leagues in Length, and extends it to the W. and S. W. He says, *St. Vincent's Bay*

on the N. W. is a League and a half broad at the Entrance, and encompassed with high Mountains, but runs half-way into the Island. There's a great round Rock near the E. Point, and 'tis the safest Road in all the Islands, being secured from the W. and N. W. Winds by the Mountains of *St. Anthony's Isle*, and yet the Access to it is dangerous, because of the violent Winds which come down from the Side of the Mountains. There's a high Tide here every Morning and Night, which runs N. There are several other little Bays on the S. Side of the Island, where the Portuguese come to load their Barks with Skins, and there's a small Spring in a Valley upon the S. W. Point of the Bay, where the Anchorage is, which if cleansed and deepen'd, would afford Plenty of fresh Water. The S. E. Side of the Island is a sandy Shore over against the sandy Bay of *St. Lucia*. The driest Part of all the Island is about that called the Monks Rock, where there's no Herb, Leaf, nor any thing but a little sorry Wood for Firing, and there's no Fruit or other Refreshment, but an incredible Number of Apples of *Coloquintida*. Their Tortoises are so large, that Mariners are forced to tie them to the Ship by a great Cord. Their Goats lie chiefly about the Rocks, where the Natives hunt them with Dogs. 'Tis said, that in 1613, when a Dutch Vessel suffered Shipwreck near this Island, the Mariners found but 19 Souls in it, viz. 8 Men, 7 Women, and 4 Girls. *La Croix* adds, that the Dutch East-India Ships commonly anchor here, and that formerly the East and West-India Fleets used to meet here.

The *Sanfons* make it almost of equal Extent with the Island of *St. Anthony*. *Du Plessis* makes it one of the five largest Islands. Captain *Rogers* says, that Monks Rock is high and round like a Sugar-Loaf, and lies almost in the Entrance of *St. Vincent's Bay*. He cautions Mariners from running too near under the high Land of the N. Point, for fear of being becalmed and surpris'd by sudden Flaws on every Side, and to avoid a small Shoal about three Ships Length almost without the Point. There's good Landing at this Bay, especially at the N. Point. The Wood lies in the Middle of the sandy Bay, and the Water between the N. Point and the Place of Anchorage, half a Mile from

the latter; but he says, there's good Anchoring all over the Bay, and that the Monks Rock will direct any Stranger into it, there being no other like it about the Island on the Side opposite to that of *St. Anthony*. A constant Trade-Wind blows here betwixt the E. by N. and the N. N. E. except in *October, November, December, and January*; but it sometimes blows S. with Tornadoes and Rain. Several Negroes come hither from the Islands of *St. Nicholas* and *St. Anthony* to make Oil of Turtle, there being very good green Turtle about *October*. They have wild Asses, Guinea Hens, Curlews, and abundance of Sea-Fowls. Captain *Dampier* and others say, that tho' this Island is not often frequented by Ships, yet 'tis preferable to *St. Jago* for stopping outward, because 'tis a much better Road for Ships and Landing, and more convenient for Wood and Water; but the Island is mountainous and barren, and the plainest Part lies against the Bay of its own Name. They have very large Spiders here, as big as small Walnuts, which weave their Webs so strong betwixt the Trees, that 'tis difficult to get thro' them. He adds, that tho' this Island was formerly inhabited, and had a Governor, yet at present 'tis only frequented in the Season (by the Inhabitants of the other Islands, who are for most Part poor Negroes and *Mulatto's*) for catching Tortoises; that the wild Goats are almost all destroyed by the People of *St. Nicholas* and *St. Anthony*; and that the Heats here are excessive. Captain *Cook*, one of our Author's Companions, places this Island in Lat. 16. 55. and Long. 25. 36. from the Meridian of *London*.

3. *St. LUCIA, LUCE, or LUZIA Island.*

La Croix says, 'tis high and mountainous. He makes it 8 or 9 Leagues in Length, and says, it runs from the S. End, which is in Lat. 16. 18. towards the N. E. and by E. There are two little Islands at the S. E. End very near one another, and at that End which is on the E. S. E. there's a Harbour. It has a fine sandy Shore, and contains a little Island, encompassed on all Sides with a sound clean Bottom. It has a safe Road over against *St. Vincent's Isle*, at the S. W. End, in 20 Fathom Water. He adds, that

it abounds with Forrests and fresh Water, which they find at the Foot of a Hill pretty far in the Island; that 'tis not inhabited on the W. Side, where there's no fresh Water, but a great many Field Mice and Tortoises, especially in *October*. The *Sansons* reckon this one of the largest of *Cape Verd* Islands, but *Moll* makes it the least, and they say 'tis the most populous, next to that of *St. Jago*. *Heylin* calls it *St. Lucie's Island*. *Du Fer* says, that this and the Islands of *St. Nicholas* and *St. Jago* are each 100 or 120 Miles long, and 20 or 30 broad.

4. *St. NICHOLAS Island.*

Dampier places it 22 Leagues W. S. W. from *Sal*, and 40 W. by N. from *Mayo*. He says 'tis triangular, the longest Side to the E. being 30 Leagues long, and the other two 20 Leagues each. 'Tis rocky and barren near the Shore, but has some Valleys farther in the Country, where the *Portuguese* have Vineyards and Plantations, and Wood for Fuel. There's Grass too for Goats, which, tho' poor, are better than those of *Sal*. They make a palish Wine here, which tastes like that of *Madera*, but is muddy. The Governor and chief Gentlemen are pretty well cloathed; and carry Swords and Pistols; but the rest are ragged. The chief Village contains about 100 Families, and lies in a Valley 14 Miles from a Bay on the S. E. Side. The Inhabitants are of a dark swarthy Complexion. There's no fresh Water here but what they dig for. *Luyts* makes this the biggest, and Captain *Rogers* the most populous Island next to *Jago*. *La Croix* places it but 17 Leagues from *Sal*, in Lat. 16. 20. and differs very much from *Dampier*, for he makes it but 5 or 6 Leagues long, and 3 broad, at the W. End, and not above a League and a half at the E. He says, there's a Rock or little Island against the most S. Point of the E. End, which Ships may glance upon without Danger. The Road lies about a League from the most E. Point of the W. Side, and there's a fine Bay on the S. Side, on a very commodious Bottom, where Ships come close to the Shore. The Harbour, according to *M. Figueroa*, is on the S. Side, and the *Portuguese* call it *Porto de Perguira*. There's a little Island at its Entrance, and beyond a Point

to the N. W. there's another Harbour, where there's always good fresh Water. There are several Hills on the N. Side of the Island, but the highest is exactly in the Middle, and the S. E. End is lower than the W. He adds, that there are but few Trees on the Island, but that it abounds with wild Cats and Gold-Fish, and that there's a Pond of fresh Water over against the Shore, which in rainy Weather overflows into the Sea.

5. S A L, or the Island of S A L T.

Mr. Davis of Limehouse places it in Lat. $10\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 12. 12. and 3 Deg. $\frac{1}{2}$ Variation from N. to E. He observes, that when one is in the Mid-way between Cape Verd it self and these Islands, there's 2 Deg. 15 Min. Variation to the E. and that the nearer one comes to the main Land, there's the less Variation. Dampier makes it one of the most Eastern Islands, in Lat. 16. Long. 19. 33. from the Lizard in England, 8 or 9 Leag. from N. to S. and about two Leagues wide. It has its Name from the abundance of Salt that is naturally congealed there, the whole Island being full of large Salt Ponds, but no Trees or Grass, except some Shrubs near the Shore, upon which a few poor Goats feed. There are some Wild-Fowl, especially Flamingo's. There was not above 5 or 6 Men on the Island, and a poor Governor, who exchanged 20 Bushels of Salt and 3 or 4 poor Goats for some old Clothes and Powder and Shot, for he was very ragged, and said there had not been a Ship there in 3 Years before. La Croix says, it appears at a Distance like a little Hill to those that sail to it from the Canaries; and that when one comes very near it, it looks like two; but the other Parts are low, and the S. E. Side is very barren. There's a little River at the N. End, and a little Harbour at the S. E. and just beyond it there's another small Island, with a Sand-Bank in a sort of Bay. A Musket-shot S. from the W. End there's a very safe Road for Ships, into which a little Brook of fresh Water runs from the Mountains thro' a deep sandy Valley. The Heart of the Island is very stony and barren. At the S. E. Point of the Island, near a Hill of white Sand, there are 72 great and small Salt-Pits. There's

Plenty of Turtles and Fish about the Rocks, whose Bodies are cover'd with large pointed Fins of a Finger's Length, which the Slaves of the Island boil in Whale-Oil. They kill a great Number of Goats every Year for their Skins, and there are some Horses and Asses. Luyts says, it abounds with wild Horses. Baudrand says, this Island belongs to the Portuguese; that 'tis but thinly inhabited, and lies 40 Miles E. of St. Nicholas, and 70 N. of St. Jago. Du Pleffis makes it about 20 Leagues in Compass, and the biggest of the 5 lesser Islands of Cape Verd. Leguat and his Company anchor'd in a Creek to the Southward of the Island, in 8 Fathom Water. He says, they brought a Swallow hither from the Canaries, which was let fly every Morning, and return'd at Night to the Vessel; and that they caught several Birds here, particularly those called Long-Tails, Fools, and Frigats. They lie in wait upon Trees for Turtles, of which they destroy so many while young, that scarce 10 in a Hundred can be saved. They live only on Fish, and build their Nests on Trees. They have a rank Taste, but their Eggs are very good. The Fools come every Night to roost in this Island, and the Frigats, which are larger, and so called because they are light and admirable Sailers, lie in wait for them upon the Trees, from whence they flounce down upon them like Falcons, not to kill them, but to make them bring up the Fish that is in their Crow, which the Fool immediately does as soon as he is thus seized. The Frigate always catches it before it comes to the Ground. This Bird is blackish, and as big as a Duck. It has large Wings, Talons, and a Beak above half a Foot long, a little crooked at the End. The old ones of the Males have a sort of red Flesh under its Neck like a Cock's Comb. The Fools are so called, because they perch inconsiderably about the Ropes of the Ships, and easily suffer themselves to be taken. Their Backs are of a Chesnut Colour, their Bellies whitish, their Beaks sharp, 4 Inches long, and big towards the Head, a little indented at the Edges. Their Legs are short, and their Feet of a pale Yellow like those of a Duck. Leguat and his Company could find no Water here but what was blackish. The Heat of the Sun is very vehement, and the more

troublesome because there's no Shade. They saw a handsome wild Horse here of a reddish bay Colour, with a long Mane and Tail, and a noble Chest; and a sort of Cat which one of them took for a Fox. For want of Wood, they roasted their Goats-Flesh with a Fire made of Asses and Horse Dung. They found some Cow-Dung here, but could see no Cows. He says, the Island is not 8 Leagues round, and that the Salt is very good in its kind, and lies in Crevices of the Rocks on the S. Coast of the Island. He adds, that all the Birds they met with on Shore were Sparrows like ours, but not half so big, and that there's abundance of fine Shells of various Colours over all the Coast.

6. *BOA-VISTA, BUENAVISTA, BONA-VISTA*, or the Island of Good Sight.

It lies N. from *Mayo* and *St. Jago*, and S. from *Sal*. Admiral *Middleton* says, that this and *Mayo* Isle bear S. W. by S. at 12 Leagues Distance. *Luyts* says, the Discoverers gave it that Name, because they were overjoy'd with their Success; but *La Croix* ascribes it to the agreeable Prospect it gives to the Mariners when they see it at a Distance; and Admiral *Columbus* says, 'tis a wretched dull Place. The former places the N. End 8 Leagues from the Island of *Sal*, and the S. End but 7. He observes, 'tis easy to distinguish it a great Distance at Sea from *Sal* by several white Rocks which lie along the N. Coast, whereas the Island of *Sal* has none on that Side. He says, 'tis also higher than that of *Sal*, and 20 Leagues in Compass. The E. Side runs for most Part from N. W. to S. E. and is full of Downs; but farther within the Island there are Hills. There's a long Chain of Shelves and Rocks from the N. End towards the N. E. and the N. E. and by E. which run for half a League, or as some say a whole League, into the Sea, and have occasion'd divers Shipwrecks. There's another Shelve which may be discover'd by the Stones above the Water, and runs from the S. Point of the Island towards the E. and the E. by N. E. a League and a half beyond that Point. The best Road and Harbour of all the Island has 15 or 16 Fathom Water on a

sandy Bottom, and lies under the S. E. Point, where the Coast runs from E. N. E. to W. S. W. The *Sansons* say, it abounds with Salt as well as *Sal*, *Mayo*, and *St. Jago*. Admiral *Columbus* anchor'd in a Chanel near a small Island on the W. Side on't, where the Inhabitants had 6 or 7 Houses for Lepers, who he was told were cured here partly by the Goodness of the Air, and by eating Tortoises, and anointing with their Blood; but that those who are born so, are longer a curing. He says, this Island is very barren, but abounds with Goats and Tortoises, which, because the Shores are all sandy, come hither in June, July, and August, to sleep and lay their Eggs. The People pursue them in the Night along the Shore with Lanterns, and find them by their Track, for their coming so far tires them, so that they sleep, and are daily surpris'd and turned upon their Backs, as formerly mentioned; after which they let them lie till the Morning, (for they cannot recover their Feet) and then go and chuse the biggest, and let the least go. They have no Springs, but Wells of thick brackish Water. The Owner and four more, who had Charge of the Island for the Portuguese, had no Employment but to kill and salt Goats to send into *Portugal*, of which 'twas said there were then such Multitudes on the Mountains, that some Years they killed as many as amounted to 3 or 4000 Ducats, and that they all came from 8 Goats carried thither by *Roderick Alfonso*, the Proprietor of the Island, and Secretary of the King of *Portugal's* Customs. He adds, that the Hunters are often 4 or 5 Months without any Provision, except Goats-Flesh and Fish. *M. Rennefort* says, 'tis a very long Island, and that when he was here, the low Lands were only inhabited by some Portuguese Shepherds that kept Goats. *Leguat* says, 'tis as dry and barren as *Sal* Island, and more mountainous.

7. *MAGO, MAI*, or *St. MAGO* Island.

'Tis reported in Sir *Francis Drake's* Discoveries, that good Store of dry'd Goats us'd to be made ready here every Year for such of the Portuguese Ships as called there, and that there are Mountains on it three Days Journey in Length. Part of it is well cultivated,

civated and fruitful, and lovely Grapes are in their Prime here about *January*. It lies in the Torrid Zone, and has the Sun twice a Year in its Zenith, so that they have two Summers in a Twelvemonth. It abounds with Coco-Trees, wild Hens, and Salt, which the Sea throws up in great Quantities upon the Land, and the Heat of the Sun condenses; after which the People gather it in Heaps, and sell it to their Neighbours. Admiral *Middleton* says, that the N. and N. N. W. Part of *Mayo* is all very bad and foul Ground, and that 'tis dangerous riding there for Ships. He adds, that full North from the high Hammocks, there's a great Ledge of Rocks from the Land 5 or 6 Miles off, and 20 Fathom Water a Mile without them. Sir *John Narborough* says, it appears high and craggy to the E. Part, but low to the N. W. and that 'tis 18 Leagues S. by W. from *Bonavista*. The Road of Anchorage is a Mile from the Shore, in 7 Fathom Water, sandy Ground, the N. Point of the Road bearing N. N. W. half a Point to the W. and the S. Point of the Road a Mile and a half S. E. He says, there are craggy Rocks near the Shore to the S. of the Road, but that 'tis low and sandy to the N. that the Road lies in the N. W. by W. Part of the Isle, in a sandy Bay, a Bow-shot from the Shore, and that there's a Salt Pond in the flat Grounds, where he saw 20 Tuns of Salt. He adds, that he caught here abundance of Mulletts, with some Cavalle, Silver Fish, &c. which they split, pickled and dry'd; and that they bought several Goats of the Inhabitants at half a Piece of Eight *per* Head, and Cows at 6 Pieces of Eight each. They hunt the Goats with Dogs. He places the Road 9 Leagues N. E. from Port *Praya* in *St. Jago*. *Dampier* places it 40 Miles E. by S. from *St. Nicholas*, and 4 or 5 Leagues E. of *St. Jago*. He says, the Island is better stocked with Beeves and Goats than the rest, and that the Natives would not suffer the *English* of his Company to land, because not long before, one Captain *Bond* of *Bristol* carried the Governor and chief Inhabitants aboard, and made them send ashore for Cattle to ransom their Liberties, yet after that failed away with them. This Island is but small, and the Coast full of Shoals; yet our Author says, it has a great Trade in Salt

and Cattle. The Tortoises lay their Eggs here in the wet Season in *May, June, July,* and *August*. The Natives plant Corn, Yames, Potatoes, and some Plantanes, and breed a few Fowls, but are very poor, tho' they live better than any others of *Cape Verd* Islands, except *St. Jago*. *Dampier* says, the Road lies in the Leeward Part of the Island, in 14 Fathom clean sand, and smooth Water. He places the Island in N. Lat. 15. makes it roundish, and 7 Leagues in Compass. He says, that those who come here to lade Salt, take it up as it kerns, and lay it in Heaps. The Inhabitants are Negroes, descended from the *Africans*, whom they resemble. As they are Subjects to *Portugal*, they follow their Religion and Language; but they have Priests and a Governor of their own Nation. Their Fruits are only sorry Figs and Water-Melons; and their best Land Animals, Asses, Goats, and wild Horses. Among other Fish, here are Dolphins, Bonettas, Snappers, Salmon, Trout, and Garfish. It has many small rocky Points shooting out a Mile or more into the Sea, and 'tis said there are dangerous Shoals on the N. and N. W. Side that lie farther off at Sea. There are two Hills of a considerable Height on the Island, one pretty bluff, the other peaked at Top. The rest of the Island is pretty level, and a good Height from the Sea. The Shore clear round has sandy Bays between the above-mentioned rocky Points. The Salt Pond lies in a large sandy Bay and Sand-Bank 40 Paces wide, and two or three Miles along the Shore. 'Tis two Miles long, and half a Mile wide; but above half on't is commonly dry, except the N. End of it, which is deepest, and never wants Water, but produces Salt all the dry Season from *November* to *May*. In the Spring Tides, the Salt Water works in there from out of the Sea thro' a Hole in the Sand-Bank like a Sluice, and fills the Pond more or less, according to the Height of the Tides. If there is any Salt in the Pond when the Water flushes in, it presently dissolves; but then in two or three Days after, it begins to kern, till all or most Part is congeal'd, or till a fresh Supply comes in again from the Sea. *Dampier* says, he was told the Water never works in but at the New Moon Spring-Tides, and 'tis observed that the

Salt kerns only in the dry Season, contrary to the Salt Ponds in the *West Indies*, the Reason of which he leaves to the Judgment of Philosophers. The *English* he says have commonly a Man of War here to guard their Vessels that come hither to take in Salt for *Newfoundland*, of which he was told that in some Years there have been no less than 100, and it costs them nothing but the Labour to rake it together, and wheel it out of the Pond, except the Carriage thence to the Fraye-Boat, (so called by the Seamen because 'tis girded with Ropes) whereby 'tis conveyed aboard, which is very cheap, and performed by Mules, which the Inhabitants lade and drive themselves, for they have scarce any other Employment to live by. The Pond is not above half a Mile from the Landing-place, so that the Asses make a great many Journies in a Day, and they have a set Number of Turns for both Forenoon and Afternoon, which the Owners will not exceed. The Boat which lies to rake in the Salt is made for the Purpose, with a Deck reaching a third Part of the Boat from the Stern, and a Bulk head that rises two Foot above the Edge of the Deck, all very well calked. The Use of it is to keep the Waves from dashing into the Boat, when it lies with its Head to the Shore to rake in the Salt, because otherwise the great Sea which commonly runs here would break in over the Stern, and soon fill the Boat. To keep the Boat thus with the Head to the Shore, and the Stern to the Sea, there are two strong Stantions set up, one at the Head, and the other in the Middle of the Boat against the Bulk-head, and a Foot higher, and there's a Notch cut in the Top of each big enough for a small Rope to lie in, one End of which is fastened to a Post ashore, and the other to a Grappling or Anchor off at Sea, to hale the Boat in and out, while the Stantions keep her fast, so that she cannot swing to either Side when the Rope is hal'd tight, otherwise the Sea would fill or toss her ashore: But to prevent this, there are two Sets of Rope more, the first of which going athwart from Gunnal to Gunnal, binds the Sides of the Boat so hard against the Ends of the Rowers Benches when they are laid, that the Boats Sides can't fall asunder, nor the Benches be crush'd inwards. There are commonly but two of

these Ropes dividing the Boat's Length as they go across the Sides into three equal Parts. The other Set of Ropes are more in Number, and so placed as to keep the Ribs and Planks from starting off; for which Purpose there are Holes made thro' the Edge of the Keel that runs along the Inside of the Boat, thro' which these Ropes pass along the Ribs, and are fasten'd to them by Rattans or small Cords twisted close about both Ropes and Ribs up to the Gunnal, by which Means, tho' several of the Nails or Pegs of the Boat should be shaken out, yet the Ropes of both Sets would hold her together, especially with the Help of a Rope quite about the Gunnal on the Outside. Two Men suffice to hale the Boat in or out, and to take in the Salt and put it out again. As soon as the Boat is brought near enough to the Shore, one stands by the Bulk-head, who takes a sudden Turn with the Hazer round the Bulk head Stantion, which stops her fast before the Sea can turn her aside; and when they have got in their Lading, they hale off to Sea till they come a little without the Swell, where they remove it into another Boat that carries it aboard the Ship. *Dampier* observes, that without such a Fraye-Boat, there would be bad Landing here at any time, because of the great Sea which falls on the Shore, tho' 'tis commonly very smooth in the Road, so that he advises every Ship that comes here to bring, make or borrow, such Boat of some other Ships here, because the Inhabitants have none. We have been so particular in the Description of these Fraye-Boats for *Dampier's* own Reason, viz. because 'tis of the same Use in any Places where a great Sea falls in upon the Shore, as it does especially in many open Roads in the *East* and *West-Indies*. We come now to its Natural History.

He tells us, that on the sandy Bank that pens in the Salt Pond, grows a Sort of Silk Cotton, and a Plant that runs along the Ground, with thick broad Leaves branching out like a Vine. The Silk-Cotton grows on tender Shrubs 3 or 4 Foot high, in longish Cods as big as an Apple, which when ripe open at one End, when the Cotton breaks forth, and parts by degrees into 4 Quarters; but the Cotton is only fit for stuffing Pillows, or the like. *Dampier* says, he laid some of the Cods in a Chest before they

they were quite ripe, and that in two or three Days they threw out the Cotton; that he bound others so fast, that the Cod could not open; but a few Days after, when he slacken'd the Strings, it burst, and the Cotton flew out like the Pulp out of a roasting Apple, till all was exhausted. He says, the right Cotton Shrub grows here also, but not on the Sand Bank. There are some Bushes of it near the Shore, but the most on't, which is but little, is planted in the Middle of the Isle, where the Inhabitants live chiefly by making Cotton-Cloth. There are also other Trees within the Island, but none on the Shore, except a few scattering Bushes against the Sides of the Hills. The Soil is generally sandy and barren, without any fresh Water, except Showers in the wet Season, which run off as fast as they fall, and a small Spring in the Middle of the Island running thro' a Valley, where the Inhabitants have three small Towns, with each a Church and Padre, and 6 or 7 Miles from the Road. *Pinoſe* is said to be the chief, and to have two Churches, *St. John's* the next, and *Lagoa* the third. The Houses are very little and mean, and built with Fig-Tree, for they say here are no others fit for Building. The Rafter is a sort of wild Cane. Among other Fruits, they have Callavances (a sort of Pulse like *French Beans*) and Pumpkins for ordinary Food. Their Fowls are Flamingo's, great Curlews, and abundance of *Guinea Hens*, which the Natives call *Gall na Pintada*, or the painted Hens. They seem to be much of the Nature of Partridges. They are bigger than our Hens, have longer Legs, and run faster. They can fly too, but not far, because they have heavy Bodies, but short Wings and Tails. They have thick, strong, sharp Bills, and long Claws. They feed either on Worms which they scrape out of the Ground, or on Grasshoppers. Their Feathers are so prettily speckled with dark and light grey Spots, that they look more beautiful than Birds of finer Feathers. Their Necks are small and long, and their Heads but little. The Cocks have a small Rising on their Crowns like a Comb, which is very hard, and of the Colour of a dry Walnut-Shell. They have a small red Gill on each Side of their Heads strutting down like Ears; but the Hens have none.

They are very hardy, and so strong, that one can't hold them. They are good tender Meat, and in some the Flesh is extraordinary white, but in others black, yet both are sweet Food. The Natives run them down with Dogs, and sometimes there are 2 or 300 of these Fowls in a Company. Our Author says, some of them thrive well aboard for 16 or 18 Months, but then began to pine; and that when they are taken young, they'll grow tame. Their other Fowls are Pigeons and Turtle-Doves, *Miniota's*, a sort of Land Fowls as big as Crows, of a grey Colour, and good Food; *Crusia's*, another sort of grey-colour'd Fowl almost as big as a Crow, which are only seen in the Night, and said to be good for consumptive People, for none else eat them; and *Rabeks*, a large grey sort of eatable Fowls, with long Legs and Necks like Herons, besides many small Birds. They had abundance of Bulls and Cows; but *Dampier* says, the Pyrates have carried off most of them, as well as many of the Inhabitants; and not long before he was there they took away the Governor, and carried him about a Year or two, and then restor'd him. There are large Mulletts here a Foot and a half or two Foot long, besides Porpoises and little Whales, that commonly visit the Road every Day. The People of both Sexes are of a yellowish Complexion, but lusty, well set, and fleshy, and their Children round and plump, notwithstanding the Barrenness of the Island. Our Author was told there were about 230 Souls on it when he was here, and there was a Negro Governor, who had his Patent from the *Portuguese* Governor of *St. Jago*. He praises him for his Sense and Civility, and says his Subjects are generally a good sort of People. He expects a small Present from every Commander that lades Salt here, and is fond of going aboard their Ships. In the Salting Season, which is his Harvest, he spends most of his Time with the *English*, on whom the Islanders place their chief Dependence for Trade, for they have no Vessels of their own, and scarce any come hither but the *English*, who give them Victuals, some Money, or old Clothes, for their Salt, yet some of them go almost naked. They hunt Turtles by Night, as well as those of the other Islands, and have small Huts about the sandy Bays

for Shelter from Rain and for Sleep; but when the Turtle Season is over, they have little else to do besides hunting Guinea Hens, and managing their small Plantations. When any of them are desirous to go over to *St. Jago*, they get a Licence from the Governor, and desire Passage in some *English* Ship that is going thither, as they are generally obliged to do for fresh Water, for there's none here fit for drinking. He adds, that several of our Ships come hither to lade Apples for *Barbadoes*, and our other Plantations. *Dampier* gives the View of this Island at several Bearings, for which we refer to his Book. Captain *Rogers* says, the People have Salt enough to load several Thousand Ships in a Year if they had Vent for it, and that they make fine Marroquin Leather of their Goats-Skins. *Struys* places it but 8 or 9 Leagues from *Bonavista*, and makes it the least of all the *Cape Verd* Islands. He says, that on the N. Side on't there's a Plain above a League in Breadth, and a great Sand-Bank which runs very far into the Sea, besides another a League farther W. At the Foot of a small Point of Land, a little N. from the S. W. Road, there's a Village of 10 or 12 Houses, where Foreigners may have some small Refreshment. All the Verdure of the Country consists in some Herbs that grow between the Rocks. Their Figs are very ill tasted. There are wild Horses, Partridges, Geese, and other Fowls, which are unknown to Europeans. Great Part of the People's Employment is Hunting and Fishing. He adds, that in many Pits there's reddish Salt, which is form'd partly by the Water of the Sea, and partly by some subterranean Springs. When the Pits are full, they stop up the Holes.

La Croix says, its W. Coast runs from N. to S. and that which faces the S. W. from N. W. and by N. to S. W. and by S. There is good Angling below the Island in 25 Fathom Water upon the Brink of the Shore when the Tide rises; but there's none in 15 Fathom. The Pond he says is about the Height of a Man, Waste deep, and receives a Brook of fresh Water, which runs down three Leagues above from the high Grounds. The Water is clear, but not very wholesome, because 'tis brackish, especially when 'tis a very dry Season, and the

Water of the Pond is sunk, at which Time there's good Fishing for Breams. There are so many Goats, that they export above 5000 Skins every Year. Their Partridges are as big as Pheasants, with white and black Spots. The Island is inhabited by Whites and Negroes, which are commonly sent hither every November from *St. Jago*. He tells us, that in 1505 here were 225 Souls, but in 1628 no more than 50, without any Women. They have their Meal and Wearing Stuffs from *St. Jago*, and give the Inhabitants of that Island Notice how many Ships they have in the Road by lighting Fires.

8. *St. JAGO* or *St. JAMES's* Island.

Sir *Francis Drake* reports, that 'tis a fair large Island, inhabited by Portuguese, and that there are Mountains in it possessed by the Moors, who have fortified themselves ever since they fled hither from Slavery. Sir *Richard Hawkins* says, 'twas plunder'd twice by the English, viz. under Sir *Francis Drake* in 1585 with less than 1000 Men, and under Sir *Anthony Shirley* in 1596, and once by the French in 1582. *Mandelsloe* says, 'tis the chief of all the *Cape Verd* Islands, and that it has a Town of its own Name, which is the ordinary Residence of the Governor and Archbishop, whose Jurisdiction extends not only over all these Islands, but such of the *African* Coasts as belong to the Portuguese. Admiral *Columbus* says, the Island is unhealthy, and that there was such a thick Fogg all the Time he was here, which was the four first Days of July, that he never saw the Sky nor any Star, insomuch that three Parts of the Inhabitants were sick, and they had all a base Colour. *Le Blanc* says, it has been in the Hands of the Portuguese ever since 1446, where they have a well fortified Town and a Bishoprick still'd *Ciudad*. He makes it 60 Miles long, and 36 broad, and says, they have no Rain but in September and October, which is their Winter. The Vallies yield choice Melons all the Year round, with abundance of Dates and Sugar-Canes, all Sorts of Flesh, Fowl, and Venison, and good Horses. 'Tis inhabited by People of all Nations; and because the Air is unwholesome, they transport those that are infirm to an Island two Leagues

Leagues distance called *Praya*, of which by and by. *Struys* makes it the biggest of all the Cape *Verd* Islands, 45 Leagues from the S. E. to N. W. where longest, 10 where broadest, and 95 in Compass. He says, it has a fine River called *Corea*, which yields a lovely Prospect, and is planted on both Sides with Coco's, Oranges, Limons, Pomegranates, Figs, and other Fruit-Trees, and some Cedars. It also abounds with Cotton, Rice, Maiz, or *Turkey* Wheat, and all Sorts of other Fruit, and as much Cattle as *Mayo*. *La Croix* makes it but 12 Leagues in Length, and places it 25 S. S. W. from *Sal*. He says, *European* Herbs and Plants brought hither from *Portugal* thrive very well if the Seed be renew'd every Year. They have no Vines, but have all their Wine from *Lisbon*. The *Sansons* say, they abound most with Goats; that they bring forth three or four at a time every four Months; and that their Flesh is very fat and tender. *Luyts* says, 'tis more populous than the other Islands; that here are vast Numbers of Tortoises, and an incredible Quantity of Salt. *Heylin* says, 'tis but 7 Miles long; and that tho' 'tis rocky and mountainous, it has several fine Vallies.

But the best Account we find of this Island is given by Mr. *Ovington* and Captain *Dampier* as follows:

The former says, that when he was here, which was in 1689, the Island was very dry and barren, for he was told they had not one Shower of Rain in three Years before. The Island is not so pleasant as *Madeira*, nor so mountainous; and the Wine drunk here, which is but little, is imported from thence. Among other Fruits, they have a few Vines, Coco-Nuts, and Bononoes, better than those at *Madera*. They had few Cattle, but Plenty of Fowl, which, with other Commodities, they sold for old Clothes, for the *Portuguese* here are so vain as to strut in the Sailors cast-off Garments, and so thievish, that while one or two of them hold a Man in Discourse, another shall steal his Hat or his Sword; and when they have an Opportunity, they'll strip Strangers naked. They know not how to make Butter or Cheese, so that a Couple of Cheese, a Sea-Bisket, 12 Stock fish, and two Dozen of Poor Jack, were an acceptable Present to the Governor, who was a *Romish* Prelate,

that presided in all Affairs both Civil and Ecclesiastical, and admitted the native *Africans* to officiate in their Oratories and Convents. Most of the Inhabitants are Negroes, transported hither from *Africa*, and converted to the *Romish* Faith. Their Habit is a sort of *Indian*-like Stuff wrapped carelessly about their Middle, and a thin Stuff over their Breasts and Shoulders; but the rest of their Body is naked. The Women here are very loose, and easily led away by the Sailors, whose Extravagancies of this kind have given Rise to an *English* Proverb us'd in *India*, That in sailing from hence thither, they leave their Consciences on this Side the Cape; and in returning from thence to Europe, they leave them on t'other Side.

Captain *Dampier* places it 5 Leagues W. of *Mayo*. He was told they make a great deal of Wine here like that of *St. Nicholas*. He says the Natives, for want of Boats to carry their Salt from one Island to another, are forced to buy it of Strangers, and that he truck'd it with them for Fowls and Maiz, which the Governor order'd them to bring by a Cryer; but that they won't part with their Cattle without Money. The People are generally black, or at least of a mix'd Colour, except the Governor, Bishop, a few of the chief Gentry, and some of the Padres. He owns, that the People about Port *Praya* are thievish, but says that those of *St. Jago* are orderly, because they live under the Governor's Eye; but they are generally poor, and have little Trade; yet besides chance Ships of other Nations, a *Portuguese* Ship or two come hither every Year in their Way to *Brasil*, which sell them a few *European* Commodities, and take off their chief Manufactures, viz strip'd Cotton-Cloth, which they carry to *Brasil*. Another Ship comes hither from *Portugal*, and returns with Sugar, for 'tis said there are several small Sugar-works on the Island, from whence they send home near 100 Tun every Year; and they have so much Cotton up in the Country, that besides what they wear themselves, they send a great deal to *Brasil*. Among other Fruits, here's abundance of Plantanes, Limes, Guava's, Quinces, Custard Apples, Papahs, &c. He says, the Custard Apple is as large as a Pomegranate, and like it in Colour. The Outside Husk is for Substance between the
Shell

Shell of a Pomegranate and the Peel of a *Savil* Orange, yet softer than the latter, and more brittle than the former. The Coat is beset round with small regular Knobs, and the Inside is full of a white, soft, sweet Pulp, like a Custard in Colour and Taste, from whence our Author thinks it had the Name. In the Middle there are a few black Kernels, but no Core. The Tree is as big as a Quince-Tree, with long, small, and thick-set spreading Branches. The Fruit grows upon a slender tough Stalk 9 or 10 Inches long, and hanging down with its Weight. One large Tree seldom bears above 20 or 30 Apples. He observes, that this Fruit grows in most Countries between the Tropicks, and in both the *Indies*, as does also the Papah, which he thus describes. 'Tis as big and hollow as a Musk-Melon, and like it in Shape and Colour; but in the Middle there's a Handful of blackish Seeds, of the same Size and Taste as Pepper-Corns. The Fruit is soft and luscious when ripe; but while green, 'tis hard and unfavoury; tho' even then, when boil'd and eaten with salt Pork or Beef, it serves instead of Turneps. The Tree is 10 or 12 Foot high, the Body near the Ground a Foot and a half or two Foot diameter, and tapering to the Top without any Branches, but only large Leaves growing immediately upon the Stalks from the Body. The Leaves are roundish and jagged, and their Stalks are longer or shorter as they are nearer or farther from the Top. They begin to spring out of the Body of the Tree at 6 or 7 Foot high from the Ground, the Trunk being bare below, but above that the Leaves grow still thicker and larger towards the Top, where they are close and broad. The Fruit grows only among the Leaves, and in most Plenty where they are thickest, so that towards the Top of the Tree the Papahs are as thick as they can hang one by another; but then lower down, where the Leaves are thinner, the Fruit is larger; and at the Top, where they are thick, 'tis no bigger than a Turnep, tho' of the same Taste as the others.

Dampier adds, that this Island abounds with the same Beasts, Fowls and Fish, as *Mayo*, particularly Bullocks, for which they asked him 20 Dollars apiece; Horses, Asses, Mules, Deer, Goats, Hogs, and black fac'd long tail'd Monkeys, Cocks and Hens,

Ducks, wild and tame *Guinea* Hens, Parakites, Parrots, Pigeons, Turtles, Herons, Hawks, Crab catchers, (of which there's a large Sort called *Galdens*) and Curlews. Captain *Rogers* says, it produces some Indigo and Tobacco, which they send with Goats-Skins and others to *Lisbon*.

The chief Places here are, 1. *Praya*. *La Croix* says, 'tis a *Portuguese* Word to signify the Shore; that 'tis very commodiously situated, and naturally fortified by a Mountain on each Side on't, and as others say upon a rising Ground, encompassed with two Rivers, which fall into the Sea, and form two Bays; the first of which, called *Porto Praya*, is large enough for 100 Vessels to anchor in, in 14 Fathom Water, beyond the Reach of Cannon from the Shore, and behind an Island which shelters it from the Winds. *Le Blanc* says, it lies in a fine Climate, and that the other Islanders affect to land here, because the other Ports are full of Sands. Sir *John Narborough* places this Road 9 Leagues S. W. from *Mayo*. He says, that called *Port Praya* is no Port, but only a round Bay, with steep Cliffs on the E. Side, and a Hill in the Bottom, on which stands a mean Castle, furnished with only 4 Cannon, and that there's another on the Top of a Hill on the E. Side which has but three. He adds, that the N. W. Side of the Bay has a gravelly sandy Shore, and a fine Grove of Coco-Trees; that a Brook of good fresh Water runs thro' the Valley into the Sea; that there's a little Island close to the Shore near the W. Part of the Bay, which yields very good Pasture; and that tho' a Man of War may venture into the Harbour without any Danger from the Forts, yet Fireships may soon destroy a whole Fleet here, for every Day blows a fresh Gale, and there are but two Points of Land whereby one may fetch into any Part of the Bay, which lies open to the Sea from the E. and Southerly to the W. S. W. *Dampier* says, it lies on the E. Side of the Island, and in Time of Peace is seldom without Ships, which touch here for Water and Provisions, as do the *English*, *French* and *Dutch*, bound to the *East-Indies*, or to the Coast of *Guinea* and *Surinam*, and the *Portuguese* to *Brasil*; but few Ships call here in their Return to *Europe*, nor do so many *English* call in their Passage to the *East-Indies*.

Indies as formerly. When Ships are here, the Country People bring down their Commodities to sell to Seamen and Passengers for Shirts, Drawers, Handkerchiefs, Hats, Waistcoats, Breeches, or almost any sort of Cloth, especially Linen.

2. *St. Jago*. — *Morery* says, it lies in the Form of a Triangle, and has two rocky Mountains on the E. and W. Sides, the Tops of which are fortified. The main Sea lies on the S. Side, and a Valley on the N. between the two Mountains, which growing narrower next the Town, is not above 240 Paces over. A Rivulet of fresh Water runs in the Middle on't, which makes a Pond near the Sea to water the Ships. But farther from the Town the Valley is broader, and well planted with Gardens, Orchards and Vineyards, full of Limons, Oranges, Sugar-Canes, Coccoes, Plantains, Potatoes, Cucumbers, Onions, and Garlick. He adds, that Sir *Francis Drake* took it without Resistance, but was forced to leave it in fourteen Days, because his Men fell sick of Calentures. *Dampier* places it in the S. W. Part of the Island, N. Lat. 15. and says, the Entrance to its Harbour is subject to many uncertain Flaws of Wind. It stands scattering against the Sides of the Mountains above-mentioned. He makes the Valley 200 Yards wide against the Sea, but scarce 40 within a quarter of a Mile higher. In the Valley by the Sea there's a Street of straggling Houses on each Side, and a Run of Water in the Bottom, which falls into a fine small Cove or sandy Bay, where the Sea is commonly very smooth, so that there's always good Watering and Landing here, tho' the Road be rocky and bad for Ships. Just by the Landing-place there's a small Fort almost level with the Sea, where there's a constant Court of Guard, and there's another on the Top of the Hill above the Town, which, by the Wall that is to be seen from the Road, seems to be a large Place. 'Twas mounted with Cannon, but our Author knew not how many, nor could not see for what Use, unless for Salvo's. He adds, that the Town contains 2 or 300 Houses, all built of rough Stone, with a Convent and a Church; but he says the Road is one of the worst that he ever was in, for there's

scarce clean Ground enough for three Ships. *Du Pléssis* says, there's no Town here of this Name, and with *Heylin* calls it *Ribeira Grande*. The latter says, when 'twas plunder'd by the *English*, they found great Store of Meal, Wine and Oil. *Baudrand* says, it lies at the Mouth of a River, capable of containing the largest Ships. The *Sansons* and *M. Fer* say, *Ribeira* contains about 500 Houses, and *Du Pléssis* makes it the Capital of the Island, and the Residence of the *Portuguese* Governor and Bishop. Captain *Rogers* says, it lies towards the W. and has a good Harbour, which *Struys* tells us is very secure, because of its Situation between two Mountains, and that a River runs in the Middle to the Sea with a Mouth, which is about a Bow-shot in Breadth. *Dampier* gives several Views of this Island, for which we refer to his Book.

9. F O G O, F O G H O, or F U E G O, or the Island of Fire.

Sir *Francis Drake* says, 'tis inhabited by the *Portuguese*, and that on the N. Side on't there's a Volcano that is continually sending out Smoke and Flame. Sir *Richard Hawkins* says, the Flames are seen 20 Leag. off at Sea in the Night-time. Admiral *Columbus* says, the S. Side is high Land, and looks at a Distance like a great Church, with a Steeple at the E. End. He adds, that the Volcano is a vast high Rock, which sends forth much Fire before the E. Winds rise. *Struys* places it 12 Leagues S. W. of *St. Jago*, and says, that it has a little Fort at the Foot of a Mountain on the N. W. for the Defence of such Ships as anchor in the neighbouring Harbour, which is not very commodious, because of the Rapidity of the Current. The easiest Way to come at the E. Side on't is to go about by the N. The Island is subject to great Whirlwinds and Tempests, and the Water is every where so deep, that there's no anchoring in any Place except near the little Fort above-mentioned. *Le Blanc* says, there's as good Wine in this Island as at the *Canaries*. *La Croix* places it in Lat. 14. 20. *Luyts* says, 'tis not far E. from *Brava*. *Heylin* says, that when Sir *Anth. Shirley* took this Island in 1596, the Flakes of Fire fell so thick upon his Ship, that the upper Deck was cover'd with

with Ashes. Mr. *Ovington* says, the burning Mountain sends forth vast Numbers of Pumice-stones, which swim upon the main Ocean, and are carried by the various Currents to several distant Places, and some to *St. Fago*. He says, the Volcano is above two Stories high in the Clouds. *Dampier* says, the Inhabitants live at the Foot on't near the Sea; that they have some Goats, Fowls, Plantanes, Coco-Nuts, &c. and that their Subsistence is much the same as in the other Islands.

10. BRAVA, BRAVO, BRANO, or
BRAMA.

Sir *Francis Drake* says, 'tis a delightful Island on the S. Side of *Fogo*, well planted with flourishing Trees, and refreshed with cooling Streams; but the Sea is so deep here, that there's no Anchorage for Ships. Nevertheless Sir *Richard Hawkins* says, the best Watering-place of all the Islands is in the W. Side of this, where there's a great River. *Struys* places it 4 Leagues S. W. from *Fogo*, and says, 'tis in a manner desert and uncultivate; but that it has a Watering-place on the S. E. Side, better than that on the W. which is 15 Fathom deep, so that the greatest Vessels may come to the Shore without Danger. Above the Harbour there is a populous Village, and a pleasant *Ermitage*. He adds, that their chief Fruits are Figs, Mulberries, Melons, and Maiz, but fewer Cattle than in the two others. *Mocquet* says, it bears Tobacco, abundance of Mace, and yields sweet Water, dry'd Fish, and other Refreshments, and that 'tis very mountainous. *Le Blanc* says, 'tis full of Venison and wild Beeves, with thick and tough Hides.

V. The Islands in the Gulph of
GUINEA or ST. THOMAS,
between Guinea and Lower
Ethiopia.

The chief are, 1. FERNANDO POO,
or FERDINAND PO, PAO or POI.

Harris says, this and the other Islands here were discovered in the Reign of Al-

phonfus, Successor to King Henry of Portugal. *Purchas* ascribes the Discovery of this Island to one *De Poo* in 1472, who called it after his own Name. *Luyts* says, it lies nearest to the Continent, and is larger than the Prince's Isle, but much of the same Nature, and has several Villages with a Castle. He observes, that the Possession of these Islands and other Places in the Kingdom of Congo has given the King of Portugal an Opportunity to stile himself King of the hither Side of the African Ocean. *La Croix* says, 'twas discovered by *Fernand Lopez*, a Portuguese, who called it *Ilhas das Formosas*, or the Fair Isle. He places it in N. Lat. 3 $\frac{1}{2}$. between the high Country of the *Amboises* and the River of *Camarones*, about 4 Leagues and a half from the Continent, between which the Bay is very navigable. He makes it larger than Prince's Island or those of *St. Thomas* and *Annobon*, or at least of the same Bigness as *St. Thomas*. He says, 'tis very high, and produces *Mandihoca*, which they grind in Hand-Mills; Tobacco, Rice, and Fruit-Trees. The Inhabitants are wild and faithless, and govern'd by 7 Kings, who spend most of their Time in War, and allow no Europeans to anchor here for Traffick, but only for Wood and Water. *Du Plessis* says, it lies a little to the N. of Prince's Island; that 'tis 26 Leagues in Compass; and that the Air, Soil and Government, are the same as in the others. *Morden* says, 'tis not inhabited, but produces Fowls, Wild-Beasts, and Fish.

2. PRINCE'S Island, or DEL PRIN-
CIPE.

Oliver Noort places it N. Lat. 1 $\frac{1}{2}$. He and his Company were surprised here by a Body of Portuguese in Ambush, and most of them made Prisoners, after Pretence of Friendship; but the Dutch revenged this Treachery, by burning all their Sugar-Houses. *Purchas* says, it was first discovered about 1472 by *Sequeiza*, together with the Island of *St. Thomas*. *Heylin* says, it had this Name because its Revenues were allowed to the Prince of Portugal. He places it N. Lat. 3. 120 Miles N. E. from *St. Thomas*, and almost as much from the Continent. He says, 'tis very fruitful, and that 'twas taken for the Dutch in 1598 by *Julian Clerchagen*, but soon aban-

abandon'd. *Luyts* says, 'tis somewhat long, and abounds with Sugar, and that it has a considerable Town, with some Villages. *La Croix* says, 'twas called *Prince's Island* because a *Portuguese* Prince first discovered it. He makes it the least of all the Islands in the Gulph, and places it N. Lat. 2. 38 Leag. from the Continent, and 24 N. from *St. Thomas*. He says, it has a much more wholesome Air than the latter, and a Village of 200 Houses on the Shore, encompassed with a Parapet 3 Foot deep, and defended by 5 Cannon, which the Inhabitants took out of a Vessel that was wrecked on their Coast. The whole Island is covered with Trees, especially Oranges, Limons, Bananas, Coco-Nuts, Sugar-Canes, a few Vines, and the like. There is Cotton, of which the Women make Callicoes for their own Use, and *Mandihoca*, which they grind to Meal. They have Hogs, Hens, and River and Salt Fish. The Inhabitants in our Author's Time were 30 or 40 *Portuguese* *Mulatto's*, *Negroes*, and about 3000 Slaves, who were employed in the Sugar-Mills, and in planting Rice, Tobacco, Millet, and other Necessaries. The *Sansons* say, that among other Fruits it has Ginger. *Du Plessis* places it N. E. from that of *St. Thomas*, and says, that the *Portuguese* here are long liv'd. Mr. *Bosman*, whose Letters we quoted so often in our Account of *Guinea*, says, that at the latter End of the 15th Century, 'twas subject to a considerable Merchant of *Amsterdam*, till the Dissention of the *Dutch* themselves, and the Treachery of the *Portuguese*, obliged them to quit it. The latter have now a strong Fort here, and have indifferently well Peopled the Island, and so well cultivated it, that it yields them vast Quantities of Provisions, with which they store their own Ships, and sell the rest to others. He adds, that all Ships which go for Slaves touch at some of these Islands for Refreshments, except those of the *Dutch* Company; which he thinks are not permitted, lest they should drive a clandestine Trade, to the Prejudice of the Company.

3. *St. THOMAS* or *St. THOME*,

The chief of all the rest, and from whence 'tis said this Gulph is denominated. We have already observed when and by

whom this Island was discover'd. *Mandelstoe* says, the *Portuguese* gave it this Name, because 'twas discover'd on *St. Thomas's* Day, and that it lies under the Line, in an Air so unwholesome, and such excessive Heats, that tho' some of the Natives live to 100 Years of Age, yet few *Europeans* exceed 50. The Days and Nights are equal here throughout the Year, and it never rains except in *March* and *September*; but a Dew falls every Night, which renders the Soil very fruitful. When 'twas first discover'd, Trees were found here with very strait Branches, and formerly it produced 40 Ship-loads of Sugar in a Year, but in our Author's Time scarce enough to lade 6. Nevertheless it yields Wheat, Wine, Millet, Rye, Barley, Melons, Cucumbers, Figs, Ginger, red Parsnips, Cabbages, Navews, Lettuce, Radishes, Sage, Beet, Parsley, and all Sorts of Roots, Pulse, and Pot-Herbs, particularly Mushrooms with a black Rind; but the Meat is white like the *French* Navew, only it shoots forth divers Branches below. The Inhabitants reckon them a Dainty, bake them on the Embers, and then eat them as we do Chestnuts; but they have a better Flavour. The *Spaniards* have planted Olive, Peach, and Almond-Trees here, which thrive well enough, but bear no Fruit, because of the excessive Heat and Moisture. Here's abundance of Land-Crevisses, which work under Ground like Moles, with great Numbers of Partridges, Quails, Black-Birds, Parrots, &c. and the Sea abounds with excellent Fish, especially great Whales. There's a Mountain in the Centre of the Island, cover'd on the Top with a Cloud, which moistens the Trees, and makes them drop Water enough for the Sugar-Canes; and 'tis observed, that the higher the Sun mounts above the Horizon, the more Water falls from the Cloud. The Natives are *Negroes*; but such Foreigners as settle here keep their natural Colour to the 3d or 4th Generation. 'Tis affirmed, that the Lice and Fleas, with which the *Negroes* are pester'd, never afflict any Strangers.

Le Blanc says, 'twas discovered by the *Portuguese* in their first Navigation to the E. that it has 50 Leagues of sound Land; and that it bears little besides Sugar-Canes, planted by the *Portuguese*; but the Trees are ever green. They built a Town here call'd

Pavaſan, with a Harbour towards the Continent of *Ethiopia*. It was at first inhabited by all Nations, who had a free Trade here, but now all pay Tribute, except the *French*, who enjoy the ſame Immunities as the *Portugueſe*, becauſe a *French* Jeſuit was very laborious and ſucceſſful in propagating the *Roman* Faith here. The Natives are ſome white, ſome black, and marry ſtill in their own Colour. The Town is pleaſant, and the whole Iſland full of Sugar-Canes, and conſequently of Flies. In our Author's Time, a Hundred Weight of Sugar here might be purchaſed for 8 Reals; but 'twill not eaſily dry. They exchange it for Wines, Cheeſe, Leather, and Clothes. Their Gardens abound with all Sorts of Herbs and Fruit, except Stone-Fruit. It yields the Root *Igname*, which is very wholeſome either boil'd or raw. They make choice Diſhes of Millet and Sugar. The Soil is ſtrong, yellowiſh, in ſome Parts reddiſh, and the Dew of the Night ſo moiſtens it, that it never turns to Duſt. They bend their Sugar-Canes to the E. and ſay they then thrive beſt; and they have about 70 Sugar-Mills, which are like that called the *Samaritan* at *Port-Neuf* in *Paris*. They pour it into great Cauldrons, and when 'tis like Honey they make it into Loaves before 'tis ſcarce dry; but 'tis not ſo ſound nor ſo good as that of *Madera*, tho' they uſe all poſſible Art, and refine it with Cinders. The Blacks fetch Water to ſet the Mills at work from the Plantations, which are at a conſiderable Diſtance. When the Sugar is drawn, they give the Canes to fat the Swine, which makes their Pork well taſted and wholeſome. From the Middle of *May* to the Middle of *Auguſt* they have E. Winds, which dry their Sugars, otherwiſe they could never do it, for all other Winds are rainy. Their Houſes are good, and built and cover'd with Timber, of which they have great Plenty. The Corſairs bring many Slaves hither from *Guinea* for Sale. Captain *Ribaut Drepeux* took a Veſſel with ſeveral entire Families on board, whom he ſet aſhore, but cauſed two Blacks to hang the Maſter and 5 Mariners. They marry the Slaves among themſelves for Breed, which makes them hereditary Slaves; whereas in the E. at 10 Years end they are made Free-men. They have but one Day in the

Week to themſelves, which they ſpend in dreſſing to pleaſe their Miſtreſſes. The *Portugueſe* here, like thoſe of their Nation, affect to have their Slaves rich, and that they ſhould walk with the ſame Gravity as themſelves, and therefore give them 100 or 200 Crowns to buy *Turks* for their Gain and Eaſe. They cauſe moſt of them to be baptized, and to marry together, and give them a Livelihood. They celebrate Feaſts like the *Basks*, by beating of Drums, and ſinging under the Trees. The Slaves chuſe one among them every Year for their Prince to govern at their Meetings, and then they give him a Drum, which he beats in Conſort with Flutes and other Inſtruments, while the Muſicians ogle their Miſtreſſes, and play 1000 apiſh Tricks to them as they dance. They go together to fetch their Prince from his Maſter's Houſe, where they have a Collation. Then they bring him forth decked with Flowers, a Scepter in one Hand, and a Noſegay in the other, and carry him on their Shoulders in a Palanquin to the Dancing-place, where their Miſtreſſes meet them. The Prince dances firſt with his, and then the others follow. The Prince *de l'Amour*, call'd the *Arcadit*, ſalutes his Lady, and then gravely preſents her the Poſie, which ſhe receives, and dances with Smiles. Afterwards they all attend the Prince to his Maſter's Houſe, where, if they are Chriſtians, the Nuptials are conſumated.

La Croix ſays, *Thivet* and others call it *Dant des Honore*, and the *Barbarians*, *Poncas*; and that the Equinoctial Line croſſes the Town of *Pavaſan* over the great Church. The Iſland is almoſt of a round Figure, about 40 Leagues in Compaſs, 12 broad, and as many in Length. Two Brooks run thro' the Town, which lies in the Middle of the Gulph on a Plain in the N. Side of the Iſland. 'Tis of an oval Figure, near half a League in Compaſs, and contains 500 Houſes, all two Stories high. On the Sea-Side 'tis encompassed with Stone Ramparts, which the *Portugueſe* Governor cauſed to be built here in 1607; and ordered all that paſſed thro' the Town to bring a Stone for that Purpoſe. Their Timber with which they build their Houſes is white and hard as Oak, and the Front and Roof are made of Planks inlaid into one another. There were

were but 3 Stone-Houses in the Island in our Author's Time, and in one of them lived the Governor. There are 3 Churches in the Town, the biggest of which is the Cathedral, call'd the *Conception*; the second *Isabella*, with a Hospital join'd to it; and the third *St. Sebastians*, which is but small, and lies over against a Castle of the same Name. There are several others without the Town, as *St. Anthony's* within two Musket-shots, *St. John's* a little nearer, that call'd *Matre Dios* a League to the S. E. *Trinity* Church two Leagues to the E. and *St. Ann's* three to the S. E. *St. Sebastian's* Castle has four-pointed Bastions, and lies on a Point of Land to the N. Side of the Town and Gulph. 'Tis neatly built of hard Freestone, and the Walls are 25 Foot high, which, together with its Situation, makes it impregnable, if there be but 100 Soldiers in Garrison, and all Warlike Necessaries, which may be safely brought to it by Sea in Yachts. The Island is water'd by several Rivers and Brooks of clear fresh Water, which render the Soil very fruitful, and fall for most part into the Sea. The Air is not only excessive hot, but moist; and 'tis affirmed, that 'tis so prejudicial to Foreign Youth brought hither, that they cease growing at their Arrival, and are never no bigger. The Heat is so violent here, that dead Bodies rot in less than 24 Hours, so that they don't keep them above Ground as we do. Some ascribe the Malignity of the Air to its Moisture, join'd with the intemperate Heat; but others say, it has its bad Quality no where in the Island but in the Town, which lies in a low Place; for since it rains as fast as it can when it begins, and the Water naturally runs to the deepest Places, the Heat raises the Vapours out of the Water, turns it every Morning and Evening into Dew, because of the fresh Air, and falls upon People's Bodies. For this Reason our Author observes, the Air is not so unwholesome in the N. and S. Parts of the Island as in this City. Sometimes he says 'tis darken'd by Mists and Fogs, which make the *Portuguese* confine themselves to their Houses. But this excessive Heat and Dampness of the Air abate in the Summer Months of *July* and *August*, because of the fresh dry S. W. Winds that blow from the Coasts of *Ethiopia*, for which Reason

they are called the Windy Months. These Winds purify the Air, and revive Strangers; but they are very troublesome to such of the Natives as are lean. They have no N. nor E. Winds, which *La Croix* thinks are interrupted or diverted by the high Mountains of *Africa*. They have two Winters as well as all other Countries under the Line, which are more wet than cold; one falls out in the Spring, and the other in the Autumn, or in *March* and *September*, when the Sun is directly over their Heads, and casts no Shadow, which happens exactly twice a Year about Noon, for then it exhales such a vast Quantity of Vapours from the Sea, as loads the Air with Clouds, which dissolve into Rain, so that the Sunbeams having not Power enough to penetrate thro' the Mists and continual Rains, cause the Air to be fresher at that Time than any other. The Rains last here from *December* to *April*, and drown all the low Lands. Our Summer is their Spring, and their Summer holds from *December* to *March*, during which Season the Air is so hot and moist, that Strangers are obliged to keep under Ground, and run the Hazard of Death or dangerous Distempers, because of the intolerable Heat and Moistness of the Air, while the Natives, who are of a cold, dry, and haggard Constitution, enjoy perfect Health. But when the Heat is most violent, it makes them so lazy and weak, that they are not able to walk, and the Ground is so hot, that they are obliged to wear double Soles, with a Piece of Cork underneath. Their chief Maladies are hot malignant Fevers, with which Strangers, especially Whites, are soon overtaken, and are very often carried off the 4th, 7th, or 14th Day. They begin with a great Cold and Shiverings, which are succeeded by a Heat that runs over all the Members for two Hours. If the Patient labours under it above a Fortnight, he commonly recovers, except he relapses by intemperate Eating or Drinking, so that the best Remedy they observe is to eat little, and fast very much; yet sometimes they bleed as we do; but our Author says, 'tis seldom successful, and condemns it. They purge generally with the Pulp of *Cassia*, and let the Patients drink as much Water as they will. The Distemper call'd *Bitios de Cu* makes great

Havock here, and they cure it with Limon-Juice, as we observed in *Lower Ethiopia*. Venereal Maladies are also very common here, but the Negroes soon cure them with Mercury; yet they kill many, especially Foreigners, who catch them of Negro Women. They are also very subject to the Dropsy, but cure it in a few Days by swallowing the Oil of Coco-Nuts, with a certain Herb, and chafing it into the Body. Above 100 Years since, the Kings of *Portugal* being informed of the Fruitfulness of the Soil, sent some Men hither, who all dy'd by the Malignity of the Air; wherefore those that were sent afterward stopped first in *Guinea*, and thence went to stay a while at *Angola*, in order to accustom themselves by degrees to the Badness of the Air before they came to settle in this Island. 'Tis said also, that *John K.* of *Portugal* sold for Slaves all that refused to embrace the Christian Religion; and after having baptized their Children, transported them into this Country, from whence those are descended who now inhabit the Island. The *Dutch* had a great many Men sick, and others that dy'd here when they took it in 1641 under Admiral *Jol* or *Houtebeen*, who dy'd himself, besides several others of the Commanders, and there were scarce 12 healthy Men left in each Company. Nay the Disease increased so much, that they had scarce Men enough for the Centries, nor Sailors enough to man their Vessels; upon which they wrote to *C. Maurice* at *Brasil* to send them a Supply of Men, Wine, and other Provisions. Most of them dy'd mad with a violent Pain in the Head, and some were carried off in 3 or 4 Days by a Pain in the Belly. They said, that some fell into this Distemper by heating themselves with their Negro Mistresses, and then exposing themselves to the Cold, and others by eating black Sugar, or the Milk of Coco-Nuts, which causes the Flux in the Belly. Besides, they did not go home and shut themselves within Doors, as the *Portuguese* commonly do when the Island is covered with Mists, for they are generally charged with certain Arsenical Particles full of Malignity. *La Croix* tells us, that this poisonous Air was much more fatal to Admiral *Peter Verdoes's* Men when he took this Island in November 1610, for in a Fortnight's Time it

carried off above 1000 with Pains and Disorders in the Head and Belly. The Admiral himself and the Vice-Admiral died, besides 17 Captains of Ships, and all the Soldiers of the Land Army except one. Some of their Bodies were opened, in which the Fat of their Bellies were dissolved into Water. Therefore *C. Maurice* advised the States, when they were in Possession of this Island, to do as the *Spaniards* had done, viz. to send none but condemn'd Malefactors here to people and defendit. Our Author says, the Soil is so good, that so soon as any Plain or Field is left uncultivated, it produces very high Trees in a little Time, which they cut and burn, and plant Sugar-Canes in the Ashes, which grow very high in the Valleys, but don't yield as much Sugar as those in *Brasil*, tho' they are planted, cut and ground, in the same Manner, only the Mills here are smaller, and not so much clogged, because they purify no more Sugar in the Island than what every one wants for his own Use. The Canes require 5 Months Growth after they are planted in the Ashes, so that they don't cut till *June* those planted in *January*, nor those planted in *February* till *July*, by which Means they cut Sugar-Canes every Month of the Year; nor do the Sun-beams, which dart directly upon the Island in *March* and *September*, hinder their Growth, because of the continual Rains in that Season, which do great Service to the Canes. When they are ripe, they cut and grind them in Mills, which are drove either by the Currents of Rivers, and where there's none by Slaves, or by Oxen; after which they boil and purify the Juice or Pith in great Cauldrons over the Fire. In our Author's Time they used to load 7 Ships a Year with the Sugar, viz. four for *Portugal*, two for the *Madera* and *Canary* Islands, and one for *England*. They could also have drawn much more, and have made white Sugar; but they had not Pots, &c. to refine it, nor Men that understood it. The *Portuguese* sent for several Master Workmen from the Island of *Madera* to make their Sugar whiter and harder; but they could never compass it, because they could not divest it of the Smell and Fat of the Soil which produces it. Besides, the Air would not dry it, for 'tis commonly hot and moist, except when the fresh Winds blow from *Ethiopia*; but our Author says, that

that Air does not dry it as it should be, therefore the Workmen are obliged to lay it upon low Planks shut up close all round, and to lay Branches of great dry Trees upon them, which, when kindled, produce neither Flame nor Smoke, but burn like Coals. By this Means they dry their Sugar as it were in Stoves, and keep it in close Places, lest the Air should enter, for then it would soon dissolve, as it will certainly do after it has been kept two or three Years. They had no Ginger here before 'twas planted by the *Portuguese*. In 1645, there were 54 Sugar-Mills in this Island, each of which had a Month marked for grinding, and might all together furnish every Year 6 or 700 Load of black Sugar, more or less, according as the Canes thriv'd. There were 61 Mills before; but they were ruin'd by the *Dutch* in 1610, and continued useless a long Time for want of Coppers, Cauldrons, and other Necessaries, and Slaves to work them. The Corn they sow never comes to Perfection, but only yields a long Stalk without Ear or Grain, because the Soil is too fat and moist. They have a great many Vines, which bear all the Year white and black Grapes, some ripe, others unripe and in Blossom, for they never thrive. They have sweet and sower Oranges, Limons, and Coco-Nuts, and their Water-Melons are ripe in *June*, *July*, and *August*. For want of Corn, the Inhabitants use Batata's, which they call Ignames, and are their common Food instead of Bread. There are four Sorts on't us'd here, which all take their Names from the Places from whence they are brought. One Sort is sweeter than the rest, and another keeps longest. They also plant the Root Mandioca, which they grind into Meal; but the Inhabitants eat very little, and send most Part on't to *Angola*. When 'tis at its highest Growth, 'tis as big as a Man's Arm or Leg, and from one to three Foot high. They dry it as soon as 'tis grated, and they eat as much as they please on't without any Harm. It produces Banana's, Bacoves, Cuscoo Apples, two or three Sorts of Jojoos or little Beans, of which they make good Putties, and *Turkey* Wheat or Maiz, which serves them instead of Corn. There's also a Tree called *Pessigos*, whose Fruit that grows along its Stem or Trunk looks like Bottles of Wa-

ter, and has Leaves at the End of its Branches. The Fruit is cover'd with Hairs, which they cut off before they eat it. They are pretty fleshy, have a tender Kernel, and are very sweet and refreshing. They have another Fruit called *Cola*, which grows upon a great Tree. 'Tis as big as a Nut, and lies in a palish green Husk as big as one's Arm, and a Foot and a half long. It properly consists but of red Pippins, with 4 or 5 Angles, cover'd with a white Skin, and placed near one another. The Negroes eat them. They have a bitterish Taste like raw Chestnuts, which turns sweet if you drink a Glass of Water upon it. They drive a great Trade with these Fruits, and carry a vast Quantity of them to *Louando St. Paulo* in their Husks, that they may keep the longer. There are a great many Palm-Trees, from whence the Inhabitants draw their Wine, and make Oil of the Kernels, which they send to *Angola*. They have abundance of Cotton, which they manufacture for little dark Stuffs, and others of a Sky Blue, for their own Use, like those of *Benin*; but they are much coarser, and of a worse Dye. They drive a profitable Trade with them to *Louando St. Paulo*.

Besides Swine, *La Croix* says they have Cows, Sheep, Goats, and small red Horses. Among other Fowls and Birds, they have *Turkey* Hens, Geese, Ducks, Turtles, Hens, Thrushes, and Starlings. The Rivers are full of Fish. In short, our Author thinks this Island would deserve to be called a Terrestrial Paradise, if the Temper of the Air was answerable to its Abundance of Animals and Fruits. He says, the Land Crevisses are of a greenish Colour, like those of the Sea, gnaw the Plants, and do abundance of Mischief. Their Flies are much bigger than ours, and are very troublesome to those who go into the Forrests to cut Wood for boiling the Sugar. Some Years ago there was abundance of Ants, that gnaw'd all the Sugar-Canes they could find; but they dy'd as soon as the Weather began to change. There are also Rats and Worms, which do great Mischief to the Sugars.

The Inhabitants, says the same Author, are the *Portuguese* who first discover'd and peopled it, and Negroes brought hither from *Angola* to work. Those descended from *Portuguese* Parents, notwithstanding their

their long Residence in the Country, are as white as those born in *Portugal*; but those born of a *Portuguese* and a Negro are brown or tawny, and called *Mulatto's*. They usually send hither from *Louande St. Paulo* near 5000 young Negro Slaves to bring them up. Those who are originally *Portuguese* imitate the *Portuguese* Habit, as do also the trading Negroes and their Children; but the Slaves of both Sexes go stark naked, except a Rag of Linen or Palm-Tree Cloth before their Privy Parts. Their common Drink is Palm-Tree Wine, Water, or Goat's Milk. In the extreme Heats, 5 or 6 Families join and dine together with their Wives and Children in a Place under Ground, whither they bring their Necessaries, and sit round a long Table.

Their chief Merchandize is black Sugar, of which they export to *Europe* every Year 100000 Arobs, each 32 Pounds Weight, packed up in Leaves. Those who live far within the Island bring it in Canoes along the Rivers to the Town; but those who live nearer bring it in Waggon drawn by Oxen. Their other Merchandize is Cotton, Stuffs, Colas, and the like. Those which the *Portuguese* bring, as the *Dutch* did before, consist in Cloths of *Holland*, *Rosen*, &c. Threads of all Colours, Serges, Silk Stockings, *Leyden* Camlets, Serges of *Nismes*, mix'd Serges of *Seigneur*, Hatchets, Bills, Iron, Salt, Olive-Oil, red Copper in Plates, Copper Cauldrons, Pitch and Tar, Cordage, Sugar-Mills made of Earth from 25 to 30 Livres apiece, *Aquavitæ*, and all Sorts of Distill'd Liquors, *Canary* Wines, Olives, Capers, fine Flower, Butter, Cheese, and the like.

The Yearly Revenues which the *Portuguese* draw from hence amount to a pretty good Sum. All the Merchandizes which they export (for those that they import pay nothing, only what they pay in *Portugal*,) are to pay a Tenth to the King, whether they are sold for ready Money, or exchange'd for Sugar, Palm-Oil, or Stuffs. Those who fish by the Shore with a Net give one Fifth of those they catch, and the others who fish at Sea with Canoes pay 3 *d.* a Week; besides, something is paid to the King out of all Plants.

La Croix tells us, that all the Inhabitants are *Roman* Catholicks, except Slaves, or such

Merchants as have no fix'd Residence here. The Ecclesiastical Government belongs to a Bishop, whose Seat is in the Capital, and is Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Lisbon*. The Temporal Government is in the Hands of the *Portuguese* Viceroy, who also resides in the Capital, and of a Corregidor or Judge, who administers Justice. The Differences of all the Inhabitants, both in Town and Country, are carried first to the Governor of the Island to be determin'd before him, from whence there's an Appeal to *Louande St. Paulo* without Resort. The Inhabitants are obliged to keep the Governor's House, Castle, and the *Corps de Guard*, from Fire, and are obliged to rebuild the Palace at their own Charge, as well as to keep in Repair all the Ways and Bridges built about the Town and Country, to facilitate the Transportation of Merchandizes, and the Passage of Horses and Waggon; but our Author observes, 'tis impossible to keep the Ways good during the great Rains from *December* to *April*.

He adds, that while there was a Treaty of Truce on foot between the Crown of *Portugal* and the States General, (tho' the Reasons of the War were still in Force) the *Dutch* took this Island in *October* 1641, after 40 Days Siege, under Admiral *Jol* before-mentioned, who landing with his Men two Leagues from the Town notwithstanding the Resistance of the Negroes, took the Cover'd-Way of the Castle, which was destitute of Men and Ammunition, and fortified only with 6 Cannon; after which they attacked the great Fort, that was encompassed with a Wall of 20 Foot high; but were obliged to retire with considerable Loss, after an obstinate Dispute, for want of Ladders to scale the Walls. However they enter'd the Town without Resistance, the Burghers and Soldiers who were to defend it being fled. Some Days after the Garrison of the Fort, being attacked all that Time from a Battery of 6 Pieces, capitulated, and the Governor went out with 80 Men, Negroes, Whites, and *Mulatto's*, and embarked, according to the Agreement, for *Lisbon*, with 25 of the King's Soldiers. The *Dutch* found in the Place 36 great Cannon, of which 20 were of Brass, with a great Quantity of Powder, Match, and Ball; but they had scarce Provisions for a Month.

Then

Then the *Dutch* Admiral summoned all the *Portuguese* that had left the Town to appear in a Fortnight, to treat of Amity. Two of the chief Burghers came accordingly, and for 55000 Croisadoes, and 10000 Arobs of Sugar, purchased the Preservation of their Mills, and the Enjoyment of their ancient Laws and Liberties, on Condition that the Conquerors should have all the King's Revenues and Treasure. Several of the Negroes and Proprietors of the Sugar-Mills obtained Leave to retire with Passports. Our Author tells us, that the *Dutch* took this Island before under Admiral *Verdoes*, formerly mentioned, in 1610, and made themselves Masters of the two Castles, one of which surrender'd after they had landed 7 Cannon, and the other was abandon'd by the Garrison. Then the Town refusing to give 10000 Ducats to ransom it from being plunder'd, was laid flat in Ashes. and a Booty was carried on board, consisting of 1000 Chests of Sugar, a great Quantity of Ivory, Silk and Woollen Stuffs, and 21 Cannon.

Some say this Island is 30, others 40, and others 60 Miles in Diameter, and that 'tis 180 Miles in Compass. The *Sansons* incline to the latter, and say the Town has 700 Houses, and some Forts to defend the Haven; that the Island formerly furnish'd 150000 Arobs of Sugar; that the *French* import here Meal, Stuffs, Beads, Glass-Bowls, and Shells, which are current in *Ethiopia* instead of Money; that the Inhabitants trade to the Rivers of *Borca*, *Campo St. Benito*, *St. Juan*, and the Isle of *Corisco*; and that they reckon their Pork a nicer Dainty than their Fowls. *Nienhoff*, who was here in 1640, makes it 36 Leagues in Compass, and says, the high Mountains in the Middle of it are always cover'd with Snow, which melts down and moistens the Sugar-Fields below; and that the Fogs here disperse at 10 a Clock in the Morning; but they are not seen at Sea. In his Time there were above 60 Sugar-Mills there, and the Town contained 800 Houses and 3 Churches. Its first Inhabitants were *Jews* banish'd out of *Portugal*, who have a very odd Complexion, and there's abundance of Negroes among the Mountains, who are run away from the *Portuguese*, and make Excursions sometimes to the City Gates. *Luyt* says, the Town is

also called by the Name of the Island; and *Morery* observes, that the *Portuguese* Name *Paroasau* signifies a Colony. The latter says, that *European* Women who live here are subject to Issues of Blood, which kill them after 3 or 4 Years Stay here, so that the *Portuguese* have chose rather to marry with the Women of *Congo*. He adds, that the *Dutch* first took it in 1599, and then abandon'd it, but took it again in 1641, and the *Portuguese* retook it since by Force of Arms. He places it 180 Miles from the Coast of *Africa*. *Heylin* says, that on the W. Side of the Island there's a high Pike, which is very small and strait like a Church Steeple, and this he places exactly under the Line. Two or Three Hundred Slaves belong to each Sugar-house. He observes, that the Art of Boiling and Refining Sugars was first found out by a *Venetian*, who is said to have got above 100000 Crowns by it, and to have left his Son a Knight, before which our Ancestors us'd rough Sugar, as it came from the Canes, or else Honey.

Bosman observes, this Island was so fatal to the *Dutch*, his Countrymen, when they were here, that in *Europe* they called it the *Dutch* Church-yard. He says, the Valleys are full of thick stinking Mists in the hottest Time of the Day, and that some of the *Portuguese* bleed themselves 50 times a Year. They have great Plenty of Cattle, larger and finer than those on the Gold Coast. He was here about 1699, when he says there were two Convents, one of *St. Peter*, and the other of *St. Augustin*. He adds, that the *Portuguese* Ships in their Passage to the *West-Indies*, and indeed all that by reason of contrary Winds cannot reach *Prince's Island*, put in here for Refreshment. *Mr. Robert* in his Map of Commerce says, they send 50 Ships every Year laden with Sugar from hence to *Spain* and *Portugal*.

4. ANNOBON, ANNOBOON, or ANNABOA Island.

The Name signifies a good Year. *Oliver Noort* places it S. Lat. 2. When *Mr. Adams* and his Company, who served the *Dutch*, were here in 1598, he says they found Beeves, Oranges, and other Fruits, but an unhealthy Air. They took the Town, consisting

sisting of 80 Houses. He adds, that betwixt this and 4 Deg. of S. Lat. they had always S. E. and S. S. E. Winds. *De La Val*, who was here in 1601, says, 'twas possessed by the *Portuguese*, who had a Viceroy here, that had the Gift on't from the King of Spain, the other *Portuguese* who inhabit it being only his Factors and Commissaries. The Natives, who are all Negroes, are his Slaves, and go naked, but cover their Privities with Cotton. Their Women's Breasts are very long, so that they carry their Children upon their Backs, and suckle them over the Shoulder. He places it in Lat. $1\frac{1}{2}$. and makes it 5 or 6 French Leagues in Circumference, and 2 in Length. He says, 'tis high, mountainous, and always green. There's a Road on the N. W. Side, but 'tis dangerous, because of Flats and Rocks. It abounds with Fruit and Cotton, in which all the Revenues are paid. Mr. *Ovington*, who was here in 1689, makes the Circumference 10 Leagues, and says it had this Name because 'twas discover'd on New-Year's-Day. Provisions are so plenty, if we may believe him, that a Sheet of Paper will purchase a roasting Pig. It yields a fragrant Smell of fresh Herbs and Flowers 3 Leagues distance at Sea. When he was entering the Harbour, the Inhabitants made Fires on the Shore in the Night to give him Light, and sent him a Canoo with Oranges and Fowls, rowed by 6 Men, born in *Africa*, who confessed themselves to be *Romans*; but such Heathens, that they scarce knew what the Mass meant, nor the Pope from the Great Mogul. Our Author says, contrary to Mr. *Adams*, that the Air is very healthy, but the People very poor. He adds, that there's a convenient Road here on the Lee-Side, as Providence has order'd it in *St. Thomas*, *Ascension*, *St. Helena*, *St. Jago*, and many other Islands, where the Winds generally hang towards one Quarter.

La Croix places this Island 25 Leagues from the Isle of *St. Thomas*, and 45 from *Cape Lopez Gonzalvez* upon the Continent. He says, here are several Springs and Brooks of fresh Water, which turn Salt in the New and Full Moon, when the Tide is high. It has some Mountains which reach to the Clouds, whose Tops are always cover'd with Snow. Both the Hills and Valleys abound with all Sorts of Plants, and

yield a charming Prospect. The Sides of the Rivulets are planted with Palm-Trees, from whence the Inhabitants draw their Wine, Ignames, Injames, Potatoes, Bananas, Ananas, Oranges, Sugar-Canes, and Tamarinds. They have also Rice, Maiz, or Turkey Corn, several Sorts of Beans, small black purging Nuts, and all other Kinds of Plants. Here are a great many Wild-Boars, Deer, and Goats, Hens, Pigeons, black and white Herons, and several other Birds. The Sea abounds with several Sorts of Fish and Oysters. *Mercator* and others say, this Island is both uncultivate and uninhabited, which is false, for *La Croix* tells us it is very populous. 'Tis true, some Years only a few *Portuguese* liv'd here, with 50 or 60 Negroes, upon Tillage and Fishing. But the *Dutch* in 1605 found two *Portuguese* and 200 Negroes here. The Town is encompassed with a Parapet, and contains 100 Houses built with Canes, except some Timber ones which belong to the *Portuguese*. The *Sansons* say, that in 1623 the *Dutch* Fleet had 200000 Oranges from hence in less than 4 Days, and there are some here which weigh 12 Ounces. *Heylin* says, there's abundance of Crocodiles and other venomous Creatures about the Shore, which destroy the Fish. *Bosman*, who was here in 1699, says, 'tis frequented by a great Number of Ships, as well those bound from *Guinea*, as those bound to *Angola* and the *East-Indies*. He tells us, 'tis better stocked with Cattle and Fruit than *St. Thomas's* or *Prince's* Island; but not above half so big as either. 'Tis commonly cover'd with a thick Mist like the former, yet the *Portuguese* here say 'tis more wholesome. The Land is full as high as *St. Thomas*, and the *Portuguese* report, that in the highest Place on't there's a Lake of very good fresh Water, about which the Air is cold as the severest Autumns in *Holland*. The Soil is good half-way up the Hills, therefore the *Portuguese* have till'd it so far; but below it seems dry and barren, tho' 'tis all over planted with Fruit-Trees, particularly Coco's, Limons, and Bakovens, so that 100 Coco-Nuts are sold for a Rixdollar, 1000 Oranges or Limons at the same Rate, and other Fruits in Proportion. In short, our Author calls it *Amalthea* and *Cornucopia*. They exchange their Hogs, Sheep, &c. for old Linen and

Woollen Clothes. The Inhabitants are Negroes, except the *Portuguese*, who treat them as Slaves, because they are descended from those Slaves which they first set on the Island, and they are all of them thieving Rogues. The Women are common Whores, and almost all of them very ugly. The *Portuguese* Governor has the honourable Title of Governador; but our Author says, he that had this high Post in his Time was so poor, that he would have been glad of a Crown, and so little revered, that he believed his Subjects would have broke his Head, and surrender'd the Island to our Author, if he had desir'd them, because being appointed a Rent-gatherer by the Proprietor of the Island, who was a *Portuguese*, to collect a Third of all their Cattle, Fruit, and Income, he fleeced the Inhabitants of one half, which has made him so hated, that they want to be rid of him. But our Author observes, it would not be serviceable to any Nation; for unless the Negroes are transported, they would fly on the least Difference with the Possessors to the Hills, which no *Europeans* could approach, and from thence oblige them to abandon it, as he says they served the *English* when we were in Possession of it. There were two *Capuchin* Priests here, great Brandy Drinkers, who were very profuse of their Holy Water, and shew'd him their Churches, which were very handsome, and large enough for four times the Number of Inhabitants then on the Island. There were some small Cannon, which they took out of a little *French* Pyrate that stranded here. One *Tho. Kent*, an *English* Captain here, at that Time, agreed to carry the Men and their Booty to the *French* Islands for Part of the Prey: Accordingly the Men put their Goods on board; but Captain *Kent* fir'd upon them as they were going to embark, and obliged them to keep ashore, while he and his Men sail'd away with their Goods. *Morden* says, the *Portuguese* live towards the N. Part of the Island.

5. ROLLER Island.

Mandelsloe places it 35 Leag. S. of *St Thomas* Island, and says, it abounds with Oranges, Citrons, Bananas, Ananas, Ginger, Poul-

try, Hogs, and other fresh Provisions; that 'tis one of the most convenient Places for Ships to refresh themselves in; and that it has a commodious Haven at 10 Fathom Water. *La Croix* says, it lies three Musket-shots from *St. Thomas*, and that there are 7 Rocks that appear above Water betwixt it and *Ilha del Gabres*; but that there's good Anchorage and Passage for Ships betwixt this and *St. Thomas*. He adds, that there's another called *Goat Island*, the same Distance from *St. Thomas*, which is hilly, and full of wild Limon-Trees. There's the same good Road betwixt both Islands.

6. CARACOMBO.

La Croix places this Island at the Mouth of a River near the Equinoctial, lower than the Island *Ferdinand Po*, below the River of *Gaba* or *Gabon*, and says, it abounds with Fruits unknown to *Europeans*, and several Sorts of Birds and other Animals, so that sometimes (if we may believe *Linschotten*) there are 100 Birds-Nests on one Branch, wonderfully secured from Serpents and Lizards. *La Croix* tells us, that the Women here prostitute themselves publickly to all Comers. Some of the Men went aboard a *Dutch* Vessel here, with a Drum and a hollow Stick instead of a Flute, a green Bow with a Bell, and certain little Birds of the Size of a Sparrow, which they let fly about the Vessel, while they tingled the Bell, which the *Dutch* interpreted as Tokens of their Friendship, and gave them a Pot of Palm Wine. Then some *Dutchmen* landed with them to truck Iron for Ivory, and when they came to their Village, they saw a little House 3 Foot high, cover'd at the Top, but open on one Side. There was a sort of Gallows on the Top, with a little Net spread over it; but they would not suffer any one to lift it up to see what was under. Over against this there was a Child's Skull upon a Stick, with a Bone in one of the Balls of its Eyes, and several others near it, the Earth being cover'd with Fish and other Animals, which made them believe it to be some Burial Ground. He adds, that the Inhabitants observe Circumcision, tho' they live without Faith and Religion.

B b b b b

Be-

Before we leave this Gulph, we will give a brief Account of the merry Custom us'd by Sailors when they pass the Line.

Angelo, a Capuchin, and Missionary to Congo, says, that the Portuguese, who have never been under the Line, must give the Sailors Money or a Treat, not excepting the Admiral or Capuchins themselves, of whom they take Beads, *Agnus Dei's*, or the like, which are sold for Money, wherewith they purchase Masses for the Souls in Purgatory. If any Man refuse to pay this Duty, the Sailors in the Habit of Officers carry him bound to a Tribunal, where a Seaman sits as Judge in a long Robe, examines him, and orders him to be thrice ducked in the Sea after this Manner: The condemn'd Person is ty'd fast with a Rope, and the other End of it run thro' a Pully at the Yard-Arm, by which he is hoisted up, and then plunged three times under Water. Our Author observes, that there seldom fails one or other that thus exposes himself to the Diversion of the rest, and that the same Custom is practis'd in passing the Streights of Gibraltar and the Cape of Good Hope. *Merolla*, another Missionary, says, 'tis a sort of Court erected by Consent of Commanders of Ships; that there are two Judges who sit at a Table, examine and lay a Mulct upon those that have not passed the Line, according to their Quality, as if they had omitted an indispensable Duty; and that the Money so raised is laid out in maintaining a Church. *Le Maire* says, this Ceremony is called Baptism, and us'd by all Sailors; and that 'tis also put in Practice upon all that never yet passed the Tropick. He gives a particular Description on't as follows: They set a great Tub of Water at the Foot of the Main-mast, with a Stick laid across it: Then those that have been already season'd in former Voyages smut their Faces, and walk in stately Procession round the Deck with Cutlasses, Frying-pans, and other Kitchen Utensils, and the Sound of Drums and Trumpets. The Pilot distinguishes himself by turning his Coat, and carrying a Rag for his Colours. When the Procession is over, they baptize the Ship, by flinging Pails of Water about the Deck, till the Captain gives the Crew some Drink and Money. Then they go first to the most considerable Men aboard, and make

them sit one after another upon the Stick just now mention'd. The Mob gets about him with a Bason to receive what they call his Baptismal Offering, holding a Scymiter across his Neck. Then the Pilot brings his Book of Charts, and makes the Patient put his Hand upon the Tropick Line, and swear to observe the same Ceremony for the future to those that are fresh Travelers. At last they mark his Forehead with a black Cross, fling a little Water upon his Head, and dismiss him, after a Present thrown into the Bason. Thus they use Men of Note very civilly; but if he be a mean Man, and will not pay something, they draw the Stick from under him, souce him into the Tub, fling Buckets of Water on him, and thump him with the Stick he sat upon. *Leguat*, who agrees pretty well in the Description, says, 'tis an ancient Custom, that they make rough Musick with the Kitchen-Vessels; that he was discharged from all this Penance for a Crown; and that the Captain was obliged to give Drink and Money to the Sailors to save the Beak-head of his Ship, for else they pretended they had a Right to cut it off. He observes, that every Nation practises this ridiculous Custom after a different Manner. Captain *Rogers*, Commander of the *Duke* Frigate, who begun a Voyage round the World in 1708 from Kingroad near Bristol along with the Ship *Dutchess*, and was present at the taking of the famous *Acapulco* Ship, says, that 60 of his Company were ducked after this Manner, and that others chose to pay Half a Crown Fine to be spent at a publick Meeting of all the Ships Companies when they returned to England, and that some desir'd to be duck'd 8 or a dozen times to have the better Title to the Treat.

VI. The Islands against Caffaria.

The chief are, 1. *St. MATTHEW's* or *St. MATHEO*.

Hylin says, 'twas discover'd much about the same time with the Islands in the Gulph of Guinea, and on the Festival of its own Name, according to *La Croix*, who places it in S. Lat. 1. 50. He says, the Portuguese lived here some Years, and that it has a Brook

Brook or Lake of fresh Water, Fruits, Fowls, Wild-Beasts, and Fish; but that 'tis now desert.

2. ASCENSION or ACEMSAON.

Admiral *Beaulieu* says, 'tis very high, and has good Anchorage over against a sandy Creek, but has no Wood, fresh Water, Herbs, nor nothing except dry Rocks and Mountains, but not so high as those of *St. Helena*, tho' 'tis larger. Nevertheless it affords some Hogs, and a great many Fowls as big as Geese, with abundance of Fish, particularly Flying ones, and Tortoises upon the Rocks and in the Road, which are eaten either fresh or salted. He places it in S. Lat. 8. and makes it 8 Leagues in Circumference. *Purchas* says, 'twas discover'd about 1501 by *John de Nova*, a Portuguese, and on the Festival so call'd, according to *Herbert*, who places it Lat. 7. about 720 Miles N. W. from *St. Helena*, and makes it above 30 Miles in Compass, but says, it has nothing remarkable. *Mandelsloe* makes the Distance from *St. Helen's* 190 Spanish Leagues, and places it Lat. 8 $\frac{1}{2}$. *Struys* says, some of the Tortoises are two or three Hundred Weight, and that the Mountains are full of Birds-Nests. *Navarette*, a Dominican Friar and Spanish Missionary, who was here about 1673, says, there's a high Pyramidical Mountain near the Bay of Anchorage, with two great Crosses on the Top, set up by the Portuguese. He places this Island almost Half-way between *Guinea* on the E. and *Brasil* on the W. which are 400 Leagues asunder. He says, those that sail this Way leave Letters in Bottles, and put them in a safe Place where they may be seen, to inform the next that come who are gone by, and the Success of their Voyage. *Heylin* says, 'twas discover'd by *Tristan d'Acuna* in 1508. *Morey* places it but 100 Leagues from *Brasil*, makes it 4 Leagues long, and one broad, and says, that Rain-Water stinks here in 24 Hours. *M. Rennefort* places this Island Lat. 7. 40. and Long. 7. 36. and says, he anchor'd here on the N. Side, when so many Thousand Birds crying like Crows, perch'd about the Rigging, that the Seamen, &c. killed 500 in a quarter of an Hour, and stunn'd as many others, so that they could only flutter about the Ship,

where they entangled and took them. They were so troublesome when ashore, that they struck off People's Hats and Caps, so that there was no Passage without beating the Air. They roasted some of them, which were very bitter, lean, and tasted of the Sea. He makes this Island but 7 Leagues in Compass, and says, there's very white Salt here, form'd by the Sun between the Rocks on the Shore. The Anchorage is from 14 to 17 Fathom, on a red sandy Bottom; the Crosses on the Mountain above-mentioned are of Fir, the least very ancient, and cover'd with obscure Characters; but on the biggest, which was new, there was *October 23, 1669.* and several Names, besides this Inscription the Year after, viz. *June 24, 1670. the French Ship la Force anchor'd here, and fish'd for Tortoises.* He adds, 'tis a little bigger than *St. Helena*, and not so mountainous, but has more barren Plains, and abundance of tame Sea-Birds, particularly those called *Boobies*, which freely suffer themselves to be touch'd. *Mr. Ovington* says, that notwithstanding its Sterility, 'tis generally us'd by our homeward-bound *East-India* Ships as a Place of Refreshment. The Soil is cover'd with Cinders and Ashes, which makes some think here was once a Vulcano; yet in some Parts 'tis fit for Tillage, and has a safe convenient Harbour, where the Mariners sometimes hunt and feed upon Turtles for 10 or 15 Days together, which they reckon both pleasant and wholesome Food. There are a few Goats here, but they are lean. Our Author says, when the Hunters turn the Tortoises upon their Backs, they shed abundance of Tears; that they are so strong beyond the Proportion of their Size, that some not above 8 Inches broad are able to bear the Weight of a Man, and so hardy, that after their Necks have been cut off, except by a small Piece of Skin, and their Guts taken out, some of them have open'd their Mouths, and their Hearts have moved for two or three Hours, tho' out of the Body. Nay, he says, that some have lived 12 Hours after their Heads were off. He distinguishes the Turtles or Sea-Tortoises into three Sorts, viz. the Hawk Bill, the Loggerhead, and the Green Turtle, which swim in the Water, and creep and eat Grass on Land. They have two Fins before like

Wings, and two broad and long ones behind like Feet. Their Head and Eyes are like those of a Hawk. Their Flesh is white, better than Veal, and is said to be good against the Scurvy and foul Disease; yet the *Dutch* won't touch them, and the *French* are so barbarous, that when they have turn'd more than they can spend upon their Backs, they sail away, and leave the rest to starve and stink above Ground. But our Author says, the *English* turn no more than they have Occasion for. He tells us, the Place here where the Mariners leave their Letters is called the *Post Office*, and says they are commonly put in a close cork'd Bottle, which the next that comes breaks, and leaves another in its stead. *Du Plessis* places this Island in Lat. 4.

3. St. HELENA or St. HELEN's Island.

Columbus says, that in 1497 a Skirmish happen'd here between the Negroes and the Portuguese under *Vasco de Gama*, in which many of the latter were wounded by the sharp long Poles darted by the Negroes, and forced to abandon the Island. Mr. *Francis Pretty*, who accompanied Mr. *Candish* of *Sussex*, the second Admiral that sailed round the World, says, there's Anchorage here in 12 Fathom Water, in a good Bay, under the N. W. Side of the Island, two or three Cables Length from the Shore. He places it as it were in the midst between Cape Negro in *Guinea*, and Rio Grande in *Brasil*, in S. Lat. 15. 48. and between 5 and 600 Leagues from the Cape of Good Hope. He says, that in 1588, when he was here, there was a Church with a fair Causeway leading to it, a Frame with two Bowls, and a Free-stone Cross near it, and the Inside was hung with painted Cloths, having an Altar with the Virgin Mary, and the Story of the Crucifixion pictur'd in a Table. It stood in a very pleasant Valley, full of choice Fruit-Trees and Plants, like a Garden, particularly Limon, Orange, Citron, Pomegranate, Date, and Fig-Trees, nicely trimm'd in long Rows, that presented the Eye with Blossoms, green and ripe Fruit all at once. It was water'd by several small Streams, proceeding from a clear Spring that rose at a Distance, and in short every Part of the Garden was blessed with the Productions ei-

ther of Art or Nature. From hence 'twas called *Church* or *Chapel Valley*. The Island abounded with Partridges and Pheasants, much larger and fairer than ours, and black and white Turkeys with red Heads; but their Eggs are quite white; and wild Goats as big as Asses, with Horses Manes and Beards down to the Ground, which sometimes go together in a Herd that reaches a-Mile in Length. There are also vast Herds of fat Swine, that keep chiefly upon the Mountains, as the *Cabrito's* do; but they are so wild, that there's no coming near them, except when they are asleep, or tumbling in the Mire. He adds, that the Wind is commonly off the Shore here. Admiral *Noort*, who was here in 1599, says, they refreshed themselves with good Water, Fish, and some Flesh, but could not meet with any *Cabrito's* or Fowl, (which are both hard to be taken) nor no Oranges. Mr. *Davis* of *Limehouse* places it in Lat. 16. and Long. 4. 30. E. from the *Lizard*, and 23 $\frac{1}{2}$. W. from the Cape of Good Hope, and says, 'tis one of the best Islands in the Ocean for a good Air, Road, and Refreshment; that the Anchorage is in a good safe Ground, from 7 to 12 Fathom; and that the Variation here is 7 Deg and a half from N. to E. Mr. *Halley* says, that about 1600, the Needle declin'd 8 Deg. to the E. in 1623, but 6; in 1677, but 40 Min. and in 1692, 1 Deg. W. of the N. Admiral *Beaulieu*, who was here in 1623, says, there's good Fishing here, and several choice Herbs, viz. Purslain, abundance of Tarragon, some Fennugreek, Tobacco, and Mayoc; that here are some Pigeons and Oxen; and that tho' the Island is mountainous, and looks as if it was wither'd, yet there's a great deal of Moisture on the Top, and not a Gap or Valley without a Brook or Rivulet, the greatest of which runs in the above mentioned Valley, where a Chapel is built, tho' the Valley is not above 150 Paces broad, and 1000 long. He adds, that there's a ragged Cleft-hill of Rocks at the End on't, upon which a Stream of Water falls down from a very high Mountain; and that the Needle vary'd here in his Time 5 Deg. $\frac{3}{4}$. N. E. and has always the Wind at S. E. *De la Val* makes its Distance from the Cape of Good Hope quite 600 Leagues. He says, that upon the Altar of a Chapel here he found

found several Letters, advising that the *Dutch* had passed this Way, and that the Air, Fruit, Flesh, and Water, of this Island, are so healthy, that his Men, who were much oppressed with the Scurvy, recover'd here in 9 Days. *Purchas* says, this Island was found in 1501 by *John de Nova*, a *Portuguese*. *Sir Thomas Herbert* says, it lies in a rough Sea, without any Isles near it, and that 'twas so called by *John de Nova* on May 3, the Day which is dedicated to the Empress *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine the Great*. He places it Long. 22. W. or 1740 Miles from the Cape of Good Hope, 400 Leagues from the Continents of *Africa* and *America*, 3000 Miles from *Madagascar*, 6600 from *Surat*, 6900 from *Bantam*, and 4500 from the Land's-End in *Cornwal*. He says, 'tis not above 30 Miles in Compass, but very high, and blessed with moderate Rains. The Sea here is very deep, so that the Tide is hardly visible, and there's bad Anchorage, except at the N. W. where 'tis 20 Fathom, so that he advises to carry the Anchors ashore. The Land is so steep and difficult of Ascent, that the Sailors say, *That a Man may chuse whether he will break his Heart in going up, or his Neck in going down*. But he says when a Man is up, no Place can yield him a better Prospect. The Land is very plain at Top: It has some Springs, which tho' sweet at their Rising, become brackish by running thro' the Salt Hills, and drawing near the Sea. There are but two Rivulets of Note, viz. one running down to the Chapel which was built by the *Spaniards* in 1571, but pulled down by the *Dutch*, and put to common Uses, the other running into *Limon Valley*, so called from a *Limon Tree* growing there. There are the Ruins of a little Town demolished by the *Spaniards*, because it was a Magazine of a private Trade from both the *Indies*; but there are no other Monuments or Antiquities. There were no Inhabitants in our Author's Time, and he saw none of the Fruits mention'd by *Mr. Candish*, except one *Limon-Tree*, but Store of Pouts, Quails, and Hens, among other Birds, and Plenty of Herbs and Roots sown by a *Portuguese* in 1509, such as Wood-Sorrel, three Leav'd Grass, Basil, Parsley, Mint, Spinage, Fennel, Annise, Radish, Mustard-Seed, and the like. He adds, that Captain *Parker*

found a Mariner here that was left ashore 18 Months before by Captain *Kendal* in 1591, who dy'd with Joy at the Ship's Arrival, for then the Island was uninhabited; and that when he wrote, which was in 1677, the *English* and *Dutch* us'd to dispute the Propriety of this Island with the *Portuguese*. He gives a View of it, for which we refer the Curious to his Book. *Mandelstoe* places it in Lat. 16. 12. 350 Leag. from *Augusta* or the Cape of *Angola*, 550 from that of *Good Hope*, and 510 from *Brasil*, and makes it but 7 Leagues in Compass. Our Author says, that in 1639, when he was here, it excell'd most *European* Provinces in the Plenty of Fruits, and all Sorts of Creatures, which some say were first planted and brought hither by the *Portuguese*, and he says they improved to such a degree, that 'twas then able to furnish whole Fleets with Refreshments; Figs, Pomegranates, Oranges, Citrons, Goats, Hogs, *Barbary* Hens, Pheasants, Partridges, Quails, Peacocks, and Pigeons, being to be had here at all Seasons of the Year, besides vast Quantities of Fish and Salt, enough for keeping them. It produces so many wholesome Herbs, that the *Portuguese* used to leave their sick Men here, who certainly recover'd against their coming back the next Year. Its Mountains are so high, that they are seen 14 Leagues off at Sea. The *Portuguese* never attempted to make a Settlement upon it, for fear of giving Umbrage to other Nations trading in these Parts, and because of its great Distance from the Continent. There are daily Showers of Rain, to which, and the Sun's extraordinary Heat at Intervals, he ascribes the Fruitfulness of the Island. He says, Ships may take in fresh Water at the Mouths of three Rivers which rise in the Mountains, and fall into the Sea. They abound with Snakes, which the *Dutch* eat as a better Dainty than Eels. *Strays* says, there's a well tasted Sorrel here, as purgative as *Sena*.

Navarette observes, that if the *Portuguese* had kept Possession of this Island and the Cape of *Good Hope*, they might easily have lorded it in *India*, because Ships would be at a loss for fresh Water and Provisions; but he says the *Dutch* took it till they fix'd at the Cape, when they lost it to the *English*. Nevertheless the *Dutch* retook it afterwards,

wards, and the *English* beat them out on't again. *Struys* says, it was retaken from the *English* with about 300 Men the beginning of the Year 1673; but that 'twas surrender'd 4 Months after upon honourable Terms to the *English*, who landed under Captain *Monday*, and climbed up the Rocks in the Night, from whence they fired next Morning on the Fort. *Navarette* tells us, the Island is encompassed with very high Rocks, and looks like a great Castle; and that there's no Harbour, but safe Anchorage in *December*, because then the Winds come over the Island. The *English* in his Time, which was about 1673, lay in a Valley, without Tree, Bush, or a Foot of Strand. There is no Wood, and beyond the Rocks 'tis said there's a pleasant plain Ground, well water'd. Here he says there's a little Town of *English*, who till the Ground, sow Rice, and make Butter and Cheese, and have some Fruit, Swine, and Goats, that were put in by the *Portuguese*. The Governor in his Time was Mr. *Richard Cung*, an *Englishman*, and there was a pretty good Fort and Garrison. He adds, that about 27 Years before, a *Portuguese* Carrack being cast away, the Men set the Swine, Goats, and other Cattle which were aboard, upon the Island, where they increased so fast, that 12 *English* and *Dutch* Ships putting in there soon after, found Provisions enough for them all. Nay, the very Dogs multiplied, and hunted the Calves and Kids. There's abundance of Pigeons here all white, which are called the Pigeons of *St. Helena*, to distinguish them from those that have been carried from several Parts of *India*.

Mr. *Nieuhoff*, who was here in *March* 1658, places it in Lat. 16 $\frac{1}{4}$. and says, it has many fine Valleys, planted with Oranges, Limons, Pomegranates, and all Sorts of Trees; that there's one called the *Apple Valley*; and that in the *Church Valley* are still to be seen the Ruins of the *Portuguese* Chapel above-mentioned. He tells us, that after the *Portuguese* left the Island, an Hermit here us'd to kill great Number of Goats, and sell their Skins; but the *Portuguese* having Notice on't, remov'd him; and that at another Time some Negroes, with two Female Slaves, got into the Mountains, where they increased to 20, and then were

forced away by the same Means. The Valleys are excessive hot, but the Hills are cool enough, and the Springs are so clear, and reckon'd so wholesome, that the Seamen drink and bath in them as soon as they arrive. Their Timber is fit for nothing but to burn. Their wild Hogs are sprung from the tame ones brought over by the *Portuguese*. Their Partridges, Pigeons, and Peacocks, are so shy, that there's no catching them without a good Company. It produces no ravenous nor poisonous Creatures, except large Spiders and Flies; but there are vast Multitudes of Sea Gulls about the Island, which feed upon the Fishes. There are several choice Dying Colours here, especially a good Red, and a fine white Salt form'd by the Sun out of the Sea-Water. The neighbouring Sea is full of Mackarel, Carps, and other Fish, which are only to be caught with the Angle, because 'tis so deep. There are also vast Quantities of Craw-fish, Crabs, Oysters, and Muscles, near the Shore. Our Author gives a View of this Island, for which we refer to himself. Sir *William Monson* makes it but two Miles in Compass, and says, the Fish hereabouts are better tasted and wholesomer than all others. *La Croix* says, there's a great Rock on the S. Side a quarter of a League from the Shore, which is haunted by the greyish Birds call'd *Fools*, and the white and black ones call'd *Frigats*; that the *Apple Valley* is so named, because it yields Fruit enough to load 5 or 6 Ships; that there's good Anchorage on the E. Side of the Chapel close under the Island; that 'tis extraordinary cold upon the Mountains; that the Soil produces wild Pulse in untill'd Places, together with Radishes, Turneps, Cabbages, Ananas, Bananas, Melons, and whole Woods of Orange, Limon, and Pomegranate Trees, which are hung all the Year with Flowers and Fruit, besides great Forrests of Ebony and Lignum Rhodium; and among other Antiscorbutical Herbs, wild *Roman Cammomile*, and *Alkekengi*. Among other Animals, there are Woodcocks, Wild-Boars of divers Colours, and Horses so wild, that they would sooner fall down the Precipices than be taken. Their Flies are as green as Grasshoppers, and there are Thousands of black and grey Water-Hens, that lie about the neighbouring

ing Rocks and Islets on the S. There are some Mountains that contain choice Saltpetre, red Bolus, and a fat greyish Clay like *Terra Lemnia*. On the S. E. Side there's a Mountain full of red Earth, and on the E. there's one of a fine Azure Colour, clear at Top, and dark at Bottom. Among other Fish, here are Flying Fish and Breems, which, together with their Mackarel, differ from ours in Colour. Their Snakes are as big as one's Arm, their Oysters are better than ours, and their Muscles stick so fast to the Rocks, that there's no dividing them without a Knife. M. Rennefort, who was here in 1666, says, there's a Water-fall between two great Rocks by the *English* Fort, from whence a Current is turned thro' Pipes for Mariners to fill their Vessels. The Governor's House is at the Left Hand of the Entrance into the Fort, built after the *English* Model, and cover'd with the Tiles which served to ballast a Ship. There was an Ascent by a Balcony of 6 Steps into a great Hall of Arms, kept in excellent Order. At the 4 Corners, there were 4 Apartments of three Rooms each, hung with *India* Stuffs and *Persian* Tapestry, and furnished with Beds and Seats of grey and black Ebony, turn'd and trimm'd with gilt Buttons. They were adorned with Pictures, particularly that of King *Charles II.* in the best Place of the Governor's Chamber, and that of *Cromwel* at his Bedside upon the Hangings. The Soldiers of the Garrison have 20 Rooms in a Row at the Right Hand of the Fort, which is encompassed with Rocks. It is triangular, and has three Bastions, two of which are mounted with 7 great Iron Cannon pointed towards the Water, and the 3d, which is behind, has four, and would serve instead of a new Fort, if the Place was in Danger. On the Side of the two first there were two Redoubts, with two Cannon each, pointed towards the Sea. There's no Landing-place in all the Island but at this Fort, where the Ascent is with great Danger on the Right Side from Ladder to Ladder for near a quarter of a League. 'Tis so healthy, that for 6 Years, before our Author's Time, there dy'd but one Man, and he killed himself by a Fall in ascending it. Vines will not thrive here, and there are abundance of Rats which gnaw the Rice and Corn. The Governor's

Name was *Robert Stringer*, who had a Wife, a Son, and 5 Daughters; but they afterwards went over to *England*. His Lieutenant was *Alex. Bouthler*, and the Inhabitants were about 50 Men and 20 Women, that were maintained with Bisket, Oil, and Salt-Beef, at the Charge of the *English East-India* Company. Most of them had Houses here, and came in their Turns to the Fort to watch and ward; but when a Ship comes in Sight, they all assemble there together in an Instant. Some of them were appointed to take Care of about 80 Bulls and Cows, which multiplied exceedingly, and the Governor kept 4 Women to milk his Cows, and make his Butter. There were also 6 Negroes taken by some *English* Captains at *Madagascar*, and presented to the Governor. He shewed our Author the Rarities of his Cabinet, such as the Skin and Bones of a Sea-Cow, a Flying Fish, *Ambergreece*, *Indian* Stuffs, 5 Pounds of Civet in a Glass Bottle, a bluish Stone, and other Curiosities. The *French* that accompanied our Author bought Boxes of Civet, *Cornelian* Rings, Agat Hafts, *China* Sattin, Porcellane, Japan Canes, and other *Indian* Merchandizes, with which the *English* here were well provided. The *French* paid 60 Piasters for two Civet-Cats, and they made the Governor a Present of *Spanish* Wine. In 1670, several Ships were here in the Spring, which made Provisions so dear, that the *English* rated a Calf at 7 *Spanish* Pistoles, and a Kid at 15 Franks. There were no Hens nor Sheep to sell, yet they kept 200 Cows for Butter and Cheese. At that Time there were 34 *English* Men, 14 *English* Women, and 18 Negroes of *Madagascar* and *Angola*. There's good Water to be had on the Left Side of the Entrance into the Fort; but there's no Wood to be got, except in the Mountains a League from the Harbour. That Year some Apple-Trees began to come up, and they gather'd a Bushel of Corn. Our Author makes this Island but 5 Leagues in Compass, and adds, that there are abundance of Rabbits.

Dampier, who was here in 1691, says, the Air is commonly clear, except in the rainy Months, and that there are certain moist Seasons to plant and sow. He extends it 9 or 10 Leagues in Length, and places it 3 or 400 from the main Land. He says, there's

there's Landing at two or three Places, and that he was informed there are some Trees in the Valleys fit for Building. This Island has belong'd ever since 'twas taken by Captain *Monday* to the *English East-India Company*, who have strengthen'd it with Men and Guns enough for its Security. The common Landing-place is a Bay like a Half-Moon, scarce 500 Paces wide, between the two Points. Close by the Sea-Side there are good Guns, planted at equal Distances from one End of the Bay to the other, besides a small Fort a little farther from the Sea, near the midst of the Bay, so that 'tis impossible to force it. The small Cove where Captain *Monday* landed his Men when he took the Island, tho' scarce fit for a Boat to land at, is also fortified. The *English Town* here contain'd in our Author's Time 20 or 30 little Houses, whose Walls are built of rough Stone, and but meanly furnished within, for they stand empty except when Ships are here, because the Owners have all Plantations farther in the Island, which afford Potatoes, Yames, Plantanes, and Bonanoes, Plenty of Hogs, Bullocks, Cocks and Hens, Ducks, Geese, and Turkeys, which they sell at a low Rate to the Sailors in Exchange for Shirts, Drawers, or any light Clothes, Callicoes, Silks or Muslins, Arack, Sugar, and Lime-Juice: But while our Author was here, they were in Hopes to have Wine and Brandy of their own, for he was told they already began to plant Vines, and had some *Frenchmen* to manage them. There are Sea-Lions here. Most of the Islanders are very poor, but keep several Punch-houses, and have proper comely Daughters, which often marry the Seamen or Passengers, on purpose to see the World.

Mr. *Ovington*, who was here much about the same Time with *Dampier*, brought over several *French* Refugees with him, who were kindly entertained by the Company, and some advanced to considerable Posts. He saw this Island 25 Leagues at Sea. He says, the Serenity and Temperateness of the Air gives the Islanders as fair and fresh a Complexion as those in *England*. He observes, that one Cause of the Poverty of the Place is, because they are not permitted to trade with so much as one single Vessel, and have no Clothes but what are transported from

Europe, or come by Accident. Nevertheless the Island was very populous at his Arrival, and upon his Enquiry how so many Women came thither, he was told that they were decoyed hither by a false Report spread in *England*, that all the single Men upon the Island were either Commanders or Lord's Sons; whereas they only found them poor honest Husbandmen and Mechanicks. He says, the Soil is fruitful enough to bear many Hundreds for one Grain of *Indian Corn* that is sown in it; but then it requires several Inches of Ground for its Growth, and before it comes to Maturity most Part on't is devour'd by the Rats and other Vermin. Their common Pasture, instead of Grass, is Mint and Purslain. The Company's Affairs here are managed by a Governor, Deputy-Governor, and Storehouse-keeper, who have standing Salaries allow'd by the Company, besides a publick Table well furnish'd, to which all Commanders, Masters of Ships, and eminent Passengers, are welcome. The Natives sometimes call the Results of their Consultations severe Impositions; and tho' Relief may perhaps be had from the Company in *England*, yet he observes that the unavoidable Delays in returning a Redress at that Distance does sometimes put the Addressers under a Hardship; and he thinks, that were not its Situation very serviceable to our *East-India* Ships homeward bound, the constant Trouble and Expence would induce the Company to abandon the Island, for tho' 'tis furnished with Conveniencies for Life, yet it has no Commodities of any Profit to Merchants. He says, Turkeys are of late wonderfully increased, and that the Governor's and some other Gardens are stocked with Plantanes, Bonanoes, and other choice Fruits brought from the E. The Soil is generally of a reddish Colour. The Inhabitants are lewd, tho' the Company allow a Minister here 100 l. a Year, besides Gratuities from the Inhabitants, which he partly ascribes to the Poverty of the Place.

Mr. *Lockyer*, who was here in 1706, makes it 20 Miles in Circumference, and says, that in *Chapel Valley* was *James Fort*, of 10 small Guns, which he was told was demolished afterwards, and a much larger erected in its stead. There was also a Platform of 29, and 3 at the Landing place. Bank's Place.

Platform had 6, *Rupert's Platform* 17, and in *Limon Valley*, where the *Dutch* formerly landed, was a Platform of 6 more; all which have received considerable Additions since the Loss of the *Queen* and *Dorset*. There is no landing to the Windward, and all the Creeks and Bays are secur'd as above, besides Alarm Guns on the Hills. All Things are dear to Strangers, except choice Roots and Limons. They had then about 1500 Head of Black Cattle, with Plenty of Hogs, Goats, Turkies, and all Sorts of Poultry. Their chief Grain is Kidney-Beans, from 8 to 12 s. a Bushel. A small Ox is sold for 6 l. and Turkies for a Dollar apiece. The common People subsist chiefly on Potatoes, Yams, Plantanes, Pulse, and Fish, as Horse-Mackarel, Conger-Eels, Water-Snakes, &c. and if they can get Flesh once a Week, they reckon it good Living. The Company allow the Soldiers salt Meat; but how often, our Author does not say. Both these and the Mechanicks may earn a great deal of Money by their Labour. Their common Drink is plain Water or Mobby, which is but one Remove from it. The chief Town, which is in *Chapel Valley*, had 40 or 50 Houses in his Time. Many of the Girls that belong to the Punch-houses dress up while Ships are here; but as soon as they are gone, run up and down again bare-foot. The Masters of the Plantations keep a great many Blacks, who upon severe Treatment hide themselves for a quarter of a Year together, keeping among the Rocks by Day, and roving at Night for Provisions; but they are generally discover'd and taken. The Island produces here and there a Drug like Benjamin, and great Plenty of wild Tobacco on the Hills, which the Slaves use to smoke for want of the right Sort. The Inhabitants are supplied with Necessaries twice a Month out of the Company's Store, at six Months Credit. The chief Commodities for Sale here are Cherry-Brandy, Malt, and Cyder, Spirits, Beer, *Madera* and *Canary* Wines, and *Spanish* Brandy, which may be taken in at those Islands, *Batavia* Arack, Sugar, Sugar-Candy, Tea, Fans, China, Lacker'd Ware, Silks, *China* Ribans, coarse strip'd Ginghams, ordinary Muslin, coarse Chints, blue and brown Longcloths, Salam-pores, and all Sorts of coarse Callicoes. An *English* Shilling goes for the same Value here, but a Crown is 6 s. in Account; but

to be chang'd into small Money, Five Shilling Pieces are a Crown. A *Spanish* Dollar is reckon'd 6 s. and a *Venetian* Ducat 9 s. Their Weights are the same as ours.

Luyts makes it about 13 Leagues in Compass, and thinks it deserves to be called the *Inn* or *Storehouse of the Sea*. He places it 1550 *Spanish* Leagues W. from *Goa*, 1000 from *Lisbon*, 520 from the Cape of Good Hope, 370 from *Angola*, and 540 from the E. Coast of *Brazil*. *Morery* says, 'twas first discover'd by *John Pimentel*, Vice Admiral of the first Fleet *Emanuel* King of *Portugal* sent to the *Indies*, who was drove on Shore here by a Tempest. Most of the Waters have a Mineral Taste, and the Island is very subject to sudden Storms of Wind, and dreadful Thunder and Lightning, especially about the Time that the Sun approaches the Equinox, insomuch that Masters of Ships are obliged to carry little Sail, and they are commonly follow'd by great Calms, which are very troublesome to those that want Water or Provisions, when they chance to miss of this Island in their Passage between *Mozambique*, or the Isle of *Madagascar* to the *Cape Verd* Islands. *Heylin* says, our *East-India* Company first settled a Colony here in 1660. 'Tis reckon'd to be farther from the Continent than any other Island in the World. Some say, there's another Island call'd *New St. Helena*, 160 Leagues farther W. but *Du Plessis* says, this and the invisible Island of *St. Borondon* among the *Canaries* are both equally Fables.

There are two other Islands about the Cape, which we shall just touch upon before we proceed to *Madagascar*.

1. *CONEY Island*, in Lat. 33. 27. near the Coast on the W. Side of the Cape. Mr. *Davis* of *Limehouse* says, it has bad Ground about it, and a dangerous Ledge of Rocks on the W. Side to the Seawards, but that there's safe Passage betwixt it and the Shore. Sir *Thomas Herbert* says, 'tis but small, yet abounds with Coneys, from whence it has the Name, Pengwins, and Seals.

2. *PENGWIN Island*. Captain *Middleton* says, it lies near *Soldania*, and has abundance of those Fowls, from whence it has the Name, so that they go 500 in a Flock, besides great Numbers of Seals all about the Shore, Geese, Ducks, Pelicans, and several Sorts of Wild-Fowls.

VII. The ISLANDS over against Zanguebar.

1. MADAGASCAR or St. LAWRENCE Island.

De la Val places it between S. Lat. 14 and 26. *Herbert* from 16 to 26. Some begin it at the 11th, and others at the 12th Deg. but *Moll* from Lat. $11\frac{1}{3}$ to $24\frac{1}{3}$. and the *Sanfons* begin it on this Side the 12th Deg. and extend it beyond the 26th. *La Croix* says, 'tis called *Madecase* in the Language of the Country, *Magaster* according to *Paul* the *Venetian*, or *Albarera* according to *Thevet*, and *Sarandib* by the *Persians* and *Arabians*. *Mercator* calls it *Insula Santi Georgii*. The *Portuguese* call it *San Lourenco*, from its first Discoverer *Laurence Almeida*, Son to *Francis Almeida*, chief Viceroy of the *East-Indies* for the King of *Portugal*, who in 1506 anchor'd here the first time; but our Author thinks it owes its Name to the Saint's Day on which it was discover'd. Some say that *Pliny* call'd it *Cerne*; *Ptolomy*, *Menuthias*; and *Diodorus*, the Island of *Jol*; but our Author does not believe that the Ancients had the Knowledge of any Countries S. of *Sier-ra Leona*. It extends in Length from N.N.E. to S.S.W. beyond the Line, viz. from Cape *St. Sebastian* to that of *St. Mary*. *Linschotten* places it 126 Leagues from Cape *Corientes* on the Continent, 110 from *Sofala*, and 44 from *Mozambique*.

'Tis said to be one of the biggest Islands in the World: Some make it 200 and 220 *German* Leag. from N. to S. 70 in Breadth, and 600 in Compass. *Cauche* extends it 260 *French* Leag. in Length, 100 where broadest, and 800 in Compass. *La Croix* says, the Sea is very strong betwixt this Island and the Continent, and forms a Canal that *Moll* calls the *Mozambique* Chanel, the S. W. End of which is 85 Leagues over, the Middle over against *Mozambique*, where 'tis narrowest, but 44; but then it enlarges it self on the N. E. Side, where there are several Islands. 'Tis the common Passage for Ships between *Europe* and the *Indies*, unless stormy Weather obliges them to another Route.

La Croix divides this Island into several Regions or Provinces, of which he treats

in their Order, and says, that most of them are of the same Name with the several Rivers which water them; that all the E. Side of the Island runs directly from N.N.E. to S.S.W. viz. from the Cape of *Itapera* or *Fitorah* to the Bay of *Autongil*, and from thence to the End of the Island N. From the Cape of *Itapera* to the Country of *Carem-Boule*, the Coast runs W. in the Figure of a quarter of a Circle. From *Carem-Boule* to the Mouth of the River *Sacalites*, the Coast runs towards the N.W. From thence to S. Lat. 17. it runs almost N. inclining a little to the E. and from thence to the 14th Deg. it runs directly N. It has several Rivers, fine Bays, good Roads, and Harbours. The greatest Part of the South Coast, from Cape *Itapera* to *Carem-Boule*, was formerly possessed by *Europeans*, especially the *French*; but our Author says, the ill Management of the Directors of the *French East-India* Company obliged them to abandon it. He tells us, that they were the first Discoverers of the Coast between the Bays of *Autongil* and *St. Augustin*, and fortified themselves in the S. E. Side of the Province, which he calls *Carcanopi*, where they built Fort *Dauphin*, of which more hereafter, and discover'd the Inland Countries from S. Lat. 19. to the S. End of the Island. He owns, that the *Portuguese* and *Dutch* have discover'd several Maritime Places of the Island, but says, that neither of them ever went so far into it as the *French*.

Herbert says, 'twas discover'd by *Tristan d'Acuna* in 1508; but he observes, that the *Spanish* Writers differ very much in this Point. He extends it 1000 Miles from Cape *Roma* in the S. S. W. to that of *St. Sebastian* in the N. N. E. and 100 where narrowest, which some make 230, and *Oforius* 400. *Sir Thomas* says, the N. End parallels *Cuama* in *Quiloa*, and the S. End the River *Magnice*. *Struys* places it between S. Lat. 11. and 26. and Long. 72. and 81. and extends it 350 Leagues where longest from N. to S. 120 where broadest, and 900 in Compass. The *Sanfons* extend it from N. N. E. to S. S. E. viz. from *St. Sebastian's* Cape to that of *St. Romain* 400 Leagues, and make it 60 or 75 Leagues broad towards the Equator, and 120 or 150 towards the S. Side. They observe, that some interpret *Madagascar* for the

the Island of the Moon. Sir William Monson places it 500 Leagues from the Cape of Good Hope. M. Rennefort extends it from Lat. 11. to 25. 50. or 336 French Leagues in Length, and 120 where broadest towards the S. Some affirm the Length to be 1200 Miles, and the Compass 4000. Heylin extends it from Lat. 17. to 26. and places it 170 Miles from the Point, which Ptolomy call'd *Prasum* in *Mosambique*. The Nubian Geographer makes it but 1200 Miles in Compass, and 80 Leagues square. Pory makes it but 400 in Compass, and yet says 'tis bigger than Italy. Morery says, the French call'd it the Dauphin's Island in the Reign of Henry IV. He makes it but 50 Leagues long, and 100 or 80 broad, and places it under the Torrid Zone and the Tropick of Capricorn. M. Dellon extends it to S. Lat. 27. and makes it 750 French Leagues in Compass. Morden places it 90 or 100 Leagues from the Continent, and makes it 340 Leagues in Length. Du Plessis says, that 'tis not so big as California, and makes it 300 Leagues in Length.

La Croix says, it abounds with Iron and Steel, which their Smiths forge and purify with more Ease than ours. They lay the Oar after they have reduc'd it to Dust over burning Coals, between 4 Stones plaister'd all over with Clay, and blow with Bellows made like a Piece of Ordnance, or a Wooden Pump, which melts the Metal in less than an Hour. Then they take out the cast Iron, and cast it into Bars of 3 or 4 Pounds Weight by means of a great Fire. There are also Mines of fine Steel in some of the Provinces, and in others Iron, which differs not from it in Goodness. There are no Mines of Silver, but 'tis very common here since the Shipwreck of a certain Dutch East-India Vessel (that was laden with it) on their Coast. They have three Sorts of Gold; that of the Country, which is a little palish, melts as soon as Lead, and is almost 20 Florins an Ounce. The second is the Gold of Mecca, which the *Rohandrians* bring with them from their Country. 'Tis very fine and good Ducat Gold. The third is that brought hither by the Christians, which is more difficult to melt in their Way. Their own Gold is of three Sorts, one very fine, another coarser, and the 3d Sort between both.

There are Precious Stones of several Sorts in their Rivers and Brooks, particularly Chrystals, Topazes, Grenats, Amethysts, Eagle-stones, Emeralds, Sapphires, Hyacinths, Jaspers, Blood-stones, Cornelians, Touch-stones, and the like. *La Croix* thinks it evident, that here are all Sorts of Minerals, from the many Saline, Sulphurous, Bituminous, and other Waters, which attract Medicinal Qualities from the different Soils and Metals which they pass thro'. They have 6 Sorts of Honey, all of a different Taste, viz. that of Bees, that of certain green Flies, and two Sorts of the Honey of Ants, one of which is made by the Ant-Flies that gather in the Holes of Trees, and the other by that Sort which is bigger, but not winged, and make their Honey on the Hills of their own raising. There's another Sort of Honey, or rather Sugar, which is dropped by Flies upon little Shrubs, and turns afterwards into Spots, or little yellow, green, or red Bits. There's another Sort of Honey too that is supposed to be venomous, and made by Bees that suck the Blossoms of a poisonous Tree. The Inhabitants make three Sorts of Wine; first Mead, which is common, and another Sort from Sugar, which is bitterish. They boil the Sugar-Canes in Water to the Consumption of one Third, then pour it out into great Gourds, which in three Days makes it so strong, that it will eat thro' an Egg-Shell in less than a Night. They make a 3d Sort from the great Bananas boil'd 4 or 5 Hours, which is sowerish. There are several Sorts of Oil with which they rub themselves, tho' sometimes for want on't they use the Fat of Oxen mix'd with Wax. They have several Sorts of Earth, viz. Red Earth, which is good as the Bole-Ammoniack of the Apothecaries, and that called *Terra Sigillata*, the same that is brought from the Isle of Lemnos; and *Flacourt* says, that of Madagascar is as good as the other. There's another white Earth like Chalk, which serves to whiten Linen instead of Soap. There are several Gums, some fragrant, some stinking, and others without any Smell at all, some of which are used instead of Glue, and there's one white Sort made by Ants, that hangs at the Branches of Trees. They have Musk, and two Sorts of Dragon's Blood.

It abounds with divers Sorts of Plants, viz. Rice of several Sorts, two of which are barbed and white, the others without a Beard, with a red Chaff or Husk, which turns to the Colour of a Rose when boil'd. One Sort grows only in Winter, and another only in Summer. There are several Sorts of the Root Igame, some white, some of a Violet Colour, and others of a light Grey, which are very well tasted: Some are as big as a Man's Middle, so that two Negroes can scarce carry them; but most of them are as big as a Man's Leg, and 100 or 150 of them purchase an Ox. There's one bitter Sort, which the Islanders soak, and boil the Bitterness out. Then they sell it, and the Negroes count it a Dainty, and some dry them in the Sun till they are hard as Wood, so that they'll keep a Year or two. There's another Sort of an agreeable Taft, of which one Plant only shoots forth 10 or 12 Roots, which are no bigger than a Hen's Egg, and have the Taft of Chesnuts, only they are more savoury, and don't load the Stomach; but they are cover'd with a little Skin, which is bitterish. One Sort is like Vine Roots, bears black Berries, and has a Muskish Taft. Its Wood dies every Year, and its Leaves are like those of a Vine. 'Tis very insipid, and difficult to digest, so that 'tis only eaten in Time of great Scarcity; and there's another Sort which grows in the Ground, is as big as a Man's Head, with a grey Skin, and they eat it either raw or dress'd. There are other Roots with a reddish Skin that grow under little Shrubs, some of which are as big as a Man, and very sweet, but moist, so that they satisfy both Hunger and Thirst, are eaten raw, digest well, and cause Urine. They have a Sort of Cabbages with round Leaves, large enough for Umbrella's, which they boil with Meat, and are as good as Artichokes. There's another Root like a Turnep as big as one's Thumb, which is so fruitful, that one Plant produces 100 Roots in a Year. There are three Sorts of Nenuphar, with white, yellow, and violet Flowers, and may be eaten boil'd or roasted, as we do Chesnuts. The violet Sort is very sweet, and eaten by both Sexes to provoke Lust; but the others have the contrary Effect.

They sow a great deal of Barley here, which grows to the Height of a Pike, is

ripe in June, and is hard of Digestion. They have little Beans, which are well tasted, whether ripe or not, but load the Stomach. They are sown in June, and are ripe 3 Months after. They sow small Pease at the same time, which come up well, and they have a sort of French Beans. There's one Sort which comes up well enough, but the Fruit lies under Ground, and every Husk contains but one Bean. It has Leaves like those of Trefoil, but no Branch nor Stalk. There's another Tree which in every Kid bears one small Pea, and grows as big as a Cherry-Tree; and in one of the Provinces they maintain Silk-Worms, with its Leaves. They have Plenty of Bananas, which in some Places they put in all their Preparations. Some are as big and long as a Man's Arm, and some bear Fruit half so big. The Bananas are very nourishing, and they roast them like Apples when ripe. They often gather the unripe Grapes, and hang them up to the Cieling, where they ripen in less than a Fortnight. In some Parts they spin the Bark of this Tree, and make Habits on't. They have Plenty of Ananas, and Water-Melons of two Sorts, some black, and others red. The Inhabitants eat them to cool their Thirst in the excessive Heats. There are other Melons like ours, and Gourds that thrive well, whose Seed was first brought from France. They are of two Sorts, viz. long and round. They boil the long ones before they are quite ripe, and eat them with Milk or the like; and when they are dry, they use them instead of Bottles. There's abundance of Sugar-Canes; but the Inhabitants know not how to take out the Sugar, so that they only draw a Wine from them, which is not so good as Metheglin, and will not keep above 3 Days. There's a great Tree on the Coast which bears a Fruit called *Poanato*, that is nourishing, but clammy, and the Inhabitants eat it alone, or with Milk and Salt. The Wood is very substantial, fit for Building, very even and smooth, and not subject to rot. There's another Fruit called *Vontaca*, as big as a Quince, with a Skin as hard as that of a Gourd, and full of flat Kernels. The Juice and Pap, when 'tis ripe, tastes and smells well; but 'tis bad for the Stomach if it be not ripe. *Garcias* calls them the Quinces of *Bengala*. They draw

a Wine from them which tastes like Beer, and loosens the Belly, but causes Gripings. They fatten Hogs with the Fruit when 'tis ripe. They have white Pepper enough to load a Ship every Year. The Turtles and Wood-Pigeons feed upon it, and it ripens in *August*, *September*, and *October*. They have the Great Cardamum, Malaguetta, or the Grain of Paradise, which bears a red Fruit and a white Pulp, of a pleasant sharp Taste, with black Kernels. There's also very good Ginger. *Flacourt* says, they have but little; but *Cauche* tells us, there's great Plenty of it over the whole Island, and that the Islanders plant nothing else about their Houses to keep off the Rain, and near the Hives to feed the Bees. There's another Sort called Hog's Ginger. They have a few Coco-Nuts, supposed to have been first drove upon the Shore above 60 Years ago by the Sea, and sometimes there are Coco-Nuts still to be seen floating near the Shore, which 'tis said come from some Country where the Coast is planted with those Trees. There's also *Indian Saffron*, and Buck-Wheat, which is yellow in the Inside, and tastes like Ginger, only 'tis not so biting, and serves for dying or seasoning Victuals. There's another Fruit called *Voatzatre*, which grows upon a pretty large Tree with broad Leaves. The Fruits grow together like a Bunch of Onions, are each as big as an Egg, and full of Juice, and the dry Paring has an Aromatick Taste, and is good to eat. The Natives use the Leaves to make Cords, Mats, and Baskets. There are abundance of Vines, whose Grapes are ripe in *January*. There's a little Plant called *Anboutou*, like Flax, which has a bitterish SRIPTICK Taste. The Natives chew it to blacken their Teeth, Lips, and Gums, and to sweeten their Breath. 'Tis corroborative, and much used in Time of Famine. There's another wild Fruit called *Lengou*: The Natives chew its Skin to blacken their Mouth, Teeth, and Gums. It has several Angles, and tastes like a great green Nut. There's another stinking Herb call'd *Zanale*, that creeps upon the Ground, and is very much coveted by the Natives for the same End as the former, and to cure ulcerated Gums; but those that chew it contract an intolerable stinking Breath. There's also Betel, which they chew with a little Lime

as they do in the *East-Indies*; but in some Parts they chew it with a certain Fruit like the *Indian Areca*. There's a Plant called *Banghek*, of which they make Indigo for Dying, by infusing the Stalks and Leaves when they begin to blossom in Water, and stirring them every Day with a Stick. Two or three Days after, when 'tis rotten, they strip off the Shanks and Fibres, draw off the Water, which is charg'd with a Violet Colour, into a Tub by a Hole at the Bottom of the Vessel, strain it thro' a Sieve, put some Olive-Oil into it, mix them well together, and stir them. Then they let the Dye settle to the Bottom; after which they draw the Water off again by some Pipe, or else sponge it out till there's nothing at the Bottom but the Lees, which is the true Indigo, and then they dry it upon a broad clean Stone. There's a Sort of Balm with great Leaves, that grows two Inches high, and smells like Cloves and Cinnamon. There's a great deal of Oriental Cypress along the Rivers and Marshes, which they use against Pains in the Head. There's a Plant called *Anromatico*, two Inches high, which bears a hollow Flower and Fruit like a Vessel with a Cover to it. There are two Sorts, some with red Flowers, and others yellow. The Inhabitants dare not gather them, and pretend that such Travellers as do will be suddenly overtaken with Rain. These Flowers will hold each a Gallon of Rain-Water, if we may believe *La Croix*. There's another Plant that creeps on the Ground, and bears small Pease or red Beans. Their Goldsmiths use it to solder Gold instead of Borax, which they know nothing of. For this Purpose they grind them to Flower, and mix them with the Juice of Limons. There's another Plant called *Fionnouts*, with yellow Flowers, and thick Leaves. The Women apply it to certain Parts of their Body to fetch off the Hairs. They also burn it while green, when it smells like Melilot, and of the Ashes they make a Cosmetick. There's a Tree call'd *Fimpi*, which is as big and as high as an Olive. The Bark is of an Ash-grey Colour. It smells like Musk, and has a more biting Taste than Pepper. The Wood is very white and hard, and smells like Aloes, and the Leaves have the same Scent as the Bark. They are jagged, a little bigger than those of the Great Myrtle,

Myrtle, and have almost the same Smell, which causes Sneezing. There's Ebony, which grows in the Trunk of a great Tree that has little Leaves of a dark Green like those of a Myrtle. There are 3 or 4 Sorts on't. There's another Tree which bears a Fruit a little longer than one's Finger, of an Ash-grey Colour, with Leaves like those of a Pear-Tree. The Fruit contains a white sweet Juice, which they use to curdle Milk. There are Box-Trees, and another Sort that bears Pulse. There's another Tree whose Wood has a Smell almost like Cummin-Seed, but stronger, and the Bark is like that of Elder. The Inhabitants use it against the Fever and all Wounds, for which Purpose they bray it upon a Stone with Water. There's another Sort of Wood, the Heart of which is full of Veins of a green Colour, which has the Smell of Roses, and is commended as a Remedy for Pains in the Heart, and for Swoonings, if apply'd to the Stomach after 'tis bray'd on a Stone with Water. The Tree of which the Inhabitants make their Canoes is never Worm-eaten, and it produces a Gum which is said to be good for Wounds. There's another Tree that produces Benjamin, and a very strait high Tree, whose Wood is blacker than Ebony, and without any Knot, Fibre or String, so that it may be plan'd as smooth as a Horn, and the biggest Part of its Trunk is not above 7 Inches thick. But there's a Sort of black Wood which is more crooked, grows in stony Places, is encompassed with Thorns, and has very few Leaves. Its Blossom smells well, as does also the Wood when 'tis kindled, and there are some of these Trees that have a thick Trunk and Branches. There's a Sort of Tree called *Zaga*, of which they make Handles for their Zagays. There's an Apple-Tree, whose Fruit when ripe opens into 4 Parts. The Pith is full of Kernels, and cover'd with a thin Orange-colour'd Skin, that makes a Sort of Dye. There are also a great many Tamarinds, and a little Shrub called *Vahats*, the Bark of which, when stripp'd from the Roots, serves for Dying. While the Roots are fresh, they are easily separated by Water; but when they are dry, it can't be done without a little Wooden Knife. When they use it, they boil the Bark over a sober Fire with the Silk or

Wool they would dye, in Lye made of the Ashes of the said Bark. There's a Tree called *Anghive* of two Sorts, one bigger than the other. The least bears a Fruit as big as Gooseberries, and the biggest a Fruit as large as a Hen's Egg, and both are of a Scarlet-Red, and well tasted. The Decoction of its Roots is prescribed for the Heat of Urine and the Gravel. There's a Plant called *Varancoco*, which twines about great Trees, and bears a Violet-colour'd Fruit as large as a Peach, of an agreeable Taste, but sweetish and clammy, with four great Kernels in the Middle. The Wood is fit to make Hoops, but they'll not last above a Year, because they are apt to be Worm-eaten. There's a red resinous Sort of Gum in the Bark, which melts and smells like a Candle. The Tree called *Rhaa* or the Dragon-Tree is as big as a Nut-Tree. The Bark, Branches, and Trunk, contain a Juice as red as Dragon's-Blood, for which Reason the Apothecaries have given it that Name. The Wood is white, and soon subject to rot. The Leaves are like those of a Pear-Tree, but a little too long. The Flower is as red as Fire. The Fruit is as big as a little Pear, only 'tis bigger towards the Tail or Stem, and forms as it were five Horns. It contains a Stone within it, which is cover'd with a single Membrane, and has the same Form, Colour and Smell, as a Nutmeg. Some say, that when this Fruit is par'd, it shews the Mark of a Dragon; but *Flacourt*, who par'd several, denies it. There are three Sorts of this Tree, says *La Croix*, which bear different Fruits. They draw an Oil from the Stones, which is commended for a sovereign Remedy against Inflammations, Burnings, St. *Anthony's* Fire, the Itch, and Scabs. 'Tis also said to be anodyne, and that the Decoction of the Bark is good to stop the Bloody Flux. There's a Sort of Jessamin-Tree like ours, with fragrant Flowers, which the Women infuse in the Oil of Sefamum to perfume it. There's a little Tree called *Langhare*, which commonly grows in the Hedges and Thickets, with long jagged Leaves, and strait Stem and Flowers that grow in the Bark of the Trunk without any Shank, which are of a Blood Colour, and so biting, that if chew'd they cause Spittle, and loosen the Belly. 'Tis said, that the Wood bruise'd and swallow'd,

low'd, or only hung about the Neck, is good to stop the Hiccough. There's a Tree called *Mimboube*, that bears fragrant Flowers that cheer the Heart, and a great Tree called *Horame*, that produces a certain Gum well known among the Apothecaries by the American Name of *Tacamahaca*, which is properly Rosin. The Tree is about the Size of a Poplar, with long strait Leaves, and thick resinous Fruits as large as a Prune or a great Nut. The Wood is fit to make Planks for Barks and Ships. Here grows also the Banian or spreading Fig-Tree of the Indies. There's a great Tree called *Endrachendrach*, the Wood of which is yellow, and smells like Sandal. 'Tis heavy and as hard as Iron, and loses no more by lying under Ground than Marble. There's a Shrub called *Ferocosse*, that bears little round Cabbages good to eat. There's another called *Sira Manghits*, the Wood of which strengthens the Heart. The Leaves have the same Smell as white and yellow Sandal, the Bark smells of a Clove, and it yields a fragrant Rosin. That called *Fooraha* yields a green fragrant Balm, which is a powerful Remedy against all Sorts of Wounds and Bruises. The Women mingle it with their Oils to anoint their Hair, and it bears a large Fruit. There's another Tree called *Arindranto*, whose Wood, when rotten and burnt, yields a wonderful good Smell. *Lassa* is a creeping Plant, which yields a Gum like Scammony. It purges very violently. *Laldits* is a fine woody Plant, which bears red Flowers in a Bunch like a Plume of Feathers. The Seed provokes Vomits, but the Root stops them. *Pendre* is a Tree like *Rauwer*, and of the same Height. It casts forth Leaves very sharp towards the End, and higher than those of Aloes, and produces 10 or 12 white Flowers of an admirable Smell, which in the Sun-shine the Women infuse in the Oil of Sesamum. That called *Apocapouc* is a Tree with Leaves and Flowers like those of the Laurel: The Fruit is rank Poison, yet they extract an Oil from the Stones, which are as big as an Almond, to anoint the Hair. There's another Tree call'd *Oviau*, which bears a Sort of Almond, from whence they draw a choice Oil for anointing their Hair, and seasoning their Provisions. There are also a Sort of Bamboo-Canes: The Natives cut

and burn them, and dung their Rice-Fields with the Ashes. Some are as big as a Man's Leg. They are all high, black, round, and the chief Ornament of the Country. Every three Years they bear a Fruit no bigger than a small Bean, of which they make as good Meal as we do of our Corn. 'Tis as useful to these Islanders as the Coco-Tree is to the Indians, for they make Pots of it for boiling their Rice, Buckets and other Vessels for drawing Water, Bottles, Knives, Pens, Violins, Harps, Measures for their Rice, Stables, Pipes, Tinder-Boxes, little Wherry-Boats for only two Persons, Roofs, Cielings, Planks, and Props for Houses and Chairs to carry great Persons in; for which End they bend them as soon as they begin to grow. The Bark of the Tree *Amporcfritchi* is good to make Cordage. The Leaves of the Tree *Tacroule* have no Shank, and grow round the Branches as if they were glued. *Ouvave* is a kind of knotted Reed like the Indian Canes: The Root is good to eat. The Wood is of a Violet Colour, and serves for dying Red. There are a great many true Grapes in some Parts of the Island, but the Inhabitants dare not taste them, because they know not their Quality. There is good Tobacco every where, besides several Sorts of Jessamin. They have also a great deal of Hemp, which *Flacourt* says the Natives cultivate with a great deal of Care, and smok the Leaves when dry'd instead of Tobacco, which makes them sleepy; but when they awake, they are brisk and merry, and pretend that they have had pleasant Dreams; but none except their old Women and Priests, and some Negroes, use this Custom to drive away Care and Melancholy. They throw away the Stalk of the Hemp, instead of spinning it into Cordage. They have Leeks, Purslane, Lettice, Skirwort, Cabbages, Radishes, Dill, Turkey Wheat, Mustard, and White-Thorn. There's a great Tree called *Voarats*, whose Leaves are like those of an Olive, which, with the Height and Extent of its Branches, makes it yield a fair Prospect. The Fruit is very tart, and as big as a Cherry, with a thick Shell like that of a Nut. There are three Sorts of them, viz. the white, black, and red. There's another sweet Fruit of a Violet Colour, no bigger than a red Gooseberry, which gives a Black and a Violet Dye.

There

There are white Mulberries here of such a strong Taste, that they fetch the Skin off one's Tongue. The Fruit is like ours, but the Leaves are different. *Tounboba* is the Fruit of a Tree like a little Pear-Tree, which kills Dogs. The Tree is very high, the Wood is of a Musk Colour, harder, and more massy than any Tree in this Country; but it may easily be polished. The Leaves are long, like those of an Almond-Tree, and bear Flowers like those of Rosemary. It has no Smell, and turns at last into Fruit. There's another Fruit call'd *Voanane*, half a Foot long, which is composed of 4 Parts, and tastes like stony Pears. 'Tis a sovereign Remedy against Looseness. There's a Plant call'd *Fonts* or *Dourou*, which grows in Form of a Plume of Feathers, the Leaves being a Fathom in Length, and two Foot broad. There are some that are above 8 or 10 Foot long, besides the Stem, which is sometimes two Foot more. *Voa* is another Fruit like a Grape, but as long as an Ear of Turkey Wheat. It lies in a hard Husk. Every Grain or Berry is like a large Pea, encompassed with a blue Skin, of which they make Oil, and of the Grains or Berries they make Meal to eat with Milk. The Inhabitants commonly chew it with a Sort of Betel-Leaf and a little Lime, as formerly mentioned, to preserve Health and a sweet Breath. They build the Walls of their Houses with the Stalks of this Plant, and they'll last 6 Years, as will also the green Leaves, which serve for Mats, Plates, and Cups. The *Alamatous* are supposed to be a Sort of black Prunes, because they taste like them when ripe; but they have no Stone, and only 10 or 12 small flat Kernels. They grow also upon a Shrub, whose Leaves are like those of our Prune-Trees. There's a great Number of these Prunes about a certain Harbour here, which the French have for that Reason named the *Port of Prunes*. There is another Sort of the Size of a wild Prune, which has the like small Kernels instead of a Stone, and tastes like Figs. Too many of them cause a Pain in the Stomach. There's Plenty of sweet and sower Pomegranates, which ripen in November and December, as also several Sorts of Oranges, particularly small ones of a delicate Taste, that is sweetish. They are no bigger than a Prune, have a very fine Colour, and hang 10 or 12 upon

one Stem. There are 7 Sorts of Citrons, some sweet, large and fair, some common, and others sharp, and no longer than Prunes. Two Sorts have the Taste of Musk, and are long, of which some are large, and others small. There's another Sort as big as an Infant's Head, cover'd with a thick Shell, which is good to candy. *Ravenfara* is a great Tree like a Lawrel, only the Leaves are smaller. The Fruit is like a great green Nut, and tastes like Cloves, as does also the Rind and Leaves. The Blossom has the Form of a Clove, as well as the Taste, Smell, and Vertue; but the Tree only bears Fruit once every three Years. When the Inhabitants have a mind to the Fruit and Leaves, which they strew with Onions and Ginger in a Dish of Fish, they don't climb the Tree, but cut it near the Root. *La Croix* adds, that this Tree grows upon the Mountains, and that it is Male and Female. He and *Flacourt* mention several other Trees, Fruits, Herbs, and Plants; but these being the chief, we refer the Curious for the rest to their Books.

Admiral *Lancaster* says, that here's Plenty of Limons. Captain *Keeling* tells us of a strange Plant here, which he supposes to be a wild Coco-Nut. 'Tis of a shrubby Nature, and comes up with several prickly Stalks near two Yards long, with a Leaf at the End of each, indented half round like Sword Grass, and as big as that of a Cabbage. Out from the Tops of these Stalks, among the Leaves, shoot forth great Numbers of woody Branches, very thick set with Fruit, of the Colour and Size of a large Catherine-Pear, and like a Sheep's Bell in Form, with a Rind bearing forth near the Head, which is flat at Top, smooth within, and hard almost like the Coco-Shell, and there's a Kernel within which is hard, but may be eaten, and contains a Spoonful of cool clear Water like that of Coco. There's another Tree he says as large as a Pear-Tree, thick set with Boughs and Leaves like those of the Bay-Tree, which bear a mighty, great, round Fruit, that hangs on a strong Stalk, divided by Seams thro' the whole Length of it into 4 Parts. The Rind is vastly thick, and if cut while green, it yields a sort of Turpentine. It has a Kernel of a darkish Colour, hard, bitter, and very ill tasted. Admiral *Beaulieu* says, they have white

white Pease as big as a Musket-Ball, the best he ever saw, and that they eat them raw, as their best Food next to Milk. They have also small Cucumbers, which they eat raw. *Herbert* says, the Air is wholesome and temperate, except when the Sun is in or near the Zenith, and that the Soil is rank in most Places, because they have Rain every Week, and Wind continually blowing from the Mountains in the Morning, and the Ocean in the Afternoon. He adds, that they have Wheat and Cuscus, Limes, Toddy, &c.

M. Rennefort says, the Island has high steep Mountains, fine Plains, and large Forests of Trees always green, and so hard, that they blunt the first Stroke of the Ax; yet the Branches scarce come to the Size of a Man's Arm in 20 Years. There are a great many Ditches in the Woods, where the Leaves, &c. that fall into the Water, stink and infect the Air. Here are also several great Rivers, Lakes and Fountains, whose Waters are better than those of *France*. The red Rice grows best in the Mountains, and the white in the Marshes. He tells us, that such of the Inhabitants as have the foul Disease swallow the Leaves of a certain Shrub like *Philariot*, and lie along the Hearth near a Fire, which makes the ill Humours seek Vent, and commonly to break thro' the Soles of their Feet. There is *Ambergreece* upon the Coast, that is nothing but the Spawn of Fishes, which is thrown upon the Sand, and hardens in the Sun. They have *Ising-glass*, which they use for their Windows, and Mines of Coral and Saltpetre. *Le Blanc* says, they have *Brasil* Wood, of which they make their Bows and Arrows, together with *Sycamores* and *Mastick*; that they have Mines of good Silver, but are too lazy to work them; that they have Spices, which they candy for eating; that they have yellow, red and white, large Melons, much more delicate than those of *Provence* or *Spain*; that they have 5 Kinds of Dates and other Trees, which yield them excellent Drinks, Fruits, and Strings, with which they make Thread-Shoes after the *Spanish* Manner; and that there's one Tree of which they make Cloth as fine as Silk. From one certain Nut they draw Oil several Ways, by pressing what is within, and pouring hot Water on't, which

makes an Oil like that of Almonds, or else pressing a little Kernel that grows within it when 'tis ripe, which is like that of a *Pumpion*. They extract a good Oil also from the Grain or Nut which is in common Dates, and sow their Sails and the Apparel of the poorer Sort with the Prickles which grow about the Leaves. They make a Compound of the Juice of *Igname*, which tastes like *Aquavitæ*, and is very nourishing with Sugar and Cinnamon. He adds, that there's a Root call'd *Jagua*, which, when dry'd, yields Flower, whereof they make a delicate Pudding, with Milk, Sugar or Honey, and Eggs. *M. Dellon* says, they have no Iron in the whole Island, but Plenty of Copper. The *Nubian* Geographer, who wrote in the 12th Century, says, it produces *Camphire*, *Millet*, *Beryl* in its Rivers, and Pearls on its Shores. *Morery* says, they have Rocks of *Chrystal*, and choice white Marble; and that they have never no Snow nor Ice. The *Sanfons* tell us, they have several Sorts of *Mirabolans*, and that called the Sensitive Herb; the Leaves of which shut into one another, decline towards the Ground, and then open again by degrees.

La Croix says, they have great Numbers of Four-footed Beasts, Insects, Birds, and Fishes. There are three Sorts of Oxen, some with Horns, others none, with round Heads, and some with Horns that hang to their Heads only by a Bit of Skin. They have all great Bunches of Fat in their Neck, which the Inhabitants melt and use for Butter, and make Candles of their other Fat; but some, tho' they are fat every where else, have little about the Rump. They have abundance of Buffaloes, which the Natives say were tame formerly, but became wild because of the frequent Wars in the Country. They are like those of *Europe*, only they have longer Legs, and run about the Woods in Herds. There are abundance of Goats, of which the Females bring forth 4 young ones three times a Year; and Sheep whose Tails are so thick and long, that the Fat alone weighs 25 Pounds, yet they don't melt it. The Flesh of both Kinds is very good, and they eat it when dress'd. There are great Numbers of Wild-Boars in the Woods, which spoil the Rice-Fields, and have two Horns on each Side their Nostrils like Bunches of
D d d d d hard

hard Skin. The Flesh of these Boars, especially of their wild Sows and Pigs, is very tender. The Lard of the tame Hogs is so very good and wholesome, that a Man may safely eat as much as he will on't, because their chief Nourishment is Land Tortoises and their Eggs. There's also a Sort of Porcupines in abundance, which they call *Tindrac*, whose Flesh, tho' they have a long flabby Fillet, is reckon'd a great Dainty by the Islanders. *La Croix* says, they sleep 6 Months together under Ground, during which they shed their Prickles, and have new ones in their room, which are as sharp as those of Hedgehogs, of which there is also great Plenty. There's a Creature like a Badger, which preys upon the Poultry. Its Flesh is ill tasted, especially that of the Females and young ones. There is another voracious Beast of the Size of a Fox, which has a great long Tail, and Hair like that of a Wolf. There are also little Dogs with a long Snout, and short Ears and Hair like a Fox. Some are partly white, and partly black. They have several Sorts of Apes and Monkeys. There are some great white ones, with black Spots upon their Head and Sides, and a long Snout like a Fox's. They are as fierce by Nature as Tygers, and 10 of them together make as great a Noise in the Woods, that one would think there were 100, and 'tis difficult to tame them. There's another much smaller Sort, with grey Hairs and flat Noses, that are easy to be tamed, as are also another more common Sort, which are grey, with long Snouts, and great hairy Tails like those of a Fox. They make several Grimaces and Postures, and if not taken while young, will starve themselves. There are also a middling Sort of white Apes, well furnish'd with Teeth, with white Tails, and two Spots upon their Sides in the Likeness of their Teeth. There's a great Number of white Apes in some of the Provinces, with black and white Tails. They ramble in the Woods 30, 40, and 50, in a Company. There are other grey Apes, with Eyes sparkling like Fire, and short Hair; but they are too fierce to be tamed, and starve themselves when taken. There are grey Squirrels, which commonly lie in the Holes of Trees, and are not to be tamed. There's a little Creature like a Weasel, of a dark

Red, which loves Honey, and smells like Musk. There's abundance of Civets, which some of the Islanders eat as a great Dainty. There's a Creature as big as a Heifer of two Years old, with a round Head, a Man's Face, and Feet like those of an Ape. It keeps for most-part in a Desert near the Lake *Lipomani*. The Inhabitants fly from it at first Sight, and the Creature does the like at the Sight of the least Person. There is another Creature as big as a great Dog, with a round Head, and like a Leopard. It devours Man and Beast, and is seldom seen, because it keeps on the Mountains. There's another very large Beast with round Feet, like those of a Horse, and such long Ears, that when it comes down from the Mountains, it can scarce find its Way, because they hang over its Eyes. It makes a great harsh Noise like the braying of an Ass, and some think it a kind of Ass. There's a Mountain 12 Leagues from Fort *Dauphin*, which the French have called by the Name of this Beast, because it commonly resides there. There's another Beast with a Horn in the Middle of its Forehead, which is as large as a Goat, and very wild. There are no Elephants, Tygers, Horses, Lions, nor other Beasts here which are hurtful to Mankind.

La Croix says, they have several Insects, particularly one of the Size of a small Lizard, whose Neck and Tail are divided into so many Parts, that it sticks as close to the Rind of Trees as if it was glew'd. Its Mouth is always open to catch Spiders, Flies, &c. There's another Insect that leaps upon the Breasts of those that come near its Tree, and sticks so fast upon the Skin, that they can't take it off without cutting the Skin underneath with a Razor, so that the Inhabitants are much afraid on't. There are abundance of Camelions, Mice, and Land and Water Rats. There's a kind of Serpent as big as a Man's Arm, which is not venomous, but the Natives are much afraid on't. It lives on Rats, and young Birds that it devours in the Nests. There's a Sort of Serpents no bigger than Quills, which creep into the Fundaments of those that go to Stool, and gnaw their Intrails, which soon proves mortal, for it creeps in after such a Manner, that 'tis difficult to take it out. There are many other Serpents, for

for whose Names we refer to *La Croix*. There are several Sorts of Scorpions, particularly Water-Scorpions, which lie in the Marshes and standing Waters, kill the Beasts and Dogs, and then suck them. There's another Sort of Scorpions with a great, round, black Belly. 'Tis very dangerous, for those whom it bites immediately swoon, and some are two Days weak, and as cold as Ice. The only Remedy they have is the same us'd against the biting of Serpents, *viz.* they set the Patient by a great Fire, and give him Antidotes to expel the Poison, which proves a Cure. There's another creeping Animal that grows between the Bark of Trees that are rotten and Worm-eaten. 'Tis as long as the Palm of one's Hand, has as many Legs as a Caterpillar, is flat, slender, and has a very hard Skin. Its Bite is venomous and mortal, if the same Remedies be not used in time as are applied against the Sting of Scorpions. They have also Moths, Earwigs, Bugs, and several other noisome Insects. There's one like a Bug, but not so stinking, which multiplies exceedingly, and grows at last to the Thickness of one's Thumb, when it takes Wings. The young ones swarm in their Houses, Cottages, and Presses, where they gnaw every thing they can find, especially Clothes. There are Party-colour'd Butterflies, some that are mix'd with a Gold, Silver, and other Colours, and others that proceed from Beetles, which keep upon the Rind of a certain little Shrub, where they look like white Flowers, and change again into Beetles of divers Colours. They are diversified with Green, Red, and several other Colours, and make Honey as sweet as Sugar upon the Leaves of the Shrub. There are a great many Sorts of Snails, which have each a several Name. There's a Sort of Beetle which sparkles in the Night in the Woods and upon the Houses like a Flame of Fire. There are also several Sorts of Caterpillars and small Ants that infest their Houses, and eat their Honey, Milk, and other Provisions; but there are some Ants that swarm and make Honey in hollow Trees and Hillocks. They have several Sorts of Worms. Their Earth-Worms are long. There are some in the Woods that gnaw the Trees, and there are some that have a Head like a Gimlet. There are others cover'd with

Shells that gnaw the Sides and Planks of Vessels, which they never pierce quite thro', but obliquely. There are 4 Sorts of Silk-Worms, some which only produce a Cod cover'd with little Prickles; others have a large Cod, which sometimes contains above 500 small ones; and there's a 3d Sort that make their Silk upon a Tree that grows near the Sea Side. Their Cods hang by a little Thread, separated from one another, and the Silk which they weave is the finest and strongest of all; but there's a 4th Sort which also make a very fine Silk upon another Tree. There's a certain Insect that lies among the Rice, and devours it as the Weevil does the Corn. There are a great many Land-Tortoises of two Sorts, and large Toads and Frogs.

La Croix says, they have Plenty of Birds, but all smaller than ours. They have Cocks and Hens that lay Eggs, but they are no larger than those of Pigeons. They have Pheasants, and one Sort that has a red Bill, and Feathers of a Violet Colour. Their Flesh is very tender and well tasted. There are Wood Pigeons of Violet and Green Colours, Turtles, little black Parrots, and some few of a dark Red. There are some Greenfinches no bigger than Sparrows, which whistle and sing like others, abundance of Woodcocks; black, white, and grey Eagles, with very fine Feathers; wild Storks with red Combs upon their Heads, common Teals, and another Sort with red Legs and Feet; Pelicans, white and black Herons, Wagtails, &c. There's a Bird with Feathers as red as Fire, and another which they call the Bird of Death, because they say it makes a great Noise near the Houses of such who will soon be surpris'd with Death or a long Sickness. There are white Birds that always fly after the Oxen and Cows, and live upon the Flies and Beetles that follow those Cattle; but they are very lean. There's a River-Fowl like a great Pelican, with a long white Bill. There's another Bird with black Wings, Feet and Bill, and always cries *Tahia*, from whence it has that Name. There's another River-Fowl of the Size of a Hen, with Feathers of a Violet Colour, and a red Bill and Feet, and another with a red Comb, and black Feathers and Feet.

Mr. *Finch* says, there's good Fishing at *St. Augustin's Bay* for Shrimps and Smelts, of which some of the latter are a Foot, and some of the former 10 Inches long. He commends the sandy Shore of the Lowland as the best Place for this Sport, where all the Natives ply with their Nets, for he says 'tis dangerous to fish in the Rivers there, because of Aliigators. They made him pay a considerable Rate for Cattle there, and would take no Payments in any Metal below Silver, whereas they might then have purchas'd as much Cattle at *Soldania* for the same Value in old Iron as would have stocked two or three good Farms; but he owns these are better than those of *Soldania*, tho' the Make is much the same. He says, that the Woods abound with those Creatures call'd the Beautiful Beast, which are about the Size of a Monkey, with small Heads and long Tails, and a fine Ash colour'd Fur streak'd with black and white; that there are Bats here almost as big as Coneys, headed like a Fox, with a thick hairy Fur, but in all other Points like other Bats, only the Wings of some are an Ell long; that there are also great Numbers of Bastard Hawks; that some of their Herons are blue and Party-colour'd; and that upon the Hills there are abundance of large Spiders that carry their Webs from one Tree to another, and spin strong substantial Silk of a yellow Colour, as deep as is made so by the finest Dye. Admiral *Beaulieu* says, their Oxen are not so high nor large as those in *France*, but short and thick, with a little Head, and short and thick Neck; yet he tells us, that for half a Silver Chain, which was 5 Foot and a half long, he purchas'd one of the stateliest Oxen he ever saw, which would have been worth 100 Livres in *France*, for it was so strong, that tho' it received in its Head two Pistol-shot, one Harquebuse, and one Musket-shot, yet they were forced to stifle it under Water, and give it several Blows on the Head with an Ax before they could get it aboard. He says, their Sheep have a Head and Wool like those of *Barbary*; but their Ears hang down like a Hound's; and that their Fowls are large, fat and thick.

De la Val says, that about *St. Austin's Bay* they are infested with Gnats in the Night-time, which pierce the Skin till the Blood

comes; that their Sheep bring forth three or four Lambs at a time; that their Cattle are common to all that catch them; that there are generally 2 or 300 Bulls and Cows in one Herd, which when they cross a broad deep River, the Cows raise their Heads upon the Bulls Rumps, and so get over. He observes, that the Intrails of their Crocodiles smell like Musk. *Herbert* says, they have big Bon'd, fat, and Camel-back'd Antelopes, red and fallow Deer, Leopards, Pards, and Salamanders, which have venomous Teeth and Tongues, but their Flesh may be eaten without Danger. They lie in moist shady Places, and seldom appear but before a Storm. He adds, that they are so venomous, that if they do but touch an Apple-Tree, it infects the Fruit, and poisons those that eat it. *Mandelsloe* says, that from the 5th to the 8th of *August*, he saw such a Multitude of Grasshoppers at *St. Austin's Bay* as darken'd the Sun; but one Shower of Rain soon dispersed them all, and the Inhabitants eat them; that there are Oysters as large and delicious as ours; and that in the Woods there's a Sort of Fowls like our Turkeys, with black Bodies, and little white Spots, Heads of a blue and red Mixture, and yellow Horns on their Foreheads. He adds, that they feed by Hundreds together. The *Sanfons* say, that their Goats are very high, and their Pigs very small; that some of their Tortoises have smooth beautiful Shells, large enough to cover 10 or 12 Persons; but that those of others are no more than 3 or 4 Foot in Diameter; and that there are abundance of Crabs and Lobsters on the Coasts, in the Rivers, on Land, and even on the Mountains; if there be Trees to shelter them, where they lie like Rabbits, and never go out of their Holes but in Time of Rain to catch Frogs and other Insects. They report, that some Years ago, the *Dutch* having landed near *St. Peter's Banks* on the N. E. Side of the Island, the Crabs attacked them in Squadrons, so that they were forced to defend themselves by Barricadoes, &c. but not without great Difficulty, and the Loss of some of their Men. They add, that their Pheasants are stronger and finer than those of *France*, their Partridges bigger, and of several Colours; that some of their Parrots are as large as Ravens, others of a middle Size, and some

as small as Larks, and all of different Colours; that they have Birds not inferior to those of the *Canaries*; that their Bees are small, but make good Honey; that their Ants fly, and leave a white Gum that sticks like Glue upon the Thickets; that they have a small Fly called *Colibri*, which scarce weighs two Bees, and lives on nothing but the Dew it sucks from Flowers; and that among other Fish, they have very large Thornbacks. They add, that the Natives think the Monkeys can speak, but won't for fear of being put to work. *Le Blanc* says, their Sheep have no Fleece, but Hair; that here are Birds of Paradise that live on Mushrooms, and fragrant Flowers; that their River-Tortoises are fat delicate Meat, but cause Dysenteries; that their Crocodiles come sometimes above a Mile on Land to feed on Cattle, and devour them at a Morfel, but that they are caught by Hooks fasten'd to a strong Cord made of Canes, and baited with straggling Sheep or Goats; that when taken, they make hideous Cries, and shed abundance of Tears; and that their Flesh is white and of a good Taste, like Capon, but that they don't eat it in *Lent*. In short, he adds, that the Island so abounds with Cattle, that formerly the Natives often gave a fat Sheep for a Counter or a Leaf of Paper, and 4 Cows for a sorry Piece of Leather. *Nauvrette* says, the Cows Bunches are so large, that he saw one that weighed 36 Pound; that 'tis all Fat, except a few Strings of Lean, which they slice and fry together for an excellent Dish. *Heylin* says, here are great Numbers of Stags, and such abundance of Elephants, that they yearly export great Store of Ivory. *Luyts* says, they have Camels and Lions. *Struys* observes, the Flesh of their Swine and Wild-Boars is fuller and more tender than those of *Europe*; and that the Flesh of their Porcupines is tough; that their Dogs are for most part flat Nos'd; that there's a large Sort of Apes that walk only upon their hinder Feet, whose Skin is white and tawny, and which ravish all Women they meet, and then tear them in Pieces; and that there are Polcats, Weasels, and Wood lice.

M. Dellan says, that sometimes here are such Swarms of Locusts as occasion a Famine, so that the Cattle die for want of Food, it being not the Custom of the Na-

tives to lay up any thing for future Use; that they are no bigger than those in *France*, but fly much farther as they are driven by the Wind; that the *French* eat 'em as well as the Blacks, and all affirm, that they are of a good Taste; that the Crocodiles often attack the Negroes as they pass the Lakes and Rivers in their Canoes; but they make a great Noise to scare them away; that 'tis an amphibious Animal as well as the Tortoise, and only differs from the Lizard in Bigness, and that some are 30 or 40 Foot long. Our Author denies the Fable of the Methods us'd by the Crocodiles to draw Persons into their Reach, and the Story of the Spittle which they leave behind them; and he observes, that as soon as they are got ashore, their Courage, Activity and Strength, leaves them. He also contradicts the Story that Camelions live upon nothing but Air, and open'd several which he found full of Flies. He says, that the Natives look upon the Crocodiles as Devils, and swear by them; and that when they have any Dispute, they appear on the Shore of some Lake or River, where he that is to swear throws himself into the Water, and conjures the Crocodiles to be Arbitrators betwixt him and his Adversary, and to let him live if he speaks Truth, but otherwise to devour him. He adds, that the Camelion is like a Lizard, only its Back is somewhat rounder and higher, and its Head not so broad; and that its Skin is so transparent, that it receives and reflects all Colours near it, especially Black. *M. Rennefort* says, there's a ravenous Beast called *Farafe*, which the Inhabitants are very much afraid of, and keep Fire all Day and Night in their Huts to scare them away; that some of the Apes are so bold as to attack single Travelers, and kill them, unless they have a Dog or Arms for Defence; that there are a great many inoffensive Snakes as big as a Man's Leg; that among other Fish, they have Soles, Gold-fish, Roaches, Turbets, and Bonetas; but their Oysters are not so good as those of *Diep*; and that among other Birds, they have Flamango's as big as Swans.

We come now to treat of their People, who *Linschotten* says are either Whites or Negroes. *La Croix* divides the former into *Roandrians* or *Anacandrians* or *Ondzatsi*, and the latter into *Voadziri*, *Lohavohits*, *Ontsoa*, and

and *Ondivors*. He says, the Negroes are shap'd like those of *Mozambique*, only they have not black frizled Hair, and that of the Whites is long and lank. In some Places there are wild Men called *Ompizees*, with their Wives and Children, who let their Hair and Beards grow, but go stark naked, only they cover their Privy Parts with broad Leaves. They dwell in the thick solitary Woods, shun all other Negroes, and live upon Fish, Wild Beasts, Fruit, Roots, wild Honey, and Locusts. The Island *Ontsaystrouha*, between the Country of *Anachimoussi* and the River of *Ranoumene*, was formerly inhabited by a certain barbarous People that were always at War against their Neighbours with Bows and Arrows. They us'd to eat the Flesh of their Enemies, those who travelled thro' the Country, and of all that were sick of any incurable Distemper, whose Throats they cut, and carried their Hands to the King that he might eat them. They kept abundance of Cows, but killed no Bulls, Rams, Goats, or Cocks, and liv'd on'y on Cows Milk. They lay upon Mats with their Cattle, and bury'd them after Death. They eat their Dogs with a good Appetite when they were past hunting the Wild-Boar. They till'd their Lands like the other Negroes, but were lazy and deformed. They had small Eyes, a large Forehead, sharp Teeth, a flat Nose, thick Lips, short frizled Hair, a reddish Skin, but no Beard, a great Belly, and slender Legs, which made them good Runners. They continued to eat one another, till so few were left at last, that they were every one cut off about 30 Years ago by their Neighbours. Some pretend there are Giants and Dwarfs in this Island, but our Author thinks it a Fable; yet he tells us of a great Heap of Stones in a Country near *Itapera*, rais'd up as a Memorial of the Defeat of a great Body of Dwarfs, who having ravaged the Province of *Anossi*, were driven to the River *Itapera* by the Inhabitants, and there cut in Pieces and bury'd, because they could not escape over for want of a Boat.

He says, the *Madagascarians* in general are abominable Lyars and Dissemblers; but some who boast their Descent from *Abraham* are juster, and follow different Laws and Customs: But for the rest, they must be managed with Rigour, and severely pu-

nished for their Faults; for they are no sooner set at Liberty by those they have wrong'd, but they ascribe their Releasement to their good Luck, and do them more Mischief than before. They reckon Vengeance and Treachery the two Cardinal Vertues, and count those Cowards who forgive Injuries. They treat all Prisoners of War with the most inhuman Cruelty. They take a great Delight to cut in Pieces such Children as fall into their Hands, to rip up the Bellies of Women; and then leave them at the Point of Death. They are fond of Singing and Dancing, but don't love walking or any laborious Exercise, whether for Health or Diversion, so that they laugh at the *French* for Fools when they see them walk and talk. They are for most part Husbandmen, and know little of Trade, for they work only for Clothes, Lodging and Victuals, and despise all Superfluities. Their chief Employments, besides Husbandry, are Building, working in Gold and Iron, making Wheels and Earthen Pots, Spinning, Weaving, Cordwaining, Fishing, and Hunting. Some make all Sorts of Tools of Iron and Steel, such as Axes, Hammers, Bolts, Razors, little Tweezers, Gridirons, Forks, all Sorts of Javelins, Darts, and Butchers Knives. Their Goldsmiths, after having melted their Gold into Ingots, make Ear-Pendants, Bracelets, Necklaces, and other Ornaments. Their Potters make all Sorts of great and small Pans and Pots with Clay and the Branches of Hawthorn, which they polish finely with a sort of black Earth. Their Turners and Carpenters make Wooden Dishes and Boxes, Spoons of Wood and Horn, and several other Moveables. Some of them are particularly remarkable for the Carpenters-work of their Houses, and they use a Plane, a Wedge, a Rule, and the like Tools. They fish in the Lakes, Rivers, on the Coast, and in the Ocean, with a sort of Trammel Nets, Baskets like Bow-Nets, Hooks and Zagays, with Harping-Irons at the End. Those who fish in the Ocean in little Canoes fill the Baskets with little Fish, as a Bait for the great ones. They us'd formerly to fish for Whales below the Island, but now they are afraid to venture. When they have taken a great Quantity of Fish, they go to the next Place to truck them for Rice, Ignaine, Roots,

Roots, Cotton, or other Necessaries, and sometimes they dry and broil them on Bars of Wood over a gentle Fire. Their Cordwainers make Ropes of all Sizes and Lengths; some are 130 Fathom long. Some make small Cords of the Bark of Trees to put round their Baskets and Nets. The Women spin Flax or the Bark of certain Trees, of which they make various Stuffs and Habits; but the Men think it a Disgrace to meddle or make in this Employ. They follow Husbandry after a different Manner, and with more Ease than *Europeans*, for they use no Plow nor Oxen, but only an Ax to fell the Trees, a Bill to cut off the Branches, and a Hook to pluck up the Weeds. When the Trees are dry, and a great Wind blows, they burn them to Ashes, and then plant in their stead Ignames, Rice, and other Necessaries, after they have been well water'd by the Rain. In some Parts they cut off the Ears of the Rice; in others they tread the Ground beforehand with Oxen, in order to find out the Weeds, and then sow their Rice. These Fields are so soft and hollow, that the Oxen sink almost up to their Bellies every Step they take. Each of them belongs to a particular Lord, whose Pretensions often cause great Disputes. The poor People cultivate the Sides of the Mountains, where they are forced to stay Night and Day, to keep off the Wild-Boars from their Rice and Ignames. For this End they hunt them with little Dogs, kill them with Zagays, and then cut them in Pieces and give them to their Dogs. They also go a Bird-hunting for the same purpose with Nets, tame Birds, and Glue. One of the chief Diversions both of Young and Old is hurling little Shells at one another, in which sometimes they play for an Ox. There's another with a Sort of Tables like that call'd our Lady's Tick-tack. Their Songs and Dances are almost different in every Province, but without any Measure, and very modest. They always dance singing, with a sort of Fiddle in one Hand. Some dance at the Sound of a Drum, or the Confort of two or three Voices. All their Women have a strong Inclination to sing, and can make Songs *extempore* upon the least ludicrous Occasion.

Their Houses have no Garret nor Cellar, but only a little Room just under the

Roof, which is made floaping of Bamboos or other green Boughs. Their Walls are made of Planks two Inches thick. Their Hearth is of Sand about 4 Foot square, with three Stones to place a Pot on. They have no Chimnies, so that the Smoak spreads over all the House, yet they seldom put out their Fires, be the Weather never so hot. Their Storehouses for their Rice, &c. are separated from their Dwelling-Houses, and raised upon Pillars of Wood to prevent the Rats from climbing. The *Rohandrians* take 3 or 4 Years in building their Houses, for they wait the Motions of the Stars for happy Days and Hours to work in. When their House is finish'd, they wait for a happy Month and Day to make their Entrance, in which they use a great many Ceremonies. The Master of the House invites all his Dependents, Kindred and Acquaintance, who bring Presents of Cattle, Baskets, Earthen Pans or Pots, Honey, Wine, Bananas, Rice or Roots, every one according to their Ability, somewhat like the Custom call'd *House-warming* in *England*: And 'tis reported, that some Years ago one Lord presented another on this Occasion with a Gold Chain, which was worth 100 Head of Cattle, 18 Baskets of Rice, and as many of Ignames; which being follow'd by others in Proportion to their Ability, he that was entering into his House received to the Value of 1000 Head of Cattle. When he had all the Presents, he appeared towards the Evening in a Silken Habit with Gold Fringes, and rich Jewels, with a Bill by his Side. Twenty Fishers brought him 24 empty Baskets: They were followed by Women that carried Instruments of Wood to make Habits. Nine came afterwards, with each 3 Sugar-Canes, and 8 more holding each a Torch. Some went three times round the House, and when they enter'd they all gave a Hollow, and stamp'd upon the Floor with their Feet. Then they all wished the new Landlord Happiness, and he wished them the like; after which he distributed the Sugar-Canes to be eaten. Next Morning, one of them richly dress'd went three times round the House, and with a great Butcher's Knife cut the Throats of 36 Beeves which lay upon the Ground, with their Legs ty'd to one another; and having besmear'd their Foreheads and Breasts with

with the Blood, he carried them to the House keeper; after which he lighted a Fire with a Fusee, burnt the Hair, and then cut the Beeves into Pieces, and distributed them to all that were present. The next Day he went thither to drink Wine, and at Night eat Rice, and other Things that were drels'd, which continued for 8 Days together, so that above 400 Beeves were spent at this Entertainment, besides other Beasts. The House was about 4 Fathom broad, and 8 or 9 in Length, and was but one Story, of a Man's Height. The Walls were two Foot and a half from the Ground, and there were 6 Doors, but all so low, that it was impossible to enter them without stooping. The Roof was made of Leaves, ty'd down one upon another with the Rind of a certain Tree.

Their Moveables are chiefly Mats of two Sorts, *viz.* a neat Sort dy'd Red and Yellow, and the common Sort made of various Rushes. They serve to cover the Walls and Floors, and for Beds, for they have no other Bedding nor Pillow but a Log of Wood, only some use a Cushion stuffed with Cotton-Seed, and lie upon the bare Ground from their Infancy. They have a great many Baskets, in which they lay their Habits, Belts, Cotton, Merchandizes, and Ornaments. They have Earthen Pitchers for their Oils, with Earthen Pots, Wooden Dishes and Spoons, Gourds to draw Water, great and small Knives made after the Country Fashion, little Tweezers, Forks, Gridirons with 3 Bars, with a Mortar for Rice, and a sort of Fan to sift it. There are some Pitchers that hold above 100 Pints, in which they make Metheglin. They eat on a Mat spread upon the Ground, and wipe their Hands on Leaves which are 12 Foot long and 4 broad, of which they make Spoons and Drinking-Cups.

As for the Apparel of the Whites, *La Croix* says the Women wear a long Gown, with or without Sleeves, with a double Clout before them instead of an Apron. Both Sexes go bare-headed and bare-footed, only some wear a four-square Cap, and the Women a high-crown'd Hood, which comes down half-way their Face, and hangs down behind over their Shoulders. Their Habits are of various Colours and Names, some all of Silk, others of Cotton, some of Silk and

Cotton together, with white Stripes, and others made of the Rind of Trees. The Cotton Habits made in the Province of *Anossi* are most in Request, especially those that have a Silk Border a Foot high, a white Ground with black Stripes, and Laces of black and red Silk; but none besides the Grandees wear them at publick Ceremonies; and at the Interrment of great Men they wrap them about their Corps. As for those Habits that are made of Trees, they make the Rind fit for Spinning, and then boil it twice in a very strong Lye, and after 'tis washed, they spin it for Use. The Stuff made on't resembles the Hemp or Flax Manufactures of *Europe*; but some would take it at first Sight for Linen. 'Tis strong, and lasts three times longer than Cotton-Cloth. 'Tis also very fit for Sails and Cordage. They make some Habits of the little Threads of a certain Shrub that yields Milk; but they are not so strong as those of Cotton, nor are those made of the Tree call'd *Avo*, of which they also make Paper. The Habits made of the Thread of Bananas are as fine and light as those of Silk, and they are all wove in the same Manner as Linen.

Their chief Ornaments are Chains of several Sorts, which they wear about their Necks, Legs and Arms; Ear-Pendants, Bracelets, Rings, and the like Toys, in which they place their chief Riches, such as Necklaces of Coral, Glass, fine Pearls, little Chains of Gold, Glass, Rock-Crystal, Agats, Cornelians, and Sardonyxes, which they wear three or four times round the Neck. There are others made of the Beads of Coral, Agat, and Rock-Crystal, and some made only of little round Coral Beads, and Glass Beads of all Colours, that go 4, 6, 8, or 12 times round the Neck. They make Holes an Inch broad in their Ears for Pendants, of which some are Gold, and in some Parts they make Holes as large as a Hen's Egg, in which they only wear Pendants of Wood or Horn. There are other Pendants which are only of a Snail-Shell, well wrought and gilt. Their Bracelets are of Gold, Silver, or Copper. None have the Liberty to wear Gold for an Ornament but the chief Men.

Capt. *Davis* says, the People about *St. Austin's Bay* are strong and well shap'd, with black

black Skins, and a sweet Voice. Captain Keeling says, they are tall, and not so ill scented as most of their Complexion; that their black Hair is pretty long, frizled, and decently plaited; and that they wear nothing but a Girdle made of the Rinds of Trees, adorned all behind with Trinkets, fasten'd on with Alligators Teeth, which hang there partly for Ornament, and partly for Use. Mr. Henry Morris reports one Instance of the Treachery of the Inhabitants to the English on board the Ship *Union* about 1709, viz. The Captain being encouraged to land at *Canquomorra* Bay to pay a Visit to the King, because the English Merchants had been well received by him many times before, was betrayed, and with great Difficulty made his Escape with some of his Men to the Ships; upon which he fired his great Guns, and dispersed the Natives, but thought fit to strike Sail. Admiral *Beaulieu* says, those about *St. Austin's* Bay are the handsomest Negroes he ever saw; that they feed well, and have no flat Noses or thick Lips; that their Teeth are very white, even, and small, and that they rub them every Minute with a small Piece of Wood; that they cover their Privities with Cotton-Cloth, well woven, of several Colours; that they love Silver Chains, and the Sound of Trumpets and Drums; that they are jolly, frank, honest, friendly to one another, civil to Strangers, and quick of Apprehension. He saw none of their Women, but was told that they were very handsome, and wore a great many Ear-Rings. However he saw one of their great Men, who had a large white Plate like a Piece of Ivory on his Forehead, a large Copper Ring at his Ears, a Collar of Raffade about his Neck, besides Glass Beads of several Colours, and a Necklace of fine yellow Amber. His Attendants had the like Ornaments, except the Plate on his Forehead. *De la Val* says, the Natives about *St. Augustin's* Bay are of a tawny Olive Complexion, inclining to Red; that they are wise; that the Women wear a Piece of Cloth from their Breast to their Girdle, besides another that reaches from thence to their Knees; that the Island was formerly peopled by the Chinese who suffer'd Shipwreck on the Coast; that they resemble the Chinese, except in their Complexion; that the Inhabitants are *Mahome-*

tans and Pagans; and that 'twas very populous in his Time, viz. about 1602, and govern'd by several Kings, that wag'd War with one another. *Herbert* says, those that live by the Sea love Fishing rather than Tillage; that in general they are very active and couragious; that they grease their Skins to keep them supple, and that they are proud of a shining stinking Flesh; that they wear a few Leaves pleated together about their Waist; that they cut and pink their Flesh; that they love Hawking and Hunting; and that the Men clap their Hands and Breasts, and use other ridiculous Gestures in their Dances, but that the Women observe some Measure; that they knew no Letters, till Necessity taught them a little Arithmetick; that they affect to wear long, red, Cornelian Beads in their Hair and about their Necks. *Mandelsloe* says, they wrap the printed Callico about their Middle in such a Manner, that one Piece of it hangs down before to the Knee, the other behind to the Ham; that their Hair is seldom long; that the Callico which covers the Women's Privy Parts is somewhat longer than that of the Men; that the Women are so faithful to their Husbands, that they'll undertake nothing of Moment without their Advice; that they have at least two Wives apiece, each of whom has a separate Hut; and that tho' the Husband is complaisant to both, yet the elder of the two always claims the Preference.

M. Dellon says, they use two Sorts of Boats both at Sea and in the Rivers, viz. Canoes and Pirogues: The latter are made out of Planks join'd or sow'd together by the Help of certain Ropes made of the Bark of Trees, without any other Cement. They hold 100 Persons at a time, but are apt to overturn if not nicely balanc'd. They are us'd chiefly for Fishing. The Canoes are made of a large Piece of Timber, hollow'd out with Knives, which is the only Instrument they use in their Workmanship. Some will hold 100 Persons, besides 60 Baskets of Rice of 20 Pound Weight each, and the Negroes cross broad Rivers, and venture with them sometimes to the Sea, yet they are as apt to overturn as the former. A great many of the Inhabitants are of a yellowish Complexion, and some approaching to White, which last have much better Features

tures than the rest. When the *French* first arrived here, they found many of the Inhabitants of the same Complexion with *Europeans*, but could never learn their Origin, so that 'tis probable they were the *Chinese*, as already mentioned. They were respected by the Negroes as their Kings, and their Words were a Law. But the Negroes observing the Advantage of the *French* Fire-Arms, desir'd and procur'd their Assistance in suppressing the excessive Power of these Tyrants, so that they soon extirpated the whole Race of them, except a few Women who were saved out of Pity. Our Author says, the Island is near as populous as *France*; and that tho' there are no Cities, there are a vast Number of Villages at a small Distance from one another. The Doors are so low, that a Child of 12 Years old can't enter without stooping. They have no Windows, and the Thatch of their Houses will keep out Rain 10 or 12 Years without mending; but when a Fire breaks out, 'tis very destructive, because their Houses are all of Wood. The Men seldom wear any thing but a Piece of Cotton or Silk half an Ell broad, and an Ell and a half long, which they wind round their Waist, one End on't coming betwixt their Legs. The Women wear a sort of narrow Waistcoats that scarce cover their Breasts, but the Sleeves reach to their Wrists: For the rest, they have a Piece of Stuff which they wind round their Middle, and reaches from thence to their Heels. The Poor wear only a Stuff made of the Bark of Trees, which reaches no farther than their Knees, because it should not hinder them in their Work. Our Author says, contrary to *La Croix*, that their stinking Ointment, and their natural Ugliness, makes them the nastiest People in the Universe. The *Rohundrians*, i. e. their chief Governors or petty Princes, and their Ladies, cause themselves to be carried in a sort of Litter upon the Shoulders of 4 Slaves. The *French* here of Fashion are carried after the same Manner, especially when they travel. They are much addicted to War, and very faithful to their *Rohundrians*, whose chief Riches consist in the Number of their Oxen and Slaves, for which they have continual Quarrels with their Neighbours, that commonly end in bloody Wars. Our Author

adds, that the *Madagascar* Women are subject to the same Pains in Travel as those of *Europe*; but that as soon as they are deliver'd, they leave the Child upon a Mat, go to bathe in some River, and take no farther Care of the Child, but only to give it now and then the Teat. *Struys* says, the Blacks are generally of a middle Stature; that the Whites shave their Beards, and are civiliz'd, because they live on the Coast; but that the Blacks in the Inland Country shave neither their Heads nor their Beards, and are most barbarous Brutes; and that the Women wear a Neckerchief almost like those of *France* and *Holland*. He gives this Account of their Barbarity to Infants: When a Child is born, they acquaint their Priests, who they believe read every thing that happens upon Earth, in the Stars. Then he pretends to consult the Heavens, and as his Fancy leads him says the Child will be good or ill natur'd; but if he says that 'tis born under an unhappy Planet, and that it will be cruel and wicked, from that Moment they carry out the Infant, and lay it under a Bush for a Prey to the Wild-Beasts. If a Woman with Child have more than common Pains, they impute it to nothing but to the Infant, reckon it ominous, and give the Mother a Draught, which kills it; or if they stay till she is deliver'd, they presently throw it in a Ditch, and drown it. In short, this Barbarity is become so general, that no Woman is at a Loss for some Pretence or other to destroy the Fruit of her Womb. Sometimes a Wench does it that is turn'd off by her Master that has deflower'd her, or a white Maid that is got with Child by a Negro, for fear she should be the Mother of a Child of such a disagreeable Colour; and there are many light Wenches who chuse to murder their Children, rather than marry and keep them. The Men too are so unnatural, that if the Mother dies in Child-Bed, the Father puts the Child to Death at the same time, alledging, that it had better be out of the World than be brought up by Strangers. Besides these, they have other superstitious Pretences for destroying their Children; but he observes, that those who live on the Coast are not so forward to destroy their Infants; and that tho' the Priest promises no good Luck from them, yet there are some who cause them to be nurs'd.

nurs'd privately by the Slaves that look after their Cattle, in order, as they say, by that Means to subdue their unlucky Dispositions.

Le Blanc says, they care for nothing but to live jovially, and that they have no Beggars nor Vagabonds, there being Employment for all that want, so that some work in Gardens, others in Mines, some follow Merchandize, and others Fishing in Boats made of Neat's Leather, so well join'd and liquor'd, that Water can't pierce them. Some hunt Wild-Beasts, by which they get valuable Skins, such as Ermins, the Girafe, strip'd with White and Red, and Asses dappled Grey, and White or Black, and Bay. The latter, he says, will stand till you come close to them; but if you touch them never so gently, they leap away with incredible Speed. The Women, he tells us, are very courteous and beautiful, and wear Mantles, and 'tis said they learnt Dancing from their Neighbours in *Comoro* Islands. Their Houses are generally cover'd with Coco-Leaves; but those on the Sea-Coasts are made of Turfs dry'd in the Sun, or of Date Leaves temper'd with Stone and Mortar, and some again are cover'd with the Shells of large Tortoises.

The *Sansons* say, many of the Inhabitants are *Mulatto's*, and that they love the *French* more than any other Nation. *Nauvarette* says, that Brothers marry Sisters, Fathers their Daughters, and Sons their Mothers. *Morery* says, their Houses are moveable, and to be carried by 4 Men, as the Seasons alter; and that their Towns are encompassed with Pales, and a deep Ditch 6 or 7 Foot wide; that the Whites here seem by their Names and Customs to be of *Jewish* Extract; that the Women of Quality wear some slight Habit extraordinary; and that when they visit one another, he that receives the Visit prostitutes the handsomest of his Wives to their Enjoyment. *Heylin* says, they have no Prayers or Festivals, no Division of Time, nor any Numbers above Ten; and he says, contrary to many others, that they have only one Wife at a time, and severely punish Adultery; but that both Sexes lose their Maidenheads at 10 or 12 Years of Age. He adds, that the *Arabians* and *Chinese* live on the Coast, and the Native Blacks in the Inland Country. *Morden* says,

they punish Murder with Death, Adultery with publick Shame, and Theft with Banishment; but he condemns them for Ignorance in Agriculture and Learning. *Gordon* says, they reckon almost half of the Year to consist of unlucky Days, and imputes the small Number of the Inhabitants to their barbarous Custom before-mention'd, of murdering Infants on those Days.

La Croix says, they marry as many Wives as they can keep, who hate one another mortally, are as lewd as the Men, and always keep one or two Gallants; and if the Husband goes to revenge himself, they leave him, and take to those they like best. Their Girls are free to all that bring them Money, and if a Fellow has not enough to pay them, they would affront and strip him, and without immediate Satisfaction scandalize them. The poor Slaves cool their Passion with the Beasts without Punishment, and the young Lads are not ashamed to do it in Sight of their Parents; but Sodomy is not so much as known among them. They are so far from thinking Fornication a Sin or Scandal, that a Girl won't engage with a Man who has not carnally known her long before Marriage. They only punish Adultery with the same Fine as Theft. The Parents indulge their Children in brutish Pleasures, and try all Methods to excite their Venery, but are asham'd to hear of the Immodesty of their Wives and Daughters, and are offended if any ask how many Wives they have, and whether they are handsome or ugly. There are some effeminate Men that pick up young Lads in the Habit of Girls, pretend to be in Love with them, and tempt them by Presents to lie with them; by which Means they think they do Service to God, for they are such as hate Women, and have vow'd from their Childhood to have nothing to do with them. He adds, that the Negroes have no Nuptial Ceremonies; and that the Whites observe none but the Day on which they marry their chief Wife. *Herbert* says, both Sexes marry at ten or twelve Years of Age. *Mandelsloë* says, they purchase their Wives for Oxen or Arms, and that they make Adultery and Fornication Capital; but they are scarce ever heard of, because there is no Familiarity great enough to make them jealous. *Struys* says, they put away

their Wives upon the least Pretence; and that when Lovers are catch'd in the Fact, they are dismissed for a small Present. The Wenches think what they get by their Lewdness lawful Gain, and the more Lovers they have, they bid the fairer for Marriage: Yet our Author observes, their Conversation is so chaste, that a Stranger would think them the modestest Creatures in the World. M. *Dellon* reconciles the different Reports of Travellers which we meet with in some Histories, and says, that in some Parts of the Island they marry and divorce without any Ceremony, and that in others the Women are confin'd and punish'd with Death if convicted of Adultery; and that in the Inland Country they commit Incest without respect to Kindred.

Admiral *Beaulieu* says, they are great Eaters, love broil'd Fish, and eat three times as much Bread as *Europeans*. They eat their Pease raw, and count them their best Food next to their Milk. *Le Blanc* says, they eat Bats which are large and well tasted. M. *Dellon* says, their common Diet is Rice boil'd with Salt and Water, which they eat instead of Bread, for they won't take the Pains to sow Wheat. He confirms, that they have such good Stomachs, that 6 of them can eat a good Ox at a Meal; but he says, when a Famine happens, they are able to endure it with prodigious Constancy. When they make any Feasts, the Guests lie all round upon the Floor; after which they set a great Quantity of boil'd Rice in the Middle, then an Ox or two, according to the Number of the Guests, extended upon the Hides instead of a Dish, of which every one cuts a good Piece where he likes, puts it upon a Stick, holds it to the Fire, and then devours it before it be half roasted. He adds, that in every Village there's a large Hall, open on all Sides, and cover'd only on the Roof, where upon Occasion they put a great Vessel that holds 3 or 4 Hogsheds, according to the Number of Inhabitants, which they fill with Hydromel, and the Lord of the Village sends in Beef and Rice, and then follows himself to the Hall, where he entertains his Subjects from Morning to Night. *La Croix* says, they have all an odd Way of Eating, tho' they dress their Food well enough; that the *Roandrians* eat with none but the *Roandrians*,

the *Lohavohits* with the *Lohavohits*, &c. and the Slaves with their Fellows, and no where with their Masters, except in one of the Provinces. A *Roandrian* Lady married to an *Anacandrian*, will not suffer her Husband to eat with her. In some Provinces none but the chief *Roandrians* and *Anacandrians* have a Power to kill Beasts. These commonly eat only at Morning and Night, but others make 5 or 6 Meals a Day. Besides Rice and Pease, they eat Beans, Ignames, Cabbages, Beef, Mutton, Goats Flesh, Hens, Capons, Turkies, Ducks, little Porcupines, Fish, Oils, Fruits, Bananas, Sugar-Canes, and in Time of Famine they eat Roots. They never eat Swines Flesh, unless it be the Hunters and their Families. They commonly make their Sawces of Ginger, Garlick, and White Pepper, which at first they took for Poison. Their common Drink is hot Water or Broth. They make Mead, but never drink it, except in their Ecclesiastical Ceremonies.

Morery says, their Language and Writing resembles the *Arabick*; that their Paper is yellow, smooth, and fine, being made of the inner Rind of a certain Tree; that their Ink is made of a sort of Gum, and their Pens of Cane. Admiral *Beaulieu* says, that both their Language and Pronunciation is smooth. *Herbert* tells us, that their Language has been mix'd with *Arabick*, especially on the Coast, ever since they became *Mahometans*. *La Croix* says, they have but one Language over all the Island, but pronounce it differently in the several Provinces, and that it is very copious, and much resembles the Greek in its Sound, and in the Order of its Nouns and Verbs. He gives a Specimen of the Lord's Prayer in their Language, for which we refer the Curious to his Book. He tells us, they have 24 *Arabick* Characters, with which they write from the Right to the Left, tho' the Pronunciation of some of them is very different from that of the *Arabick*. Those Letters were brought to them 200 Years ago, by certain *Arabians* sent hither by the Caliph of *Mecca*, who married Women of the Country, and taught *Arabick* and the *Alcoran*, as their Successors do to this Day. They make their Paper as we do ours, but have not so many Tools and Engines, and don't make it so thick. They only boil the Rind

Rind for two Days in a great Cauldron of strong Ley, made of the Ashes of a Tree call'd *Avo*. When 'tis boil'd tender, they wash it in fair Water, pound it in a Wooden Mortar till 'tis as thick as Pap, and then pour it out upon a Hurdle or Mat; after which they lay it to dry in the Sun upon a Leaf besmear'd with Oil, and as soon as it is dry, they mix it with a thick Decoction of Rice, and dry it again till it becomes a smooth Sort of Paper. Our Author says, they make their Ink of the Decoction of the same Wood which the Grandees use in building their Houses, and dry it to a proper Consistency, which makes it very good Ink, but not so black as ours, tho' it may be made so by mixing a little Verdigrease. When the Ink is dry, they boil it with a little Water, and it becomes as good as ever. Their Cane Pens are as long as one's Hand, and as thick as a Quill, which they hollow and cut as we do our Pens. They have some obscure Knowledge of the Motion of the Heavenly Bodies and the Zodiac, which they divide as we do into 12 Signs, and also divide the Year into 12 Months, for the Names of which we refer to *La Croix*; and begin the Year with the New Moon in *March*, but have no certain Rule for calculating their Times and Seasons, and reckon their Years by the Days of the Weeks, beginning the Year of Circumcision upon a *Friday*.

We come now to give an Account of their Religious Superstition. *La Croix* says, they have no Churches or Prayers, but observe Circumcision. They believe there's a God, who created Heaven and Earth, all the Creatures, and an infinite Number of Angels, in 7 Days, but don't worship him, and live only according to the Laws of Nature; yet they make Confession, especially of old Men. They believe also there's a Devil, of whom they stand in great Awe. They call him *Tavady*, and think he has a great Number of Adherents, and that he cruelly torments them, especially the Men. They hold, that God is the Author of all Good, and that he never does any Harm; and that he gives and takes away Being from all Creatures at Pleasure; but that the Devil is the Author of all Evil, for which Reason they make Offerings to him, and call upon him before God. They invoke a

third Power by the Name of *Dian Manang*, or the God of Riches, which they acknowledge to be Gold, and hold it over their Heads with a profound Veneration, and then kiss it. And some by drinking Water in which a Gold Bracelet has been dipped, think they shall obtain Remission of Sins. They believe there's an infinite Number of Angels and Servants of God who move the Heavens and their Orbs, govern Rain, Air, Wind, Water, and Earth, and are the Protectors of Mankind. They say there are 7 Sorts of Good and Evil Spirits. The first they call the Good Angels, viz. *Michael*, *Gabriel*, &c. The second they say are of an Inferior Order, and tho' Corporal, invisible to all Mankind, except those they favour; that they reside in the most solitary Places; that there are some of both Sexes who marry and get Children, and tho' subject to no Corporal Maladies, yet die as well as Men, in Expectation of eternal Bliss or Damnation, according to their Lives; and that they eat all Sorts of Animals and Insects. The Negroes, whose Parents appear after Death, send Men immediately to kill and bury them again, for their Children reckon it a Disgrace, and they say that the Wounds which are given them issue Corruption instead of Blood. Those of the 5th Order they call *Angats*, i. e. Skeletons, which are a Sort of Ghosts. Those of the 6th Order they call *Sacara*, who they pretend are Evil Spirits, that torment Men, Women and Children, in the Shape of Fiery Dragons, for a Week or Fortnight together; and that when they are thus possessed, they are made to sing and dance incessantly, with a Zagay in their Hand, and then the People of the Village go and dance with them at the Beat of Drum, and make the same antick Postures to tire their Patience; and in some Provinces they sacrifice Beeves, Sheep, and Fowls, to appease *Sacara*. The Spirits of the 7th Order they call *Bilis*, whose Number they say is infinite, and that they are all subject to a superior Spirit, who with his Adherents is the Author of all Evil. They have the following ridiculous Story about Paradise, which they place either in the Sun or Moon. They believe that after God had finished the Creation, he formed *Adam* out of the Earth, and placed him in Paradise,

dise, with a Prohibition to eat or drink any thing in it, because he had no Necessity. In the mean time they say that Paradise was water'd with 4 Rivers, viz. one of Milk, one of Wine, one of Honey, and one of Oil, and that there was abundance of all Sorts of Fruits. They pretend that the Devil went to *Adam* in Paradise, and asked him why he did not eat of those fine Fruits, and drink of the Wine, Milk and Oil. To which *Adam* answer'd, That God had forbid him, and that he did not dare to transgress his Prohibition, especially since he did not need them. Then the Devil absented himself for two Hours; after which he return'd, and told *Adam*, That he just came from God with Leave for him to eat of every thing he had a Mind to; upon which *Adam* did eat, but was soon obliged to go to Stool in Paradise, and the Devil hasten'd to accuse *Adam* to God for his Nastiness, wherefore God banished *Adam* into a Country where an Impostume bred in the Calf of his Leg, which broke six Months after, and produc'd a Female Child: After which *Adam* sent the Angel *Gabriel* to ask God what he should do with her, and God sent him Word by the same Angel, That he should bring her up and marry her at a certain Age, which he did accordingly, and called her *Eve*. After this they say she was deliver'd of two Sons, viz. *Cain* and *Abel*, whom, when grown up to Years of Maturity, the Devil beguil'd after this Manner: He gave them a Javelin headed at both Ends with Iron, and then bred a Quarrel between them, so that each took hold of the Ends of the Javelin to pluck it from the other; but the Irons not being well fasten'd, both slipped out, and mortally wounded each other in the Belly. They say that *Adam* had several Children afterwards that multiplied exceedingly; but that Mankind growing wicked, God commanded *Noah* to build a great Ship to save himself and Family, and the Male and Female Creatures of every Species, and then sent a Flood which cover'd the Face of the whole Earth, except 4 Mountains at the 4 Corners of the World. When the Flood was gone, *Noah* went out of his Ship to *Jerusalem*, and from thence to *Mecca*, and had given him by God 4 Sorts of Writings, containing the Law, the first of which was

called the *Alcoran*, for the Use of *Noah*, the second for *Moses*, the 3d for *David*, and the 4th for *Christ*. They say that *Jesus* was sent into the World by God, born by the *Virgin Mary*, without any Sorrow, and without the Help of Man. They call him *Ramariama*, and add, that he was both God and Man, and a great Prophet; that he was crucified by the *Jews*; and yet that God did not suffer him to die, but caused a Malefactor's Body to be found in his Room. They don't observe *Friday* as the *Mahometans* do, but celebrate *Saturday* like the *Jews*. When they undertake any Journey or other Affair of Importance, they have Recourse to Negromancy to know whether they shall succeed, or else consult their *Auli*, which they carry about them in Boxes. They sacrifice a great Number of Beasts when they enter into a House newly built, when they reap their Harvest, or when they are sick, when their Wives are big with Child, or when their Plants thrive and multiply, and at all Funerals, Fast-Days, and Days of Marriage. They celebrate their Fast-Days, which the *Turks* call *Ramadan*, with great Ceremony, but confine it to no set Day or Month.

They celebrate Circumcision commonly in *May*, when all the Relations of the Child which is to be circumcised repair on the Day appointed to the Village where the Ceremony is to be performed, with Presents of Wine or Honey, and Beeves. The Men exercise themselves with their *Zagays* at the Sound of a Drum, which is made out of the Trunk of a Tree, and cover'd at each End with a Skin. Some have a Cow's Skin at one End, and that of a Goat at the other, and they beat upon one of the Ends with a little Stick, and on the other with their Hand. The Kindred dance with strange Postures round him that exercises the *Zagay*, who makes very frightful Grimaces with his Mouth, Eyes, and Teeth. After these Exercises are over, the young Men and Women dance and sing Songs. Then the Master of the Village, who is to circumcise the Infant, invites them to drink Mead, at which they strive who shall have the Honour to be most drunk. At Night they kill Beeves, sometimes to the Number of 200, according to the Company, against the next Day. That being the Festival in the

the Morning, every one keeps Silence, and the Parents prepare to have their Children ready. The Mothers lie the Night before in the *Lapa*, i. e. a Church, which the Fathers and Uncles of the Infants that are to be circumcised build a Month before-hand, with certain Ceremonies; and that Night no Men must come near them, otherwise they dare not appear at the Circumcision, for they believe that if they did, the Children when circumcised would bleed to Death. Neither must they or the Circumciser wear any Thing that is Red, or at least they hide it under their Clothes. At Break of Day all the People go to wash themselves with Beat of Drum, and sing certain Words of Adoration. Then the Circumciser with a loud Voice says, *Hail my God! I app'y to thee by Prayer; Thou hast created Feet and Hands; I desire Thee to pardon all my Sins; I prostrate my self before thee; I come this Day to circumcise these Infants, &c.* Then they go to Church with their Children, which the Mothers dress very fine, with Coral, Pearl, Precious Stones, and other Ornaments, which they put round their Necks, and make all Things ready by 10 a Clock in the Morning, when the Ceremony is to be concluded, which must be done fasting. They know the Moment when the Mystery is to be performed by the Shadow of a Man that stands upright in the Sun, and they begin the Ceremony when 'tis 9 Foot long. Then all the Drums beat, and the Circumciser puts on his best Clothes, and sends away all the young Men and Women that were together the Night before. He puts a great Skain of white Cotton Thread about his Left Arm to rub his Knife on, which he holds in his Hand. Then the Parents take each their Children in their Arms, and make a Procession 10 in a-breast from the W. to the E. Gate of the Church. After they have gone thus twice round, they do the like round the Beeves which they design to sacrifice, making the Infants touch with their Left Hands the Right Horns of the Beasts, which lie upon the Ground, with their 4 Feet ty'd to one another, and setting them a Moment on their Backs. Then all the People are commanded to fall back, and make Way for the Circumciser, who soon appears ready for his Office, with his Knife in his Hand.

When he has cut off every Child's Foreskin, he gives it to the Infant's Uncle, who puts it in an Egg, which he holds for that purpose in his Hand. In the mean time a *Roandrian* or *Anacandrian*, sent to kill the Cattle, kills as many Cocks as there are Infants, and lets the Blood drop upon the Child's Wounds, and another wrings upon them the Juice of a Sort of Trefoil, with Leaves like those of the Herb *Prunella*. If the Child be a Slave, and has no Uncle, they throw his Foreskin upon the Ground. They reckon this Day so holy, that they make no Noise on it, and no Person gets drunk. Our Author says, the *Roandrians* observe all these Ceremonies, but with much more State and Attendance; so that 'tis more worthy the Curiosity of Strangers than any other Ceremony among the Negroes. Their Priests or Morabouts, which they call *Ombiaffes*, are of two Sorts: The one write *Arabick* with great Ease, and have several Books, particularly Part of the Alcoran, and most understand *Arabick*, which they are taught to write in the same Manner as Greek and Latin. These Priests are invested with several Charges and Dignities, like the Orders of the *Roman Church*, viz. a Clerk that teaches to write, a Scribe or Physician, a Sub-Deacon, a Deacon, a Priest, a Bishop, Archbishop, and Caliph, who all pretend to cure Diseases by the Sale of Talismans to the richer Sort, i. e. Billets writ in *Arabick*, which they pretend will secure them from all Accidents, Lightning, Sickness, Fire, Enemies, and even from Death itself, tho' they are not able to escape it themselves. In the mean time these Sharpers turn their Billets to great Profit, and sell them for Cattle, Gold, Silver, Habits, or other Necessaries. They also render themselves formidable by these Tricks, and pass for Conjurers. The *Grandeers* also use it against the *French*; but they have try'd all their Art in vain, and alledge in Excuse, that their Inchantments have no Effect upon the *French*, because they eat Swine's Flesh, and have a different Law from theirs. He tells us, that these Priests, in order to bring Judgments on the *French*, brought against their Fort Baskets full of Papers writ in *Arabick*, Eggs laid on a *Friday*, cover'd with *Arabick* Characters; Earthen Pots, which were never on the Fire, writ on both Sides;

Biers,

Biers, Canoes, Girdles, little Scissars and Tweezers, writ all over with such Characters; but they proved of no Consequence; yet they still practise these pretended Arts, and some of the People are so superstitious, that they will not undertake any thing without first consulting them. These Priests are also their common Physicians and Surgeons, and write certain Billets in *Arabick* Characters, which they consecrate by dipping in Water, and hang them about the Neck and Breasts of sick Persons. They also make certain Figures of Negromancy to know the Time that the Distemper will last, and to find out the proper Remedies; but if they don't work a Cure, they pretend that they have fail'd in something, and then begin afresh, till the Patient dies outright or recovers. In the mean time these Priests can command Gold, Silver, Coral, Cows, Habits, Girdles, or whatever they please from the Patients or their Kindred, and make them believe that their Generosity advances their Cure. These Priests are educated by those of *Matatane*, where there are publick Schools to teach the Youth. There's another Sort of Priests which are generally Negroes and *Anacandrians*, who pretend to Divination by Points or Negromancy, for which they make divers Figures like those in *European* Books of Negromancy, only they trace their Figures with the Finger upon a Plank cover'd with Sand, by observing the Day, Hour, Month, and Planet, which reigns at the time when they give their Benediction. They are very expert at this, but seldom right; and tho' 'tis then only owing to Chance, yet they have the Esteem of all the People. There's another Order of Priests among the Negroes that go to visit the Sick, but can't read or write. They only use some Geomantick Figures, with Crystal, Topazes, Eagle-stones, Amethysts, &c. which they make the People believe God sends them in Thunder. They have large Crystals, but they are not clear; and when they cast any Figures, they hold one of them at the Corner of their Tablets, and pretend that they have the Vertue to augment the Force of their Geomantick Figures.

M. Rennefort says, they only use Circumcision every 3 Years, and that they build a

Hall for the Ceremony, rais'd upon Pillars of Wood, and encompassed with Palisades. He adds, that the People think every thing has some Signification; that they worship a Sort of Cricket, which they keep in a fine wrought Pannier, in which they lay their *Oli*; that they dance round it like Madmen, and ascribe their Transport to the Inspiration of the *Oli*.

Admiral *Beaulieu* thinks that tho' the Institution of Circumcision came to them Time out of Mind, they had it from the *Mahometans* on the Coast of *Ethiopia*, who have long had, and still drive, an unknown Traffick with this Country. The Admiral adds, that one Day, when his Priest was saying Mass, near 30 of the Natives came and kneeled very devoutly till Service was over. *Mandelsloe* says, he saw one of their Priests get upon a Tree, and make an Oration to the People, but he did not understand the Language; that each Tribe has its own Priest; that some of them carried a Piece of Cow's Tail at the End of a Cane; and that one of them had Nails on the two Fore-fingers of his Right Hand as long as an Eagle's Talons. *Struys* says, the Idolaters who live only in the Inland Parts are so grossly superstitious, that they are afraid of every thing; that they only retain Fast-Days and Festivals out of Caprice, and by Tradition from Father to Son; that at the Eve of the Circumcision, when the Children's Relations are a little heated with Mead, some of them strike upon Basons, and others fence with their Bucklers and Zagays till they are weary, and then fall again to their Mead till they are quite drunk; that at the Break of the next Day the Mothers wash themselves and their Children all over; that the Priest, when he goes to perform the Office, ties a Piece of Linen about his Left Leg; that the Fathers and Uncles of the Children tie the like about their Arm; and that after Circumcision, the Infants are returned to their Parents with Acclamations of Joy, with which the Day concludes. *Navarette* the Missionary says, that in his Time, viz. about 1670, above a Thousand had been baptized here, and not above 50 that liv'd like Christians; and he thinks, till the Natives are subdued, which is not easy, they will never improve in Spirituals or Temporals. *Morey* says, they

they pour the first of their Meat and Drink to the Ground, as a Sacrifice to the Devil. M. Dallon says, the *Rohundrians* are the only Persons that observe any Religious Ceremonies, and that but upon extraordinary Occasions; that at certain Times they sacrifice an Ox; but no body except the Prince performs it; that they cut and slash their Arms and Faces; but whether they do it out of Piety or Pride, or for Health, he is uncertain. He says, contrary to *La Croix*, that they don't believe the Immortality of the Soul, and therefore give themselves up to all Debauchery; and that such as had been converted to Christianity, commonly apostatiz'd; so that of 3000 that had been baptized before our Author's Arrival, scarce 20 used to frequent the Church. He ascribes this in Part to the ill Examples of the *French*, some of whom were excommunicated, and obliged to stand in the Church-Porch during Service; but getting a Priest as bad as themselves, they set up a Chapel for their own Use, and performed Worship there in Spight of the Superior's Commands, till 'twas by Order burnt down. In short, *Du Pleffis* and *Ferlay*, their Religion is a Mixture of *Paganism*, *Judaism*, and *Mahometism*.

M. Dallon says, that besides the Badness of the Air here, Foreigners contract a great many dangerous Distempers by their Commerce with the Negroes, whom they are obliged to follow over Rivers and Mountains without the Conveniency of Shipping or Land Carriage. The Sick are carried to the Hospital erected by the *French* at Fort *Dauphin*, which is generally full, tho' great Numbers die daily of malignant Fevers. He observes, that many, by drinking too much Brandy and *Aquavitæ* in this hot Climate, are seized with Cholicks, which are always attended with a Fever, that causes a great Alteration in the Pulse, and often stops Urine, and with tormenting Pains, which cause frequent Convulsions and Palsies in the Body, that continue sometimes after the Cholick is passed. Our Author sets down the Methods by which he cured this Disease, for which we refer the Curious to his Book. He tells us, that the Venereal Distemper is very common here both among the *French* and Negroes; that the *Europeans* use their own Surgeons; but the

others never seek for a Cure till the whole Mass of Blood is infected, and then they pretend to evacuate the malignant Humour, by applying a broad red hot Iron to their Feet, that produces an Ulcer, which they let run for 30 or 40 Days, keeping an exact Diet all the Time; but if the Distemper be not inveterate, they only purge and sweat often. In the mean time our Author adds, that the Negroes are so debauched, that they are seldom without some Symptoms of this foul Distemper.

We come next in Order to speak of their Funerals. *La Croix* says, the Kindred wash the Corps, and adorn it with Gold Bracelets, Ear-Pendants, Chains of Coral, &c. wrap it in two or three fine Linen Shrouds, and carry it to the Grave, inclos'd in a great Mat. They shave the Heads and Beards of those of Quality, and put a Cap upon the Women's Heads, while all the Kindred, Friends and Servants of the Deceased, go into the House to weep over the Corps, at whose Feet they burn a Candle Night and Day. In the mean time several Women and Girls dance serious Dances at the Beat of Drum; then they go weeping into the House, and return out again dancing. The Men also exercise themselves in Arms, while those who make their Lamentations in the House exalt the Praises of the Deceased, condole one another's Loss, and ask him the Reason, *Why he died? If he wanted any Thing*, &c. and at Night kill Beeves, and distribute the boil'd or roasted Flesh among the Company. The next Morning they put the Corps, made of two hollow Trunks of Trees join'd one to another, and carry it to the Cemetery, where they lay it 6 Foot in the Earth under a Tomb well built, with a Pannier of Rice, a Tobacco-Box, an Earthen Plate, a little Chafing-Dish to burn Perfumes, a Habit and a Girdle by the Side of the Deceased, which then they shut up, and lay before it a great Stone 12 or 15 Foot high; after which they sacrifice several Beasts, and leave Part for the Deceased, and Part, they say, for God and the Devil. In a Week or Fortnight after the Kindred send a Slave with Provisions for the Corps, and make as much of him as if he was alive. They also place the Heads of the Beasts, which they sacrifice, on Posts round the Sepulchre, and the Children

come thither now and then to sacrifice another Beeve, and to ask Counsel of the Deceased in difficult Affairs. When any grow sick or parentick, their nearest Relations immediately desire a Priest to go fetch a Spirit from the Graves. He goes accordingly in the Night, makes a Hole in a Tomb, calls upon the Soul of the Patient's Father, and demands his Spirit. Then he puts a Cap directly over the Hole, shuts it up, hastens to the Patient's House, pretending he has the Spirit with him, and in a great Hurry lays the Cap upon the Head of the Patient, who fancies he owes his Recovery to this Stratagem, and orders a Present to be made to the Priest. If any Person of Quality dies far from home, they send his Head to his own Country, and they bury the rest of his Body in the Place where he dy'd. But if any are killed in Battle, they bury them on the Spot, and in Time of Peace remove them to the Tombs of their Ancestors. Our Author observes, their most solemn Oath is by the Souls of their Ancestors. He tells us, that among their unlucky Times and Seasons, they reckon the Months of *April* and *March*, the 8th Day and last Week of every Month, every *Tuesday* and *Friday*, &c. He says, that such as are so merciful as to give their Infants to be brought up by Slaves, when their Nativities are condemn'd by the Priest, never own them again for their Children, but leave them entirely to their Nurses; and that some pretend to obviate the evil Influence of the reigning Planets by sacrificing Beasts and Cocks, and shutting up their Infants for half a Day in a Hen-house. He adds, that when a Woman is big with Child, and is apprehensive of Breasts too large to please her Gallant, she destroys the Foetus almost as soon as 'tis quicken'd or born. *Struys* says, that when Persons of Quality die, they put on their Heads a Garland of the finest Flowers that are to be met with, and dance at the Sound of Copper Basins; and that they mourn for them a whole Year. *M. Rennefort* says, the Tombs are of Wood, and that poor People are only laid between two Posts.

We come now to treat of its Government. *Vincent le Blanc* and *Gaspard de St. Bernardin* say, 'tis divided into 6 Kingdoms, whose Kings are always hawking and hunt-

ing Hares and Partridges, or else at War. *Paul the Venetian* says, in his Time there were but 4. Yet now *La Croix* says, every Province is govern'd by a particular Lord, who commonly appoints a Chatellain over every Village within his Precincts. He corrects those who report, a Man may take and manure as much Land here as he will, for he says there's not a Foot but what belongs to some Lord or other. They have no Law but that of Nature, which is of three Sorts, viz. the Will of the Prince, that of private Men, and the Custom of the Country. The Prince distributes Justice, determines Quarrels, and punishes those who commit Injuries either in their Goods or Persons. He fines a Robber to pay the four Fold of what he has stolen, if he has Money or Friends; but if none, he must lose his Life, or become a Slave to the Person robbed. They are such Slaves to Custom, that they will not permit any Innovations for any thing in the World in their Habits, Occupations, or other Way of Living. Injured Persons may do themselves Justice without carrying the Criminal before the Lord of the Province, so that they'll kill a Robber or a Highway-Man, which are common in the Country, as soon as a Rat or a venomous Serpent. Adulterers are condemned to a great Fine, and sometimes their Husbands put away or kill them. Nevertheless they seek all Occasions to satisfy their Lust. When a married Woman, separate from her Husband, has a Child by another Man, the Husband must keep it till she marry with his Consent to another; but she must first restore the Portion, which according to Custom the Men give their Parents. He adds, that there are frequent Quarrels here, either for their Beasts trampling one another's Rice-Fields, or for a Man's keeping Company with another's Wife, or for Slandering and Affronts, or for pulling up the Ignama Roots out of a Neighbour's Field, as also for a Negro's going over another that lies upon the Ground without saying any thing, or for spitting in a Man's Face by Mistake, which their Judges make punishable. *Mandelslo* says, they are divided into several Tribes or Herds like the *Tartars*, of 100, 200, or 300 each, under their own Lord, who commonly make War for want of Pasturage for their

their Cattle; and tho' their Dignity is not hereditary, yet they govern while they are in Possession of it with an uncontrollable Authority. Ovington says, their Kings compute their Wealth by the Numbers of their Slaves, and make War upon their Account. Morery says, that the most powerful often usurp the Supreme Authority, and that the Provinces are govern'd by petty Princes or Grandees; after whose Death their Subjects may chuse another, and he is obliged to make them a Present. He adds, that the People are distinguished into several Ranks. Pory says, here is but one King, with 16 Counsellors, viz. 4 Christians, 4 Mahometans, 4 Jews, and 4 Pagans, who professed all Sorts of Learning; but Heylin tells us here are 4 Kings, who, tho' continually at War with one another, unite against a Foreign Enemy.

La Croix says, they never seek a fair Field Fight, but form Ambuscades, and wait all Opportunities of surprizing their Enemy either at Break of Day, or by different Routs, and sometimes agree 8 Days beforehand to attack a Town at such a Time. When they come near, they make a terrible Outcry, and encompass it round. When they enter, they cut all the Men, Women and Children, they can find, to Pieces. When their Rage is over, they make all Prisoners that they can catch. They send out Spies frequently to observe their Enemy, and small Parties to plunder and burn their Villages; but they take Care lest they should be surrounded or intercepted. Those who make Excursions commonly provide themselves with Enchantments, and Billets writ in *Arabick*, which they firmly believe will debilitate their Enemies, bring mortal Distempers among them, and prove their total Ruin and Defeat, but have the contrary Effect with themselves; and if Sicknes or other Misfortunes should fall upon them 10 Years after, they are apt to impute them to their Enemy's Enchantments. They are very covetous of one another's Wealth and Cattle, and declare those that have most, their Enemies. They have different Arms almost in every Province. Some carry a great Zagay, headed with a long, broad, sharp Iron, and 10 or 15 little Javelins. Others use the great Zagay and Buckler. *La Croix*

says, the best Arms and Soldiers are in the Provinces of *Androbeizaha*, *Manghafia*, *Manghabei*, *Ampabe*, *Mahafale*, *Machicore*, *Eringdrane*, *Anachimoussi*, and *Vohits Angombe*; and that near the River *Mananghourou*, 3 Leagues below *Ghalemboulou*, there are 5 or 600 bold Men, who are arm'd with Darts, Bows and Arrows. Those of *Manghafia*, towards the N. of the Island, fight Hand to Hand with only a Zagay and Buckler, so that when those who throw their Darts fight with them, they are obliged to fly as soon as their Stock is discharged; but our Author says, the bravest of all their Soldiers are those of *Monamboule*, who carry 5 or 6 Javelins in their Bucklers. He tells us, that they observe no Order in Fighting, but strive to terrify one another by Bravadoes and Menaces; and that when any of their Enemies fall to the Ground, they cut their Throats with Huzzahs; and that the vilest Slave among them has this to boast of, that he has stabbed the Bodies of their Enemies as they lay dead on the Ground. While the Men are abroad at War, their Wives and Daughters dance Night and Day at home, and eat and sleep at one another's Houses, but will by no Means admit strange Men into their Company, for they believe if they did, that their Husbands would certainly be killed or wounded in the Field. On the other hand, they think that their Dances inspire their Husbands with Courage and Strength. When any of the Grandees has a Mind to make his Peace, he sends some of his Men to the Enemy with Presents, and to desire him to agree to a Day for a friendly Conference. The other does the like on his Part, and both repair on a set Day to the Banks of a River with all their Troops, as if they were ready to engage. They each kill a Bull, and send one another a Bit of the Liver, which they eat in Presence of their Envoys, with solemn Oaths and Imprecations, that what they eat may kill them, that God would forsake them, that they may be ruin'd by their Enemies, that their Race may end with them, and the like, if they have any Design to prolong the War, to break their Faith, or to carry any more Enchantments. But if any be forced to beg Peace, he must go and humble himself before his Enemy, and send one of his Men before hand to de-

fire his Protection. Then the Conqueror brings him a Liver to eat, and engages him to Fidelity; but notwithstanding their solemn Oaths and Imprecations, our Author observes that they only watch the first fair Opportunity to break them, so that they are forced always to be upon their Guard. Captain *Davis* says, the People about *St. Austin's Bay* have no Weapons for Defence; but Mr. *Finch* says, they carry great Knives about them, which, as well as all their other Arms, are of their own Manufacture, and very artfully contrived. *De la Val* says, the Noise of a Gun frightens them. *Herbert*, that they defend themselves by Targets, and that they poison their Lances, and throw them with as much Art as any People in the World. *Mandelsloe*, that they are train'd up to Arms from their Infancy, and that their Lances, Darts and Pikes, always lie near them when they are at work in the Field; that Persons of Note seldom go abroad without a Bundle of 20 or 30 Darts or small Pikes carried after them; that their Bows are 5 or 6 Foot long; and tho' the Strings be loose, they shoot with great Force and Activity. M. *Dellon* says, they always fight on Foot, and that their Bucklers are made of a very hard Wood.

We shall next give some Account of their Commerce. *La Croix* says, they traffick among themselves only by Barter, without the Use of Gold or Silver Coin; and that if they receive any from Foreigners, they presently melt it down into Bracelets. When they go far into the Country to buy Beeves, Cotton and Silk Habits, Iron, Zaggays, Axes, Knives, and other Necessaries, they furnish themselves with Coral, Glass, and other French Merchandizes, for Barter. Those who want Cotton carry Rice, and exchange it for Cattle, which they drive into such Parts of the Country as abound with Cotton, and so those who have no Cattle or Rice carry Cotton to Places that yield both. They also change Gold and Silver for Copper and Iron; but our Author observes, they are all very ignorant of Trade, and negligent of their own Commodities. He says, the Foreign Merchandizes, which are most esteemed here, are Coral Beads of all Sizes and Colours bor'd,

great Brass Wire, and several other small Wares, viz. little Chains of yellow Copper, Scissors, Knives, Axes, Hammers, Nails, and other Things of little Value, which may be truck'd with considerable Advantage for the Merchandize of the Country. All their Riches consist in these Commodities, and in Bills, Knives, Hatchets, pointed Spades of Iron and Steel, Habits, Beeves, Igame Fields, Rice Marshes, and a Multitude of Subjects and Slaves. The *Zaferaminis* have most Gold; but they hide it as much as possible from the French. There's Gold in the Province of *Manghabu*; but they keep it conceal'd in their Cœmeteries, because by their Superstitions they esteem themselves unworthy on't. Most of them prefer reddish Gold before the finest Sort; but those of *Anossi* know better, and have some Skill in both Silver and Gold. Admiral *Lancaster*, who traded here the Beginning of the last Century, says, the People about *Autongil Bay* held up their Oranges, Limons, Rice, and Hens, at such high Prizes, and had so many screwing Tricks in their Dealing, that some Days passed before he could bring them to a tolerable Trade, and was glad to do it at last by fixing the Exchange to certain Rules, so that he bought 16 Tun of Rice, 50 Bushels of Pease and Beans, besides Oxen, Hens, Oranges and Limons, with less Noise than a Dozen of Oranges before. Mr. *Finch*, who was here soon after, says, those at the Bay of *St. Austin* are very subtle in Trade, and not to be charmed with old Iron; that they made him pay dearer for Cattle than at *Soldania*, and would take no Payments in any Metal below Silver, so that for three Kine, two Steers, and four Calves, he gave 19 s. which he says would have purchas'd Cattle enough at *Soldania* to have stocked two or 3 good Farms. Admiral *Beaulieu*, who was here about 1620, says, the Natives were very fond of Silver Chains, yellow Amber cut fine, Rassades of all Colours, Knives, Razors, Combs, Iron, Tin Vessels, Copper Basins, and Cloth of various Colours. They gave him a large Fowl or Weather for every String of his red Rassade; but they valued their Rice very high, and at last demanded four Strings of red Rassade for a Sheep; whereas before they took but two apiece.

How.

However he had for a Silver Chain, which was 5 Foot and a half long, and weighed 3 Ounces and a half, a stately Ox and two Heifers; another Ox for a String of Coral Beads, and 6 lusty Oxen for 4 Ounces of a Silver Chain. *Herbert* says, they are very fond of long red Cornelian Beads, which they hang in their Hair and about their Necks; as also of Copper Chains, Bells, Babies, and Triangular Glasses. In 1639, *Mr. Mandelsloe* was at *St. Austin's Bay*, and bought 4 Oxen for 40 Pair of Glass Bracelets, a Sheep for two, and a Calf for 3 Pair; a fat Ox worth 6 or 7 Pound for a Brass Ring 10 or 12 Inches about; a fat Sheep, whose Tail weighed 20 or 24 Pound, for 7 or 8 Grains of Coral or Agat, and a Capon for 3 or 4 Grains of counterfeit Coral. *Sir William Monson* says, the *Moors* on the Continent trade with the People of this Island for Elephants Teeth, Ambergreece, &c. The *Sansons* say, *Europeans* carry them Coral Beads, Chains, Bracelets, Ear-Pendants of Glass, Ribbons, Girdles of various Colours, several Toys of Enamel Crystal, Wood, Jet, and Copper-gilt or wash'd with Silver, Knives, Scissors, Looking-Glasses, Cases, Hats, Caps, Shoes, little Bells, Grenats of various Colours, Pearls of *Venice*, Agats, Cornelians, &c. *Dampier* says, they drive a Slave Trade here, one Nation or Clan selling others that are their Enemies. *M. Delon* says, that among other Commodities vended by Foreigners to the *Madagascarians*, are painted Callicoes and Linen Cloths, Cornelians, Bracelets, Necklaces of Silver, Copper and Tin, Iron, (for they have none of their own) and Aquavitæ. He adds, that the Hopes of finding some Gold Mines here was the chief Motive that induced the *French* to settle here; but they were frustrated, for the *Rohandrians*, i. e. the chief Governors of the People, being jealous of the Designs of the *French*, have several times drawn them, under Pretence of Alliances, into remote Places, where, instead of discovering their Gold Mines, they have massacred them. This makes it uncertain whether there be any Gold here or not, and our Author thinks they have none but what they get by Commerce with the Continent. *Mr. Roberts* says, they have Cloves, Ginger, and some Silver, for their own Use, but not for Exportation; that their

only Money is the Glass Beads of *Cambai*; and that they are not to permit Foreigners to land in their Country for Traffick sake. *La Croix* contradicts those who say they can't count 10, and says they have the same Numerical Computation as *Europeans*, and use the same Weights, but have none above a Dram, for they weigh no Merchandizes except Gold and Silver. They have several Sorts of Measures, particularly the Rice Measure, i. e. the King's Bushel. They measure Stuffs, Cords, and the like, by what they call *Refe*, which is a Fathom with us; but they don't use the Ell and Foot, nor no Land-Measures.

We shall conclude our General Account of *Madagascar* with the *French* Affairs, and the Ways propos'd by different Authors to settle a Company here. *La Croix* says, that if the *French* had acted in Concert by the King's Orders, rather than under the Conduct of the *French East-India Company*, *France* would have been Mistress of *Madagascar*, and all the neighbouring Islands; but the Misunderstandings and Self-Interest of private Men were the real Cause that they were obliged to abandon it; of which our Author gives the following Account.

The Captain of a Hoy, says he, carried the Daughters of a noble Family at *Paris* to the Isle of *Bourbon* to be married, and had Orders to proceed thither directly. Nevertheless he stopped at *Madagascar* to sell his Brandies there, which he put off at a high Price, and for that End he gave out that no more of the King's nor of the Company's Ships would come thither. In the mean time the Missionaries made up their Packets privately to go on board the Hoy, where the Captain promis'd to receive them; but by Misfortune the Vessel was dashed to Pieces in the Road by a violent Gust of Wind. However all the Men were saved except a few Mariners. But another Ship going this Way soon after to *Surat*, took on board the Missionary, the Governor, and his Family, and all that had a Mind to quit the Island. Yet when the Ship was getting ready to sail, the Islanders had formed ill Designs against the *French* upon this Occasion: There being a War of several great Allies, of whom *Dian-Ma-nangus* was Chief, against a Party of Ne-

groes, supported by the *French*, the Allies of the *French* seeing them going to abandon the Island, and fearing the Enemy would improve it to their Destruction, made a separate Peace with *Dian Manangue*, and the *Grande*s hired the Negro Slaves to cut the Throats of the *French* in their Houses, while they plunder'd others, and committed the most cruel Barbarities that their Rage could dictate for being thus deserted. But the Ship being still in the Road, and being induc'd by a Signal which was made by those that were left alive, sent a Sloop to the Foot of Fort *Dauphin* to take on board the miserable Remains of the *French* Factory. *La Croix* wishes that the *French* had follow'd the Advice and seconded the Efforts of their Countryman the *Sieur de la Case*, whom he calls the Hero of *Madagascar*. He also imputes a Thousand Crosses which the *French* met with here to the indiscreet Zeal of one of their Missionaries against *Dian Manangue*, who from one of their best Friends became their most formidable Enemy. He lays several other Particulars of ill Conduct to their Charge, for which we refer the Curious to his Book.

But before the *French* left the Island, we must observe what *M. Dellon* tells us was transacted while he was at Fort *Dauphin*, viz. That the *French* were at War with *Rasaf*, one of the most potent Lords of the Island, who brought 14000 Men into the Field; whereas the *French* had but 140 *Frenchmen* and 300 Negroes, commanded by *M. de Charmagoux*, who had a Led-Horse with him, to which the Natives paid as much Respect as to himself. Both Armies met in a Plain. *Rasaf* marched upon the *French*, but was put to Flight by their Firelocks, and none would rally except some few that were near his Person, with whom he renew'd the Combat till he lost both the Battle and his Life, with a Booty of 30000 Oxen, and a vast Number of Slaves, which the *French* sent to Fort *Dauphin*, where all, except a few that dy'd by the Way, were shar'd among the Victors. He observes, that this put all the petty Kings into a Consternation, and made them court the Friendship of the *French*; that some came in their own Persons, and others sent Ambassadors to do Homage to *M. de Mondervegue*, the King's Lieutenant-General here; but few

were as good as their Word, and some us'd the same Arms presented them by him against the *French* themselves; but our Author adds, that they were soon punished for their Ingratitude. *M. Rennefort* says, that the *Sieur de la Haye*, Viceroy of the *East-Indies* for the *French* King, arrived here with 10 of his Ships, took the Oaths of Fidelity from all the King's Officers, and published a general Amnesty, including the Natives, and exhorting all the King's Subjects here to leave the Service of Foreigners, and return into the Pay of the *French East-India* Company, on Pain of Death. Afterwards he constituted the *Sieur de Charmagou* Lieutenant-General in the King's Name, and the *Sieur de la Case* Major-General of the Island, of which he took Possession in the King's Name, into whose Hands the *East-India* Company had resign'd it by reason of the Mismanagement of their Officers. Then he propos'd to the two new Generals to attack *Remousaye*, who being the next Neighbour to the *French*, had refused to do him Homage, tho' he had always been an Ally to the *French*, till he married his Daughter to a Prince that was their mortal Enemy. In order to begin the Rupture, he demand'd all their Arms; but they sent Word they would not part with them as long as they liv'd: Upon which the *Sieur de la Haye*, with 700 *French* and 600 *Madagascarians* besieged *Remousaye* in his Village, who repuls'd the *French* with considerable Loss in several Attacks, and forced them to retreat. Most attribute this ill Success to the Jealousy betwixt the *Sieurs de la Haye* and *Charmagou*, the latter not brooking the Affront of being commanded in a Place where he had been Chief before. At last the *Sieur de la Haye*, finding that neither his Industry, Policy, nor arbitrary Power, were of much Stead, where there was a Faction of a contrary Interest, thought fit to leave the Management of the Island to the old Commanders, and sail'd for *Mascareigne*, with the Officers and others that came with him from *France*. Thus, says our Author, the Isle of *Madagascar*, about which they had made such glorious Projects in *France*, was entirely abandon'd by the King's Forces, and soon after by all his Subjects, except a few of the oldest *French* Inhabitants, and some Missionaries, who were afterwards for most

most Part massacred. But *Rennefort* says, it concerns the Honour of *France* to retake it, because of its convenient Situation between both the *Indies*, and its Variety of rich Commodities. He urges, 'tis one of the best Conquests *France* can make, and for this End he proposes several Directions, of which we shall insert the following as a Specimen of the ambitious Politicks of the *French* to aggrandize their K. and Country, viz. That the *French East and West India Companies* be united, and that the Princes of the Blood, great Lords, Gentlemen, Magistrates, chief Merchants, Tradesmen, Prelates, Abbots, and all Land and Sea Officers of Note belonging to *France*, may be Members. That there be two Offices erected, one of Government, and the other of Commerce, with faithful Secretaries, who may chuse two Lords of the highest Birth and Merit in the Kingdom to be Generalissimo's, one in the *East-Indies*, and the other in the *West*, to whom the King shall give an absolute Command over all the Company's Settlements and Officers. That capable Persons be chose for Land and Sea Officers, and duly rewarded or punished, according to their Merit. That the Sea-Captains be not under 30, nor above 50 Years of Age. That none be admitted or employed by the Company who are seditious, lazy, or such as have separate Interests. That for better performing the great Voyages, they will be obliged to make, Staples or Places of Refreshment, be fix'd at the Distance of every 500 Leagues on the *African Coast*, and one as near as possible on each Side *Good Hope*, because of the Difficulty and Danger in doubling that Cape. That a Fort be erected in some Island under the Torrid Zone, with a Garrison of Persons inur'd to the Sea, and the Heats of the Climate. That other Settlements be made at the aforesaid Distances between *Madagascar*, *China*, *Japan*, &c. That the same Distances be observed in *America*, particularly on the Coasts of *Brasil*, *Terra firma*, *New Spain*, &c. That the Garrisons of the nearest Places to *France* be replaced, and removed farther off, that so they may be insensibly inur'd to the various Climates of the Countries. That such Missionaries as are employ'd be free from all private Interest or Ambition, but to convert Infidels and Hereticks. That none be

sent but Secular Priests of good Learning and Probity, and that such Monks and Friars may be detached from the several Orders who have no other End but the Glory of God, and the faithful Discharge of all the Company's Orders. That none be admitted into, or employ'd by the Company who are of a Foreign Nation or Religion. That Care be taken to remove the Prejudices of the Emperor of *Japan* against the Church of *Rome*, and that Persons of Experience and Abilities be appointed to settle a Commerce with *France*, and to get Footing in the two Empires of *Japan* and *China*, but not Merchants. That afterwards Envoys and Agents be sent to such Places as shall be thought fit, with good Salaries for their Encouragement to improve the Affairs of the Company. That the Generalissimo's be appointed to reside in certain Towns of either *Indies* as are situate in the Center of the *French Colonies*, and in a good Country, with a convenient Harbour; and our Author proposes this Island as the most convenient Staple for all Ships that go to the *East-Indies*, for he says all the *European Plantations* in *Asia*, *Africa*, or *America*, can't boast of any thing which may not be found in this Island. And finally, he directs that a Person of great Merit and Experience, and one who is acquainted with the *Madagascarians*, be chose for Governor; that Fort *Dauphin* be repaired for his Residence, and that he may be put in a Condition to reduce the whole Island to his Obedience, which our Author thinks will be no hard Task, because the *Grande'es* are so divided, that the strongest can't assemble a Hundredth Part of the Natives for his own Defence, and that they are all afraid of Fire-Arms. *Flacourt* too thinks that this Island would be a very fit Staple for the Commerce of the *East-Indies*, and of the greatest Importance for carrying on a Trade to the Coasts of *Ethiopia*, the *Red Sea*, the *Arabian Gulph*, &c. not only for exchanging its Commodities with those of other Countries in those Parts, but for the abundance of Wood which may be exported hence thither for building Ships. *Sir William Monson* recommends this to the *English* for the best Plantation they can erect within the Bounds of *America*, *Africa*, or *Asia*, for these Reasons. He says, there's nothing can improve

prove a Plantation but this will yield; that the Winds are certain at the Time of the Year to carry us directly thither without striking Sail; and that therefore a Voyage may be run hither sooner than to *Virginia*, (which is farther) where the Winds and Weather are both uncertain; that it will be less Charge to hire Ships to carry Planters hither than to *Virginia*, by placing 20 in a Ship if it be of good Burthen; that the Climate agrees with the *English*; and that the Cattle here will bring us a certain Commodity of Hides. He wishes that two Barks were kept here for Intelligence, one to discover the N. Part of the Island, and the other the S. and to rendezvous at the Place from whence they parted, which he thinks will be a Means to discover the Heart of the Island, and Variety of Commodities that are yet unknown. He makes no Doubt that by good Usage we may encourage the Children, with Consent of their Parents, to come to *England* for Education, and return them when grown up, which he thinks will be the best Means to improve our Plantation, and to propagate Christianity among the Natives. He adds, that if we had a Settlement here, our Voyages to the *East-Indies* would be much more pleasant, short, and profitable, by erecting a Staple of Commodities betwixt us and the *Indies*, for he says Part of the Fleet may be sent from the Island to the *Indies*, and return again with the Commodities of those Countries, which our Ships might there receive and bring directly for *England*; so that all our Ships would be continually going and coming, and have a Return from the *Indies* every 12 Months, which now they don't in two Years. Besides all these Reasons, 'tis said the *Madagascarians* would be well pleased with an *English* Plantation, which *Heylin* ascribes either to their Love of our Nation, whom they own to be more courteous than the *Portuguese*, and not so covetous as the *Dutch*, or to the Strength of our Shipping. He adds, that the *French* have of late settled some Colonies on the S. Shore; but since he does not distinguish the Time, 'tis probable they are the same which they abandon'd. *M. Rennefort* is very large upon this Head, and we refer the Curious to his Book. We come next to the particular Geography.

La Croix divides it into 28 Provinces or Countries; the chief of which are as follows:

1. *Anossi*, *Carcanossi*, or *Androbiraha*. He places it in Lat. 25. 18. and extends it from *Manatengha* to Lat. 26. He says, 'tis water'd by several Rivers, that fall for most Part into the River *Fanshere*, which rises in the Mountain *Manghage*, and falls into the Sea in S. Lat. 25. 18. two little Leagues from Fort *Dauphin*. Its Mouth is often stopped up, so that it can have no Passage into the Sea but by an Inundation or a high Tide. Its Water is always salt a League above its Mouth when 'tis not stopped. It forms a Lake at its Mouth half a League broad, so deep that it would be navigable if its Mouth was always open. It breeds a great many Crocodiles, as well as all other Rivers of the Island. There's a Cape called *St. Romain*, half a League from the Mouth of this River, that runs 6 Leagues into the Sea. The *Sansons* make it the most S. Point of *Madagascar*. Betwixt it and the Cape of *Itapera*, *La Croix* places the Fort and Bay of *Dauphin*, and says, there's the Bay of *Loucar* or *Itapera* near it, which is a good Road for Ships, but of dangerous Entrance, because of Rocks. There are several Islands and Peninsula's on the Coast of this Province. The Country is every where pleasant, and abounds in Pasture, is encompassed with high Mountains, and diversified by a great Number of little Hills and fertile Plains. There are several Towns upon the Rivers which belong to the *Grande*es of the Country, besides a great many Villages and Hamlets. The *Portuguese* had formerly a Fort and Settlement near the Mountain *Vohits Massin*, 8 Leagues from Fort *Dauphin*, but were at last massacred by the Natives. There are several Woody Mountains here, but one 4 Leagues from Fort *Dauphin* which is quite bare of Trees, as well as the neighbouring Hills. The *French* have often dug there for Gold or Silver, because there are 7 Springs there, which form a Brook, where they found several Stones cover'd with a yellow Clay, and mix'd with a great Number of little white and black Spangles; but when they were pounded and sifted, the Matter was too light. For 30 Fathom above those Springs, the Grass of the Mountain is yellow and half wither'd,

withed, because of the Metallick Veins of the Mountain; but the Top is all over very fresh and green. 'Tis said, the Portuguese formerly dug Gold at the Foot of this Mountain on the N. Side; but since the Grandees expelled them, they have shut up the Mine.

The People are both Whites and Negroes, and are rank'd into several Classes, for which we refer to our Author, and shall only observe, that the *Rohandrians* are People of the greatest Dignity and Credit in the whole Province, and that they chuse their Kings out of their Tribe, the rest being honour'd by the other People as Princes, and that the *Anacandrians* are their Bastards.

This Province was under the Dominion of the French while they were here, and of certain Lords on the Sea-Side; but before that by the *Zaferamini*, under a Prince whom they honour'd as a God. He had been baptized at Goa, where he was brought up by the Jesuits and the Viceroy in the Roman Religion, and taught to read and write, and to speak Portuguese, and he was able to give some Account of his Faith; but as soon as he was restor'd to his Father, he relaps'd into Paganism, and was killed by a Musket-Ball when the French attacked the Village of *Franshere*, which was the Place of his Residence.

La Croix gives this Account of the French Settlements here and in the neighbouring Islands. He tells us, that about 1641, the French began to fortify themselves upon the S. or S. E. Point of this Province, over against the Shore, and built that they call'd Fort *Dauphin*, where they rais'd a Colony, after they had reduc'd almost all the Province to their Obedience by Force of Arms; and that in 1642, *Ruault*, Captain of a French Ship, obtained the sole Permission for himself and Company for 10 Years from Cardinal *Richlieu*, Superintendant of the Marines, to send Ships and Men to *Madagascar* and the neighbouring Isles, in order to settle a Plantation there, and take Possession of it in the King's Name. Accordingly he erected a Society, under the Name of the French East-India Company, and his Grant was prolonged by Patent to the Year 1661. The Company sent the first Ship here in March 1642, with two Governors and 12 Frenchmen, who were to stay here till

the Arrival of a Ship that was to set out from France in November following. In their Way they took Possession of the Islands *Mascarenhas*, *Diego de Rois*, *St. Mary*, *St. Lucia*, and *Autongil Bay* in *Madagascar*, in the King's Name. The next Ship sent by the Company brought 70 Men more; but a third Part of them dy'd at *St. Lucia*, because of the bad Air and Situation of the Place. Then the Negroes, excited by the Whites, attempted to make Head against these New-comers; but the French Governor stifled the Design in its Infancy, by making Presents to the Lord of the Country. Afterwards he sent 12 Frenchmen to settle in the Province of *Matatane*; but Part of them soon after their Arrival advancing to a Place 18 Leagues N. of *Matatane* to buy Provisions, and take a View of the Country, were surpris'd by a great Number of the Natives, whom the Grandees of the Country had assembled, and had 60 of their Men killed, and as many Mariners were murder'd in another Province as they were taking in a Cargo of Ebony. Our Author observes, that all this happen'd at the private Instigation of the great Men of this Province, who did not dare to appear openly for fear of making the French their Enemies. He says, that soon after this, he that was the French Governor here built Fort *Dauphin*, in S. Lat. 25. 6. near a Harbour which is secure from the most dangerous Winds, and of a commodious Entrance. They rais'd several Habitations behind the Fort near the Governor's House, with a great Inclosure, which produced all Sorts of Fruits and Pot-Herbs. In 1656, the Fort was burnt by Accident, but soon restored to its former State, and the French kept a pretty strong Garrison in it, under the King's Governor. Then they fell upon the neighbouring Provinces, made Excursions over the Mountains, plunder'd the Villages, and carried off the Cattle. And *Flacourt*, who was the King's Governor here in 1651, caused the Country of *Franshere* to be ravaged by 40 French and as many Negroes, arm'd with Bucklers and Zagays, who by his Order pulled down the Habitations of the Natives, and brought off so much Cattle, that the best Estate of the *Rohandrians*, which consisted in Houses and Provisions, was destroyed. He adds, that what bred a

farther Aversion in some of the Inhabitants to the *French*, was the Governor's selling several Slaves of both Sexes to the *Dutch* Governor of *Maurice* Island. M. Rennefort says, the King order'd a Pyramid to be erected here with the Arms of his Majesty, the Company, and of the Officer who took Possession, with his Name, and the Time of Action.

2. *Manatenga* or *Manampani*, and the Valley of *Amboule*. *La Croix* places the former in S. Lat. 23. in a pleasant Country, and the Valley of *Amboule* a little more North. He says, its chief River is of its own Name, whose Mouth lies in Lat. 23 $\frac{1}{2}$. or under the Tropick of *Capricorn*, and rises in the aforesaid Valley, and running between high Mountains, receives several Rivers by the Way, and then turns directly to the E. The Valley abounds with Fruits and Plants, especially white *Igname* and the Root *Sesame*. Their Cattle are fat, their Flesh good, and there are Mines of Iron. There's a Spring of Water in it, whose Sand is so hot, that 'tis intolerable to their naked Feet. Nay, they report, that it will boil an Egg hard in two Hours; and they give out, that 'tis a sovereign Remedy against the cold Gout. The People work up Iron and Steel, which they dig out of their Mines, into *Zagays*, *Darts*, and other Instruments. Those of the Valley have a Governor, to whom they give the Title of Grand Seignior, for he is the greatest Lord of the Country. He is rich in Cattle and all other Necessaries, but has no absolute Power; and sometimes, when Provisions are scarce, his Subjects, to the Number of 5. or 600, tie him and his Wife with Cords, and threaten to kill him if he does not give them Cattle, so that he is forced to distribute his Stock that Moment; but then when a good Harvest comes up, he makes them pay four times more than they took. The People of the Valley live very licentious, and their Country serves as a Retreat for all manner of Rogues. The same Governor has the Command of

Izame, a small Province W. of the Valley, where they make all Sorts of Iron Instruments, and draw abundance of the Oil of *Sesame*. The Inhabitants are about 800, and the boldest Soldiers in the whole Island.

3. *Vohitsbang*. *La Croix* extends it from the River *Manatenga*, in Lat. 23 $\frac{1}{2}$. to the

River *Mananghare*, and says, the former runs into the Sea with 4 Mouths; that the River *Aviboule*, which the *French* call *St. Giles*, is 4 *French* Leagues from it, runs always into the Sea, and is navigable by a Boat. Fifteen Leagues farther is the River of *Maf-sianaoh*, where there's a good Bay for Barks, which the *French* call the Bay of *One Eyes*, because of a Lord of the Country who was one Ey'd. There's the River of *Mananghare* 4 Leagues farther N. which has 7 Mouths, almost all shut, and full of Rocks. The Coast is full of high Mountains, cover'd with Groves, between which there are several Valleys that abound with Honey; and 'tis said there's Gold in them, if they would take the Pains to dig it. The Country is so hilly, that it may be seen a great Distance at Sea, and abounds with Bees, Sugar-Canes, *Igname*, Rice, and other Necessaries, besides many Mines of Iron. The Inhabitants are all Blacks, and are continually quarrelling, for they never forget past Injuries, and this Spirit of Revenge is kept up by Tradition from Father to Son. They are great Robbers, and sometimes steal their Neighbours Children and Slaves, and sell them into remote Parts. They have an irreconcilable Hatred to the Whites of *Matatane*, out of a ridiculous Fancy, that because they can write, they can bewitch them with Sickness or Death by Means of certain Letters and Characters which they are skilled in. The Mouth of the River *Manatenga* is inhabited only by poor Fishermen. Their Habits are made of the Bark of a Tree, and they buy others of Cotton in the Province of *Carcanossi*. They carry for their Arms a Wooden Buckler, cover'd with an Ox's Hide, and a very heavy *Zagay*. The Country is govern'd by several Lords.

4. *Homampo*. *La Croix* makes it but three small Leagues in Compass, and places it in a Valley between high Mountains, where he says they prepare the best Steel in the whole Island; and that the Country abounds in Rice, *Igname*, Sugar, Canes, Pulse, Cattle, and Mines of Iron and Steel. Wood is very scarce in the neighbouring Country.

5. *Anachimoussi*. *La Croix* makes it but 4 short Days Journey in Length, and says, it abounds with Rice and *Igname*, Cattle, and other Necessaries, and that 'tis very populous.

pulous. He adds, that 'tis bounded on the E. with the River *Jonghamou*, on the S. with the Country of *Manamboule*, on the W. with great Mountains, and on the N. with the River *Mangharac* and the Country of *Eringdrane*.

6. *Eringdrane*, a large flat Province, divided into the Greater on the N. and Lesser on the S. 'Tis bounded on the E. with high Mountains, and on the W. with three great Rivers, which run thro' the Country into a great Bay in S. Lat. 20. 'Tis so populous, that in Time of Need it can furnish above 30000 Foot, and there's abundance of Cattle on the Mountains on the E. Side.

7. *Vohits Anghombe*. 'Tis bounded on the S. with *Eringdrane*, and has high Mountains on the E. Side. 'Tis as populous as the former, and can bring 100000 Men into the Field. It has finer Villages and Houses than any other Part of the Island. It abounds in Rice, Cattle, Iron and Steel. They make Habits here of the Rind of Bananas Trees, the Thread of which is as fine as Silk; yet they have Habits of Silk, and sell both at a moderate Price. The People are mortal Enemies to those of *Eringdrane*, who make War upon them with the Assistance of the *French*.

8. *Matatane*. 'Tis a flat Country near a River of its own Name, that rises out of the Mountains, and falls into the Sea with two Mouths 7 *French* Leagues from one another, with a pleasant Country between them, which abounds in Honey, Ignames, and Cattle, and is water'd with several Rivers full of Fish. Here are so many Sugar-Canes, that they would yearly produce several Ship-loads of Sugar, if the People had the Skill and Instruments to draw and prepare it. The *Grande*es have each 15 or 20 Wives, who live by themselves in an Inclosure, encompassed with Palisadoes, where every Woman has her own Hut, which no Negroes dare enter upon Pain of Death. There are two Sorts of Inhabitants in this Province, viz. the *Casimambous*, and the *Zaferabiminas*, who are all Whites; but the former are much more lazy than the latter, are all Priests and Doctors, and have reduced the latter so low, that they are content to be their Slaves; and *La Croix* says, that 35 Years before his Time, when the

latter grew headstrong, the *Casimambous* put all the Men to the Sword, and sent their Wives and Children to a certain Island, where they settled, planted, and brought up Cattle, and are called *Ontampassemai*, i. e. People of the Sandy Shores of *Mecca*, because 'tis said they were originally *Arabians* on the Shore of the *Red Sea*, and that they were sent hither in Canoes about 200 Years ago by the Caliph of *Mecca* to teach the Islanders *Mahometism*. Their Chief married the Daughter of a great Negro Lord, who was Prince of *Matatane*, on Condition that their Children should be called by the Father's Name; whereas in the S. Parts of the Island the Children are called after the Name of their Mothers, which is also the Custom in the Province of *Machicore*. The *Casimambous* greatly multiplied, and began to keep School in all the Villages, as they do to this Day, for teaching the People to read and write *Arabick*. They have the sole Privilege above the other Whites, to kill Beasts; and the *Ontampassemai* are very expert in Fishing, which is their chief Livelihood.

9. *Antavere* lies to the N. of *Matatane*, in S. Lat. 21 $\frac{1}{2}$. It abounds in Rice, Ignames, Bananas, Sugar-Canes, and Honey, of which they make Wine; Bees, Goats, Wild-Fowl, and all manner of Provisions; and the *French* found Gold-Dust here, by Means of the Negroes who offer'd them some to Sale.

10. *Ambohitsmene* lies to the N. and W. of the former, and is so called from some red Mountains of the same Name, in S. Lat. 19. or 20. which are so high, that they may be seen 15 Leagues at Sea, and are almost like *Table Mountain* at the Cape of *Good Hope*. This Chain of Mountains, which run 15 Leagues into the Country, has the Sea on one Side, and the flat Country on the other, that is full of Ponds and Marshes, and has a Lake above 15 Leagues in Length, and as many in Breadth, where there are several little Islands. Some of these Mountains abound in Gold, Iron, Cattle, Rice, Sugar-Canes, Ignames, Silk Habits, and other Necessaries. That which the *French* called the Port of *Prunes* is in this Province, in Lat. 18 $\frac{1}{2}$.

11. *Voulouvilou*, has a good Harbour in Lat. 18. behind Rocks, that advance a quarter

ter of a League into the Sea, and another in the large Bay of *Galemboulou* or *Galembole*, in $17\frac{1}{2}$. which is very secure for Barks behind a little Island; but 'tis pretty dangerous, because of the Rocks and tossing of the Sea, which is always high in the calmest Weather. M. *Dellon* places this Bay in Lat. 15.50 . 15 Leagues from the Isle of *St. Mary*, and says, the *French* had a Fort here, which they blew up when they abandon'd the Island: Whereupon the Negroes, dreading the Cruelties of the neighbouring Mountaineers, their irreconcilable Enemies, made such horrible Outcries, that the *French* took as many as they could on board, and pacified the rest with Presents, and the Hopes of a speedy Return to their Rescue. He adds, that Pilots who frequent these Coasts always come to an Anchor towards Night, and stay till Day-light, to avoid the Rocks.

12. *Andouvouche*, i. e. a Gulph. *La Croix* says, it has this Name because it has several large Bays, particularly that called *Antongil*, from the Name of a Portuguese Captain who discover'd it. He places it Lat. 15 . N. of *St. Mary's* Island, makes it 6 Leagues broad, and says, it runs N. M. *Dellon* says, 'tis one of the most considerable Bays in the World for its Bigness, sound Bottom, and secure Harbour, against the most violent Tempests; and that 'tis one of the best Places to furnish Ships with Refreshments, because of the Fertility of the neighbouring Country. He makes it 15 Leagues long, 3 broad at the Entrance, 9 in the Middle, and so gradually increasing towards the Shore. He says, it will contain a great Number of Ships, and has several small Islands in its Bosom, the chief of which he calls *Maroca*, and that most of the Ships anchor as near it as possible, because they are shelter'd from all the Winds. He observes, that the S. and E. Winds, which are very frequent here, further the Entrance of Ships into the Bay; but then it often requires some Months to get out again. He adds, they have continual Rains here, and almost as bad an Air as at *St. Mary's* Isle; that the People here live like the rest of the *Madagascarians*; but their Religion comes nearer to *Mahometism*; that the Men are so jealous, that they punish Adultery with Death; that they have such an Aver-

sion to Swine's Flesh, that if one chanced to die, they bury it very deep under Ground, lest they should be defiled by the Smell as they pass by; and that they value Gold and Silver no more than Tin or Copper. They have abundance of Wild-Fowl. M. *Rennefort* places it but 3 Leagues from *St. Mary's* Isle, and says, that the *French* built a Wooden Fort here call'd *St. Lewis*, which they fortified with 4 Iron and 5 Brass Cannon, that some Divers fetched up from the Bottom of the Harbour, but soon quitted it, because there was no Trade.

La Croix gives this Account of another Island in the same Bay, but leaves us to guess at the Name. He says, it stands at the Bottom of the Bay, very high above Water, is two Leagues in Compass, and all over green. It abounds with all Sorts of Plants and Fruits, good Water-Hens, Bananas, and Honey, so that 'tis a Place of very good Refreshment. Of the other little Islands here, he says some are sown with Rice, and others cover'd with Forrests. He tells us, there are several populous Villages near the Mouth of the Bay, particularly a large one on the N. Side, call'd *St. Angelo* by the Portuguese, encompassed with a strong Pallisado, and another on the Left Hand called *Spakenburg* by the Dutch, that contains about 180 Families. He says, that the Coast of *Galemboule* is cover'd all over with high Trees, and that the Inland Country is full of Bamboo Canes; that it has a fat Soil, because of the frequent Rains; and that the Meadows abound with Pasture; yet the Inhabitants are not very rich in Cattle. Their Villages are more neat, firm, and situate to better Advantage, than the rest of the Island, for they are generally built upon a rising Ground, and along the Sides of Rivers, are encompassed with a Hedge, and have two Gates, one of which leads to a Wood, whither the Inhabitants retire for Safety when they are too much pressed by the Enemy. All the People betwixt this Bay and the Port of *Prunes* observe the same Customs, and are generally called *Zafehibraims*, for they pretend to be of the Race of *Abraham*; but *Flacourt* thinks them descended from the Jews or *Arabs*, because they observe their Sabbath, have a white Skin, and differ from their Neighbours in certain Customs. They are much whiter.

whiter than those of *Matatane* and *Andro-beizaha*, have long Hair, are frank, liberal, and hospitable to Strangers, and are not addicted to Murder and Robbery. They observe some Measure in their Dances. Their Songs are all about Love, and they make lascivious Motions when they sing, while the Company keep Time by clapping their Hands. When they are sick or have the Head-ach, they besmear their Faces with white, black, red, or yellow Colours, and some old Women do the same to gain a fresh Colour. He observes, that the young Women are so modest, and so strictly guarded by their Parents, that 'tis difficult to obtain the Sight of them. Both Sexes are generally laborious and frugal. They work in the Rice-Fields from Sun-rise to Sun-set. The Men cut Bamboo Canes, burn them dry, and dung their Fields with the Ashes. The Women and Girls do the rest. They plant the Rice Grain by Grain in those Ashes some Time after they have been water'd with the Rain, and sing and dance as it were by Measure all the while. They make a Hole in the Ground with the Point of a Stick, then put in two Grains, cover it with the Earth, and stamp on it with such Activity and different Gestures, that they don't interrupt their Songs and Dances. They also weed the Rice in Harvest-time, and carry it into the Barns. While the Women do this, the Men cut and burn more Canes in other Places; for as soon as the Rice comes forth in one Field, they sow it in another, so that they are continually employed, and have Rice in Herb, Flower, and in the Ear, all the Year long. They observe the same Method in the Cultivation of all their other Plants; and our Author observes, that the Bamboo Canes give such great Cracks when they burn, as shakes the Earth for a League round like one general Discharge of all the Artillery and small Arms of a fortified Place. He says, those of *Galembole* don't use the Merchandizes which they buy of the *French* for Ornament, yet have a great Value for them, and keep them to exchange with their Neighbours for Cattle. What little Gold they have they presently lay out for Cattle, and prefer Silver before it, especially that which is reddish. The Inhabitants of *Ga'emboule*, and all the *Zafhibraims*, are such strict Observers of

the Sabbath, that they won't go that Day into the Fields, for fear they should be wounded or fall sick. They don't own *Mahomet*, and call all *Mahometans*, and others who don't conform to their Manners and Customs, *Cafres*. They own *Noah*, *Moses*, *Abraham*, and *David*, but none of the other Prophets, not even Christ himself. They are so superstitious, that they would sooner famish than eat any Beast or Bird killed by a Christian, or other Inhabitants of the S. Coast, and none but the *Grandeess* have the Privilege to kill any Beast or Bird whatsoever. When they sick them with the Knife, they mutter certain Words, and lift up their Eyes to Heaven by Way of making an Offering. They generally chuse a Person of the greatest Age and Dignity in every Village to determine all Controversies. In Time of War they generally lend Succours against those who are of another Race; but if the Lords of the Villages have any great Quarrels which are like to break out into a War, then the others become Mediators; and if they will not hearken to their Proposals, they leave them to act as they list. They have a greater Value for their Slaves than the People of *Carcanossi*, so that the Masters call them their Children, and they call the latter Father, eat at Table with them, and sometimes obtain their Daughters in Marriage. The *Dutch* formerly traded hither for Rice and Slaves; and some Years ago, of 12 that were here, 8 dy'd, the Country being very unwholesome, and the other 4 were miserably put to Death by a Lord of the Country, who ungratefully betrayed them, tho' they had deliver'd him from another Lord his mortal Enemy, whom they killed in Battle with a Musket-Ball.

La Croix says, this is all that has been discover'd hitherto on the E. and S. E. Coast of the Island, for the *Europeans* know but little of the Country N. of *Antongil Bay*, except the Province of *Vohemaro*, which is called *Boamaro* in the *Portuguese Sea-Chart*, where Rice is cultivated with the same Art and Success as at *Galembole*. 'Tis said, there's abundance of Gold here, and that all the Goldsmiths of *Anossi* come originally from hence. From *Antongil* to *Cape Natal* the Coast runs directly N. He comes next to describe the other Coasts of the Island,

begin-

beginning at the Mouth of the River *Franshere*, and proceeding to the W. and from thence again to the N. as far as *St. Augustin's Bay*.

From the Mouth of *Franshere* to *Cape Moncale*, there's a Ridge of Sands of four *French Leagues* in Breadth; and from *Cape Moncale* to the Bay of *Galleons*, there's another of but two Leagues broad. There are some Woods along this sandy Coast which produce abundance of Aloes. A Bark may enter the Bay of *Galleons* very commodiously, but not a great Ship, because 'tis expos'd to violent Winds from the S. and S.E. which never rise without Thunder and Tempests. They make abundance of Salt in these Parts, but don't take due Care about it. They sow no Rice here, because the Soil is too sandy; but they have abundance of Cotton, and they draw an Oil from a certain Plant which is useful in several Distempers, and to anoint the Head and Hair. About 140 Years ago, the *Portuguese* had a Settlement on the Coast of the Bay of *Galleons*, under one of their own Governors. The chief Provinces on this Coast are,

1. *Ampatre*, which is separated from *Carcanoffi* on the E. by the River *Mandrerey*. 'Tis 20 *French Leagues* along the Coast, and 12 in Breadth from the Sea to the Country of *Machicore*. They have no Water here till you come to *Manamboule*, unless it be in Marshes. The Country is full of Forrests, in which they build their Villages, and encompass them with such strong Hedges, that 'tis impossible to enter any where but by the Gates. The Coast runs in a direct Line to the Country of *Caremboule*, without being cut by any Bay. The whole Country can raise about 3000 Men. The Inhabitants are very much inclin'd to pillage their Neighbours, not only of their Goods, but their Wives, which is often the Cause of many fatal Quarrels.

2. *Munanghare* is a pleasant and fruitful Province, but uninhabited, except by Wild Boars and Bufflers, for fear of War, because every Grandee in the Neighbourhood claims it.

3. *Caremboule*. The Coast is the most S. Part of *Madagascar*, and extends from E. to W. The Country is dry, yet there's some good Pasture, and consequently a great Number of Beeves. They have some

Silk, and abundance of Cotton, of which they make Habits. They have a great many Wild Bufflers, which they say were tame before they were frighted by the continual Wars of the Inhabitants in these Parts.

4. The Country of *St. Augustin*, from the famous Bay of that Name, given it by the *Portuguese*. *La Croix* places it S. Lat. 23. and says, 'tis secure from the most dangerous Winds, and navigable for great Vessels from the S. to the N. W. yet there are dangerous Shelves on both Sides the Bay, tho' 'tis above 6 or 8 Foot deep in all other Parts on't. On the S. Side of the Bay there's a square Fort, formerly built by the *French*, in Form of 4 little Bastions, encompassed with Palisadoes, and a Ditch full of Water, 3 Fathom broad, and two Foot deep. 'Tis also walled, and stands upon a rising Ground, so that 'tis a Check to the neighbouring Country. On one Side there is a broad Way above 15 Foot, which crosses the Ditch to the Fort. In 1644, the *English* brought 400 Men into these Parts, of whom 300 dy'd, with the Captain, by the bad Air and a Famine, for the Inhabitants would not sell them the least Commodity, because they refused to assist them against their Enemies. Those that remained were taken on board by another Ship that arrived here. He adds, that Ships bound to the *East-Indies* commonly put into this Bay for Refreshments, and bring their Sick ashore for Air. When Captain *Davis* arrived here, which was in *February* 1600, he says, that they no sooner landed, but the Multitude of People on the Shore presently fled, because the *English* Captain had in a former Voyage abused them, and put one of their Countrymen to a barbarous Death, for which Reason they would send them no Provisions, so that they called their Harbour *Hungry Bay*, and then left it. Mr. *Finch* says, the Tide here flows pretty near E. to a great Height; and that when one comes near the Point in the Height of the Bay, there's no Ground at 100 Fathom; but farther in there's from 30 to 8 Fathom; tho' he observes, that the deepest Water is on the S. Side, the other being much shallower, by reason of the Mud and Sand brought in by the Rivers on that Side. The Merchant observes too, that 'tis generally called

called Cape St. *Augustin*; but 'tis only a Bay, since it has no Point or Neck of Land that bears out more than the rest. There are Breaches on both Sides on't about a League W. S. W. from the Main; which makes it easy to be discerned. There are two Rivers in the Bottom of the Bay, so rapid, that the Flood never overcomes them, tho' it flows at least two Fathom, and all about them 'tis broken, low, sandy Ground. The Prospect of the Country for a Mile or two about the Bay is but indifferent, it being rough, stony, and in some Places over-run with Woods, and there are seldom seen above 20 Inhabitants together. St. *Augustin's* River being of great Repute for a Watering-place, Mr. *Davis* of *Limehouse* gives particular Direction for Mariners to find it out, for which we refer them to his Nautical Observation in the First Vol. of *Harris's* Collection of Voyages. Admiral *Beaulieu* says, that about 3 Leagues from the Bay there are two little Sand Islands, which are without Trees, and very low. He row'd about half a League up an Arm of St. *Augustin's* River to the Southward, where he landed, and says, that he saw another larger Branch of it which ran North, and appeared as broad as the *Seyne* a League below *Roan*. Upon the Sea-Side, and for two Leagues up the River, there is nothing but thick black Woods; but beyond there are pleasant Fields. The Bay is only accessible with the N. W. and W. N. W. Winds, because of the Flats above-mentioned. He thinks 'tis seldom subject to Storms, because the Coast does not seem much beaten with the Waves; and tho' he was here a Fortnight, he tells us that he saw but one Cloud in the Horizon. The Heat is temper'd by constant Land Breezes from Sun set till almost Noon, and by Sea Gales from thence to Sun-set, so that he found the Air here very healthy. The adjacent Valley is very pleasant, affords excellent Pasture, and would be very fruitful if cultivated. The Sea swells the Mouth of the River to 10 or 12 Foot running Water, so that ordinary Ships may enter it. The Mountains are dry, and look as if burnt; but the low Country abounds with Tamarinds, Ebony, Aloes, Bushes and Shrubs. He adds, that the Coast is high, smooth, and runs N. and S. and that this is

such a proper Place for taking in fresh Provisions, and sheltering distressed Ships, that he thinks it might be made as useful for those who trade to the *Indies*, as *Mosambique* is to the *Portuguese*. De la *Val* says, he found the Place very unhealthy. Mr. *Ovington* tells us, this Harbour is generally frequented by *European* Pyrates, when the Approach of the *Mussoons* forces them to quit the East Seas, where 15 or 20 *English* or *Dutch* will, without Peril of either Ship or Men, attack and board the largest *Moor* Ships that sail in those Seas. M. *Dellon* places this Bay on the W. Side of the Island, in Lat. 25. and *Moll* in Lat. 24. near the Tropic of *Capricorn*.

5. *Machicore*. La *Croix* makes it 70 French Leagues from E. N. E. to W. S. W. as many from E. to W. and about 50 from N. to S. and says, it has been quite ruin'd by the Wars; that the Inhabitants live on Roots and the Flesh of Wild Oxen; and that they lie in the Woods for fear of their Enemies. This and the neighbouring Provinces were formerly under a Lord called *Dian Balanolen*, i. e. the Master of 100000 Parks, during whose Life they all enjoyed a profound Tranquillity, and abounded in Wealth and Delights; but leaving several Male Children behind him at his Death, the War broke out with such a Fury between the Heirs, that they were all ruin'd. Our Author adds, that *Terra del Gada*, which lies farther N. had that Name from the *Portuguese*, because it abounds with Cattle. Henry *Morris* mentions another large Bay called *Canquomorra* on the same Side of the Island, in the midst of a pleasant and fruitful Country; but he does not distinguish its Situation. Mr. *Davis* of *Limehouse* takes Notice of Cape St. *Sebastian* on the S. Side of the Island, in Lat. 25. 45. which *Moll* makes Lat. 24½. The former says, the Refreshing place, which lies on the S. E. Side, is called St. *Lucia*, and affords Ships very good Riding, according to the Observation of the *Dutch*; which if so, he thinks it much more convenient for Ships than St. *Augustin's* River, because it lies upon the Head of the Island. La *Croix* mentions several other Provinces and Rivers of less Note, for which we refer the Curious to his Book. Le *Blanc* mentions two good Towns, viz. *Santa Maria* and *Antipara*; but he does not describe them, and says,

says, that the Gulph of *St. Sebastian* on the Coast of *Santa Maria* is full of small Islands, inhabited only by an excessive Number of Fowls.

Perhaps some of our Readers may expect that, before we leave *Madagascar*, we should give some Account of our Countryman the famous Captain *Avery*, who 'tis said has frequented these Seas for several Years in Quality of a Pirate, and now resides in or about this Island as *King of the Pirates*. It has also been published, that he has gained immense Wealth by his Pyracies from the Emperors of *Mogul* and *China*. But as these, and many other Stories of the like Nature, were never yet vouched by any good Authority that we know of, our Reader will excuse us for leaving them out of our History, when he considers that 'tis inconsistent with our intended Brevity to protract it by any thing that is not authentick.

2. *St. M A R Y's Island.*

Moll places it just under *Madagascar* on the E. Side of the Island, and to the S. of *Antongil Bay*. Admiral *Lancaster* says, it affords little but Oranges, Limons, and Rice; that it has two or three good Watering-places on the N. Side, but they don't lie convenient for a Boat to come at them; that the Natives are black, tall, and handsome; and that they are good humour'd, stout and valiant, but go stark naked. He adds, that there's better Riding for Ships betwixt this and *Madagascar* than in the Bottom of the Bay of *Antongil*. Mr. *Davis* of *Limehouse* places this Island in S. Lat. $16\frac{1}{2}$. Long. E. 31. and Var. $19\ 50$ from N. to W. *La Croix* says, the Natives call it *Nossi-Hibram*, i. e. the Island of *Abraham*, and places it but two Leagues from *Madagascar*. He makes it 11 from N. to S. and but two from E. to W. and says, 'tis encompassed with Rocks, over which the Canoes pass and repass at high Water; but when 'tis low, they are not above half a Foot or a Foot under Water. On the Shore there are Rocks of the best white Coral, and Periwinkles, which the Negroes sell to the *French*. The Island abounds with Rivers, Springs, and little Hills. 'Tis every where fruitful, especially in Rice, which they sow twice a Year. There's abundance of great Sugar-

Canes, Pease, Bananas, and Ananas, whose Roots they had from *Antongil Bay*. They have much better Tobacco than in *Madagascar*. The Air is so moist, that it rains almost every Day, and sometimes six without Intermission. They have fat Cattle which have free Range over the whole Island. There's abundance of *Ambergreece* on the E. Shore, which the Negroes gather for Offerings or Perfumes for their Ancestors Tombs. There are several Sorts of Gums which they likewise use for Perfumes, particularly abundance of that called *Tacamahaca*; and there's a Tree whose Fruit no sooner falls to the Ground, but it takes Root again, and makes a Wood so bushy, that 'tis impossible to pass thro' it. There are 10 or 12 Villages which came only to be inhabited since the Arrival of the *French*, for now the Governor of *Antongil Bay*, who formerly made continual War upon those Islanders, durst not come thither for fear of the *French*. He reckons about 5 or 600 Inhabitants in the whole Island, who all call themselves the Race of *Abraham*, and they own their Sovereign to be the Chief of that Race. The People employ themselves in planting Rice, Ignames, Bananas, Sugar-Canes, Pease and Beans, which are their chief Food, and in catching a sort of Fish called *Hourites*, which they carry to *Madagascar* to sell, and give every Fifth to their Sovereign for Tribute, as they do also of Rice and other Plants. They have such a Tincture of Judaism, that tho' they make all Christians welcome, yet they won't make Alliances with them. *M. Dellon* places it Lat. 15. and makes it about 4 Leagues in Compass. He says, the Inhabitants smok *Ambergreece* with their Tobacco, and sell great Quantities on't to the *French*. The continual Rains here make the Air very unwholesome. There's a vast Number of mischievous Apes here of various Kinds and Shapes, some of which fell upon a *French* Seaman that was going into a Wood, took his Fufee from him, and tore him in a dreadful Manner, till more Men hearing him cry out, came to his Relief. *M. Renfort* says, the Island would produce more Rice than it does, but that the Inhabitants are negligent. The *Sansons* say, that in the Current which runs betwixt this and *Madagascar* Island from N.N.E. to S.S.W. there's

there's good Fishing for Whales, which they strike with an Iron fasten'd at the End of a Cord; and when the Whale is tired with struggling, they draw it ashore and cut it in Pieces. *La Croix* says, there's a little Island to the S. in Form of a Triangle, which is parted from this by a Canal of 30 Cubits broad, and two Foot or more deep; but he does not tell us its Name, and only says that it abounds in Pasture, and that the Cattle of *St. Mary's* Island often come hither to graze; and that there are Shoals of Rocks at one End, which advance above half a League into the Sea.

3. *MAYOTTA, MAOTA, MAJOTTA, MAGOTTA, or ANAYOTTA, the first of the Comoro Islands next to Madagascar.*

Capt. *Davis*, who anchor'd here in 1600, says, the People are very sociable and friendly, and that he saw their King, whose Retinue was dressed in long Silk embroider'd Garments like the *Turks*. Captain *Peyton* says, all the *Arabians* hereabouts give this Island the best Character for Refreshments of any of the *Comoro* Islands. Admiral *Beaulieu* says, it abounds with all Sorts of Fruits and Provisions, and lies about 10 Leagues from the most W. of the *Comoro* Islands. Some give it the Name of *St. Christopher*. *Moll* places it E. of

4. *JOANNA, JOHANNA, or JUANNY.*

Capt. *Peyton* says, this has the best Character for Refreshments next to *Mayotta*; and that when he was here, which was about 1615, 'twas govern'd by an old Sultaneß, to whom all the rest repaired for Justice in Civil and Criminal Causes. *Herbert* says, the People are very honest, but were govern'd in his Time by a Tyrant. *La Croix* places this E. of *Mayotta*, contrary to *Moll*, and says, its Coast has several good Roads, and that 'tis subject but to one Sovereign, who has the Title of Sultan. Some call this *Ausuama*, and Capt. *Davis* says, that once they had a great strong City called *Demos*; but that in 1609, when he saw it, 'twas no bigger than *Plimouth*; but all the Houses were built with Lime and Free-stone. The People are Negroes, but smooth Hair'd. They are *Mahometans*, and have

Swords and Targets, besides the ordinary Weapons of the Barbarians. *M. Dellon* calls this Island *Don John*, and says, the *Portuguese* gave it this Name after the first Discoverer, and that 'tis surrounded with Rocks. But the best Account of this Island is given by Mr. *Ovington*, our own Countryman, who places it in S. Lat. 12½. and extends it 30 Miles in Length, and 15 in Breadth. He says, 'tis so fruitful, that all *European* Ships bound to *Surat* and the N. Parts of *India* put in here for Refreshments. It has Plenty of Black Cattle and large fat Goats, which are valued one Third above the others. A Bullock may be bought here for two Dollars, and a fat Goat for three. It abounds with Fowls and Rice, Pepper, Yams, Plantains, Bananas, Potatoes, Oranges, Limons, Limes, Pine-Apples, &c. most of which grow wild. There's Store of Honey and Sugar-Canes, and the Climate and Soil is fit for Grapes, Tobacco, and Cotton. The Natives may chuse what Part of the Island they like for Plantations, and all Fruit is common except Coco-Nuts, in which they challenge particular Properties. The Women are chiefly employed in the most slavish Work, whilst the Men indulge their Ease. The Natives formerly offered the Island to the *English* for their Settlement. When our Author was here, which was about 1690, the Supreme Power was lodged in a Queen Dowager; but her late Husband's Brother had the chief Part in the Administration. He understood the *English* Tongue; but it seems he made a mean Figure, for our Author found him sitting on the Ground under a shady Tree, with 6 of his Nobles round him. His Equipage was very slender, and he had no Arms. Our Author had Access to him without any Formalities, and was frankly invited to sit down by him, when he took the Opportunity to present him with some dry Bread and Cheese, with which the Prince and his Court thought themselves highly regal'd, for his People know not how to make Butter or Cheese. Then the Prince enquir'd of the *English* Affairs, and of the Welfare of *K. William*, of whom our Author gave him a very noble but just Character, and presented him with his Majesty's Picture, which the Prince received very gratefully. After our Author had informed him of the Power of our

H h h h h

Arms,

Arms, and the Valour of our Prince, he wished he had been a nearer Neighbour to our Dominions, that he might be enabled by his Alliance to crush the K. of *Moheila*, who he complain'd had made frequent Incursions upon his Island, and killed some of his Subjects; but our Author observes they could not be many, for the Aggressors had no Weapons but Stones, which they picked up in the Streets, and threw with their Hands. He gives just such an Account of the Prince's Armory, which he says was only furnished with two Guns, whose Locks were broke, and one Pistol, whose Touch-hole was almost half as large as the Bore: Yet Mr. Ovington says, he is as happy as the greatest Monarchs, for he is of a pacifick Temper, and is blessed with the entire Affections of his Subjects. He tells us, that the Queen here is never exposed to publick View, but is cover'd by a thin Piece of Silk when she speaks to her People, and very seldom holds forth her Hand. In like manner, when she is Chamber-sick, or is invited abroad upon urgent Occasions, she is conceal'd by a Set of Curtains hung about her. The Prince had several Daughters, one of whom he married to an *Arabian* Master of a Junk; and besides Slaves and Cattle, gave 500 Dollars with her, which was thought one Third of all the Money he was worth. The Natives export Rice to *Patta* in Junks, which are made all of Wood, without a Bit of Iron. Sleeping upon the Grass here proves fatal to *Europeans*. Our Author says, no Nation meets with half that Welcome from them as the *English*, so that 'tis a common Proverb with them, *Johanna-man, Englishman, all one*. He gives an Instance of this in their extraordinary Kindness to several *English* who escaped hither after a Shipwreck, to one of whom he says the Queen her self gave a Piece of Silk, and Diet and Lodging as long as he pleased. He ascribes this to our Justice in Point of Traffick; but says, they have less Friendship for the *Danes* than any other Nation, and indeed we can't blame them if what he says be true, viz. That after a Contribution of several Hundred Dollars, they hired a *Danish* Ship here, and put some Men aboard to go against the King of *Moheila*, who was then at War with them; but the *Danes* failed away with both Men and Money, and

were never heard of afterwards. To this Instance of Villany he ascribes the Natives Aversion to Christianity.

He says, the Buildings of their Villages are slight and plain, but *King's Town* and *Queen's Town*, which are their Capitals, have some Structures that are finer and stronger, with Stone Walls and Timber Roofs. Their Kings commonly reside at the former, which is 25 Miles from the Harbour, and the Inhabitants have some extraordinary Privileges above the rest of the Islanders. When any die, the King causes all their Goods and Estates to be seized for his own Use, so that they try all Means to conceal their Wealth for the Benefit of their Widows and Children. Many of the finest Houses of that called *Queen's Town*, which is a Maritime Village, stand uninhabited, because some of the People were formerly killed in them by the Islanders of *Moheila*, for they reckon that Bloodshed pollutes a Habitation. If the Master and Mistress, and one or two more of the Family, die, they do the same, as if they mistrusted, that the Branches would die upon the Destruction of the Root without Transplantation. And if any Person whatsoever dies in a House, they reckon it so far defil'd, that they won't dress Meat in it for a Month or two after. Their ordinary Food is Rice, boil'd Meat, and the Coco-Nut, which serves them also for Drink and a Cup. Sometimes the King and the Grandees make large Entertainments, to which they invite all the Inhabitants of a Town, who, tho' they are served with the chief Dainties of the Island in Plenty, eat with Moderation, and don't affect Niceness in the Preparation. They love strong Drink, but are restrain'd from it by the Law of *Mahomet*. However they smoke Tobacco, and constantly chew the Betle-Nut and Chinam. Mr. Ovington says, the Betle-Nut fortifies the Stomach, comforts the Brain, preserves the Teeth, and is good against a stinking Breath; that the Nut is like a Nutmeg, and that they shave it into thin Pieces; that Chinam is Lime, made of Cockle-shells or Lime-stone; and that Pawn is the Leaf of a Tree wherein the two former are wrapped up. They chew these, and spit out the Moisture, which makes the Teeth and Lips red, and cheers and heats the Spirits. They generally spit

into a Hole made in the Room for the purpose, and the Prince's Floor was full of 'em. In the Middle of *Queen's-Town* there's a Mosque, daily frequented by the People, which our Author and his Company could not enter without putting off their Shoes; but he observes, that the *Mahometans* seldom allowed this to the Christians. Near the Porch there's a Draw-Well to wash the Hands, Face and Feet, of all that go in or out. They keep the Mosque very neat, and spread Mats on the Floor for the Conveniency of the Men, for he says the Women seldom frequent it. They use Beads in their private Prayers like the Papists, and talk at the same time with as much Indifferency. The Women are courted sometimes at 7 or 8 Years of Age, and married at about 11 or 12, which they reckon Years of Maturity. Then they hold a publick Feast 7 Days, as they do at their Funerals, for all that come. The Women maintain their Husbands, but on some Occasions can leave them. They are debarr'd from the Society of Strangers, and from gadding abroad; but sometimes they venture upon it, tho' with the Hazard of their Lives, upon a Discovery. They make great Lamentations at the Death of their Friends; but instead of particular Burial-places, often lay them any where in the Fields. All their Mourning is made of a few Leaves, ty'd about their Middle in Fashion of a hanging Fringe. Seven Months after the Birth of their Children, they name them, and keep a publick Feast for their Friends; and if a Child dies before that Time, they think their Prayers efficacious for its future Happiness. They have very gross Ideas of Religion, which our Author says are augmented by their constant Apprehensions of the Appearance of the Devil, whom they call *Gregory*, and say they often meet him in the Highways and Streets, and in the Evenings, especially by the Water-side. When it thunders, they say *Gregory* is abroad, and then no Mortal dare stir out of his House. They burn the Devil once every Year, when all the Dirt of the adjacent Country is laid in a Heap upon a black Rock between *Queen's-Town* and the Harbour, and then kindled by the Neighbourhood till all is consumed. But they pretend that the Devil retaliates them by steal-

ing their Children, for they say they lose one every Year in spite of all their Vigilance. Our Author adds, that many of the Natives affect a Familiarity with the Devil, by practising Negromancy. Sir *Thomas Roe* is guilty, as well as *La Croix*, of placing this Island E. of *Mayotta*, and *Francis Alvarez* of making it to belong to the *Red Sea*. The latter says, *Galvano* lies buried here, who was sent by *Don Alphonso K. of Portugal* to discover *Prester John's Country*.

5. MOHILA, MOYELA, or MAL ILHA.

Capt. *Saris* places this Island in Lat. 12. 13. He says, the People are frank and liberal, and that they gave him in Exchange for trifling Haberdashers Ware, Bullocks, Goats, Hens, Fish, Eggs, Milk, Sugar-Canes, Tamarinds, Coco's, Plantans, Pomegranates, Papanes, Limons, Rice, &c. They have the same Colour, Feature, short curl'd Hair, and Dress, with other Negroes. They wear a Pintado about their Middles, and white Caps; but those who are *Mahometans*, which is at least the Religion of the better Sort, wear Turbans. The King himself was a *Mahometan*, and could speak a little *Arabick*. He went in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, and purchas'd the Title of Xeriff. His Apparel was only a white Cotton Coat, a Turban, and a Guzurat Pintado about his Middle. The People generally had rather trade for ready Money than Barter, except it be for Eatables, which they'll gladly exchange for Crimson and *Cambaya* Cloths, red Scull Caps, and Sword-Blades. He gave the Captain a Note under his Hand in Testimony of his Friendship, and requested his Letter of Commendations, to shew others that should come hereafter how fairly he had dealt with him, which he granted; but he advises Strangers not to trust them too far. Capt. *Tho. Best*, Commander in the 10th Voyage made by our *East-Indin Company*, who was here about 1611, places it in Lat. 12 $\frac{1}{2}$. Long. 23. 2. and in 15 Deg. 20 Min. Variation, and 12 or 14 Leagues S. E. from *Comoro Island*. He says 'tis very properly called *Mal-Ilha* or *Mala Insula*, because 'tis one of the most dangerous Places a Ship can come to, for at the N. End there is a Ridge of Rocks 8 or 9 Miles from the main Island to another that lies on the N.

Side on't; and that on the W. Side there's another great Ledge of Rocks, that continues till Sailors have brought the last mentioned Island to the S. E. and then they may steer in with the Land, keeping the Island fair aboard, or put directly into the Bay, where there's good Anchorage. But he advises them rather to go to the Town, which lies a Mile W. of the Bay, and affords the best Refreshments that are to be had in all these Parts. They have also a very good Water and Air. He adds, that the best Way to come to it is to sail along upon the S. E. Side of the Island, and to keep off the Shoal that lies to the E. in coming from the long Ledge of Rocks, and which is 5 or 6 Miles from the Island. Mr. *Walter Peyton*, who gives us an Account of the 12th Voyage set forth next Year by our *East India Company*, says, the People pretended a great Aversion to the *Portuguese*, and threaten'd to cut the Throats of all that Nation that came thither; but he thinks they did it rather to please our Countrymen, who were then at War with *Portugal*, for he tells us that they carried on a private Trade with the *Portuguese* at the same Time. Some of the better Sort speak good *Portuguese*, their own Tongue being a Sort of corrupted *Morisco*, very difficult for Strangers to learn. He gives an Example of some Words for the Benefit of Strangers who don't understand *Portuguese*, for which we refer to his Account. He thinks that their whole Tongue is only a Medley of *Arabick*, *Portuguese*, and *Morisco*. Captain *Peyton*, who was here about 1615, says, this Island was frequently visited in his Time by the *English*, and that it had 3 Sultans. He that govern'd in that Quarter of the Island where our Author anchor'd would not permit his Subjects to trade without his Leave, so that he was forced to send some Men ashore with a small Present, which obtained his Consent. They found the Sultan's Deputy sitting on a Straw Mat, with a Mantle about him of red and blue Linen, and a sorry chequer'd Cap on his Head. He treated the Men with Coccoes, and himself chew'd Betle and burnt Oyster-Shells, mix'd with the Kernels of Areca-Nuts, which are very hot and biting in the Mouth, cause a great deal of Rheum, fix their Teeth, and are their only Physick; but they make

Strangers giddy at the first chewing, and by degrees change the Teeth into a rusty black Colour, which the *Mohelians* reckon a great Beauty. The Governor's Town is *Fambone*, 4 Leagues E. from the Road, where the Captain's Men were handsomely treated both by the Governor and the chief Inhabitants in the following Manner. First, Water was brought in a Coco-shell for every Man to wash. Then they brought in boil'd Rice, cover'd over with roasted Plantans, Pieces of Hens and Goats broil'd. Their Bread was made of Cuscus, beaten and mix'd with Honey, and so fry'd, and their Drink was Palmeto Wine and Coco Milk. They sit as we do upon Benches round a Table that stands upon Tressels. Their Houses and Furniture are mean, but very neat. They are built with Lime and Stone, small and low Roof'd, plaister'd in the Inside with Mortar, and encompassed with Canes, and at the Top they have only Rafter cover'd with Leaves. They have little Gardens too pal'd in with Canes; but they scarce produce any thing besides Tobacco and Plantain Trees. The Sultan commonly resides at *Doman*, the chief Town of that Part of the Island, and about three Miles from *Fambone*. The Sultan assumes no more State than the Governor, and is only distinguished by the profound Respect which all the rest pay him. He calls himself one of *Mahomet's* Kinsmen. Our Author observes, that all these Sultans are but sorry Fellows. He saw one of them, a poor bare-footed Rogue, whose Stock was no more than 4 or 5 Rials of Eight, and when he could trade no more, fell to begging of Shoes and Stockings. Yet he was Brother to the above named Xeriff, Sub-Sultan of the Island, and pretended to be *Mahomet's* Kinsman; but the Captain tells us he looked more like a begging Saint going bare-foot in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, and that wanted a Pair of Shoes to help him over the rugged Way. The People he says are very jealous of their Mosques and Women, so that one of his Men going into a Village, was no sooner spy'd by one of their Priests, but he scream'd out as if a Troop of Ruffians had been coming to murder them, all the Women were immediately shut up close, and the People threaten'd to kill the Man if he came near their Church, tho' our Author

says,

says, all the Riches of their Mosques, and the Charms of their Women, are not enough to tempt a Man to Sacrilege or Lust. He makes the Variation to this Island 16 Deg. 40. and places it under the same Meridian as Cape St. Augustin.

Sir Tho. Herbert, who was here about 1627, places it Lat. 12. 15. and Long. 24. from the Cape of Good Hope. He makes it 60 M. round, and says, the Coasts rise gently; but the Inlands are mountainous and woody. There are several scattering Villages; but the Houses are thatched with Reed and Straw. The Island was govern'd in his Time by two Kings, called *Phancomal* and *Synalbey*, one a Native, the other an *Arabian*; who with their Wives liv'd in continual Defiance of one another. The Inhabitants are a Mixture of *Mahometans* and *Gentiles*, who chiefly worship the Sun. The *Portuguese* preached Christianity here, but gained few Profelytes. The People are as black as a Raven, with big Lips, flat Noses, sharp Chins, and large Limbs. They cover their Shame with a few Leaves, cut and pink their Face, Arms and Thighs, for Ornament, and strive to outstrip each other in Variety. The *Mettan* Zealots have a few Mosques here, made of Straw and Bamboos without, and neatly matted within. Some of them practise Magick, and our Author saw one who in a Storm of Rain and Thunder stood trembling, lifting up his Hands and Eyes, and muttering certain Words; after which he leap'd as it were full of Rapture, unsheathed a long Knife, and brandishing it 7 or 8 times about his Head, he mutter'd other Words, put it up again, kissed the Earth three times, and then arose. They have Plenty of Tobacco here, which, tho' weak and leafy, is much esteemed, and they smoak it in long Canes. They say, that the Betle and Lime which they chew kills Worms, and creates an Appetite. Among other Things, the Island abounds with Buffaloes, Turtles, huge Bats, Camelions, Pease, Cuscus, Honey, and Sea Breams, Cavallos, Oysters, Mother of Pearl, and real Pearl, Toddy, Oranges, Limes, Ananas, Pomcitrons, Cucumbers, and red *Indian* Dates. 'Tis always verdant, and the daily Rains and Breezes cool their Heats, and make a perpetual Summer. Our Author describes the Plantain thus: It has a

very fine Taste and Smell: It hangs in Clusters like Beans upon a Stalk, and is long and round like a Sausage. When the Rind is peel'd off, the Fruit appears of a Gold Colour, and such a delicious Relish, that it melts in the Mouth. He adds, that they have no Vessels, but Canoes hew'd out of one Tree, which will hold three Men; and that if they sink, they help themselves by swimming.

La Croix places this Island in Lat. 11. 20. 5 Leagues S. E. from *Angazesia*. Sir Thomas Roe says, the Natives trade to *Mozambique* in Junks of 40 Tun Burden, built, caulk'd, and rigg'd, all out of the Coco-Tree. He adds, that he bought fat small Beeves, *Arabian* Sheep, and other Provisions here, for Callicoes, Hollands, Sword-Blades, Pieces of Eight, Glasses, Knives, and other Trifles; and that the Governor's Mantle of blue and red Callico reaches no lower than his Knees, his Legs and Feet being bare.

6. *ANGAZELIA*, *ANGAZECHA*, *ANGARESIA* or *ANGAZESIA*, *ANGAZELIA* or *ANGAZYA*, another of the Comoro Islands.

Sir Tho. Roe places it 5 Leagues N. by W. from the former, and says, 'tis the highest Land he ever saw; that 'tis inhabited by *Moors* that trade to the Continent and the other three Eastern Islands with their Cattle and Fruits for Callicoes and other Clothes, for it abounds with Kine, Goats, Coco's, Oranges and Limons. 'Twas govern'd in his Time, viz. in the Reign of K. James I. by 10 petty Kings or Sultans, and the People were counted treacherous. Capt. Peyton says, this stands more N. than the other Comoro Islands. Admiral *Beaulieu* tells us, that the Inhabitants are Negroes, and call their Island *Mangasija*. 'Tis very cool, moist, and green, because of the great Number of Clouds that gather and break on it. He extends it 15 or 16 Leagues from N. to S. and 3 or 4 in Breadth, and says, that after doubling the N. Cape, he perceived a small sandy Creek like an old Castle, where on'y two Ships could anchor at 6 Fathom Water on a sandy Ground. 'Tis encompassed with Rocks and Banks, so that the Admiral could not find Anchorage without calling the Natives to his Assistance, who are most

of them Sorcerers, and pretend to a Power over the Winds. There's Plenty of Fruit here he says, but little Meat, and no Water but what is bad. Linen-Cloth and Paper is a proper Commodity for the Place, and he was advised to take Care of disobliging the People, because they are able to do a great deal of Mischief. He presented the King with a Silver-hilted Hanger, a couple of pretty Knives, a Ream of Paper, and a Looking-Glass, and had in Return a Kid and some Fruit; but he found the People so humourfome and over cautious, that they would not strike a Bargain of Half a Rial Value in a Day's Time, and would not buy half a Yard of Cloth without calling all their Relations and Neighbours to concert the Measures of the Bargain. They were so over-stocked with Rials, by Means of a Portuguese Carrack that had been lost upon the Island about 3 Years before, that they would not part with their Fruits for Money, but only for Paper, white Cloth, and Knives. The Admiral places this Island in Lat. $11\frac{1}{2}$. and says, that he anchor'd on the N. N. W. Point, in 25 or 30 Fathom, on a sandy Ground; but he says, there's dangerous rocky Ground near it, and that 'tis difficult for Strangers to find it out. But he observes, that the Tide here always runs against the Wind, so that a Ship rides easy, and at Night there's a constant Calm at Sea, because then the Wind shifts to the Land. He says, the Island affords a pleasant Prospect, especially to the N. where the Mountains rise gradually, with Trees on them of several Sorts; and below, upon a large Creek of Sand along the Shore, there are a great many Houses, shaded with a vast Number of Coco, Orange, and Citron Trees. Their Oranges are small, but like those of China in Shape and Taste. All the Inhabitants are zealous Mahometans, and marked with a hot Iron on their Temples and Forehead; but they are not so handsome as those of Madagascar. The Admiral, who was here about 1620, says, 'twas then govern'd by 15 petty Kings, of whom the King of the Place where he anchor'd was the most powerful. They were at War with one another, and sold the Prisoners to the Portuguese and other Nations. Their Way of Fighting is throwing of Stones and Sand, and beating one another with Sticks burnt at the End. They

had no Arms except some Fuseses and Pistols, presented to the King by the English. They are civil enough to Strangers, but hoot at them when they see them make Water standing. The Planks of their Ships, which they call *Pangays*, are neither nail'd nor caulk'd, but sow'd together with a Thread made of the Rind of Coco-Trees, and tarr'd or pitch'd above the Seams, so that they are very leaky, and 5 or 6 Men are always employ'd to lave out the Water. Besides, they always observe the Seasons of the Trade-Winds, so as to sail right before the Wind, for they won't venture to set their Sail to the Windward. He adds, that they are undeck'd, and will carry 50 or 60 Tun.

Having thus described the chief Comoro Islands, we shall conclude this Volume with the principal Islands that lie to the E. of Madagascar, which are,

I. BOURBON, MASCAREIGNE, MASCARENHAS, or that called ENGLAND'S FORREST.

Sir Thomas Herbert says, 'twas first named *England's Forrest* in 1613 by Captain Castleton, Commaeder of the *Pearl*, and since that, *Mascarenhas*. He makes it 50 Miles in Compass, and places it in South Lat. 20. 55. 37 Leagues from the Island of Mauritius. He says, 'tis a very pleasant high Island, and that the Earth is every where green, and cover'd with tall Trees. It had no Creatures on it but Birds, till the English stock'd it with Hogs and Goats. They have large Eels, some of which weigh 30 Pounds, and are very moist and sweet. Their Birds are like those of Maurice Island, of which by and by. Capt. Saris says, the Winds hereabouts are generally at N. E. N. sometimes at N. W. N. and W. by S. M. Dellon places it 150 Leagues from Madagascar. He makes it of a round Figure, and 22 French Leagues in Compass. He says, the French had settled here above 40 Years before he wrote, which is near 20 Years ago, and he thinks 'twas never inhabited before. He says, it never rains here but about the End of April or the Beginning of March, when Hurricanes are so frequent, that there's no safe Riding on the Coast for want of secure Harbours. He praises the Wholesomeness of the Air, and says, no Foreigner

Foreigner was ever seized here with any Distempers; but on the contrary, that such Sick as were put ashore recover'd. 'Tis well water'd with Rivers, &c. which abound with such Multitudes of Fish, that our Author advises those who wade thro' them to carry a good Stick to lean upon, or else they'll be carried away by their Numbers and Swiftness; but he says, they may be easily taken with the Hand. The French call the N. Coast of this Island the Burnt Country, because Fire constantly issues out of the Ground in the Night, which, tho' it vanishes in the Day, makes the Plains quite barren. But they call the S. Coast the Beautiful Country, and it abounds with Variety of Fruits, Grains, and Herbs. They have delicate wholesome Water-Melons, which are larger, greener, and much tenderer, than ours. There's abundance of delicious Bananas, and some Ananas, besides many other Sorts of Fruit. The first Colony which the French erected here is called St. Paul, on the W. Shore of the Island, near a great Lake 100 Paces from the Sea, which abounds with good Water and excellent Fish. When the Hurricanes reign upon these Coasts, the Sea commonly overflows, and mixes its salt Water with that of the Lake; but as they seldom last long, the Lake soon recovers its former Sweetness. The Hogs are very wild, and the French catch them with Dogs bred for the purpose. Their Oxen and Cows were first brought hither from Madagascar not above 30 Years before our Author's Time, so that they are not so numerous as the Goats and Hogs. There is Plenty of Land and Sea Tortoises, especially of the former, out of whose Livers the Natives draw an Oil for Salleting. The Sea-Tortoises, which are rarer, never come ashore but in the Night, on the West Side of the Island. The former, tho' turn'd upon their Backs when they are hunted, soon get upon their Feet again, because they are not quite so flat as the latter. They'll live two Months aboard if they are water'd once a Day with Sea-Water. There are abundance of Pigeons, Turtles, Partridges, and vast Numbers of other Birds, especially Parrots, which may easily be taken with the Hand. They have some Flamands or Flamingo's; but they are so shy, that they kill them with a Fusée. They have such vast

Numbers of Sparrows, that wherever they come they consume the Seeds lately sown; and when they are heated with the Sun, they shelter in the Houses, where they fall in the Pots and Dishes, and often burn their Wings in the Fire. There are Flitter-Mice here almost as big as Pullets, which the Indians eat. But Travellers agree, that no Rat, Serpent, or other venomous Creature, will live here.

M. Rennefort places this Island between Lat. 21 and 22. and makes it 60 Leagues in Compass. He says, the Hogs here live upon the Tortoises. Most of the Trees incessantly weep Benjamin and other precious Gums. Their Timber is fit to build Houses, but extremely hard, and not proper for Ships, because it cleaves when dry. They have two Harvests a Year. There's Amber-greece, Coral, and the finest Shells in the World upon the Shores. Half of the Island was formerly burnt, and the Fire, which is not yet quite extinguished, has there left some Marks of its Violence. He adds, that in 1665, when he was here, the Island was inhabited by two Frenchmen and 10 Negroes, brought from Madagascar, who fled soon after their Arrival into the Mountains, and could not be apprehended, tho' 6 Soldiers were sent after them.

La Croix says, this Island was called Mascarenas, from a Portuguese of that Family who first discover'd it; and that some call it Apollonia, which is rather the Name of Maurice Island. The French, who took Possession of it in 1654 under M. Flacourt, Governor of Madagascar for their East-India Company, call it Bourbon. He makes it 15 Leagues in Length, 10 in Breadth, and 11 good Days Journey in Circuit. He says, 'tis encompassed with so many Rocks and Shelves, that it has not one safe Harbour, but several good Roads, especially one in a Bay to the W. and another to the N. E. with a sandy Bottom. There's another Harbour on the N. Side, and one on the S. and 'tis said there's a Bay on the same Side, which is so environ'd with Rocks, that there's only Room for one Ship to enter at a time. He says, there's a Burning Mountain on the S. Side, which continually vomits Flames, and that the whole Country is burnt up by Fire and the Heat of the Sun between that and the E. End of the Island, which

which he thinks was formerly a very good Soil. The excessive Heats here are allayed by fresh Breezes from the Mountains both Day and Night. They have good Tobacco here planted by the *French*, abundance of Aloes, Sugar, White Pepper, Ebony, Palms, and several other Trees. The Flesh of their Goats is very good, and that of their Wild Boars so wholesome and tender, that three *Frenchmen* banished hither by the Governor of *Madagascar*, liv'd upon nothing else for 3 Years, and were never sick, tho' they continually went naked. They have no Crocodiles, Flies, nor other noxious Animals, for which Reason some have called it Paradise. *La Croix* tells us, that 8 *Frenchmen* and 6 Negroes of *Madagascar*, with some Cattle, sent hither by the Governor to make a Settlement, arriv'd after 12 Days Sail, built themselves Huts, and made Gardens, in which they planted Tobacco, Melons, and all Sorts of Pulse; but a Hurricane rose before their Tobacco was quite ripe, which ruin'd all, and overturn'd their Huts, so that they were forced to build new ones; and till the Season for Planting was come again (which is in *October*, *November*, and *December*, as the Harvest is in *April*) they took a Tour round the Island, and set up the Arms of *France* near the great Lake above-mentioned; and after they had stay'd two Years and 8 Months without seeing any Ship from *Madagascar*, the *Frenchmen* and all the 6 Negroes put themselves aboard an *English* Vessel that arriv'd here in 1658, which carried them to the *English* Fort at *Madraspatan* on the Coast of *Cormandel*. *Navarette* says, that if this Island had a Port, it would be one of the finest Settlements in the World. *Morery* makes it 25 Leag. long, and 14 broad, and says, that the *French* have two Ports, called *St. Paul* and *Assumption*, to which *Luyts* adds *St. Denis*.

Francis Leguat, a *French* Refugee, tells us, that the *Dutch* formed a Design about 1690 to take Possession of this Island, and for purpose equipped two great Ships, and took on board all the *French* Protestants that were willing to be of the Colony: But hearing that the *French* King had sent 7 Men of War that Way, they only sent out a Frigate of 6 Guns and 10 Sailors, with our Author and 10 Refugees more, to observe that Squadron, and to take Possession of this

Island if no *French* were here; but otherwise to proceed to *Diego Ruys*, and make a Settlement there, if the Island was stor'd with sufficient Necessaries. They could hear no certain News of the *French* Squadron in their Passage, but were told by every one that this Island abounded with Corn, Grapes, &c. almost without Cultivation, which spurred them on in their Voyage, tho' when they came before it the Captain proceeded to *Rodrigo*. But since an Account of this Island had been printed before in *Holland*, under the Name of *Eden*, by *M. du Quesne*, we shall from thence give the following Extract.

The Island affords a lovely Prospect some Distance at Sea, being interspersed with Woods, Rivers, Mountains, and green Valleys, and it yields a fragrant Smell from its abundance of Oranges and Limons, and odoriferous Plants and Flowers, which *M. Dellon* thinks Poison to all venomous Creatures. The *Portuguese* took Possession of it in 1545, in the Reign of *John IV.* but afterwards *Flacourt* put the Arms of *France* on the very Monument where he found those of *Portugal*.

Leguat gives us the Figures and Inscriptions of both Monuments, and a very good Plan of the Island, for which we refer the Curious to his Book.

It has abundance of Springs of clear wholesome Water, and some of it is purgative. Among other Lakes, it has one so large, that seven Rivulets run out of it into a great Plain. It enjoys a clear Sky. There are Turtles enough to subsist the Inhabitants. The Fat of the Land-Turtles is said to be better for Sawces than the best Butter or Oil. Some of the Sea-Turtles are above Five Hundred Weight; and those of the Land, tho' not so big, will carry a Man with more Ease than a Man can carry them. Their Forrests are not very thick, and among other Trees there are Cedars, Fig-Trees, and Plantains, and 20 other Sorts of Fruit-Trees, besides Indigo, Cotton, Potatoes, Pumpkins, both Land and Water-Melons, Cucumbers, Charibbean Cabbages, Beans, Artichokes, Pease, and 100 other Plants. *Indian* Corn, Millet, Rice, Wheat, Barley, and Oats, thrive so well here, that each will yield above one Crop a Year. Pulse and Garden Herbs thrive to a Miracle, and 'tis not

not doubted but any *European* Fruit-Tree would thrive in such a fruitful Soil. There are good Grapes here. The Black Cattle, Hogs and Goats, left here formerly by the *Portuguese*, are exceedingly multiplied, and haunt the Forrests in Drove. Among other Fowls, here are Ducks, Wood-Pigeons, Woodcocks, Quails, Black-Birds, Pouts, Thrushes, Geese, Coots, Bitterns, Herons, Fowls, Frigats, and abundance of other Birds. There are Bats whose Bodies are bigger than Hens, and the Flesh good to eat, as are also their Parrots. The Lakes and Rivers are frequented by long-legged Peacocks, whose Flesh tastes like that of a Bittern. Their Partridges are all grey, and not above half so big as ours. The Males of the Sparrows have red Breasts, and when they make Love they are redder than ordinary. They come in Clouds like the Locusts. Here are also Caterpillars and Flies. The Hurricanes come but once a Year, are not so violent as those of *America*, and last but 24 Hours.

2. MAURICE, or the Island of St. A-
POLLONIA.

Some set it 40 Leagues E. from *Mascarenas*. *La Croix* says, 'twas called *Maurice* by the *Dutch*, in Honour of the Pr. of *Orange*, and that at their first Arrival they mistook it for the Island of *Dom Galopas*. He places it in S. Lat. 21. and corrects those who mistake it for the *Cerne* of *Pliny*, and place it in 18 $\frac{1}{2}$. He says, 'twas first discover'd in 1598 by the *Dutch*, in their second Navigation to the *East-Indies* under the Admiral *Jacob Cornelis van Nek*. He makes it about 15 Leagues in Compass, and says, it has a convenient Road and Harbour, called the Port of *Warwick*, from the Name of the Vice-Admiral of the same Fleet; but that they found no Men nor Beasts here, except Cats. It enjoys a healthful Air, and is full of Hills on the Shore, and fine Plains in the Inland Country. Some of the Mountains are so high, that they are almost continually cover'd with Snow, from whence frequently arise very thick Fogs. The Soil is very stony, and full of wild Trees; yet there are a great many Palms and other Trees with a green Bark and a black Timber, which some take for the real Ebony. There are

other Trees whose Timber is of a deep Red or Yellow. There's abundance of all Sorts of Birds, so tame that they may be taken with the Hand, especially Pigeons, Turtles, Parrots of Grey and other Colours, and a Sort of Birds as large as Swans, with a great Head, cover'd with Skins that look like Pieces of Cloth. They have three or four black Quills that cover their Sides instead of Wings, and as many small twisted Feathers which stick out behind instead of a Tail. They have broad thick Feet, with great ugly Bills and Eyes. There is commonly found in their Stomachs a Stone as big as one's Fist; but the Flesh, the more 'tis dressed, the tougher it grows, except the Breast and Stomach, which are very good to eat. Their Flesh is so unfavoury, that the *Dutch* Mariners call them the *Birds of Surfeit*. There's abundance of Bats bigger than Pigeons, which have Heads like Monkeys, hang in vast Numbers to the Branches of Trees, and are great Enemies to the other Birds. They have so many Fish in the Sea and Rivers, that two or three Tun may be caught at a single Cast. There's one Sort that almost resembles a Bream, but 'tis unwholesome, and so venomous, that those who eat it have intolerable Pains for several Days after. They have Land and Sea Tortoises, of which the former are best tasted, and such large Thornbacks in the neighbouring Sea, that *La Croix* tells us one has served a whole Ship's Crew for two Meals. He adds, that there are Sea-Cows and Calves, whose Flesh tastes like Veal, are from 10 to 14 Foot long, and almost as thick. Dr. *Harris* says, the highest W. Variation is about this Island. Mr. *Finch* says, he was told by some *Hollanders*, that there are two Havens here, one to the N. W. in Lat. 20, and another on the S. E. in 20 $\frac{1}{4}$. that 'tis between 30 and 40 Leagues in Compass, the Variation here 21 Deg. N. W. and that there's Plenty of Goats and Hogs.

Herbert gives us the following particular Account of this Island: It lies 90 Leagues W. N. W. from the Island *Diego Rois* or *Rodrigo*, and 100 E. from *Madagascar*, in S. Lat. 20. 5. Long. 20. 20. from Cape *Comorin*, and in Var. 24. 19. It extends from N. E. to S. W. It may compare with any Place in the World for Variety of Temporal Blessings, and all Necessaries that can be requi-

red within the Torrid Zone. 'Twas first discovered by the *Portuguese*, who call'd it *Do Cerne*, and found Crosses and other Symbols here, from whence they supposed it had been formerly inhabited by Christians. 'Tis of an oval Figure, and 100 Miles in Compass. The Soil produces Grass, Herbs, and Flowers, without Cultivation. There's Ambergreece on the Coast, and abundance of Coral, which is a green Shrub in the Sea without Leaves, but bears white Berries, which the Sea and Air turn into Stone, and when it becomes red, 'tis valuable. There was abundance of Ebony-Trees here, before so many were carried away by the *Dutch* and *French*. There are Coco-Trees both Male and Female, which when pierc'd, and the Men are gone, Lizards, Parrots, and other Birds, flock to them to suck up the remaining Liquor. Among Variety of other Birds, here's that call'd the *Dodo*, whose Body is round, fat, and so big as to weigh 50 Pounds, so that it has a very slow Pace. 'Tis better to the Eye than to the Palate, for the Flesh is too oily and cloying for weak Stomachs. 'Tis of a melancholy Viſage, and has such small Wings as are unable to raise her from the Ground. Its Head is half cover'd with Down, of a dark Colour, and the other half naked. It has a hooked Bill, which from the Thrill or Breathing-place to the End is of a light Green Colour, mix'd with a pale Yellow. Its Eyes are round and bright. It has fine Down instead of Feathers, of which there are only 3 or 4 at her Tail, and its Legs are thick and black, its Talons great, and its Stomach so hot as to digest Stones. There are great Numbers of Hawks, Goshawks, Lannars, Hobbies, Passe-Flamengoes, Geese, Pouts, Swallows, Kites, Black-birds, Sparrows, Robins, and Herons, which are white and beautiful, with good Flesh and Feathers. Besides these, there are fierce Cacato's, which are not to be taken, Bitterns, Herns, &c. Among other Fish, there's that call'd the *Torpedo* and the *Eagle-Fish*, whose Eyes are 5 Quarters asunder, and the Fins 4 Yards from one End to the other. It has a Mouth so wide, and Teeth so long, that it resembles a little Portcullice, and it has a long slender Tail. There are other strange Fish here, some like Hedgehogs, others like Cats, some round, and some triangular. There's

abundance of Dolphins, Boneta's, Albicores, Cavallo's, Porpices, Grampasses, Mulletts, Breams, Tench, Trouts, Soles, Flounders, Tortoises, Eels, Pikes, Sharks, Crabs, Lobsters, Oysters, Craw-Fish, Cuttle-Fish, Rock-Fish, and Lampits. They have Beeves, Rats, and Monkeys. Their Hens and Herons flock in Companies 30 or 40 together, and may easily be taken; for tho' one be shot or knocked down, the others will not fly away. There are several good Harbours here, especially the Bays above-mentioned, which seem to be Land-locked, and have ouzy Ground, so that Ships may ride safely there from 5 to 20 Fathom. The Soil is stony towards the Shore, but fatter within Land, and it has Springs of good Water. But *Herbert* adds, that notwithstanding its tempting Situation and Commodities, 'twas uninhabited in his Time, tho' he says the *English* landed here 12 Years before the *Dutch*. Capt. *Tasman*, a *Dutchman*, places this Island in Long. 83. 48. *Mandelsloe* places it but 60 Leagues from *Diego Rodrigues*, and says, it has a Harbour large enough to hold 50 great Vessels, and 100 Fathom deep at the Entrance; that the high Mountains, which are cover'd with Trees, may be seen a great Distance at Sea; that it has no four-legged Animals; and that since 1640, the *Dutch* have erected a Colony, and built a Fort here. *M. Dellon* says, this Island is 25 Leagues E. from *Bourbon*, and much of the same Bigness. *Schouten* places it 650 Leag. from the Coast of *Malabar*, and says, that in his Time, which was about 1661, there was Plenty of Cattle and Salt here. The *Sanſons* place this Island between Lat. 19 and 20. to the N. W. of *Mascareneas*; whereas *Moll* sets it to the N. E. *Heylin* and *Morery* say, that some call this *Cygnæa* or *Swan* Island. The latter places it 140 Leagues E. from *Madagascar*, and makes it 60 in Compass. He says, the *Dutch* finding the Profit not equal to the Expence of keeping it, abandon'd it; but he does not tell us when. *Leguat*, who was here about 1691, says, they have a Governor here, and that Ships come hither every Year from the Cape of Good Hope. He places it 160 Leagues from *Rodrigo*, and says, some *Dutch* Families dwell in 3 or 4 Huts, cover'd with Plantane Leaves, near *Black River*, where they have cultivated some Land in a pleasant fruitful Valley.

Valley. Their Gardens abound with our Plants, as well as those of the *Indies*, and they love to plant Tobacco. Their Yards were full of Poultry, and they live partly upon Hunting, to which they train up Dogs. The Island is not so subject to Whirlwinds and Tempests as *Rodrigo*. The Governor resides at a Place called *Frederic Henry*, at the S. E. End of the Island. He used to make a Progress every Year round the Island. The Company have a Garden at a small Village called *Flac*, stocked with *European* Plants. The Island abounds with Deer, Calves, Turkeys, Ducks, Poultry, Citrons, Oranges, Ananas, Bananas, Vines, Rice, Millet, and abundance of other Fruits and Grains. The Inhabitants must sell all the Ambergreece they find to the Company at a certain Rate. The *Dutch* have a dark Prison here, and Stocks to punish Malefactors.

Our Author killed a Sea-Serpent here that weighed above 60 Pound, and looked like a large Eel or Snake, only it had Fins. It had the Head of a Serpent or Crocodile, and a Mouth full of long hooked sharp Teeth, like those of the *American* Rattle-Snakes, but much larger. Its Flesh is very tough and poisonous. There's a Sort of Gourd here well tasted. Our Author and others were banished by the Governor to a Rock of *Maurice* Island, between two other small Islands, which, with much ado, they got to at low Water. In the one they found Plantane Trees, but in the other none. The former was frequented every Night by a great many Sea-Birds like Pigeons, which lay their Eggs by one another upon the Sand. They lay but one at a time, and if you take away one three-times successively, they'll match him with another; but if you take away any of their Young, the Cocks and Hens of the others will forsake theirs too; after which they die for Hunger. Our Author call'd them Ferrets, because he fancied they sounded that Word. If you keep the young ones alive, and shew 'em to the old ones, they'll fly about them, but won't bring them any thing, tho' they cry never so much. The young ones have the Colour and Taste of Snipes; and tho' they are but indifferent Food, eat better than the old ones; but their Eggs are very wholesome and deli-

cious. They are spotted with Grey, and are larger than those of Pigeons. The three Months in which these Birds lay their Eggs is the Rutting-time of the Deer. There's a Sort of Birds hereabouts which they call'd *Pluto's*, because they were like Crows, only their Bills were longer, and hooked at the End. Their Feet were like those of a Duck. They keep 6 Months of the Year at Sea, without being ever seen upon Land all that Time. They cry almost as loud as a Calf, especially at Night; but they are so quiet and tame in the Day, that they won't stir, tho' one should take their Eggs from under them. They lay as far within the Holes of the Rocks as they can. They are excessive fat, nasty, ill tasted, and unwholesome, and their Eggs are no better; yet they are white; and as large almost as two of our Pullets; and when they are taken from them, they go out of their Holes, and fight till they fetch Blood:

The Governor's Apartment, Magazine, and Guard-House, were of Stone; but a little Chapel, and the other Buildings, were only built of Branches and Leaves. A Fire happen'd here in our Author's Time by the following Means: It being the Custom here to punish the Negro Slaves by binding them naked to a Ladder, and scourging them with a Rod made of Reeds, with Knots at the End, and by rubbing the Wounds with Pepper and Vinegar, a Negro who had committed a Piece of Roguery, for which he was threaten'd to be so served, fled and plotted with one of his Comrades, and two Negro Women, to burn the Fort, which they did accordingly; but they were soon taken, the Men broke alive on the Wheel, and the two Women hang'd; and 'tis said, that one of the Wretches was so harden'd, that nothing would serve him at the Place of Execution but a Game at Dice.

Leguat places this Island in S. Lat. 12. and says, 'tis 50 Leagues in Compass. The three chief Places of Anchorage are at the Fort, the *Black River*, and the N. W. Haven. There's a Garrison of 50 Men, and 30 or 40 *Dutch* Families, about the Island. After the Fort was burnt, 'twas rebuilt with Stone, and mounted with 20 good Cannon. The Soil is generally reddish and good, except about the Fort. The Road over against it is dangerous and difficult

ficult to get out of, tho' there are two Out-
 lers, because they require a certain Land-
 Wind, which comes but seldom; since
 profound Calms are frequent here; but the
 two other Roads are good enough. Here
 are white and black Ebony Trees. The
 Soldiers will saw 20 Foot of White before
 they can 12 of Black. They have several
 Sorts of Trees fit for Shipping, and a
 Grove of Limon Trees a quarter of a Leag.
 from the Fort, round which they plant a
 very strong Sort of Tobacco. They also
 plant a great many Sugar-Canes, from
 whence they draw Arack, Coco's, &c.
 There's a poisonous Shrub called *Stromb*
Boom or T-- Tree. The Middle of the
 Trunk is larger than the Top or Bottom.
 The Wood is flabby, and the Leaves like
 those of Willows, but a little larger. Our
 Author was told, that both the Wood and
 Rind is such deadly Poison, that no Anti-
 dote is strong enough to expel it. In the
 Middle of the Country, in a great Plain
 encompassed with Mountains, there's a
 Wood so thick at Top, that the Sun does
 not penetrate it; and the Governor and
 some of his Companions went so far into it,
 that they had almost spent all the Provisions
 they had with them before they could find
 their Way out. But the other Woods are
 easy enough to pass, and some harbour
 Apes, that do a great deal of Damage. The
 Country in general is very mountainous
 and woody, but has several rapid Rivers,
 on some of which the Inhabitants have
 built Mills to saw Boards. No Sort of
 Corn will thrive here, and the Grapes don't
 ripen well. A Boat goes two or three times
 a Week to the great River, to fetch all that
 is sent thither from the Company's Garden
 on Waggon, for the Use of the Fort, which
 is very inconvenient and expensive, it be-
 ing above 8 Leagues from the Garden to
 the Fort. The Water here is impregnated
 with Saltpetre. Potatoes thrive very well,
 and are the ordinary Food of the Inhabi-
 tants, who buy what Rice they want from
 the Company; for tho' that Grain would
 come up here, yet the People are too lazy
 to cultivate it. The common Flesh here is
 Venison, and the Deer are so fat, that after
 they have run a quarter of a League, they

drop down. They have great Number of
 fat Goats too, whose Flesh is pretty good,
 and are much eaten while the Deer are in
 their Rutting-time, when the Venison is
 rank. There are Hogs here of the *China*
 Kind, which devour all the young Animals
 they can catch, and tho' not so good as
 some Wild Boars, yet are much eaten.
 Their Bulls and Cows were brought hither
 from *Madagascar*, and have multiplied ex-
 ceedingly; but the latter afford very little
 Milk, and their Beef is not near so good as
 ours. They have also Wild Cows and Wild
 Horses, which are sometimes killed to feed
 Dogs with. Their Dogs and Horses are
 subject to the Falling Sickness, and many
 die of it, especially when young. Their
 Geese and Ducks, Moor-Hens, Water-
 Quails, Sea and Land Tortoises, are become
 scarce, and the Sharks and other Sea Ani-
 mals have forsok the Island, since the Na-
 tives us'd to lay Nets for them. There are
 many Birds here call'd Giants, because they
 are 6 Foot high. They have very long
 Legs and Necks: Their Bodies are no big-
 ger than that of a Goose. They are all over
 white, except a little reddish Place under
 their Wings. They have a Bill like a Goose,
 but sharper. Their Claws are very long,
 and divided. They feed in marshy Places,
 and the Dogs often surprise them, for they
 are very slow in mounting. There's ano-
 ther Kind of small Birds like our Sparrows,
 except that their Throats are red. Rats
 and Mice swarm here, which devour the
 Company's Sugar-Canes and Pulse, and
 there are small green Caterpillars here for
 3 or 4 Months in the Year, which eat up
 almost every thing they come at. They
 have no Serpents, Lice, Fleas, Toads, nor
 Frogs, and our Author thinks there are
 none in the Islands hereabouts. Hurricanes
 were formerly very frequent on this Island;
 but there had been none for 20 Years be-
 fore he wrote, tho' they had violent Winds
 and Rains in their room at certain Seasons;
 and they say, that if ever a Hurricane
 comes, 'tis always on the 9th of *February*.
 They have a rainy Season for 5 or 6 Weeks
 together, in which the Inhabitants chuse to
 sow; but they have commonly fair Wea-
 ther from *June* to *February*.

3. DIEGO DE REIZ, ROIS, or RUTS, RODRIGO, RODRIGUES, or DIGARROYS.

Mr. Davis sets this Island in S. Lat. 19 40. and Long. 98. and says, there are great Numbers of white Birds about it, which have only two long Feathers in their Tails. Herbert makes it 50 Miles about, and 90 Leagues E. S. E. from Maurice Island. He says, 'twas first discovered by the Portuguese, and is uninhabited, but abounds with Wood, Tortoises, Dodos, &c. He adds, that on the S. W. there are long dangerous Shoals. Mandelsloe places it in Lat. 20. 48. 60 Leagues from Maurice Island. La Croix but 22 E. from Madagascar. Leguat and his Company took Possession of this Island for the Dutch about 1691. He gives this Account on't.

'Tis surrounded with Shelves, that run out very far into the Sea, and seems very difficult of Access. The E. and S. E. Winds are very constant here. The Island affords a lovely Prospect to those that are at Sea. It consists of little Mountains, spread with Walks of great tall Trees, always green, and the Valleys are water'd with fine Rivers, whose Banks are adorned with Forests. It lies in Lat. 19. and is 20 Miles in Compass. There's a little River that rises in the Middle of the Island, and in its Way over the Rocks to the Sea forms several Cascades and Basons. In hot dry Weather it receives little Water from its Fountain, but the Tide always fills it to the Brink. In Hurricane-time 'tis subject to frequent Inundations. By this River our Author and his Company built their Huts with the Trunks and Leaves of Plantanes, and planted Gardens, which they encompassed with Palisadoes, to keep out the Turtles. The Soil is extraordinary light. The Dutch cultivated it soon after their Arrival, and sow'd their several Seeds, which produc'd some Water-Melons, Succory, Wheat, Artichokes, Purslain, Turneps, Mustard, Clover-Grass, and Gilly-Flowers, which last rose high, but they did not blow, and at last they all perish'd. The Turneps were also Worm-eaten before they were gather'd; but abundance of large well tasted Land Melons came up almost without Cultiva-

tion; and those that ripen'd in the Winter, were much better than others that came up in the hot Weather towards June and July. They thrive best in the Shade. There are Red and White Water-Melons here, of which the first are the best. The Rind is green, and the Inside Red, and they are very refreshing and full of Water. Some are large enough to serve 8 People. They mingled some Ashes with the Earth where they were sown, which made them thrive amain, and tast delicately. The Artichokes spread much, but they yielded little Fruit. The Succory, Purslain, and Mustard-Seed, came up to a Wonder; but they could not take off its Bitterness, and the Wheat produc'd Tares. The Air here is very clear and healthy, the Sky always serene, and the Heats of the Summer very moderate, for at 8 a Clock every Morning in the Year, a little N. E. or N. W. Wind arises, which cools the Air, and makes it perpetual Spring, or Autumn. The Nights are cool, and it seldom rains, except for 4 or 5 Weeks after the Hurricane, which is in January and February. However they have frequent Dews; but our Author believes no Thunder was ever heard of here. The Valleys, whose Soil consists chiefly of the Dust of rotten Trees driven down the Hills by the Floods, are cover'd with Palms, Plantanes, Ebony, and several other Sorts of Trees; and there are several charming Rivulets of fresh Water that are never dry, whose Springs are all in the Middle of the Island. There's abundance of Eels in them, some of which are very large and well tasted. They took some of such a monstrous Bulk, that two Men could scarce carry one of them home. The Water is so clear, that they can see them at the Bottom, and either dart or shoot them. The Valleys extend themselves as they draw nearer the Sea, and form a Level, which in some Places is two Miles broad and two long. The Soil is excellent, 8 or 10 Foot deep, and planted with Trees which are almost of an equal Height. There are some like Plum Trees, which bear a Sort of Pepper. Their Leaves are like Jessamin, and their Fruit grows in Bunches. They have some Coco's here, which 'tis said were thrown up by the Sea, and 'tis supposed they come from the Shoal of St. Brandon, 60 or 80 Leagues to the N. E. Here is also the

the Banian Tree, on which the Bats commonly feed and roost. The Wood of all the Trees in the Island is generally hard; but in a few Weeks after 'tis cut 'twill be full of Worms, so that they let it lie three Weeks in the Sea to prevent it. That called the *Nasty Tree* has a very offensive Smell, but is the best of all for Carpenters Use. There's wild Purslain here, which is small and green.

There are no 4 footed Creatures, but Rats, Lizards, Sea and Land Turtles. The latter are of different Sorts, whose Bones are massy, and without any Marrow. They fly sometimes 2 or 3000 in a Flock, and always keep Centinels at some Distance. The Flesh of the Sea-Turtles tastes like Beef, and that of the Breast is admirable. The Fat is as good as the Marrow of Veal, but 'tis green like Ointment, yet 'tis wholesome and purgative, and makes People's Urine very green. Some Sea-Turtles are above 5 Hundred Weight, and will lay 200 Eggs in two Hours, which the Sun hatches in 6 Weeks, and the young ones run directly to the Sea as soon as they come out of the Shell. So many are destroyed by the Fools, Frigats, and several other Birds that lie in wait for them upon the Trees, that scarce 10 in 100 are sav'd. Every Turtle lays 2000 Eggs a Year. The Land Turtles are best to eat. Those of the Sea feed upon Weeds at the Bottom, never come ashore but to lay, and before that Time couple 9 Days together without Separation. The Fat of both Sea and Land Turtles tastes admirably well when melted, and is good in all Sauces. The Turtles are a dull Sort of Creatures, and will live a Month without eating. There are great Numbers of Lamentins, which some call Manatees, in the neighbouring Sea, and several other strange Sea Monsters, besides Sea and Land Crabs, which march by Millions from all Parts of the Island to the Sea before and after the Full Moons of *July* and *August*; small and great Flies and Caterpillars, but no stinging Flies, Fleas or Lice, and Variety of Sea Fowls. Their Lizards are very tame, and a Prey to the Bit-

terns. Here are Purrs, Swallows, green and blue Parrots, whose Flesh is as good as that of young Pigeons; and small Birds like *Canary Birds*, which are very familiar, but will not sing. Here are also fat Pigeons of a Slate Colour, delicate Woodcocks of a bright Grey, too fat to fly, and abundance of those Birds call'd *Solitary*, which are seldom seen in Company. The Feathers of the Males are of a brown grey Colour. The Feet and Beak are like those of Turkeys, but more crooked. They have scarce any Tail; but their hind Part, cover'd with Feathers, is roundish, and they are taller than Turkeys. They have a black lively Eye, but no Comb. They are so heavy, that they cannot fly. They will whirl about 20 or 30 times together on the same Side in 4 or 5 Minutes, and their Wings make a Noise like a Rattle. Their Wing-Bone grows big towards the End, and forms a Lump under the Feathers as big as a Musket Ball, which, with its Beak, are the Birds chief Defence. They are easier to be catch'd in open Places than in the Woods. They are extremely fat and well tasted from *March* to *September*, especially while they are young, and some of the Males weigh 45 Pound. There are several other unknown Creatures here, for whose particular Description we must refer to *Leguat*.

4. ROGUE or ROQUEPIZ.

Admiral *Lancaster* places it in S. Lat. $10^{\frac{1}{2}}$. He says, the Water all about it is so deep, that there's no safe Riding for Ships; but it abounds with odoriferous Plants, Flowers and Shrubs, good Fish and Fowls, and whole Woods of Coco-Trees. Mr. *Davis* of *Limehouse* places it Lat. 11. Long. 41.

5. DIEGO GRATIOSA.

Mr. *Davis* places this Island in S. Lat. $7^{\frac{1}{2}}$. Long. 110 40. and makes it 10 or 12 Leag. in Length. He says, it has good Fishing and Fowling, and abundance of Coco-Trees.

T H E I N D E X.

Note, That C. signifies Country.

T. Town. T. C. or C. T. Town and Coun-
try of the same Name.

Is. Island.

M. Mountain.

R. River.

Ancient People are put in a Black Character.

Natural History in Italick.

A	Page		Page		Page
A Bavi R	644	Adel C	665	Alcanica T	129
Abex C	667, 668	Adendum T	271	Alcudia M	235
Abiad T	674	Adja T	452	Alcui M	238
Abcera C	459	Adom C	457	Ale C	350
Abonoe C	ibid	Adoua C T	681	Alexandria T	4, 103
Abotkna T	674	Adrumetum T	19	Alexandrina C	4
Abouhine T	133	Adyrmachidee	16	Alfaa T	671
Abramboe C	458	Ægymurus Is.	23	Algier C 182, 192. — T	203
Abritisch T	139	Æthiopes Vesperii	30	Alguechet C	322
Abugana T	648	Afra T	315	Alguel T	295
Abuhinan T	318	Africa C 1. Propria 91. Mi-	28.	Almanfor T	271
Abydus T	13	nor 19, 21. Interior	28.	Altaba T	25
Abyla Columna M	27	Modern 33, T. 172.		Amara T C	645
Abyssinia C	609	Africans	2, 3	Amba M	612
Acam C	458	Agadez C	338	Amba Geschen M	612, 645
Acanny C	400, 458	Agla T	242	Ambas Congo T	558
Acara T	456	Agmet R 273 — T	297	Ambiancantiva C	543
Acarady C	474	Agobel T	295	Ambohismene C	779
Accara C	455	Agonna C	454	Amboises Is.	490
Ackemin T	133	Agotton T	484	Ambofine C	ibid
Acoda T	440	Agreeable Is.	247	Amargo T	242
Acridophagi	32	Aguilhas M	596	Ammon, Oracle, Temple, and	
Acron C	453	Abim C	458	Grove.	16, 17
Adam's Fig Trees	100	Ajan C	664	Ammonii	16
Adea C	664	Akim C	400	Ampatre C	782
		Albus R	311	Ampaza C	664
				Ampe	

Ampelusia M	27	Ascension If	739	Baronis M	232
Anachimoussi C	778	Ascurum T	27	Barra T	351, 556
Anchisa M	304	Asfachusa T	172	Barraboa T	664, 665
Anchorarum Urbs T	11	Asgan M	232	Basra T	242
Ancober R	439	Asgangan M	236	Bassangamar R	344
Andouvouche C	780	Asgar C	247	Bastion of France	186
Andrew's (St.) R	392	Asguri Cameren Plain	230	Batha T	210
Andropolis T	5	Asiante C	401	Batta C	557
Anfa T	271	Asifnual R	273	Bebelloch T	127
Angad Desert	214	Asna T	138	Beduins	53
Angazelia If	789	Assafran R	183	Beedi T	132
Angela C	326	Assi C T	438	Behnese T	139
Angera M	241	Assuan T	138	Beht R 217	— M 647
Angola C	559	Asum T	666	Beija T	172
Angos C	657	Atchim T	439	Belliano T	135
Angot C	648	Ater M	30	Bemasem T	131
Angra T	689	Atlas M	27, 307	Bena C	358
Animmey M	296	Atty C	458	Bengo R	524
Annamabo T	452	Augustin's (St.) C	782	Benguela C 569	— Bay 571
Annobon If	735	Augustus M	238	Beni-Abufaid M	207
Anossi C	776	Aurastius M	25, 191	Beni-Achmed M	238
Ansicains C	517	Auxuma T	31	Beni-Arax T	210
Ansola T	132	Awine C	401	Beni-Bachull T	234
Antæopolites Nomos C	13	Axim T	439	Beni-Becil T	256
Antæus T	13	Axuma T	649	Beni-Bessere C	318
Antavere C	779	Azagues	33	Beni-Cheffen M	241
Anthony's (St.) If	716	Azama T	24	Beni-Fenfecare M	241
Anthylla T	5	Azamor T	285	Beni-Gabara M	239
Antinoites C	12	Azaoad Desert	311, 328	Beni-Garir M	239
Antinopolis T	139	AziOTH T	135	Gebara M	232
Antinous T	12	Azoph T	286	Beni-Guamad M	238
Apam T	454	Azores If	685	Beni-Guarid M	162
Aphroditopolis T	139			Beni-Guazeval M	238
Apis T	16			Beni-Guedarfechus M	241
Apollonias T	17			Beni-Guelidus M	238
Apollonium M	23			Beni-Guerhenaz M	232
Apollonopolis T	13			Beni-Guernid M	214
Aqua C	458			Beni-Guma C	317
Aquæ Regiæ T	21			Guriaguelus M	238
Aquilaria T	ibid			Beni-Hurus M	241
Arabians 2, 3	— Tribes 35			Beni-Jasga M	231
Arca T	314			Beni-Jedes M	237
Adra C	471			Beni-Jegenefen M	237
Arebo T	484			Beni-Jus M	239
Aresgol R	183			Beni-Manfor M	238
Argos T	670			Beni-Meguer M	285
Arguin If	29, 335			Beni-Mesgalda M	237
Ariane T	178			Benin C	461, 474
Aridus R	311			Beni-Sabih T	315
Arithmetick, a strange Way	391			Beni-Sahid M	236
Arradez T	178			Beni-Suef M	131
Arriareos C	355			Beni-Teude T	242
Arfinoe T	7, 11, 17			Beni-Teusin M	236
Arzilla T	242			Beni-Yerso M	237
				Beni-	

Beni-Zarzal M	239	Burregreg R	216	Casæ Nigræ T	25
Beni Zete M	215	Busiris T	6	Casamanca C	356
Bensert T	180	Butua C T	606	Casangas C	ibid
Bercu T	454	Butus T	6	Casar el Cabir T	248
Berdoa C	326	Byrsa <i>Tower</i>	21	— Zarahnum T	257
Berdoans	34	Byzacina T	20	Cascais <i>Little</i>	543
Bereberes	38	Byzacium C	19, 21	Casium M	7
Berenice T	14, 15, 17	Bzo T	288	Cassan C	353
Bernick T	160			Cassan <i>Great</i>	352
Beyhourta T	344			Cassena C	339
Biafar C	498	C Aana T	135	Cassia <i>Fistula</i>	44
Bibouda <i>Desert</i>	671	C Cabinda T	545	Catadupi	31
Biguba C	357	Cabo Monte	374	Catcheo R T	355
Biledulgerid C	310	— Tres Puntas	440	Catie T	129
Bintam T	351	Corso T	448	Catonbelle R	571
Birchel Elban <i>Lake</i>	139	Cabra T	337	Cavota M	232
Bifa T	650	Cacongo R. 521	— C 543	Cayor C	351
Bifegos C	357	Cæsarea T	26	Cayroan C	160
Bitol T	341	Caffraria C	572	Cazar-Ezzaghir T	245
Blanco M	335	Cagasian If	359	Cefaya R	183
Blemmies	31	Cairo T	109, 126	Cellæ T	20
Boa-Vista If.	720	Cairoan T	171	Centopozzi M	231
Bocchus Junior C	27	Calaa T	211	Centumputei T	287
Boededoe T	484	Calama T	25	Cercinna If <i>and T.</i>	19
Bogudiana C	27	Calbaria C T	488	Cerne If	28
Bojadore M	314	Calbonges	490	Ceuta T	245
Bokkemealè C	516	Calucala R	562	Chak T	140
Boma T	546	Camarones R	490	Chanca T	129
Bomangoii T	ibid	Camabamba C	568	Chafair T	318
Bon M	177	Cambata C	653	Chafasa T	236
Bona T	187	Camelions	49	Chaude R	312
Bon-Andrea T	160	Camels	157	Chaus C	230
Bonee C	458, 459	Cammanah C	459	Chebib M	241
Bonites <i>Fish</i>	350	Cammart T	178	Chelga T	674
Borgium T	319	Campans <i>Banks</i>	344	Chelicia C	664
Borno C	325	Canaria If	28	Chelonophagi	32
Boro C	606	Canary If 625	— T 710	Cherferus M	238
Borsalo R 344	— C 351	Cano C T	338	Cherfonefus M	4
Bottewa T	389	Canopus T	5	Cherzez R	217
Bourbon If	790	Cantin M	285	Chian M	135
Bourles T 101	Boutry T 441	Cantor C	351	Chickens <i>strangely hatch'd</i>	122
Bramas C	504	Cape Verd If	712	Chollum T	190
Brancare R	523	Capes T C	164, 361	Christiansburg T	456
Brava T 665	— If 728	Caphes T	321	Christoval (St.) de Lagu-	
Bridge, <i>strange one</i>	217	Caphtor T C	10	na T	708
Brischa T	207	Capraria If	28	Chus C	30
Brocallo C	342	Caps R	165	Chusites	30
Bubastus T	6, 10	Capfa T	20, 25	Chythite T	289
Bucchuca M	239	Caracombo If	737	Cilm C	374
Bugia C 188	— T 190	Caraffa T	127	Cirta T	24
Bulac T	126	Caravans	228	Claire (St.) M	502
Bulbey T	129	Caremboule C	782	Clypea T 21	Clyfma T 15
Bullaria T	25	Carrier Pigeons	100	Coanza R	562
Buramos C	356	Carthage T	21, 178	Cobre R	439

Coco Tree	396	Dancali C	667	Eitdeuet T	289
Coga T	681	Dancation M	642	Eithiad T	ibid
Col des Mudejares T	202	Danda R	524	Elephants	403, 520, 536
Colocasia	44	Dandara T	136	Elethya T	14
Colombo T	556	Danish Mount	449	Eleusis T	5
Coloo T	31	Daphne T	10	Elgiumha T.	249, 288, 297
Commendo T	443	Dara R 312	314	Elhamma T	163
Coney If	745	Darel Hamara T	256	Elmadina T	287
Congo C T	450, 502, 519	Dassen If	599	Elmohafar T	211
Conraadsburg T	448	Datura Plant	44	Embacca C	568
Constantina C	184	Dead M	641	Embar T	344
Convallis If	28	Debis T	30	Emboul T	ibid
Cephiti	52, 57, 124	Dec If	643	Emduto T	ibid
Coptites Nomos C	14	Dedes M	289	Emfras T	679
Coptos T	14	Defarzo T	648	Emoque Matari R	524
Corientes M	601	Deheleq If	683	Empation C	642
Corisco If	501	Deleb T	673	Endir T	344
Cormantyn T	452	Delgumuha T	297	Enguelequiquit T	295
Cornelii Castra T	22	Delta C	4, 5, 6	Enfaca C	568
Corra T	387	Demensera M	292	Equea C	474
Corfairs	150	Deorum-Currus M	29	Equebdenon M	235
Corvo If	687	Depfan T	642	Eraclea T	173
Cossir T	141	Derote T	101	Eringdrane C	779
Cothon If	22	Derreira T	671	Errif C	237
Coto C	460	Desert Coast	575	Esbykie Lake	115
Couche C	641	— Islands	695	Effab C	162
Couco T M	201	Deule T	15	Essenay T	137
Crocodile	47	Deusen T	319	Estora T	188
Croix (St.) T	307	Deziza T	128	Estuca C 313	Etham T 9
Crow T	389	Didecaschænus C	14	Ethiopia Upper C	30, 609
Crown Birds	407	Diego de Reiz If	793	— Lower C	497
Cruze (St.) T	709	Diego Gratiofa If	798	Ezagen T	242
Cuahoe C	459	Dikieschoff T	441		F
Cuame R	601	Dingi C	516	Falso M	596
Cucksoo Diet	153	Dinkira C	400	Faluppos C	355
Cuiforo C	458	Diospolis C T	10, 13, 14	Fantyn C	451
Culesat T	294	Dobas C	649	Faramide T	101
Cullu T	24	Domingo (St.) R	332, 489	Farcala R 312	— T 317
Cumbas C	361	Dongola T	670	Fatigar C	648
Curamo Lake	474	Dorta T	688	Fayal If	688
Custom, a merry one of the Sailors when they pass the Line,	738	Dragon Tree	750	Feghigu tria Castra C	318
Cylongatræmocango C	517	Druwin T	392	Fernando Poo If	728
Cynopolis T C	12	Dubdu T	233	Ferro If	701
Cyrenaica Pentapolis C	17	Duccala C	284	Fetu C	447
Cyrene T	ibid	Duvarna T	681	Fez C. 216	— T 257
				Fezzen C	321
				Fida C	462
				Fish Bay	600
				Fium T	131
				Flamengos	713, 715
				Flesh Bay	600
				Flores If	688
				Fogo If	727
				Folgas C	381, 382
					For

Forcado R	487	Goletta T	177	Hammamet T	173
Forteventura If	710	Gomer R 217 — T	240	Hanteta M	296
Fortunate Islands	28, 696	Gomera If	702	Haoari	33
Fountain of the Sun	17	Gontar T	674	Haresgol T	212
Fredericksburg T	439	Good Bay	571	Hascora C	287
Fremona T	650	Good Hope M	575	Hawas R	610
Fungeno C	499	Gorgades If	29	Hea C	290
Funzal T	694	Gorgone T	642	Helena (St.)	740
Fuoa T	101	Gorgones If	29	Heleni C	682
		Gorham T	655	Heliopolis T	7, 8, 9
		Goshen C	8, 9	Hens of Guinea	723
		Goy C	544	Heptanomis C	11
G Aboe C	487	Goza T	292	Heracleopolis Parva T	7
Gabon C 499 — R	500	Graciosa If	689	— Magna	12
Gademes C	321	Grain Coast	387	Heracleotes C	11
Gætuli	29	Grand Canary If	709	Hermonthis C T	13
Gætulia C	ibid	Guachda C	318	Hermopolis Magna T	5
Gago C T	340	Guaden T	313	— Parva	12
Galeæ	608	Guadilibarbar R	165	Hermopolitanus Nomos C	12
Galata If 182 — T	334	Guaffo C	443	Heroopolis T	7
Gambia R 332 — C	351	Guagida T	215	Hespericornu M	29
Gamelera If	181	Gualata C	325, 334	Hesperides Gardens	7, 27
Ganea de Jesuire T	642	Gualil T	255	— If	29
Gaoga C	325	Guangara C	339	Hianque T	129
Garamantes	29	Guanefers	34	Hieroglyphicks	60
Garbia C	98	Guardafuy M	667	Himiffin R	34, 312
Garet C T	235, 306	Guardan M	236	Hippo Dirutus T	23
Garcen M	162	Guber C T	338	— Regius	24
Garfis T	233	Gueblen M	232	Hoden T	335
Gazelles	50	Gueneferis M	207	Homampo C	778
Gabel el Hadith M	291	Gueregra Plain	230	Homar R	217
Gegel T	191	Guerguela C T	320	Homara T	242
Gelves If	164	Gueryguere M	249	Hondo C	382
Gemaa el Hamem T	256	Guerry T	671	Horrea T	20
Gemethailon T	127	Guesfet M	165	Horses Arabian	157
Genehoa C	335	Guigina M	287	Hottentots	578
George's (St.) If	689	Guir R	217, 312	House-warming, an odd Fashion,	759
Gerceluin T	234	Gulph of Arabia	15	Hubed T	214
Geroep T	344	Gumeri	33	Hued el Harrax R	183
Giesim T	673	Gunaigel Gherben M	232	Hued el Quivir R	184
Gingiro C	651	Gurgesen T	305	Hued Iter R	183
Gir R	30	Guzula C	303	Hued la Abid R	273
Girama T	674	Gynæcopolis T	5	Hunain T	212
Girba If	164			Hypsele T	12
Girge T	134			Hyfeliotes C	ibid
Giringbomba C	499				
Giza T	129	H Abat C	240		
Gobby C	516	Habid R	273		
Godree If	343	Haddagia T	233	I	
Goga T	642	Haderchis T	292	Jagos	518
Gojam C	646	Hainelchalla T	271	Jago (St.) If 724 — T	727
Gold, its Sorts and Qualities		Halem M	304	Jakkeim T	471
	401	Haluan T	257	Jalofes C	341
Gold Coast	394	Hamis Metagare T	256	Jammes	398
Golden Island	101	Hamisfuan T	234	Jaye T	352
					ibis

<i>Ibis</i>	50	Lampi C	459, 460	Madurus T	25
<i>Ichneumon</i>	49	Lamps	97, 98	Magadoxo T	665
<i>Ichthyophagi</i>	15	Lapodusa If	23	Magar T	344
<i>Idolos If</i>	50	Larache T	247	Magarave M	210
<i>Jessenten M</i>	231	Lataby C	474	Magazan T	286
<i>Ifran T</i>	213	Latopolis T	13	Magdolum T	10
<i>Igwira C</i>	457	Lebich R	311	Magnice R	601
<i>Ilamba C T</i>	563, 567	Lelunda R	524, 558	Mago If	720
<i>Ilenfugaghen T</i>	293	Lempra C	326	Magran M	289
<i>Illec T</i>	307	Lempters	34	Magrida R	165
<i>Imegiaghen T</i>	297	Leontopolis T	6	Magwibba R	374
<i>Imiffen R</i>	274	<i>Lepers Lake</i>	163	Mahmora T	250
<i>Imizmizi T</i>	297	Leptis Magna T	18	Majumba C T	516, 517
<i>Incaffia T</i>	563, 567	— Parva	20	Malaguetta C	372
<i>Inhaban C</i>	607	Letopolites Nomos T	5	Maleg R	611
<i>Inhambana C</i>	601	Leucothea T	14	Malemba T	543
<i>Infoco C</i>	474	Ley T	460	Maletrafa M	232
<i>Inta C</i>	458	Libolo C	569	<i>Mamalucks</i>	72
<i>Joanna If</i>	785	Libya C	323	Mamun T	317
<i>John's (St.) Bread</i>	46.	Licophi T	140	Manadeli T	668
— Herb 157 — R	387	Little Incaffan C	440	Mananghare C	782
<i>Jol T</i>	26	Limofa If	181	Manatenga C	778
<i>Jonda T</i>	643	Lixa T	27	Mandes T	6
<i>Iron M</i>	451	Loando St. Paulo T	551	Mandinga C	358
<i>Isago C</i>	487	Loango C	504	Mandingos	353
<i>Ismuc T</i>	25	Loebo T	484	<i>Man eater, a Monster</i>	405
<i>Istanna C</i>	487	Lopas M	502	Manflota T	132
<i>Juala C 342 — T</i>	344	Lote Fruit	19	Manikicongo T	571
<i>Juan (St.) R</i>	331	Lotophagi	ibid	Manfibar T	352, 353
<i>Julelhadva M</i>	285	Louango T	517	Manfoura C T	98
<i>Juliopolis T</i>	5	Loze R	524	Mapata T	31
<i>Junk R</i>	386	Lucala R	562	Mapongo T	568
<i>Ivory Coast</i>	392	Luchferem T	140	Marazania T	21
<i>Izame C</i>	778	Lucia (St) If	718	Mareb R	611
		Lucus R	217	Mareotis C and Lake	4
		Lunce M	647	Marmarica C	16
		Lybia Inner C	29	Marmaridæ	ibid
		Lycopolis C T	12	Marfa T	177
		Lyons 158	— M 595	Marfalquibir T	212
				Mary's (St.) If	690, 784
				Massacoya If	373
				Masseslyli	23
				Massingan C	568
				Massoua If	683
				Massyli	23
				Matte M	344
				Mataman C	574
				Matatane C	779
				Matgara M 232 — T	317
				Matharea T	127
				Matthew (St.) If	738
				Matuca C	607
				Matzua T	669
				Mayah R	375
					Mau

Mauretania Cæsariensis C	26	Molocath R	25, 217	Nilopolis T	11
---Tingitana C	27	Mols <i>Fort</i>	556	Ningo C T	459
Maurice If	793	Mompa C	458	Nitria T	5
Maxula T	21	Monastero T	172	Nivaria If	28
Mayotta If	785	<i>Monastery famous</i>	650	No T	10
Mazagran T	210	Monbaza C T	661	Nocor R	217
Mazalig T	318	Mongal T	657	Plomades	23
Mecellat T	163	Monikifombo T	571	Nomi of Egypt	7
Mechnes T	255	Monœmugi C	607	Non M	313
Mecza C	337	Monomotapa C	603	Noph T	8, 10
Medua T	216	Monfol T	498	Nubia C 653	— R 654
Megerada R	166	<i>Moors in Barbary</i>	153	Nuchaila T	271
Megeza M	232	Moph T	10	Numidæ	23
Meggeo T	236	<i>Moquifies</i>	510	Numidia C	ibid
Meiborg T	486	Morocco C T	272, 278, 295, 297	Nun T	314
Meliana T	207	Mottygia Plain	193, 202		
Melilla T	236	<i>Mountains of 7 Brothers</i>	27	O Afes T	12
Melinda C T	661	— Of Salt	612	O Oea T	19
Melli C T	336	Mouree T	450	Ogara C	651, 681
Membrefa T	23	Mozambique C T	657	Oideriega T	642
Memphis T	8, 11, 169	Mulucan R	217	Olibatta R	502
Meninx T	19	<i>Mummies</i>	93 to 97	Ombis Nomos C	14
Menoch R	375	Musmudi	33	Ombrinos If	28
Menoufia C	98	Mussula T	551	Ommirabih R	273
Menuthias If	32	Mustugan T	208	On T	8, 9
Meraifa M	237	Muthul R	25	Onias T	6
Meramer T	286	Myos Hormus T	14, 15	Ontsayfa-Trouha If	758
Mercera T	642			Ophiophagi	16
Meris Lake	11	N		Opinum T	27
Meroe If	31, 643, 644, 648	N Aboya T	353	Oran T	211
Mesila T	192	N Naceade T	140	Oratavia T	709
Messa T	305	Narangia T	242	Orpin Cape	667
Mesurado M	386	Narea C	647	Os Alagoas T	360
Metagonis M	27	Palamones	18	Ostracene T	7
Metelis T	6	<i>Natron, a Lake of it</i>	142	Ouwerra C 487	— T 488
Mezdaga T	234	Naucratis T	6	Oxyrinchus C T	12
Mezemma T	239	Neapolis T	18, 21	Oyster Tree	364
Mezuna T	208	Nebesse T	646		
Mezzab C	319	Nebet T	178		
Michael's (St.) If	690	Necaus T	192	P	
Michias T	128	Ned Roma T	212	P Adron M	523
Mifruhétich T	127	Nesta T	319	Pagrada T	23
Migdol T	9, 10	Negado T	136	Palm M 390, 556	— If 700
Mileum T	25, 186	Negro Cape	574	Pango C	557
<i>Milfoyl Stratiotes</i>	100	Negroland C	330	Panopolis T	13
<i>Milbio</i>	397	Nepheris T	23	Panopolites Nomos C	ibid
Mina Castle	443	Nicholas (St.) If	718	Panormus T	16
Minio T	132	Nicopolis T	5	Panthalaræa If	181
Mira R	184	Niftis T	273	Papay Tree	396
Mitombo C	160	Niger R	30, 329, 330.	Papyrus	45
Mizraim C	7	— M 516	— Lake 611	Parætonium T	16, 160
Moco C	489	Nile R	5, 6, 13, 14, 32, 55,	Parrots If	502
Mogadore If	294	77 to 83, 115, 129, 610,		Pathos C	10
Mohila If	787	646, 679		Pate C T	664
				Paul	

Paul (St.) R 386	— M 524				
Pavoasan T	730				
Pelusium T	7, 10				
Pemba C	557				
<i>Penguins</i> 577	— If 745				
<i>Pepper of Guinea</i>	364, 372				
Pefcar T	319				
Phara T	23				
Pharaoh's Fig-Tree	108				
Pharaohs of Egypt	62 to 67				
Pharax T	18				
Pharos If	4				
Pharusii	30				
Philæ If T	14				
Philænorum Aræ T	18				
Philoteria T	15				
Phylacæ T	12				
Pibefet T	10				
Picos Fragos M	596				
<i>Piment Pepper</i>	399				
Pietra Rossa T	255				
Pihahiroth T	9				
<i>Pillar of Pompey</i>	105				
Pinde T	545				
Pithon T	10				
<i>Plantain Tree</i>	364				
Plinthine T	4				
Plizoge R	375				
Pluvialia If	28				
Pombo C	499, 557				
Pongo If	501				
Ponni T	457				
Popo Little	461				
— Great C	462				
Porto Farino T	181				
— Santo If	690				
Portus Magnus T	26				
Praya T	726				
Praya das Pedras	574				
<i>Prester John</i>	631				
Primis Parva & Magna T	31				
Prince's If	728				
Pfelcis T	31				
Ptolemais T	17				
Pulchrum Promontorium	22				
Pully's Convent	131				
Punta del Gada T	690				
Purple Islands	28				
Putea T	20				
Pyco If	688				
Pygmæi	32				
<i>Pyramids</i>	11, 83, to 93				
		Q			
		Quadim T	136		
		Quadres M	241		
		Quahoe C	459		
		Quaqua Coast	393		
		Queda T	547		
		Queen Ann's Point	452		
		Quenega T	316		
		Querquenes If	164		
		Quietevi C	606		
		Quiloa C T	660, 661		
		Quinamora T	373		
		Quintalla If	522		
		Quipia T	21		
		Quisama C	568		
		Quoja C	374		
		Quojabercoma C	ibid		
			R		
		Abat T	270		
		Rahon M	241		
		Rameses T C	9		
		Rams with overgrown Tails	158		
		Red Sea, where passed	130		
		Refrisco T	349		
		Requins Fish	ibid		
		Retel T	318		
		Rhixophagi	16, 32		
		Riche T	130		
		Rio das Pedras 359. — Galin-			
		has 373, 374. — Des Oistros			
		344. — Del Rey 489. — Dos			
		Savens 273. — Real 489.			
		— Del Oro 328. — Grande			
		332. — Volta 460. — La-			
		gos 474. — De la Grace 344			
		— Danger 499. — Longo			
		571. — De Spirito Sancto			
		601.			
		Rifa T	669		
		Robben If	599, 600		
		Rocks of a prodigious Echo	647		
		Rogue Piz If	798		
		Rolles If	737		
		Rosatim M	160		
		Rossetto T	101		
		Ruspina T	20		
		Ruypiz Cape	574		
			S		
		Sabbath R	34		
		Sabbath R	611		
		Sabhelmurga Plain	230		
		Sabou C T	450, 451		
		Sacara T	129		
		Said T	135		
		Sais T	6		
		Sal If	719		
		Sala T	27, 250		
		Salahia T	129		
		Saloneffa T	160		
		Salvador (St.) T	525, 558		
		Salvages If	700		
		Sama T	442		
		Sand Point	502		
		Sangay T	344		
		Sanquay C	458		
		Saravi C	681		
		Sarsura T	21		
		Sasa T	202		
		Sasura T	21		
		Satyr monstrous	276, 561		
		Schedia T	5		
		Scincos	50		
		Sea-Horse 48	— Weed 576		
		Sebesten Trees	44		
		Secrets, a strange Way to keep	350		
		them	183		
		Sef-Gemar R	316, 317		
		Segelmesse C T	373		
		Selbole R	231		
		Selelgo M	353		
		Selico T	270		
		Sella T	296		
		Semedede M	655		
		Semen C	331		
		Senega R	600		
		Seno del Lago	670, 671		
		Sennar C T	21		
		Septinumicia T	359		
		Serboracasa T	207		
		Sercelli T	543		
		Serri C	388		
		Sestos R	45		
		Sesamus	655		
		Seth Desert	515		
		Sette C R	655		
		Seu Desert	238		
		Seufacen M	296		
		Seufana M	682		
		Sheba Qu. 31, 632, 633,	373		
		Sherboro T	457		
		Shidoe T	664		
		Sian C	25		
		Sicca Veneria T	— M 296		
		Sicliwa R 273	Sidra		

Sidra If	161	Tagat M	249	Tentyrites Nomos C	13
Sierra Leona C M R	359	Tagavost T	306	Teolacha T	319
Siga T	26	Tagodat T	288	Teorregu C	321
Simenut T	99	Tagtefs T	295	Tercera If	689
Simi	32	Tagumudert T	315	Terga T	240
Sin T	10	Takase R	610	Tergdent T	215
Sinim C	ibid	<i>Tamarind Tree</i>	107	Tergers	34
Sirbo Lake	7	Tambisso T	674	Tesebit C	318
Siribis T	139	Tanas R	25	Tesegdelt T	294
Siry C T	681	Tangier T	243	Tesiran M	238
Sitifies T	192	Tanis T	6, 8	Tesset C	313
Sittiani	24	Tanzora T	241	Tetuan T	246
Sityphis T	26	Taochara T	160	Tevendez M	287
Slaper's Haven	556	Taposiris Parva T	5	Teurent T	233
<i>Slaves cruelly treated</i> 149, 174, 175, 203, 255		Taragalel T	314	Teusar T	321
<i>Slave Coast</i>	459	Targa C	327	Teusart R	312
Soffala C T	601, 602	Taricheæ T	6	Tezela T	214
Soffroa T	234	Tarodant T	305	Tezerghe T	233
Sogno T	545	Tebebusant T	317	Tezota T	236
Soldania Bay	586	Tebecrit T	212	Tezza T	234
Sombreras If 351 — M	571	Tebelbelt C	317	Thagaste T	25
Songo C 534 — Counts	538	Tebeffa T	185	Thagit T	271
Sorbet	102	Teccut R	273	Thala T	25
Spermatophagi	16	Techort R 312 — C T	320	Thapsus T	20
Statue of Memnon	14	Teculeth R 273 — T	292	Thebæ T	14
Struthophagi	32	Teddeles T	202	Thebais C	12, 13
Suachen T 140 — If	141	Tedles T	288	Thenæ T	20
Suaquem T	669	Tednest T	293	Thimites Nomos C	13
Subu R	216	Tedfi T	306	This T	ibid
Sucaiocada T	190	Tefelfelt T	250	Thmuis T	6
Succoth T	9	Tefethna T 294 — R	273	Thomas (St.) If	729
Suez T	130	Tefezara T	214	Thonis T	5
Sunde C	556	Tegæa T	29	Tigifis T	25
Sus R 272 — C 303, 312	312	Tegagit T	271	Tigremahon C	649
Susa T	173	Tegaza C	328	Tingis T	27
Syene T	14	Tegorarin C	318	Tinzed T	315
Sylli	18	Tegre M	611	Tinzulin T	314
Syrtes	ibid	Teijeut T	294, 305	Tisdrus T	20
Syrtica Regio C	ibid	Tekefel R	681	Titulit T	ibid
		Telensin C T	208, 213	Tobulla T	172
		Telepte T	20	Tocorary T	441
		Temendfust T	202	Togda R 312 — T	316
T		Temesguir T	314	<i>Tombs Convent</i>	137
T Aata T	133	Temesna C	269	Tombut C T	336, 337
T Tabacatum T	344	Temmelet M	296	Tongue T	607
Tabeu T	457	Tenesent T	317	<i>Tooth Coast</i>	392
Table Bay and M	587	Tenent T	295	Tor T	130
Tabo T	392	Teneriff If and M	703	Torro R	373
Tabraca T 24 — If	186	Tenessa T	297	Trabocho T	160
Tachore Plain	163	Tenez C	206	<i>Trade of the English to Africa</i>	436
Tacrama T	440	Tenlegzet T	215	Trajan's Ditch	7
Tafilet C T	315, 316	Tensift T	272, 273	<i>Tree that drops Water</i>	701
Tafœ C	459	Tensites M	287	Tremesen C T	208, 213
Tagarim R	359	Tentyra T	13	Tres	
Tagassa T	239				



